DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 022 179 AL 001 479

CHINESE-CANTONESE BASIC COURSE.

Defense Language Institute, Washington, D.C.

Pub Date 65

Note-2,707p.; 9vols.

EDRS Price MF-$9.75 HC-$108.36

Descriptors-AUDIOLINGUAL SKILLS, *CANTONESE, CHINESE CULTURE, GRAMMAR, *INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS, INTENSIVE LANGUAGE COURSES, *LANGUAGE INSTRUCTION, LANGUAGE PATTERNS, MILITARY TRAINING, PATTERN DRILLS (LANGUAGE), PRONUNCIATION, READING MATERIALS, ROMANIZATION, TONE LANGUAGES, TRANSLATION, VOCABULARY, WRITING, WRITING EXERCISES

This nine-volume basic course in Cantonese Chinese is designed for 47 weeks of intense audiolingual instruction. The first book of the series introduces the pronunciation, with emphasis on the tone system, and the basic aspects of the grammar. Also introduced in this volume is the romanization system used in this series (the U.S. Army Language School system), and the Chinese writing system. The initial drills on sounds and tones are followed by regular lesson units set in a format which continues throughout the course--structural patterns presented orally, cartoon-type illustrations for visual stimulus, oral dialog, translation and recombination exercises, word lists, and reading and writing material. The cultural content is aimed at the interests and needs of the U.S. Army personnel. See related document AL 001 477. (AMM)

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

WEST COAST BRANCH

PRESIDIO OF MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

РУССКИЙ
СРПСКОХРВАТСКИ
中文
SHQIP
MAGYAR
日本語
TÜRKÇE
PORTUGUÊS
فارسی
ROMÂNĂ
УКРАЇНСЬКА
ITALIANO
BAHASA INDONESIA

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE

VOLUME I
LESSONS 1-20

БЪЛГАРСКИ
POLSKI
[illegible]
ČESKY
ΕΛΛΗΝΙΚΑ
한국어
ESPAÑOL
FRANÇAIS
العربية
ภาษาไทย
မြန်မာဘာသာ
DEUTSCH
TIẾNG VIỆT NAM

KISWAHILI

U.S. ARMY

ED022179

AL 001 479

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Volume I

Lessons 1-20

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

April 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
WEST COAST BRANCH
Presidio of Monterey, California

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS ~~COPYRIGHTED~~ MATERIAL HAS BEEN GRANTED BY Major Bobby L. Moore TO ERIC AND ORGANIZATIONS OPERATING UNDER AGREEMENTS WITH THE U.S. OFFICE OF EDUCATION. FURTHER REPRODUCTION OUTSIDE THE ERIC SYSTEM REQUIRES PERMISSION OF THE ~~COPYRIGHT~~ OWNER."

AL 001 479

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 21-40
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 41-60
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VIII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 set	Flash Cards for 1500 Most Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	27 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	27 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
		Also available in compact form for comprehension or review purposes:
	3 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:	1 reel	Hong Kong, MF 20-8799,(P)(A)* 9 min.
	1 reel	Hong Kong Welcomes You, MF 20-9363, (I) 15 min.
	1 reel	An Oriental City, Canton, MF 20-9075, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Farming in South China, MF 20-7829, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Taiwan, Island of Freedom, AFIF 103, 23 min.
	1 reel	Formosa, LSFC 21, 13 min.
	1 reel	Miracle in Free China, MF 20-9114, 30 min.
	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, (I) 14 min.

* Available in magnastriped Chinese-Cantonese narrations. (P) Primary version, (I) Intermediate version, (A) Advanced version.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	*Formosa, Blueprint for a Free China*, MOT 18, 24 min.
1 reel	*China* EF 258, 17 min.
1 reel	*China, the Land and the People*, MF 20-8939, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	*Peiping Family*, MF 20-8966, 20 min.
1 reel	*The Chinese Village, a Legend*, MF 20-9341, 15 min.
1 reel	*Red China*, AFIF 97, 27 min.
1 reel	*China, Far East*, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657 FC, (I) 14 min.
1 reel	*Far East*, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657, 30 min.
1 reel	*Southeast Asia, Lands and Peoples*, MF 20-8862, 13 min.
1 reel	*Southeast Asia*, SIS AFS No. 6, MF 30-8771, 33 min.
1 reel	*The Village that Refused to Die*, MF 20-9748, 60 min.
1 reel	*Siam*, MF 20-9269, 31 min.
1 reel	*Burma, People of the River*, MF 20-9028, 14 min.
1 reel	*Letter from Indonesia*, MF 20-8695, 27 min.
1 reel	*The Philippines*, AFIF 48, 15 min.
2 reels	*Portrait of an American Family*, MF 30-8449 (CC), 60 min.
1 reel	*Men Against Tanks*, MF 7-7898, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	*Production of Combat Intelligence*, MF 30-1494, (P)(A) 18 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Rifle Company, LSFC-3, (P)(A) 35 min.
1 reel	Infantry Battalion, LSFC-1, (P)(A) 21 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE (TOISHAN) 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 21-40
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 41-60
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters (Toishan Conversion Table)
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	24 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	24 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-26
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 27-55
	1 vol.	Volume III, Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	14 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	14 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	27 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

	27 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 210-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Volume I, Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume II, Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Volume III, Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Volume V, Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, 14 min.
	1 reel	Mighty Chinese Armed Forces, LS-86, 22 min.
	1 reel	Production of Combat Intelligence, MF 30-1494, 18 min.

* For Official Use Only

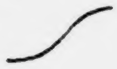
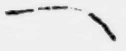
CHINESE-CANTONESE 96-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-16
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 17-32
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 33-48
	1 vol.	Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded on tape
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION

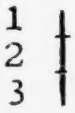
TONES

Everyone who speaks "American" English as a native is aware that any group of syllables can be spoken in different ways with very different meanings, without changing the way the syllables are written. For example, "He came home at eleven thirty" can be spoken as a dry fact, as an expression of horror at his lateness, as an indication that he came in after eleven and not after ten or twelve, and in other ways. The two main devices we use to show such differences in English are stress and intonation. Stress is the relative loudness we give any part of an utterance. Try pronouncing the above example in different ways; you will see at once that you make much change in the stress of different syllables. Now read the following two examples: Two Detectives burst into a room. They see a man lying on the floor. One rushes over to him. The other asks "He's dead?", and the examiner answers, "He's dead." Each man has spoken the same two syllables, but they have said very different things; yet, the two pairs of syllables are exactly the same, with one exception: they are spoken with different intonations. You will recognize that the intonation of the first utterance can be diagrammed thus:  ; while the intonation of the second can be diagrammed thus: . Now the intonation of any word in English can be changed with great flexibility. But not in Cantonese Chinese. The most important single thing you must learn in the early part of this course is that every Cantonese

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION

Chinese word has a specific intonation, which is called a tone, and the tone of a word is a part of it in the same way as a consonant or vowel. A word can not exist in Cantonese Chinese without its specific tone, and its particular tone always occurs with any given word in the same form. You have a choice of intonation for any English word; you have no choice for any Cantonese Chinese word, for a specific tone is an essential part of every Cantonese Chinese word.

When you hear single notes playing in succession on a piano, you recognize that each has its own level, and stays on that level. Such notes could be diagrammed thus: .·˙ . Each such point is said to be a specific pitch. Any person, in speaking, covers a certain range; that is, he has a certain pitch, or point below which he does not go, and another pitch above which he does not go. So the range of any person's speech, in English or Cantonese Chinese, could be represented by a vertical line, thus: | . Of course all pianos have the same range; and if you play any note on one piano and then play the corresponding note on any other piano, the two notes seem to have approximately the same pitch. But it is very different with people's speech. We say that some people have low-pitched voices, others high-pitched voices. Therefore, if we diagram the speaking range of three people, in English or Cantonese Chinese, we might have this result: . Note that the range of each voice, as represented by the length of its vertical line, is about the same; but the three different voices begin and end on very different pitches. Now when you begin your very first conversation with any person, in English or Cantonese Chinese, it is only a matter of a few seconds until you can tell whether the pitch of a particular syllable is, in the range of his own speech, relatively high or low. That fact is important. For the tones of Cantonese Chinese are divided into three groups, each of which occupies a specific area of any speaker's speaking range, thus:



. Of course the top part of that line, for a given speaker, may correspond in pitch to the middle or bottom part of another speaker's range. But, for the reasons given above, that never causes any difficulty; a listener is always able to place any pitch or tone of a speaker at the appropriate level of the speaker's speaking range.

The three parts into which the speaking range are divided in Cantonese Chinese are called the Upper, the Middle, and the Lower. Nine tones are distributed among these three parts, as follows:

The Upper series has four tones:

the Upper Even Tone	(Up Ev)
the Upper Rising Tone	(Up Ri)
the Upper Departing Tone	(Up De)
the Upper Entering Tone	(Up En)

The Middle series has only one tone:

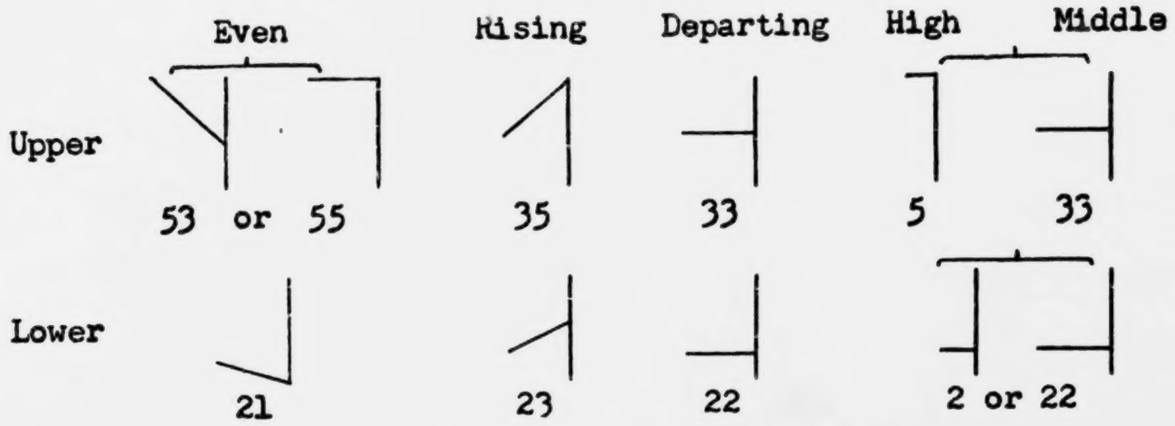
the Middle Entering Tone	(Mi En)

The Lower series has four tones:

the Lower Even Tone	(Lo Ev)
the Lower Rising Tone	(Lo Ri)
the Lower Departing Tone	(Lo De)
the Lower Entering Tone	(Lo En)

To make the tones visible, Dr. Y. R. Chao devised a scale of tone-letters by drawing a time-pitch graph of the voice[1], as follows:

Table 1. Tones

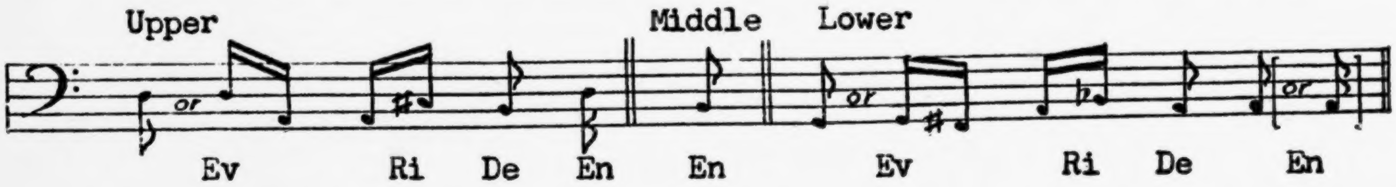


These diagrams are constructed as follows: the speaking range is represented by a vertical line; bars are drawn across this line to represent, within any speaker's range, the pitches he uses to make the Cantonese Chinese tones; these bars are numbered from bottom to top, one to five; a line is then drawn from the left toward the vertical line, showing the pitch on which the syllable starts (at the extreme left) and the pitch on which it ends (where the line touches the vertical line). Since the bars showing pitch are numbered, we can use two numbers to indicate the tone of any syllable; the first number tells where it starts, the second tells where it ends. Thus, if we mark a syllable 35 (three five), that means it starts from the middle pitch and goes up to highest pitch; hence the tone is Upper Rising. If the numbers are 33 (three three), that means the syllable starts from the middle pitch and stays middle without any change of pitch; hence the tone is Upper Departing. And so on with all the tones.

---

[1] Y. R. Chao, "A System of Tone-letters", Le Maitre Phonetique, 1930 p.24

D. Jones and K. T. Woo use a musical notation[2] as follows:



In the Chinese-Cantonese course at the U. S. Army Language School, the following system of romanization is utilized. The tonal marks of this system are as follows: The Upper Even and Upper Entering Tones are left unmarked, the Upper Rising is indicated by the acute accent (´), the Upper Departing and Middle Entering by the grave (`), the Lower Even by a dash (-), the Lower Rising by the inverted circumflex (ˇ), and the Lower Departing and Lower Entering by the circumflex (^), the Entering Tones having been marked in the same way as the others with which they coincide in pitch; they may be distinguished by their endings, p, t, and k.

---

[2] The musical notation is only an approximation to the average man's voice and not absolute pitch or intervals.

Table 2. Tonal Marks

	Even	Rising	Departing	Entering
Upper series	(unmarked)	´	`	(unmarked)
Middle series				`
Lower series	-	˘	^	^

Haū Sin-shoang, ts'íng neĭ tăng yot-chân

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION

FINALS

Besides the tone, a syllable in Cantonese Chinese may have two other elements: namely the final and the initial. A final consists of a vowel with or without a semi-vowel or a consonant as an ending. A final alone may constitute a complete syllable. The vowels may be long or short as enumerated in Table 3. Some of these vowels have more than one value, depending on the endings.

Table 3. Vowels

L.[3]	S.	L.	S.	L.	L.	S.	L.	S.	S.	S.	L.	L.
a		e		eu	i[4], z		oh		o		oo	ue
aai	ai		ei				oi			ui	ooi	
aau	au				iu							
aam	am				im			om				
aan	an				in		on			un	oon	uen
aang	ang	eng		eung		ing	ong		ung			
aap	ap				ip			op				
aat	at				it		ot			ut	oot	uet
aak	ak	ek		euk		ik	ok		uk			

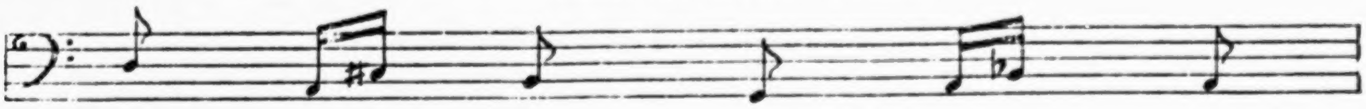
---

[3] L = long; S = short.

[4] i and z are only graphic distinctions with no difference in sound. i is used to combine with initials m, t, n, ch, ch', sh; and z is used to combine with initials ts, ts' and s.

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION

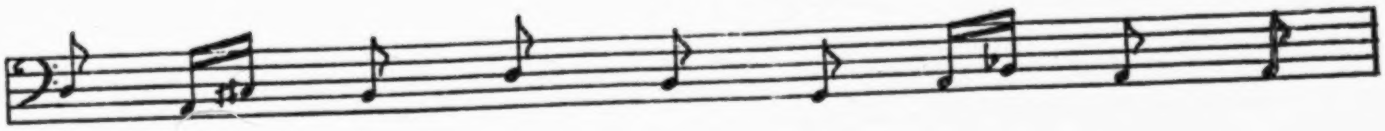
Fundamental Tones



Up Ev	Up Ri	Up De	Lo Ev	Lo Ri	Lo De
m	ḿ	m̀	m̄	m̆	m̂
ng	nǵ	ng̀	nḡ	nğ	nĝ
a	á	à	ā	ă	â
e	é	è	ē	ĕ	ê
eu	eú	eù	eū	eŭ	eû
i	í	ì	ī	ĭ	î
z	ź	z̀	z̄	z̆	ẑ
oh	óh	òh	ōh	ŏh	ôh
o	ó	ò	ō	ŏ	ô
oo	oó	oò	oō	oŏ	oô
ue	ué	uè	uē	uĕ	uê
aai	aaí	aaì	aaī	aaĭ	aaî
ai	aí	aì	aī	aĭ	aî
ei	eí	eì	eī	eĭ	eî
oi	oí	oì	oī	oĭ	oî
ui	uí	uì	uī	uĭ	uî
ooi	ooí	ooì	ooī	ooĭ	ooî
aau	aaú	aaù	aaū	aaŭ	aaû
au	aú	aù	aū	aŭ	aû
iu	iú	iù	iū	iŭ	iû

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION

Nine Tones



Up Ev	Up Ri	Up De	Up En	Mi En	Lo Ev	Lo Ri	Lo De	Lo En
aam	aám	aàm	aap	aàp	aām	aăm	aâm	aâp
am	ám	àm	ap	àp	ām	ăm	âm	âp
im	ím	ìm	ip	ìp	īm	ĭm	îm	îp
om	óm	òm	op	òp	ōm	ŏm	ôm	ôp
aan	aán	aàn	aat	aàt	aān	aăn	aân	aât
an	án	àn	at	àt	ān	ăn	ân	ât
in	ín	ìn	it	ìt	īn	ĭn	în	ît
on	ón	òn	ot	òt	ōn	ŏn	ôn	ôt
un	ún	ùn	ut	ùt	ūn	ŭn	ûn	ût
oon	oón	oòn	oot	oòt	oōn	oŏn	oôn	oôt
uen	uén	uèn	uet	uèt	uēn	uĕn	uên	uêt
aang	aáng	aàng	aak	aàk	aāng	aăng	aâng	aâk
ang	áng	àng	ak	àk	āng	ăng	âng	âk
eng	éng	èng	ek	èk	ēng	ĕng	êng	êk
eung	eúng	eùng	euk	eùk	eūng	eŭng	eûng	eûk
ing	íng	ìng	ik	ìk	īng	ĭng	îng	îk
ong	óng	òng	ok	òk	ōng	ŏng	ông	ôk
ung	úng	ùng	uk	ùk	ūng	ŭng	ûng	ûk

A final may have one of these endings: zero; -i, -u; -m, -n, -ng; -p, -t, -k. An ending is strongly or weakly articulated according as the vowel is short or long.

In pronouncing the endings -p, -t, and -k, whether they are begun strongly or weakly, one must never complete them so strongly as to make an audible explosion. The sound is swallowed, as it is popularly described.

Table 4. Endings

a		e	eu	i, z		oh		o		oo	ue
aai	ai		ei			oi			ui	ooi	
aau	au			iu							
aam	am			im			om				
aan	an			in		on			un	oon	uen
aang	ang	eng	eung		ing	ong		ung			
aap[5]	ap			ip			op				
aat	at			it		ot			ut	oot	uet
aak	ak	ek	euk		ik	ok		uk			

---

[5] Entering Tone endings -p, -t, and -k are respective counterparts of endings -m, -n, and -ng.

All the finals of Cantonese Chinese are enumerated in Table 6.

Table 5. Finals

a		e		eu	i, z		oh		o		oo	ue
aai	ai		ei				oi			ui	ooi	
aau	au				iu							
aam	am[6]				im			om				
aan	an				in		on			un	oon	uen
aang	ang	eng		eung		ing	ong		ung			
aap	ap				ip			op				
aat	at				it		ot			ut	oot	uet
aak	ak	ek		euk		ik	ok		uk			

o, e, eu...
?
a á à...
I think he's a little flat

---

[6] am and om, ap and op are only graphic distinctions with no difference in sound.

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION

Table 6. Values of Vowels

IPA[7]	Spelling	Position	As in
(a:)	a	When final	father
(a:)	aa-	In all positions	father
(ɐ)	a-	Before -i, -u;-m,-n, -ng; -p,-t,-k	cut
(ɛ:)	e	When final	se-e-ell
(ɛ:)	e-	Before -ng; -k	se-e-ell
(e)	e-	Before -i	hay
(oe)	eu	In all positions	no real Eng. approximation
(i:)	i, z	When final	machine
(i:)	i-	Before -u; -m, -n; -p, -t	machine
(e)	i-	Before -ng; -k	hay
(ɔ:)	oh	In all positions	awe
(ɔ:)	o-	Before -i; -n, -ng; -t, -k	awe
(ɐ)	o-	Before -m; -p	cut
(o)	o	When final	low
(o)	u-	Before -ng; -k	low
(ø)	u-	Before -i; -n; -t	no real Eng. approximation
(u:)	oo	In all positions	oodles
(y:)	ue	In all positions	no real Eng. approximation

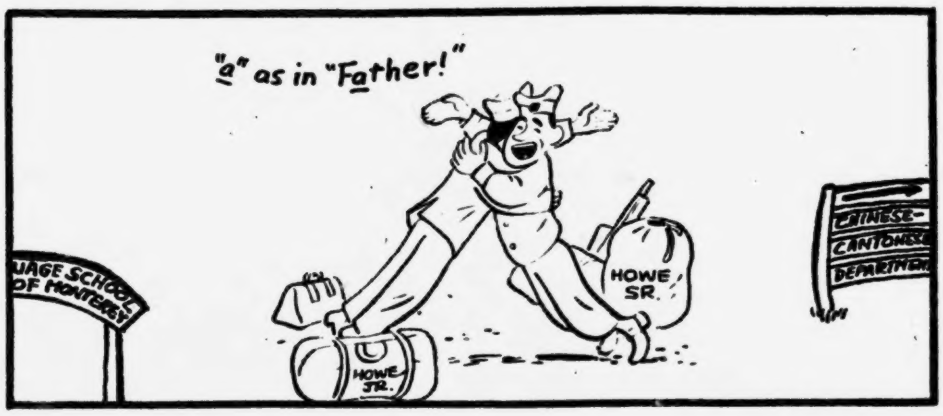
---

[7] IPA = International Phonetic Alphabet

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION

Table 7. Values of Finals

IPA	Spelling	IPA	Spelling	IPA	Spelling
(a:)	a	(ɛ:ŋ)	eng	(ɔ:n)	on
(a:i)	aai	(ɛ:k)	ek	(ɔ:ŋ)	ong
(a:u)	aau			(ɔ:t)	ot
(a:m)	aam	(ei)	ei	(ɔ:k)	ok
(a:n)	aan				
(a:ŋ)	aang	(œ)	eu	(ou)	o
(a:p)	aap	(œ:ŋ)	eung	(oŋ)	ung
(a:t)	aat	(œ:k)	euk	(ok)	uk
(a:k)	aak				
		(i:)	i; z	(ey)	ui
(ai)	ai	(i:u)	iu	(en)	un
(au)	au	(i:m)	im	(et)	ut
(am)	am; om	(i:n)	in		
(an)	an	(i:p)	ip	(u:)	oo
(aŋ)	ang	(i:t)	it	(u:i)	ooi
(ap)	ap; op			(u:n)	oon
(at)	at	(eŋ)	ing	(u:t)	oot
(ak)	ak	(ek)	ik		
				(y:)	ue
		(ɔ:)	oh	(y:n)	uen
(ɛ:)	e	(ɔ:i)	oi	(y:t)	uet


"a" as in "Father!"
UAGE SCHOOL OF MONTEREY
HOWE SR.
HOWE JR.
CHINESE-CANTONESE DEPARTMENT

INITIALS

All the initials of Cantonese Chinese are enumerat in Table 8.

Table 8. Initials

	Unaspirated Stops	Aspirated Stops	Nasals	Fricatives	Semi Vo
Labials	p	p'	m	f	
Dentals	t	t'	n	l	
Palatals	ts[8] ch	ts' ch'		s sh	y
Velar	k	k'	ng	h	
Labialized Velar	kw	kw'			w

A special case initial is what we may call the zero initial, where the syllable begins with one of the vowels or semivowels. Almost every speaker of Cantonese Chinese pronounces this group of words with initial ng, except when these words are interjections, particles, and the proper noun prefix à.

The values of the other initials are indicated in Table 9.

---

[8] ts and ch, ts' and ch', s and sh are only graphic distinctions with no difference in sound.

Table 9. Values of Initials

IPA	Spelling	Important features	As in
(p)	p	No aspiration!	speak
(p')	p'	Aspirated	tophat
(m)	m		ma
(f)	f		for
(t)	t	No aspiration!	steak
(t')	t'	Aspirated	penthouse
(n)	n		no
(l)	l		lie
(tɕ)	ts ch	No aspiration!	between chat and adze
(tɕ')	ts' ch'	Aspirated	between it's hot and such heat
(ɕ)	s sh	No lip action!	between she and sell
(j)	y		yes
(k)	k	No aspiration!	skate
(k')	k'	Aspirated	blockhead
(ŋ)	ng	Only one consonant!	not as in finger, but as in singer
(h)	h		how
(kw)	kw	No aspiration!	squad
(kw')	kw'	Aspirated	ask why
(w)	w		way

Initials and Finals in Fundamental Tones

		a	e	eu	i, z	oh	o	oo	ue
p		pa	pe			poh	po		
p'		p'a				p'oh	p'o		
m	m	ma	me		mi	moh	mo		
f		fa				foh		foo	
t		ta	te	teu	ti	toh	to		
t'		t'a		t'eu		t'oh	t'o		
n		na	ne		ni	noh			
l		la	le	leu		loh	lo		
ts			tse		tsz	tsoh	tso		
ch		cha	che		chi	choh			chue
ts'			ts'e		ts'z	ts'oh	ts'o		
ch'		ch'a	ch'e		ch'i	ch'oh			ch'ue
s		sa	se	seu	sz	soh	so		
sh		sha	she		shi	shoh	sho		shue
y		ya	ye						
k		ka	ke			koh	ko	koo	
k'		k'a	k'e					k'oo	
ng	ng	nga	nge			ngoh	ngo		
h		ha	he	heu		hoh	ho		
kw		kwa				kwoh			
kw'		kw'a							
w		wa				woh			

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION

Initials and Finals in Fundamental Tones

	aai	ai	ei	oi	ui	ooi	aau	au	iu
p	paai	pai	pei			pooi	paau	pau	piu
p'	p'aai	p'ai	p'ei			p'ooi	p'aau	p'au	p'iu
m	maai	mai	mei			mooi	maau	mau	miu
f	faai	fai	fei			fooi		fau	
t	taai	tai	tei	toi	tui			tau	tiu
t'	t'aai	t'ai		t'oi	t'ui			t'au	t'iu
n	naai	nai	nei	noi	nui		naau	nau	niu
l	laai	lai	lei	loi	lui			lau	liu
ts		tsai		tsoi	tsui			tsau	tsiu
ch	chaai	chai			chui		chaau	chau	chiu
ts'		ts'ai		ts'oi	ts'ui			ts'au	ts'iu
ch'	ch'aai				ch'ui		ch'aau	ch'au	ch'iu
s	saai	sai	sei	soi	sui			sau	siu
sh	shaai				shui		shaau	shau	shiu
y	yaai	yai			yui			yau	
k	kaai	kai	kei	koi	kui		kaau	kau	kiu
k'	k'aai	k'ai	k'ei	k'oi	k'ui		k'aau	k'au	k'iu
ng	ngaai	ngai		ngoi			ngaau	ngau	
h	haai	hai	hei	hoi	hui		haau	hau	hiu
kw	kwaai	kwai				kwooi			
kw'	kw'aai	kw'ai				kw'ooi			
w	waai	wai	wei						

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION

Initials and Finals in 9 Tones

	aam aap	am ap	im ip	om op	aan aat	an at	in it	on ot	un ut
p				pom	paan	pan	pin		
p'				p'om	p'aan	p'an	p'in		
m					maan	man	min		
f					faan	fan	fin		
t	taam	tam	tim		taan	tan	tin		tun
t'	t'aam	t'am	t'im		t'aan	t'an	t'in		
n	naam	nam	nim		naan	nan	nin		
l	laam	lam	lim		laan	lan	lin		lun
ts	tsaam	tsam	tsim		tsaan	tsan	tsin		tsun
ch	chaam	cham	chim		chaan	chan	chin		chun
ts'	ts'aam	ts'am	ts'im		ts'aan	ts'an	ts'in		ts'un
ch'	ch'aam	ch'am	ch'im		ch'aan	ch'an	ch'in		ch'un
s	saam	sam	sim		saan	san	sin		sun
sh	shaam	sham	shim		shaan	shan	shin		shun
y	yaam	yam				yan			yun
k	kaam	kam	kim	kom	kaan	kan	kin	kon	
k'		k'am	k'im			k'an	k'in		
ng	ngaam	ngam			ngaan	ngan		ngon	
h	haam	ham	him	hom	haan	han	hin	hon	
kw					kwaan	kwan			
kw'					kw'aan	kw'an			
w					waan	wan	win		

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION

Initials and Finals in 9 Tones

	oon oot	uen uet	aang aak	ang ak	eng ek	eung euk	ing ik	ong ok	ung uk
p	poon		paang	pang	peng		ping	pong	pung
p'	p'oon		p'aang	p'ang	p'eng		p'ing	p'ong	p'ung
m	moon		maang	mang	meng		ming	mong	mung
f	foon						fing	fong	fung
t		tuen		tang	teng	teung	ting	tong	tung
t'		t'uen		t'ang	t'eng		t'ing	t'ong	t'ung
n		nuen		nang		neung	ning	nong	nung
l		luen	laang	lang	leng	leung	ling	long	lung
ts		tsuen		tsang	tseng	tseung	tsing	tsong	tsung
ch		chuen	chaang	chang	cheng	cheung	ching	chong	chung
ts'		ts'uen		ts'ang	ts'eng	ts'eung	ts'ing	ts'ong	ts'ung
ch'		ch'uen	ch'aang	ch'ang	ch'eng	ch'eung	ch'ing	ch'ong	ch'ung
s		suen		sang	seng	seung	sing	song	sung
sh		shuen	shaang	shang	sheng	sheung	shing	shong	shung
y			yaang			yeung	ying		yung
k	koon	kuen	kaang	kang	keng	keung	king	kong	kung
k'	k'oon	k'uen	k'aang	k'ang	k'eng	k'eung	k'ing	k'ong	k'ung
ng			ngaang	ngang				ngong	
h		huen	haang	hang	heng	heung	hing	hong	hung
kw			kwaang	kwang			kwing	kwong	
kw'			kw'aang					kw'ong	
w			waang				wing	wong	

PÌN-YAM

There are two pìn-yam or "changed tones" in Cantonese Chinese. One is the Upper Even Pìn-Yam with a tonal value almost identical to the Upper Even Tone. The other is the Upper Rising Pìn-Yam with a tonal value almost identical to the Upper Rising Tone.

The majority of Upper Even Pìn-Yam are derived from words having the Upper Even Tone and the Upper Entering Tone. Since the tonal value of the Upper Even Pìn-Yam and the Upper Even Tone and the Upper Entering Tone are almost identical, a syllable with Upper Even Pìn-Yam is also unmarked.

The majority of Upper Rising Pìn-Yam are derived from words having the Middle Entering Tone, the Lower Even Tone, the Lower Rising Tone, the Lower Departing Tone, and the Lower Entering Tone. Every syllable with Upper Rising Pìn-Yam is written with the tone of the underlying word and the sign * added to indicate the Upper Rising Pìn-Yam.

There is no pìn-yam derived from words having the Upper Rising Tone, probably because of the great similarity between this tone and the Upper Rising Pìn-Yam.

A pìn-yam derived from the Upper Departing Tone is rather rare.

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION

PÌN-SHING

There are two pìn-shing or "change sounds" in Cantonese Chinese. One is the Vowel aa- Pìn-Shing and the other is Vowel e- Pìn-Shing. The majority of Vowel aa- Pìn-Shing are derived from words having the vowel a- with -ng, -k as endings. The Vowel e- Pìn-Shing are derived from words having the vowel i- with -ng, and -k as endings.

These pìn-shing are traditionally known as the literary and colloquial readings of a Chinese character with or without change in meaning. Every syllable with pìn-shing is written with the vowel that should be pronounced.

YOU HAVE TO USE YOUR EARS EVEN MORE THAN YOUR EYES!
USAFI 2796A
CHINESE CANTONESE
REFRESHER COURSE

GRAMMAR[1]

WORDS AND PARTS OF SPEECH

There are two kinds of subunits in Chinese speech. The commonest small change of everyday speech is the monosyllable or tsẑ. Examples are yăn 'man,' yaŭ 'have,' mooĭ- 'each,' kam- 'this, the present.' It is the kind of thing which a child learns to say, which a teacher teaches children to read and write in school, which a telegraph office counts and charges you for, the kind of thing you make slips of the tongue on, and for the right or wrong use of which you are praised or criticized. In short, a tsẑ plays the same social part in Chinese life as a 'word' plays in English.

But if we analyze the structure of Chinese sentences, we shall find that the syntactical subunits which can be spoken independently or combined with a high degree of freedom are not always monosyllables, but often combinations of two or more syllables. Such syntactical units, whether of one or more syllables , are more like the words in other languages. There is, however, no common Chinese name for them. Chinese grammarians call them ts'z̄, which is a learned term and not an everyday word. Examples of ts'z̄ are yan 'man,' yaŭ 'have,' mooĭ-kòh 'each, each one,' kam-yât 'today,' chi-tò 'know,' yat-t'îng 'sure.' On the whole, polysyllabic units of this kind are not quite such close-knit words as 'particular,' 'random,' 'patter,' but more like words of the 'cranberry,' 'teacher,' or 'wind-mill' type.

---

[1] Y. R. Chao, Cantonese Primer, The Harvard University Press, 1947, pp 37-45

GRAMMAR

In the present course we shall follow the common usage among Western writers on Chinese subjects and among Chinese who speak English by calling every monosyllabic unit or tsẑ a 'word.' For the unit ts'z̀, which is more like a word in the linguistic sense, we shall use the term 'syntactical word.'

A word is said to be 'free' when it is also a syntactical word, as hó 'good,' yĕ 'thing.' A word is said to be 'bound' if it must combine with another word to form a syntactical word, as kam- 'this,' -yât 'day,' from which the syntactical word kam-yât 'today' can be formed.

In general, a syntactical word corresponds in translation to a word in English, and is written as "one word" in our romanized text. But this is only a rough correspondence, as the same Chinese form may have different English translations and vice versa. For example, hó-t'aî may be variously translated as 'good to look at' or 'good-looking' or 'beautiful,' depending upon the actual sentence in which hó-t'aî is used.

It has often been said that Chinese has no parts of speech, but only functional position in the sentence, and stock examples from the literary style such as kwan kwan 'the king is a king,' shān shān 'the minister acts as a minister,' foô foô 'the father is fatherly,' tsź tsź 'the son is filial' are familiar features of the grammatical sections of writings on Chinese. While there is a greater range of functional position for units in the Chinese language than in most Indo-European languages, if not more than in English, there is still the element of selection which limits the functional range of units. Thus, tsaú 'wine' is never followed by kân, suffix for progressive action; '-ing'; kàng 'still more' is never followed by a noun, nor is fàn-cheûk 'fall asleep' ever followed by a noun. On the other hand, tá 'to beat' is usually followed by a substantive. In other words, we can mark in a dictionary that normally tsaú is a noun, kàng is an adverb, fàn-cheûk is an intransitive verb, tá is a transitive verb, etc., etc. For, as a rule, every form does have a limited range of functions, which have to be learned in connection with it.

Ts'íng neĭ kóng moân-ti...
not so fast... not so fast... Hoū sin-shaang

GRAMMAR

SYNTACTICAL CONSTRUCTIONS AND WORD ORDER

The main types of syntactical constructions are coordinate constructions, qualifier-qualified constructions, verb-object constructions, auxiliary-verb-and-verb constructions, verb-complement constructions, and subject-predicate constructions. The order in which the elements in these constructions are mentioned is the order in which they occur. They represent the main features of word order in Chinese. Examples of each kind of construction are as follows:

Coordinate constructions:

neĭ ngŏh k'uĭ 'you, I, and he'

leŭng-kòh t'ūng leŭng-kòh 'two and two'

saam seì-kòh 'three or four'

tak-m̄-tak 'All right (or) not all right, --is it all right?'

Qualifier-qualified constructions:

hó yān 'a good man'

ch'ut k'eì kè sẑ 'strange event'

tûk shue kè yān 'read book sort of man, --a man who reads'

t'oì* kè sheûng-pîn 'table topside, --on the table'

m̄-peì 'not to give'

yat-tîng laì 'certainly come'

kám kóng 'talk this way'

haì Shaang-shēng chuê 'live in Canton'

Neĭ m̄-háng tsaû m̄-shaì tsô là 'If you don't want to, you needn't do it.'

maân-maân* haāng 'walk slowly'

Verb-object constructions:

tá cheùng 'fight a war'

chap-shâp fōng kaan 'tidy up the room'

M̄-chi haî tîm 'I don't know how it is.'

Auxiliary-verb-and-verb constructions:

iù laì 'will come'

ooĭ kóng 'can talk'

m̄-hóh-ĭ shîk in 'may not smoke (not permitted to smoke)'

Verb-complement constructions:

sé hó 'write well'

chuê haî Shaáng-shēng 'live in Canton'

tìt lôk-laì 'fall down'

kaû tak m̄-hó yûng lòh 'so old as to be unusable'

haāng tak maân 'walk slowly'

Subject-predicate constructions:

Ngŏh chi-tò 'I know.'

Ni-kòh hó 'This one is good.'

The following points should be noted in connection with the various types of constructions. In coordinate constructions there is often no conjunction between the terms. In qualifier-qualified constructions, the most important rule to remember is that the qualifier precedes the qualified. In verb-complement constructions, although the complement is often translated by an adverb in English, in Chinese a word or phrase is in the complement position only if it represents the result or an important feature of the event or action denoted by the verb. If, however, the word or phrase indicates the accompanying circumstance or manner of the event or action, including time and locality, it is placed in the adverbial position. In predication, the most important thing to note is that words denoting qualities can be full verbal predicates and therefore do not require a verb 'to be,' as English adjectives do.

Ngŏh haì Leĭ Sheŭng Koaù. Neĭ haî pin-kŏh ?
m̄-mìng-paâk
WISH I UNDERSTOOD CANTONESE THAT GOOD!

GRAMMAR

NEGATION AND INTERROGATION

Simple negation is expressed by using m̄ 'not' before the word negated, as háng huì 'willing to go,' m̄-háng huì 'not willing to go,' háng m̄ huì 'willing not to go,' m̄-háng m̄ huì 'unwilling not to go.' The negative of yaŭ 'have' takes the fused form mŏ<m̄+yaŭ. The literary forms pat 'not' and mō 'have not' are occasionally used in compounds.

The negative of an imperative verb is maĭ 'don't...!' or m̄-hó 'better not, don't...! '

The negative of a verb ending in the suffix -chóh or -kwòh, expressing completion or past time, takes the form of meî or mŏ before the verb, as laî-chóh, laî-kwòh 'have come, did come,' meî laî, mŏ laî 'have not come, did not come.' The suffix -kwòh can also be retained when meî or mŏ is used, but -chóh always drops out in the negative.

Before a compound, a phrase, or a whole sentence m̄-haî 'is not, it is not that...' is used instead of the simple m̄, as ngŏh m̄-haî m̄-háng 'not that I am unwilling.'

Questions in Chinese can be divided into four types: (a) questions with interrogative words, (b) disjunctive questions, (c) A-not-A questions, (d) yes-or-no questions.

(a) Questions with interrogative words are the easiest to ask and answer. The rule is: Ask as you would be answered, as Neĭ haî pin-kòh? 'You are who, -- who are you?' For the answer in Chinese is not in the order 'Lee am I,' but, as in English, 'I am Lee.' *Neĭ iù t'aî laĭ-paaì keî kè pò-chî*? 'You want to read what-day-of-the-week's newspaper?' *Ngŏh iù t'aî laĭ-paaì-î kè* 'I want to read Tuesday's.' (This question, which is a perfectly normal one in Chinese, cannot even be asked unambiguously in English.)

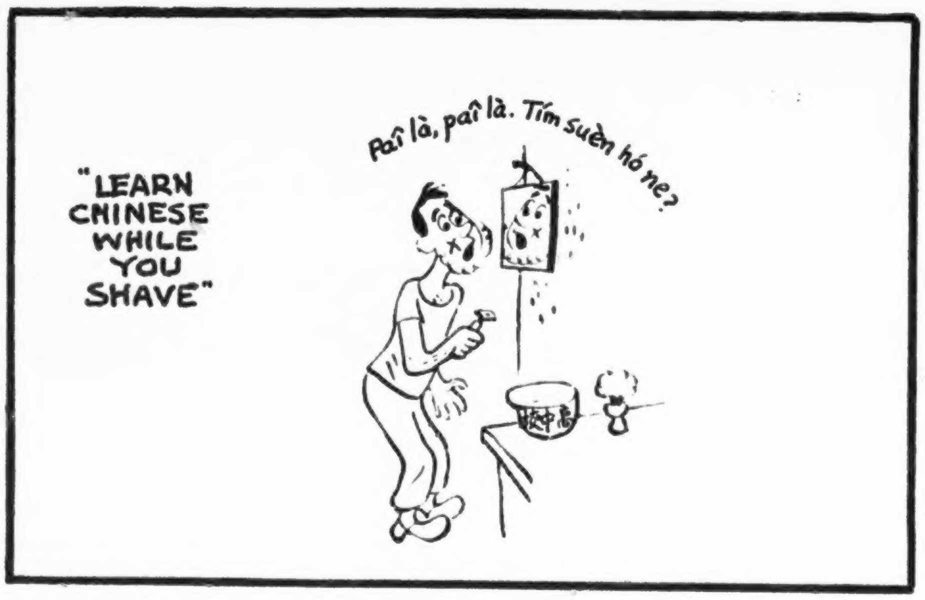
(b) Disjunctive questions, or questions requesting a choice of alternatives, are asked by using *tîng*, *tîng-haî*, or *pîng* between the terms. The form *pîng* is used rather infrequently, and then only between monosyllables. For example, *ch'eūng pîng tuén à*? 'long or short?' Note that the English form 'Will you eat rice or noodles?' is really ambiguous if the intonation is not known. If the intonation rises on 'rice' and falls on 'noodles,' it is a disjunctive question and the translation will be: *Neĭ shîk faân tîng-haî shîk mîn à*? to which the answer may be *Faân* or *Mîn*. With a generally rising intonation, it is a yes-or-no question and the Chinese will be: *Neĭ shîk-m̄-shîk faân waâk mîn à*? to which the expected answer will be *Shîk* 'Yes, I will eat (either of the two)' or *M̄-shîk* 'No, (I prefer bread).' In the first case, 'or' is translated by *tîng* or *tîng-haî* ; in the second case, by *waâk* or *waâk-ché*.

(c) An A-not-A question is a disjunctive question in which the choice is between something and its negative. In such a case, the word *tîng* or *tîng-haî* is omitted. The English equivalent of such a question is the common yes-or-no question. *Neĭ* shîk-m̄-shîk in à? 'You smoke (or) don't smoke, --do you smoke?' Neī yaŭ-mŏ huì-kwòh Shaáng-shēng? 'You have (or) have not been to Canton,--have you ever been to Canton?' Since these are disjunctive questions, they cannot be answered by words expressing agreement or disagreement, like haî or m̄-hai, but must have the terms in the disjunctive repeated, as Ngŏh shîk 'I do (smoke)' or M̄-shîk 'I don't'; Huì-kwòh 'I have been there' or Mŏ 'I have not.' Of course if haî happens to be the main verb in the original question, then the answer will be Haî or M̄-haî on a par with Shîk or M̄-shîk.

Note that when the verb is yaŭ (whether as main verb or as auxiliary verb), then the A-not-A form in the question becomes yaŭ-mŏ, since mŏ<m̄+yaŭ.

(d) True yes-or-no questions are less frequent than in English, since most yes-or-no questions are put in the disjunctive A-not-A form, as described above. Yes-or-no questions are in the form of posed statements with the addition of one of the final particles mà, me, a, and ā, or of a miniature disjunctive question haî-m̄-haî 'isn't that so?' 'n'est-ce pas?' For assent to such questions one can use Haî, Haî là 'Yes, right,' Ē 'Uh-huh!' or a syllabic nasal M̄ 'M-hm!' and for dissent M̄-haî 'No, not so.'

Note that while yes-or-no questions in English call for affirmation or negation, questions under type (d) call for agreement or disagreement, which is not the same thing unless the question is in the positive form. If the question is in the negative, then the answer in Chinese will seem to be the opposite to that of the English. For example, if the question is: Neĭ m̄-chung-ì yám tsaú me? 'You don't like to drink wine?' and if the answer is one of dissent, it will be: M̄-haî, ngŏh chung 'Not so, I do,--- yes, I do.' On the other hand, if the question is: Neĭ-teî mŏ tsiu me? 'Have you no bananas?' and if the answer is one of agreement (and therefore negative), it will be: Haî, ngŏh-teî mŏ tsiu 'Yes, we have no bananas.'


"LEARN CHINESE WHILE YOU SHAVE"
Paî là, paî là. Tím suèn hó ne?

GRAMMAR

TRANSLATION OF ENGLISH GRAMMATICAL CATEGORIES

While Chinese grammar proper should deal only with the grammatical features which are actually found in the Chinese itself, an English-speaking student of Chinese cannot help being concerned about how English grammatical categories will be translated into Chinese. This is a perfectly healthy state of mind, provided that the student remembers the general fact that every grammatical feature of one language does not necessarily correspond to some similar grammatical feature of another language. Anything can be translated fairly accurately, to be sure, but not necessarily by the same means of expression. Thus, the English phrase 'No, thank you!' can be more idiomatically translated by a smile and a polite gesture than by the recent translation borrowing: Toh-tsê, m̄-oì lòh 'Many thanks, I don't want any more.' Keeping in mind the fact that grammatical features will not always correspond, we shall now try to see how, in general, various categories of English grammar can be translated into Chinese.

No articles are generally required before Chinese nouns. Nor have Chinese nouns any distinction of number. Nouns taken in the generic sense also take the simple form. We do not say, the lion is a noble animal, or a fool and his money are soon parted, or potatoes are scarce, but simply say, Man is a rational animal. In first mentioning a particular individual, as in telling a story, yat-kòh 'one individual,' or yat plus some other auxiliary noun ('AN'), will play the part of the indefinite article, as Yaŭ yat-chèk oō-leī* 'There is (or was) a fox.' When reference is made to something already mentioned, an auxiliary noun without any prefixed demonstrative can be used, as, in continuing the story: Chèk oō-leī* wâ 'The fox said.' For a plurality of things or a mass of something, the AN ti is also used in this way like 'the.'[2]

An important feature of Chinese construction to observe is that a subject is more likely to refer to something definite, while an indefinite reference tends to be placed in the object position.[3] For example, Shue haí pin shuè? 'Where are the books?' but, Pin shuè yaŭ shue? 'Where are there some books?' (lit. 'What place has books?'). If an object has a definite reference, the fact is indicated by a demonstrative or some other suitable qualifier, as Ngŏh t'aí-kwòh ni pô shue lòh 'I have read this book.' The tseung-construction is often used for an object with a definite reference, as Ngŏh tseung ni pô shue t'aí-kwòh lòh, but you may also say simply Shuè ngŏh t'aí-kwòh lòh.

Personal pronouns in Chinese have no case or gender. The possessive is formed by adding the subordinative particle kè, and the plural by adding -teî. An important thing to note is the limited use of *k'uĭ* 'he, she, it, him, her' and *k'uĭ-teî* 'they, them.' *K'uĭ-teî* is never used with inanimate things. *K'uĭ* is so used only as an object and applies indifferently to one or more things. For example, *Ni ti p'îng-kwóh m̄-shûk, m̄-hó shîk k'uĭ* 'These apples are not ripe, better not eat it' ('them' in normal English). In subject positions, *k'uĭ* and *k'uĭ-teî* are never used for inanimate things except when personified. Either a demonstrative like *ni kòh* 'this' is used, or the subject is repeated, or the sentence may begin without a subject, if the context is clear enough.

---

[2] This use of the AN as 'the' is one of the few features of Cantonese grammar which does not apply to other Chinese dialects.

[3] Mullie, The Structural Principles of the Chinese Language. English translation by A.C. Versichel, Peiping, 1932, vol. 1, p. 160 ff.

English prepositions may be translated in four different ways. (1) A verb 'to be' followed by a preposition can be translated by the transitive verb *haî*, as *K'uĭ haî uk-k'eî* 'He is at home.' If the preposition expresses a more specific locality than 'at,' a localizer or postposition is added to the object in Chinese. Thus, *Shuēn haî hoî-sheûng* 'The ship is on the sea, (lit. 'The ship is at sea-top'), where *haî* translates 'is on' so far as 'being there' is concerned, but it takes a localizer *sheûng* 'upper part' to give the 'on' part as distinguished from 'in,' 'under,' etc. (2) When a prepositional phrase qualifies a noun in English, it must precede the noun in Chinese, usually with the qualifying particle *kè*, as *haî hoî-sheûng kè shuēn* 'being on sea-top kind of ship, --the ship on the sea.' *Haî* can usually be omitted, as *shue liŭ-pîn kè tsẑ* 'book-inside's words,

-- the words in the book.' (3) If a prepositional phrase follows a verb in English and expresses a modifying circumstance, the Chinese translation takes a verb-object construction preceding the verb, as *K'uĭ* *haî* *Meĭ*-*Kwòk* *tûk* *shue* 'He being in America studies, -- he studies(-d) in America.' (4) When an English prepositional phrase following a verb expresses a result or an important point in the predication, it is translated by a complement, that is, a form after the verb. For example, *tám* *k'uĭ* *haî* *shuî* *luĭ*-*pîn* 'throw it at water-inside, -- throw it into the water,' whereas in *haî* *shuî* *luĭ*-*pîn* *tám* *k'uĭ* 'throw it (while the thrower is) in the water,' *haî* *shuî* *luĭ*-*pîn* is a Chinese adverbial phrase. In a similar way, if any other type of adverb or adverbial phrase expresses the main point of predication, it is also translated by a complement. Thus, in 'This man eats slowly,' the point is not that he eats, since he eats in any case, but that the speed of his eating is slow. In Chinese, the logical predicate, prefixed by *tak* 'so that' is put into the form of a complement: *Ni* *kòh* *yān* *shîk* *tak* *maân*. Similarly, *K'uĭ* *ch'eùng* *tak* *hó* 'He sings well.'

Comparatives are expressed by -*ti* 'a little, ... -er,' *chûng* 'still' or *kàng* 'still more,' as *K'uĭ* *kam*-*yât* *hó*-*ti* *mà*? 'Is he better today?' 'Than' is translated by *kwòh* 'pass,' as *Ni* *kòh* *hó*-*kwòh* *kóh* *kòh* 'This is better than that.' A second form of translating 'than' is *peî* or *peî*-*kaaù* 'compare,' as

Ngŏh peî-kaaù neĭ ko-ti 'Iam taller than you.' Note that when kwòh is used, there is no -ti and the word order is like that of English, while with peí or peî-kaaù, -ti can be (optionally) used and the peí (or peî-kaaù) phrase is treated like a Chinese adverbial phrase and placed before the word qualified.

The superlative is expressed by chì or tsuì 'most.' Intensives are expressed by the adverbs hó 'very,' keî 'quite, rather,' kîk 'extremely,' or the complements -kîk là, tak tsaî, tak kaau-kwaan, tak kán-iù 'to an extreme degree, awfully, terribly.' Inferior degrees are expressed by mŏ...kòm 'not so ...as' and tsoì m̄... 'most un-...' Ngŏh mŏ k'uĭ kòm taaî 'I am not so big as he.' Equality of degree is expressed as follows: Ngŏh t'ūng neĭ yat-yeûng shat-môñg 'I with you same disappointed, -- I am as disappointed as you.' K'uĭ yaŭ k'uĭ kòm ko 'He has him that tall, --he is as tall as he.'

The English verb 'to be' is to be translated as haî chiefly before substantives, as Ngŏh haî yān 'I am a man.' Haî is not normally used before words translated from English adjectives, as K'uĭ K'ūng 'He is poor.' One should not be misled by forms like K'uĭ haî k'ūng 'He is poor,' where haî is an emphatic adverb. Another apparent exception is haî followed by a phrase ending in kè, as in kóh ti fa haî hūng kè 'Those flowers are red.' Here hūng kè stands for hūng kè yĕ, or hūng kè fa 'red things' or 'red flowers' or red ones,' which, being substantive phrases, can be preceded by haî.

There is no distinction of voice in Chinese verbs, the direction of action depending upon the context. Ngŏh chûng meî saî mîn 'I have not yet washed my face.' Mîn chûng meî saî 'My face has not yet been washed.' An agent expression similar to the 'by' -form in English consists of the verb peí 'give' or the more literary peî 'receive, cover,' followed by the word for the agent. For example, Cheùk oón peí k'uĭ tá-laân chóh lòh 'The bowl give him broke, --- the bowl has been broken by him.' A more frequent way of translating an agent expression is to make it into a substantive-predicate construction. Thus, I-fùk haî ngŏh maaĭ kè 'The clothes are I-bought ones, ---the clothes were bought by me.' Chèk oón haî k'uĭ tá-laân kè 'The bowl is he-broke one, --- the bowl was broken by him.'

Chinese verbs have no tense. Thus, the same form haî is used both in Ngŏh haî Meĭ-kwòk yān 'I am an American,' and in Húng Tsź haî Lŏ-Kwòk yān 'Confucius was a man from the State of Lu.' In Kam-yât kwòh nîn 'Today (we) celebrate the New Year,' the same verb will also do for k'ām-yât 'yesterday' or t'ing-yât 'tomorrow.' When it is desired to state explicitly that a thing has already happened or did happen on a previous occasion, the verb takes the suffix chóh or kwòh. That these are not Chinese tense forms can be seen from the fact that they are not constant features of verbs determined automatically by the time of the event, but may or may not be used according to whether the speaker wishes to bring out explicitly the time element.

When the object expresses a specified quantity or number (including 'one') and the verb refers to a past action, the verb takes the suffix chóh fàn-chóh yat kaaù 'slept a nap,' t'aî-kìn-chóh shâp-kòh yān 'saw ten people.' Past time is often implied by the use of kè in the predicate. Thus, K'uĭ kam-yât laî may mean 'He will come today,' or 'He came today,' but K'uĭ kam-yât laî kè or K'uĭ haî kam-yât laî kè 'He is today-comer, --- he came today,' where the use of kè implies that the coming has already been classified and is therefore presumably a past event.

Progressive action or event is expressed by the adverbs haî shuè or haî tô 'right there,' ching or chìng-wâ 'just,' or the suffix --kán '-ing,' or any combination of them, as K'uĭ chìng (or chìng-wâ) haî tô (or haî-shuè) t'aî-kán pò-chî 'He right there just reading newspaper, --- he is reading a newspaper.'

Chinese is like English in having no future form of the verb. The idea of future events is expressed by auxiliary verbs like iù 'will,' ooĭ 'will likely,' or by adverbs like tsaû 'then, soon,' tsaû-laî 'right away.'

Subordinate clauses are mostly translatable by the use of kè, which indicates that the preceding words qualify those following: Laî shîk faân kè yān 'come eat meal sort of man, --- the man who comes to dinner.' When a relative pronoun is the object of a verb, it can be translated by *shóh*, as *Ni kòh haî yān-yān shóh chi-tỏ kè tô-leĭ* 'This is a principle which everybody knows.'

'When' can be translated as *kè shî-haû*, as *k'uĭ fản-cheủk kè shî-haû chûng kóng shuẻt-wâ* 'He fall asleep's time still talks, --- he still talks when he is asleep.' In referring to an actual instance, *Kóh-chân-shî* (often abbreviated to *Kóh-ân-shî*) is often preferred to *kè shî-haû* as *K'uĭ tỏ têng** *kóh-ân-shî chẻk shuēn hoî-chóh lỏh* 'When he arrived, the ship had sailed.' The difference between *kẻ shî-haû* and *kóh-ân-shî* is like that between *wenn* and *als* in German, but the distinction is not so strict. 'Where' is expressed by *kẻ teî-fong* 'place of,' or *kóh shuẻ* or *kóh tô* 'that place,' as *Ngŏh-teî haî tsô kung kẻ teî-fong shîk faân* 'We eat where we work.' *Ngŏh-teî sheŭng t'ōng kóh shuẻ hó tủng* 'It's very cold where we have our classes.'

A conditional or concessive clause precedes the main clause to which it is subordinated, as *Uē-kwóh lŏk uĕ*, *ngŏh tsaû m̄-huỉ* 'If it rains, I (then) won't go.' While 'then' is usally omitted in English, it is the 'if' -word that is usually omitted in Chinese, thus, *Lôk uĕ ngŏh tsaû m̄-huỉ* 'It rains I then don't go, ---if it rains, I won't go.' A conditional or concessive clause never follows the main clause except as an afterthought after a dash. A premeditated dependent clause placed after the main clause (found in some contemporary writing) is definitely a

Europeanism and is appreciated as such.

'Because' or 'since' is mostly translated by yan-waî, and 'so' or 'therefore' by Shôh-ĭ or koo-ts'ź, as K'uĭ yan-waî sheung-chóh fung, shóh-ĭ mŏ laî 'He because had a cold, so did not come, --- as he had a cold, he didn't come.' A clause with yan-waî can be placed last if kè uēn-koò 'the reason of' is added at the end. Yaŭ ti Meĭ-kwòk yān m̄-ooĭ kóng chung-kwòk-wâ*, (haî) yan-waî k'uĭ-teî ts'ūng-loî meî hó-hó-teî* hôk kè uēn-koò 'Some Americans cannot speak Chinese, (that's) because they have never studied it properly.'

HEUNG
KOON
HEUNG
KOON
KOON
HEUNG
C.C.
REFRESHER COURSE
He'll be hung all right, if he keeps that up

THE CHARACTERS

PICTOGRAPHS AND IDEOGRAPHS

Ancient Chinese writing is usually described as being pictorial or ideographic. Thus, a circle with a dot inside it is the character for 'sun' and three horizontal strokes represent the number 'three.' In Chinese tradition, six categories of characters called *lûk shue*[2] (六書) are recognized. (1) *Tseûng-yīng* (象形) (pictographs' are the easiest to understand. (2) *chî-sẑ* (指事) 'simple ideographs' are characters consisting of simple diagrammatic indications of ideas, as 上 for 'up' and 下 for 'down' or 一, 二, 三 for the numbers 'one, two, three.' (3) *Ooî-ì* (會意) 'compound ideographs' are characters whose meaning is the combination of the meanings of their parts. Stock examples of these are 止 'stop'+ 戈 'arms' = 武 'military'; 亻 'man' + 言 'word' = 信 'honest'; 日 'sun' + 月 'moon' = 明 'bright.' Characters under the preceding three categories form only a small minority of all characters. They are comparatively independent of the words in the language they represent. For example, three strokes would form as good a sign for the English word 'three' as for the Chinese word *saam*. Conceivably the Chinese system of writing could have developed along its own line into a complete system of symbols, independently of the Chinese language. Actually, however, from very ancient times, the written characters have become so intimately associated with the words

---

[1] Y. R. Chao, *Cantonese Primer*, The Harvard University Press, 1947, p 46-57.

[2] First used systematically by Hsü Shèn (d. circa 120 A. D.) in his 9353-word dictionary *Shuo-wên*.

of the language that they have lost their functions as pictographs or ideographs in their own right and become conventionalized visual representations of spoken words, or 'logographs.' They are no longer direct symbols of ideas, but only symbols of ideas in so far as the spoken words they represent are symbols of ideas.[3] One should not, therefore, be misled by the popular conception that an analysis of the formation of characters will lead to a correct understanding of the Chinese words written with them. To be sure, characters often contain stories and histories which are helpful to the memory, but the actual meaning of each word has to be learned as such. Thus, the mŏ 'military' is written with the character 武, made up of 止 'stop' and 戈 'weapons, arms,' i.e '(the power to) stop armed force.' Likewise, the word sùn, written 信 , in the literary idiom means 'honest.' The traditional analysis of the character is 'a man's word,' but it requires a further act of memory to know that it is the proverbial "Chinaman's word" that is meant.

---

[3] This point was brought out clearly by Peter S. Du Ponceau in his book *A Dissertation on the Nature and Character of the Chinese System of Writing*, Philadelphia, 1838, esp. pp. xi and xxii. William F. Edgerton, in his note on Ideograms in English Writing, Language, 17.2 148-50 (1941), cited some interesting cases, such as the symbol 2 standing for an idea represented by various words or parts of words like two, sec- (in 2nd), etc. Though similar cases exist in Chinese writing, they are not much more frequent than in English. For practically all Chinese characters have long since become logographs. Thus, both 二 and 兩 seem to represent the idea of 'two,' but one represents the word i (or, strictly, the class of words in all dialects cognate with Cantonese i) and the other the word leǔng (and its cognates). These words and the characters representing them are not interchangeable, and their occurrence is governed by purely grammatical, and not by mathematical, conditions.

THE CHARACTERS

LOAN CHARACTERS, PHONETIC COMPOUNDS, AND DERIVATIVES

The vast majority of characters belong to three other categories, which have to do with phases of the development of characters functioning as logographs. In devising characters for words, obviously the meaning of many words could not be pictured. A common practice was to borrow a character whose word had the same sound as the word for which a character was sought. Thus, in Archaic Chinese, there was a word *ləg* for a kind of wheat, which was written with a picture of the plant. Now there was a homonymous word *ləg* 'come.' Rather than invent another character for this word with a meaning that was hard to picture or indicate diagrammatically, the ancient writers simply borrowed the character for the plant and wrote the word for 'come' with it. Characters of this type are known as (4) ká-tsè (假借) 'loan characters' or 'borrowed characters.'

In the example cited, the original word happens to have become obsolete long ago. In some cases, both the original word and the word for which the character was borrowed exist side by side, as in 然 'to burn,' the character also used for the word in 'thus, so.' To differentiate the two, an extra part 火 'fire' was added to the character (which, as an ideographic compound, already contains a part meaning 'fire' in the form of four dots at the bottom), thus making an 'enlarged character' 燃 for ín 'to burn,' allowing the original character to be used only for the word ín 'thus, so.' Characters so enlarged belong to a group called (5) ying-shing (形聲) or haaî-shing (諧聲) 'phonetic compounds.' The original character 然 in is called the 'phonetic' and the added part is called the 'signific,' which in the majority of cases is also the radical. Similarly, mŏng 'a net,' 罔, is now written 網, enlarged by 糸, a signific associated with threads or strings, while the original character 罔 is borrowed exclusively to write the homonymous word mŏng 'have not.'

Besides the enlargement of a loan character, there is a second source of phonetic compounds. Words in every language acquire extended meanings. Thus, the word mān 'line, streak' is written with the ideograph 文. By extension (not by loan), the same word also has the figurative meanings of 'writing, literature, culture.' To distinguish in writing between the literal and the figurative meanings of the same word mān, a signific 糸 is added to form the character 紋, to be used in the literal meaning, leaving the original character 文 for the figurative meanings only. Sometimes it is the other way around: the derived meaning has the enlarged character. Thus, the word fong means 'square' in the general sense and a square' as a place in a city. To differentiate between the two, the word is written 方 for 'square' in general and 坊, with an additional graph 土 which has to do with places, for 'square, market place.' It is as if one were to write Harvard Squerre, with a suggestion of terre in the second word.

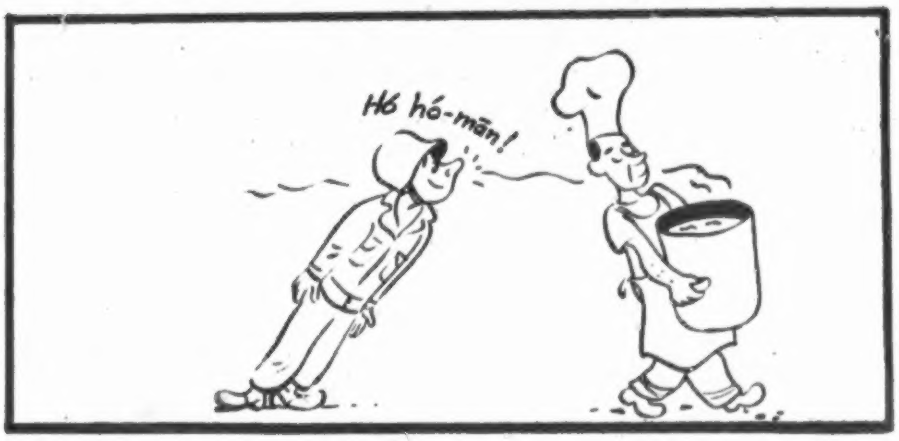
Thirdly, there is the group of pure phonetic compounds in which the signific is added to a phonetic which was never a loan or a semantic extension in the first place, but was expressly used for its sound to combine with the signific, as *t'ōng* 'sugar' written 糖, consisting of 米 the signific relating to cereal foods and the phonetic 唐 *t'ōng*; or *uê* 'elm,' written 榆, consisting of 木 the signific for 'tree' and the phonetic 俞 *uê*. Pure phonetic compounds are of relatively recent origin. Many characters of the preceding categories *seem* to be pure phonetic compounds because most people are not aware that the unenlarged character or 'phonetic' was used as a loan character or used in a related meaning in old texts for centuries before the enlarged form came into use.

Phonetic compounds form by far the majority of all characters. When they were formed, whether through loan from unrelated homonymous words or by extension of meaning of the same word, the sound of the original character and that of the compounded character were identical or very similar. However, differences in sound between a compound and its phonetic, usually caused by interdialectal borrowing[4] of words, developed and increased, and it is now no longer practical to infer the present sound of a compound character from the present sound of its phonetic or the other way around. But *after* the sounds of both the compound and its phonetic are learned, it will be of help to note the phonetic similarity.

---

[4] In the linguistic sense.

Finally, the traditional classification of characters recognizes a category called (6) Chuén-chuè (轉注) which we can translate as 'derivative characters.' Scholars differ widely as to what this class should include. Some regard it as the derivation of characters by graphic inversion. Others regard it as a change in the word itself when a modification of the sound is associated with a modification of meaning and a modification in the graph, as 亨 hang 'propitious': 享 heúng 'enjoy.' The membership of this class is both small and uncertain.



THE CHARACTERS

RADICALS

For purposes of reference, Chinese characters have been arranged according to their component parts. Various systems have been used through the ages. The system most widely used by the Chinese and by Western scholars of Chinese is that of the 214 radicals.[5] In most cases, a radical is the signific or the character minus its phonetic, since the majority of characters are phonetic compounds. Thus, in the character 坊, 土 is the radical and 方 is the phonetic. In the relatively small number of cases where the character is not phonetically formed, the analysis of the radical and the residual part is a matter of arbitrary convention, which is often at variance with the actual history of the character. Because of this, we should never make any scientific conclusion on the basis of the present scheme of radicals.

The chief use of the radicals is for looking up unknown characters in a dictionary. Many foreign students of Chinese learn the numbers of the 214 radicals by heart. They can tell you that 75 is 木 , 149 is 言 , 187 is 馬 , etc., a feat which never fails to impress the Chinese. No Chinese can even tell what the number of the radical 人 is, just as few English-speaking people can say offhand what the 17th letter of the alphabet is, though they have not the slightest trouble in locating words in a dictionary. It is, however, helpful to memorize the numbers of the most important radicals, since one fourth of these will cover three fourths of all characters.

---

[5] Variously called 'classifiers, significs, determinatives, and keys.' We are simply following the usage of the majority. There is no danger in the use of the term 'radical,' of any etymological connotation, since we are not using the term in any linguistic sense. In the present form, the list of 214 radicals was first used by Mei Ting-tso in his dictionary Tzŭ-hui (字彙), 1615 A.D.

Referring to the table of radicals, we see that the order of the radicals is arranged by the number of strokes, beginning with 1 stroke for No. 1 — and ending with 17 strokes for No. 214 龠 Within each group having the same number of strokes, the order is purely conventional. Note that many of the radicals have one or more variant forms. With certain radicals, such as 9 or 85, the variants are more frequent than the main form. Radicals 140 and 162 always occur in their variant forms. The main forms are kept, however, in their conventional positions in the list, since the variant forms do not have the same number of strokes as the main forms.

In a dictionary arranged by radicals, the characters under each radical are arranged in the order of the number of strokes. For example, under radical 75 木 mûk 'tree, wood,' there is first the radical itself as character, then come characters with one residual stroke, as 未 meî 'have not (yet),' 本 poón 'root,' next, characters with two residual strokes, as 朱 Chue, a surname, down to characters with as many as twenty-four residual strokes as 櫺 lìng 'sill.' For different characters under the same radical with the same number of residual strokes, dictionaries differ in their order of arrangement.

The problem of finding a character is thus resolved to (1) classifying it under the right radical, and (2) counting the number of the residual strokes. For finding the radical, the following hints may be helpful:

Learn by heart the twenty most frequent radicals, namely, 9, 30, 32, 38, 61, 64, 72, 75, 85, 86, 104, 118, 120, 130, 140, 142, 149, 157, 162, 167. More than 50% of all characters belong to one of these.

Find out whether the character in question is a radical, for certain apparently compounded characters are themselves radicals. Thus, 殳比父爻穴老而耒至舌舛色行見谷豆赤走辛面音頁風首香高髟鬥鹿麥黃黑鼓 are radicals.

Try to divide the character into parts. A majority of characters can be broken down into a left-hand side and right-hand side, in which case the left-hand side is most likely to be the radical, as in 但好徐愉點 . Important exceptions are radicals 18 variant, 59, 62, 66 variant, 69, 76, 163 variant, 172, 181, 196, which, when occurring laterally, occupy the right-hand side, as 收利部[illegible][illegible] . Other characters can be divided into an upper and a lower part. While there is a greater variety of radicals which can occupy the lower half of the character, as in 光無當盆買 , the radicals 亠宀癶疒罒竹艹雨 , which occur at the top, have a greater number of characters under them. Finally, certain radicals enclose, or partially enclose, or are otherwise combined with, the residual strokes, as 困開展道裏年泰 , whose radicals are respectively 囗門尸辶衣干大 .

While these rules will cover most of the cases, many irregular cases will have to be learned individually. 相 , for example, is under 目 and not 木 , 穀 under 禾 and not 殳, 歸 under 止 , etc. Most dictionaries have a list of difficult characters arranged under the total number of strokes. Some dictionaries, especially those prepared by foreigners, give characters under several apparently possible radicals with cross references to the right radical, e.g. 目 under 木 , with the notation "see under Radical 109 目 ." Table 1 gives examples of positions which radicals may occupy.

Ngŏh kóng
Kwóng-tung-
wá kóng tak
m̄-haih
kei hó

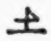
TABLE I. EXAMPLES OF POSITIONS OF RADICALS

No.	Rad.	L.	R.	Up	Down	Others
1	一			不	並	世
4	丿			乖		之
7	二	况		云	些	五
8	亠			亦		
9	人	你	以	企		來
15	冫	凍				
18	刀		到		分	
19	力	加	助		勞	勝
30	口	叫	和	吊	古	同
31	囗					因
32	土	地		堯	坐	報
37	大			奇	天	夾
38	女	好			委	
39	子	孫			學	
40	宀			定		
44	尸			屋		
46	山	岐		岸	岳	
50	巾	帖	帥		布	
53	广			度		
57	弓	强			彎	弟
60	彳	得				
61	心	忙			忘恭	必
64	手	打			掌	才
66	攴		收			整
72	日	時	旭	是	春	晝
75	木	板		李	柴	東
85	水	法			泉泰	永
86	火	燈		營	然	灰
94	犬	狗	獸			
96	玉	理		琴	璧	
102	田	略		男	當	畫
104	疒			病		

No.	Rad.	L.	R.	Up	Down	Others
108	皿				盍	
109	目	眼	相	眔	省	具
112	石	硬			磨	
113	示	福			禁	
115	禾	種	穌	秃	稟	穀
116	穴			空		
118	竹			等		
119	米	粉			粟	粥
120	糸	紅			緊	縣
130	肉	肚	胡		肯	腐
134	臼			舅	舊	與
140	艸			花		芻
142	虫	蝦	融	蠱	蠻	蜀
144	行					街
145	衣	衫		裔	裝	裏
149	言	記			警	
154	貝	賊			貴	賴
157	足	路			躉	
159	車	輕		轟	軍	輿
162	辵	送				
163	邑		都		邕	
164	酉	醋	酒		醫	釁
167	金	鋪			鑒	銜
169	門					開
170	阜	陳				
172	隹		雖	隻	雀	雁
173	雨			雲		
181	頁		頭			題
184	食	飯			餐	
187	馬	騎	馮		驚	騰
195	魚	鮮		魯	鯊	
196	鳥	鴕	鴨		鷹	鳫

THE CHARACTERS

ORDER AND NUMBER OF STROKES

In teaching children to write, Chinese teachers lay great stress on the order of strokes in which a character is written. There are both esthetic and practical reasons for this. When made with the brush-pen, characters will not have the right shape unless the order of the strokes is right. Moreover, since most everyday writing is in a running hand in which separate strokes become connected, a wrong order may result in unrecognizable forms. For example, in writing the character 土 , the order is: upper horizontal stroke, vertical stroke, lower horizontal stroke. In rapid writing, the right end of the upper horizontal is joined to the top of the vertical by a short line. The resulting form  , however, is so familiar to the Chinese reader that he hardly notices any difference between this and the printed form 土 . But if the order is wrong and the two horizontal strokes are made in succession, so as to make a form like , then the result will be quite illegible.

The general principle of making the strokes is from left to right and from top to bottom. In strokes which thin down to a sharp point, the direction is from the thick to the thin end, which in some cases involves making strokes from below upwards or from right to left, as / in 冫 and ‾ in 千 .

When a horizontal stroke and another stroke intersect, the former is usually made first. In a character containing a vertical stroke with two symmetrical parts on both sides, as in 木 ,

the vertical stroke is made first, followed by the left-hand side, then the right-hand side. In complete enclosures, the left-hand wall is made, then the top and the right-hand side are made in one stroke, the content filled in, and the bottom stroke finally added.

In counting strokes, a horizontal line and a vertical line joining it from the right end down are counted as one stroke. Similarly an L-shaped combination of lines is usually counted as one stroke. These operations are sometimes combined, as in the last stroke of [illegible] .

A time-saving device is to memorize the number of strokes in frequently recurring parts of characters, e.g. 舟 6 strokes, 殳 4 strokes, so that one can analyze 般 quickly as 6 + 4 = 10 strokes, without counting every single stroke.

There are many special cases involving the order and number of strokes.

Tim-kaai neĭ m̄-shik Kwóng-tung-wâ*!

THE CHARACTERS

STYLES OF SCRIPT

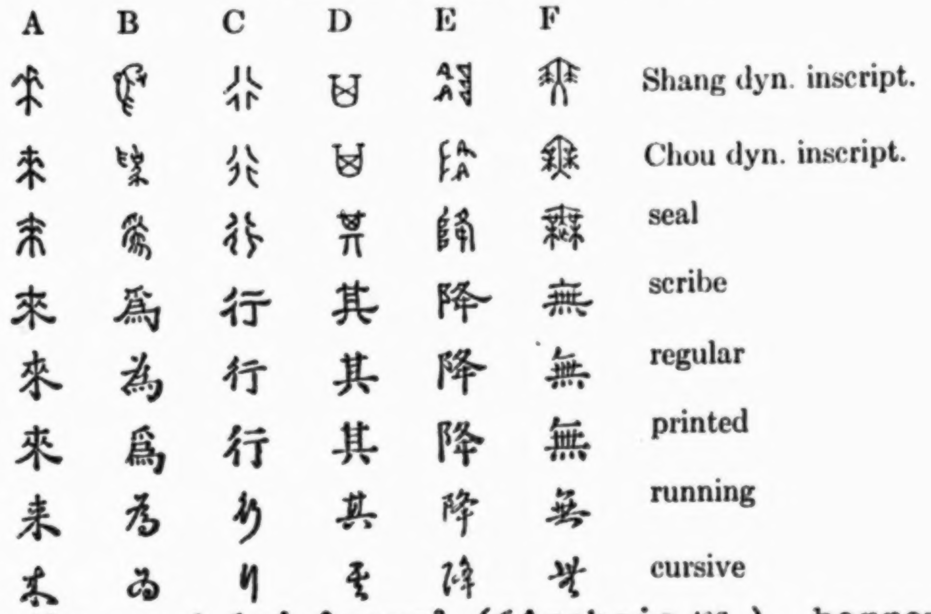
The earliest known Chinese writing consisted of inscriptions on ox bones and tortoise shells, recording oracles of divination under the rulers of the Shang dynasty (ca. 1766-ca. 1122 B.C.). Next in antiquity we find existing inscriptions, mostly on bronzes, of the Chou dynasty (1122-246 B.C.). Characters written for the same word differed widely from age to age until finally, under the Ch'in dynasty (246-206 B.C.), a system of characters known as 'seal characters' (or 'small seal,' as contrasted with the 'great seal' of Chou), was established. From the time of this system to the present day, there has been much less change in the main structure of the majority of characters, though the type and finish of the strokes have changed considerably as a result of the change from stylus to the brush as a writing instrument.

Current styles of writing consist of suên-tsẑ (篆字) 'seal characters,' now used only in actual seals, taî-shue (隸書) 'scribe's writing,' now occasionally used for ornamental purposes, K'aaí-shue or Kaai-shue (楷書)'model or regular writing,'hak-paán-tsẑ (刻版字) 'printed characters,'[6] which are the same as the regular characters except for certain details to be noted below, hāng shue or haāng shue (行書) 'running hand' (literally 'walking style of writing') a more flowing and slightly abbreviated form of ordinary characters, and ts'ó-shue (草書) or ts'ó-tsẑ (草字) 'cursive characters' (literally 'grass characters') consisting of extremely abbreviated forms of characters for quick scribbling and for ornamental use. The accompanying cut in Table 2 gives some examples of the various types of characters.

---

[6] This category has no place in the traditional way of reckoning the styles of characters.

TABLE 2. STYLES OF CHARACTERS


A
B
C
D
E
F
Shang dyn. inscript.
Chou dyn. inscript.
seal
scribe
regular
printed
running
cursive

A is the word loi 'come' (<Archaic *ləg*), borrowed from a homonym meaning a kind of wheat. B is the word wai 'to do, to be,' originally a picture of a hand leading an elephant. C is the word haāng 'walk,' originally a picture of crossroads, later interpreted (wrongly) as a picture of steps. D is the word K'ei 'his,' originally a picture of a dustpan. The present character for dustpan 箕 , pronounced kei, is an enlarged form. E 'descend' started with a picture of feet going down a flight of stairs. F started with a character meaning 'dancing' which was at an early age borrowed for a homonym meaning 'have not.' The seal form is enlarged by a signific, which was dropped later. The modern character for 'dance' is in an enlarged form 舞 , in which the phonetic 無 occurs in the abbreviated form 𦏲 .

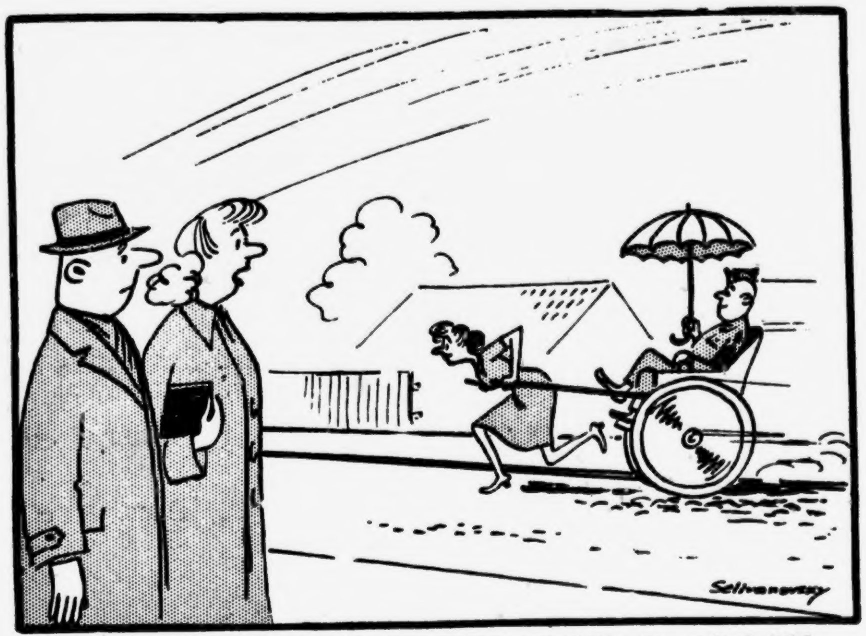
THE CHARACTERS

For the purposes of this course, the student would do well to concentrate on the regular style. This agrees in the main with the printed style except that the latter has small flourishes and exaggerated shadings like the serifs and shadings in the printed types of the Latin alphabet. In a relatively small number of cases, differences of structure exist. It is essential to know both the printed and the written styles, since radical indexes are based on the printed style and yet nobody writes in the printed style if the written style is different. For example, the character 爲 has the radical 爪 (in variant form) on the top, but in written form, as shown in the fifth character under B, Table 2, the radical cannot even be seen. Where the number of residual strokes differs in the two styles, the printed style is followed in counting. Thus, in 鄉 the number of residual strokes in [illegible] is 9(counting the central dot) though the dot is rarely made when the character is written.

Table 3 gives some common differences between the printed and written styles of characters and parts of characters. These differences are looked upon as geometrical and non-significant and the characters are treated, not as variant characters for identical words, but as "identical" characters.

Table 3. COMMON DIFFERENCES BETWEEN PRINTED AND WRITTEN FORMS

Printed	*Written*	*Printed*	*Written*	*Printed*	*Written*
乀	㇏	文	文	衫	衫
人	人	爲	為	言	言
入	入	直	直	變	變
八	八八	眞	真	返	返
兌	兑	祖	祖	雲	雲
又	又	紅	紅	青	青
忙	忙	者	者	飯	飯飯
戶	户	花	花花		



— SERGEANT BROWN'S ATTITUDE TOWARD HIS WIFE HAS CHANGED CONSIDERABLY SINCE HE TOOK UP CHINESE .

THE CHARACTERS

VARIANT FORMS OF CHARACTERS

Aside from the differences between the printed and written forms, many characters have important variations in structure which occur both in the printed and in the written style, as shown in Table 4. A variant form of a character may belong to one of the following categories: (1) restylized seal forms, in which the general pattern of seal characters is kept although the actual strokes are modernized; (2) normal variations, which are equally acceptable with the main form; (3) inscriptional forms, which are considered informal but in good taste; (4) popular characters, usually in the form of abbreviations; (5) popular differentiations not recognized by the old-school scholars; (6) simplified forms originally in good standing, but later regarded as popular abbreviations after their origins have generally been forgotten; (7) restylized cursive forms, that is, characters which follow the pattern of cursive characters but have regularized strokes; (8) dialect characters.

The frequent use of archaic forms is considered a mannerism. Normal variations and inscriptional forms are both respectable usage. The forms from (3) to (7) are shunned by educated people of the older generation, but are accepted more and more by the younger generation.

Dialect forms are rarely used, since dialects are seldom written in any case. They are included here under variants, since many of them can be identified with normal characters, as shown in the examples in the accompanying table.

TABLE 1. EXAMPLES OF VARIANT CHARACTERS

	Normal	*Variant*	
(1)	旁	旁	(<旁)
	草	艸	(<艸)
(2)	候	矦	
	筍	笋	
(3)	於	扵	
	處	雾	
(4)	過	过	
	亂	乱	
(5)	乾	乾 乾	
	鋪	鋪 鋪	
(6)	處	処	
	號	号	
(7)	盡	尽	(<尽)
	時	时	(<时)
(8)	睏	目川	
	會	噲	

Table 5. List of Radicals

		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
0		一	丨	丶	丿	乙	亅	二	亠	人 亻	0
10	儿	入	八	冂	冖	冫	几	凵	刀 刂	力	10
20	勹	匕	匚	匸	十	卜	卩 㔾	厂	厶	又	20
30	口	囗	土	士	夂	夊	夕	大	女	子	30
40	宀	寸	小	尢	尸	屮	山	巛 川	工	己	40
50	巾	干	幺	广	廴	廾	弋	弓	彐 彑	彡	50
60	彳	心 忄 㣺	戈	戶	手 扌	支	攴 攵	文	斗	斤	60
70	方	无 旡	日	曰	月	木 木	欠	止	歹	殳	70
80	毋	比	毛	氏	气	水 氵 氺	火 灬	爪 爫	父	爻	80
90	爿	片	牙	牛 牜	犬 犭	玄	玉 王	瓜	瓦	甘	90
100	生	用	田	疋	疒	癶	白	皮	皿	目 罒	100
110	矛	矢	石	示 礻	禸	禾	穴	立	竹 ⺮	米	110
120	糸 糹	缶	网 罒	羊	羽	老	而	耒	耳	聿	120
130	肉 月	臣	自	至	臼	舌	舛	舟	艮	色	130
140	艸 艹	虍	虫	血	行	衣 衤	襾 覀	見	角	言	140
150	谷	豆	豕	豸	貝	赤	走	足 𧾷	身	車	150
160	辛	辰	辵 辶	邑 阝	酉	釆	里	金	長 镸	門	160
170	阜 阝	隶	隹	雨 ⻗	青	非	面	革	韋	韭	170
180	音	頁	風	飛	食 飠	首	香	馬	骨	高	180
190	髟	鬥	鬯	鬲	鬼	魚	鳥	鹵	鹿	麥	190
200	麻	黃	黍	黑	黹	黽	鼎	鼓	鼠	鼻	200
210	齊	齒	龍	龜	龠						210
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	

LESSON 1

TONES

	Even	Rising	Departing	Entering
Upper	˥ or ˥˧ 55 or 53	˧˥ 35	˧ 33	˥ 5
Middle				˧ 33
Lower	˩ or ˨˩ 11 or 21	˨˧ 23	˨ 22	˨ 22

TONE MARKS

	Even	Rising	Departing	Entering
Upper	(Unmarked)	´	`	(Unmarked)
Middle				`
Lower	¯	˘	^	^

LESSON 1

FINALS

a		e		eu	i, z		oh		o		oo	ue
aai	ai		ei				oi			ui	ooi	
aau	au				iu							
aam	am				im			om				
aan	an				in		on			un	oon	uen
aang	ang	eng		eung		ing	ong		ung			
aap	ap				ip			op				
aat	at				it		ot			ut	oot	uet
aak	ak	ek		euk		ik	ok		uk			

LESSON 1

DRILL 1. FUNDAMENTAL TONES

Upper Even	Upper Rising	Upper Departing	Lower Even	Lower Rising	Lower Departing
˥	˧˥	˧	˩	˨˧	˨
55	35	33	11	23	22
a	á	à	ā	ă	â
e	é	è	ē	ĕ	ê
eu	eú	eù	eū	eŭ	eû
i	í	ì	ī	ĭ	î
z	ź	z̀	z̄	z̆	ẑ
oh	óh	òh	ōh	ŏh	ôh
o	ó	ò	ō	ŏ	ô
oo	oó	oò	oō	oŏ	oô
ue	ué	uè	uē	uĕ	uê
aai	aaí	aaì	aaī	aaĭ	aaî
ai	aí	aì	aī	aĭ	aî
ei	eí	eì	eī	eĭ	eî
oi	oí	oì	oī	oĭ	oî
ui	uí	uì	uī	uĭ	uî
ooi	ooí	ooì	ooī	ooĭ	ooî
aau	aaú	aaù	aaū	aaŭ	aaû
au	aú	aù	aū	aŭ	aaû
iu	iú	iù	iū	iŭ	iû
m	ḿ	m̀	m̄	m̆	m̂
ng	nǵ	ng̀	nḡ	nğ	nĝ

LESSON 1

DRILL 2. NINE TONES

Upper Even	Upper Rising	Upper Departing	Lower Even	Lower Rising	Lower Departing	Upper Entering	Middle Entering	Lower Entering
˥	˧˥	˧	˩	˨˧	˨	˥	˧	˨
55	35	33	11	23	22	5	33	22
aam	aám	aàm	aām	aăm	aâm	aap	aàp	aâp
am	ám	àm	ām	ăm	âm	ap	àp	âp
im	ím	ìm	īm	ĭm	îm	ip	ìp	îp
om	óm	òm	ōm	ŏm	ôm	op	òp	ôp
aan	aán	aàn	aān	aăn	aân	aat	aàt	aât
an	án	àn	ān	ăn	ân	at	àt	ât
in	ín	ìn	īn	ĭn	în	it	ìt	ît
on	ón	òn	ōn	ŏn	ôn	ot	òt	ôt
un	ún	ùn	ūn	ŭn	ûn	ut	ùt	ût
oon	oón	oòn	oōn	oŏn	oôn	oot	oòt	oôt
uen	uén	uèn	uēn	uĕn	uên	uet	uèt	uêt
aang	aáng	aàng	aāng	aăng	aâng	aak	aàk	aâk
ang	áng	àng	āng	ăng	âng	ak	àk	âk
eng	éng	èng	ēng	ĕng	êng	ek	èk	êk
eung	eúng	eùng	eūng	eŭng	eûng	euk	eùk	eûk
ing	íng	ìng	īng	ĭng	îng	ik	ìk	îk
ong	óng	òng	ōng	ŏng	ông	ok	òk	ôk
ung	úng	ùng	ūng	ŭng	ûng	uk	ùk	ûk

LESSON 2

INITIALS

	Unaspirated Stops	Aspirated Stops	Nasals	Fricatives	Semi-Vowels
Labials	p	p'	m	f	
Dentals	t	t'	n	l	
Palatals	ts ch	ts' ch'		s sh	y
Velar	k	k'	ng	h	
Labialized Valar	kw	kw'			w

LESSON 2

DRILL 3. INITIALS AND FINALS IN FUNDAMENTAL TONES

		a	e	eu	i,z	oh	o	oo	ue
p		pa	pe			poh	po		
p'		p'a				p'oh	p'o		
m	m	ma	me		mi	moh	mo		
f		fa				foh		foo	
t		ta	te	teu	ti	toh	to		
t'		t'a		t'eu		t'oh	t'o		
n		na	ne		ni	noh			
l		la	le	leu		loh	lo		
ts			tse		tsz	tsoh	tso		
ch		cha	che		chi	choh			chue
ts'			ts'e		ts'z	ts'oh	ts'o		
ch'		ch'a	ch'e		ch'i	ch'oh			ch'ue
s		sa	se	seu	sz	soh	so		
sh		sha	she		shi	shoh	sho		shue
y		ya	ye						
k		ka	ke			koh	ko	koo	
k'		k'a	k'e					k'oo	
ng	ng	nga	nge			ngoh	ngo		
h		ha	he	heu		hoh	ho		
kw		kwa				kwoh			
kw'		kw'a							
w		wa				woh			

LESSON 2

DRILL 4. INITIALS AND FINALS IN FUNDAMENTAL TONES

	aai	ai	ei	oi	ui	ooi	aau	au	iu
p	paai	pai	pei			pooi	paau	pau	piu
p’	p’aai	p’ai	p’ei			p’ooi	p’aau	p’au	p’iu
m	maai	mai	mei			mooi	maau	mau	miu
f	faai	fai	fei			fooi		fau	
t	taai	tai	tei	toi	tui			tau	tiu
t’	t’aai	t’ai		t’oi	t’ui			t’au	t’iu
n	naai	nai	nei	noi	nui		naau	nau	niu
l	laai	lai	lei	loi	lui			lau	liu
ts		tsai		tsoi	tsiu			tsau	tsiu
ch	chaai	chai			chui		chaau	chau	chiu
ts’		ts’ai		ts’oi	ts’ui			ts’au	ts’iu
ch’	ch’aai				ch’ui		ch’aau	ch’au	ch’iu
s	saai	sai	sei	soi	sui			sau	siu
sh	shaai				shui		shaau	shau	shiu
y	yaai	yai			yui			yau	
k	kaai	kai	kei	koi	kui		kaau	kau	kiu
k’	k’aai	k’ai	k’ei	k’oi	k’ui		k’aau	k’au	k’iu
ng	ngaai	ngai		ngoi			ngaau	ngau	
h	haai	hai	hei	hoi	hui		haau	hau	hiu
kw	kwaai	kwai				kwooi			
kw’	kw’aai	kw’ai				kw’ooi			
w	waai	wai	wei						

LESSON 2

DRILL 5. CERTAIN INTITIALS AND FINALS IN FUNDAMENTAL TONES

	a				oh	
p	pa	pá	pả	pā	pă	pâ
p’	p’a	p’á	p’ả	p’ā	p’ă	p’â
	poh	póh	pỏh	pōh	pŏh	pôh
	po	p’óh	p’ỏh	p’ōh	p’ŏh	p’ôh
t	ta	tá	tả	tā	tă	tâ
t’	t’a	t’á	t’ả	t’ā	t’ă	t’â
	toh	tóh	tỏh	tōh	tŏh	tôh
	t’oh	t’óh	t’ỏh	t’ōh	t’ŏh	t’ôh
ts	tsa	tsá	tsả	tsā	tsă	tsâ
ch	cha	chá	chả	chā	chă	châ
ts’	ts’a	ts’á	ts’ả	ts’ā	ts’ă	ts’â
ch’	ch’a	ch’á	ch’ả	ch’ā	ch’ă	ch’â
	tsoh	tsóh	tsỏh	tsōh	tsŏh	tsôh
	choh	chóh	chỏh	chōh	chŏh	chôh
	ts’oh	ts’óh	ts’ỏh	ts’ōh	ts’ŏh	ts’ôh
	ch’oh	ch’óh	ch’ỏh	ch’ōh	ch’ŏh	ch’ôh
k	ka	ká	kả	kā	kă	kâ
k’	k’a	k’á	k’ả	k’ā	k’ă	k’â
	koh	kóh	kỏh	kōh	kŏh	kôh
	k’oh	k’óh	k’ỏh	k’ōh	k’ŏh	k’ôh
kw	kwa	kwá	kwả	kwā	kwă	kwâ
kw’	kw’a	kw’á	kw’ả	kw’ā	kw’ă	kw’â

DRILL 6. CERTAIN INITIALS AND FINALS IN FUNDAMENTAL TONES

	aai	ai		aau	au	
p	paai	paaí	paaì	paaī	paaĭ	paaî
p'	p'aai	p'aaí	p'aaì	p'aaī	p'aaĭ	p'aaî
	pai	paí	paì	paī	paĭ	paî
	p'ai	p'aí	p'aì	p'aī	p'aĭ	p'aî
	paau	paaú	paaù	paaū	paaŭ	paaû
	p'aau	p'aaú	p'aaù	p'aaū	p'aaŭ	p'aaû
	pau	paú	paù	paū	paŭ	paû
	p'au	p'aú	p'aù	p'aū	p'aŭ	p'aû
t	taai	taaí	taaì	taaī	taaĭ	taaî
t'	t'aai	t'aaí	t'aaì	t'aaī	t'aaĭ	t'aaî
	tai	taí	taì	taī	taĭ	taî
	t'ai	t'aí	t'aì	t'aī	t'aĭ	t'aî
	taau	taaú	taaù	taaū	taaŭ	taaû
	t'aau	t'aaú	t'aaù	t'aaū	t'aaŭ	t'aaû
	tau	taú	taù	taū	taŭ	taû
	t'au	t'aú	t'aù	t'aū	t'aŭ	t'aû
k	kaai	kaaí	kaaì	kaaī	kaaĭ	kaaî
k'	k'aai	k'aaí	k'aaì	k'aaī	k'aaĭ	k'aaî
	kai	kaí	kaì	kaī	kaĭ	kaî
	k'ai	k'aí	k'aì	k'aī	k'aĭ	k'aî
	kaau	kaaú	kaaù	kaaū	kaaŭ	kaaû
	k'aau	k'aaú	k'aaù	k'aaū	k'aaŭ	k'aaû
	kau	kaú	kaù	kaū	kaŭ	kaû
	k'au	k'aú	k'aù	k'aū	k'aŭ	k'aû

LESSON 3

DRILL 7. INITIALS AND FINALS IN 9 TONES

	aam aap	am ap	im ip	om op	aan aat	an at	in it	on ot	un ut
p				pom	paan	pan	pin		
p'				p'om	p'aan	p'an	p'in		
m					maan	man	min		
f					faan	fan	fin		
t	taam	tam	tim		taan	tan	tin		tun
t'	t'aam	t'am	t'im		t'aan	t'an	t'in		
n	naam	nam	nim		naan	nan	nin		
l	laam	lam	lim		laan	lan	lin		lun
ts	tsaam	tsam	tsim		tsaan	tsan	tsin		tsun
ch	chaan	cham	chim		chaan	chan	chin		chun
ts'	ts'aam	ts'am	ts'im		ts'aan	ts'an	ts'in		ts'un
ch'	ch'aam	ch'am	ch'im		ch'aan	ch'an	ch'in		ch'un
s	saam	sam	sim		saan	san	sin		sun
sh	shaam	sham	shim		shaan	shan	shin		shun
y	yaam	yam				yan			yun
k	kaam	kam	kim	kom	kaan	kan	kin	kon	
k'		k'am	k'im			k'an	k'in		
ng	ngaam	ngam			ngaan	ngan		ngon	
h	haam	ham	him	hom	haan	han	hin	hon	
kw					kwaan	kwan			
kw'					kw'aan	kw'an			
w					waan	wan	win		

LESSON 3

DRILL 8. INITIALS AND FINALS IN 9 TONES

	oon oot	uen uet	aang aak	ang ak	eng ek	eung euk	ing ik	ong ok	ung uk
p	poon		paang	pang	peng		ping	pong	pung
p'	p'oon		p'aang	p'ang	p'eng		p'ing	p'ong	p'ung
m	moon		maang	mang	meng		ming	mong	mung
f	foon						fing	fong	fung
t		tuen		tang	teng	teung	ting	tong	tung
t'		t'uen		t'ang	t'eng		t'ing	t'ong	t'ung
n		nuen		nang		neung	ning	nong	nung
l		luen	laang	lang	leng	leung	ling	long	lung
ts		tsuen		tsang	tseng	tseung	tsing	tsong	tsung
ch		chuen	chaang	chang	cheng	cheung	ching	chong	chung
ts'		ts'uen		ts'ang	ts'eng	ts'eung	ts'ing	ts'ong	ts'ung
ch'		ch'uen	ch'aang	ch'ang	ch'eng	ch'eung	ch'ing	ch'ong	ch'ung
s		suen		sang	seng	seung	sing	song	sung
sh		shuen	shaang	shang	sheng	sheung	shing	shong	shung
y			yaang			yeung	ying		yung
k	koon	kuen	kaang	kang	keng	keung	king	kong	kung
k'	k'oon	k'uen	k'aang	k'ang	k'eng	k'eung	k'ing	k'ong	k'ung
ng			ngaang	ngang				ngong	
h		huen	haang	hang	heng	heung	hing	hong	hung
kw			kwaang	kwang.			kwing	kwong	
kw'			kw'aang					kw'ong	
w			waang				wing	wong	

LESSON 3

DRILL 9. CERTAIN INTITIALS AND FINALS IN 9 TONES

		aam		am		aan		an	
t	taam	taám	taàm	taām	taăm	taâm	taap	taàp	taâp
t'	t'aam	t'aám	t'aàm	t'aām	t'aăm	t'aâm	t'aap	t'aàp	t'aâp
	tam	tám	tàm	tām	tăm	tâm	tap	tàp	tâp
	t'am	t'ám	t'àm	t'ām	t'ăm	t'âm	t'ap	t'àp	t'âp
	taan	taán	taàn	taān	taăn	taân	taat	taàt	taât
	t'aan	t'aán	t'aàn	t'aān	t'aăn	t'aân	t'aat	t'aàt	t'aât
	tan	tán	tàn	tān	tăn	tân	tat	tàt	tât
	t'an	t'án	t'àn	t'ān	t'ăn	t'ân	t'at	t'àt	t'ât
ts	tsaam	tsaám	tsaàm	tsaām	tsaăm	tsaâm	tsaap	tsaàp	tsaâp
ts'	ts'aam	ts'aám	ts'aàm	ts'aām	ts'aăm	ts'aâm	ts'aap	ts'aàp	ts'aâp
ch	cham	chám	chàm	chām	chăm	châm	chap	chàp	châp
ch'	ch'am	ch'ám	ch'àm	ch'ām	ch'ăm	ch'âm	ch'ap	ch'àp	ch'âp
	tsaan	tsaán	tsaàn	tsaān	tsaăn	tsaân	tsaat	tsaàt	tsaât
	ts'aan	ts'aán	ts'aàn	ts'aān	ts'aăn	ts'aân	ts'aat	ts'aàt	ts'aât
	tsan	tsán	tsàn	tsān	tsăn	tsân	tsat	tsàt	tsât
	ts'an	ts'án	ts'àn	ts'ān	ts'ăn	ts'ân	ts'at	ts'àt	ts'ât
kw	kwaan	kwaán	kwaàn	kwaān	kwaăn	kwaân	kwaat	kwaàt	kwaât
kw'	kw'aan	kw'aán	kw'aàn	kw'aān	kw'aăn	kw'aân	kw'aat	kw'aàt	kw'aât
	kwan	kwán	kwàn	kwān	kwăn	kwân	kwat	kwàt	kwât
	kw'an	kw'án	kw'àn	kw'ān	kw'ăn	kw'ân	kw'at	kw'àt	kw'ât

LESSON 3

DRILL 10. CERTAIN INITIALS AND FINALS IN 9 TONES

		aang		ang		eng		ing	
p	paang	paáng	paàng	paāng	paăng	paâng	paak	paàk	paâk
p’	p’aang	p’aáng	p’aàng	p’aāng	p’aăng	p’aâng	p’aak	p’aàk	p’aâk
	pang	páng	pàng	pāng	păng	pâng	pak	pàk	pâk
	p’ang	p’áng	p’àng	p’āng	p’ăng	p’âng	p’ak	p’àk	p’âk
	peng	péng	pèng	pēng	pĕng	pêng	pek	pèk	pêk
	p’eng	p’éng	p’èng	p’ēng	p’ĕng	p’êng	p’ek	p’èk	p’êk
	ping	píng	pìng	pīng	pĭng	pîng	pik	pìk	pîk
	p’ing	p’íng	p’ìng	p’īng	p’ĭng	p’îng	p’ik	p’ìk	p’îk
ch	chaang	chaáng	chaàng	chaāng	chaăng	chaâng	chaak	chaàk	chaâk
ch’	ch’aang	ch’aáng	ch’aàng	ch’aāng	ch’aăng	ch’aâng	ch’aak	ch’aàk	ch’aâk
ts	tsang	tsáng	tsàng	tsāng	tsăng	tsâng	tsak	tsàk	tsâk
ts’	ts’ang	ts’áng	ts’àng	ts’āng	ts’ăng	ts’âng	ts’ak	ts’àk	ts’âk
	cheng	chéng	chèng	chēng	chĕng	chêng	chek	chèk	chêk
	ch’eng	ch’éng	ch’èng	ch’ēng	ch’ĕng	ch’êng	ch’ek	ch’èk	ch’êk
	tsing	tsíng	tsìng	tsīng	tsĭng	tsîng	tsik	tsìk	tsîk
	ts’ing	ts’íng	ts’ìng	ts’īng	ts’ĭng	ts’îng	ts’ik	ts’ìk	ts’îk
k	kaang	kaáng	kaàng	kaāng	kaăng	kaâng	kaak	kaàk	kaâk
k’	k’aang	k’aáng	k’aàng	k’aāng	k’aăng	k’aâng	k’aak	k’aàk	k’aâk
	kang	káng	kàng	kāng	kăng	kâng	kak	kàk	kâk
	k’ang	k’áng	k’àng	k’āng	k’ăng	k’âng	k’ak	k’àk	k’âk
	keng	kéng	kèng	kēng	kĕng	kêng	kek	kèk	kêk
	k’eng	k’éng	k’èng	k’ēng	k’ĕng	k’êng	k’ek	k’èk	k’êk
	king	kíng	kìng	kīng	kĭng	kîng	kik	kìk	kîk
	k’ing	k’íng	k’ìng	k’īng	k’ĭng	k’îng	k’ik	k’ìk	k’îk

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Ni ti haî mi-yĕ?

   Kôh ti haî mi-yĕ?

2. Ni yat-ti haî mi-yĕ?

   Kôh yat-ti haî mi-yĕ?

3. Pin ti haî shue?

   Pin ti haî pat?

4. Pin yat-ti haî shue?

   Pin yat-ti haî pat?

5. Ni ti haî shue.

   Ni ti haî pat.

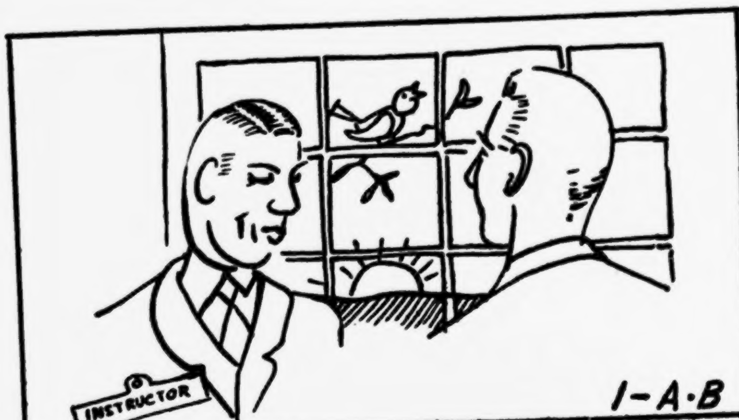
6. Kôh ti haî shue.

   Kôh ti haî pat.

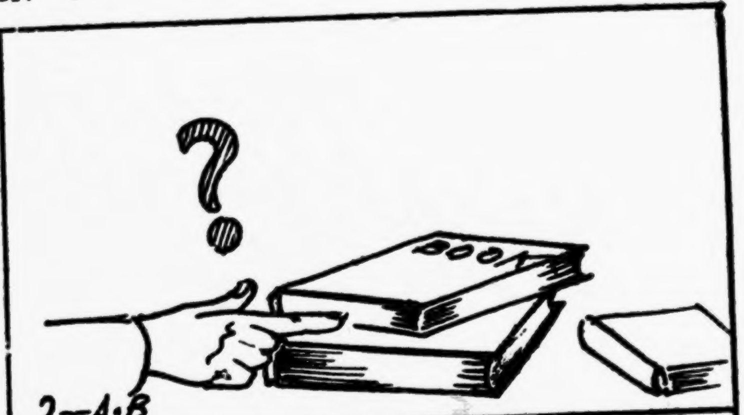
7. Ni yat-ti haî shue

   Kôh yat-ti haî pat.

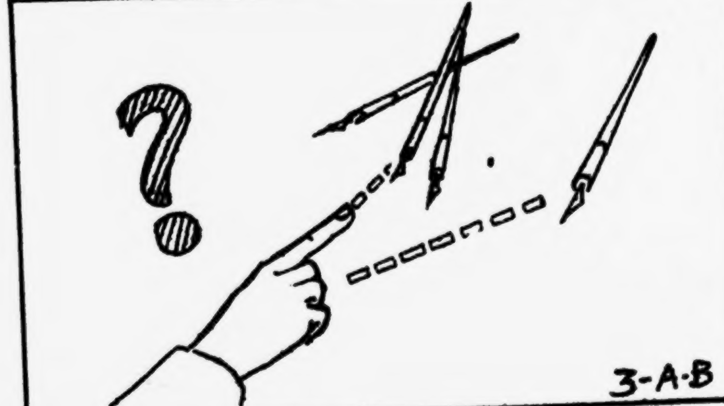
LESSON 4


INSTRUCTOR

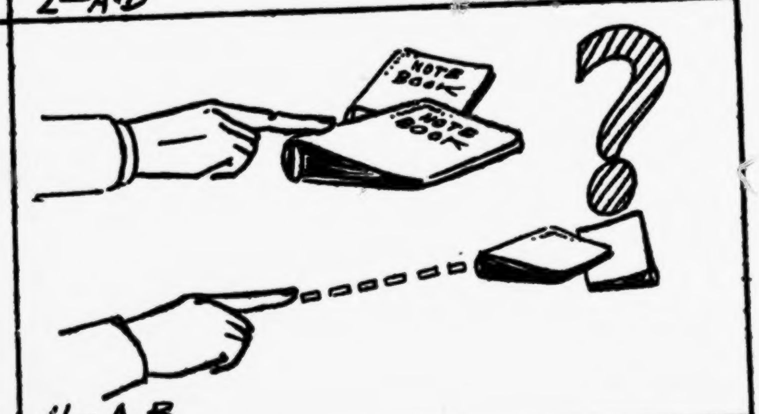
1-A·B



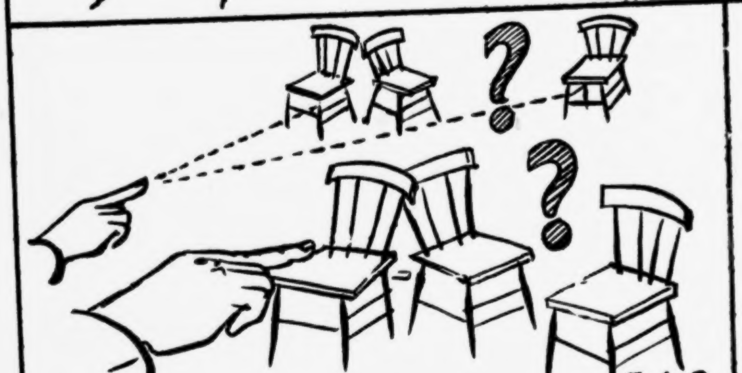
2—A·B



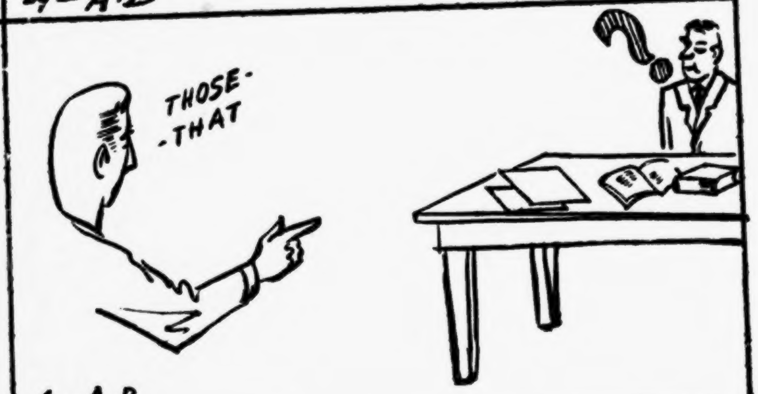
3-A·B


NOTE BOOK
NOTE BOOK

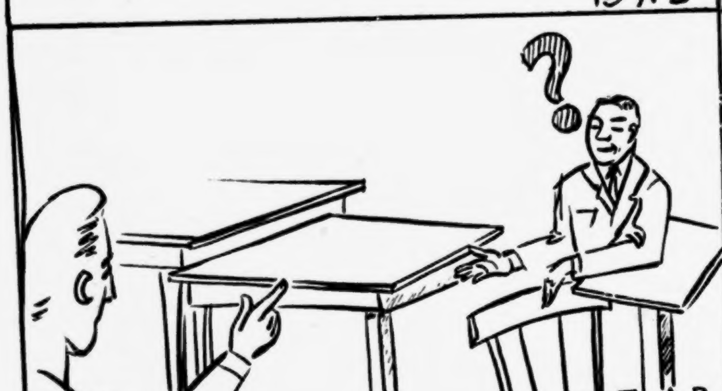
4—A·B



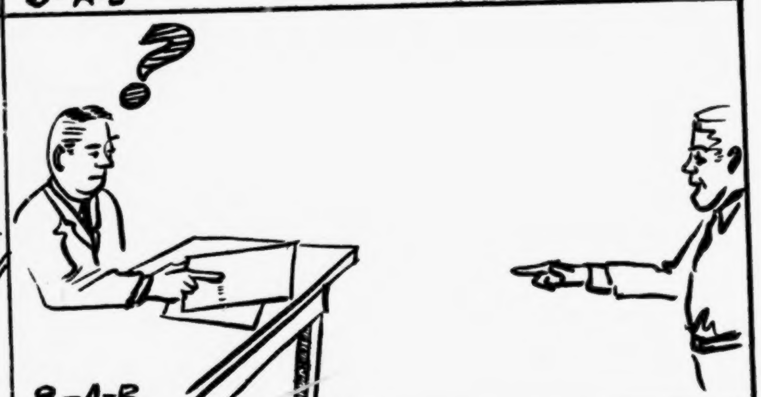
5-A·B



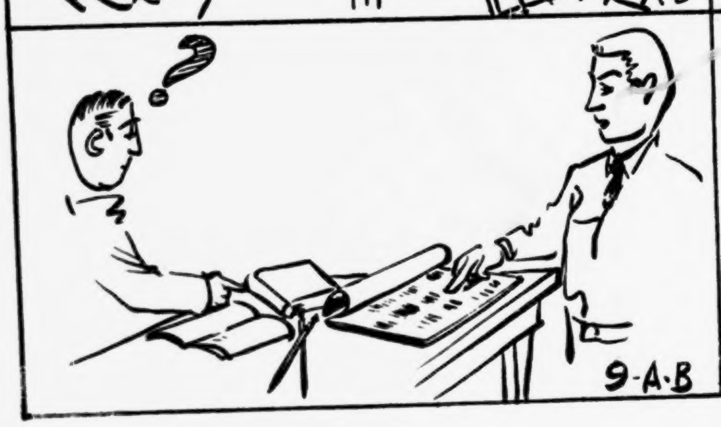
6-A·B



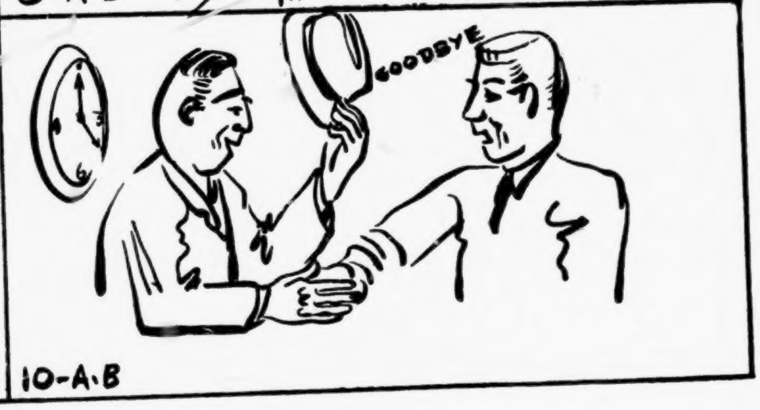
7-A·B



8-A-B



9-A·B



10-A·B

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān.
B: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān.
2. A: Ni ti haî mi-yĕ?
B: Ni ti haî shue.
3. A: Kóh ti haî mi-yĕ?
B: Kóh ti haî pat.
4. A: Ni ti haî mi-yĕ?
B: Kóh ti haî pô*.
5. A: Kóh ti haî mi-yĕ?
B: Ni ti haî î.
6. A: Pin ti haî chî?
B: Kóh ti haî chî.
7. A: Pin ti haî t'oî*?
B: Ni ti haî t'oî*.
8. A: Ni yat-ti haî mi-yĕ?
B: Kóh yat-ti haî chî.
9. A: Pin yat-ti haî wâ*-pò?
B: Ni yat-ti haî wâ*-pò.
10. A: Tsoî-kîn, tsoî-kîn.
B: Tsoî-kîn, tsoî-kîn.

LESSON 4

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Good morning.
   B: Good morning.
2. A: What are these? (What is this?)
   B: These are books. (This is a book.)
3. A: What are those? (What is that?)
   B: Those are pens. (That is a pen.)
4. A: What are these? (What is this?)
   B: Those are notebooks. (That is a notebook.)
5. A: What are those? (What is that?)
   B: These are chairs. (This is a chair.)
6. A: Which are sheets of paper? (Which is a sheet of paper?)
   B: Those are sheets of paper. (That is a sheet of paper.)
7. A: Which are tables? (Which is a table?)
   B: Those are tables. (That is a table.)
8. A: What are these? (What is this?)
   B: Those are sheets of paper. (That is a sheet of paper.)
9. A: Which are magazines? (Which is a magazine?)
   B: These are magazines. (This is a magazine.)
10. A: Good-bye.
    B: Good-bye.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Tsố-shān, tsố-shān.

   B: Tsố-shān, tsố-shān.

2. A: Ni ti haî mi-yĕ?

   B: Kốh ti haî shue.

3. A: Kốh ti haî mi-yĕ?

   B: Ni ti haî pat.

4. A: Kốh ti haî mi-yĕ?

   B: Kốh ti haî î.

5. A: Ni ti haî mi-yĕ?

   B: Ni ti haî pô*.

6. A: Pin ti haî î?

   B: Kốh ti haî î.

7. A: Pin ti haî wâ*-pò?

   B: Ni ti haî wâ*-pò.

8. A: Pin yat-ti haî t'oî*?

   B: Kốh yat-ti haî t'oî*.

9. A: Pin yat-ti haî chî?

   B: Ni yat-ti haî chî.

10. A: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

    B: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

LESSON 4

WORD LIST

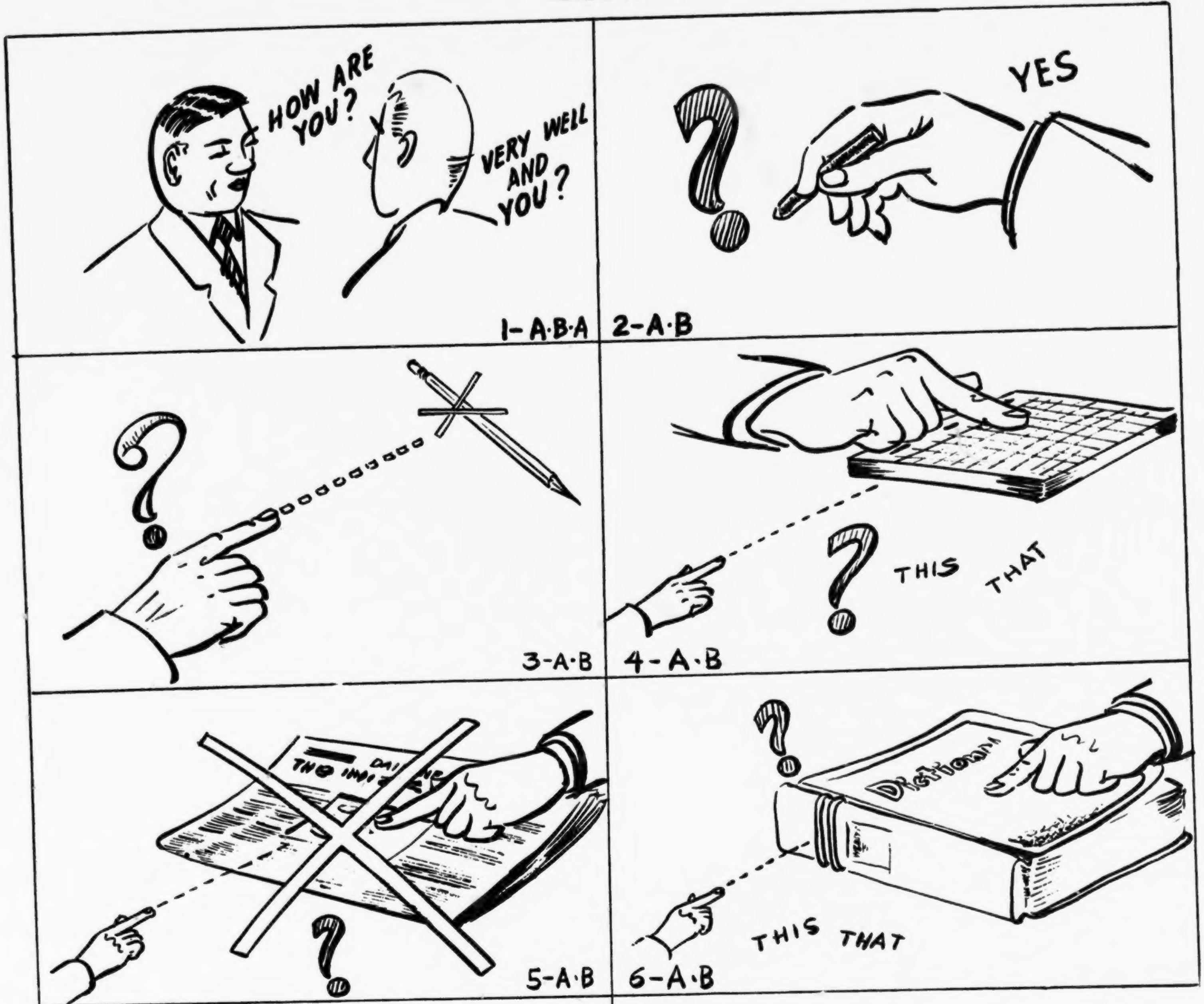
1.	tsó-sān, tsó-shān	good morning
2.	ni ti	these, this
3.	haî	is, are, am, were, was
4.	mi-yĕ	what? what kind of? anything
5.	kôh ti	those, that
6.	pin ti	which? every
7.	ni yat-ti	these, these ones
8.	kôh yat-ti	those, those ones
9.	pin yat-ti	which ones? which?
10.	shue	book
11.	pat	pen
12.	pô*	notebook, exercise book
13.	î	chair
14.	chî	paper
15.	t'oī*	table
16.	wâ*-pò	magazine
17.	tsoī-kīn, tsoī-kīn	good-bye; see you again

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Ni chi haî m̄-haî pat?
   Ni poón haî m̄-haî shue?
   Ni cheung haî m̄-haî î?
2. Kóh chi haî pat m̄-haî?
   Kóh poón haî shue m̄-haî?
   Kóh cheung haî î m̄-haî?
3. Kóh yat-chi haî m̄-haî pat?
   Kóh yat-poón haî m̄-haî shue?
   Kóh yat-cheung haî m̄-haî î?
4. Ni yat-chi haî pat m̄-haî?
   Ni yat-poón haî shue m̄-haî?
   Ni yat-cheung haî î m̄-haî?
5. Haî, ni chi haî pat.
   Haî, kóh poón haî shue.
   Haî, ni yat cheung haî î.
6. M̄-haî, ni chi m̄-haî pat.
   M̄-haî, kóh poón m̄-haî shue.
   M̄-haî, ni yat-cheung m̄-haî î.

LESSON 5


HOW ARE YOU?
VERY WELL AND YOU?
1-A·B·A
YES
2-A·B
3-A·B
THIS
THAT
4-A·B
5-A·B
Dictionary
THIS
THAT
6-A·B
NO
7-A·B
YES
8-A·B
NO
9-A·B
SEE YOU
CALENDER
YESTER. TODAY TOMOR.
10-A·B

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Hó la-mă?
B: Hó hó. Neĭ ne?
A: Hó hó.

2. A: Ni chi haî m̂-haî fán-pat?
B: Haî, ni chi haî fán-pat.

3. A: Kóh chi haî m̂-haî uēn-pat?
B: M̄-haî, kóh chi m̂-haî uēn-pat.

4. A: Ni yat-pô haî m̂-haî ts'ó-kó-pô*?
B: Haî, kóh yat-pô haî ts'ó-kó-pô*.

5. A: Kóh yat-cheung haî m̂-haî pò-chî?
B: M̄-haî, ni yat-cheung m̂-haî pò-chî.

6. A: Ni poón haî tsẑ-tîn m̂-haî?
B: Haî, kóh poón haî tsẑ-tîn.

7. A: Kóh chi haî fán-pat m̂-haî?
B: M̄-haî, ni chi m̂-haî fán-pat.

8. A: Ni yat-chi haî uēn-pat m̂-haî?
B: Haî, kóh yat-chi haî uēn-pat.

9. A: Kóh yat-poón haî ts'ó-kó-pô* m̂-haî?
B: M̄-haî, ni yat-poón m̂-haî ts'ó-kó-pô*.

10. A: T'ing-yât kìn.
B: T'ing-yât tsoì-kìn.

LESSON 5

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: How are you?

B: Very well. And you?

A: Very well.

2. A: Is this a piece of chalk?

B: Yes, this is a piece of chalk.

3. A: Is that a pencil?

B: No, that is not a pencil.

4. A: Is this a writing pad?

B: Yes, that is a writing pad.

5. A: Is that a newspaper?

B: No, this is not a newspaper.

6. A: Is this a dictionary?

B: Yes, that is a dictionary.

7. A: Is that a piece of chalk?

B: No, this is not a piece of chalk.

8. A: Is this a pencil?

B: Yes, that is a pencil.

9. A: Is that a writing pad?

B: No, this is not a writing pad.

10. A: See you tomorrow.

B: See you tomorrow.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān.
   B: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān.
   A: Hó la-mǎ?
   B: Hó hó. Neǐ ne?
   A: Hó hó.
2. A: Ni ti haî mi-yě?
   B: Kóh ti haî shue.
3. A: Kóh chi haî mi-yě?
   B: Ni chi haî pat.
4. A: Ni yat-pô haî mi-yě?
   B: Kóh yat-pô haî pô*.
5. A: Kóh cheung haî m̄-haî chî?
   B: Haî, ni cheung haî chí.
6. A: Ni yat-cheung haî m̄-haî í?
   B: M̄-haî, kóh yat-cheung m̄-haî í.
7. A: Kóh cheung haî m̄-haî t'oî*?
   B: Haî, ni cheung haî t'oî*.
8. A: Ni yat-poón haî wâ*-pò m̄-haî?
   B: M̄-haî, kóh yat-poón m̄-haî wâ*-pò.
9. A: Kóh cheung haî pò-chí m̄-haî?
   B: Haî, ni cheung haî pò-chí.
10. A: Ni yat-chi haî uēn-pat m̄-haî?
    B: M̄-haî, ni yat-chi m̄-haî uēn-pat.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Pin ti haî fán-pat?
B: Ni ti haî fán-pat.

12. A: Pin yat-ti haî tsẑ-tìn?
B: Kóh yat-ti haî tsẑ-tìn.

13. A: Pin poón haî ts'ó-kó-pô*?
B: Ni poón haî ts'ó-kó-pô*.

14. A: Pin yat-pô haî shue?
B: Kóh yat-pô haî shue.

15. A: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn. T'ing-yât kìn.
B: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn. T'ing-yât kìn.

LESSON 5

WORD LIST

1.	hó	good, fine, all right, right, very
2.	la-mă	final particle
3.	ne	final particle
4.	m̀	not, cannot, un-, negative prefix
5.	neĭ	you
6.	fán-pat	chalk
7.	uēn-pat	pencil
8.	ts'ó-kó-pô*	writing pad, tablet
9.	pò-chî	newspaper
10.	tsẑ-tîn	dictionary
11.	poón	auxiliary noun (AN), copy
12.	pô	AN, department, copy
13.	cheung	AN, surname
14.	chi	AN
15.	t'ing-yât	tomorrow
16.	kìn	to see
17.	tsoì	again, once more
18.	la	final particle

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Ni kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ mŏ paan-fōng* à?
Ni yat-kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ mŏ paan-fōng* ne?
Kóh kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ mŏ sin-shaang à?
Kóh yat-kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ mŏ sin-shaang ne?

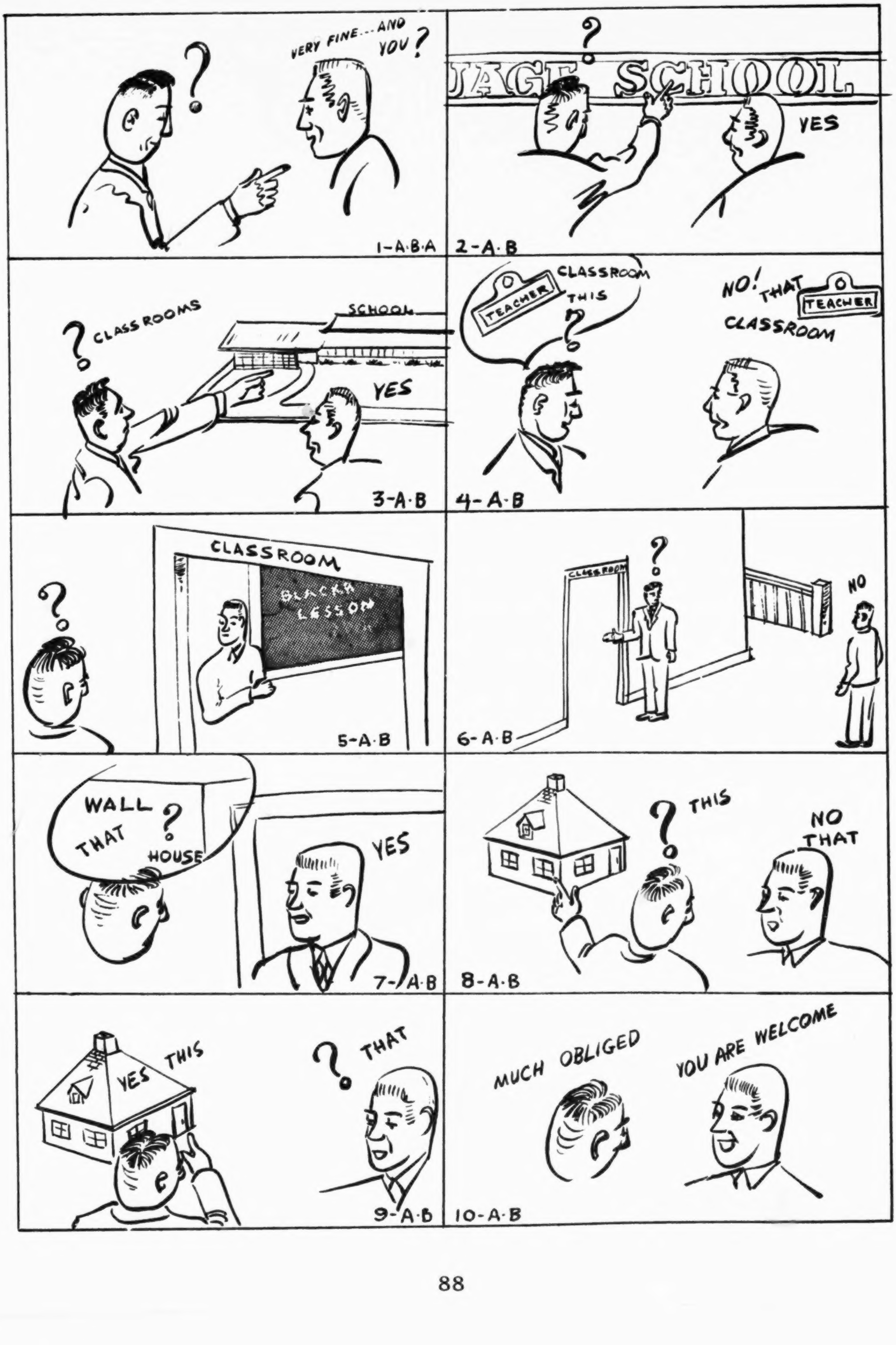
2. Ni kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ paan-fōng* mŏ à?
Ni yat-kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ paan-fōng* mŏ ne?
Kóh kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ sin-shaang mŏ à?
Kóh yat-kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ sin-shaang mŏ ne?

3. Ni kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ paan-fōng* mà?
Ni yat-kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ paan-fōng* mà?
Kóh kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ sin-shaang mà?
Kóh yat-kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ sin-shaang mà?

4. Yaŭ, ni kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ paan-fōng*.
Yaŭ, ni yat-kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ paan-fōng*.
Yaŭ, kóh kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ sin-shaang.
Yaŭ, kóh yat-kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ sin-shaang.

5. Mŏ, ni kaan hôk-haaû mŏ paan-fōng*
Mŏ, ni yat-kaan hôk-haaû mŏ paan-fōng*
Mŏ, kóh kaan paan-fōng* mŏ sin-shaang.
Mŏ, kóh yat-kaan paan-fōng* mŏ sin-shaang.

LESSON 6


?
VERY FINE... AND YOU?
1-A·B·A
?
JAGE SCHOOL
YES
2-A·B
? CLASSROOMS
SCHOOL
YES
3-A·B
TEACHER
CLASSROOM THIS ?
NO! THAT TEACHER CLASSROOM
4-A·B
?
CLASSROOM
BLACKB LESSON
5-A·B
CLASSROOM
?
NO
6-A·B
WALL THAT ? HOUSE
YES
7-A·B
? THIS
NO THAT
8-A·B
YES THIS
? THAT
9-A·B
MUCH OBLIGED
YOU ARE WELCOME
10-A·B

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Neĭ hó mà?

B: Ngŏh hó, neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh hó hó.

2. A: Ni yat-kaan haî m̀-haî hôk-haaû?

B: Haî, ni yat-kaan haî hôk-haaû.

3. A: Kóh yat-kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ mŏ paan-fōng* à?

B: Yaŭ, kóh yat-kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ paan-fōng*.

4. A: Ni yat-kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ mŏ sin-shaang à?

B: Mŏ, kóh yat-kaan paan-fōng* mŏ sin-shaang.

5. A: Kóh yat-kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ mŏ hak-paán ne?

B: Yaŭ, ni yat-kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ hak-paán?

6. A: Ni yat-kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ hôk-shaang mŏ ne?

B: Mŏ, kóh yat-kaan paan-fōng* mŏ hôk-shaang.

7. A: Kóh yat-kaan uk yaŭ ts'eūng mŏ ne?

B: Yaŭ, ni yat-kaan uk yaŭ ts'eūng.

8. A: Ni yat-kaan uk yaŭ ch'eung mà?

B: Mŏ, kóh yat-kaan uk mŏ ch'eung.

9. A: Kóh yat-kaan uk yaŭ moōn mà?

B: Yaŭ, ni yat-kaan uk yaŭ moōn.

10. A: M̄-koi, m̀-koi.

B: M̄-shaî m̀-koi.

LESSON 6

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: How are you?
   B: I am fine. And you?
   A: I am very well.
2. A: Is this a school?
   B: Yes, this is a school.
3. A: Are there classrooms in that school?
   B: Yes, there are classrooms in that school.
4. A: Is there any teacher in this classroom?
   B: No, there isn't any teacher in that classroom.
5. A: Is there any blackboard in that classroom?
   B: Yes, there is a blackboard in this classroom.
6. A: Are there any students in this classroom?
   B: No, there aren't any students in that classroom.
7. A: Is there any wall in that house?
   B: Yes, there is a wall in this house.
8. A: Are there any windows in this house?
   B: No, there aren't any windows in that house.
9. A: Is there any door in that house?
   B: Yes, there is a door in this house.
10. A: Much obliged.
    B: You are welcome.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān.
   B: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān.
   A: Neĭ hó mà?
   B: Ngŏh hó. Neĭ ne?
   A: Ngŏh hó hó.
2. A: Ni ti haî mi-yĕ?
   B: Kóh ti haî uēn-pat.
3. A: Kóh cheung haî mi-yĕ?
   B: Ni cheung haî pò-chî.
4. A: Pin poón haî tsẑ-tîn?
   B: Ni poón haî tsẑ-tîn.
5. A: Pin yat-ti haî î?
   B: Kóh yat-ti haî î.
6. A: Ni yat-cheung haî m̄-haî chî?
   B: Haî, kóh yat-cheung haî chî.
7. A: Ni kaan haî hôk-haaû m̄-haî?
   B: M̄-haî, ni yat-kaan m̄-haî hôk-haaû.
8. A: Kóh yat-kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ mŏ sin-shaang ne?
   B: Mŏ, kóh kaan paan-fōng* mŏ sin-shaang.
9. A: Ni yat-kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ hôk-shaang mŏ à?
   B: Yaŭ, ni kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ hôk-shaang.
10. A: Kóh ti hak-paán yaŭ mŏ fán-pat ne?
    B: Mŏ, ni ti hak-paán mŏ fán-pat.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Ni kaan uk yaŭ ts'eūng mà?

B: Yaŭ, ni kaan uk yaŭ ts'eūng.

12. A: Kôh ti ts'eūng yaŭ ch'eung mà?

B: Mŏ, ni yat-ti ts'eūng mŏ ch'eung.

13. A: Ni ti haî moōn mà?

B: M̄-haî, ni ti m̄-haî moōn.

14. A: Ni kaan haî paan-fōng* mà?

B: Haî, ni yat-kaan haî paan-fōng*.

15. A: M̄-koi, m̄-koi.

B: M̄-shaî m̄-koi.

A: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

B: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

LESSON 6

WORD LIST

1.	mà	interrogative particle
2.	ngŏh	I, me
3.	kaan	AN
4.	hôk-haaû	school
5.	paan-fōng*	classroom
6.	sin-shaang	teacher, Mr., sir
7.	hôk-shaang	student
8.	hak-paân	blackboard
9.	ts'eūng	wall
10.	ch'eung	window
11.	uk	house, home
12.	moōn	door
13.	yaŭ	to have
14.	mŏ	do not have
15.	m̄-koi, m̄-koi	thank you excuse me, pardon me, much obliged
16.	m̄-shaî	do not need, it is unnecessary
17.	à	final particle

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Neĭ huì m̄-huî kaai à?
   K'uĭ maaĭ m̄-maaĭ shue ne?
   Neĭ-teî sîk m̄-shîk faân à?
2. Neĭ huì kaai m̄-huì à?
   K'uĭ maaĭ shue m̄-maaĭ ne?
   Neĭ-teî shîk faân m̄-shîk à?
3. Neĭ huì kaai mà?
   K'uĭ maaĭ shue mà?
   Neĭ-teî shîk faân mà?
4. Huì, ngŏh huì kaai.
   Maaĭ, k'uĭ maaĭ shue.
   Shîk, ngŏh-teî shîk faân.
5. M̄-huì, ngŏh m̄-huì kaai.
   M̄-maaĭ, k'uĭ m̄-maaĭ shue.
   M̄-shîk, ngŏh-teî m̄-shîk faân.
6. Pin kóh huì kaai à?
   Pin kóh maaĭ shue ne?
   Pin kóh m̄-huì kaai ne?
   Pin kóh m̄-maaĭ shue à?
7. Ngŏh huì kaai
   K'uĭ maaĭ shue.
   Neĭ m̄-huì kaai.
   Ngŏh-teî m̄-maaĭ shue.

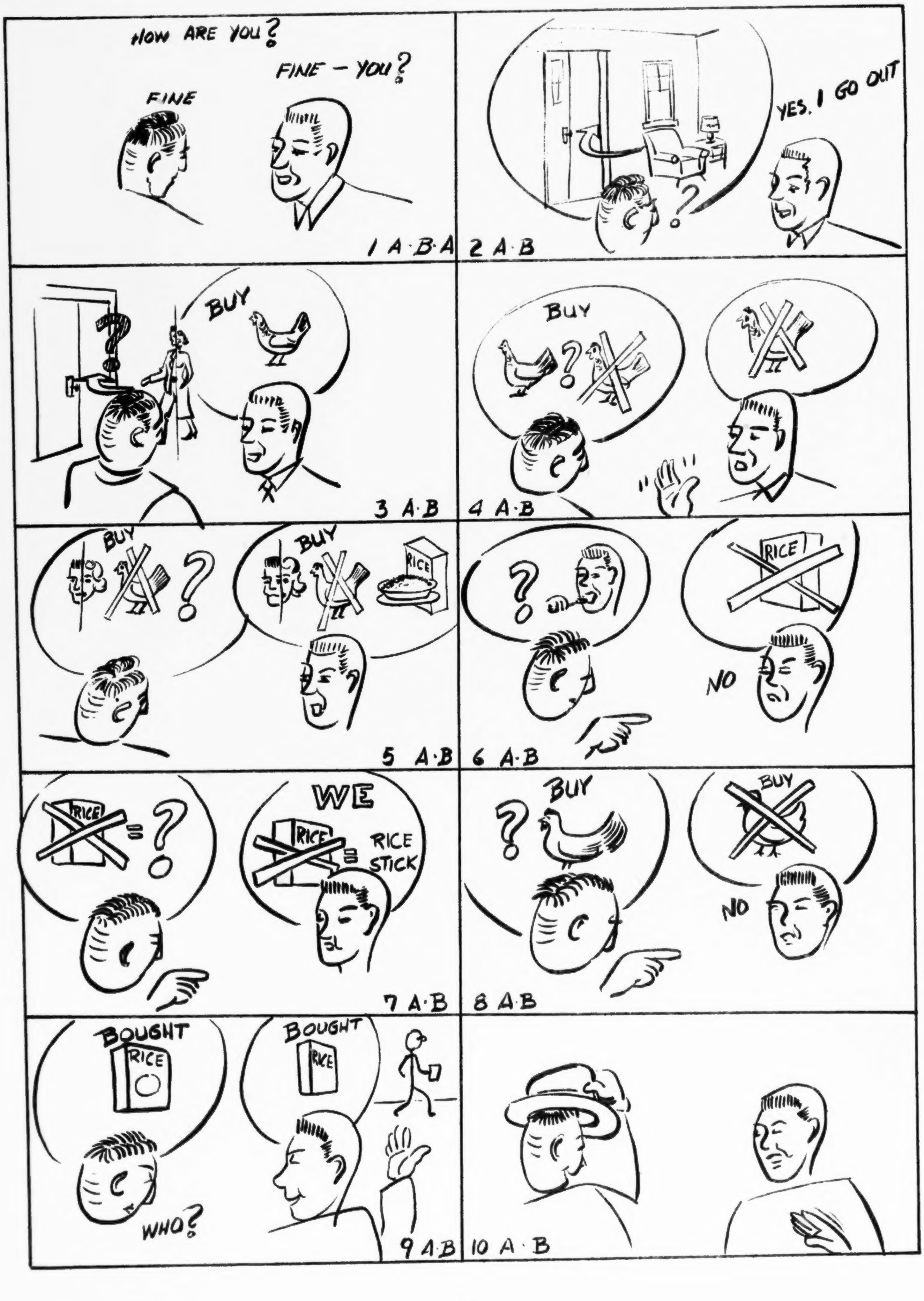
LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

8. K'uĭ maaĭ mi-yĕ à?
Ngŏh-teî shîk mi-yĕ ne?
Neĭ tsô mi-yĕ à?

9. Kuĭ maaĭ shue.
Ngŏh-teî shîk faân.
Ngŏh shîk kai.

LESSON 7


HOW ARE YOU?
FINE
FINE — YOU?
1 A·B·A
YES, I GO OUT
2 A·B
BUY
3 A·B
BUY
4 A·B
BUY
BUY
RICE
5 A·B
RICE
NO
6 A·B
RICE
=
WE
RICE
=
RICE STICK
7 A·B
BUY
BUY
NO
8 A·B
BOUGHT
RICE
WHO?
BOUGHT
RICE
9 A·B
10 A·B

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Keî hó a-mă?

B: Keî hó a. Neĭ ne?

A: Keî hó.

2. A: Neĭ huì m̀-huì kaai à?

B: Huì, ngŏh huì kaai.

3. A: K'uĭ huì kaai, k'uĭ tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: K'uĭ huì kaai, k'uĭ maaĭ kai.

4. A: Neĭ-teî maaĭ kai m̀-maaĭ ne?

B: M̄-maaĭ, ngŏh-teî m̀-maaĭ kai.

5. A: K'uĭ m̀-maaĭ kai, k'uĭ maaĭ mi-yĕ ne?

B: K'uĭ m̀-maaĭ kai, k'uĭ maaĭ maĭ.

6. A: Neĭ shîk faân mà?

B: M̄-shîk, ngŏh m̀-shîk faân.

7. A: Neĭ-teî m̀-shîk faân, neĭ-teî shîk mi-yĕ ne?

B: Ngŏh-teî m̀-shîk faân, ngŏh-teî shîk fân.

8. A: Neĭ maaĭ kai mà?

B: M̄-maaĭ, ngŏh m̀-maaĭ kai.

9. A: Pin kòh maaĭ maĭ à?

B: K'uĭ maaĭ maĭ.

10. A: Ngŏh tsaú là.

B: Maân-maân* haāng.

LESSON 7

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: How are you?
   B: I am fine. And you?
   A: I am fine.
2. A: Are you going out?
   B: Yes, I am.
3. A: Why is he (she) going out?
   B: He is going out to buy chicken.
4. A: Do you (plural) buy chicken?
   B: No, we don't.
5. A: He didn't buy chicken. What did he buy?
   B: He didn't buy chicken. He bought rice.
6. A: Do you eat rice?
   B: No, I don't.
7. A: You don't eat rice. What do you eat?
   B: We don't eat rice. We eat noodles.
8. A: Do you buy chicken?
   B: No, I don't.
9. A: Who bought rice?
   B: He did.
10. A: I am leaving.
    B: Please walk slowly.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Keî hó a-mă?

B: Keî hó a. Neĭ ne?

A: Keî hó.

2. A: Pin kòh haî sin-shaang à?

B: Neĭ haî sin-shaang.

3. A: Pin yat-pô haî wâ*-pò ne?

B: Ni pô haî wâ*-pò.

4. A: Ni chi haî m̂-haî pat?

B: Haî, kóh chi haî pat.

5. A: Ni yat-kaan paan-fŏng* yaŭ t'oì* mŏ à?

B: Mŏ, ni yat-kaan paan-fŏng* mŏ t'oì*.

6. A: K'uĭ yaŭ ts'ó-kó-pô* mà?

B: Yaŭ, k'uĭ yaŭ ts'ó-kó-pô*.

7. A: Neĭ haî sin-shaang mà?

B: M̄-haî, ngŏh m̂-haî sin-shaang?

8. A: Neĭ m̂-haî sin-shaang, neĭ haî mi-yĕ à?

B: Ngŏh m̂-haí sin-shaang, ngŏh haî hòk-shaang.

9. A: Neĭ-teî huì m̂-huì kaai ne?

B: Huì, ngŏh-teî huì kaai.

10. A: Neĭ-teî huì kaai, neĭ-teî tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: Ngŏh-teî huì kaai, ngŏh-teî maaĭ maĭ.

11. A: Ngŏh-teî shîk faân mà?

B: M̄-shîk, ngŏh-teî m̂-shîk faân.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

12. A: K'uĭ m̄-shîk faân, k'uĭ shîk mi-yĕ ne?

B: K'uĭ m̄-shîk faân, k'uĭ shîk fán, shîk kai.

13. A: Kóh poón m̄-haî shue, kóh poón haî mi-yĕ?

B: Ni poón m̄-haî shue, ni poón haî pô*.

14. A: Ni kaan paan-fōng* mŏ t'oī*, yaŭ mi-yĕ?

B: Ni kaan paan-fōng* mŏ t'oī*, yaŭ ī, yaŭ fán-pat, yaŭ hak-paán.

15. A: Ngŏh-teî tsaú là. Tsoī-kīn.

B: Maân-maân* haāng. Tsoī-kīn.

LESSON 7

WORD LIST

1.	k'uĭ	he, her, him, it
2.	neĭ-teî	you (plural)
3.	ngŏh-teî	we, us
4.	maaĭ.	to buy
5.	kai	chicken
6.	maĭ	uncooked rice
7.	faân	rice
8.	fấn	noodles, powder, flour
9.	kaai	street
10.	huí kaai	to go out
11.	shîk	to eat
12.	tsô	to do, work, make
13.	maân maân* haāng	walk slowly
14.	keí hó a-mă?	How are you?
15.	tsaú	to leave, go, run
16.	pin kòh	who?
17.	à	final particle
18.	ch'ut kaai	to go out

NOTE

READING AND WRITING MATERIALS

The Chinese-Cantonese language 47-week Basic Course introduces 1,500 Chinese characters *tsẑ* 字 (words) for reading; and out these 1,500, 750 were chosen for writing. The 1,500 characters were systematically selected from the frequency lists, and approximately 6,000 terms *ts'z̄* 辭 (syntactical words) were carefully chosen from the Cantonese-English dictionaries.

The 1,500 Chinese characters are arranged alphabetically according to the system of romanization in the *Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters* which serves as cross reference. Flash cards for these 1,500 Chinese characters are also available to reinforce the student's mastery of these characters.

In the Reading Material, each character has the following information:

1. The number of the character in the dictionary in alphabetical order.
2. The characters, its reading(s), and its English equivalents.
3. Use of the character in some most common terms or syntactical words.
4. Various forms and styles of the character:
    a. The model or regular writing *k'aaí-shue* 楷書 in the center.

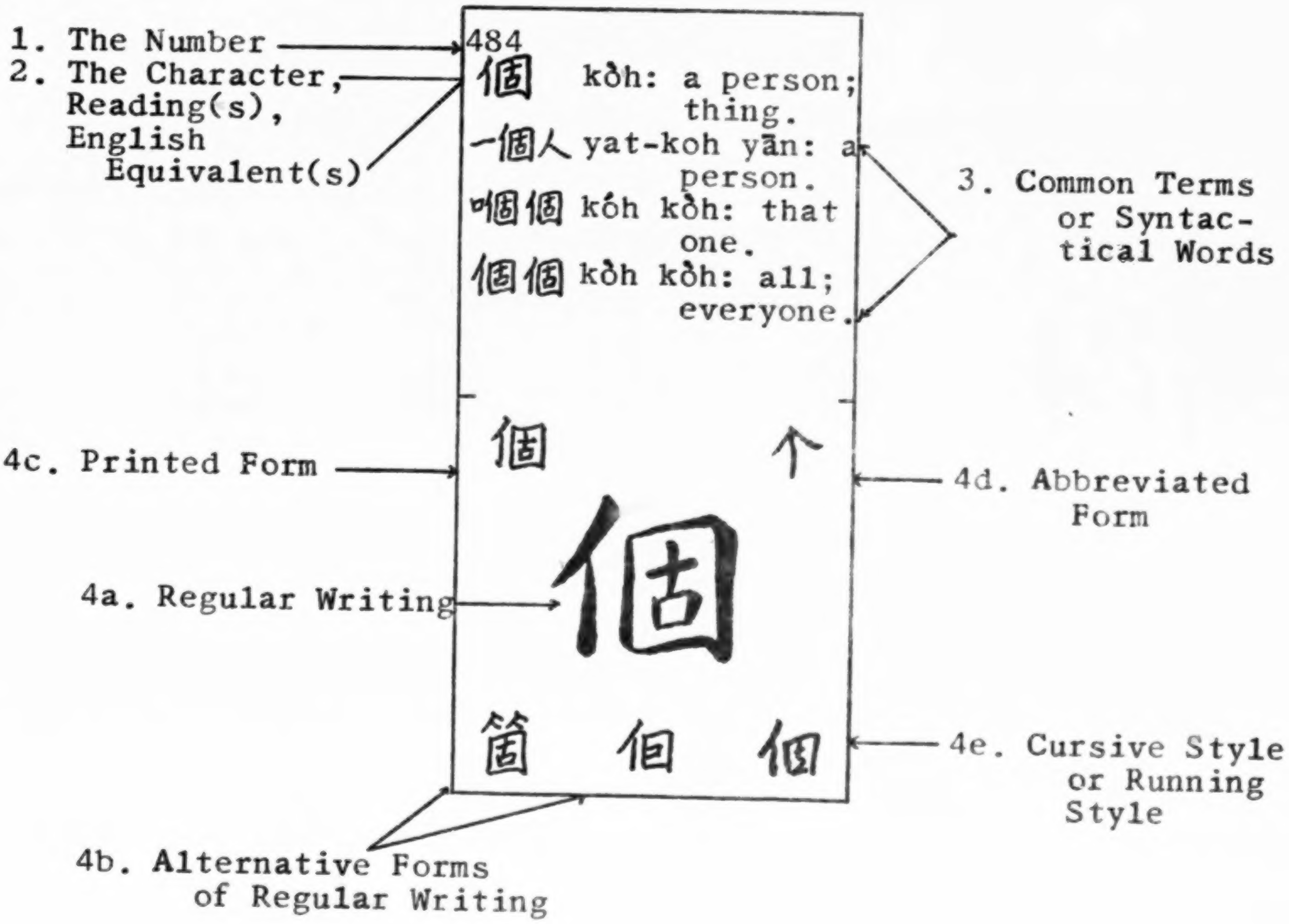
b. The alternative forms of regular writing in the lower center and lower left corner.

c. The printed form hak-paán-tsẑ 刻版字 at the upper left corner.

d. The abbreviated form kaám-pat-tsẑ 減筆字 at the upper right corner.

e. The cursive style ts’ó-shue 草書 or running style hāng-shue 行書 at the lower right corner.

For example:


1. The Number
2. The Character, Reading(s), English Equivalent(s)
484
個 kȍh: a person; thing.
一個人 yat-koh yān: a person.
嗰個 kóh kȍh: that one.
個個 kȍh kȍh: all; everyone.
3. Common Terms or Syntactical Words
4c. Printed Form
個
个
4d. Abbreviated Form
4a. Regular Writing
個
箇
個
個
4e. Cursive Style or Running Style
4b. Alternative Forms of Regular Writing

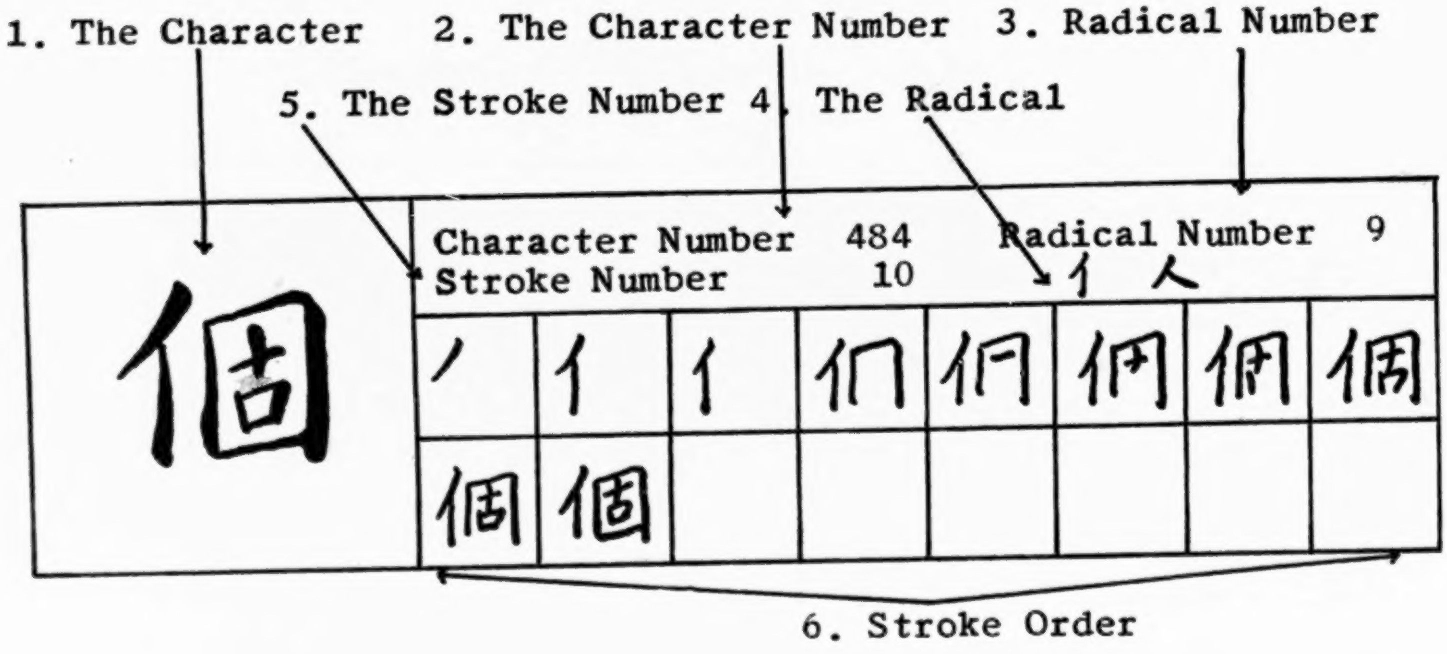
NOTE

READING AND WRITING MATERIALS

In the Writing Material, each character has the following information:

1. The character.
2. The number of the character in the Dictionary in alphabetical order.
3. The number of the radical.
4. The radical and its alternative form, if any.
5. The number of strokes.
6. Order of strokes.

For example:


1. The Character
2. The Character Number
3. Radical Number
5. The Stroke Number
4. The Radical
個
Character Number 484
Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 10
亻 人
6. Stroke Order

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

248

係 **haî: to be; is; are; affirmative**

係唔係 **haî m-haî: Is it so?**

係咩 **haî me: Is that so?**

1462

有 yaŭ: to have; to possess; there is; affirmation.

有用 yaŭ yûng: useful; serviceable.

有效 yaŭ haaû: effective; valid.

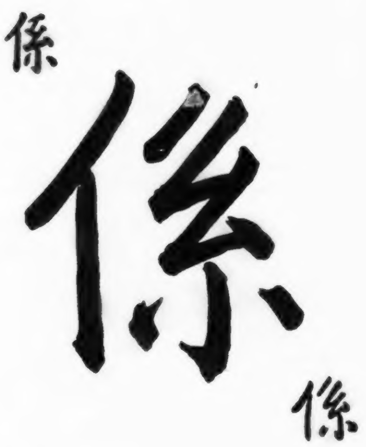
有罪 yaŭ tsuî: guilty.

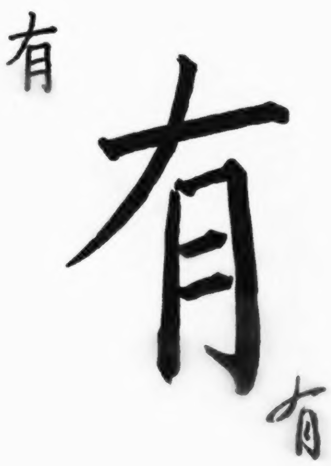
700

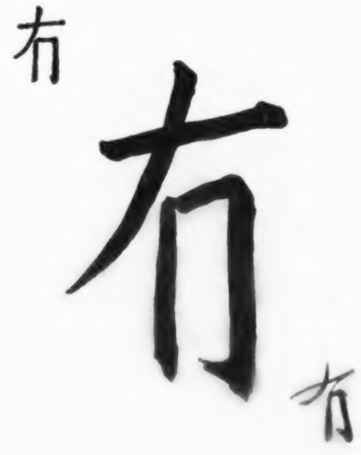
冇 **mŏ: none; do not; have not; negative.**

冇人 **mŏ yān: nobody; no person.**

你有冇 **neĭ yaŭ mŏ shue?: Do you have books?**







735

你 **neĭ: second personal pronoun; you.**

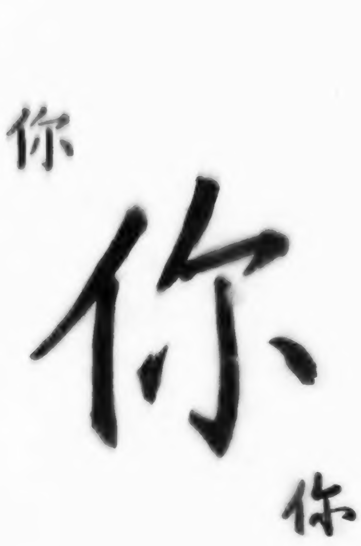
你自己 **neĭ tsẑ-keí: your self.**

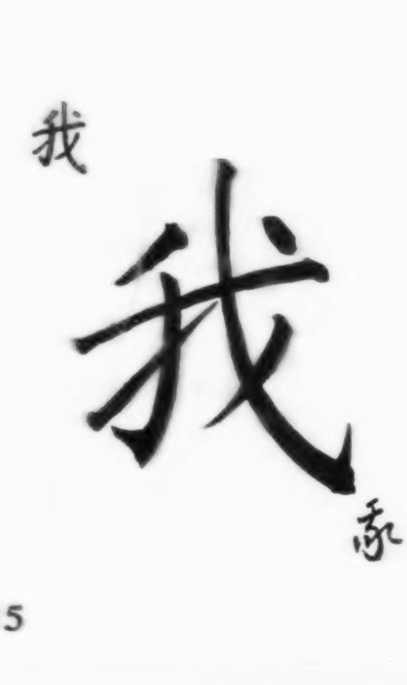
757

我 ngŏh: pronoun of first person; we; me; I.

我地 ngŏh-teî: we; us.

我國 ngŏh kwòk: our country.





LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

300

學	hôk: to learn; study; imitate
學校	hôk-haaû: school; academy
學生	hôk-shaang: student
學費	hôk-faì: tuition
學問	hôk-mân: knowledge

246

校	haaû: a school
校	kaaù. to compare, military title
學校	hôk-haaû: a school
校長	haaû-cheúng: school principal
上校	sheûng-kaaù: colonel

386

間	kaan: seperate; between; within Cl. for room, house
間	kaàn: to partition
中間	chung-kaan: middle; center
忽然間	fat-īn-kaan: suddenly
間尺	kaàn-ch'èk: a ruler

學 斈 校 間

学

學 校 間

學 学 校 閒 间

934

生	shaang, shang: to give birth; to beget; to produce; life; living; raw.
生日	shaang-yât: birthday.
一生	yat-shaang: all one's life.
生意	shaang-ì: business; occupation.

534

佢	k'uǐ: third person pronoun; he; she; it.
佢嘅	k'uǐ kè: his; hers; theirs.
佢地	k'uǐ-teî: they.

生 佢

生 佢

生 佢

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

Ni 間係學校.

Ni 間學校有 sin-生, 有學生.

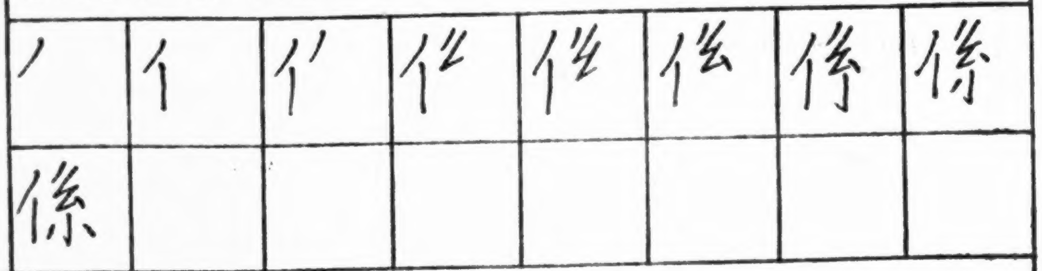
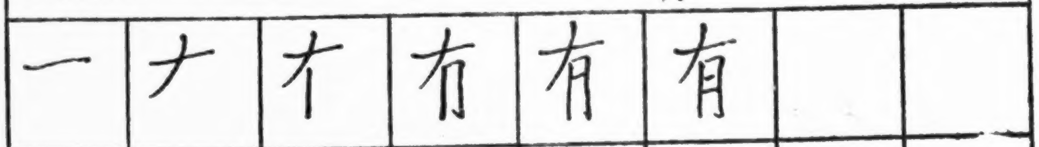
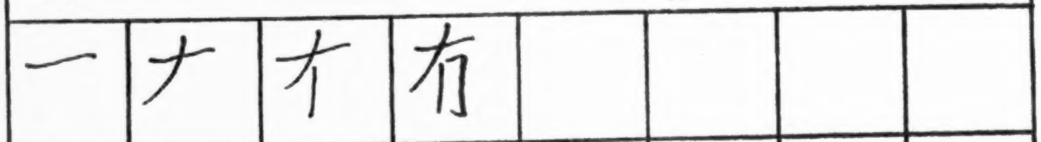
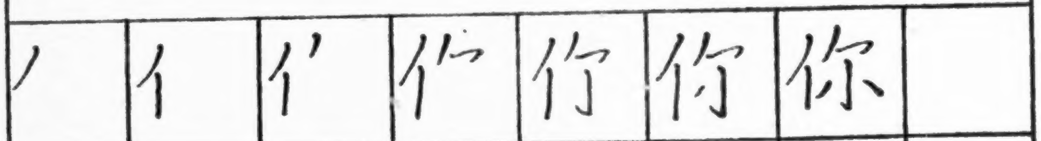
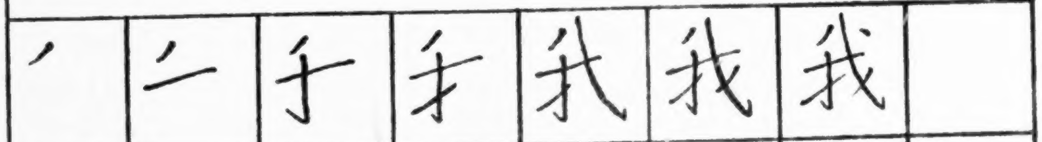
我係學生, 你係學生, 我-teî 係學生. 佢係 sin-生.

一 kòh 學生有三 chi pat, 四 poón shue.

Ni 間 paan-fōng* yaŭ 五 cheung t'oī*, 六 cheung í, 七 chi fán-pat, 八 kòh 學生, 九 chi uēn-pat, 十 poón ts'ó-kó-pô*, 冇 pò-chí.

LESSON 7

WRITING MATERIAL

係	Character Number 248 Stroke Number 9 Radical Number 9 亻, 人	
有	Character Number 1462 Stroke Number 6 Radical Number 74 月	
右	Character Number 700 Stroke Number 4 Radical Number 13 冂	
你	Character Number 735 Stroke Number 7 Radical Number 9 亻, 人	
我	Character Number 757 Stroke Number 7 Radical Number 62 戈	

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

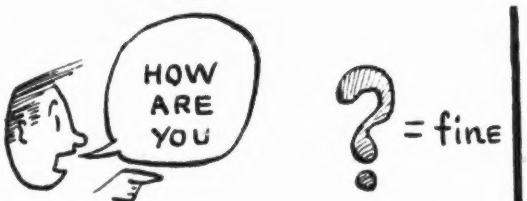
1. Neĭ hôk Kwóng-Tung-Wâ* yik-waâk Meĭ-Kwỏk-Wâ* ả?
   K'uĭ kaaủ Ying-Kwỏk-Wâ* yik-waâk Chung-Kwỏk-Wâ* ne?
   Ngŏh haî Chung-Kwỏh-Yān yik-waâk Ying-Kwỏk-Yān ả?
   Neĭ-teî mīng-paâk Chung-Mān yik-waâk Ying-Mān ne?
   Ngŏh-teî kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ* yik-waâk Meĭ-Kwỏk-Wâ* ả?
2. Ngŏh hôk Kwóng-Tung-Wâ*, m̄-hôk Meĭ-Kwỏk-Wâ*
   K'uĭ kaaủ Chung-Kwỏk-Wâ*, m̄-kaaủ Ying-Kwỏk-Wâ*
   Neĭ haî Ying-Kwỏk Yān, m̄-haî Chung-Kwỏk-Yān.
   Ngŏh-teî mīng-paâk Ying-Mān, m̄-mīng-paâk Chung-Mān.
   Neĭ-teî kóng Meĭ-Kwỏk-Wâ*, m̄-kóng Kwóng-Tung-Wâ*.
3. Ngŏh m̄-hôk Kwóng-Tung Wâ*, ngŏh hôk Meĭ-Kwỏk Wâ*.
   K'uĭ m̄-kaaủ Chung-Kwỏk-Wâ*, k'uĭ kaaủ Ying-Kwỏk Wâ*.
   Neĭ m̄-haî Ying-Kwỏk Yān, neĭ haî Chung-Kwỏk-Yān.
   Ngŏh-teî m̄-mīng-paâk Ying-Mān, ngŏh-teî mīng-paâk Chung-Mān.
   Neĭ-teî m̄-kóng Meĭ-Kwỏk Wâ*, neĭ-teî kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ*.

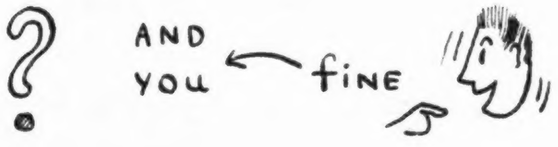
LESSON 8

A

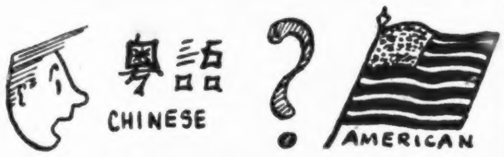
B

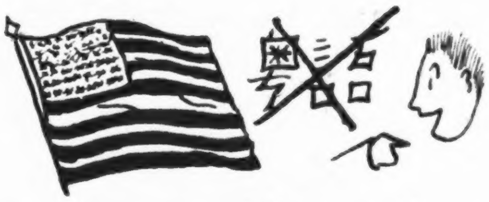
1


HOW ARE YOU
= fine

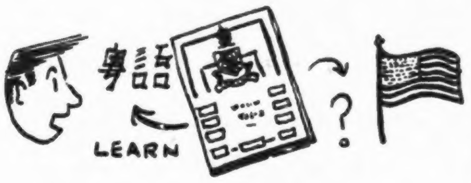

AND you
fine

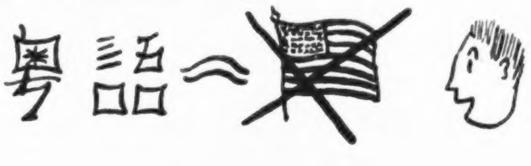
2


粵語
CHINESE
AMERICAN

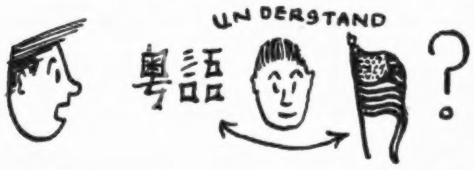


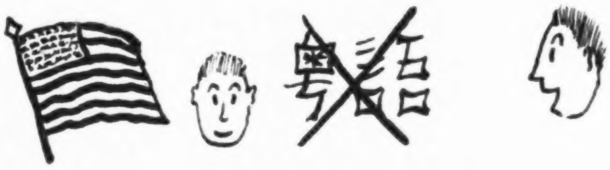
3



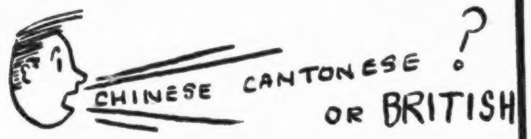


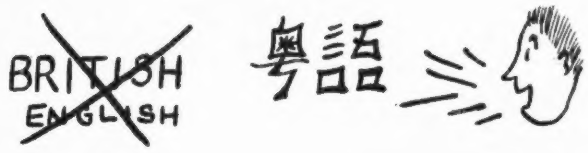
4


UNDERSTAND
粵語

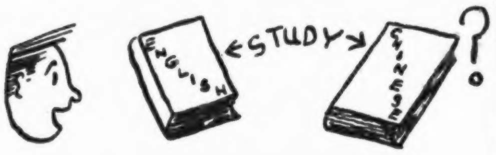


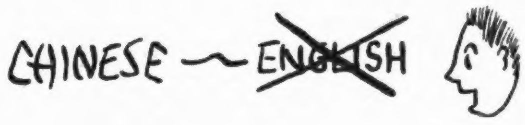
5


CHINESE CANTONESE
OR BRITISH

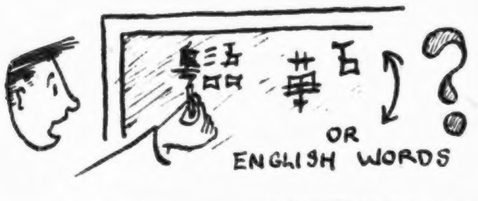

BRITISH
ENGLISH
粵語

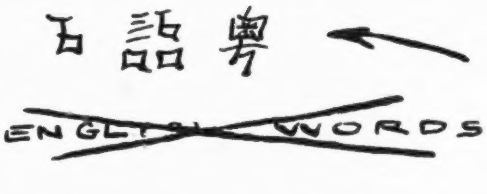
6


ENGLISH
STUDY
CHINESE

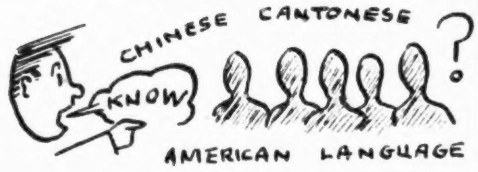

CHINESE
ENGLISH

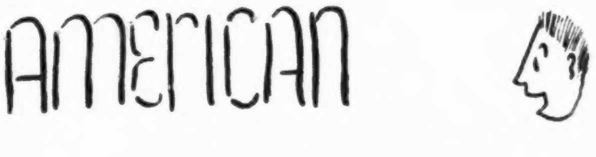
7


粵語
OR
ENGLISH WORDS

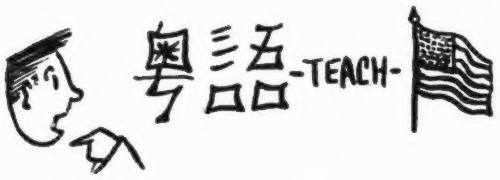

五 語 粵
ENGLISH WORDS

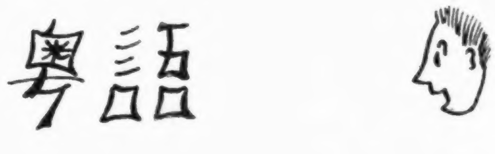
8


CHINESE CANTONESE
KNOW
AMERICAN LANGUAGE

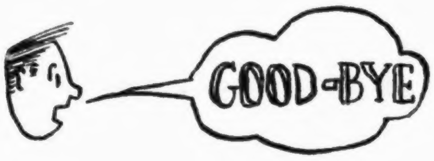


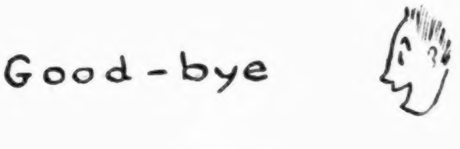
9





10





LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Tîm à, hó mà?

B: Hó hó. Neĭ ne?

A: Hó hó.

2. A: Neĭ haî Chung-Kwòk yān yik-waâk Meĭ-Kwòk yān?

B: Ngŏh haî Meĭ-Kwòk yān, m̄-haî Chung-Kwòk yān.

3. A: Neĭ-teî hôk Kwóng-Tung wâ* yik-waâk Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*?

B: Ngŏh-teî hôk Kwóng-Tung wâ*, m̄-hôk Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*.

4. A: K'uĭ mîng-paâk Kwóng-Tung wâ* yik-waâk Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*?

B: K'uĭ mîng-paâk Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*, m̄-mîng-paâk Kwóng-Tung wâ*

5. A: Ngŏh-teî kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* yik-waâk Ying-Kwòk wâ*?

B: Ngŏh-teî kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ*, m̄-kóng Ying-Kwòk wâ*.

6. A: Neĭ-teî tûk Chung-Mān shue yik-waâk Ying-Mān shue?

B: Ngŏh-teî tûk Chung-Mān shue, m̄-tûk Ying-Mān shue.

7. A: Ngŏh sé Chung-Mān tsẑ yik-waâk Ying-Mān tsẑ?

B: Neĭ sé Chung-Mān tsẑ,m̄-sé Ying-Mān tsẑ.

8. A: K'uĭ-teî ooĭ Kwóng-Tung wâ* yik-waâk Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*?

B: K'uĭ-teî ooĭ Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*, m̄-ooĭ Kwóng-Tung wâ*.

9. A: Ngŏh kaaù Kwóng-Tung wâ* yik waâk Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*?

B: Neĭ kaaù Kwóng-Tung wâ*, m̄-kaaù Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*.

10. A: Ch'ìng-ch'ìng.

B: Ch'ìng-ch'ìng.

LESSON 8

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: How are you?

   B: I am fine. And you?

   A: I am fine.

2. A: Are you Chinese or American?

   B: I am American, not Chinese.

3. A: Do you learn Chinese-Cantonese or American English?

   B: We learn Chinese-Cantonese, not American English.

4. A: Does he understand Chinese-Cantonese or American English?

   B: He understands American English, not Chinese-Cantonese.

5. A: Do we speak Chinese-Cantonese or British English?

   B: We speak Chinese-Cantonese, not British English.

6. A: Do you study Chinese or English?

   B: We study Chinese, not English.

7. A: Do I write Chinese, or English?

   B: You write Chinese, not English.

8. A: Do they know Chinese-Cantonese or American English?

   B: They know American English, not Chinese-Cantonese.

9. A: Do I teach Chinese-Cantonese or American English?

   B: You teach Chinese-Cantonese, not American English.

10. A: Good-bye.

    B: Good-bye.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Neĭ tîm à? Keî hó a-mă?
   B: Keî hó a. Neĭ ne?
   A: Hó hó.
2. A: Pin yat-cheung haî chî à?
   B: Ni yat-cheung haî chî.
3. A: Kóh cheung haî pò-chî; ni cheung haî mi-yĕ ne?
   B: Kóh cheung haî pò-chî; ni cheung haî î.
4. A: K'uĭ mŏ tsẑ-tîn; neĭ yaŭ tsẑ-tîn mŏ à?
   B: K'uĭ mŏ tsẑ-tîn; ngŏh yaŭ tsẑ-tîn.
5. A: Ni kaan uk yaŭ moōn, yaŭ ts'eūng, mŏ mi-yĕ ne?
   B: Ni kaan uk yaŭ moōn, yaŭ ts'eūng, mŏ ch'eung.
6. A: Neĭ-teî hôk Kwóng-Tung wâ* yik-waâk Meĭ-Kwòk wâ* à?
   B: Ngŏh-teî hôk Kwóng-Tung wâ*, m̄-hôk Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*.
7. A: Ngŏh kaaù Kwóng-Tung wâ* yik-waâk hôk Kwóng-Tung wâ*?
   B: Neĭ kaaù Kwóng-Tung wâ*, m̄-hôk Kwóng-Tung wâ*.
8. A: K'uĭ mîng-paâk Kwóng-Tung wâ* mà?
   B: Mîng-paâk, k'uĭ mîng-paâk Kwóng-Tung wâ*.
9. A: Neĭ tûk Ying-Mān shue m̄-tûk à?
   B: M̄-tûk, ngŏh m̄-tûk Ying-Mān shue.
10. A: Ngŏh-teî m̄-kóng Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*, ngŏh-teî kóng mi-yĕ wâ* ne?
    B: Ngŏh-teî m̄-kóng Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*, ngŏh-teî kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ*.
11. A: K'uĭ sê Chung-Mān tsẑ; neĭ tsô mi-yĕ à?
    B: K'uĭ sê Chung-Mān tsẑ; ngŏh sê Ying-Mān tsẑ.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

12. A: Neĭ ooĭ Kwóng-Tung wâ* yik-waâk Ying-Kwòk wâ* ne?

B: Ngŏh ooĭ Ying-Kwòk wâ*, m̄-ooĭ Kwóng-Tung wâ*.

13. A: Neĭ-teî haî mi-yĕ yān, m̄-haî mi-yĕ yān?

B: Ngŏh-teî haî Meĭ-Kwòk yān, m̄-haî Chung-Kwòk yān.

14. A: Neĭ m̄-tûk shue, neĭ tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: Ngŏh m̄-tûk shue, ngŏh sé tsẑ.

15. A: Tsoì-kìn. T'ing-yât kìn.

B: Ch'íng-ch'íng.

A: Ch'íng-ch'íng.

LESSON 8

WORD LIST

1.	tîm	how? in what manner?
2.	hôk	to learn, study
3.	kaaù	to teach
4.	kóng	to speak, talk, say, tell
5.	mīng-paâk	to understand, understandable
6.	sé	to write
7.	Kwóng-Tung wâ*	Chinese-Cantonese language
8.	Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*	American language
9.	Chung-Mān shue	Chinese book
10.	tûk	to study, read
11.	Ying-Mān shue	English book
12.	Chung-Mān tsẑ	Chinese character
13.	yik-waâk	or, either
14.	Chung-Kwòk yān	Chinese person
15.	Ying-Mān tsẑ	English word
16.	Meĭ-Kwòk yān	American person
17.	ts'îng-ts'îng	good-bye.
18.	ooĭ	to understand, know how
19.	k'uĭ-teî	they, them
20.	Ying-Kwòk wâ*	English language

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

571

廣 kwóng: broad; enlarged.

廣告 kwóng-kò: advertisement.

廣銷 kwóng siu: a wide sale.

廣東 Kwóng-Tung: Kwang Tung Province.

廣州 Kwóng-Chou: Canton.

廣西 Kwóng-Sai: Kwangsi Province.

1356

東 tung: the east; eastern; host; master.

東方 tung-fong: the east; Orient.

東京 Tung-King: Tokyo.

東家 tung-ka: head of house or firm.

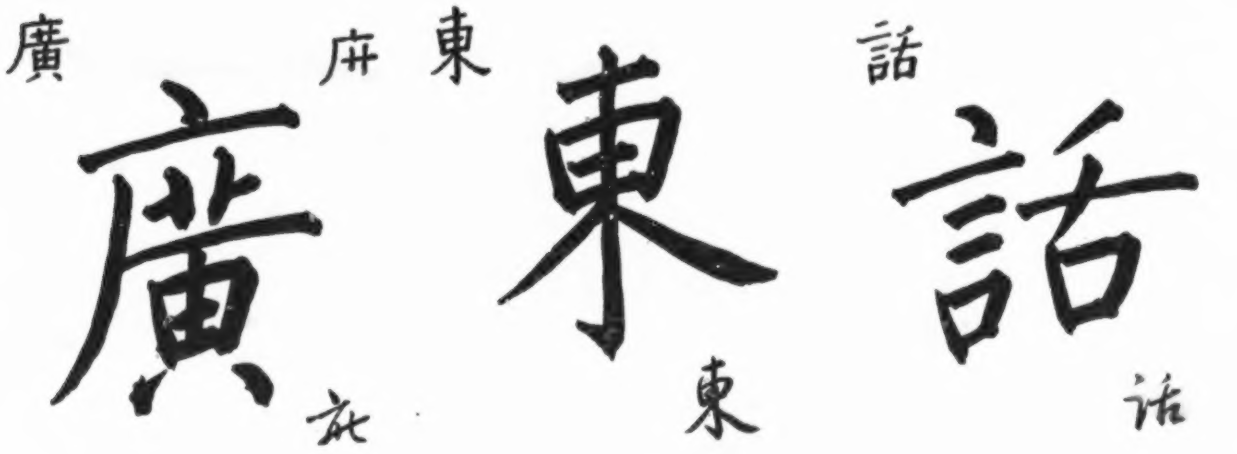
1401

話 wâ, wâ*: language; speech; word; to speak.

會話 ooî-wâ*: conversation.

不成話 pat-shīng-wâ: nonsense.

話別 wâ pît: to bid farewell.



683

美 meĭ: beautiful; excellent.

美麗 meĭ-laî: beautiful.

美人 meĭ yān: a beautiful woman.

美意 meĭ ì: excellent idea; kind intention.

美術家 meĭ-shût ka: artist.

美國 Meĭ-kwòk: USA.

569

國 kwòk: nation; country; kingdom.

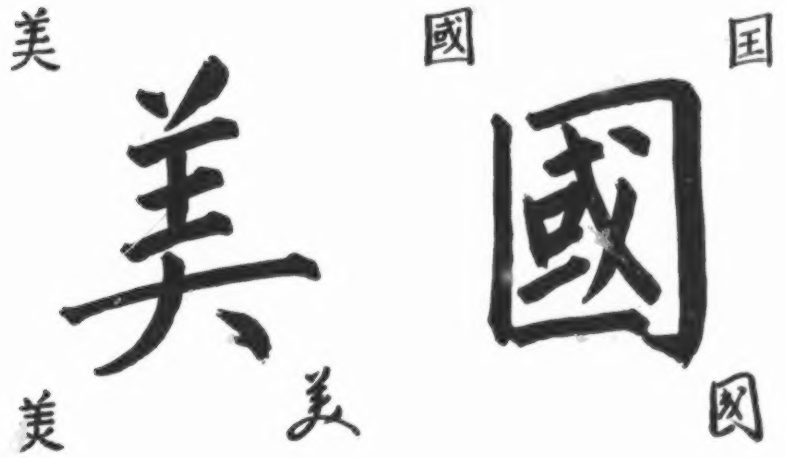
國家 kwòk-ka: the state; nation; national.

本國 poón kwòk: one's own country.

外國 ngoî kwòk: foreign nation.

國籍 kwòk-tsîk: nationality; citizenship.

國際 kwòk-tsaì: international.



LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

397

教	kaaù: to teach; doctrine; religious system
教訓	kaaù-fèn: to instruct; lesson
教書	kaaù shue: to teach school
教員	kaaù-uēn: a teacher
天主教	t'in-chué-kaaù: Roman Catholic

1028

先	sin: first; before; ahead.
先生	sin-shaang: sir; Mr, teacher.
先後	sin haû: first and last; at various times.

1129

地	teî: earth; ground; place.
地方	teî-fong: locality; place.
地圖	teî-t'ō: a map.
地點	teî-tím: location; terminus; place.
地位	teî-waî: one's place; position in life.

教 先 地

教 先 地

教 先 地

1448

人	yān: man; person; human.
人工	yān-kung: wages; salary; labor.
人格	yān-kaàk: personality; disposition.
人命	yān-mêng: a life.
黑人	hak-yān: negro.

291

好	hò: to love; to be fond of
好	hó: good; right very
好彩	hó-ts'oí: fortunately
好處	hó ch'uè: merit; advantage
好學	hò hôk: fond of study

人 好

人 好

人 好

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

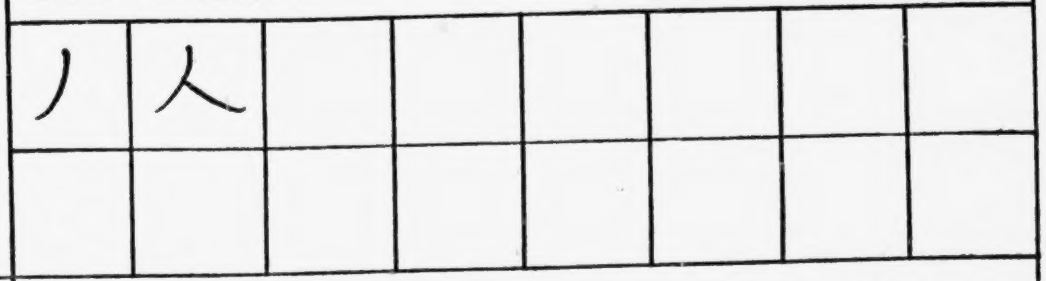
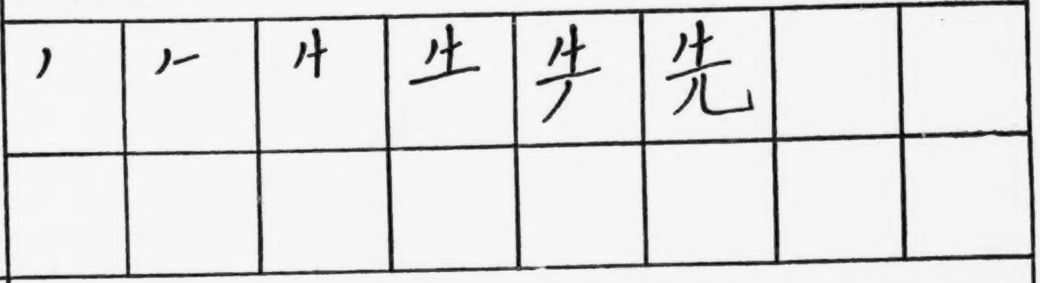
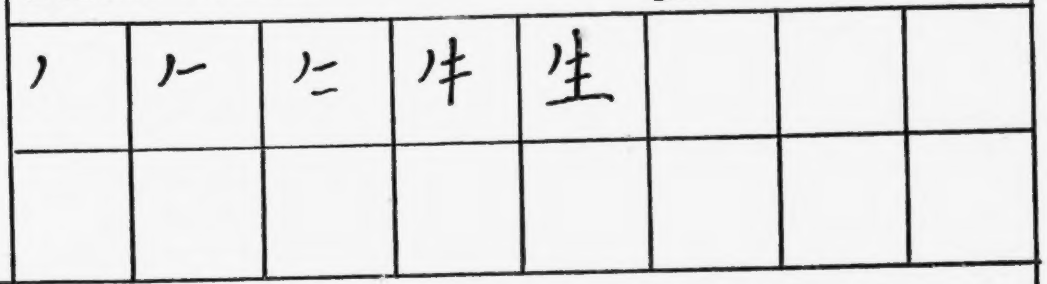
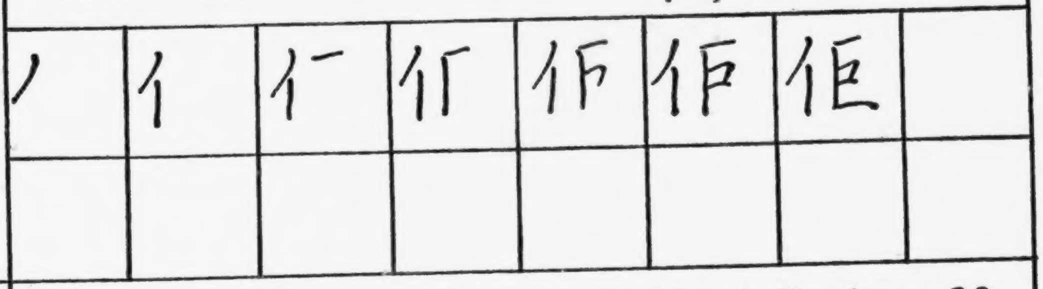
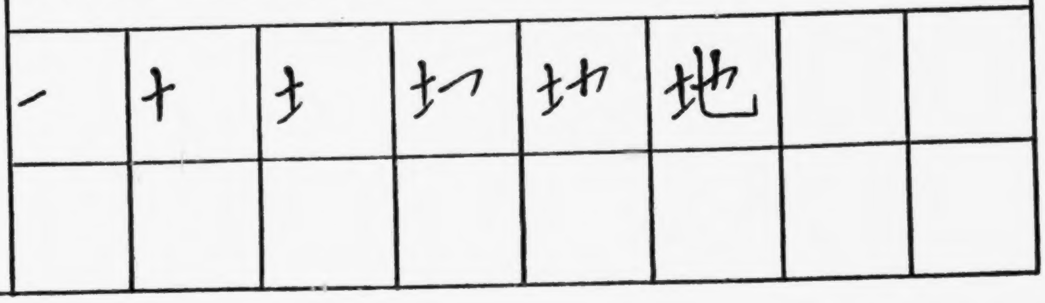
Ni ti 學生係美國人, kóh ti 先生係 Chung-國人.

我地學廣東話*, m̄-學美國話*; 我地 sé Chung-Mān tsẑ, m̄-sé Ying-Mān tsẑ, tûk Chung-Mān shue, m̄-tûk Ying-Mān shue.

Ni kòh 先生係廣東人, 佢教廣東話*, m̄-教美國話*, 佢係一 kòh hó 先生.

LESSON 8

WRITING MATERIAL

人	Character Number 1448 Radical Number 9 Stroke Number 2 人 
先	Character Number 1028 Radical Number 10 Stroke Number 6 儿 
生	Character Number 934 Radical Number 100 Stroke Number 5 生 
佢	Character Number 534 Radical Number 9 Stroke Number 7 亻, 人 
地	Character Number 1129 Radical Number 32 Stroke Number 6 土 

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Neĭ peî mi-yĕ ngŏh à?
K'uĭ peî mi-yĕ neĭ ne?
Ngŏh keì mi-yĕ peî k'uĭ à?
Neĭ-teî sùng mi-yĕ peî ngŏh-teî ne?

2. Pin-kòh sé sùn peî neĭ à?
Pin-kòh tá tîn-wâ* peî ngŏh à?
Pin-kòh peî ts'ìn* peî k'uĭ ne?
Pin-kòh sùng yĕ peî ngŏh-teî ne?

3. Ngŏh peî ts'ìn* neĭ.
Neĭ sé sùn ngŏh.
K'uĭ tá tîn-wâ* peî neĭ.
K'uĭ-teî sùng yĕ peî neĭ-teî.

4. Neĭ peî m̄-peî ts'ìn* ngŏh ne?
K'uĭ keì m̄-keì yĕ neĭ à?
Neĭ tá m̄-tá tîn-wâ* peî k'uĭ ne?
Neĭ-teî sé m̄-sé sùn peî ngŏh-teî à?

5. Peî, ngŏh peî ts'ìn* neĭ.
Keì, k'uĭ keì yĕ ngŏh.
Tá, ngŏh tá tîn-wâ* peî k'uĭ.
Sé, ngŏh-teî sé sùn peî neĭ-teî.

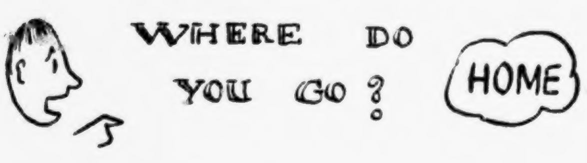
6. M̄-peî, ngŏh m̄-peî ts'ìn* neĭ.
M̄-keì, k'uĭ m̄-keì yĕ ngŏh.
M̄-tá, ngŏh m̄-tá tîn-wâ* peî k'uĭ.
M̄-sé, ngŏh-teî m̄-sé sùn peî neĭ-teî.

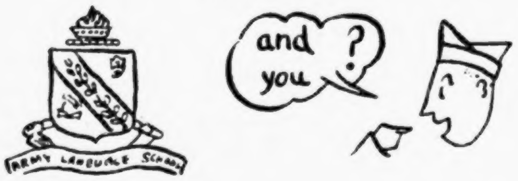
LESSON 9

A

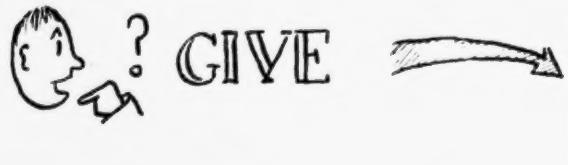
B

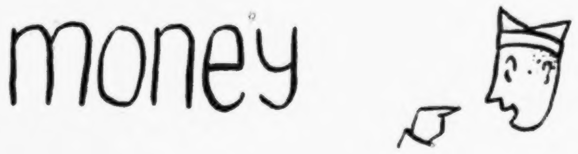
1


WHERE DO YOU GO ?
HOME

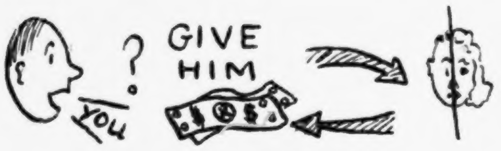

ARMY LANGUAGE SCHOOL
and you ?

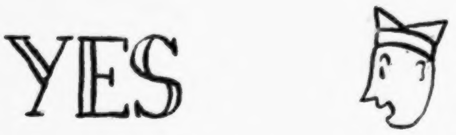
2



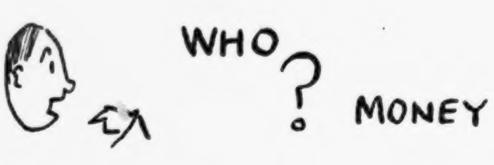


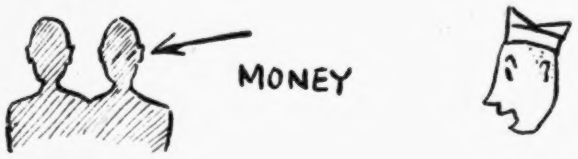
3


? GIVE HIM
YOU

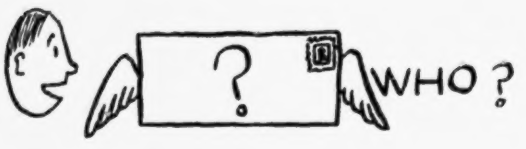


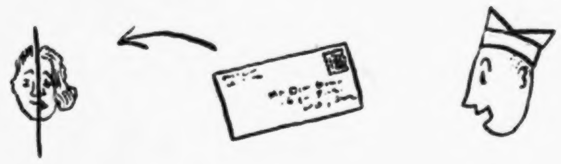
4



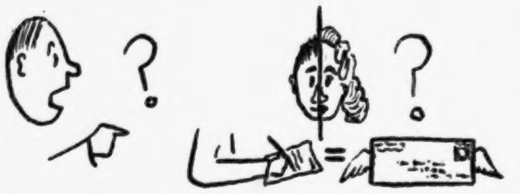


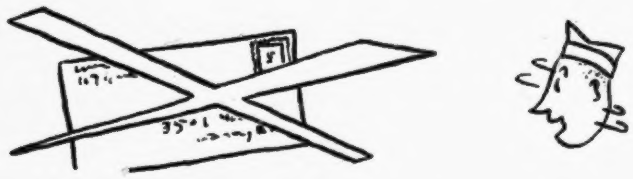
5



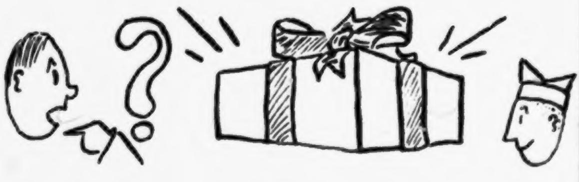


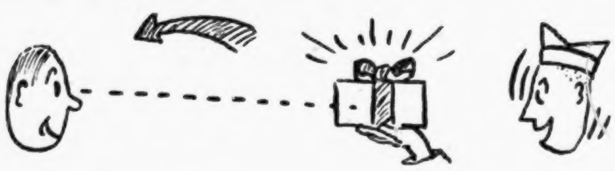
6



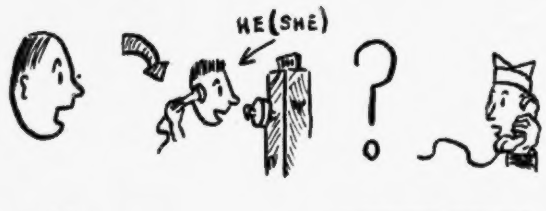


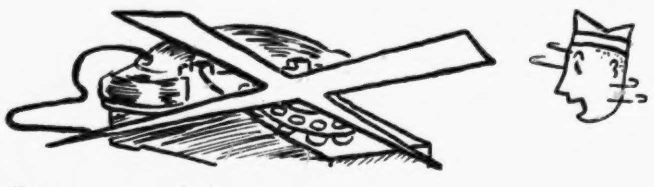
7



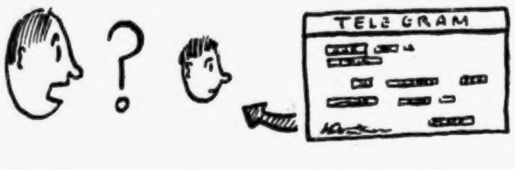


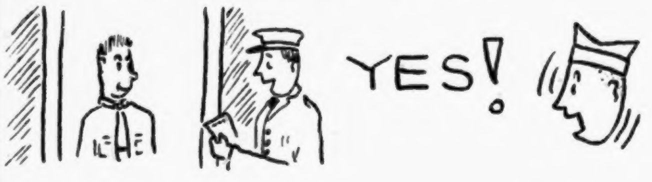
8



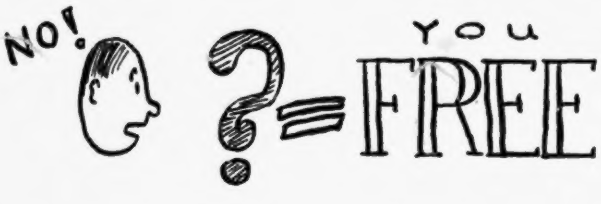


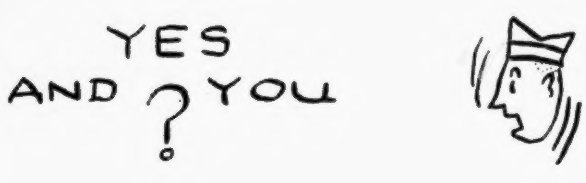
9





10





LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Neĭ huì pin shuè à?

B: Ngŏh huì Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû. Neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh faan uk-k'eî.

2. A: Ngŏh peî mi-yĕ neĭ à?

B: Neĭ peî ts'ìn* ngŏh.

3. A: Neĭ peî m̄-peî ts'ìn* k'uĭ à?

B: Peî, ngŏh peî ts'ìn* k'uĭ.

4. A: Pin kòh peî ts'ìn* ngŏh ne?

B: K'uĭ-teî peî ts'ìn* neĭ.

5. A: Neĭ-teî keì sùn peî pin kòh ne?

B: Ngŏh-teî keì sùn peî k'uĭ.

6. A: K'uĭ sê sùn peî neĭ m̄-sé à?

B: M̄-sê, k'uĭ m̄-sê sùn peî ngŏh.

7. A: Neĭ sùng m̄-sùng yĕ peî ngŏh à?

B: Sùng, ngŏh sùng yĕ peî neĭ.

8. A: K'uĭ tá tîn-wâ* peî neĭ m̄-tá à?

B: M̄-tá, k'uĭ m̄-tá tîn-wâ* peî ngŏh.

9. A: Neĭ-teî tá m̄-tá tîn-pò peî k'uĭ ne?

B: Tá, ngŏh-teî tá tîn-pò peî k'uĭ.

10. A: Neĭ tak-haān mà.

B: Ngŏh tak-haān. Neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh m̄-tak-haān.

LESSON 9

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Where are you going?
   B: I am going to the Army Language School. And you?
   A: I am going home.
2. A: What do I give you?
   B: You give me money.
3. A: Do you give him money?
   B: Yes, I do.
4. A: Who gives me money?
   B: They give you money.
5. A: To whom do you send the letter?
   B: We send the letter to him.
6. A: Did he write you?
   B: No, he didn't.
7. A: Do you give a gift to me?
   B: Yes, I do.
8. A: Does he call you by telephone?
   B: No, he doesn't.
9. A: Do you send a telegram to him?
   B: Yes, we do.
10. A: Are you free?
    B: Yes, I am. And you?
    A: No, I am not free.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Neĭ huì pin shuè* à?

B: Ngŏh faan uk-k'eî. Neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh huì hôk-haau.

2. A: Ni cheung haî m̄-haî t'oĭ*? Kóh cheung haî ì m̄-haî?

B: Kóh cheung haî t'oî*. Ni cheung m̄-haî ì.

3. A: Ni kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ sin-shaang mŏ à? Kóh kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ hôk-shaang mà?

B: Ni kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ sin-shaang. Kóh kaan paan-fōng* mŏ hôk-shaang.

4. A: Ni chi m̄-haî uēn-pat, pin yat-chi haî uēn-pat?

B: Kóh chi m̄-haî uēn-pat, ni yat-chi haî uēn-pat.

5. A: Ni pô haî ts'ó-kó-pô* yik-waâk haî wâ*-pò?

B: Kóh pô haî ts'ó-kó-pô*, m̄-haî wâ*-pò.

6. A: K'uĭ huì kaai; neĭ tsô mi-yĕ ne?

B: K'uĭ huì kaai; ngŏh tûk shue.

7. A: Neĭ-teî hôk Kwóng-Tung wâ* mà?

B: Hôk, ngŏh-teî hôk Kwóng-Tung wâ*.

8. A: Neĭ peî m̄-peî ts'ìn* k'uĭ à? K'uĭ sé m̄-sé sùn peî neĭ ne?

B: Ngŏh peî ts'ìn* k'uĭ. K'uĭ m̄-sé sùn peî ngŏh.

9. A: K'uĭ peî mi-yĕ neĭ-teî à? Neĭ-teî peî mi-yĕ k'uĭ ne?

B: K'uĭ peî shue ngŏh, ngŏh peî ts'ìn* k'uĭ.

10. A: Neĭ keì sùn peî pin kòh, sùng yĕ peî pin kòh, maaĭ yĕ peî pin kòh?

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

B: Ngŏh keî sùn peî sin-shaang, sùng yĕ peî k'uĭ-teî,
maaĭ yĕ peî neĭ.

11. A: K'uĭ-teî m̄-sé sùn peî neĭ, k'uĭ-teî sé sùn peî pin kòh?

B: K'uĭ-teî m̄-sé sùn peî ngŏh, k'uĭ-teî sé sùn peî neĭ.

12. A: Ngŏh tá tîn-wâ* peî neĭ. Neĭ tá m̄-tá tîn-wâ* peî ngŏh?

B: Neĭ tá tîn-wâ* peî ngŏh. Ngŏh tá tîn-wâ* peî neĭ.

13. A: Neĭ tá tîn-pò peî k'uĭ yik-waâk sé sùn peî k'uĭ?

B: Ngŏh tá tîn-pò peî k'uĭ, m̄-sé sùn peî k'uĭ.

14. A: Pin kòh tá tîn-wâ* peî ngŏh? Pin kòh sùng yĕ peî ngŏh?

B: K'uĭ tá tîn-wâ* peî neĭ. K'uĭ-teî sùng yĕ peî neĭ.

15. A: Neĭ tak m̄-tak-haān à?

B: Ngŏh tak-haān. Neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh tak-haān.

LESSON 9

WORD LIST

1.	peî	to give, indirect object agent
2.	sủng	to present to
3.	keī	to mail
4.	tá tîn-wâ*	to make a telephone call, to telephone
5.	tá tîn-pỏ	to send a telegram
6.	ts'în*	money
7.	sủn	letter
8.	sé sủn	to write a letter
9.	yĕ	thing, object, affair
10.	pin shuẻ	where?
11.	Lûk-Kwan	Army
12.	uĕ-în	language
13.	hôk-haaû	school
14.	tak-haān	to have leisure, be free, not occupied
15.	faan	to return to, return from
16.	uk-k'eî	home
17.	faan uk-k'eî	to go home

LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

644

陸 lûk: dry land.

陸續 lûk-tsûk: continuous; in succession.

陸軍 lûk-kwan: army.

陸地 lûk-teî: land.

大陸 taaî-lûk: mainland; continent.

557

軍 kwan: army; military.

軍隊 kwan-tuî: a body of soldiers.

軍人 kwan-yān: soldier.

軍火 kwan fón: ammunition.

軍器 kwan-heì: military implements; weapons.

1379

語 uě: word; saying; to converse.

古語 koó uě: archaism.

隱語 yán uě: crytic language.

語法 uě-faat: grammar.

陸 軍 語

陸 軍 語

陸 軍 語

356

言 īn: words; to speak

言語 īn-uě: language; words

宣言 suen-īn: declaration

言論 īn-lūn: speech; expression of ideas

145

中 chung: middle; center; within

中 chung: right; exactly

中間 chung-kaan: middle; in between

中意 chung-ì: to like

打中 tá-chùng: hit the mark

言 中

言 中

言 中

LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

672

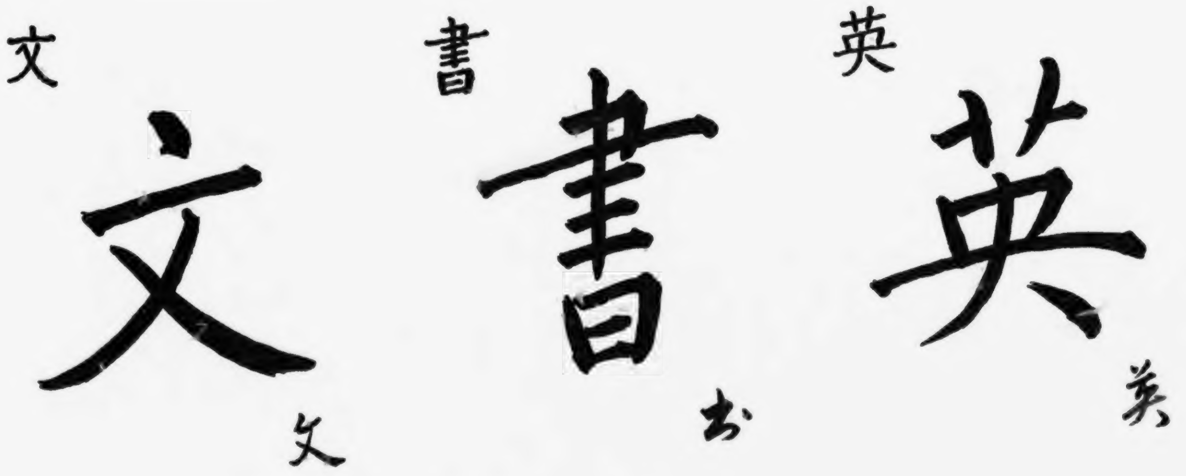
文	mān:	literature; literary; elegant; civil.
文法	mān-faàt:	grammar; rule of composition.
唐文	T'ōng-Mān:	Chinese.
中文	Chung-Mān:	Chinese.
古文	koó-mān:	classics.
文化	mān-fà:	culture; civilization.

1008

書	shue:	book; letter; writing; document.
書籍	shue-tsîk:	book.
圖書館	t'ō-shue-koón:	a library.

1485

英	ying:	excellent; valiant; brave.
英雄	ying-hūng:	hero; knight.
英國	Ying-Kwòk:	England.
英文	Ying-Mān:	the English language

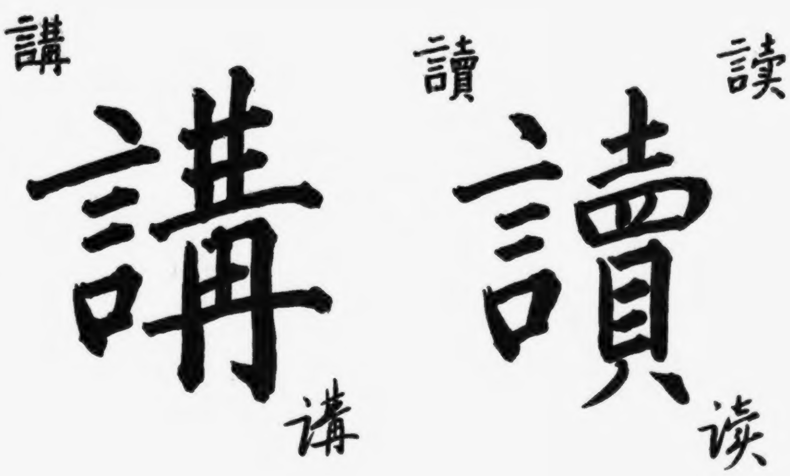


504

講	kóng:	to talk; to explain; to discuss.
講話	kóng wâ:	to talk; to speak.
講笑	kóng siȕ:	to joke.
講妥	kóng t'ȍh:	agreement reached.
講究	kóng-kaȕ:	particular.

1352

讀	tûk:	to read aloud; to study.
讀書	tûk shue:	to read; to study.
讀熟	tûk shûk:	to study enough to be able to recite.



LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

Ni 間係美國陸軍語言學校.

Ni ti 先生係中國人, 係廣東人; 學生係美國、, m̄- 係中國人.

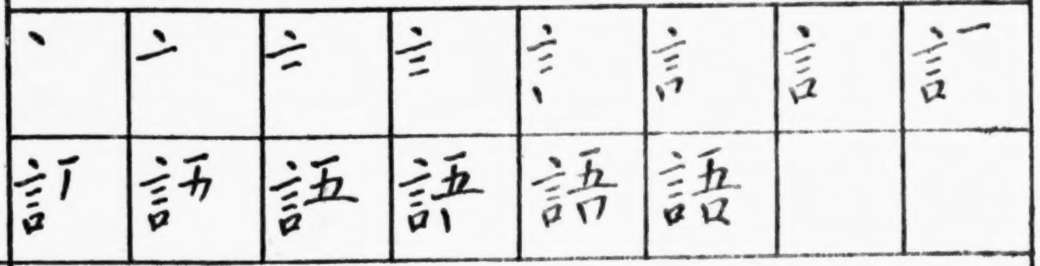
我地 m̄-ooǐ 講廣東話*, m̄-ooǐ sé 中文 tsẑ; kóh kòh 先生教我地講廣東話*, 讀中文書. sé 中文 tsẑ; 我地 m̄- 講英文, m̄- 讀英文書, m̄- sé 英文 tsẑ.

LESSON 9

WRITING MATERIAL

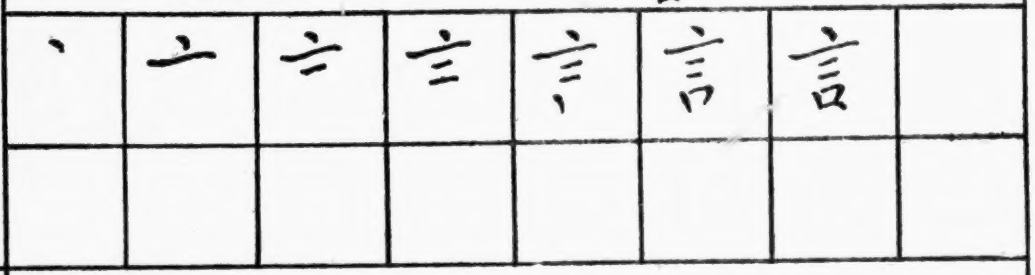
語

Character Number 1378 Radical Number 149
Stroke Number 14 言



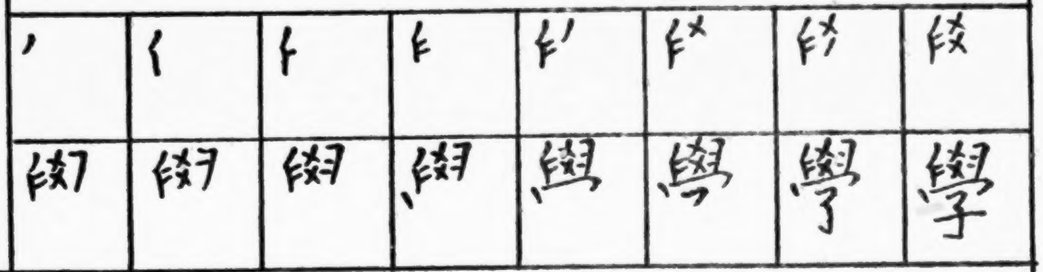
言

Character Number 356 Radical Number 149
Stroke Number 7 言



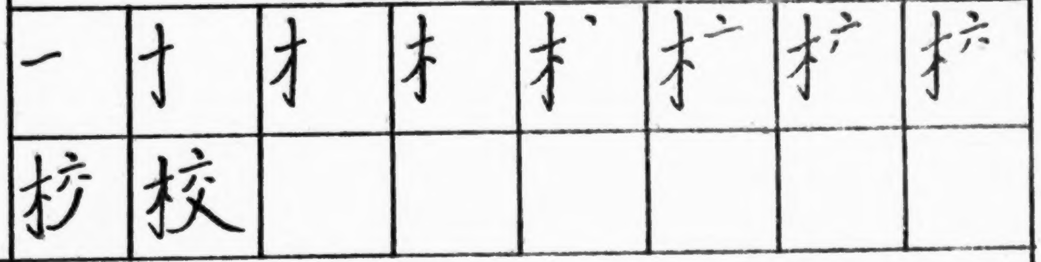
學

Character Number 300 Radical Number 39
Stroke Number 16 子



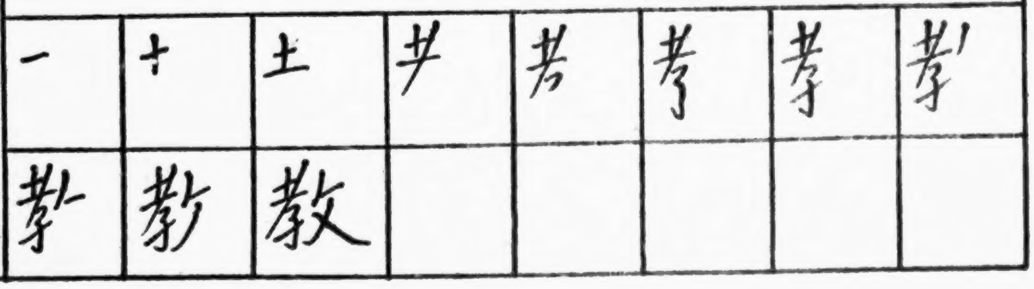
校

Character Number 246 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 10 木



教

Character Number 397 Radical Number 66
Stroke Number 11 攴，攵



LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Wōng-Sin-Shaang haî tîm-yeûng* kè yān à?

   Wōng T'aaì-T'aaì* haî tîm-yeûng* kè nuĭ-yān* ne?

   Neĭ haî tîm-yeûng* kè hôk-shaang à?

2. Wōng-Sin-Shaang haî hó kè mi-yĕ à?

   Wōng T'aaì-T'aaì* haî lèng kè mi-yĕ ne?

   Neĭ haî ts'ung-mīng kè mi-yĕ à?

3. Pin-kòh haî hó kè yān à?

   Pin kòh haî lèng kè nuĭ-yān* ne?

   Pin kòh haî ts'ung-mīng kè hôk-shaang à?

4. Wōng-Sin-Shaang haî m̄-haî hó kè à?

   Wōng-T'aaì-T'aaì* haî m̄-haî lèng kè ne?

   Neĭ haî m̄-haî ts'ung-mīng kè à?

5. Ni kà ch'e haî hó kè mà?

   Kóh yat-kà ch'e haî kwaì kè mà?

   Kóh kà ch'e haî p'ēng kè mà?

6. Wōng-Sin-Shaang haî hó kè yān.

   Wōng T'aaì-T'aaì* haî lèng kè nuĭ-yān*.

   Neĭ haî ts'ung-mīng kè hôk-shaang.

7. M̄-haî, Wōng-Sin-Shaang m̄-haî hó kè.

   M̄-haî, Wōng-T'aaì-T'aaì* m̄-haî lèng kè.

   M̄-haî, neĭ m̄-haî ts'ung-mīng kè.

8. Ni kà ch'e haî hó kè.

   Kóh yat-kà ch'e haî kwaì kè.

   Kóh kà ch'e haî p'ēng kè.

LESSON 10

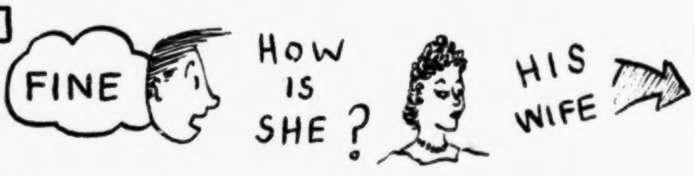
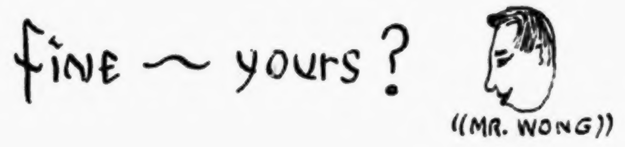
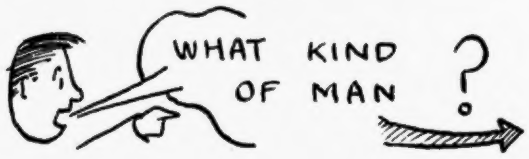
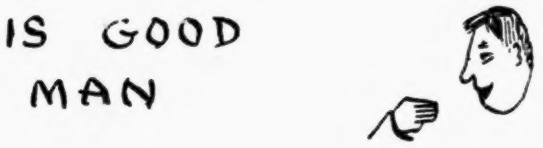
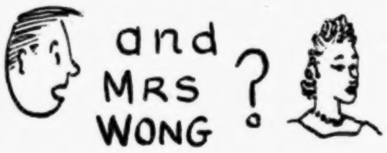
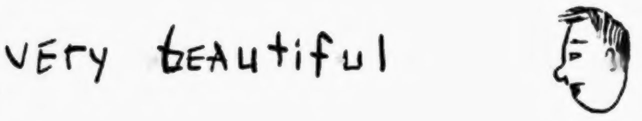
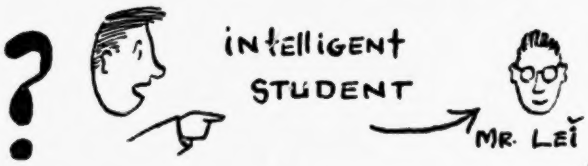
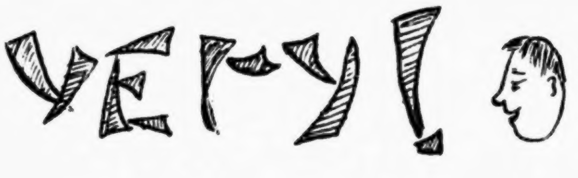
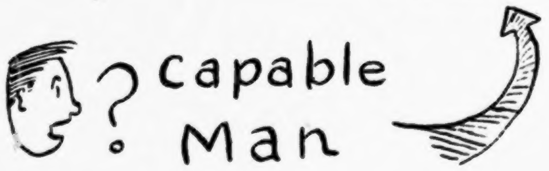
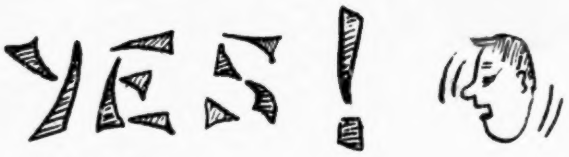
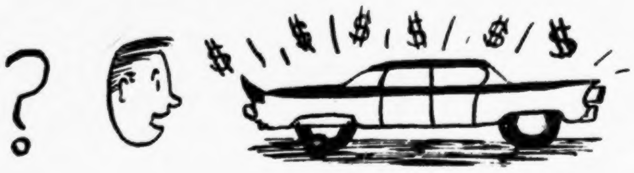
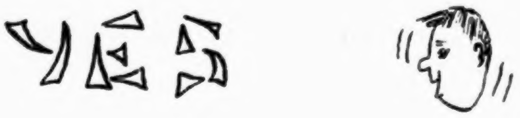
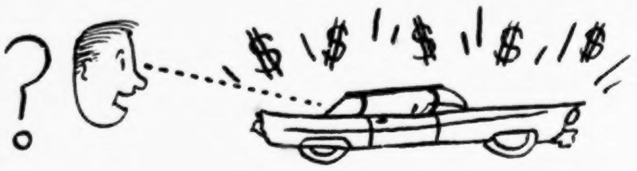
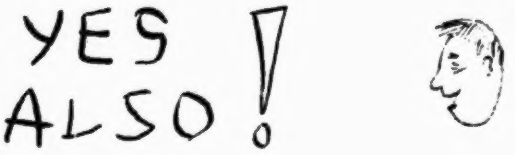
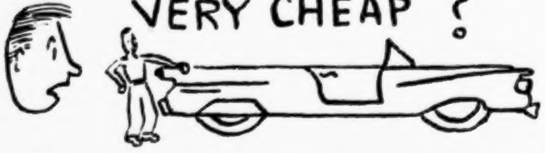
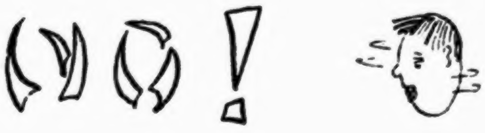
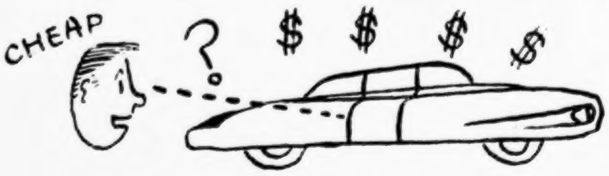
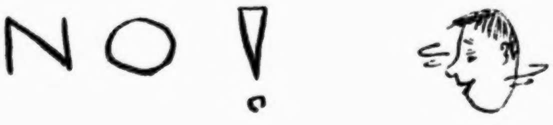
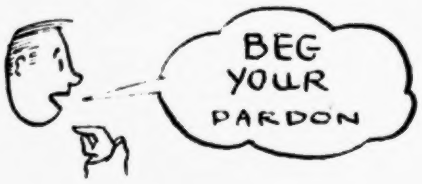
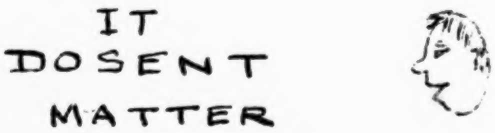
ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

9. Ni kà ch'e m̄-haî hó kè.

Kóh yat-kà ch'e m̄-haî kwaì kè.

Kóh kà ch'e m̄-haî p'ũng kè.

LESSON 10

	A	B
1	 FINE HOW IS SHE ? HIS WIFE	 fine ~ yours ? ((MR. WONG))
2	 WHAT KIND OF MAN ?	
3	 and MRS WONG ?	 very beautiful
4	 ? intelligent STUDENT MR. LEI	
5	 ? capable Man	
6		
7		
8		
9		
10	 BEG YOUR PARDON	 IT DOSENT MATTER

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Wōng Sin-Shaang, neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* hó mà?
   B: K'uĭ hó hó. Neĭ kè t'aaî-t'aaì* ne?
   A: K'uĭ to hó hó.
2. A: Wōng Sin-Shaang haî tîm-yeûng* kè naām-yān* à?
   B: Wōng Sin-Shaang haî hó kè naām-yān*.
3. A: Wōng T'aaì-T'aaì* haî tîm-yeûng* kè nuĭ-yān* ne?
   B: Wōng T'aaì-T'aaì* haî hó lèng kè nuĭ-yān*.
4. A: Leĭ Sin-Shaang haî m̄-haî hó ts'ung-mīng kè hôk-shaang?
   B: Haî, Leĭ Sin-Shaang haî hó ts'ung-mīng kè hôk-shaang.
5. A: Leĭ Sin-Shaang haî m̄-haî hó poón-sẑ kè naām-yān* ne?
   B: Haî, Leĭ Sin-Shaang yîk haî hó poón-sẑ kè naām-yān*.
6. A: Ni kà ch'e haî m̄-haî hó kwaì kè à?
   B: Haî, ni kà ch'e haî hó kwaì kè.
7. A: Kóh kà ch'e haî m̄-haî hó kwaì kè ne?
   B: Haî, kóh kà ch'e to haî hó kwaì kê.
8. A: Ni kà ch'e haî m̄-haî hó p'ēng kè à?
   B: M̄-haî, ni kà ch'e m̄-haî hó p'ēng kè.
9. A: Kóh kà ch'e haî m̄-haî hó p'ēng kè ne?
   B: M̄-haî, kóh kà ch'e yîk-to m̄-haî hó p'ēng kè.
10. A: Tuì m̄-chuê. Tuì m̄-chuê.
    B: M̄-kân-iù. M-kân-iù.

LESSON 10

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: How is your wife, Mr. Wōng?
   B: She is fine. How is your wife?
   A: She is fine also.
2. A: What kind of a man is Mr. Wōng?
   B: Mr. Wōng is a good man.
3. A: What kind of a woman is Mrs. Wōng?
   B: Mrs. Wōng is a very beautiful woman.
4. A: Is Mr. Leǐ a very intelligent student?
   B: Yes, Mr. Leǐ is a very intelligent student.
5. A: Is Mr. Leǐ a very capable man?
   B: Yes, Mr. Leǐ is also a very capable man.
6. A: Is this car very expensive?
   B: Yes, this car is very expensive.
7. A: Is that car very expensive?
   B: Yes, that car is also very expensive.
8. A: Is this car very cheap?
   B: No, this car is not very cheap.
9. A: Is that car very cheap?
   B: No, that car is not very cheap also.
10. A: Pardon me.
    B: It doesn't matter.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: T'aaì-t'aaì* hó mà?

   B: K'uĭ keî hó. Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* ne?

   A: K'uĭ to hó hó.

2. A: Wōng Sin-Shaang haî tîm-yeûng* kè naām-yān* à?

   B: Wōng Sin-Shaang haî hó ts'ung-mīng kè naām-yān*.

3. A: Ni kà haî tîm-yeûng* kè ch'e ne?

   B: Kóh kà haî hó kwaì kè ch'e.

4. A: Leĭ T'aaì-T'aaì* haî tîm-yeûng* kè nuĭ-yān* à?

   B: Leĭ T'aaì-T'aaì* haî hó poón-sẑ kè nuĭ-yān*.

5. A: Ni poón haî m̄-haî hó p'ēng kè tsẑ-tîn; kóh poón haî
   m̄-haî hó p'ēng kè wâ*-pò?

   B: Haî, ni poón haî hó p'ēng kè tsẑ-tîn; kóh poón to haî
   hó p'ēng kè wâ*-pò.

6. A: Kóh kòh haî m̄-haî hó lèng kè nuĭ-yān*, haî m̄-haî hó
   poón-sẑ kè nuĭ-yān*?

   B: M̄-haî, kóh kòh m̄-haî hó lèng kè nuĭ-yān*, yîk m̄-haî hó
   poón-sẑ kè nuĭ-yān*.

7. A: Ni yat-kòh Meĭ-Kwòk yān haî hó ts'ung-mīng kè, yik-
   waâk hó m̄-ts'ung-mīng kè ne?

   B: Ni yat-kòh Meĭ-Kwòk yān haî hó ts'ung-mīng kè.

8. A: Kóh yat-kòh Chung-Kwòk hôk-shaang haî hó poón-sẑ kè;
   ni yat-kòh Ying-Kwòk hôk-shaang haî tîm-yeûng* kè?

   B: Kóh yat-kòh Chung-Kwòk hôk-shaang haî hó poón-sẑ kè;
   ni yat-kòh Ying-Kwòk hôk-shaang yîk-to haî hó poón-sẑ kè.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

9. A: Ni yat-pô tsẑ-tîn haî tîm-yeûng* kè, m̄-haî tîm-yeûng* kè?

B: Kóh yat-pô tsẑ-tîn haî hó kwaì kè, m̄-haî hó p'ēng kè.

10. A: Ni kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ mŏ hó hó kè sin-shaang; kóh kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ mŏ hó hó kè sin-shaang à?

B: Yaŭ, ni kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ hó hó kè sin-shaang; kóh kaan hôk-haaû yîk-to yaŭ hó hó kè sin-shaang.

11. A: Ni kaan uk yaŭ hó lèng kè mi-yĕ; kóh kaan uk yaŭ hó lèng kè mi-yĕ?

B: Ni kaan uk yaŭ hó lèng kè nuĭ-yān*; kóh kaan uk to yaŭ hó lèng kè nuĭ-yān*.

12. A: Neĭ maaĭ yat-kà hó kwaì kè mi-yĕ, yat-kaan hó p'ēng kè mi-yĕ?

B: Ngŏh maaĭ yat-kà hó kwaì kè ch'e, yat-kaan hó p'ēng kè uk.

13. A: Pin cheung pò-chî haî hó kè; pin cheung pò-chî m̄-haî hó kè?

B: Ni yat-cheung pò-chî haî hó kè; kóh yat-cheung pò-chî m̄-haî hó kè.

14. A: Pin kòh hôk-shaang haî ts'ung-mīng kè; pin kòh hôk-shaang m̄-haî ts'ung-mīng kè?

B: Kóh kòh hôk-shaang haî ts'ung-mīng kè; ni kòh hôk-shaang m̄-haî ts'ung-mīng kè.

15. A: Tuì m̄-chuê, tuì m̄-chuê. Ngŏh tsaú là.

B: M̄-kấn-iù, m̄-kấn-iù. Maân maân* haāng.

LESSON 10

WORD LIST

1.	tuì-m̄-shuê, tuì-m̄-chuê	sorry, excuse me, pardon me
2.	m̄-kán-iù	it doesn't matter, not at all, it's all right.
3.	t'aaì-t'aaì*	Mrs., wife
4.	Wōng	surname
5.	Leĭ	surname
6.	nuĭ-yān*	woman, female
7.	naām-yān*	man, male
8.	tîm-yeûng*	how? in what manner?
9.	yîk	also, moreover, too, in addition to
10.	to	also, too
11.	lèng	beautiful, handsome, in good quality
12.	poón-sẑ	capable
13.	ts'ung-mīng	intelligent, clever
14.	p'ēng (p'īng)	inexpensive, economical
15.	kwaì	expensive
16.	kà	AN, frame; final particle, fusion form of kè and à
17.	ch'e	car, automobile
18.	kè	possessive or modifying particle, that, which
19.	yîk-to	also, too

LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

729

男 naām: man; male; son.

男人 naām-yān*: a man; husband.

男女 naām nuǐ: man and woman,

775

女 nuǐ: female; girl; daughter.

女人 nuǐ-yān*: a woman.

女子 nuǐ-tsź: a young lady.

婦女 foŏ-nuǐ: women in general.

1080

太 t'aaî: too; very; extreme; term of respect.

太過 t'aaî-kwŏh: to go too far; out of proportion.

太多 t'aaî toh: too much.

男 女 太

男 女 太

男 め 太

1331

字 tsẑ: letter; character; symbol; word;name.

字母 tsẑ-mŏ: alphabet; vowel.

草字 ts'ó tsẑ: the running hand word.

生字 shaang tsẑ: unfamiliar or uncommon character or word.

1365

疼 t'ùng: ache; pain; to feel a pain.

疼愛 t'ùng-oì: to love deeply.

字 疼

字 疼

字 疼

LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

1159

都 to: even; also; a capital; city.

我都去 ngǒh to hùi: I also go.

京都 king-to: the capital.

552

貴 kwài: valuable; expensive.

貴姓 kwài sìng: what is your surname?

貴幹 kwài kòn: your business.

貴重 kwài-chûng: to value highly; valuable.

富貴 fòo-kwài: wealth and honor.

高貴 ko-kwài: high-born; high class.

47

車 ch'e: cart, vehicle (Cl. kà)

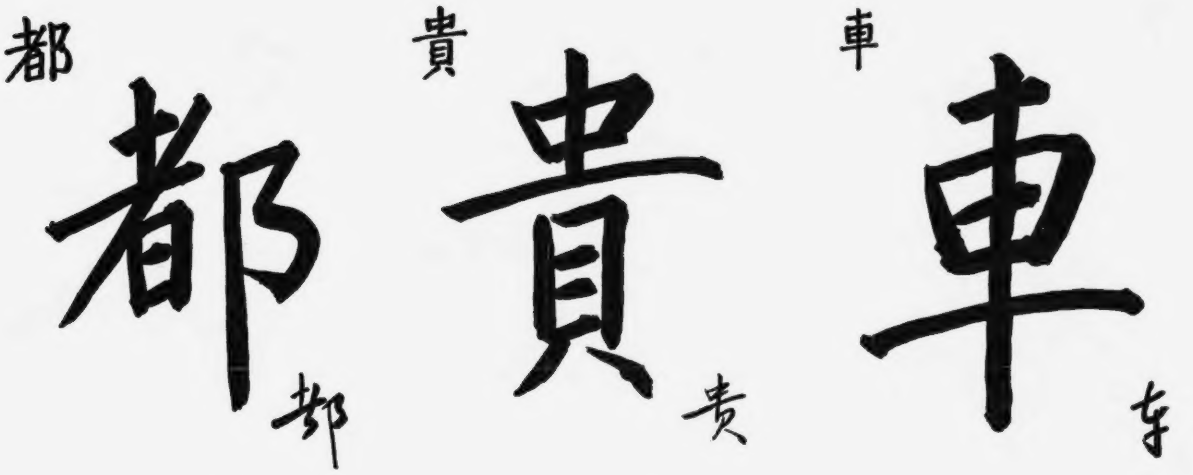
車 kui: (lit pro) cart

汽車 hèi-ch'e: automobile

火車 fóh-ch'e: a train

電車 tìn-ch'e: tram car

車輪 ch'e-lûn: wheel



1435

黃 wōng: yellow; imperial.

黃豆 wōng-tâu: soy bean.

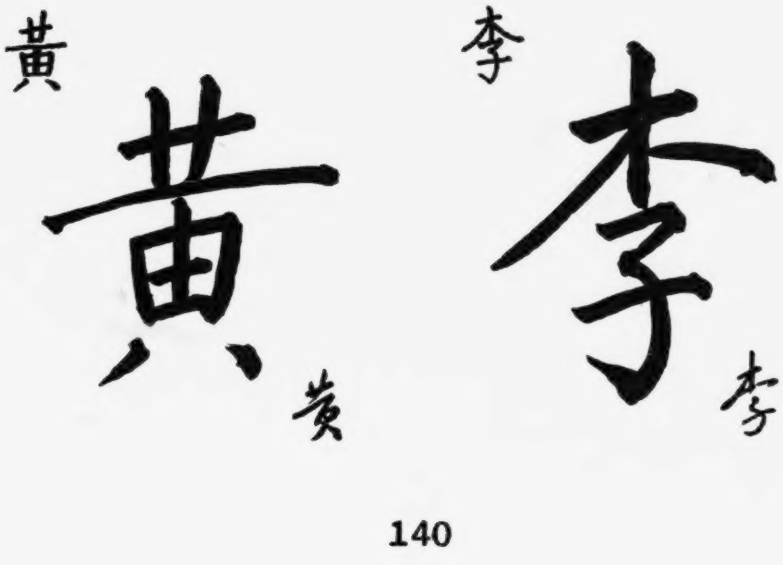
黃昏 wōng-fan: twilight; eventide.

黃河 Wōng-Hōh: The Yellow River.

598

李 leǐ: plum; a very common surname.

李仔 leǐ tsaí: plum.



LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

黃二係學生，佢係美國陸軍語言學校 kè 學生；李四亦都係 ni 間學校 kè 學生。黃二讀中文書，sé 中文字；李四亦都讀中文書，sé 中文字。

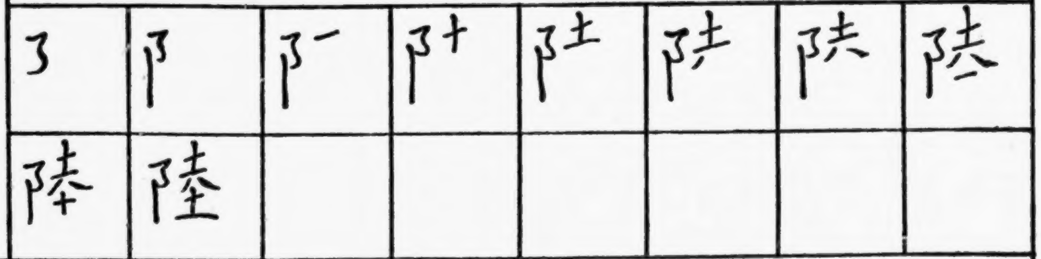
黃二係男人*，係一 kòh 好好 kè 人；李四亦係男人*，亦係一 kòh 好好 kè 人；佢地都係 hó ch'ung-mīng kè 人，佢地都有 hó 貴 kè 車；黃二有太太*，黃太太*係一 kòh 好 ch'ung-mīng kè 女人*；李四亦都有太太*，李太太*亦都係一 kòh 好 ch'ung-mīng kè 女人*。

LESSON 10

WRITING MATERIAL

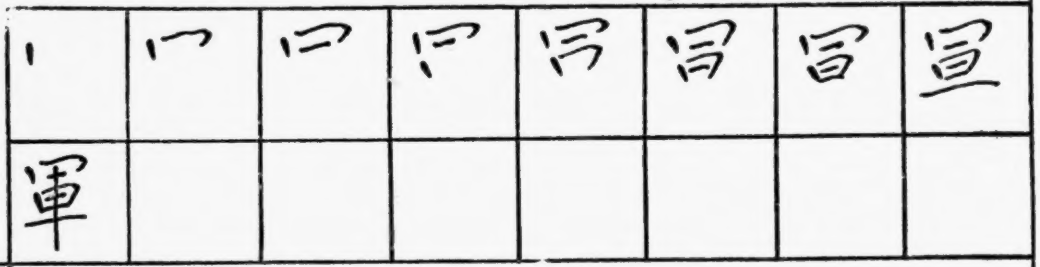
陸

Character Number 646 Radical Number 170
Stroke Number 10 阝, 阜



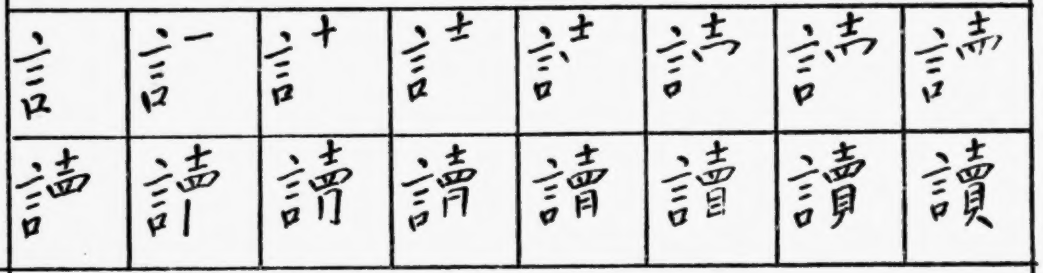
軍

Character Number 557 Radical Number 159
Stroke Number 9 車



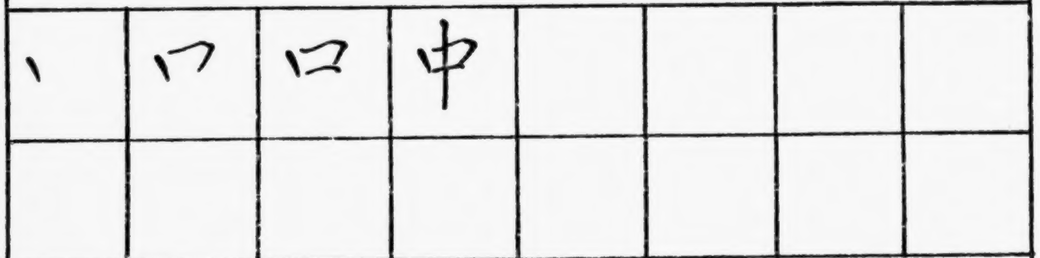
讀

Character Number 1352 Radical Number 149
Stroke Number 22 言



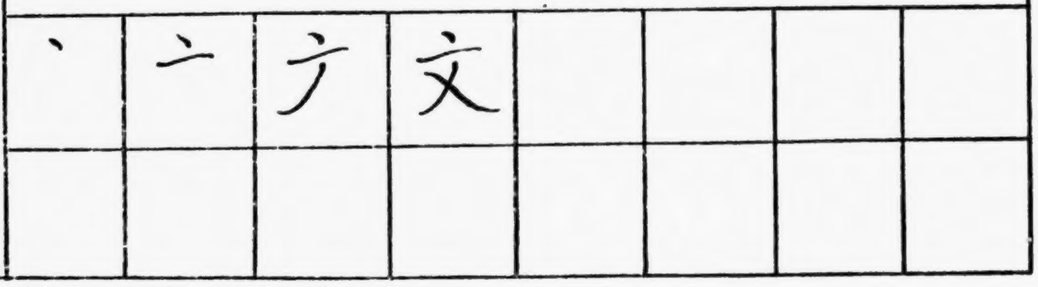
中

Character Number 145 Radical Number 2
Stroke Number 4 丨



文

Character Number 672 Radical Number 67
Stroke Number 4 文



LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Kam-yât kè t'in-heì hó m̄-hó à?

   Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* ko m̄-ko ne?

   K'uĭ kè saì-man-tsaî aî m̄-aî à?

2. Kam-yat ît m̄-ît à?

   Neĭ kwooî m̄-kwooî ne?

   K'uĭ mōng m̄-mōng à?

3. Kam-yât k'uĭ hó mà?

   Tsòk-yât neĭ mōng mà?

   Ts'ìn-yât neĭ-teî kwooî mà?

4. K'uĭ kam-yât hó m̄-hó à?

   Neĭ tsòk-yât mōng m̄-mōng ne?

   Neĭ-teî ts'ìn-yât kwooî m̄ kwooî à?

5. Kam-yât kè t'in-heì hó.

   Ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* ko.

   K'uĭ kè saì-man-tsaî aî.

6. Kam-yât ît.

   Kam-yât keì ît.

   Kam-yât hó ît.

   Kam-yât fei-sheúng-chi ît.

   Kam-yât t'aaì ît.

7. Hó, kam-yât k'uĭ hó.

   Mōng, tsòk-yât ngŏh mōng.

   Kwooĭ, ts'ìn-yât ngŏh-teî kwooî.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - STUCTURAL PATTERNS

8. Hó, k’uĭ kam-yât hó hó.

   Mōng, ngŏh tsòk-yât keî mōng.

   Kwooî, ngŏh-teî ts’īn-yât fei-sheūng-chi kwooî.

9. M̄-hó, kam-yât k’uĭ m̄-hó.

   M̄-mōng, tsòk-yât ngŏh m̄-mōng.

   M̄-kwooî, ts’īn yât ngŏh-teî m̄-kwooî.

10. M̄-hó, k’uĭ kam-yât m̄-haî hó hó.

    M̄-mōng, ngŏh tsòk-yât m̄-haî keî mōng.

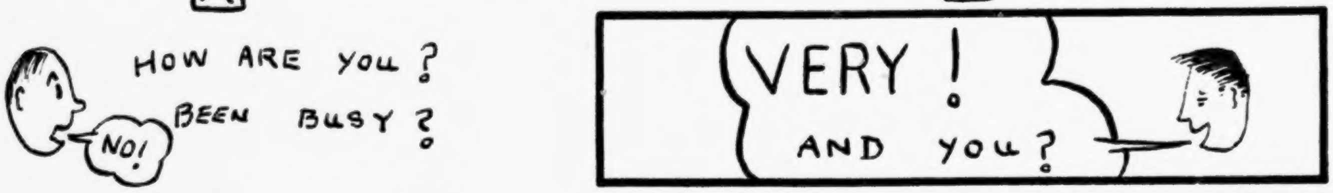
    M̄-kwooî, ngŏh-teî ts’īn-yât m̄ haî fei-sheūng-chi kwooî.

LESSON 11

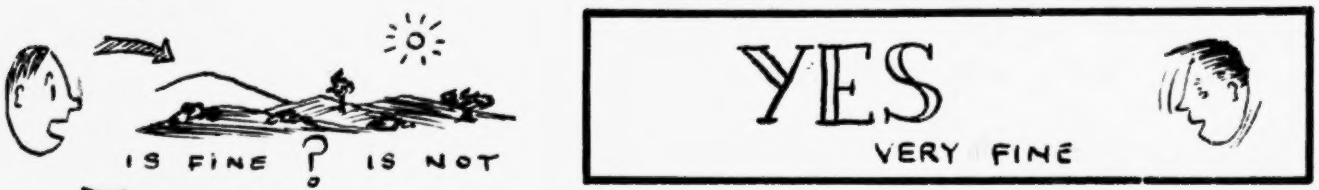
A

B

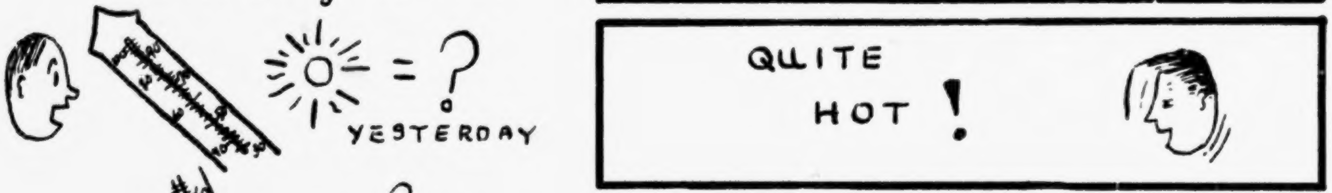
1


HOW ARE you ?
BEEN BUSY ?
NO!
VERY !
AND you ?

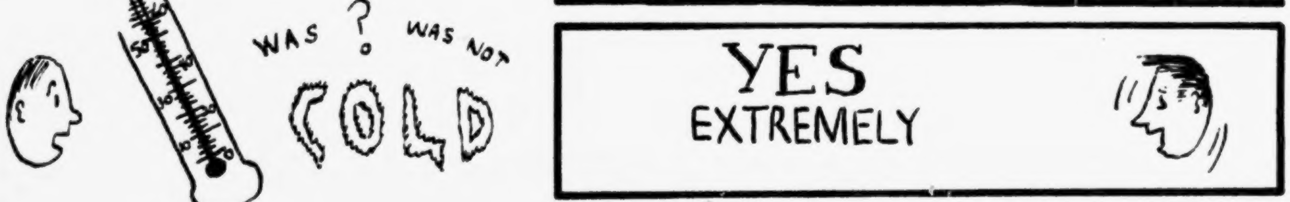
2


IS FINE ? IS NOT
YES
VERY FINE

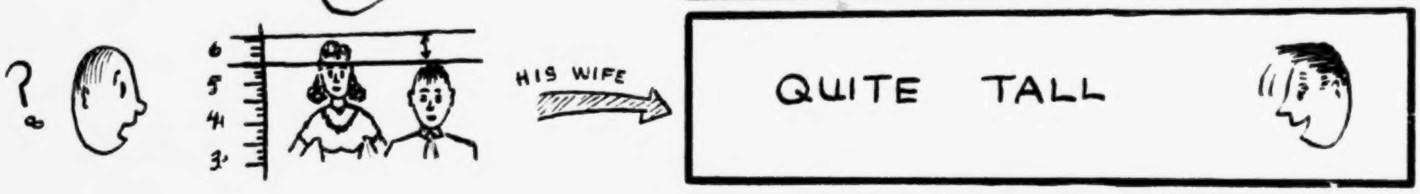
3


= ?
YESTERDAY
QUITE
HOT !

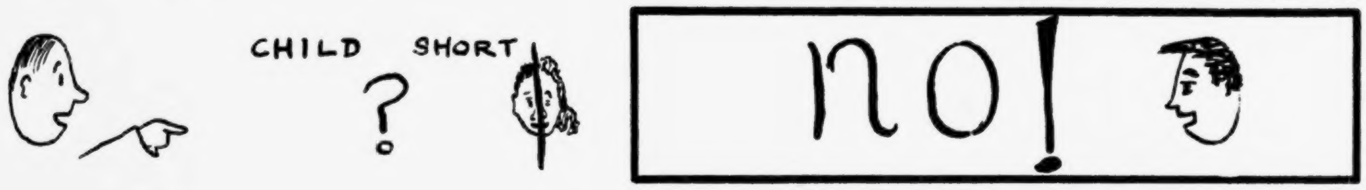
4


WAS ? WAS NOT
COLD
YES
EXTREMELY

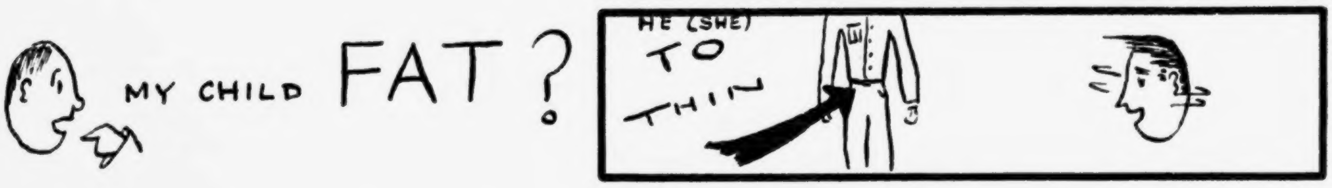
5


?
6
5
4
3
HIS WIFE
QUITE TALL

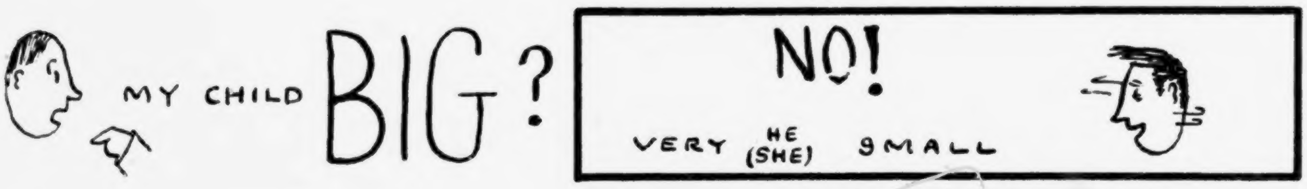
6


CHILD SHORT
?
no!

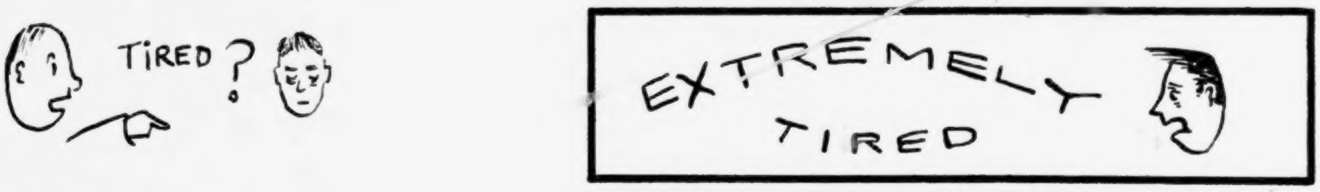
7


MY CHILD FAT ?
HE (SHE)
TO
THIN

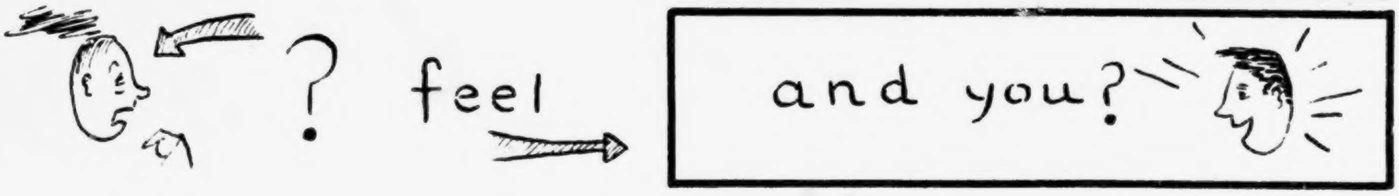
8


MY CHILD BIG ?
NO!
VERY HE (SHE) SMALL

9


TIRED ?
EXTREMELY
TIRED

10


? feel
and you?

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Tîm à, kân-loî* mōng mà?

B: Kân-loî* hó mōng. Neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh kân-loî* m̄-mōng.

2. A: Kam-yât kè t'in-heî hó m̄-hó à?

B: Hó, kam-yât kè t'in-heî hó hó.

3. A: Tsòk-yât ît m̄-ît ne?

B: Ît, tsòk-yât keî ît.

4. A: Ts'īn-yât laăng m̄-laăng à?

B: Laăng, ts'īn-yât fei-sheūng-chi laăng.

5. A: Neĭ kè t'aaî-t'aaî* ko mà?

B: Ko, ngŏh kè t'aaî-t'aaî* keî ko.

6. A: K'uĭ kè saî-man-tsaî aî mà?

B: M̄-aî, k'uĭ kè saî-man-tsaî m̄-aî.

7. A: Ngŏh kè saî-man-tsaî feī mà?

B: M̄-feī, neĭ kè saî-man-tsaî m̄-feī; k'uĭ t'aaî shaù.

8. A: Ngŏh kè saî-man-tsaî taaî m̄-taaî à?

B: M̄-taaî, neĭ kè saî-man-tsaî m̄-taaî; k'uĭ hó saî.

9. A: Neĭ-teî kam-yât kwooî m̄-kwooî à?

B: Kwooî, ngŏh-teî kam-yât fei-sheūng-chi kwooî.

10. A: Neĭ kam-yât kòk tak tîm à?

B: Ngŏh kam-yât kòk tak hó hó. Neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh kam-yât kòk tak m̄-haî keî hó.

LESSON 11

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: How are you? Have you been busy lately?
   B: I have been very busy lately. And you?
   A: I haven't been busy lately.
2. A: Is the weather fine today?
   B: Yes, the weather is very fine today.
3. A: Was it hot yesterday?
   B: Yes, it was quite hot yesterday.
4. A: Was it cold the day before yesterday?
   B: Yes, it was extremely cold the day before yesterday.
5. A: Is your wife tall?
   B: Yes, my wife is quite tall.
6. A: Is his child short?
   B: No, his child is not short.
7. A: Is my child fat?
   B: No, your child is not fat; he is too thin.
8. A: Is my child big?
   B: No, your child is not big; he is very small.
9. A: Are you tired today?
   B: Yes, we are extremely tired today.
10. A: How do you feel today?
    B: I feel very well today. And you?
    A: I don't feel very well today.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Sin-Shaang, neĭ kân-loì* keì hó a mắ?

B: Keì hó a. Neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh to hó hó.

2. A: Neĭ hó mà?

B: Hó, ngŏh hó hó.

3. A: K'uĭ kè saì-man-tsaì feì mà?

B: M̄-feì, k'uĭ kè saì-man-tsaì m̄-feì. K'uĭ hó shaù.

4. A: Ni kòh nuĭ-yān* tîm-yeûng* ne?

B: Kóh kòh nuĭ-yān* hó lèng. K'uĭ m̄-ko m̄-aì.

5. A: Kam-yât ni kòh hôk-shaang tîm-yeûng* à?

B: Kam-yât ni kòh hôk-shaang keì hó.

6. A: Tsòk-yât kè t'in-heì tîm-yeûng* ne?

B: Tsòk-yât kè t'in-heì fei-sheūng-chi hó, m̄-laăng m̄-ît.

7. A: Ts'în-yât laăng m̄-laăng à?

B: M̄-laăng, ts'în-yât m̄-haî t'aaì laăng.

8. A: Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* kam-yât haî m̄-haî hó mōng ne?

B: M̄-haî, k'uĭ kam-yât m̄-haî hó mōng. K'uĭ kam-yât hó tak-haān.

9. A: Kóh kà ch'e fei-sheūng-chi kwaì yik-waâk fei-sheūng-chi p'ēng à?

B: Kóh kè ch'e m̄-haî fei-sheūng-chi kwaì, yîk-to m̄-haî fei-sheūng-chi p'ēng.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. A: Meĭ-Kwòk yān hó ko, hó taaî, yik-waâk hó aì, hó saì.

B: Meĭ-Kwòk yān hó ko, hó taaî; m̄-haî hó aì, hó saì.

11. A: Ni kaan paan-fōng* kè ch'eung, ts'eūng, moōn, tim-yeûng* ne?

B: Ni kaan paan-fōng* kè ch'eung, ts'eūng, moōn m̄-haî keî ko, yîk-to m̄-haî keì aì.

12. A: Kóh kòh naām-yān* kè saì-man-tsaì tîm-yeûng* à?

B: Kóh kòh naām-yān* kè saì-man-tsaì m̄-haî t'aaì feì, m̄-haî t'aaì shaù, yîk m̄-haî t'aaì taaî, t'aaì saì.

13. A: Kam-yât kè t'in-heì fei-sheūng-chi hó, m̄-laăng m̄-ît. Neĭ huì m̄-huì kaai, maaĭ m̄-maaĭ yĕ ne?

B: Kam-yât kè t'in-heì fei-sheūng-chi hó, m̄-laăng m̄-ît. Ngŏh huì kaai, ngŏh maaĭ yĕ.

14. A: Kam-yât t'aaì laăng. Neĭ tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: Kam-yât t'aaì laăng. Ngŏh m̄-huì kaai. Ngŏh tá tîn-wâ* peì ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì*.

15. A: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, kam-yât mōng mà?

B: Ngŏh kam-yât hó mōng. Neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh kam-yât yîk-to hó mōng.

LESSON 11

WORD LIST

1.	t'in-heì	weather
2.	kam-yât	today
3.	tsòk-yât	yesterday
4.	ts'ìn-yât	day before yesterday
5.	kân-loì	recently, lately
6.	saì-man-tsaî	child, son
7.	keî	quite, a few, several, how? how many?
8.	t'aaì	too, excessively
9.	fei-sheūng-chi	extremely, exceedingly
10.	ko	tall, high, superior
11.	taaî	big, old in age, large
12.	saì	small, young, slender
13.	feì	fat, bulky, greasy
14.	shaù	skinny, thin
15.	laăng	cold, chilly
16.	ît	hot, warm
17.	aî	short in height
18.	mōng	busy
19.	kwooî	tired, weary
20.	kòk-tak	to feel

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

1142

天	t'in: heaven; sky; celestial; day.
好天	hó t'in: fine weather
天氣	t'in-heì atmosphere· climate.
天聰	t'in ts'ung intelligence; ability.
天時	t'in-shī weather; season.

270

氣	heì: air; gas; temper
空氣	hung-heì: air
氣候	heì-haû: climate; temperature
氣力	heì-lîk: strength
斷氣	t'uén heì: to die

1452

日	yât: the sun; a day; daily.
日用	yât yûng: daily expense; necessities.
日曆	yât-lîk: calendar.
日本	Yât-Poon: Japan

天 氣 气 日

天 氣 日

日

天 氣

439

幾	keí: how many? how? a few; several.
幾時	keí-shī: when?
幾個	keí kòh: several.
幾多	keí-ton: how many?
第幾	taî-keí: which(of them)? what number?

582:

冷	laǎng: cold; chilly.
冷淡	laǎng-taâm: indifferent; dull.
冷笑	laǎng siù: sneer; cynical laugh.
發冷	faàt laǎng: to have a chill(malaria)
好冷	hó laǎng: very cold (weather).

幾 几 冷

幾 冷

幾 冷

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

36

熱 ît: hot, heat, burning

天熱 t'in ît: hot weather, summer time

發熱 faat ît: fever

熱心 ît-sam: zealous; devoted

1079

大 taaî: great; big; noble.

大人 taaî yān: a grown man; a great man; your honor.

大半 taaî poon: more then half; mostly.

大雨 taaî uě: heavy rain.

大海 taaî noí: high sea.

910

細 saì: small; fine; delicate.

細聲 saì sheng: in a whisper.

細心 saì-sam: heedful; careful.

熱 热 大 細

熱 大 細

熱 热 大 细

375

街 kaai: thoroughfare; street

出街 ch'ut kaai: to go out

行街 hāng kaai: to stroll about

街市 kaai-shǐ: market

1240

牆 ts'eūng: wall.

牆壁 ts'eūng-pik: wall.

街 牆

街 牆

街 墻 牆

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

黃先生講廣東話*，佢 kè 女* m̄-ooǐ 講廣東話*．

黃先生好 ko，好大，好 feī；佢 kè 女*好 aí，好細，好 shaù.

Kam-日天氣幾好，m̄-冷m̄-熱．黃先生 huì街．佢 kè 女*亦都 huì街；佢地 tá tîn-pò peí 黃太太*，亦都 keì ts'īn* peí 黃太太．

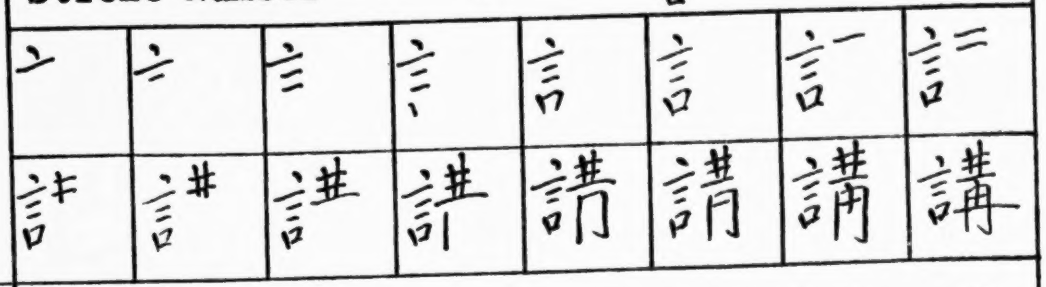
黃太太*sé sùn peí 黃先生，亦都 sùng yě peí 佢 kè 女*．

LESSON 11

WRITING MATERIAL

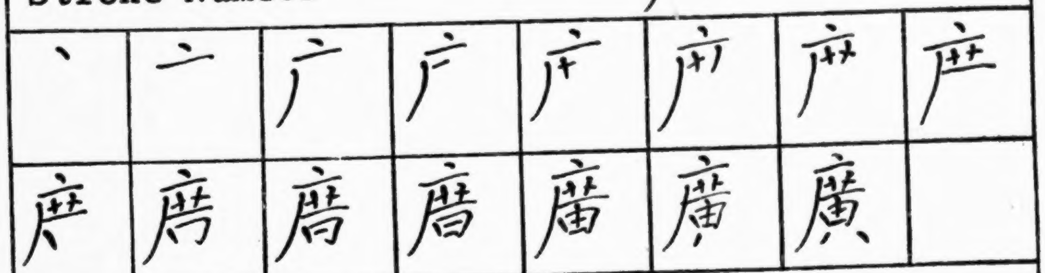
講

Character Number 504 Radical Number 149
Stroke Number 17 言



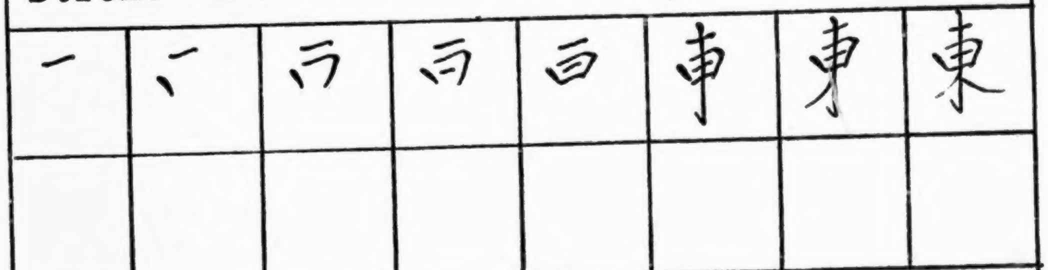
廣

Character Number 571 Radical Number 53
Stroke Number 15 广



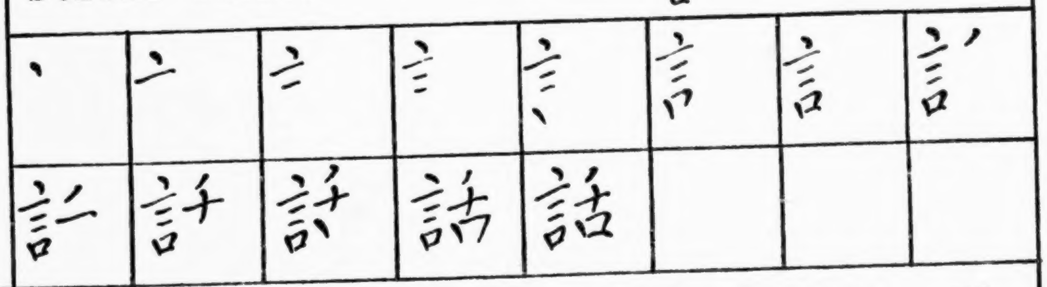
東

Character Number 1356 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 8 木



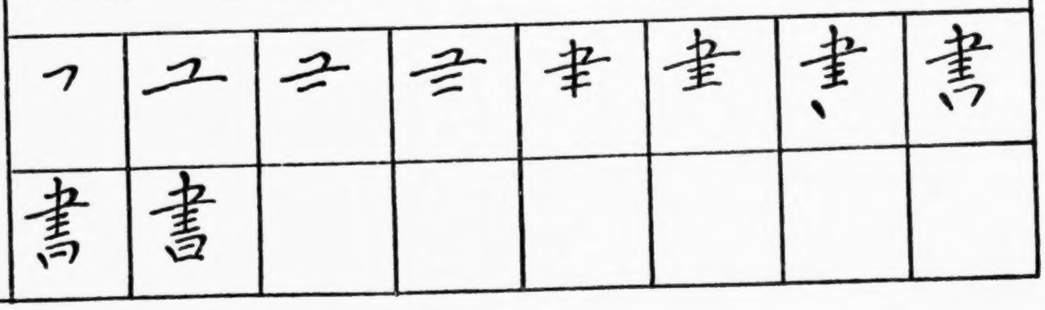
話

Character Number 1401 Radical Number 149
Stroke Number 13 言



書

Character Number 1008 Radical Number 73
Stroke Number 10 曰



LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Pin chi uēn-pat ch'eūng kwòh ni chi uēn-pat à?

   Pin kà ch'e kwaì kwòh ni kà ch'e ne?

   Pin kòh yān ko kwòh ni kòh yān à?

   Pin yat-kòh saì-man-tsaî ts'ung-mīng kwòh kóh kòh saì-man-tsaî ne?

2. Pin yât kè t'in-heì laăng kwòh kam-yât kè t'in-heì à?

   Neĭ kè ts'īn* toh kwòh pin-kòh kè ts'īn* ne?

   Ngŏh kè ch'e saì kwòh pin-kòh kè ch'e à?

   Pin kòh kè tsaî-nuĭ* shiú kwòh pin-kòh kè tsaî-nuĭ* ne?

3. Pin chi uēn-pat peî-kaaù ni chi uēn-pat ch'eūng ti à?

   Kóh yat-chi fán-pat peî pin yat-chi fán-pat tuén hó toh ne?

   Ts'în-maăn peî-kaaù pin yat-maăn nuĕn hó toh à?

   Pin kaan hôk-haaû peî kóh kaan hôk-haaû taaî ti ne?

4. K'uĭ kè saì-man-tsaî yaŭ mŏ neĭ kè saì-man-tsaî kòm ts'ung-mīng à?

   Neĭ kè ts'īn* yaŭ mŏ k'uĭ kè ts'īn* kòm toh ne?

   Ngŏh kè Kwóng-Tung Wâ* yaŭ mŏ k'uĭ kè Kwóng-Tung-Wâ* kòm hó ne?

   Neĭ-teî kè paan-fōng* yaŭ mŏ k'uĭ-teî kè paan-fōng* kòm taaî à?

5. Ngŏh t'ūng neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ, pin-kòh tsuì ko, pin kòh chì aî à?

   Neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ t'ūng k'uĭ, pin kòh chì taaî, pin kòh tsuì saì ne?

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Ngŏh t'ūng neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ, ngŏh tsuì ko, k'uĭ chì aî.

Neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ t'ūng k'uĭ, neĭ chì taaî, k'uĭ tsuì saì.

6. Kóh chi uēn-pat ch'eūng kwòh ni chi uēn-pat.

Ní kà ch'e kwaì kwòh ni kà ch'e.

Ni yat-kòh yān ko kwòh ni kòh yān.

Ni yat-kòh saì-man-tsaî ts'ung-mīng kwòh kóh yat-kòh saì-man-tsaî.

7. Tsòk-yât kè t'in-heì laăng kwòh kam-yât kè t'in-heì.

Ngŏh kè ts'ìn* toh kwòh neĭ kè ts'ìn*.

Neĭ kè ch'e saì kwòh ngŏh kè ch'e.

K'uĭ kè tsaî-nuĭ* shiú kwòh neĭ kè tsaî-nuĭ*.

8. Kóh-yat-chi uēn-pat peî-kaaù ni-chi uēn-pat ch'eūng ti.

Kóh-yat-chi fán-pat peî ni-yat-chi fán-pat tuén hó toh.

Ts'īn-măan peî-kaaù kam-maăn nuĕn hó toh.

Ni kaan hôk-haaû peî kóh kaan hôk-haaû taaî ti.

9. K'uĭ kè saì-man-tsaî yaŭ neĭ kè saì-man-tsaî kòm ts'ung-mīng.

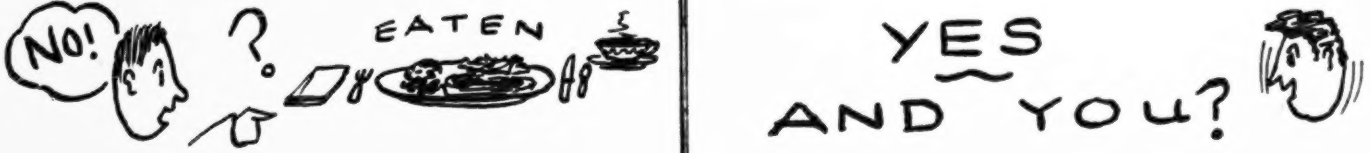
K'uĭ kè saì-man-tsaî mŏ neĭ kè saì-man-tsaî kòm ts'ung-mīng.

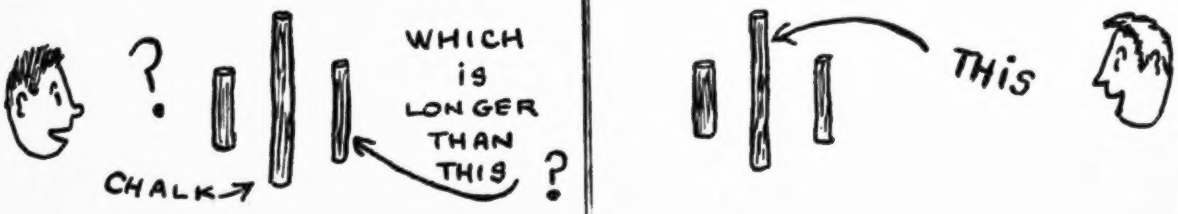
Ngŏh kè ts'ìn* yaŭ k'uĭ kè ts'ìn* kòm toh.

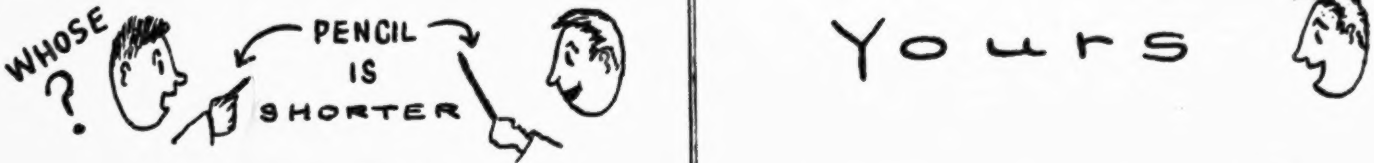
Ngŏh kè ts'ìn* mŏ k'uĭ kè ts'ìn* kòm toh.

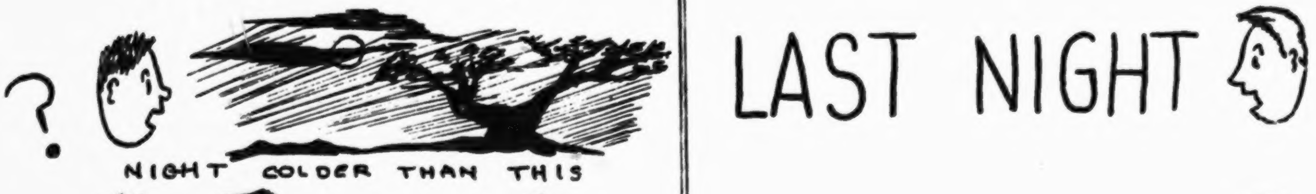
LESSON 12

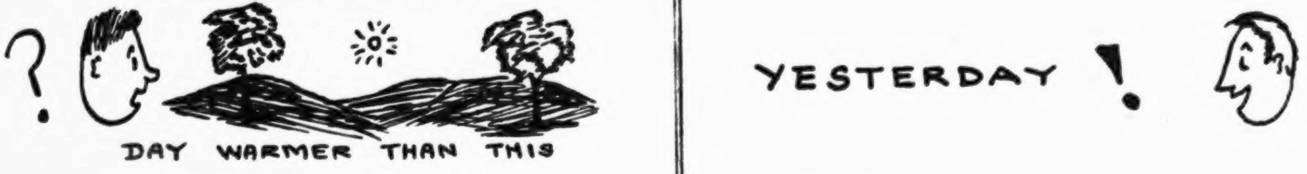
A | B

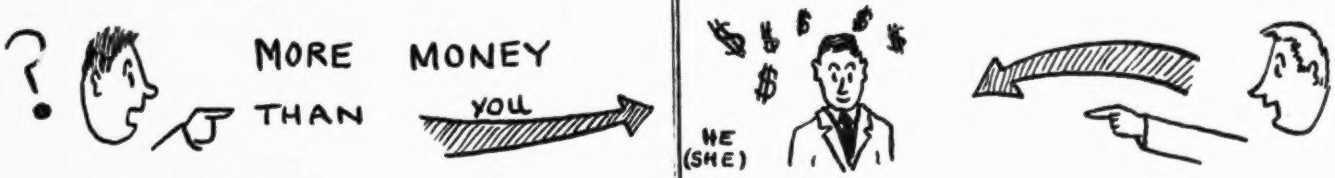
1

NO!
?
EATEN
YES
AND YOU?

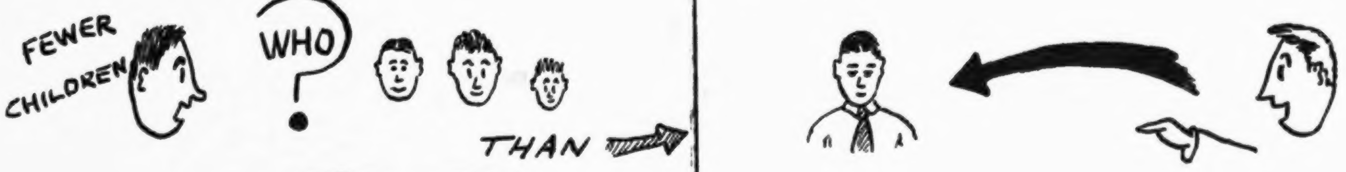
2

?
CHALK
WHICH is LONGER THAN THIS ?
THIS

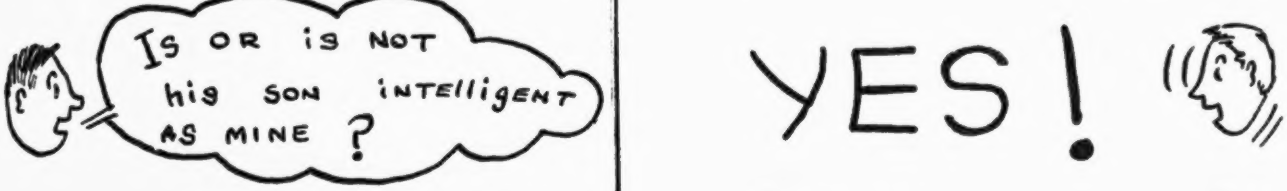
3

WHOSE ?
PENCIL IS SHORTER
Yours

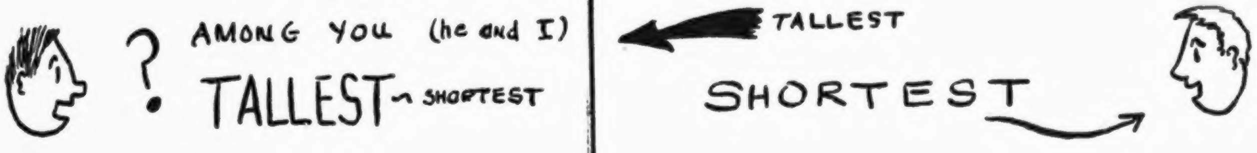
4

?
NIGHT COLDER THAN THIS
LAST NIGHT

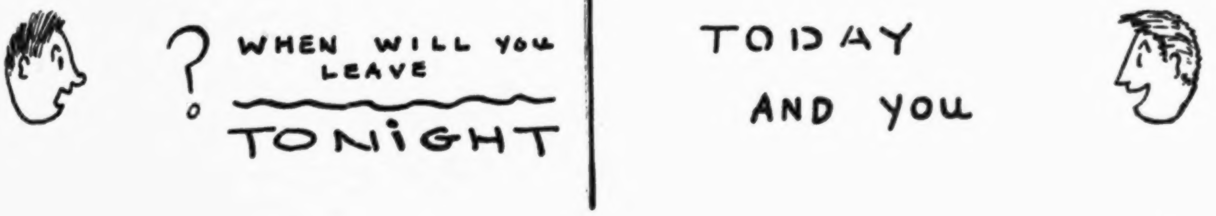
5

?
DAY WARMER THAN THIS
YESTERDAY !

6

?
MORE MONEY
THAN
YOU
HE (SHE)

7

FEWER CHILDREN
WHO ?
THAN

8

Is or is not his son intelligent as mine ?
YES!

9

?
AMONG YOU (he and I)
TALLEST
SHORTEST
TALLEST
SHORTEST

10

?
WHEN WILL YOU LEAVE
TONIGHT
TODAY
AND YOU

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Neĭ shîk-chóh faân meî à?

B: Ngŏh shîk-chóh là. Neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh meî-shîk.

2. A: Pin yat-chi fán-pat ch'eūng kwòh ni yat-chi fán-pat à?

B: Kóh yat-chi fán-pat ch'eūng kwòh ni yat-chi fán-pat.

3. A: Pin kòh kè uēn-pat tuén kwòh neĭ kè uēn-pat ne?

B: Neĭ kè uēn-pat tuén kwòh ngŏh ke uēn-pat.

4. A: Pin yat-maăn peî-kaaù kam-maăn tùng ti à?

B: Tsòk-maăn peî-kaaù kam-maăn tùng ti.

5. A: Pin yât peî-kaaù kam-yât nuĕn ti ne?

B: Tsòk-yât peî-kaaù kam-yât nuĕn ti.

6. A: Pin kòh kè ts'ìn* peî neĭ kè ts'ìn* toh hó toh à?

B: K'uĭ kè ts'ìn* peî ngŏh kè ts'ìn* toh hó toh.

7. A: Pin kòh kè tsaî nuĭ* peî neĭ kè tsaî nuĭ* shiú hó toh ne?

B: K'uĭ kè tsaî nuĭ* peî ngŏh kè tsaî nuĭ* shiú hó toh.

8. A: K'uĭ kè saì-man-tsaî yaŭ mŏ ngŏh kè saì-man-tsaî kòm
ts'ung-mìng à?

B: Yaŭ, k'uĭ kè saì-man-tsaî yaŭ neĭ kè saì-man-tsaî kòm
ts'ung-mìng.

9. A: Ngŏh t'ūng neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ, pin kòh tsuì ko, pin kòh
chì aì ne?

B: Neĭ t'ūng ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ, neĭ tsuì ko, ngŏh chì aì.

10. A: Neĭ-teî keî shì tsaú à?

B: Ngŏh-teî kam-yât tsaú. Neĭ-teî ne?

A: Ngŏh-teî kam-maăn tsaú.

LESSON 12

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Have you eaten yet? (A form of greeting).
   B: Yes, I have eaten. And you?
   A: No, I haven't eaten yet.
2. A: Which piece of chalk is longer than this one?
   B: That piece of chalk is longer than this one?
3. A: Whose pencil is shorter than yours?
   B: Your pencil is shorter than mine.
4. A: Which night was colder than tonight?
   B: Last night was colder than tonight.
5. A: Which day was warmer than today?
   B: Yesterday was warmer than today.
6. A: Who has much more money than you have?
   B: He has much more money than I have.
7. A: Who has much fewer children than you have?
   B: He has much fewer children than I have.
8. A: Is his son as intelligent as mine?
   B: Yes, his son is as intelligent as yours.
9. A: Among you, he and I, who is the tallest, and who is the shortest?
   B: Among you, he and I, you are the tallest, and I am the shortest.
10. A: When will you leave?
    B: We will leave today. And you?
    A: We will leave tonight.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān.

   B: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān.

   A: Neǐ keî hó a-mǎ?

   B: Keî hó à. Neǐ ne?

   A: Ngǒh to hó hó.

2. A: Ni chi pat t'ūng kóh chi pat, pin chi kwaì kwòh pin chi à?

   B: Ni chi pat t'ūng kóh chi pat, ni yat-chi kwaì kwòh kóh yat-chi.

3. A: Kóh yat-cheung chî t'ūng ni yat-cheung chî, pin cheung ch'eūng kwòh pin cheung ne?

   B: Kóh cheung chî t'ūng ni cheung chî, ni cheung ch'eūng kwòh kóh cheung.

4. A: Ni cheung î taaî kwòh kóh cheung î hó toh, yik-waâk saì kwòh kóh cheung î hó toh à?

   B: Ni cheung î taaî kwòh kóh cheung î hó toh, m̄-haî saì kwòh kóh cheung î hó toh.

5. A: Ni kaan paan-fōng* kè hak-paán ch'eūng kwòh yik-waâk tuén kwòh kóh kaan paan-fōng* kè hak-paán?

   B: Ni kaan paan-fōng* kè hak-paán ch'eūng kwòh kóh kaan paan-fōng* kè hak-paán, m̄-haî tuén kwòh kóh kaan paan-fōng* kè hak-paán.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

6. A: Pin pô tsẑ-tîn peî-kaaù ni pô tsẑ-tîn hó ti ne?

B: Kôh yat-pô tsẑ-tîn peî-kaaù ni pô tsẑ-tîn hó ti.

7. A: Pin yat-yât peî-kaaù kam-yât laăng hó toh à?

B: Tsòk-yât peî-kaaù kam-yât laăng hó toh.

8. A: Pin kòh kè ts'în* peî Wōng Sin-Shaang kè ts'în* shiú hó toh ne?

B: Leĭ Sin-Shaang kè ts'în* peî Wōng Sin-Shaang kè ts'în* shiú hó toh.

9. A: Pin kòh kè t'aaî-t'aaî* peî neĭ kè t'aaî-t'aaî* lèng ti à?

B: Wōng Sin-Shaang kè t'aaì-t'aaî* peî ngŏh kè t'aaî-t'aaî* lèng ti.

10. A: Kam-yât neĭ yaŭ mŏ tsòk-yât kàm mōng à?

B: Mŏ, kam-yât ngŏh mŏ tsòk-yât kàm mōng. Kam-yât ngŏh peî tsòk-yât tak-haān ti.

11. A: Tsòk-maăn yaŭ mŏ ts'în-maăn kòm laăng ne?

B: Mŏ, tsòk-maăn mŏ ts'în-maăn kòm laăng. Tsòk-maăn peî-kaaù ts'în-maăn nuĕn hó toh.

12. A: Neĭ kè Kwóng-Tung wâ* yaŭ mŏ neĭ kè Meĭ-Kwòk wâ* kòm hó à?

B: Yaŭ, ngŏh kè Kwóng-Tung wâ* yaŭ ngŏh kè Meĭ-Kwòk wâ* kòm hó.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

13. A: Ngŏh t'ūng neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ kè Chung-Mān tsẑ tîm-yeûng* ne?

B: Neĭ t'ūng ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ kè Chung-Mān tsẑ, ngŏh kè m̄-haî keî hó, k'uĭ kè hó ti, neĭ kè chì hó.

14. A: Ts'ìn-yât, tsòk-yât t'ūng kam-yât, keî shì kè t'in-heì chì tùng, keî shì kè t'in-heì tsuì ît à?

B: Ts'ìn-yât, tsòk-yât t'ūng kam-yât, ts'ìn-yât chì tùng, tsòk-yât nuĕn hó toh, kam-yât tsuì ît.

15. A: Neĭ tsaú meî à?

B: Ngŏh tsaú là. Neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh to tsaú là.

B: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

A: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

LESSON 12

WORD LIST

1.	ch'eūng	long (in length and in time), merit
2.	tuén	short (in length and in time), deficient
3.	tùng	cold, chilly
4.	nuĕn	warm
5.	toh	many, much
6.	shiú	few, little, seldom, scanty
7.	chì	prefix for superlative degree
8.	tsuì	prefix for superlative degree
9.	peî-kaaù	to compare with
10.	peî	to compare with
11.	kwòh	than, a particle used for comparison
12.	kòm	so, to such a degree
13.	tsòk-maăn	last night
14.	kam-maăn	tonight
15.	ts'īn-maăn	night before last
16.	t'ūng	and, for, with; same, altogether
17.	tsaî-nuĭ*	children, son and daughter
18.	keî shì	when? what time?
19.	chóh	suffix for past tense
20.	meî	not yet

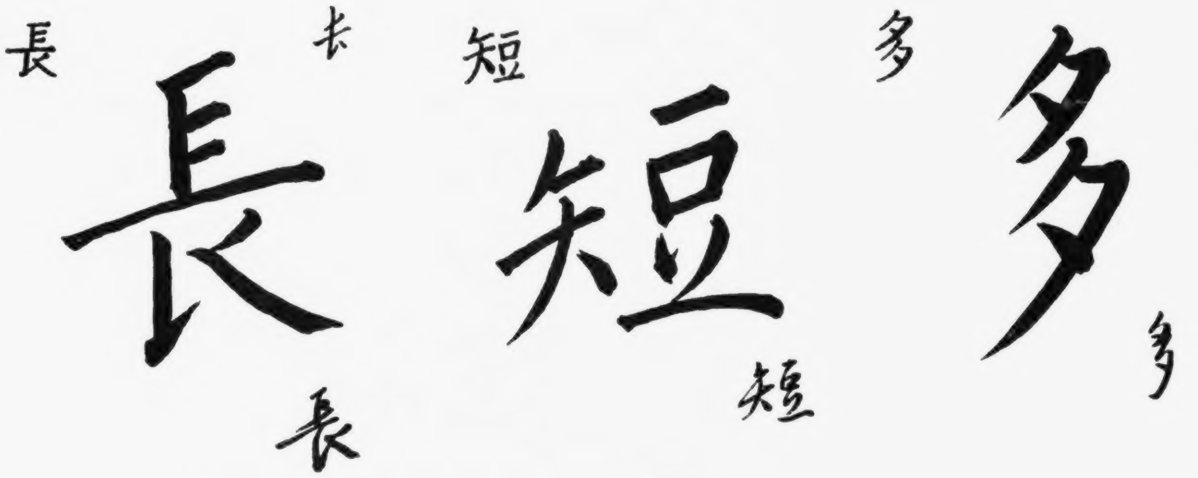
LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

64 長 ch'eūng: long
長 cheúng: old, to grow, to exalt
長氣 ch'eūng-heī: tedious, long steamer; talkative.
長短 ch'eūng-tuén: merits & defects
家長 ka-cheúng: head of a family
長子 cheúng-tsź: eldest son
長大 cheúng-taaî to grow up

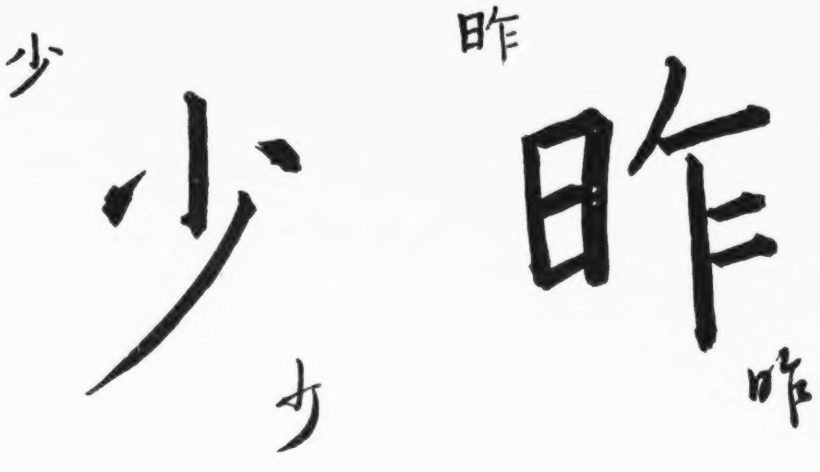
1340
短 tuén: short; brief; few.
長短 ch'eūng tuén: detail; good point and bad point; measurement.
短處 tuén-ch'uè: defect; shortcoming.
短命 tuén mêng: to die young.

1181
多 toh: many; much.
多數 toh-shò: majority; many.
多半 toh poòn: the larger part.
多少 toh-shiú: a certain quantity.
幾多 keí-toh: how much? how many?



1002
少 shiú, shiù: young; immature; few seldom; deficient.
多少 toh shiú: several; some.
太少 t'aaì shiú: too few.
少年人 shiù-nīn yān: a young man.
少時 shiù shī: in boyhood.

1294
昨 tsôk, tsòk: yesterday; recently; lately.
昨日 tsôk-yât: yesterday.
昨晚 tsôk-maăn: last night.



READING MATERIAL

404

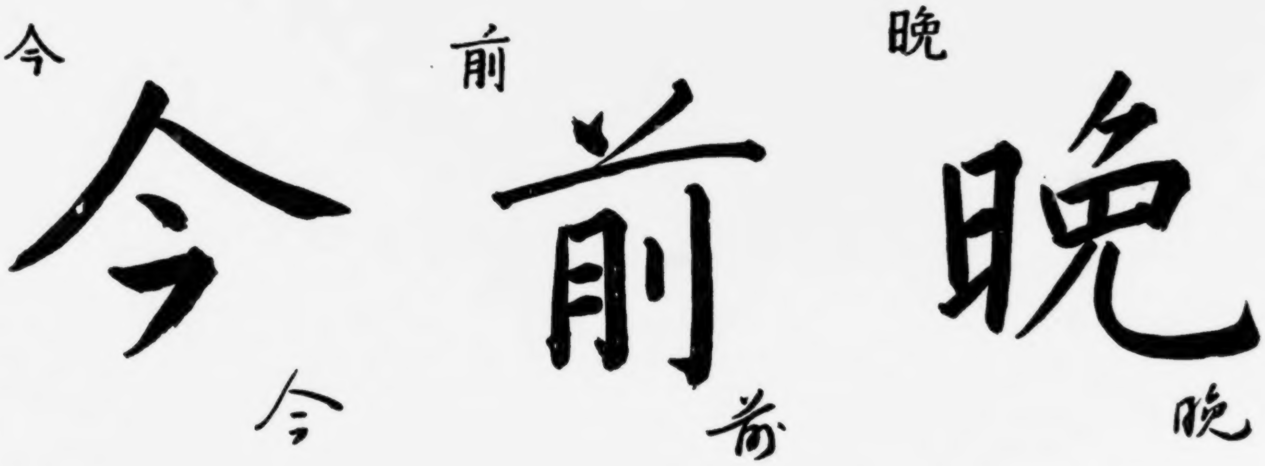
今	kam: the present time; now
今日	kam-yât: today
今年	kam-nīn: this year
今生	kam-shaeng: this life
至今	chì kam: until now

1254

前	ts'Īn: in front, before; first; to go forward.
前日	ts'Īn-yât: day before yesterday.
前途	ts'Īn-t'ō. the future.
前進	ts'Īn-tsùn: to go forward, to make progress.

661

晚	maǎn: late, evening.
晚黑	maǎn-haak: night; evening.
晚餐	maǎn-ts'aan. supper.
晚間	maǎn-kaan: during the night.

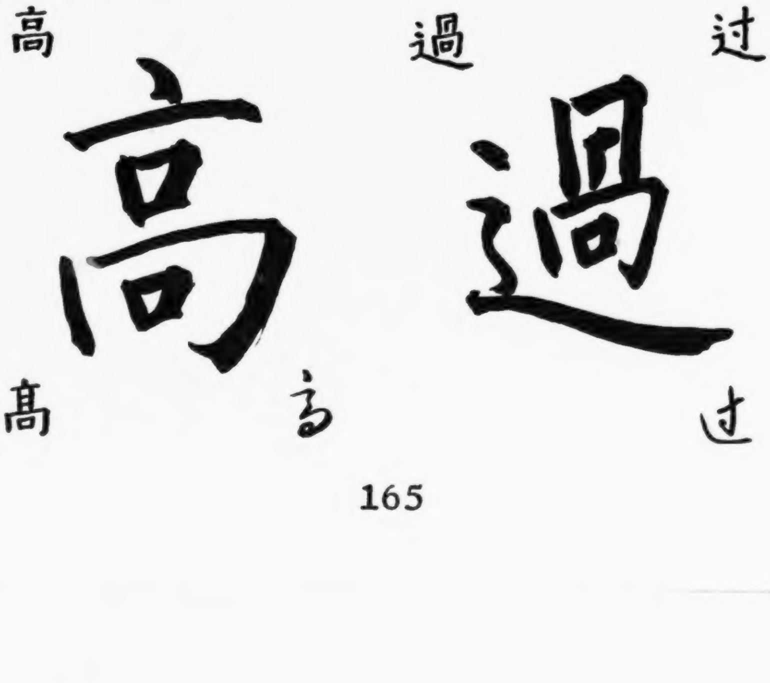


477

高	ko: tall; lofty; eminent.
高等	ko táng: a high degree.
高尚	ko-sheûng: high principled; magnamimous.
高興	ko-hìng: pleased; to take pleasure in; joyful.
高貴	ko-kwaī: high class.

568

過	kwòh: to pass by; to pass over; finished.
過夜	kwòh yê: to pass the night.
過身	kwòh shan: to pass away; to die.
過時	kwòh shī: late.
過期	kwòh k'eī: expired; after the time fixed.
改過	koí-kwòh: to reform; to amend.



LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

你 kè 車大過我 kè 車，亦都貴過我 kè 車．你 kè ts'īn* 多過我 kè ts'īn*，我 kè ts'īn* 少過 - mīng 你 kè ts'īn*；我 kè 太太* 高過你 kè 太太*，我 kè 女* ch'ung - 過你 kè 女*．

我地三 kòh 人．我高過你．你高過佢；我 chì 高．佢 chì aí．

我有 leŭng chi uēn-pat, ni chi peí kóh chi 長 ti, kóh chi peí ni chi 短 ti.

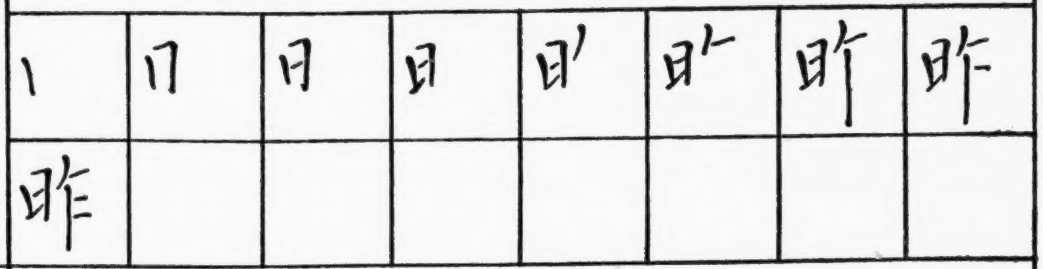
今晚 peí-kaaù 昨晚 nuĕn ti, 昨晚 peí-kaaù 前晚 nuĕn ti; 今晚冇昨晚 kòm tùng，昨晚冇前晚 kòm tùng.

LESSON 12

WRITING MATERIAL

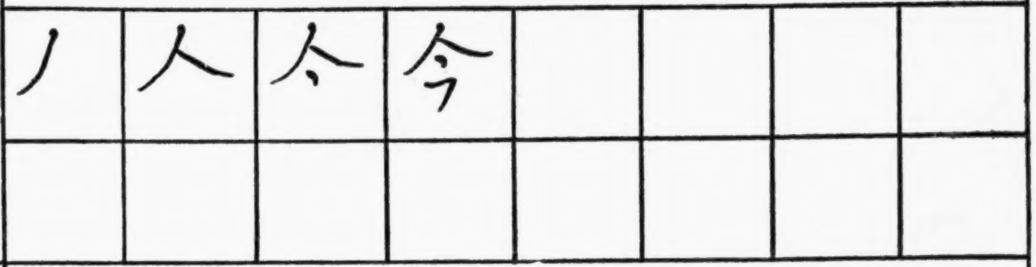
昨

Character Number 1294　Radical Number 72
Stroke Number 9　日



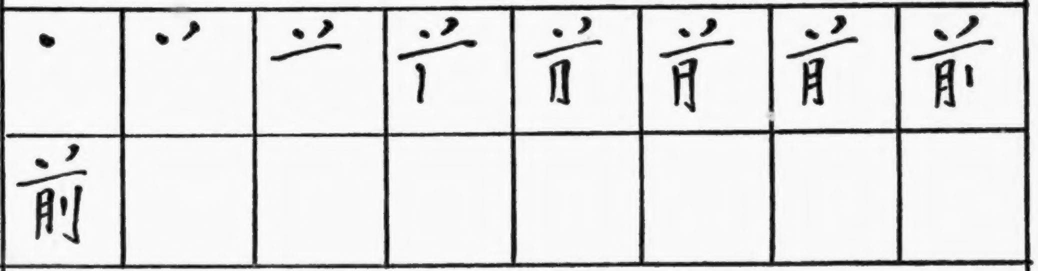
今

Character Number 404　Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 4　人



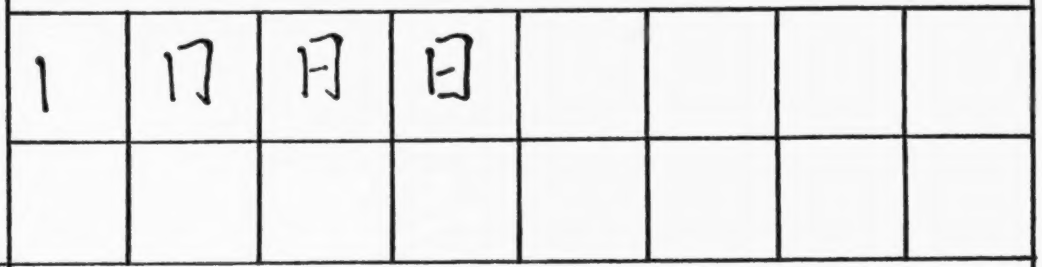
前

Character Number 1254　Radical Number 18
Stroke Number 9　刂, 刀



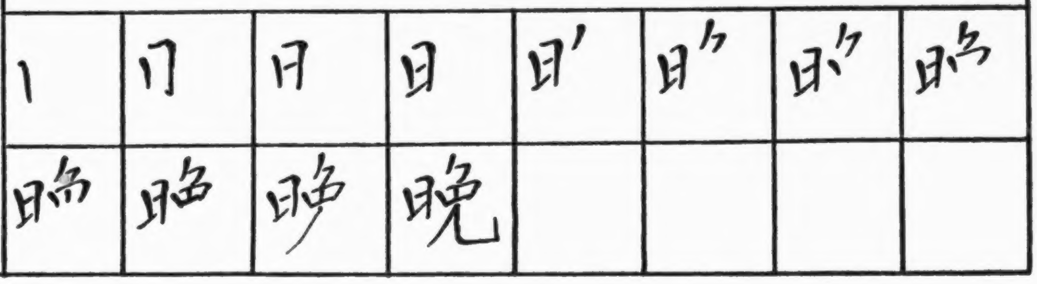
日

Character Number 1452　Radical Number 72
Stroke Number 4　日



晚

Character Number 661　Radical Number 72
Stroke Number 12　日



LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Ni ti faân hó m̄-hó-shîk?
Kóh poón shue hó m̄-hó-t'aî?
Ni t'iū lô hó m̄-hó-haāng?
Kóh chi pat hó m̄-hó-sé?
2. Ni ti mi-yĕ hó-shîk?
Kóh poón mi-yĕ hó-t'aî?
Ni t'iū mi-yĕ hó-haāng?
Kóh chi mi-yĕ hó-sé?
3. Ni ti faân tîm-yeûng*?
Kóh poón shue tîm-yeûng*?
Ni t'iū lô tîm-yeûng*?
Kóh chi pat tîm-yeûng*?
4. Hó, ni ti faân hó-shîk.
Hó, kóh poón shue hó-t'aî.
Hó, ni t'iū lô hó-haāng.
Hó, kóh chi pat hó-sé.
5. M̄-hó, ni ti faân m̄-hó-shîk.
M̄-hó, kóh poón shue m̄-hó-t'aî.
M̄-hó, ni t'iū lô m̄-hó-haāng.
M̄-hó, kóh chi pat m̄-hó-sé.
6. Ni ti faân hó-shîk.
Kóh poón shue keî hó-t'aî.
Ni t'iū lô hó hó-haāng.
Kóh chi pat fei-sheūng-chi hó-sé.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

7. Ni ti faân m̄-hó-shîk.

   Kóh poón shue m̄-haî keî hó-t'aî.

   Ni t'iū lô m̄-haî hó hó-haāng.

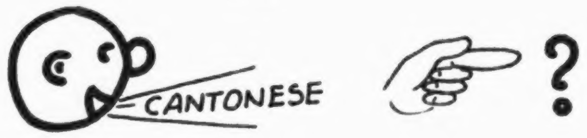
   Kóh chi pat m̄-haî fei-sheûng-chi hó-sé.

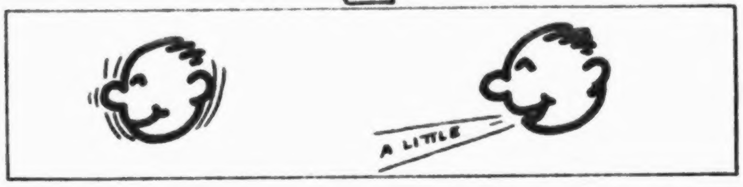
LESSON 13

A

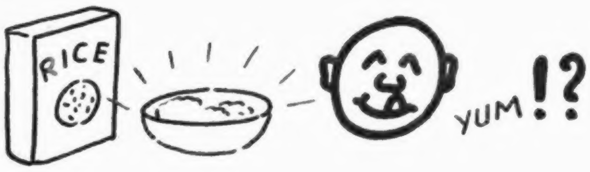
B

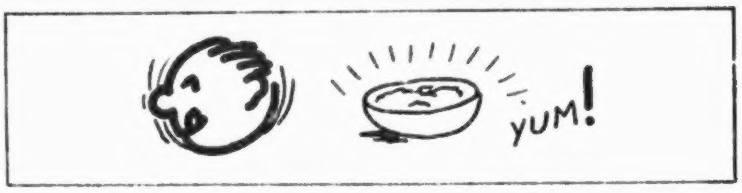
1



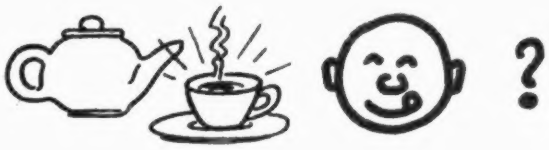


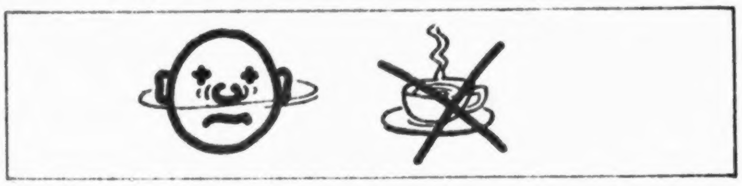
2



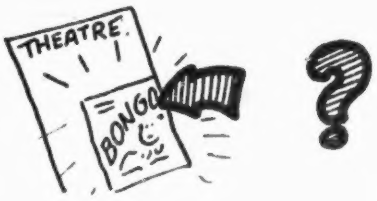


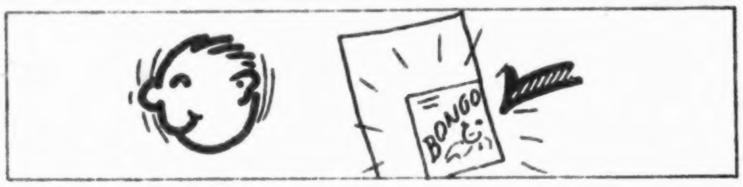
3



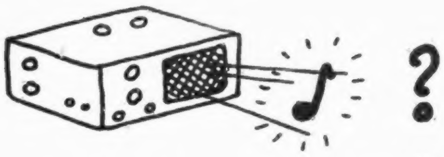


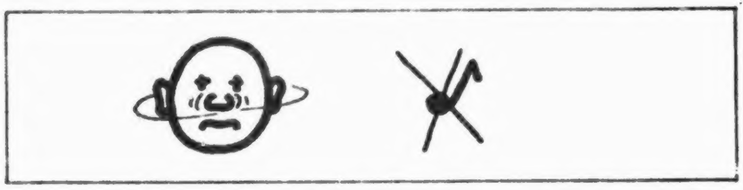
4


THEATRE
BONGO
?

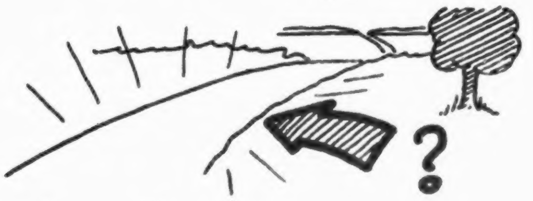


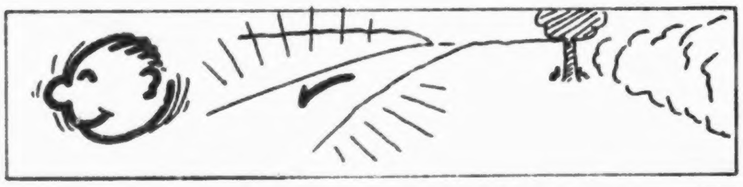
5



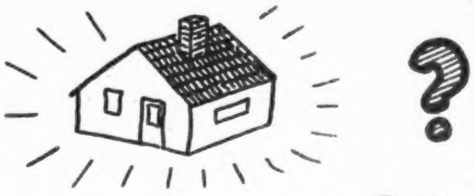


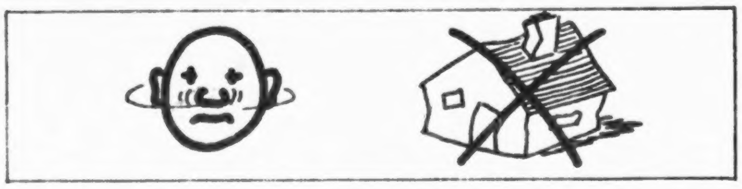
6



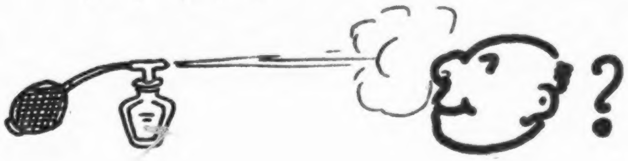


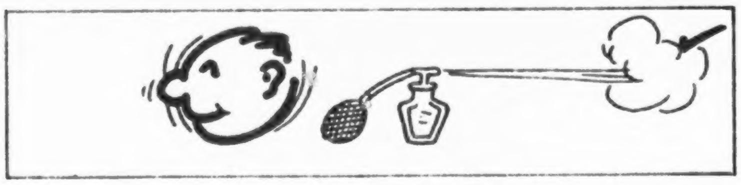
7



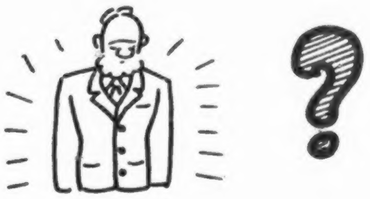


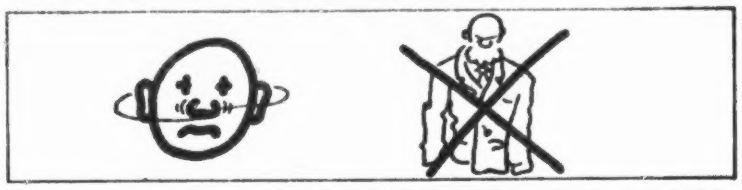
8



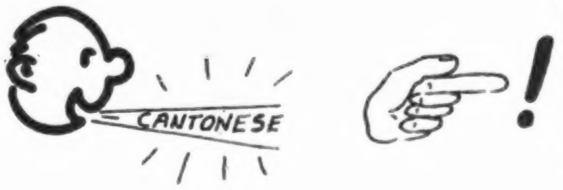


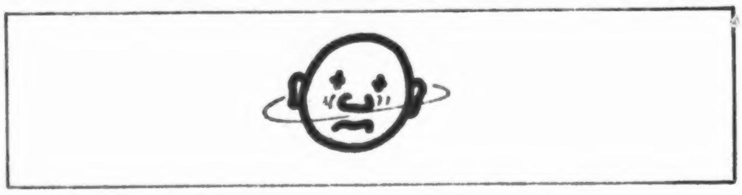
9





10





LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Neĭ shik m̄-shik kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* à?

B: Shik, ngŏh shik kóng shiú shiú.

2. A: Ni ti faân hó m̄-hó-shîk à?

B: Hó, ni ti faân hó-shîk.

3. A: Ni ti ch'ā hó m̄-hó-yám ne?

B: M̄-hó, ni ti ch'ā m̄-hó-yám.

4. A: Ni ch'ut heî hó m̄-hó-t'aî à?

B: Hó, kóh ch'ut heî hó hó-t'aî.

5. A: Ni ti yam-ngôk hó m̄-hó-t'eng ne?

B: M̄-hó, ni ti yam-ngôk m̄-haî hó hó-t'eng.

6. A: Kóh t'iū lô hó m̄-hó-haāng à?

B: Hó, ni t'iū lô keî hó-haāng.

7. A: Ni kaan uk hó m̄-hó-chuê ne?

B: M̄-hó, kóh kaan uk m̄-haî keî hó-chuê.

8. A: Kóh chun heung-shuî hó m̄-hó-mān à?

B: Hó, ni chun heung-shuî fei-sheūng-chi hó-mān.

9. A: Ni kîn shaam hó m̄-hó-cheùk ne?

B: M̄-hó, kóh kîn shaam fei-sheūng-chi m̄-hó-cheùk.

10. A: Neĭ kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* kóng tak hó hó.

B: M̄-kám-tong, m̄-kám-tong.

LESSON 13

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Do you speak Cantonese?
   B: Yes, I do. I speak a little.
2. A: Is this rice delicious?
   B: Yes, this rice is delicious.
3. A: Is this tea good?
   B: No, this tea is not good.
4. A: Is this show good?
   B: Yes, that show is very good.
5. A: Is this music good?
   B: No, this music is not very good.
6. A: Is that road good?
   B: Yes, this road is quite good.
7. A: Is this house livable?
   B: No, that house is not too livable?
8. A: Is this perfume fragrant?
   B: Yes, this perfume is extremely fragrant.
9. A: Does this coat fit well?
   B: No, that coat does not fit well at all.
10. A: You speak Cantonese very well.
    B: Not at all.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Neĭ kè t'aaî-t'aaî* t'ūng saî-man-tsaî to keî hó a-mă?

   B: K'uĭ-teî to hó hó. Neĭ-teî ne?

   A: Ngŏh-teî to keî hó.

2. A: Ni poón shue tîm-yeûng* à?

   B: Kóh poón shue hó hó-t'aî.

3. A: Kóh pô wâ*-pò tîm-yeûng* ne?

   B: Ni pô wâ*-pò mŏ kóh pô wâ*-pò kòm hó-t'aî.

4. A: Kóh ti ch'ā hó m̄-hó-yám à?

   B: Hó, kóh ti ch'ā keî hó-yám.

5. A: Ni ti kai hó m̄-hó-shîk ne?

   B: M̄-hó, ni ti kai m̄-haî keî hó-shîk.

6. A: Kóh ch'ut heî peî pin ch'ut heî hó-t'aî ti à?

   B: Kóh ch'ut heî peî ni ch'ut heî hó-t'aî ti.

7. A: Pin kaan uk peî-kaaù pin kaan uk hó-chuê hó toh ne?

   B: Ngŏh kè uk peî-kaaù Wōng Sin-Shaang kè uk hó-chuê hó toh.

8. A: Ni ti faân yaŭ mŏ kóh ti fán kòm hó-shîk à?

   B: Yaŭ, ni ti faân yaŭ kóh ti fán kòm hó-shîk.

9. A: Kóh cheung î hó m̄-hó-ts'ŏh kwòh ni cheung î ne?

   B: Hó-ts'ŏh kwòh, kóh cheung î hó-ts'ŏh kwòh ni cheung î hó toh.

10. A: Faân, fán, t'ūng kai, pin ti chî hó-shîk, pin ti mŏ kòm hó-shîk; pin ti chî m̄-hó-shîk à?

    B: Faân, fán, t'ūng kai, kai chî hó-shîk; fán mŏ kòm hó-shîk; faân chî m̄-hó-shîk.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Neĭ kè pat, ngŏh kè pat, t'ūng k'uĭ kè pat, pin kòh kè pat tsuì m̄-hó-sé; pin kòh kè pat hó-sé ti; pin kòh kè pat tsuì hó-sé ne?

B: Ngŏh kè pat, neĭ kè pat, t'ūng k'uĭ kè pat, ngŏh kè pat tsuì m̄-hó-sé; k'uĭ kè pat hó-sé ti; neĭ kè pat tsuì hó-sé.

12. A: Kwóng-Tung wâ* t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*, Kwóng-Tung wâ* hó-hôk ti, yik-waâk Meĭ-Kwòk wâ* hó-hôk ti à?

B: Kwóng-Tung wâ* t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*, Meĭ-Kwòk wâ* peî Kwóng-Tung wâ* hó-hôk ti.

13. A: Chung-Kwòk heì t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk heì, Chung-Kwòk heì hó-t'aî hó toh, yik-waâk Meĭ-Kwòk heì hó-t'ai hó toh ne?

B: Chung-Kwòk heì t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk heì, Meĭ-Kwòk heì peî-kaaú Chung-Kwòk heì hó-t'aî hó toh.

14. A: Ni t'iū lô, kóh t'iū lô, t'ūng kóh yat-t'iū lô, pin t'iū hó-haāng; pin t'iū fei-sheūng-chi hó-haāng; pin t'iū m̄-haî keî hó-haāng à?

B: Ni t'iū lô, kóh t'iū lô, t'ūng kóh yat-t'iū lô, ni t'iū lô keî hó-haāng; kóh t'iū lô fei-sheung-chi hó-haāng; kóh yat-t'iū lô m̄-haî keî hó-haāng.

15. A: Neĭ keî shì huì Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû à?

B: Ngŏh kam-yât huì k-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû. Neĭ keî shì faan uk-k'eî?

A: Ngŏh kam-maăn faan uk-k'eî.

LESSON 13

WORD LIST

1.	haàk-heî	to stand on ceremony, to be overly formal
2.	m̄-hó	do not, had better not, not good
3.	ts'eng, ts'îng	please! to invite, request
4.	yám	to drink
5.	ch'ā	tea
6.	ch'ut	AN; to go out, come out, rise, put out
7.	heì	movie, show, theatrical performance; to make fun of
8.	t'aî	to look, see, visit
9.	yam-ngôk	music
10.	t'eng	to listen to, obey
11.	t'iū	AN
12.	lô	road, way
13.	haāng lô	to walk
14.	chuê	to reside
15.	tsun	bottle
16.	heung-shuî	perfume
17.	mān	to smell
18.	shaam	coat, garment, dress
19.	cheùk shaam	to get dressed, put on clothes
20.	ts'ŏh	to sit, to sit down
21.	m̄-kóm-tong	not at all, thank you for your compliment

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

1231

請 ts'íng, ts'éng: to request; to invite; to engage.

請假 ts'íng kà: to ask for leave.

請坐 ts'íng ts'ŏh: please be seated.

請願書 ts'íng-uên shue: a petition.

155

出 ch'ut: out; to go out; put out

出街 ch'ut kaai: to go out

出聲 ch'ut sheng: to utter

出賃 ch'ut yâm: to let

出口 ch'ut háu: export

320

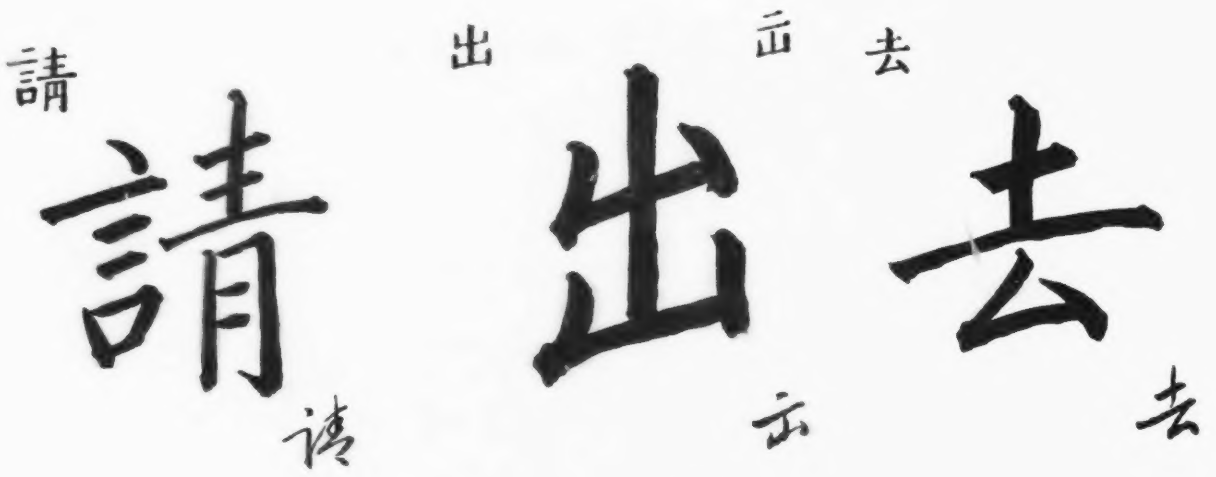
去 huì: to go; go away; depart

去世 huì shaì: to die; pass away

去年 huì-nīn: last year

過去 kwòh-huì: past; to pass

去街 huì kaai: to go out



659

買 maaĭ: to buy; to purchase.

買賣 maaĭ maaî: to buy and sell; to trade.

買辦 [illegible]ân: comdore.

買手 maaĭ-shaú: commercial buyer.

買主 maaĭ chué: the buyer; purchaser.

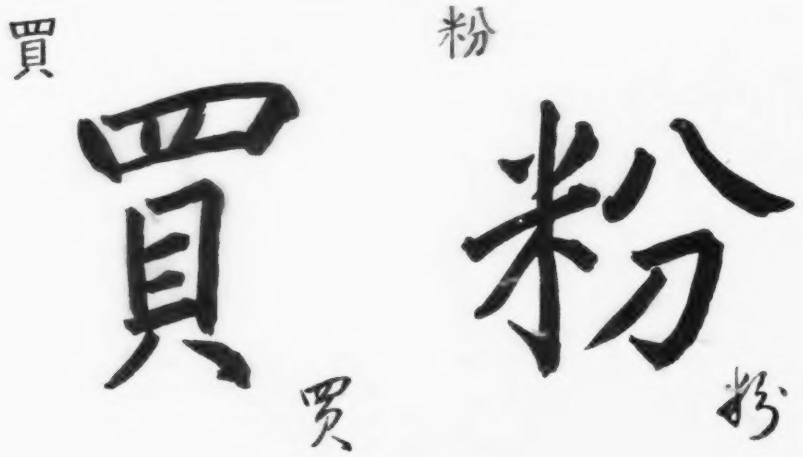
177

粉 fán: flour; powder

麵粉 mîn-fán: wheat flour

通心粉 t'ung-sam-fán: macaroni

搽粉 ch'ā fán: to put powder on face



LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

124

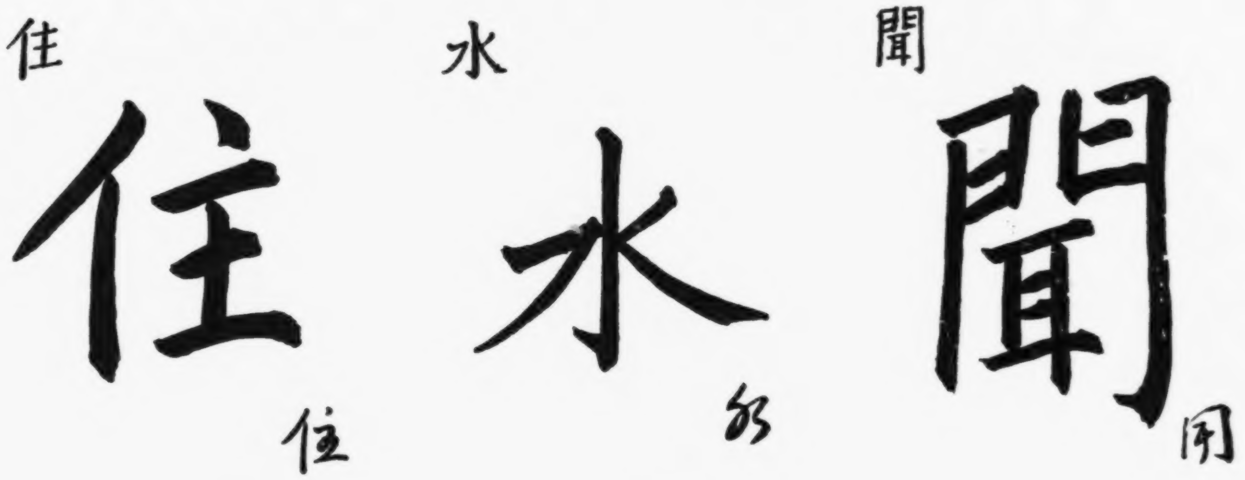
住	chuê: to abide; dwell;
住家	chuê-ka: a residence
守住	shaú-chuê: guard
居住	kui-chuê: live in
住客	chuê-haàk: tenant

1015

水	shuí: water.
順水	shûn shuí: favorable tide or current; following the current.
水手	shuí-shaú: sailor.

673

聞	mān: to hear; to smell; fame.
聽聞	t'eng-mān: to hear
新聞	san-mān: news.
聞人	mān-yān: famous person.

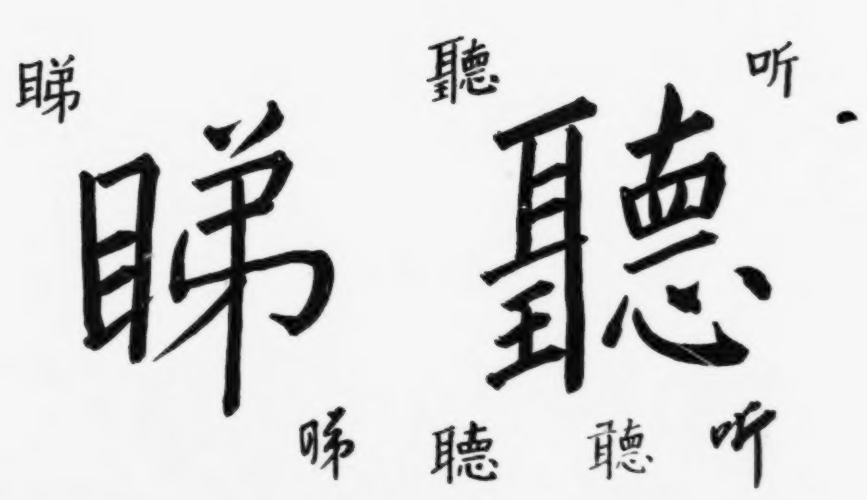


1106

睇	t'aí: to look at; to gaze; to observe.
睇見	t'aí-kìn: to see.
睇書	t'aí shue: to read (silently).

1131

聽	t'eng, t'ing: to hear; to listen; to obey.
聽見	t'eng-kìn: to hear.
聽話	t'eng-wâ: docile; obedient.
聽講	t'eng kóng: hearsay.



LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

今日黃先生m̄-讀書· 佢t'ūng黃太太*去街買yĕ. 黃先生買中文書· 亦都買英文書· kóh ti 書好好睇· 黃太太*買shaam, 買heung-水. Kóh kîn shaam幾好cheùk, kóh tsun heung-水幾好聞·

佢地睇heì, kóh ch'ut係中國kè heì, kóh ch'ut heì m̄-係幾好睇; 佢地聽yam-ngôk, kóh ti 係廣東kè yam-ngôk, kóh ti yam-ngôk m̄-係幾好聽; 佢地買uk, kóh 間uk m̄-係幾好住·

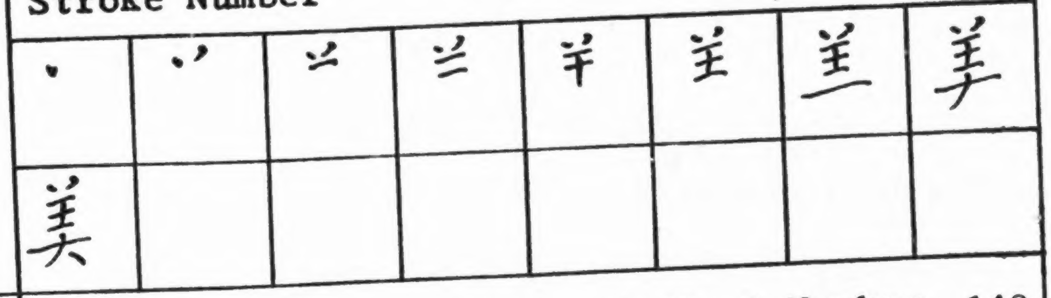
佢地kè 先生今晚tá tîn-wâ*peí佢地· 請佢地shîk 晚faân; kóh ti faân m̄-係幾好shîk.

LESSON 13

WRITING MATERIAL

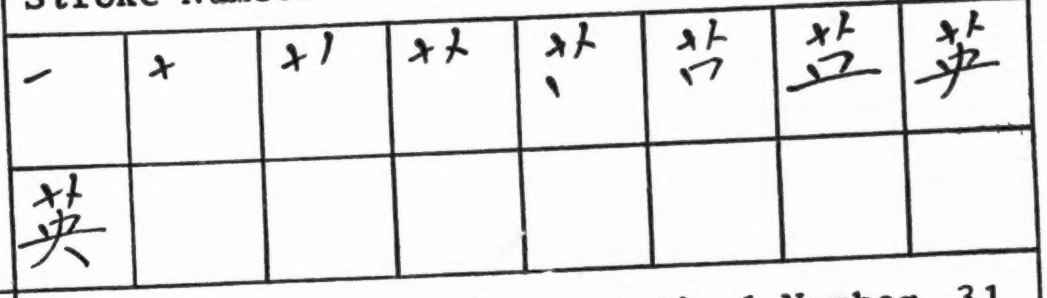
美

Character Number 683 Radical Number 123
Stroke Number 9 ⺷ , 羊



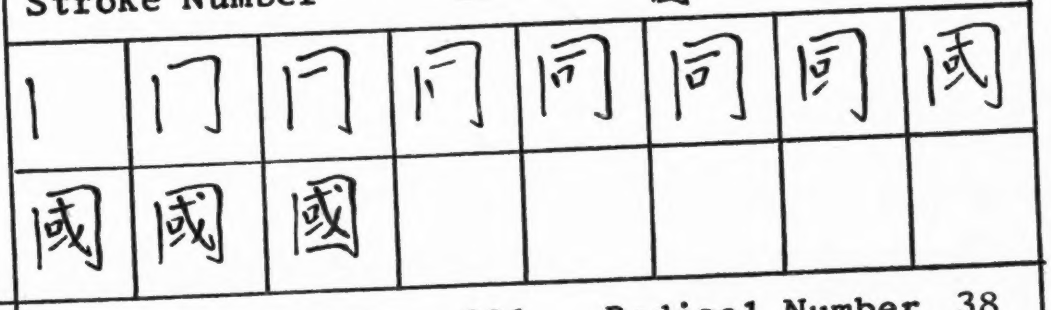
英

Character Number 1485 Radical Number 140
Stroke Number 9 艹 , 艸



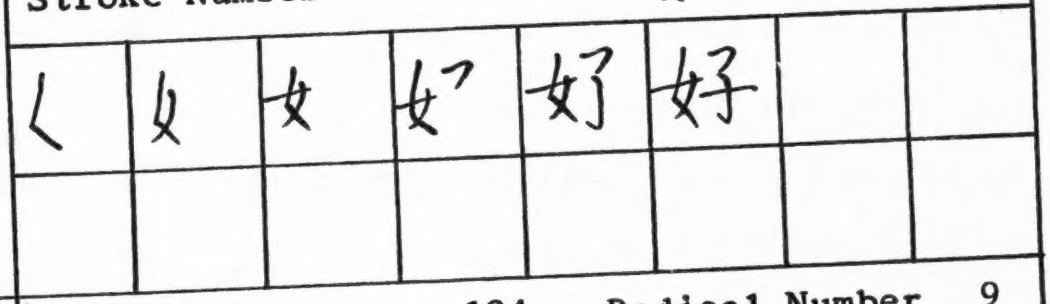
國

Character Number 569 Radical Number 31
Stroke Number 11 口



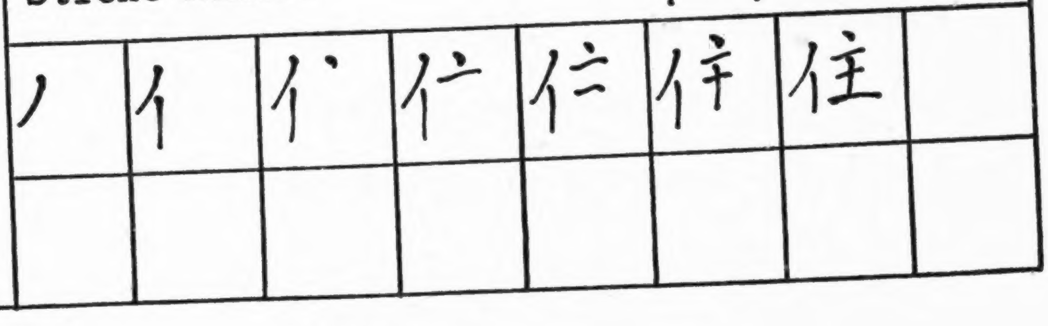
好

Character Number 291 Radical Number 38
Stroke Number 6 女



住

Character Number 124 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 7 亻, 人



LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Ch'ān Siú-Tsé haî ni shuè mà?
   Wōng Sin-Shaang haî k'uĭ tô mà?
   Leĭ Siú-Tsé haî paan-fōng* tô mà?
   Cheung Sin-Shaang haî hôk-haaû shuè mà?
2. Ch'ān Siú-Tsé haî m̄-haî ni shuè?
   Wōng Sin-Shaang haî m̄-haî k'uĭ tô?
   Leĭ Siú-Tsé haî m̄-haî paan-fōng* tô?
   Cheung Sin-Shaang haî m̄-haî hôk-haaû shuè?
3. Neĭ kè nuĭ* ī-ka haî pin shuè?
   K'uĭ kè tsaî în-tsoî haî pin tô?
   Ngŏh kè p'āang-yaŭ ts'īn-yât haî pin tô?
   K'uĭ kè foô-ts'an tsòk-yât haî pin shuè?
4. Neĭ kè nuĭ* keî-shī haî ni shuè?
   K'uĭ kè tsaî keî-shī haî paan-fōng* tô?
   Ngŏh kè p'āang-yaŭ keî-shī haî kóh tô?
   K'uĭ kè foô-ts'an keî-shī haî hôk-haaû tô?
5. Ī-ka k'uĭ-teî haî pin shuè?
   Ts'īn-yât neĭ haî pin shuè?
   În-tsoî neĭ kè tsaî haî pin shuè?
   Tsòk-yât k'uĭ kè mŏ-ts'an haî pin shuè?
6. Haî shuè, Ch'ān Siú-Tsé haî ni shuè.
   M̄-haî shuè, Ch'ān Siú-Tsé m̄-haî ni shuè.
   Haî-tô, Wōng Sin-Shaang haî k'uĭ tô.
   M̄-haî-tô, Wōng Sin-Shaang m̄-haî k'uĭ tô.

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

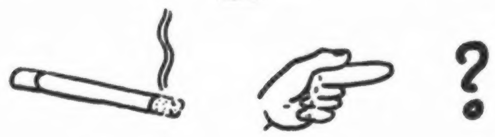
7. Ngŏh kè nuĭ* î-ka haî ni shuè.
   K’uĭ kè tsaî în-tsoî haî paan-fōng* tô.
   Neĭ kè p’aāng-yaŭ ts’în-yât haî kóh tô.
   K’uĭ kè foô-ts’an tsòk-yât haî hôk-haaû tô.
8. Ī-ka k’uĭ haî ni shuè.
   Ts’în-yât ngŏh haî k’uĭ shuè.
   În-tsoî ngŏh kè tsaî haî Yât-Poón tô.
   Tsòk-yât k’uĭ kè mŏ-ts’an haî kóh tô.

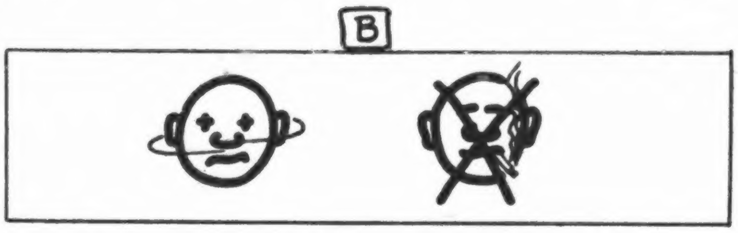
LESSON 14

A

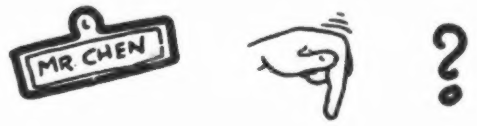
B

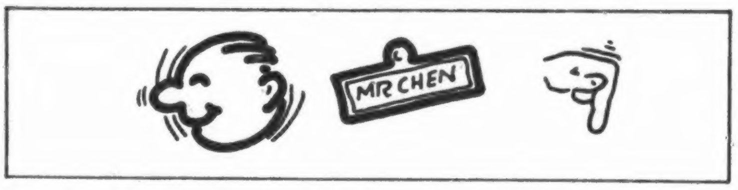
1



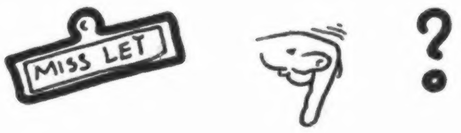


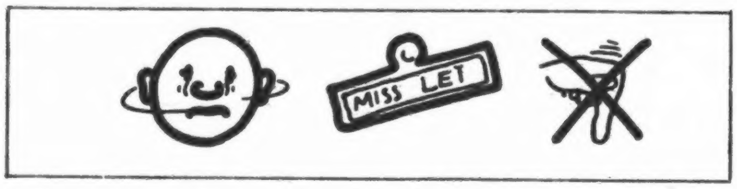
2



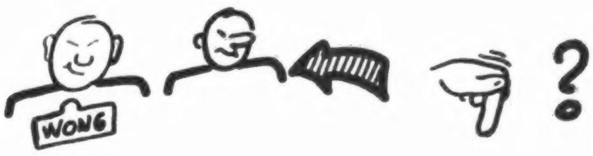

MR CHEN
MR CHEN

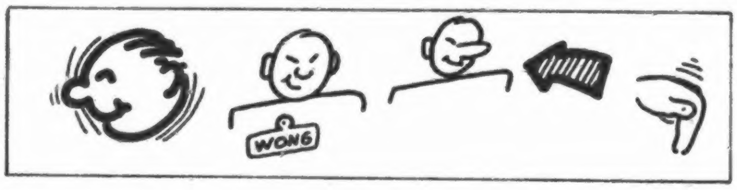
3



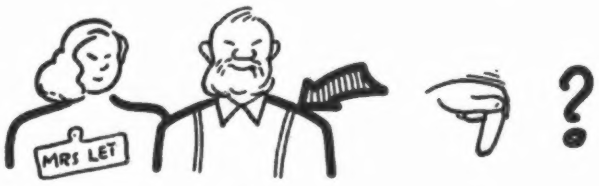

MISS LET
MISS LET

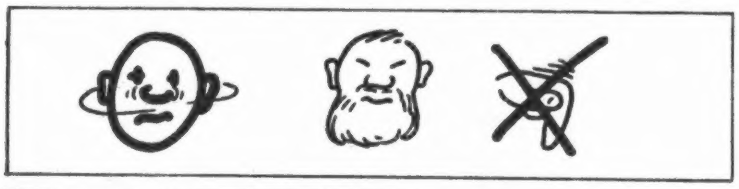
4



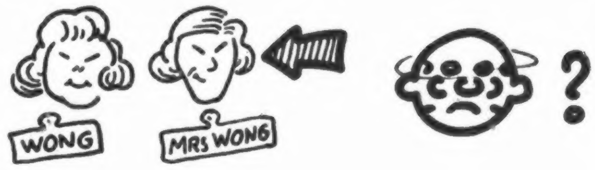


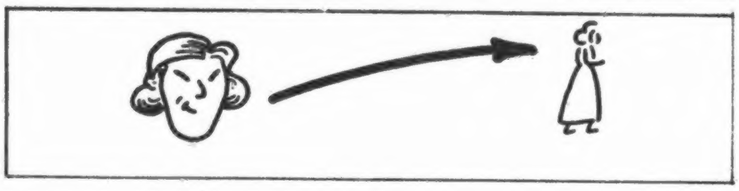
5



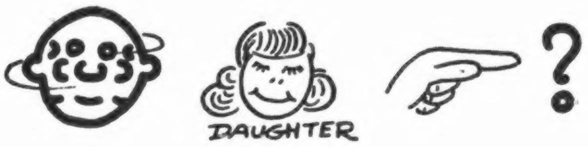


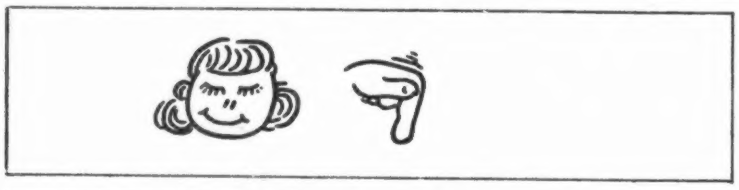
6



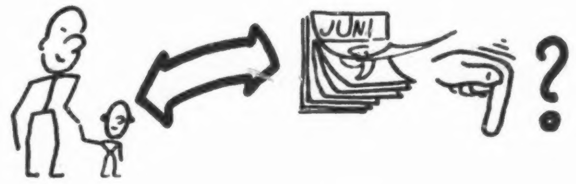

WONG
MRS WONG

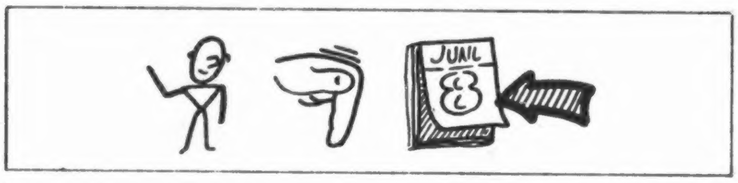
7



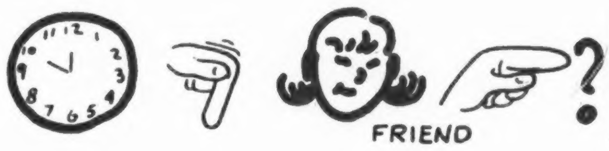


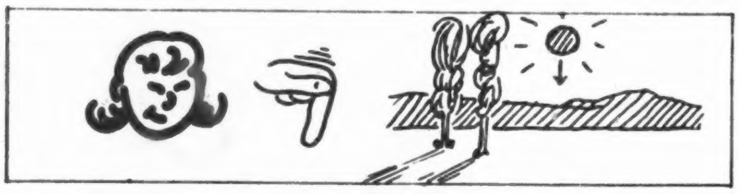
8



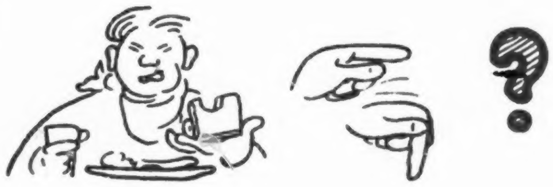


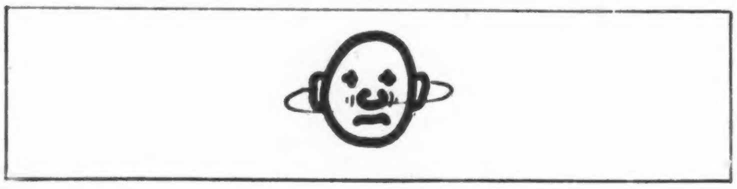
9





10





LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Neĭ shîk in mà?

B: Toh-tsê, toh-tsê. Ngŏh m̂-shîk in.

2. A: Ch'ān Sin-Shaang haî shuè mà?

B: Haî shuè, Ch'ān Sin-Shaang haî shuè.

3. A: Leĭ Siú-Tsé î-ka haî tô mà?

B: M̄-haî tô, Leĭ Siú-Tsé î-ka m̂-haî tô.

4. A: Wōng Sin-Shaang kè p'aāng-yaŭ haî m̂-haî shuè à?

B: Haî shuè, Wōng Sin-Shaang kè p'aāng-yaŭ haî shuè.

5. A: Leĭ T'aaî-T'aaî* kè foô-ts'an în-tsoî haî m̂-haî tô ne?

B: M̄-haî tô, Leĭ T'aaî-T'aaî* kè foô-ts'an în-tsoî m̂-haî tô.

6. A: Wōng Siú-Tsé kè mŏ-ts'an haî pin-shuè à?

B: Wōng Siú-Tsé kè mŏ-ts'an haî kóh shuè.

7. A: Neĭ kè nuĭ* î-ka haî pin-tô ne?

B: Ngŏh kĕ nuĭ* î-ka haî ni-tô.

8. A: K'uĭ kè tsaî keî shî haî shuè à?

B: K'uĭ kè tsaî kam-yât haî shuè.

9. A: Neĭ kè nuĭ p'aāng-yaŭ kam-yât keî shî haî tô ne?

B: Ngŏh kè nuĭ p'aāng-yaŭ kam-yât hâ-nğ haî tô.

10. A: Haî ngŏh tô shîk ts'aan pîn faân. Hó mà?

B: M̄-hó lòh. Toh-tsê shaaî lòh. M̄-hó haàk-heî lòh.

LESSON 14

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Do you smoke?

B: No, thanks. I don't smoke.

2. A: Is Mr. Ch'ān here?

B: Yes, Mr. Ch'ān is here.

3. A: Is Miss Leǐ here now?

B: No, Miss Leǐ is not here now.

4. A: Is Mr. Wōng's friend here?

B: Yes, Mr. Wōng's friend is here.

5. A: Is Mrs. Leǐ's father here now?

B: No, Mrs. Leǐ's father is not here now.

6. A: Where is Miss Wōng's mother?

B: Miss Wōng's mother is there.

7. A: Where is your daughter now?

B: My daughter is here now.

8. A: When will his son be here?

B: His son will be here today.

9. A: When will your girl friend be here today?

B: My girl friend will be here this afternoon.

10. A: Have dinner at my place, how about it?

B: No, thanks. Please don't stand on ceremony.

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, neĭ kam-yât mōng mà?

B: Ngŏh kam-yât hó mōng. Neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh m̄-hâi kêi mōng.

2. A: Ī-ka pin kòh hâi paan-fōng* shuè à?

B: Ī-ka hôk-shaang t'ūng sin-shaang hâi paan-fōng* shuè.

3. A: Pin kòh ì-ka hâi hôk-haaû tô ne?

B: Ngŏh kè hôk-shaang ì-ka hâi hôk-haaû tô.

4. A: Neĭ tsòk-yât hâi pin shuè à?

B: Ngŏh tsòk-yât hâi uk-k'êi shuè.

5. A: Ts'ìn-maăn neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* hâi pin tô ne?

B: Ts'ìn-maăn ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* hâi k'uĭ kè mŏ-ts'an tô.

6. A: Wōng Sin-Shaang în-tsoî hâi m̄-hâi uk-k'êi à?

B: Hâi, Wōng Sin-Shaang în-tsoî hâi uk-k'êi.

7. A: Kam-maăn Leĭ Siú-Tsê hâi m̄-hâi ni shuè ne?

B: M̄-hâi shuè, kam-maăn Leĭ Siú-Tsê m̄-hâi ni shuè.

8. A: Ch'ān Sin-Shaang ì-ka m̄-hâi ni tô, k'uĭ hâi pin tô à?

B: Ch'ān Sin-Shaang ì-ka m̄-hâi ni tô, k'uĭ hâi paan-fōng* tô.

9. A: Kam-yât neĭ kè nuĭ p'aāng-yaŭ m̄-hâi uk-k'êi, k'uĭ hâi pin shuè ne?

B: Kam-yât ngŏh kè nuĭ p'aāng-yaŭ m̄-hâi uk-k'êi, k'uĭ hâi k'uĭ kè p'aāng-yaŭ shuè.

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. A: Neĭ kè ch'e ī-ka haî pin tô à?

B: Ngŏh kè ch'e ī-ka haî ngŏh kè foô-ts'an tô.

11. A: În-tsoî neĭ kè sin-shaang m̄-haî Chung-Kwòk, k'uĭ haî pin shuè ne?

B: În-tsoî ngŏh kè sin-shaang m̄-haî Chung-Kwòk, k'uĭ haî Meĭ-Kwòk.

12. A: Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû haî pin tô à?

B: Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû haî kóh t'iū fei-sheūng-chi taaî kè lô tô.

13. A: Ī-ka kóh ti shue, pat, pô*, chî, wâ*-pò, pò-chî haî paan-fōng* shuè, yik-waâk m̄-haî paan-fōng* shuè?

B: Ī-ka kóh ti shue, pat, pô*, chî, wâ*-pò, pò-chî haî paan-fōng* shuè.

14. A: Kóh ti î, t'oī*, tsẑ-tîn, fán-pat, uēn-pat, hak-paán în-tsoî haî hôk-haaû tô, yik-waâk haî ni tô à?

B: Kóh ti î, t'oī*, tsẑ-tîn, fán-pat, uēn-pat, hak-paán în-tsoî haî hôk-haaû tô, m̄-haî ni tô.

15. A: Tsòk-yât neĭ huī pin shuè à?

B: Tsòk-yât ngŏh huī Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû. Neĭ ne?

A: Tsòk-yât ngŏh huī ngŏh kè p'aāng-yău kè uk-k'eî.

LESSON 14

WORD LIST

1.	siú-tsé	Miss, young lady
2.	p'aāng-yaŭ	friend
3.	nuĭ p'aāng-yaŭ	girl friend
4.	Ch'ān	surname
5.	mŏ-ts'an	mother
6.	foô-ts'an	father
7.	tsaî	son
8.	nuĭ*	daughter
9.	tô	place suffix, place, measure, degree, AN
10.	shuè	place suffix, place
11.	ī-ka	now
12.	în-tsoî	now
13.	hâ-nğ	afternoon
14.	ts'aan	meal, AN
15.	pîn faân	ordinary meal (humble form)
16.	in	cigarette, smoke
17.	toh-tsê	to thank
18.	haî	to be at, on, in
19.	lòh	final particle
20.	saaì	entirely, completely, all

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

247

喺 haí: to be at; in; on; under

喺處 haí shuè: (he, it) is here

喺屋企 haí uk-k'eí: at home

1036

小 siú: small; tiny; petty.

小心 siú-sam: be careful.

小弟 siú-taî: my humble self.

1226

姐 tsé: elder sister.

大姐 taaî-tsé my elder sister.

小姐 siú-tsé: young lady; miss.

姐夫 tsé-foo: sister's husband.

喺 小 姐

喺 小 姐

喺 小 姐

214

父 foô: father

父親 foô-ts'an: father

神父 shān-foô: Catholic priest

父老 foô-lǒ: village elders

701

母 mǒ: mother.

母親 mǒ-ts'an: mother.

老母 lǒ-mǒ: mother.

後母 haû-mǒ: stepmother.

外母 ngoî-mǒ: mother-in-law.

父 母

父 母

父 母

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

1216

親 ts'an: personal; close to; relative.

親手 ts'an-shaú: with own hands; personally; in person.

親愛 ts'an-oì: dear; beloved; to love dearly.

親戚 ts'an-ts'ik· relative; kindred.

369

家 ka: household; family; profession; professional man.

家人 ka-yān: family.

大家 taaî-ka: all of us.

專家 chuen-ka: specialist

外交家 ngoî-kaau ka: diplomat.

125

處 ch'uè: a location

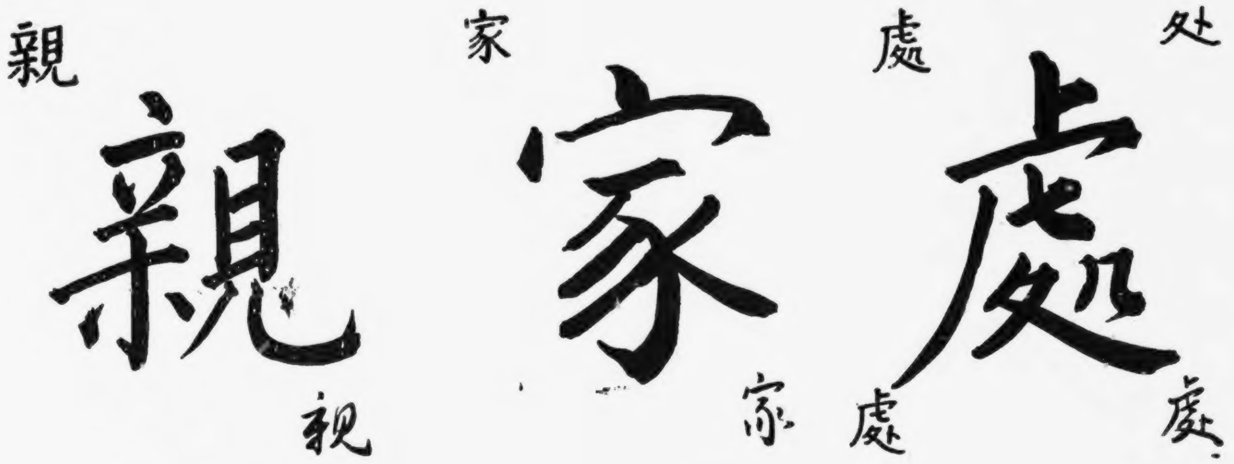
處 shuè: place

用處 yûng-ch'uè: function; usefulness

好處 hó-ch'uè: benefit, advantage

邊處 pin-shuè: where?

辦事處 paân-sẑ-ch'uè: office.



829

朋 p'āng: friend; associate.

朋 p'aūng:

朋友 p'āng-yaŭ: friend.

患難朋友 waân-naân p'āng-yaŭ: a friend in need.

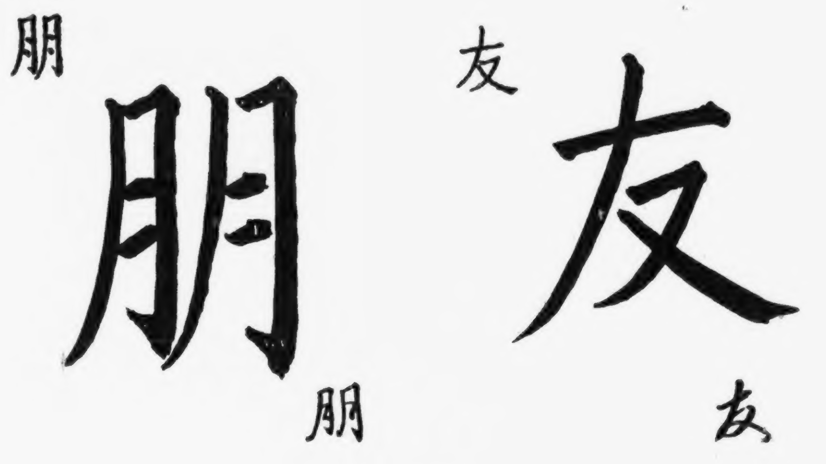
1463

友 yaŭ: friend; companion; friendly.

親友 ts'an-yaŭ: relative and friend.

交友 kaau yaŭ: to associate with.

友邦 yaŭ-pong: friendly country.



LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

黃小姐係李先生 kè 女朋友. 佢地都係美國陸軍語言學校 kè 學生. 佢地都好 ch'ung-mīng. 佢地今日都喺 ni 處, 佢地 ī-家讀中文書.

黃小姐有父親, 有母親. 佢 kè 父親幾高, 幾 feī, 幾大; 佢 kè 母親 aí ti, 細 ti, shaù ti. 佢地 în-tsoî m̄-喺 ni-tô, 佢地喺中國.

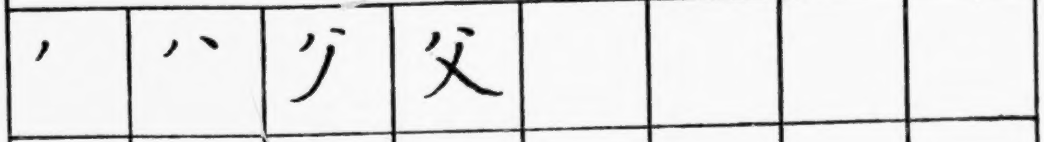
李先生亦都有父母; 佢地都 m̄-係好高, m̄-係好 feī, m̄-係好大, ī-家佢地都 m̄-喺 ni-處, 佢地 în-tsoî 喺英國.

LESSON 14

WRITING MATERIAL

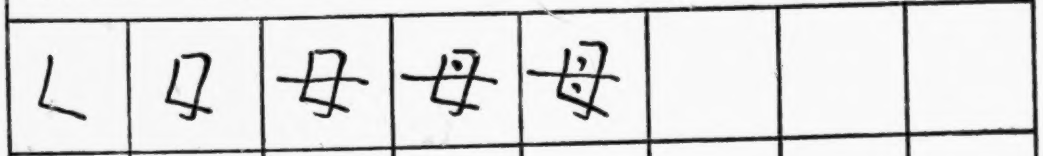
父

Character Number 214 Radical Number 88
Stroke Number 4 父



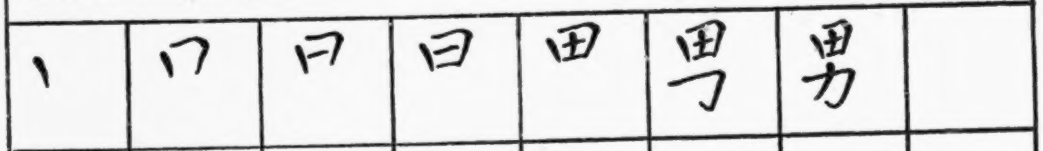
母

Character Number 701 Radical Number 80
Stroke Number 5 毋



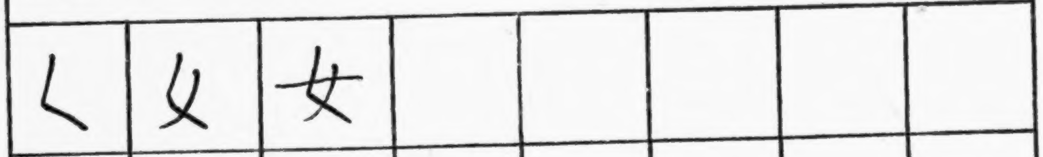
男

Character Number 729 Radical Number 102
Stroke Number 7 田



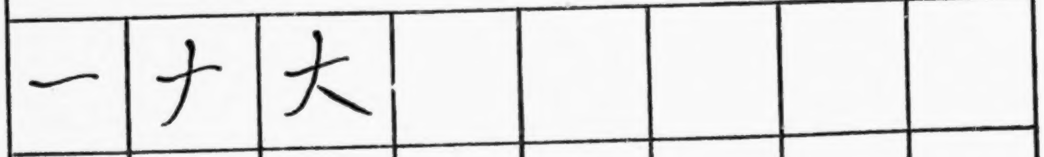
女

Character Number 775 Radical Number 38
Stroke Number 3 女



大

Character Number 1079 Radical Number 37
Stroke Number 3 大



LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

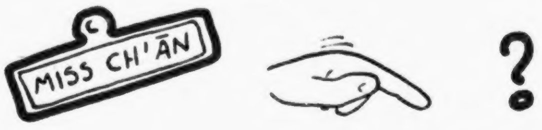
1. Chìng-wâ k'uĭ ts'ŏh haî pin tô?
   Ī-ka kóh-poón shue fòng haî pin shuè?
   Tsòk-yât ni cheung î chai haî pin shuè?
   În-tsoî neĭ kè nuĭ* k'eî haî pin tô?
2. K'uĭ chìng-wâ fàn haî pin shuè?
   Kóh poón shue î-ka tán haî pin tô?
   Ni cheung î tsòk-yât laû haî pin tô?
   Neĭ kè nuĭ* în-tsoî pâng haî pin shuè?
3. Chìng-wâ pin kòh ts'ŏh haî ni tô?
   Ī-ka pin poón shue fòng haî t'oî* tô?
   Tsòk-yât pin cheung î chai haî ni kaan paan-fōng* shuè?
   În-tsoî pin kòh kè nuĭ* k'eî haî ni cheung-ch'ōng shuè?
4. Chìng-wâ k'uĭ ts'ŏh haî ni tô.
   Ī-ka kóh poón shue fòng haî t'oî* tô.
   Tsòk-yât ni cheung î chai haî ni kaan paan-fōng* shuè.
   În-tsoî ngŏh kè nuĭ* k'eî haî ni cheung ch'ōng shuè.
5. K'uĭ chìng-wâ fàn haî ni-cheung-ch'ōng-tô.
   Kóh poón shue î-ka tán haî kóh cheung t'oî* shuè.
   Ni cheung î tsòk-yât laû haî ni kaan paan-fōng* shuè.
   Ngŏh kè nuĭ* în-tsoî pâng haî ni kòh haak-paán tô.

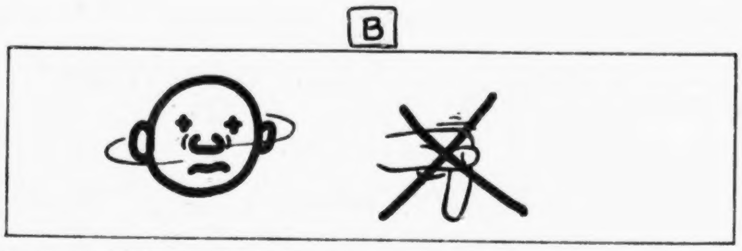
LESSON 15

A

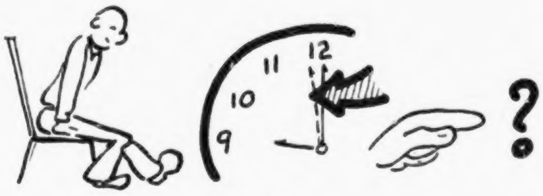
B

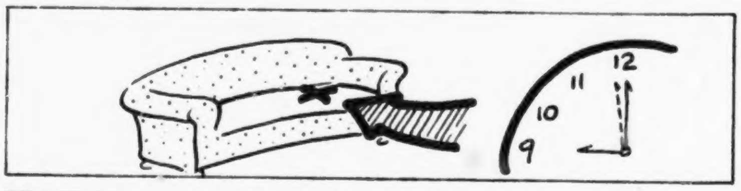
1



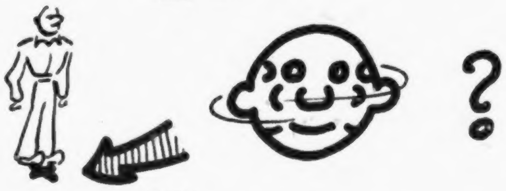


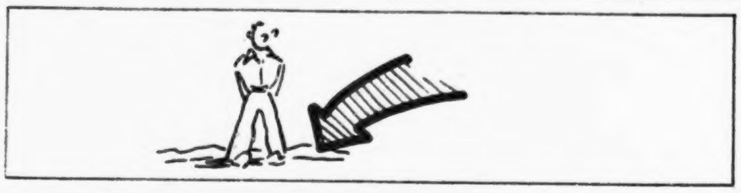
2



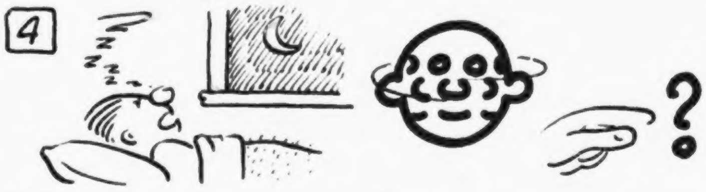


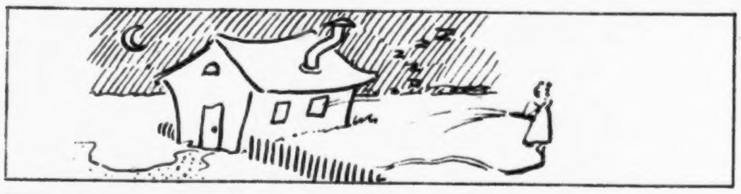
3



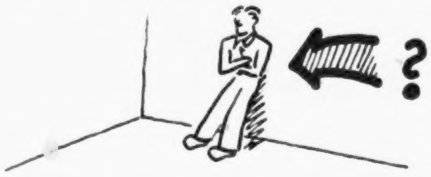


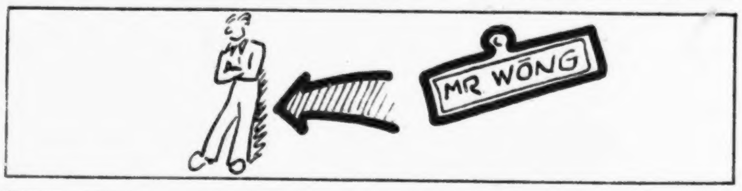
4



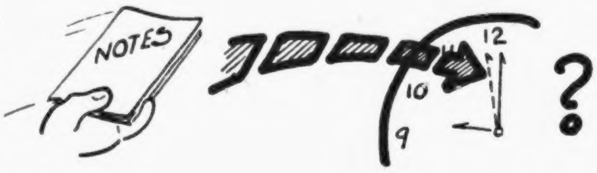


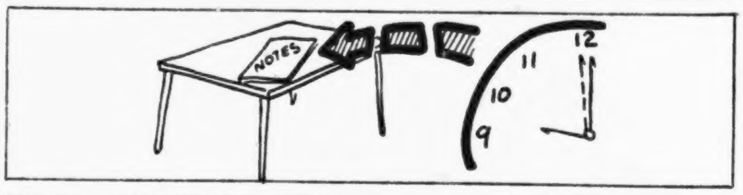
5



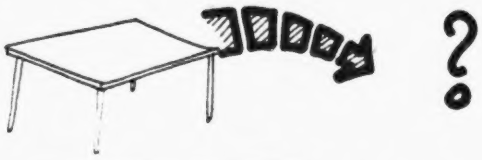


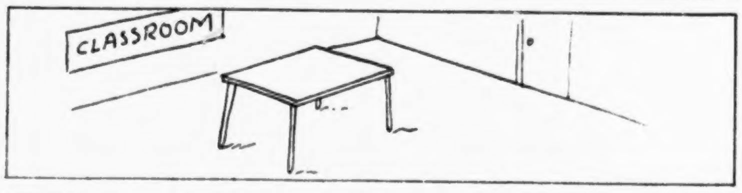
6


NOTES
12
11
10
9

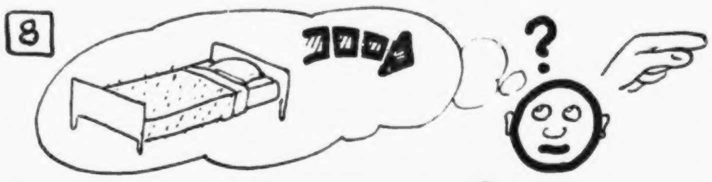

NOTES
12
11
10
9

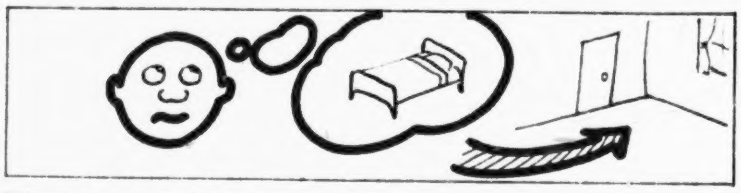
7



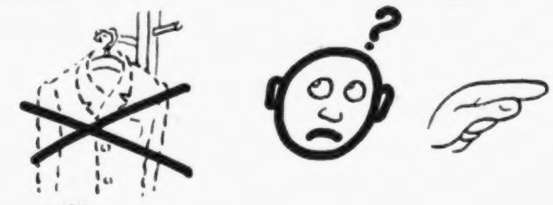


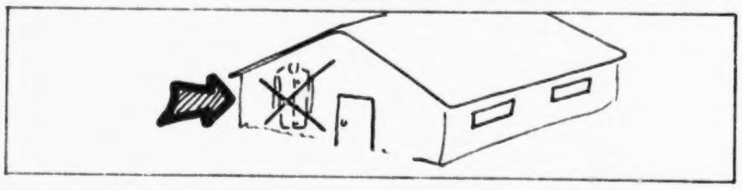
8



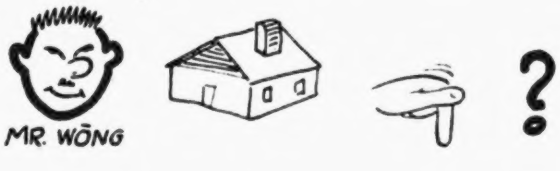


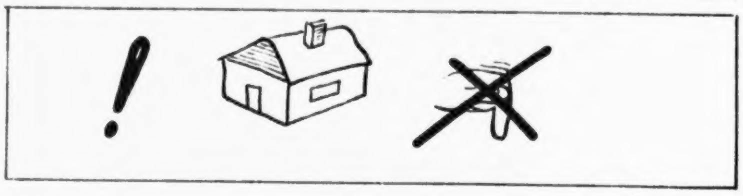
9





10





LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Ts'îng mân Ch'ān Siú-Tsê haî shuè mà?

B: Tuī-m̄-chuê, k'uĭ m̄-haî shuè. Yaŭ mi-yĕ ne?

A: Mŏ mi-yĕ. Ngŏh laī ts'ŏh hă che.

2. A: Chìng-wâ neĭ ts'ŏh haî pin tô à?

B: Chìng-wâ ngŏh ts'ŏh haî ni cheung shoh-fà* tô.

3. A: K'uĭ ī-ka k'eĭ haî pin shuè ne?

B: K'uĭ ī-ka k'eĭ haî teî* shuè.

4. A: Tsòk-maăn neĭ-teî fàn haî pin tô à?

B: Tsòk-maăn ngŏh-teî fàn haî k'uĭ kè uk-k'eî tô.

5. A: Pin kòh ī-ka pâng haî kóh pûng ts'eūng shuè ne?

B: Wōng Sin-Shaang ī-ka pâng haî kóh pûng ts'eūng shuè.

6. A: Chìng-wâ ni pô pô* chai haî pin tô à?

B: Chìng-wâ ni pô pô* chai haî kóh cheung t'oī* tô.

7. A: Kóh cheung t'oī* ī-ka tấn haî pin shuè ne?

B: Kóh cheung t'oī* ī-ka tấn haî kóh kaan paan-fōng* shuè.

8. A: Ni cheung ch'ōng fòng haî pin tô à?

B: Ni cheung ch'ōng fòng haî kóh kaan fōng* tô.

9. A: Neĭ kè lau laû haî pin shuè ne?

B: Ngŏh kè lau laû haî kóh kaan laū* shuè.

10. A: Ts'îng mân Wōng Sin-Shaang haî tô chuê mà?

B: Ôh! K'uĭ m̄-haî tô chuê.

A: K'uĭ haî pin shuè chuê à?

B: K'uĭ haî k'uĭ kè p'aāng-yaŭ shuè chuê.

LESSON 15

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Excuse me. Is Miss Ch'ān in?
B: I am sorry. She isn't in. What can I do for you?
A: Nothing important. I just dropped in.

2. A: Where did you sit a moment ago?
B: I sat on this sofa a moment ago.

3. A: Where does he stand now?
B: He stands on the ground.

4. A: Where did you sleep last night?
B: We slept at his home last night.

5. A: Who leans against that wall now?
B: Mr. Wōng leans against that wall.

6. A: Where was this notebook placed a moment ago?
B: This notebook was placed on that table a moment ago.

7. A: Where is that table placed now?
B: That table is placed in that classroom.

8. A: Where do you want to put this bed?
B: I want to put this bed in that room.

9. A: Where did you leave your overcoat?
B: I left my overcoat in that building.

10. A: May I ask if Mr. Wōng lives here?
B: Oh, he does not live here.
A: Where does he live?
B: He lives in his friend's place.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Leĭ Siú-Tsé, haî ngŏh tô ts'ŏh hă, shîk ts'aan pîn faân.
Hó mà?

B: M̄-hó lòh, Ch' [illegible]-Shaang. Toh-tsê saaî lòh. Ī-ka
ngŏh m̄-tak-haān. T'ing-yât hó mà?

A: Hó à.

2. A: Ī-ka neĭ chuê haî pin shuè à?

B: Ī-ka ngŏh chuê haî ngŏh kè p'aāng-yaŭ shuè.

3. A: Neĭ kè hôk-shaang chīng-wâ k'eĭ haî pin tô ne?

B: Ngŏh kè hôk-shaang chīng-wâ k'eĭ haî kóh kaan paan-fōng*
tô.

4. A: Pin kòh tsòk-yât fàn haî ni cheung ch'ōng shuè à?

B: Ngŏh kè saî-man-tsaî tsòk-yât fàn haî ni cheung ch'ōng shuè.

5. A: Ī-ka pin kòh pâng haî pûng ts'eūng tô ne?

B: Ī-ka ngŏh kè sin-shaang pâng haî pûng ts'eūng tô.

6. A: Keî shī neĭ kè naām p'aāng-yaŭ k'eĭ haî kóh t'iū lô
shuè à?

B: Chīng-wâ ngŏh kè naām p'aāng-yaŭ k'eĭ haî kóh t'iū lô
shuè.

7. A: Ni ti hak-paán, î t'ūng t'oī* keî shī chai haî kóh kaan
paan-fōng* tô à?

B: Ni ti hak-paán, î t'ūng t'oī* t'ing-yât chai haî kóh
kaan paan-fōng* tô.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

8. A: Neĭ î-ka fàn haî tô; neĭ tsô mi-yĕ ne?

B: Ngŏh î-ka fàn haî tô, ngŏh t’eng Chung-Kwòk yam-ngôk, t’ūng t’aî Meĭ-Kwòk wâ*-pò.

9. A: K’uĭ kè foô-ts’an t’ūng mŏ-ts’an m̄-haî uk-k’eî shuè; k’uĭ-teî tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: K’uĭ kè foô-ts’an t’ūng mŏ-ts’an m̄-haî uk-k’eî shuè; k’uĭ-teî haāng kaai, maaĭ yĕ, t’aî heî.

10. A: Ngŏh-teî ts’ŏh haî ni kaan fōng* nuĕn ti, yik-waâk ts’ŏh haî kóh kaan fōng* nuĕn ti ne?

B: Ngŏh-teî ts’ŏh haî ni kaan fōng* nuĕn ti; ts’ŏh haî kóh kaan fōng* hó laăng.

11. A: Ni kîn lau tán haî ni kaan laū* hó ti, yik-waâk tán haî kóh kaan laū* hó ti à?

B: Ni kîn lau tán haî ni kaan laū* hó hó toh. Tán haî kóh kaan laū* m̄-haî keî hó.

12. A: Ngŏh-teî m̄-haî hó kwooî. Ngŏh-teî ts’ŏh haî ni cheung shoh-fà* hó ti, yik-waâk fàn haî kóh cheung ch’ōng hó ti ne?

B: Neĭ-teî m̄-haî hó kwooî. Neĭ-teî ts’ŏh haî ni cheung shoh-fà* hó ti. Fàn haî kóh cheung ch’ōng mŏ kòm hó.

13. A: Neĭ m̄-ts’ŏh haî ni cheung î tô; neĭ ts’ŏh haî pin tô à?

B: Ngŏh m̄-ts’ŏh haî ni cheung î tô; ngŏh ts’ŏh haî kóh cheung ch’ōng tô.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

14. A: Ni ti pô*, chî, shue, tsẑ-tîn, wâ*-pȍ, pȍ-chî, uēn-pat, fán-pat, t'ūng ts'ó-kó-pô* m̄-tán haî ni cheung t'oī* shuè; tán haî pin shuè ne?

B: Ni ti pô*, chî, shue, tsẑ-tîn, wâ*-pȍ, pȍ-chî, uēn-pat, fán-pat, t'ūng ts'ó-kó-pô* m̄-tán haî ni cheung t'oī* shuè; tán haî kóh cheung t'oī* shuè.

15. A: Haî ni kaan Chung-Kwȍk heî-uên* kè heî, neĭ kȍk-tak tîm à?

B: Ngŏh kȍk-tak haî ni kaan Chung-Kwȍk heî-uên* kè heî fei-sheūng-chi hó. Neĭ kȍk tak tîm à?

A: Ngŏh kȍk tak haî ni kaan Chung-Kwȍk heî-uên* kè heî mŏ Meĭ-Kwȍk heî-uên* kè kȍm hó.

LESSON 15

WORD LIST

1.	mân	to ask, inquire
2.	laî	to come
3.	hă	a moment, short while, suffix to verb
4.	che	final particle, only
5.	chìng-wâ	just, within a brief period
6.	shoh-fà*	sofa
7.	k'eĭ	to stand
8.	teî	floor, ground
9.	fàn	to sleep, lie down
10.	pâng	to lean on
11.	pûng	AN
12.	chai	to put, place
13.	tấn	to put, place
14.	ch'ōng	bed, couch
15.	fòng	to put, place, release,let loose
16.	fōng*	room
17.	lau	topcoat
18.	laû	to lose, leave behind, neglect, omit
19.	laū*	building, house
20.	ôh	oh!

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

1281

坐 tsŏh to sit; to ride; a seat.

請坐 ts'íng ts'ŏh: please sit down.

坐監 ts'ŏh kaam: to be in prison.

375

報 pò: a reply; report; to announce; to recompense; a letter; gazette; newspaper.

報仇 pò-sh aū: to take revenge.

報告 pò-kò: to report; to inform; an announcement.

呈報 ch'īng-pò: to report; to submit a statement.

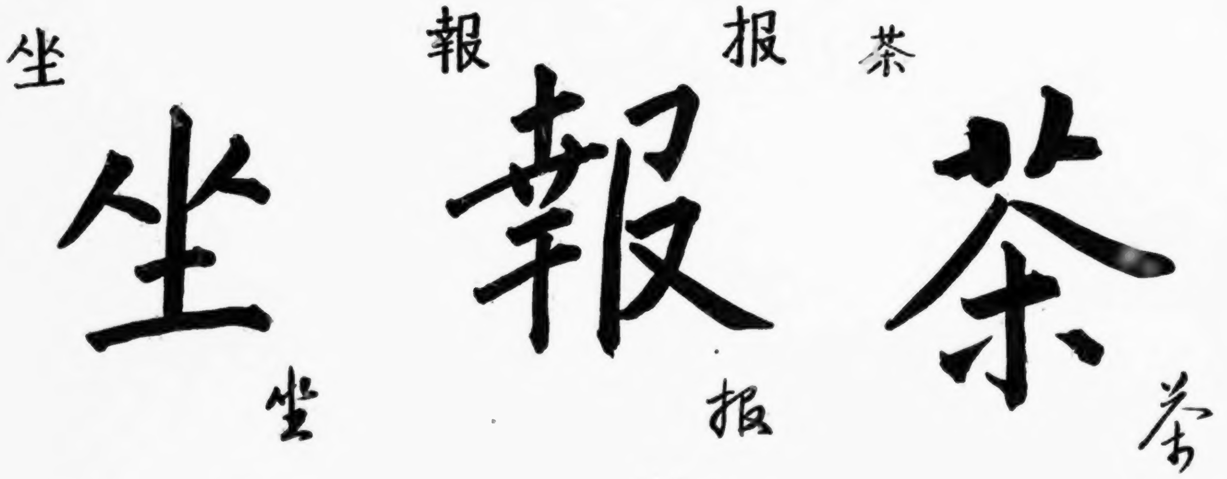
8

茶 ch'ā: tea.

茶葉 ch'ā-îp: tea leaves

茶壺 ch'ā-oō: tea-pot

煲茶 po-ch'ā: to make tea.



198

放 fòng: to release; to place in or on

放假 fòng kà· to give holiday; holiday

放學 fòng hòk: school let out

放心 fòng-sam: make the mind easy; to be free from anxiety

1402

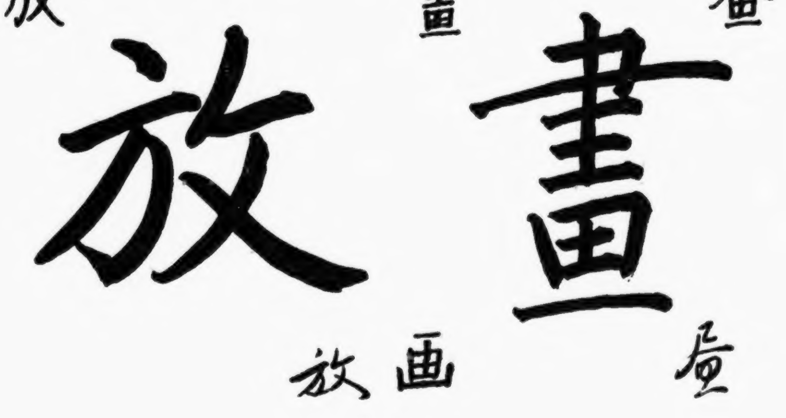
畫 wâ: picture; drawing, painting.

畫 waâk: to draw, to paint; to plan; a stroke.

畫家 wâ* ka: an artist.

水彩畫 shuí-ts'oí wà. water-color painting.

一畫 yat waâk: a stroke or mark (in writing)



LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

899

本	poón: the source; origin; native; capital.
本來	poón-loî: originally; actually.
本心	poón-sam: conscience.
本錢	poón-ts'în: capital.

740

午	nğ: 11 a.m. -1 p.m.
上午	sheûng-nğ: forenoon.
下午	hâ-nğ: afternoon.
午餐	nğ-ts'aan: lunch; tiffin.

234

下	hâ: to go down; below; next (hâ*)
上下	sheûng-hâ*: about
下午	hâ-nğ: afternoon
下次	hâ ts'ẑ: next time
下等	hâ-t áng: low class.

本 午 下

本 午 下

本 午 下

1367

同	t'ūng: altogether; with; united.
同志	t'ūng-chì: comrade; common purpose.
同時	t'ūng-shī: at the same time.
同事	t'ūng-sẑ: colleague; co-worker.
同學	t'ūng-hôk: schoolmate.

70

紙	chí: paper(Cl. cheung)
紙幣	chí-paî: paper money
印水紙	yàn-shuí-chí: blotter

同 紙

同 紙

仝 同 紙

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

黃先生有 tsaí，亦都有女*。佢 kè tsaí 同女*都好細；佢 kè 女*好 lèng，好 ch'ung-mīng；佢 kè tsaí 冇 kòm lèng，冇 kòm ch'ung-mīng。黃先生，黃太太*，同佢地 kè tsaí 女*今日下午喺 uk-k'éi.

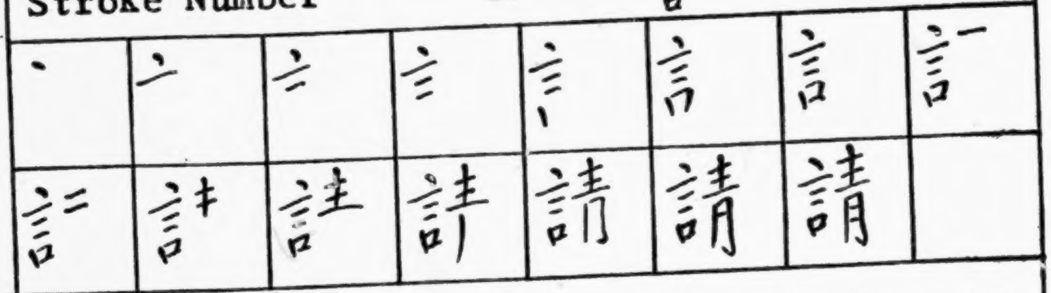
黃先生 kè 女* fàn 喺 cheung ts'ōng 處，佢睇畫*報。黃先生 kè tsaí 坐喺地處，佢聽 yam-ngôk。黃先生 pâng 喺 pûng ts'eūng 處，佢 shîk in，yám 茶，同睇報紙。黃太太*坐喺 soh-fà* tô；kóh cheung soh-fà* 好好坐，m̄ - 長 m̄ - 短；黃太太*坐喺 soh-fà* tô tsô 衫。幾本畫*報放喺 kóh cheung soh-fà* 處。

LESSON 15

WRITING MATERIAL

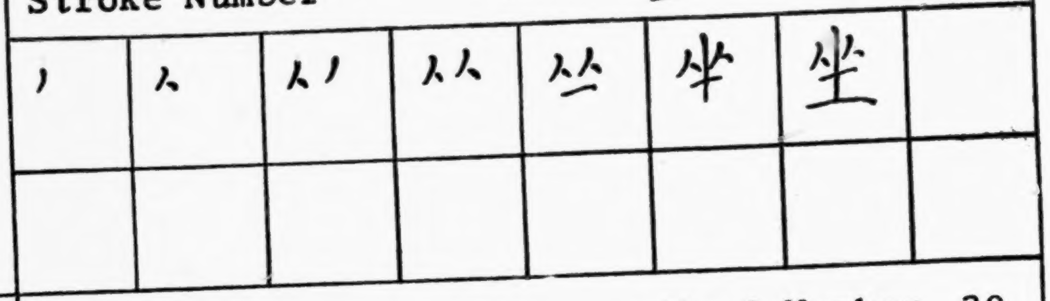
請

Character Number 1231 Radical Number 149
Stroke Number 15 言



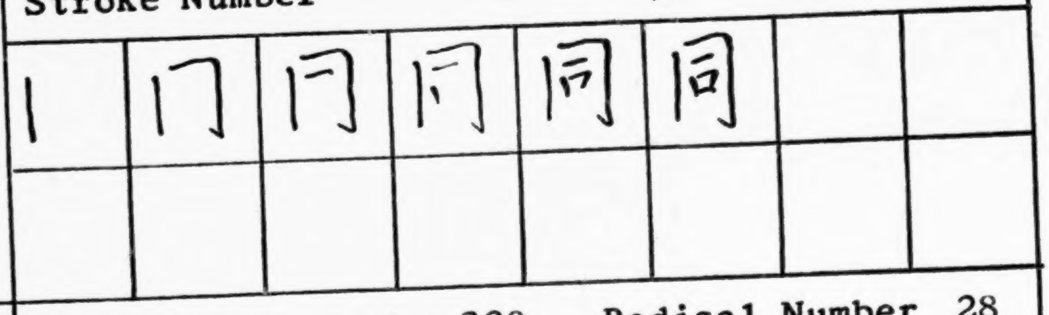
坐

Character Number 1281 Radical Number 32
Stroke Number 7 土



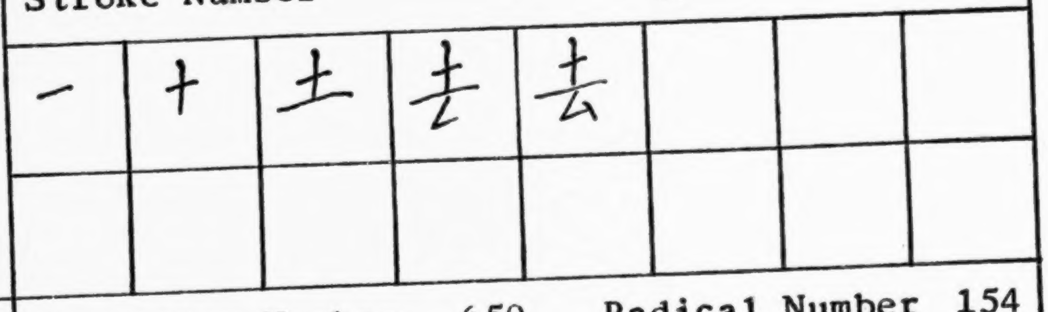
同

Character Number 1367 Radical Number 30
Stroke Number 6 口



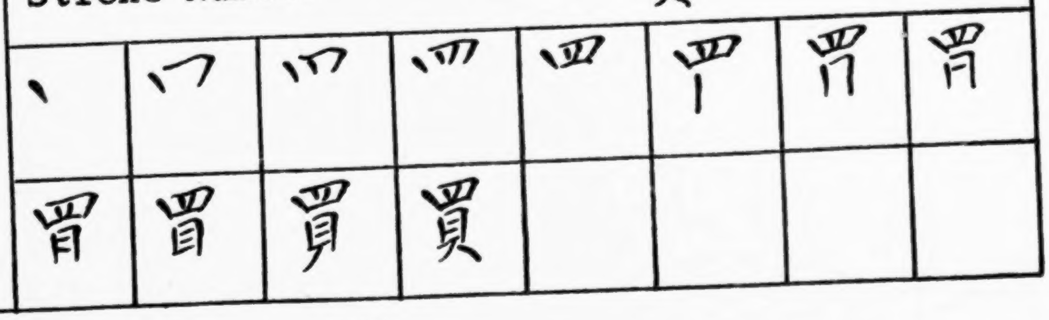
去

Character Number 320 Radical Number 28
Stroke Number 5 厶



買

Character Number 659 Radical Number 154
Stroke Number 12 貝



LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Neĭ kè foô-ts'an haỉ pin shuè tsô sẑ?
   K'uĭ kè shaỉ-ló haỉ pin tô tong ping?
   K'uĭ kè p'āng-yaŭ haỉ pin tô kaaù shue?
   Ch'ān Siú-Tsé kè mŏ-ts'an haỉ pin-shuè shîk-faân?
2. Neĭ kè foô-ts'an keỉ-shī haỉ Ying-Kwòk tsô sẑ?
   K'uĭ kè shaỉ-ló keỉ-shī haỉ Meĭ-Kwòk tong ping?
   K'uĭ kè p'āng-yaŭ keỉ-shī haỉ Yât-Poón kaaù shue?
   Ch'ān Siú-Tsé kè mŏ-tsán keỉ shī haỉ neĭ-shuè shîk faân?
3. Neĭ kè foô-ts'an ī-ka haỉ Ying-Kwòk tsô mi-yĕ?
   K'uĭ kè shaỉ-ló ỉn-tsoỉ haỉ Meĭ-Kwòk tsô mi-yĕ?
   K'uĭ kè p'āng-yaŭ kaû-nīn haỉ Yât-Poón tsô mi-yĕ?
   Ch'ān Siú-Tsé kè mŏ-ts'an tsòk-maăn haỉ neĭ shuè tsô mi-yĕ?
4. Neĭ haỉ pin tô tá tîn-wâ* peỉ k'uĭ?
   K'uĭ haỉ pin shuè tá tîn-pò peỉ neĭ?
   Wōng Sin-Shaang haỉ pin tô sé sùn peỉ neĭ-teỉ?
   Ch'ān Sîu-Tsê haỉ pin tô keỉ ts'īn* peỉ ngŏh-teỉ?
5. K'uĭ ī-ka haỉ m̄-haỉ ni tô tûk shue?
   K'uĭ tsòk-maăn haỉ m̄-haỉ ni shuè sé sùn?
   Neĭ kaû-nīn haỉ ni tô kaaù shue mà?
   Neĭ t'ing-yât haỉ ni shuè shîk faân mà?
6. Ngŏh kè foô-ts'an haỉ Ying-Kwòk tsô sẑ.
   K'uĭ kè shaỉ-ló haỉ Meĭ-Kwòk tong ping.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

K'uĭ kè p'aāng-yaŭ haî Yât-Poón kaaù shue.

Ch'ān Siú-Tsé kè mŏ-ts'an haî ngŏh shuè shîk faân.

7. Ī-ka ngŏh kè foô-ts'an haî Ying-Kwòk tsô sẑ.

În-tsoî k'uĭ kè shaî-ló haî Meĭ-Kwòk tong ping.

Kaû-nîn k'uĭ kè p'aāng-yaŭ haî Yât-Poón kaaù shue.

Tsòk-maăn Ch'ān Siú-Tsé kè mŏ-ts'an haî ngŏh shuè shîk faân.

8. Haî, k'uĭ î-ka haî ni tô tûk shue.

M̄-haî, k'uĭ î-ka m̄-haî ni tô tûk shue.

Haî, ngŏh t'ing-yât haî ni shuè shîk faân.

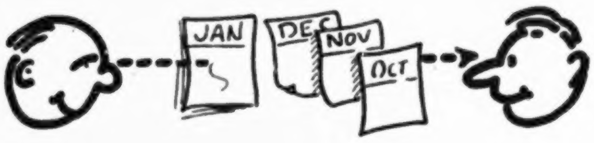
M̄-haî, ngŏh t'ing-yât m̄ haî ni shuè shîk faân.

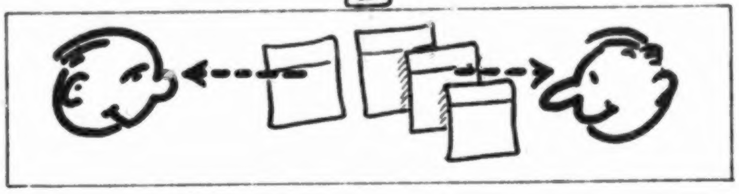
LESSON 16

A

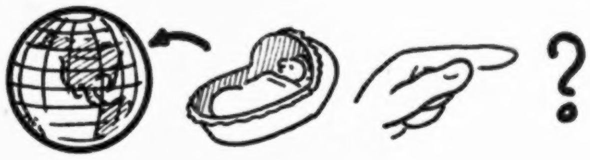
B

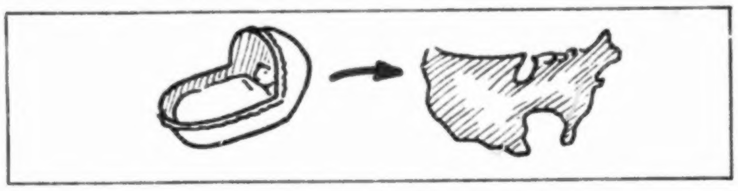
1


JAN
DEC
NOV
OCT

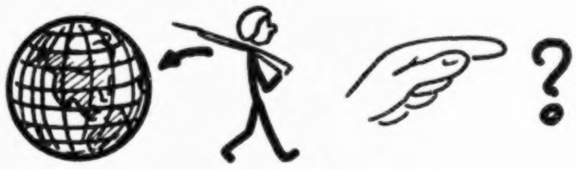


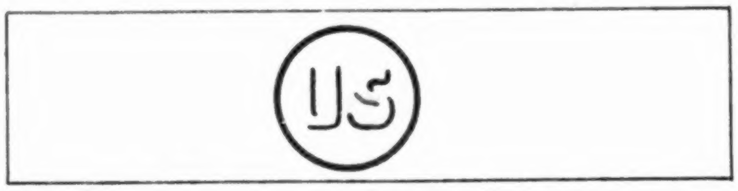
2



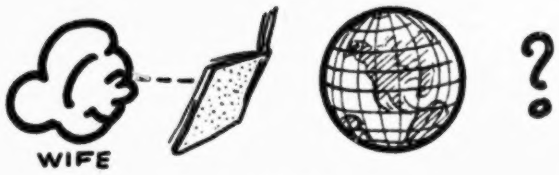


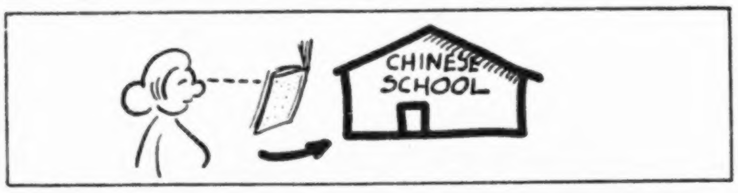
3



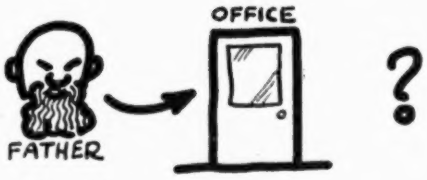


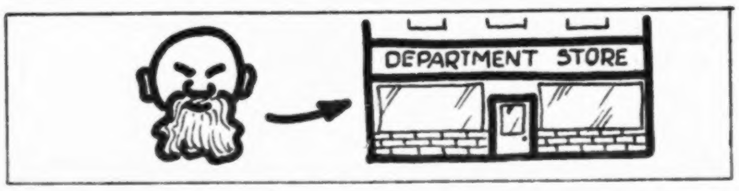
4



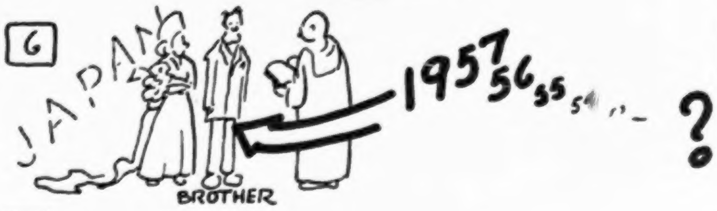

CHINESE SCHOOL

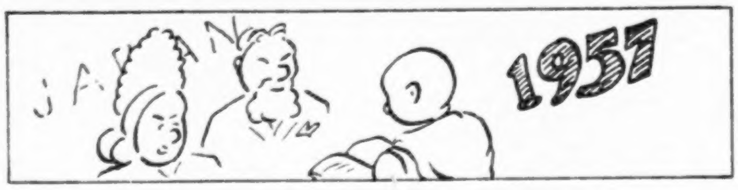
5


OFFICE
FATHER

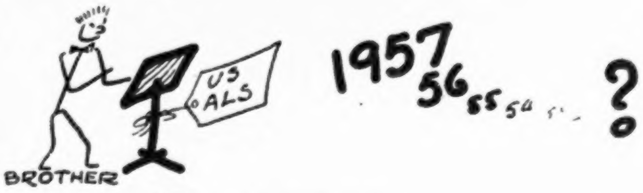

DEPARTMENT STORE

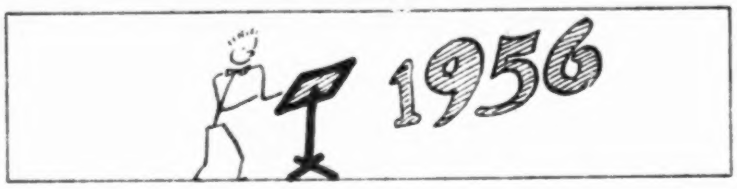
6


JAPAN
BROTHER
1957 56 55 54

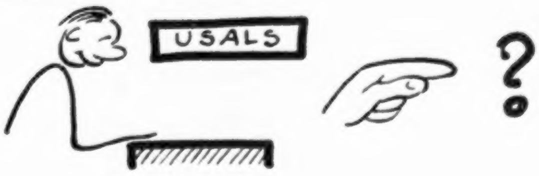


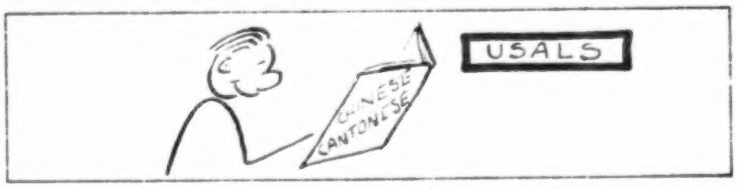
7


US ALS
BROTHER
1957 56 55 54

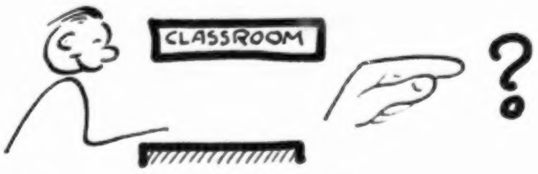


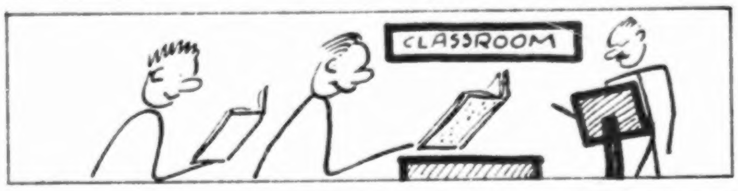
8



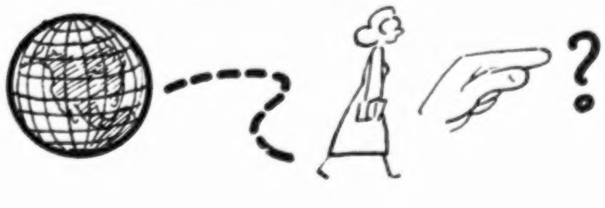

USALS
CHINESE CANTONESE

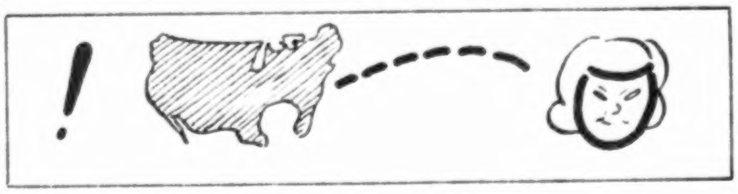
9





10





LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Wōng Sin-Shaang, hó noî mŏ-kìn neĭ là-pòh.
   B: Haî à, Leĭ Sin-Shaang. Ngŏh-teî taaî-ka mŏ kìn hó noî là.
2. A: Neĭ haî pin-shuè ch'ut shaì à?
   B: Ngŏh haî Meĭ-Kwòk ch'ut shaì.
3. A: Neĭ haî pin-tô tong ping ne?
   B: Ngŏh haî Meĭ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan tong ping.
4. A: Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* ĭ-ts'ìn haî pin-shuè tûk shue à?
   B: Ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* ĭ-ts'ìn haî Chung-Kwòk hôk-haaû shuè tûk shue.
5. A: Neĭ kè foô-ts'an ì-ka haî pin-tô tsô sẑ ne?
   B: Ngŏh kè foô-ts'an ì-ka haî yat-kaan kung-sz tô tsô sẑ.
6. A: Neĭ kè taaî-ló keî shì haî Yât-Poón kìt fan à?
   B: Ngŏh kè taaî-ló kam-nìn haî Yât-Poón kìt fan.
7. A: Neĭ kè shaì-ló keî shì haî Meĭ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû kaaù shue ne?
   B: Ngŏh kè shaì-ló kaû-nìn haî Meĭ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû kaaù shue.
8. A: Neĭ-teî haî Meĭ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû tsô mi-yĕ à?
   B: Ngŏh-teî haî Meĭ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû hôk Kwóng-Tung wâ*.
9. A: Neĭ-teî haî paan-fōng* tô tsô mi-yĕ ne?
   B: Ngŏh-teî haî paan-fōng* tô sheŭng t'ōng.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: Wōng T'aaì-T'aaì*, neĭ haî pin shuè laì kà?

B: Ôh. Ngŏh chìng-wâ haî Meĭ-Kwòk laì kè.

LESSON 16

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: I haven't seen you for a long time?

B: Yes, we haven't seen each other for a long time, Mr. Leĭ.

2. A: Where were you born?

B: I was born in America.

3. A: Where are you performing your military service?

B: I serve in the U.S. Army.

4. A: Where did your wife previously study?

B: My wife previously studied in a Chinese school.

5. A: Where does your father work now?

B: My father works in a department store now.

6. A: When did your elder brother get married in Japan?

B: My elder brother was married in Japan this year.

7. A: When did your younger brother teach at the U.S. Army Language School?

B: My younger brother taught at the U.S. Army Language School last year.

8. A: What do you do in the U.S. Army Language School?

B: We are learning Chinese-Cantonese in the U.S. Army Language School.

9. A: What do you do in the classroom?

B: We have class in the classroom.

10. A: Where did you come from, Mrs. Wōng?

B: Oh, I just came from America.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, neĭ ì-ka haî pin-shuè kaaù shue à?

B: Ngŏh ì-ka haî Meĭ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû shuè kaaù shue. Neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh În-tsoî haî Meĭ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan tong ping.

2. A: Neĭ kè nuĭ p'aāng-yaŭ haî pin-tô ch'ut shaì à?

B: Ngŏh kè nuî p'aāng-yaŭ haî Ying-Kwòk ch'ut shaì.

3. A: Ĭ-ts'ìn neĭ kè shaì-lô haî pin shuè tûk shue ne?

B: Ĭ-ts'ìn ngŏh kè shaì-lô haî yat-kaan Meĭ-Kwòk hôk-haaû shuè tûk shue.

4. A: Neĭ kè taaî-lô keî shì haî Yât-Poón kìt fan à?

B: Ngŏh kè taaî-lô kam-nìn haî Yât-Poón kìt fan.

5. A: Pin kòh ì-ka haî paan-fōng* shuè sheŭng t'ōng ne?

B: Leĭ Sin-Shaang t'ūng hôk-shaang haî paan-fōng* shuè sheŭng t'ōng.

6. A: Neĭ kè foô-ts'an haî pin tô tá tîn-wâ* peî neĭ à?

B: Ngŏh kè foô-ts'an haî ngŏh kè uk-k'eî tá tîn-wâ* peî ngŏh.

7. A: K'uĭ haî ni shuè tá tîn-wâ* peî pin kòh ne?

B: K'uĭ haî ni shuè tá tîn-wâ* peî k'uĭ kè nuĭ p'aāng-yău.

8. A: Neĭ kè hôk-shaang haî kóh kaan fōng* tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: Ngŏh kè hôk-shaang haî kóh kaan fōng* tô sé sùn peî k'uĭ kè mŏ-ts'an.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

9. A: Kam-maăn neĭ haî m̄-haî uk-k'eî shîk faân ne?

B: M̄-haî, kam-maăn ngŏh m̄-haî uk-k'eî shîk faân.

10. A: Neĭ kè t'aaî-t'aaî* haî Meĭ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan tô tsô sẑ, yik-waâk haî yat-kaan kung-sz tô tsô sẑ à?

B: K'uĭ haî yat-kaan kung-sz tô tsô sẑ. K'uĭ m̄-haî Meĭ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan tô tsô sẑ.

11. A: K'uĭ î-ka haî Chung-Kwòk tûk shue, yik-waâk haî Chung-Kwòk kaaù shue, yik-waâk haî Chung-Kwòk tong ping ne?

B: K'uĭ î-ka haî Chung-Kwòk tûk shue, m̄-haî Chung-Kwòk kaaù shue, yîk-to m̄-haî Chung-Kwòk tong ping.

12. A: Neĭ-teî m̄-haî ni kaan hôk-haaû tsô sẑ. Neĭ-teî haî ni kaan hôk-haaù tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: Ngŏh-teî m̄-haî ni kaan hôk-haaû tsô sẑ. Ngŏh-teî haî ni kaan hôk-haaû tûk shue.

13. A: Neĭ m̄-haî Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû kaaù Ying-Mān t'ūng Yât-Poón wâ*. Neĭ haî Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû kaaù mi-yĕ ne?

B: Ngŏh m̄-haî Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû kaaù Ying-Mān t'ūng Yât-Poón wâ*. Ngŏh haî Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû kaaù Kwóng-Tung wâ*.

14. A: Neĭ t'ūng neĭ kè t'aaî-t'aaî* m̄-haî ni kaan kung-sz maaĭ shue, pô*, t'ūng uēn-pat; neĭ-teî haî ni kaan kung-sz maaĭ mi-yĕ à?

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

B: Ngŏh t'ūng ngŏh kè t'aaî-t'aaî* m̄-haî ni kaan kung-sz maaĭ shue, pô*, t'ūng uēn-pat; ngŏh-teî haî ni kaan kung-sz maaĭ t'oī*, î, shoh-fà*, t'ūng ch'ōng.

15. A: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, neĭ kân-loî keî hó a-mă?

B: Keî hó à. Neĭ ne, Wōng Sing-Shaang?

A: Ngŏh to hó hó.

LESSON 16

WORD LIST

1.	kìn	to see, visit, observe
2.	là	final particle
3.	ch'ut shaì	to be born
4.	tong ping	to be in the military service
5.	tûk shue	to study, learn, read
6.	tsô sẑ	to engage in work, work
7.	kìt fan	to be married
8.	kaaù shue	to teach
9.	sheŭng t'ōng	to go to class; class in session
10.	ĭ-ts'în	formerly, previously, before
11.	kam-nîn	this year
12.	kaû-nîn	last year
13.	Yât-Poón	Japan
14.	taaî-ló	elder brother
15.	shaì-ló	younger brother
16.	kung-sz	company, store
17.	kà	AN, final particle
18.	pòh	final particle
19.	taaî-ka	all
20.	noî	long time

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

939

世 **shaì: the world; a generation; age.**

世界 **shaì-kaaì: the world; life; livelihood.**

出世 **ch'ut shaì: to be born.**

1191

當 tong: suitable; competent; to act as; during; when.

當 tòng: just; right; to value; to regard as; to pawn.

應當 ying-tong: ought.

相當 seung-tong: suitable.

861

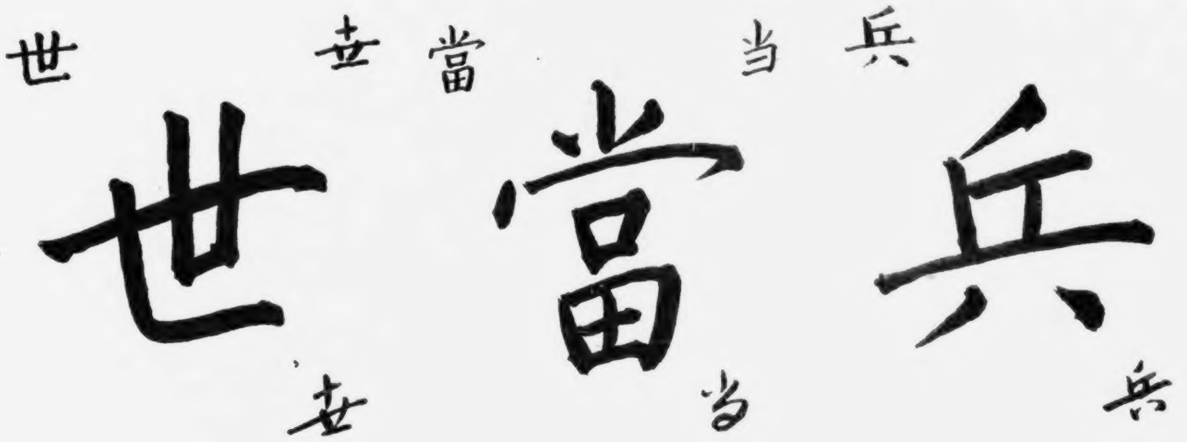
兵 **ping: soldier; military personnel.**

步兵 **pô-ping: infantry.**

憲兵 **hìn-ping: gendarme; military police.**

派兵 **p'aaì ping: to despatch soldiers.**

救兵 **kaù ping: reinforcement.**



1272

做 tsô: to do; to act; to make; to be

做官 tsô koon: to be an official.

做生意 tsô snaang-ì: to engage in business.

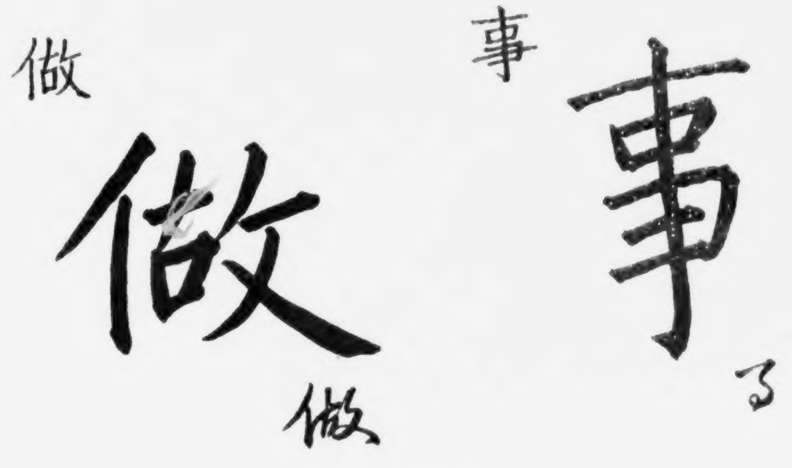
1074

事 sẑ: a matter; affair, work; duty; business.

事業 sẑ-ìp: calling; occupation.

公事 kung-sẑ: official business.

事實 sẑ-shât. as a matter of fact.



LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

1063

送	sùng: to give to; to escort; to send.
送禮	sùng laĭ: to send present.
送行	sùng hāng: to see one off.

[illegible]

打	tá: to strike; to beat; to whip; to do; to make; to play; to cause.
打敗	tá paaî: to defeat.
打勝	tá shìng: to win.
打倒	tá tó: to knock down; down with.
打字機	tá-tsẑ-kei: typewriter.

947

晨	shān: morning; dawn.
早晨	tsó-shān: good morning.
晨早	shān-tsó: at day break.

送 打 晨

送 打 晨

送 打 晨

972

上	sheŭng: to rise; to ascend; to go up.
上船	sheŭng shuēn: to go aboard a boat.
上課	sheŭng fòh: to conduct a class; to go to a class.
上等	sheûng táng: superior quality.

764

年	nīn: year.
今年	kam-nīn: this year.
年紀	nīn-keí: age.
少年	shiù-nīn: young, early life; young fellow.

上 年

上 年

上 年

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

黃先生喺美國出世. 黃太太*喺中國出世. 佢地喺日本 kit fan. 黃先生 ī-家喺 paan-fōng* 處上 t'ōng, 佢學廣東話*. 黃太太* chìng-話去街買 yě, keì sùn, 同打 tîn-報 peí 佢 kè 母親; 佢買兩本英文書送 peí 黃先生.

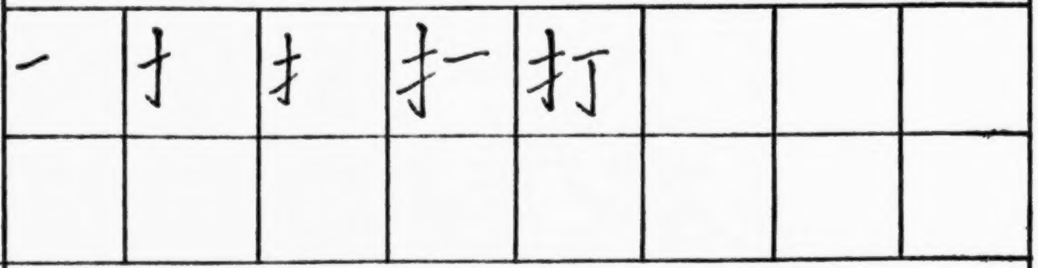
黃先生 kè 父親 ǐ-前喺一間大 kung-sz 處做事; 黃先生 kè 大-lô 前年喺一間日本學校處教書. 佢教英文. 黃先生 kè 細-ló kaû-年喺一間日本 kè 學校讀書. 佢讀日文. 今年佢喺美國當兵; 黃先生 kè 母親喺 uk-k'eí. 佢冇做事.

LESSON 16

WRITING MATERIAL

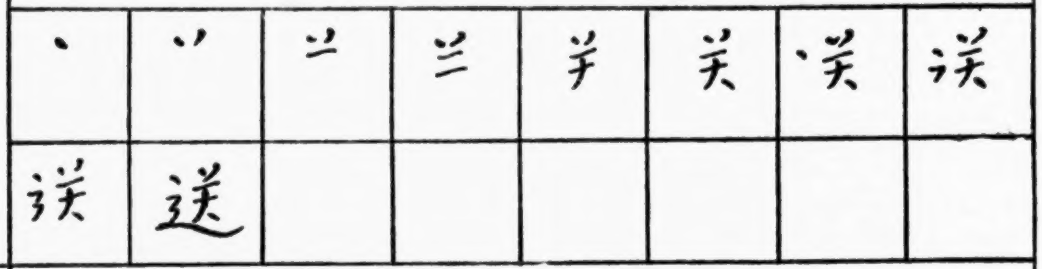
打

Character Number	1076	Radical Number	64
Stroke Number	5	扌，手	



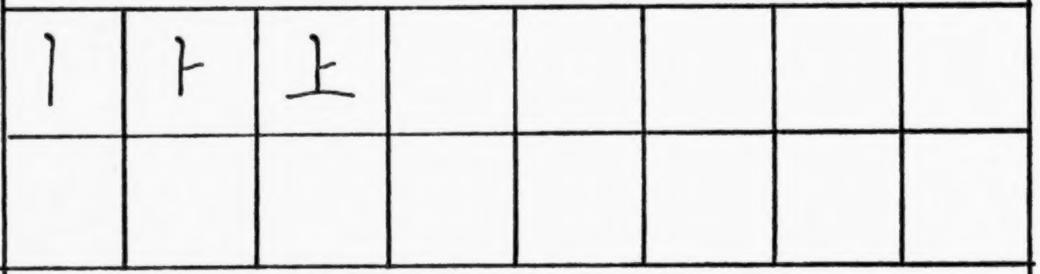
送

Character Number	1063	Radical Number	162
Stroke Number	10	辶，辵	



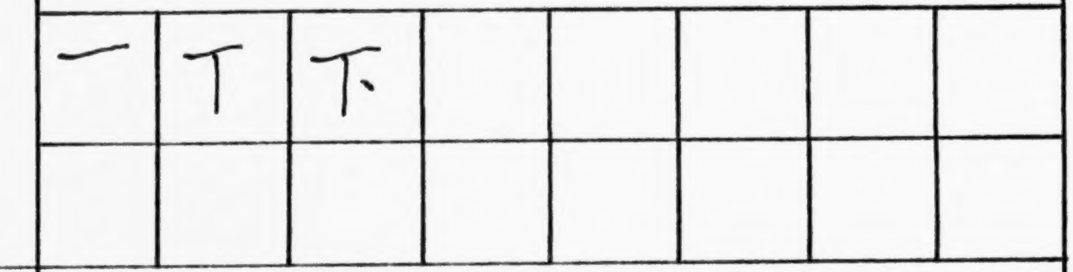
上

Character Number	972	Radical Number	1
Stroke Number	3	一	



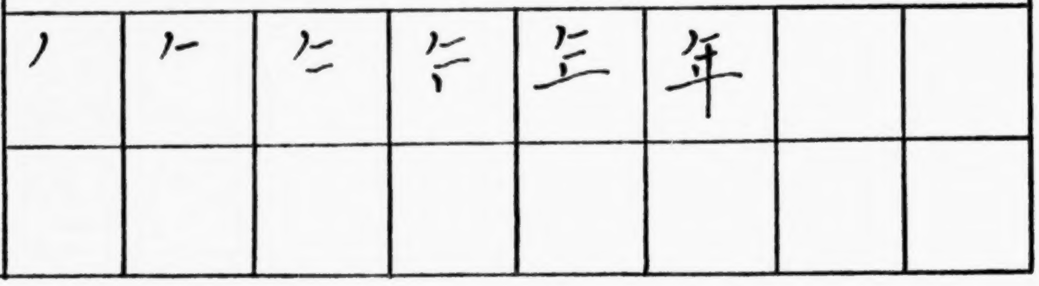
下

Character Number	234	Radical Number	1
Stroke Number	3	一	



年

Character Number	764	Radical Number	51
Stroke Number	6	干	



LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Neĭ t'ing-yât faan m̄-faan tak hôk?

   Kóh kòh hôk-shaang kam-yât sheûng m̄ sheŭng tak t'ōng?

   Kóh kòh pêng-yān tsòk-maăn fàn m̄-fàn tak kaaù?

   K'uĭ kè foô-ts'an haû-yât faan m̄-faan tak kung?

2. Neĭ t'ing-yât faan-tak hôk mà?

   Kóh kòh hôk-shaang kam-yât sheûng tak t'ōng mà?

   Kóh kòh pêng-yān tsòk-maăn fàn tak kaaù mà?

   K'uĭ kè foô-ts'an haû-yât faan tak kung mà?

3. Neĭ t'ing-yât laî m̄-laî tak ngŏh shuè?

   Ngŏh t'ing-yât huì m̄-huì tak k'uĭ tô?

   K'uĭ-teî ch'ut-nîn huì tak Heung-Kóng mà?

   Neĭ-teî haû-nîn huì tak Yât-Poón mà?

4. Faan tak, ngŏh t'ing-yât faan tak hôk.

   Sheŭng tak, kóh kòh hôk-shaang kam-yât sheŭng tak t'ōng.

   Fàn tak, kóh kòh pêng-yān tsòk-maăn fàn tak kaaù.

   Faan tak, k'uĭ kè foô-ts'an haû-yât faan tak kung.

5. M̄-faan tak, ngŏh t'ing-yât m̄ faan tak hôk.

   M̄-sheŭng tak, kóh kòh hôk-shaang kam-yât m̄-sheŭng tak t'ōng.

   M̄-fàn tak, kóh kòh pêng-yān tsòk maăn m̄-fàn tak kaaù.

   M̄-faan tak, k'uĭ kè foô-ts'an haû-yât m̄-faan tak kung.

6. Laî tak, t'ing-yât ngŏh laî tak neĭ shuè.

   Huì tak, t'ing-yât neĭ huì tak k'uĭ-teî tô.

   Huì tak, ch'ut-nîn k'uĭ-teî huì tak Heung-Kóng.

   Huì tak, haû-nîn ngŏh-teî huì tak Yât-Poón.

LESSON 17

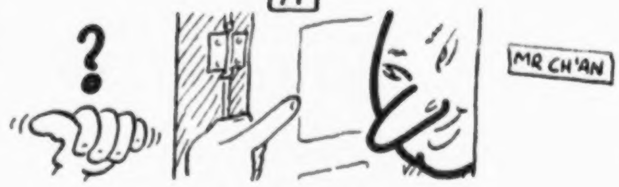
ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

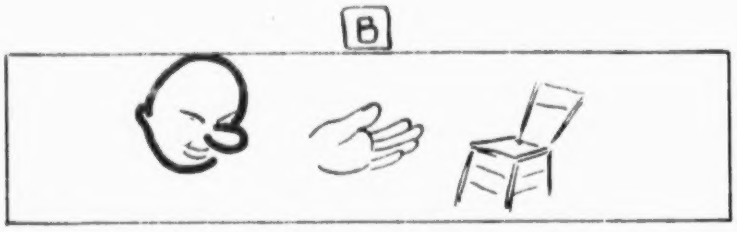
7. M̄-laì tak, ngŏh t'ing-yât m̄-laì tak neĭ shuè.
M̄-huì tak, neĭ t'ing-yât m̄-huì tak k'uĭ-teî tô.
M̄-huì tak, k'uĭ-teî ch'ut-nīn m̄-huì tak Heung-Kóng.
M̄-huì tak, ngŏh-teî haû-nīn m̄-huì tak Yât-Poón.

LESSON 17

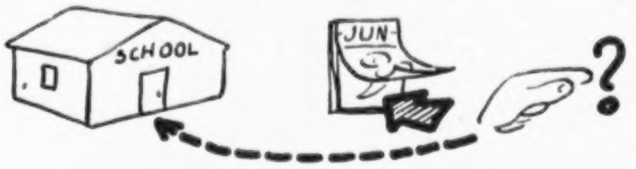
A B

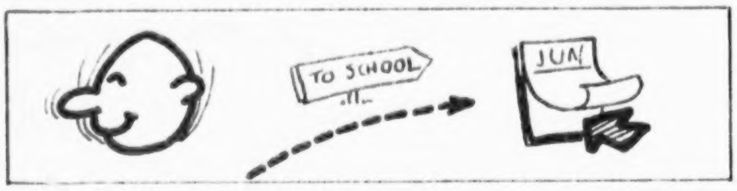
1



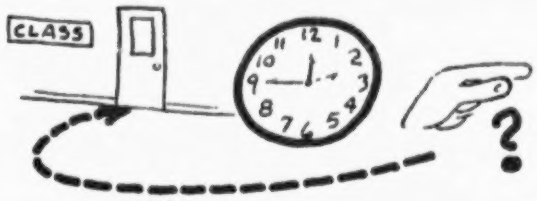


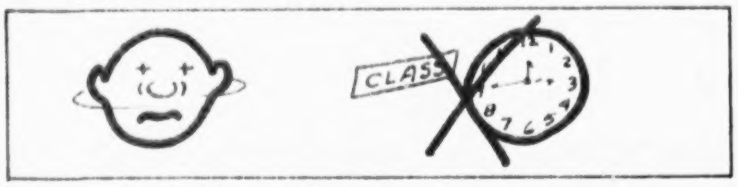
2



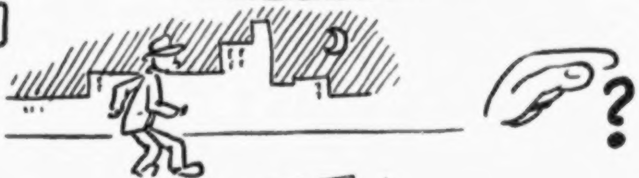

TO SCHOOL
JUN

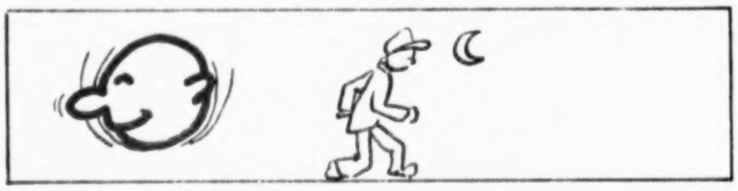
3



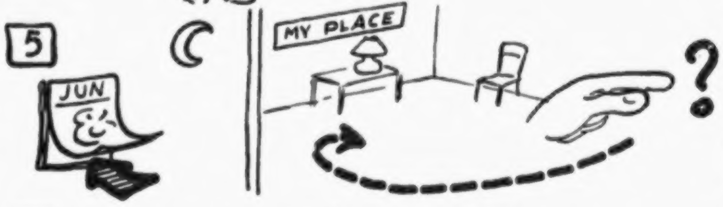


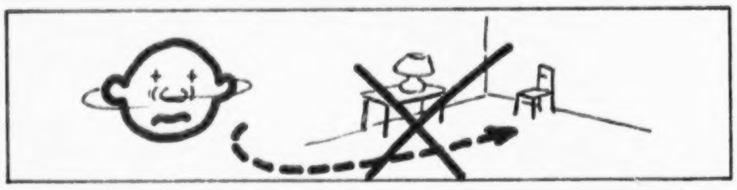
4



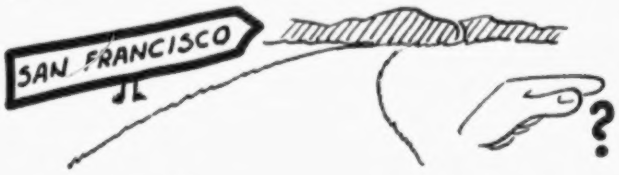


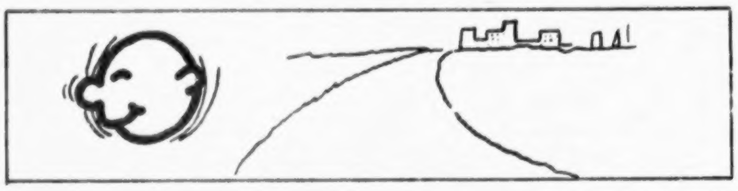
5


JUN
8
MY PLACE

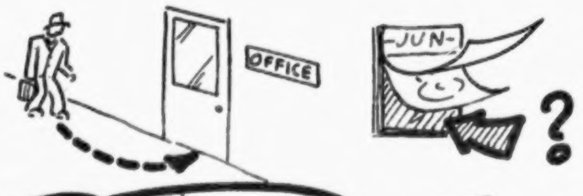


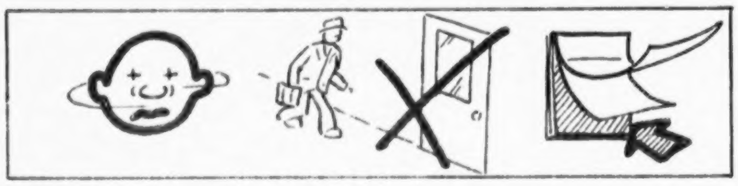
6


SAN FRANCISCO

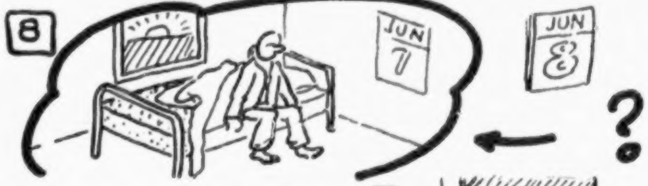


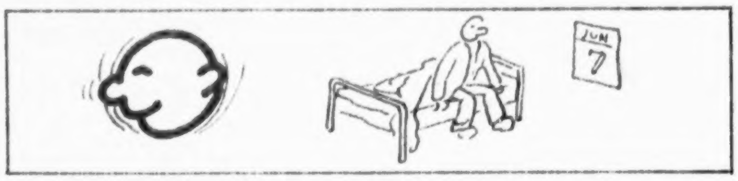
7



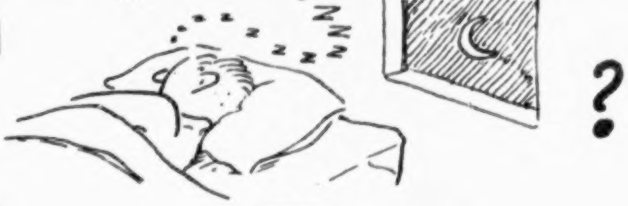


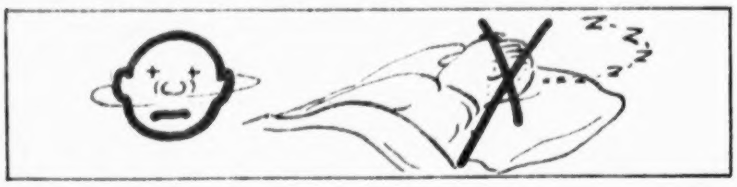
8



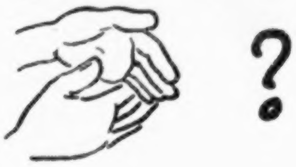


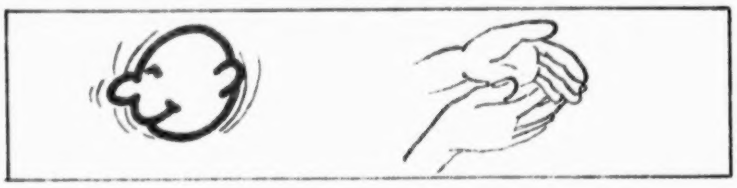
9





10





LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Ngŏh yăp tak laî mà, Ch'ān Sin-Shaang?

B: Ts'êng yâp laî la. Ts'êng ts'ŏh, ts'êng ts'ŏh, Leĭ Sin-Shaang.

A: Hó à. Hó à. Ch'ān Sin-Shaang.

2. A: Neĭ t'ing-yât faan m̄-faan tak hôk à?

B: Faan tak, ngŏh t'ing-yât faan tak hôk.

3. A: Neĭ yat-chân sheŭng m̄-sheŭng tak t'ōng ne?

B: M̄-sheŭng tak, ngŏh yat-chân m̄-sheŭng tak t'ōng.

4. A: Neĭ kam-maăn huî m̄-huî tak kaai à?

B: Huî tak, ngŏh kam-maăn huî tak kaai.

5. A: Neĭ t'ing-maăn laî m̄-laî tak ngŏh shuè ne?

B: M̄-laî tak, ngŏh t'ing-maăn m̄-laî tak neĭ shuè.

6. A: Neĭ kam-yât huî tak Saam-Faān-Shĭ mà?

B: Huî tak, ngŏh kam-yât huî tak Saam-Faān-Shĭ.

7. A: K'uĭ haû-yât faan tak kung mà?

B: M̄-faan tak, k'uĭ haû-yât m̄-faan tak kung.

8. A: Kóh kòh pêng-yān ch'ām-yât chiu-t'aū-tsó heî tak shan mà?

B: Heî tak, kóh kòh pêng-yān ch'ām-yât chiu-t'aū-tsó heî tak shan.

9. A: Kóh kòh pêng-yān tsòk-maăn fàn tak kaaù mà?

B: M̄-fàn tak, kóh kòh pêng-yān tsòk-maăn m̄-fàn tak kaaù.

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: Ngŏh kốm-yeûng* tsô, tak mà?

B: Tak, neĭ kốm-yeûng* tsô tak.

A: K'uĭ kốm-yeûng* tsô, tak m̀-tak à?

B: M̄-tak, k'uĭ kốm-yeûng* tsô m̀-tak.

LESSON 17

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: May I come in, Mr. Ch'ǎn?

B: Please come in. Please be seated, Mr. Leǐ.

A: Thanks, Mr. Ch'ǎn.

2. A: Will you be able to go to school tomorrow?

B: Yes, I will be able to go to school tomorrow.

3. A: Will you be able to go to class later?

B: No, I won't be able to go to class later.

4. A: Will you be able to go out tonight?

B: Yes, I will be able to go out tonight.

5. A: Will you be able to come to my place tomorrow night?

B: No, I won't be able to come to your place tomorrow night.

6. A: Will you be able to go to San Francisco today?

B: Yes, I will be able to go to San Francisco today.

7. A: Will he be able to go to work the day after tomorrow?

B: No, he won't be able to go to work the after tomorrow?

8. A: Was the patient able to get up yesterday morning?

B: Yes, the patient was able to get up yesterday morning.

9. A: Was the patient able to sleep last night?

B: No, the patient was not able to sleep last night.

10. A: May I do it this way?

B: Yes, you may do it this way.

A: May he do it this way?

B: No, he may not do it this way.

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Neĭ shîk chóh faân meî à, Leĭ Sin-Shaang?
   B: Ngŏh shîk chóh là. Neĭ ne, Ch'ān Sin-Shaang?
   A: Ngŏh meî shîk. Ngŏh kam-yât m̄-shîk tak faân.
2. A: Neĭ t'ing-yât faan tak hôk mà?
   B: M̄-faan tak, ngŏh t'ing-yât m̄-faan tak hôk.
3. A: Neĭ yat-chân sheŭng tak t'ōng mà?
   B: Sheŭng tak, ngŏh yat-chân sheŭng tak t'ōng.
4. A: Neĭ t'ūng neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* t'ing-yât hâ-ngă huì tak kaai mà?
   B: M̄-huì tak, ngŏh t'ūng ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* t'ing-yât hâ-ngă m̄-huì tak kaai.
5. A: Kóh kòh pêng-yān ch'ām-yât chiu-t'aū-tsó heî m̄-heî tak shan à?
   B: Heî tak, kóh kòh pêng-yān ch'ām-yât chiu-t'aū-tsó heî tak shan.
6. A: Kóh kòh pêng-yān ts'ìn-maăn fàn m̄-fàn tak kaaù ne?
   B: M̄-fàn tak, kóh kòh pêng-yān ts'ìn-maăn m̄-fàn tak kaaù.
7. A: Neĭ kè foô-ts'an tsòk-maăn shîk m̄-shîk tak faân à?
   B: M̄-shîk tak, ngŏh kè foô-ts'an tsòk-maăn m̄-shîk tak faân.
8. A: Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* keî shì m̄-faan tak kung ne?
   B: Ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* t'ing-yât m̄-faan tak kung.
9. A: Ch'ān Sin-Shaang keî shì m̄-sheŭng tak t'ōng à?
   B: Ch'ān Sin-Shaang haû-yât m̄-sheŭng tak t'ōng.

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. A: Neĭ kè mŏ-ts'an keî shì m̄-fàn tak kaaù ne?

B: Ngŏh kè mŏ-ts'an tsòk-maăn t'ūng ts'ìn-maăn to m̄-fàn tak kaaù.

11. A: Pin kòh t'ing-yât m̄-faan tak hôk à?

B: Ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ t'ūng k'uĭ t'ing-yât to m̄-faan tak hôk.

12. A: Neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ t'ung k'uĭ t'ing yât to m̄-faan tak hôk. Neĭ-teî haû-yât faan m̄-faan tak hôk ne?

B: Ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ t'ūng k'uĭ t'ing-yât to m̄-faan tak hôk. Ngŏh-teî haû-yât yîk-to m̄-faan tak hôk.

13. A: Neĭ t'ūng neĭ kè nuĭ p'aāng-yaŭ t'ing-yât laì tak ngŏh-shuè, yik-waâk m̄-laì tak ngŏh shuè à?

B: Ngŏh t'ūng ngŏh kè nuĭ p'aāng-yaŭ t'ing-yât m̄-laì tak neĭ shuè.

14. A: Neĭ t'ūng neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* t'ing-maăn huì tak Saam-Faān-Shĭ, yik-waâk m̄-huì tak Saam-Faān-Shĭ ne?

B: Ngŏh t'ūng ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* t'ing-maăn huì tak Saam-Faān-Shĭ.

15. A: Neĭ-teî keî shì tsaú tak à?

B: Ngŏh-teî kam-yât tsaú tak. Neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh kam-yât meî-tsaú tak.

LESSON 17

WORD LIST

1.	yâp	to enter, put into
2.	faan hôk	to go to school
3.	faan kung	to go to work
4.	heî shan	to get up, rise
5.	t'ing-yât	tomorrow
6.	t'ing-maăn	tomorrow night
7.	haû-yât	day after tomorrow
8.	ts'ām-yât	yesterday
9.	yat-chân	a short while, one moment
10.	pêng-yān	patient, sick man
11.	pêng	to be sick, sickness
12.	tak	can, to obtain, get, okay, all right; verb suffix
13.	kôm-yeûng*	so, in such a manner
14.	chiu-t'aū-tsô	morning
15.	Saam-Faān-Shĭ	San Francisco

LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

1111

得 tak: to obtain; to get; to attain; can.

做得 tsó-tak: all right; can be done.

得意 tak-ì: pleased; satisfied.

得人心 tak yān-sam: to be popular.

160

翻 faan: to return; to overturn

翻轉頭 faan-chuèn-t'aū: to return back

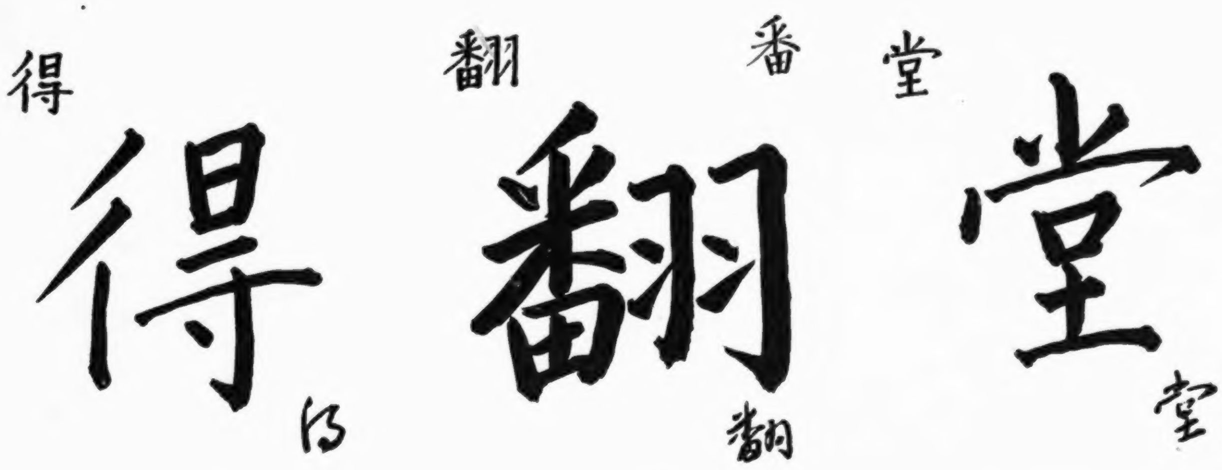
翻印 faan-yàn: to print again

1194

堂 t'ōng: hall; court, meeting place.

上堂 sneŭng t'ōng: to begin a class; a lecture starts.

禮拜堂 laĭ-paaì-t'ōng: church; a protestant chapel.



944

身 shan: the body; self; trunk; hull.

身體 shan-taí: the body; bodily frame; physique.

終身 chung shan: all one's life.

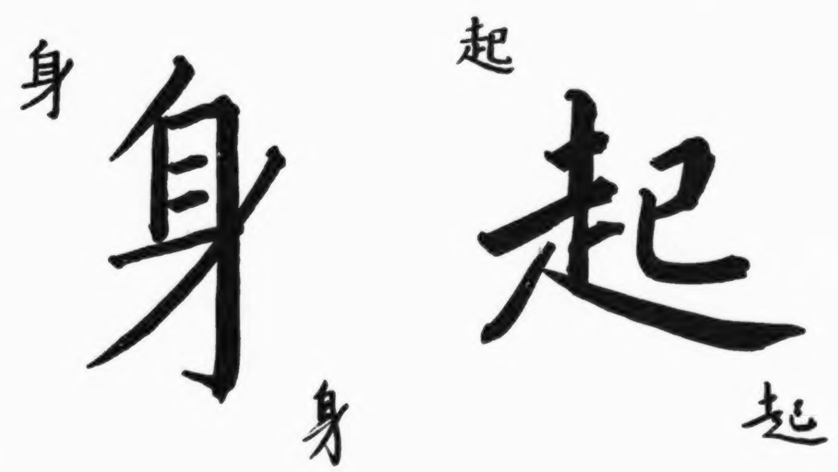
269

起 héi: to rise; raise; begin; from.

起手 héi-shaú: to begin; to start.

起身 héi shan: arise to get up.

起貨 héi fòh: to unload cargo.



LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

652

唔 m̄: a negative; no; not.

唔係 m̄-haî: no.

唔去 m̄-nuî: do not go.

845

病 pêng: sickness; distress; vice; defect.

病人 pêng-yān: a sick person; patient.

急病 kap pêng: a sudden attack of sickness.

164

飯 faân: cooked rice; a meal

煮飯 chué faân: to cook rice; to cook a meal

裝飯 chong faân: dish up the rice

唔 病 飯

唔 病 飯

唔 病 饭

1126

頭 t'aū: head; top; chief; first.

頭痛 t'aū-t'ùng: headache.

頭一次 t'aū yat-ts'z̀: the first time.

頭緒 t'aū-suĭ: a clue; way; means.

1269

早 tsó: morning; early; previous; before.

早晚 tsó-maăn: morning and evening; sooner or later.

遲早 ch'ī-tsó: sooner or later.

早婚 tsó fan: early marriage.

頭 早

頭 早

頭 早

LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

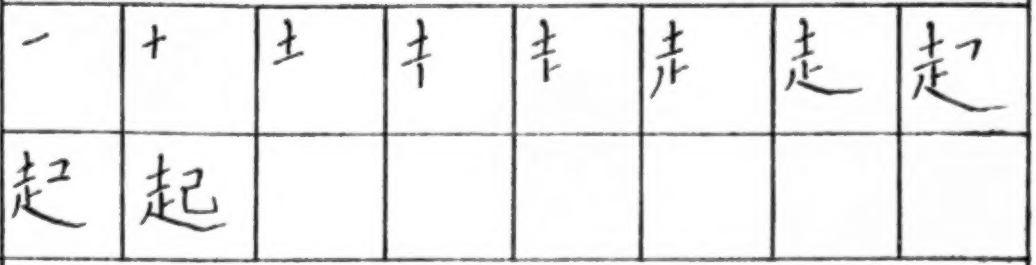
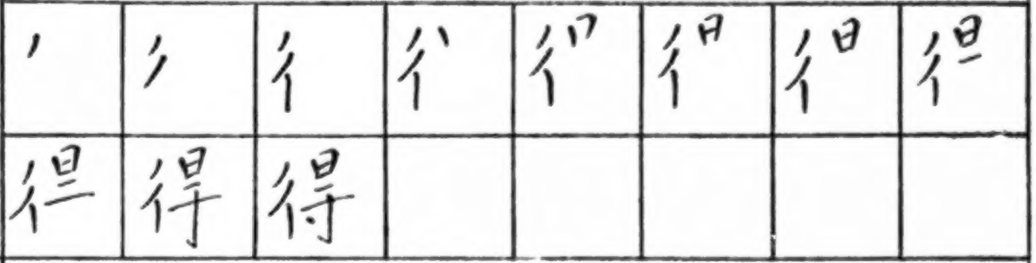
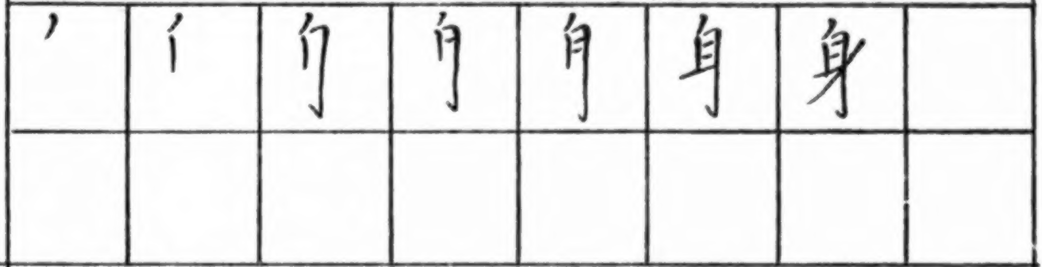
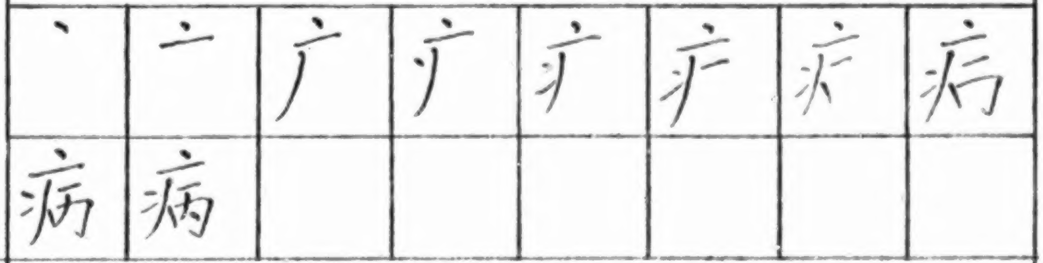
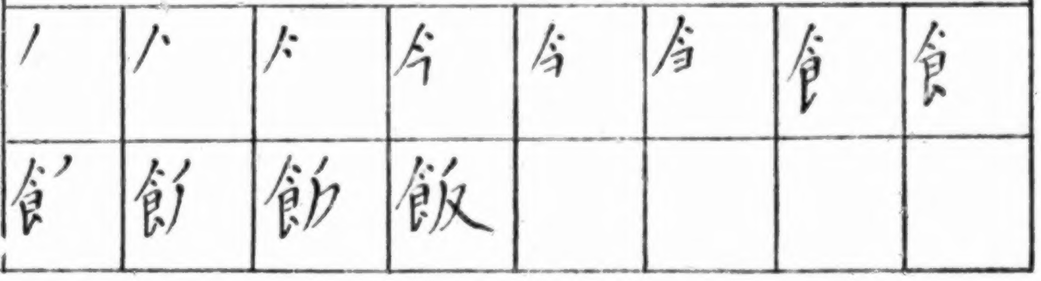
黃二係美國陸軍語言學校kè學生· 佢前日有病，唔番得學，唔上得堂，唔haāng得街，亦都唔fàn得kaaù.

佢昨日chiu頭早唔起得身· 唔shîk得飯· 佢kè朋友好好，買yě peí佢，yaû送ts'īn* peí佢.昨晚黃二fàn得kaaù; 今日chiu頭早佢起得身，shîk得飯; 下午佢喺uk-k'eí聽yam-ngôk, 睇報紙; 今晚佢shîk飯，佢shîk kai.

聽日黃二番得學，上得堂，去得街·

LESSON 17

WRITING MATERIAL

起	Character Number 269 Radical Number 156 Stroke Number 10 走 
得	Character Number 1111 Radical Number 60 Stroke Number 11 彳 
身	Character Number 944 Radical Number 158 Stroke Number 7 身 
病	Character Number 845 Radical Number 104 Stroke Number 10 疒 
飯	Character Number 164 Radical Number 184 Stroke Number 12 食 · 食 

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Ngŏh sé tak ts'ing m̄-ts'ing-ch'óh?

   K'uĭ tsô tak faaì m̄-faaì?

   Ngŏh kè tsaî kóng tak mīng m̄-nīng-paâk?

   Neĭ haāng tak kwooî m̄-kwooî?

2. Ngŏh ì-ka sé tak ts'ing-ch'óh mà?

   K'uĭ kam-yât tsô tak faaì mà?

   Ngŏh kè tsaî chìng-wâ kóng tak mīng-paâk mà?

   Neĭ tsòk-yât haāng tak kwooî mà?

3. Ngŏh kè p'āng-yaŭ shîk tak tîm-yeûng* ?

   Neĭ kè saì-man-tsaî haāng tak tîm-yeûng* ?

   K'uĭ kè hôk-shaang tûk-tak tîm-yeûng* ?

   Ngŏh-teî kè Kwóng-Tung Wâ* kóng tak tîm-yeûng* ?

4. Ts'ing-ch'óh, neĭ ì-ka sé tak ts'ing-ch'óh.

   Faaì, k'uĭ kam-yât tsô tak keî faaì.

   Mīng-paâk, neĭ kè tsaî chìng-wâ kóng tak hó mīng-paâk.

   Kwooî, ngŏh tsòk-yât haāng tak fei-sheūng-chi kwooî.

5. M̄-ts'ing-ch'óh, neĭ ì-ka sé tak m̄-ts'ing-ch'óh.

   M̄-faaì, k'uĭ kam-yât tsô tak m̄-haî keî faaì.

   M̄-mīng-paâk, neĭ kè tsaî chìng-wâ kóng tak m̄-haî hó mīng-paâk.

   M̄-kwooî, ngŏh tsòk-yât haāng tak m̄-haî fei-sheūng-chi kwooî.

6. Neĭ kè p'āng-yaŭ shîk tak taaì maân.

   Ngŏh kè saì-man-tsaî haāng tak fei-sheūng-chi faaì.

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

K'uĭ kè hôk-shaang tûk tak hó k'ān-lîk.

Neĭ-teî kè Kwóng-Tung Wâ* kóng tak keî ts'ing-ch'óh.

7. Neĭ kè pàāng-yaŭ shîk tak m̄-haî taaì maân.

Ngŏh kè saì-man-tsaî haāng tak m̄-haî fei-sheūng-chi faaì.

K'uĭ kè hôk-shaang tûk tak m̄-haî hó k'ān-lîk.

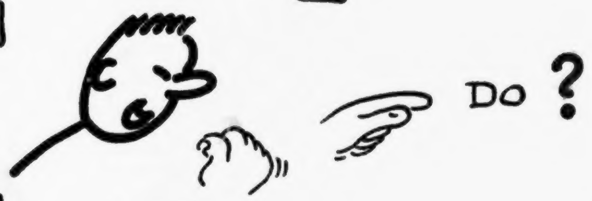
Neĭ-teî kè Kwóng-Tung Wâ* kóng tak m̄-haî keî ts'ing-ch'óh.

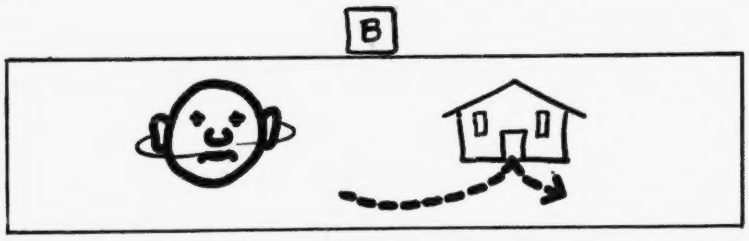
LESSON 18

A

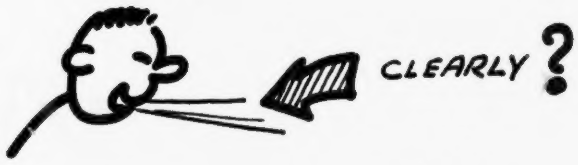
B

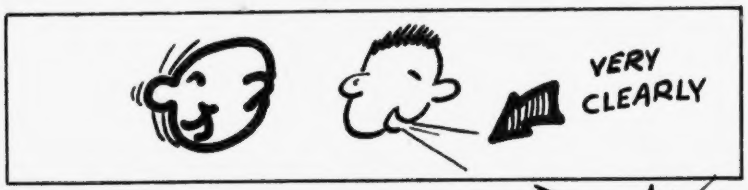
1



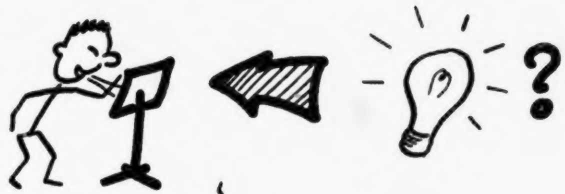


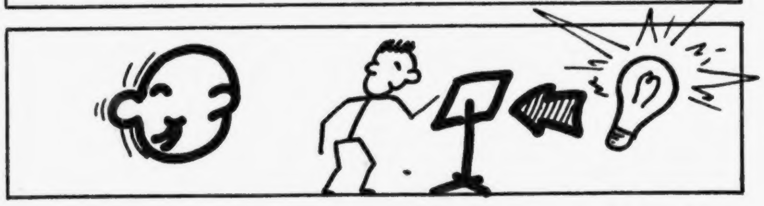
2



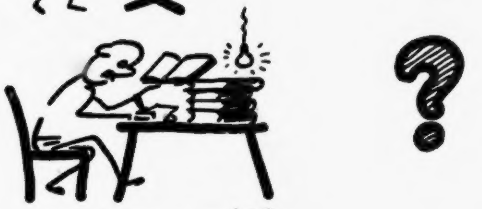

VERY CLEARLY

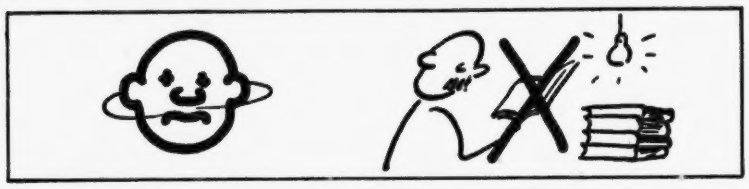
3



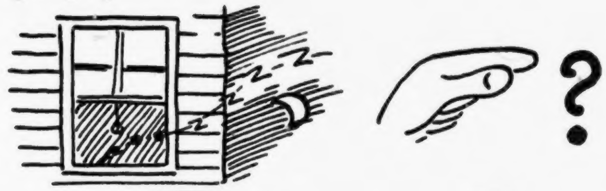


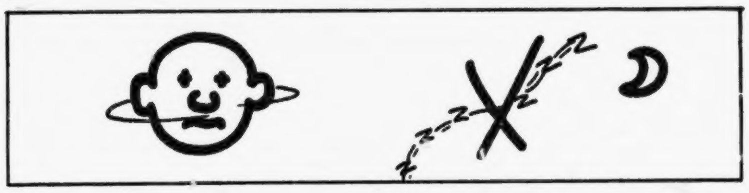
4



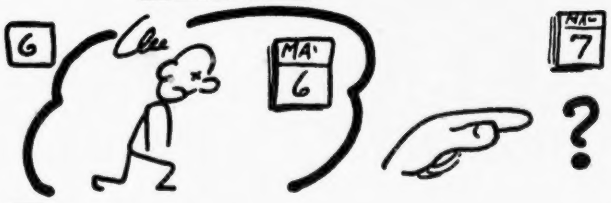


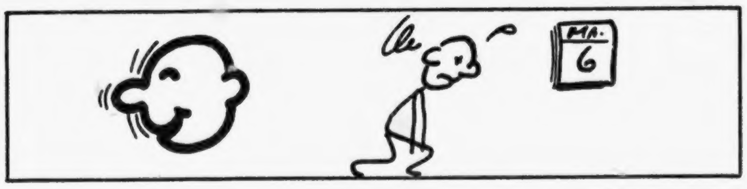
5



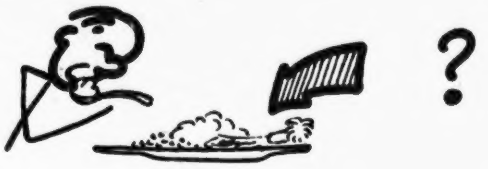


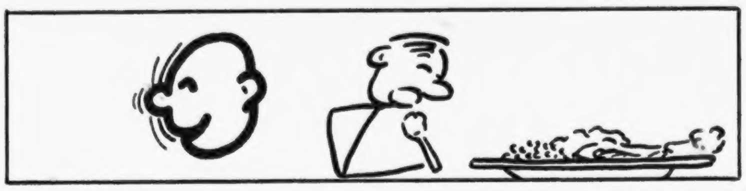
6



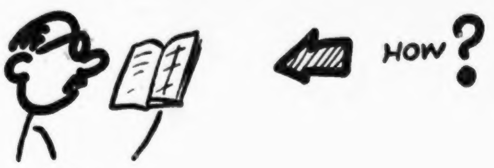


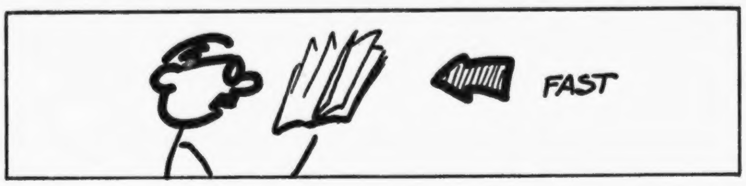
7



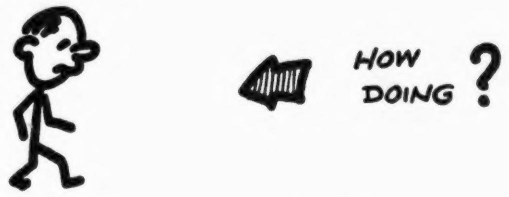


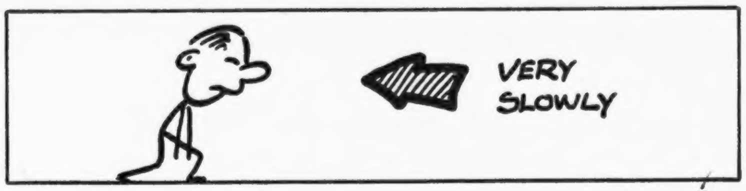
8



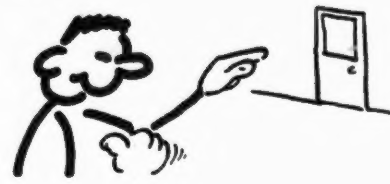


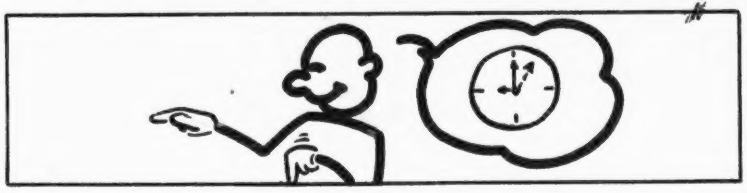
9




VERY SLOWLY

10





LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Neĭ yaŭ mat kwaì kòn à, Leĭ Seì Sin-Shaang?

B: Ngŏh mŏ mat sẑ. Ngŏh shûn-pîn* laì paaì-haû neĭ che.

2. A: Ngŏh kóng tak ts'ing m̄-ts'ing-ch'óh à?

B: Ts'ing-ch'óh, neĭ kóng tak hó ts'ing-ch'óh.

3. A: Ngŏh kaaù tak mìng m̄-mìng-paâk ne?

B: Mìng-paâk, neĭ kaaù tak hó mìng-paâk.

4. A: K'uĭ tûk tak k'ān-lîk mà?

B: M̄-k'ān-lîk, k'uĭ tûk tak m̄-k'ān-lîk.

5. A: Neĭ tsòk-maăn fàn tak kaù mà?

B: M̄-kaù, ngŏh tsòk-maăn fàn tak m̄-kaù.

6. A: Neĭ tsòk-yât haāng tak kwooî mà?

B: Kwooî, ngŏh tsòk-yât haāng tak hó kwooî.

7. A: K'uĭ shîk tak toh mà?

B: Toh, k'uĭ shîk tak hó toh.

8. A: K'uĭ hôk tak tîm-yeûng* à?

B: K'uĭ hôk tak hó faaì.

9. A: K'uĭ tsô tak tîm-yeûng* ne?

B: K'uĭ tsô tak hó maân.

10. A: Ngŏh seúng ch'ê là, Wōng Sin-Shaang.

B: Ts'ŏh-hă t'im la, Leĭ Sin-Shaang.

A: M̄-hó lòh, ngŏh tsaú lòh.

LESSON 18

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: What can I do for you, Mr. Leĭ Seì?
   B: I have nothing in particular. I just want to look you up.
2. A: Do I speak clearly?
   B: Yes, you speak very clearly.
3. A: Do I teach clearly and understandably?
   B: Yes, you teach very clearly and understandably.
4. A: Does he study hard?
   B: No, he doesn't study hard.
5. A: Did you sleep enough last night?
   B: No, I didn't sleep enough last night.
6. A: Did you get tired from walking yesterday?
   B: Yes, I was very tired from walking yesterday.
7. A: Did he eat a great deal?
   B: Yes, he ate a great deal.
8. A: How is he learning?
   B: He is learning very fast.
9. A: How is he doing?
   B: He is doing very slowly.
10. A: I have to leave, Mr. Wōng.
    B: Please stay a little longer, Mr. Leĭ.
    A: I'd better not. (I have to leave now.)

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ts'îng ts'ŏh, ts'îng ts'ŏh, Leĭ Sin-Shaang.

B: M̄-hó haàk-heì, m̄-hó haàk-heì, Wōng Sing-Shaang.

A: Neĭ yaŭ mat kwaì kòn à, Leĭ Sin-Shaang?

B: Ngŏh mŏ mat sẑ. Ngŏh laì ts'ŏh hă che.

2. A: Ni kòh sin-shaang kaaù tak hó mà?

B: Hó, ni kòh sin-shaang kaaù tak hó hó.

3. A: Neĭ-teî k'eĭ tak kwooî mà?

B: M̄-kwooî, ngŏh-teî k'eĭ tak m̄-haî keî kwooî.

4. A: Tsòk-maăn neĭ fàn tak tîm-yeûng* à.

B: Tsòk-maăn ngŏh fàn tak fei-sheūng-chi hó.

5. A: Neĭ kè sin-shaang chìng-wâ kóng tak tîm-yeûng* ne?

B: Ngŏh kè sin-shaang chìng-wâ kóng tak m̄-haî hó ts'ing-ch'óh.

6. A: Kam-yât neĭ kòk tak tîm-yeûng* à?

B: Kam-yât ngŏh kòk tak fei-sheūng-chi kwooî.

7. A: Ch'ān Sin-Shaang kóng tak ts'ing m̄-ts'ing-ch'óh ne?

B: Ts'ing-ch'óh, Ch'ān Sin-Shaang kóng tak hó ts'ing-ch'óh.

8. A: Ni kòh hôk-shaang tûk tak k'ān m̄-k'ān-lîk à?

B: M̄-k'ān-lîk, ni kòh hôk-shaang tûk tak m̄-haî t'aaì k'ān-lîk.

9. A: Neĭ-teî haî paan-fōng* shuè t'eng tak mìng m̄-mìng-paâk ne?

B: M̄-mìng-paâk, ngŏh-teî haî paan-fōng* shuè t'eng tak m̄-haî hó mìng-paâk.

10. A: Neĭ-teî k'eĭ haî kóh tô t'aî tak ts'ing m̄-ts'ing-ch'óh à?

B: Ts'ing-ch'óh, ngŏh-teî k'eĭ haî ni tô t'aî tak hó ts'ing-ch'óh.

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Neĭ ts'ŏh haî kóh cheung î t'aî tak ts'ing-ch'óh ti, yik-waâk ts'ŏh haî ni cheung î t'aî tak ts'ing-ch'óh ti ne?

B: Ngŏh ts'ŏh haî ni cheung î t'aî tak ts'ing-ch'óh ti.

12. A: Neĭ kam-yât hôk tak faaì ti, yik-waâk tsòk-yât hôk tak faaì ti à?

B: Ngŏh kam-yât hôk tak peî-kaaù tsòk-yât faaì hó toh; ngŏh tsòk-yât hôk tak mŏ kam-yât kòm faaì.

13. A: Neĭ, k'uĭ, t'ūng k'uĭ, pin kòh hôk tak tsuì faaì; pin kòh hôk tak maân ti; pin kòh hôk tak tsuì maân ne?

B: Ngŏh, k'uĭ, t'ūng k'uĭ, k'uĭ hôk tak tsuì faaì; k'uĭ hôk tak maân ti; ngŏh hôk tak tsuì maân.

14. A: Ngŏh, k'uĭ, t'ūng k'uĭ, pin kòh kaaù tak tsuì faaì; pin kòh kaaù tak maân ti; pin kòh kaaù tak tsuì maân à?

B: Neĭ, k'uĭ, t'ūng k'uĭ, neĭ kaaù tak tsuì faaì; k'uĭ kaaù tak mŏ neĭ kòm faaì; k'uĭ kaaù tak tsuì maân.

15. A: Kòm faaì tsaù lā, Leĭ Sin-Shaang?

B: Haî à, ngŏh seúng tsaú là, Wōng Sin-Shaang.

A: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

B: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

LESSON 18

WORD LIST

1.	Leĭ Seì	man's name
2.	mat	what? something, anything, what kind of..? any, some, why?
3.	kwaì	honorable
4.	kwaì kòn	honorable business (honorific form)
5.	yaŭ mat kwaì kòn?	what can I do for you?
6.	shûn-pîn*	at one's convenience, to take the opportunity
7.	paaì-haû	to visit, call on, pay a call (honorific form)
8.	seúng	to desire, think, hope, expect, want
9.	ch'é	to leave, go away
10.	t'im	also, more, additionally, too, as well as
11.	k'ān-lîk	industrious, diligent
12.	kaù	enough, sufficient
13.	faaì	fast; quick, prompt
14.	maân	slow; slowly
15.	ts'ing-ch'óh	plainly, clearly, distinctly
16.	kóng-tak ts'ing-ch'óh	to speak clearly

LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

815

班	paan: rank; class, company.
一班人	yat-paan yān: a class of or set of persons.
同班	t'ūng paan: of the same class; classmate.

200

房	fōng (fōng*): room; dwelling (Cl. kaan)
房間	fōng-kaan: room
同房	t'ūng fōng*: roommate; co-habitation

693

明	mīng: clear; plain; bright.
明白	mīng-paâk: plain; to understand.
明日	mīng-yât: tomorrow.
明年	mīng-nīn: next year.
明知	mīng-chi: clearly aware.

班 房 明

班 房 明

班 房 明

814

白	paâk: white; clear; clean; plain; gratuitously.
白字	paâk-tsẑ: character used wrongly for other of same sound.
白色	paâk shik: white color.

415

勤	Kān: laborious; diligent.
勤力	Kān-lîk: diligent; industrious.
勤學	Kān hôk: to study diligently.
勤儉	Kān-kîm: industrious and thrifty.

白 勤

白 勤

白 勤

LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

608

力 lîk: strength; force.

出力 ch'ut lîk: to exert oneself.

勤力 k'ān-lîk: industrious.

馬力 mǎ-lîk: horse power.

水力 shuí lîk: water power

158

快 faaì: quick; cheerful,

快慢 faaì-maân: quick & slow; speed.

快樂 faaì-lôk: happy

快活 faaì-oôt: happy.

快車 faaì-ch'e: express train.

563

慢 maân: slow; dilatory; rude.

慢慢 maân-maân*: slowly; at leisure; gradually.

太慢 t'aaì maân: too slowly.

傲慢 ngô-maân: arrogant; disdainful.

懶慢 laǎn maân: slow and lazy.

力 快 慢

力 快 慢

力 快 慢

255

行 haāng (hāng): to walk; to do; act

行 hāng: conduct.

行 hōng: (hōng*): a business firm.

行李 hāng-leǐ: baggage.

行禮 hāng laǐ: to salute

品行 pán-hâng: conduct; character.

洋行 yeūng-hōng*: foreign firm

985

食 shîk: to eat.

好食 hó-shîk: delicious.

食言 shîk īn: to break one's word

絕食 tsuêt shîk: hunger strike, to fast.

行 食

行 食

行 食

LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

黃二昨晚fàn得好好, 好kaù; 今日chiu頭早佢起得好早. 食得好多.

佢番學, 佢上堂; 佢讀中文. 佢讀得好勤力. 學得好快; 喺班房*. 佢sé中文字, 佢sé得好lèng. 佢係一kòh好好kè學生. Kóh kòh先生係廣東人. 佢教得好好, 講得唔快唔慢. 講得好ts'ing-ch'óh, 好明白; 黃二好明白; kóh kòh先生係一kòh好好kè先生. 黃二kè朋友亦都係學生. 佢讀得唔係幾勤力. 學得冇黃二kòm快; 佢sé中文字. sé得冇黃二kè kòm lèng.

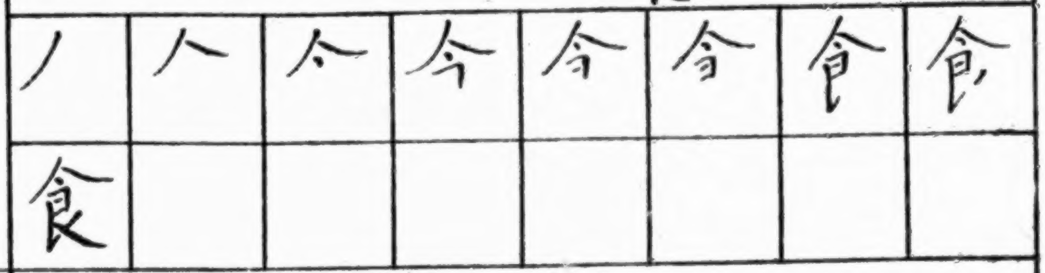
Ī-家黃二番uk-k'eí. 佢行得好快; 黃二kè朋友行得冇黃二kòm快.

LESSON 18

WRITING MATERIAL

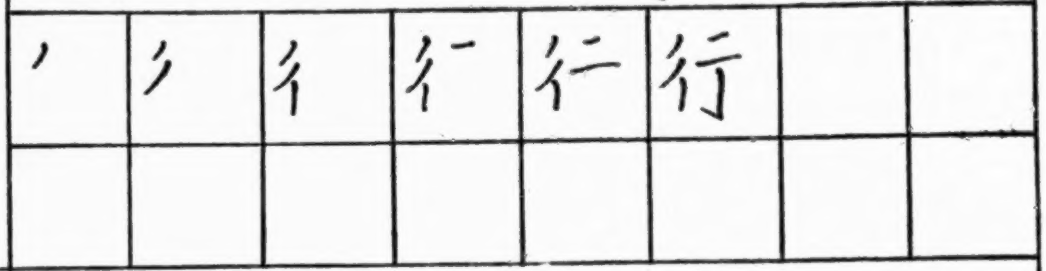
食

Character Number 985 Radical Number 184
Stroke Number 9 食



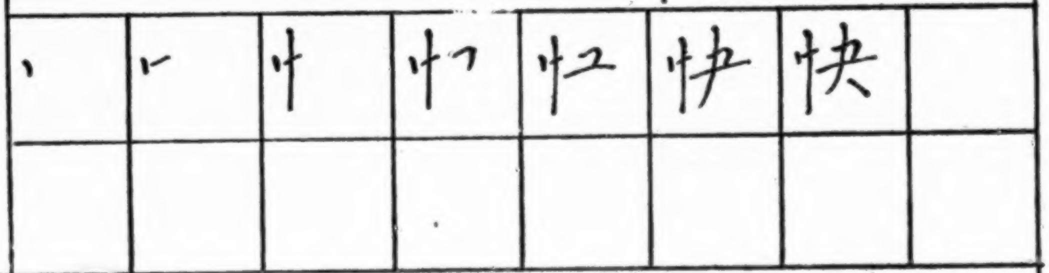
行

Character Number 255 Radical Number 144
Stroke Number 6 行



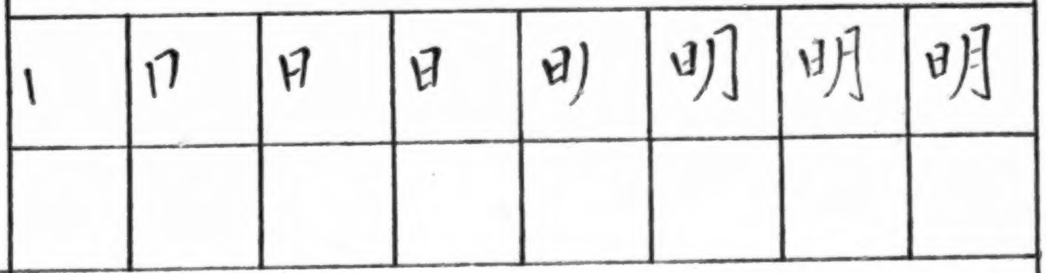
快

Character Number 158 Radical Number 61
Stroke Number 7 忄，心



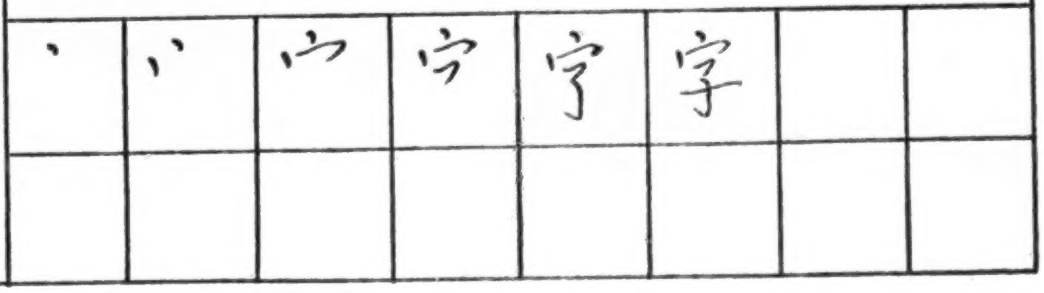
明

Character Number 693 Radical Number 72
Stroke Number 8 日



字

Character Number 1331 Radical Number 39
Stroke Number 6 子



LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. K'uĭ kaaù shue kaaù tak mōng m̄-mōng?

   Neĭ tsô sẑ tsô tak faaì m̄-faaì?

   Ngŏh shaî ch'e shaî tak maân m̄-maân?

   K'uĭ kóng Ying-Mān kóng tak hó m̄-hó?

2. K'uĭ kaaù shue kaaù tak tîm-yeûng*?

   Neĭ tsô sẑ tsô-tak tîm-yeûng*?

   Ngŏh shaî ch'e shaî-tak tîm-yeûng*?

   K'uĭ kóng Ying-Mān kóng tak tîm-yeûng*?

3. În-tsoî k'uĭ kè saì-ló kaaù shue kaaù-tak mōng m̄-mōng?

   Ĭ-ts'ìn neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* tsô sẑ tsô tak faaì m̄-faaì?

   Tsòk-yât ngŏh kè foô-ts'an shaî ch'e shaî tak maân m̄-maân?

   Chìng-wâ k'uĭ kè hôk-shaang kóng Ying-Mān kóng tak hó m̄-hó?

4. Mōng, k'uĭ kaaù shue kaaù tak mōng.

   Faaì, ngŏh tsô sẑ tsô tak faaì.

   Maân, neĭ shaî ch'e shaî tak maân.

   Hó, k'uĭ kóng Ying-Mān kóng tak hó.

5. M̄-mōng, k'uĭ kaaù shue kaaù tak m̄-mōng.

   M̄-faaì, ngŏh tsô sẑ tsô tak m̄-faaì.

   M̄-maân, neĭ shaî ch'e shaî tak m̄-maân.

   M̄-hó, k'uĭ kóng Ying-Mān kóng tak m̄-hó.

6. K'uĭ kaaù shue kaaù tak keî-mōng.

   Ngŏh tsô sẑ tsô tak hó-faaì.

Neĭ shaî ch'e shaî tak feì-sheūng-chi maân.

K'uĭ kóng Ying-Mān kóng tak t'aaì hó.

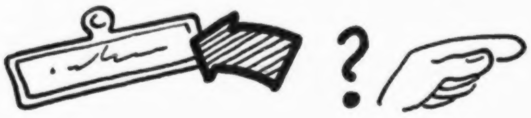
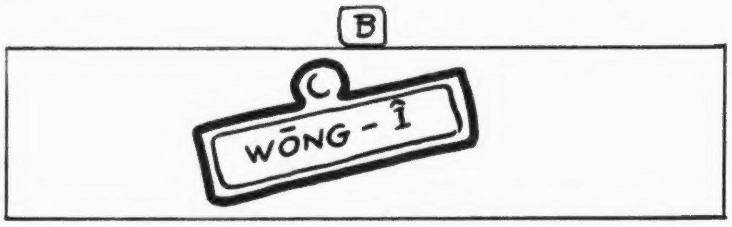
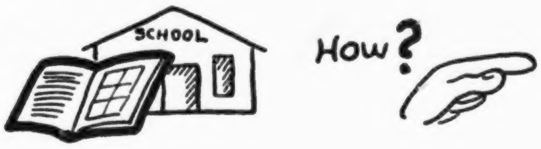
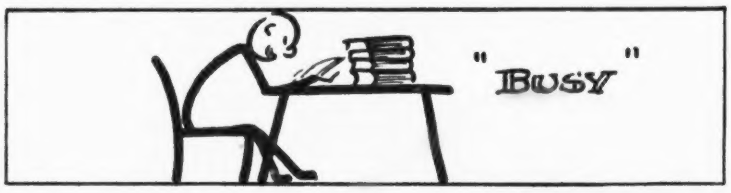
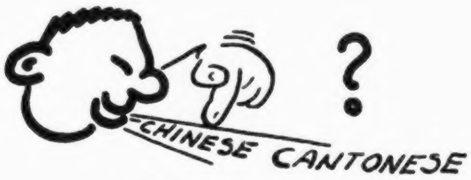
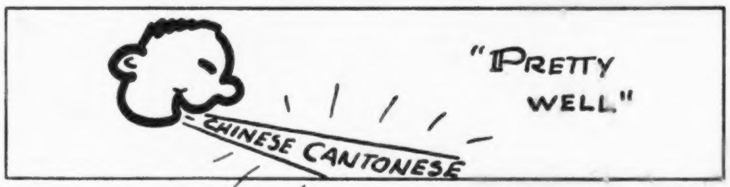
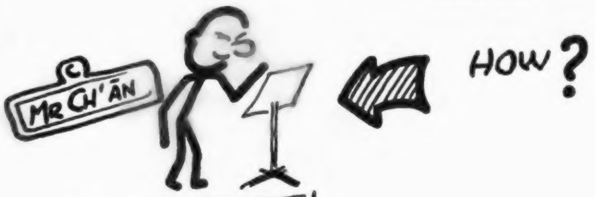
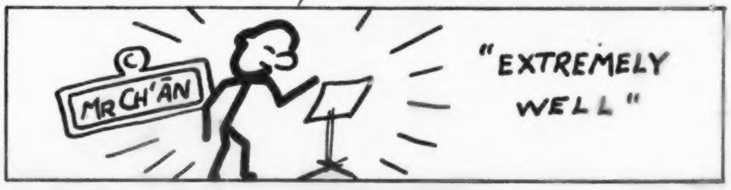
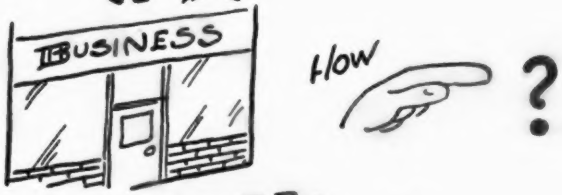
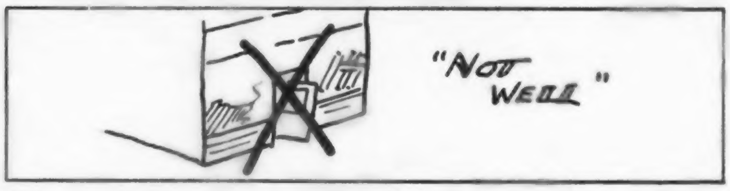
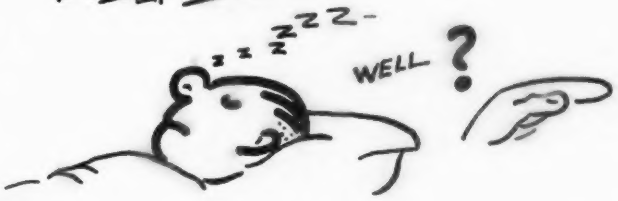
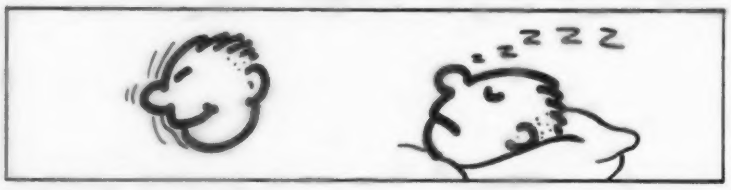
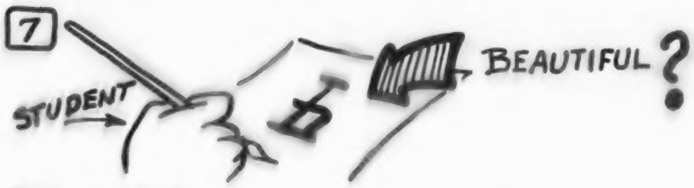
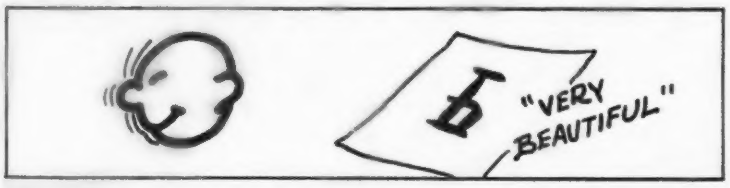
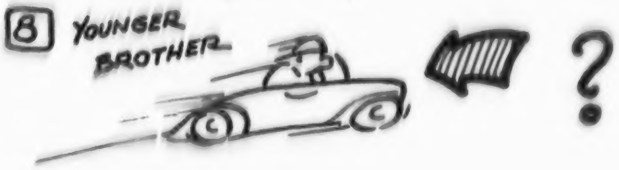
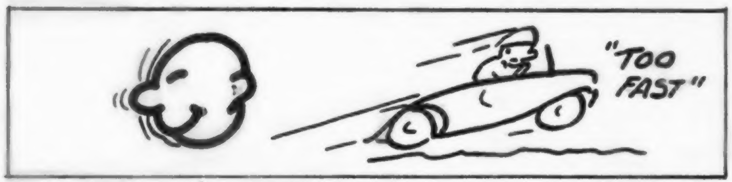
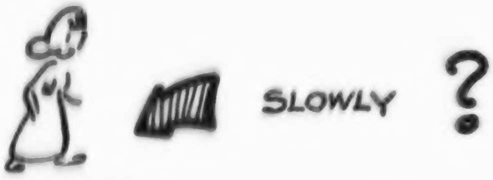
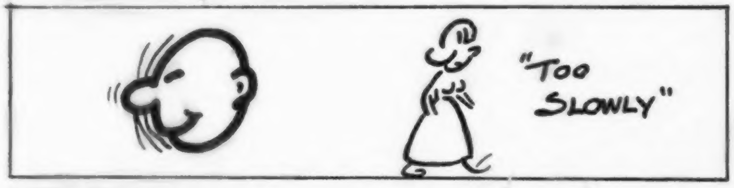
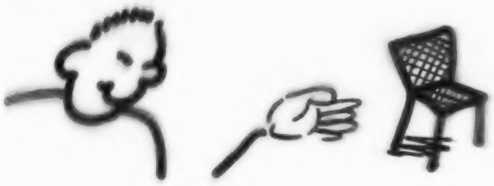
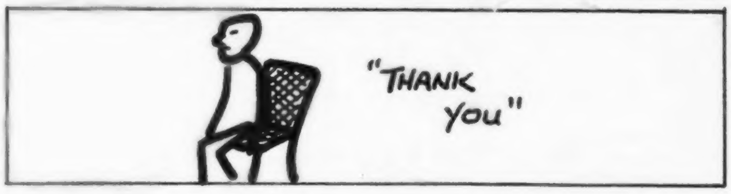
7. M̄-mōng, k'uĭ kè saì-ló ìn-tsoî kaaù shue kaaù tak m̄-haî keì mōng.

M̄-faaì, ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* ĭ-ts'ìn tsô sẑ tsô tak m̄-haî hó faaì.

M̄-maân, neĭ kè foô-ts'an tsòk-yât shaî ch'e shaî tak m̄-haî fei-sheūng-chi maân.

M̄-hó, k'uĭ kè hôk-shaang chìng-wâ kóng Ying-Mān kóng tak m̄-haî t'aaì hó.

LESSON 19

	A	B
1		
2		
3	 CHINESE CANTONESE	 "PRETTY WELL" CHINESE CANTONESE
4		 MR CH'ĀN "EXTREMELY WELL"
5	 BUSINESS HOW ?	
6		
7	 STUDENT BEAUTIFUL?	 "VERY BEAUTIFUL"
8	 YOUNGER BROTHER ?	
9		
10		

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Ts'ìng mân neĭ kwaì sìng à?

B: Ngŏh sìng Wōng, ngŏh kiù tsô Wōng-Î. Neĭ kwaì sìng mìng à?

A: Ngŏh sìng Cheung, ngŏh kiù tsô Cheung-Saam.

2. A: Neĭ tûk shue tûk tak tîm-yeûng* à?

B: Ngŏh tûk shue tûk tak hó mōng.

3. A: Ngŏh kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* kóng tak tîm-yeûng* ne?

B: Neĭ kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* kóng tak hó hó.

4. A: Ch'ān Sin-Shaang kaaù shue kaaù tak tîm-yeûng* à?

B: Ch'ān Sin-Shaang kaaù shue kaaù tak fei-sheūng-chi hó.

5. A: Ī-ka neĭ tsô shaang-ì tsô tak hó mà?

B: M̄-hó, ì-ka ngŏh tsô shaang-ì tsô tak m̀-hó.

6. A: K'ām-maăn neĭ fàn kaaù fàn tak hó mà?

B: Hó, k'ām-maăn ngŏh fàn kaaù fàn tak hó hó.

7. A: Neĭ kè hôk-shaang sé Chung-Mān tsẑ sé tak lèng m̀-lèng ne?

B: Léng, ngŏh kè hôk-shaang sé Chung-Mān tsẑ sé tak hó lèng.

8. A: Neĭ kè shaì-ló shaî ch'e shaî tak faaì m̀-faaì à?

B: Faaì, ngŏh kè shaì-ló shaî ch'e shaî tak t'aaì faaì.

9. A: Neĭ kè nuĭ p'aāng-yaŭ haāng lô haāng tak maân m̄-maân ne?

B: Maân, ngŏh kè nuĭ p'aāng yaŭ haāng lô haāng tak t'aaì maân.

10. A: Ts'ìng ts'ŏh la. Wōng-Î Sin-Shaang.

B: M̄-shaî k'ui là. Leĭ Sin-Shaang.

LESSON 19

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: What is your name?
   B: My name is Wōng Î. What is yours?
   A: My name is Cheung Saam.
2. A: How are you doing in shcool?
   B: I am very busy with my school work.
3. A: How is my Chinese-Cantonese?
   B: You speak Chinese-Cantonese very well.
4. A: How does Mr. Ch'ān do in his teaching?
   B: Mr. Ch'ān does extremely well.
5. A: How are you doing in business?
   B: I am not doing well.
6. A: Did you sleep well last night?
   B: Yes, I slept very well.
7. A: Do your students write Chinese characters well?
   B: Yes, my students write Chinese characters very well.
8. A: Does your younger brother drive fast?
   B: Yes, my younger brother drives too fast.
9. A: Does your girl friend walk slowly?
   B: Yes, my girl friend walks too slowly.
10. A: Please be seated, Mr. Wōng Î.
    B: Thanks, Mr. Leĭ.

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Leĭ Siú-Tsé, neĭ shîk-chóh faân meî à?
B: Ngŏh shîk-chóh là. Neĭ ne, Ch'ān Sin-Shaang?
A: Ôh, ngŏh meî shîk pòh.

2. A: Neĭ tûk shue tûk tak tîm-yeûng* à?
B: Ngŏh tûk shue tûk tak hó mōng.

3. A: K'uĭ tsô sẑ tsô tak tîm-yeûng* ne?
B: K'uĭ tsô sẑ tsô tak hó hó.

4. A: Neĭ kaaù shue kaaù tak mōng mà?
B: Mōng, ngŏh kaaù shue kaaù tak hó mōng.

5. A: Neĭ haāng kaai haāng tak kwooî mà?
B: M̄-kwooî, ngŏh haāng kaai haāng tak m̄-kwooî.

6. A: Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* shîk faân shîk tak shiú m̄-shiú à?
B: Shiú, ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* shîk faân shîk tak hó shiú.

7. A: Neĭ kè saì-man-tsaî kóng yĕ kóng tak toh m̄-toh ne?
B: Toh, ngŏh kè saì-man-tsaî kóng yĕ kóng tak t'aaì toh.

8. A: Neĭ ĭ-ts'ìn haî pin-shuè tûk shue tûk tak hó mōng à?
B: Ngŏh ĭ-ts'ìn haî Yât-Poón tûk shue tûk tak hó mōng.

9. A: K'uĭ în-tsoî haî pin-shuè kaaù shue kaaù tak fei-sheūng-chi mōng ne?
B: K'uĭ în-tsoî haî Meĭ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû kaaù shue kaaù tak fei-sheūng-chi mōng.

10. A: Neĭ tûk shue tûk tak m̄-haî keî mōng; neĭ tsô mi-yĕ tsô tak hó mōng à?
B: Ngŏh tûk shue tûk tak m̄-haî keî mōng; ngŏh tsô sẑ tsô tak hó mōng.

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Kóh kòh sin-shaang kaaù shue kaaù tak hó, yik-waâk kaaù tak m̀-hó?

B: Kóh kòh sin-shaang kaaù shue kaaù tak fei-sheūng-chi hó.

12. A: Kóh kòh yān kaaù shue kaaù tak hó, yik-waâk tûk shue tûk tak hó?

B: Kóh kòh yān kaaù shue kaaù tak hó; tûk shue tûk tak m̀-haî keî hó.

13. A: Ni kòh hôk-shaang kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* kóng tak hó ti, yik-waâk kóh kòh hôk-shaang kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* kóng tak hó ti à?

B: Ni kóh hôk-shaang kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* kóng tak hó ti; kóh kòh hôk-shaang kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* kóng tak m̀-haî keî hó.

14. A: Ni kòh hôk-shaang, kóh kòh hôk-shaang, kóh kòh hôk-shaang, pin kòh kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* kóng tak hó hó; pin kòh kóng tak peî pin kòh hó hó toh; pin kòh kóng tak tsuī hó.

B: Ni kòh hôk-shaang, kóh kòh hôk-shaang, kóh kòh hôk-shaang, ni kòh hôk-shaang kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ* kóng tak hó hó; kóh kòh hôk-shaang kóng tak peî ni kòh hó hó toh; kóh kòh kóng tak tsuī hó.

15. A: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, Wōng Sin-Shaang, neĭ-teî keî shī tsaú à?

B: Ngŏh-teî kam-maăn tsaú. Neĭ ne, Ch'ān Sing-Shaang?

A: Ngŏh ī-ka tsaú.

LESSON 19

WORD LIST

1.	ts'îng mân	may I ask
2.	kwaì sìng à?	what is your surname? honorific form
3.	ngŏh sìng...	my surname is...
4.	tîm-yeûng*	how? in what manner?
5.	kiù tsô	to be called, to be spoken of as, to be named as
6.	Wōng Î	man's name
7.	mīng (mēng*)	given name
8.	Cheung Saam	man's name
9.	shaang-ì	business
10.	k'ām-maăn	last night
11.	shaî	to drive, use, employ, cause
12.	tsô shaang-ì	to do business
13.	m̄-shaî	to need not, it is not necessary, do not have to
14.	m̄-shaî-k'ui	thank you, don't trouble yourself
15.	fàn kaaù	to sleep, lie down, to go to bed

LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

333

而 ī: and; and yet; still.

而且 ī-ch'é: also; besides; moreover.

而家 ī-ka: right now; at present.

1328

聰 ts'ung: to understand; quick; smart; intelligent.

聰明 ts'ung-m ng: intelligent; bright.

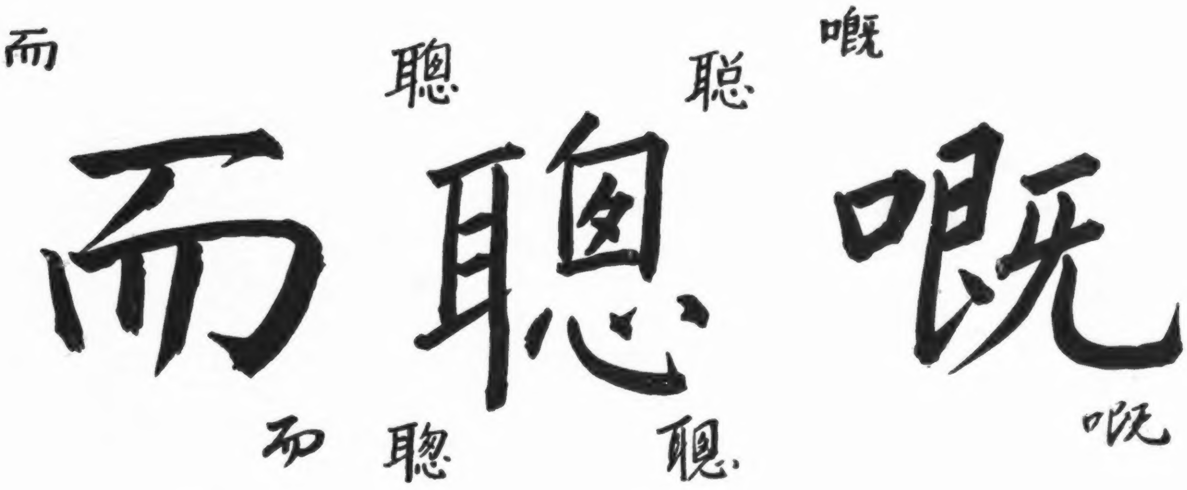
聰敏 ts'ung-măn: clever; intelligent.

433

嘅 kè: sign of possessive; qualifying particle.

我嘅 ngǒh kè: mine,

邊個嘅 pin kòh kè: whose?



443

寄 keì: to send; to dispatch; to lodge.

寄信 keì sùn: to send or mail a letter.

寄託 keì-t'ŏk: to entrust.

寄宿舍 keì-shuk shè: dormitory.

寄生 keì-shaang: parasitic.

332

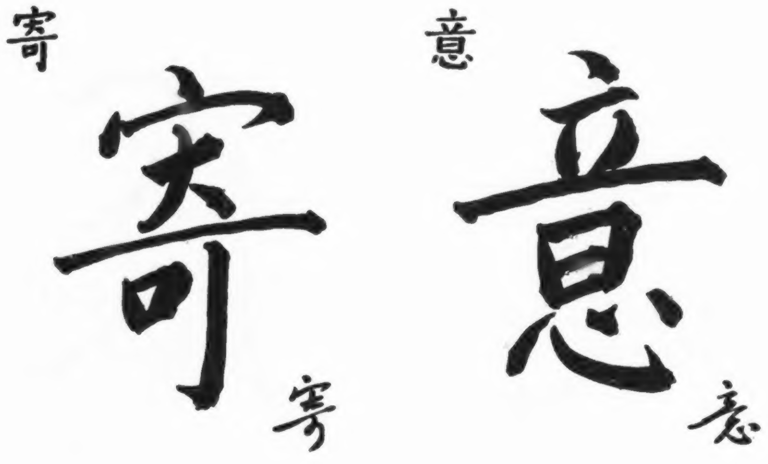
意 ì: thought; will; motive; purpose.

意思 ì-sz: idea; thought.

故意 koò-ì: intentionally.

同意 t'ūng-ì: agreement; agree.

注意 chuè-ì: attentive; "Notice"



LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

1060

信	sùn: to believe: faith; sincerity; a letter.
信仰	sùn-yeǔng. to follow; to esteem.
失信	shat sùn: to lose confidence.
信用	sùn-yûng: reliable credit.
信箱	sùn-seung: mail box.

713

忙	mōng: hurried; flurried; busy.
幫忙	pong-mōng: to assist; to help.
忙碌	mōng-luk: busy.
連忙	līn-mōng: at once.
好忙	hó mōng: very busy.

919

寫	sé: to write; to sketch.
寫字	sé tsî: to write.
大寫	taaî-sé: senior clerk.
寫書	sé shue: to write a book.

信　忙　寫

信 忙 寫

信　忙　写

1255

錢	ts'īn, ts'ín: money; cash
有錢	yaŭ ts'ín: wealthy.
錢財	ts'īn-ts'oī: wealth.

53

張	cheung: open out; a sheet;(Cl. for paper, chair etc.)
一張紙	yat-cheung chí: a sheet of paper.
主張	chúe-cheung: advocate.

錢　个　張　弡

錢 張

钱　张

LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

黃二喺學校學中文學得好忙，講廣東話*講得好好，寫中文字寫得好lèng，佢係一kòh好聰明同好勤力嘅學生·

張三係黃二嘅朋友· 張三唔係幾聰明 ·冇黃二kòm聰明· 張三讀書讀得唔係好勤力· 佢讀書冇黃二讀得kòm勤力· 張三寫字寫得唔lèng· 佢寫字冇黃二寫得kòm lèng 張三講廣東話*講得唔好 ·佢講廣東話冇黃二講得kòm好·

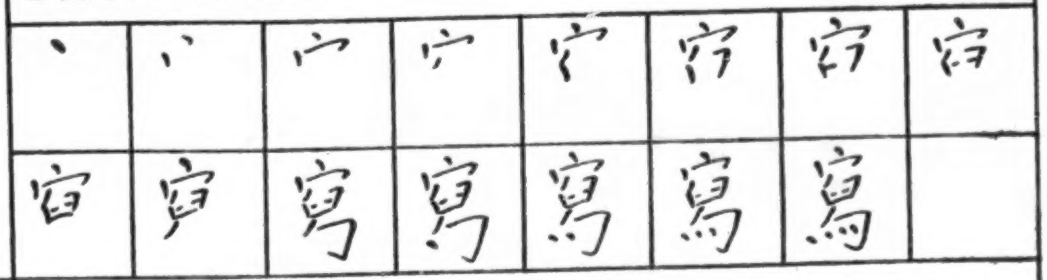
李四亦都係黃二嘅朋友· 佢¥-前喺陸軍語言學校讀書，而家佢冇讀書· 佢喺日本做生意 ·佢做生意做得好唔好· 黃二寫信pei´佢· 同寄錢*pei´佢 ；黃二寫信寫得fei-sheũng-chi好·

LESSON 19

WRITING MATERIAL

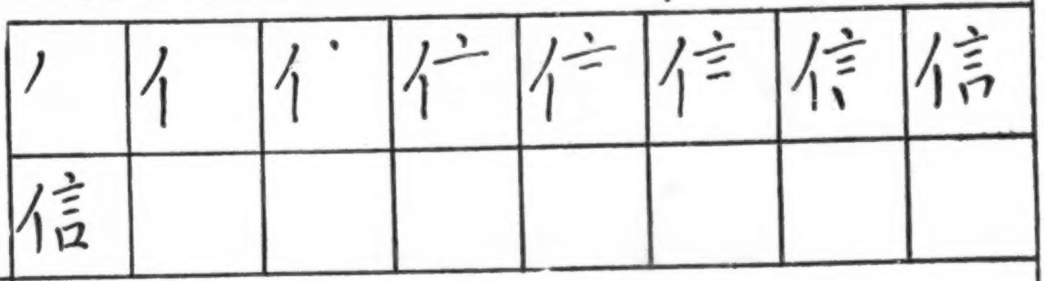
寫

Character Number 919 Radical Number 40
Stroke Number 15 宀



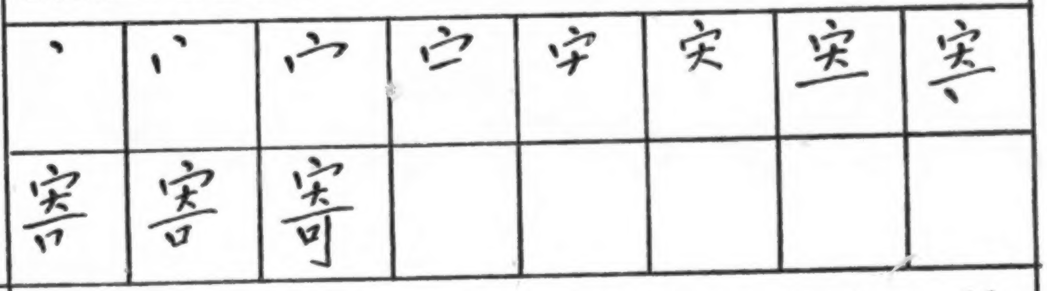
信

Character Number 1060 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 9 亻，人



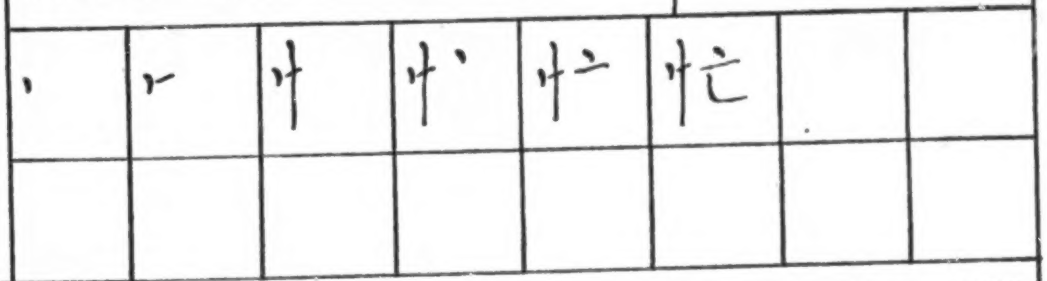
寄

Character Number 443 Radical Number 40
Stroke Number 11 宀



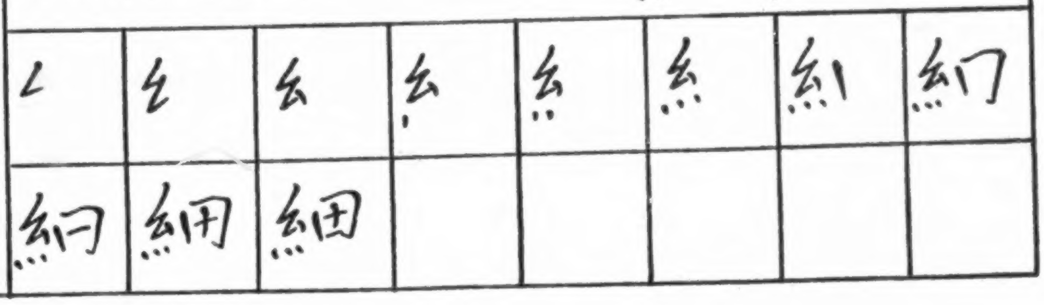
忙

Character Number 713 Radical Number 61
Stroke Number 6 忄，心



細

Character Number 910 Radical Number 120
Stroke Number 11 糹，糸



LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Neĭ kè saì-man-tsaî haāng m̄-haāng tak faaì?
   K'uĭ kè nuĭ* kóng m̄-kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh?
   Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* shîk m̄-shîk tak maân?
   Ngŏh kè p'àāng-yaŭ yám m̄-yám tak toh?
2. Neĭ kè saì-man-tsaî haāng lô haāng m̄-haāng tak faaì?
   K'uĭ kè nuĭ* kóng shuèt-wâ kóng m̄-kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh?
   Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* shîk faân shîk m̄-shîk tak maân?
   Ngŏh kè p'àāng-yaŭ yám tsaú yám m̄-yám tak toh?
3. Neĭ kè saì-man-tsaî haāng lô haàng tak faaì mà?
   K'uĭ kè nuĭ* kóng shuèt-wâ kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh mà?
   Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* shîk faân shîk tak maân mà?
   Ngŏh kè p'àāng-yaŭ yám tsaú yám tak toh mà?
4. M̄-faaì, ngŏh kè saì-man-tsaî m̄-haāng tak faaì.
   M̄-ts'ing-ch'óh, k'uĭ kè nuĭ* m̄-kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh.
   M̄-maân, ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* m̄-shîk tak maân.
   M̄-toh, neĭ kè p'àāng-yaŭ m̄-yām tak toh.
5. M̄-faaì, ngŏh kè saì-man-tsaî în-tsoî haāng lô m̄-haāng tak faaì.
   M̄-ts'ing-ch'óh, k'uĭ kè nuĭ* kaû-nîn kóng shuèt-wâ m̄-kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh.
   M̄-maân, ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* ĭ-ts'în shîk faân m̄-shîk tak maân.
   M̄-toh, neĭ kè p'àāng-yaŭ tsòk-maăn yám tsaú m̄-yám tak toh.

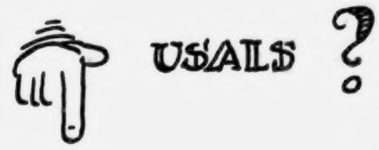
ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

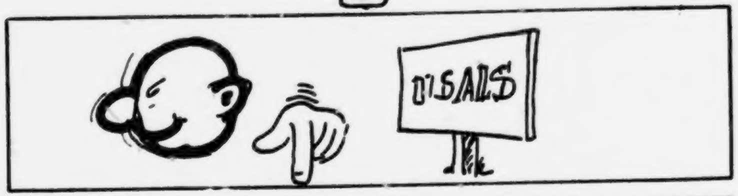
6. Faaì, ngŏh kè saì-man-tsaì în-tsoî haāng lô haāng tak keî faaì.
Ts'ing-ch'óh, k'uĭ kè nuĭ* kaû-nīn kóng shuèt-wâ kóng tak hó 'ts'ing-ch'óh.
Maân, ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* ĭ-ts'īn shîk faân shîk tak fei-sheūng-chi maân.
Toh, neĭ kè pàāng-yaŭ tsòk-maăn yám tsaú yám tak t'aaì toh.

LESSON 20

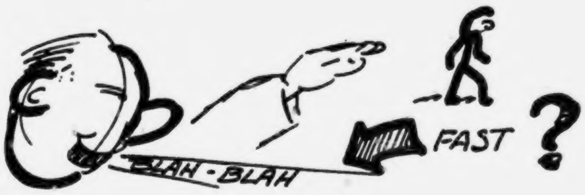
A **B**

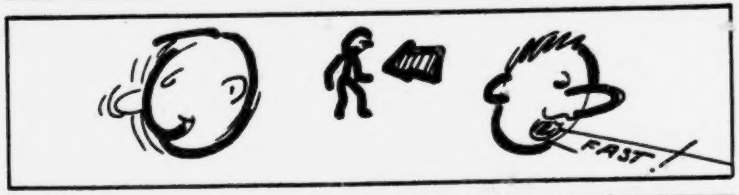
1



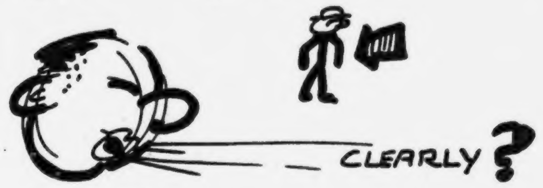


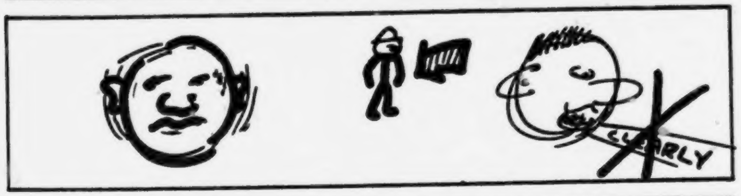
2


BLAH-BLAH
FAST

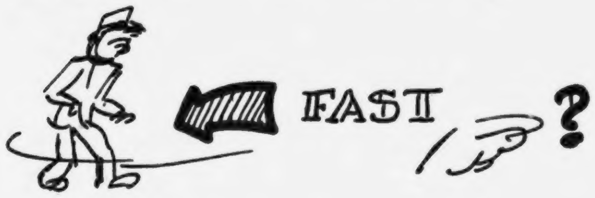


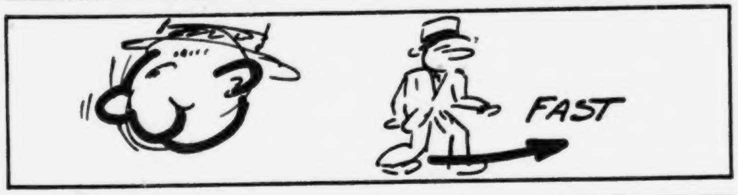
3



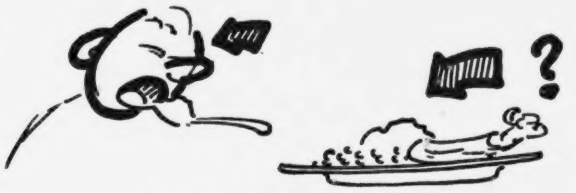


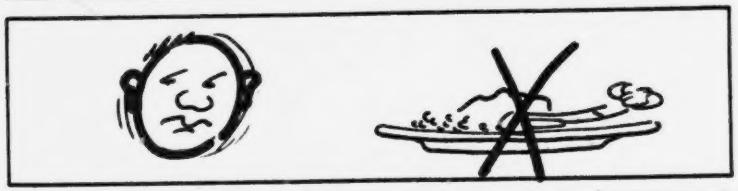
4



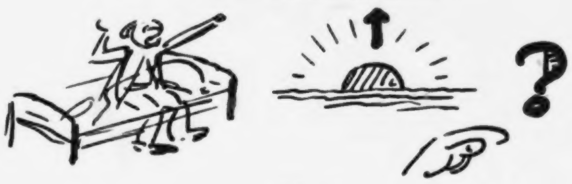


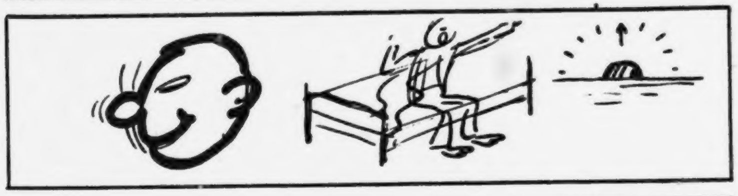
5



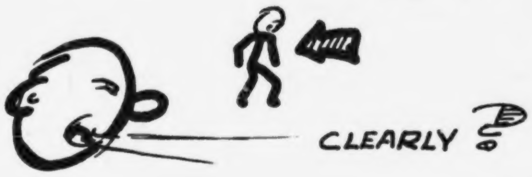


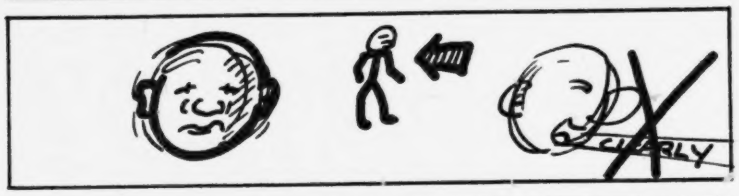
6



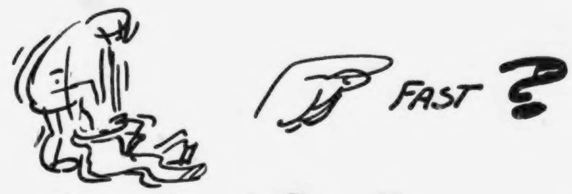


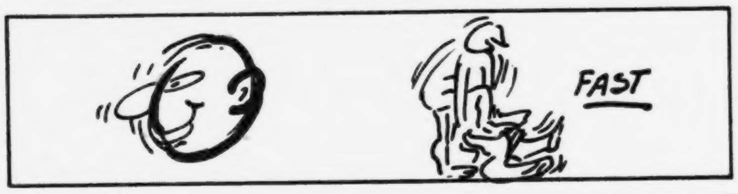
7



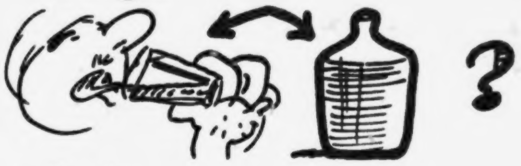


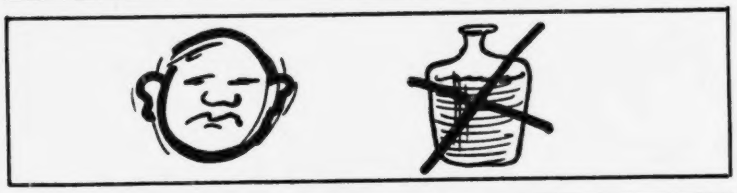
8



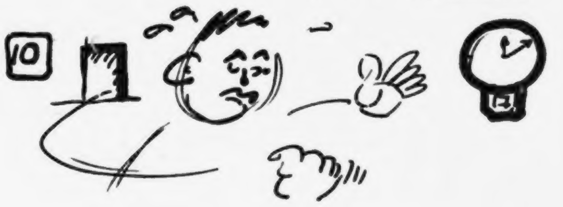


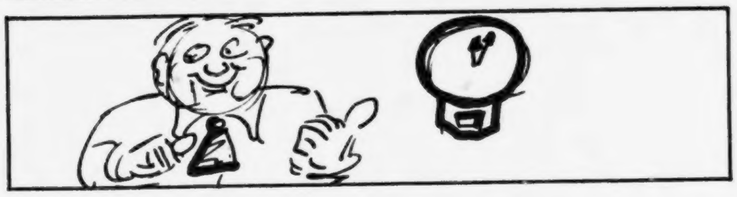
9





10





LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Ts'îng mân ni kaan haî m̂-haî Meĭ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû à?

   B: Haî à, ni kaan haî Meĭ-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû.

   A: Wōng Sin-Shaang, m̂-hó ì-sz̀. Lîng neĭ táng-chóh kòm noî.

   B: M̄-kán-iù, m̂-kán-iù. Ngŏh laî-chóh mŏ keî noî* che.

2. A: K'uĭ kóng m̂-kóng tak faaî à?

   B: Faaî, k'uĭ kóng tak faaî.

3. A: K'uĭ kóng m̂-kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh ne?

   B: M̄-ts'îng-ch'óh, k'uĭ m̂-kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh.

4. A: Neĭ haāng m̂-haāng tak faaî à?

   B: Faaî, ngŏh haāng tak faaî.

5. A: K'uĭ shîk m̂-shîk tak toh ne?

   B: M̄-toh, k'uĭ m̂-shîk tak toh.

6. A: Neĭ heî shan heî m̂-haî tak tsó à?

   B: Tsó, ngŏh heî shan heî tak tsó.

7. A: K'uĭ kóng shuèt-wâ kóng m̂-kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh ne?

   B: M̄-ts'ing-ch'óh, k'uĭ kóng shuèt-wâ m̂-kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh.

8. A: Neĭ cheùk shaam cheùk m̂-cheùk tak faaî à?

   B: Faaî, ngŏh cheùk shaam cheùk tak faaî.

9. A: K'uĭ yám tsaú yám m̂-yám tak toh?

   B: M̄-toh, k'uĭ yám tsaú m̂-yám tak toh.

10. A: Tuî m̂-chuê, tuî m̂-chuê, Wōng Î Sin-Shaang, ngŏh laî ch'î-chóh.

    B: M̄-kán-iù, m̂-kán-iù, ngŏh to haî chîng-wâ laî che.

LESSON 20

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Is this the United States Army Language School?

B: Yes, this is the United States Army Language School.

A: Mr. Wōng, I am ashamed of myself. I let you wait for so long.

B: It doesn't matter. I have not been here very long.

2. A: Can he speak fast?

B: Yes, he can speak fast.

3. A: Can he speak clearly?

B: No, he cannot speak clearly.

4. A: Can you walk fast?

B: Yes, I can walk fast.

5. A: Can he eat much?

B: No, he cannot eat much.

6. A: Can you get up early?

B: Yes, I can get up early.

7. A: Can he speak clearly?

B: No, he cannot speak clearly.

8. A: Can you get dressed fast?

B: Yes, I can get dressed fast.

9. A: Can he drink much?

B: No, he cannot drink much.

10. A: I am sorry. I have come late, Mr. Wōng Î.

B: It doesn't matter. I just came a while ago.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Neĭ-teî shîk in mà? Neĭ-teî yám tsaú mà? Wōng Sin-Shaang, Wōng T'aaì-T'aaì*?

   B: M̄-hó haàk-heì. Ngŏh-teî m̄-shîk in. Ngŏh-teî m̄-yám tsaú.

2. A: Wōng Î Sin-Shaang kaaù tak maân m̄-maân à?

   B: M̄-maân, Wōng Î Sin-Shaang kaaù tak m̄-maân.

3. A: Ngŏh kè hôk-shaang hôk tak faaì m̄-faaì ne?

   B: Faaì, neĭ kè hôk-shaang hôk tak hó faaì.

4. A: Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* k'eĭ m̄-k'eĭ tak noî à?

   B: M̄-noî, ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* m̄-k'eĭ tak noî.

5. A: Neĭ kè saì-man-tsaì kóng m̄-kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh ne?

   B: M̄-ts'ing-ch'óh, ngŏh kè saì-man-tsaì m̄-kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh.

6. A: Neĭ kè mŏ-ts'an haāng m̄-haāng tak faaì à?

   B: M̄-faaì, ngŏh kè mŏ-ts'an m̄-haāng tak faaì.

7. A: Kam-yât neĭ heì shan heì tak tsó m̄-tsó ne?

   B: Tsó, kam-yât ngŏh heì shan heì tak keì tsó.

8. A: K'ām-maăn neĭ fàn kaaù fàn tak ch'ì m̄-ch'ì à?

   B: M̄-ch'ì, k'ām-maăn ngŏh fàn kaaù fàn tak m̄-haî hó ch'ì.

9. A: Neĭ kè saì-man-tsaì cheùk shaam cheùk m̄-cheùk tak faaì ne?

   B: M̄-faaì, ngŏh kè saì-man-tsaì cheùk shaam m̄-cheùk tak faaì.

10. A: Neĭ kè nuĭ p'aāng-yaŭ yám tsaú yám m̄-yám tak toh à?

    B: M̄-toh, ngŏh kè nuĭ p'aāng-yaŭ yám tsaú m̄-yám tak toh.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Neĭ kè foô-ts'an shaî ch'e shaî m̄-shaî tak faaî ne?

B: M̄-faaî, ngŏh kè foô-ts'an shaî ch'e m̄-shaî tak faaî.

12. A: Neĭ kè nuĭ* kóng shuèt-wâ kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh, yik-waâk m̄-kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh à?

B: Ngŏh kè nuĭ* kóng shuèt-wâ m̄-kóng tak ts'ing-ch'óh.

13. A: Neĭ kè hôk-shaang sé Chung-Mān tsẑ sé tak lèng, yik-waâk m̄-sé tak lèng ne?

B: Ngŏh kè hôk-shaang sé Chung-Mān tsẑ sé tak lèng.

14. A: Neĭ kè tsaî shîk in shîk tak toh, yik-waâk m̄-shîk tak toh à?

B: Ngŏh kè tsaî shîk in m̄-shîk tak toh. K'uĭ shîk in shîk tak hó shiú.

15. A: Kam-maăn neĭ haî ngŏh tô shîk ch'aan pîn-faân, hó mà?

B: M̄-hó lòh. Toh-tsê shaaî lòh. Kam-maăn ngŏh yaŭ sẑ.

LESSON 20

WORD LIST

1.	m̄-hó i-sz̀	Sorry, I should be ashamed of myself.
2.	lîng	to cause
3.	táng	to let, wait; class
4.	chóh	verb suffix indicating past tense or completion of action
5.	kòm noî	for so long, for a period of
6.	mŏ-keî noî	not very long time
7.	tsó	early
8.	ch'î	late, tardy
9.	shuèt-wâ	talk, words
10.	kóng shuèt-wâ	to speak, talk
11.	yám tsaú	to drink liquor, have a banquet

LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

1014

說 shuèt: to speak; to talk; to discourse.

演說 ín shuèt: to give a speech.

解說 kaaí-shuèt: to explain; to comment.

1443

飲 yám: to drink; to swallow.

飲茶 yám ch'ā: to drink tea.

飲湯 yám t'ong: to take soup.

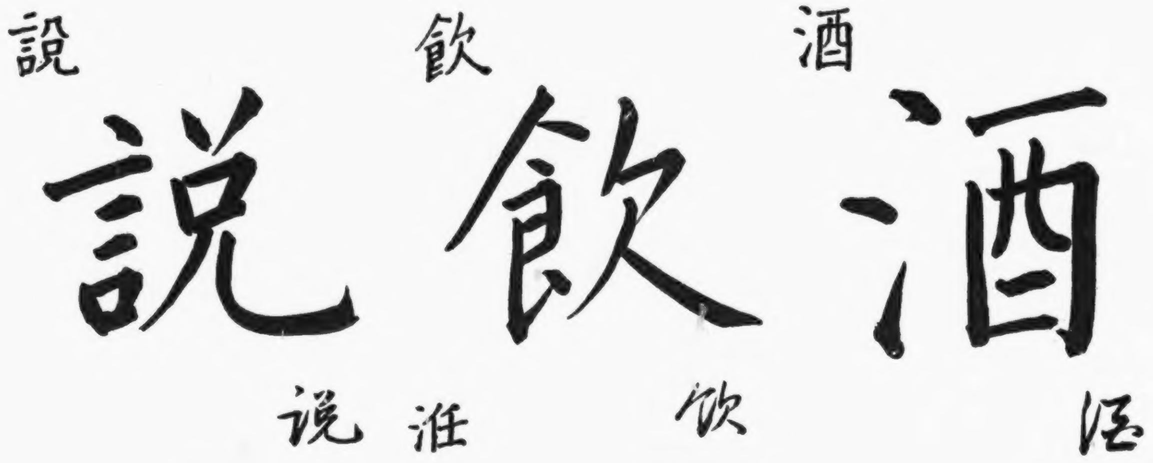
請飲 ts'éng yám: to invite to a banquet.

1222

酒 tsaú: spirit; liquor; wine.

酒色 tsaú-shik: wine and licentious pleasure.

酒精 tsaú-tsing: pure alcohol.



414

近 kân: adjoining; near(in time or place)

近日 kân yât: recently.

近世 kân shaì: modern age.

附近 foô-kân: vicinity.

將近 cheung-kân: very close; intimate.

630

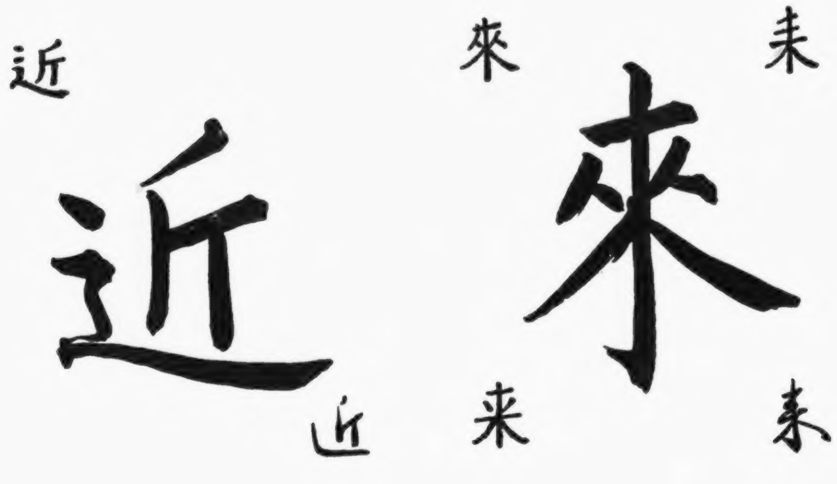
來 loī: to come; to reach; to obtain; future.

後來 naû-loī: afterward.

本來 poón-loī: originally.

近來 kân-loī: recently.

來賓 loī-pan: guest.



LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

629

路 lô: a road; pathway.
一路 yat-lô: all along.
路費 lô faì: travelling expenses.
問路 mân lô: to ask a way.
公路 kung-lô: a public road.
鐵路 t'ìt-lô: railroad.

353

烟 in: smoke; tobacco.
烟通 in-t'ung: chimney
烟仔 in-tsaí: cigarettes.
食烟 shîk in: to smoke

539

工 kung: work.
工作 kung-tsòk: work.
夜工 yê kung: night work.
罷工 pâ kung: to strike (labor strike).
工業 kung-îp: industry.

路　　烟　　工

路　烟　工

路　煙　烟　工

474

結 kìt: to connect; to ally; to produce(as fruit); to tie; to congeal.
結果 kìt-kwóh: outcome; effect; result.
結束 kìt-ch'uk: to wind up; close.
結婚 kìt fan: to marry; marriage.
結局 kìt-kûk: conclusion; end.

175

婚 fan: to marry a wife; marriage.
婚事 fan-sẑ: marriage.
結婚 kìt fan: to marry.
訂婚 tîng fan: to engage.
離婚 leì fan: to divorce.

結　　婚

結　婚

结　婚

LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

張先生讀書讀得好早. 做事做得好早. 結婚結得好 ch'ī.

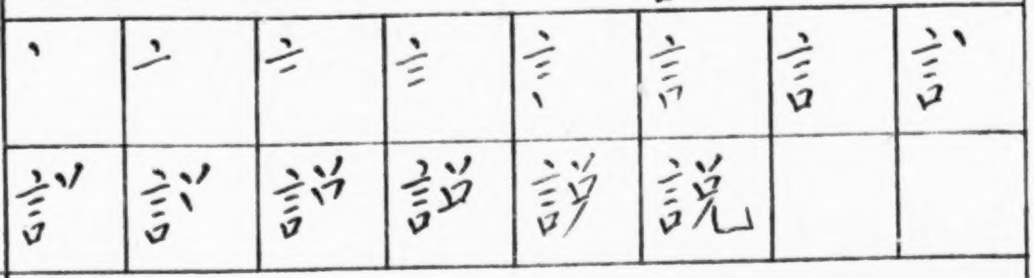
佢近來做事做得太忙. 食得太少. 飲酒飲得太多. 食烟食得太多. fàn kaaù fàn 得唔- kaù. 前日佢病. 佢 kòk 得好 kwooî; 前晚佢 fàn kaaù 唔 fàn 得好. 昨日 chiu 頭早佢起身唔起得早. 唔食得飯. 唔食得烟. 唔行得路. 唔番得工.

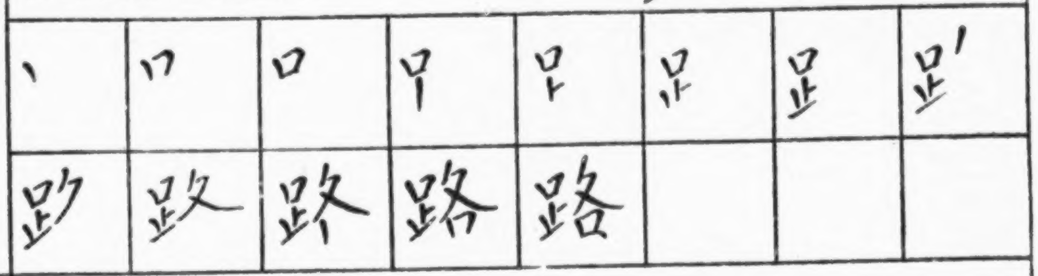
而家佢冇病. 佢起得身. 食得飯. 食得烟. 番得工. 佢嘅朋友李先生請張先生食晚飯. 張先生飲酒飲得 fei-sheūng-chi 多. 講說話唔講得 ts'ing-chóh. 行路唔行得快.

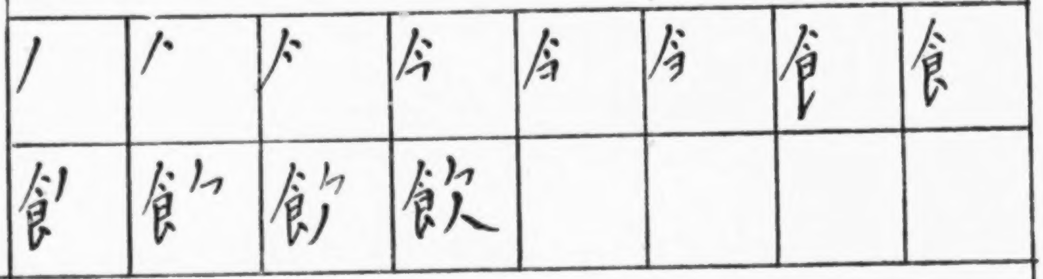
LESSON 20

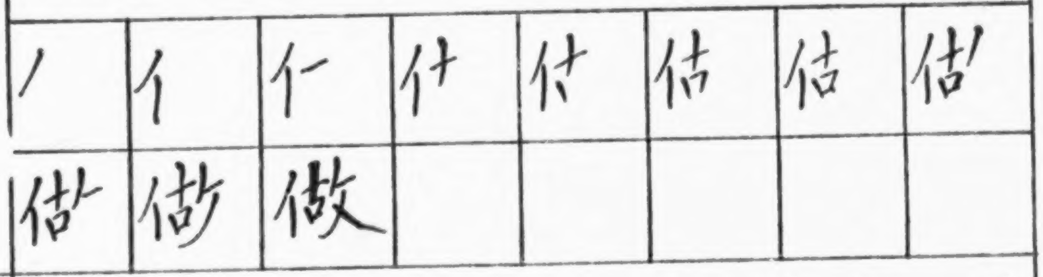
WRITING MATERIAL

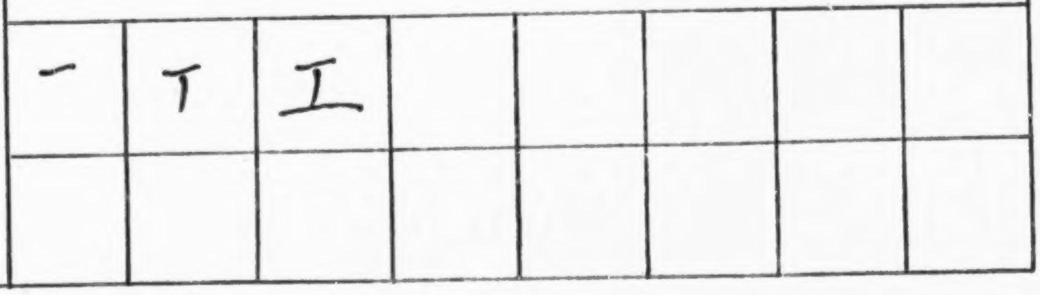
説	Character Number 1014 Radical Number 149 Stroke Number 14 言
路	Character Number 629 Radical Number 157 Stroke Number 13 ⻊ , 足
飲	Character Number 1443 Radical Number 184 Stroke Number 12 食 , 飠
做	Character Number 1272 Radical Number 9 Stroke Number 11 亻 , 人
工	Character Number 538 Radical Number 48 Stroke Number 3 工











DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE
TEXT VOLUME
VOLUME II
LESSONS 21-40

ED022179

ΠΤΟΛΕΜΕΙ
DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

AL 001 479

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Text Volume

Volume II

Lessons 21-40

July 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

PREFACE

The Chinese Cantonese Course, consisting of 166 lessons in 8 volumes, is one of the Defense Language Institute's Basic Course Series. The material was developed at the Defense Language Institute's Curriculum Development Board.

The course is designed to train native English language speakers to Level 3 proficiency in comprehension and speaking and Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Chinese Cantonese. The texts are intended for classroom use in the Defense Language Institute's intensive programs employing the audio-lingual methodology. Tapes accompany the texts.

All inquiries concerning these materials, including requests for authorization to reproduce, will be addressed to the Director, Defense Language Institute, U. S. Naval Station, Anacostia Annex, Washington, D. C. 20390.

CW Chaney

C. W. CHANEY
Colonel, U.S. Army
Director

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 21-40
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 41-60
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VIII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 set	Flash Cards for 1500 Most Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	27 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	27 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
		Also available in compact form for comprehension or review purposes:
	3 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:	1 reel	Hong Kong, MF 20-8799,(P)(A)* 9 min.
	1 reel	Hong Kong Welcomes You, MF 20-9363, (I) 15 min.
	1 reel	An Oriental City, Canton, MF 20-9075, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Farming in South China, MF 20-7829, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Taiwan, Island of Freedom, AFIF 103, 23 min.
	1 reel	Formosa, LSFC 21, 13 min.
	1 reel	Miracle in Free China, MF 20-9114, 30 min.
	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, (I) 14 min.

---

* Available in magnastriped Chinese-Cantonese narrations. (P) Primary version, (I) Intermediate version, (A) Advanced version.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	*Formosa, Blueprint for a Free China*, MOT 18, 24 min.
1 reel	*China* EF 258, 17 min.
1 reel	*China, the Land and the People,* MF 20-8939, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	*Peiping Family*, MF 20-8966, 20 min.
1 reel	*The Chinese Village, a Legend,* MF 20-9341, 15 min.
1 reel	*Red China*, AFIF 97, 27 min.
1 reel	*China, Far East*, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657 FC, (I) 14 min.
1 reel	*Far East,* SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657, 30 min.
1 reel	*Southeast Asia, Lands and Peoples*, MF 20-8862, 13 min.
1 reel	*Southeast Asia*, SIS AFS No. 6, MF 30-8771, 33 min.
1 reel	*The Village that Refused to Die*, MF 20-9748, 60 min.
1 reel	*Siam,* MF 20-9269, 31 min.
1 reel	*Burma, People of the River,* MF 20-9028, 14 min.
1 reel	*Letter from Indonesia,* MF 20-8695, 27 min.
1 reel	*The Philippines,* AFIF 48, 15 min.
2 reels	*Portrait of an American Family,* MF 30-8449 (CC), 60 min.
1 reel	*Men Against Tanks*, MF 7-7898, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	*Production of Combat Intelligence*, MF 30-1494, (P)(A) 18 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	*Rifle Company*, LSFC-3, (P)(A) 35 min.
1 reel	*Infantry Battalion*, LSFC-1, (P)(A) 21 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE (TOISHAN) 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 21-40
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 41-60
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters (Toishan Conversion Table)
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	24 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	24 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-26
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 27-55
	1 vol.	Volume III, Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	14 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	14 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	27 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

	27 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 210-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Volume I, Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume II, Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Volume III, Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Volume V, Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, 14 min.
	1 reel	Mighty Chinese Armed Forces, LS-86, 22 min.
	1 reel	Production of Combat Intelligence, MF 30-1494, 18 min.

* For Official Use Only

CHINESE-CANTONESE 96-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-16
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 17-32
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 33-48
	1 vol.	Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded on tape
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1.

yat
î
saam
seì
nğ
lûk
ts'at
paàt
kaú
shâp
shâp-yat
shâp-î
shâp-saam
shâp-seì
shâp-nğ
shâp-lûk
shâp-ts'at
shâp-paàt
shâp-kaú
î-shâp

î-shâp-yat (yâ-yat)
î-shâp-î (yâ-î)
î-shâp-saam (yâ-saam)
î-shâp-seì (yâ-seì)
î-shâp-nĝ (yâ-nğ)
î-shâp-lûk (yâ-lûk)
î-shâp-ts'at (yâ-ts'at)
î-shâp-paàt (yâ-paàt)
î-shâp-kaú (yâ-kaú)
saam-shâp
saam-shâp-nğ (sa-â-nğ)
seì-shâp
seì-shâp-nğ (seì-â-nğ)
nğ-shâp
nğ-shâp-nğ (nğ-â-nğ)
lûk-shâp
ts'at-shâp
paàt-shâp
kaú-shâp
yat-paàk

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

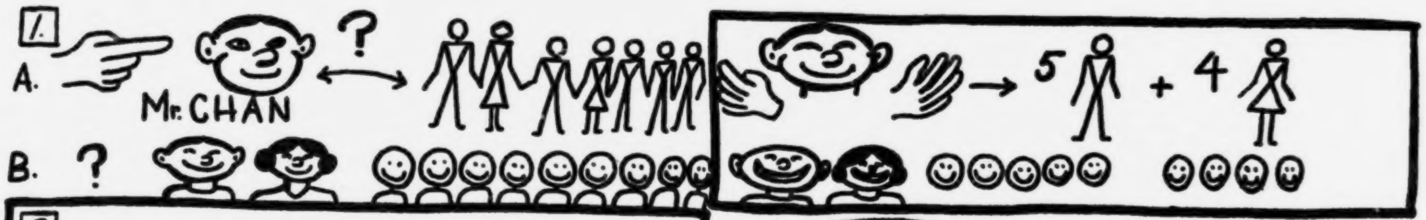
2. Ngŏh yaŭ leŭng-poón shue; yat-poón Chung-Mān chue, yat-poón Ying-Mān shue.
   K'uĭ yaŭ saam-kòh tsaì nuĭ*; yat-kóh tsaî, leŭng-kòh nuĭ*.
   Ngŏh-teî yaŭ nğ-kòh hôk-shaang; seì-kóh kwan-koon, yat-koh sẑ-ping.
   K'uĭ yaŭ saam-kòh hing-taî; yat-kòh taaî-ló, leŭng-kòh saì-ló.

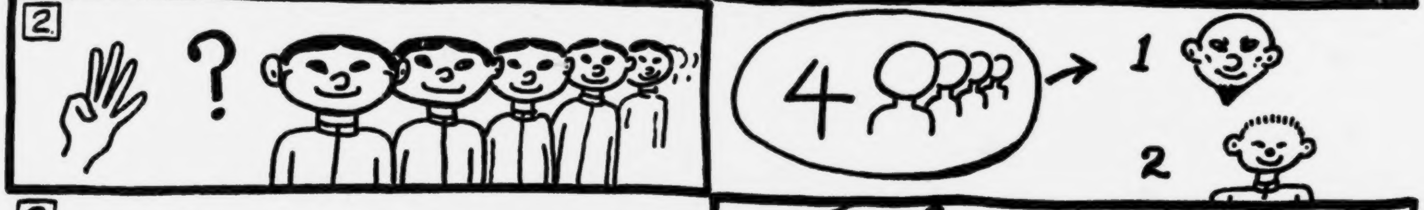
3. Ni kaan hôk-haaû kè t'īng-ch'e-chēung yaŭ keî-toh kà ch'e?
   Ni kaan hôk-haaû kè paan-fōng* yaŭ keî-toh kòh hak-paàn?
   Ni kaan hôk-haaû kè hôk-shaang yaŭ keî-toh kòh kwan-koon?
   Ni shuè kè sin-shaang yaŭ keî-toh kòh Meĭ-Kwòk-Yān?

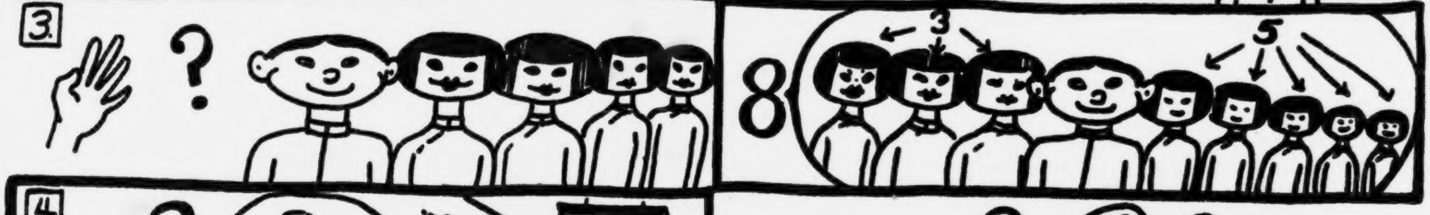
4. Ni poón shue keî-toh ts'īn*?
   Ni leŭng poón pô* keî-toh-ts'īn*?
   Kóh kà ch'e keî-toh ts'īn*?
   Kóh yat-tuì haaī keî-toh ts'īn*?

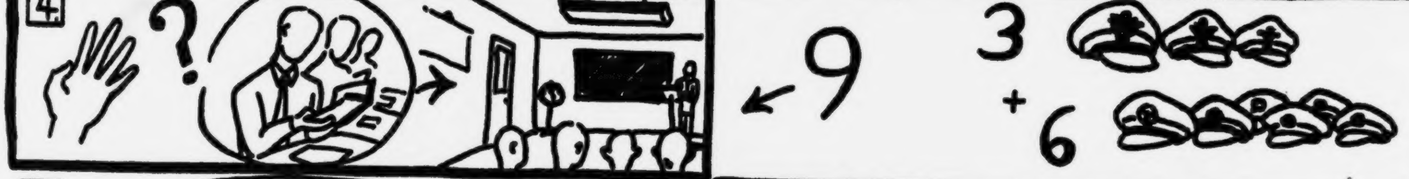
5. Neĭ maaĭ keî-toh poón pô*?
   K'uĭ maaĭ keî-toh tuì haaĭ?
   Neĭ-teî maaĭ keî-toh chi pat?
   K'uĭ-teî maaĭ keî-toh pông ngaū-yûk?

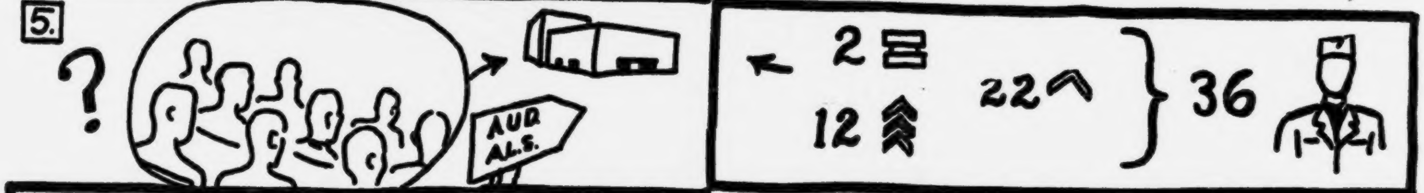
LESSON 21

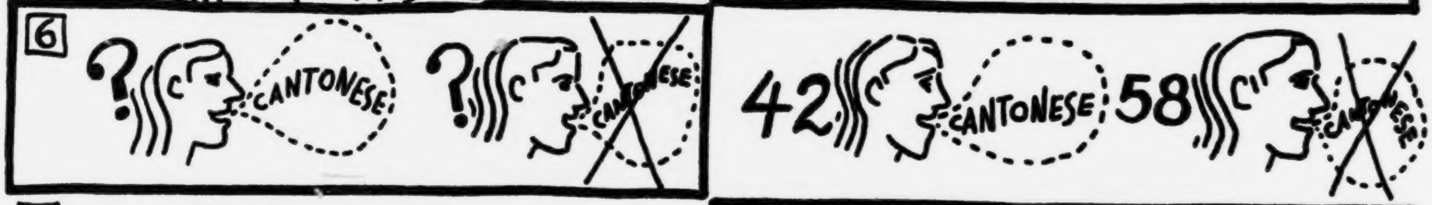

1.
A.
Mr. CHAN
?
B.
?
5
+
4

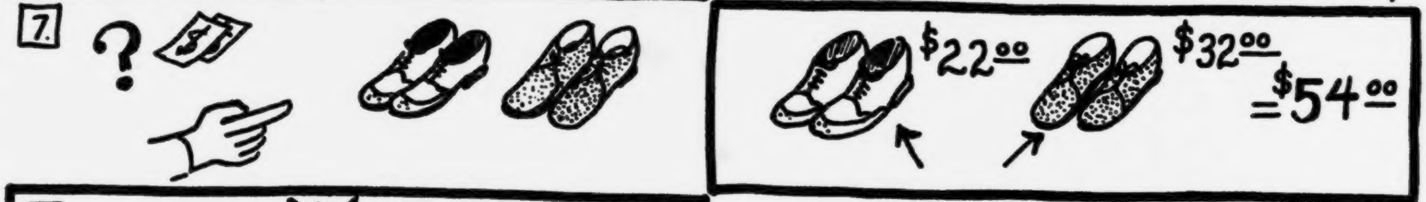

2.
?
4
1
2

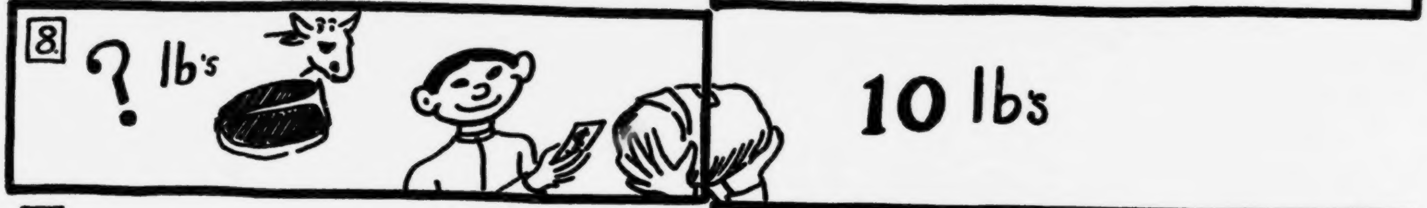

3.
?
3
5
8

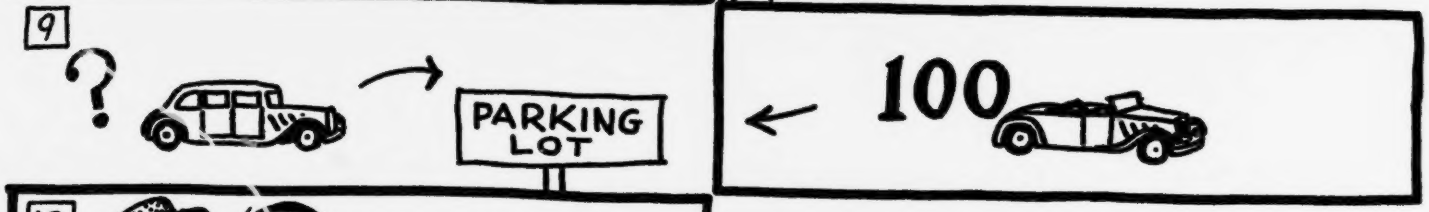

4.
?
9
3
+
6

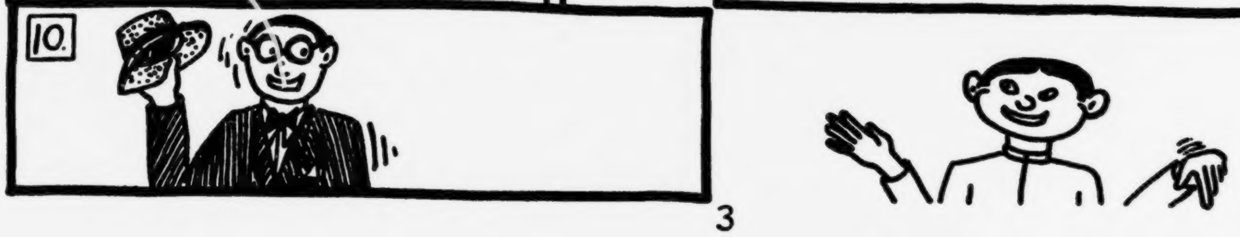

5.
?
AUR
AL.S.
2
12
22
36


6
?
CANTONESE
?
CANTONESE
42
CANTONESE
58
CANTONESE


7.
?
$22.00
$32.00
=$54.00


8
?
lb's
10 lbs


9
?
PARKING
LOT
100


10.

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Ch'ān Sin-Shaang, neĭ kè ka-t'īng keí taaî à?

B: Ngŏh kè ka-t'īng hó taaî; ngŏh yaŭ nğ-kòh tsaí, seì-kòh nuĭ*.

A: Neĭ-teî faaì-lôk mà?

B: Ngŏh-teî hó faaì-lôk.

2. A: Neĭ yaŭ keí-toh kòh hing-taî à?

B: Ngŏh yaŭ seì hing-taî; yat-kòh taaî-ló, leŭng kòh saì-ló.

3. A: Neĭ yaŭ keí-toh tsź-mooî* à?

B: Ngŏh yaŭ paàt-kòh tsź-mooî*; saam-kòh taaî-tsź, nğ-kòh mooî*.

4. A: Ni kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ keí-toh kòh hôk-shaang à?

B: Ni kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ kaú-kòh hôk-shaang; saam-kòh haî kwan-koon, lûk-kòh haî sẑ-ping.

5. A: Ni kaan hôk-haaû kè taaî-laĭ-t'ōng yaŭ keí-toh yān à?

B: Ni kaan hôk-haaû kè taaî-laĭ-t'ōng yaŭ leŭng-kòh sheûng-waî, shâp-î kòh chung-sẑ, î-shâp-î-kòh sheûng-táng-ping, tsúng-kûng yaŭ saam-shâp-lûk-kòh yān.

6. A: Ni shuè yaŭ keí-toh yān ooĭ kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ*, keí-toh yān m̄-ooĭ kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ* à?

B: Ni shuè yaŭ seì-shâp-î-kòh yān ooĭ kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ*; yaŭ nğ-shâp-paàt-kòh yān m̄-ooĭ kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ*.

7. A: Ni leŭng-tuì haaī keí-toh ts'īn* à?

B: Ni tuì haaī yâ-î man, kóh tuì haaī sa-â-î man, tsúng-kûng nğ-shâp-seì man.

8. A: Neĭ maaĭ keí-toh pông ngaū-yûk à?

B: Ngŏh maaĭ shâp pông ngaū-yûk.

9. A: Ni kòh t'īng-ch'e-ts'eūng yaŭ keí-toh kà ch'e à?

B: Ni kòh t'īng-ch'e-ts'eūng taaî-yeùk* yaŭ yat-paàk kà ch'e.

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: Tuì-m̄-chuê, ngŏh iù tsaú là!

B: Tak-haān laī ts'ŏh la!

A: Hó à!

LESSON 21

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Mr. Ch'ān, how large is your family?

B: My family is very large. I have five sons and four daughters.

A: Are you people happy?

B: Yes, we are very happy.

2. A: How many brothers have you?

B: I have four brothers, one elder brother and two younger brothers.

3. A: How many sisters do you have?

B: I have eight sisters, three elder sisters and five younger sisters.

4. A: How many students are there in this classroom?

B: There are nine students in this classroom. Three are officers and six are enlisted men.

5. A: How many men are there in the auditorium of this school?

B: In the auditorium of this school there are two captains, twelve sergeants, twenty-two PFC's,a total of thirty-six men.

6. A: How many men here can speak Cantonese, how many can not?

B: Forty-two men here can speak Cantonese, fifty-eight can't.

7. A: How much are these two pairs of shoes?

B: This pair of shoes costs $22; that pair, $32; $54.00 altogether.

8. A: How many pounds of beef did you buy?

B: I bought ten pounds of beef.

9. A: How many cars are there in this parking lot?

B: There are about a hundred cars in this parking lot.

10. A: I'm sorry, I have to leave now.

B: Drop by when you are free.

A: Fine.

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Leĭ Sheûng-Waì, tsó-shān.

B: Wōng Chung-Sẑ, tsó-shān.

2. A: Neĭ kè foô-ts'an yaŭ keí-toh kòh hing-taî à?

B: Ngŏh kè foô-ts'an yaŭ saam hing-taî, yat-kòh taaî-ló, yat-kòh shaì-ló.

3. A: Ni kaan uk yaŭ keí-toh kaan fōng* à?

B: Ni kaan uk yaŭ seì-kaan fōng*.

4. A: Ni kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ keí-toh kòh Meĭ-Kwòk yān, keí-toh kòh Chung-Kwòk yān à?

B: Ni kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ nğ-kòh Meĭ-kwòk yān, yat-kòh Chung-Kwòk yān.

5. A: Ni-shuè yaŭ keí-toh kòh yān ooĭ shaí ch'e, keí-toh yān m̄-ooĭ shaí ch'e à?

B: Ni-shuè yaŭ ts'at-kòh yān ooĭ shaí ch'e, shâp-î-kòh yān m̄-ooĭ shaí ch'e.

6. A: Ni kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ keí-toh kòh sin-shaang, keí-toh kòh hôk-shaang à?

B: Ni kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ kaú-kòh sin-shaang, paàt-shâp-î kòh hôk-shaang.

7. A: Ni leŭng-poón tsẑ-tîn keí-toh-ts'în* à?

B: Ni poón Chung-Mān tsẑ-tîn lûk man; kóh poón Ying-Mān tsẑ-tîn shâp man.

8. A: Ni-shuè yaŭ saam-shâp-î-kòh yān, pin keí kóh yān haí Chung-Kwòk ch'ut shaì, pin keí kòh yān haí Meĭ-Kwòk ch'ut shaì à?

B: Ni-shuè yaŭ saam-shâp-î kòh yān, saam-shâp-kòh yān haí Chung-Kwòk ch'ut shaì, leŭng-kòh yān haí Meĭ-Kwòk ch'ut shaì.

9. A: Ni kà ch'e yaŭ keí-toh yān, kóh kà ch'e yaŭ keí-toh kòh yān à?

B: Ni kà ch'e yaŭ leŭng-kòh yān, kóh kà ch'e yaŭ seì-kòh yān.

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. A: Ni kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ keỉ-toh kỏh hôk-shaang m̄-haî kwan-koon?

B: Ni kaan paan-fōng* yaŭ seỉ-kỏh hôk-shaang m̄-haî kwan-koon.

11. A: Ni kaan uk yaŭ mŏ yān ả?

B: Ni kaan uk yaŭ keỉ-shâp-kỏh yān.

12. A: Ni kaan uk yaŭ mŏ yān shỉng Wōng kả?

B: Ni kaan uk yaŭ yān shỉng Wōng, yaŭ leŭng-kỏh yān shỉng Wōng.

13. A: Ni kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ mŏ yān kiủ-tsô Wōng-î, yaŭ mŏ yān kiủ-tsô Cheung-Saam ả?

B: Ni kaan hôk-haaû yaŭ yat-kỏh yān kiủ-tsô Wōng-î, yaŭ yat-kỏh yan kiû-tsô Cheung-Saam.

14. A: Kỏh cheung ch'ōng yaŭ keỉ-toh pông ả?

B: Kỏh cheung ch'ōng taaî-yeủk* yaŭ lûk-shâp pông.

15. A: Tsoỉ-kỉn, tsoỉ-kỉn, Leĭ Sheûng-Waỉ.

B: Tsoỉ-kỉn, tsoỉ-kỉn, Wōng Chung-Sẑ.

LESSON 21

WORD LIST

1.	ka-t'īng	family, home
2.	faaì-lôk	happy
3.	hing-taî	brothers
4.	tsź-mooî*	sisters
5.	kwan-koon	military officer
6.	sẑ-ping	enlisted man
7.	taaî-laĭ-t'ōng	auditorium
8.	kaî-toh?	how many? how much?
9.	sheûng-waì	captain (Army, Air Force)
10.	chung-sẑ	sergeant, sergeant first class
11.	sheûng-táng-ping	private first class
12.	chúng-kûng	total; totally, altogether
13.	tuì	pair; correct; toward
14.	haaì	shoe
15.	yâ, î-shâp	twenty
16.	sa, sa-â, saam-shâp	thirty
17.	shâp pông ngaū-yûk	ten pounds of beef
18.	t'īng-ch'e-ch'eūng	parking lot
19.	taaî-yeùk*	approximately; about
20.	paàk	hundred

LESSON 21

READING MATERIAL

285

兄 hing: elder brother; senior

兄弟 hing-taî: brethren

家兄 ka-hing: my elder brother

令兄 lîng-hing: your older brother

堂兄弟 t'ōng hing-taî: cousins of the same surname

1103

弟 taî: younger brother; a junior.

兄弟 hing-taî: brothers.

弟兄 taî-hing: brothers; brethren.

弟子 taî-tsź: pupil; disciple.

小弟 siú-taî: your humble servant; your humble me.

1303

拴 ts'uēn: to fasten; to tie up.

兄 弟 拴

兄 弟 拴

兄 弟 拴

717

妹 mooî: girl; younger sister.

細妹 saì-mooî*: younger sister.

姊妹 tsź-mooî: sisters; older and younger sisters.

妹夫 mooî-foo: younger sister's husband.

812

百 paàk: a hundred: all; many; every.

百姓 paàk ìng: hundred family names· all the people.

百分法 paàk fân faàt: percentage.

妹 百

妹 百

姝 佰 百

LESSON 21

READING MATERIAL

33

陳	ch'ān: to arrange display. old. stale.
陳列	ch'ān-lît: to arrange in order. to display.
陳皮	ch'ān-p'eī: dried orange peel.

484

個	kòh: a person; thing.
一個人	yat kòh yān: a person.
嗰個	kóh kòh: that one.
個個	kòh kòh: all; every one.

1326

總	tsúng: united in one; altogether; whole; all; total.
總數	tsúng shò tn total.
總統	tsúng-t'úng: president.
總論	súng lûn: general introduction.

陳 個 个 總 総

陳 個 總

陈 箇 佪 個 捴 緫

543

共	kûng: together; with; all.
共埋	kûng maaī: altogether.
共和	kûng-wōh: republic; federation.
共產主義	kûng-ch'aán chué-î: communism.
共計	kûng kaî: total

505

兩	leǔng: two; a pair double.
兩便	leǔng pîn: both sides; the two parties.
兩方面	leǔng fong-mīn: both sides of a matter.
兩可	leǔng-hóh: alternative; optional.

共 兩

共 兩

共 两 㒳

LESSON 21

READING MATERIAL

陳先生嘅家-t'īng 好大. 佢有太太,有五個 tsaí,有四個女. 陳先生亦都有兄弟,一個大 ló,兩個細 ló. 佢亦都有 tsź-妹,三個大 tsź,五個妹. Ni 個家-t'īng 總共有二十二個人.

陳先生而家喺陸軍語言學校教書. 佢有一百個學生,有四十二個 ooĭ 講廣東話,有五十八個唔 ooĭ 講廣東話. 陳先生 haí ni 間學校教書教 chóh 六年.

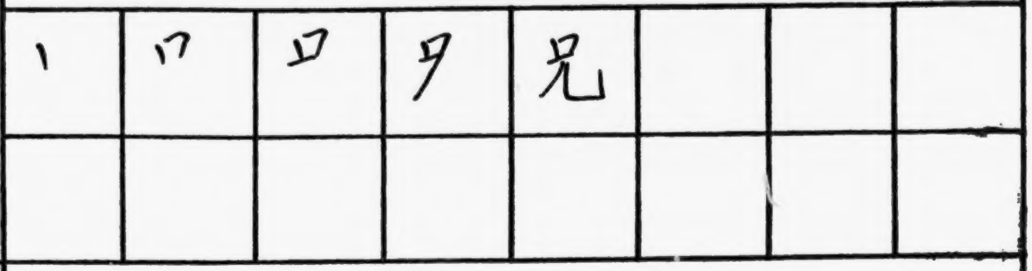
今日下午陳先生去街買兩 tuì haaī,買十 pông ngaū-yûk,總共六十三文.

LESSON 21

WRITING MATERIAL

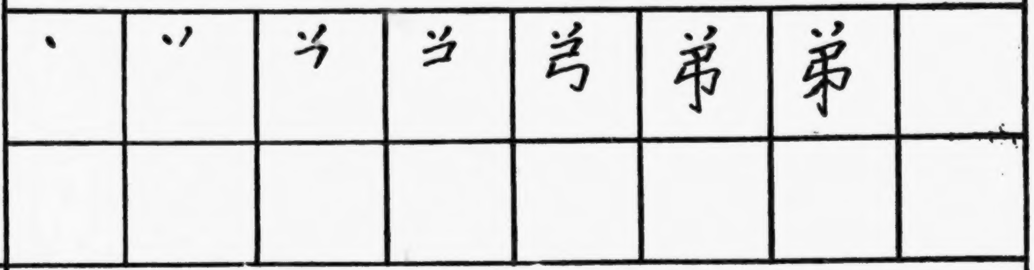
兄

Character Number 285 **Radical Number** 10
Stroke Number 5 儿



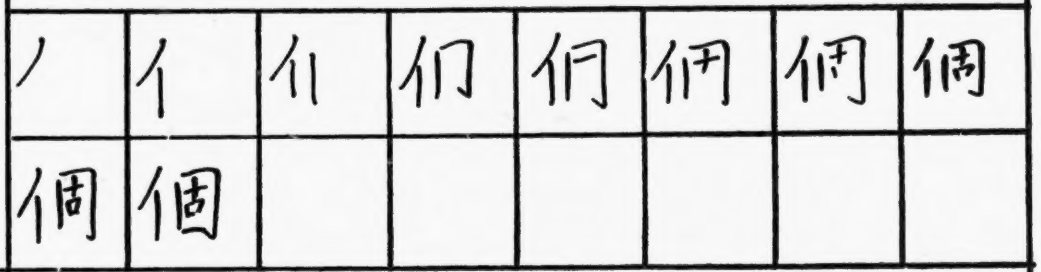
弟

Character Number 1103 **Radical Number** 57
Stroke Number 7 弓



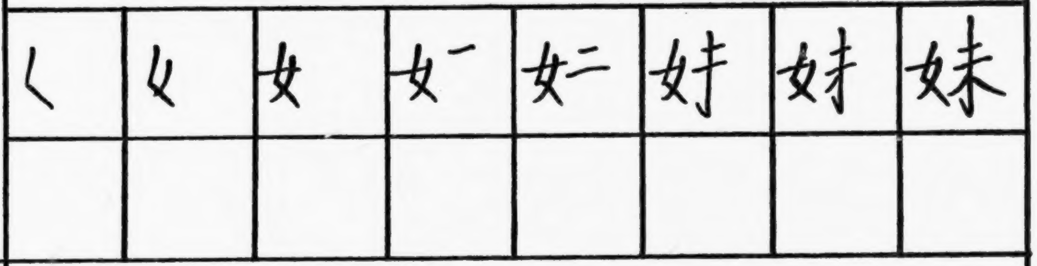
個

Character Number 484 **Radical Number** 9
Stroke Number 10 亻, 人



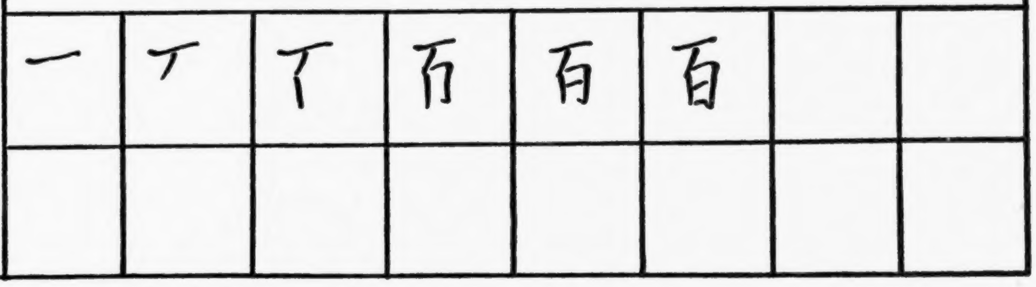
妹

Character Number 717 **Radical Number** 38
Stroke Number 8 女



百

Character Number 312 **Radical Number** 106
Stroke Number 6 白



LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. yat-paàk-lȋng-yat
   yat-paàk-lȋng-î
   yat-paàk-lȋng-saam
   yat-paàk-lȋng-seì
   yat-paàk-lȋng-nğ
   yat-paàk-lȋng-lûk
   yat-paàk-lȋng-ts'at
   yat-paàk-lȋng-paàt
   yat-paàk-lȋng-kaú
   yat-paàk-yat-shâp (paàk-yat)
   yat-paàk-yat-shâp nğ (paàk-yat-shâp-nğ)
   yat-paàk-î-shâp (paàk-î)
   yat-paàk-î-shâp-nğ (paàk-yâ-nğ)
   yat-paàk-saam-shâp (paàk-saam)
   yat-paàk-saam-shâp-nğ (paàk-sa-â-nğ)
   yat-paàk-seì-shâp (paàk-seì)
   yat-paàk-seì-shâp-nğ (paàk-seì-â-nğ)
   yat-paàk-nğ-shâp (paàk-nğ)
   yat-paàk-nğ-shâp-nğ (paàk-nğ-â-nğ)
   yat-paàk-lûk-shâp (paàk-lûk)
   yat-paàk-lûk-shâp-nğ (paàk-lûk-â-nğ)
   yat-paàk-ts'at-shâp (paàk-ts'at)
   yat-paàk-ts'at-shâp-nğ (paàk-ts'at-â-nğ)

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

yat-paàk-paàt-shâp (paàk-paàt)

yat-paàk-kaú-shâp (paàk-kaú)

î-paàk

saam-paàk

seì-paàk

nğ-paàk

lûk-paàk

ts'at-paàk

paàt-paàk

kaú-paàk

yat-ts'in

2. yat-ts'in lìng-yat

yat-ts'in lìng-î

yat-ts'in lìng-saam

yat-ts'in lìng-seì

yat-ts'in lìng-nğ

yat-ts'in lìng-lûk

yat-ts'in lìng-ts'at

yat-ts'in lìng-paàt

yat-ts'in lìng-kaú

yat-ts'in lìng-yat-shâp

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

3. yat-ts'in-lĩng-nğ-shâp

yat-ts'in-yat-paàk (ts'in-yat)

yat-ts'in-î-paàk (ts'in-î)

yat-ts'in-nğ-paàk (ts'in-nğ)

yat-ts'in-kaú-paàk (ts'in-kaú)

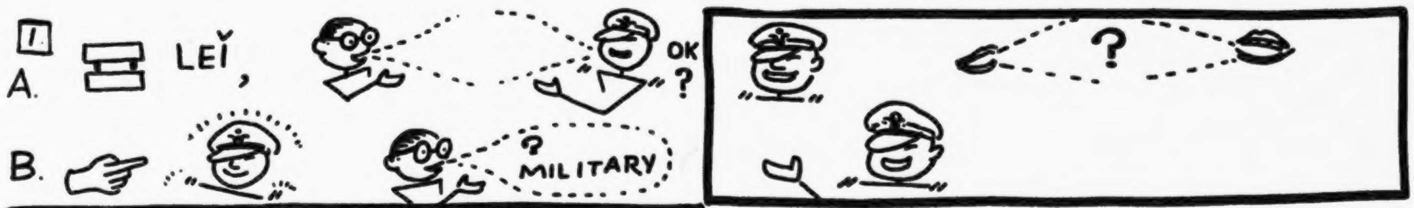
î-ts'in

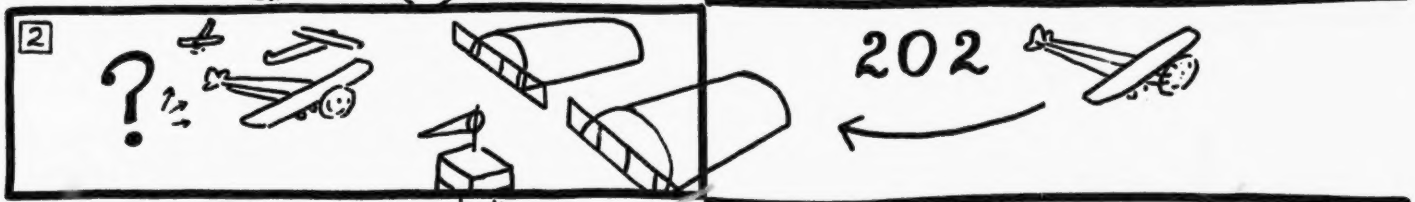
nğ-ts'in

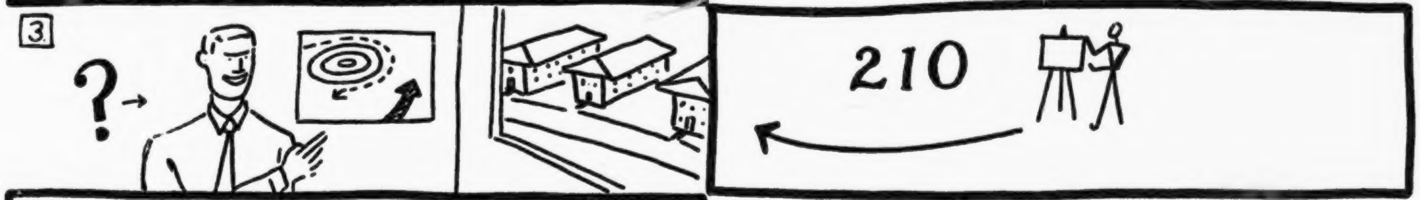
kaú-ts'in

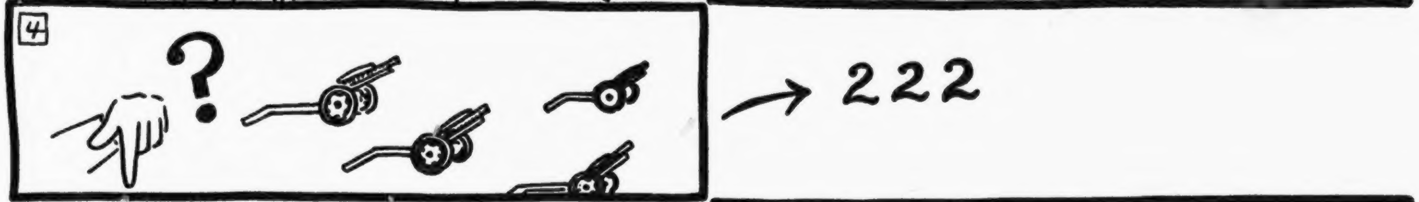
yat-maân

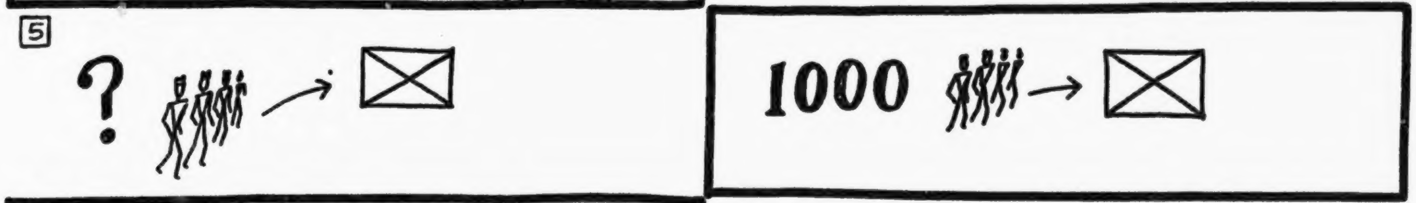
LESSON 22

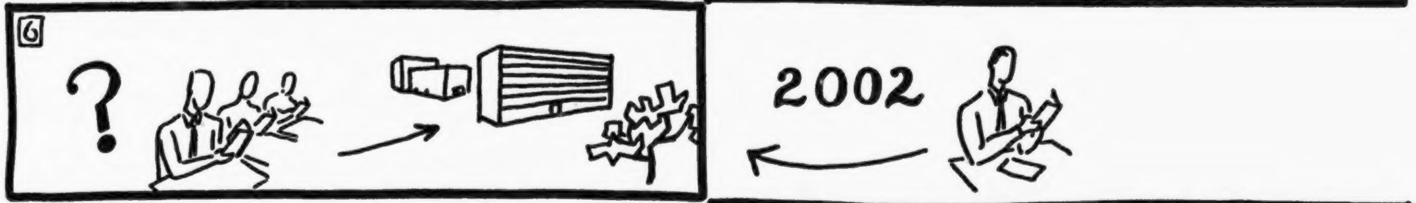

1
A.
LEǏ,
OK
?
B.
?
MILITARY
?

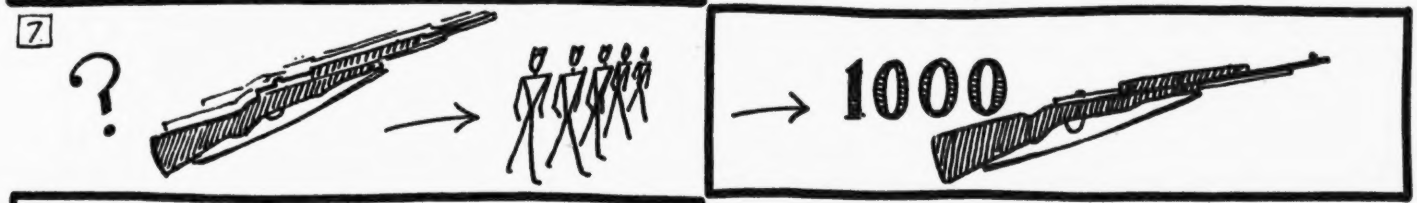

2
?
202

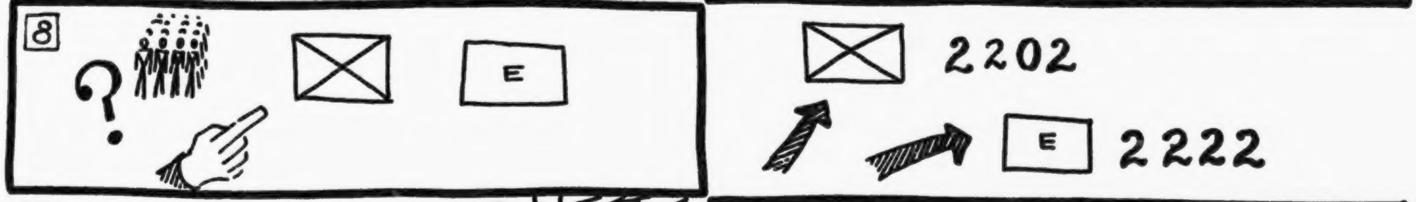

3
?
210

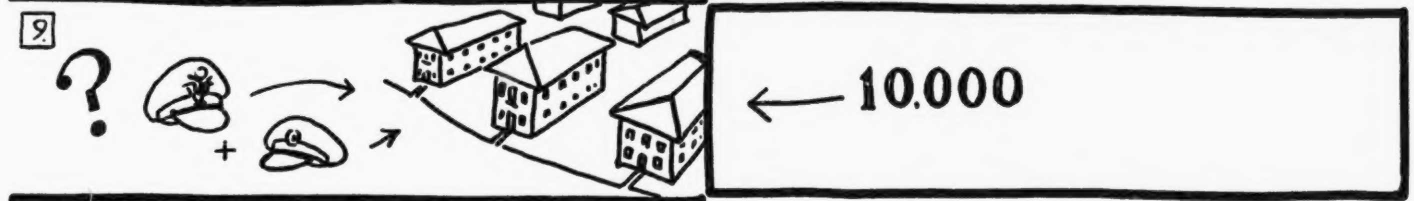

4
?
222

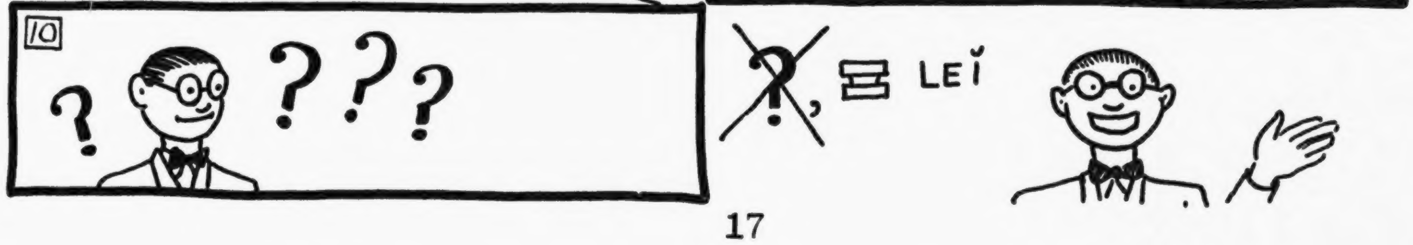

5
?
1000


6
?
2002


7
?
1000


8
?
E
2202
E
2222


9
?
+
10.000


10
?
???
?,
LEǏ

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Leĭ Sheûng-Waì, ngŏh yaŭ ti yĕ seúng t'ŭng neĭ k'ing-hă, tak mà?

B: Hó à, Wōng Sin-Shaang. Neĭ seúng k'ing ti mi-yĕ ne?

A: Leĭ Sheûng-Waì, neĭ haî kwan-yān, ngŏh seúng mân-hă neĭ kwan-sẑ kè yĕ.

B: Hó à, Wōng Sin-Shaang.

2. A: Ni kòh hung-kwan kei-teî yaŭ keí-toh kà fei-kei à?

B: Ni kòh hung-kwan kei-teî yaŭ î-paàk-lîng-î kà fei-kei.

3. A: Ni kòh lûk-kwan fàn-lîn kei-teî yaŭ keí-toh kòh kaaù-koon à?

B: Ni kòh lûk-kwan fàn-lîn kei-teî yaŭ î-paàk-yat-shâp kòh kaaù-koon.

4. A: Ni shuè tsúng-kûng yaŭ keí-toh moōn taaî-p'aaù à?

B: Ni shuè tsúng-kûng yaŭ î-paàk-î-shâp-î moōn taaî-p'aaù.

5. A: Ni kòh pô-tuî* yaŭ keí-toh kòh san-ping à?

B: Ni kòh pô-tuî* yaŭ yat-ts'in-kòh san-ping.

6. A: Ni kaan kwan-haaû yaŭ keí-toh kòh hôk-shaang à?

B: Ni kaan kwan-haaû yaŭ î-ts'in-lîng-lîng-î-kòh hôk-shaang.

7. A: Ni ti san-ping yaŭ keí-toh chi pô-ts'eung à?

B: Ni ti san-ping yaŭ yat-ts'in-chi pô-ts'eung.

8. A: Ni leŭng-kòh pô-tuî* kè ping-lîk yaŭ keí taaî à?

B: Ni kòh pô-tuî* yaŭ î-ts'in-î-paàk-lîng-î yān, kóh kòh pô-tuî* yaŭ î-ts'in-î-paàk-î-shâp-î yān.

9. A: Ni kòh kwan-yíng yaŭ keí-toh kòh koon-ping à?

B: Ni kòh kwan-yīng taaî-yeûk* yaŭ yat-maân-kòh koon-ping.

10. B: Wōng Sin-Shaang, neĭ chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ mân à?

A: Mŏ là, Leĭ Sheûng-Waì, ngŏh mŏ mi-yĕ mân là! Haî kòm toh. M-koi, m̄-koi.

LESSON 22

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Capt. Leǐ, there is something that I'd like to talk with you about, all right?

B: Fine, Mr. Wōng, what do you wish to talk about?

A: Capt. Leǐ, you are a service man; I want to ask you something about the military.

B: Fine, Mr. Wōng.

2. A: How many airplanes are there at this air base?

B: There are 202 airplanes at this air base.

3. A: How many instructors are there in this Army training base?

B: There are 210 instructors in this Army training base.

4. A: How many artillery pieces are there in this place altogether?

B: There are altogether 222 artillery pieces here.

5. A: How many recruits are there in this unit?

B: There are 1,000 recruits in this unit.

6. A: How many students are there in this military school?

B: There are 2,002 students in this military school.

7. A: How many rifles do these recruits have?

B: These recruits have 1000 rifles.

8. A: What is the strength of each of these two units?

B: This unit has 2,202 men; that unit has 2222 men.

9. A: How many officers and enlisted men are there in this military camp?

B: This military camp has about 10,000 officers and men.

10. A: Mr. Wōng, do you have any more questions?

B: No, Capt. Leǐ, I have no more questions. That's all. Thank you.

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Cheung Siú-Tsé, hó la-mà?

B: Hó hó, neī ne, Ch'ān Sin-Shaang?

A: Hó à, Cheung Siú-Tsé.

2. A: Ni shuè yaŭ keí-toh kaan kwan-sẑ hôk-haaû à?

B: Ni shuè yaŭ leŭng-kaan kwan-sẑ hôk-haaû.

3. A: Ni leŭng-kaan kwan-haaû, yat-kaan haî mi-yĕ hôk-haaû, yat-kaan haî mi-yĕ hôk-haaû à?

B: Ni leŭng-kaan kwan-haaû, yat-kaan haî Lûk-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû, yat-kaan haî Hung-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû.

4. A: Ni yat-paàk-kòh kaaù-koon, yaŭ keí-toh kòh haî Lûk-Kwan kaaù-koon, yaŭ keí-toh kòh haî Hung-Kwan kaaù-koon à?

B: Ni yat-paàk-kòh kaaù-koon, yaŭ nğ-shâp-î-kòh haî Lûk-Kwan kaaù-koon, yaŭ seî-shâp-paàt-kòh haî Hung-Kwan kaaù-koon.

5. A: Ni kaan Lûk-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû yaŭ keí-toh hôk-shaang à?

B: Ni kaan Lûk-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû yaŭ î-ts'in-î-paàk-î-shâp-î-kòh hôk-shaang.

6. A: Ni kòh Hung-Kwan fàn-lîn kei-teî taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keí toh kà fei-kei à?

B: Ni kòh Hung-Kwan fàn-lîn kei-teî taaî-yaùk* yaŭ î-paàk yat-shâp-î-kà fei-kei.

7. A: Ni kaan Lûk-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû yaŭ keí-toh kòh hôk-shaang ooī shaí fei-kei à?

B: Ni kaan Lûk-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû, yaŭ paàk keí kòh hôk-shaang ooī shaí fei-kei.

8. A: Ni leŭng-maân koon ping, yaŭ keí-toh kòh haî kwan-koon à?

B: Ni leŭng-maân koon ping, yaŭ nğ-paàk keí kòh haî kwan-koon.

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

9. A: Taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keí-toh yān chuê haí ni kòh kwan-yīng à?

B: Taaî-yeùk* yaŭ î-ts'in nğ-paàk yān chuê haí ni kòh kwan-yīng.

10. A: Yaŭ keí-toh yān haí ni kaan hôk-haaû tsô sẑ à?

B: Yaŭ yat-ts'in î-paàk keí yān haí ni kaan hôk-haaû tsô sẑ.

11. A: Ī-ka chúng-kûng yaŭ keí-toh yān haí kóh shuè t'aí wâ*-pò t'ūng pò-chí à?

B: Ī-ka chúng-kûng yaŭ nğ-shâp-î kóh yān haí kóh shuè t'aí wâ*-pò t'ūng pò-chí.

12. A: Kòh kòh pô-tuî* kè san-ping peí-kaaù ni kòh pô-tuî* kè san-ping toh keí-toh yān à?

B: Kóh kòh pô-tuî* kè san-ping peí-kaaù ni kòh pô-tuî* kè san-ping toh leŭng-ts'in yān.

13. A: Ni kaan paan-fōng* kè hôk-shaang peí-kaaù kóh kaan paan-fōng* kè hôk-shaang siú keí-toh yān à?

B: Ni kaan paan-fōng* kè hôk-shaang peí-kaaù kòh kaan paan-fōng* kè hôk-shaang siú leŭng-kòh yān.

14. A: Neī kè ch'e peí-kaaù nğoh kè ch'e kwaì keí-toh à?

B: Nğoh kè ch'e peí-kaaù neī kè ch'e kwaì yat-paàk yâ keí man.

15. A: Tsoì-kìn, Cheung Siú-Tsé.

B: T'ing-yât kìn, Ch'ān Sin-shaang.

LESSON 22

WORD LIST

1.	k'ing	to chat, talk, discuss
2.	kwan-sẑ	military affairs
3.	kwan-yān	military personnel, service man
4.	hung-kwan	air force
5.	kei-teî	military base
6.	fei-kei	airplane
7.	līng	zero, and
8.	fȁn-lîn	to train; training
9.	kaaȕ-koon	military instructor
10.	taaî-p'aaȕ	artillery piece
11.	pô-tuî*	unit, troop, outfit
12.	san-ping	recruit
13.	ts'in	thousand
14.	kwan-haaû	military school
15.	pô-ts'eung	rifle
16.	ping-lîk	military strength
17.	kwan yīng	military camp, barracks
18.	koon ping	officers and men
19.	maân	ten thousand
20.	chûng	still, also, yet

LESSON 22

READING MATERIAL

1252

千 ts'in: a thousand; many; all.

千萬 ts'in maân: an immense number; very many; ten million.

千金 ts'in-kam: your daughter.

662

萬 maân: ten thousand· many; myriad.

百萬 paàk-maân: a million.

萬物 maân mât. all things

萬一 maân-yat: if by any chance.

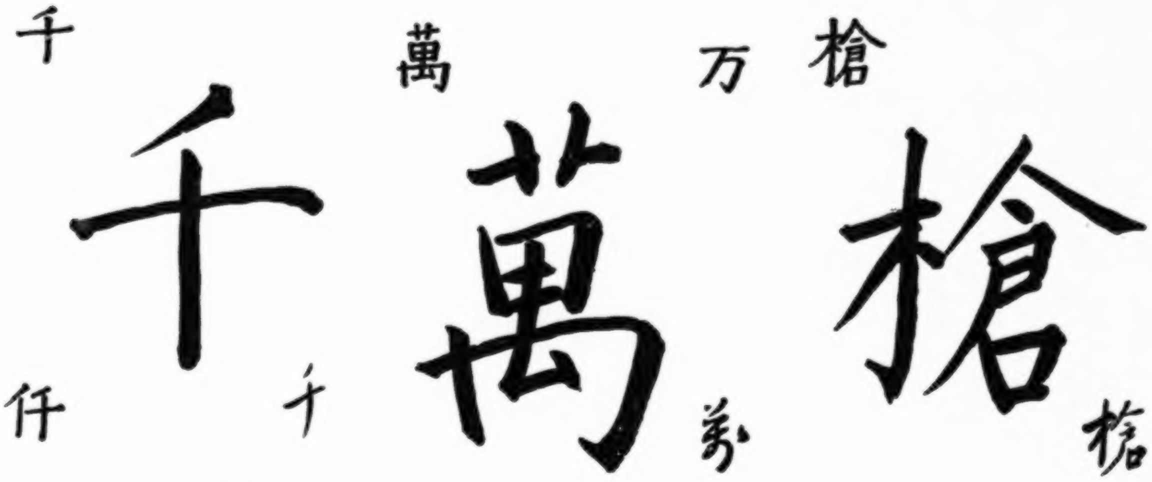
夾萬 kaàp-maân: a safe.

1238

槍 ts'eung: spear; lance.

長槍 ch'ēung ts'eung: a long spear.

槍法 ts'eung faàt: art of spear fighting.



878

部 pô: a board; committee; class; category.

部下 pô-hâ: those under a command.

部隊 pô-tuî: army corps.

部份 pô-fân: one part of a group or category.

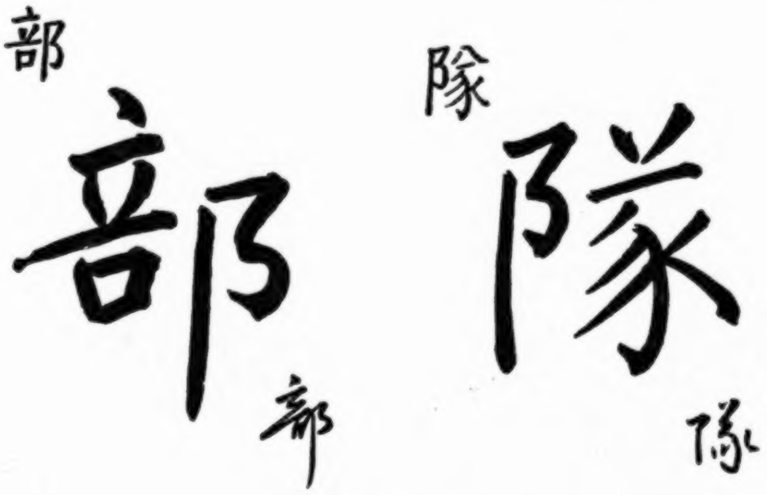
1348

隊 tuî: group; squad; company.

隊伍 tuî-nğ: a formation of troops; in pairs; file.

出隊 ch'ut tuî: to go out to battle.

收隊 shau tuî: to withdraw; to retreat; to return to quarters.



LESSON 22

READING MATERIAL

437

基 kei: foundation; base.

基礎 kei-ch'óh: foundation; basis.

基督 kei-tuk: Christ.

基本 kei-poón: basic; foundamental.

1491

營 yīng: military post; camp, to do business.

營房 yīng-fōng: barrack.

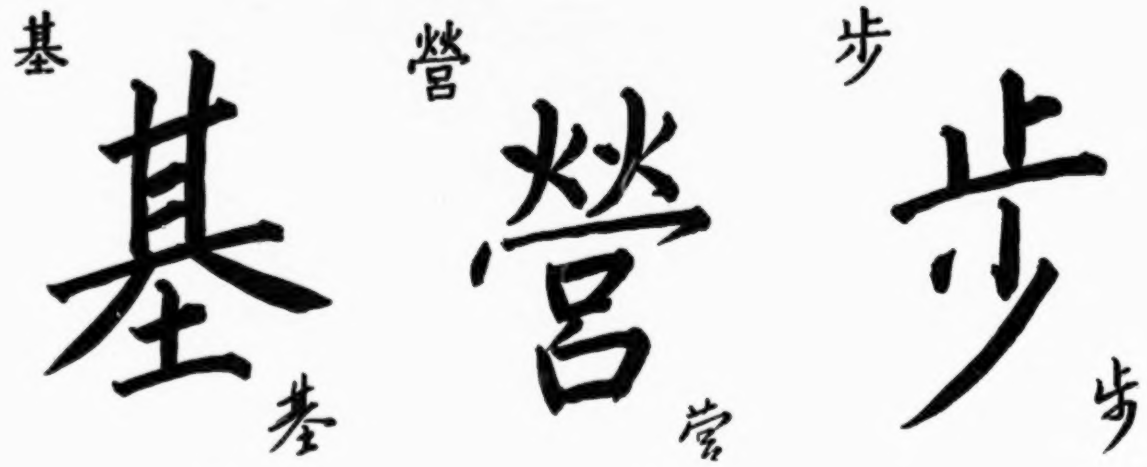
營業 yīng-īp. to do bus ness; business; trade.

877

步 pō: to walk; to step; a step.

步行 pō-haāng: to go on foot.

散步 saàn-pō: to take a walk; to stroll.



185

飛 fei: to fly

飛禽 fei k'ām: birds in general

飛機 fei-kei: airplane

435

機 kei: spring; moving power; opportunity.

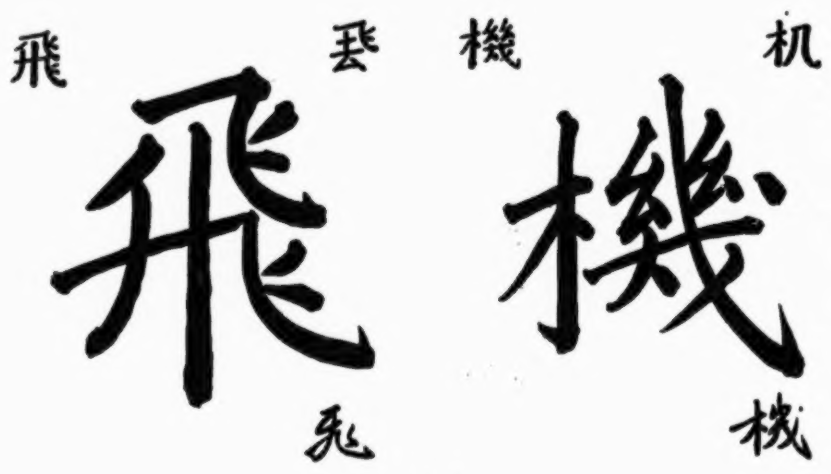
機器 kei-hei: a machine; machinery.

飛機 fei-kei: aeroplane.

機會 kei-owi: an opportunity.

心機 sam-kei: attentiveness; interest; patience.

機密 kei-mat: secret; confidential.



LESSON 22

READING MATERIAL

李上-waì係陳先生嘅學生. 李上-waì喺一九五八年laī陸軍語言學校讀廣東話. 佢好勤力. 而家佢講廣東話講得幾好.

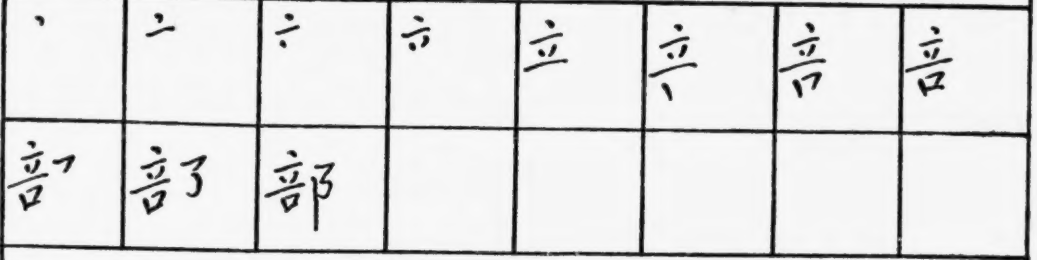
李上-waì話,佢ǐ-前喺陸軍fàn-lîn基地做事. Kóh個軍營嘅部隊好好. 兵力好大,有九千līng九十個兵,有九百一十個数koon,總共有一萬人. 佢地有一千chi步槍,有二百līng二kà飛機. Kóh-ti数koon fàn-lîn san兵. 而家佢地ooǐ yûng步槍,ooǐ shaí飛機.

LESSON 22

WRITING MATERIAL

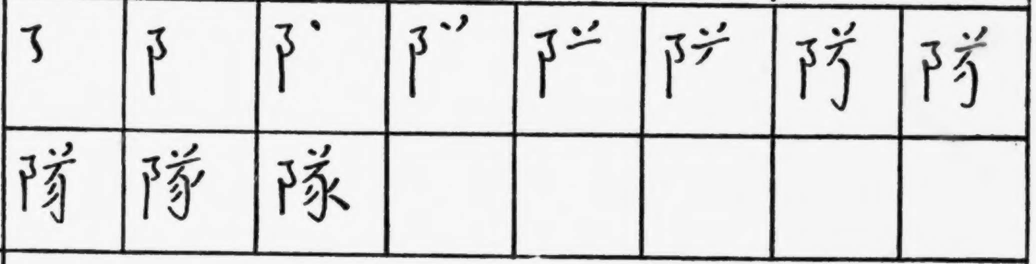
部

Character Number 878 Radical Number 163
Stroke Number 11
阝，邑



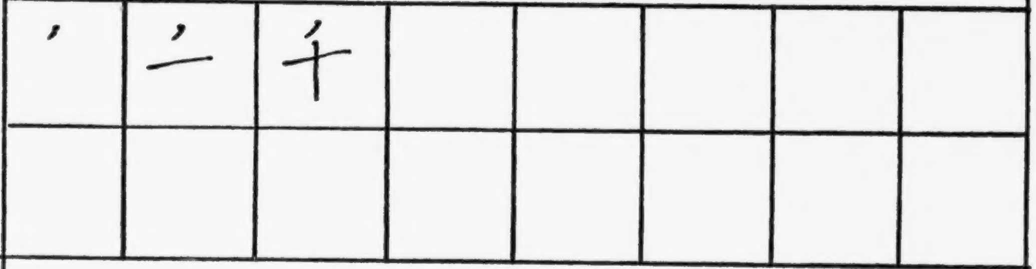
隊

Character Number 1348 Radical Number 170
Stroke Number 11
阝，阜



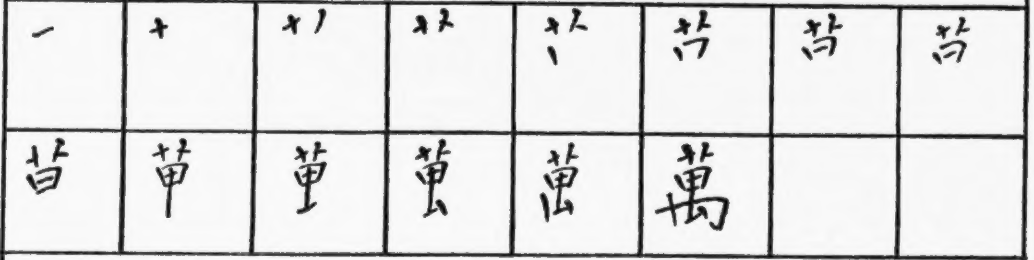
千

Character Number 1252 Radical Number 24
Stroke Number 3
十



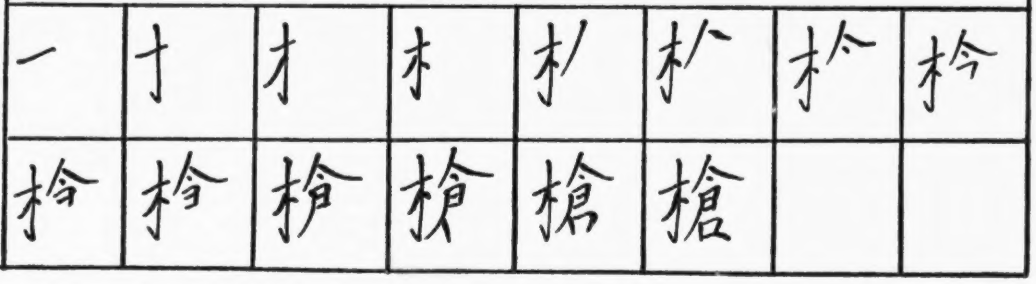
萬

Character Number 662 Radical Number 140
Stroke Number 14
艹，艸



槍

Character Number 1238 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 14
木，木



LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. yat-ts'in kaú-paȁk līng yat nīn (yat-kaú-līng-yat nīn)

   yat-ts'in kaú-paȁk līng nğ nīn (yat-kaú-līng-nğ nīn)

   yat-ts'in kaú-paȁk yat-shâp nīn (yat-kaú-yat-līng nīn)

   yat-ts'in kaú-paȁk yat-shâp nğ nīn (yat-kaú-yat-nğ nīn)

   yat-ts'in kaú-paȁk nğ-shâp nğ nīn (yat-kaú-nğ-nğ nīn)

   yat-ts'in kaú-paȁk lûk-shâp nīn (yat-kaú-lûk-līng nīn)

   yat-ts'in kaú-paȁk lûk-shâp yat nīn (yat-kaú-lûk-yat nīn)

   yat-ts'in kaú-paȁk lûk-shâp saam nīn (yat-kaú-lûk-saam nīn)

   yat-ts'in kaú-paȁk lûk-shâp nğ nīn (yat-kaú-lûk-nğ nīn)

   yat-ts'in kaú-paȁk lûk-shâp kaú nīn (yat-kaú-lûk-kaú nīn)

2. Mān-Kwȍk yat nīn (1911)

   Mān-Kwȍk nğ nīn (1916)

   Mān-Kwȍk shâp nīn (1921)

   Mān-Kwȍk saam-shâp nīn (1941)

   Mān-Kwȍk nğ-shâp nīn (1961)

   Mān-Kwȍk nğ-shâp nğ nīn (1966)

   Mān-Kwȍk nğ-shâp kaú nīn (1970)

3. yat-uêt

   î-uêt

   saam-uêt

   seī-uêt

   nğ-uêt

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

lûk uêt

ts'at uêt

paàt uêt

kaú uêt

shâp uêt

shâp yat uêt

shâp î uêt

4. yat-kòh uêt

leŭng-kòh uêt

saam-kòh uêt

seì-kòh uêt

nğ-kòh uêt

lûk-kòh uêt

ts'at-kòh uêt

paàt-kòh uêt

kaú-kòh uêt

shâp-kòh uêt

shâp yat-kòh uêt

shâp î-kòh uêt

5. yat yât (yat hô)

î yât (î hô)

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

nğ yât (nğ hô)

shâp yât (shâp hô)

shâp î yât (shâp î hô)

shâp nğ yât (shâp nğ hô)

î shâp yât (î shâp hô)

saam shâp yât (saam shâp hô)

saam shâp yat yât (sa â yat hô)

6. yat yât

leŭng yât

nğ yât

shâp yât

shâp î yât

î shâp yât

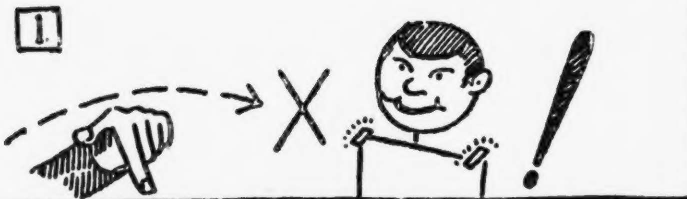
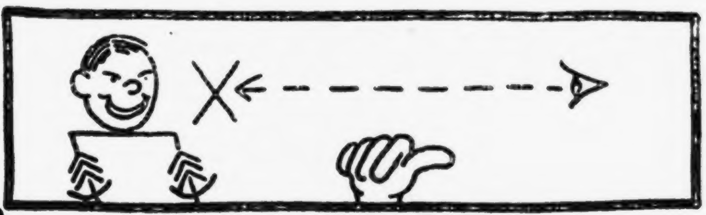
saam shâp yât

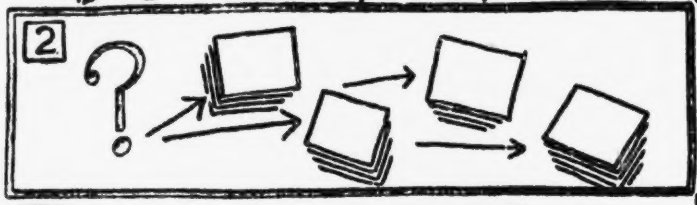
nğ shâp yât

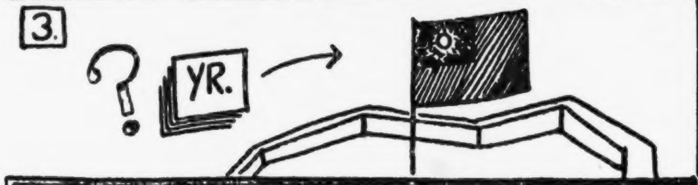
yat paâk yât

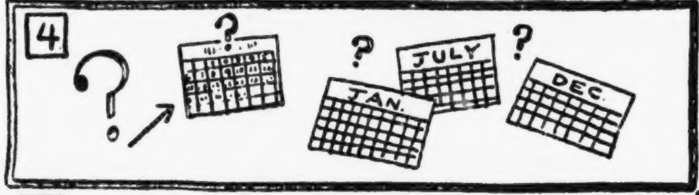
saam paâk lûk shâp nğ yât

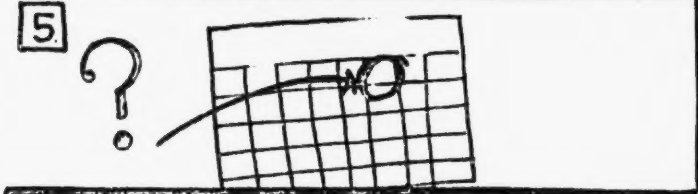
LESSON 23

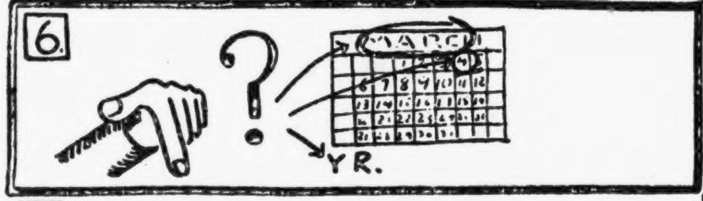
1



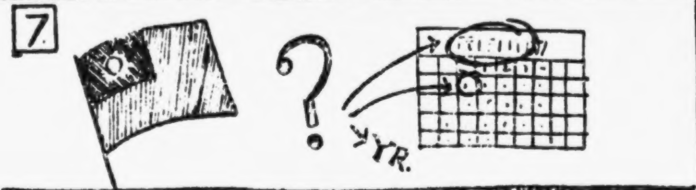
2


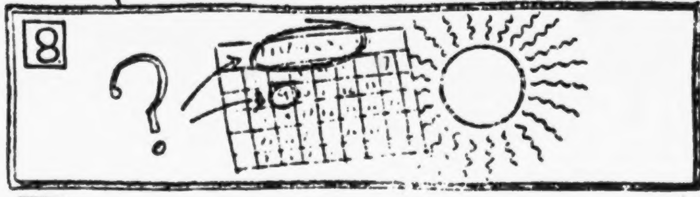
3


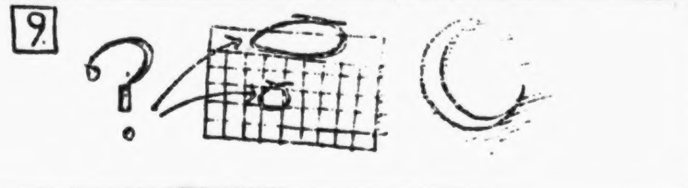
4


5


6


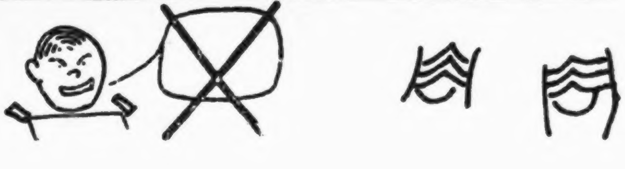
7


8


9


10

麻煩[illegible]！ Hoh！



LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Hōh shiù-waì, mat kòm ngaam kà, ooĭ haì ni shuè kìn-tó neĭ!

B: Haî lòh, Leĭ Chung-Sẑ, ngŏh to koó m̄-tò ooĭ haì ni shuè kìn-tó neĭ.

2. A: Kam-nìn* haî keì nìn à?

B: Kam-nìn* haî _ nìn.

3. A: Kam-nìn* haî Chung-Wā-Mān-Kwòk keì nìn à?

B: Kam-nìn haî Chung-Wā-Mān-Kwòk _ nìn.

4. A: Ni kòh uêt haî keì uêt à?

B: Ni kòh uêt haî _ uêt.

5. A: Kam-yât haî keì hô à?

B: Kam-yât haî _ hô.

6. A: Kam-yât haî keì nìn keì uêt keì yât à?

B: Kam-yât haî _ nìn _ uêt _ yât.

7. A: Kam-yât haî Mān-Kwòk keì nìn keì uêt keì yât?

B: Kam-yât haî Mān-Kwòk _ nìn _ uêt _ yât.

8. A: Kam-yât haî yeūng-lîk keì uêt keì yât à?

B: Kam-yât haî yeūng-lîk _ uêt _ yât.

9. A: Kam-yât haî yam-lîk keì uêt keì yât à?

B: Kam-yât haî yam-lîk _ uêt _ yât.

10. A: Mā-faān saaì, Hôh Shiù-Waì.

B: M̄-hó kôm wâ, Leĭ Chung-Sẑ.

LESSON 23

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Lt. (2nd Lt) Hŏh, fancy meeting you here!
   B: Yes, Sgt. (SFC) Leĭ; I, too, would never have guessed that I'd run into you here.
2. A: What year is this?
   B: This is _ .
3. A: What year of the Republic of China is this?
   B: This is the _ year of the Chinese Republic.
4. A: What month is this?
   B: This is _ .
5. A: What day is today?
   B: Today is the _ .
6. A: What day, what month, and what year is today?
   B: Today is the _ of _, _ .
7. A: What day, what month, and what year of the Republic is today?
   B: Today is the _ of _ of the _ year of the Republic.
8. A: What day and what month in the solar calendar is today?
   B: Today is the _ of _ in the solar calendar.
9. A: What day and what month in the lunar calendar is today?
   B: Today is the _ of _ in the lunar calendar.
10. A: Thank you, Lt. Hŏh.
    B: Don't mention it, Sgt. Leĭ.

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Neĭ hó mà?

B: Ngŏh hó, neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh hó hó.

2. A: Kam-nīn haî keí nīn?

B: Kam-nīn haî _ nīn, waâk-ché Mān-Kwòk _ nīn.

3. A: Kam-yât haî keí uêt keí yât?

B: Kam-yât haî _ uêt _ hô.

4. A: Neĭ kiù-tsô mi-yĕ mēng* à?

B: Ngŏh kiù-tsô Wōng-Ī.

5. A: Neĭ keí shī ch'ut shaī à?

B: Ngŏh _ nīn _ uêt _ yât ch'ut shaī.

6: A: Yeūng-lîk _ nīn _ uêt _ yât haî kaû-lîk keí uêt keí yât à?

B: Yeūng-lîk _ nīn _ uêt _ yât haî kaû-lîk _ uêt _ yât.

7. A: Neĭ pin nīn tong ping à?

B: Ngŏh _ nīn tong ping.

8. A: Neĭ kaû-nīn keí shī kīt fan à?

B: Ngŏh kaû-nīn _ uêt _ hô kīt fan.

9. A: Neĭ haí pin shuè tûk shue à?

B: Ngŏh haí ni kaan hôk-haaû tûk shue.

10. A: Neĭ keí shī laī ni shuè tûk shue à?

B: Ngŏh _ nīn _ uêt laī ni shuè tûk shue.

11. A: Ni kaan kiù-tsô mi-yĕ hôk-haaû à?

B: Ni kaan kiù-tsô Kwòk-Fōng-Pô Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Uên*.

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

12. A: Ni kaan hôk-haaû taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keí-toh hôk-shaang à?

B: Ni kaan hôk-haaû taaî-yeùk* yaŭ leŭng ts'in kòh hôk-shaang.

13. A: Neĭ seúng keí shī huì Yât-Poón à?

B: Ngŏh waâk-ché _ nīn huì Yât-Poón.

14. A: Neĭ huì Yât-Poón tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: Ngŏh huì Yât-Poón tsô sẑ.

15. A: Mā-faān saaì, m̄-koi, m̄-koi.

B: M̄-shaî m̄-koi.

LESSON 23

WORD LIST

1.	Hōh	surname
2.	shiù-waì	2nd Lt.
3.	mat	what?
4.	kòm	so, such, thus
5.	ngaam	coincidental, suitable, right
6.	koó	to guess, imagine, believe
7.	nīn	year
8.	waâk-ché	or, perhaps, maybe
9.	Chung-Wā Mān-Kwòk	Republic of China
10.	Mān-Kwòk	The Republic
11.	uêt	month, moon
12.	hô	day of month, number, mark
13.	yât	day of month, sun
14.	yeūng-lîk, san-lîk	solar calendar
15.	yam-lîk, kaû-lîk	lunar calendar
16.	ching uêt	January
17.	mā-faān-saaì	much obliged, thank you
18.	m̄-hò	don't; not good, bad
19.	m̄-hó kóm wâ	you shouldn't say that, don't say that

LESSON 23

READING MATERIAL

339

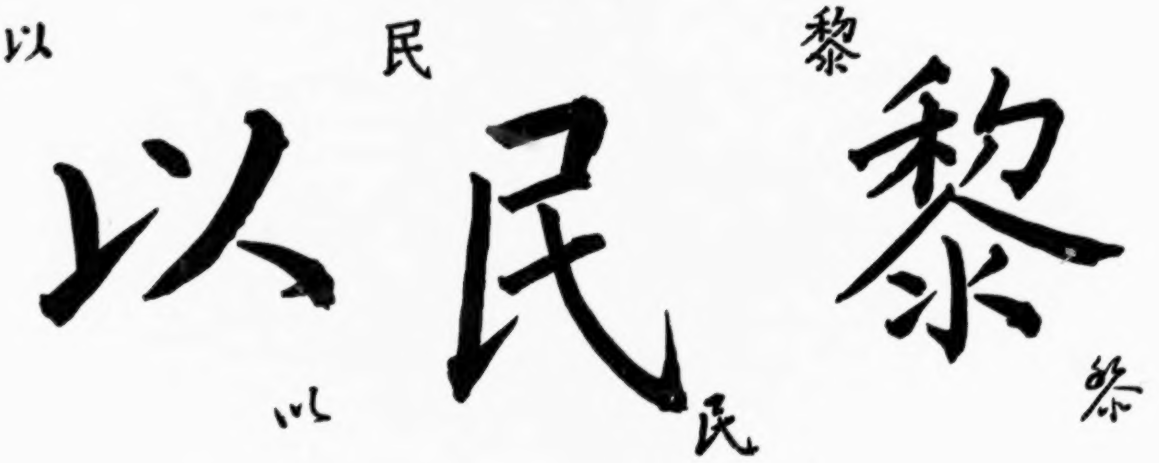
以	ĭ:	to cause; to use
所以	shóh-ĭ:	therefore
以前	ĭ-ts'în:	formerly
以後	ĭ-hau:	afterwards
以為	ĭ-waĭ:	presume; (I) thought...
以上	ĭ-sheûng:	above

674

民	mān:	people; public.
平民	p'ĭng-mān:	the common people
民國	mān-kwok:	a republic.
民衆	mān-chùng:	the public; the crowd.
殖民地	chîk-mān-teî:	colony.

564

黎	laĭ:	to come; in order to.
出黎	ch'ut laĭ:	to come out.
入黎	yâp laĭ:	to come in.

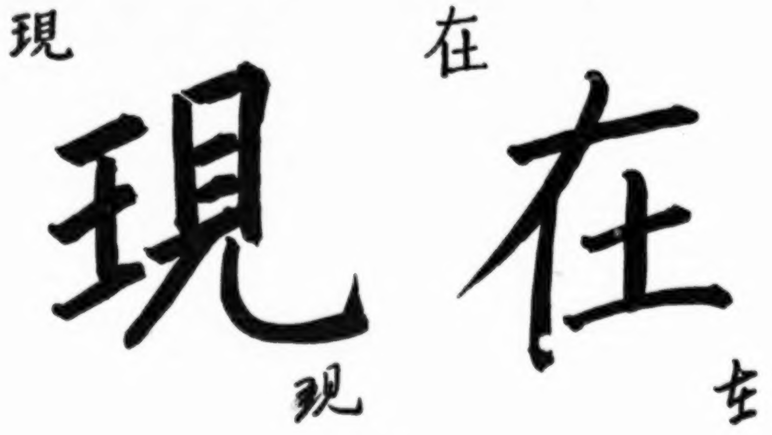


359

現	în:	to manifest; appear
現在	în-tsoî:	at present
現銀	în-ngān:	ready money; cash
現象	în-tseûng:	phenomena
現狀	în-chêng:	present condition or state

1285

在	tsoî:	to be; to be present; living at; on; in.
在内	tsoî noî.	included.
現在	în tsoî:	at present.
在場	tsoî ch'eūng:	to be present.



LESSON 23

READING MATERIAL

1075

士 sẑ: scholar, officer; gentleman.

教士 kaaù-sẑ: a missionary.

學士 hôk-sẑ: B.A. degree.

碩士 shêk-sẑ: M.A. degree.

博士 pòk-sẑ: a doctor degree.

178

訓 fàn: to instruct; teach; teachings

教訓 kaaù-fàn: to teach; advise

訓練 fàn-lîn: to train; to drill discipline

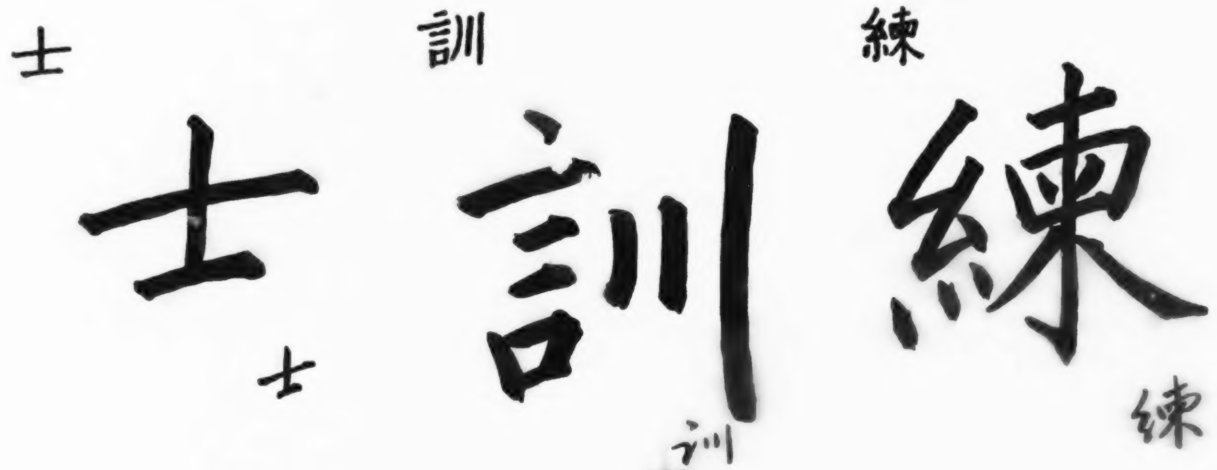
615

練 lîn: to train; to practise; skilled.

操練 t'so-lîn: to drill

練習 lîn-tsaâp: to practise; to train.

熟練 shûk-lîn: experienced; well trained.



1400

華 wā: beauty; elegance; splendor.

華洋 wā yeūng: China and foreign nations

華文 wā mān: the Chinese language.

華盛頓 wā shîng-tûn: Washington.

292

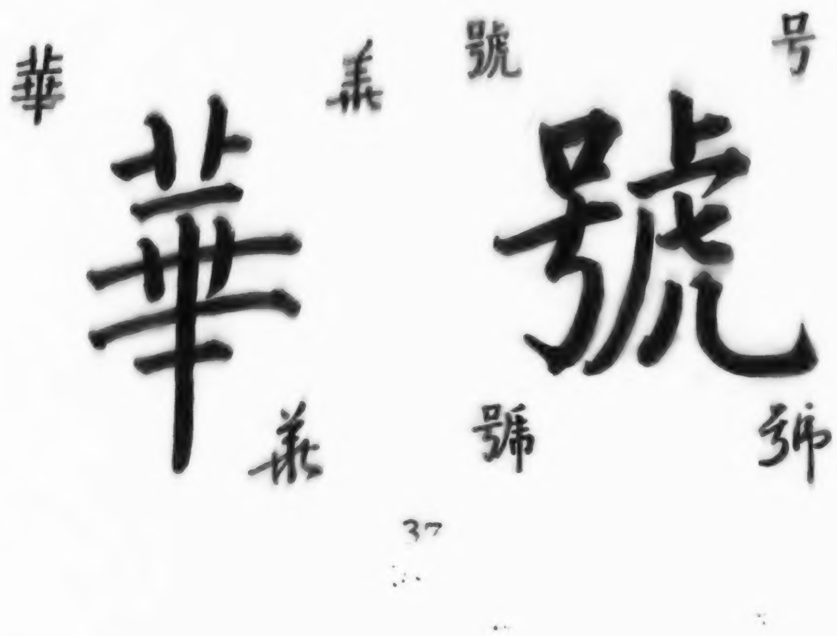
號 hô: a name; designation; mark number; signal day of month

號 hō: lit. to cry

號碼 hô-mă: number

暗號 ôm-hô: password

記號 kei-hô: distinguish mark



LESSON 23

READING MATERIAL

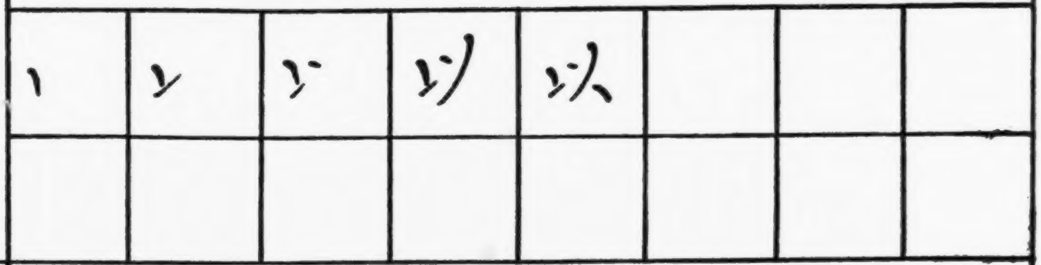
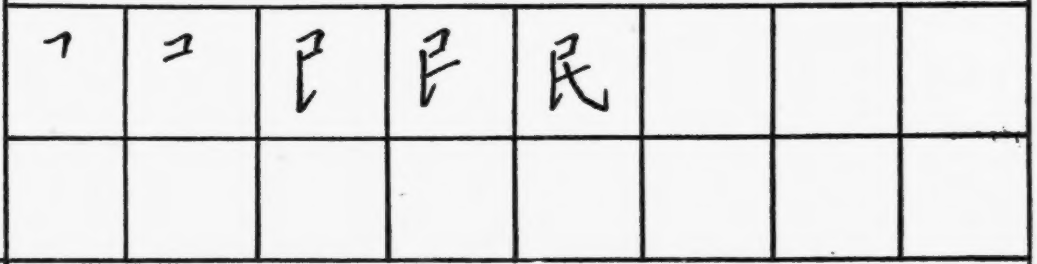
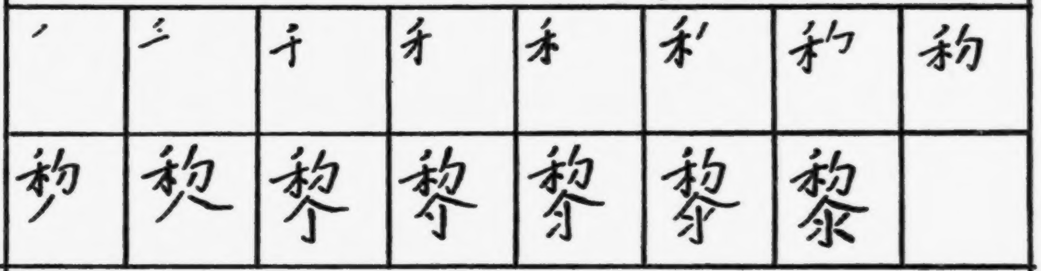
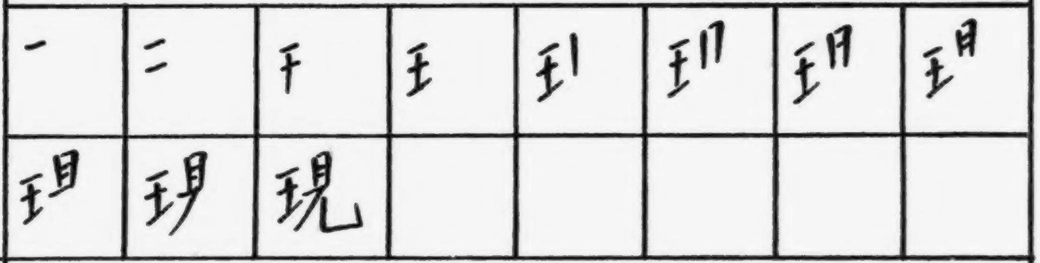
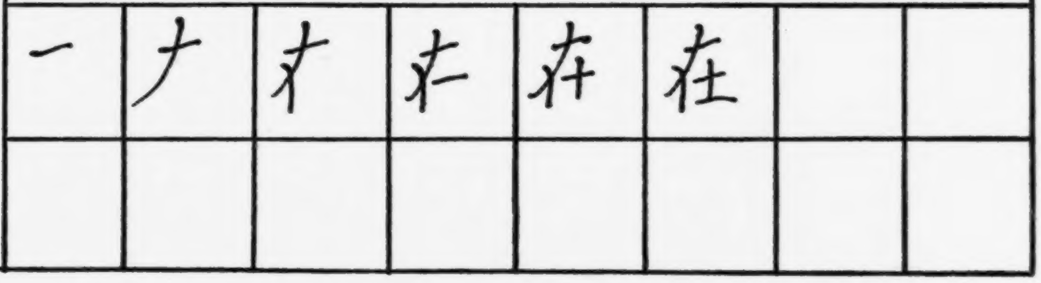
李上士係陳先生嘅學生. 李上士同李上-wài 以前都喺陸軍訓練基地做事. 李上-wài 做教 koon . 李上士係步兵.

李上士係中國人. 佢喺中國出世. 佢喺中華民國十六年三月六日出世. 喺中華民國二十五年七月八日佢同佢嘅父親黎美國. 佢黎美國做工;佢亦都去學校讀英文. 佢喺一九五三年四月十號當兵.

現在李上士同李上-wài 都喺陸軍語言學校讀廣東話. 李上士好聰明. 佢講廣東話講得好好.

LESSON 23

WRITING MATERIAL

以	Character Number 339 Stroke Number 5 Radical Number 9 人	
民	Character Number 674 Stroke Number 5 Radical Number 83 氏	
黎	Character Number 584 Stroke Number 15 Radical Number 202 黍	
現	Character Number 359 Stroke Number 11 Radical Number 96 王 玉	
在	Character Number 1285 Stroke Number 6 Radical Number 32 土	

LESSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Taaî-ts'īn-nīn
Ts'īn-nīn
Kaû-nīn
Kam-nīn
Ch'ut-nīn
Haû-nīn
Taaî-haû-nīn

2. Tuì sheûng saam nīn
Tuì sheûng leŭng nīn
Tuì sheûng yat nīn
Kam-nīn
Tuì hâ yat nīn
Tuì hâ leŭng nīn
Tuì hâ saam nīn

3. Tuì sheûng saam-kòh uêt
Tuì sheûng leŭng-kòh uêt
Tuì sheûng yat-kòh uêt
Ni kòh uêt
Tuì hâ yat-kòh uêt
Tuì hâ leŭng-kòh uêt
Tuì hâ saam-kòh uêt

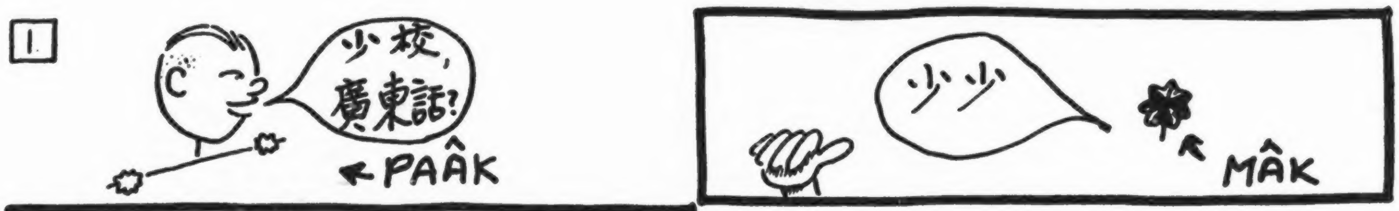
LESSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

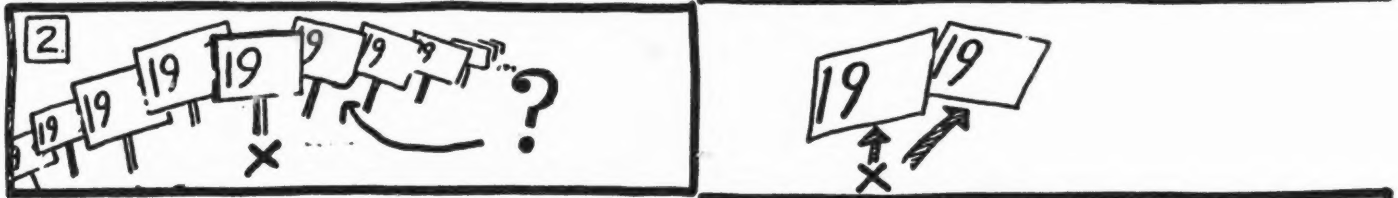
4. Taaî-ts'ìn-yât
Ts'ìn-yât
Tsỏk-yât
Kam-yât
T' ing-yât
Haû-yât
Taaî-haû-yât

5. Tuỉ sheûng saam yât
Tuỉ sheûng leŭng yât
Tuỉ sheûng yat yât
Kam-yât
Tuỉ hâ yat yât
Tuỉ hâ leŭng yât
Tuỉ hâ saam yât

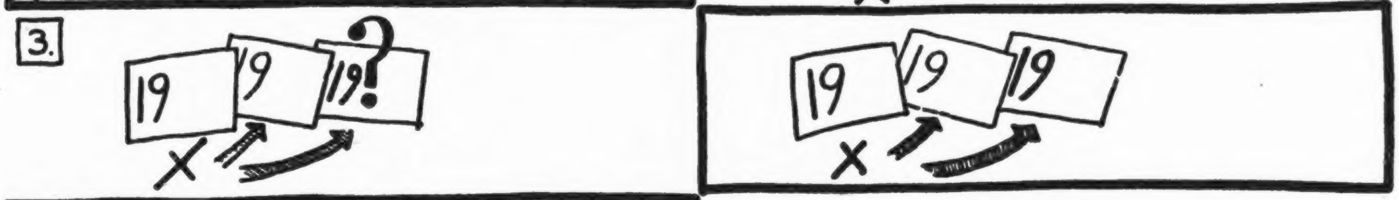
LESSON 24



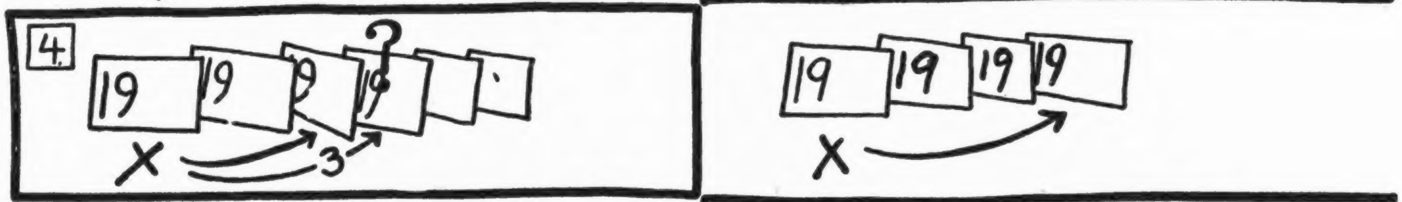
1.
少校,
廣東話?
PAÂK
少少
MÂK



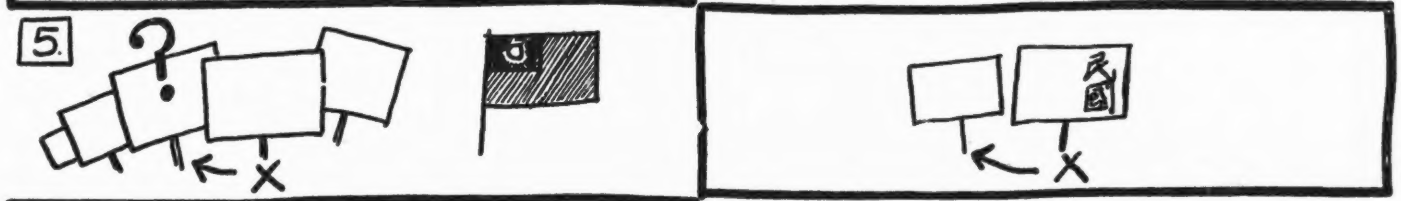
2.
19
19
19
19
?
19
19



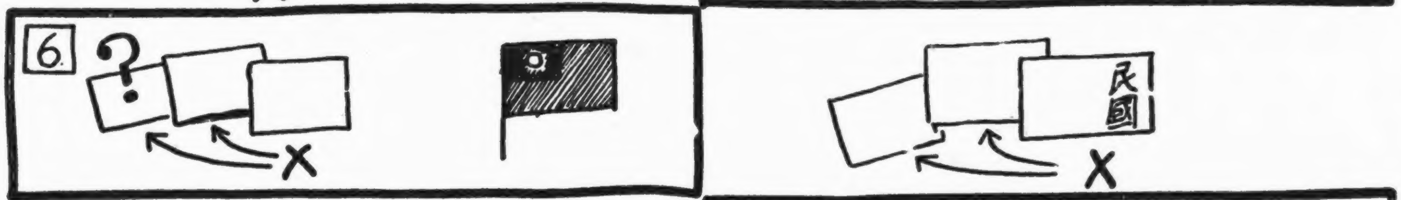
3.
19
19
19?
19
19
19



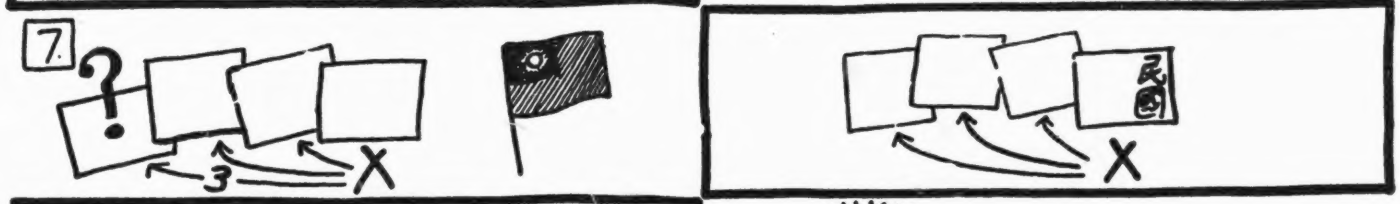
4.
19
19
19
19?
3
19
19
19
19



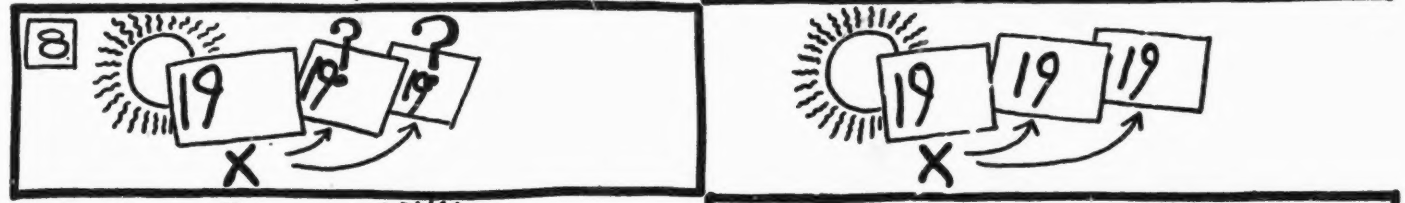
5.
?
民國



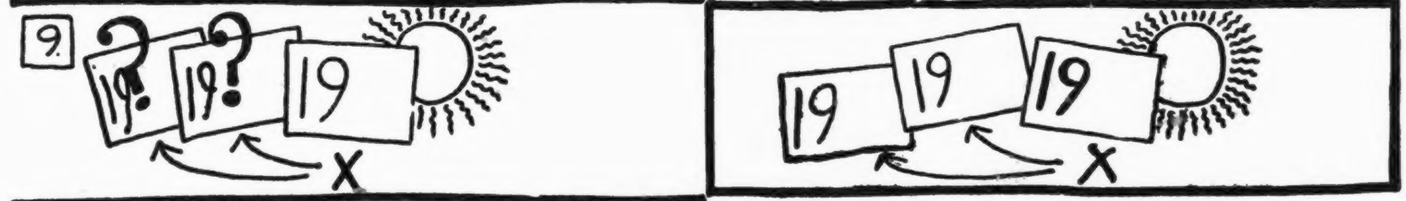
6.
?
民國



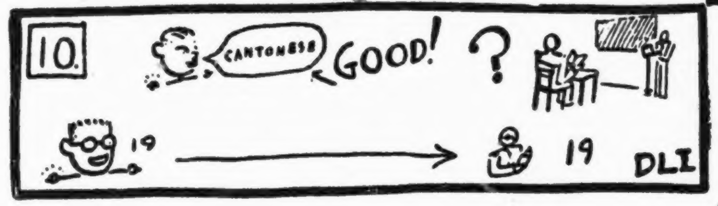
7.
?
3
民國



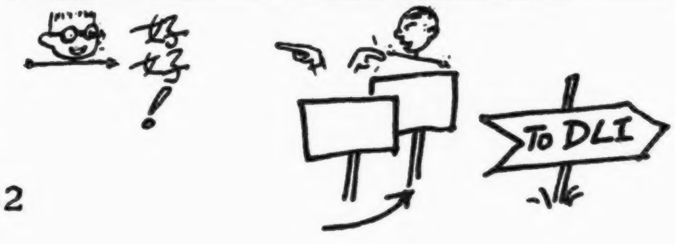
8.
19
19?
19?
19
19
19



9.
19?
19?
19
19
19
19



10.
CANTONESE
GOOD!
?
19
19
DLI



好
好
!
TO DLI

LESSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Mâk Shiù-Kaaù, neĭ shik kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ* mà?

   B: Ngŏh chî haî shik kóng shiú-shiú, Paâk Chung-Kaaù.

2. A: Mīng-nīn haî keí nīn?

   B: Mīng-nīn haî _ nīn.

3. A: Haû-nīn haî keí nīn?

   B: Haû-nīn haî _ nīn.

4. A: Taaî-haû-nīn haî keí nīn?

   B: Taaî-haû-nīn haî - nīn.

5. A: Kaû-nīn haî Mān-Kwòk keí nīn?

   B: Kaû-nīn haî Mān-Kwòk _ nīn.

6. A: Ts'īn-nīn haî Mān-Kwòk keí nīn?

   B: Ts'īn-nīn haì Mān-Kwòk _ nīn.

7. A: Taaî-ts'īn-nīn haî Mān-Kwòk keí nīn?

   B: Taaî-ts'īn-nīn haî Mān-Kwòk _ nīn.

8. A: Tuì hâ yat nīn haî keí nīn; tuì hâ leŭng nīn haî keí nīn?

   B: Tuì hâ yat nīn haî _ nīn; tuì hâ leŭng nīn haî _ nīn.

9. A: Tuì sheûng yat nīn haî keí nīn; tuì sheûng leŭng nīn
   haî keí nīn?

   B: Tuì sheûng yat nīn haî _ nīn; tuì sheûng leŭng nīn
   haî _ nīn.

10. A: Mâk Shiù-Kaaù, neĭ kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ* kóng-tak kòm hó.
    Neĭ ti Kwóng-Tung Wâ* haì pin shuè hôk kà?

    B: Paâk Chung-Kaaù, neĭ kwòh-cheúng che. Ngŏh ti Kwóng-Tung
    Wâ* haî haì Kwòk- Fōng-Pô Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Uên* hôk kè.

LESSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

A: Uē-kwôh haî kóm, ch'ut-nìn* ngŏh to huì hôk là.

LESSON 24

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Major Mâk, do you know how to speak Cantonese?
   B: I only know how to speak a little, Lt. Col. Paak.
2. A: What will next year be?
   B: Next year will be _.
3. A: What will the year after next be?
   B: The year after next will be _ .
4. A: What will three years from now be?
   B: Three years from now will be _ .
5. A: What year of the Republic of China was last?
   B: Last year was the _ year of the Republic of China.
6. A: What year of the Republic was the year before last?
   B: The year before last was the _ .
7. A: What was the year of the Republic three years ago?
   B: Three years ago was _ .
8. A: What will next year; and the year after next be?
   B: Next year will be _ ; and the year after next will be _ .
9. A: What year was last; and what year was the year before last
   B: Last year was _; and the year before last was _ .
10. A: Major Mâk, you speak Cantonese so well. Where did you learn your Cantonese?
    B: Lt. Col. Paâk, you flatter me. I learned my Cantonese at the Defense Language Institute.

LESSON 24

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: If that is the case, next year I will go there too.

LESSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Keí hǒ la mà, Mâk-Sin-Shaang?

B: Keí hó à, neĭ ne, Paâk Sin-Shaang?

A: Keī hó.

2. A: Kam-nīn haî yeŭng-lîk keí nīn?

B: Kam-nīn haî yeŭng-lîk _ nīn.

3. A: Kam-nīn haî Mān-Kwòk keí nīn?

B: Kam-nīn haî Mān-Kwòk _ nīn?

4. A: Mīng-nīn haî m̄-haî Mān-Kwòk _ nīn?

B: Haî, mīng-nīn haî Mān-Kwòk _ nīn.

5. A: Kaû-nīn haî _ nīn; ch'ut-nīn* haî keí nīn?

B: Kaû-nīn haî _ nīn; ch'ut-nīn* haî _ nīn.

6. A: Kam-nīn haî _ nīn; tuì hâ leŭng nīn haî keí nīn?

B: Kam-nīn haî _ nīn; tuì hâ leŭng-nīn haî _ nīn.

7. A: Uē-kwóh kam-nīn haî _ nīn; tuì sheûng saam-nīn haî keí nīn?

B: Uē-kwóh kam-nīn haî _ nīn; tuì sheûng saam-nīn haî _ nīn.

8. A: Uē-Kwóh ni kòh uêt haî _ nīn _ uêt; tuì hâ seì-kòh uêt
haî keí nīn keí uêt?

B: Uē-kwóh ni kòh uêt haî _ nīn _ uêt; tuì hâ seì-kòh uêt
haî _ nīn _ uêt.

9. A: Uē-kwóh kam-yât haî _ nīn _ uêt _ hô; taaî-haû-yât haî
keí nīn keí uêt keí hô?

B: Uē-kwóh kam-yât haî _ nīn _ uêt _ hô; taaî-haû-yât haî
_ nīn _ uêt _ hô.

LESSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. A: Uē-kwóh kam-yât haî san-lîk _ uêt _ hô; kam-yât haî kaû-lîk keí uêt keí yât?

B: Uē-kwóh kam-yât haî san-lîk _ uêt _ hô; kam-yât haî kaû-lîk _ uêt _ yât.

11. A: Ni kòh uêt haî yeūng-lîk _ nīn _ uêt; haî Mān-Kwòk keí nīn keí uêt?

B: Ni kòh uêt haî yeūng-lîk _ nīn _ uêt; haî Mān-Kwòk _ nīn _ uêt.

12. A: Kam-nīn haî _ nīn; tuì sheûng shâp-ngŏ nīn haî keí nīn?

B: Kam-nīn haî _ nīn, tuì sheûng shâp-ngŏ nīn haî _ nīn.

13. A: _ nīn _ uêt neĭ haí pin shuè?

B: _ nīn _ uêt ngŏh haí Chung-Kwòk.

14. A: _ nīn _ uêt neĭ haí Chung-Kwòk tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: _ nīn _ uêt ngŏh haí yat-kòh Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan fàn-lîn kei-teî fàn-lîn Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan.

15. A: Kòm faaì tsaú lā, Wōng Sin-Shaang.

B: Haî à, ngŏh ì-ka iù tsaú là.

A: Ts'íng-ts'íng, ts'íng-ts'íng!

B: Ts'íng-ts'íng, ts'íng-ts'íng!

LESSON 24

WORD LIST

1.	Mâk ,mâk	surname, wheat
2.	shiù-kaaù	major (military officer)
3.	chî-haî	only
4.	shiú-shiú	a little
5.	Paâk, paâk	surname, white
6.	chung-kaaù	Lt. Col. (Army, Air Force)
7.	mīng-nīn	next year
8.	haû-nīn	year after next
9.	taaî-haû-nīn	3 years from now
10.	ts'īn-nīn	year before last
11.	taaî-ts'īn-nīn	3 years ago
12.	tuì-hâ yat-nīn	next year, following year
13.	tuì-hâ leŭng-nīn	year after next
14.	tuì-sheûng yat-nīn	last year
15.	tuì-sheûng leŭng-nīn	year before last
16.	kwòh-tseúng	to flatter, over praise
17.	uē-kwóh	if
18.	ch'ut-nīn	next year
19.	taaî-ts'īn-yât	2 days before yesterday
20.	taaî-haû-yât	2 days after tomorrow

LESSON 24

READING MATERIAL

1242

即 tsik: that is; which is; now; near.

即刻 tsik-haak: immediately.

即速 tsik ts'uk: quickly; speedily.

即日 tsik-yât: today; the same day.

977

時 shī: time; season.

時候 shī-haû: time; a time.

當時 tong-shī: then; at that time.

364

要 iù: to want; need important; must

要 iù: to seek for

緊要 kén-iù: important

要點 iù-tím: keynote; essential point

要求 iu-k'aū: to demand; to seek for

即 時 时 要

即 時 要

即 时 要

262

後 haû: after; behind(time or place)

後日 haû-yât: day after to-morrow

後來 haû-loī: afterward

後生 haû-shaang: young; a youth

然後 īn-haû: & then; next; therefore

632

樂 lôk: happy; gay.

樂 ngôk: music.

安樂 on-lôk: comfort; ease; comfortable.

快樂 faaī-lôk: happy; happiness.

樂觀 lôk koon: optimistic.

後 樂 乐

後 樂

後 乐

LESSON 24

READING MATERIAL

1305

最 tsuì: very, most; excellent; best.

最好 tsuì hó: the best.

最先 tsuì sin: first; first of all.

最少 tsuì shiú: the least.

1405

或 waâk: perhaps, uncertain; or.

或者 waâk-ché: perhaps; it may be that.

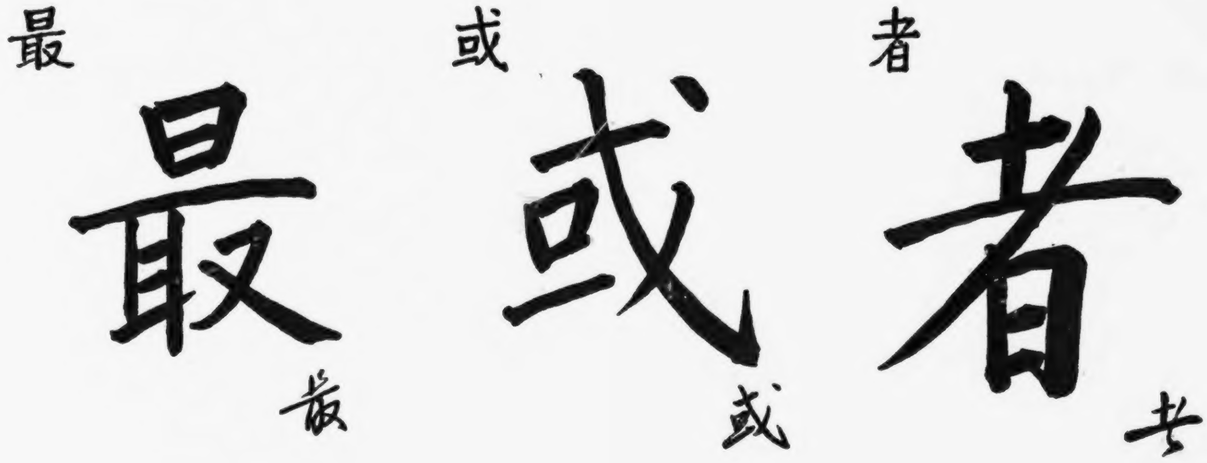
或可 waâk hóh: probably; it may be possible.

46

者 ché: used to form nouns, impersonal pronoun, that, those one.

再者 tsoì-ché: further. P.S.

敬啟者 kìng-k'ái-ché: "I beg respectfully to say" at the beginning of letter



491

覺 kòk: to perceive; to feel; to understand.

知覺 chi-kòk: to perceive; consciousness.

覺悟 kòk-nĝ: aware of the wrong which was done in the past.

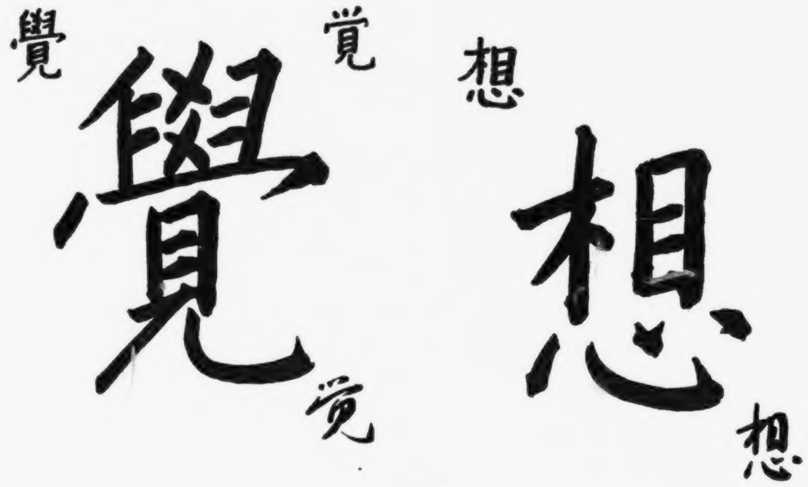
覺得 kòk-tak: to feel (cold or pain).

926

想 seúng: to think; to reflect; to hope; to desire; to expect.

理想 leĭ seúng: considered according to reason. ideal.

推想 t'ui-seúng: to suppose; to a sume.



LESSON 24

READING MATERIAL

陳英係陳先生嘅大 tsaí. 喺大前年 (即係一九五五年) 七月七日佢翻去中國讀書. 同時佢喺學校教英文. 佢好勤力,好本事.

黃小姐係陳英嘅女朋友. 喺前年(即係一九五四年) 八月八日佢寄信 peí 陳英. 黃小姐要佢快啲翻黎美國. 佢 kiù 陳英最好喺明年或者喺後年翻黎美國. 黃小姐好中-ì 陳英;陳英亦都好中-ì 黃小姐.

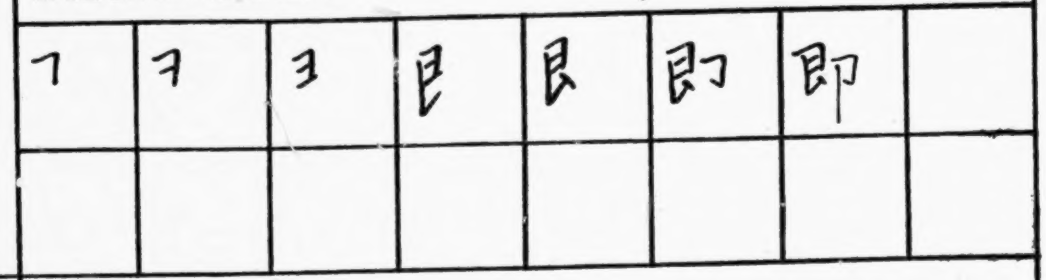
大前日陳英坐飛機翻黎美國. 而家佢地想結婚. 佢地覺得好快樂. 佢地嘅父親同母親亦都好快樂.

LESSON 24

WRITING MATERIAL

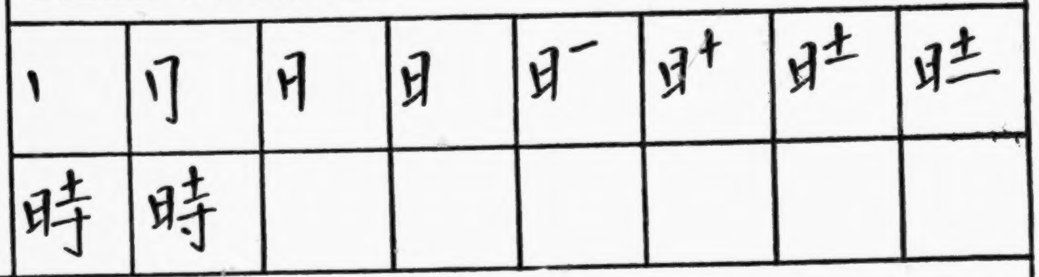
即

Character Number 1242 Radical Number 26
Stroke Number 7 卩



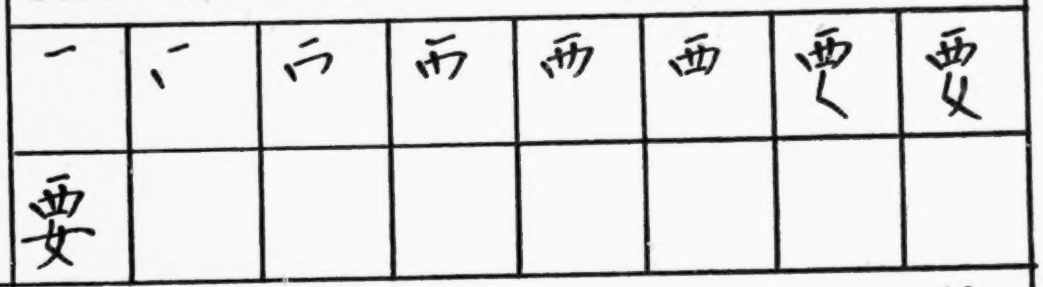
時

Character Number 977 Radical Number 72
Stroke Number 10 日



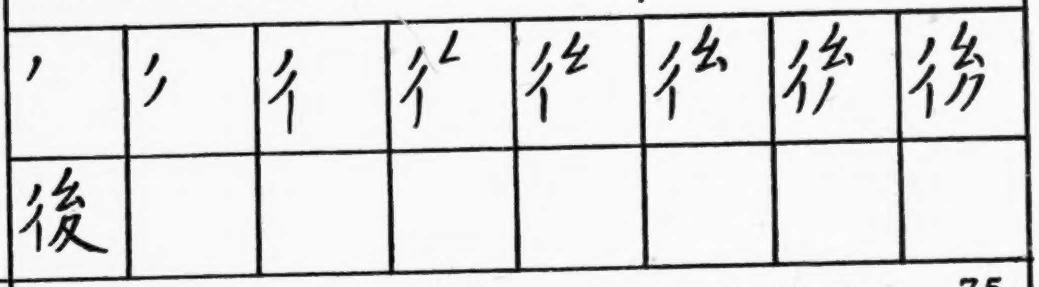
要

Character Number 364 Radical Number 146
Stroke Number 9 襾，西



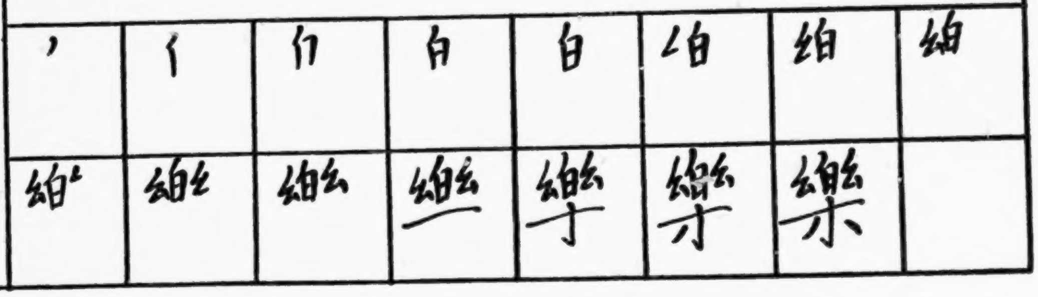
後

Character Number 262 Radical Number 60
Stroke Number 9 彳



樂

Character Number 632 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 15 木



LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Neĭ seúng k'ing ti mi-yĕ
K'uĭ seúng mân ti mi-yĕ
Neĭ-teî seúng kóng ti mi-yĕ
Ngŏh-teî seúng tsô ti mi-yĕ

2. Ngŏh seúng kaaì-shîu ngŏh kè p'āng-yaŭ t'ūng neĭ yîng-shik.
K'uĭ seúng kaaì-shîu k'uĭ kè foô mŏ t'ūng ngŏh yîng-shik.
Ngŏh-teî seúng kaaì-shîu ngŏh-teî kè sin-shaang t'ūng k'uĭ-teî yîng-shik.
Ngŏh seúng kaaì-shîu ngŏh kè t'ūng-sẑ t'ūng neĭ yîng-shik.

3. Kam-yât haî keî hô?
Ni-kóh-uêt haî keî uêt?
Kam-nîn haî keî nîn?
Kam-nîn haî Mān-Kwòk keî nîn?

4. Ch'ān Sin-Shaang, ni-waî* haî ngŏh kè sheûng-sz.
Wōng Sîu-Tsź, ni-waî* haî ngŏh kè sin-shaang.
Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*, kóh-waî* haî ngŏh kè foô-ts'an.
Leĭ Sin-Shaang, kóh-waî* haî ngŏh kè t'ūng-sẑ.

5. Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì*, neĭ shik kóng Ying-Mān mà?
Leĭ Sîu-Tsź, neĭ ooĭ kóng Yât-Mān mà?
Ch'ān Sîu-Tsź, neĭ shik kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ* mà?
Leĭ T'aaì-T'aaì*, neĭ kè sin-shaang shik kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ* mà?

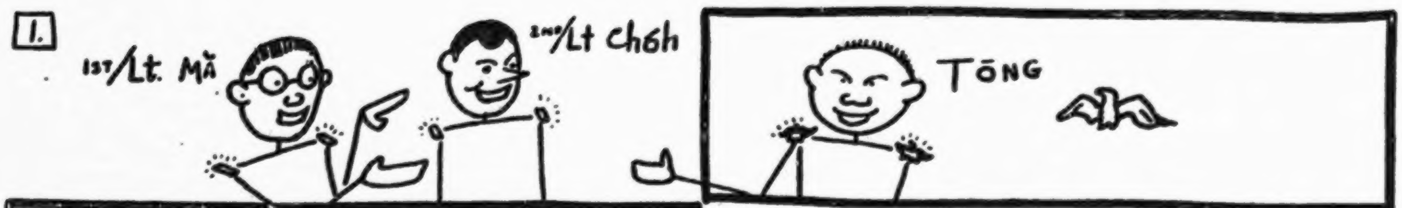
LESSON 25

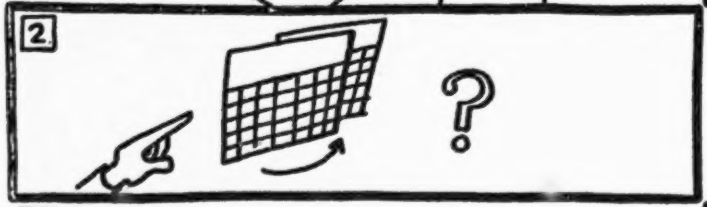
ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

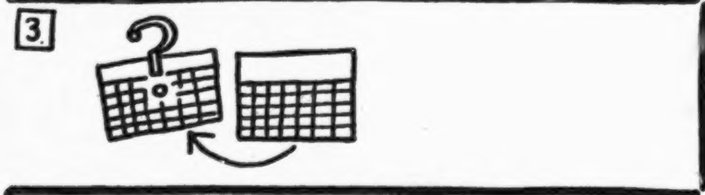
6. Neĭ kóng-Kwóng-Tung Wâ* kóng tak hó hó.
Neĭ sé sùn sé tak hó faaì.
Neĭ tûk shue tûk tak hó k'ān-lîk.
Neĭ kẻ t'aaì-t'aaì* shaî ch'e shaî tak hó maân.

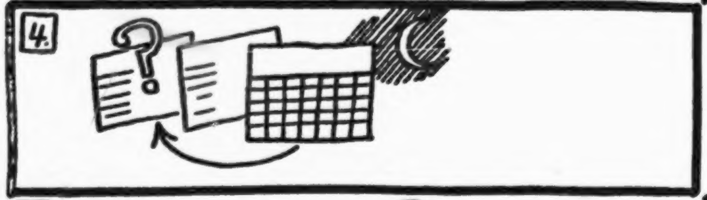
7. Tuì sheûng yat-nīn haî keî nīn?
Tuì sheûng yat-kỏh uêt haî keî uêt?
Tuì sheûng yat-yât haî keî yât?
Tuì sheûng yat-yât haî keî hô?

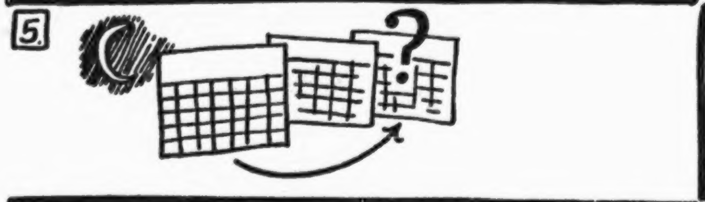
LESSON 25

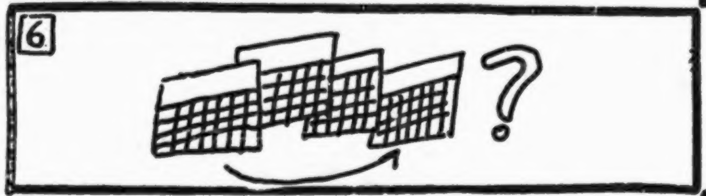

1.
1ST/Lt. Mă
2ND/Lt Chóh
TŌNG

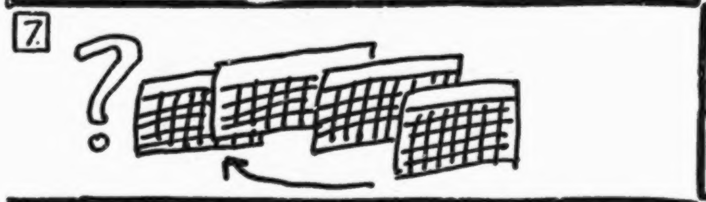


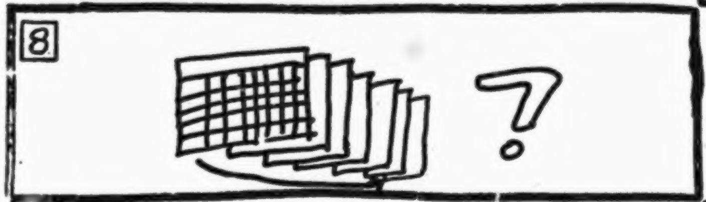


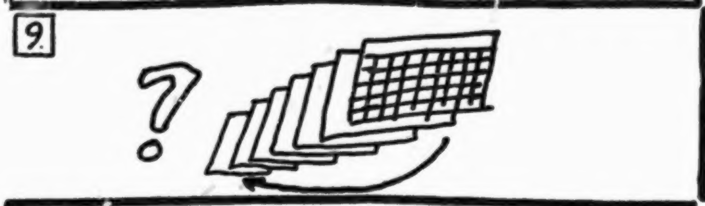


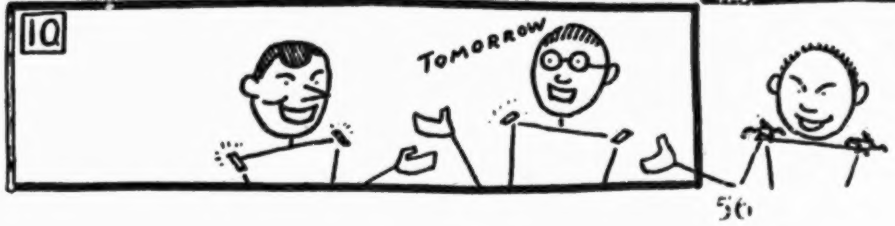











10.
TOMORROW

LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: T'ōng Sheûng-Kaaù, ngŏh seúng kaaì-shiû ngŏh kè kaû t'ūng-sẑ t'ūng neĭ yîng-shik, hó mà?

B: Hó à, Mă Chung-Waì.

A: T'ōng Sheûng-Kaaù, ni waî* haî ngŏh kè haû t'ūng-sẑ, Chóh Shiù-Waì; ni waî* haî ngŏh kè sheûng-sz, T'ōng Sheûng-Kaaù.

2. A: Tuì hâ yat-kòh uêt haî keí uêt?

B: Tuì hâ yat-kòh uêt haî _ uêt.

3. A: Tuì sheûng yat-kòh uêt haî keí uêt?

B: Tuì sheûng yat-kòh uêt haî _ uêt.

4. A: Tuì sheûng leŭng-kòh uêt haî yam-lîk keí uêt?

B: Tuì sheûng leŭng-kòh uêt haî yam-lîk _ uêt.

5. A: Tuì hâ leŭng-kòh uêt haî yam-lîk keí uêt?

B: Tuì hâ leŭng-kòh uêt haî yam-lîk _ uêt.

6. A: Hâ saam-kòh uêt haî keí uêt?

B: Hâ saam-kòh uêt haî _ uêt.

7. A: Sheûng Saam-kòh uêt haî keí uêt?

B: Sheûng saam-kòh uêt haî _ uêt.

8. A: Hâ lûk-kòh uêt haî keí uêt?

B: Hâ lûk-kòh uêt haî _ uêt.

9. A: Sheûng lûk-kòh uêt haî keí uêt?

B: Sheûng lûk-kòh uêt haî _ uêt.

LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: T'ōng Sheûng-Kaaù, ngŏh hó foon-heí t'ūng neĭ yîng-shik.

B: Chóh Shiù-Waì, ngŏh to hó foon-heí t'ūng neĭ yîng-shik.

A: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn!

B: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn!

LESSON 25

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Col. T'ŏng, may I present to you my former colleague?
B: Very well, Lt. (1st Lt.) Mă.
A: Col. T'ŏng, this is my former colleague Lt. (2nd Lt.) Chôh; Lt. Chôh, this is my superior, Col. T'ŏng.

2. A: What will next month be?
B: Next month will be _ .

3. A: What month was last?
B: Last month was _ .

4. A: What was the month before last in the lunar calendar?
B: The month before last was _ in the lunar calendar.

5. A: What will the month after next be?
B: The month after next wll be _ .

6. A: What month will three months from now be?
B: Three months from now will be _ .

7. A: What month was three months ago?
B: Three months ago was _ .

8. A: What month will six months from now be?
B: Six months from now will be _ .

9. A: What month was six months ago?
B: Six months ago was _ .

10. A: Col. T'ŏng I'm very happy to have met you.
B: Lt. (2nd Lt.) Chôh, same here.

LESSON 25

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: Goodbye, sir!

B: Goodbye!

LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Tîn à, neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* hó mà?

B: Hó hó. Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* t'ūng neĭ kè saì-man-tsaî ne?

A: K'uĭ-teî to hó hó.

2. A: Kam-nīn haî _ nīn yik-waâk haî _ nīn?

B: Kam-nīn m̄-haî _ nīn, yîk-to m̄-haî _ nīn.

3. A: Kam-nīn m̄-haî _ nīn, yîk-to m̄-haî _ nīn; kam-nīn haî kei̇̂ nīn?

B: Kam-nīn m̄-haî _ nīn, yîk-to m̄-haî _ nīn; kam-nīn haî _ nīn.

4. A: Ni kòh uêt haî _ uêt, haî m̄-haî?

B: M̄-haî, ni kòh uêt m̄-haî _ uêt.

5. A: Ni kòh uêt m̄-haî _ uêt, haî keî uêt?

B: Ni kòh uêt m̄-haî _ uêt, haî _ uêt.

6. A: Kam-yât haî _ hô mà?

B: M̄-haî, kam-yât m̄-haî _ hô.

7. A: Kam-yât m̄-haî _ hô, haî m̄-haî _ hô?

B: Kam-yât m̄-haî _ hô, yîk-to m̄-haî _ hô.

8. A: Kam-yât m̄-haî _ hô, yîk m̄-haî _ hôl; kam-yât haî keî hô?

B: Kam-yât m̄-haî _ hô, yîk m̄-haî _ hô; kam-yât haî _ hô.

9. A: Kam-nīn _ uêt yaŭ mŏ sa-â-yat-hô?

B: Yaŭ, kam-nīn _ uêt yaŭ sa-â-yat-hô.

10. A: Î-uêt yaŭ keî-toh yât?

B: Î-uêt yaŭ yâ-paàt yât.

LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: _ nīn _ uêt hâi Mān-Kwòk keì nīn keì uêt?

    B: _ nīn _ uêt hâi Mān-Kwòk _ nīn _ uêt.

12. A: Sheûng kòh uêt kam-yât neĭ haì pin shuè?

    B: Sheûng kòh uêt kam-yât ngŏh haì Saam-Faān-Shĭ shuè.

13. A: Tuì sheûng nğ nīn neĭ haì pin-shuè?

    B: Tuì sheûng nğ nīn ngŏh haì Yât-Poón tsô shaang-ì.

14. A: Neĭ keì nīn keì uêt keì yât haì Yât-Poón faan laī?

    B: Ngŏh _ nīn _ uêt haì Yât-Poón faan-laī.

15. A: Neĭ kòm faaì tsaú la.

    B: Hâi à, ngŏh tsaú là.

    A: Maân-maân* haāng.

LESSON 25

WORD LIST

1.	T'ōng	surname; pertaining to China
2.	sheûng-kaaù	colonel
3.	kaaì-shiû	to introduce, recommend; introduction
4.	kaû	old, former
5.	t'ūng-sẑ	colleague, fellow worker
6.	t'ūng	for, with, and; same, similar, identical
7.	yîng-shik	to recognize, know, be acquainted
8.	t'ūng...yîng-shik	to be acquainted with..,to make acquaintance
9.	Mă, mă	surname, horse
10.	chung-waì	1st Lt.
11.	waî*	AN of person (honorific form), seat
12.	Tsóh, tsóh	surname, left
13.	sheûng-sz	superior
14.	tuì-hâ leŭng-kòh uêt	month after next (2 months hence)
15.	tuì-sheûng leŭng-kòh uêt	month before last (2 months ago)
16.	hâ yat-kòh uêt	next month
17.	foon-heî	glad, happy, to like
18.	shik	to know, know how to
19.	t'ūng neǐ seung-shik	to be acquainted with you, make your acquaintance, have known you

LESSON 25

READING MATERIAL

459

見 kìn: to see; to observe; to perceive.

聽見 t'eng kìn: to hear.

唔見 m̄-kìn: not seen; lost

意見 ì-kìn: opinion.

見禮 kìn laǐ: to salute.

380

介 kaaì: intermediary; excellent; great

介紹 kaaìshiû to introduce

1003

紹 shiû: to introduce; to connect.

介紹 kaaì-shiû. to introduce; to recommend.

見 介 紹

見 介 紹

见 介 绍

1493

認 yîng: to recognize· to confess.

認識 yîng-shik to know; to ·ecognize.

認真 îng ch truly· really.

認错 yîng ts'òh to admit the wrong or mistak .

982

識 shik: to know; to understand; to be acquainted with.

知識 chi-shik: intelligence; knowledge.

熟識 shûk-shik: intimate.

認 識

認 識

认 识

LESSON 25

READING MATERIAL

737

呢 ni, ne. this.
呢個 ni kòh: this one.
呢啲 ni ti: this; these.
呢 ne: final particle.

1442

陰 yam: shade; dark; female; negative principle.
天陰 t'in yam: the sky is cloudy.
陰涼 yam leūng: shady and cool.

[illegible]

歷 lîk: almanac; calendar; to pass over; experience.
舊曆 kaû-lîk: Lunar calendar.
陰曆 yam-lîk: Lunar calendar.
新曆 san-lîk: Solar calendar.
歷史 lîk-sź: history.

呢 陰 歷

呢 陰 歷

呢 陰 陰 曆 歷 歷

1347

對 tuì: to respond; a pair; opposite to; facing.
對頭 tuì-t'aū: hostile; enemy.
對手 tuì-shaú: a match for; an equal.
對答 tuì-taàp: to reply or give an answer.

656

馬 mă: horse.
馬房 mă fōng: stable.
馬力 mă-lîk: horse power.
馬路 mă-lô: paved-road; highway.
馬上 mă-sheûng: at once.
馬戲 mă-heì: a circus.

對 对 馬

對 馬

对 马

LESSON 25

READING MATERIAL

呢個月係陰曆三月. 陳英喺今年Ching月番黎美國. 佢好想喺對下兩個月同黃小姐結婚. 現在佢冇錢. 佢想做工.

上個月陳英去見李上-wài. 李上-wài係陳英嘅好朋友. 李上-wài介紹佢嘅同事馬中-wài同陳英認識. 陳英同佢地k'ing hǎ.

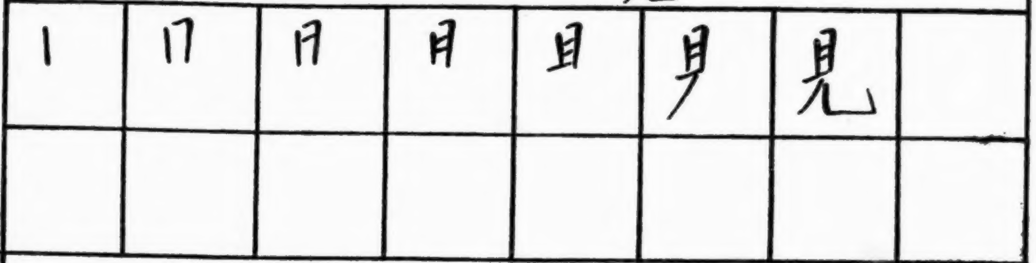
陳英話,佢想做工. 馬中-wài話,下個月美國陸軍語言學校想請先生教廣東話. 陳英想去陸軍語言學校教書. 佢以前喺中國讀書同教書. 佢係一個好聰明嘅人. 佢要做一個好好嘅先生.

LESSON 25

WRITING MATERIAL

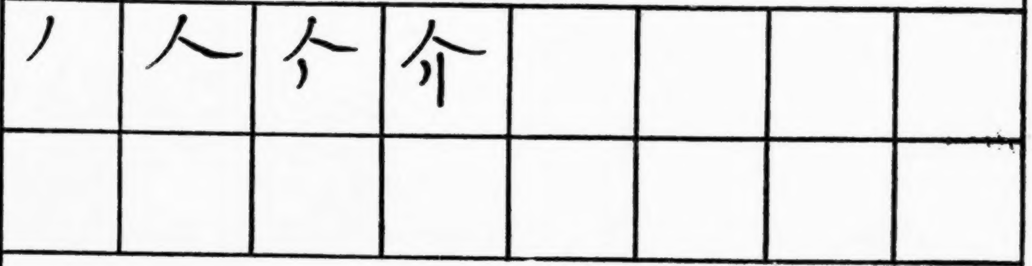
見

Character Number 459
Stroke Number 7
Radical Number 147
見



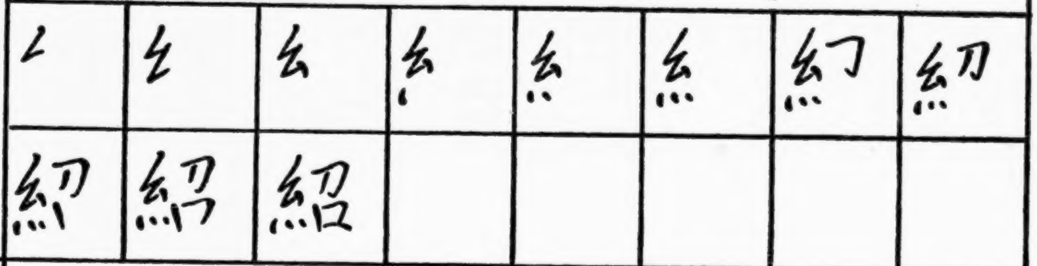
介

Character Number 380
Stroke Number 4
Radical Number 9
人



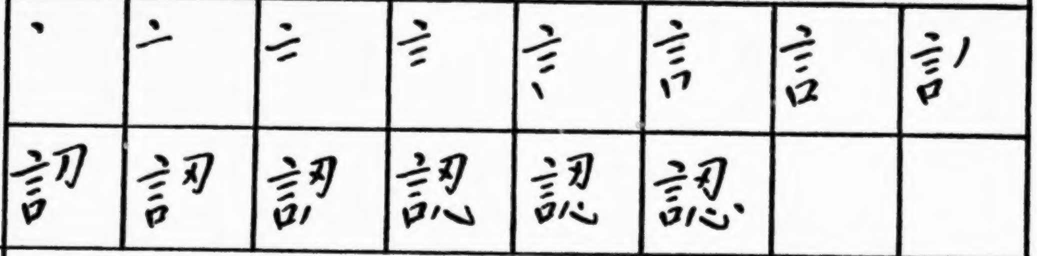
紹

Character Number 1003
Stroke Number 11
Radical Number 120
糹，糸



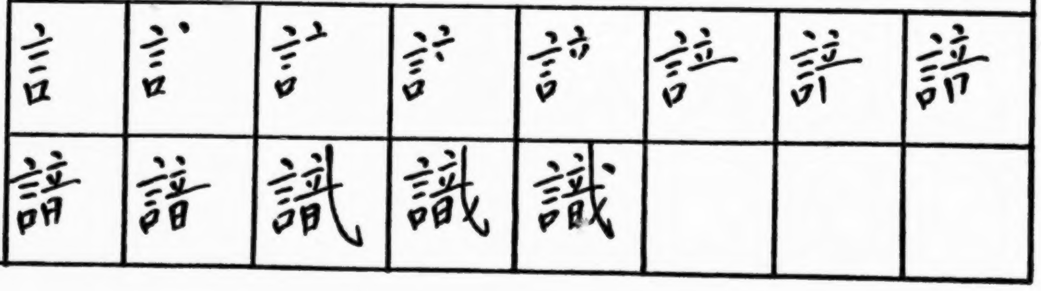
認

Character Number 1493
Stroke Number 14
Radical Number 149
言



識

Character Number 982
Stroke Number 19
Radical Number 149
言



LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Laĭ paaì-yat tsik-haî sing-k'eī-yat.
   Laĭ-paaì-î tsik-haî sing-k'eī-î.
   Laĭ-paaì-saam tsik-haî sing-k'eī-saam.
   Laĭ-paaì-seì tsik-haî sing-k'eī-seì.
   Laĭ-paaì-nğ tsik-haî sing-k'eī-nğ.
   Laĭ-paaì-lûk tsik-haî sing-k'eī-lûk.
   Laĭ-paaì-yât tsik-haî sing-k'eī-yât, waâk-ché laĭ-paaì.

2. Kam-yât haî laĭ-paaì-keí?
   T'ing-yât haî sing-k'eī-keí?
   Haû-yât haî laĭ-paaì-keí?
   Taaî-haû-yât haî sing-k'eī-keí?
   K'ām-yât haî laĭ-paaì-keí?
   Ts'ìn-yât haî sing-k'eī-keí?
   Taaî-ts'ìn-yât haî laĭ-paaì-keí?

3. Tuì-sheûng yat-kòh laĭ-paaì-yât haî keí hô?
   Tuì-sheûng leŭng-kòh sing-k'eī-saam haî keí yât?
   Tuì-sheûng nğ-kòh laĭ-paaì-yat haî keí yât?
   Tuì-hâ yat-kòh laĭ-paaì-yât haî keí hô?
   Tuì-hâ leŭng-kòh laĭ-paaì-saam haî keí yât?
   Tuì-hâ nğ-kòh sing-k'eī-yat haî keí hô?

4. Nğ-uêt nğ-hô haî laĭ-paaì keí?
   Ts'at-uêt seì-hô haî sing-k'eī keí?

LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Kaû-uêt saam-shâp-hô haî m̄-haî laĭ-paaì?

Ni-kòh uêt seì-hô haî m̄-haî sing-k'eì-yât?

Shâp-î-uêt saam-shâp-yat hô haî laĭ-paaì keî?

Shâp-î uêt î-shâp-nğ hô haî sing-k'eì keî?

5. **Ngŏh-teî ĭ-ts'ìn haî t'ūng-hôk.**

K'uĭ teî kaû-shì haî p'aāng.

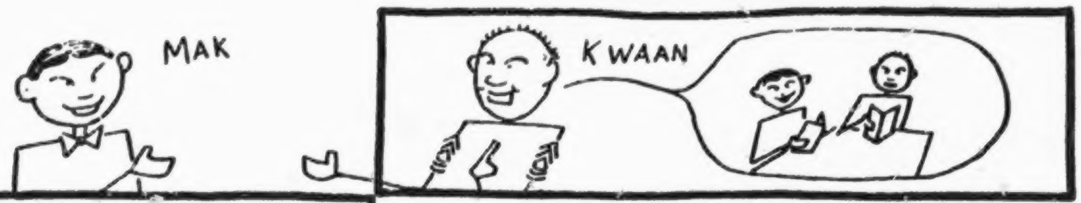
K'uĭ teî ì-ka haî t'ūng-sẑ.

Ngŏh-teî în-tsoî haî hôk-shaang.

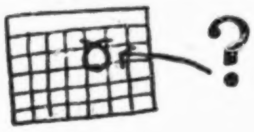
Neĭ-teî ì-ka haî kwan-yān.

LESSON 26

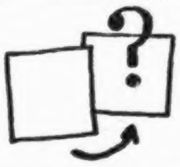
1.



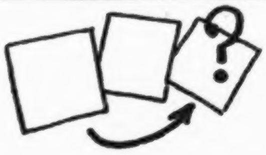
2.



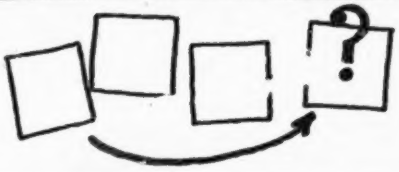
3.



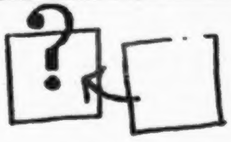
4.



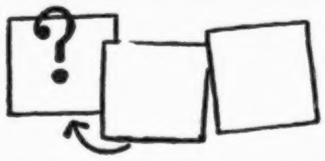
5.



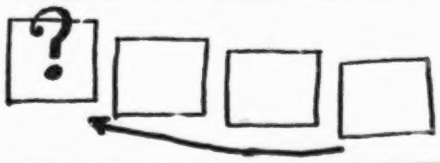
6.



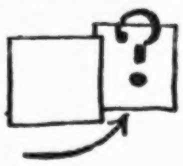
7.



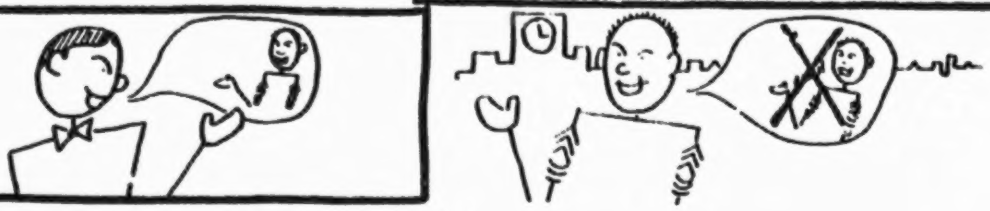
8.



9.



10.



LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Sheûng-Sẑ, mat neĭ hó-ts'z̆ hó mîn-sûk kóm kè*!

B: Ngŏh haî lŏ Kwaan, neĭ haî lŏ Mă. Ngŏh-teî ĭ-ts'īn haî t'ūng-hôk. Chûng keī-tak ngŏh mà?

A: Ŏh, ngŏh keī-tak là. Uēn-loī neĭ haî lŏ Kwaan. Uēn-loī ngŏh-teî haî kaû t'ūng-hôk.

2. A: Kam-yât haî laĭ-paaī keî?

B: Kam-yât haî laĭ-paaī _ , tsik-haî sing-k'eī _ .

3. A: T'ing-yât haî laĭ-paaī keî?

B: T'ing-yât haî laĭ-paaī _, yaû kiù-tsô sing-k'eī _ .

4. A: Haû-yât haî laĭ-paaī keî?

B: Haû-yât haî laĭ-paaī _ , waâk sing-keī _ .

5. A: Taaî-haû-yât haî laĭ-paaī keī?

B: Taaî-haû-yât haî laĭ-paaī _ , waâk sing-k'eī _ .

6. A: Tsôk-yât haî sing-k'eī keî?

B: Tsôk-yât haî sing-k'eī _ , yaû kiù-tsô laî-paaī _ .

7. A: Ts'īn-yât haî sing-k'eī keî?

B: Ts'īn-yât haî sing-k'eī _, waâk laĭ-paaī _ .

8. A: Taaî-ts'īn-yât haî sing-k'eī keî?

B: Taaî-ts'īn-yât haî sing-k'eī _ .

9. A: T'ing-yât haî laĭ-paaī keî?

B: T'ing-yât haî laĭ-paaī _ , yaû kiù-tsô sing-k'eī _ .

LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: Ĭ-haû toh-toh chí-kaaù.

B: M̄-kóm-tong, m̄-kóm-tong.

LESSON 26

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Sgt. (M/Sgt.), you seem very familiar to me.

B: I am Kwaan and you are Mâk. We were schoolmates. Do you still remember me?

A: Oh, yes, I do. So you are Kwaan, and we were classmates.

2. A: What day of the week is today?

B: To day is _ .

3. A: What will tomorrow be?

B: Tomorrow will be _ .

4. A: What will two days from now be?

B: Two days from now will be _ .

5. A: What will three days from now be?

B: Three days from now will be _ .

6. A: What day was yesterday?

B: Yesterday was _ .

7. A: What was two days ago?

B: Two days ago was _ .

8. A: What was three days ago?

B: Three days ago was _ .

9. A: What will tomorrow be?

B: Tomorrow will be _ .

LESSON 26

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

10. A: Please “enlighten” me(with your advice)more often from now on.

B: You are being modest. (I won’t dare to undertake the honor).

LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Leĭ t'aaì-t'aaì* neĭ shîk in mà?

B: Ngŏh m̄-shîk in. Neĭ shîk la, Wōng Sin-shaang.

2. A: Kam-nìn haî Mān-Kwòk keí nìn à?

B: Kam-nìn haî Mān-Kwòk _ nìn.

3. A: Ni kòh uêt haî keí uêt à?

B: Ni kòh uêt haî _ uêt.

4. A: Kam-yât haî m̄-haî _ hô à?

B: Haí, kam-yât haî _ hô.

5. A: Kam-yât haî laĭ-paaì keí à?

B: Kam-yât haî laĭ-paaì- _ .

6. A: Kam-yât haî keí nìn keí uêt keí yât laĭ-paaì keí à?

B: Kam-yât haî _ nìn _ uêt _ hô laĭ- paaì _ .

7. A: Hâ kòh laĭ-paaì-yât haî keí uêt keí hô?

B: Hâ kòh laĭ-paaì-yât haî _ uêt _ hô.

8. A: Sheûng kòh laĭ-paaì-yât haî keí uêt keí yât?

B: Sheûng kòh laĭ-paaì-yât haî _ uêt _ hô.

9. A: Neĭ kè nuĭ* keí shì ch'ut shaì kà?

B: Ngŏh kè nuĭ* kaû-nìn ni kòh uêt ch'ut shaì.

10. A: T'ing-yât Leĭ Sin-Shaang shaî m̄-shaî faan kung à?

B: M̄-shaî, t'ing-yât ngŏh kè sin-shaang m̄-shaî faan kung.

11. A: Chûng yaŭ keí-toh kòh laĭ-paaì, Leĭ Sin-Shaang huì Yât-Poón à?

B: Taaî-yeùk* chûng yaŭ nğ-kòh sing-k'eì, ngŏh kè sin-shaang huì Yât-Poón.

LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

12. A: Neĭ seúng keí shì laì ngŏh kè uk-k'eí ts'ŏh à?

B: Ngŏh seúng ni kòh laĭ-paaì-lûk huì neĭ kè uk-k'eí paaì-haû neĭ.

13. A: Neĭ seúng ni kòh laĭ-paaì-yât yik-waâk hâ kòh laĭ-paaì-yât huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ à?

B: Ngŏh seúng hâ kòh laĭ-paaì-yât huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ.

14. A: Neĭ Seúng hâ kòh laĭ-paaì-yât tîm-yeûng* huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ?

B: Ngŏh seúng hâ kòh laĭ-paaì-yât ts'ŏh ngŏh kè foô-ts'an kè ch'e huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ.

15. A: Neĭ seúng hâ kòh laĭ-paaì-yât huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: Ngŏh seúng hâ kòh laĭ-paaì-yât huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ t'aí ngŏh kè kaû t'ūng-hôk.

LESSON 26

WORD LIST

1.	sheûng-sẑ	master sergeant
2.	hó-ts'z̆	seem, similar; alike, such as
3.	mîn	face, side
4.	mîn-shûk	familiar; to seem familiar
5.	lŏ	old, aged; a prefix to surname in addressing people we know
6.	Kwaan, kwaan	Surname; to close, shut
7.	t'ūng-hôk	schoolmate
8.	keì-tak	to remember
9.	uēn-loī	as a matter of fact, so it is
10.	laĭ-paaì, sing-k'eī	week, prefix to days of week, Sunday
11.	laĭ-paaì-yât, sing-k'eī-yât	Sunday
12.	sing-k'eī-yat, laĭ-paaì-yat	Monday
13.	tsik-haî	that is, namely, that is to say
14.	yaû	also, again, yet again
15.	noî	long (refers to time)
16.	pat-uē	had better, might as well
17.	toh-toh	more, much more
18.	ĭ-haû	from now on, hence forth
19.	chî-kaaù	to advise, give advice
20.	m̄-kóm	I dare not, won't dare

LESSON 26

READING MATERIAL

586

禮	laĭ: ceremony; rite; worship; etiquette; conduct.
行禮	haăng laĭ. to perform ceremonies; to exchange courtesy.
禮物	laĭ-mât: present; gift.
禮拜堂	laĭ-paaì-t'ōng: church or chapel.
有禮	yaŭ-laĭ: courteous; polite.

807

拜	paaì: to worship; to honor; to make obeisance.
拜神	paaì shān: to worship gods; be a pagan.
拜年	paaì nīn: to pay New Year's call.
拜託	paaì-t'òk: to request; to beg.

221

歡	foon: to rejoice; delighted
歡喜	foon-heí: happy; to like
歡迎	foon-yīng: to welcome

禮 礼 拜 拝 歡 欢

禮 拜 歡

礼 拜 歡

268

喜	heí: to rejoice; be happy; joy
喜歡	heí-foon: like; pleased;
喜事	heí-sẑ: joyful event or ceremony
恭喜	kung-heí: to congratulate; congratulation

241

閒	haān: idle; unoccupied
得閒	tak-haān: leisure free
閒人	haān yān: an outsider; loafer; intruders

喜 閒

喜 閒

喜 閒

LESSON 26

READING MATERIAL

1215

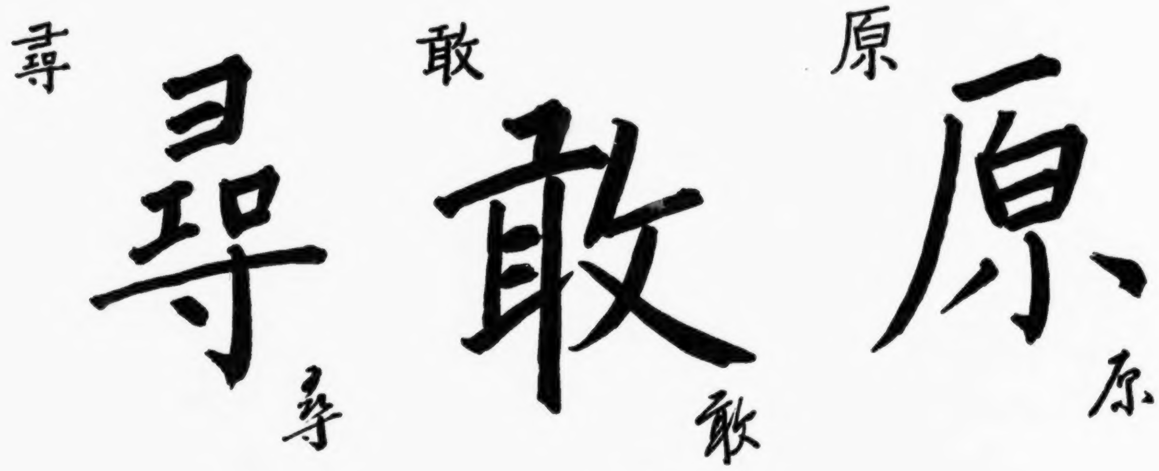
尋	ts'ām: to seek· to ask for; ordinary.
寻死	ts'ām sź: to try to commit suicide.
寻訪	ts'ām fóng: to inquire about, to search.

494

敢	kóm: to presume upon; dare.
唔敢	m̄-kóm: I dare not.
唔敢當	m̄-kóm-tong: I am not worthy of such compliments.
點敢	tím-kóm: how would I dare?

1386

原	uēn: source, cause; origin; plain.
原本	uēn-poón: origin; original; really.
原價	uēn kà: original cost; cost.
平原	p'ī̀ng-uēn: a plain.

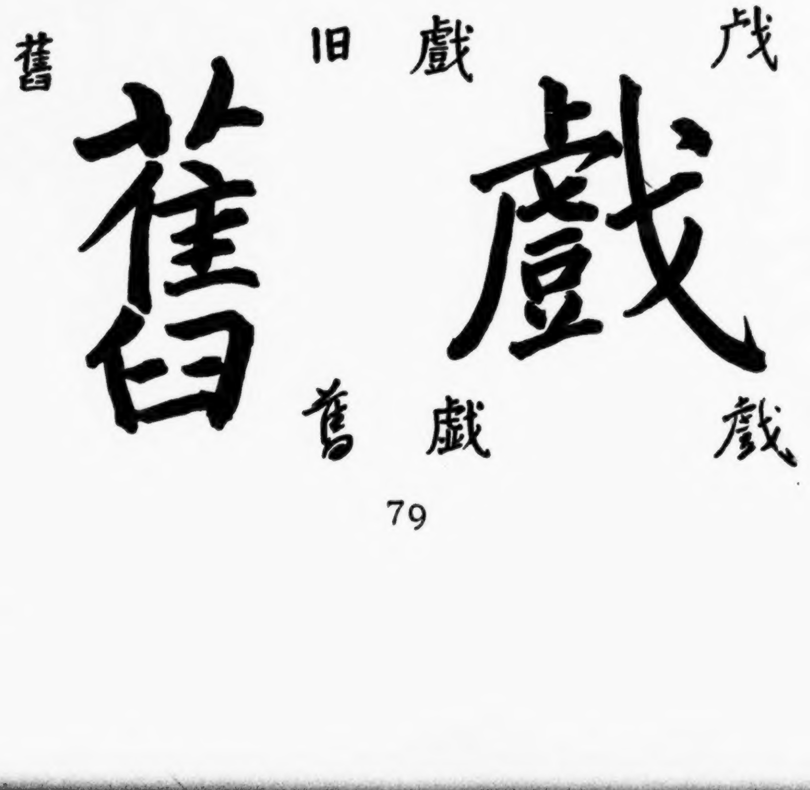


428

舊	kaû: old; former; ancient.
舊時	kaû-shī: formerly; ancient times.
舊年	kaû-nīn: last year.
舊式	kaû-shik: old fashioned.
照舊	chiù-kaû: as formerly.
殘舊	ts'aān-kaû: rotten, shabby.

273

戲	heì: to jest; make sport of theatrical performance
戲弄	heì-lûng: make sport of; make fun of
戲院	heì-uén: theatre
戲臺	heì-t'oī: a stage



LESSON 26

READING MATERIAL

今日係禮拜五. 大前日陳英去陸軍語言學校教書. 而家佢有工做. 佢好歡喜. 黄小姐亦都好歡喜.

尋日陳英喺學校見到Kwaan先生. 佢好-ts'ž好mîn-shûk敢. 而家陳英keì得là. 原來Kwaan先生係佢嘅舊同事. 以前佢同Kwaan先生都喺中國教英文. 現在Kwaan先生喺陸軍語言學校教書. 佢地而家yaû做同事là.

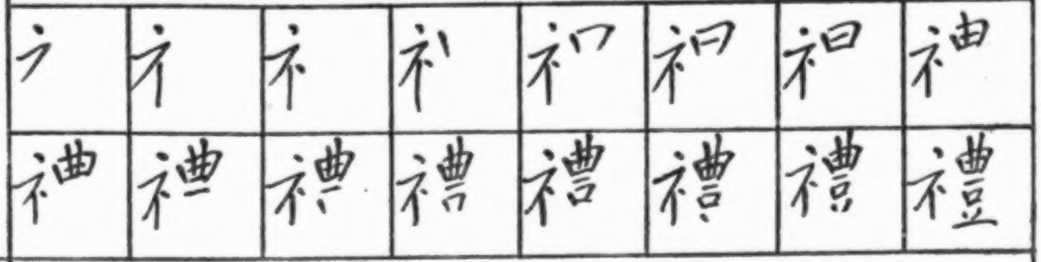
聽日係禮拜六,陳英好得閒. 佢想請Kwaan先生去食飯. 佢想同Kwaan先生k'ing hă. 後日係禮拜日. 陳英同黄小姐去行街,又去睇戲.

LESSON 26

WRITING MATERIAL

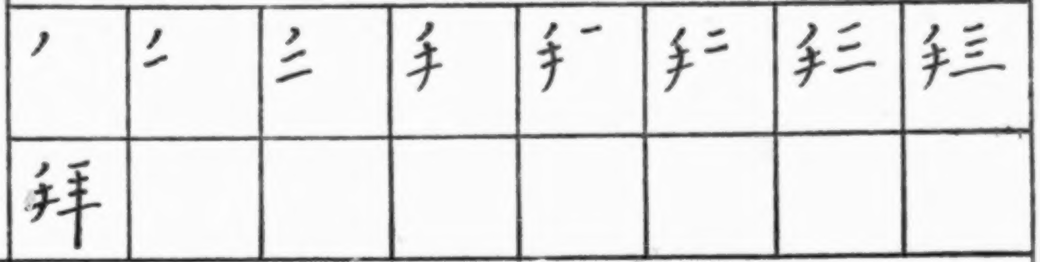
禮

Character Number 586 Radical Number 113
Stroke Number 17 礻，示



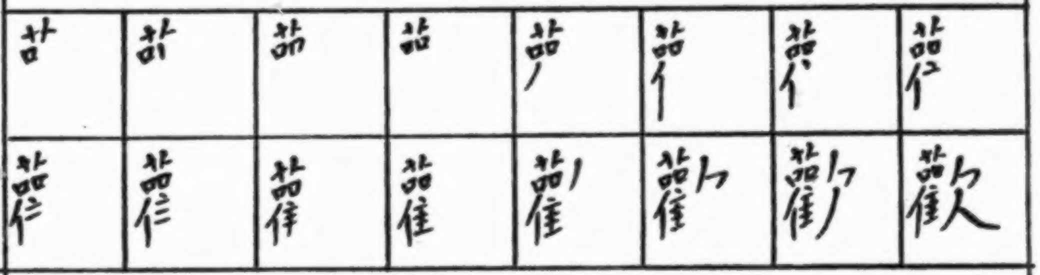
拜

Character Number 807 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 9 手，手



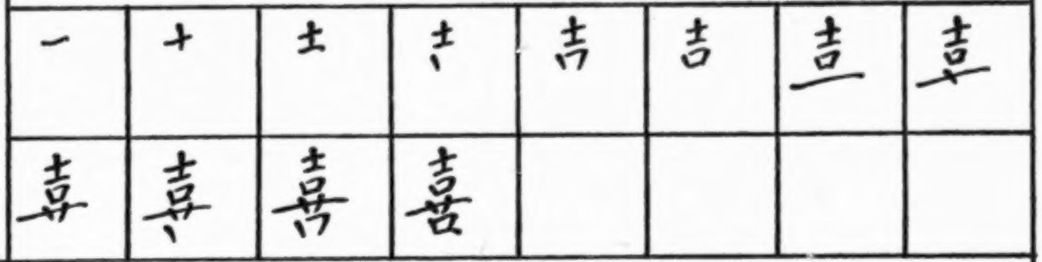
歡

Character Number 221 Radical Number 76
Stroke Number 22 欠



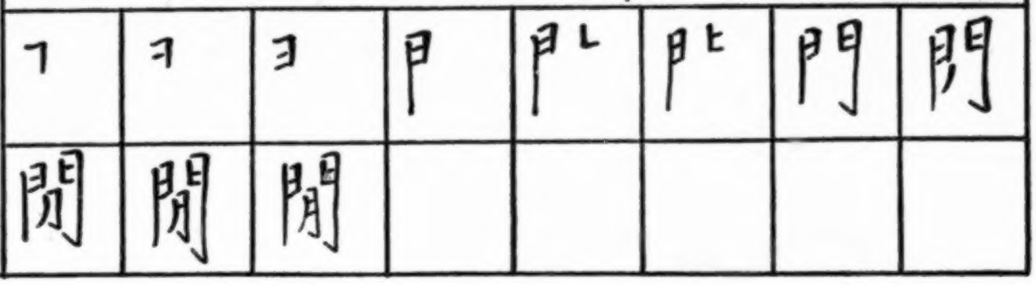
喜

Character Number 268 Radical Number 30
Stroke Number 12 口



聞

Character Number 241 Radical Number 169
Stroke Number 11 門



LESSON 27

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Yat-tîm (yat-tîm-chung)
   Leŭng-tîm (leŭng-tîm-chung)
   Saam-tîm (saam-tîm-chung)
   Seì-tîm (seì-tîm-chung)
   Nğ-tîm (nğ-tîm-chung)
   Lûk-tîm (lûk-tîm-chung)
   Ts'at-tîm (ts'at-tîm-chung)
   Paàt-tîm (paàt-tîm-chung)
   Kaú-tîm (kaú-tîm-chung)
   Shâp-tîm (shâp-tîm-chung)
   Shâp-yat-tîm (shâp-yat-tîm-chung)
   Shâp-î-tîm (shâp-î-tîm-chung)

2. Yat-kòh tsẑ tsik-haî nğ-fan-chung.
   Saam-kòh tsẑ tsik-haî shâp-nğ fan-chung.
   Shâp-nğ fan-chung tsik-haî yat-kòh kwat (yat-kòh kwat-chung)
   Lûk-kòh tsẑ tsik-haî poón-tîm-chung, waâk chê saam-shâp fan-chung.
   Kaú-kòh tsẑ tsik-haî saam-kòh kwat, waâk chê seì-shâp-nğ fan-chung.

3. Yat-tîm yat-kòh tsẑ yaû kìu tsô yat-tîm lîng nğ-fan.
   Leŭng-tîm leŭng-kòh tsẑ yaû kìu tsô leŭng-tîm shâp-fan.

LESSON 27

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTUAL PATTERNS

Seì-tîm seì-kòh tsẑ yaû kìu tsô seì-tîm taâp seì.

Lûk-tîm shâp-kòh tsẑ yaû kìu tsô lûk-tîm taâp shâp.

Shâp-tîm poòn yaû kìu tsô shâp-tîm taâp poòn.

Shâp-î-tîm saam-kòh kwat yaû kìu tsô shâp-î-tîm taâp kaú.

4. Yat-tím-chung yaŭ lûk-shâp fan-chung.

Yat-kòh chung-t'aū yaŭ shâp-î-kòh tsẑ.

Yat-kòh kwat-chung yaŭ saam-kòh tsẑ.

Poòn-tîm-chung yaŭ saam-shâp fan-chung.

Yat-yât yaŭ î-shâp-seì-kòh chung-t'aū.

5. Neĭ kam-yât keî-tîm-chung faan hôk?

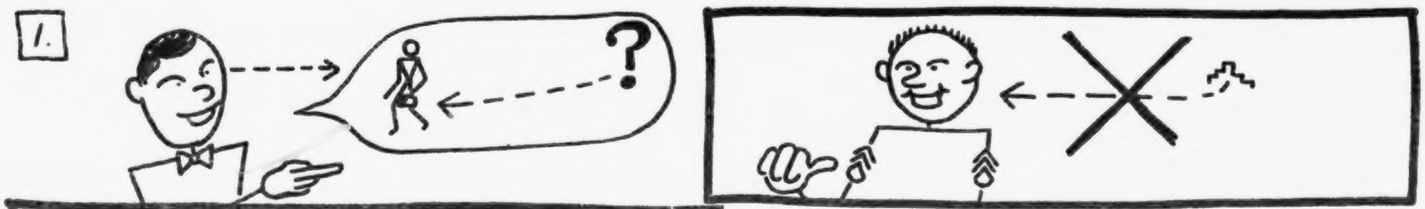
K'uĭ tsòk-maăn keî-tîm-chung huì kaai?

Ngŏh-teî t'ing-yât keî-tîm-chung sheŭng t'ōng?

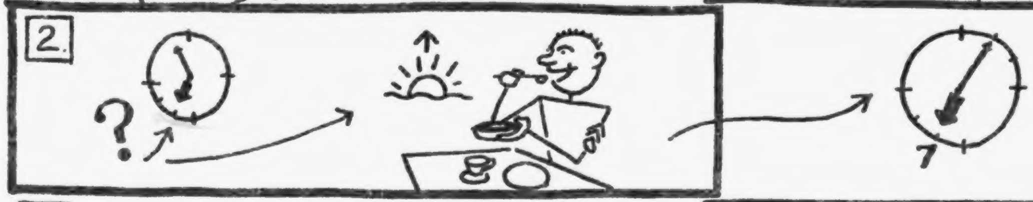
K'uĭ-teî t'ing-maăn keî-tîm-chung faan uk-k'eî?

LESSON 27

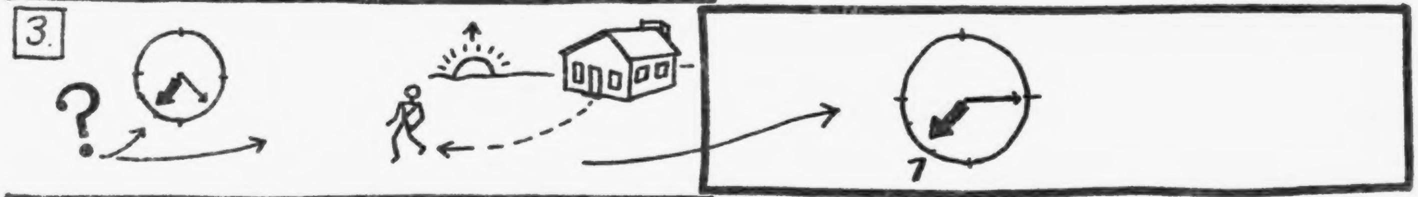
1.



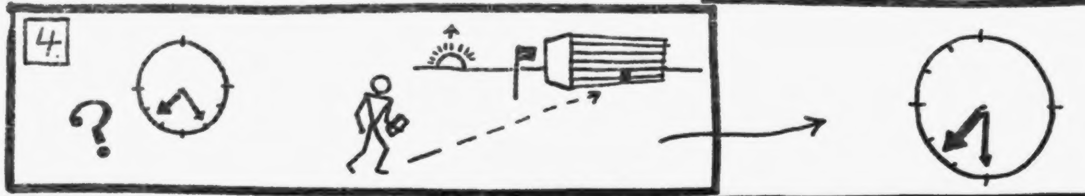
2.



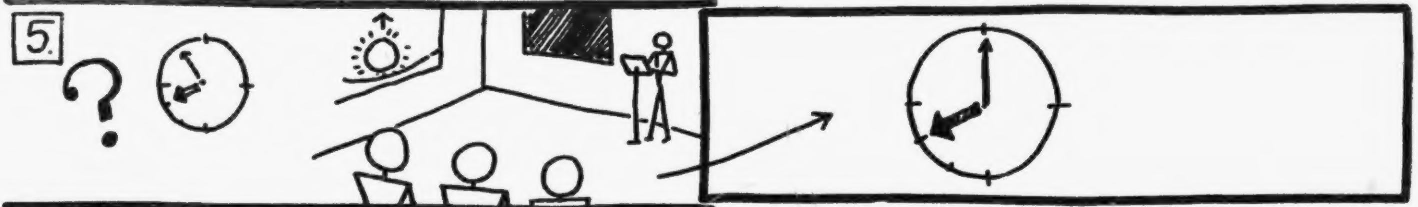
3.



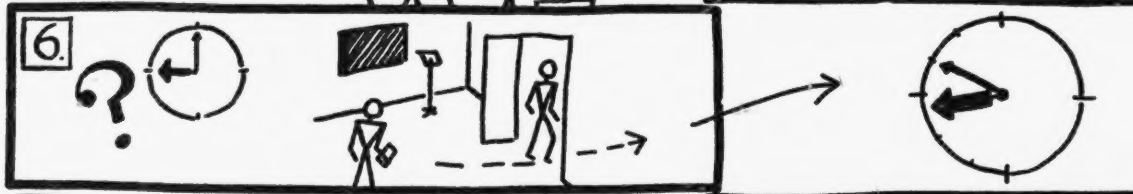
4.



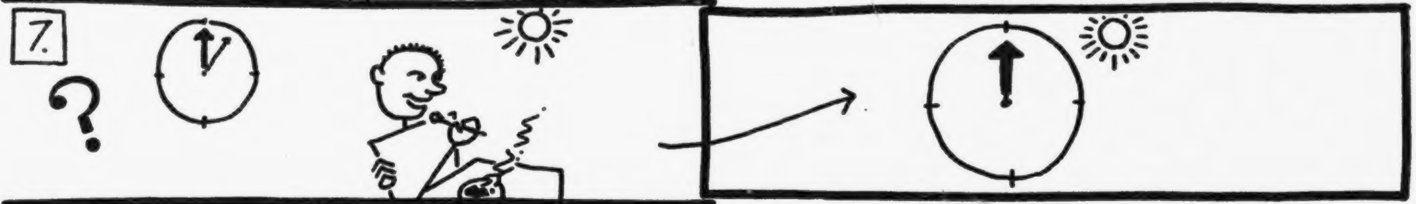
5.



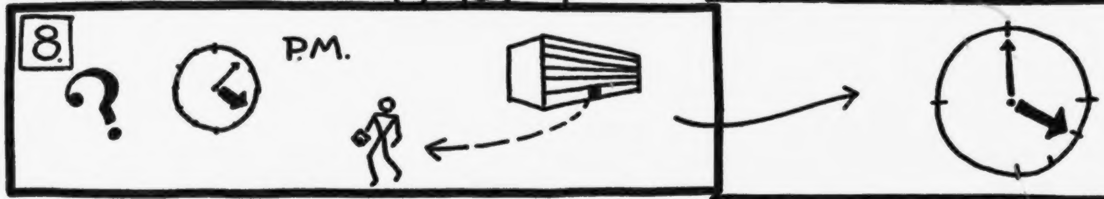
6.



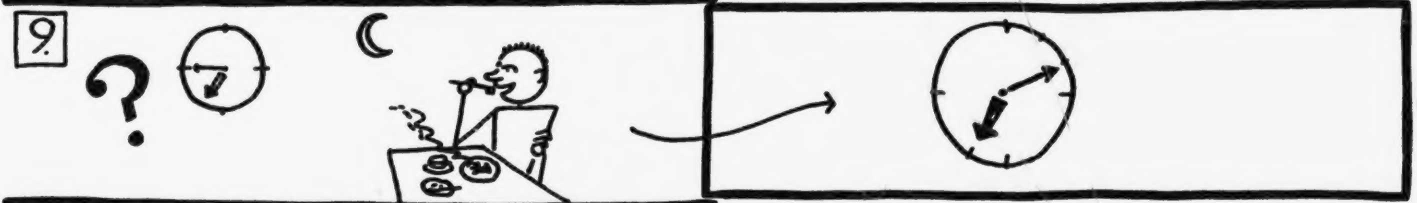
7.



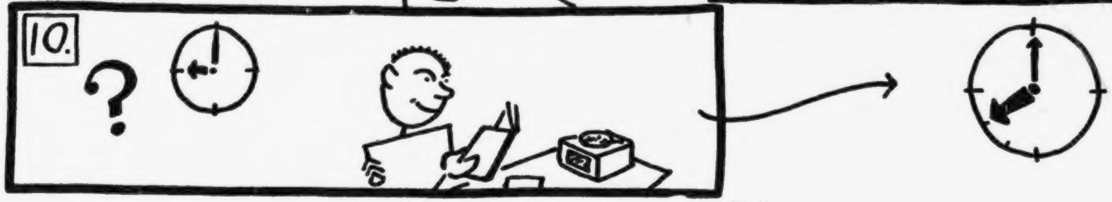
8.



9.



10.



LESSON 27

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Leĭ Chung-Sẑ, mŏ-kîn neĭ kòm noĭ, neĭ kân-loì huì-chóh pin shuè à?

B: Ngŏh kân-loì mŏ huì pin shuè à!

2. A: Neĭ kam-chiu keí tím-chung shîk tsó-ts'aan à?

B: Ngŏh kam-chiu ts'at-tím taâp yat shîk tsó-ts'aan.

3. A: Neĭ kam-chiu-tsó keí tím-chung ch'ut moōn-haú à?

B: Ngŏh kam-chiu-tsó ts'at-tím yat-kòh kwat ch'ut moōn-haú.

4. A: Neĭ mooĭ yât chiu-t'aū-tsó keí tím-chung faan hôk à?

B: Ngŏh mooĭ yât chiu-t'aū-tsó ts'at-tím poòn chóh-yaû* faan hôk.

5. A: Neĭ-teî mooĭ yât chiu-t'aū-tsó keí tím-chung sheŭng-t'ŏng à?

B: Ngŏh-teî mooĭ yât chiu-t'aū-tsó paât-tím-chung sheŭng-t'ŏng.

6. A: Neĭ-teî mooĭ yât kè taî-yat t'ŏng keí tím-chung lôk t'ōng à?

B: Ngŏh-teî mooĭ yât kè taî-yat t'ŏng haí sheûng-nğ paât-tím nğ-shâp fan lôk t'ŏng.

7. A: Neĭ mooĭ yât keí tím-chung shîk aàn-châu à?

B: Ngŏh mooĭ yât chung-nğ kòm sheûng-hâ* shîk aàn-chaù.

8. A: Neĭ-teî mooĭ yât hâ-nğ keí tím-chung fòng hôk à?

B: Ngŏh-teî mooĭ yât hâ-nğ seî-tím-chung fòng hôk.

9. A: Neĭ yê-maăn keí tím shîk maăn-faân à?

B: Ngŏh yê-maăn taaî-yeùk* ts'at-tím leŭng-kòh tsẑ chóh-yaû* shîk maăn-faân.

10. A: Neĭ mooĭ maăn keí tím-chung hoi-ch'í tsẑ-sau à?

B: Ngŏh mooĭ maăn paât-tím hoi-ch'í tsẑ-sau.

LESSON 27

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Sgt. Leĭ, I haven't seen you for so long, where have you been lately?

B: I haven't been anywhere lately.

2. A: At what time did you eat breakfast this morning?

B: I ate breakfast at 7:05 this morning.

3. A: At what time did you leave home this morning?

B: I left home this morning at quarter after seven.

4. A: At what time do you go to school every morning?

B: I go to school every morning around 7:30.

5. A: At what time do you attend class every morning?

B: Every morning we go to class at eight o'clock.

6. A: At what time each day is your first period class dismissed?

B: Our first period class is dismissed at 8:50 A.M. every day.

7. A: At what time do you eat lunch every day?

B: I eat lunch around noon every day.

8. A: At what time in the afternoon are your classes over every day?

B: Our classes are over every day at four o'clock.

9. A: At what time do you eat supper in the evening?

B: I eat supper in the evening at approximately 7:10.

10. A: At what time do you begin your private study every night?

B: I start doing my homework at eight o'clock every night.

LESSON 27

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ngŏh-teî keî tîm sheǔng t'ōng à?

B: Ngŏh-teî paàt tîm-chung sheŭng t'ōng.

A: Ī-ka keî tîm-chung à?

B: Ī-ka ts'at-tîm taâp shâp.

2. A: Ngŏh-teî chûng yaŭ shâp fan-chung, haî mà?

B: Haî, ngŏh-teî chûng yaŭ shâp fan-chung sheŭng t'ōng.

3. A: Ngŏh-teî î-ka sheŭng taî keí t'ōng à?

B: Ngŏh-teî î-ka sheŭng taî-yat t'ōng.

4. A: Taî-yat t'ōng keî tîm-chung lôk t'ōng à?

B: Taî-yat t'ōng paât-tîm ng-shâp fan lôk t'ōng.

5. A: Neĭ seúng keî tîm-chung tá tîn-wâ* peî neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì*?

B: Ngŏh seúng haî kaú-tîm taâp yat tá tîn-wâ* peî ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì*.

6. A: Neĭ seúng kam-yât chung-ng faan uk-k'eî shîk aàn-chàu mà?

B: Kam-yât chung-ng ngŏh waâk-chê faan uk-k'eî shîk aàn-chaù.

7. A: Kam-maăn ts'at-tîm poòn neĭ tak-haăn laĭ ngŏh uk-k'eî shîk faân mà?

B: Tuì-m̄-chuê, kam-maăn ts'at-tîm poòn ngŏh m̄-huì-tak neĭ kè uk-k'eî shîk faân.

8. A: Kóm, neĭ kam-maăn ts'at-tîm-poòn huì pin shuè à?

B: Ngŏh kè yat-waî* kaû t'ŭng-hôk kam-maăn ts'at-tîm-poòn ts'éng ngŏh shîk maăn-faân.

9. A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, neĭ seúng keî tîm-chung huì k'uĭ shuè à?

B: Ngŏh seúng kam-maăn ts'at-tîm seì-kŏh tsž huì k'uĭ shuè.

10. A: Maăn-faân keî tîm hoi-ch'î à?

LESSON 27

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

B: Maăn-faân ts'at-tîm taâp ts'at hoi-ch'ì.

11. A: Neĭ wâ, neĭ ts'at-tîm seì-kŏh tsẑ huĭ, ooĭ m̄-ooĭ t'aaì ch'ì à?

B: M̄-ooĭ kè, ngŏh shaì ch'e shaì-tak hó faaì.

12. A: Uē-kwóh neĭ huì ch'ī shâp fan-chung, k'uĭ ooĭ m̄-ooĭ táng neĭ à?

B: Uē-kwóh ngŏh huì ch'ī shâp fan-chung, ngŏh koó k'uĭ ooĭ táng ngŏh.

13. A: Uē-kwóh neĭ huì-tak t'aaì ch'ì, neĭ tîm-yeûng* t'ūng k'uĭ kóng à?

B: Uē-kwóh ngŏh huì-tak t'aaì ch'ì, ngŏh ooĭ kóm-yeûng* t'ūng k'uĭ kóng: "Hó m̄-hó ì-sz̀, ngŏh laì ch'ì-chóh, lîng neĭ táng-chóh kòm noì."

14. A: Ngŏh-teì k'ing-chóh shâp keì fan-chung, faaì ti huì sheŭng t'ōng là!

B: M̄-kán-iù, ngŏh-teì chûng yaŭ yat fan-chung.

15. A: Chìng-wâ neĭ kóng mi-yĕ à?

B: Ngŏh wâ ngŏh-teì chûng yaŭ yat fan-chung, m̄-shaì kòm faaì.

LESSON 27

WORD LIST

1.	tîm-chung, tîm, (chung-t'aū)	o'clock, hour (hour)
2.	tsó-ts'aan, tsó-faân	breakfast
3.	taâp; taâp yat (time)	to place on, overlap; 5 minutes after...o'clock
4.	kam chiu, kam chiu-tsó kam-yât chiu-t'au-tsó	this morning
5.	ch'ut moòn-haú	to leave home, go out of the door.
6.	kwat; yat-kòh kwat (time)	bone, quarter; 1 quarter or 15 minutes
7.	mooĭ; (mooĭ-yât)	each, every; (every day)
8.	poòn; ts'at-tîm-poòn-(chung)	half; 7:30 or half past seven
9.	tsóh-yaû*	about, around, approximately
10.	taî-yat t'ōng	the first period
11.	lôk t'ōng	class dismissed, recess
12.	fan; (shâp fan-chung)	minute, to divide: (10 min)
13.	aàn-chaù	lunch, noon
14.	chung-nğ	noon
15.	kòm-sheûng-hâ*	approximately, about, around
16.	fòng hôk	classes over, school let out
17.	yê-maăn	evening, nighttime
18.	tsẑ; yat-kòh-tsẑ-(chung)	character, word; 5 minutes
19.	hoi-ch'î	to begin, start
20.	tsẑ-sau	study by oneself, private study, homework

LESSON 27

READING MATERIAL

1136

點 tím: a dot; speck; comma; to check off; to light; how.

一點鐘 yat tím-chung: an hour; one o'clock.

點名 tím-mēng: to call the roll.

污點 oo tím: a flaw; defect.

147

鐘 chung: a bell; clock (Cl. kòh)

打鐘 tá chung: to ring a bell

鬧鐘 naaû-chung: alarm clock

773

耐 noî: a period of time; to endure; to continue.

耐性 noî-sìng: a patient disposition.

耐煩 noî-faān: patient; long-suffering.

點 点 鐘 鈡 耐

點 鐘 耐

點 点 鐘 耐

716

每 mooǐ: each; every.

每次 mooǐ ts'z̀: each time or occasion.

每人 mooǐ yān: each or every person.

每日 mooǐ yât: everyday.

每每 mooǐ-mooǐ: always; all the time;

101

朝 chiu: morning

朝 ch'iū: a dynasty

朝晚 chiu maăn: morning and evening

朝頭早 chiu-t'aū-tsó: early in the morning.

清朝 Ch'ing-ch'iū: Ch'ing dynasty

每 朝

每 朝

每 朝

LESSON 27

READING MATERIAL

1278

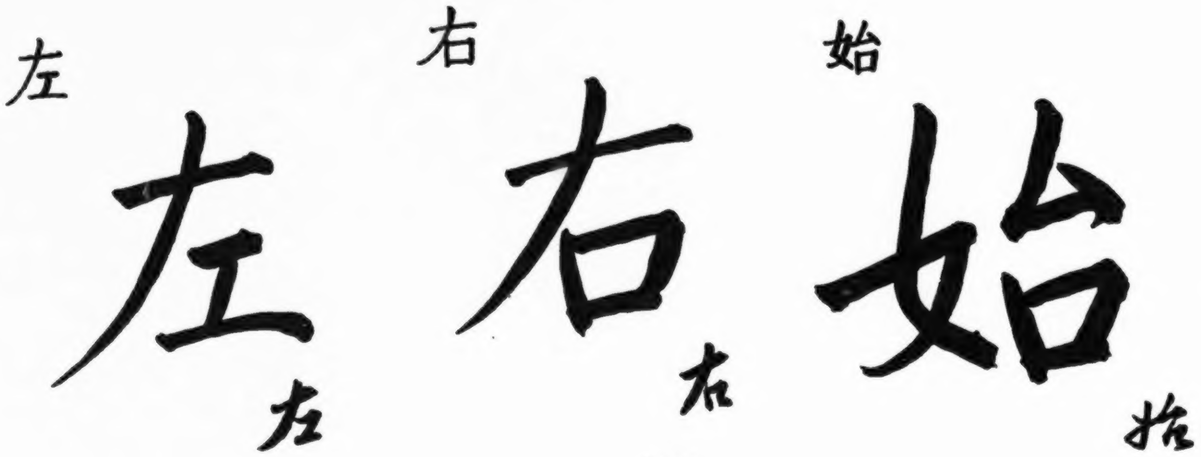
左	tsóh: the left; assistant.
左右	tsóh-yaû. near to; assistant; about; left and right.
左輪	tsóh lūn: revolver.

1465

右	yaû: the right; right(as opposite to left).
右手	yaû-shaú: the right hand.
右邊	yaû pin: on the right hand side; to the right.

78

始	ch'í: to begin; first.
始末	ch'í-moθt: from beginning to end
始創	ch'í-ch'òng: to commence; open up; originate
開始	hoi-ch'í: to begin; to start

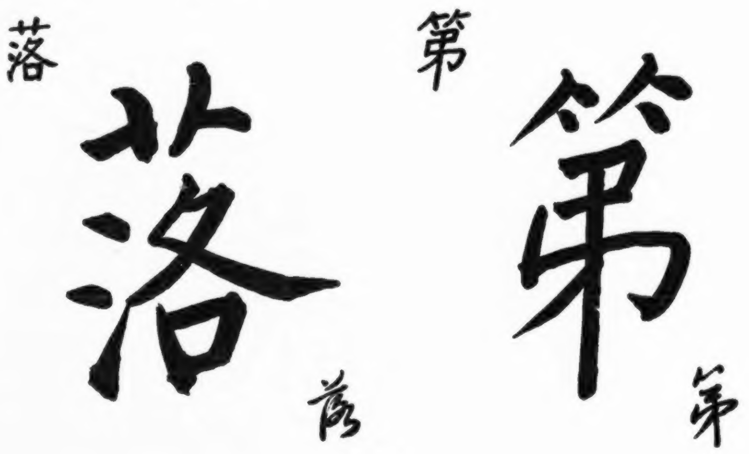


631

落	lôk: down; to go down; to fall; to put down; to begin.
落定	lôk têng: deposit. to pay part of the money first.
落力	lôk-lîk: to do with one's best.
落船	lôk shuēn: to board ship.

1102

第	taî: number; gradation; order; series; yet; still.
第一	taî-yat: the first; number one; the best.
次第	ts'z-taî: order; sequence.



LESSON 27

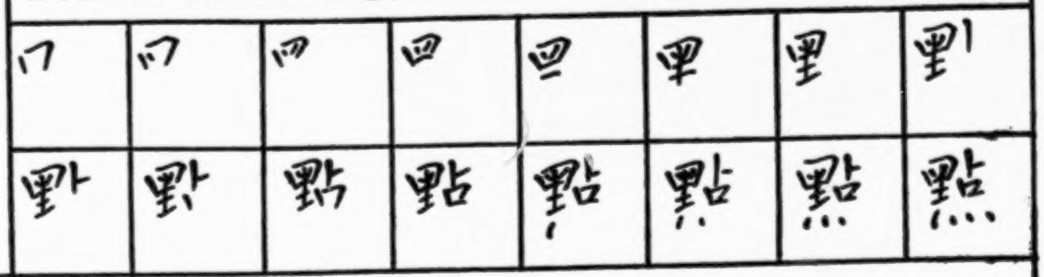
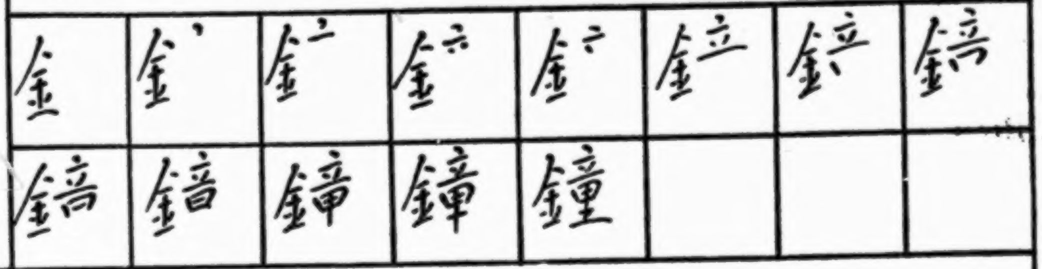
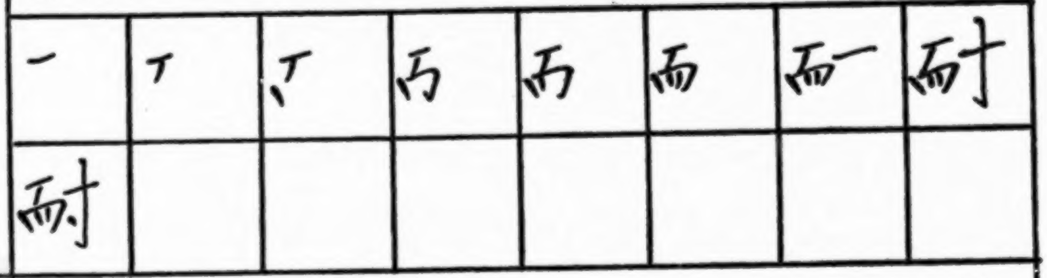
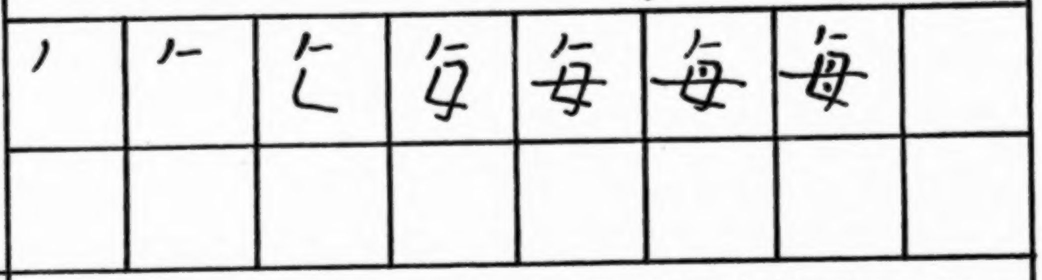
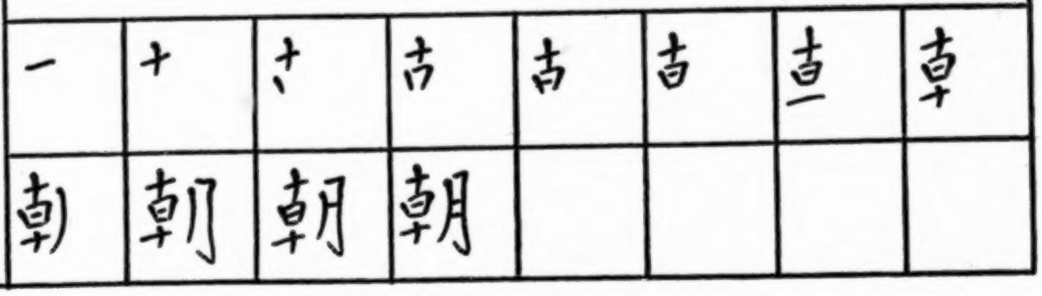
READING MATERIAL

昨晚四點十五fan鐘陳英同黃小姐去行街. 佢地行街行chóh两個鐘頭kòm耐. 行chóh街, 喺大-yeùk六點一個kwat kòm上下, 佢地去睇戲. 佢地睇戲睇chóh两個鐘頭kòm耐. 睇chóh戲, 佢地喺大-yeùk八點三個字左右去食晚飯. 食chóh飯, 佢地番去uk-k'eí

聽日陳英要番去陸軍語言學校教書. 佢每日朝頭早八點鐘hoi始上第一堂; 上午八點五十fan落堂. 上午九點佢上第二堂; 上午十點落堂. 上午十點taâp二佢上第三堂; 上午十一點落堂. 佢每日中午kòm上下食aàn-chaaù. 而家佢每日上三堂. 佢下午四點四十五fan放學là.

LESSON 27

WRITING MATERIAL

點	Character Number 1136 Radical Number 203 黑 Stroke Number 17 
鐘	Character Number 147 Radical Number 167 金 Stroke Number 20 
耐	Character Number 773 Radical Number 126 而 Stroke Number 9 
每	Character Number 716 Radical Number 80 毋 Stroke Number 7 
朝	Character Number 101 Radical Number 72,74 日，月 Stroke Number 12 

LESSON 28

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Yat-kòh sin sìu-kwòh leŭng-kòh sin.
   Saam-kòh sin toh-kwòh leŭng-kòh sin.
   Nğ-kòh sin tsik-haî taú-lîng* waâk-chê saam-fan-lûk.
   Shâp-kòh sin tsik-haî yat-hō tsź.

2. Shâp-yat-kòh sin yaû kìu tsô hō-yat tsź.
   Shâp-saam kòh sin yaû kìu tsô hō-saam tsź.
   Shâp-nğ kòh sin yaû kìu tsô hō-poòn tsź.
   Î-shâp-saam kòh sin yaû kìu tsô î-hō-saam tsź.

3. Ts'at-hō paàt tsź sìu-kwòh ts'at-hō ts'at tsź.
   Kaú-hō kaú tsź toh-kwòh lûk-hō poòn tsź.
   Lûk-hō poòn tsź tsik-haî lûk-hō nğ tsź.
   Nğ-hō lûk tsź toh-kwòh nğ-hō poòn tsź.

4. Neĭ yaŭ keî-toh-kòh hō-tsź?
   K'uĭ-teî yaŭ keî-toh-kòh sin?
   K'uĭ iù keî-toh ts'în*?
   Ngŏh yaŭ keî-toh ts'în*?

5. Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ ts'in*?
   K'uĭ yaŭ-mŏ leŭng-hō-tsź?
   K'uĭ yaŭ-mŏ leŭng-kòh hō-tsź?
   K'uĭ yaŭ-mŏ î-shâp-kòh sin?

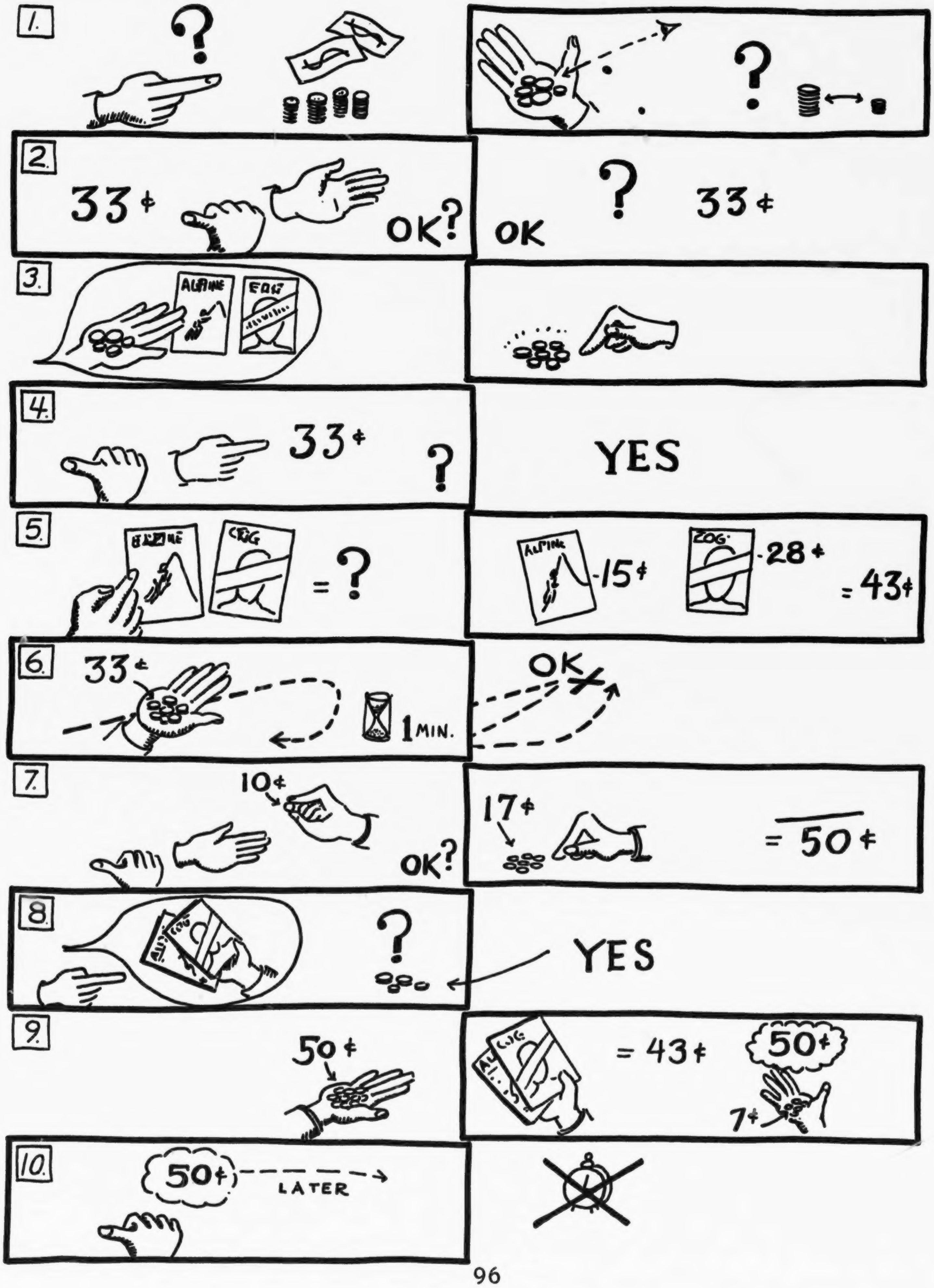
LESSON 28

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

6. Ni leŭng-poôn shue keî-toh ts'în*?
Kóh chi pat keî-toh ts'în*?
Kóh cheung pò-chî keî-toh ts'în*?
Kóh kaan uk keî-toh ts'în*?

7. Neĭ tsaang ngŏh leŭng-hō-tsź.
K'uĭ tsaang neĭ saam-hō-saam-tsź.
Neĭ tsaang k'uĭ nḡ-kòh-sin.
Ngŏh tsaang k'uĭ kaú-hō-kaú-tsź.

LESSON 28


1.
?
?
2.
33¢
OK?
OK
?
33¢
3.
ALPINE
ZOG
4.
33¢
?
YES
5.
ALPINE
ZOG
= ?
ALPINE
15¢
ZOG
28¢
= 43¢
6.
33¢
1 MIN.
OK
7.
10¢
OK?
17¢
= 50¢
8.
?
YES
9.
50¢
= 43¢
50¢
7¢
10.
50¢
LATER

LESSON 28

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ ts'în* à?

B: Ngŏh mŏ keì-toh ts'în* wòh! Neĭ iù keì-toh ts'în* à?

2. A: Ngŏh seúng iù saam-hō-saam-tsź, ngŏh seúng t'ūng neĭ
chè saam-hō-saam-tsź, tak mà?

B: Hó à, neĭ t'ūng ngŏh chè saam-hō-saam-tsź, tsô mi-yĕ à?

3. A: Ngŏh seúng maaĭ leŭng-fân tsaâp-chì.

B: Ni shuè haî ngŏh chè peì neĭ kè saam-hō-saam-tsź.

4. A: Kóm, ngŏh tsaang neĭ saam-hō-saam-tsź, haî mà?

B: Haî, neĭ tsaang ngŏh saam-hō-saam-tsź.

5. A: Ni leŭng-fân tsaâp-chì keì-toh ts'în* à?

C: Ni fân tsaâp-chì hō-poòn, kóh fân tsaâp-chì leŭng-hō-
paàt, chúng-kûng seì-hō-saam-tsź, neĭ maaĭ-m̄-maaĭ à,
sin-shaang.

6. A: Tuì-m̄-chuê, ngŏh taaì m̄-kaù ts'în*, ngŏh chì-haî yaŭ
saam-hō-saam-tsź, ts'îng neĭ táng yat-chân.

C: Hó à, sin-shaang, neĭ táng yat-chân tsoì faan-laì la!

7. A: Ngŏh chûng seúng t'ūng neĭ chè yat-hō-tsź, tak mà?

B: Hó à, ni shuè haî hō-ts'at-tsź, ts'în-haû neĭ chúng-kûng
tsaang ngŏh nğ-hō.

8. A: M̄-koi neĭ peì ni leŭng-fân tsaâp-chì peì ngŏh; nğ hō-tsź
yaŭ tak chaaú mà?

C: Yaŭ à, ngŏh yaŭ tak chaaú, sin-shaang.

9. A: Ni shuè haî nğ hō-tsź.

C: Ni leŭng-poón tsaâp-chì chúng-kûng iù seì-hō-saam-tsź;
neĭ peì nğ hō ngŏh, ngŏh chaaú-faan ts'at-kòh sin peì neĭ,
ngaam mà?

A: Ngaam là!

LESSON 28

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: Ngŏh tsaang neĭ nğ hō-tsź, ngŏh ĭ-haû waān-faan peí neĭ la!

B: M-shaí kòm kap, maân-maân* to m̄-ch'ī.

LESSON 28

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Do you have any money?

B: I haven't got much money. How much money do you want?

2. A: I want 33 cents. I'd like to borrow 33¢ from you, all right?

B: All right. What are you borrowing 33¢ from me for?

3. A: I want to purchase two magazines.

B: Here is the 33¢ that I am lending to you.

4. A: So, I owe you 33¢. Isn't that right?

B: Yes, you owe me 33¢.

5. A: How much are these two magazines?

C: This magazine costs 15¢, that magazine costs 28¢, a total of 43¢. Will you buy them, sir?

6. A: I'm sorry, I didn't bring enough money. I only have 33¢. Please wait a minute.

C: All right, sir, you come back in a while.

7. A: I still want to borrow a dime from you, all right?

B: Well, here is 17¢; you owe me, now and before, altogether 50¢.

8. A: Will you please give me these two magazines. Do you have change for 50¢?

C: Yes, I have change, sir.

9. A: Here is 50¢.

C: These two magazines cost a total of 43¢; you gave me 50¢, I'll give you back a change of 7¢, right?

A: Right.

10. A: I owe you 50¢. I'll pay you back later.

B: There is no hurry, take your time.

LESSON 28

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Tak-haān mả, lŏ Ch'ān*?

B: Mŏ mat sẑ, yaŭ mat kwaỉ kỏn ả, lŏ Cheung?

A: Yaŭ ti yĕ, ngŏh seúng mân-hă neī?

B: Mi-yĕ ne, lŏ Cheung?

2. A: Neī yaŭ ts'īn* mả?

B: Tuỉ-m̄-chuê, ngŏh mŏ keí-toh ts'īn* wỏh! Neī iủ ts'īn* tsô mi-yĕ ả?

3. A: Ngŏh seúng tá tīn-pỏ peí ngŏh kẻ mŏ-ts'an, ī-ka ngŏh mŏ ts'īn*.

B: Neī tá maân tīn yik-waâk faaỉ tīn ả?

4. A: Ngŏh seúng tá maân tīn.

V Paảt hō-tsź kaủ m̄-kaủ ả?

5. A: Paảt hō-tsź waâk-ché kaủ lả! Tsuỉ-hó chẻ toh ti, tak mả?

B: Ni shuẻ haî kaú hō-tsź, uē-kwóh m̄-kaủ, ngŏh tsoỉ chẻ ti peí neī.

6. A: Kóm, ngŏh tsaang neī kaú hō-tsź, toh-chê saaỉ.

B: Uē-kwóh kaú hō-tsź m̄-kaủ, neī tsoỉ faan-laỉ la!

7. A: Tá maân tīn huỉ Saam-Faān-Shī, mooī shâp-kỏh tsẑ keí-toh ts'īn* ả?

C: Tá maân tīn huỉ Saam-Faān-Shī, mooī shâp-kỏh tsẑ paảt hō, sin-shaang.

8. A: Ts'íng mân ni shuẻ iủ keí-toh ts'īn* ả?

C: Ni shuẻ chúng-kûng shâp-ī-kỏh tsẑ, mooī shâp-kỏh tsẑ paảt hō, chúng-kûng iủ kaú hō lûk tsź.

9. A: Ngŏh chí-haî yaŭ kaú hō-tsź; tâng yat-chân tsoỉ peí kaủ neī, tak mả?

C: M̄-kán-iủ, tâng yat-chân neī tsoỉ peî lûk-kỏh sin ngŏh la!

LESSON 28

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. A: Kóm, ngŏh chûng tsaang neĭ lûk-kòh sin, haî mà?

C: Haî à, neĭ chûng tsaang ngŏh lûk-kòh sin.

11. A: Ngŏh tsìng-wâ huì tá tîn-pò, ts'în* m̄-kaù; neĭ chûng chè kaú hō peí ngŏh la!

B: Hó la, ni shuè haî kaú hō-tsź.

12. A: Ni kòh haî nğ-hō, ni kòh haî leŭng-hō-poòn, ni kòh haî yat-hō, ni kòh haî taú-lîng*. Chúng-kûng kaú hō, ngaam là!

B: Tsoì-kìn, Tsoì-kìn.

A: Tsoì-kìn, toh-chê saaì!

13. A: Ni poón sùn-chí keí toh ts'în* à?

D: Ni poón sùn-chí paàt hō, sin-shaang.

14. A: Mat kòm kwaì kè*, yaŭ mŏ p'ēng ti kà?

D: Â! Ngŏh kaaì-siû neĭ maaĭ ni poón la, ni poón p'ēng hó toh.

15. A: Ni poón p'ēng keí-toh à?

D: Ni poón lûk hō, p'ēng leŭng hō-tsź.

LESSON 28

WORD LIST

1.	wòh	final particle
2.	iù	to want, need, have to
3.	hō, hō-tsź	dime, 10 cents
4.	t'ūng... tsè	to borrow from...
5.	tsè peî...	to lend to...
6.	fân	share, AN for magazine, AN of report, AN of newspaper
7.	tsaâp-chì	magazine
8.	kôm	so, thus, to dare
9.	chaang, (ch'aang)	to owe, contend, wrangle
10.	taaì	to bring, carry; string, zone
11.	kaù	enough, sufficient
12.	faan-laī	to come back, return
13.	ts'īn-haû	now and before, front and rear
14.	chaaú	to change (money), seek, cash (a check)
15.	sin	cent, penny
16.	waān	to pay back, return
17.	kap	hurry, hasty, urgent, rush
18.	taú-līng*	nickel
19.	saam-fan-lûk (ngān)	nickel, 5 cents
20.	maân-maân* to m̄-ch'ī	to take one's time, no hurry

LESSON 28

READING MATERIAL

1467

野 yě: something; a thing; savage; rude; wild; waste country.

野獸 yě-shaù: wild animal.

野心 yě-sam: unscrupulous; unscrupulous ambition.

野外 yě-ngoî: in the country.

539

公 kung: just; rignt; public; male (of animals); gentleman; sir.

公平 kung-p'ǐng: just; fair.

公路 kung-lô: public road.

公園 kung uĕn: public park.

公共 kung-kûng: public; the public.

公衆 kung-chǔng: belonging to the public.

1065

司 sz: to control; to preside over; overseer; a bureau.

司機 sz-kei: driver.

司理 sz-leǐ: to manage; manager of company.

司令 sz-lîng: a commander.

野 公 司

野公司

野 公 司

1227

借 tsè: to l nd; to bo row supposing.

借錢 tsè ts'Īn. to bor row money

昔款 tsè foón· to make a loan

1284

再 tsoì: again; repeated.

再講 tsoì kóng: to repeat.

再犯 tsoì faân· to repeat an offense

再分 tsoì fan: to subdivide.

借 再

借再

借 再

LESSON 28

READING MATERIAL

676

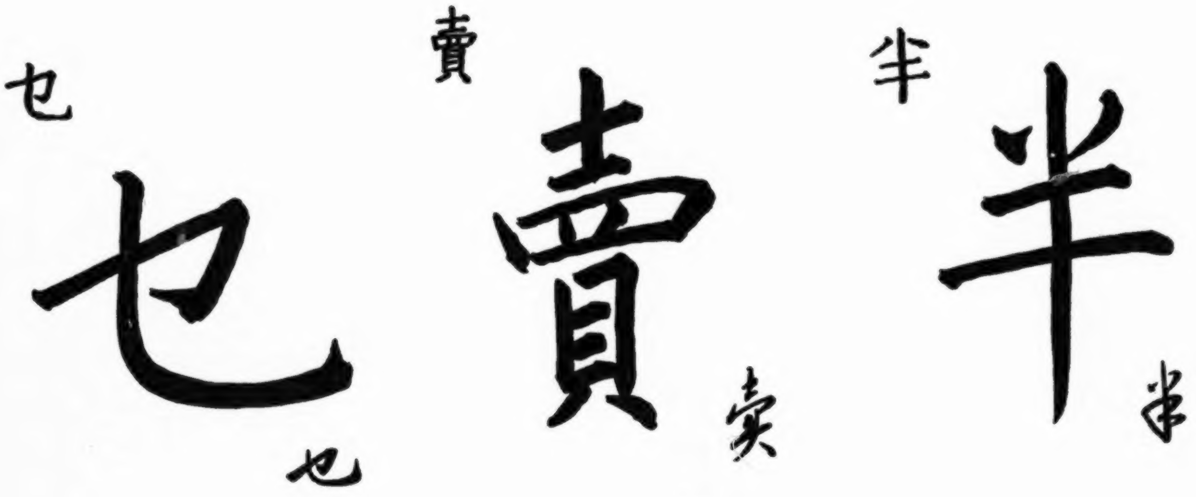
乜	mat, mi· what; something; any.
乜野	mat (or mi) yĕ?: what?

660

賣	maaî: to sell; to betray.
賣出	maaî ch'ut: to sell.
拍賣	p'aàk-maaî: to sell at an auction.
賣國	maaî kwòk: to betray one's country.
非賣品	fei maaî pán: "not for sale" article.

90C

半	poòn: a half.
半夜	poòn-yê: midnight.
大半	taaî-poòn: more than half; majority.
半路	poòn-lô: halfway.
半價	poòn kà: half price.

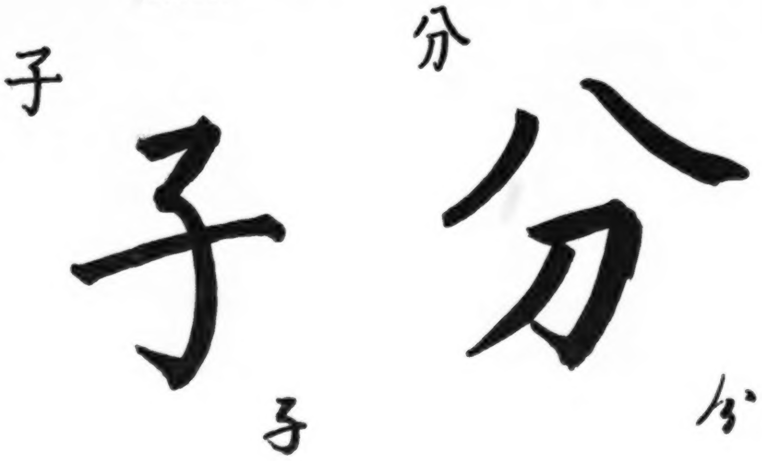


1330

子	tsź: boy; son; posterity· seed; sir; llpm to lam.
子孫	tsź-suen: son and grandchild; descendant.
子弟	tsź-taî: pupil; young men in the clan.
孝子	haaù tsź: filial son; son of deceased.

174

分	fan: to divide; percentage; minute
分	fân: a part; a share
本分	poón-fân: duty & general obligations
分開	fan-hoi: to divide



LESSON 28

READING MATERIAL

今日下午四點五十fan陳英放chóh學. 佢去見黃小姐. 佢想同黃小姐去街買野.

佢地yâp去公司,先睇hǎ有乜野賣. 呢間公司有好多野賣;有啲野好p'ēng,有啲野好貴.

陳英想買两本畫報 每本畫報两hō半子,總共五hō子. 佢又想買两份中文tsaâp-chì. 每份两hō子,總共四hō子. 佢總共shaí-chóh九hō子.

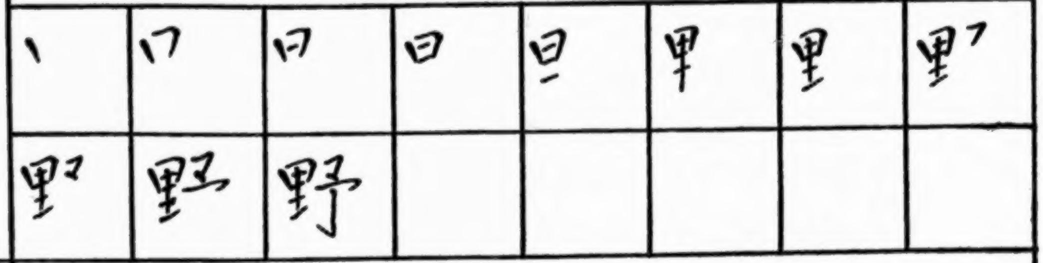
黃小姐想買两tsun heung-水. 每tsun heung-水三hō半子,總共七hō子. 黃小姐唔shaí peí錢;陳英同佢peí錢. 陳英chûng想買好多野. 佢taaì-chóh冇幾多錢. 而家佢yaû唔想同黃小姐借錢. 聽日佢再黎買野.

LESSON 28

WRITING MATERIAL

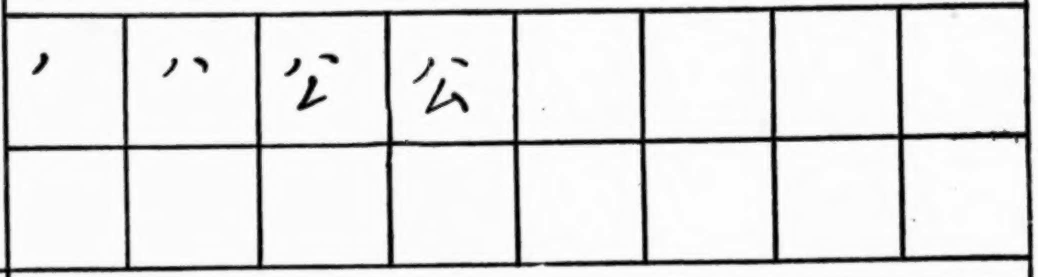
野

Character Number 1467　Radical Number 166
Stroke Number 11　里



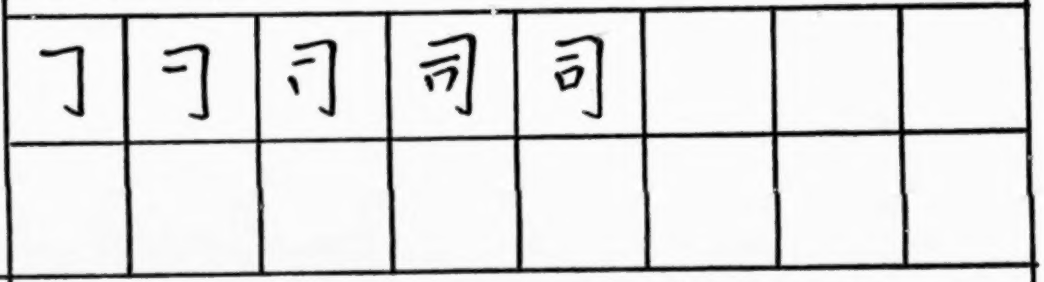
公

Character Number 539　Radical Number 12
Stroke Number 4　八



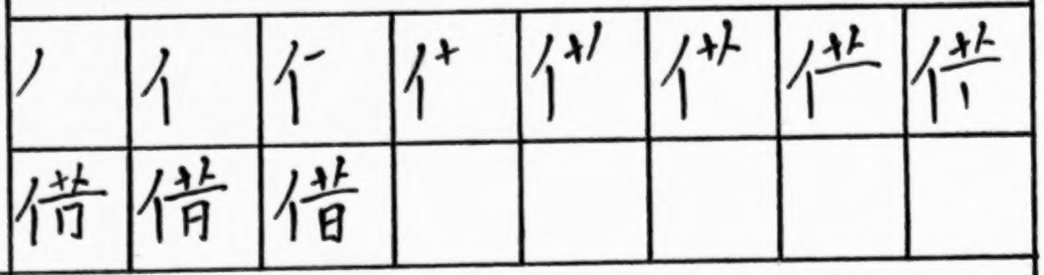
司

Character Number 1065　Radical Number 30
Stroke Number 5　口



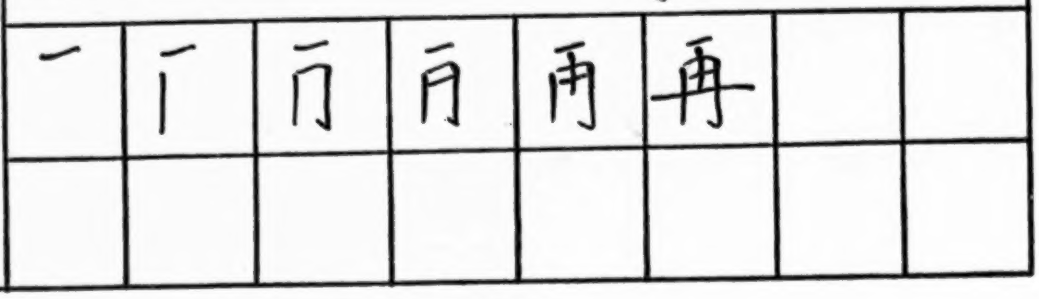
借

Character Number 1227　Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 11　亻，人



再

Character Number 1284　Radical Number 13
Stroke Number 6　冂



LESSON 29

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. yat-man
   yat-kỏh-līng-yat (1.01)
   yat-kỏh-līng-nğ (1.05)
   kỏh-î (1.20)
   yat-kỏh-î-hō-î (1.22)
   yat-kỏh-î-hô-poỏn (1.25)
   kỏh-saam (1.30)
   kỏh-ts'at (1.70)
   yat-kỏh-kaú-hō-poỏn (1.95)
   yat-kỏh-kaú-hō-kaú (1.99)
   nğ-man (5.00)
   paảt-man (8.00)
   kaú-man (9.00)
   kaú-kỏh ngān-ts'īn* (9.00)
   kaú-kỏh-līng-î (9.02)
   kaú-kỏh-yat-hō-saam (9.13)
   kaú-kỏh-seỉ-hō-ts'at (9.47)
   kaú-kỏh-poỏn (9.50)
   kaú-kỏh-nğ (9.50)
   kaú-kỏh-kaú-hō-kaú (9.99)
   shâp-man (10.00)
   shâp-kỏh ngān-ts'īn* (10.00)

LESSON 29

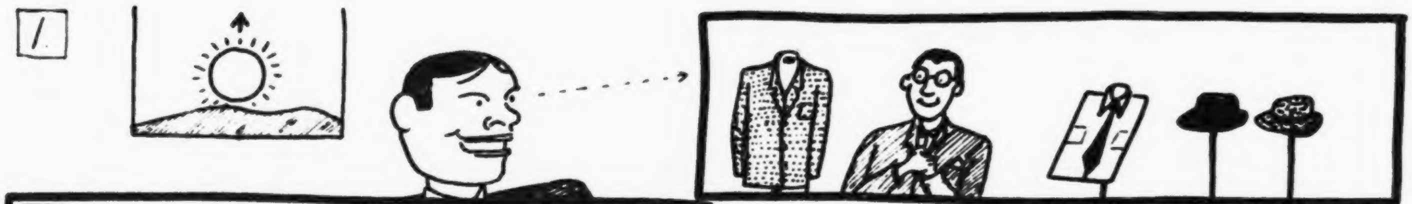
ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

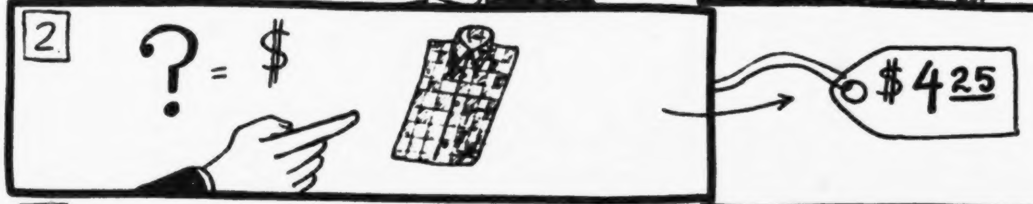
2. Yat-man yaŭ shâp-kòh hō-tsź.
   Leŭng-man yaŭ î-paàk-kòh sin.
   Nğ-man tsik-haî nğ-kòh ngān-ts'īn*.
   Î-shâp-man tsik-haî î-shâp-kòh ngān-ts'īn*.

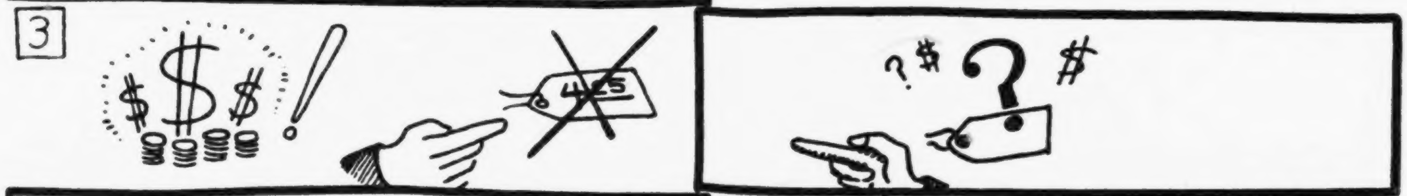
3. Keî ts'īn* à?
   Keî-toh ts'īn* à?
   Keî ngān* à?
   Keî-toh ngān* à?

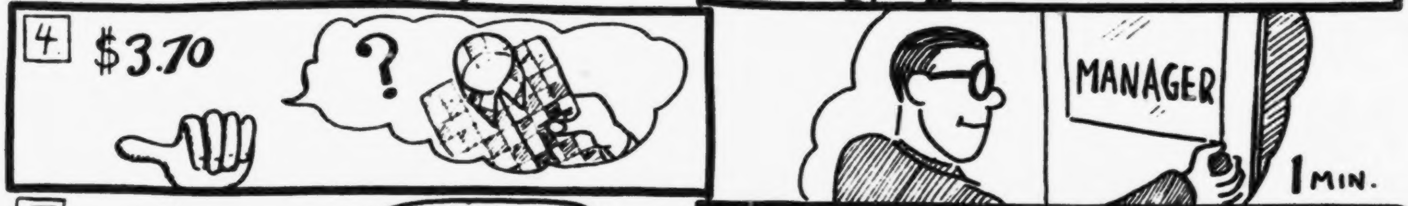
4. Keî man à?
   Keî kòh ngān-ts'īn* à?
   Keî hō-tsź à?
   Keî kòh sin à?

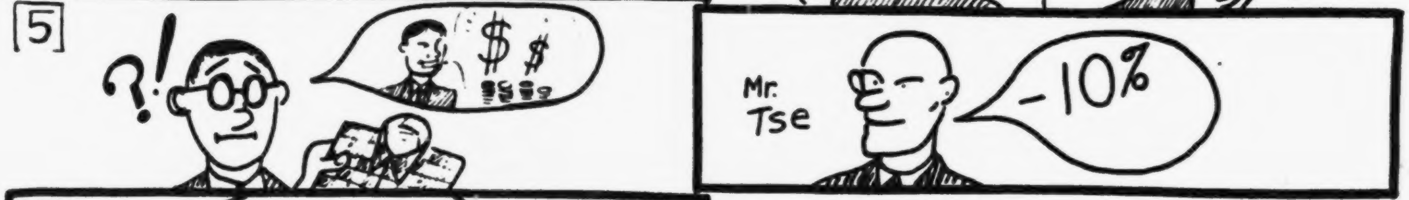
LESSON 29

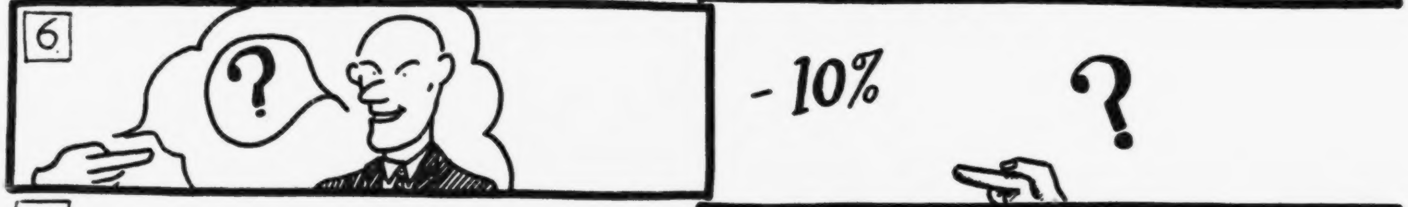

1.

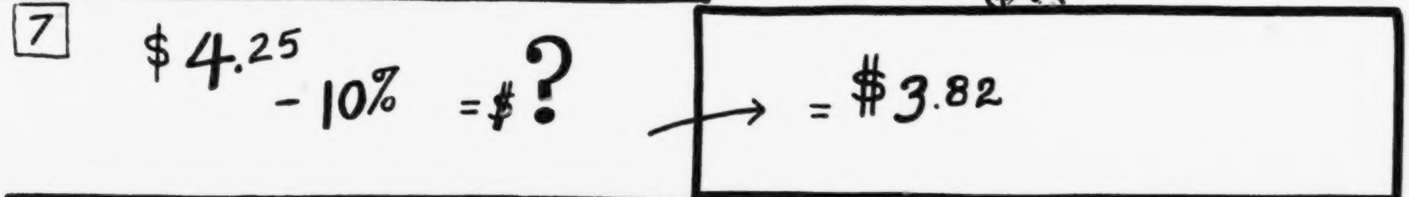

2.
? = $
$4.25

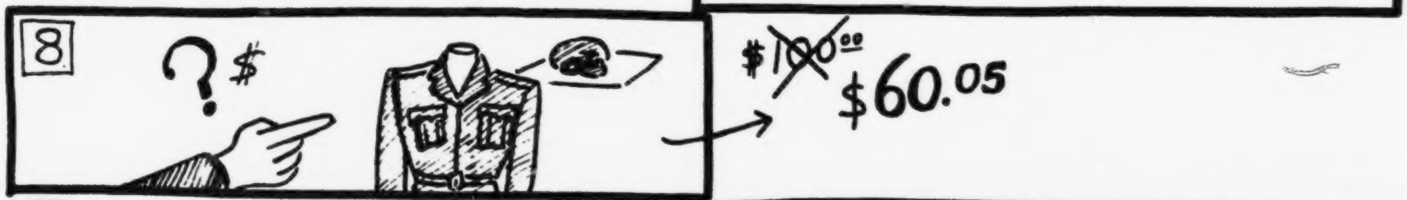

3
$ $ $!
4.25
?$? $

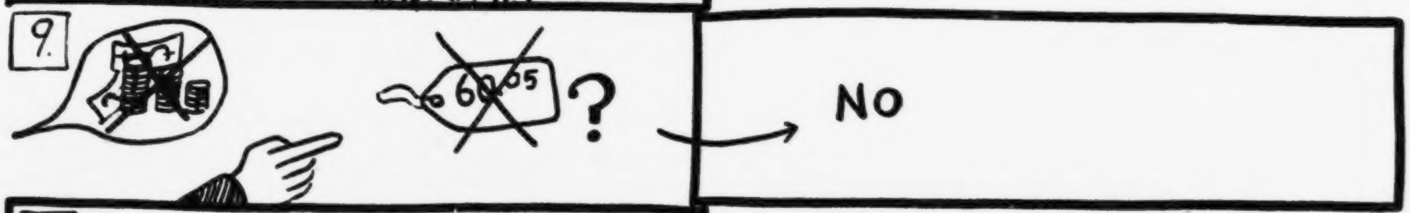

4.
$3.70
?
MANAGER
1 MIN.

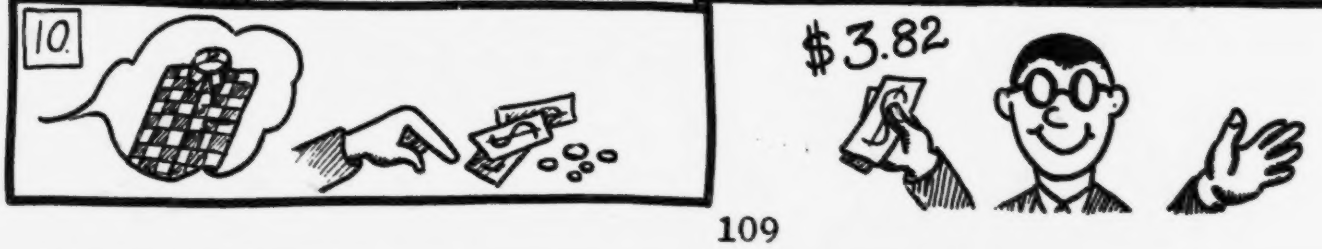

5
?!
$ $
Mr. Tse
-10%


6
?
-10%
?


7
$4.25 -10% = $?
= $3.82


8
?$
~~$100.00~~
$60.05


9.
~~60.05~~
?
NO


10.
$3.82

LESSON 29

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān.

B: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān, sin-shaang, yaŭ mat pong-ts'àn à?

A: Ngŏh seúng t'aí-hă sin.

B: Hó à, sin-shaang.

2. A: Ni kîn sut-shaam keí-toh ts'în* à?

B: Ni kîn sut-shaam seì-kòh î-hō-poòn.

3. A: Kòm kwaì kā!? P'ēng ti tak mà?

B: Neĭ seúng p'ēng keí-toh à, sin-shaang? Neĭ peí keí-toh à?

4. A: Ngŏh chí-haî hóh-ĭ ch'ut-tak saam-kòh ts'at, maaî mà?

B: Kóm ā, táng ngŏh mân-hă ngŏh kè king-leĭ sin, m̄-koi neĭ táng-hă.

5. B: Tsê King-Leĭ, ni kîn sut-saam tîng-kà seì-kòh î-hō-poòn, kóh waî* sin-shaang wâ t'aaì kwaì; tím paân à?

C: Hó la, tá kaú-tsìt maaî peí k'uĭ la!

6. A: Neĭ kè king-leĭ tím wâ à?

B: K'uĭ wâ, tá kaú-tsìt maaî peí neĭ, iù mà?

7. A: Seì-kòh î-hō-poòn tá kaú-tsìt, tsik-haî keí-toh ts'în* à?

B: Seì-kòh î-hō-poòn tá kaú-tsìt, tsik-haî saam-kòh paàt-hō-î-tsź.

8. A: Ni t'ò kwan-fûk keí-toh ts'în* à?

B: M-haî keí kwaì che, lûk-shâp-kòh lîng nğ.

9. A: Lûk-shâp-kòh lîng nğ, ngŏh maaĭ m̄-heí, p'ēng ti tak mà?

B: Tuì-m̄-chuê, ngŏh-teî m̄-hóh-ĭ tsoì p'ēng là!

10. A: Kóm, ngŏh chí-haî maaĭ kîn sut-shaam, ni shuè haî saam-kòh paàt-hō-î-tsź; neĭ só-hă k'uĭ la!

LESSON 29

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

B: Ngaam là, sin-shaang; ni shuè saam-kòh-paàt-hō-î.

A: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

B: Toh-tsê-saaì, sin-shaang, ĭ-haû tsoì laî pong-ts'àn.

LESSON 29

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Good morning.

B: Good morning, sir, may I help you? (Is there anything you want to buy?)

A: I wish to take a look first.

B: Very well, sir.

2. A: How much does this shirt cost?

B: This shirt costs $4.25.

3. A: So expensive! Can you make it cheaper?

B: How cheap do you wish, sir? How much would you give?

4. A: I can only offer you $3.70, will you sell it?

B: In that case, let me ask my manager first, please wait a minute.

5. B: Mr. (Manager) Tsê, this shirt has a set price of $4.25; that gentleman says that it is too expensive, what shall we do?

C: Well, all right, sell it to him at a 10% discount.

6. A: What did your manager say?

B: He said to sell it to you at a 10% discount, do you want it?

7. A: $4.25 at a 10% discount, how much is it?

B: $4.25 at a 10% discount means $3.82.

8. A: How much is this military uniform?

B: Not too expensive, $60.05.

9. A: $60.05, I can't afford to buy it. Can you make it cheaper?

B: I'm sorry, we can't make it cheaper any more.

10. A: In that case, I'll buy only the shirt. Here is $3.82. Please count it.

B: Correct, sir; here is $3.82.

LESSON 29

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: Goodbye!

B: Thank you very much, sir, come again!

LESSON 29

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Tím à, kân-loî mōng mà?

B: Ngŏh kân-loî hó mōng, mŏ shî tak-haān, neĭ ne?

A: Ngŏh kân-loî m̄-haî keí mōng.

2. A: Chìng-wâ neĭ huì pin shuè à?

B: Chìng-wâ ngŏh huì t'aí heì.

3. A: T'aí heì iù keí-toh ts'în* à?

B: T'aí heì iù kaú hō-tsź.

4. A: T'aí-chóh heì, neĭ huì pin shuè ne?

B: T'aí-chóh heì, ngŏh huì yat-kaan kung-sz maaĭ yat-kîn lau.

5. A: Kóh kîn lau, neĭ maaĭ-chóh keí-toh ts'în* à?

B: Kóh kîn lau, ngŏh maaĭ-chóh nğ-shâp-paàt kòh kaú hō poòn.

6. A: Kóh kîn lau, uēn-loî tîng-kà keí-toh ts'în* à?

B: Kóh kîn lau, uēn-loî tîng-kà lûk-shâp-nğ kòh poòn.

7. A: Uēn-loî tîng-kà lûk-shâp-nğ kòh poòn, neĭ peí keí-toh ts'în* à?

B: Ngŏh mân k'uĭ, hóh m̄-hóh-ĭ tá kaú-chìt; k'uĭ wâ hóh-ĭ.

8. A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, tsik-haî p'ēng-chóh keí-toh ne?

B: Tsik-haî p'ēng-chóh lûk-kòh nğ-hō-poòn.

9. A: Neĭ kam-chiu-tsó wâ, neĭ mŏ ts'în*, neĭ î-ka tím hóh-ĭ yaŭ ts'în* maaĭ lau à?

B: Ngŏh chìng-wâ t'ūng ngŏh kè t'ūng-sẑ chè-chóh yat-paàk man.

10. A: K'uĭ iù neĭ keí shî waān-faan peí k'uĭ à?

B: K'uĭ wâ, m̄-kán-iù, maân-maân* to m̄-ch'î..

LESSON 29

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Neĭ seúng keí shî kìt-fan ne?

B: Ngŏh seúng taaî-yeùk* ch'ut-nîn* saam-uêt kìt-fan.

12. A: Neĭ kìt-fan, neĭ iù shaí keí-toh ts'în* ne?

B: Ngŏh kìt-fan, ngŏh iù shaí hó toh ts'în*.

13. A: Keí-toh ts'în* à?

B: Ngŏh koó, taaî-yeùk* iù yat-ts'in man kòm sheûng-hâ*.

14. A: Neĭ yaŭ mŏ kòm toh ts'în* à? Neĭ kaù m̄-kaù ts'în* kìt-fan à?

B: Ngŏh mŏ kòm toh ts'în*, ngŏh m̄-kaù ts'în* kìt-fan.

15. A: Uē-kwóh neĭ m̄-kaù ts'în* kìt-fan, neĭ tím paân à?

B: Uē-kwóh ngŏh m̄-kaù ts'în* kìt-fan, ngŏh ooĭ t'ūng ngŏh kè foô-ts'an chè ts'în*.

LESSON 29

WORD LIST

1.	pong-ch'àn	to patronize (a store)
2.	sin	first
3.	kîn	AN for coat, shirt, matter, thing
4.	sut-shaam	shirt
5.	kỏh, kỏh (ngān-ts'īn*)	AN for people, round objects; dollar (money)
6.	man, ngān-ts'īn*	dollar, buck (money)
7.	hóh-ĭ	can, may, to be possible, to be able
8.	ch'ut	to offer (a price); out, exit
9.	king-leĭ	manager
10.	Tsê, tsê (toh-tsê)	surname; to thank; (thank you)
11.	tîng-kà	set price, fixed price
12.	sin-shaang	gentleman, sir, teacher, husband
13.	tîm paân	how to fix it:, what to do?
14.	tá, (ta)	to strike, hit; (dozen)
15.	(tá) kaú chỉt	10% discount, 10% off
16.	t'ỏ	AN for suit, uniform, film
17.	kwan-fûk	military uniform
18.	maaĭ-m̄-heî	can't afford to buy
19.	shô, (shỏ)	to count; (figure, number)
20.	wâ, wâ*	to say, scold; language

LESSON 29

READING MATERIAL

426

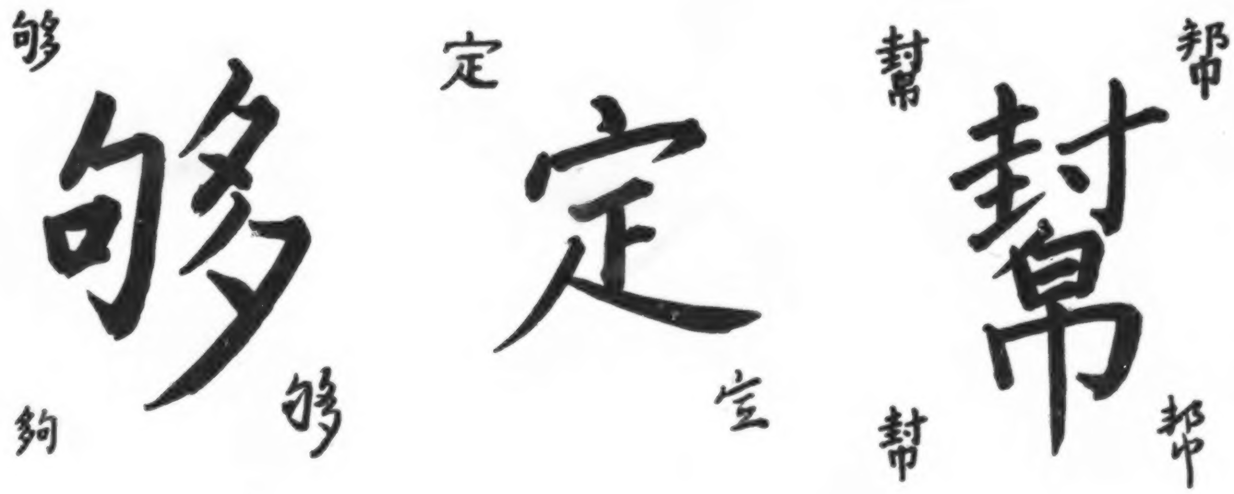
够	kaù: enough; plenty.
够力	kaù lîk: sufficient strength.
够用	kaù yûng: sufficient use
足够	tsuk-kaù: sufficient; enough.

1147

定	tîng: stable; fixed; decided; to decide.
定價	tîng kà: a fixed price.
定罪	tîng tsoi: to sentence; to condemn.
指定	chí-tîng: an order.

891

幫	pong: to help; to assist; to aid; a class; fleet; heap; pile.
幫助	pong-chôh: to assist.
幫忙	pong-mōng: to give assistance.

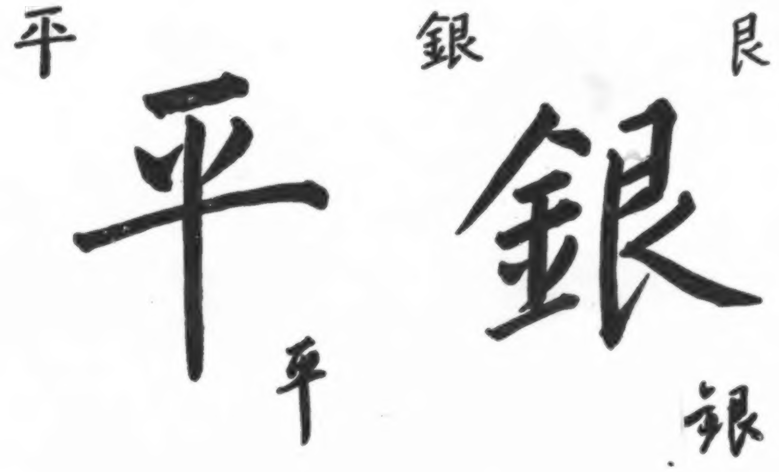


846

平	p'īng: even; level, tranquil; ordinary.
平等	p īng-táng: equal rank; equality.
平均	p'īng-kwan: to equalize; to average.
平日	p'īng-yât: generally; daily.

753

銀	ngān: silver; money.
銀紙	ngān-chí: paper money; bank note.
銀行	ngān-hōng: a bank.
銀器	ngān heì: articles made of silver.



LESSON 29

READING MATERIAL

1078

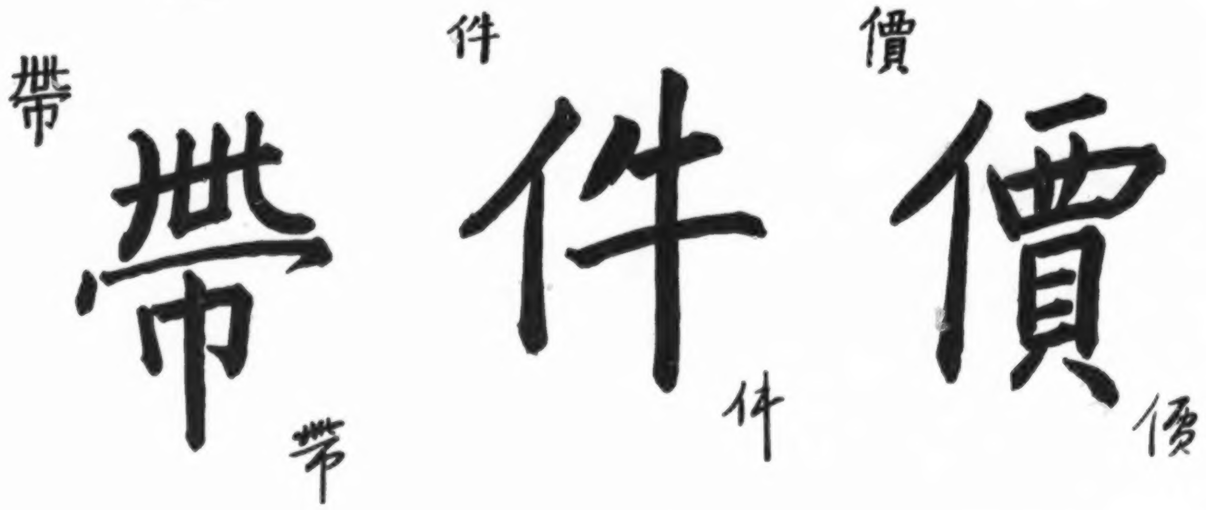
帶	taaì:	to lead; to bring; girdle; zone.
帶兵	taaì ping:	to lead soldiers.
帶信	taaì sùn:	to carry letter.
寒帶	hōn-taaì:	frigid zone.
熱帶	ît-taaì:	torrid zone.

461

件	kîn:	an item;(for clothing, business, things in general)
一件物	yat kîn mât:	one thing.
一件事	yat kîn sẑ:	an affair.
條件	t'iū-kîn:	item(of documents,etc) or requirement.
案件	òn-kîn:	a court case.

372

價	kà:	price; value
價錢	kà-ts'în:	the price
價值	kà-chîk:	value
市價	shǐ-kà:	market price
減價	kaám kà:	reduced price; sale

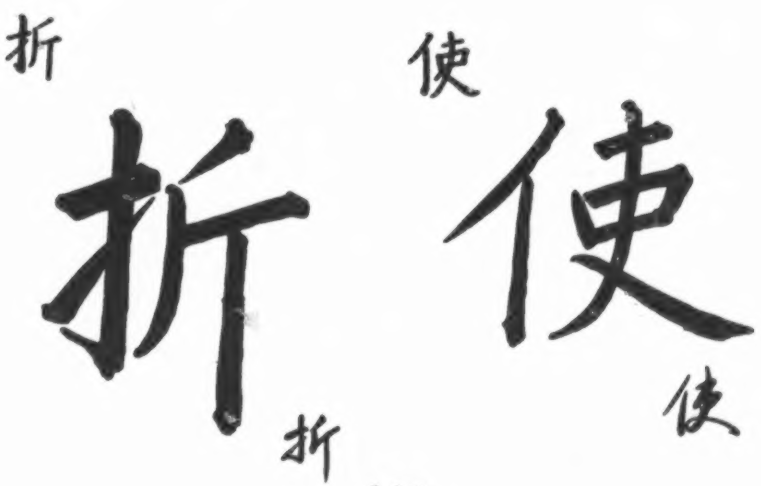


99

折	chìt	to break off; bend
折價	chìt-kà:	reduced price
九折	kaú-chìt	90% of list price (10% discount)

1073

使	sž, shaí:	to cause; to use.
假使間	ká-sź-kaan:	supposing that.
使館	sz̀-k ón:	legation; embassy.
公使	kung sz̀:	an envoy; minister.



LESSON 29

READING MATERIAL

尋日陳英同黃小姐去公司,買 chóh 啲野. 陳英唔夠錢. 今日陳英帶夠錢 là. 佢帶定一百文. 今日放 chóh 學,佢又同黃小姐去街買野.

佢地又去幫 ts'àn 呢間公司買野. 呢間公司有好多平野賣. 陳英想買一件大 lau,定價六十文,打九折;九六,五十四;即係五十四文. 佢又想買兩件白 sut-shaam;每件五文,打九折;九五,四十五;即係每件四個半銀錢. 佢又想買一對 haaī,定價十二文,打九折;九二,一十八,九一 uē 九;即係十個八. 陳英總共使 chóh 七十三個八.

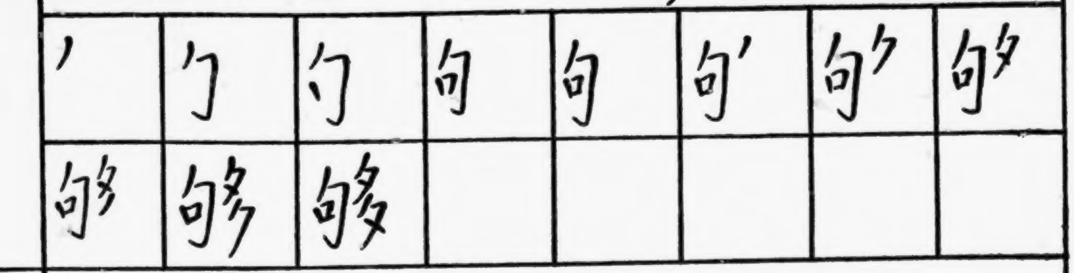
今日陳英買 chóh 好多野,使 chóh 好多錢. 黃小姐唔買野. 佢唔想使陳英嘅錢.

LESSON 29

WRITING MATERIAL

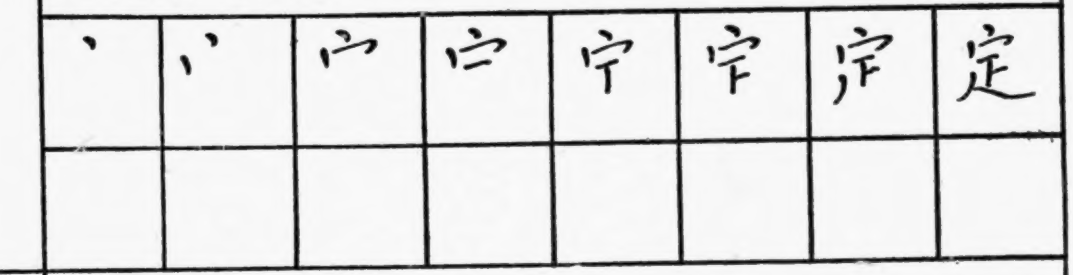
够

Character Number 426
Stroke Number 11
Radical Number 36
夕



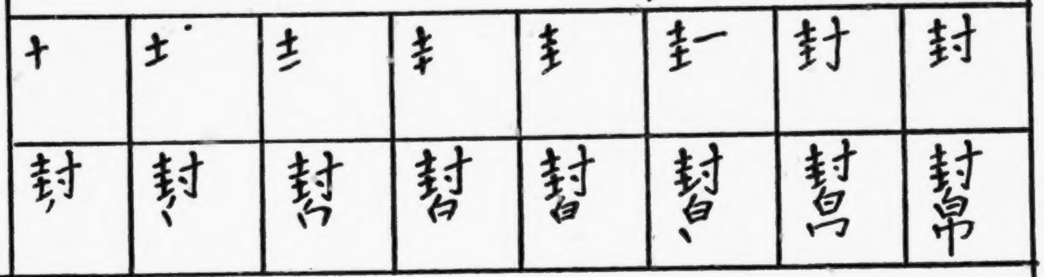
定

Character Number 1147
Stroke Number 8
Radical Number 40
宀



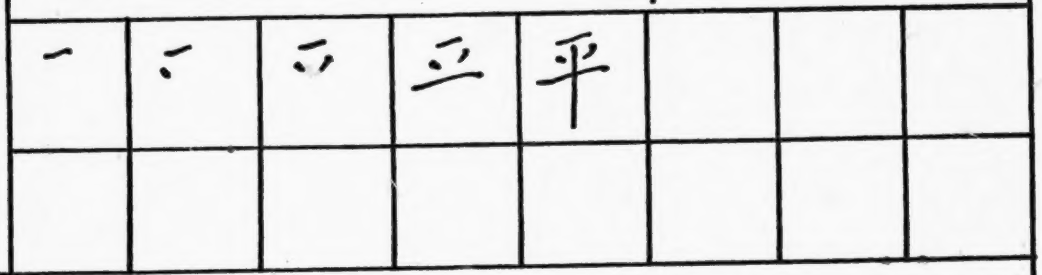
幫

Character Number 891
Stroke Number 17
Radical Number 50
巾



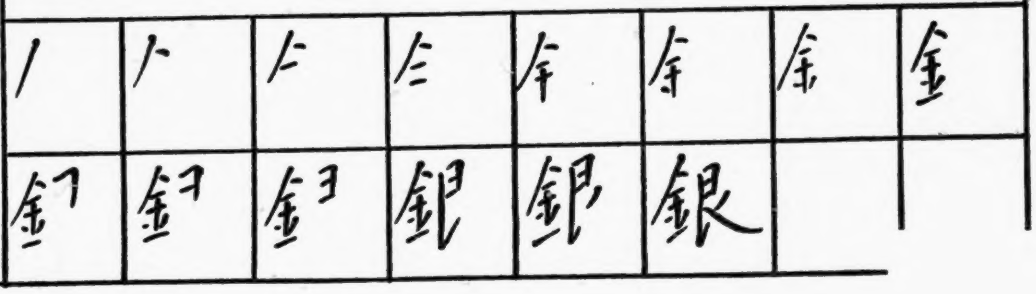
平

Character Number 846
Stroke Number 5
Radical Number 51
干



銀

Character Number 753
Stroke Number 14
Radical Number 167
金



LESSON 30

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Taî-yat
   Taî-î
   Taî-saam
   Taî-seī
   Taî-nğ
   Taî-shâp
   Taî-nğ-shâp
   Taî-yat-paàk

3. P'ó-t'ung laī kóng, tung-pîn haî yaû-pîn.
   Yat-poon laī kóng, sai-pîn haî chóh-pîn.
   Yat-poon laī kóng, naām-pîn haî hâ-pîn.
   P'ó-t'ung laī kóng, pak-pîn haî sheûng-pîn.

2. Tung, naām, sai, pak.
   Ts'īn, haû, chóh, yaû, chung-kaan.
   Sheûng, chung, hâ.
   chóh-shaú-pîn, yaû-shaú-pîn.

4. Yat nīn kè taî-yat kòh uêt haî ching-uêt.
   Yat-kòh uêt kè taî-î yât haî î-hô.
   Yat-kòh laī-paaî kè taî-saam yât haî laĭ-paaî-saam.
   Yat-kòh uêt kè taî-nğ yât haî keî hô?

LESSON 30

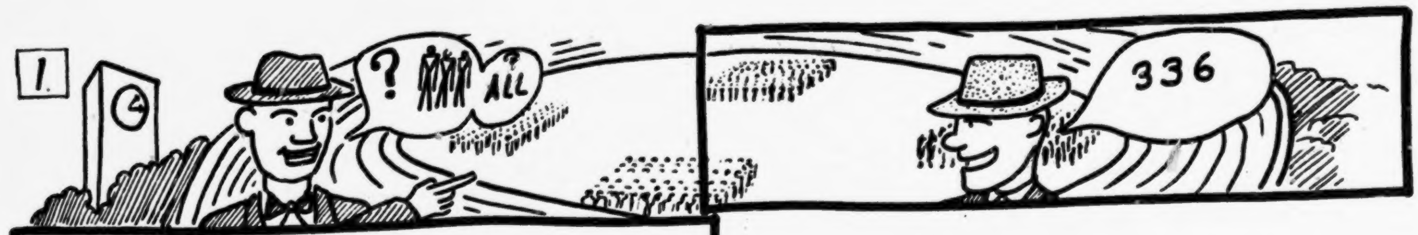
ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

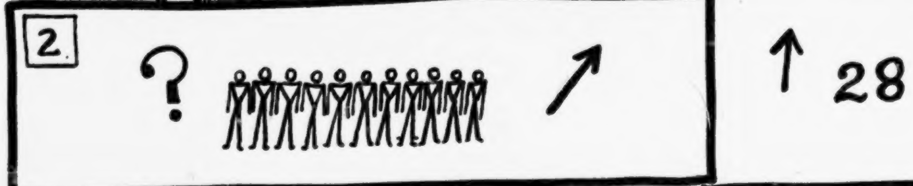
5. Yât-Poón haî Chung-Kwòk kè tung-pîn.
Heung-Kóng haî Chung-Kwòk kè naām-pîn.
Ka-Shaáng haî Meĭ-Kwòk kè sai-pîn.
Saam-Faān-Shĭ haî ni-shuè kè pak-pîn.

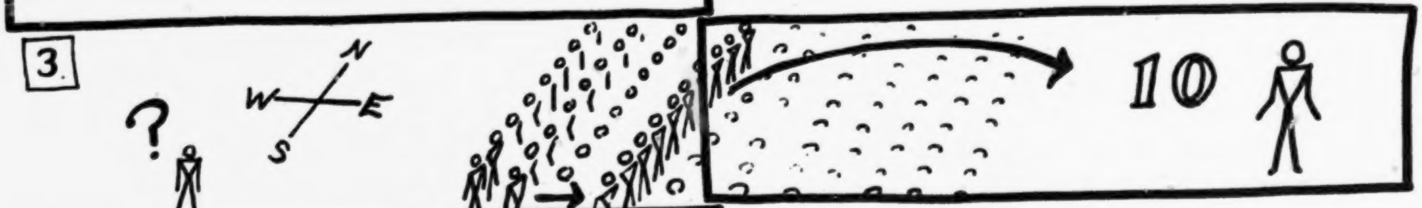
6. Ch'ān-Ying ts'ŏh haî Wōng-Î kè chóh-shaú-pîn.
Ngŏh ts'ŏh haî neĭ kè yaû-shaú-pîn.
K'uĭ k'eĭ haî ngŏh kè ts'īn-pîn.
Pin-kòh k'eĭ haî k'uĭ kè haû-pîn?

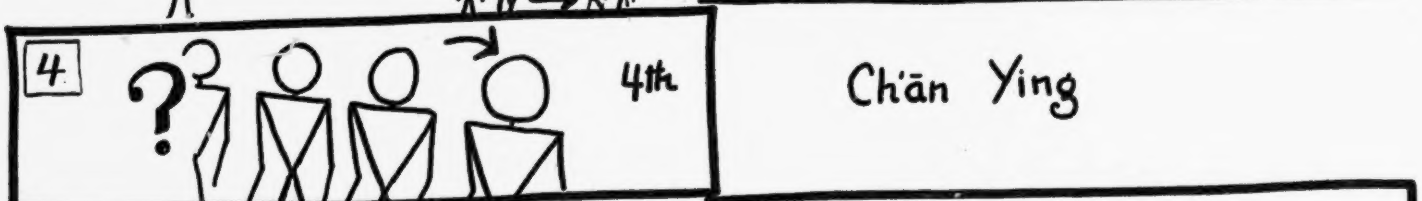
7. Ngŏh k'eĭ haî k'uĭ t'ūng neĭ kè chung-kaan.
Pin-kòh k'eĭ haî k'uĭ t'ūng neĭ kè chung-kaan?
Ch'ān-Yīng ts'ŏh haî Cheung-Saam t'ūng Wōng-Î kè chung-kaan.
Pin-kòh k'eĭ haî ni-kaan fōng* kè chung-kaan?

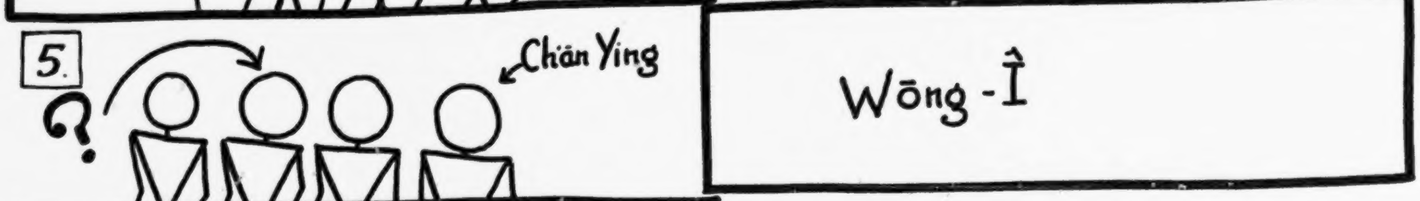
LESSON 30

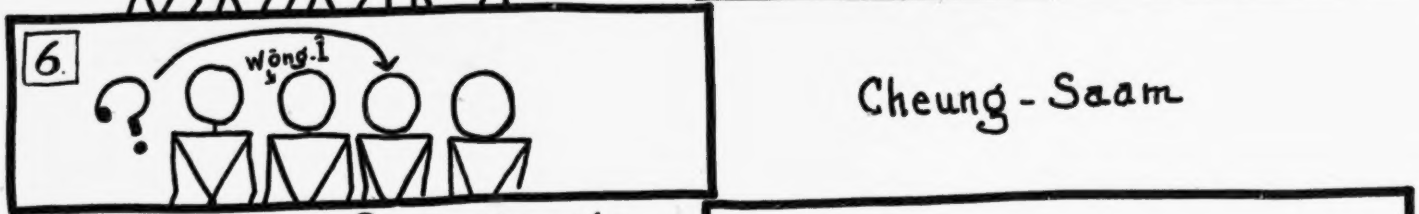

1.
? ALL
336

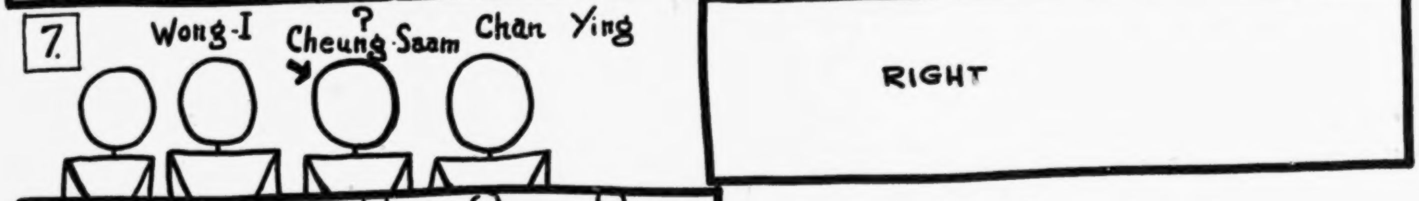

2.
?
↑ 28

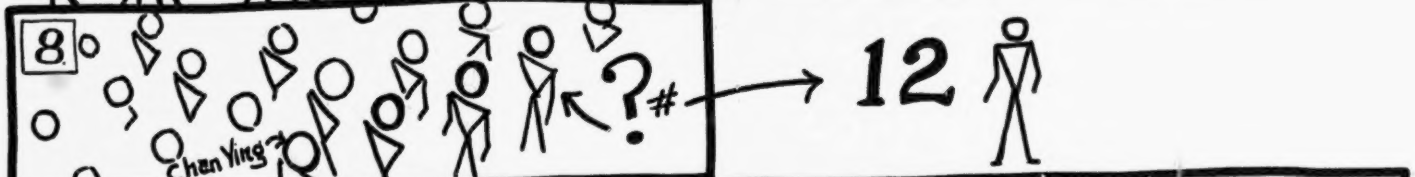

3.
?
N
W
E
S
10

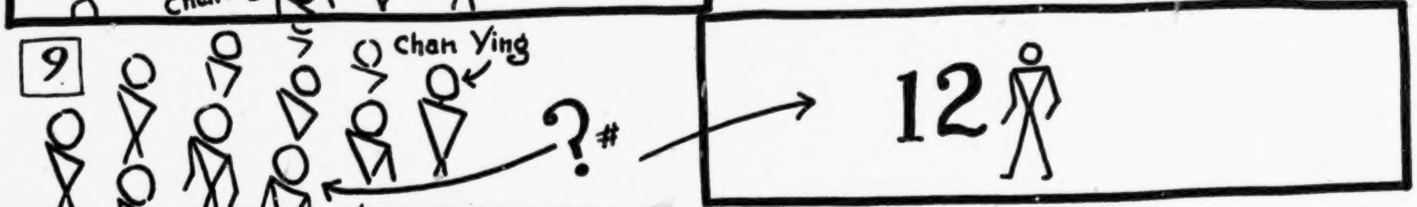

4.
?
4th
Chān Ying

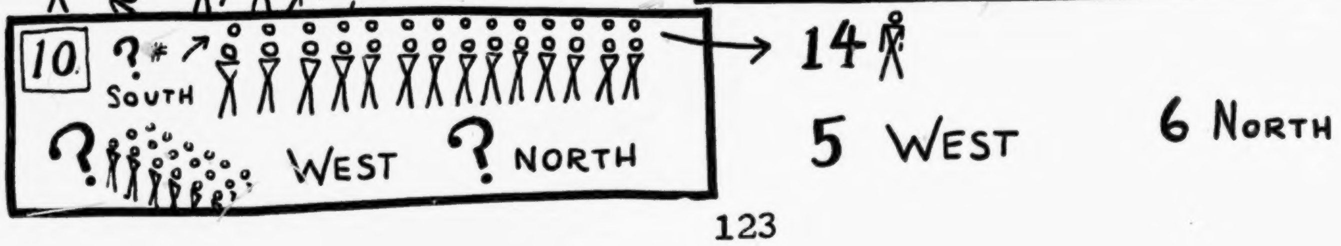

5.
?
Chān Ying
Wōng-Î


6.
?
Wōng-Î
Cheung-Saam


7.
Wong-I
?
Cheung-Saam
Chān Ying
RIGHT


8.
Chan Ying
?#
12


9.
Chan Ying
?#
12


10.
?#
SOUTH
14
?
WEST
?
NORTH
5 WEST
6 NORTH

LESSON 30

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Hōh Kaaủ-Koon, ngŏh-teî kẻ wân-tûng-ooî* tsaû-laî hoi-ch'î, ngŏh seúng yaŭ ti yĕ mân neī.

B: Hó ả, Ch'ān Haaû-Cheúng.

A: Ngŏh-teî chúng-kûng yaŭ keî-toh yān ts'aam-ka ni kỏh wân-tûng-ooî* ả?

B: Ngŏh-teî chúng-kûng yaŭ saam-paảk saam-shâp-lûk yān ts'aam-ka ni kỏh wân-tûng-ooî*.

A: K'uī-teî ī-king tỏ ch'aî meî ả?

B: K'uī-teî ī-king tỏ ch'aî lả!

2. A: Ni kỏh wân-tûng ch'eūng chúng-kûng yaŭ keî-toh p'aaî yān k'eī haî tô ả?

B: Ni kỏh wân-tûng-ch'eūng chúng-kûng yaŭ yâ-paảt p'aaî yān k'eī haî tô.

3. A: Tung-pîn taî-seî p'aaî yaŭ keî-toh kỏh wân-tûng-uēn ả?

B: Tung-pîn taî-seî-p'aaî yaŭ shâp-kỏh wân-tûng-uēn.

4. A: Tung-pîn taî-seî-p'aaî yaû-pîn taî-yat-kỏh yān kiủ-tsô mi-yĕ meng* ả?

B: Tung-pîn taî-seî p'aaî yaû-pîn taî-yat-kỏh yān kiủ-tsô Ch'ān-Ying.

5. A: Ch'ān-Ying kẻ yaû-shaú-pîn taî-î-kỏh yān haî pin-kỏh ả?

B: Ch'ān-Ying kẻ yaû-shaú-pîn taî-î-kỏh yān haî Wōng-î.

6. A: Wōng-î kẻ tsóh-shaú-pîn taî-yat-kỏh yān haî pin-kỏh ả?

B: Wōng-î kẻ tsóh-shaú-pîn taî-yat-kỏh yān haî Cheung-Saam.

7. A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, Cheung-Saam haî Ch'ān-Ying t'ūng Wōng-î kẻ chung-kaan, haî mả?

B: Haî, Cheung-Saam haî Ch'ān-Ying t'ūng Wōng-î kẻ chung-kaan.

8. A: Ch'ān-Ying kẻ haû-pîn taî-saam-p'aaî yaŭ keî-toh kỏh wân-tûng-uēn ả?

B: Ch'ān-Ying kẻ haû-pîn taî-saam-p'aaî yaŭ shâp-î-kỏh wân-tûng-uēn.

LESSON 30

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

9. A: Ch'ān-Ying kè ts'ìn-pîn taî-î-p'aaî yaŭ keî-toh kòh wân-tûng-uen å?

B: Ch'an Ying kè ts'ìn-pîn taî-î-p'aaî yîk-to yaŭ shâp-î-kòh wân-tûng-uēn.

10. A: Naām-pîn kè haû-pîn taî-î-p'aaî yaŭ keî-toh yān?

B: Naām-pîn kè haû-pîn taî-î-p'aaî yaŭ shâp-seî-kòh yān.

A: Sai-pîn yaŭ keî-toh p'aaî yān, pak-pîn yaŭ keî-toh p'aaî yān?

B: Sai-pîn chí-haî yaŭ nğ-p'aaî yān, pak-pîn yaŭ lûk-p'aaî yān.

LESSON 30

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Instructor Hōh, our athletic meet is about to start; I wish to ask you something.

B: Fine, Principal Ch'ān.

A: Altogether how many of our people participate in this athletic meet?

B: We have a total of 336 people participating in this meet.

A: Have they all arrived yet?

B: Yes, they have all arrived.

2. A: Altogether how many rows of people are standing here on this athletic field?

B: There are altogether 28 rows of people standing here on this athletic field.

3. A: How many athletes are there in the 4th row of the east side?

B: There are 10 athletes in the 4th row of the east side.

4. A: What is the name of the first person on the right of the 4th row of the east side?

B: The first man on the right of the 4th row, east, is called Ch'ān-Ying.

5. A: Who is the second person to the right of Ch'ān-Ying?

B: The second man to the right of Ch'ān-Ying is Wōng-Î.

6. A: Who is the first person to the left of Wōng-Î?

B: The first man to the left of Wōng-Î is Cheung-Saam.

7. A: If that's the case, Cheung-Saam is in between Ch'ān-Ying and Wōng-Î, is that right?

B: Right, Cheung-Saam is in between Ch'ān-Ying and Wōng-Î.

8. A: How many athletes are there in the 3rd row back of Ch'ān-Ying?

B: There are 12 athletes in the 3rd row behind Ch'ān-Ying.

LESSON 30

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

9. A: How many athletes are there in the 2nd row in front of Ch'ān-Ying?

B: There are also 12 athletes in the 2nd row in front of Ch'ān-Ying.

10. A: How many people are there in the 2nd row to the rear on the south?

B: There are 14 persons in the 2nd row to the rear on the south.

A: How many rows of people are there on the west, how many on the north?

B: There are only 5 rows of people on the west, and there are 6 on the north.

LESSON 30

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Sin-shaang, neĭ hó-ts'z̆ ngŏh kè p'āng-yaŭ Ch'ān Sin-Shaang, haî mà?

   B: M-haî, ngŏh sîng Leĭ.

   A: Keî hó la-mà, Leĭ Sin-Shaang?

   B: Hó hó, kwaî sîng à?

   A: Ngŏh sîng Kwaan, ngŏh haî Meĭ-Kwòk Yān.

2. A: Neĭ haî Chung-Kwòk Yān, haî mà?

   B: Haî là, ngŏh haî Chung-Kwòk Yān.

3. A: Neĭ haî Chung-Kwòk pin shuè yān?

   B: Ngŏh haî Chung-Kòwk naām-pîn yān, ngŏh haî Kwóng-Tung yān.

4. A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, tsik-haî wâ, Kwóng-Tung haî Chung-Kwòk kè naam-pîn, haî mà?

   B: Haî là, Kwóng-Tung haî Chung-Kwòk kè naām-pîn.

5. A: Neĭ keî shî laî Meĭ-Kwòk kè sai-pîn kà?

   B: Ngŏh haî taaî-ts'în-nîn laî Meĭ-Kwòk kè sai-pîn kè.

6. A: Neĭ yaŭ keî hing-taî à?

   B: Ngŏh yaŭ seî hing-taî, yat-kòh taaî-ló, leŭng-kòh saî-ló.

7. A: Kóm, neĭ haî taî keî à?

   B: Táng yat-chân, ôh, ngŏh haî taî-î.

8. A: Neĭ kè taî-î saî-ló î-ka haî pin shuè à?

   B: K'uĭ î-ka haî Meĭ-Kwòk kè tung-pîn.

9. A: Neĭ î-ka huî pin shuè à?

   B: Î-ka ngŏh huî paan-fōng* sheŭng-t'ōng.

LESSON 30

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. A: Pin kaan haî neĭ kè paan-fōng* à?

    B: Neĭ t'ai-hă, kóh kaan taaî-laĭ-t'ōng yaû-shaú pîn taî-î-kaan paan-fōng* haî là!

11. A: Ī-ka neĭ sheŭng taî keî t'ōng à?

    B: Ī-ka ngŏh sheŭng taî-saam t'ōng.

12. A: Kam-yât neĭ iù sheŭng pin keî t'ōng à?

    B: Kam-yât ngŏh iù sheŭng taî-yat t'ōng, taî-saam t'ōng, taî-seî t'ōng t'ŭng taî-lûk t'ōng.

13. A: Ch'îng mân neĭ, î-ka k'eĭ haî taaî-laĭ-t'ōng ts'în-pîn kè haî pin-kòh à?

    B: Ī-ka k'eĭ haî taaî-laĭ-t'ōng ts'în-pîn kè haî ngŏh kè hôk-shaang.

14. A: Ī-ka k'eĭ haî neĭ haû-pîn kè haî pin-kòh à?

    B: Táng ngŏh t'ai-hă, k'uĭ haî ngŏh kè t'ŭng-sẑ Wōng Sin-Shaang.

15. A: Wōng Sin-Shaang î-ka chuê haî pin shuè à?

    B: K'uĭ chuê haî taî-saam kaai taî yat-ts'in-nğ-paàk-seî-shâp-î hô.

LESSON 30

WORD LIST

1.	wân-tûng ooî*	athletic meet, sport contest
2.	tsaû-laī	about to, soon, presently
3.	haaû-cheúng	principal, school master
4.	ts'aam-ka	to participate, take part
5.	ĭ-king	already
6.	tỏ	to arrive (at), reach; to
7.	ts'aī	all, altogether, even
8.	meî	not yet, yet
9.	wân-tûng ch'eūng	athletic field, sports arena
10.	p'aaī	row, platoon (military); to arrange
11.	tung-pîn	east, east side
12.	wân-tûng uēn	athlete, sprotsman
13.	yaû-pîn, yaû-shaú pîn	right, right hand side
14.	tsóh-pîn, tsóh-shaú pîn	left, left hand side
15.	chung-kaan	middle, center, in between
16.	haû-pîn	rear, behind, back
17.	ts'în-pîn	front, before, in front of
18.	naām-pîn	south, south side
19.	sai-pîn	west, west side
20.	pak-pîn	north, north side

LESSON 30

READING MATERIAL

297

開 hoi: to open; begin; enumerate

開張 hoi-cheung: to open a shop

開身 hoi-shan: to set sail

開工 hoi kung: to begin work

開會 hoi coi:* to hold a meeting

340

已 ǐ: finished; complete

已經 ǐ-king: already; past time

不得已 pat-tak-ǐ: compelled

463

經 king: to pass through or by; a classic.

經過 king-kwòh: to pass through or by; to undergo.

經手 king-shaú: handled by.

經理 king-leǐ: to manage manager.

經驗 king-îm: experienc

經濟 king-tsaì: economic

聖經 shing-king: The Bible.

經書 king-shue: Ch clas

開 已 經 経

開 已 經

开 已 经

1375

如 uē: as; like; if.

如果 uē-kwóh: if ; if really.

如意 uē-ì: as you wish.

如何 uē-hōh: how then?; why?.

566

果 kwóh: result; actual ; fruit in general.

如果 uē-kwóh: if; if really so.

若果 yeâk-kwóh: if; supposing.

因果 yan-kwóh: cause & effect.

蘋果 píng-kwóh: apple.

如 果

如 果

如 果

LESSON 30

READING MATERIAL

1427

運 wân: to transport; to turn; turn of destiny or fate.

運貨 wân fòh: to transport goods.

運費 wân fài: freight.

運動會 wân-tûng-ooî:* athletic meet.

運動 wân-tûng: to exercise; to canvass.

1360

動 tûng: to move; to influence; to affect.

動產 tûng ch'aán: movable property.

行動 hāng-tûng: behavior; conduct.

運動 wân-tûng: physical exercise; to influence.

動身 tûng shan: to start

792

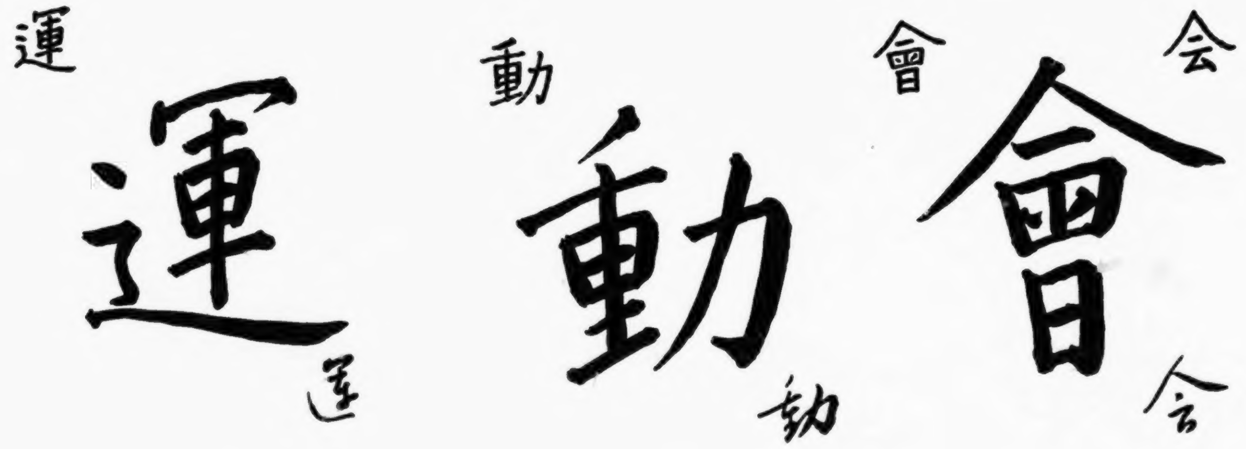
會 ooî: to join together; a society; meeting; guild.

入會 yâp ooî:* to join a society.

會客 ooî haàk: to meet a guest.

國會 kwòk-ooî:* parliament.

會 ooǐ: to understand.



1212

齊 ts'aī: even; equal; all; a class.

不齊整 pat ts'aī-chíng: uneven; untidy; deficient.

齊心 ts'aī-sam: of one mind; unanimous.

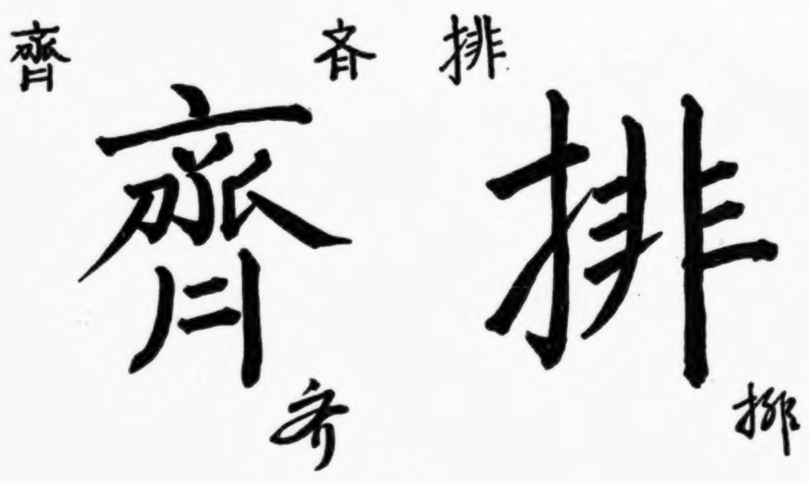
一齊 yat-ts'aī: all together.

810

排 p'aaī: a rank; a set· to arrange; to exclude.

排列 p'aaī-lît: to arrange; to set in array.

排斥 p'aaī-ch'ik: to expel; to exclude.



LESSON 30

READING MATERIAL

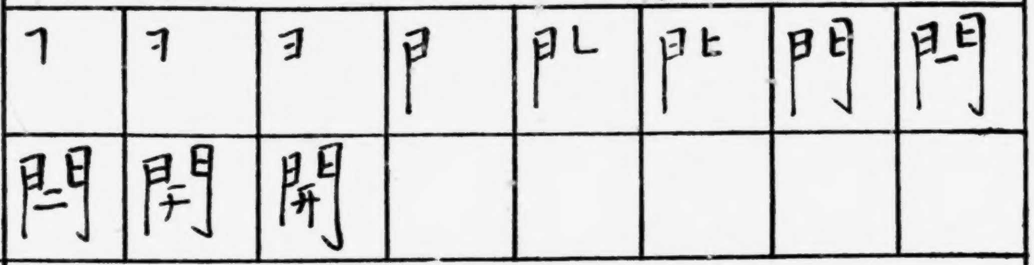
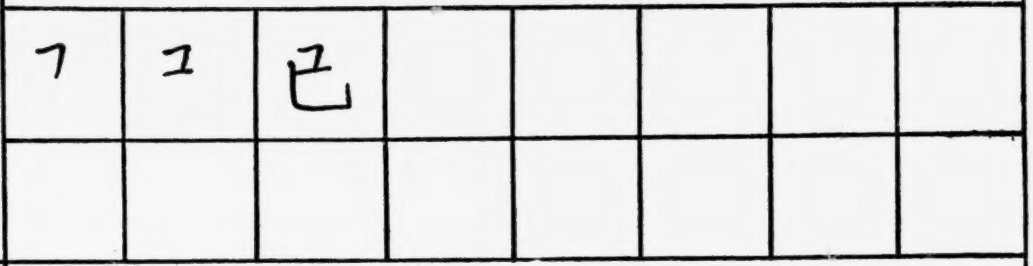
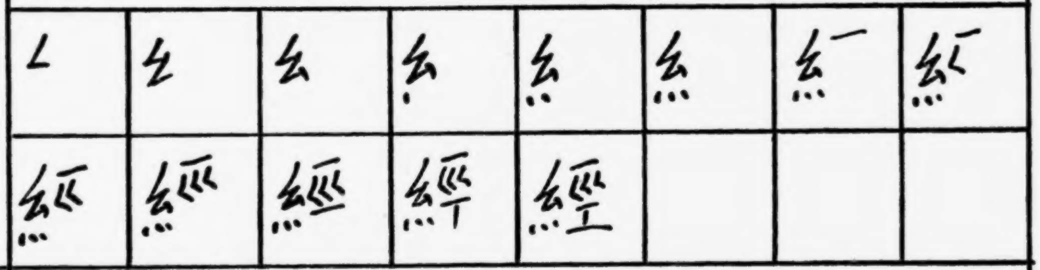
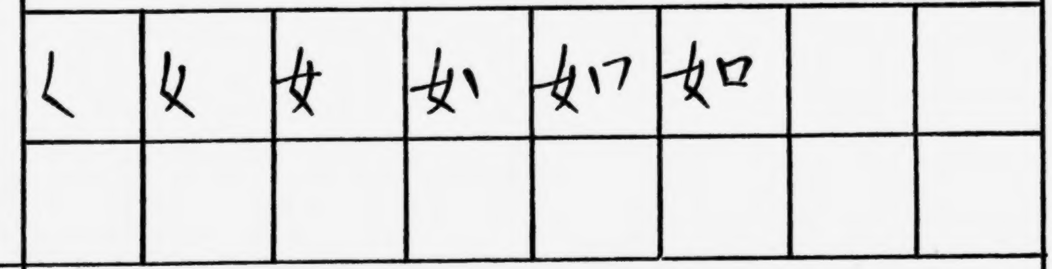
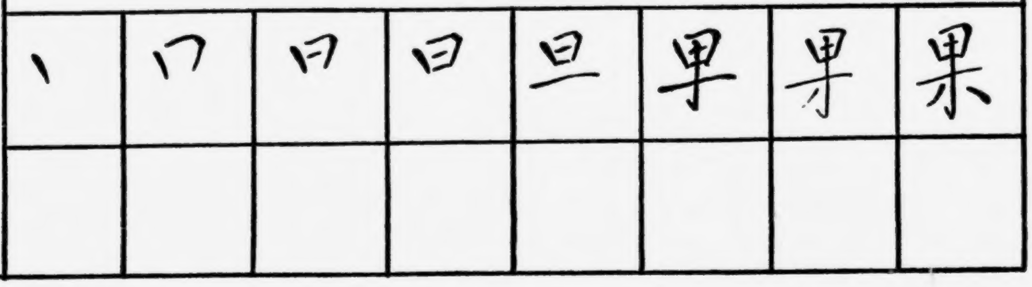
今日美國陸軍語言學校開運動會. 先生同學生都 hóh- 以去 ts'aam-ka 呢個運動會. Kwaan 先生, 李上士, 同李上-Waì 都去 ts'aam-ka. 總共有三百幾個運動-uēn .

今日朝頭早八點鐘黃小姐同陳英嘅父親都去睇呢個運動會. 佢地喺八點半 yâp 去運動 ch'eūng 佢地坐喺 ch'eūng 嘅 sai pîn . 運動-uēn 已經 tò 齊 là . 佢地睇見運動 ch'eūng 嘅東 pîn 有幾排人. 喺第四排嘅右 pîn 第一個人係陳英. 喺陳英右 shaú pîn kóh 個人係張三. 喺張三右 shaú pîn kóh 個人係黃二. 如果係敢, 即係張三 k'eĭ 喺陳英同黃二嘅中間 .

而家够鐘 là ; 運動會開始 là . 個個運動-uēn 都好本事. 呢個係一個好好嘅運動會.

LESSON 30

WRITING MATERIAL

開	Character Number 297 Radical Number 169 Stroke Number 11 門 
已	Character Number 340 Radical Number 49 Stroke Number 3 已 
經	Character Number 463 Radical Number 120 Stroke Number 13 糹，糸 
如	Character Number 1375 Radical Number 38 Stroke Number 6 女 
果	Character Number 566 Radical Number 75 Stroke Number 8 木 

LESSON 31

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Neĭ keî-shī haì ni-shuè kà?
K'uĭ keî-shī huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ kà?
Ngŏh-teî keî-shī tong-ping kà?
Neĭ-teî keî-shī sheŭng-t'ōng kà?

2. Ngŏh foô-shûk taî-yat-kwan, taî-î-sz, taî-saam-t'uēn.
K'uĭ-teî foô-shûk taî-lûk-kwan, taî-seì-sz, taî-nğ-t'uēn.
Neĭ-teî foô-shûk taî-î-kwan, taî-paàt-sz, taî-shâp-t'uēn.
K'uĭ-teî to-haî foô-shûk taî-paàt-kwan.

3. Ngŏh kam-yât t'aî-chóh leŭng ts'z̀ heì.
K'uĭ k'ām-yât shîk-chóh leŭng ts'z̀ maăn-faân.
Neĭ kam-maăn huì-chóh saam ts'z̀ kaai.
K'uĭ ni-kòh laĭ-paaì maaĭ-chóh ts'at ts'z̀ yĕ.

4. Ngŏh t'aî-chóh heì chi-haû, ngŏh faan uk-k'eî.
K'uĭ shîk-chóh faân chi-haû, k'uĭ huì kaai.
Neĭ t'aî-chóh heì chi-haû, neĭ huì pin-shuè à?
K'uĭ shîk-chóh faân chi-haû, k'uĭ huì pin-shuè ne?

5. Ngŏh t'aî heì kè shī-haû, ngŏh kìn-tó k'uĭ.
Ngŏh shîk faân kè shī-haû, ngŏh t'aî-tó k'uĭ.
Ngŏh faan uk-k'uî kè shī-haû, ngŏh kìn-m̄-tó k'uĭ.
Ngŏh yám ch'ā kè shī-haû, ngŏh t'aî-m̄-tó k'uĭ.

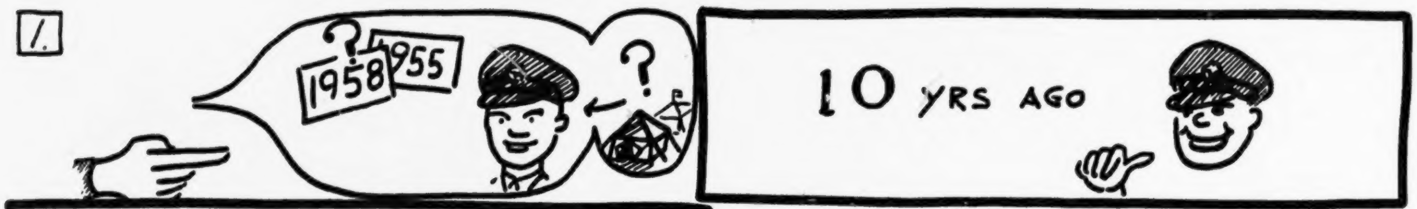
LESSON 31

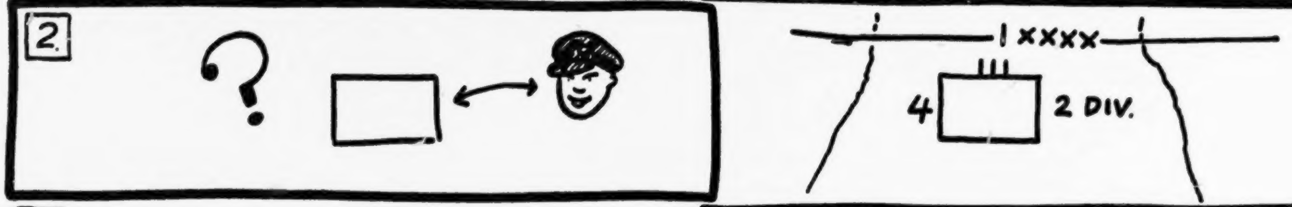
ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTRUAL PATTERNS

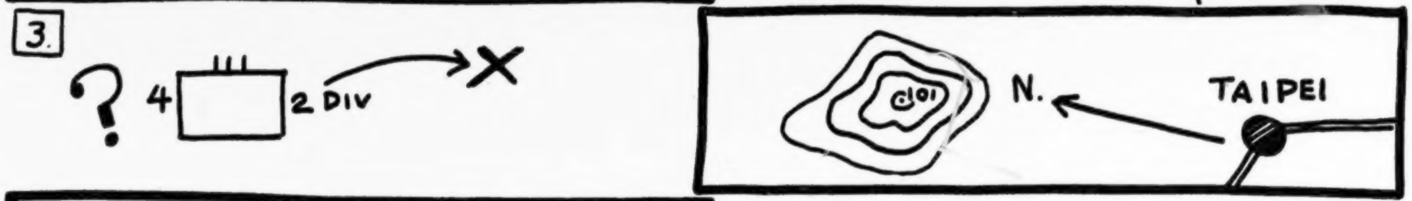
6. Neĭ-teî yat-ts'z̀ hóh-ĭ maaĭ keî-toh poón shue?
Ngŏh-teî yat-ts'z̀ hóh-ĭ yám keî-toh pooi ch'ā?
K'uĭ-teî yat-ts'z̀ hóh-ĭ haāng keî-toh leĭ?
K'uĭ-teî yat-ts'z̀ hóh-ĭ haāng yat-paàk leĭ.

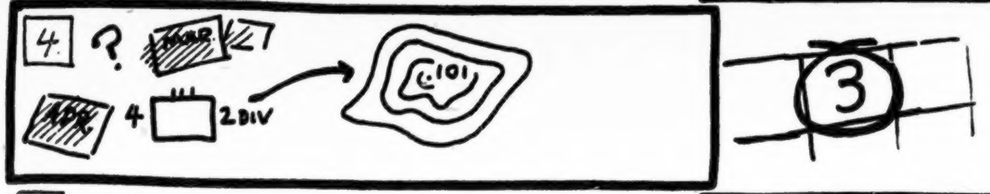
7. Ngŏh waâk-chế taî-î-kòh uêt huì Meĭ-Kwòk.
Ngŏh waâk-chế taî-î-kòh laĭ-paaì huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ.
K'uĭ waâk-chế taî-î nīn laî ni-shuè.
K'uĭ-teî waâk-chế taî-î yât laî ni-shuè.

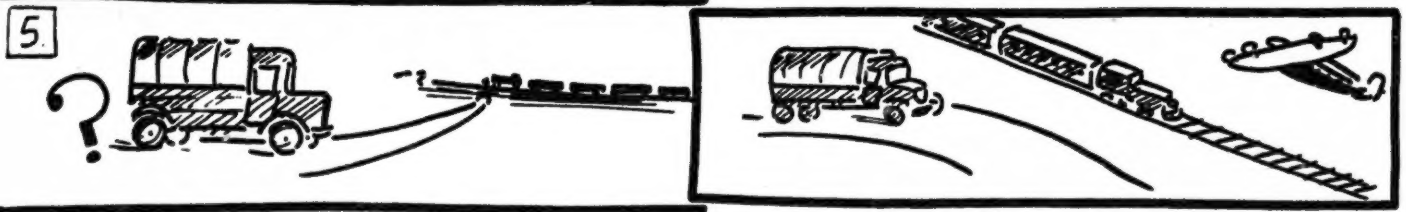
LESSON 31

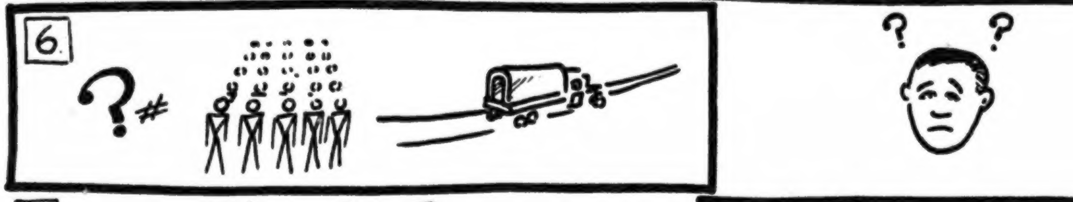

1.
?
1958
1955
?
10 YRS AGO

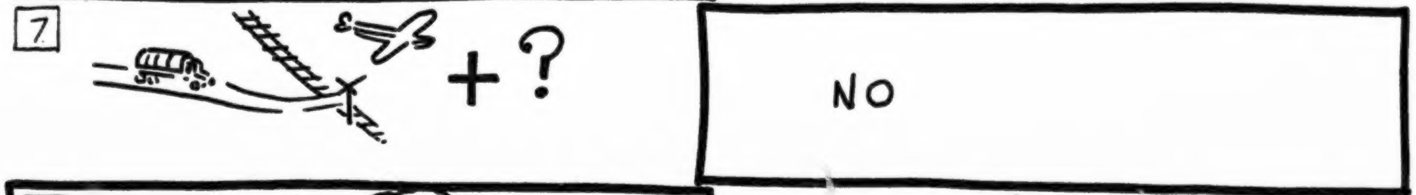

2.
?
1 XXXX
4
2 DIV.

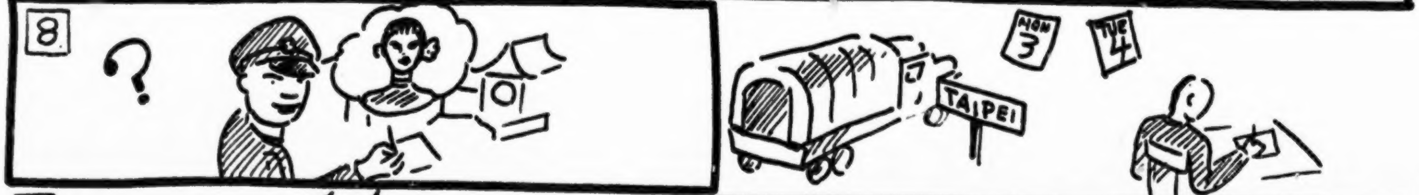

3.
?
4
2 DIV
101
N.
TAIPEI

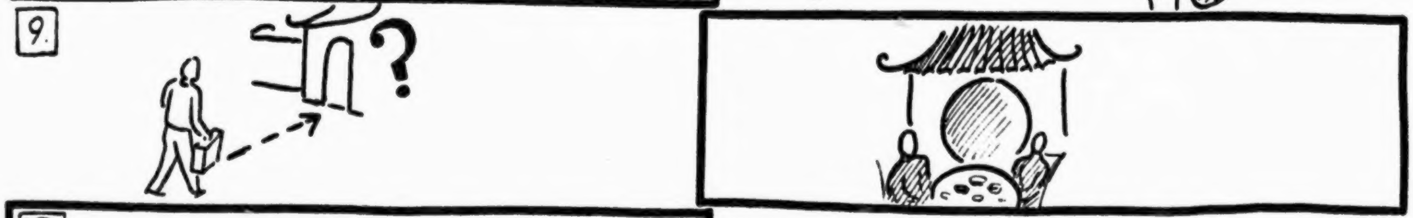

4.
?
4
2 DIV
101
3

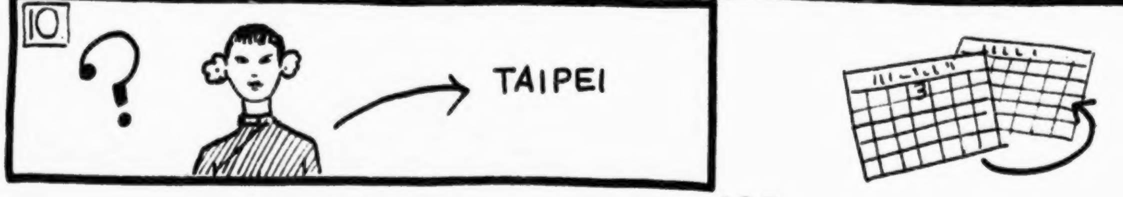

5.
?


6.
?#
? ?


7.
+ ?
NO


8.
?
MON 3
TUE 4
TAIPEI


9.
?


10.
?
TAIPEI
3

LESSON 31

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Lŏ Wōng*, neī keî-shî tong ping kả?

B: Ngŏh haî shâp-nîn ts'în tong ping kẻ.

A: Neī tsô ping tsô-chóh kỏm noî, neī chung-î kwan-yān kẻ shaang-oôt mả?

B: Ngŏh keî chung-î kwan-yān kẻ shaang-oôt.

2. A: Neī foô-shûk mi-yĕ pô-tuî* ả?

B: Ngŏh foô-shûk taî-yat-kwan taî-î-sz taî-seî-t'uēn.

3. A: Neī kẻ pô-tuî* chuẻ-fōng haî pin kỏh teî-fong ả?

B: Ngŏh kẻ pô-tuî*, chuẻ-fōng haî T'oî-Pak-Shǐ pak-pîn kẻ taî-yat-lîng-yat-hô shaan.

4. A: Neī kẻ pô-tuî* keî-shî tiû huî kóh tô kả?

B: Ngŏh kẻ pô-tuî* hó-ts'ž haî ni kỏh uêt saam-hô peî tiû huî kóh tô kẻ.

5. A: Neī-teî tîm-yeûng* wân neī-teî kẻ pô-tuî* huî kóh shuẻ?

B: Ngŏh-teî yûng fóh-ch'e, fòh-ch'e t'ūng fei-kei wân ngŏh-teî kè pô-tuî* huì kóh shuè.

6. A: Neī-teî yat ts'ž hóh-ī wân keî-toh yān ả?

B: Ngŏh m̂-haî keî keì-tak lả!

7. A: Neī-teî chûng yaŭ-mŏ taî-î-chúng paân-faảt ả?

B: Mŏ, ngŏh-teî mŏ taî-î-chúng paân-faảt.

8. A: Neī tỏ-chóh T'oî-Pak-Shī chi-haû, neī keî shî sé sùn peî neī kẻ t'aaî-t'aaî* ả?

B: Ngŏh tỏ-chóh T'oî-Pak-Shī chi-haû, ngŏh taî-î-yât sé sùn peî ngŏh kẻ t'aaî-t'aaî*.

9. A: Neī tỏ T'oî-Pak kẻ shî-haû, neī chuê haî pin shuẻ ả?

B: Ngŏh tỏ T'oî-Pak kẻ shî-haû, ngŏh chuê haî yat-kỏh p'āng-yaŭ kẻ uk-k'eî.

LESSON 31

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: Neĭ kẻ t'aaî-t'aaî* seúng keî shî laî T'oî-Pak ả?

B: Ngŏh kẻ t'aaî-t'aaî* waâk-ché taî-î-kỏh uêt laî T'oî-Pak.

LESSON 31

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Say Wōng, when did you become a soldier?

B: I became a soldier ten years ago.

A: You have been a soldier so long, how do you like military life?

B: I am quite fond of a soldier's life.

2. A: What unit are you attached to?

B: I am attached to the 4th Regiment, 2nd Division, 1st Army.

3. A: At what place is your unit stationed?

B: My unit is stationed at Hill #101, north of Taipei.

4. A: When did your unit move there?

B: It seems that my unit was transferred there on the 3rd of this month.

5. A: How did you move your unit over there?

B: We used trucks, train, and airplanes to transport our unit there.

6. A: How many men can you transport each time?

B: I don't quite remember.

7. A: Do you have any other methods?

B: No, we have no other methods.

8. A: After you arrived in Taipei, when did you write to your wife?

B: The next day after I arrived in Taipei I wrote to my wife.

9. A: When you arrived in Taipei, where did you stay?

B: When I arrived in Taipei, I stayed at a friend's home.

10. A: When does your wife wish to come to Taipei?

B: Perhaps my wife will come to Taipei next month.

LESSON 31

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Lŏ Wōng*, ngŏh-teî seung-sik-chóh yaŭ leŭng nîn lả, haî mà?

B: Haî ả, ngŏh-teî seung-sik-chóh yaŭ leŭng nîn lả!

A: Ngŏh sik-chóh neĭ kỏm noî, neĭ ĭ-ts'în tsô mi-yĕ, ngŏh to m̂-keỉ-tak lả!

B: Kỏm faaỉ m̂-keỉ-tak la!

2. A: Neĭ tong ping tong-chóh keỉ noî ả?

B: Neĭ kóng mi-yĕ wâ*, ngŏh m̂-mîng-paâk neĭ kóng mi-yĕ?

3. A: Ngŏh wâ, neĭ tong ping tong-chóh keỉ noî?

B: Neĭ koó-hă la!

4. A: Neĭ tảng ngŏh koó, haî mả? Ngŏh koó, neĭ tong ping tong-chóh nğ nîn kỏm sheûng-hâ*.

B: M̂-ngaam, neĭ koó-tak m̂-ngaam. Ngŏh tong ping tong-chóh ĭ-king sēng shâp nîn lả!

5. A: Neĭ hoi-ch'ỉ tong ping kẻ shî-haû, neĭ haỉ pin kaan kwan-haaû tûk shue ả?

B: Ngŏh hoi-ch'ỉ tong ping kẻ shî-haû, ngŏh haỉ yat-kaan lûk-kwan kwan-koon hôk-haaû tûk shue.

6. A: Neĭ haỉ kóh kaan lûk-kwan kwan-koon hôk-haaû tûk-chóh keỉ noî ả?

B: Ngŏh haỉ kóh-tô tûk-chóh sēng saam nîn.

7. A: Neĭ haỉ kóh tô tûk-chóh saam nîn chi-haû, neĭ yaû huỉ pin shuè à?

B: Ngŏh haỉ kóh tô tûk-chóh saam nîn chi-haû, ngŏh peî tiû huỉ po-tuî* shuè tsô sẑ.

8. A: Kóh-chân-shî, neĭ foô-sûk mi-yĕ pô-tuî* ả?

B: Kóh-chân-shî; ngŏh foô-sûk taî-saam kwan, taî-ts'at sz, taî-shâp-kaú t'uēn.

9. A: Kóh-chân-shî, neĭ kẻ pô-tuî* chuẻ-fōng haỉ pin shuẻ ả?

LESSON 31

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

B: Ngŏh m̄-keì-tak keì ts'ing-ts'óh là!

10. A: Yaŭ yān wâ, neĭ yâp kwan-haaû yâp-chóh leŭng ts'z̀, haî mà?

B: Haî, taî-yat ts'z̀ haî shâp nîn ts'în yâp kè, taî-î ts'z̀ haî nğ-nîn ts'în yâp kè.

11. A: Neĭ taî-î ts'z̀ yâp kwan-haaû tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: Kóh-chân-shî, ngŏh haî kwan-haaû tsô kaaù-koon, fàn-lîn san-ping.

12. A: Neĭ haî kwan-haaû tsô kaaù-koon kè shî-haû, haî Mān-Kwòk keì nîn à?

B: Ngŏh haî kwan-haaû tsô kaaù-koon kè shî-haû, hó-ts'ž haî Mān-Kwòk seî-â-î- nîn.

13. A: Kóh-chân-shî, ngŏh yîk-to yaŭ yat-kòh kaû t'ûng-sẑ haî kóh tô.

B: Neĭ kè kaû t'ûng-sẑ kiù-tsô mi-yĕ mēng* à?

14. A: K'uĭ kiù-tsô Cheung-Saam, k'uĭ haî yat-kòh lûk-kwan sheûng-waì. Neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ yîng-sik mà?

B: Ngŏh keì-tak là! Kóh-chân-shî, k'uĭ haî ngŏh kè sheûng-sz.

15. A: Neĭ tsô ping tsô-chóh kòm noî, neĭ kòk-tak kwan-yān kè shaang-oôt tìm à?

B: Ngŏh hó chung-ì kwan-yān kè shaang-oôt.

A: Haî, neĭ kóng-tak hó ngaam.

B: Ĭ-haû tsoì k'ing.

A: Ĭ-haû tsoì k'ing.

LESSON 31

WORD LIST

1.	shang-oôt	life, living, livelihood; to live
2.	foô-shûk	to attach to, belong to
3.	kwan	army
4.	sz	division
5.	t'uēn	regiment
6.	chuè-fōng	to station
7.	teî-fong	place, space
8.	T'oī-Pak Shĭ	Taipei City (in Formosa)
9.	shaan	hill, mountain
10.	peî	by; sign of passive voice
11.	tiû	to transfer, move, shift
12.	wân	to transport, move, ship
13.	yûng	to use, utilize
14.	fòh-ch'e	truck
15.	fóh-ch'e	train
16.	ts'z̀	time (frequency)
17.	chúng (chùng)	kind, category, race; (to plant)
18.	paân-faàt	method, ways and means
19.	...chi-haû	after (time or phrase)...
20.	...kè shī-haû, (shī-haû)	when (time)..,during

LESSON 31

READING MATERIAL

1223

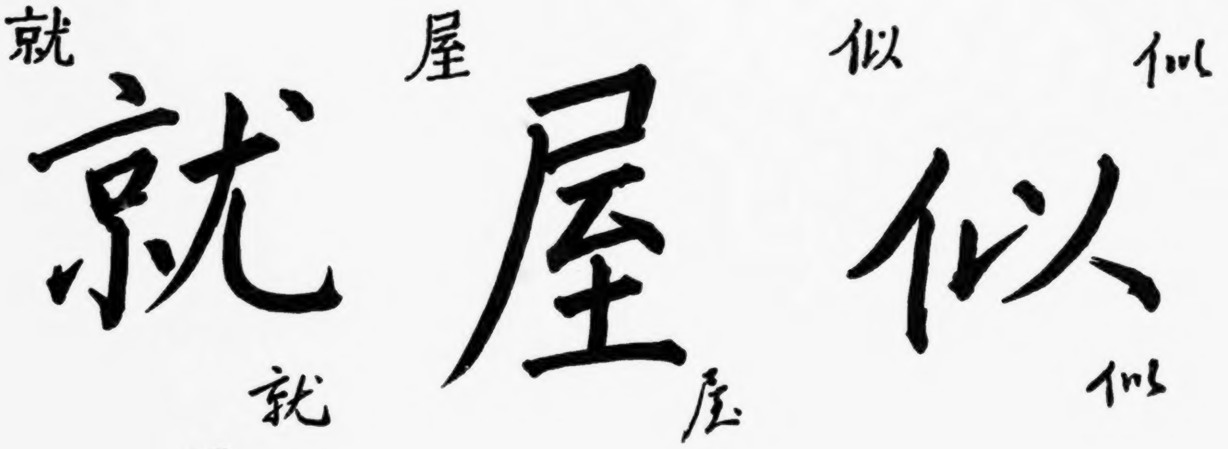
就	tsaû: now; then; forthwith; to submit to; to take up.
就來	tsaû-loī: will come at once.
就職	tsaû chik: to take up office.
就醫	tsaû i: to go to the doctor.

1399

屋	uk: house, dwelling: abode.
屋主	uk chué: landlord; owner of the house.
房屋	fōng-uk: houses; dwellings.

1339

似	ts'ž. like; similar; to resemble; as; as if.
似乎	ts'ž-foo: as though; as if; similar to.
好似	hó-ts'ž: very alike; for instance.

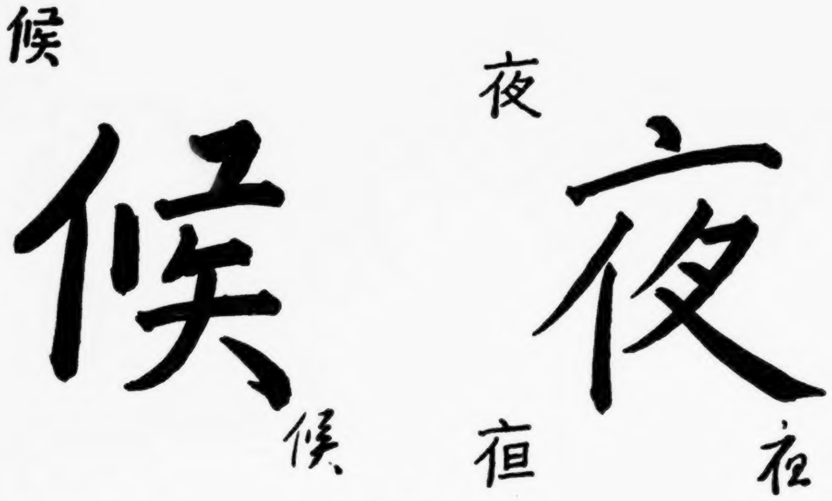


264

候	ɦaû: to wait; a period of time
時候	shī-ɦaû: time
等候	táng-ɦaû: wait for
問候	mân-ɦaû: inquire after; to give one's regard

1468

夜	yê: night; late.
夜晚	yê-maăn: in the night.
夜學	yê hôk: night school.



LESSON 31

READING MATERIAL

797

活 oôt: alive; living; life.

活潑 oôt-p'oòt: lively; brisk.

生活 shaang-oôt: livelihood; employment.

活動 oôt-tûng: movable.

1464

又 yaû: also; yet; again.

又有 yaû yaǔ: there is also.

又來 yaû loǐ: to come again.

68

之 chi: sign of to arrive at; possessive; lit. Chinese

之字形 chi-tsẑ-yǐng: zigzag

活 又 之

活 又 之

活 又 之

193

方 fong: square; region of

四方 sèi-fong: square; all directions

方面 fong-mîn: phase; point of view

方向 fong-hèung: direction

方法 fong-faàt: means; method

838:

被 peî, p'eǐ: to be object of; given to be; sign of passive; bedding; coverlet; quilt.

被告 peî kò: defendant.

被害 peî hoî: be injured.

被單 p'eǐ-taan: a single covering; sheet.

方 被

方 被

方 被

LESSON 31

READING MATERIAL

黄上-Waì 同李上-Waì 都係陳英嘅學生. 佢地就黎去第二處 la. 今晚六點鐘陳英想請佢地黎屋-k'eí 食 t'ōng ts'aan; 同時, 佢地 hóh 以 k'ing hă.

李上-Waì 話, 佢都幾中意軍人嘅生活. 好似, 佢而家喺陸軍語言學校讀書, 讀 chóh 大yeùk 一年kòm 耐. 佢而家識講廣東話, 會讀中文書, 會寫好多中國字 là. 你話唔好 me!?

黄上-Waì 話, 佢亦都幾中意軍人嘅生活. 軍人做學生嘅時候, 有野學, 又 hóh-以見 hă 第二啲地方. 好似, 佢舊時係 foô-shûk 第一軍第二 sz 嘅, 呢個部-tuî chuè-fōng 喺 T'oī-Pak. Kóh chân 時佢去睇 hă kóh-處嘅地方. 喺呢處讀 chóh 一年之後, 佢或者會被 tiû 去第二處; 敢, 佢又 hóh-以見 hă 第二啲地方 la.

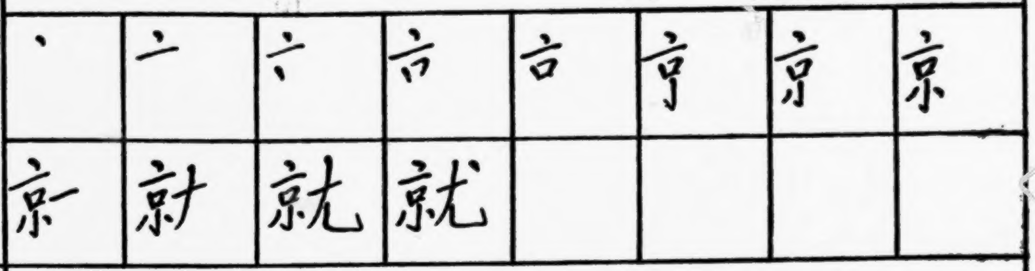
佢地講 chóh 好多野, k'ing tò 好夜. 佢地而家要翻去 fàn-覺 là

LESSON 31

WRITING MATERIAL

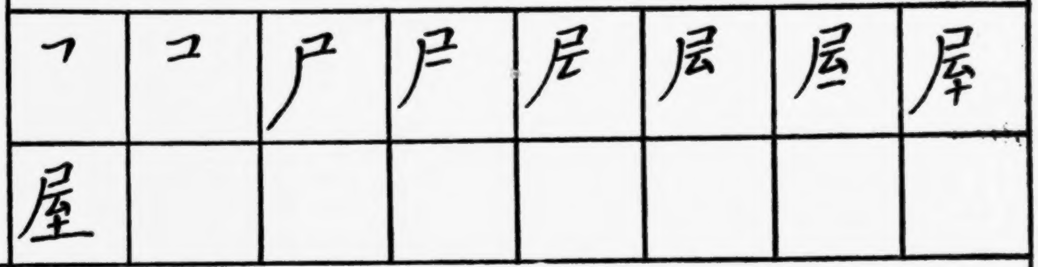
就

Character Number 1223 Radical Number 43
Stroke Number 12 尤，尢



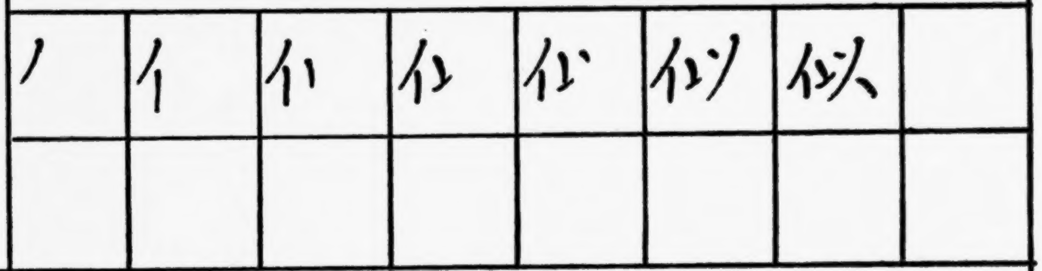
屋

Character Number 1399 Radical Number 44
Stroke Number 9 尸



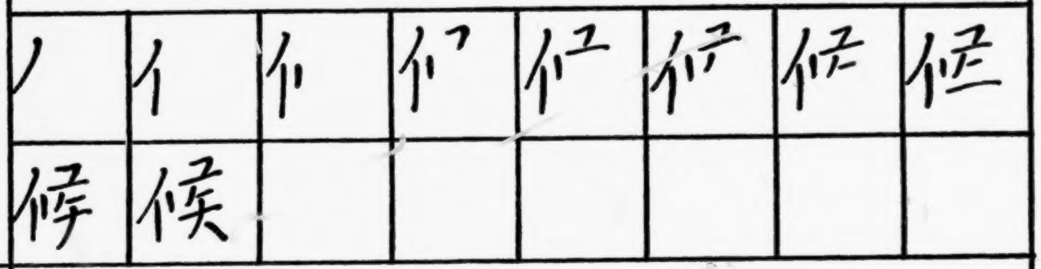
似

Character Number 1339 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 7 亻，人



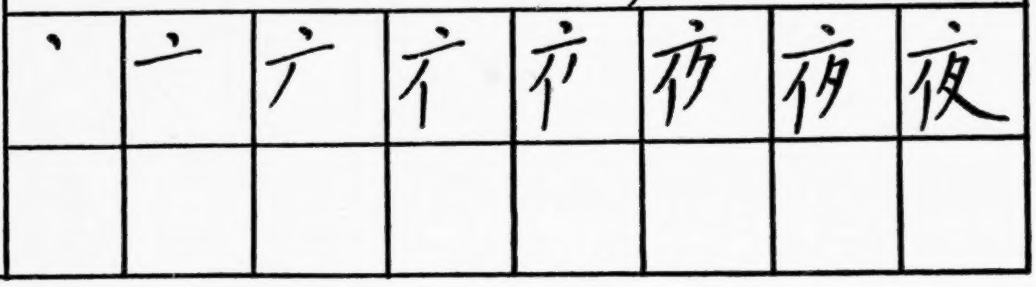
侯

Character Number 264 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 10 亻，人



夜

Character Number 1468 Radical Number 36
Stroke Number 8 夕



LESSON 32

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. K'uĭ ì-ka chuê haî ni-shuè.
   K'uĭ ĭ-ts'ìn chuê haî Yât-Poón.
   K'uĭ ì-ka haî Yât-Poón chuê.
   K'uĭ ĭ-ts'ìn haî ni-shuè chuê.

2. K'uĭ haî Chung-Kwòk tûk-shue tûk-chóh saam-nìn.
   K'uĭ haî Yât-Poón tsô-sẑ tsô-chóh leŭng yât.
   K'uĭ haî ni-shuè sé-tsẑ sé-chóh yat tîm-chung.
   K'uĭ haî kôh-shuè kaaû-shue kaaû-chóh yat-kòh uêt.

3. Ngŏh tsô shaang-ì tsô-chóh hó noî.
   Ngŏh tsô shaang-ì tsô-chóh m̄-haî keî noî.
   Ngŏh tsô shaang-ì tsô-chóh saam-kòh uêt.
   Ngŏh tsô shaang-ì tsô-chóh shēng saam-kòh laĭ-paaì.

4. **Ngŏh tîm-yeûng* tsô chì hó à?**
   Neĭ kóm-yeûng* tsô chì hó.
   Neĭ iù kóm-yeûng* tsô chì hó.
   Ngŏh-teî iù kóm-yeûng* tsô chì tak.

5. **K'uĭ t'ing-yât chì faan-leî.**
   Ngŏh haû-yât chì huì.
   Neĭ keî-shì chì kóng?
   Ngŏh shîk-chóh faân chì kóng.

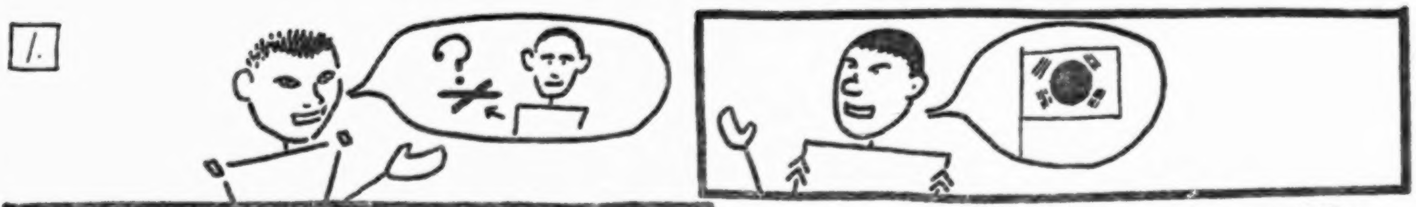
LESSON 32

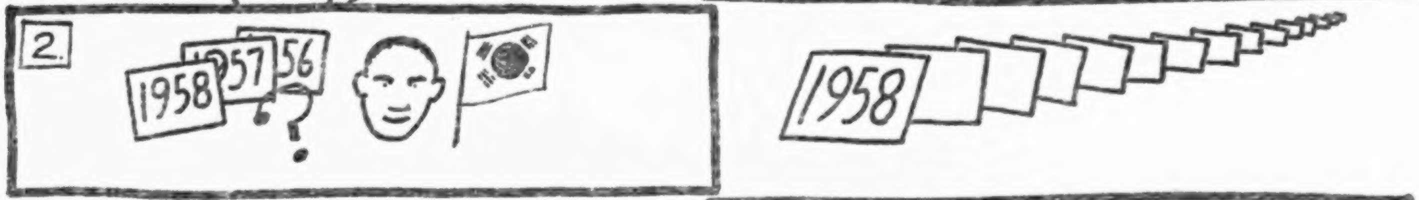
ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

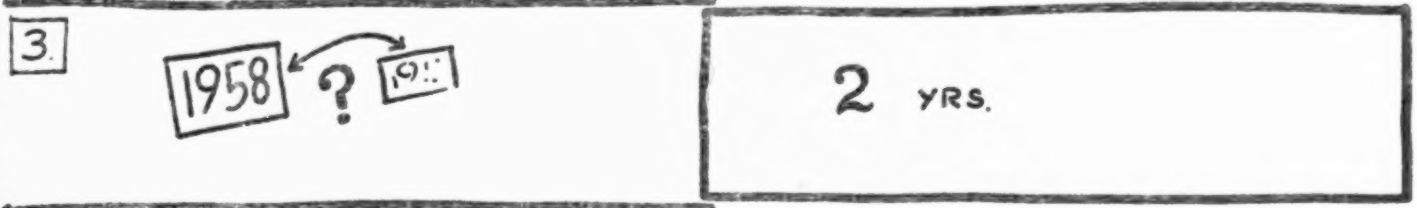
6. **Ngŏh yat-kòh uêt chi-noî faan-laī.**
K'uĭ leŭng yât chi-noî huì.
Ngŏh yat kòh laĭ-paaì chi-noî kìt fan.
K'uĭ yat nīn chi-noî m̄-ooĭ faan-laī.

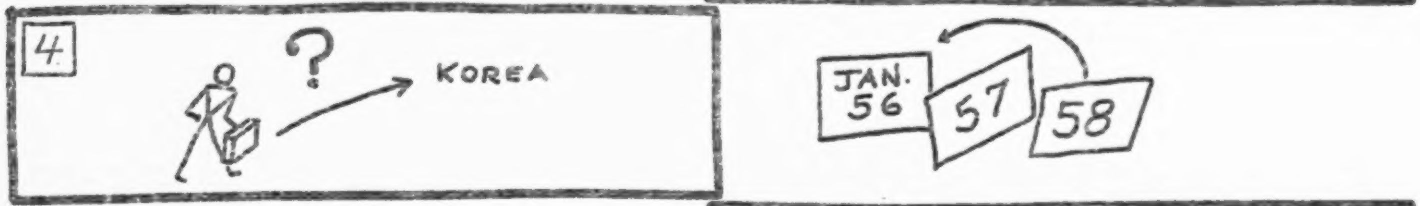
7. **Tîm-kaaî k'uĭ iù huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ à?**
Tîm-kaaî neĭ iù hôk Ying-Mān à?
Tîm-kaaî neĭ iù tsaú à?
Tîm-kaaî k'uĭ iù faan-laī Meĭ-Kwòk à?

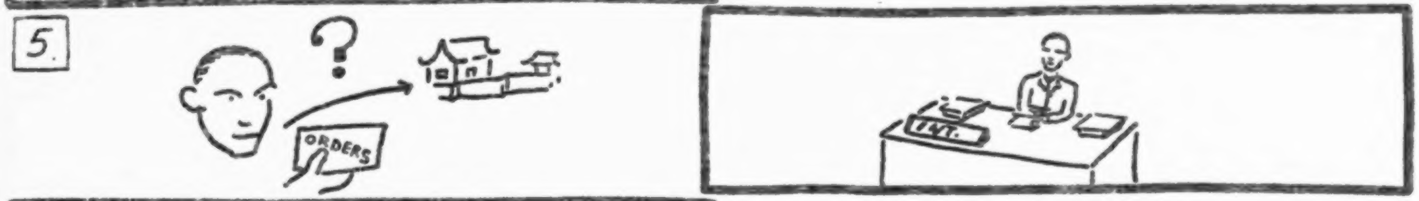
LESSON 32

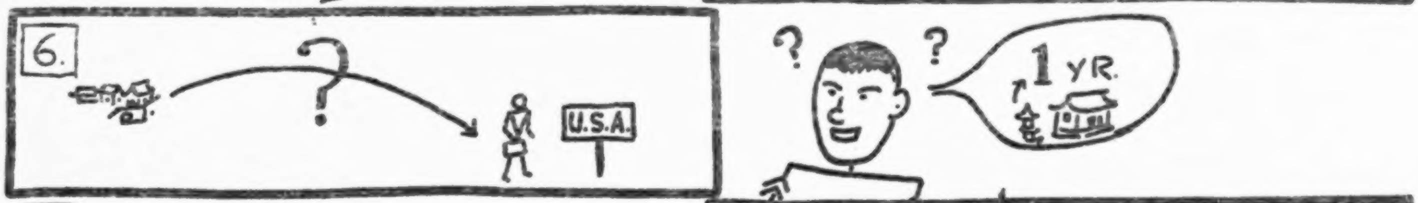

1.
?

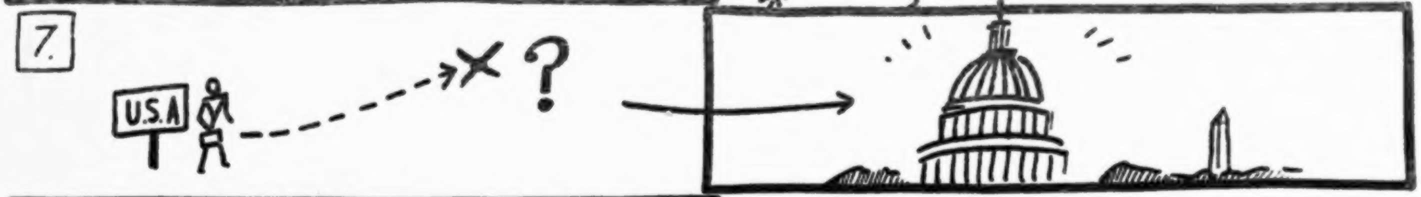

2.
1958
57
56
?
1958

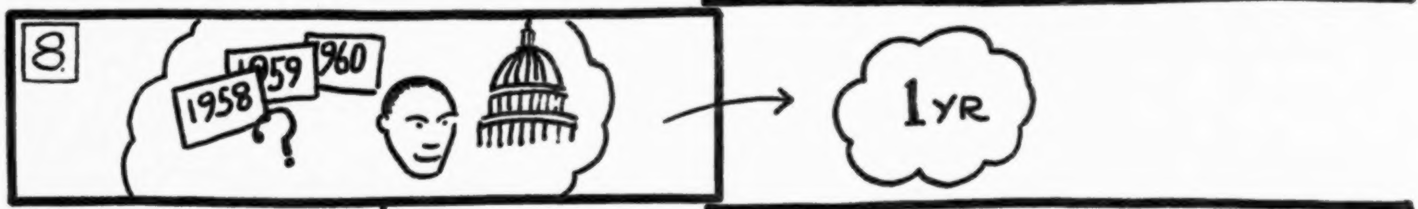

3.
1958
?
19
2 YRS.

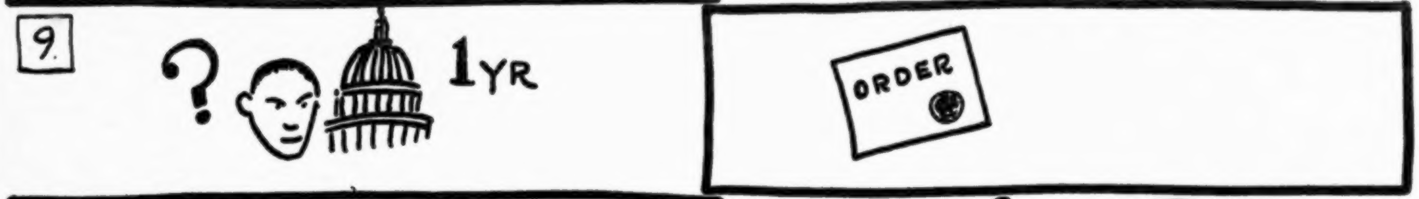

4.
?
KOREA
JAN. 56
57
58

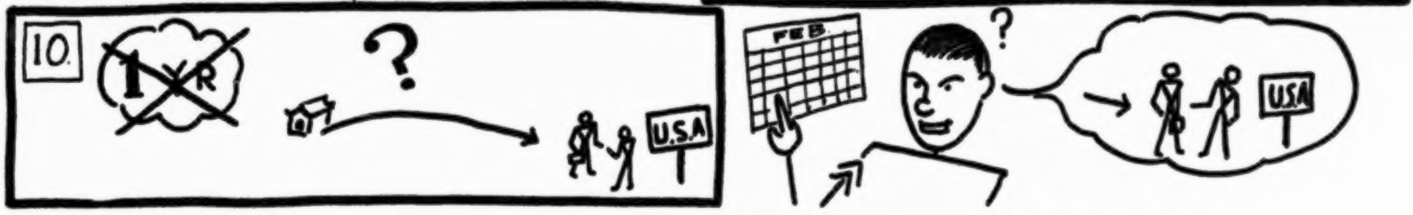

5.
?
ORDERS


6.
?
U.S.A.
?
?
1 YR.


7.
U.S.A
?


8.
1958
1959
1960
?
1 YR


9.
?
1 YR
ORDER


10.
1 YR
?
U.S.A
FEB.
?
USA

LESSON 32

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Cheung Hâ-Sẑ, neĭ kè taaî-lŏ î-ka haí pin shuè ả?

B: K'uĭ î-ka haí Hōn-Kwỏk, Mâk Chung-Waî.

2. A: K'uĭ huî-chóh Hōn-Kwỏk keí noî ả?

B: K'uĭ huî-chóh Hōn-Kwỏk hó noî lỏh!

3. A: K'uĭ huî-chóh keí noî ả?

B: K'uĭ huỉ Hōn-Kwỏk huî-chóh sēng leũng nîn kỏm noî.

4. A: K'uĭ keí shî huỉ Hōn-Kwỏk kả?

B: K'uĭ haí ts'în-nîn* Tsing-Uêt huỉ Hōn-Kwỏk kẻ.

5. A: K'uĭ huỉ Hōn-Kwỏk tsô mi-yĕ ả?

B: K'uĭ huỉ Hōn-Kwỏk foô-tsaảk ts'îng-pỏ kẻ kung-tsỏk.

6. A: K'uĭ chûng yaŭ keí noî chỉ faan-tak laî Meĭ-Kwỏk ả?

B: Ngŏh m̄-chi-tỏ wỏh; pat-kwỏh, ngŏh koó, chûng yaŭ yat nîn kỏm noî.

7. A: K'uĭ faan laî Meĭ-Kwỏk chi-haû, tá-suẻn huỉ pin shuẻ ả?

B: K'uĭ faan laî Meĭ-Kwỏk chi-haû, tá-suẻn huỉ Wā-Shîng-Tûn.

8. A: K'uĭ tseung-loî tá-suẻn haí Wā-Shîng-Tûn taû-laū keí noî ả?

B: K'uĭ tseung-loî tá-suẻn haí Wā-Shîng-Tûn taû-laū yat nîn kỏm sheûng-hâ*.

9. A: Tím-kaaí k'uĭ iủ haí Wā-Shîng-Tûn taû-laū yat nîn kỏm noî ả?

B: Yan-waî ni kỏh haî Lûk-Kwan-Pô kẻ mîng-lîng.

10. A: Ôh, neĭ koó, k'uĭ tsuî-kân ooĭ m̄-ooĭ faan laî Meĭ-Kwỏk haāng-yat-haāng ne?

B: Wâ-m̄-tîng pỏh, yat-kỏh uêt chi-noî, k'uĭ waâk-ché ooĭ faan laî Meĭ-Kwỏk haāng-yat-haāng.

LESSON 32

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Cpl. Cheung, where is your elder brother now?

   B: He is now in Korea, Lt. (1st Lt.) Mâk.

2. A: How long has he gone to Korea?

   B: He has gone to Korea for a long time.

3. A: How long has he gone?

   B: He has gone to Korea for two whole years.

4. A: When did he go to Korea?

   B: On January the year before last he went to Korea.

5. A: What did he go to Korea for?

   B: He went to Korea to be responsible for some intelligence work.

6. A: How long does he have before he is able to return to America?

   B: I don't know, but I guess that he still has one year.

7. A: After returning to America, where will he plan to go?

   B: After returning to America, he will plan to go to Washington D. C.

8. A: How long will he plan to stay at Washington D.C. in the future?

   B: He will plan to stay at Washington D.C. for about a year.

9. A: Why does he have to stay at Washington D.C. for one year?

   B: Because this is the order of the Dept. of the Army.

10. A: Oh! Do you think that he would come back to America for a visit soon?

    B: I can't say for sure. Perhaps he may be coming back to the United States for a visit within a month.

LESSON 32

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Wōng Chung-Waî, tsó-shān, neī hó mả?

   B: Hó hó, Leī Sheûng-Waî, hó noî mŏ kîn, neī kân-loī huî-chóh pin shuè à?

   A: Ngŏh ngaam-ngaam tsôk-yât haí Yât-Poón faan laî.

2. B: Ôh, neī keí shî huî Yât-Poón kả?

   A: Ngŏh sheûng kòh uêt huî Yât-Poón.

3. B: Neī huî Yât-Poón tsô mi-yĕ ả?

   A: Ngŏh huî Yât-Poón kîn yat-kòh t'ūng-sẑ.

4. B: Neī haí Yât-Poón taû-laū keí noî ả?

   A: Ngŏh haí Yât-Poón taû-laū-chóh saam-kòh laī-paaî.

5. B: Tím-kaaí neī kòm faaî faan laî ả?

   A: Ngŏh kè saî-ló tá tîn-pò peí ngŏh, k'uī seúng ngŏh faan laî.

6. B: K'uī seúng neī faan laî tsô mi-yĕ ả?

   A: Yan-waî k'uī hâ kòh uêt kît-fan.

7. B: Neī huî Yât-Poón kè shî-haû, neī kè t'aaî-t'aaî* tím ả?

   A: K'uī m̄-huî-tak, yan-waî ti saî-man-tsaí iù tûk shue.

8. B: Neī haí Yât-Poón kè shî-haû, maaī ti mi-yĕ peí k'uī-teî ả?

   A: Ngŏh maaī-chóh ti pò-chí t'ūng wâ*-pò, keî peí k'uī-teî.

9. B: K'uī-teî foon m̄-foon-heí t'aí ả?

   A: K'uī-teî hó foon-heí t'aí wâ*-pò, pat-kwòh, k'uī-teî m̄-sik Yât-Poón tsẑ.

10. B: K'uī-teî m̄-sik tûk Yât-Poón tsẑ; kóm, tím paân ả?

    A: M̄-kán-iù, k'uī-teî chí-haî t'aí kóh ti wâ*.

LESSON 32

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. B: Neĭ yaŭ hó toh p'āng-yaŭ haì Yât-Poón, haì mả?

A: Haî, ngŏh yaŭ hó toh p'āng-yaŭ haì Yât-Poón.

12. B: Haí Yât-Poón, ti yĕ p'ēng mả?

A: Haì Yât-Poón, ti yĕ hó p'eng.

13. B: Neĭ maaĭ-chóh ti mi-yĕ sùng peí neĭ kẻ t'aaì-t'aaì* ả?

A: Ngŏh peí saam-kŏh ngān-ts'ĭn* maaĭ-chóh yat-tsun heung-suí, sùng peí ngŏh kẻ t'aaì-t'aaì*.

14. B: Neĭ keí shì tsoì huì Yât-Poón ả?

A: Wâ-m̄-tîng, waâk-ché taì-î nĭn tsoì huì.

15. B: Neĭ tak-haān kẻ shì-haû, ts'îng neĭ laì ngŏh shuẻ ts'ŏh-hă la, hó mả?

A: Hó ả, tak-haān ngŏh huì paaì-haû.

LESSON 32

WORD LIST

1.	hâ-sẑ	corporal
2.	Hōn-Kwòk (Ko-Laî)	Korea
3.	loh, lòh	final particle
4.	shīng, shēng	entire, whole; %
5.	foô-chaàk	to be responsible
6.	ts'īng-pò	intelligence
7.	kung-tsòk	work, job, duty; to work
8.	chì	only then; before, most; to reach
9.	chi-tò	to know (of), know about
10.	pat-kwòh	but, however, nevertheless
11.	tá-suèn	to plan, calculate, intend
12.	Wā-Shîng-Tûn	Washington D.C., George Washington
13.	tseung-loī	in the future; will; future
14.	taû-laū	to stay
15.	tîm-kaaî	why? how come?
16.	yan-waî	because
17.	Lûk-Kwan Pô	Dept. of the Army
18.	mîng-lîng	order; to order
19.	...chi-noî	within...
20.	wâ-m̄-tîng	can't say for sure, not definite

LESSON 32

READING MATERIAL

992

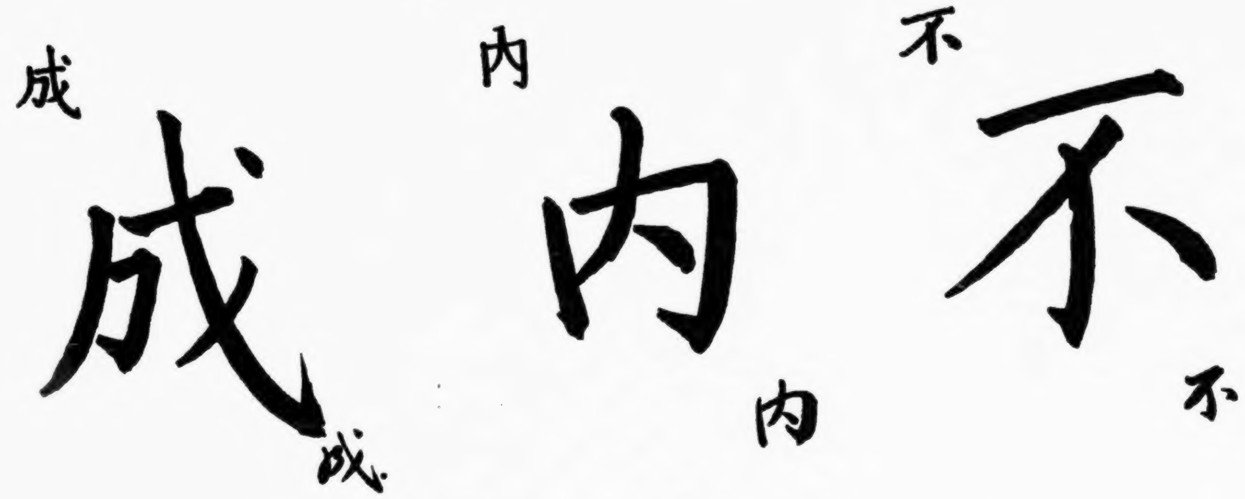
成	shīng, shēng: to finish; perfect; complete.
成功	shīng-kung: successful; achievement.
成立	shīng-laâp: to establish; success in life.

772

内	noî: inside; within; inner.
内人	noî-yān: may wife.
内科	noî-foh: medicine (as opposed to surgery)
内容	noî-yūng: contents; inner facts.
内亂	noî-luên: civil war; political trouble.

831

不	pat: negative; no; not; do not; is not.
不料	pat-liû: unexpectedly; unexpected.
不必	pat-pit: need not.
不久	pat kaú: soon; before long.

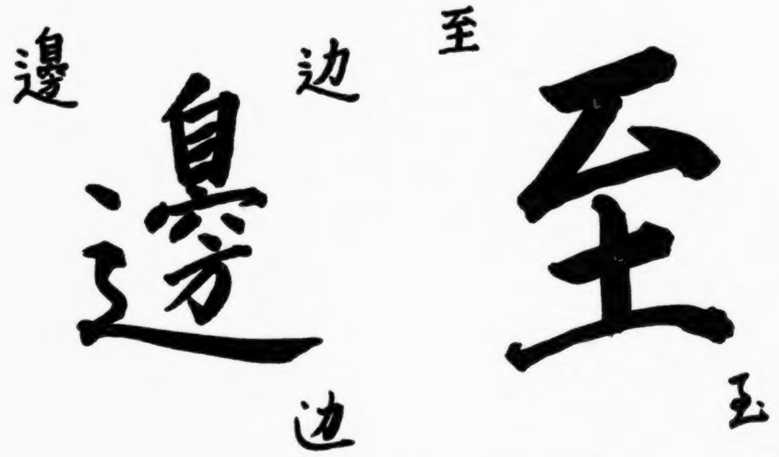


851

邊	pin: side; bank; edge; which?; boundary.
旁邊	p'ōng-pin: at the side.
邊防	pin-fōng: frontier defense.

73

至	hì: to reach; superlative degree
至少	chì-shiú: at least
至到	chì-tò: until, as to
至於	chì-ue: as for
至要	chì-iù: most important



LESSON 32

READING MATERIAL

1154

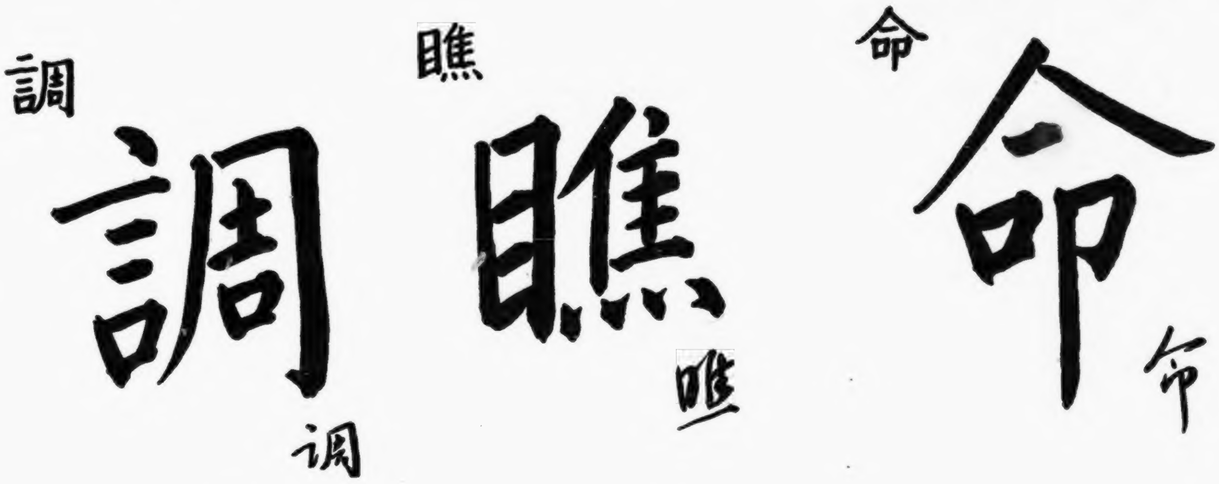
調	tiû: to change about; a tune.
調	t'iū: to harmonize; to adjust; to blend.
調轉頭	tiû chuèn t'aū: to turn around.
調換	tiû-oôn: to exchange positions.

1267

瞧	ts'iū: to look at; to glance at; to see.
瞧不起	ts'iū pat heí: to despise.

698

命	mêng: life or lot; luck; fate; command; decree.
生命	sheang-mêng: life; being.
長命	ch'eūng mêng: a long life
命運	mêng-wân: destiny; fate.
命令	mîng-lîng: command; order.
算命	suèn mêng: to tell fortunes.

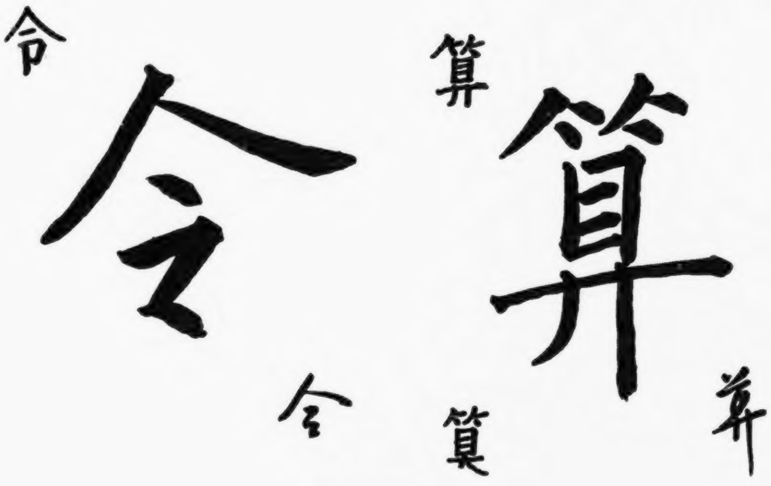


619

令	lîng: to cause; to make; a command; your (polite address)
命令	mîng-lîng: a command; order.
令人	lîng yān: to make one(happy or angry etc.)
令郎	lîng-lōng: your son.
令嬡	lîng-oì: your daughter.

1052

算	suèn: to reckon; to calculate; to regard as.
打算	tá-suèn: to calculate; to make plans.
算命	suèn-mêng: to tell fortune.
預算	uê-suèn: a budget.



LESSON 32

READING MATERIAL

陳英有幾個學生. 佢地以前都去過Hōn-國. 有啲chuò-fōng喺kóh-處成两年kòm耐. 有啲喺kóh-處唔過两年kòm耐,就被調番黎美國là.

而家佢地喺陸軍語言學校讀書已經讀chóh成一年kòm耐là. 喺呢一年之内,佢地學chóh好多野. 佢地就要被調去第二處là. 有啲學生好想去中國,不過,陸軍部命令佢地去Hōn-國. 有啲想去Hōn國,又被命令去中國. 陸軍部命令佢地去邊處;佢地就要去邊處là.

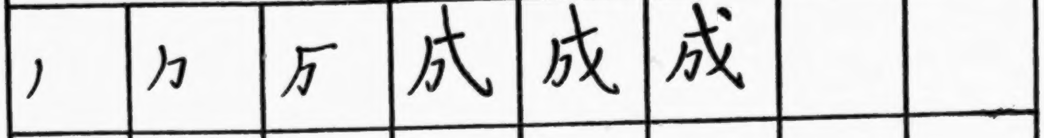
喺呢個月之内,有啲學生會番去屋-k'eí,見佢地嘅父母同朋友至出國. 有啲學生ne,佢地打算喺呢處taû-laū hă,乜野地方都唔想去là.

LESSON 32

WRITING MATERIAL

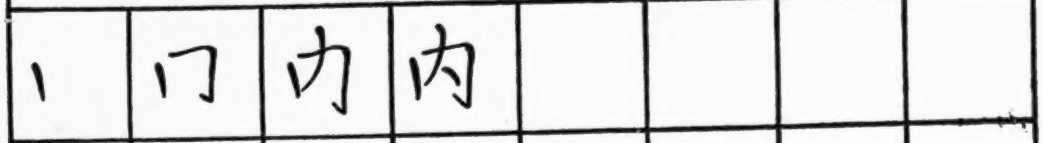
成

Character Number 992 **Radical Number** 62
Stroke Number 6 戈



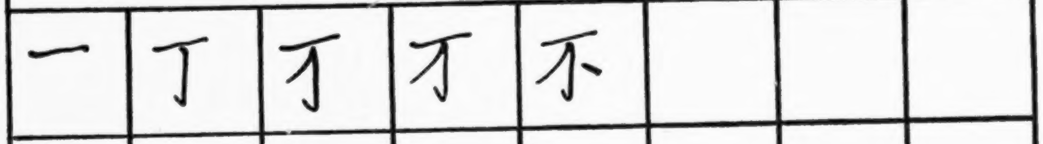
内

Character Number 772 **Radical Number** 11
Stroke Number 4 入



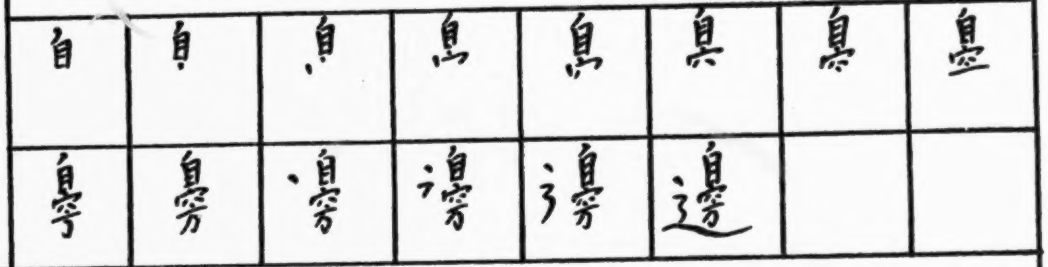
不

Character Number 831 **Radical Number** 1
Stroke Number 5 一



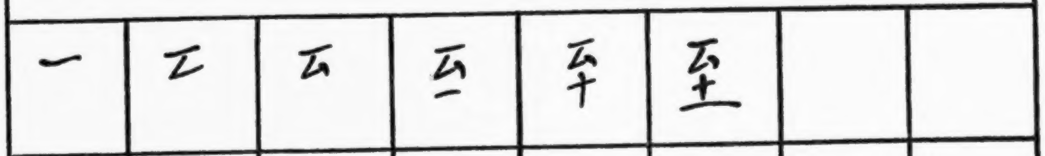
邊

Character Number 851 **Radical Number** 162
Stroke Number 19 辶，辵



至

Character Number 73 **Radical Number** 133
Stroke Number 6 至



LESSON 33

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Ngŏh huì-kwòh Chung-Kwòk.
Ngŏh kìn-kwòh Wōng Sin-Shaang.
Ngŏh hôk-kwòh Yât-Poón Wâ*.
K'uĭ sé-kwòh Ying-Mān tsẑ.

2. K'uĭ meî huì-kwòh Meĭ-Kwòk.
Neĭ meî yám-kwòh Chung-Kwòk tsaú.
Ngŏh meî tûk-kwòh ni-poón shue.
K'uĭ meî laî-kwòh ni-shuè.

3. Neĭ t'aî-kwòh Chung-Kwòk tîn-yîng meî à?
K'uĭ huì-kwòh Saam-Faān-Shĭ meî à?
Neĭ tûk-kwòh ni poon wâ*-pò meî à?
K'uĭ tsô-kwòh shaang-ì meî à?

4. K'uĭ huì-chóh Heung-Kóng meî à?
K'uĭ shîk-chóh faân meî à?
K'uĭ tong-chóh ping meî à?
K'uĭ maaĭ-chóh pò-chî meî à?

5. K'uĭ huì-chóh Heung-Kóng.
K'uĭ ĭ-king shîk-chóh faân.
K'uĭ meî tong-ping.
K'uĭ meî maaĭ pò-chî.

LESSON 33

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

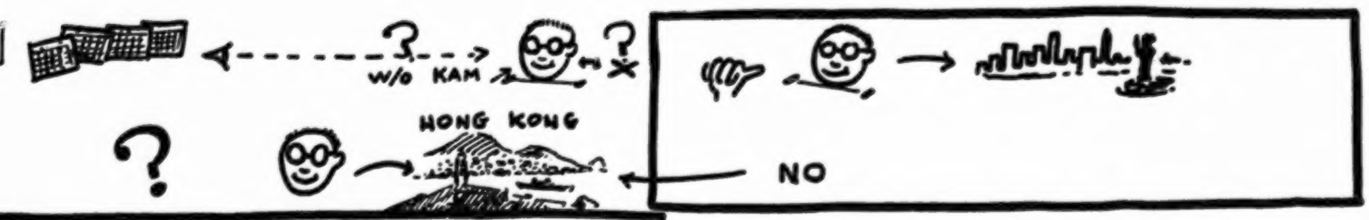
6. K'uĭ laî ni-shuè kè shī-haû, ngŏh haî uk-k'eî.
K'uĭ huì kaai kè shī-haû, ngŏh haî ni-shuè.
K'uĭ yám tsaú kè shī-haû, ngŏh yám-ch'ā.
K'uĭ tûk-shue kè shī-haû, ngŏh t'eng yam-ngôk.

7. Wōng Sin-Shaang huì-chóh pin-tô à?
Leĭ Siú-Tsź huì-chóh keî-noî à?
Ch'ān Sin-Shaang keî-shī huì-chóh à?
Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* huì-chóh meî à?

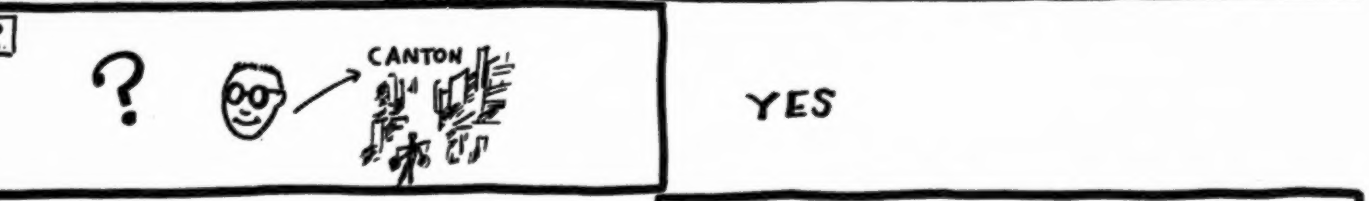
8. Wōng Sin-Shaang huì-chóh Chung-Kwòk.
Leĭ Siú-Tsź huì-chóh saam-kòh laĭ-paaì.
Ch'ān Sin-Shaang tsòk-yât huì-chóh.
Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* meî huì.

LESSON 33

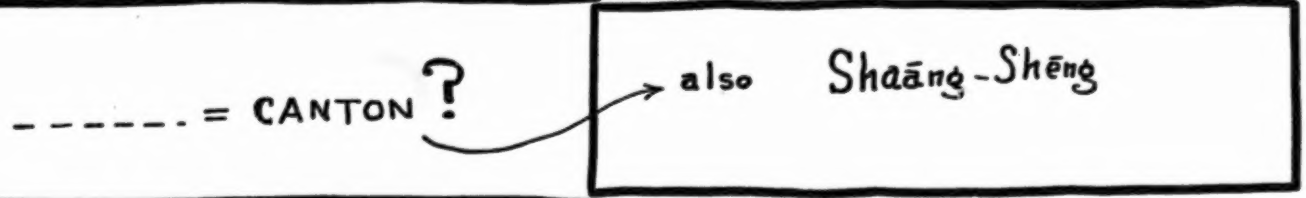
1.


W/O KAM
HONG KONG
NO

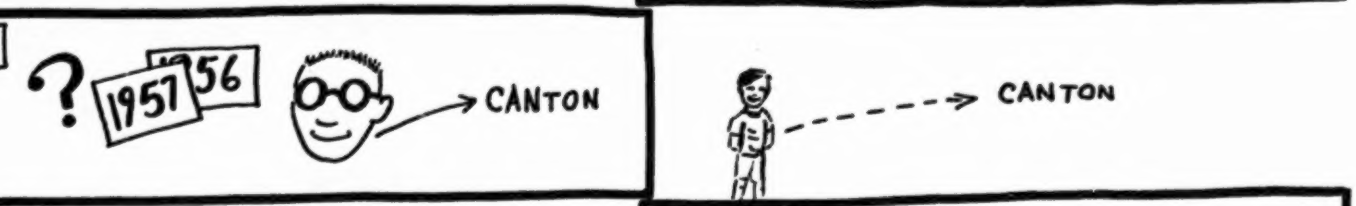
2.



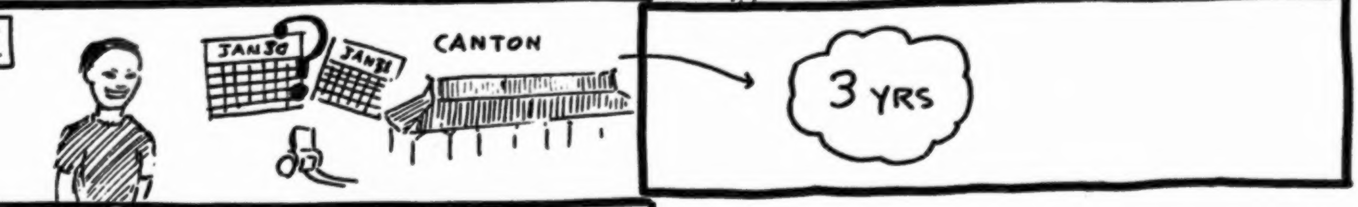
3.


= CANTON
also
Shaāng-Shēng

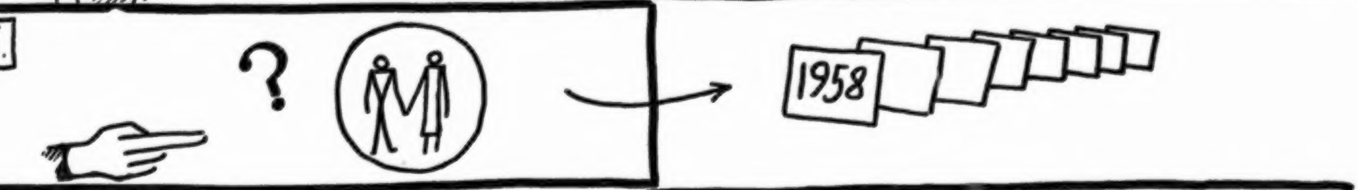
4.


1957
56
CANTON
CANTON

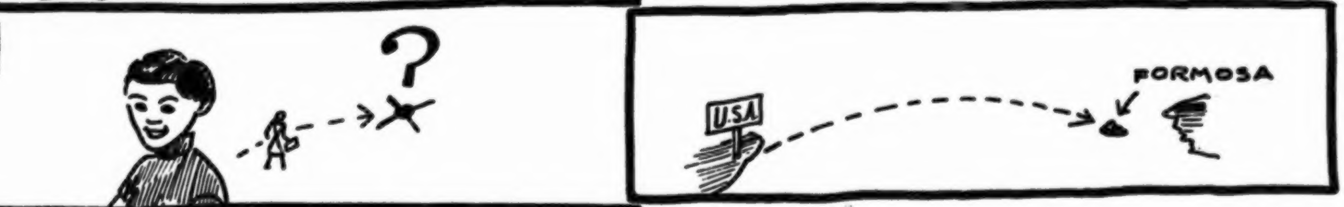
5.


JAN 30
JAN 31
CANTON
3 YRS

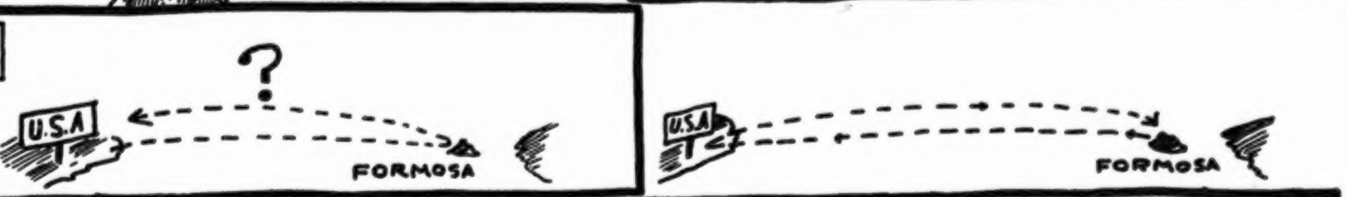
6.



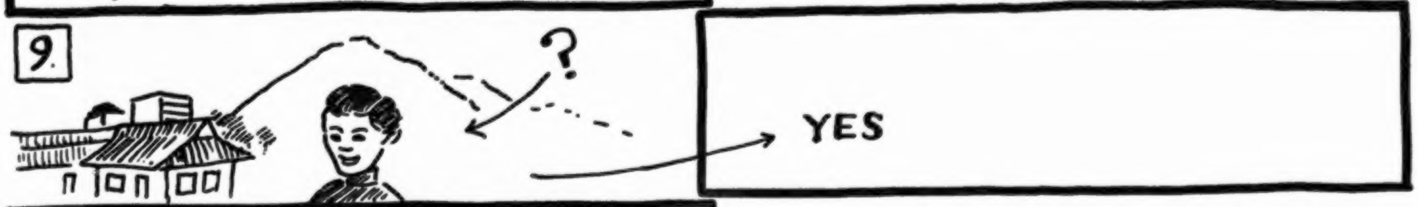
7.


U.S.A.
FORMOSA

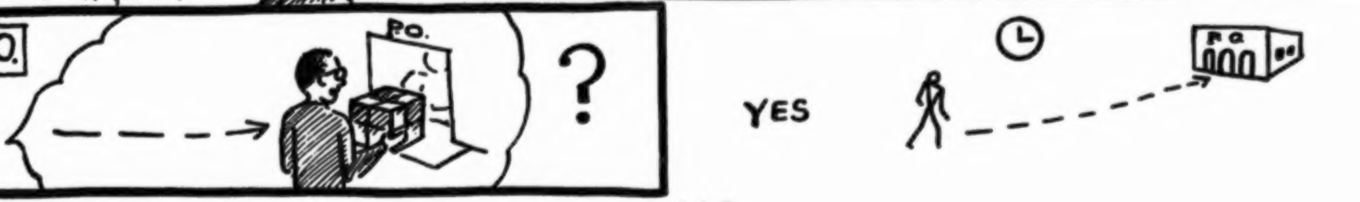
8.


U.S.A.
FORMOSA
U.S.A.
FORMOSA

9.



10.



LESSON 33

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Kam Tsún-Waì, mŏ kìn neĭ kòm noî, neĭ tsuì-kân huì-chóh pin shuè à?

   B: Ngŏh huì-chóh Naû-Yeùk, Leĭ Sin-Shaang.

   A: Kam Tsûn-Waì, neì huì-kwôh Heung-Kóng meì à?

   B: Ngŏh meì huì-kwòh Heung-Kóng.

2. A: Neĭ huì-kwòh Kwóng-Chau meì à?

   B: Huì-Kwòh lòh! Ngŏh huì-kwòh Kwóng-Chau lòh!

3. A: Kwóng-Chau yaû kiû-tsô mi-yĕ à?

   B: Kwóng-Chau yaû kiù-tsô Shaáng-Shēng.

4. A: Neĭ keî shì huì Shaáng-Shēng kà?

   B: Ngŏh haì saì-ló-koh kè shì-haû huì kè.

5. A: Kóh chân-shì, neĭ haì Shaáng-Shēng chuê-chóh keì noì à?

   B: Kóh chân-shì, ngŏh haì Shaáng-Shēng chuê-chóh ch'a-m̄-to saam nìn.

6. A: Neì kìt-chóh-fan meì à?

   B: Ngŏh kìt-chóh-fan hó noì loh!

7. A: Neì kê t'aaì-t'aaì* huì-chóh pin tô à?

   B: K'uĭ leì-hoi-chóh Meĭ-Kwòk, huì-chóh T'oì-Waan.

8. A: K'uĭ huì-chóh T'oì-Waan chi-haû, faan-kwòh laì Meĭ-Kwòk meî à?

   B: K'uĭ faan-kwòh laì Meĭ-Kwòk yat ts'ì, taân-haì haû-loī yaû huì-chóh T'oì-Waan.

9. A: Shóh-ĭ, k'uĭ ì-ka chûng haì T'oì-Waan, haì mà?

   B: Mŏ-ts'òh là! K'uĭ ì-ka chûng haì T'oĭ-Waan.

10. A: Neĭ wâ, neĭ seúng huì yaū-chìng-kûk kèı ti laĭ-mât peì k'uĭ. Neĭ huì-chóh meĭ à?

    B: Ngŏh huì-chóh là! Yat-chân, ngŏh iù tsoì huì-kwôh.

LESSON 33

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: W/O Kam, I haven't seen you for so long, where have you been lately?

   B: I went to New York, Mr. Leĭ.

   A: W/O Kam, have you ever been to Hong Kong?

   B: I have never been to Hong Kong.

2. A: Have you ever been to Canton?

   B: Yes, I have been to Canton.

3. A: What is another name for Canton?

   B: Canton (Kwóng-Chau) is also called Shaáng-Shēng (Provincial Capital).

4. A: When did you go to Canton?

   B: I went when I was a child.

5. A: At that time, how long did you live in Canton?

   B: At that time, I lived in Canton for almost three years.

6. A: Are you married?

   B: I have been married for a long time.

7. A: Where did your wife go?

   B: She left America and has gone to Formosa (Taiwan).

8. A: Has she ever been back to America since she went to Formosa?

   B: She has been back to the States once, but after that she went to Formosa again.

9. A: Therefore she is still in Formosa; is that right?

   B: Right, She is still in Formosa at the present time.

10. A: You said that you wished to go to the post office to mail her a present. Did you go yet?

    B: I went. I'll have to go again in a little while.

LESSON 33

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Tsó-shān, Wōng Sin-Shaang, neĭ kòm tsó laî ni shuè.

B: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, tsó-shān, neĭ shîk-chóh faân meî à?

A: Ngŏh ngaam-ngaam shîk-uēn tsó-ts'aan.

2. A: Neĭ laî ni shuè yaŭ mat kwaî-kòn à?

B: Cheung Sin-Shaang kaaî-siû ngŏh laî kîn yat-waî* kaaù-koon.

3. A: K'uĭ sîng mi-yĕ kà?

B: Ôh, ngŏh m̄-keî-tak-chóh là!

4. A: Neĭ ĭ-ts'în kîn-kwòh k'uĭ meî à?

B: Meî, ngŏh ĭ-ts'în meî kîn-kwòh k'uĭ. Neĭ-teî ni shuè yaŭ keĭ waî* kaaù-kaon à?

5. A: Yaŭ saam waî*, yat-waî* sîng Ch'ān, yat-waî* sîng Hōh, yat-waî* sîng Kwaan.

B: Táng ngŏh mân-hă neĭ, Ch'ān kaaù-koon kît-chóh-fan meî à?

6. A: K'uĭ chûng meî kît-fan.

B: Pin kòh kît-kwòh-fan à?

7. A: Hōh kaaù-koon kît-kwòh-fan, k'uĭ kît-chóh leŭng ts'z̆ fan.

B: Kóm ā! Kwaan kaaù-koon ne?

8. A: K'uĭ kît-chóh-fan.

B: Ôh, ngŏh chi-tò là, ngŏh iù kîn Kwaan kaaù-koon, k'uĭ kît-chóh-fan m̄-haî keĭ noî, haî m̄-haî à?

9. A: Haî, k'uĭ sheûng kòh uêt kît-fan.

B: K'uĭ ī-ka haî shuè mà?

10. A: K'uĭ î-ka sheŭng-kán t'ōng.

B: Ngŏh î-ka hóh m̄-hóh-ĭ kîn k'uĭ à?

LESSON 33

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: M̄-hóh-ĭ, sheŭng-kàn-t́ŏng kè shî-haû, neĭ m̄-hóh-ĭ kìn k'uĭ.

B: Ngŏh kei shî hóh-ĭ kìn k'uĭ à?

12. A: Táng yat-chân k'uĭ lôk t'ōng kè shî-haû, neĭ kìn k'uĭ la!

B: Taaî-yeùk* iù táng keí noî à?

13. A: Ch'a-m̄-toh lôk t'ōng là! Ôh, Kwaan kaaù-koon î-ka laî là!

A: Kwaan kaaù-koon, Leĭ Sin-Shaang seúng kìn neĭ.

14. A: Ôh, Leĭ Sin-Shaang, neĭ hó mà?

B: Hó hó, Kwaan kaaù-koon; Cheung Sin-Shaang kaaî-siû ngŏh laî ni shuè kìn neĭ.

15. C: Neĭ táng-chóh hó noî là, haî mà?

B: Táng-chóh yat-chân-kaan che, ngŏh t'ūng Wōng Sin-Shaang k'ing tò ī-ka.

C: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, yaŭ mi-yĕ chî-kaaù à?

B: Kwaan kaaù-koon, ngŏh yaŭ yat-kîn sẑ seúng mân-hă neĭ, tak mà?

C: Hó à!

LESSON 33

WORD LIST

1.	kam, Kam	gold, surname
2.	chún-waì	warrant officer
3.	Naú-Yeùk	New York (USA)
4.	kwòh	ever, to have ever (verb) sign of past or perfect tense; to pass, pass over, over, over and beyond
5.	Heung-Kóng	Hong Kong, (B.C.C.)
6.	Kwóng-Chau	Canton (China)
7.	shaáng	province, state
8.	shēng, shīng	city
9.	Shaáng-Shēng	Canton City, provincial capitol
10.	saì-ló-koh	child, youngster
11.	ch'a-m̄-toh	almost, nearly
12.	leī-hoi	to leave, take leave, depart
13.	T'oī-Waan	Formosa, Taiwan
14.	taân-haî	but, however, nevertheless
15.	haû-loī	afterwards, later
16.	shôh-ĭ	therefore, so
17.	ts'òh	error; wrong, mistake, to err
18.	mŏ-ts'òh	right, correct, not wrong
19.	yaū-chìng-kûk*	post office
20.	laĭ-mât	present, gift

LESSON 33

READING MATERIAL

511

估	koó: to guess; to think; to estimate.
估中	koó-chùng: to guess right.
估價	koó-kà: to appraise.

276

香	heung: frangrance; aroma
香味	heung meî: fragrance; aroma
香水	heung-shuí: perfume
香烟	heung-in: cigarettes

505

港	kóng(or k'óng): port; harbor; anchorage.
港口	kóng-haú: harbor.
入港	yâp kóng: enter the harbor.
香港	heung-kóng: Hong Kong.

估 香 港

估 香 港

估 香 港

1445

因	yan: because, cause; reason, to rely on; for.
因為	yan-waî: because; on account of.
因何	yan hōh: why? wherefor?
因病	yan pêng: because of illness.

1417

為	waī: to be; to do; to make.
為	waî: because; the reason of; by means of.
行為	hāng-waī: conduct; behavior.
為人	waī yan: to be a man.
為國	waî kwòk: for one's country.

因 爲

因 為

因 為

LESSON 33

READING MATERIAL

936

省	shaáng: a province; frugal; saving.
減省	kaám-shaáng: to reduce; to diminish.
省事	shaáng sẑ: to avoid trouble.

966

城	shēng, shīng· a city; rampart, inside the walls.
城樓	hēng laū· city gate tower.
城市	shēng-shĭ: a city.

184

非	fei: opposed to; not; false
非常	fei-sheũng: very extremely
是非	shî-fei: detraction; scandal; the truth and the false

省 城 非

省 城 非

省 城 非

971

常	sheũng: constant; permanent; always.
時常	shī-sheũng: always; often.
照常	chiù-sheũng: as usual.

1334

次	ts'z̀: a time; turn; second; next.
下次	hâ ts'z̀: the next time.
一次	yat ts'z̀: once.

常 次

常 次

常 次

LESSON 33

READING MATERIAL

Kam 樂生係陳英嘅朋友. 佢係一個做生意嘅美國人. 佢去過中國, 喺省城住-chóh ch'a-唔多五年 kòm 耐. 佢嘅省城話講得非常之好. 你估唔 tó 佢係美國人.

Kam 樂生話, 佢喺省城出世, taân 係喺美國大. 佢喺細-ló-koh 嘅時候, 佢嘅父母就同佢番黎美國讀書. 佢讀 chóh 幾年英文之後, 呢次佢嘅父親同佢 leī-開美國, 去香港做生意. 佢喺香港做 chóh 幾年生意之後, 有錢 là, 佢又翻黎美國見 hǎ 佢嘅母親. 有時, 因為生意嘅事, 佢要喺美國 taû-laū 四五個月 kòm 耐至番去香港. 有時, 喺香港唔過兩年 kòm 耐, 佢又翻過黎美國 là.

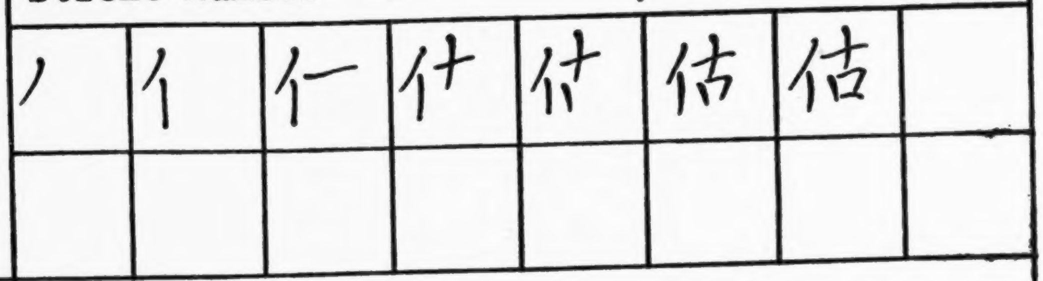
佢時時敢來來去去, 出出 yâp-yâp, 都唔覺得 mā - faān. 佢話, 佢好中意呢 chúng 生活.

LESSON 33

WRITING MATERIAL

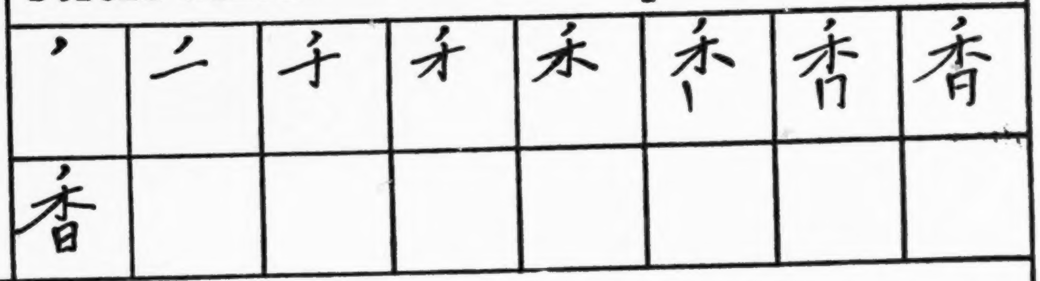
估

Character Number 511　Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 7　亻，人



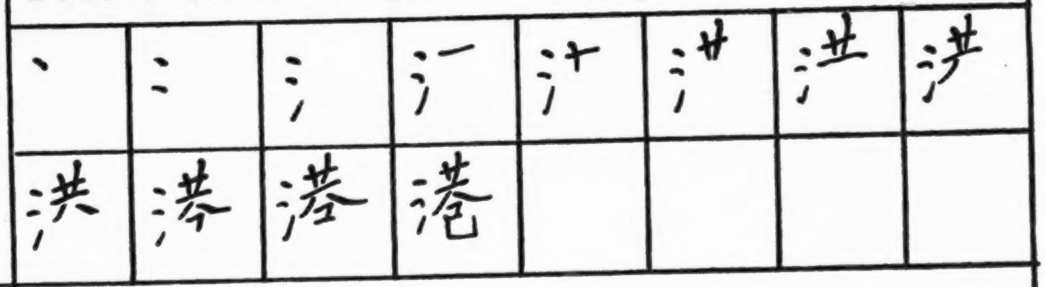
香

Character Number 276　Radical Number 186
Stroke Number 9　香



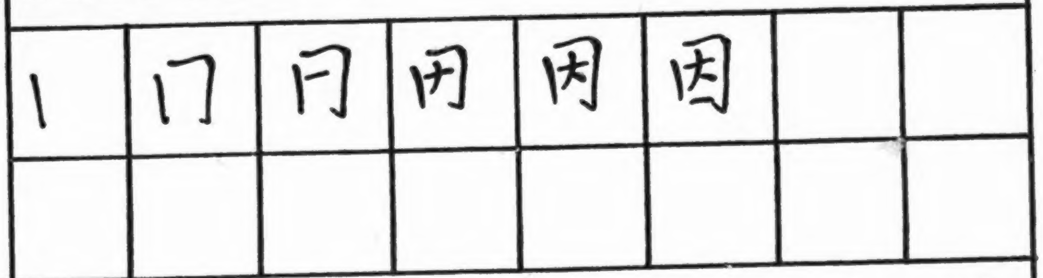
港

Character Number 505　Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 12　氵，水



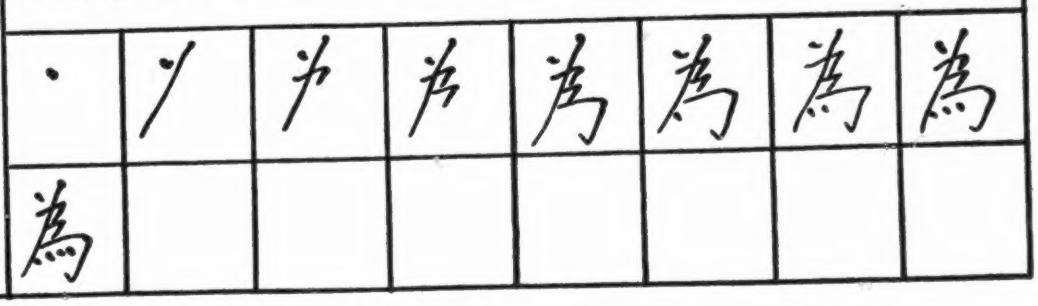
因

Character Number 1445　Radical Number 31
Stroke Number 6　囗



為

Character Number 1417　Radical Number 87
Stroke Number 9　爫，爪



LESSON 34

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Sheŭng-chóh t'ōng, ngŏh tûk-shue.
   Shîk-chóh faân, ngŏh hùi-kaai.
   Yám-chóh ch'ā, ngŏh faan-hôk.
   Heî-chóh shan, ngŏh shîk-tsó-ts'aan.

2. Sheŭng-chóh t'ōng chi-haû, ngŏh tsaû tûk-shue.
   Shîk-chóh faân chi-haû, ngŏh tsaû hùi-kaai.
   Yám-chóh ch'ā chi-haû, ngŏh tsaû faan-hôk.
   Heî-chóh shan chi-haû, ngŏh tsaû shîk tsó-ts'aan.

3. Neĭ hùi, ngŏh tsaû hùi.
   Neĭ maaĭ, ngŏh tsaû maaĭ.
   K'uĭ haāng, ngŏh tsaû m̄-haāng.
   K'uĭ kóng, ngŏh tsaû m̄-kóng.

4. Uē-kwóh neĭ hùi, ngŏh tsaû m̄-hùi.
   Uē-kwóh neĭ maaĭ, ngŏh tsaû m̄-maaĭ.
   Uē-kwóh k'uĭ haāng, ngŏh tsaû haāng.
   Uē-kwóh k'uĭ kóng, ngŏh tsaû kóng.

5. Neĭ keî-tîm-chung heî-shan à?
   K'uĭ keî-shī hùi-kaai à?
   Ngŏh-teî mi-yĕ shī-haû shîk-faân à?
   Neĭ-teî keî-shī faan-laī à?

LESSON 34

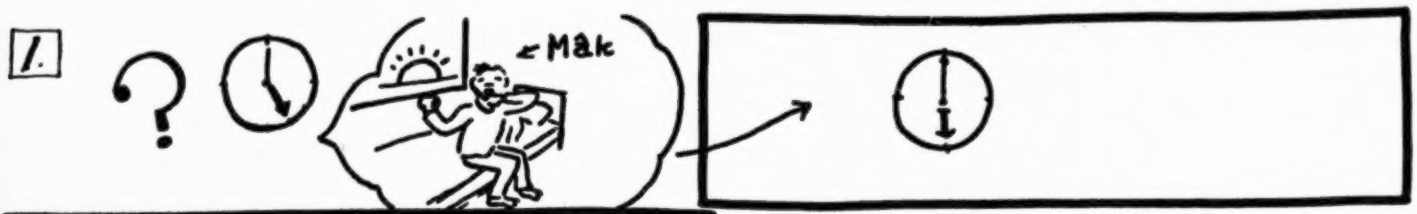
ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

6. Uē-kwôh ngŏh laì, neĭ táng m̄-táng ngŏh à?
Uē-kwóh ngŏh kóng Ying-Mān, neĭ mīng m̄-mīng-paâk à?
Uē-kwôh ngŏh maaî, neĭ maaĭ m̄-maaĭ à?
Uē-kwóh haî kóm, neĭ tîm-yeûng* à?

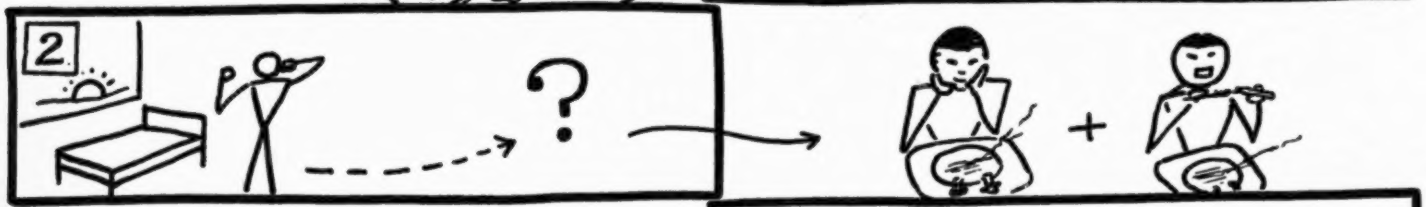
7. Tsòk-yât shîk-chóh faân, neĭ huì pin-shuè ne?
Tsòk-yât leŭng tîm-chung, neĭ haî pin-tô ne?
Ni kòh laĭ-paaì chi-noî, neĭ huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ mà?
Ni leŭng kòh uêt chi-noî, neĭ tsô shaang-ì mà?

LESSON 34

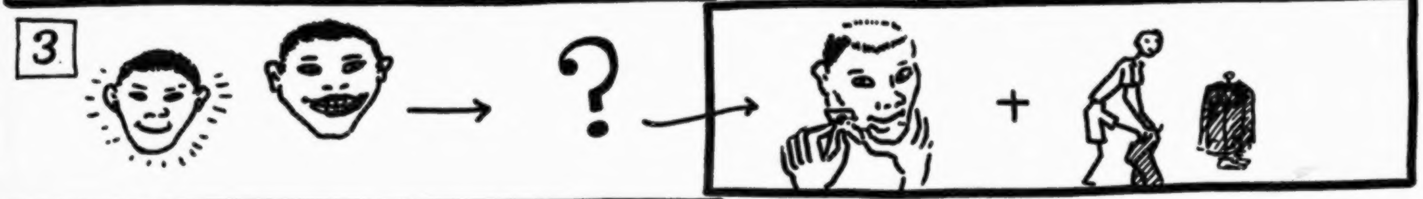
1.



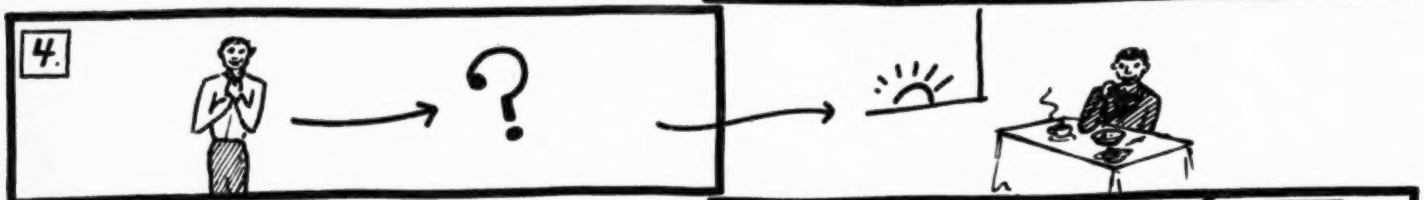
2.



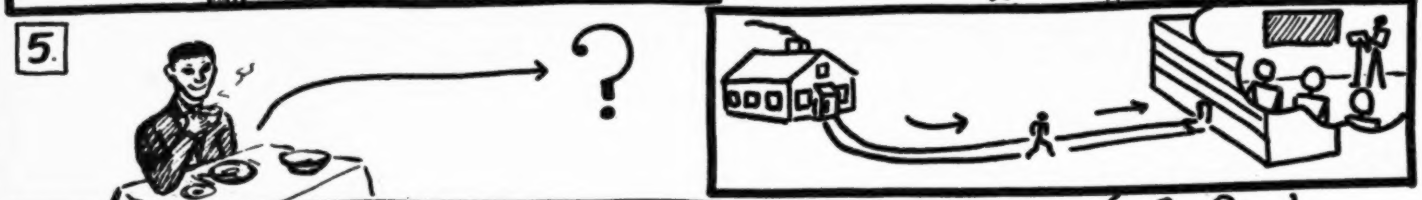
3.



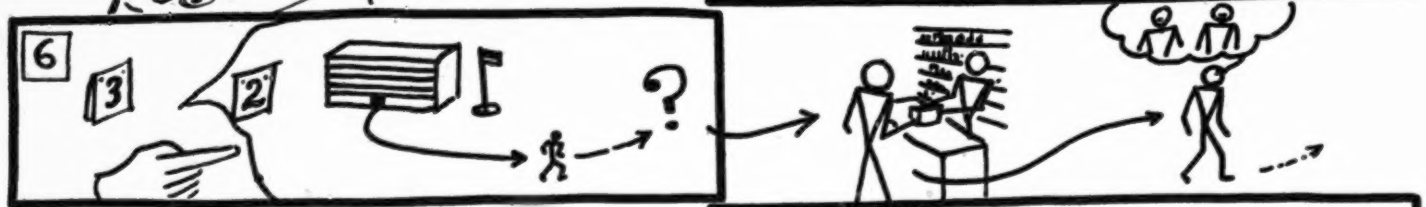
4.



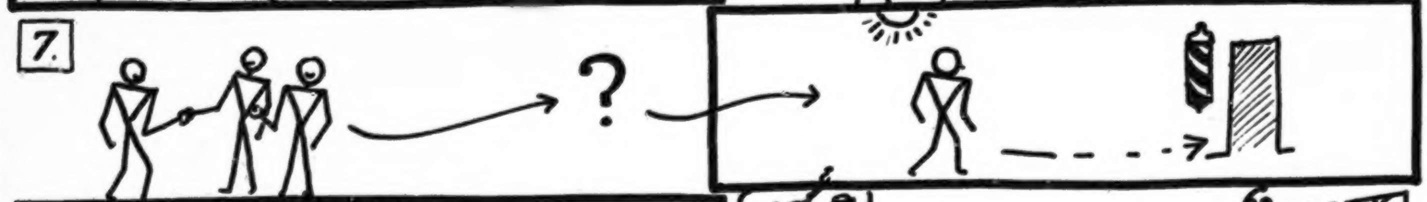
5.



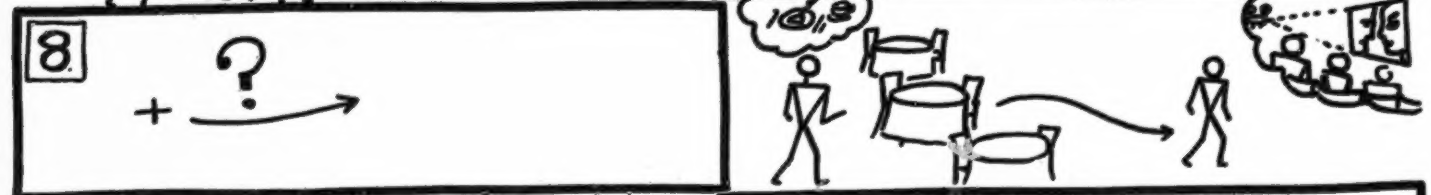
6.



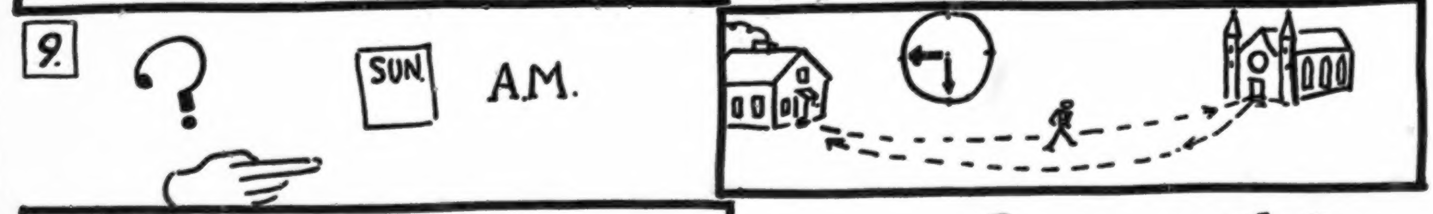
7.



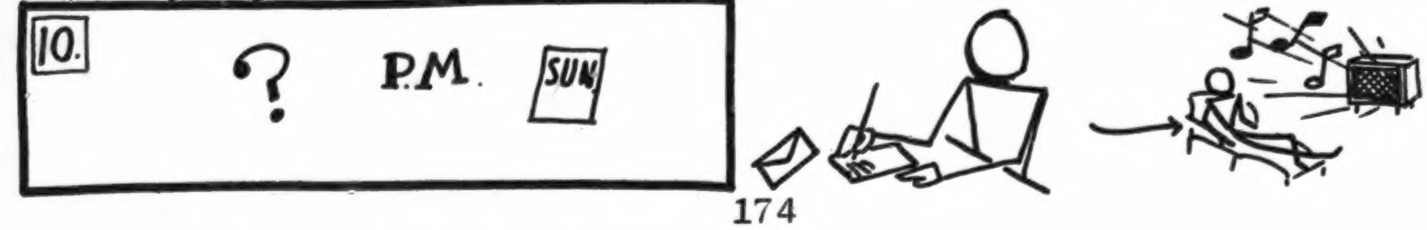
8.



9.



10.



LESSON 34

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Lŏ Mâk, neī mooī yât chiu-t'aū-tsó keî tîm-chung heî shan à?

   B: Ngŏh mooī yât lûk-tîm kòm sheûng-hâ* heí shan.

2. A: Heî-chóh shan chi-haû, neī tsaû tsô ti mi-yĕ à?

   B: Heî-chóh shan chi haû, ngŏh tsaû saî mîn t'ūng ts'aàt ngā.

3. A: Saî-chóh mîn, t'ūng ts'aàt-chóh ngā chi-haû, neī tsaû tîm à?

   B: Saî-chóh mîn, t'ūng ts'aàt-chóh ngā chi-haû, ngŏh t'aî so, t'ūng cheùk shaam.

4. A: Cheùk-chóh shaam chi-haû, neī yaû tîm à?

   B: Cheùk-chóh shaam chi-haû, ngŏh shîk tsó-ts'aan.

5. A: Shîk-chóh tsó-ts'aan chi-haû ne?

   B: Shîk-chóh tsó-ts'aan, ngŏh ch'ut moōn-haú, faan hôk, huî sheŭng t'ōng.

6. A: Tsôk-yât fòng-chóh hôk, neī huî pin shuè à?

   B: Tsôk-yât fòng-chóh hôk, ngŏh huî maaī yĕ, t'ūng wán p'āng-yaŭ.

7. A: Neī wán-chóh p'āng-yaŭ, haû-loî yaû tîm à?

   B: Wán-chóh p'āng-yaŭ, haû-loî ngŏh huî kaai, huî fei-faàt.

8. A: Chûng yaŭ ne?

   B: Fei-chóh faàt, ngŏh huî yat-kaan ts'aan-shat shîk măăn-faân; shîk-chóh măăn-faân, ngŏh huî haāng kaai, huî t'aî tîn-yîng. haî-kòm-toh.

9. A: Laī-paaî-yât sheûng-chaù, neī toh-sò tsô ti mi-yĕ à?

   B: Laī-paaî-yât sheûng-chaù, kaú-tîm-poòn ngŏh huî kaaù-t'ōng; huî-chóh kaaù-t'ōng, tsaû faan uk-k'eî.

LESSON 34

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: Laĭ-paaî-yât hâ-chaù ne?

B: Iù t'aî ts'ìng-yìng, ngŏh toh-sò haî uk-k'eî sé sûn;
sé-chóh sùn chi-haŭ, t'eng-hă yam-ngôk.

LESSON 34

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Mâk, what time do you get up in the morning?

B: I get up at about six o'clock every morning.

2. A: After getting up, what do you do?

B: After getting up, I wash my face and brush my teeth.

3. A: After washing your face and brushing your teeth, then what?

B: After washing my face and brushing my teeth, I shave and put on my clothes.

4. A: After putting on your clothes, what else do you do?

B: After putting on my clothes, I eat my breakfast.

5. A: What happens after your breakfast?

B: After eating my breakfast, I leave home, go to school, and attend classes.

6. A: Where did you go after school yesterday?

B: I went to buy something and visited some friends after school.

7. A: After having visited your friends, what did you do then?

B: After having visited my friends, I went out and had a haircut.

8. A: What else did you do?

B: After my haircut, I went to a restaurant to eat my supper. After supper, I went to take a walk and went to a movie. That's all.

9. A: What do you usually do on Sunday mornings?

B: I go to church at 9:30 AM on Sundays. After church, I go home.

10. A: What about Sunday afternoons?

B: It all depends. Usually I am home writing letters. After writing the letters, I listen to music.

LESSON 34

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Tsó-shān, Wōng t'aaì-t'aaì*

   B: Tsó-shān, Leĭ Sin-Shaang.

   A: Wōng t'aaì-t'aaì*, Wōng Sin-Shaang heì-chóh shan meì à?

   B: K'uĭ kam-yât hó tsó heì-shan; heì-chóh shan, k'uĭ tsaû huì kaai.

2. A: K'uĭ keì tîm-chung huì kaai kà?

   B: K'uĭ lûk tîm heì shan, ts'at tîm-chung huì kaai.

3. A: K'uĭ shîk-chóh tsó-ts'aan meî à?

   B: Meì, k'uĭ heì-chóh shan, tseùk-chóh shaam, tsaû huì kaai.

4. A: K'uǐ wà k'uǐ huì pin shuè à?

   B: K'uĭ wâ, k'uĭ huì tá tîn-pò.

5. A: K'uĭ huì tá tîn-pò peí pin-kòh à?

   B: K'uĭ huì tá tîn-pò peí yat-kòh kaû p'āng-yaŭ.

6. A: K'uĭ iù keì-shī chì faan laì à?

   B: Ngŏh koó, k'uĭ tá-chóh tîn-pò chi-haû, tsaû faan là.

7. B: Â, Leĭ Sin-Shaang, k'uĭ ì-ka faan laì là. Táng ngŏh huì moōn shuè t'aí-hă.

   A: Wōng t'aaì-t'aaì*, táng ngŏh huì.

8. C: Ôh, Leĭ Sin-Shaang, mat kòm tsó à?

   A: Wōng Sin-Shaang, neĭ chûng tsó la, neĭ kòm tsó huì-chóh kaai faan laì.

9. C: Haì, neĭ kòm tsó laì, yaŭ mat kwaì-kòn à?

   A: Ngŏh kam-chiu heì-chóh shan chi-haû, seúng huì kung-sz maaĭ yĕ, shûn-pîn wán neĭ ts'ŏh-hă che.

LESSON 34

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. C: Ī-ka hó-toh kung-sz maaî p'éng yĕ. Neĭ haì ni shuè shîk-chóh tsó-ts'aan chi-haû, ngŏh t'ŭng neĭ huì, hó mà?

A: Hó à, pat-kwòh, ngŏh ĭ-king shîk-chóh tsó-ts'aan là.

11. C: Kóm, yám pooi ch'ā la!

A: Toh-tsê, toh-tsê!

12. C: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, neĭ seúng maaĭ ti mi-yĕ à?

A: Ngŏh yaŭ yat-waî* p'āng-yaŭ, k'uĭ hâ kòh laĭ-paaì kìt-fan; ngŏh seúng maaĭ yat-kîn laĭ-mât sùng peì k'uĭ.

13. C: K'uĭ haî naām p'āng-yaŭ, yik-waâk haî nuĭ p'āng-yaŭ à?

A: K'uĭ haî ngŏh kè naām p'āng-yaŭ. Sùng mi-yĕ peí k'uĭ hó ne?

14. C: Ngŏh-teî yat-chân-kaan huì kung-sz shuè t'aí-hă sin, hó mà?

A: Hó, maaĭ-chóh yĕ chi-haû, ngŏh-teî huì pin shuè à?

15. C: Maaĭ-chóh yĕ chi-haû, ngŏh-teî faan laì ni shuè shîk aàn-chaù la, hó mà?

A: Hó la, ì-ka ngŏh-teî huì là!

LESSON 34

WORD LIST

1.	tsaû	then, about to
2.	saî mîn	to wash one's face
3.	ch'aàt ngā	to brush teeth
4.	t'aì-so	to shave (one's beard)
5.	wán	to find, seek, look for
6.	huì kaai	to go out (to go to the street)
7.	fei faàt	to cut hair, have a haircut; haircut
8.	ts'aan-shat	restaurant
9.	haāng kaai	to take a walk, a stroll, walk around
10.	tîn-yîng	movie, motion picture, cinema
11.	sheûng-chaù, sheûng-nğ	a.m., before noon
12.	toh-shò	mostly, majority, most, most likely
13.	kaaù-t'ōng	church
14.	hâ-chaù, hâ-nğ	p.m., afternoon
15.	ts'īng-yīng	condition, situation, circumstance
16.	t'aî ts'īng-yīng (t'aî ts'īng-yīng laī-tîng)	it depends, it all depends, it all depends on the situation
17.	k'uèt-tîng	to decide, resolve, determine, decision

LESSON 34

READING MATERIAL

239

客 ʰaàk: stranger; visitor; guest; customer

搭客 taàp-ʰaàk: passengers

人客 yān-ʰaàk: guests

客氣 ʰaàk-ʰeì: polite; courteous; to stand on ceremony

1004

數 shò, shó: to count; to calculate; a number; amount.

數錢 shó ts'Īn: to count money.

數目 shò-mûk: an account.

數次 shò ts'ì: several times.

1261

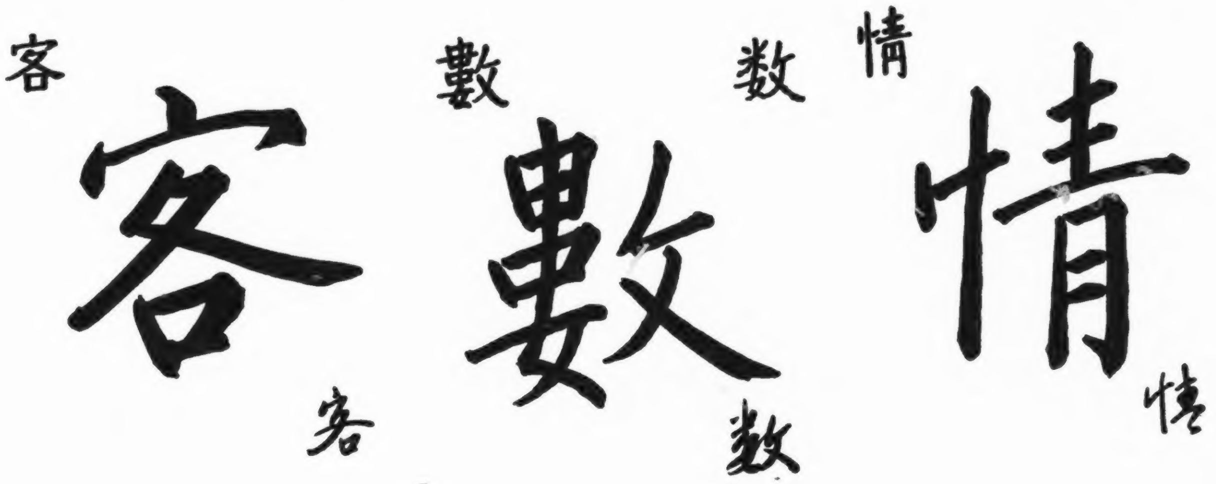
情 ts'Īng: feeling; emotion; affection; lust.

情人 ts'Īng-yān: lover; sweetheart.

情形 ts'Īng-yīng: aspect; state; condition.

愛情 oì-ts'Īng: affection; love.

人情 yān-ts'Īng: favor; indulgence.



1488

形 yīng: appearance; form; to give form.

形容 yīng-yūng· to describe; appearance.

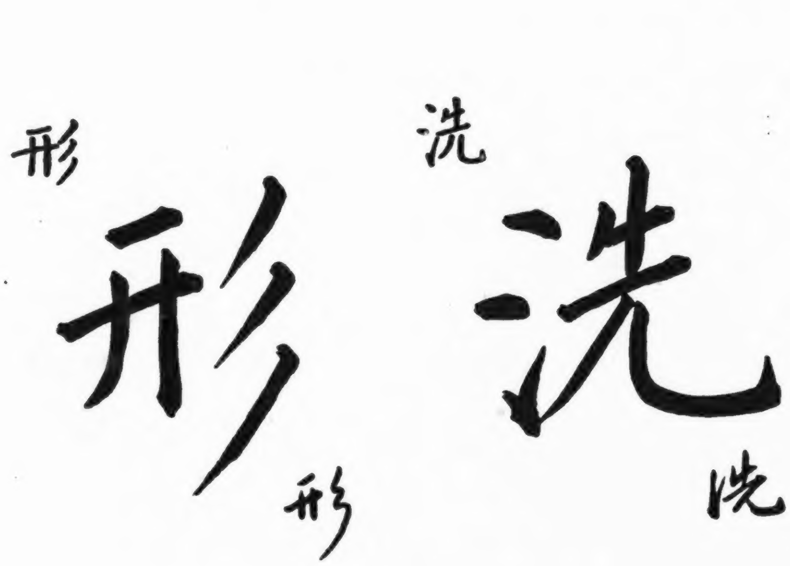
形勢 yīng-shaì: feature; configuration; condition.

909

洗 saí: to wash; to cleanse.

洗乾淨 saí kon-tsêng: to wash clean.

洗禮 saí-laǐ: baptism.



LESSON 34

READING MATERIAL

187

肥	feī: fat; fertile; flourishing
肥壯	feī-chòng: robust
肥田料	feī-t'īn-liû: fertilizers
養肥	yeŭng faī: to fatten

216

負	foô: ungrateful to owe; carry
負責	foô-chaàk: responsible
勝負	shìng foô: win or lose
欺負	hei-foô: insulting;

12

責	chaàk: duty, responsibility to punish
責任	chaàk-yâm: official charge, duty
責罰	chaàk-fât : to punish

肥 負 責

肥 負 責

肥 负 责

527

決	k'uèt: to decide; certainly.
決意	k'uèt-ī: to determine; to decide.
決定	k'uèt-tîng: same as k'uet i
決心	k'uèt-sam: decision; determination
決戰	k'uèt chìn: decisive battle.

691

面	mîn: face; surface; side.
面前	mîn-ts'īn: in front of; in presence of.
對面	tuī-mîn: opposite; facing.
面積	mîn-tsik: area.
面貌	mîn-maaû: appearance.

決 面

決 面

決 決 面 面

LESSON 34

READING MATERIAL

陳英唔係幾高，又唔係幾大，唔係太肥，又唔係太shaù。佢生得唔ts'òh。佢做事好負責，對人都好客氣嘅。

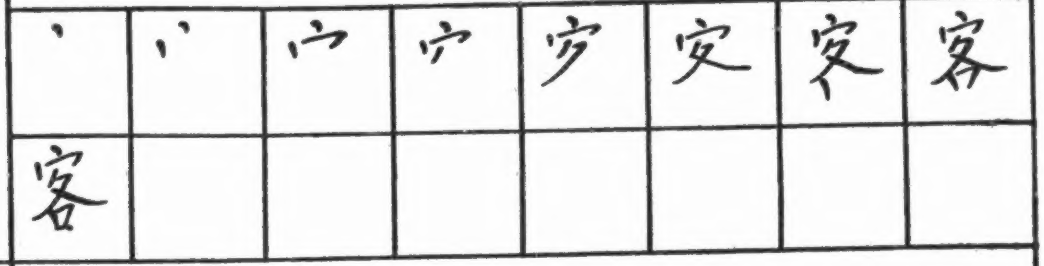
佢嘅生活幾好。每日朝早大約六點kòm上下佢起身。起chóh身之後，佢就ts'aàt-ngā，洗面，同t'ai-so là。洗chóh面之後，佢就cheùk shaam。Cheùk chóh shaam là，佢就食早-ts'aan。食chóh早-ts'aan，如果夠鐘là，佢就翻學。每日下午五點放chóh工之後，佢多數去wán黃小姐行hǎ街或者k'ing hǎ。喺禮拜六佢唔使番工，佢好得閒。有時，佢同黃小姐去睇hǎ tîn-yíng。有時呢，要睇情形黎決定。如果有事，佢就唔同黃小姐去街là。佢係一個信教嘅人，shóh-以喺禮拜日佢同黃小姐去教堂。去chóh教堂之後，佢地多數去聽hǎ yam-樂；敢就過chóh一日là。你話佢嘅生活好mà?

LESSON 34

WRITING MATERIAL

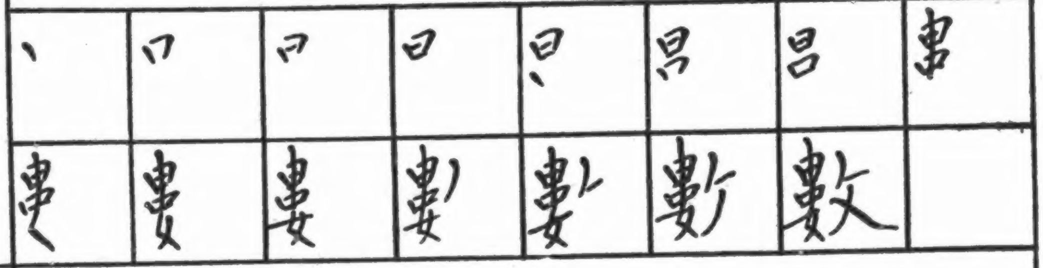
客

Character Number 239 **Radical Number** 40 宀
Stroke Number 9



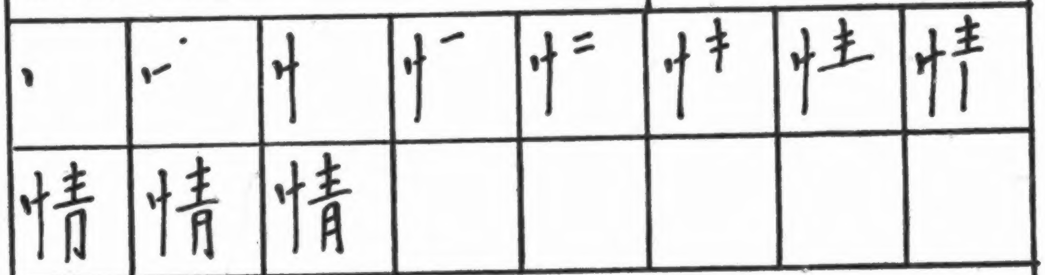
數

Character Number 1004 **Radical Number** 66 攵，攴
Stroke Number 15



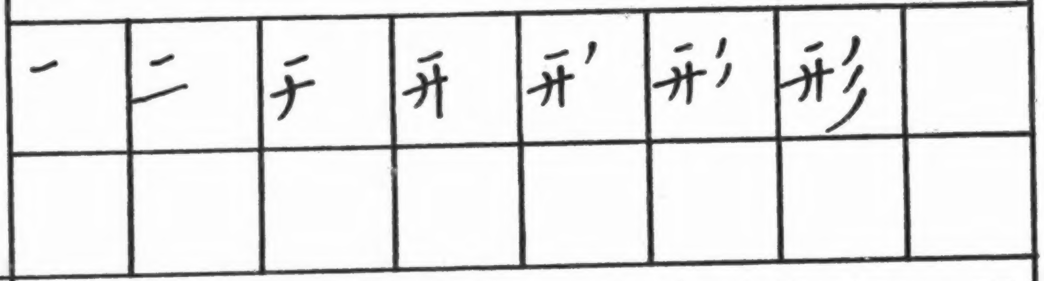
情

Character Number 1261 **Radical Number** 61 忄，心
Stroke Number 11



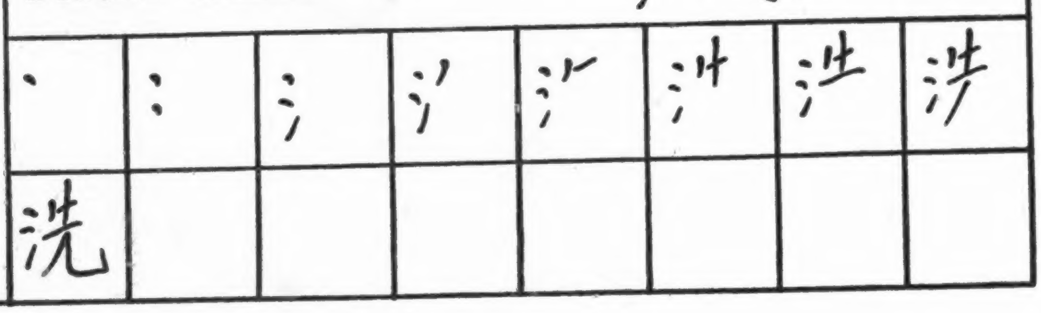
形

Character Number 1488 **Radical Number** 59 彡
Stroke Number 7



洗

Character Number 909 **Radical Number** 85 氵，水
Stroke Number 9



LESSON 35

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. K'uĭ shaù-chóh.
K'uĭ shaù-chóh ti.
K'uĭ shaù-chóh hó toh.
K'uĭ m̄-haî shaù-chóh.

2. K'uĭ ko-chóh ti.
K'uĭ k'ān-lîk-chóh ti.
K'uĭ lèng-chóh ti.
K'uĭ taaî-chóh ti.

3. Neĭ ì-ka iù huì i-uên*.
K'uĭ leŭng tîm-chung iù huì i-uên*.
Ngŏh t'ing-yât iù huì i-uên*.
Neĭ-teî m̄-shaî huì i-uên*.

4. Tsuì-kân t'in-heî m̄-haî keî hó.
Tsuì-kân shaang-ì m̄-haî keî hó,
În-tsoî hôk-shaang m̄-haî keî k'ān-lîk.
Tseung-loī fei-kei m̄-ooĭ keî maân.

5. P'ìng-p'ìng-sheûng-sheūng la!
Mā-mā*-teî* la!
To haî kóm la!
P'ó-p'ó-t'ung-t'ung la!

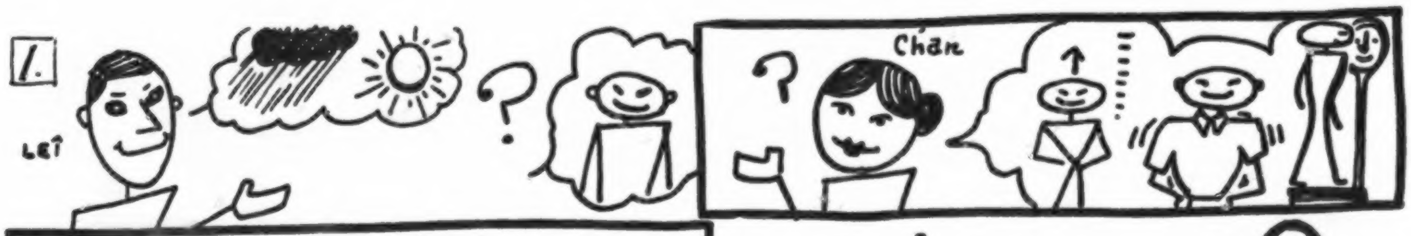
LESSON 35

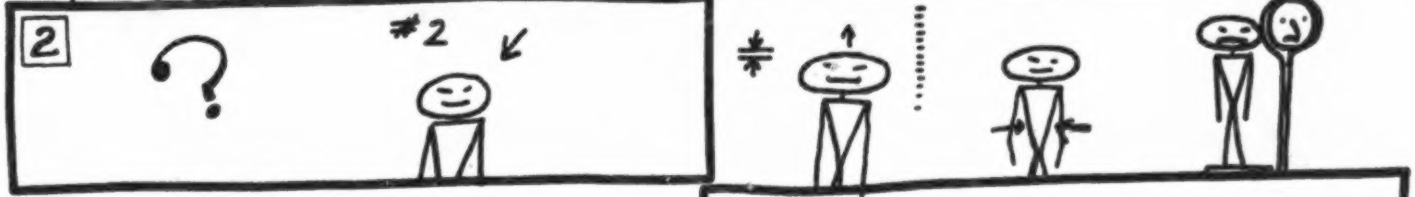
ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

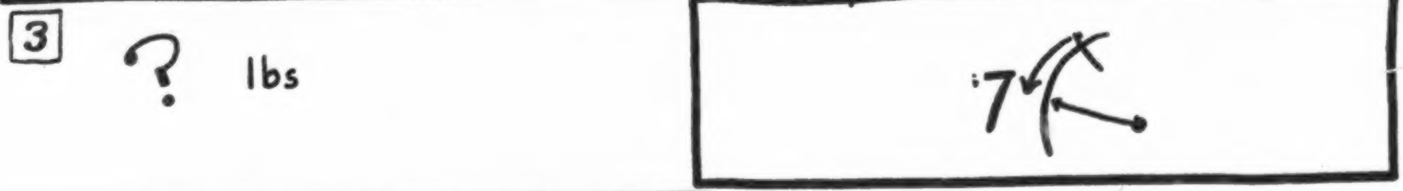
6. Tsuì kân kè t'in-heì laăng-chóh.
În-tsoî kè saì man-tsaî ts'ung-mîng-chóh.
Tsòk yât kè pêng-yān hó-chóh.
În-tsoî kè hôk-shaang toh-chóh.

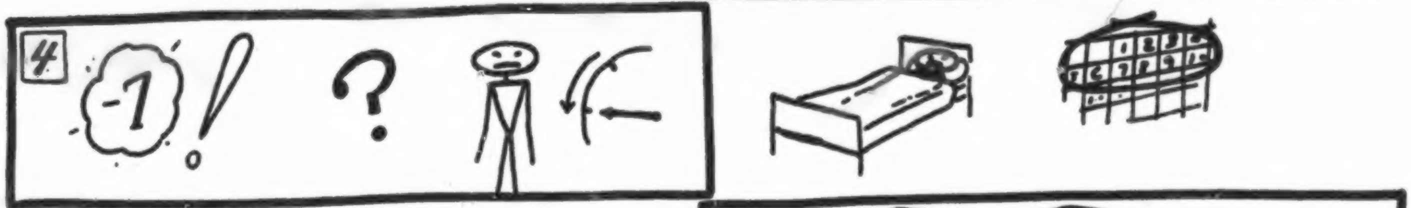
7. Pin kòh to m̄-kán-iù.
Mi-yĕ to m̄-kán-iù.
Pin-shuè to m̄-kán-iù.
Tîm-yeûng* to m̄-kán-iù.

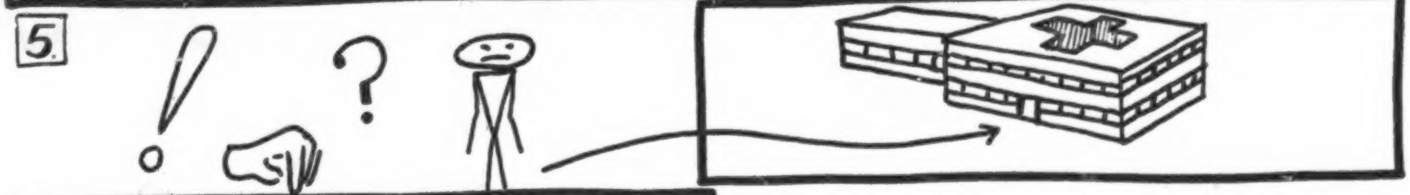
LESSON 35

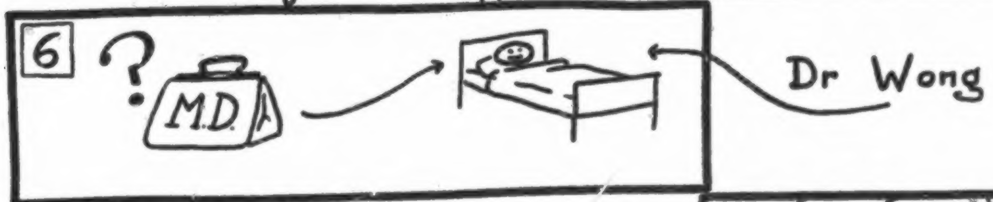

1.
LEt
Chan

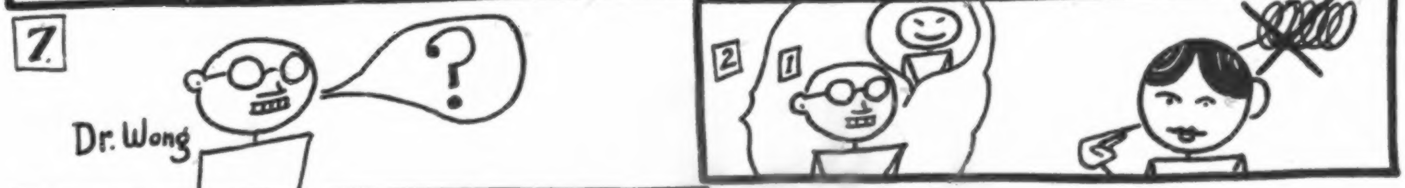

2
#2

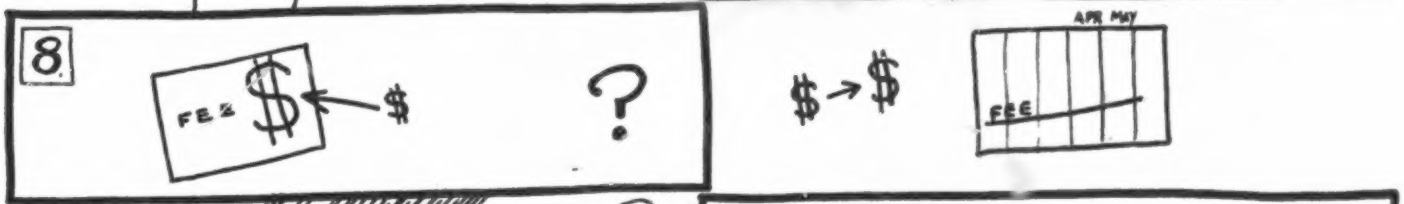

3
lbs
7

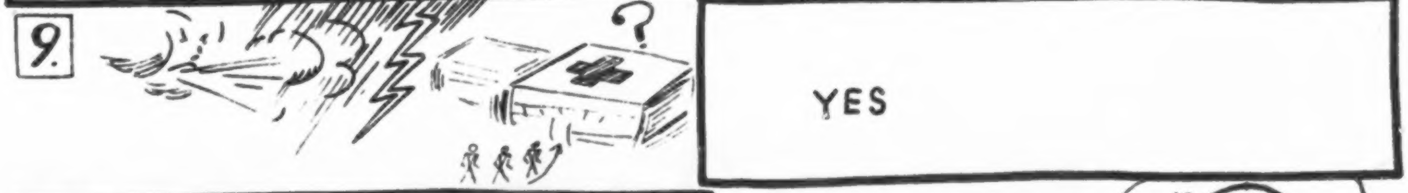

4
-1

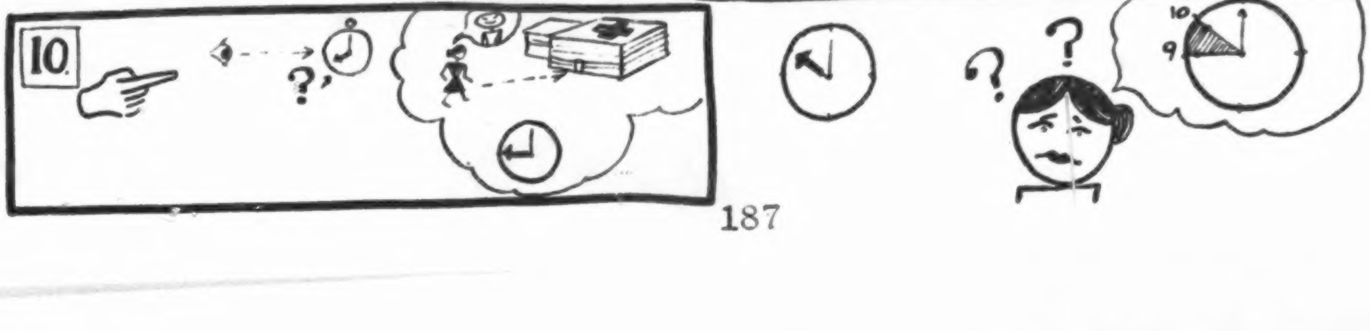

5.


6
M.D.
Dr Wong


7.
Dr. Wong
2
1


8.
FEE
$
APR MAY
FEE


9.
YES


10.
10
9

LESSON 35

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Chăn t'aaî-t'aaî*, tsuî-kân t'in-heî m̄-haî keî hó, neĭ kỏk-tak tîm ả?

   B: Hó hó, yaŭ sam, neĭ ne, Leĭ Sin-Shaang?

   A: P'īng-p'īng-sheŭng-sheŭng la! Neĭ kẻ taaî tsaî kân-loî tîm ả?

   B: K'uĭ ko-chóh hó toh, taaî-chóh hó toh, ch'ŭng-chóh hó toh.

2. A: Neĭ kẻ taî-î tsaî ne?

   B: K'uĭ ko-chóh ti, taân-haî peî ĭ-ts'īn saủ-chóh hó toh, heng-chóh hó toh.

3. A: K'uĭ heng-chóh keî-toh pông ả?

   B: K'uĭ heng-chóh ch'a-m̄-toh ts'at pông.

4. A: Heng-chóh kỏm toh!. Tîm-kaaî k'uĭ saủ-chóh kỏm toh ả?

   B: Yan-waî k'uĭ pĕng-chóh shēng leŭng-kỏh laĭ-paaî, shóh-ĭ saủ-chóh.

5. A: Ôh, kóm ā! M̄-kwaaî-tak la! Ī-ka k'uĭ haî pin shuẻ ả?

   B: K'uĭ yâp-chóh i-uên*; î-ka chûng haî i-uên*shuẻ.

6. A: Pin waî* i-shang tá-leĭ k'uĭ ả?

   B: Wōng I-Shang foô-tsaảk tá-leĭ k'uĭ.

7. A: Wōng I-Shang tîm wâ ả?

   B: K'ām-yât Wōng I-Shang wâ, k'uĭ hó-chóh ti, Wōng I-Shang kiủ ngōh fỏng-sam.

8. A: Yaŭ yān wâ, tsuî-kân i-shang faî heî-chóh hó toh, haî mả?

   B: Heî-chóh m̄-haî keî toh che, peî sheûng kỏh uêt kẻ heî-chóh ti la!

9. A: Tsuî-kân t'in-heî hỏ m̄-hó, i-uên* kẻ pêng-yān yat-tîng hó toh lả, haî mả?

   B: Haî, tsuî-kân i-uên* kẻ pêng-yān toh-chóh hó toh.

LESSON 35

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: Ts'íng neĭ t'aí-hă neĭ kè piu, ī-ka keí tím à?

B: Shâp-tím.

A: Neĭ t'aū-sin wâ, neĭ iù kaú-tím huì i-uên* t'aàm-pêng,
t'aì neí kè tsaí, neĭ ch'ì-chóh là!

B: Â, ni ts'ž ngŏh ch'ì-chóh shēng-kòh chung-t'aū là!
Tím suèn hó ne?

8

LESSON 35

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Mrs. Ch'ān, the weather hasn't been very good lately, how do you feel?

   B: Very well, thank you, how about you, Mr. Leì?

   A: As usual. How is your oldest son lately?

   B: He is much taller, much bigger, and much heavier.

2. A: How is your second son?

   B: He has grown a little bit taller, but is much skinnier, much lighter than before.

3. A: How many pounds is he lighter?

   B: He is almost 7 pounds lighter now.

4. A: That much lighter! Why has he lost so many (pounds)?

   B: Because he was sick for two whole weeks; therefore he has become skinnier.

5. A: Oh, so that's it! No wonder! Where is he now?

   B: He has entered the hospital; he is still in the hospital now.

6. A: Which doctor is taking care of him?

   B: Dr. Wōng is responsible for taking care of him.

7. A: What did Dr. Wōng say?

   B: Yesterday Dr. Wōng said, that he is better. Dr. Wōng asked me not to worry.

8. A: Someone says that the doctors' fees have gone up lately, is that right?

   B: They have not gone up very much, only a little more than last month!

9. A: The weather is very bad lately; the patients in the hospital must be plentiful, aren't they?

   B: Yes, there have been many more patients in the hospital lately.

LESSON 35

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

10. A: Will you please take a look at your watch; what time is it now?

B: 10 o'clock.

A: You said a while ago that you must go to the hospital at 9 o'clock to pay a sick call to see your son. You are late.

B: Ah, this time I am a whole hour late. What must I do?

LESSON 35

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ôh, Leĭ Sin-Shaang, kòm ngaam à! Haî ni shuè kîn-tó neĭ, kân-loî hó mà?

B: Hó hó, yaŭ-sham, tîm-kaaî mŏ kîn neĭ kòm noî à?

A: Ôh, ngŏh kam-chiu-tsó ngaam-ngaam haî Wā-Shîng-Tûn faan laî.

2. B: Neĭ haî Wā-Shîng-Tûn tîm-yeûng* faan laî kà?

A: Ngŏh haî Wā-Shîng-Tûn ts'ŏh fóh-ch'e faan laî.

3. B: Ts'ŏh fóh-ch'e kòm maân, tîm-kaaî neĭ m̄-ts'ŏh fei-kei à?

A: Ī-ka fóh-ch'e faaî-chóh hó toh là. M̄-haî ĭ-ts'în kòm maân là.

4. B: Wā-Shîng-Tûn î-ka tîm à?

A: Wā-Shîng-Tûn kam-nîn tùng-chóh hó toh, yān yîk-to toh-chóh hó toh.

5. B: Haî Wā-Shîng-Tûn, neĭ kîn-kwòh pin kòh p'āng-yaŭ à?

A: Neĭ chûng keî-tak Wōng Sheûng-Sẑ mà?

6. B: Keî-tak, k'uĭ haî ngŏh kè kaû t'ūng-hôk. K'uĭ ti tsaî-nuĭ* tîm à?

A: K'uĭ ĭ-ts'în yaŭ nḡ-kòh tsaî-nuĭ*; sheûng kòh uêt k'uĭ-teî yaû toh-chóh yat-kòh nuĭ*.

7. B: K'uĭ-teî yat-tîng hó foon-heî là, haî mà?

A: K'uĭ-teî fei-sheūng-chi foon-heî, Wōng T'aaî T'aaî* hó foon-heî nuĭ*.

8. B: Neĭ kîn-kwòh k'uĭ kè taaî nuĭ* mà?

A: Kîn-kwòh, k'uĭ chûng kiù ngŏh mân-haû neĭ.

9. B: K'uĭ î-ka tîm à?

A: Ôh, k'uĭ î-ka taaî-chóh hó toh, yaû lèng-chóh hó toh là.

10. B: K'uĭ kè taaî tsaî ne?

A: K'uĭ kè taaî tsaî ĭ-ts'în m̄-foon-heî tûk shue, neĭ chûng keî-tak mà?

LESSON 35

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. B: Keì-tak, k'uĭ ĭ-ts'ìn m̄-chung-ì faan hôk; ì-ka tìm à?

A: K'uĭ ì-ka k'ān-lîk-chóh, k'uĭ ì-ka hó foon-heì faan hôk là.

12. B: Neĭ maaĭ-chóh ti mi-yĕ à?

A: Ngŏh maaĭ-chóh yat-kîn laĭ-mât.

13. B: Tìm-kaaì neĭ m̄-haì Wā-Shîng-Tûn maaĭ à?

A: Ngŏh haì Wā-Shîng-Tûn kè shĭ-haû, ngŏh m̄-keì-tak-chóh.

14. B: Haì Wā-Shîng-Tûn maaĭ, p'ēng ti, haî mà?

A: Haî, ngŏh haì ni shuè maaĭ, kwaì-chóh.

15. B: Ôh, ngŏh ì-ka iù faan uk-k'eì là.

A: Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* yat-tîng tàng-chóh hó noî là, haî mà?

B: Haî, tsoì-kîn.

A: Tsoì-kîn.

LESSON 35

WORD LIST

1.	tsuì-kân	most recently, lately
2.	yaŭ-sam	thank you, very kind of you
3.	p’īng-p’īng-sheūng-sheūng (p’īng-sheūng)	as usual, so-so, ordinary, not unusual, fair
4.	ch’ŭng	heavy (weight)
5.	heng, hing	light (weight), to lose weight
6.	m̄-kwaaì-tak	no wonder
7.	pêng, pîng	to be ill, get sick, sickness, disease
8.	yâp	to enter, get in, go in
9.	i-uên*	hospital
10.	i-shaang	doctor, medical doctor
11.	tá-leĭ	to take care of, care for, mind
12.	kiù	to call, ask, yell, shout
13.	fòng-sam	not to worry, to be free from anxiety
14.	faì	fee, expenditure, expense, to waste, spend
15.	heî	to rise, go up, increase
16.	yat-tîng	must, definitely, certainly
17.	piu	wrist watch, meter
18.	t’aū-sin	a while ago, at first
19.	t’aàm pêng	to pay a sick call, visit the sick
20.	t’aàm	to visit, pay a visit

LESSON 35

READING MATERIAL

151

重 ch'ūng: double

重 ch'ŭng: heavy; serious

重 chûng: heavy; serious; more

好重 hó-ch'ŭng: very heavy

雙重 sheung-ch'ūng: double; twice

重有 chûng yaŭ: still more

274

輕 heng: light weight

輕 hing: (lit.pro.)

輕輕哋 heng-heng-teî*: lightly; gently

輕易 hing-î: easy

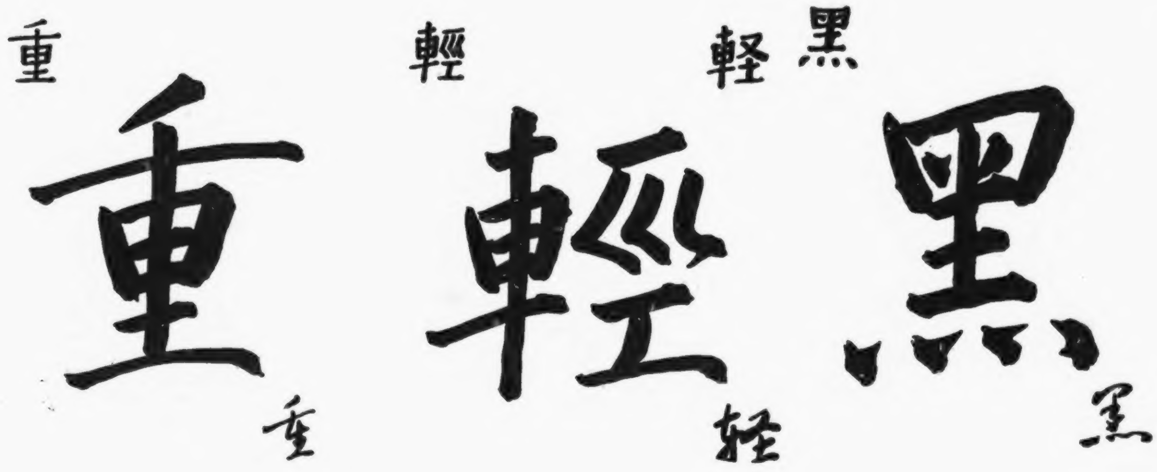
輕浮 hing-faū: superficial; frivolous

250

黑 hak: dark; black

黑暗 hak-ðm: darkness; dark

黑心 hak sam: evil; malevolent



596

理 leĭ: to govern; to manage; right; principle.

打理 tá-leĭ: to manage.

管理 koón-leĭ: to govern; to manage.

合理 hôp-leĭ: reasonable.

理由 leĭ-yaū: reason.

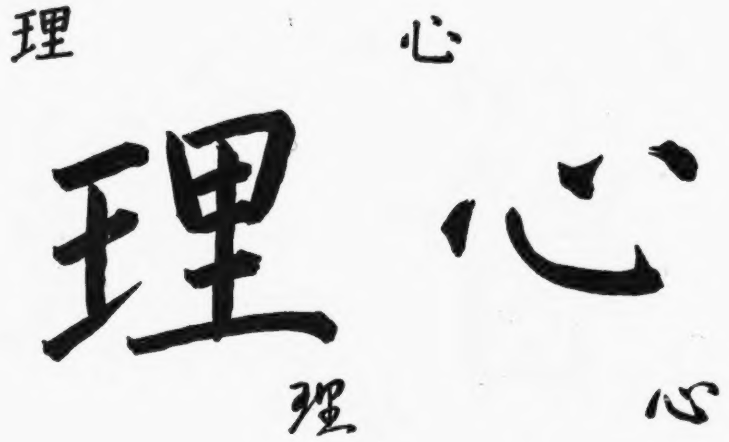
理想 leĭ-seúng: ideal.

912

心 sam: the heart; center; mind; affection.

小心 siú-sam: careful.

灰心 fooi-sam: disheartened.



LESSON 35

READING MATERIAL

547

怪 kwaaì: strange; wierd; preternatural; to wonder; to blame one.

怪事 kwaaì sẑ: strange event.

醜怪 ch'aǔ-kwaaì: ugly looking.

難怪 naǎn-kwaaì: not to be wondered at.

怪責 kwaaì-chaàk: to reprimand, to blame.

83

遲 ch'ī: late; slow tardy.

延遲 īn-ch'ī: delay

遲疑 ch'ī-ī: hesitation; irresolute

來得遲 loī-tak-ch'ī: come late

1086

探 t'aàm: to visit; to search out; to spy; to try, to sound.

探訪 t'aàm-fóng· to inquire about

偵探 ching-t'aàm detective; con table.

怪　遲　探

怪遲探

怪　遲　探

331

醫 i: to cure; to treat

醫生 i-shaang: physisian

醫院 i-uên*: hospital

行醫 haãng i: to practise medicine

獸醫 shaù-i: a veterinary

1392

院 uên, uên*: hall; building; establishment.

孤兒院 koo-ī uên*: orphanage.

大理院 taaî-leǐ-uên*: supreme court.

立法院 laâp-faàt-uên*: legislative department.

醫　医　院

醫院

醫　院

LESSON 35

READING MATERIAL

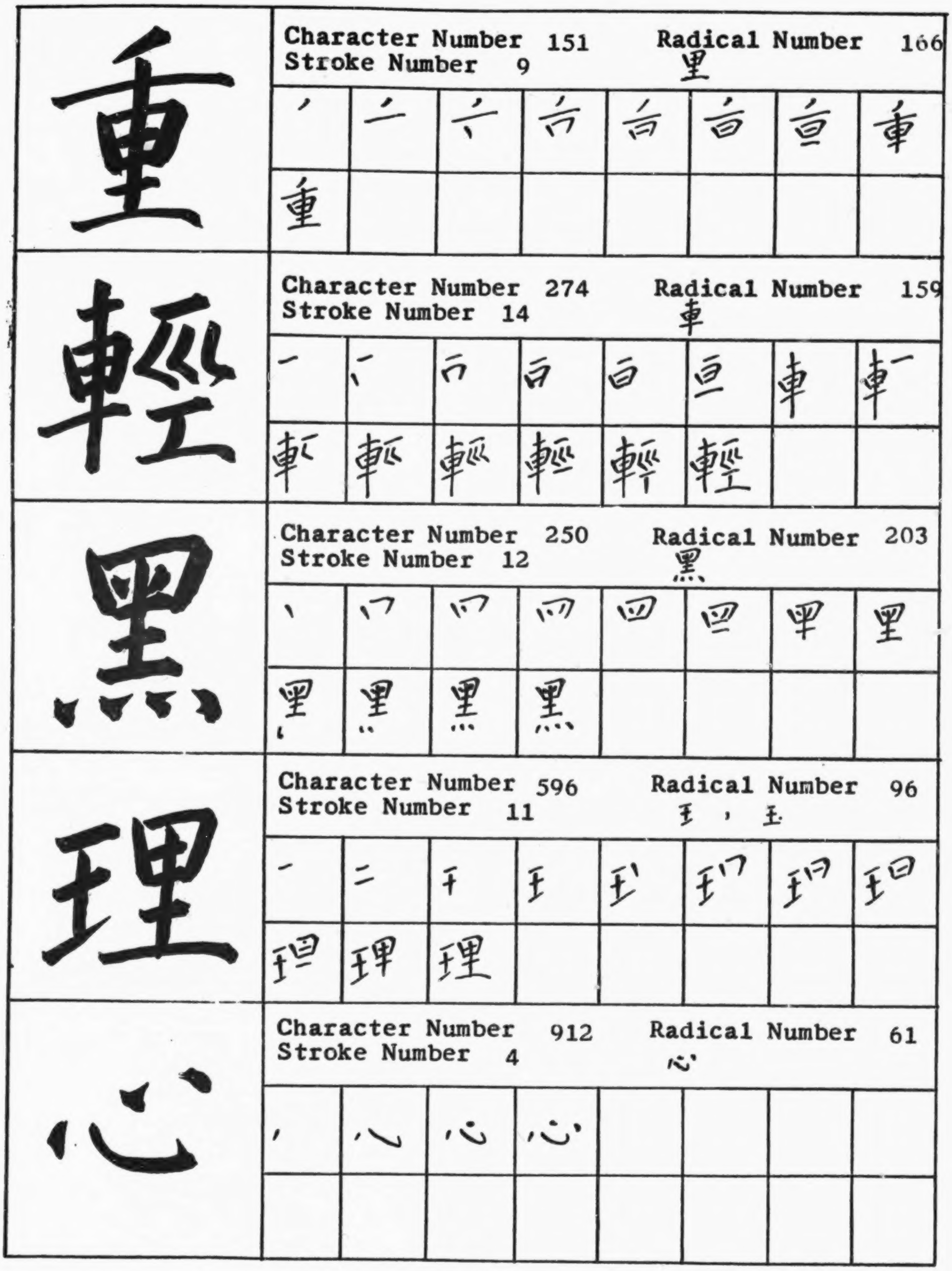
黃小姐幾lèng. 佢唔肥唔shaù,唔大唔細. 如果佢重多一pông呢,就太肥,太大là;如果佢輕chóh一pông呢,就太shaù,太細là. 佢嘅面唔係幾長,唔係幾黑. 唔怪得,有kòm多人中意佢.

近來黃小姐有病;佢喺大前日yâp chóh醫院,請黃醫生打理佢. 黃小姐病chóh已經有五日kòm耐. 呢件事令陳英好唔放心. 陳英好有心;佢每日放chóh工之後,都去醫院探病. 今日佢放心啲,因為現在黃小姐好chóh啲;或者遲幾日,就hóh以出院là. 陳英聽chóh呢啲說話之後,佢覺得好歡喜. 黃小姐嘅朋友亦都覺得好歡喜.

而家黃小姐shaù chóh好多,輕chóh好多. 佢話,佢出chóh醫院之後,打算喺屋k'ei住hǎi,乜野都唔想做là.

LESSON 35

WRITING MATERIAL



重

Character Number 151 Radical Number 166

Stroke Number 9 里

輕

Character Number 274 Radical Number 159

Stroke Number 14 車

黑

Character Number 250 Radical Number 203

Stroke Number 12 黑

理

Character Number 596 Radical Number 96

Stroke Number 11 王 , 玉

心

Character Number 912 Radical Number 61

Stroke Number 4 心

LESSON 36

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Ngŏh hôk-kán Kwóng-Tung Wâ*.
Ngŏh m̄-haî hôk-kán Meĭ-Kwòk Wâ*.
K'uĭ tong-kán ping.
K'uĭ m̄-haî tong-kán ping.

2. Ī-ka, ngŏh shîk-kán tsó-ts'aan.
Chìng-wâ, k'uĭ huì-kán paan-fōng*.
În-tsoî, k'uĭ tá-kán tîn-wâ*.
Ī-ka, ngŏh táng-kán ngŏh kè p'āng-yaŭ.

3. Neĭ haî m̄-haî tûk-kán shue à?
K'uĭ haî m̄-haî t'eng-kán yam-ngôk ne?
K'uĭ-teî haî m̄-haî yám-kán kà-fe à?
K'uĭ haî m̄-haî sé-kán Chung-Mān tsẑ ne?

4. Neĭ keî-shī chì huì-tak à?
Neĭ-teî keî-shī chì laī-tak ne?
K'uĭ-teî keî-shī chì shîk-tak à?
Ngŏh-teî keî-shī chì kóng-tak ne?

5. K'uĭ chûng tûk-kán shue.
Neĭ chûng fàn-kán kaaù.
Ngŏh-teî chûng sé-kán sùn.
K'uĭ chûng tá-kán tîn-pò.

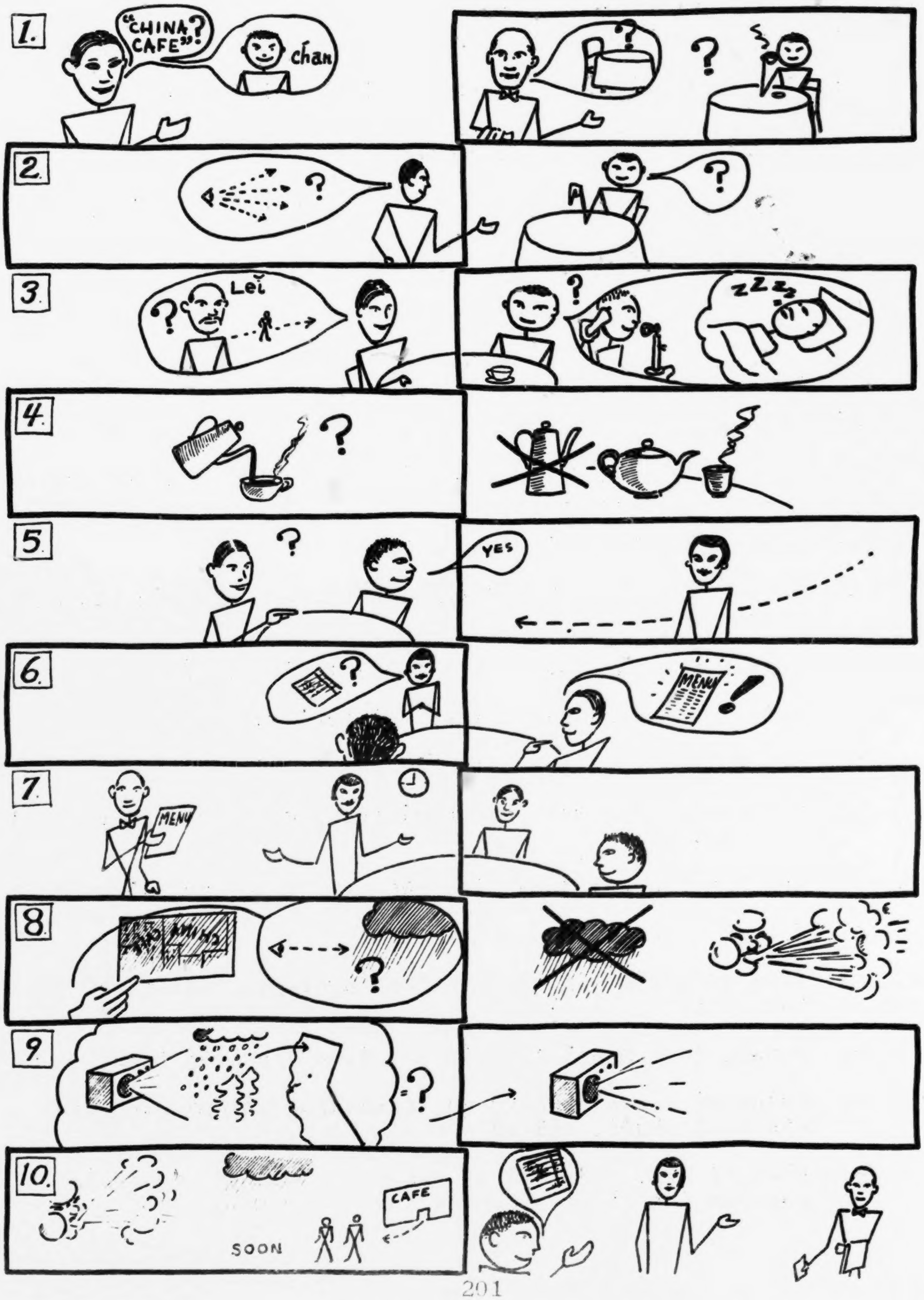
LESSON 36

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

6. Ī-ka haāng-kán laî kè haî m̄-haî haaû-cheúng?
În-tsoî shîk-kán faân kè haî m̄-haî lŏ Ch'ān*?
Chìng-wâ yám-kán ch'ā kè haî m̄-haî neĭ?
Chìng-wâ maaĭ-kán yĕ kè haî m̄-haî kwan-yān?

7. Ngŏh-teî chûng meî yaŭ shue.
K'uĭ-teî chûng meî yaŭ shī-haû.
Ngŏh-teî chûng meî yaŭ ts'īn*.
Neĭ-teî chûng meî huì-kaai.

LESSON 36



1.
"CHINA CAFE"?
chan
?
?
2.
?
?
3.
Lei
?
?
zzz
4.
?
5.
?
YES
6.
?
MENU
!
7.
MENU
8.
?
9.
?
10.
SOON
CAFE

LESSON 36

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Ts'ỉng mân ni kaan haî m-haî Chung-Kwỏk ts'aan-shat ả?

C: Haî, neĭ haî m-haî wán-kán waî* ả, sin-shaang?

A: M̄-haî, ngŏh m-haî wán-kán waî*; ngŏh wán-kán ngŏh kẻ p'āng-yaŭ Ch'ān Sin-Shaang.

C: Kóh waî* yám-kán kả-fe kẻ haî m-haî ả, sin-shaang?

A: Â, haî lả! M̄-koi neĭ, fôh-keî.

2. A: Lŏ Ch'ān*; ngŏh tỏ-shuẻ wán neĭ, tîm-kaaî wán m-tó neĭ kả?

B: Ngŏh haî ni shuẻ táng neĭ táng tỏ î-ka, neĭ m-chi me!

3. A: Chûng yaŭ lŏ Leĭ ne? K'uĭ keí shî chỉ laî-tak ả?

B: M̄-chi pỏh! Ngŏh chỉng-wâ tả tîn-wâ* peí k'uĭ kẻ shî-haû, K'uĭ chûng fản-kán kaaủ.

4. A: Neĭ î-ka haî m-haî yám-kán kả-fe ả?

B: M̄-haî, ngŏh î-ka m-haî yám-kán kả-fe, ngŏh yám-kán hŭng ch'ā.

5. A: Ī-ka haāng-kán laî kẻ haî m-haî taaî-waî* ả?

B: Haî, î-ka haāng-kán laî kẻ haî taaî-waî*.

6. D: Sin-shaang, neĭ-teî tîm-chóh ch'oî meî ả?

A: Ngŏh-teî chûng meî yaŭ ch'oî-taan, m-koi neĭ ning ch'oî-taan laî lá!

7. D: Kôh kỏh fôh-keî î-ka ning-kán laî, m-koi neĭ táng-hǎ.

A: M̄-koi, m-koi.

8. A: Ī-ka t'in kỏm yam, neĭ t'aî-hă ngoî-pîn, haî m-haî lôk-kán uĕ ả?

B: M-haî, î-ka m-haî lôk-kán uĕ, î-ka faan-kán fung.

9. A: Chỉng-wâ san-mān pỏ-kỏ wâ, Ka-Shaáng kẻ pak-pîn lôk-kán taaî shuẻt, haî mả?

B: Hó-ts'ž haî, chỉng-wâ kẻ san-mān pỏ-kỏ wâ, Ka-Shaáng kẻ pak-pîn lôk-kán taaî shuẻt.

LESSON 36

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: Ī-ka faan-kán fung, tsaû-laī lôk uě, ngǒh-teī pat-uē tsaú là!

B: Hó ȁ! Siú-ché, m̄-koi neī maaì taan.

D: Sin-Shaang, kóh kòh fóh-keì ì-ka laì-kán.

LESSON 36

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: May I ask if this is the "China Cafe" please?

C: Yes, are you looking for a seat sir?

A: No, I'm not looking for a seat; I'm looking for my friend Mr. Ch'ān.

C: Is that the one who is drinking coffee there sir?

A: Ah, yes! Thank you, waiter.

2. A: Say Ch'ān, I have been looking for you everywhere. How come I couldn't find you?

B: I have been here waiting for you and have waited until now. Don't you know?

3. A: Where is Lěi? When can he come?

B: I don't know. When I phoned him just a while ago, he was still sleeping.

4. A: Are you now drinking coffee?

B: No, I am not drinking coffee now; I'm drinking tea.

5. A: Is the one walking over an usherette?

B: Yes, the one walking over is an usherette.

6. D: Sir, have you gentlemen ordered yet?

A: We don't have a menu yet, will you please bring us the menu?

7. D: That waiter is now bringing it over. Please wait a minute.

A: Thank you.

8. A: It is so gloomy now; take a look outside, is it raining?

B: No, it is not raining; the wind is blowing.

9. A: The news report has just said that it is snowing heavily in the northern part of California, is that right?

B: Sounds like it, the news report stated a while ago that in the northern part of California it is snowing very heavily.

TOP

LESSON 36

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

10. A: The wind is blowing now, soon it will rain. We had better go.

B: All right. Miss, will you please make out the check.

D: Sir, the waiter is coming now.

LESSON 36

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ts'íng mân, Leĭ-Sin Shaang haí shuè mà?

   C: K'uĭ ī-ka saí-kán mîn, ts'íng neĭ táng-hă la!

2. A: Tsó-shān, Leĭ Sin-Shaang.

   B: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān, Wōng Sin-Shaang, yaŭ mat chí-kaaù à?

3. A: Ngŏh seúng ts'íng mân neĭ, Chung-Kwòk Kung-Sz tím huì à?

   B: Ngŏh kam-yât to seúng huì kóh shuè, ts'íng neĭ táng yat-chân-kaan, ngŏh t'ūng neĭ huì là!

4. A: Neĭ ī-ka tsô-kán mi-yĕ à?

   B: Ngŏh tsôk-yât sé-kán yat-fung sùn, ī-ka chûng sé-kán. Neĭ táng-hă, tak mà?

5. A: Hó la, iù táng keí noî à?

   B: Taaî-yeùk* iù táng poòn tím-chung chóh-yaû*, hó mà?

6. A: Hó la, neĭ haí ni shue sé sùn la, ngŏh seúng haí ni tô t'aí-hă shue.

   B: Â, ngŏh paàt tím-chung iù kìn yat-kòh p'āng-yaŭ, pat-uē huì kóh shuè sin, faan-chóh laî chi-haû chí sé.

7. A: Neĭ kè p'āng-yaŭ ī-ka haí pin shuè à?

   B: K'uĭ ī-ka haí yat-kaan ts'aan-shat shuè shîk-kán tsó-ts'aan, k'uĭ haí kóh shuè táng-kán ngŏh.

8. A: Ngŏh-teî ī-ka huì là, hó mà?

   B: Neĭ haāng sin, ngŏh faan huì ning kîn lau.

9. A: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, ni kîn lau haí pin shuè maaĭ kà?

   B: Ngŏh haí Chung-Kwòk Kung-Sz maaĭ kè; Chung-Kwòk-Kung-Sz maaî p'ēng yĕ kè shī-haû, ngŏh maaĭ kè.

10. A: Ī-ka Chung-Kwòk Kung-Sz haî m̄-haî chûng maaî-kán p'ēng yĕ à?

    B: Haî, ī-ka chûng maaî-kán p'ēng yĕ. Neĭ seúng huì kóh shuè maaĭ mi-yĕ à?

LESSON 36

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Ngŏh m̄-haỉ huỉ maaĭ yĕ, ngŏh seúng huỉ wán yat-kỏh yăn. K'uĭ haỉ kỏh shuẻ tsô sẑ. K'uĭ sỉng Ch'ān, neĭ shìk k'uĭ mả?

B: Ngŏh m̄-shìk k'uĭ.

12. A: Ngŏh yat-chân kaaỉ-siû neĭ shik la!

B: Hó la, Wōng Sin-Shaang. Haāng-kán laỉ kóh kòh yān haî m̄-haỉ Ch'ān Sin-Shaang ả?

13. A: M̄-haỉ, ngŏh kỉn-tó k'uĭ lả. K'uĭ ỉ-ka maaî-kán yĕ, k'uĭ cheûk yat-kỉn paâk shaam, neĭ kỉn-tó mả?

B: Ôh, ngŏh kỉn-tó lả! K'uĭ t'ūng yat-kỏh yān kóng-kán shuêt-wâ.

14. A: K'uĭ ỉ-ka waâk-ché m̄-tak-haān, ngŏh-teỉ táng yat-chân tsoỉ laỉ la!

V: Wōng Sin-Shaang, k'uĭ kỉn-tó neĭ lả. K'uĭ ỉ-ka haāng-kán laỉ lả!

15. A: Ch'ān Sin-Shaang, neĭ hó mōng ā?

D: M̄-haỉ keỉ mōng che, Wōng Sin-Shaang.

A: Ch'ān Sin-Shaang, ngŏh kaaỉ-siû neĭ t'ūng Leĭ Sin-Shaang seung-shik.

LESSON 36

WORD LIST

1.	**kân**	-ing, verb suffix, progressive tense, indicating action in progress; tight, urgent, important
2.	**kà-fe**	coffee
3.	**fôh-keì**	waiter, waitress, employee, clerk
4.	**tò-shuè**	everywhere
5.	**me?**	interrogative final particle
6.	**hũng ch'ā**	black tea (lit. red tea)
7.	**taaì-waî***	usher, usherette (restaurant, theater, stadium)
8.	**tîm ts'oì**	to order food (at a restaurant)
9.	**ts'oì-taan**	menu, bill o'fare
10.	**ning**	to bring, carry, take
11.	**t'in yam, (yam-t'in)**	overcast weather, gloomy weather
12.	**ngoî-pîn**	outside
13.	**lôk uĕ**	to rain; raining
14.	**faan fung**	windstorm; wind (storm) blowing
15.	**san-mān**	news
16.	**pò-kò**	report; to report
17.	**Ka-Shaáng**	State of California, USA
18.	**lôk suèt**	to snow; snowing
19.	**maaî taan**	to make out the check, bring the bill

LESSON 36

READING ING MATERIAL

66

知 i: to know; wisdom

知到 h -tò: to now.

知覺 ch -kòk: feeling; sensation

先知 sin hi: a prophet

知足 chi-tsuk: content with satisfied

知己 cn -.eí: intimate friend.

1006

所 shóh: a place; building; that; that which; where; what.

公所 kung-shóh: meeting place; guild; public office.

事務所 sẑ-mố shóh: office; business place.

所以 shóh-ĭ: therefore.

1091

但 taân: but; however; still; only.

但凡 taân faān: all; whosoever.

知 所 但

知 所 但

知 所 但

1160

倒 tó: to fall over; to upset; to invert; action accomplished.

跌倒 tìt tó: to fall down.

打倒 tá-tó: to hit; to knock down.

得倒 tak-tó: to acquire.

913

新 san: new; fresh recently.

新聞 san-mān: news.

新年 san-nīn: New Year

新式 san-shik: new style; new type.

倒 新

倒 新

倒 新

LESSON 36

READING MATERIAL

1164

道 tô: a path; way; road, doctrine.

道路 tô-lô: a path road.

道理 tô-leĭ: doctrine; right principle; reason.

道德 tô-tak: ethics; morality.

412

緊 kán: important; urgent; firm;

緊要 kán-iù: necessary; important.

緊急 kán-kap: very urgent.

揸緊 cha kán: holding it or to hold firmly.

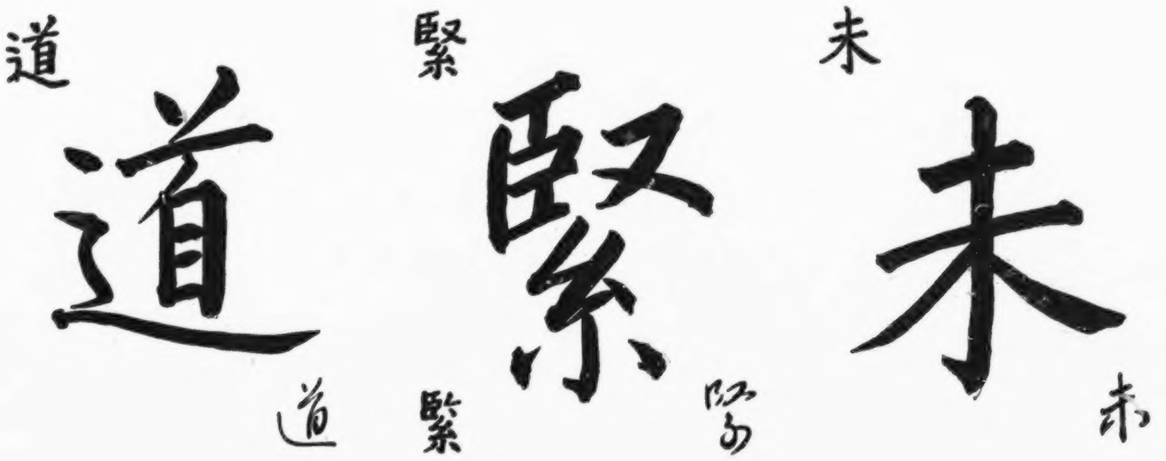
685

未 meî: not yet; not.

未曾 meî-ts'āng: not yet.

未定 meî têng: undecided; not yet determined.

未必 meî-pit: perhaps not; not certain; not necessarily.



1141

電 tîn: electricity; lightning.

電話 tîn-wâ: telephone.

電報 tîn-pò: telegram.

電燈 tîn-ta g: electric light.

電影戲 tîn yíng heì: movie.

長途電話 ch'eūng t'ō tîn-wâ long distance telephone.

480

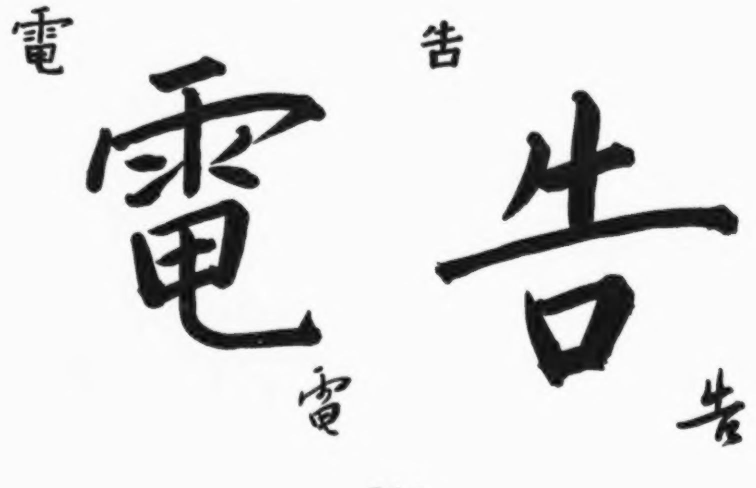
告 kò: to announce; to complain; to accuse.

控告 hùng-kò: to bring suit.

廣告 kwóng-kò: advertisement.

告假 kò-kà: ask for leave of absence.

告別 kò-pît: to say good-bye; farewell.



LESSON 36

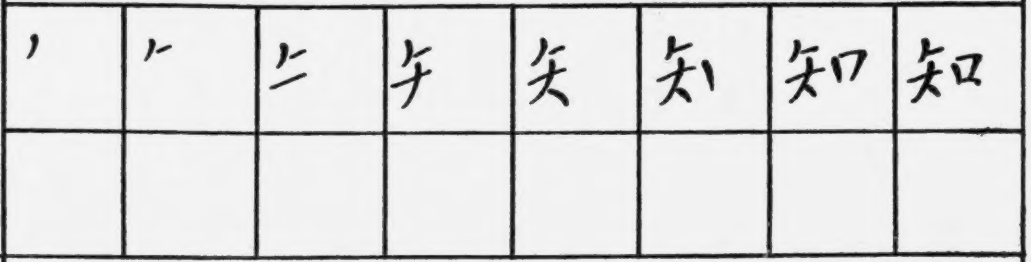
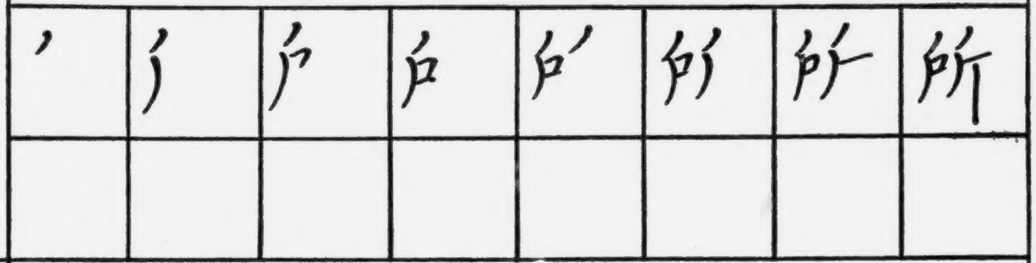
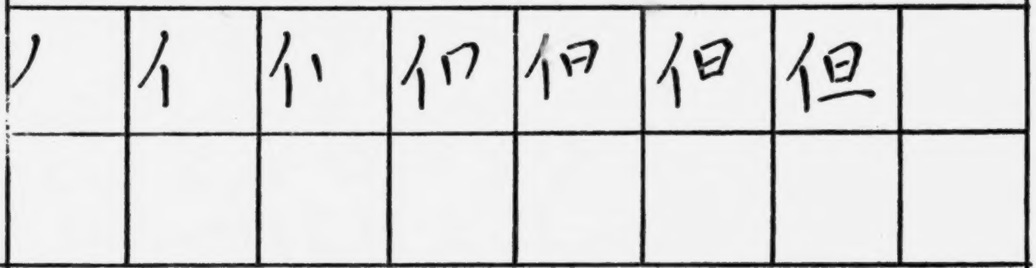
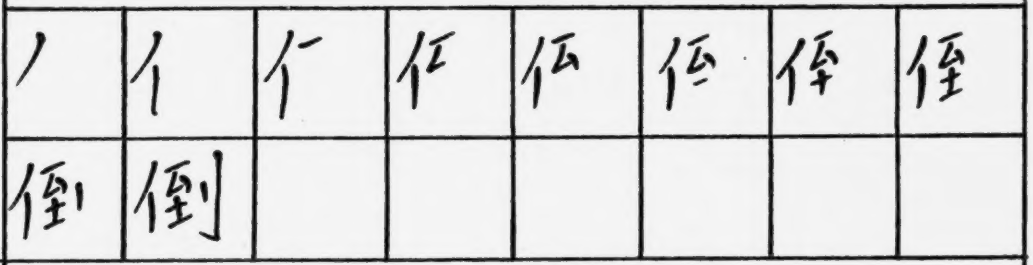
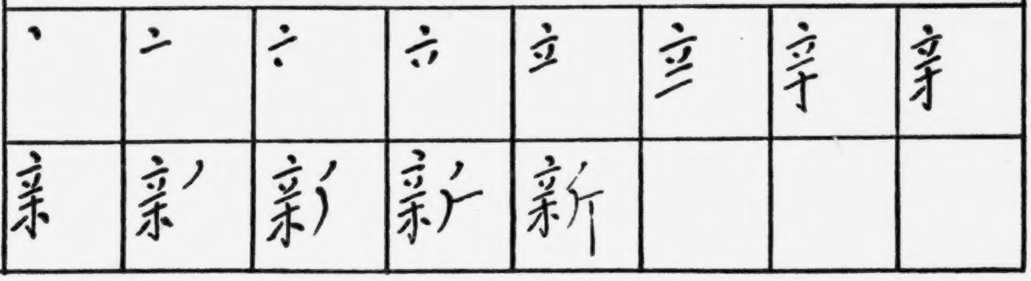
READING MATERIAL

黃小姐好chóh là . 今朝佢出-chóh醫院,翻黎屋-k'eí . 陳英唔知道呢件事,所以放chóh學之後,佢就去醫院見黃小姐;但係黃小姐唔喺處. 而家陳英知道黃小姐已經出chóh院là.

陳英喺醫院見唔倒黃小姐;佢覺得唔係幾歡喜. 佢決定再去wán黃小姐. 而家佢行緊路,又想緊野. 佢話,點-kaaí黃小姐唔講peí佢知呢,令佢tò-處kòm wán . 佢行hă想hă;冇幾耐,就行tò黃小姐嘅屋-k'eí . 佢見倒黃小姐喺kóh-處飲緊hūng茶,同聽緊新聞嘅報告. 黃小姐見倒陳英嘅時候,陳英重未講,黃小姐就話,對唔住. 昨日下午佢打電話peí陳英,但係陳英上緊堂;後來佢唔keì-得再打電話. 陳英聽倒呢啲說話之後,佢話,唔緊要. 佢就同黃小姐飲茶同k'ing hă .

LESSON 36

WRITING MATERIAL

知	Character Number 66 Radical Number 111 Stroke Number 8 矢	
所	Character Number 1006 Radical Number 63 Stroke Number 8 户	
但	Character Number 1091 Radical Number 9 Stroke Number 7 亻，人	
倒	Character Number 1160 Radical Number 9 Stroke Number 10 亻，人	
新	Character Number 913 Radical Number 69 Stroke Number 13 斤	

LESSON 37

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Tsòk-yât ngŏh yaŭ huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ.
Tsòk-yât ngŏh yaŭ tsô kung.
Ts'īn-yât ngŏh yaŭ maaĭ maĭ.
Kaû-nīn ngŏh yaŭ tûk shue.

2. Tsòk-yât ngŏh mŏ huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ.
Tsòk-yât ngŏh mŏ tsô kung.
Ts'īn-yât ngŏh mŏ maaĭ maĭ.
Kaû-nīn ngŏh mŏ tûk shue.

3. Tsòk-yât neĭ yaŭ-mŏ huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ?
Tsòk-yât neĭ yaŭ-mŏ tsô kung?
Ts'īn-yât neĭ yaŭ-mŏ maaĭ maĭ?
Kaû-nīn neĭ yaŭ-mŏ tûk shue?

4. Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ huì-kwòh Saam-Faān-Shĭ?
Neĭ-yaŭ-mŏ tsô-kwòh kung?
Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ maaĭ-kwòh maĭ?
Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ tûk-kwòh shue?

5. Ngŏh huì-kwòh Saam-Faān-Shĭ.
Ngŏh tsô-kwòh kung.
Ngŏh maaĭ-kwòh maĭ.
Ngŏh tûk-kwòh shue.

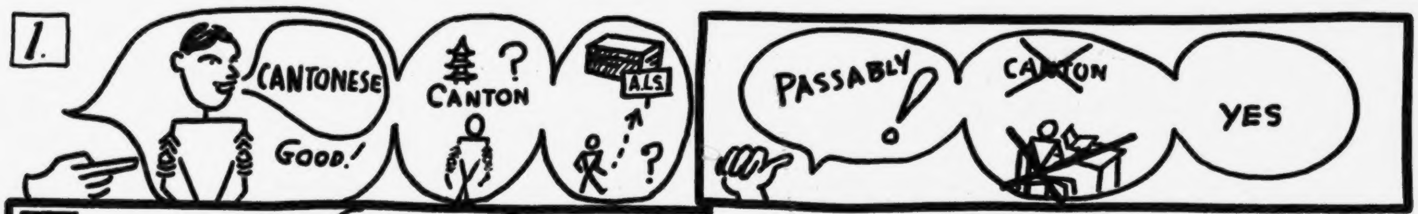
LESSON 37

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

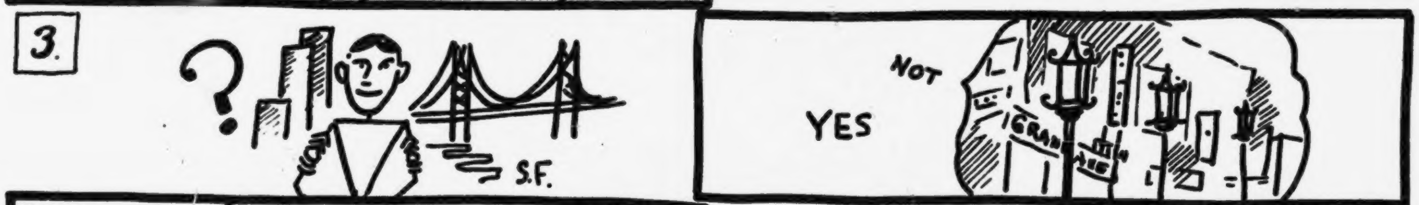
6. Ngŏh mŏ huì-kwòh Saam-Faān-Shĭ.
Ngŏh mŏ tsô-kwòh kung.
Ngŏh mŏ maaĭ-kwòh maĭ.
Ngŏh mŏ tûk-kwòh shue.

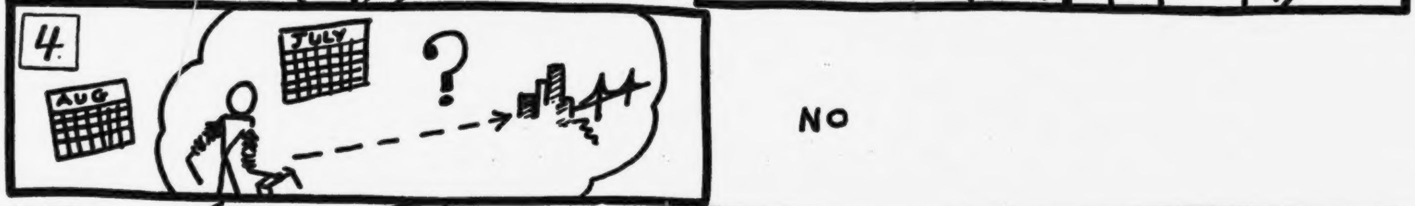
7. Ngŏh kóng-tak mā-mā*-teî* che!
Ngŏh tsô-tak mā-mā*-teî* che!
Ngŏh hôk-tak mā-mā*-teî* che!
Ngŏh sé-tak mā-mā*-teî* che!

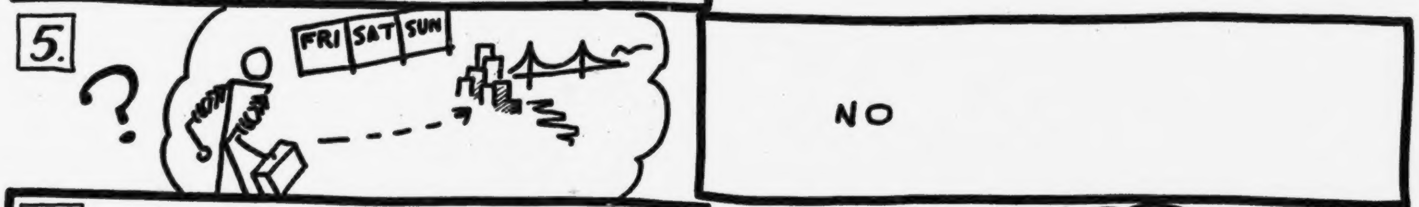
LESSON 37

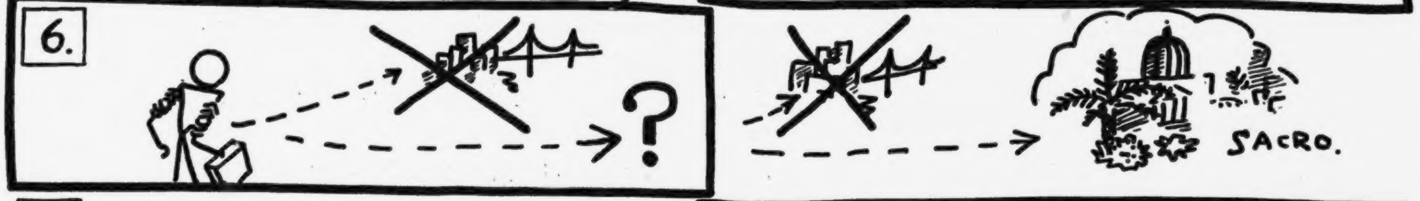

1.
CANTONESE
GOOD!
CANTON
A.L.S.
PASSABLY
CANTON
YES

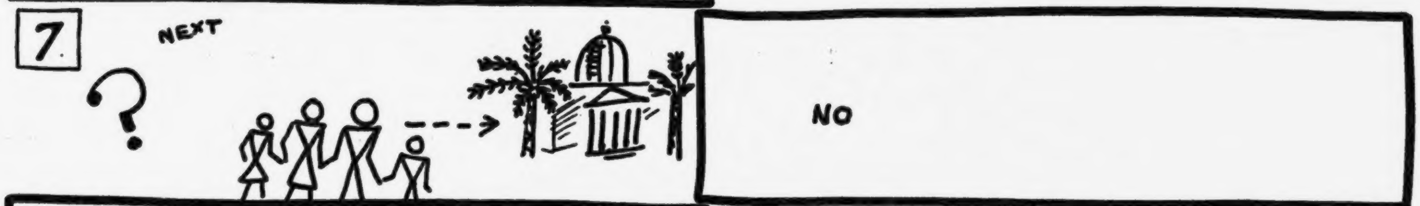
2.
L.A.
NO

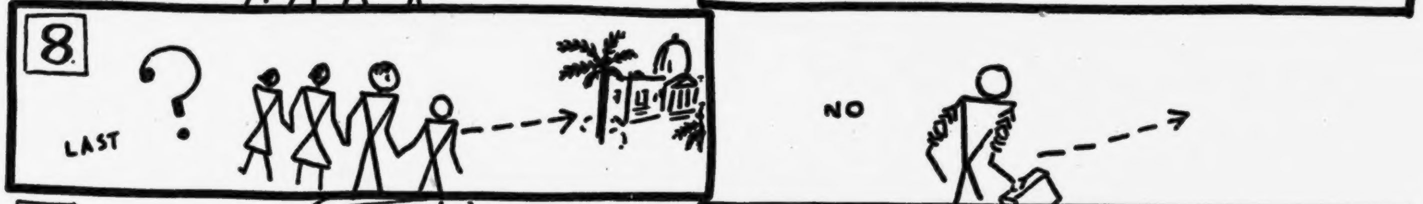

3.
S.F.
NOT
YES
GRANT AVE

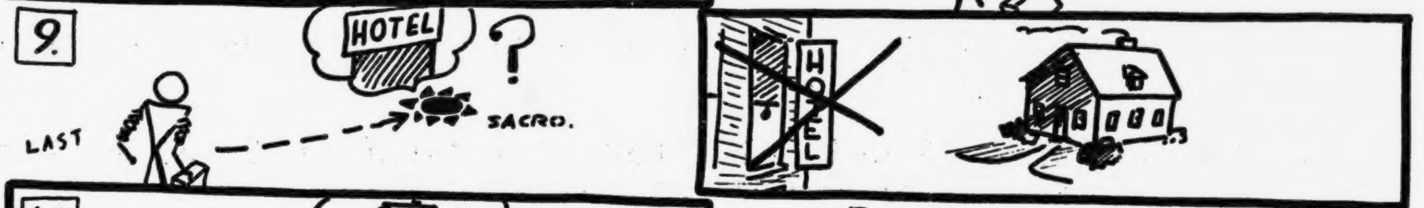

4.
JULY
AUG
NO

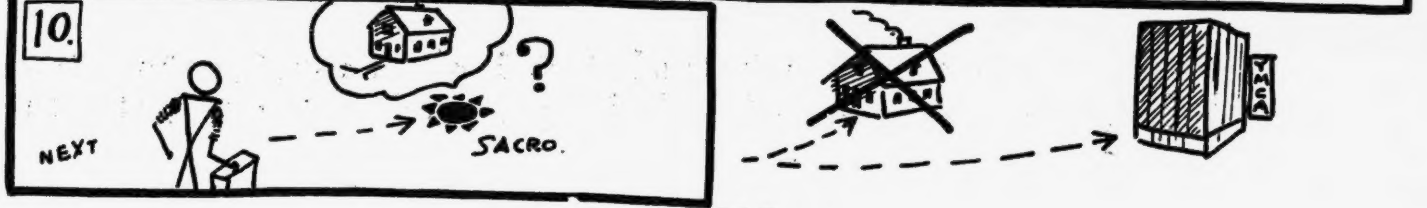

5.
FRI
SAT
SUN
NO


6.
SACRO.


7.
NEXT
NO


8.
LAST
NO


9.
HOTEL
LAST
SACRO.
HOTEL


10.
NEXT
SACRO.
YMCA

LESSON 37

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Neĭ kóng Shaáng-Shēng-Wâ* kóng-tak chan m̄-ch'òh, Cheung Sheûng-Sẑ.

   B: Ngŏh kóng-tak mā-mā*-teî* che, neĭ kwòh-tseúng che!

   A: Neĭ ĭ-ts'ĭn yaŭ mŏ huì-kwòh Shaáng-Shēng à?

   B: Mǒ, ngŏh ĭ-ts'în mŏ huì-kwòh Shaáng-Shēng, yîk-to mŏ hôk-kwòh Kwóng-Tung Wâ*.

   A: Neĭ seúng m̄-seúng Ĭ-haû laì Lûk-Kwan Ūĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû hôk Kwóng-Tung Wâ* à?

   B: Seúng, ngŏh seúng Ĭ-haû laì Lûk-Kwan Ūĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû hôk Kwóng-Tung Wâ*.

2. A: Neĭ kaû-shì yaŭ mŏ huì-kwòh Lōh-Shaáng à?

   V: Mŏ, ngŏh kaû-shì mǒ huì-kwòh Lōh-Shaáng.

3. A: Neĭ kaû-shì yaŭ mŏ huì-kwòh Saam-Faān-Shĭ à?

   B: Yaŭ, ngŏh kaû-shì huì-kwòh Saam-Faān-Shĭ, taân-haî ngŏh mŏ huì-kwòh kóh shuè kè T'ōng-Yān-Faû.

4. A: Sheûng kòh uêt neĭ yaŭ mŏ huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ à?

   B: Mŏ, sheûng kòh uêt ngŏh mŏ huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ.

5. A: Hâ kòh tsau-moôt neĭ huì m̄-huì Taaî-Faû à?

   B: M̄-huì, hâ kòh tsau-moôt ngŏh m̄-huì Taaî-Faû.

6. A: Hâ kòh tsau-moôt neĭ m̄-huì Taaî-Faû, neĭ huì pin shuè à?

   B: Hâ kòh tsau-moôt ngŏh m̄-huì Taaî-Faû, ngŏh hóh-nāng huì Î-Faû.

7. A: Hâ-ts'z̀ neĭ huì Î-Faû kè shı-haû, neĭ t'ūng m̄-t'ūng neĭ kè ka-yān yat-ts'aì huì à?

   B: Hâ-ts'z̀ ngŏh huì Î-Faû kè shì-haû, ngŏh m̄-t'ūng ngŏh kè ka-yān yat-ts'aì huì.

8. A: Sheûng-ts'z̀ neĭ huì Î-Faû kè shì-haû, neĭ yaŭ mŏ t'ūng neĭ kè ka-yān yat-ts'aì huì à?

   B: Mŏ, sheûng-ts'z̀ ngŏh huì Î-Faû kè shì-haû, ngŏh yîk-to mŏ t'ūng ka-yān yat-ts'aì huì, ngŏh tsẑ-keí yat-kòh yān huì.

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

9. A: Sheûng-ts'z̀ neĭ huì Î-Faû kè shì-haû, neĭ yaŭ mŏ haí tsaú-tìm chuê à?

B: Mŏ, kóh ts'z̀, ngŏh mŏ haí tsaú-tìm chuê, ngŏh chuê haí ts'an-ts'ik kè uk-k'eí.

10. A: Hâ-ts'z̀ neĭ huì Î-Faû kè shì-haû, neĭ ooĭ m̆-ooĭ haí ts'an-ts'ik shuè chuê à?

B: M̄-ooĭ, hâ-ts'z̀ ngŏh m̆-ooĭ haí ts'an-ts'ik shuè chuê, ngŏh ooĭ chuê haí Naām-Ch'ing-Nìn-Ooî*.

LESSON 37

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: You speak Cantonese fairly good indeed, M/Sgt. Cheung.

   B: Well, I can speak passably, that's all. You over-praised me!

   A: Have you ever been to Canton before?

   B: No, I have never been to Canton before, nor have I ever studied Cantonese.

   A: Do you wish to come to the Army Language School later to study Cantonese?

   B: Yes, I do want to come to study Cantonese at the Army Language School later.

2. A: Have you ever been to Los Angeles in the past?

   B: No, I have not been to Los Angeles before.

3. A: Have you ever been to San Francisco in the past?

   B: Yes, I had been to San Francisco, but I have not been to Chinatown there.

4. A: Did you go to San Francisco last month?

   B: No, I didn't go to San Francisco last month.

5. A: Will you go to San Francisco next week end?

   B: No, I shall not go to San Francisco next week end.

6. A: Next week end you will not go to San Francisco; where will you go?

   B: Next week end I shall not go to San Francisco; I may possibly go to Sacramento.

7. A: When you go to Sacramento next time, will you go together with your family.

   B: Next time when I go to Sacramento, I shall not go together with my family.

8. A: When you went to Sacramento last time, did you or did you not go together with your family?

   B: No, last time when I went to Sacramento, I too did not go together with my family. I went alone.

LESSON 37

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

9. A: When you went to Sacramento last time, did you stay at a hotel?

   B: No, I didn't stay at a hotel that time; I stayed at a relative's home.

10. A: Next time when you go to Sacramento, will you stay at your relative's?

    B: No, next time I won't stay at my relative's; I will stay at the YMCA.

LESSON 37

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Wōng Sin-Shaang, neĭ huì pin shuè faan laî à?

B: Ngŏh ngaam-ngaam huì sùng Leĭ Siú-Tsé kè fei-kei.

2. A: Leĭ Siú-Tsé tśŏh fei-kei huì pin shuè à?

B: K'uĭ ts'ŏh fei-kei huì Heung-Kóng.

3. A: Neĭ yaŭ mŏ huì-kwòh Heung-Kóng à?

B: Ngŏh seî nîn ts'în huì-kwòh Heung-Kóng.

4. A: Neĭ haî Heung-Kóng yaŭ mŏ tûk-kwòh Chung-Mān à?

B: Yaŭ, ngŏh haî Heung-Kóng tûk-chòh saam nîn Chung-Mān.

5. A: K'uĭ-teî yaŭ mŏ kaaù neĭ Yât-Poón wâ* à?

B: Mŏ, k'uĭ-teî mŏ kaaù ngŏh Yât-Poón wâ*; k'uĭ-teî chí-haî kaaù Kwóng-Tung wâ*.

6. A: Neĭ tûk shue kè shì-haû, hôk-haaû yaŭ mŏ paî shue neĭ-teî kà?

B: Mŏ, ngŏh-teî iù tsẑ-keî maaĭ shue.

7. A: Neĭ chûng faan m̄-faan huì Heung-Kóng à?

B: Ngŏh wâ m̄-tîng, waâk-ché faan, waâk-ché m̄-faan.

8. A: Neĭ yaŭ mŏ kiù Leĭ Siú-Tsé huì kìn neĭ ti ts'an-ts'ik t'ūng p'āng-yaŭ à?

B: Yaŭ, ngŏh kiù k'uĭ huì kìn ngŏh ti ts'an-ts'ik t'ūng kaû t'ūng-hôk.

9. A: Neĭ haî Heung-Kóng kè shì-haû, yaŭ mŏ tsô-kwòh shaang-ì à?

B: Yaŭ, ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ-teî yat-ch'aî tsô shaang-ì.

10. A: Leĭ Siú-Tsé yaŭ mŏ maaĭ yĕ sùng peî k'uĭ-teî à?

B: Yaŭ, Leĭ Siú-Tsé maaĭ-chóh hó toh Meĭ-Kwòk yĕ sùng peî k'uĭ-teí.

11. A: K'uĭ-teî yaŭ mŏ tûk-kwòh Ying-Mān à?

B: Mŏ, k'uĭ-teî mŏ tûk-kwòh Ying-Mān.

LESSON 37

ORAL·MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

12. A: K'uĭ-teĭ yaŭ mŏ laî-kwỏh Meĭ-Kwỏk ả?

B: Mŏ; pat-kwỏh, k'uĭ-teî seúng taî-î nîn laî Meĭ-Kwỏk haāng-hâ.

13. A: K'uĭ-teî laî Meĭ-Kwỏk kẻ shî-haû, tá m̂-tá-suẻn tûk Ying-Mān ả?

B: Ngŏh koó, k'uĭ-teî ooĭ tûk Ying-Mān.

14. A: K'uĭ-teî yaŭ mŏ kóng-kwỏh ni kîn sẑ ả?

B: Mŏ, k'uĭ-teî mŏ kóng-kwỏh ni kîn sẑ.

15. A: Kóm, neĭ tím chi-tỏ k'uĭ-teî ooĭ tûk ả?

B: Ngŏh koó, uē-kwóh k'uĭ-teî seúng laî Meĭ-Kwỏk, k'uĭ-teî yat-tîng iủ hôk Ying-Mān.

LESSON 37

WORD LIST

1.	chan	really, indeed, true, real, genuine
2.	m̄-ch'òh	not bad, not wrong, fairly good, fair
3.	mā-mā*-teî*	passable, just so-so; passably
4.	yaŭ mŏ huì...?	did or did not go...?
	yaŭ mŏ huì-kwòh...?	have...(ever) been to?
5.	kaû-shī	in the past, before, formerly
6.	Lōh-Shaáng	Los Angeles (in Calif.)
7.	T'ōng-Yān-Faû	Chinatown
8.	Saam-Faān-Shĭ	San Francisco, Calif.
9.	chau-moôt	week end
10.	Taaî-Faû	San Francisco (Lit. Big City, Big Port)
11.	Î-Faû	Sacramento (in Calif., Lit. 2nd City)
12.	hâ-ts'z̀	next time
13.	ka-yān	family, family members
14.	yat-ts'aī (*)	together, altogether
15.	sheûng-ts'z̀	last time
16.	tsẑ-keî	self, oneself, alone
17.	tsaú-tìm	hotel
18.	ts'an-ts'ik	relative
19.	Naām-Ts'ing-Nīn-Ooî*	YMCA

LESSON 37

READING MATERIAL

733

能 nāng: able to, competent; ability; power.

不能 pat-nāng unable.

能够 nāng-kaù: can, able.

可能 hóh-nāng: possible; can.

能力 nāng-lîk. power; ability.

675

問 mân:to ask; to inquire; to examine in o.

問答 mân taȁp. d alorue.

學問 hôk-mân. knowle ge; learning

問題 mân-t'aī. a qu s tion; problem

審問 shám mân: to tr in court.

1332

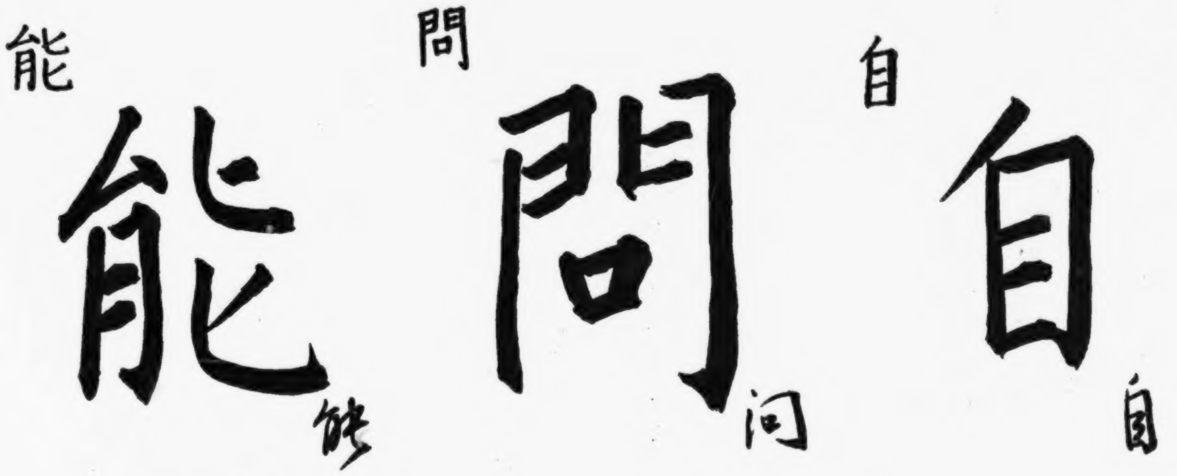
自 tsẑ: from; self; personally.

自由 tsẑ-yaū: freedom; liberty.

自治 tsẑ-chî: self-government; self-rule.

自然 tsẑ-īn: naturally; matter of fact.

自從 tsẑ-ts'ūng: since.



438

己 keí: one's self.

自己 tsẑ-keí: one's self.

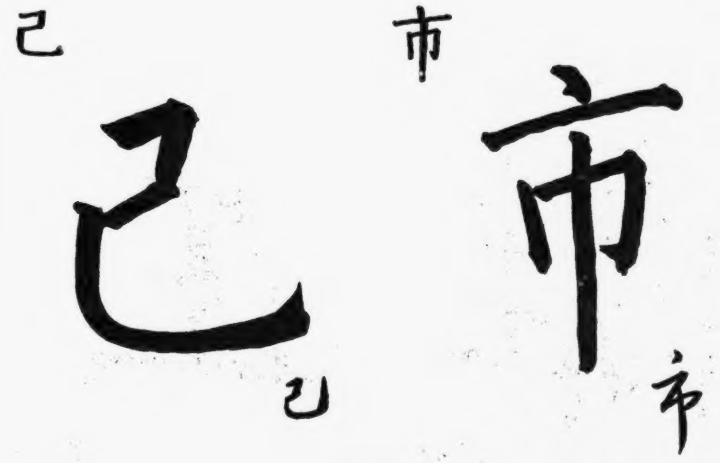
知己 chi-keí: good friends; close friends.

978

市 shǐ· a market; fair.

市面 shǐ-mîn: market condition.

市場 shǐ-ch eūng: the market.



LESSON 37

READING MATERIAL

37

週	chau: to revolve, a week, a year
週年	chau-nīn: a year
週期	chau-k'ēī: a period
週圍	chau-waî: all around
週轉	chau-chuèn: circulation(of money)

721

末	moôt: the end; last; fine dust.
末日	moôt-yât: end of the world.

1487

影	yíng: image; shadow.
影相	yíng-seùng: to photograph.
影響	yíng-heúng: to affect; effect; influence.

週　周 末　影

週 末 影

週 · 末　影

595

離	leī: to leave; to separate.
離開	leī-hoi: to separate; to depart from.
離別	leī-pît: to part from.
離婚	leī fan: divorce.
離間	leī-kaàn: to stir up ill feeling.

94

正	chìng: straight; right; just: exact
正當	chìng-tòng: proper; right
正式	chìng-shik: officially
正月	ching-uêt: January

離　正

離 正

離　正

LESSON 37

READING MATERIAL

昨日陳英同黃小姐k'ing-chóh 好耐至番去 fàn-覺. 佢地可能喺呢個週末去三-faān-市探hǎ 親-ts'ik, 朋友, 同睇-hǎ 中國電影.

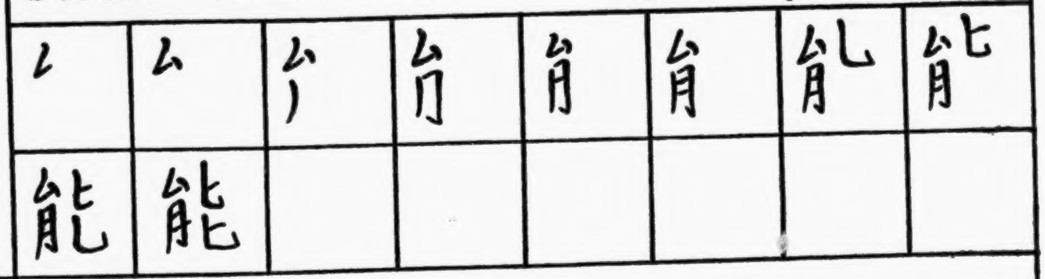
黃小姐話, 佢想離開呢處幾日, 去邊處佢都唔緊要. 佢問陳英同唔同佢去. 陳英話, 佢都好想去; 不過, 黃小姐正話好 chóh. 同佢去, 又唔係幾好; 唔同佢去, 又會令黃小姐唔歡喜. 如果黃小姐自己一個人去, 又會令陳英唔放心. 佢想同黃小姐去三-faān-市, 但係佢知道黃小姐已經去過 kóh-處幾次 là. 佢想同黃小姐去.二-faû, 但係佢唔知道黃小姐有冇去過 kóh 處. 如果黃小姐未去過呢, 去 kóh-處住幾日都幾好; 但係, 而家 kóh-處天氣太熱, là. 佢地多數會去三-faān-市嘅 là.

LESSON 37

WRITING MATERIAL

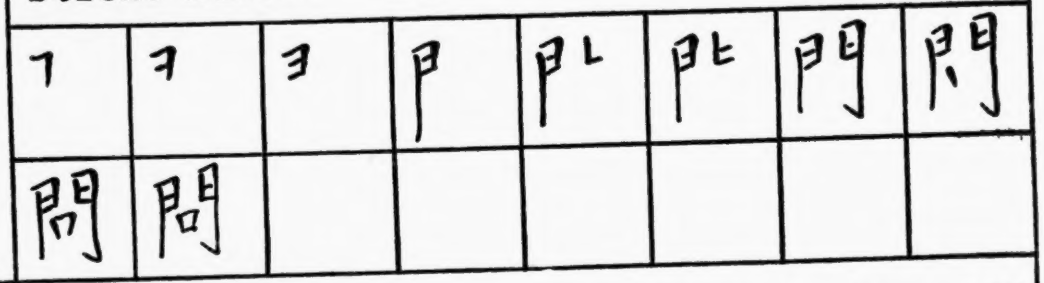
能

Character Number 733 Radical Number 130
Stroke Number 10 月，肉



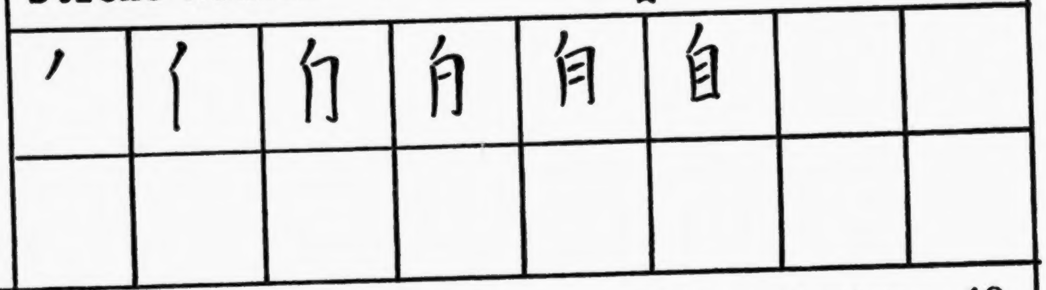
問

Character Number 675 Radical Number 30
Stroke Number 10 口



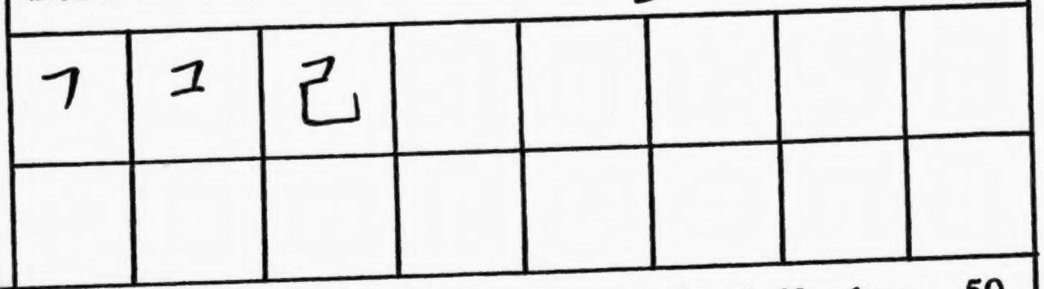
自

Character Number 1332 Radical Number 132
Stroke Number 6 自



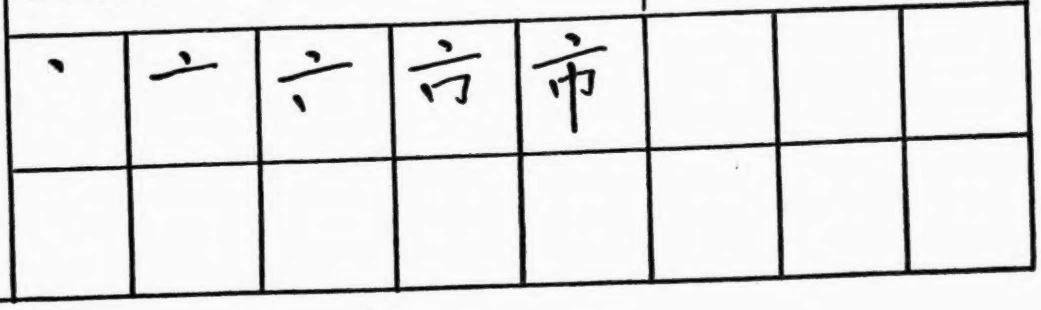
己

Character Number 438 Radical Number 49
Stroke Number 3 己



市

Character Number 978 Radical Number 50
Stroke Number 5 巾



LESSON 38

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Neĭ shîk-uēn faân meî à?
K’uĭ tûk-uēn shue meî à?
Neĭ tsô-uēn kung meî à?
K’uĭ tong-uēn ping meî à?

2. Ngŏh shîk-uēn faân.
K’uĭ tûk-uēn shue.
Ngŏh tsô-uēn kung.
K’uĭ tong-uēn ping.

3. Ngŏh meî shîk-uēn faân.
K’uĭ meî tûk-uēn shue.
Ngŏh meî tsô-uēn kung.
K’uĭ meî tong-uēn ping.

4. Shîk-uēn tsó-ts’aan, ngŏh huì kaai.
Huì-uēn kaai, ngŏh faan uk-k’eî.
Maaĭ-uēn yĕ, ngŏh huì t’aî-heì.
T’aî-uēn heì, ngŏh huì wán p’āng-yaŭ.

5. Ngŏh shîk-uēn faân, chì huì t’aî heì.
Ngŏh maaĭ-uēn yĕ, chì huì wán p’āng-yaŭ.
Ngŏh yâm-uēn yĕ, chì shîk faân.
Ngŏh tûk-uēn shue, chì kìt fan.

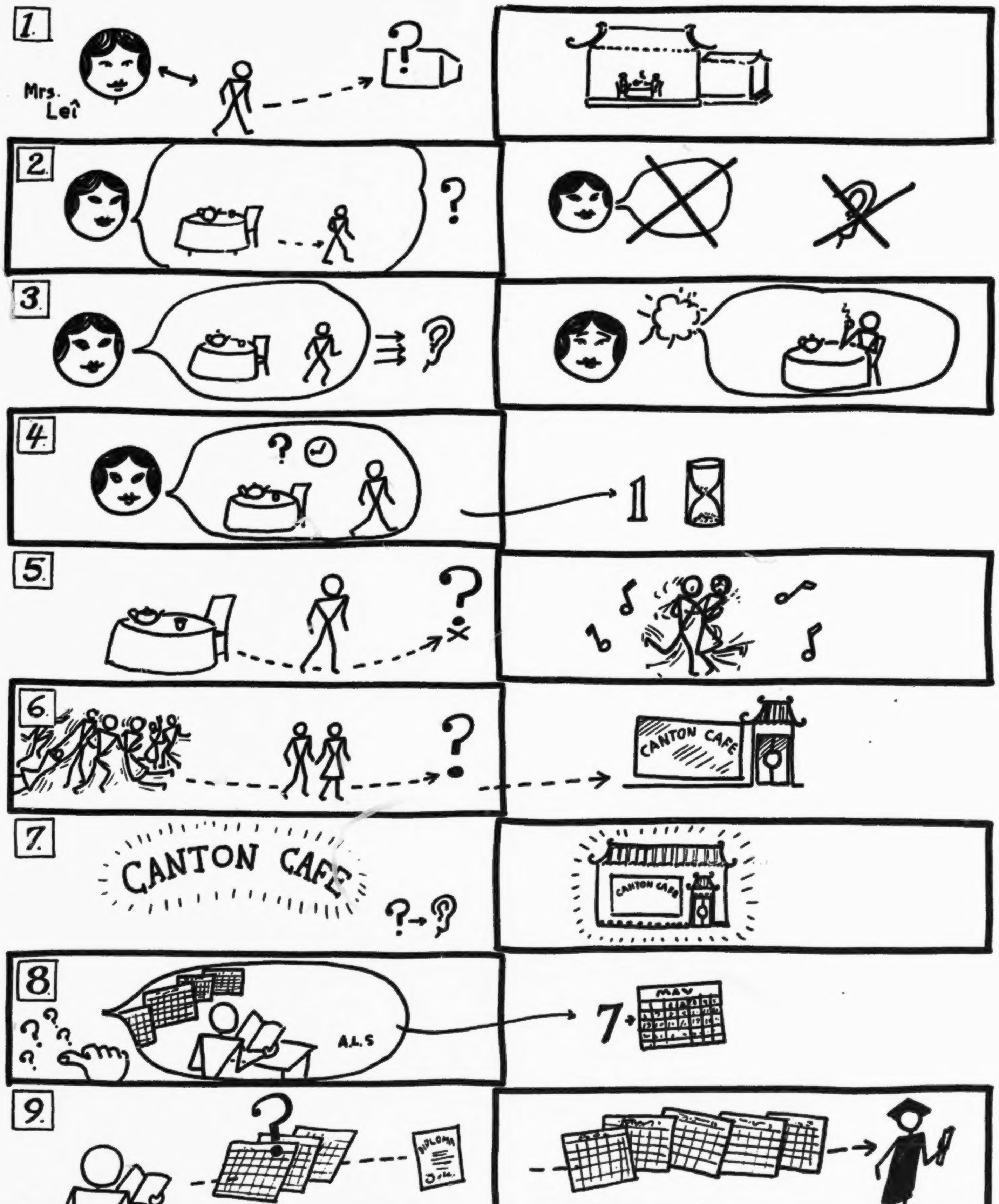
LESSON 38

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

6. Ngŏh chûng iù nğ fan-chung chì huì kaai.
K'uĭ chûng iù yat nīn chì pat îp.
Ngŏh-teî chûng iù keî fan-chung chì sé-uēn tsẑ.
K'uĭ-teî chûng iù poòn tîm-chung chì shîk uēn faân.

7. K'uĭ tsòk-yât tsô-hó.
K'uĭ ì-ka meî tsô-hó.
K'uĭ t'ing-yât chì tsô-hó.
Neĭ keí-shī chì tsô-hó?

LESSON 38


1.
Mrs. Leî
2.
3.
4.
1
5.
6.
CANTON CAFE
7.
CANTON CAFE
CANTON CAFE
8.
A.L.S
7
MAY
9.
DIPLOMA
10.
GOOD
READY

LESSON 38

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Leĭ t'aaì-t'aaì*, neĭ kè sin-shaang huì-chóh pin shuè à?

B: K'uĭ huì-chóh Uēn-Tung Ch'ā-Laū yám ch'ā.

2. A: Neĭ chìng-wâ kóng, k'uĭ ĭ-king yám-uēn ch'ā là, haî m̄-haî à?

B: Ngŏh mŏ kóng-kwòh à! Neĭ t'eng ch'òh che!

3. A: Haî lĕ! Neĭ t'aū-sin kóng-kwòh lĕ! Ngŏh mŏ t'eng-ch'òh.

B: Kóm ā, táng ngŏh nám-hă sin. Ôh! Ngŏh keì-tak là; ngŏh wâ, k'uĭ chûng yám-kán ch'ā, k'uĭ chûng meî yám-uēn.

4. A: Kan-kuì neĭ kè ì-kìn, k'uĭ chûng yaŭ keî noî chì yám-uēn ch'ā à?

B: Ngŏh koó, k'uĭ chûng iù sēng kòh chung-t'aū chì yám-uēn pòh!

5. A: Yám-uēn ch'ā chi-haû, k'uĭ tá-suèn tîm à?

B: Yám-uēn ch'ā chi-haû, k'uĭ tá-suèn faan laî t'ūng ngŏh huì t'iù-mŏ.

6. A: T'iù-uēn mŏ chi-haû, neĭ-teî chûng tá-suèn huì pin shuè à?

B: T'iù-uēn mŏ chi-haû, ngŏh-teî hó hóh-nāng huì Kwóng-Chau Ts'aan-Shat shìk siu-yê*

7. A: Kwóng-Chau Ts'aan-Shat? Tîm-kaaî ngŏh ĭ-ts'în mŏ téng-kwòh kóh kòh mēng* kè*?

B: Kwóng-Chau Ts'aan-Shat haî tsuì-kân heí-hó kè.

8. A: Ngŏh chûng seúng mân neĭ keî kuì; neĭ kè sin-shaang haî Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû tûk-chóh keî no à?

B: K'uĭ haî kóh shuè ĭ-king tûk-chóh ts'at-kòh uêt là!

9. A: K'uĭ chûng yaŭ keî noî chì tûk-uēn à?

B: K'uĭ chûng yaŭ nğ-kòh uêt kòm-sheûng-hâ* chì tûk-uēn; tsik-haî wâ, k'uĭ chûng yaŭ nğ-kòh uêt chî pat-îp.

LESSON 38

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: K'uĭ haì Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû tûk-uēn shuè chi-haû, k'uĭ yaû yaŭ mi-yĕ kaì-waâk à?

B: Hó naān kóng; ngŏh ĭ-waī, haì kóh tô tûk-uēn shue chi-haû, k'uĭ ooĭ huì Uĕn-Tung.

A: Kóm, hó la! Ngŏh-teî m̄-hó kóng kóm toh là! Lĕi Sin-Shaang tsaû-laî faan laî là! Neĭ uê-peî-hó ch'ut kaai meî à?

B: Ngŏh ĭ-king uê-peî-hó là!

LESSON 38

TRANSLATION OF DIALCGUE

1. A: Mrs. Lei, where did your husband go?

   B: He went to the Far East Tea House for tea.

2. A: You just said that he has already finished drinking his tea, is that right?

   B: I have never said that! You must have heard it wrong!

3. A: Yes, you did say it a while ago, I didn't hear it wrong.

   B: If so, let me think for a while first. Oh, I remember now; I said: "He is still drinking his tea, he hasn't finished yet."

4. A: According to your opinion, how much longer before he finishes drinking his tea?

   B: I guess that it will take a whole hour before he is through drinking.

5. A: After having finished his tea what does he plan to do?

   B: After having finished his tea he plans to come back to go dancing with me.

6. A: After the dance where do you folks plan to go?

   B: After the dance very possibly we may go to the Canton Cafe for some night snack.

7. A: Canton Cafe? How come I have never heard of that name before?

   B: Canton Cafe was built very recently.

8. A: I still want to ask you a few statements; how long has your husband studied at the Army Language School?

   B: He has already studied for 7 months there.

9. A: How much longer before he completes his study?

   B: He still has about 5 months before he is through. That means to say that he still has 5 more months before he graduates.

10. A: After he completes his study at the Army Language School, what other plans does he have?

LESSON 38

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

B: Very hard to say; I guess that he will go to the Far East after having completed his study there.

A: That's good. Let's don't talk so much now. Mr. Leĭ will be back soon. Are you ready to go out yet?

B: Yes, I am.

LESSON 38

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Neĭ kiù ngŏh laî t'ūng neĭ huì t'aî heì, neĭ uê-peî-hó meî à?

   B: Tuì-m̄-chuê, ngŏh î-ka shaî-kán shan, ts'îng neĭ táng yat-chân-kaan, hó mà?

2. A: M̆-kán-iù, táng ngŏh sé sùn peî ngŏh kè p'ăng-yaŭ sin.

   B: Neĭ haî ngŏh kóh cheung t'oĭ* shuè sé la, kóh shuè yaŭ chî, yaŭ pat.

3. B: Ngŏh shaî-hó shan là, neĭ sé-uēn sùn meî à?

   A: Ngŏh chûng meî sé-uēn.

4. A: Kóm, neĭ haî ni shuè táng-hă ngŏh la!

   B: Hó la, ngŏh to seúng t'aî-hă kam-yât kè pò-chî.

5. A: Ngŏh ĭ-king sé-hó sùn là, neĭ t'aî-uēn neĭ kè pò-chî meî à?

   B: Â, ni shuè yaŭ ti hó kán-iù kè san-mān*, táng ngŏh t'aî-uēn sin.

6. A: Neĭ chûng yaŭ keî noî chì t'aî-uēn à?

   B: Ni ti haî hó kán-iù kè san-mān*, ngŏh iù maân-maân* t'aî.

7. A: Kóm, neĭ maân-maân* t'aî la, ngŏh haî ngoî-pîn táng neĭ la.

   B: Hó la, neĭ huì ngoî-pîn haāng-hă la.

8. A: Neĭ t'aî-uēn pò-chî lā, haî mà?

   B: Ngŏh tsaû-laî t'aî-uēn pò-chî là, taân-haî ngaam-ngaam yaŭ kòh p'ăng-yaŭ tá tîn-wâ* ngŏh, kiŭ ngŏh ning ti yĕ peî k'uĭ.

9. A: Kóm, neĭ ī-ka ning huì peî k'uĭ la.

   B: Hó la, ts'îng neĭ táng-hă la, ngŏh hó faaî tsaû faan laî là!

10. A: Leĭ Sin-Shaang m̄-haî shuè wòh, neĭ yat-chân-kaan tsoì tá tîn-wâ* laî la.

LESSON 38

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

C: Ngŏh yat-chân-kaan m̄-tak-haān, k'uĭ ỉ-ka huỉ pin shuẻ ả?

11. A: K'uĭ ỉ-ka huỉ sủng yĕ peỉ k'uĭ kẻ p'ăng-yaŭ, neĭ yaŭ mat kwaỉ-kỏn ả?

C: Ngŏh kiủ-chóh k'uĭ t'ūng ngŏh tả tîn-pỏ peỉ k'uĭ kẻ taaî-lŏ, m̄-chi k'uĭ tá-chóh meỉ ne?

12. A: Ngŏh m̄-chi pỏh, k'uĭ sủng-uēn-yĕ faan laỉ chi-haû, ngŏh mân k'uĭ la.

C: M̄-koi saaỉ.

13. A: Wōng Sin-Shaang, ngŏh ngaam-ngaam t'ūng neĭ kẻ p'ăng-yaŭ kóng-uēn tîn-wâ*.

B: K'uĭ haî m̄-haî mân tá tîn-pỏ kẻ sẑ ả?

14. A: Haî, k'uĭ mân neĭ tá-chóh tîn-pỏ meî?

B: M̄-koi saaỉ.

15: A: Kóm, ngŏh-teî huỉ t'aî heỉ, tîm ả?

B: Ngŏh-teî kẻ sẑ chûng meî tsô-uēn, ngŏh-teî kam-yât m̄-hó huỉ t'aî lả.

A: Hó ả!

LESSON 38

WORD LIST

1.	Uĕn-Tung	Far East
2.	ch'ā-laū	tea house
3.	yám ch'ā	to drink tea, have tea (and refreshments)
4.	uēn	to finish, complete, done, be through with, finished
5.	che!	final particle
6.	le! lĕ!	emphatic final particle implying affirmative or final
7.	nám	to think, reflect, guess
8.	kan-kuì	according to, based on, basis, foundation
9.	ì-kìn	opinion, idea
10.	t'iù-mŏ	to dance; dance, dancing
11.	siu-yê*, shîk siu-yê*	to have a night snack, to eat a snack at night
12.	heî	to build, erect, rise
13.	hó	good, every, ready, verb suffix indicating completion
14.	kuì	sentence, statement
15.	pat-îp	to graduate; graduation
16.	kaì-waâk	plan, planning, to plan
17.	naān	difficult, hard
18.	hó-naān-kóng	very hard (or difficult) to say

LESSON 38

WORD LIST

19.	ĭ-waì	to guess, presume, take for granted, thought
20.	uê-peî	to prepare, get ready, preparation, prepared

LESSON 38

READING MATERIAL

28

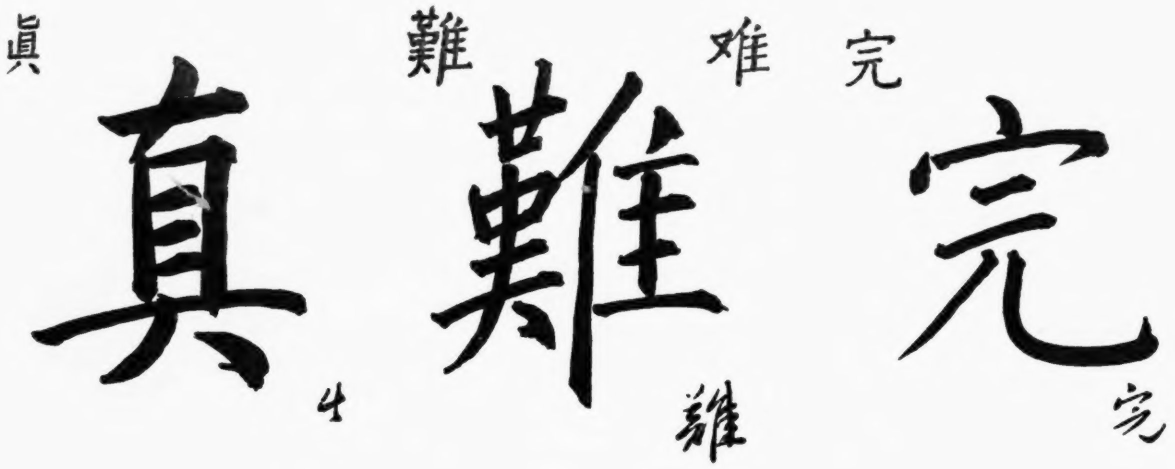
真	chan: true, sure genuine
真係	chan-haî. it is so, really.
真心	chan-sam. in earnest, sincere.
真實	chan-shât: the truth.
真相	chan-seùng: the true facts

730

難	naān: difficult; to distress; hard.
為難	waī naān: to trouble.
艱難	kaan-naān: distressing.
難	naân: calamity; distress.
受難	shaû naân: to experience adversity.
苦難	foó-naân: affliction.

1383

完	uēn: finished; to finish; to complete.
完滿	uēn-moǒn: to end; culminate; full; satisfactory.
完備	uēn-peî: well equipped; all ready; prepared.

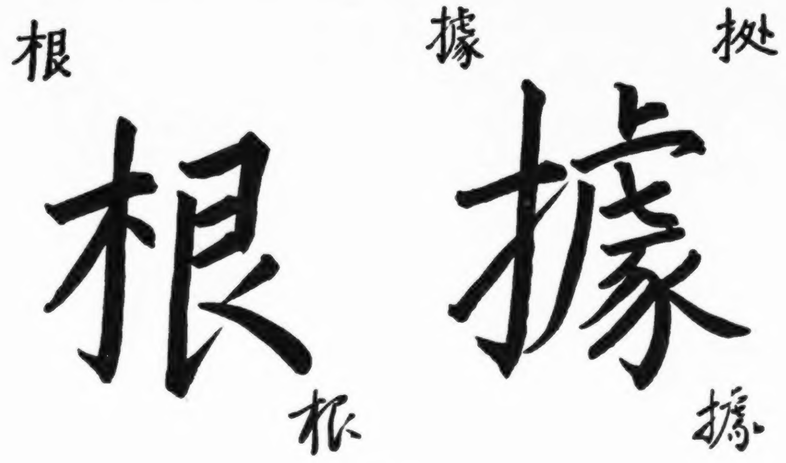


410

根	kan: root; origin
根底	kan-taí: foundation.
根據	kan-kuì: based upon.
根本	kan-poón: actually; in truth.

531

據	kuì: evidence; testimony; according to; to occupy.
收據	shau-kuì: a receipt.
根據	kan-kuì: according to.
證據	chìng-kuì: evidence.
佔據	chìm-kuì: to occupy; to usurp.



LESSON 38

READING MATERIAL

1481

樣 yeûng: manner; sort; kind; model; pattern.

同樣 t ūng-yeûng: of the same kind.

樣本 yeûng-poón sample copy.

233

吓 hă: a moment; a while; once

等吓 táng hă: wait a moment

幾吓 keí-hă: several times

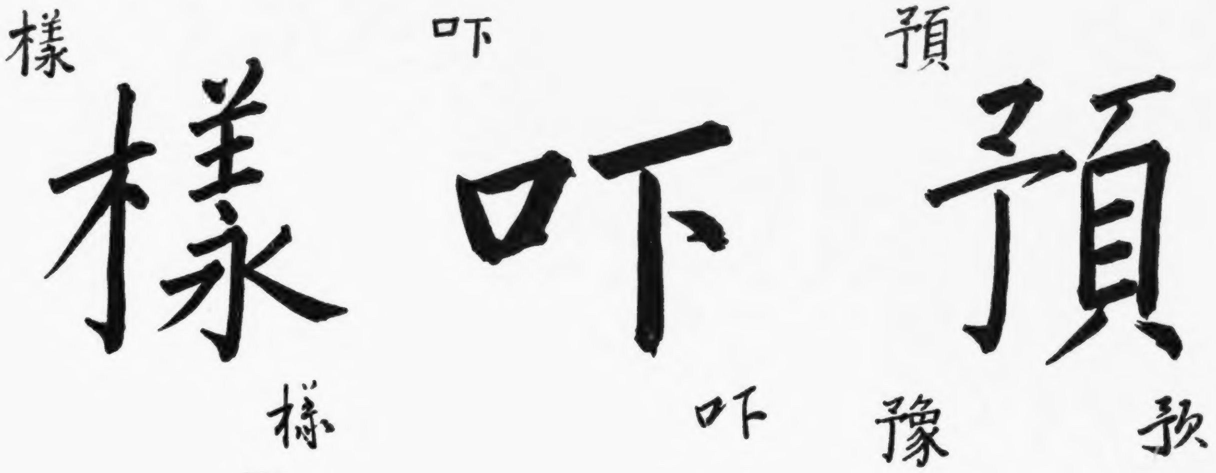
1379

預 uê: to prepare; to provide against.

預防 uê-fōng: to guard against.

預先 uê-sin: beforehand; in advance.

預言 uê-īn: prophecy; to predict.



839

備 peî: to prepare for use; to complete; to provide against.

預備 uê-peî: to prepare.

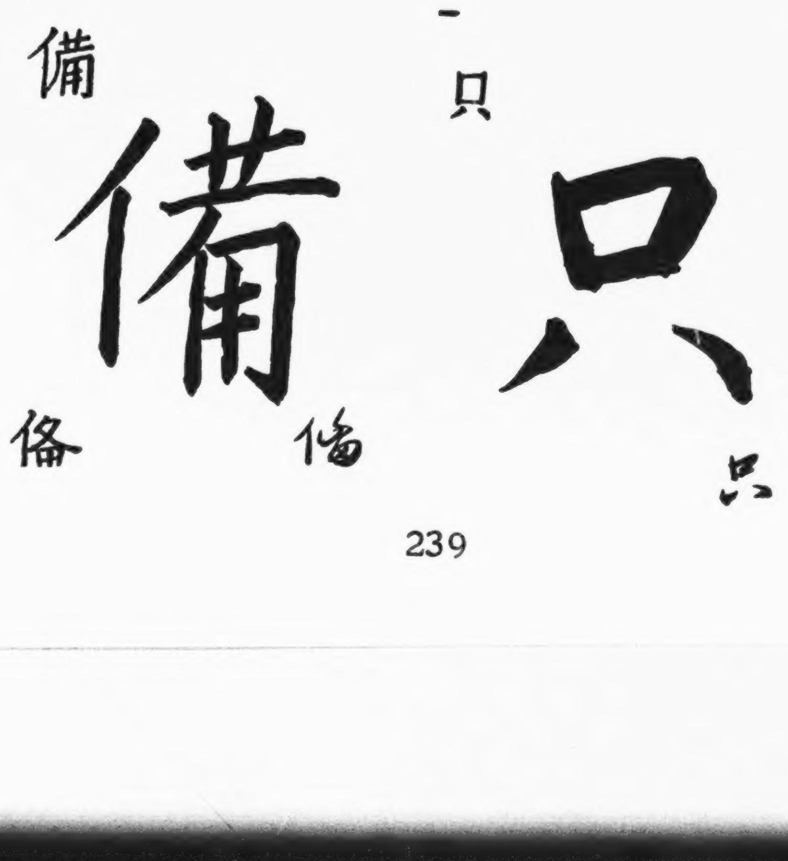
準備 chún-peî: to make ready.

72

只 chí: merely; only; but

只要 chí-iû: only if

只管 chí-koon: just. do not hesitate to



LESSON 38

READING MATERIAL

陳英同唔同黃小姐去三-faān-市呢？呢件事，昨日佢nám-chóh好耐，重唔知點樣做至好。去唔去呢，佢昨日真係好難决定。

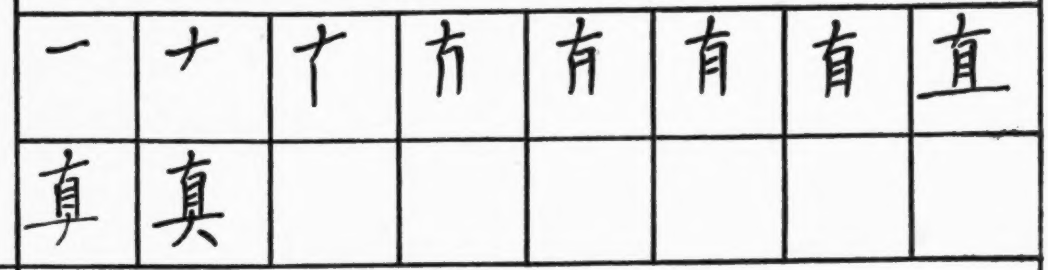
今日教完書之後，佢番去屋-k'ei再nám-吓。而家佢nám好là。佢以為同黃小姐去，就會令黃小姐好歡喜；唔同佢去呢，就會令佢好唔快樂。所以佢决定同黃小姐去三-faān-市同二-faû。佢預備好聽日去。佢想去完二-faû至去三-faān-市。根據陳英嘅意見，囙為黃小姐已經去過三-faān-市幾次là；如果只係同黃小姐去三-faān-市，唔去二-faû，敢樣做，就唔係幾好。所以佢同黃小姐决定去呢兩個地方。

LESSON 38

WRITING MATERIAL

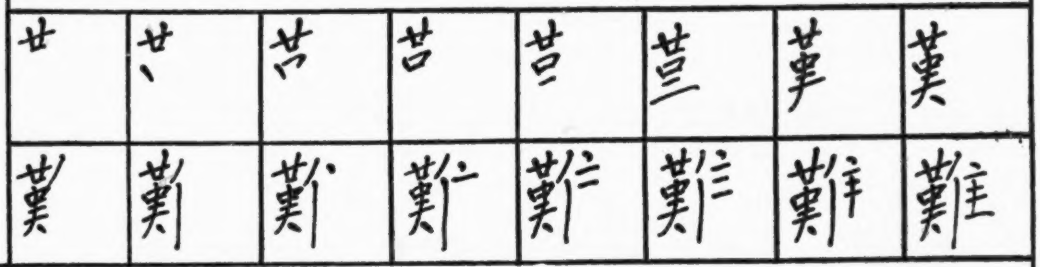
真

Character Number 28 Radical Number 109
Stroke Number 10 目



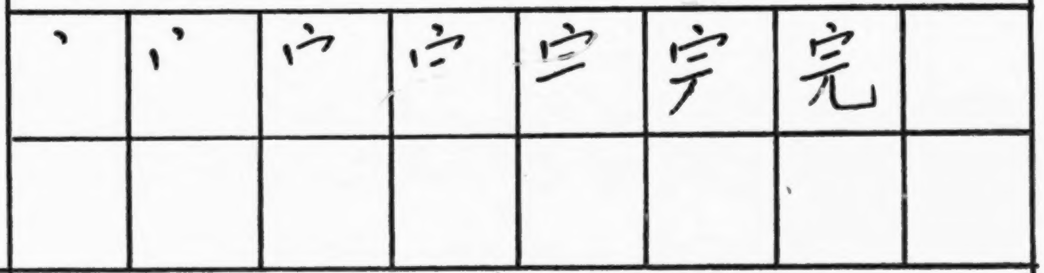
難

Character Number 730 Radical Number 172
Stroke Number 19 隹



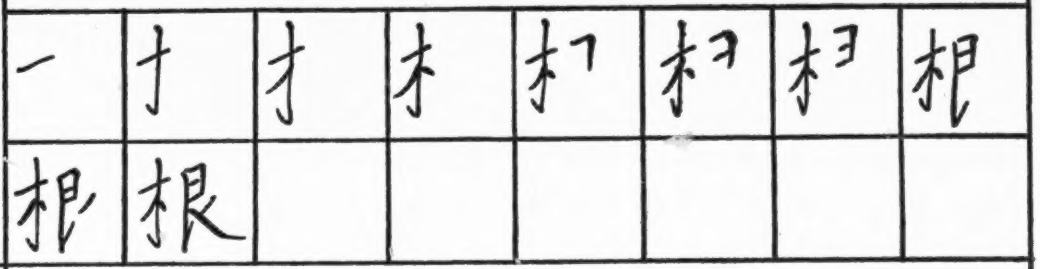
完

Character Number 1383 Radical Number 40
Stroke Number 7 宀



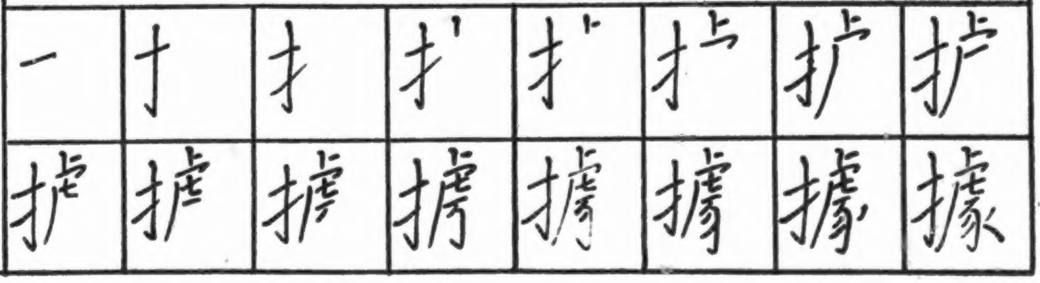
根

Character Number 410 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 10 木，木



據

Character Number 531 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 16 扌，手



LESSON 39

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. K'uĭ huì-chóh Kwóng-Tung.

   K'uĭ maaĭ-chóh yat-poón shue.

   K'uĭ shîk-chóh maăn-faân.

   K'uĭ sé-chóh sùn.

2. K'uĭ huì-chóh Heung-Kóng meî à?

   K'uĭ huì-chóh Heung-Kóng.

   K'uĭ huì-chóh Heung-Kóng yat-kòh uêt.

   K'uĭ meî huì Heung-Kóng.

3. Neĭ feī-chóh.

   Neĭ feī-chóh ti.

   Neĭ feī-chóh hô toh.

   Neĭ feī-chóh leŭng pông.

4. Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ huì-kwòh Heung-Kóng?

   Ngŏh huì-kwòh Heung-Kóng.

   Ngŏh huì-kwòh Heung-Kóng saam ts'z̀.

   Ngŏh mŏ huì-kwòh Heung-Kóng.

5. K'uĭ huì-kwòh Heung Kóng meî à?

   K'uĭ huì-kwòh Heung Kóng.

   K'uĭ huì-chóh Heung-Kóng.

   K'uĭ meî huì-kwòh Heung-Kóng.

LESSON 39

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

6. K’uĭ haî m̄-haî sé-kán sùn à?

K’uĭ sé-kán sùn.

K’uĭ m̄-haî sé-kán sùn.

K’uĭ m̄-sé sùn.

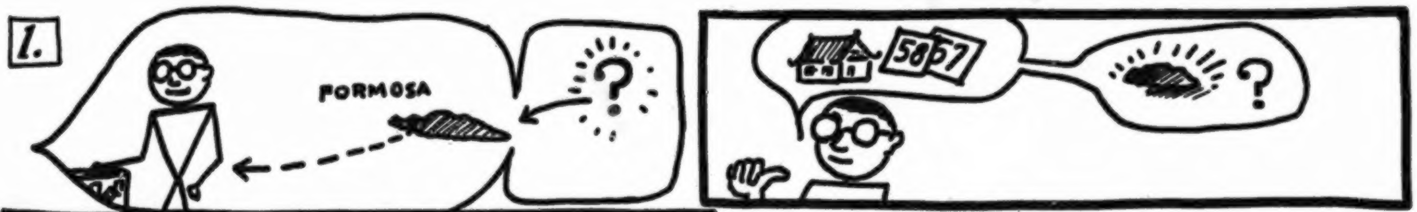
7. Ngŏh chìng-wâ yaū Heung-Kóng faan laī.

K’uĭ tsòk-yât yaū Kwóng- Tung faan laī.

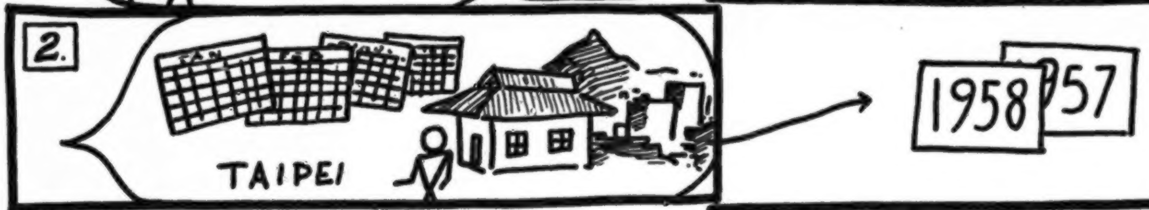
Neĭ keî-shī yaū Yât-Poón faan laī?

K’uĭ ts’īn-yât yaū pin-shuè faan laī?

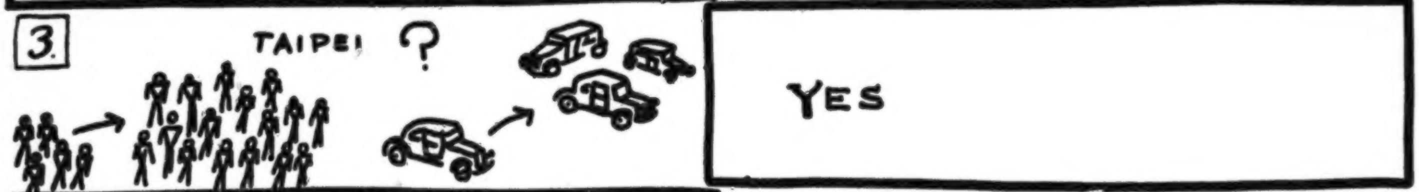
LESSON 39



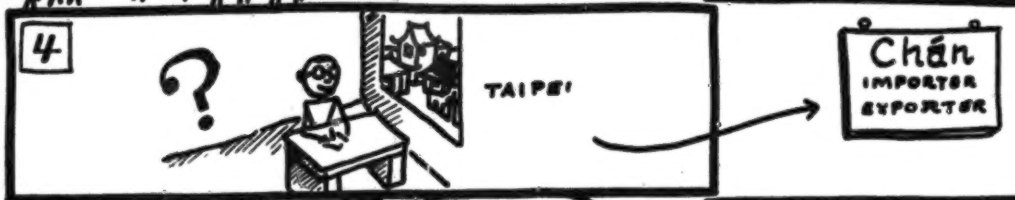
1.
FORMOSA
58 57



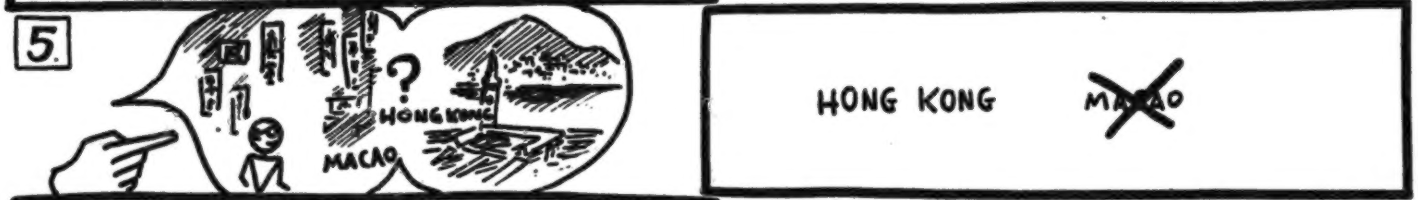
2.
TAIPEI
1958
57



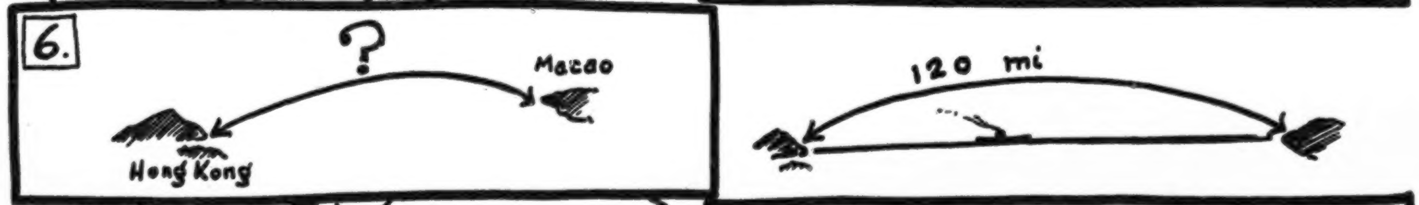
3.
TAIPEI
YES



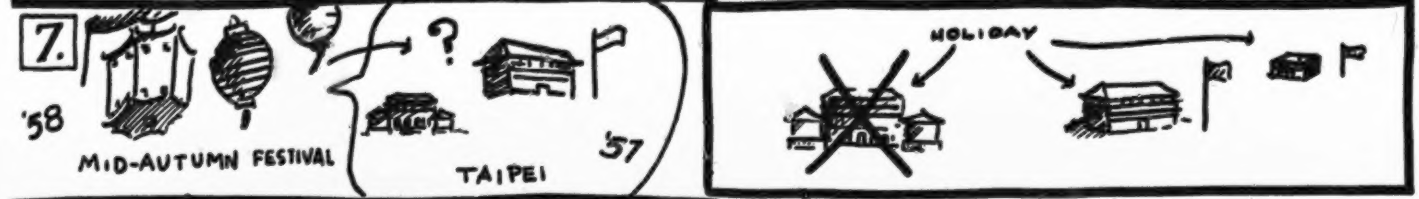
4.
TAIPEI
Chán
IMPORTER
EXPORTER



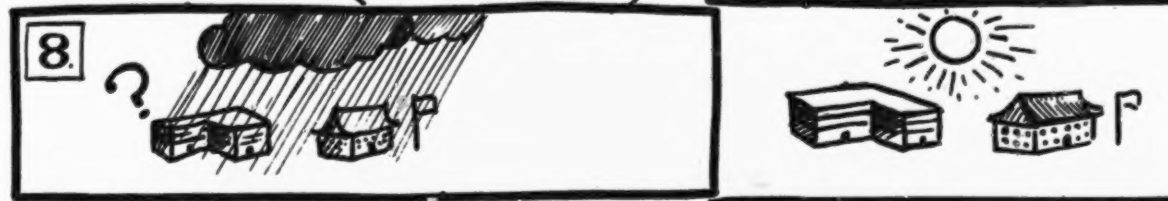
5.
HONG KONG
MACAO
HONG KONG
MACAO



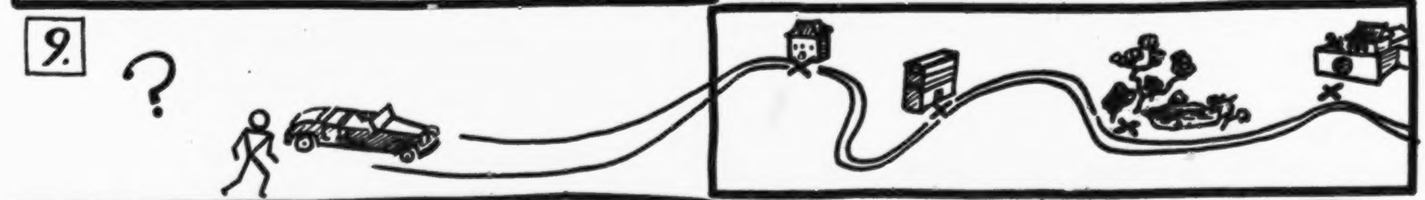
6.
Macao
Hong Kong
120 mi



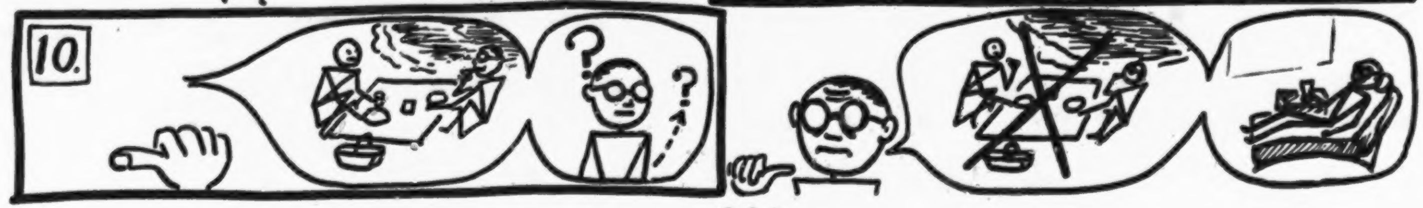
7.
'58
MID-AUTUMN FESTIVAL
TAIPEI
'57
HOLIDAY



8.



9.



10.

LESSON 39

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Lŏ Ch'ān*, neĭ chìng-wâ yaū T'oĭ-Waan faan laĭ, tuì-ue kóh shuè kè ts'ìng-yĭng, neĭ shûk m̄-shûk à?

B: Ngŏh haí kóh shuè chuê-chóh m̄-haî keí noî, tuì-ue kóh shuè kè ts'îng-yĭng, ngŏh m̄-haî keí shûk.

2. A: Neĭ haí T'oî-Pak chuê-chóh keí noî à?

B: Ngŏh haí t'oî-Pak chuê-chóh ch'a-m̄-toh leŭng nìn là!

3. A: Yaŭ yān wâ, T'oî-Pak kè yān t'ūng heì-ch'e, î-ka peí ì-ts'ìn toh-chóh hó toh, haî mà?

B: Haî, T'oî-Pak kè yān-haú, î-ka peí ĭ-ts'în toh-chóh hó toh; î-ch'é, heì-ch'e yîk-to toh-chóh hó toh.

4. A: Neĭ î-ka haí T'oî-Pak tsô-kán mi-yĕ à?

B: Ngŏh î-ka haí T'oî-Pak tsô-kán ch'ut-yâp-haú shaang-ì.

5. A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, neĭ yat-tîng huí-kwòh Heung-Kóng t'ūng Ŏ-Moōn* là, haî mà?

B: Ngŏh huì-kwòh Heung-Kóng, taân-hâî meî huì-kwòh Ò-Moōn*.

6. A: Heung-Kóng leĭ Ò-Moōn yaŭ keí uĕn à?

B: Ngŏh m̄-chi-tò; ngŏh koó, Heung-Kóng leî Ò-Moōn taaî-yeùk yat-paàk î-shâp hoí-leĭ kòm-sheûng-hâ.*

7. A: Kam-yât haî Chung-Ch'au-Tsìt kaû-nīn Chung-Ch'au-Tsìt kè shī-haû, T'oī-Pak kè hôk-haaû t'ūng kei-kwaan yaŭ mŏ fòng kà à?

B: Kóh yât, yaŭ ti kei-kwaan t'ūng hôk-haaû fòng kà, yaŭ ti mŏ fòng.

8. A: Kóh yât T'oî-Pak yaŭ mŏ lôk uĕ à?

B: Mŏ, kóh yât T'oî-Pak mŏ lôk uĕ, kóh yât hó hó-t'in.

9. A: Kóh yât neĭ yaŭ mŏ huì luĭ-haāng à?

B: Yaŭ, kóh yât ngŏh huì luĭ-haāng, ngŏh huì-chóh hó toh teî-fong.

10. A: Kam-yât ngŏh kè kung-sz fòng poòn yât kà, neĭ seúng m̄-seúng t'ūng ngŏh huì yĕ-ts'aan à?

B: Ngŏh hó kwooî, ngŏh m̄-seúng huì yĕ-ts'aan lòh!

LESSON 39

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

A: Neĭ m̄-seúng huì yĕ-ts'aan, neĭ tá-suèn tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: Shîk-uēn aàn-chaù chi-haû, ngŏh seúng faan uk-k'eí t'aú-hă.

LESSON 39

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Say Ch'ān, you have just returned from Formosa. Are you familiar with the situation over there?

   B: I didn't live there for very long. Concerning the situation over there, I am not quite familiar.

2. A: How long have you resided at Taipei?

   B: I have lived at Taipei for almost two years.

3. A: Someone says that Taipei's people and automobiles are more numerous now than ever before, is that right?

   B: Yes, the population of Taipei is a lot more now than before; also, there are a lot more automobiles.

4. A: What are you doing now at Taipei?

   B: I am in the import-export business now at Taipei.

5. A: If that be the case, you must have been to Hong Kong and Macao, right?

   B: I have been to Hong Kong, but I have not yet been to Macao.

6. A: How far is Hong Kong from Macao?

   B: I don't know; I guess that Hong Kong is about 120 nautical miles from Macao.

7. A: Today is the Mid-Autumn Festival. Last year during the time of the Mid-Autumn Festival did the schools and government offices of Taipei have a holiday?

   B: That day some government offices and schools had a holiday, some didn't.

8. A: Did it rain that day at Taipei?

   B: No, it didn't rain that day at Taipei; that day's weather was very nice.

9. A: Did you go on a trip that day?

   B: Yes, I went on a trip that day; I went to lots of places.

LESSON 39

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

10. A: Today my company is having a half-day holiday, do you want to go with me to a picnic?

B: I am very tired, I don't want to go picnicking.

A: You don't want to go picnicking, what do you plan to do?

B: After lunch, I want to go home to take a rest.

LESSON 39

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Wōng Sin Shaang, neĭ hó mà?

B: Ôh, Leĭ Sin-Shaang, kòm noî mŏ kîn neĭ; neĭ kân-loî huì-chóh pin shuè à?

2. A: Ngŏh sheûng kòh sing-k'eî huì Lōh-Shaáng, neĭ sheûng kòh sing-k'eî yaŭ mŏ huì pin shuè à?

B: Ngŏh mŏ huì pin shuè, ngŏh sheûng kòh laĭ-paaì huì wán-kwòh neĭ, neĭ m̄-haí uk-k'eî.

3. A: Tuì-m̄-chuê, yaŭ mi-yĕ kán-iù sẑ à?

B: Mŏ mat kán-iù sẑ; pat-kwòh, yaŭ ti sẑ ngŏh seúng mân-hă neĭ.

4. A: Yaŭ mi-yĕ chî-kaaù ne, Wōng Sin-Shaang?

B: Lûk-Kwan Pô hâ kòh uêt tiû ngŏh huì Heung-Kóng.

5. A: Neĭ foon-heí huì Heung Kóng mà?

B: Ngŏh ĭ-ts'în meî huì-kwòh Heung-Kóng; tuì-ue Heung-Kóng, ngŏh m̄-sûk. Shóh-ĭ ngŏh seúng mân-hă neĭ Heung-Kóng kè yĕ.

6. A: Neĭ seúng mân Heung-Kóng ti mi-yĕ ne?

B: Ngŏh-teî pat-uē huì ts'aan-shat shuè ts'ŏh-hă, k'ing-hă la, hó mà?

7. A: Hó la, neĭ yaŭ mŏ huì-kwòh San-Chŭng-Kwòk Ts'aan-Shat à?

B: Ngŏh mŏ huì-kwòh, taân-haî huì kwòh kóh shuè kè yān, to wâ kóh shuè ti kà-fe hó lèng.

8. A: Mŏ-ch'òh, kóh shuè ti ts'aan yîk-to m̄-ch'òh.

B: Kóm-yeûng*, pat-uē ngŏh-teî haí kóh shuè shîk faân la.

9. A: Hó la, kóh shuè hó k'ăn che; ngŏh-teî pat-uē haāng kwòh huì la.

B: Neĭ haî m̄-haî shî-shî huì kóh shuè shîk faân kà?

10. A: Ngŏh huì-kwòh kóh shuè leŭng ts'z̀, ni ts'z̀ haî taî-saam ts'z̀.

B: Kóm, kam-yât ngŏh ts'éng neĭ shîk faân, ngŏh-teî sûn-pîn* yám ti tsaú la, hó mà?

LESSON 39

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Tuì-m̄-chuê, ngŏh m̄-yám tsaú.

B: Yám siú-siú, m̄-kán-iù. Heung-Kóng kè t'in-heì tîm á? Yaŭ mŏ ni shuè kòm laăng à?

12. A: Heung-Kóng hó nuĕn, mŏ ni shuè kòm tùng.

B: Kóm, hó la; ngŏh m̄-chung-ì laăng kè teî-fong.

13. A: Neĭ fòng-sam, kóh shuè kè t'in-heì,m̄-ooĭ hó laăng kè.

B: Neĭ huì Heung-Kóng kè shî-haû neĭ yaŭ mŏ huì-kwòh Tóî-Waan à?

14. A: Yaŭ, ngŏh haí T'oî-Waan taû-laū-chóh leŭng-kòh uêt.

B: Neĭ huì-kwòh kòm toh teî-fong, neĭ yat-tîng chi-tò hó toh yĕ là?

15. A: Uĕn-Tung kè teî-fong, tò-shuè to haî ch'a-m̄-toh che.

B: Neĭ t'aí-hă, kóh kaan haî San-Chung-Kwòk Ts'aan-Shat là, haî mà?

A: Mŏ-ts'òh là, ngŏh-teî yâp huì yám ti kà-fe, chì kóng la.

LESSON 39

WORD LIST

1.	tuì-ue...	concerning, pertaining to, towards
2.	shûk	to be familiar with, to be well acquainted with; ripe,familiarize
3.	hèi-ch'e, ch'e	automobiles, car
4.	yān-haú	population
5.	ch'ut-yâp-haú	export-import
6.	Ò-Moōn*	Macao or Macau
7.	leî	distant from...
8.	uĕn	far, distant, remote
9.	hoî	sea
10.	leĭ	mile, Chinese mile
11.	hoî-leĭ	nautical mile, knot (speed)
12.	Chung-Ts'au	Mid-Autumn (15th day of 8th month in lunar calendar)
13.	tsìt	festival, holiday; to save, be thrifty
14.	kei-kwaan	government office, agency
15.	fòng kà	to have a holiday, let out on vacation
16.	hó-t'in	good weather, nice day
17.	luĭ-haāng	to travel, trip, travel, journey
18.	yĕ-ts'aan	picnicking, to have a picnic
19.	t'aú-hă	to take a rest

LESSON 39

READING MATERIAL

1371

於 ue: in; at; with; from; by; through.

於是 ue-shî: then, thereupon; accordingly.

401

計 kaì: to calculate; plan

計數 kaì shò: to reckon up; count

計劃 kaì-waâk: plans to plan

中計 chùng kaì: fall into a trap

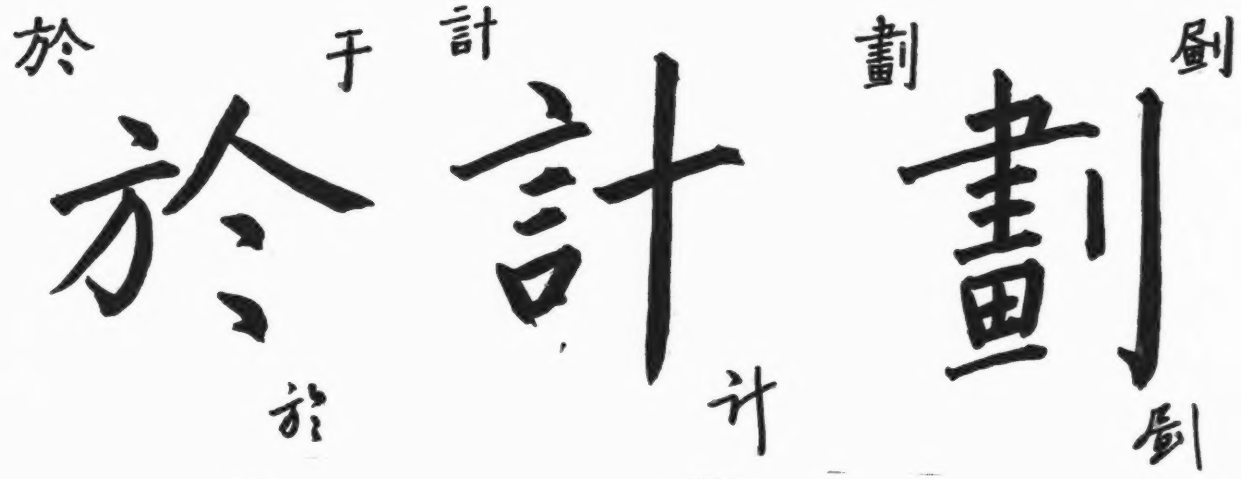
會計 ccî-kaì: accounting

1406

劃 waâk: graining tool; to carve; to cut out; to mark.

劃地界 waâk teî-kaaì: to lay out the boundary.

劃分 waâk fan: to divide; to distinguish between.



370

假 ká: false; to pretend; to borrow

假 kà: leave of absence

假造 ká-tsô: to forge; to counterfeit

假座 ká-tsôh: borrow place for meeting

放假 fòng kà: to grand holidays

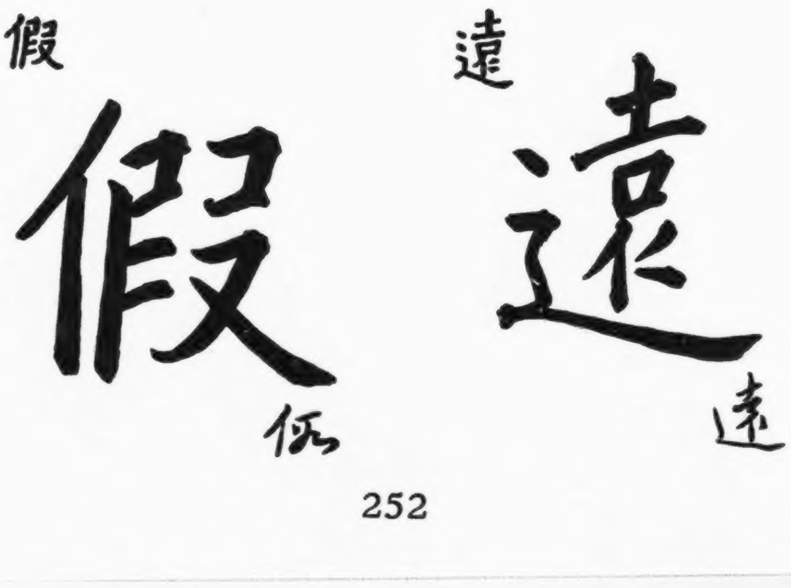
1390

遠 uěn: far; distant; remote.

好遠 hó uěn· very far.

遠見 uěn kìn: to see from afar; farsighted.

遠東 uěn tung: the Far E st



LESSON 39

READING MATERIAL

640

旅 luǐ: to travel; travel.

旅客 luǐ haàk: a traveler.

旅行 luǐ-haāng: travel; trip.

旅店 luǐ-tìm: an inn; hotel.

旅費 luǐ faì: traveling expenses.

1469

約 yeùk: a covenant; bond; agreement; appointment.

大約 taaî-yeûk: about; roughly; probably.

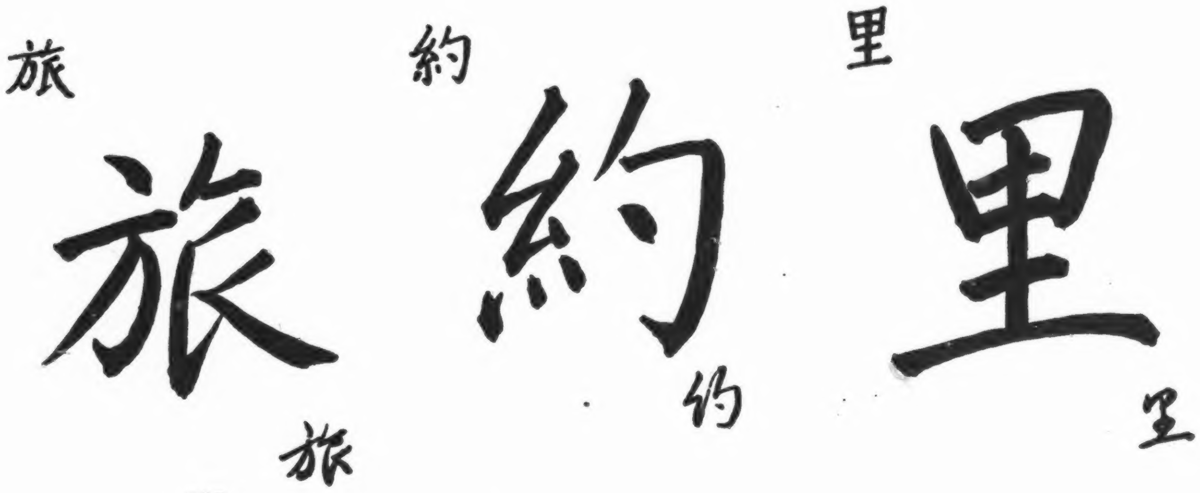
失約 shat yeùk: to fail to meet an appointment; to fail in an agreement.

597

里 leǐ: Chinese mile(1,894.12 feet)

千里鏡 ts'in-leǐ-kèng: a telescope.

鄰里 lūn-leǐ: neighbor.



575:

癐 kwooî: tired; weary.

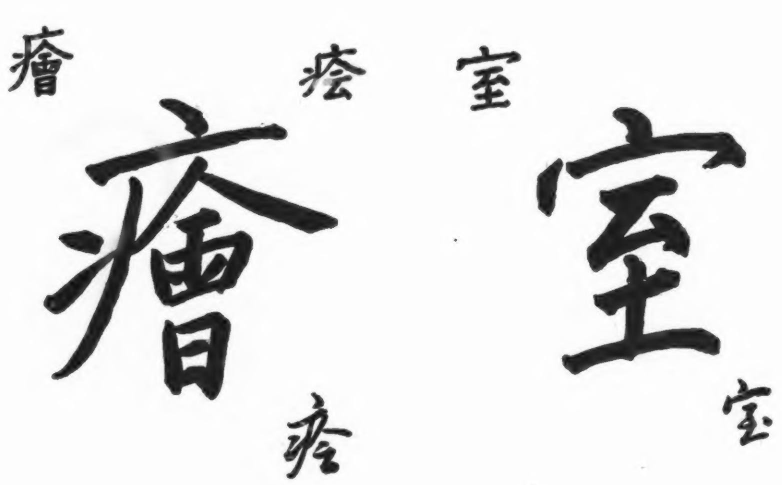
見癐 kìn kwooî: to feel tired.

953

室 shat: dwelling; inner room; wife.

應接室 yīng-tsìp-shat: reception room

閱報室 uêt-pò-shat: reading room.



LESSON 39

READING MATERIAL

對於去三-faān-市同二-faû嘅事,陳英昨日已經決定chóh là.佢打算先去二-faû;去完二-faû之後,至去三-faān-市.黃小姐聽倒呢個kòm好嘅旅行計劃之後,佢覺得非常之快樂.

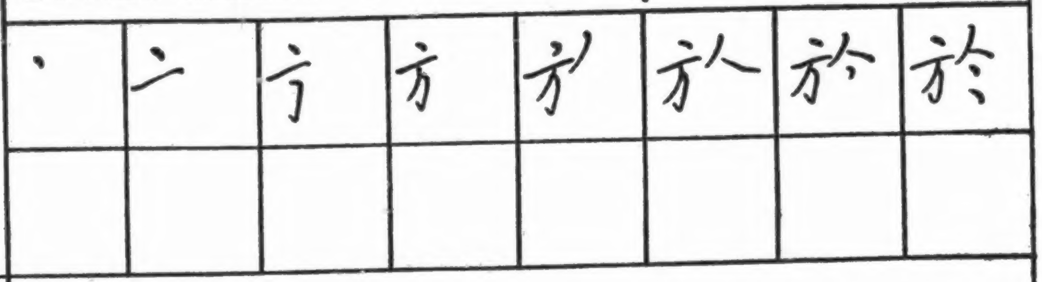
真係好là, ngaam-ngaam kóh日放假,天氣又好.陳英同黃小姐喺朝早七點鐘shai車去二-faû.呢個faû離呢處唔係幾遠,大約有二百里kòm-上下.佢地慢慢敢shaí車,同時又k'ing-吓;冇幾耐,就tò chóh二faû là.佢地喺下午兩點kòm-上下tò二-faû,shaí車shaí chóh七個鐘頭kòm耐.佢地覺得幾癐;佢地要t'aú-吓.陳英就同黃小姐去ts'aan-室,wán ti野食吓,飲吓.黃小姐以前未黎過二-faû,所以食完野之後,佢想tò-處去睇吓.

LESSON 39

WRITING MATERIAL

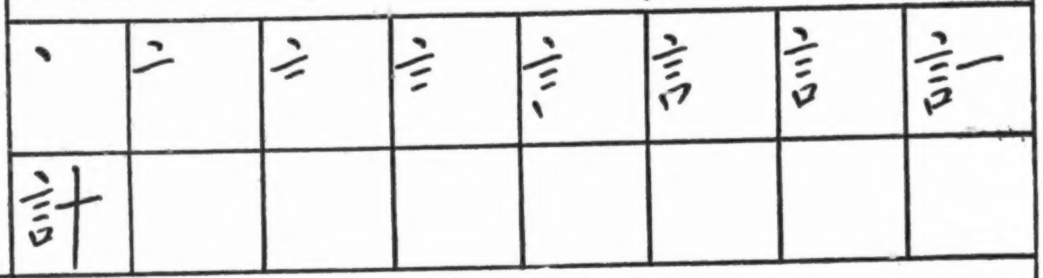
於

Character Number 1371 **Radical Number** 70
Stroke Number 8 方



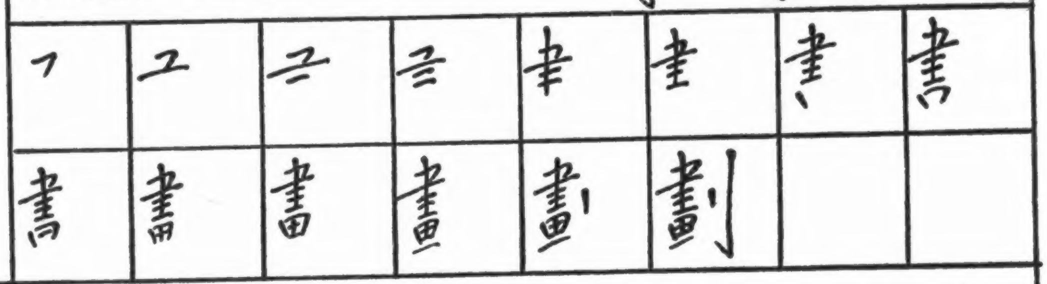
計

Character Number 401 **Radical Number** 149
Stroke Number 9 言



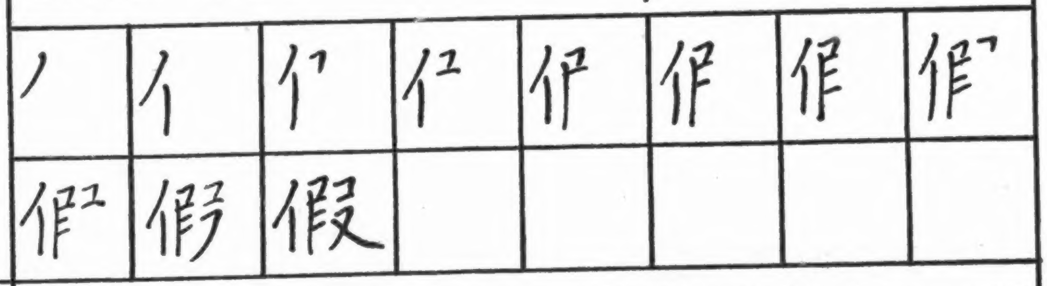
劃

Character Number 1406 **Radical Number** 18
Stroke Number 14 刂，刀



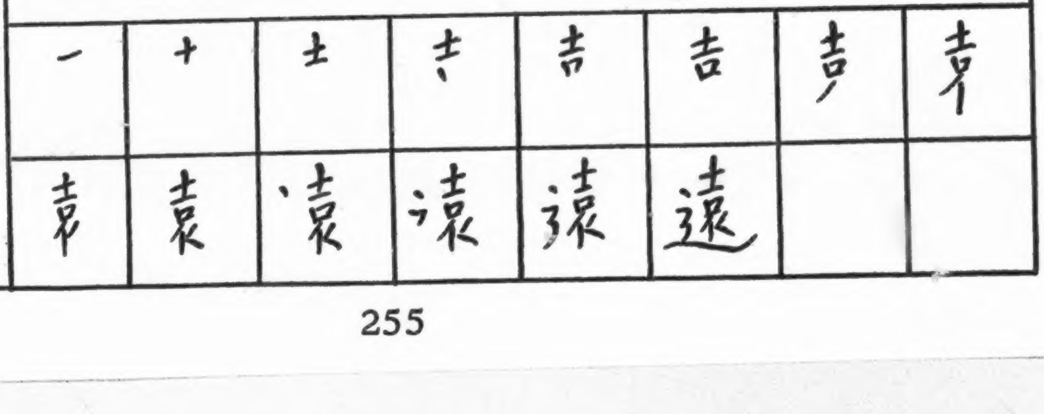
假

Character Number 370 **Radical Number** 9
Stroke Number 11 亻，人



遠

Character Number 1390 **Radical Number** 162
Stroke Number 14 辶，辵



LESSON 40

ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. K'uĭ ko.
   K'uĭ keî ko.
   K'uĭ hó ko.
   K'uĭ fei-sheūng chi ko.

2. Neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ, pin-kòh ko ti?
   Ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ, ngŏh ko ti.
   Ngŏh peî k'uĭ ko ti.
   Ngŏh peî k'uĭ ko hó toh.

3. Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ k'uĭ kòm ko à?
   Ngŏh yaŭ k'uĭ kòm ko.
   Ngŏh mŏ k'uĭ kòm ko.
   Ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ yat-yeûng kòm ko.

4. Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ k'uĭ kòm feī à?
   Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ k'uĭ kòm ts'ung-mīng à?
   Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ k'uĭ kòm poón-sẑ à?
   Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ k'uĭ kòm aí à?

5. Ngŏh peî k'uĭ feī.
   Ngŏh peî k'uĭ ts'ung-mīng ti.
   Ngŏh peî k'uĭ poón-sẑ hó toh.
   Ngŏh peî k'uĭ aî.

LESSON 40

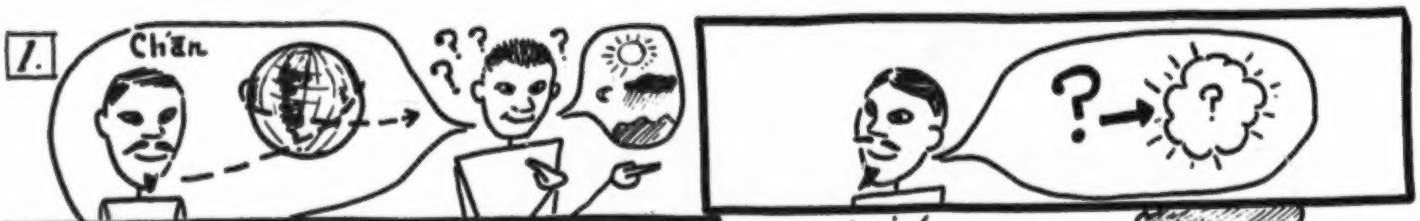
ORAL MATERIAL-STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

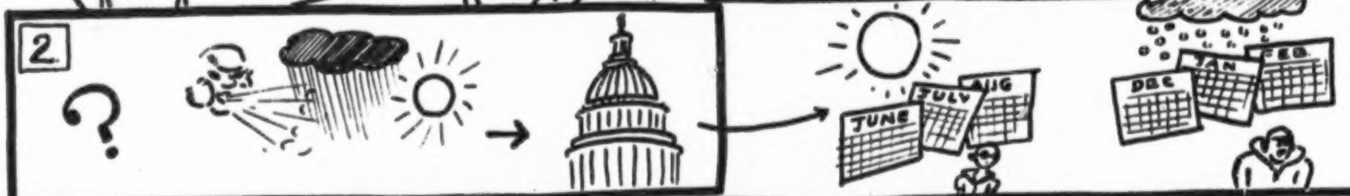
6. Ngŏh yaŭ k’uĭ kòm feī.
Ngŏh yaŭ k’uĭ kòm ts’ung-mīng.
Ngŏh yaŭ k’uĭ kòm poón-sẑ.
Ngŏh yaŭ k’uĭ kòm aî.

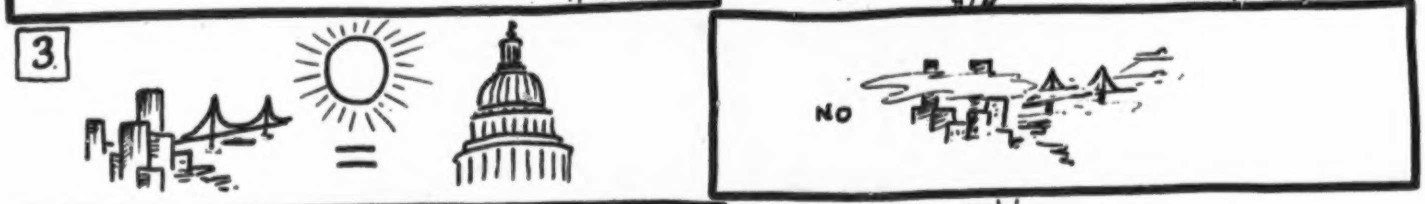
7. Ngŏh mŏ k’uĭ kòm feī.
Ngŏh mŏ k’uĭ kòm ts’ung-mīng.
Ngŏh mŏ k’uĭ kòm poón-sẑ.
Ngŏh mŏ k’uĭ kòm aî.

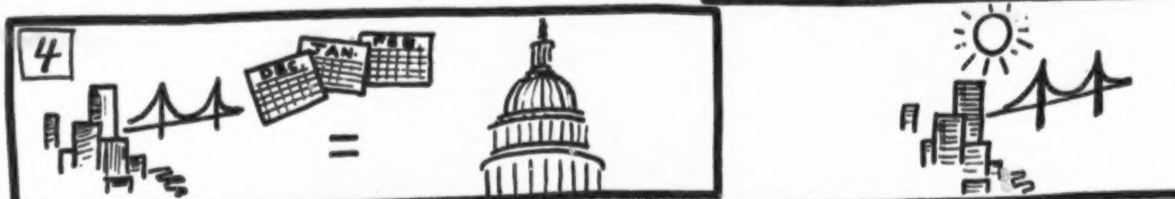
8. Ngŏh t’ūng k’uĭ yat-yeûng kòm feī.
Ngŏh t’ūng k’uĭ yat-yeûng kòm ts’ung-mīng.
Ngŏh t’ūng k’uĭ yat-yeûng kòm poón-sẑ.
Ngŏh t’ūng k’uĭ yat-yeûng kòm aî.

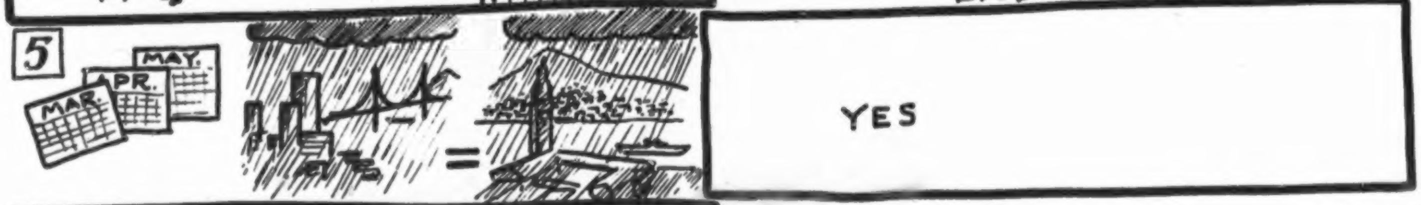
LESSON 40

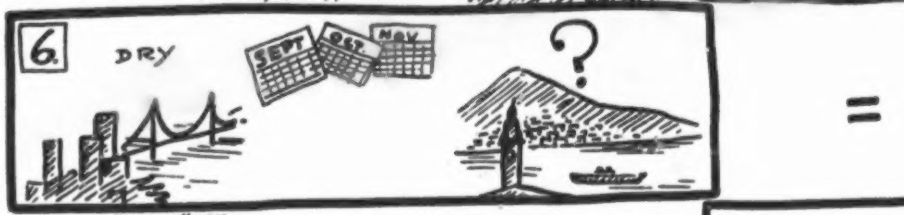
1.


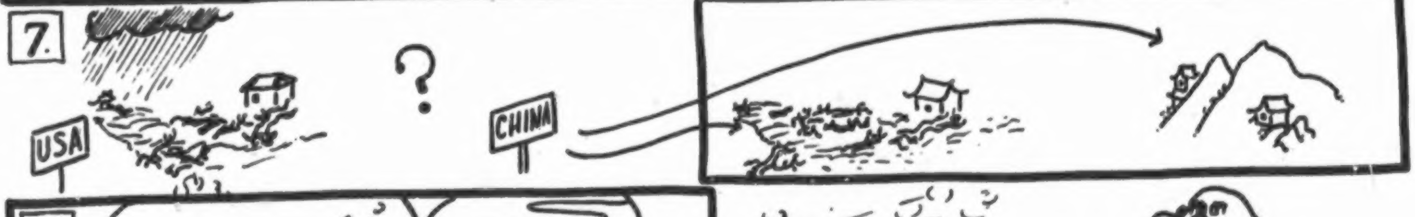
2.

?
JUNE
JULY
AUG
DEC.
JAN.
FEB.

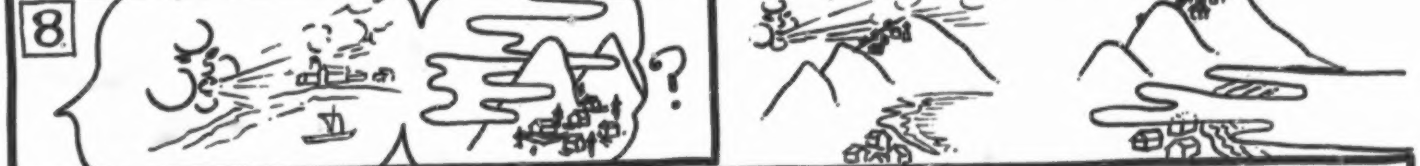
3.


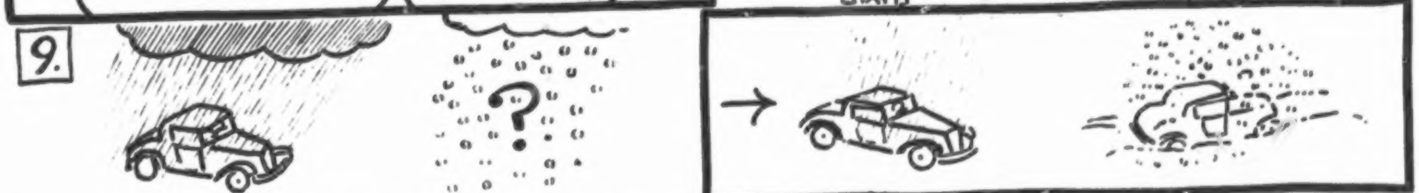
4.


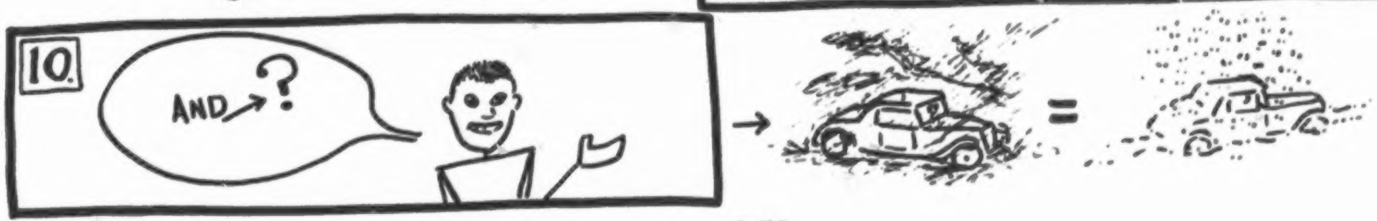
5.

MAY
APR.
MAR.
=
YES

6.

DRY
SEPT
OCT
NOV
?
=

7.


8.


9.


10.


LESSON 40

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû, neĭ huì-kwòh hó toh teî-fong, ngŏh seúng mân neĭ keí kòh mân-t'aî, tak mà?

B: Hó à, ni ti mân-t'aî haî kwaan-ue mi-yĕ kà?

A: Ni ti mân-t'aî haî kwaan-ue heì-haû kè.

2. A: Wā-Shîng-Tûn kè heì-haû tím à?

B: Pó-t'ung laî kóng, hâ-t'in kè shî-haû, kóh shuè keí ît, tung-t'in kè shî-haû, kóh shuè keí laăng.

3. A: Hâ-t'in kè shî-haû, Saam-Faān-Shĭ yaŭ mŏ Wā-Shîng-Tûn kòm ît à?

B: Mŏ, hâ-t'in kè shî-haû, Saam-Faān-Shĭ mŏ Wā-Shîng-Tûn kòm ît, k'uĭ peí Wā-Shîng-Tûn leūng hó toh.

4. A: Tung-t'in kè shî-haû, Saam-Faān-Shĭ yaŭ mŏ Wâ-Shîng-Tûn kòm laăng à?

B: Mŏ, Tung-t'in kè shî-haû, Saam-Faān-Shĭ mŏ Wâ-Shîng-Tûn kòm laăng, k'uĭ peí Wâ-Shîng-Tûn nuĕn hó toh.

5. A: Ch'un-t'in kè shî-haû, Saam-Faān-Shĭ keí toh uĕ, keí shap. Heung-Kóng yaŭ mŏ Saam-Faān-Shĭ kòm toh uĕ, kòm shap à?

B: Ch'un-t'in kè shî-haû, Heung-Kóng t'ūng Saam-Faān-Shĭ yat-yeûng kòm toh uĕ, yat-yeûng kòm shap.

6. A: Ch'au-t'in kè shî-haû, Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè heì-haû keí kon, Heung-Kóng tím à?

B: Ch'au-t'in kè shî-haû, Heung-Kóng kè heì-haû t'ūng Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè yat-yeûng kòm kon.

7. A: Uĕ-kwaì chi-haû, haí Meĭ-Kwòk, yaŭ ti teî-fong hó oo-tso; Chung-Kwòk tím à?

B: Haí Chung-Kwòk, yaŭ ti teî-fong t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk kè yat-yeûng kòm oo-tso; yaŭ ti teî-fong peí Meĭ-Kwòk kè kon-tsêng ti.

8. A: Yaŭ yān wâ, kân hoí kè teî-fong toh fung, kân saan kè teî-fong toh mô; haî mà?

B: M̄-yat-tîng, yaŭ ti kân hoí kè teî-fong mŏ kân saan kè teî-fong kòm toh fung; yaŭ ti kân saan kè teî-fong mŏ kân hoí kè teî-fong kòm toh mô.

9

LESSON 40

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

9. A: Lôk uĕ kè shī-haû, shaí ch'e m̄-yūng-ī; lôk shuèt kè shī-haû tím à?

B: Iù t'ai ts'īng-yīng; yaŭ shī, lôk uĕ shaí ch'e mŏ lôk shuèt shaí ch'e kòm naān.

10. A: Yaŭ shī yaû tím à?

B: Yaŭ shī, lôk uĕ shaí ch'e t'ūng lôk shuèt shaí ch'e yat-yeûng kòm naān.

A: M̄-koi shaaì là, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû.

B: M̄-shaí m̄-koi.

LESSON 40

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Professor Ch'an, you have been to lots of places. I want to ask you a few questions, all right?

B: Sure, what are these questions pertaining to?

A: These questions are pertaining to climate.

2. A: How is the climate in Washington?

B: Generally speaking, it is quite hot there during the summe it is quite cold there during the winter.

3. A: Is San Francisco as hot as Washington during the summer?

B: No, San Francisco is not as hot as Washington during the summer; compared with Washington it is much cooler.

4. A: Is San Francisco as cold as Washington during the winter?

B: No, San Francisco is not as cold as Washington during the winter; compared with Washington it is much warmer.

5. A: During the spring, San Francisco is quite rainy and wet. Does Hong Kong have as much rain as San Francisco? Is it as wet?

B: During the spring Hong Kong and San Francisco have just as much rain and are just as wet.

6. A: The climate in San Francisco is quite dry during autumn. How is it in Hong Kong?

B: During autumn the climate in Hong Kong is just as dry as that of San Francisco.

7. A: There are some places in America which are very dirty after the rainy season, what about China?

B: There are some places in China which are just as dirty as those in America; some places are cleaner than some in America.

8. A: Someone says that there is more wind in places near the sea and more fog in places near the mountains. Is that true?

B: Not necessarily so, some places near the sea are not as windy as some places near the mountains, and some places near the hills are not as foggy as some places near the sea.

LESSON 40

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

9. A: It is not easy to drive a car when it rains. How about when it snows?

B: It all depends on the circumstances. Sometimes driving in the rain is not as difficult as driving in the snow.

10. A: And then, sometimes, what?

B: Sometimes, driving in the rain is just as tough as driving in the snow.

A: Much obliged, Prof. Ch'an.

B: You needn't thank me.

LESSON 40

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ts'íng mân, neĭ haî m̄-haî Ch'ān Sheûng-Waî à?

B: Haî, ngŏh haî Ch'ān Sheûng-Waì, kwaì sìng à?

A: Ngŏh sìng Wōng, ngŏh kiù-tsô Wōng-Tung-Hoí.

B: Yaŭ mat kwaì-kòn à, Wōng Sin-Shaang.

2. A: Ngŏh yaŭ yat-kòh lŏ p'āng-yaŭ, kiù-tsô Cheung-T'în Mîng; k'uĭ wâ k'uĭ shik neĭ, k'uĭ seúng kaaì-shiû ngŏh t'ūng neĭ yîng-shik.

B: Ngŏh keì-tak là, Cheung Sin-Shaang ĭ-ts'în kóng-kwòh neĭ.

3. A: Neĭ haí Lûk-Kwan Uĕ-Īn Hôk-Haaû kòm noî, neĭ chûng yaŭ keí noî chì pat-îp à?

B: Ngŏh chûng yaŭ saam-kòh uêt pat-îp.

4. A: Pat-chóh-îp chi-haû, neĭ tá-suèn huì pin shuè kung-tsŏk à?

B: Pat-chóh-îp chi-haû, ngŏh hó hóh-nāng ooĭ huì Uĕn-Tung-kung-tsòk.

5. A: Neĭ ooĭ huì Uĕn-Tung pin shuè à; T'ōi-Waan,Heung-Kóng, Yât-Poón, yik-waâk Hōn-Kwòk à?

B: Ngŏh koó, ngŏh toh-sò huì T'oî-Waan; pat-kwòh ni kîn sẑ hó naān kóng.

6. A: Uē-kwóh neĭ tiû huì T'oî-Waan kung-tsòk, neĭ ooĭ m̄-ooĭ sûn-pîn* huì Heung-Kóng haāng-yat-haāng à?

B: Uē-kwóh ngŏh tiû huì T'oî-Waan kung-tsòk, tak-haān kè shî-haû, ngŏh ooĭ huì Heung-Kóng haāng-yat-haāng.

7. A: Neĭ kaû-shî yaŭ mŏ huì-kwòh Heung-Kóng à?

B: Ngŏh keì-tak, haí saì-ló-koh kè shî-haû, ngŏh huì-kwòh Heung-Kóng leŭng ts'z̀.

8. A: T'eng-mān wâ, Heung-Kóng kè yān-haû hó toh, yaŭ mŏ Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè kòm toh à?

B: Ngŏh koó, Heung-Kóng kè yān-haú t'ūng Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè yān-haú ch'a-m̄-toh.

LESSON 40

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

9. A: Heung-Kóng kòm saì, yān kòm toh; kóh shuè kè shaang-oôt yat-tîng peí Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè naān hó toh là, haî mà?

B: Mŏ-ts'òh là, Heung Kóng kè shaang-oôt hó m̄-yūng-ĭ, peí Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè naān hó toh.

10. A: Heung-Kóng leî T'oî-Waan keí uĕn à?

B: Ngŏh m̄-chi-tò; uē-kwóh neĭ ts'ŏh fei-kei, taaî-yeùk* iù seì ng̃ kòh chung-t'aū kòm-sheûng-hâ*.

11. A: Uē-kwóh neĭ huì Heung-Kóng, neĭ kaì-waâk haí Heung-Kóng taû-laū keí noî à?

B: Ngŏh mŏ paân-faàt k'uèt-tîng; iù t'aí ts'îng-yîng, yaû iù t'aí sheûng-sz kè mîng-lîng.

12. A: Pat-chóh-îp chi-haû, neĭ seúng keí shĭ leī-hoi Ka-Shaáng à.

B: Tuì-ue ni kòh mân-t'aî, ngŏh chûng iù nám-hă, chì hóh-ĭ kuèt-tîng.

13. A: Neĭ uēn-loī kè kaì-waâk haî tím-yeûng* kà?

B: Ngŏh uēn-loī tá-suèn, pat-chóh-îp chi-haû, ts'aam-ka Ka-Shaáng kè wân-tûng-ooî*.

14. A: Kóh kòh wân-tûng-ooî* keí shî hoi-ch'í à?

B: Kóh kòh wân-tûng-ooî* iù ch'au-t'in chi-haû, chì hoi-ch'î.

15. A: Uē-kwóh wân-tûng-ooî* hoi-ch'í kè shî-haû, neĭ yaû iù huì Uĕn-Tung; kóm, neĭ tím-paân à?

B: Kóm, mŏ-paân-faàt la; kóm ngŏh tsaû m̄-hóh-ĭ ts'aam-ka wân-tûng-ooî* là!

LESSON 40

WORD LIST

1.	kaaù-shaû	college professor
2.	mân-t'aī	question, problem
3.	kwaan-ue	pertaining to, about, concerning, regarding, in regard to, relating to
4.	heì-haû	climate
5.	p'ố-t'ung	general, ordinary, common, usual
6.	p'ố-t'ung-laī-kống	generally speaking
7.	hâ-t'in	summer
8.	tung-t'in	winter
9.	leūng	cool
10.	ch'un-t'in	spring
11.	shap	wet, damp, humid, moist, to moisten
12.	ts'au-t'in	autumn
13.	kon	dry
14.	uĕ-kwaì	rainy season, monsoon
15.	oo-tso	dirty, filthy
16.	kon-tsêng	clean
17.	kân	near; to be near, near by
18.	fung	wind
19.	yūng-î	easy, easily

LESSON 40

READING MATERIAL

251

刻 hak: to engrave; instant (haak)

一刻 yat hak: quarter hour

片刻 p'ìn-hak: an instant

刻字 hak tsẑ: to engrave character

882

普 p'ó· universal; great.

普通 p'ó-t ung: general; in common use.

普遍 p'ó-p'ìn: universal; widespread

1362

通 t'ung: through; to reach; to communicate; all; general.

通用 t'ung yûng: in common use.

通知 t'ung-chi: to inform.

通信 t'ung sùn: to correspond.

通過 t'ung-kwòh: to pass.

刻 普 通

刻 普 通

刻 普 通

774

暖 nuĕn: warm; balmy; to warm.

暖爐 nuĕn lō: heating stove.

和暖 wōh-nuĕn: warm; balmy.

235

夏 hâ: summer

夏天 hâ-t'in: summer

夏季 hâ-kwaì: summer season

夏至 hâ-chì: summer slostice

暖 夏

暖 夏

煖 暖 夏

LESSON 40

READING MATERIAL

391

更	kuang o change (kang) alter
更	Kàng: more, still, again
更改	kang-kcí: to change; reform
更正	kang-chìng: to correct
更好	kàng-hó: better still

497

乾	kon: to clean; dry.
乾淨	kon-tsêng: clean.
乾爽	kon-shóng: dry; airy.
乾糧	kon-leũng: dry provisions.
餅干	péng-kon: biscuits; crackers.
晒干	shaai kon: to dry in sun.

1257

淨	tsîng, tsêng: pure; spotless; neat; clean.
洗淨	saí tsêng: to wash clean.
淨水	tsêng shuí: pure water.

更 乾 干 淨

更 乾 淨

更 乾 乹 乾 淨 凈

1137

店	tìm: inn; tavern; shop.
酒店	tsaú-tìm: restaurant; hotel.
管店	koón tìm: hotel clerk; butler.

1280

錯	ts'òh. mistake; error, rong.
做錯	tsô ts'òh done wrong mistake.
錯處	tso ch'uè: error, offense.
錯過	ts'òh-kwòh· f ult mistake; to lose (op r tunity).

店 錯

店 錯

店 错

LESSON 40

READING MATERIAL

陳英同黃小姐 tò chóh 二-faû là. 佢地喺 ts'aan-室食 chóh ti 野之後, 黃小姐想即刻 tò-處去睇吓. 普通黎講, 喺二-faû, 天氣幾暖 kà ; 而家夏天就唔使講, 一定更熱 ti 嘅 là.

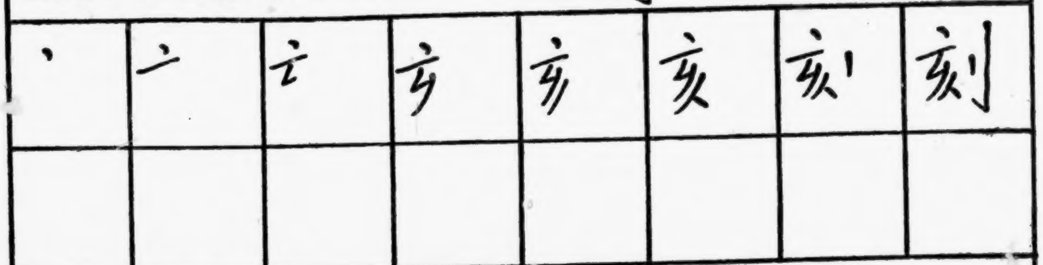
陳英知道黃小姐病好-chóh 冇幾耐. 喺二-faû 天氣又 kòm 熱, 又冇 fung, peí-kaaù 第二處嘅氣候乾好多, 又熱好多. 喺敢樣嘅情形之下, 乜野事都要慢慢做至得 ; 所以佢想先同黃小姐去酒店 wán 好房, táng 佢地洗 chóh 身, cheùk chóh 新 shaam 之後至去行街. 黃小姐 nám-吓, 佢以為陳英講嘅說話冇錯. 黃小姐就同陳英去 wán chóh 兩個好好嘅房. 呢 ti 房好乾淨, 每個房七文; 呢-ti 房同第二個地方嘅房 ch'a-唔多一樣 kòm 貴. 佢地喺酒店 t'aú 完之後, 而家打算出街 là.

LESSON 40

WRITING MATERIAL

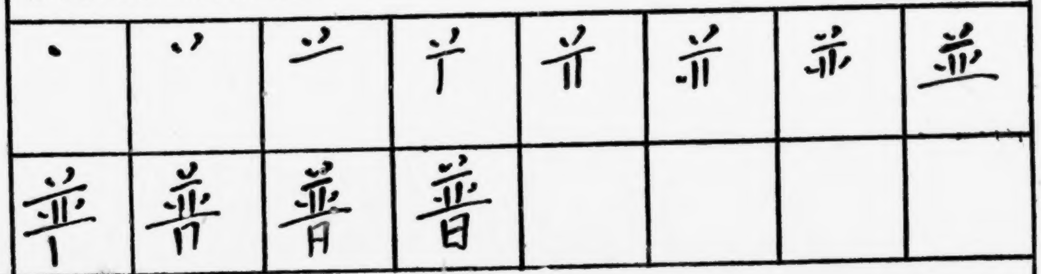
刻

Character Number 251 Radical Number 18
Stroke Number 8 刂，刀



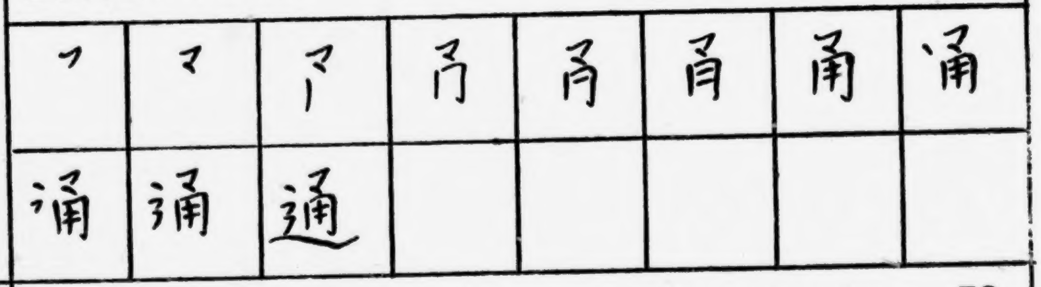
普

Character Number 882 Radical Number 72
Stroke Number 12 日



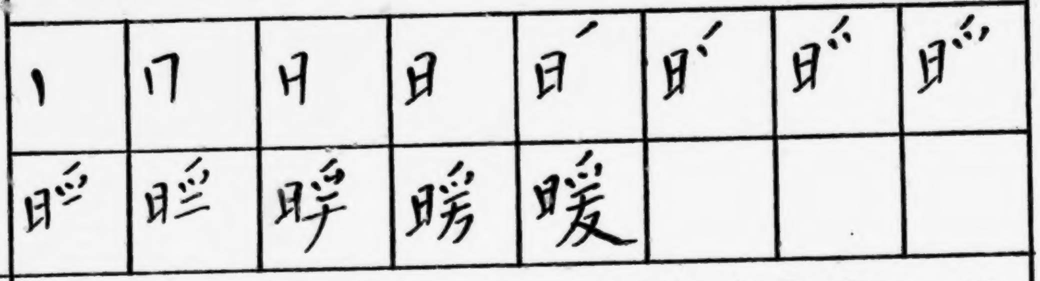
通

Character Number 1362 Radical Number 162
Stroke Number 11 辶，辵



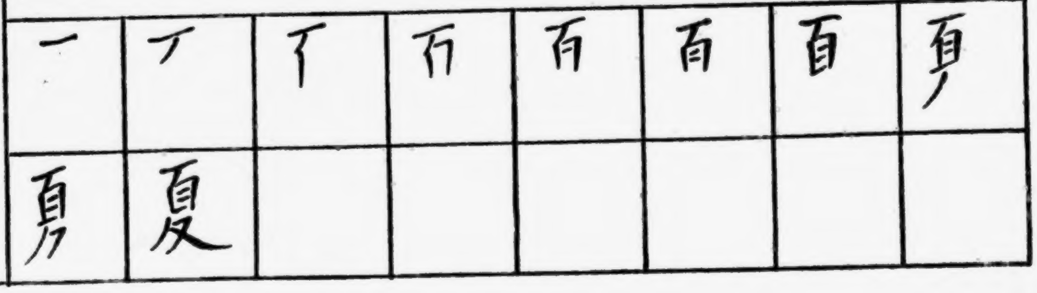
暖

Character Number 774 Radical Number 72
Stroke Number 13 日



夏

Character Number 235 Radical Number 35
Stroke Number 10 夊



DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

WEST COAST BRANCH

PRESIDIO OF MONTEREY, CALIFORNIA

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE

VOLUME III
LESSONS 41-60

РУССКИЙ
СРПСКОХРВАТСКИ
華 語
SHQIP
MAGYAR
日 本 語
TÜRKÇE
PORTUGUÊS
فارسی
ROMÂNĂ
УКРАЇНСЬКА
ITALIANO
BAHASA INDONESIA

БЪЛГАРСКИ
POLSKI
粵 語
ČESKY
ΕΛΛΗΝΙΚΑ
한 국 어
ESPAÑOL
FRANÇAIS
العربية
ภาษาไทย
မြန်မာဘာသာ
DEUTSCH
TIẾNG VIỆT NAM

KISWAHILI

U.S. ARMY

ED022179

AL 001 479

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Volume III

Lessons 41 - 60

September 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE
WEST COAST BRANCH
Presidio of Monterey, California

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume VIII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 set	Flash Cards for 1500 Most Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	27 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	27 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
		Also available in compact form for comprehension or review purposes:
	3 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:	1 reel	Hong Kong, MF 20-8799,(P)(A)* 9 min.
	1 reel	Hong Kong Welcomes You, MF 20-9363, (I) 15 min.
	1 reel	An Oriental City, Canton, MF 20-9075, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Farming in South China, MF 20-7829, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Taiwan, Island of Freedom, AFIF 103, 23 min.
	1 reel	Formosa, LSFC 21, 13 min.
	1 reel	Miracle in Free China, MF 20-9114, 30 min.
	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, (I) 14 min.

* Available in magnastriped Chinese-Cantonese narrations. (P) Primary version, (I) Intermediate version, (A) Advanced version.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	*Formosa, Blueprint for a Free China*, MOT 18, 24 min.
1 reel	*China* EF 258, 17 min.
1 reel	*China, the Land and the People*, MF 20-8939, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	*Peiping Family*, MF 20-8966, 20 min.
1 reel	*The Chinese Village, a Legend*, MF 20-9341, 15 min.
1 reel	*Red China*, AFIF 97, 27 min.
1 reel	*China, Far East*, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657 FC, (I) 14 min.
1 reel	*Far East*, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657, 30 min.
1 reel	*Southeast Asia, Lands and Peoples*, MF 20-8862, 13 min.
1 reel	*Southeast Asia*, SIS AFS No. 6, MF 30-8771, 33 min.
1 reel	*The Village that Refused to Die*, MF 20-9748, 60 min.
1 reel	*Siam*, MF 20-9269, 31 min.
1 reel	*Burma, People of the River*, MF 20-9028, 14 min.
1 reel	*Letter from Indonesia*, MF 20-8695, 27 min.
1 reel	*The Philippines*, AFIF 48, 15 min.
2 reels	*Portrait of an American Family*, MF 30-8449 (CC), 60 min.
1 reel	*Men Against Tanks*, MF 7-7898, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	*Production of Combat Intelligence*, MF 30-1494, (P)(A) 18 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Rifle Company, LSFC-3, (P)(A) 35 min.
1 reel	Infantry Battalion, LSFC-1, (P)(A) 21 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE (TOISHAN) 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters (Toishan Conversion Table)
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	24 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	24 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-26
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 27-55
	1 vol.	Volume III, Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	14 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	14 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	27 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

	27 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 210-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Volume I, Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume II, Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Volume III, Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Volume V, Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, 14 min.
	1 reel	Mighty Chinese Armed Forces, LS-86, 22 min.
	1 reel	Production of Combat Intelligence, MF 30-1494, 18 min.

* For Official Use Only

CHINESE-CANTONESE 96-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-16
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 17-32
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 33-48
	1 vol.	Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded on tape
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

LESSON 41

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. yaŭ mŏ....kòm...?

yaŭ....kòm....

mŏ.....kòm....

Ts'în-yât laăng.

Ts'în-yât m̄-laăng.

Ts'în-yât laăng m̄-laăng à?

Ts'în-yât laăng.

Ts'în-yât keí laăng.

Ts'în-yât hó laăng.

Ts'în-yât fei-sheūng-chi laăng.

K'ām-yât laăng.

K'ām-yât m̄-laăng.

K'ām-yât laăng m̄-laăng à?

K'ām-yât laăng.

K'ām-yât yîk-to laăng.

K'ām-yât yîk-to keí laăng.

K'ām-yât yîk-to hó laăng.

K'ām-yât yîk-to fei-sheūng-chi laăng.

K'ām-yât yaŭ ts'în-yât kòm laăng.

K'ām-yât mŏ ts'în-yât kòm laăng.

K'ām-yât yaŭ mŏ ts'în-yât kòm laăng à?

K'ām-yât yaŭ ts'în-yât kòm laăng.

K'ām-yât yaŭ ts'în-yât kòm tùng.

LESSON 41
ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

K'ām-yât mŏ ts'în-yât kòm tùng.

K'ām-yât yaŭ mŏ ts'în-yât kòm tùng à?

K'ām-yât yaŭ ts'în-yât kòm tùng.

K'ām-yât mŏ ts'în-yât kòm tùng.

Kam-yât yaŭ k'ām-yât kòm tùng.

Kam-yât mŏ k'ām-yât kòm tùng.

Ts'în-yât yaŭ taaî-ts'în-yât kòm ît.

Ts'în-yât mŏ taaî-ts'în-yât kòm ît.

Ts'în-yât yaŭ taaî-ts'în-yât kòm nuĕn.

Ts'în-yât mŏ taaî-ts'în-yât kòm nuĕn.

Ch'un-t'in mŏ tung-t'in kòm laăng.

Ch'un-t'in yaŭ mŏ tung-t'in kòm laăng à?

Ch'un-t'in mŏ tung-t'in kòm laăng.

Tung-t'in mŏ ch'un-t'in kòm toh mô.

Tung-t'in yaŭ mŏ ch'un-t'in kòm toh mô à?

Tung-t'in mŏ ch'un-t'in kòm toh mô.

Tung-t'in mŏ ch'un-t'in kòm shap.

Ch'un-t'in mŏ hâ-t'in kòm ît.

Ch'un-t'in yaŭ mŏ hâ-t'in kòm ît à?

Ch'un-t'in mŏ hâ-t'in kòm ît.

Hâ-t'in mŏ ts'au-t'in kòm kon.

Hâ-t'in mŏ ts'au-t'in kòm leŭng.

Ts'au-t'in mŏ tung-t'in kòm laăng.

LESSON 41
ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

2. yaŭ mŏ...kòm...?
yaŭ....kòm....
t'ūng...yat-yeûng kòm....
mŏ.....kòm.....

Ni t'iū lô ti ch'e toh.
Ni t'iū lô ti ch'e hó toh.
Ni t'iū lô ti ch'e toh m̄-toh à?
Ni t'iū lô ti ch'e hó toh.
Ni t'iū lô ti ch'e m̄-haî hó toh.
Kóh t'iū lô ti ch'e toh.
Kóh t'iū lô ti ch'e hó toh.
Kóh t'iū lô ti ch'e yîk-to hó toh.
Kóh t'iū lô ti ch'e yaŭ ni t'iū lô ti ch'e kòm toh.
Kóh t'iū lô ti ch'e mŏ ni t'iū lô ti ch'e kòm toh.
Kóh t'iū lô ti ch'e yaŭ mŏ ni t'iū lô ti ch'e kòm toh à?
Kóh t'iū lô ti ch'e yaŭ ni t'iū lô ti ch'e kòm toh.
Kóh t'iū lô ti ch'e t'ūng ni t'iū lô ti ch'e yat-yeûng kòm toh.
Kóh t'iū lô ti ch'e yaŭ mŏ ni t'iū lô ti ch'e kòm toh à?
Kóh t'iū lô ti ch'e t'ūng ni t'iū lô ti ch'e yat-yeûng kòm toh.
Kóh t'iū lô ti ch'e yaŭ ni t'iū lô ti ch'e kòm toh.

3. yaŭ mŏ....kòm....?
yaŭ....kòm....
t'ūng....yat-yeûng kòm....
mŏ....kòm....
....peí.....

LESSON 41
ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Ni ch'ut tîn-ying hó-t'ai.

Ni ch'ut tîn-ying m̄-hó-t'ai.

Ni ch'ut tîn-ying hó m̄-hó-t'ai à?

Ni ch'ut tîn-ying hó-t'ai.

Ni ch'ut tîn-ying hó hó-t'ai.

Ni ch'ut tîn-ying m̄-haî hó hó-t'ai.

Kóh ch'ut tîn-ying yîk-to hó-t'ai.

Kóh ch'ut tîn-ying yaŭ ni ch'ut tîn-ying kòm hó-t'ai.

Kóh ch'ut tîn-ying t'ŭng ni ch'ut tîn-ying yat-yeŭng kòm hó-t'ai.

Kóh ch'ut tîn-ying mŏ ni ch'ut tîn-ying kòm hó-t'ai.

Kóh ch'ut tîn-ying peî ni ch'ut tîn-ying hó-t'ai.

Kóh ch'ut tîn-ying peî ni ch'ut tîn-ying hó-t'ai ti.

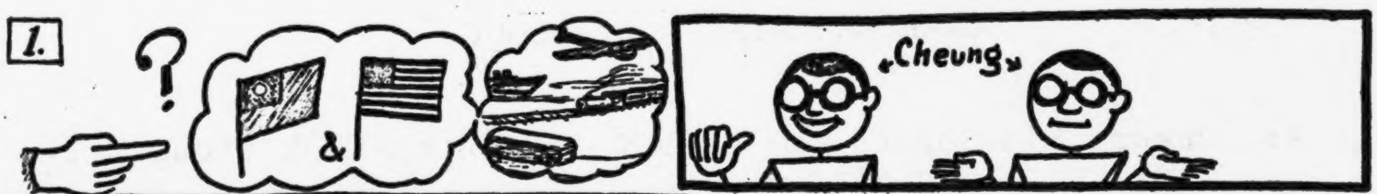
Kóh ch'ut tîn-ying peî ni ch'ut tîn-ying hó-t'ai hó toh.

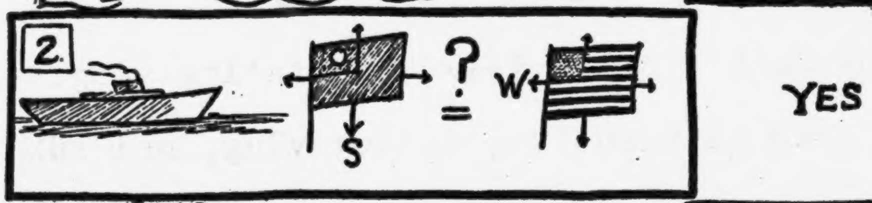
Kóh ch'ut tîn-ying yaŭ mŏ ni ch'ut tîn-ying kòm hó-t'ai à?

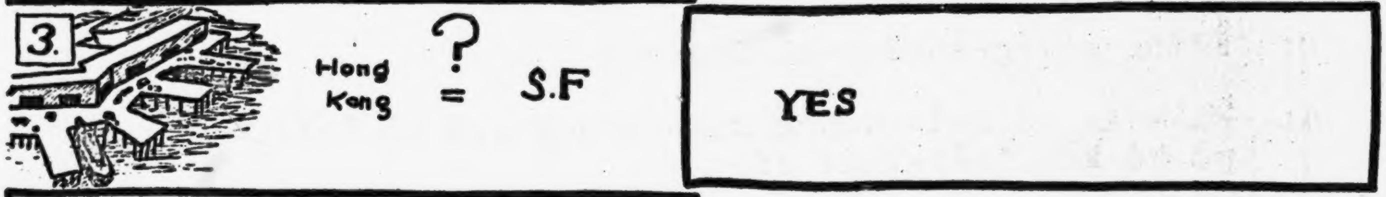
Kóh ch'ut tîn-ying peî ni ch'ut tîn-ying hó-t'ai ti.

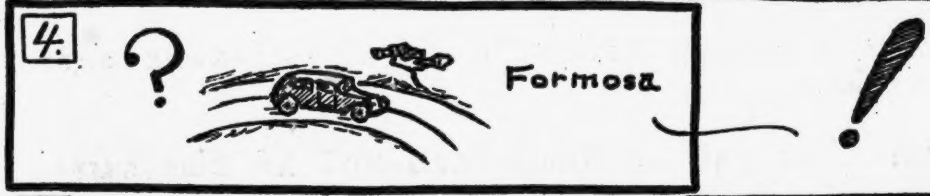
Kóh ch'ut tîn-ying peî ni ch'ut tîn-ying hó-t'ai hó toh.

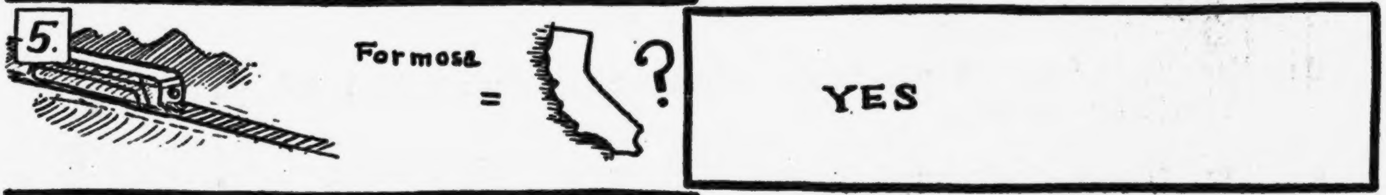
LESSON 41

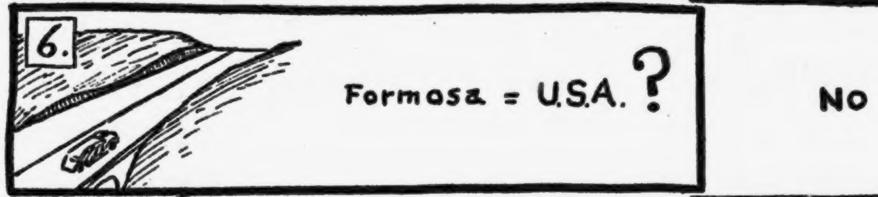

1.
?
&
Cheung

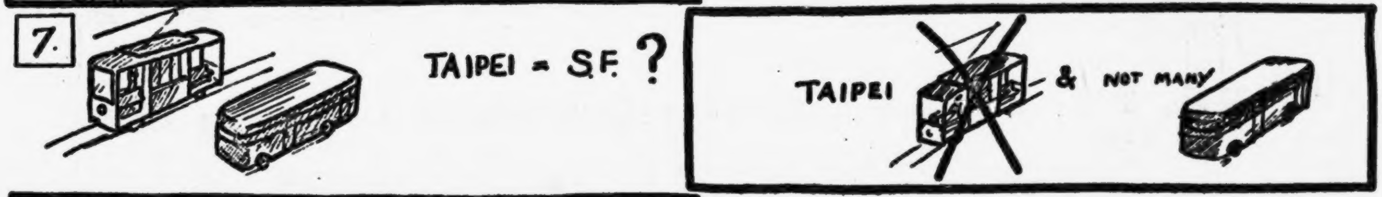

2.
?
=
W
S
YES

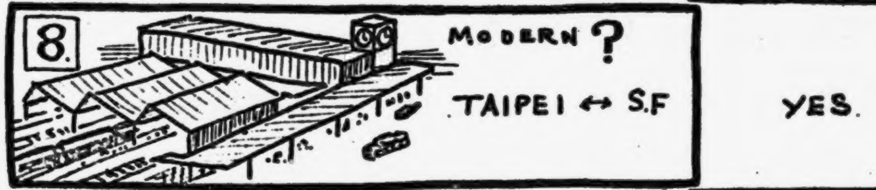

3.
Hong Kong
?
=
S.F
YES

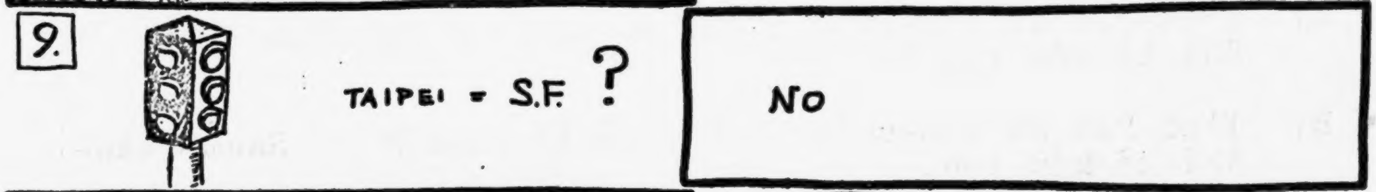

4.
?
Formosa
!

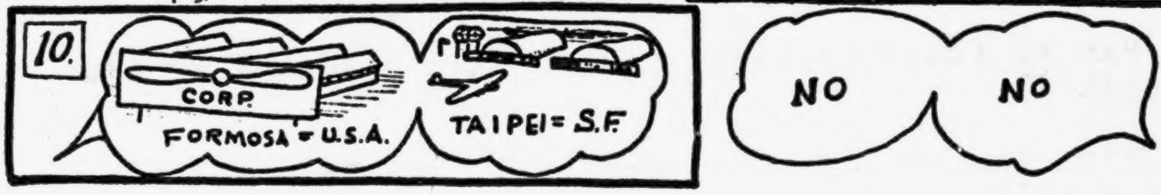

5.
Formosa
=
?
YES


6.
Formosa = U.S.A. ?
NO


7.
TAIPEI = S.F. ?
TAIPEI
&
NOT MANY


8.
MODERN ?
TAIPEI ↔ S.F
YES.


9.
TAIPEI = S.F. ?
NO


10.
CORP.
FORMOSA = U.S.A.
TAIPEI = S.F
NO
NO

LESSON 41

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Cheung Sin-Shaang, neĭ sûk m̄-sûk Chung-Kwòk t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk kè ts'īng-yĭng à?

B: Ngŏh keí sûk Chung-Kwòk t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk kè ts'īng-yĭng.

A: Tuĭ-ue kóh leŭng shuè kè kaau-t'ung ts'īng-yĭng, neĭ sûk mà?

B: P'īng-p'īng-sheūng-sheūng la!

2. A: Wā-Naām kè hoĭ-sheûng kaau-t'ung yaŭ mŏ Meĭ-Kwòk sai-pô kè kòm faàt-taât à?

B: Yaŭ, Wā-Naām kè hoĭ-sheûng kaau-t'ung yaŭ Meĭ-Kwòk sai-pô kè kòm faàt-taât.

3. A: Heung-Kóng kè mă-t'aū yaŭ mŏ Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè kòm san-shik à?

B: Heung-Kóng kè mă-t'aū t'ūng Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè yat-yeûng kòm san-shik.

4. A: T'oĭ-Waan kè lûk-sheûng kaau-t'ung tĭm-yeûng* à?

B: T'oĭ-Waan kè lûk-sheûng kaau-t'ung fei-sheūng-chi pîn-leî.

5. A: T'oĭ-Waan kè t'ìt-lô yaŭ mŏ Meĭ-Kwòk Ka-Shaáng kè kòm toh à?

B: Yaŭ, T'oĭ-Waan kè t'ìt-lô yaŭ Meĭ-Kwòk K[illegible]-Shaáng kè kòm toh.

6. A: T'oĭ-Waan kè kung-lô yaŭ mŏ Meĭ-Kwòk kè kòm hó à?

B: Yat-poon-laĭ-kóng, T'oĭ-Waan kè kung-lô mŏ Meĭ-Kwòk kè kòm hó.

7. A: T'oĭ-Pak kè tîn-ch'e t'ūng pa-sẑ* yaŭ mŏ Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè kòm toh à?

B: T'oĭ-Pak mŏ tîn-ch'e, kóh shuè kè pa-sẑ* mŏ Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè kòm toh.

8. A: T'oĭ-Pak kè fóh-ch'e-tsaâm yaŭ mŏ Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè kòm san-shik à?

B: Yaŭ, T'oĭ-Pak kè fóh-ch'e-tsaâm yaŭ Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè kòm san-shik.

LESSON 41

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

9. A: T'oī-Pak kè hūng-lûk-tang yaŭ mŏ Saam-Faān-Shī kè kòm toh à?

B: Mŏ, T'oī-Pak kè hūng-lûk-tang mŏ Saam-Faān-Shī kè kòm toh.

10. A: T'oī-Waan kè hōng-hung kung-sz yaŭ mŏ Meī-Kwòk kè kòm toh à?

B: Mŏ, T'oī-Waan kè hōng-hung kung-sz mŏ Meī-Kwòk kè kòm toh.

A: T'oī-Pak kè fei-kei-ch'eūng yaŭ mŏ Saam-Faān-Shī kè kòm taaî à?

B: Mŏ, T'oī-Pak kè fei-kei-ch'eūng mŏ Saam-Faān-Shī kè kòm taaî.

LESSON 41

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Mr. Cheung, are you familiar with the conditions in China and in America?

B: I am quite familiar with the conditions in China and in America.

A: Are you familiar with the situation concerning communication in those two places?

B: So so.

2. A: Is the sea communication in South China just as developed as that of the west coast (western part of the United States)?

B: Yes, it is.

3. A: Are the wharfs in Hong Kong just as modern as those in San Francisco?

B: Yes, they are.

4. A: How is the land communication in Formosa?

B: The land communication in Formosa is extremely convenient.

5. A: Are there just as many railroads in Formosa as in California (United States)?

B: Yes, there are just as many.

6. A: Are the highways in Formosa just as good as those in the United States?

B: Generally speaking, the highways in Formosa are not as good as those in the United States.

7. A: Are there just as many streetcars and buses in Taipei as in San Francisco?

B: There aren't any street cars in Taiperi and there are not as many buses as in San Francisco.

8. A: Are the railway stations in Taipei just as modern as those of San Francisco?

B: Yes, they are.

LESSON 41

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

9. A: Are there just as many traffic signals (red and green lights) in Taipei as in San Francisco?

B: No, not so many.

10. A: Are there just as many airline companies in Formosa as in the United States?

B: No, not so many.

A: Is the airport in Taipei as large as that of San Francisco?

B: No, it isn't as large.

LESSON 41

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Cheung Chung-Waì, ngŏh t'aū-sin tò-shuè wán neĭ; wán-chóh hó noî, neĭ huì-chóh pin shuè à?

B: Ngŏh chìng-wâ huì tá tîn-pò; tá-chóh tîn-pò, huì yaū-chìng-kûk keì sùn; keì-chŏh sùn, ngŏh huì i-uên*t'aàm pêng; t'aàm-uēn-pêng, ngŏh faan uk-k'eí t'aú-hă.

2. A: Neĭ huì i-uên* t'aàm pêng kè shì-haû, neĭ tsẑ-keì yat-kòh yān huì, yik-waâk t'ūng t'aaì-t'aaì* yat-ch'aî huì à?

B: Ngŏh tsẑ-keí yat-kòh yān huì, ngŏh mŏ t'ūng ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* huì.

3. A: I-uên*ti pêng-yān tím-yeûng* à?

B: Yaŭ ti pêng-yān yaŭ hó toh chûng pêng; yaŭ-ti pêng-yān pêng-chóh hó noî, m̄-haāng-tak, m̄-shîk-tak.

4. A: Yaŭ ti pêng-yān yaû tím à?

B: Yaŭ ti pêng-yān fàn haí ch'ōng shuè; yaŭ-ti pêng-yān ts'ŏh haí shoh-fà* shuè; yaŭ-ti pêng-yān pâng haí pûng ch'eūng shuè.

5. A: Haí i-uên* shuè; yaŭ mŏ yān neĭ sûk kà?

B: Ngŏh t'ūng Wōng I-Shaang hó sûk.

6. A: Neĭ t'ūng Wōng I-Shaang shik-chóh keí noî à?

B: Ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ shik-chóh hó noî lòh, k'uĭ haî ngŏh kè kaû t'ūng-sẑ, kaû t'ūng-hôk.

7. A: Pin kòh i-shaang foô-tsaàk tá-leĭ neĭ kè p'āng-yaŭ à?

B: Wōng I-Shaang foô-tsaàk tá-leĭ ngŏh kè p'āng-yaŭ, Leĭ Sin-Shaang.

8. A: Neĭ kè p'āng-yaŭ kiù-tsô Leĭ mi-yĕ à?

B: K'uĭ kiù tsô Leĭ-Seì.

9. A: Ôh, ngŏh yîk-to shik k'uĭ; ngŏh mŏ kìn k'uĭ hó noî là; k'uĭ kân-loì tím à?

B: K'uĭ yaŭ yat-kòh hó faaì-lôk kè ka-t'ìng; k'uĭ yaŭ leŭng-kòh tsaí, leŭng-kòh nuĭ*.

LESSON 41

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. A: Ngŏh sheûng ts'z̀ kìn k'uĭ kè shī-haû, k'uĭ chí-haî yaŭ leŭng-kòh tsaí, yat-kòh nuĭ*

B: K'uĭ sheûng kòh uêt toh-chóh yat-kòh nuĭ*.

11. A: K'uĭ kè nuĭ*haí pin shuè ch'ut saì kà?

B: K'uĭ kè nuĭ* haí Saam-Faān-Shĭ yat-kaan i-uên* ch'ut saì.

12. A: K'uĭ kè nuĭ* ch'ut saì kè shī-haû, keí ch'ŭng à?

B: K'uĭ kè nuĭ* ch'ut saì kè shī-haû, yaŭ sēng paàt pông ch'ŭng.

13. A: K'uĭ yaŭ kòm toh tsaí-nuĭ*, k'uĭ kè ts'īn* kaù m̄-kaù yûng à?

B: K'uĭ kè ts'īn* m̄-kaù yûng.

14. A: Neĭ wâ, k'uĭ kè ts'īn* m̄-kaù yûng, i-shaang faì yaû heí-chóh kòm toh, k'uĭ tím paân à?

B: Ngŏh to m̄-chi-tò k'uĭ tím paân.

15. A: K'uĭ yaŭ mŏ t'ūng neĭ chè ts'īn* à? K'uĭ kè p'āng-yaŭ yaŭ mŏ chè ts'īn* peí k'uĭ à?

B: Yaŭ, k'uĭ t'ūng ngŏh chè ts'īn*; ī-ch'é hó toh p'āng-yaŭ chè ts'īn* peí k'uĭ.

LESSON 41

WORD LIST

1.	kaau-t'ung	communication, transportation
2.	Wa-Naam	South China
3.	hoî-sheûng	sea, sea-borne, maritime
4.	sai-pô	western part
5.	faàt-taât	to develop; developed
6.	mă-t'aū	pier, wharf, dock
7.	san-shik	modern, stylish; new model
8.	lûk-sheûng	land
9.	pîn-leî	convenient; convenience
10.	t'ìt-lô	railroad, railway
11.	kung-lô	highway, public road
12.	yat-poon	in general, general
13.	yat-poon-laî-kóng	generally speaking
14.	tîn-ch'e	tramcar, streetcar
15.	pa-sẑ*	bus
16.	chaâm,(fóh-ch'e chaâm)	(railroad station) station, stop
17.	hōng-hung	aviation
18.	hōng-hung kung-sz	aviation corporation, airline company
19.	hūng-lûk tang	red-and green light , traffic signals
20.	fei-kei-ch'eūng, kei-ch'eūng	airport, airfield

LESSON 41

READING MATERIAL

394

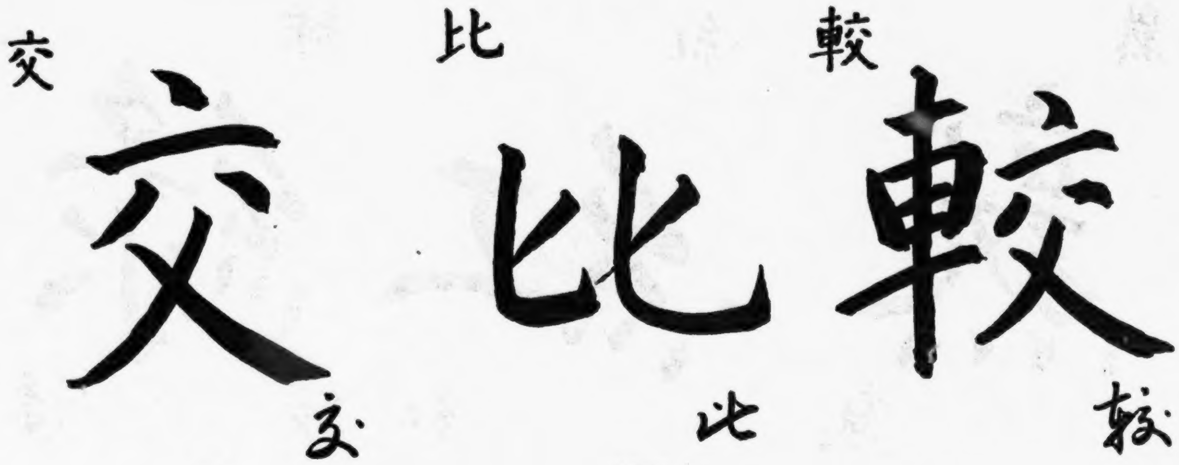
交	kaau: to deliver to; friendship; acquaintance
交代	kaau-tôi: hand ovor to a successor
交易	kaau-yîk: trade
打交	tá kaau: to fight
交通	kaau-t'ung: communication

837

比	péi: to compare with.
比較	péi-kaaù: to compare with; to classify.
比賽	péi-ts'oì: to com ete; a match.

398

較	kaaù: to compare; adjust
比較	péi-kaaù: compare with
較好	kaaù-hó: to adjust better
較快	kaaù-faaì: to increase the speed; faster

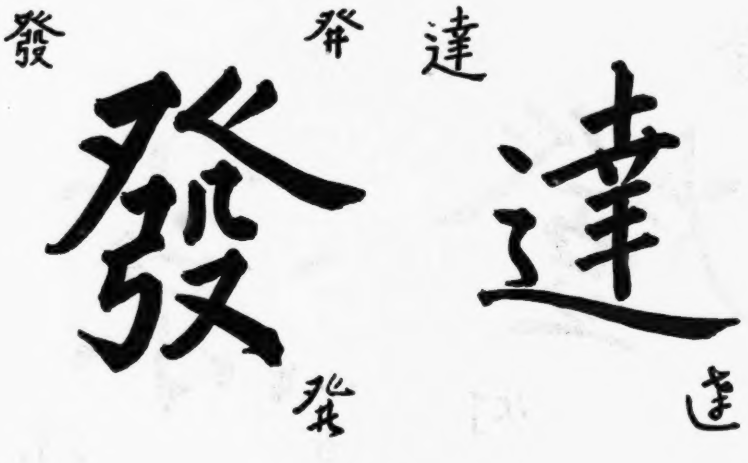


167

發	faàt: to send forth; to start
發生	faàt-shaang: to break out; happen
發明	faàt-mìng: to invent
發現	faàt-în: to discover
發熱	faàt-ît: to have a fever

1097

達	taât: to reach to; to see through; to inform.
達到目的	taât-tò mûk-tik: to attain one's destination or objective.
轉達	chuén taât: to communicate.



LESSON 41

READIMG MATERIAL

1021

熟 shûk: ripe; cooked; prepared; skilled familiar.

熟手 shûk-shaú: skilled in; experienced.

熟識 shûk-shik: well acquainted with.

327

紅 hūng: red; ruddy popular

花紅 fa-hūng: a reward; scarlet color

紅茶 hūng-ch'ā: black tea

紅利 hūng-leî: bonus or dividend

紅木 hūng-mûk: red wood

645

綠 lûk: green.

綠豆 lûk-taû: a species of small green pea.

深綠 sham lûk: deep green.

墨綠 mâk lûk: dark green.

熟 紅 綠

熟 紅 綠

熟 红 綠 绿

1115

燈 tang: lamp; lantern; light.

燈籠 tang-lūng: paper lantern.

安全燈 on-ts'ūen tang: safety lamp.

503

涼 leūng: cool; fresh; cold; cooling; coldly.

涼爽 leūng-shóng: airy.

乘涼 shīng leūng: to take an airing.

天氣涼 t'in-heî leūng: weather is cool.

燈 灯 涼

燈 涼

灯 凉 凉

LESSON 41

READING MATERIAL

現在夜晚七點 là. 陳英同黃小姐出街 là 佢地覺得而家二-Faû 天氣冇頭先 kòm 熱,涼 chóh 啲,真係好 là.

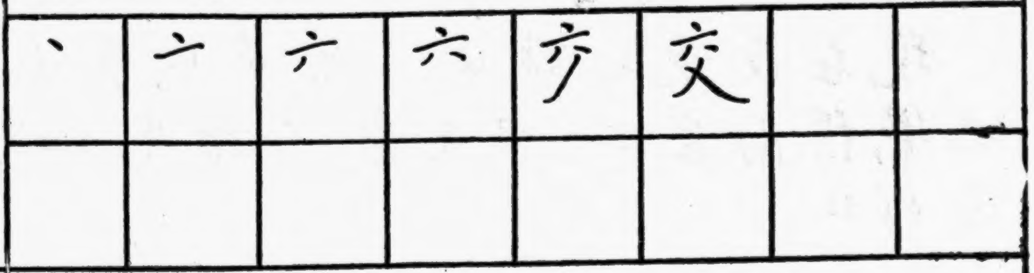
佢地對於二-Faû 嘅情形唔係幾熟嘅,但係佢地知道 T'ōng-人-Faû 離酒店冇幾遠,所以佢地行路去,唔 shaí 自己嘅車去. 喺街處,佢地見倒 ti 行人出出入入,ti 車來來去去;ti 交通紅綠燈,街燈,紅紅綠綠,真係好睇. 一-poon 黎講,呢處嘅交通比較第二處嘅發達好多. 佢地行吓行吓,冇幾耐 che,就行 tò T'ōng-人-Faû là. 佢地就入去一間 T'ōng-人 ts'aan-室食 T'ōng-ts'aan. 黃小姐話,呢間 ts'aan-室嘅 T'ōng-ts'aan 唔錯. 食完 ts'aan 之後,睇吓個 piu,已經八點 là. 佢地即刻離開 ts'aan-室,去睇中國電影. 呢 ch'ut 電影令佢地想翻以前香港嘅情形.

LESSON 41

WRITING MATERIAL

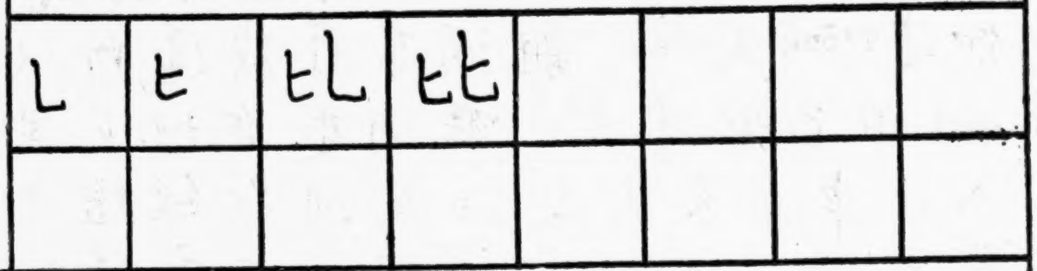
交

Character Number 394 **Radical Number** 8
Stroke Number 6 亠



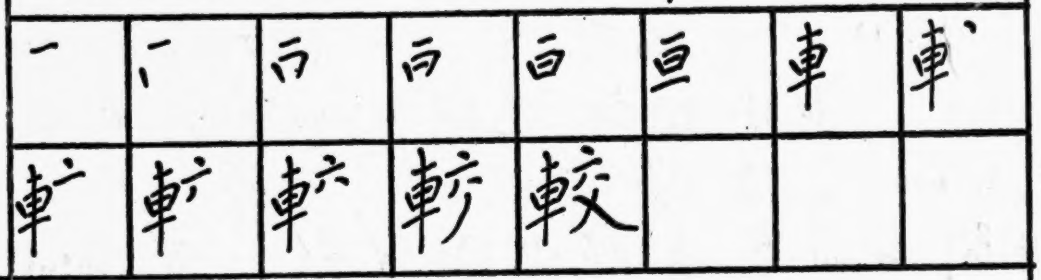
比

Character Number 837 **Radical Number** 81
Stroke Number 4 比



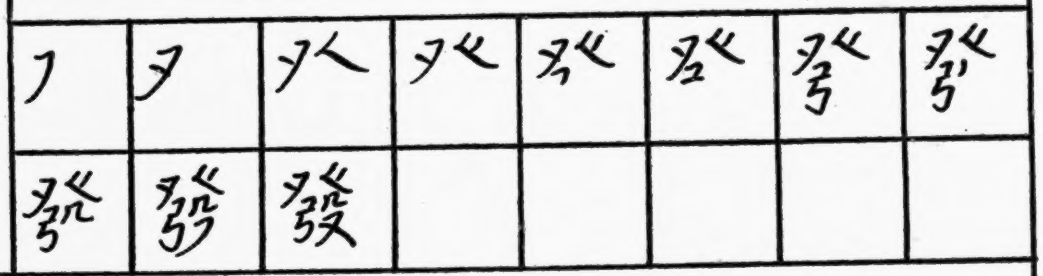
較

Character Number 398 **Radical Number** 159
Stroke Number 13 車



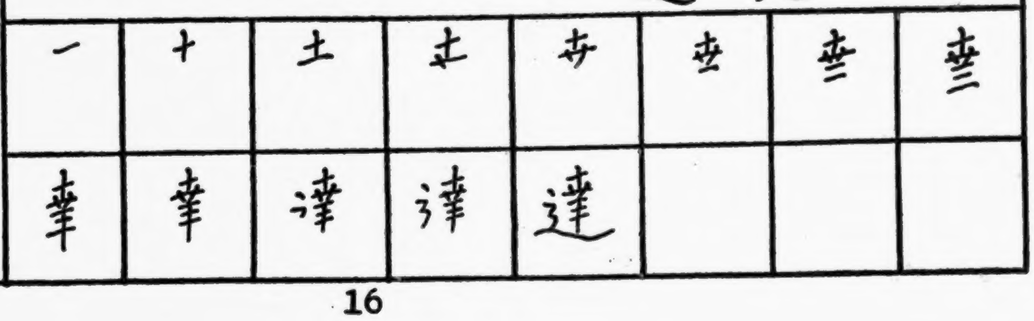
發

Character Number 167 **Radical Number** 105
Stroke Number 11 癶



達

Character Number 1097 **Radical Number** 162
Stroke Number 13 辶，辵



LESSON 42

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. tak

tak m̄-tak à?

tak

m̄-tak

tak m̄-tak à?

Ngŏh kóm-yeûng* tsô, tak m̄-tak à?

Tak, neĭ kóm-yeûng* tsô, tak.

M̄-tak, neĭ kóm-yeûng* tsô, m̄-tak.

Tak, neĭ kóm-yeûng* sé, tak.

M̄-tak, neĭ kóm-yeûng* sé, m̄-tak.

Ngŏh kóm-yeûng* sé, tak m̄-tak à?

Tak, neĭ kóm-yeûng* sé, tak.

M̄-tak, neĭ kóm-yeûng* sé m̄-tak.

2. tak

..m̄...tak?

tak

t'aí-tak

m̄-t'aí-tak

Neĭ m̄-t'aí-tak.

Neĭ t'aí-tak.

Ngŏh t'aí m̄-t'aí-tak à?

Neĭ t'aí-tak.

Neĭ m̄-t'aí-tak.

LESSON 42
ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

3. tak

tak meî à

tak

meî tak

tak meî à?

tak

meî tak

Ngŏh tak là!

Ngŏh meî tak.

Neĭ tak meî à?

Ngŏh tak là!

Ngŏh meî tak.

Ngŏh chûng meî tak.

Neĭ chûng iù keí noî chì tak à?

Ngŏh chûng iù nğ fan-chung chì tak.

Ngŏh tak.

Ngŏh huì-tak.

Ngŏh meî huì-tak.

Neĭ huì-tak meî à?

Ngŏh huì-tak là!

Ngŏh meî huì-tak.

Ngŏh chûng meî huì-tak.

Ngŏh chûng iù yat-chân-kaan chì huì-tak.

Neĭ chûng iù keí noî chì huì-tak à?

Ngŏh chûng iù yat-chân-kaan chì huì-tak.

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

4. tak

...tak...?

yâp laî

yâp-tak laî

Neĭ yâp-tak laî.

Neĭ m̄-yâp-tak laî.

Ngŏh yâp m̄-yâp-tak laî à?

Neĭ yâp-tak laî.

Neĭ m̄-yâp-tak laî.

Neĭ meî yâp-tak laî.

Neĭ chûng meî yâp-tak laî.

Ngŏh yâp-tak laî meî à?

Neĭ meî yâp-tak laî.

Neĭ chûng meî yâp-tak laî.

Neĭ chûng iù keí fan-chung chì yâp-tak laî.

Ngŏh chûng iù keí noî chì yâp-tak laî à?

Neĭ chûng iù keí fan-chung chì yâp-tak laî.

Neĭ ch'ut-tak huì. (ch'ut huì)

Neĭ m̄-ch'ut-tak huì.

Ngŏh ch'ut m̄-ch'ut-tak huì à?

Neĭ yâp-tak huì. (yâp huì)

Neĭ m̄-yâp-tak huì.

Neĭ ch'ut-tak laî. (ch'ut laî)

Neĭ m̄-ch'ut-tak laî.

LESSON 42
ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

5. tak

...tak...

m̀..tak...

m̀..tak...?

heí shan

heí-tak shan

K'uĭ heí-tak shan.

K'uĭ m̀-heí-tak shan.

K'uĭ heí m̀-heí-tak shan à?

K'uĭ heí-tak shan.

K'uĭ m̀-heí-tak shan.

K'uĭ kam-chiu-tsó m̀-heí-tak shan.

K'uĭ kam-chiu-tsó heí-tak shan må?

K'uĭ kam-chiu-tsó heí-tak shan.

K'uĭ kam-chiu-tsó m̀-heí-tak shan.

K'uĭ shîk-tak faân. (shîk faân)

K'uĭ m̀-shîk-tak faân.

K'uĭ shîk m̀-shîk-tak faân à?

K'uĭ shîk tak faân.

K'uĭ kam-yât m̀-shîk-tak faân.

K'uĭ faan-tak kung (faan kung)

K'uĭ m̀-faan-tak kung.

K'uĭ kam-yât m̀-faan-tak kung.

K'uĭ kam-yât m̀-faan-tak hôk. (faan hôk)

K'uĭ kam-yât m̀-sheŭng-tak t'ōng. (sheŭng t'ōng)

LESSON 42

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

K'uĭ kam-yât m̄-huì-tak kaai. (huì kaai)

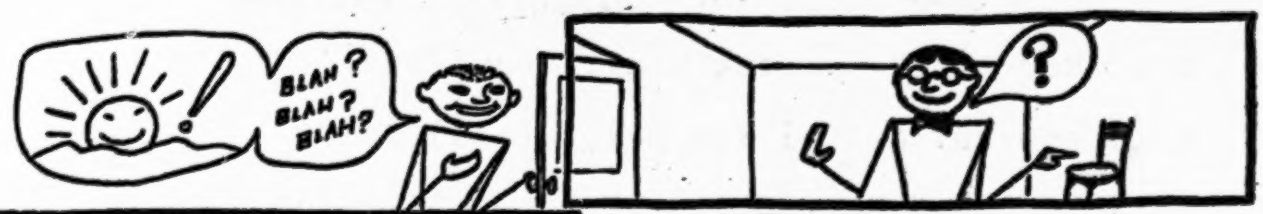
K'uĭ kam-yât m̄-t'aí-tak heì. (t'aí heì)

K'uĭ tsôk-maăn m̄-fàn-tak kaaù. (fàn kaaù)

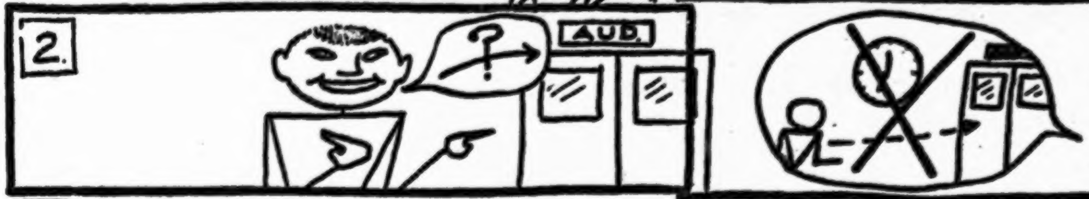
K'uĭ kam-nîn m̄-pat-tak îp. (pat îp)

LESSON 42

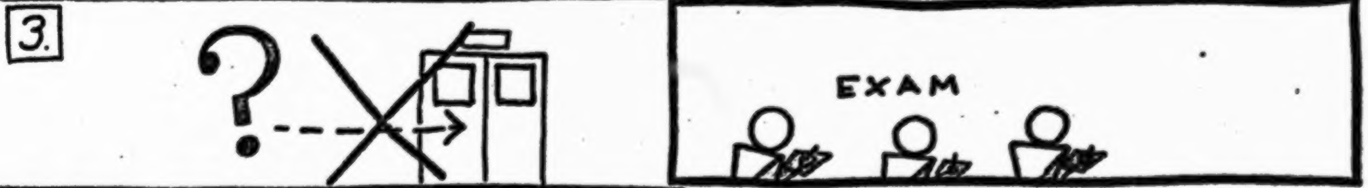
1.


BLAH? BLAH? BLAH?
?

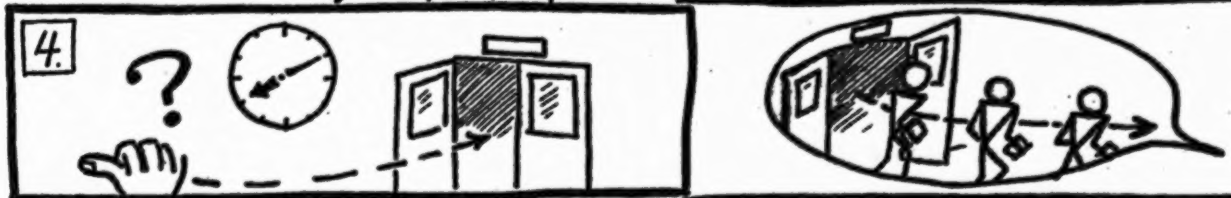
2.



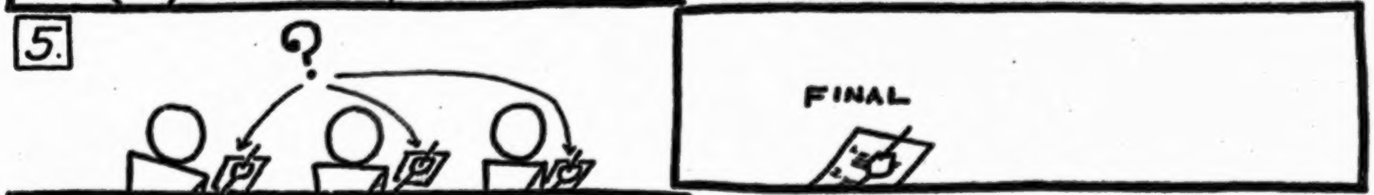
3.



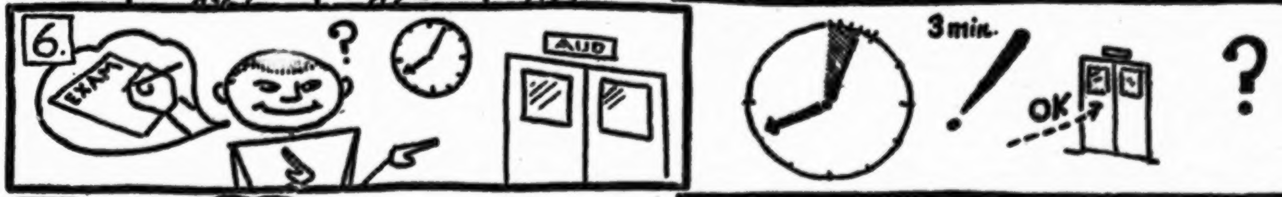
4.



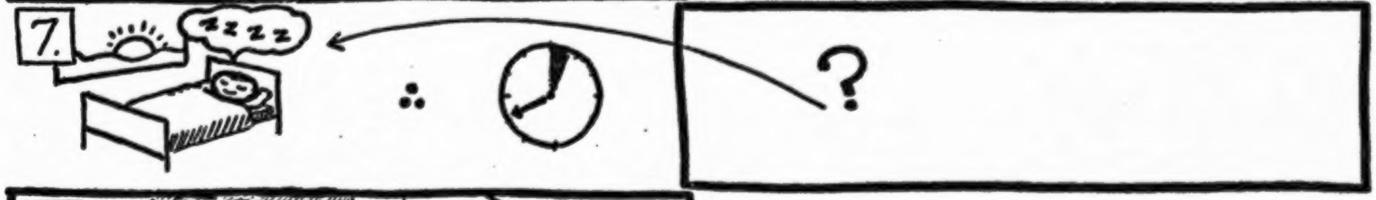
5.



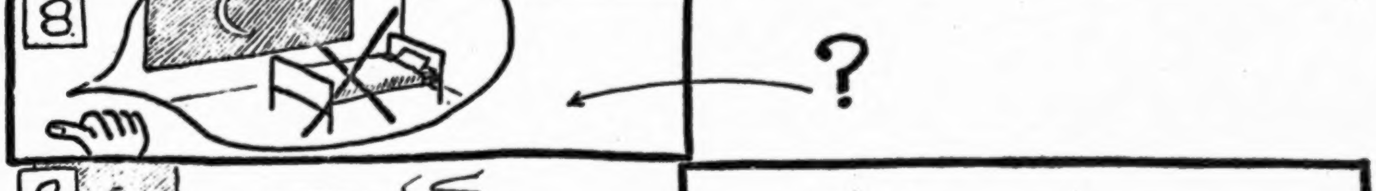
6.


EXAM
?
AUD
3 min.
!
OK
?

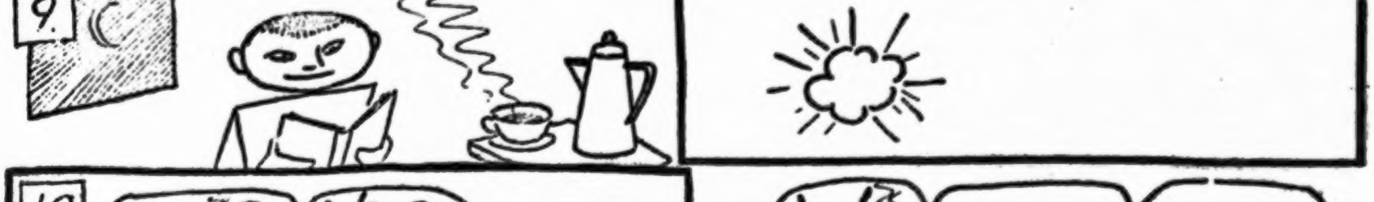
7.



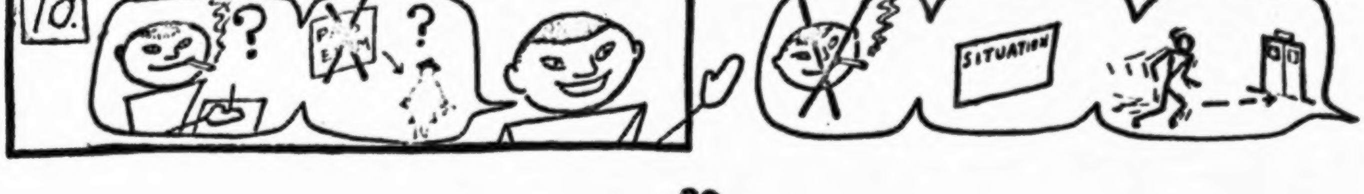
8.



9.



10.



LESSON 42

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān; ts'íng mân neĭ, ngŏh yâp m̄-yâp-tak laî ni kòh sé-tsẑ-laū à?

   B: Yâp laî la, ts'íng ts'ŏh, yaŭ mat kwaì-kòn à?

   A: Ngŏh chí-haî seúng mân neĭ keí kòh mân-t'aî, tak mà?

   B: Neĭ seúng mân mi-yĕ ne?

2. A: Ngŏh seúng yâp huì kóh kaan taaî laĭ-t'ōng, ngŏh yâp m̄-yâp-tak huì à?

   B: Tuì-m̄-chuê, neĭ î-ka m̄-yâp-tak huì.

3. A: Tím-kaaí ngŏh î-ka m̄-yâp-tak huì à?

   B: Yan-waî î-ka yaŭ yān haí luĭ-pîn haaú-kán shì, shóh-ĭ neĭ chaâm-shî m̄-yâp-tak huì.

4. A: Keí shî ngŏh chì yâp-tak huì à?

   B: Neĭ iù táng k'uĭ-teî haaú-uēn shì chì yâp-tak huì.

5. A: K'uĭ-teî î-ka haaú-kán mi-yĕ shì à?

   B: K'uĭ-teî î-ka haaú-kán taaî-haaú.

6. A: Ngŏh ch'î tò; ngŏh yîk-to iù ch'aam-ka taaî-haaú, î-ka ngŏh yâp-tak huì mà?

   B: Neĭ ch'î-chóh saam fan-chung, neĭ chûng yâp-tak huì. Neĭ tím-kaaí kòm ch'î chì laí kà?

7. A: Ngŏh kam-chiu-tsó m̄-heí-tak shan, shóh-ĭ laî-ch'î-chóh.

   B: Tím-kaaí neĭ kam-chiu-tsó m̄-heí-tak shan à?

8. A: Yan-waî tsôk-maăn ngŏh m̄-fàn-tak.

   B: Tím-kaaí tsôk-maăn neĭ m̄-fàn-tak à?

9. A: Ngŏh tsôk-maăn iù tsún-peî taaî-haaú, yám-chóh hó toh kà-fe, shóh-ĭ m̄-fàn-tak.

   B: Ôh, uēn-loî haî kóm.

LESSON 42

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: Haaú-kán shì kè shī-haû, ngŏh-teî shîk-tak in-tsaí mà?

B: Haaú-kán-shì kè shī-haû, neĭ-teî m̄-shîk-tak in-tsaì.

A: Uē-kwóh taaî-haaú m̄-k'âp-kaàk, ngŏh pat m̄-pat-tak îp à?

B: Iù t'aí ts'îng-yîng k'uèt-tîng, waâk-ché pat-tak îp, waâk-ché m̄-pat-tak îp.

B: Neĭ faaì-ti yâp huì la, uē-kwóh m̄-haî, neĭ tsaû m̄-yâp-tak huì là!

A: Mā-faān-saaì, mā-faān-saaì.

LESSON 42

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Good morning, may I ask if I can come in to this office?

B: Come in. Please be seated. What can I do for you?

A: I would like to ask you a few questions, is it all right?

B: What do you wish to ask?

2. A: I wish to go in to the auditorium. May I?

B: I'm sorry, you can't.

3. A: Why not?

B: Because there are people in there taking an examination, therefore you can't go in for the time being.

4. A: When will it be before I can go in?

B: You'll have to wait until they finish their examinations before you can go in.

5. A: What kind of test are they taking?

B: They are taking their final examination.

6. A: I am late. I also have to take this final examination. May I go in now?

B: You are 3 minutes late. You can still go in. Why are you late?

7. A: I couldn't get up this morning, and therefore I am late.

B: Why couldn't you get up this morning?

8. A: Because I couldn't sleep last night.

B: Why couldn't you sleep last night?

9. A: I had to prepare for the final examination last night. I drank plenty of coffee and therefore I couldn't sleep.

B: Oh, I see. So that was the reason.

10. A: Can we smoke in the examination?

B: No, you can't.

LESSON 42

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: If I fail in the final examination, can I graduate?

B: It depends on the circumstances. Perhaps you can, perhaps you can't.

B: You'd better hurry in. If not, you may not be permitted to go in.

A: Thank you.

LESSON 42

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Cheung Chung-Waì, ngŏh-teî chûng meî kóng-uēn Leĭ Sin-Shaang kè yĕ.

B: Neĭ chûng seúng mân ti mi-yĕ ne?

2. A: T'aū-sin ngŏh-teî kóng-tò pin shuè à?

B: T'aū-sin ngŏh-teî kóng-tò Leĭ Sin-Shaang t'ūng ngŏh chè ts'īn*.

3. A: K'uĭ t'ūng neĭ chè ts'īn*, neĭ yaŭ mŏ chè peí k'uĭ à?

B: Yaŭ, ngŏh chè-yat-paàk man peí k'uĭ.

4. A: Kôm-yeûng*, yat-paàk man kaù m̄-kaù à?

B: Ngŏh koó, yat-paàk man m̄-haî keí kaù.

5. A: K'uĭ yaŭ mŏ tsaang i-uên* kè ts'īn* à?

B: Yaŭ, k'uĭ chûng tsaang i-uên* yat-paàk-î-shâp man kòm sheûng-hâ*.

6. A: Ni ts'ż yâp i-uên*, k'uĭ chúng-kûng yûng-chóh keí-toh ts'īn* à?

B: Ni ts'ż yâp i-uên*, k'uĭ chúng-kûng yûng-chóh saam seî paàk man chóh-yaû*.

7, A: Ue-kwóh haî kóm, k'uĭ kè ts'īng-yīng m̄-haî keí hó là!

B: Haî là, k'uĭ kè ts'īng-yīng hó m̄-hó.

8. A: Kwaan-ue k'uĭ kè pêng, Wong I-Shaang kè ì-kìn tím à?

B: Wong I-Shaang wâ, k'uĭ kè pêng m̄-haî hó kán-iù, Wōng I-Shaang kiù ngŏh fòng-sam.

9. A: K'uĭ kè pêng haî m̄-haî hó p'ó-t'ung kà?

B: Haî, k'uĭ kè pêng haî hó p'ó-t'ung kè, neĭ fòng-sam la!

10. A: Kan-kuì neĭ kè î-kìn, neĭ ĭ-waĭ k'uĭ iù keí noî, chî hóh-ĭ faan uk-k'eí à?

B: Ngŏh ĭ-waĭ m̄-shaí keí noî, waâk-ché haí yat-kòh laĭ-paaî chi-noî, hóh-ĭ faan uk-k'eí.

LESSON 42

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Neĭ kóm-yeŭng* kóng; tsik haî wâ, k'uĭ tsaû-laî pêng-hó, haî m̄-haî à?

B: Wâ-m-tîng; ngŏh koó, k'uĭ tsaû-laî hóh-ĭ pêng-hó là, chì toh m̄-kwòh yat-kòh laĭ-paaî.

12. A: K'uĭ ch'ut-chóh i-uên* chi-haû, iù keî noî, chì-hóh-ĭ faan-kung à?

B: Ngŏh m̄-chi-tò, iù t'aî ts'ìng-yìng; ngŏh iù mân i-shaang, chì-chi-tò.

13. A: Neĭ hó-ts'z̆ kóng-kwòh, k'uĭ chí-haî t'aú yat leŭng yât, tsaû hóh-ĭ faan-kung, haî mà?

B: M̄-haî, ngŏh mŏ kóng-kwòh; ngŏh chî haî wâ, k'uĭ tsaû laî hóh-ĭ faan-kung.

14. A; Tuì-m-chuê, ngŏh t'eng ch'òh-chóh.

B: M̄-kán-iù, waâk-ché ngŏh kóng ch'òh-chóh, waâk-ché neĭ m-mìng-paâk ngŏh kè shuèt-wâ.

15. A: Leĭ Sin-Shaang ch'ut-chóh i-uên* chi-haû, m-kɔi neĭ tá tîn-wâ* peí ngŏh la, hó mâ?

B: Hó la, k'uĭ ch'ut chóh i-uên*chi-haû, ngŏh yat-tìng tá tîn-wâ* peí neĭ.

A: M̄-koi m̄-koi; tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn!

B: M̄-shaî m̄-koi; tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn!

LESSON 42

WORD LIST

1.	yâp-tak-laî	can come in, to be able to come in
2.	sé-tsẑ-laū	office
3.	yâp-huì	to enter, to go into
4.	yâp-tak-huì	can go in, can enter
5.	luĭ-pîn	inside, in
6.	haaú	to examine, test
7.	shì	examination, trial; to try
8.	haaú shì	examination, test; to take a test
9.	tsaâm-shī	temporary; temporarily, for the time being
10.	taaî-haaú	final examination
11.	ch'ī-tò	tardy, late, to arrive late
12.	kòm ch'ī chì laî	to come so late
13.	m̄-heí-tak shan	cannot get up, unable to get up
14.	m̄-fàn-tak	can't sleep, unable to sleep
15.	chún-peî	to prepare, be prepared, be ready
16.	in-tsaí	cigarette
17.	k'âp-kaàk	to qualify, pass (an examination)
18.	faaì-ti	to hurry, hurry up
19.	uē-kwóh m̄-haî	if not, otherwise

LESSON 42

READING MATERIAL

1450

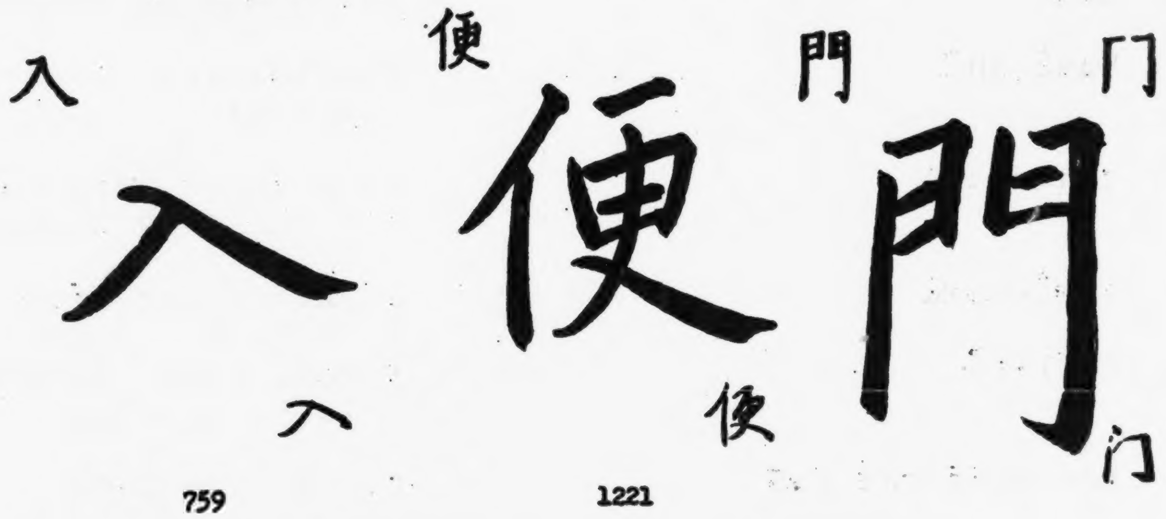
入	yâp: to enter; to put into; to receive.
入門	yâp-moōn: to enter a door; to make a beginning.
入手	yâp-shaú: at the outset; elementary.
入場劵	yâp-ch'eūng-Kuèn: admission ticket.

853

便	pîn: convenient; handy; a side.
不便	pat pîn: inconvenient; unhandy.
便利	pîn-leî: serviceable: convenient

718

門	moōn: door; entrance.
門口	moōn-haú: entrance; doorway.
大門	taaî moōn: main entrance.
門牌	moōn-p'aaī: house number.
專門	chuen-moōn: to specialize.

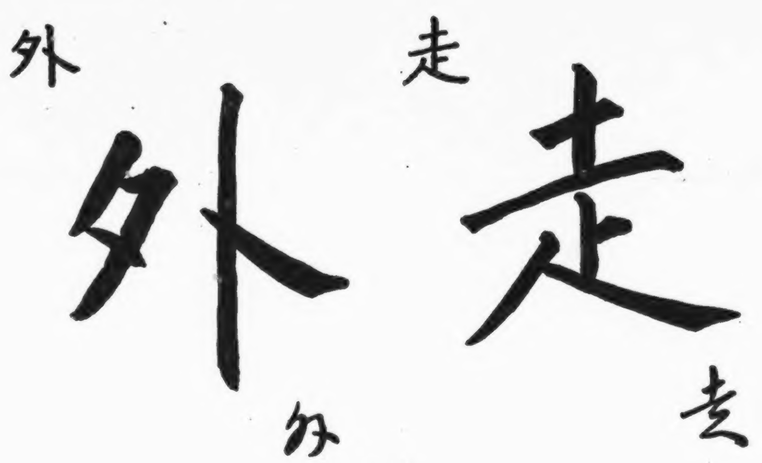


759

外	ngoî: outside; foreign.
外面	ngoî mîn: the outside of; externally.
外國	ngoî kwôk: foreign country.
外交	ngoî-kaau: diplomatic relations; foreign intercourse.
外界	ngoî-kaaî: those outside of one's profession.

1221

走	tsaú: to run; to go hurriedly; running.
走狗	tsaú-kaú: a running dog for another people.(as pointing at a person.
走私	tsaú-ss: to smuggle.



LESSON 42

READING MATERIAL

483

嗰 kóh: that.

嗰個 kóh kòh: that one.

嗰個人 kóh kòh yǎn: that person.

639

裏 luǐ: inside; within.

裏頭 luǐ-t'aū: the inside; within.

家裏 ka luǐ: at home; home.

1133

啲 ti: some; few; a little; comparative.

有啲 yaǔ ti: there are some; there is a little.

呢啲 ni ti: these.

快啲 faaì ti: quicker; faster.

嗰　吤　裏　啲

嗰　裏　啲

咱　個　嗰　裡　裏　的　吻

31

陣 chân (chân*): Cl. for gusts, blast showers. period of time, battle array.

一陣間 yat-chân-kaan: a moment

一陣雨 yat-chân-uǒ: a shower

陣勢 chân-shaì: troop arrangement

143

準 chún: accurate; standard; exact

準備 chún-peî: to get ready

準確 chún-k'ók: accurate; correct

陣　準

陣　準

阵　准　华

LESSON 42

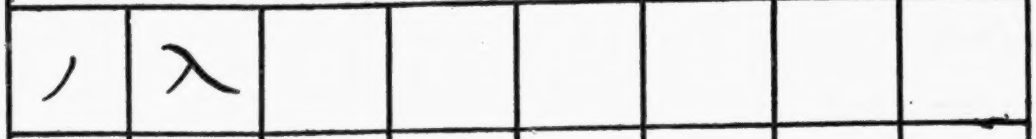
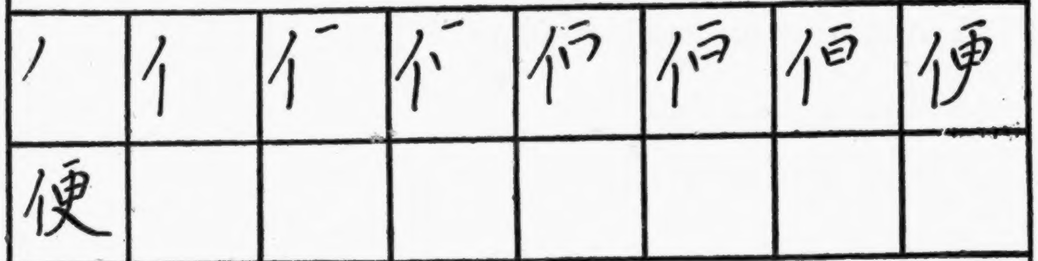
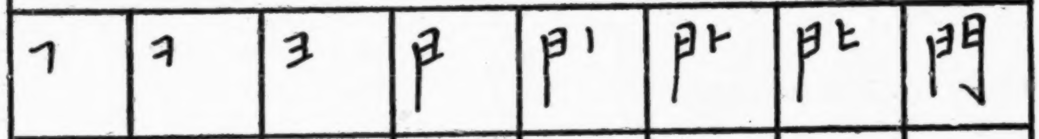
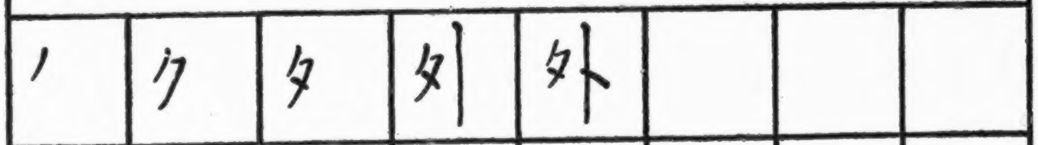
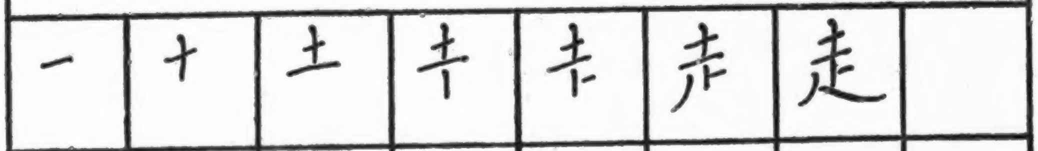
READING MATERIAL

陳英同黃小姐睇電影. 呢 ch'ut 戲唔錯. 有時會令人快樂;有時會令人好唔歡喜.

睇完戲嘅時候,已經十一點半 là. 佢地而家想去頭先嗰間 ts'aan-室處食 siu-夜. 但係嗰間 ts'aan-室嘅生意太好 là. 佢地唔入得去. 佢地睇見喺 ts'aan-室裏便有好多人,喺門外便亦都有好多人 k'eĭ 喺處等. 有啲人 k'eĭ 得耐 là, siu-夜都唔想食,就走 chóh 去. 有啲人好似一定要入去食 chóh siu-夜至得.

陳英同黃小姐好食得,亦都好 fàn 得; 但係,而家想入去 ts'aan-室又唔入得,嗰陣時又好夜 là. 食唔食都唔緊要 la; 佢地話,不如早啲翻去 fàn; 聽朝,早啲起身,準備去三-Faān-市 pá la.

WRITING MATERIAL

入	Character Number 1450	Stroke Number 2	Radical Number 11	入	
便	Character Number 853	Stroke Number 9	Radical Number 9	人，亻	
門	Character Number 718	Stroke Number 8	Radical Number 169	門	
外	Character Number 759	Stroke Number 5	Radical Number 36	夕	
走	Character Number 1221	Stroke Number 7	Radical Number 156	走	

LESSON 43

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. tak

a. haāng

haāng faaì

haāng-tak faaì

K'uĭ haāng-tak faaì.

K'uĭ haāng-tak m̀-faaì.

K'uĭ haāng-tak faaì m̀-faaì à?

K'uĭ haāng-tak faaì.

K'uĭ haāng-tak m̀-faaì.

K'uĭ î-ka haāng-tak m̀-faaì.

shîk toh

shîk-tak toh

K'uĭ shîk-tak toh.

K'uĭ shîk-tak m̀-toh.

K'uĭ shîk-tak toh m̀-toh à?

K'uĭ shîk-tak toh.

K'uĭ shîk-tak m̀-toh.

K'uĭ k'ing-tak m̀-noî.

K'uĭ k'ing-tak noî m̀-noî à?

K'uĭ k'ing-tak noî.

K'uĭ heí-tak tsó.

K'uĭ heí-tak m̀-tsó.

K'uĭ kam-yât heí-tak m̀-tsó.

K'uĭ kam-yât heí-tak tsó m̀-tsó à?

K'uĭ kam-yât heí-tak tsó.

K'uĭ kam-yât heí-tak m̀-tsó.

LESSON 43
ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

b. K'uĭ haāng-tak faaì.

K'uĭ m̄-haāng-tak faaì.

K'uĭ haāng m̄-haāng-tak faaì à?

K'uĭ haāng-tak faaì.

K'uĭ m̄-haāng-tak faaì.

K'uĭ shîk-tak toh.

K'uĭ m̄-shîk-tak toh.

K'uĭ shîk m̄-shîk-tak toh à?

K'uĭ shîk-tak toh.

K'uĭ m̄-shîk-tak toh.

K'uĭ m̄-k'ing-tak noî.

c. K'uĭ laî

K'uĭ laî-tak ch'î.

K'uĭ laî-tak hó ch'î.

K'uĭ laî-tak m̄-haî hó ch'î.

K'uĭ laî-tak ch'î m̄-ch'î à?

K'uĭ laî-tak hó ch'î.

K'uĭ laî-tak m̄-haî hó ch'î.

K'ui haāng-tak maân.

K'uĭ haāng-tak m̄-maân.

K'uĭ kóng-tak hó maân.

K'uĭ kóng-tak hó taaî-sheng.

K'uĭ kóng-tak m̄-haî hó taaî-sheng.

K'uĭ kóng-tak hó sḥaì-sheng.

K'ui pêng-tak hó kán-iù.

2. ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

a. K'uĭ haāng faaì.

K'uĭ haāng-tak faaì.

K'uĭ haāng lô haāng-tak faaì.

K'uĭ haāng lô haāng-tak faaì m̀-faaì à?

K'uĭ haāng lô haāng-tak faaì.

K'uĭ haāng lô haāng-tak m̀-faaì.

K'uĭ shîk-tak m̀-toh.

K'uĭ shîk faân shîk-tak m̀-toh.

K'uĭ shîk faân shîk-tak toh m̀-toh à?

K'uĭ shîk-faân shîk-tak m̀-toh.

K'uĭ k'ing-tak m̀-noî.

K'uĭ k'ing-kaì* k'ing-tak m̀-noî.

K'uĭ î-ka k'ing-kaì* k'ing-tak m̀-noî.

K'uĭ kam-chiu-tsó heí-tak m̀-tsó.

K'uĭ kam-chiu-tsó heí shan heí-tak m̀-tsó.

K'uĭ kóng tak maân.

K'uĭ kóng tak m̀-maân..

K'uĭ kóng shuèt-wâ kóng-tak m̀-maân.

K'uĭ kóng shuèt-wâ kóng-tak m̀-taaî-sheng.

b. K'uĭ haāng-tak faaì.

K'uĭ haāng lô haāng-tak faaì.

K'uĭ haāng lô haāng m̀-haāng-tak faaì à?

K'uĭ haāng lô haāng-tak faaì.

K'uĭ haāng lô m̀-haāng-tak faaì.

K'uĭ shîk-tak toh.

LESSON 43

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

K'uĭ shîk faân shîk-tak toh.

K'uĭ shîk faân m̄-shîk-tak toh.

K'uĭ kam-chiu-tsó heí shan m̄-heí-tak tsó.

K'uĭ kóng shuèt-wâ m̄-kóng-tak taaî-sheng.

3. K'uĭ tsùn-pô.

K'uĭ tsùn-pô-tak faaì.

K'uĭ tsùn-pô-tak m̄-faaì.

K'uĭ tsùn-pô-tak faaì m̄-faaì à?

K'uĭ tsùn-pô-tak m̄-faaì.

4. K'uĭ ko-tak hó faaì.

K'uĭ Ko-chóh hó toh.

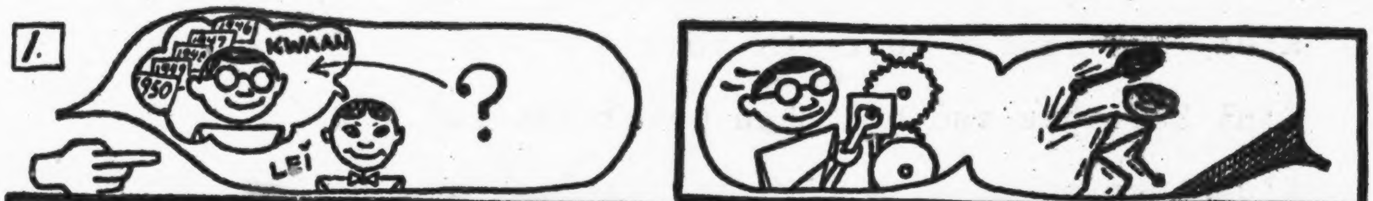
K'uĭ kè pêng hó-tak hó faaì.

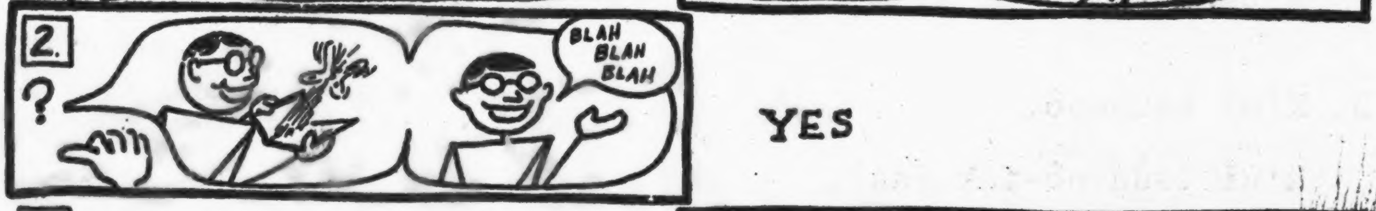
K'uĭ kè pêng hó-chóh hó toh.

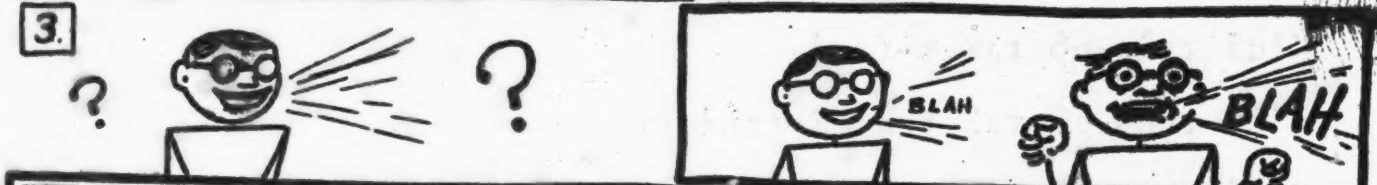
K'uĭ kè Kwóng-Tung Wâ* tsùn-pô-tak hó faaì.

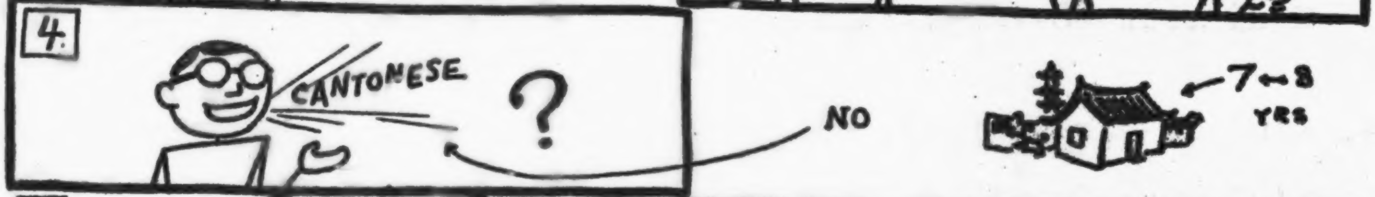
K'uĭ kè Kwóng-Tung Wâ* tsùn-pô-chóh hó toh.

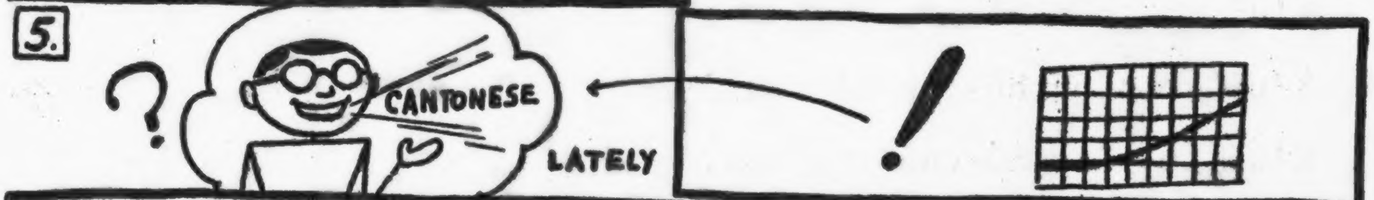
LESSON 43


1.
1946
1947
1948
1949
1950
KWAAN
LEI
?

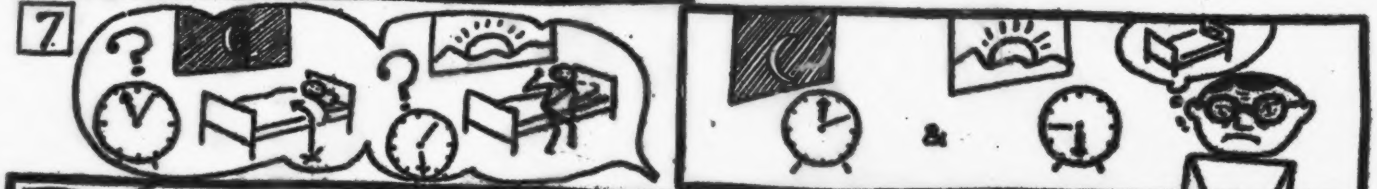

2.
?
BLAH
BLAH
BLAH
YES

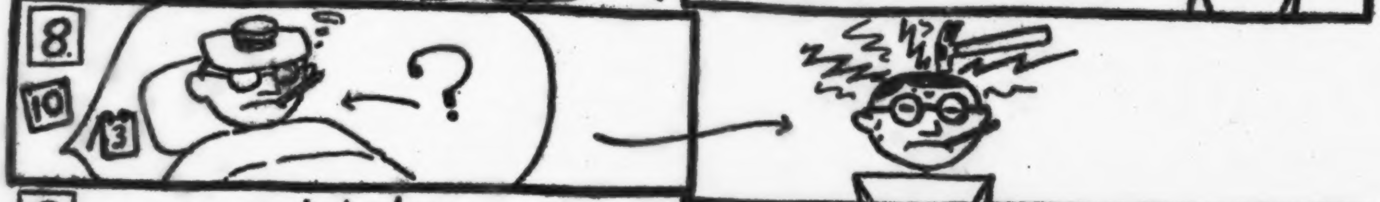

3.
?
?
BLAH
BLAH

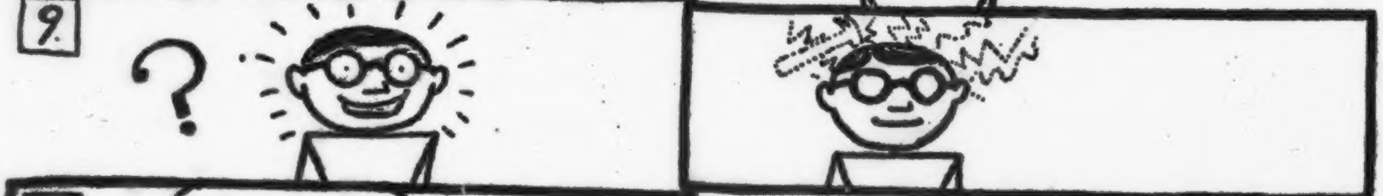

4.
CANTONESE
?
NO
7↔8
YRS

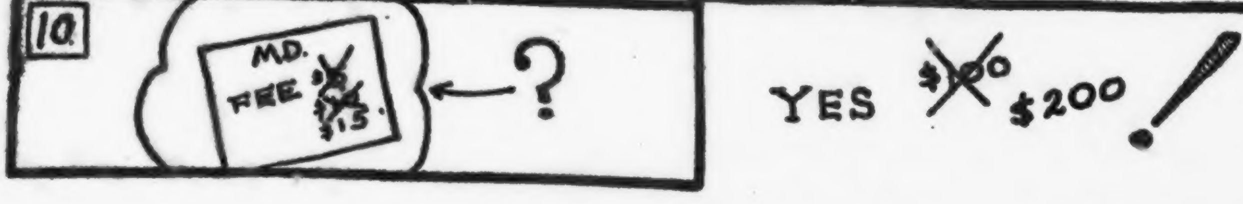

5.
?
CANTONESE
LATELY
!

6.
?
YES


7
?
?
&


8.
10
3
?


9.
?


10.
MD.
FEE
$15
?
YES
$100
$200
!

LESSON 43

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Lŏ Leĭ, neĭ t'ūng Lŏ Kwaan yîng-shik-chóh kòm noî. Neĭ kòk-tak k'uĭ tîm-yeûng*à?

   B: K'uĭ tsô sẑ kè shî-haû, tsô-tak hó yîng-chan; waán kè shî-haû, k'uĭ waán-tak hó kán-iù.

2. A: T'eng-mān-wâ, k'uĭ m̄-chí hó chung-ì kóng-siù, î-ch'é hó ooĭ kóng koò-sẑ; haî m̄-haî à?

   B: Haî, k'uĭ hó chung-ì kóng-siù; k'uĭ kóng koò-sẑ kóng-tak hó hó-t'eng.

3. A: K'uĭ kóng shuèt-wâ kè shî-haû, kóng-tak taaî m̄-taaî sheng à?

   B: Iù t'aí ts'îng-yîng; yaū-shî k'uĭ kóng-tak hó saì sheng, faàt-nau kè shî-haû, k'uĭ kóng-tak hó taaî sheng.

4. A: K'uĭ kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ* kóng-tak laū-leî mà?

   B: Sui-în k'uĭ haí Kwóng-Tung chuê-chóh shēng ts'at paàt nîn, taân-haî k'uĭ kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ* kóng-tak m̄-laū-leî.

5. A: Tsuì-kân k'uĭ kè Kwóng-Tung wâ* kóng-tak tîm-yeûng* à?

   B: Tsuì-kân k'uĭ kè Kwóng-Tung Wâ*tsùn-pô-chóh hó toh, tsùn-pô-tak hó faaì.

6. A: K'uĭ î-ka haí Lûk-Kwan shuè tsô-kán sẑ, tsô-tak san m̄-san-foó à, mōng m̄-mōng à?

   B: K'uĭ î-ka haí Lûk-Kwan shuè tsô-kán sẑ, tsô-tak hó san-foó, hó mōng.

7. A: K'uĭ mooĭ maăn keí yê chì huì fàn kaaù à, chiu-t'aū-tsó heí shan heí-tak tsó mà?

   B: K'uĭ toh-shò hó yê chì fàn, taân-haî mooĭ chiu-tsó heí shan heí-tak hó tsó; shóh-ì k'uĭ fàn-tak m̄-kaù.

8. A: Neĭ wâ, k'uĭ sheûng kòh laĭ-paaì pêng-chóh; tò-taí pêng-tak kán m̄-kán-iù à?

   B: K'uĭ sheûng kòh laĭ-paaì pêng-tak hó kán-iù; faàt-ît faàt-tak hó ko, t'aū-t'ùng-tak hó kán-iù.

LESSON 43

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

9. A: K'uĭ ì-ka hó-chóh meî à?

B: K'uĭ ì-ka hó-chóh hó toh là; k'uĭ kè pêng hó-tak hó faaì.

10. A: Yaŭ yān wâ, i-shang faì tsuì-kân heí-tak hó kán-iù, haî mà?

B: Haî, i-shang faì tsuì-kân heí-chóh hó-toh, heí-tak hó kán-iù.

LESSON 43

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Leĭ, you have known Kwaan for so long. What do you think of him?

   B: When he works, he is very serious. When he plays, he plays very hard.

2. A: I heard someone say that he not only likes to joke very much, but also knows how to tell stories very well. Is that right?

   B: Right. He is very fond of joking, and he tells very interesting stories.

3. A: When he talks, does he talk loudly?

   B: It depends on the circumstances. Sometimes he talks very softly, but when he is angry, he talks very loudly.

4. A: Does he speak Cantonese fluently?

   B: Although he has lived in Kwangtung for 7 or 8 years, he doesn't speak Cantonese fluently.

5. A: How is his Cantonese lately?

   B: His Cantonese has improved lately. He has made rapid progress.

6. A: Now he is working in the Army. Does he find the work difficult? Is he busy?

   B: Yes, he finds the work difficult; and he is very busy.

7. A: How late does he go to bed every night? Does he get up early in the morning?

   B: He usually goes to sleep very late, but he gets up very early every morning; therefore, he does not get enough sleep.

8. A: You said that he was sick last week. Was he seriously ill?

   B: Last week he was seriously ill; he had a very high fever and a terrible headache.

9. A: Is he well now?

LESSON 43
TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

B: He is much better now. He is recovering from his illness rapidly.

10. A: Someone said that the doctor's fees have gone up recently. Is that true?

B: Yes, the doctor's fees have gone up quite a bit. The fees are terribly high.

LESSON 43

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ī-ka keí tím-chung à?

B: Ī-ka kaú-tím yat-kòh-tsẑ.

2. A: Chìng-wâ yaŭ mŏ yān tá tîn-wâ* peí ngŏh à?

B: Paàt-tím taâp-shâp kè shî-haû, Cheung Tsún-Waì tá tîn-wâ* peí neĭ.

3. A: Haû-loî chûng yaŭ pin-kòh tá tîn-wâ* peí ngŏh à?

B: Paàt-tím nğ-shâp-nğ-fan kè shî-haû, Wōng Siù-Waì yaŭ tîn-wâ* laî.

4. A: Wōng Siù-Waì yaŭ mŏ kóng mi-yĕ à?

B: K'uĭ mŏ kóng mi-yĕ; k'uĭ chí-haî wâ, kaú-tím yat-kòh-kwat tsoì tá laî.

5. A: Wōng Siù-Waì haî ngŏh kè lŏ p'āng-yaŭ.

B: Ôh, uēn-loî k'uĭ t'ūng neĭ haî lŏ p'āng-yaŭ. K'uĭ î-ka haí pin shuè tsô sẑ à?

6. A: K'uĭ î-ka haí yat-kaan kwan-haaû shuè tsô kaaù-koon.

B: K'uĭ foô tsaàk ti mi-yĕ kung-tsòk à?

7. A: K'uĭ î-ka haí yat-kaan kwan-haaû kè fàn-lîn kei-teî, fàn-lîn san ping.

B; K'uĭ kè ka-t'îng tím-yeûng* à, k'uĭ kè ka-yān t'ūng neĭ sûk m̄-sûk à?

8. A: K'uĭ yaŭ hó toh hing-taî chí mooî *;k'uĭ kè foô-ts'an t'ūng mŏ-ts'an t'ūng ngŏh hó-sûk.

B: Â, Wōng Siù-Waì tá tîn-wâ* laî kè shî-haû, k'uĭ hó-ts'z̆ kóng-kwòh yat kuì wâ.

9. A: Yat kuì mi-yĕ à, kóh kuì wâ* haî kwaan-ue mi-yĕ kà?

B: K'uĭ hó-ts'z̆ wâ, k'uĭ seúng t'ūng neĭ huì yat-kaan kung-sz maaĭ kwan-fûk.

10. A: Ĭ-ts'în k'uĭ t'ūng ngŏh kóng-kwòh ni kîn sẑ, ngŏh-teî ĭ-king huì-kwòh kóh kaan kung-sz là!

B: Mooĭ t'ò kwan-fûk keí-toh ts'în* à?

LESSON 43

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Ngŏh m̀-keì-tak keì-toh ts'ìn* là! Wōng Siù-Waì kòk-tak kŏh t'ò kwan-fûk t'aaì kwaì.

B: Kóm, k'uĭ yaŭ mŏ maaĭ à?

12. A: K'uĭ wâ, k'uĭ maaĭ m̀-heí; k'uĭ mân king-leĭ, hóh m̀-hóh ĭ p'ēng ti.

B: King-leĭ tìm wâ à?

13. A: King-leĭ wâ m̀-hóh-ĭ tsoì p'ēng là!

B: Neĭ-teì ts'ìn-haû chúng-kûng huì-kwòh kóh shuè keí-toh ts'z̀ à?

14. A: Ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ, ts'ìn-haû chúng-kûng huì-kwòh kóh shuè leŭng ts'z̆ là! Chan mā-faān.

B: Wōng Siù-Waì ì-ka chuê haí pin shuè à?

15. A: K'uĭ ì-ka chuê haí kwan-yìng kè luĭ-pîn.

B: Kóh kaan kwan-yìng t'ūng ngoî-pîn kè kaau-t'ung pîn-leî mà?

A: Kwan-yìng kè ts'ìn-pîn, haû-pîn, chóh-pîn t'ūng yaû-pîn to yaŭ hŏ toh moōn-haú, ch'ut yáp hó pîn-leî.

LESSON 43

WORD LIST

1.	yîng-chan	conscientious; conscientiously, serious
2.	waán, oôn	to play, fool around, enjoy
3.	kán-iủ	important, serious, grave, urgent, terrible
4.	m̄-chí	not only
5.	siủ	to laugh, smile, ridicule, laugh, smile
6.	kóng siủ	to joke, tell a joke; joking
7.	koò-sẑ	story, tale
8.	taaî-sheng	loud, noisy; loudly; loud voice
9.	yaŭ-shî	sometimes, once in a while
10.	saỉ-sheng	low voice, softly (speaking)
11.	faảt-nau, faảt-nô	to get angry, be mad, angry
12.	sui-în	although
13.	tsủn-pô	to progress, improve, better,
14.	san-foó	hard, bitter, toilsome difficult
15.	tò-taỉ	after all, in the final analysis, at last
16.	faảt-ît, faảt-siu	to have fever; feverish
17.	t'aū	head, chief
18.	t'ùng	pain, ache, hurt, sore painful
19.	t'aū-t'ùng	headache
20.	laū-leî	fluent

LESSON 43

READING MATERIAL

1054

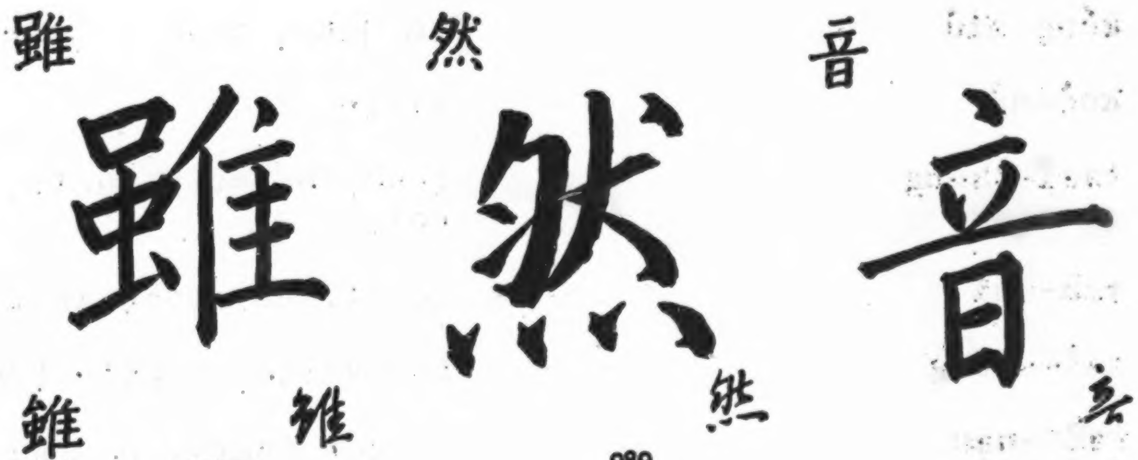
雖	sui: although; even if; supposing.
雖然	sui-Īn: although; notwithstanding.

355

然	Īn: thus; so; yes; but
當然	tong-Īn: of course
雖然	sui-Īn: although; though
天然	t'in-Īn: natural; innate

1441

音	yam: sound; tone, communication, news,
土音	t'ó yam: local pronunciation, dialect.
收音機	shau-yam-kei: radio.
音信	yam-sùn: news; tidings.

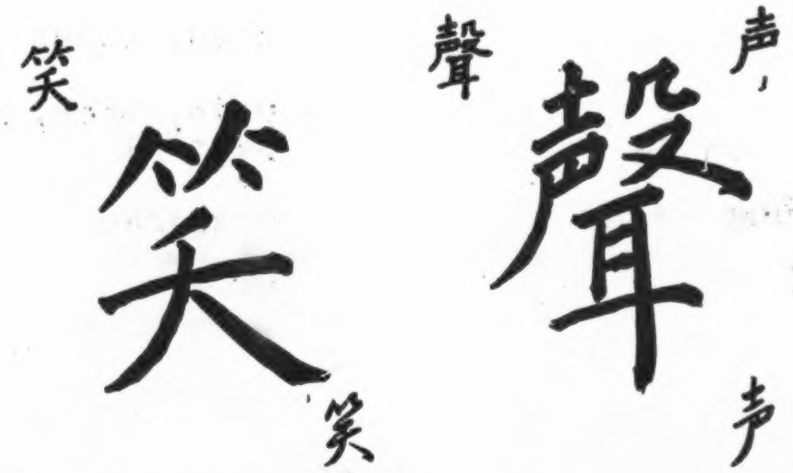


1037

笑	siù: to laugh; to smile; to laugh at.
笑話	siù wâ: joking.
笑容	siù yūng: smiling face.

989

聲	shing; sheng: sound; tone; noise; reputation; rumor.
聲音	shing-yam: sound; noise.
聲明	shing-mēng: to inform; to make known.



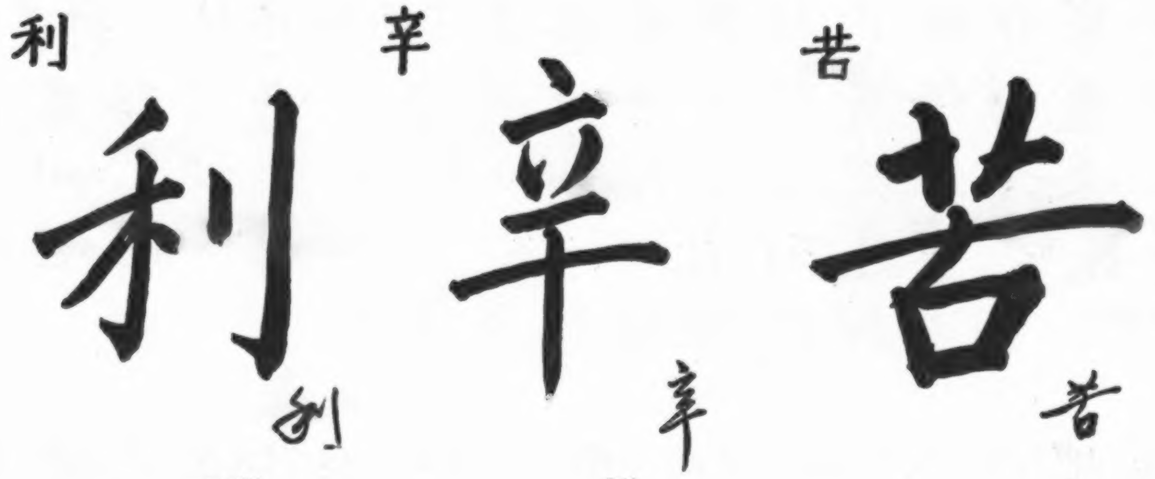
LESSON 43

READING MATERIAL

599	
利	leî: gain; interest; sharp; hurtful.
利息	leî-sik: interest.
利益	leî-yik: advantage; benefit.
利便	leî-pîn: convenient; handy.
利用	leî-yûng: to make use of; to take advantage of.

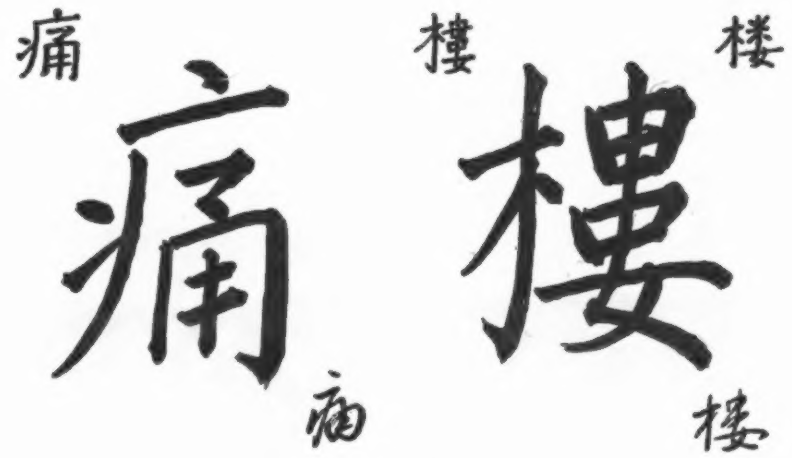
914	
辛	san: bitter; hard; toilsome.
辛苦	san-foó: troublesome; difficult.
艱辛	kaan-san: difficulty; hardship.

205	
苦	foó: bitter; affliction
辛苦	san-foó: hard; suffer; torture
苦工	foó kung: hard labor



1366	
痛	t'ùng: pain; ache; illness.
忍痛	yán t'ùng: to bear pain.
受痛	shaû t'ùng: to suffer pain.

594	
樓	laŭ: a loft; a storey; a tower.
樓上	laŭ-sheûng: upstairs.
樓梯	laŭ-t'ai: stairway.
騎樓	k'ē -laŭ: verandah.



LESSON 43

READING MATERIAL

昨晚陳英同黃小姐雖然好早就翻去酒店fàn là，但係佢地唔係幾fàn得，成夜想緊去三-Faān-市嘅事。所以，今朝佢地起身起得好早。

而家佢地已經準備好去三-Faān-市là。朝早嘅時候，天氣唔係幾熱，又唔係幾涼。喺公路處，有幾多車來來去去，交通好便利。佢地就放心shaí-車，shaí得好快；冇幾耐，就tò chóh 三-Faān-市。佢地shaí車shaí-chóh 個半鐘頭，唔係幾辛苦che。

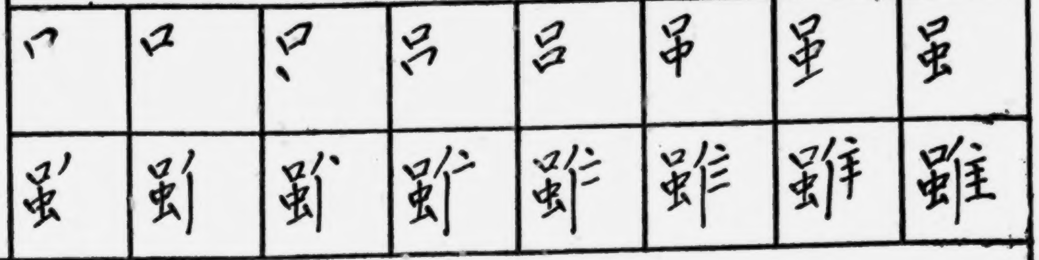
佢地行入T'ōng-人-Faû 嘅時候，喺街處，就聽見中國音樂，笑聲，人聲。有啲人講得好大聲，有啲人講得好細聲。有時幾好聽；有時呢，會令人頭痛。佢地又睇見紅紅綠綠嘅樓，中國嘅野。啲行人行來行去。有啲人行得好快；有啲人行得好慢。真係好睇，令佢地覺得好似喺中國敢樣。

LESSON 43

WRITING MATERIAL

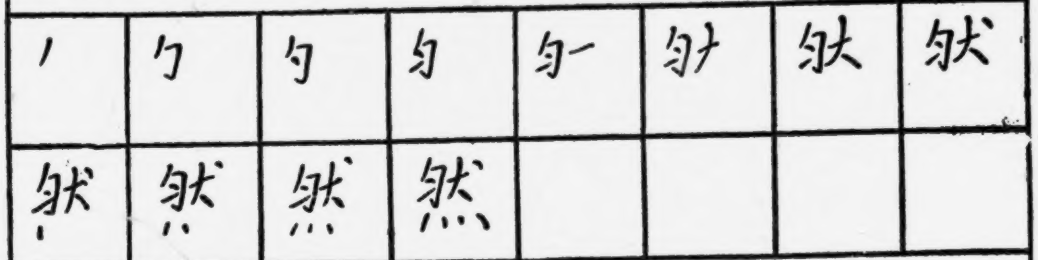
雖

Character Number 1054　Radical Number 172
Stroke Number 17　隹



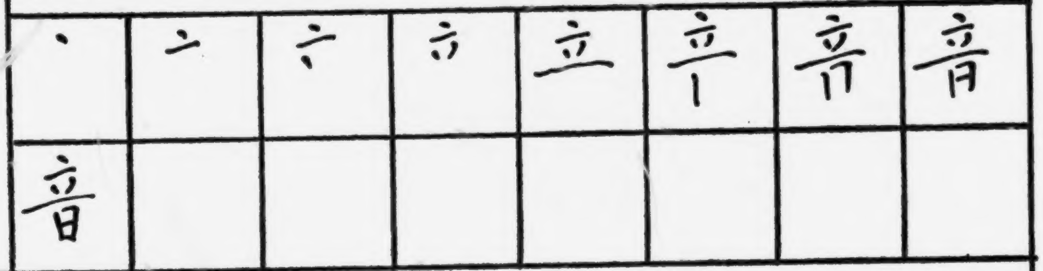
然

Character Number 355　Radical Number 86
Stroke Number 12　灬 , 火



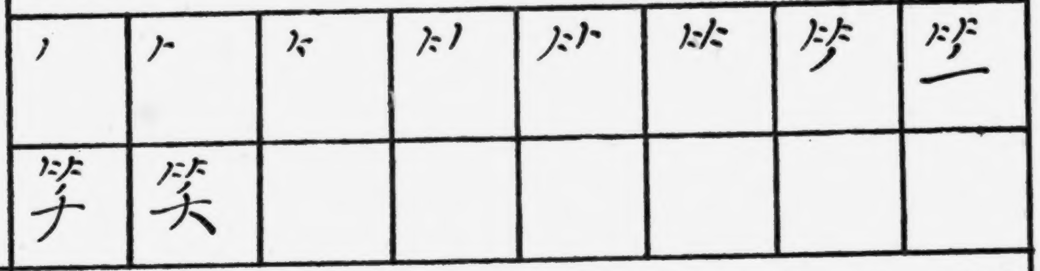
音

Character Number 1441　Radical Number 180
Stroke Number 9　音



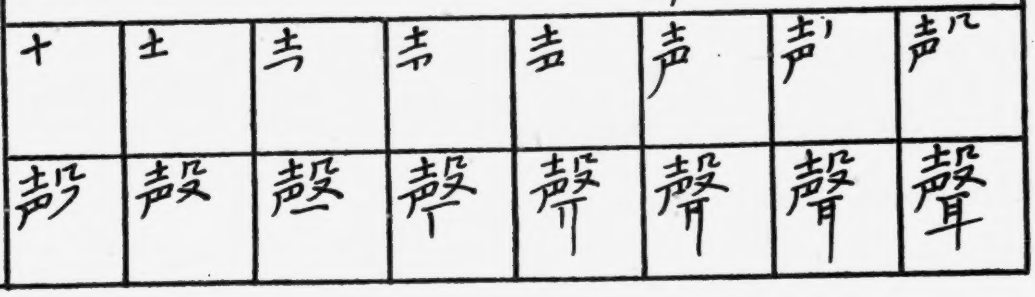
笑

Character Number 1037　Radical Number 118
Stroke Number 10　⺮ , 竹



聲

Character Number 989　Radical Number 128
Stroke Number 17　耳



LESSON 44

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. kwòh-t'aū

tak-chaî

K'uĭ shiú-sam.

K'uĭ m̄-shiú-sam.

K'uĭ shiú m̄-shiú-sam à?

K'uĭ m̄-shiú-sam.

K'uĭ shiú-sam.

K'uĭ keí shiú-sam.

K'uĭ hó shiú-sam.

K'uĭ fei-sheūng-chi shiú-sam.

K'uĭ t'aaì shiú-sam.

K'uĭ shiú-sam kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ shiú-sam tak-chaî.

K'uĭ shiú m̄-shiú-sam à?

K'uĭ t'aaì shiú-sam.

K'uĭ shiú-sam kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ shiú-sam tak-chaî.

K'uĭ t'aaì taaî-ì.

K'uĭ taaî-ì kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ taaî-ì tak-chaî.

Ni poón shue t'aaì sam.

Ni poón shue sam kwòh-t'aū.

Ni poón shue sam tak-chaî.

Kóh poón shue t'aaì sam.

LESSON 44

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Kóh poón shue sam kwòh-t'aū.

Kóh poón shue sam tak-chaî.

Ni kîn sẑ yūng-î kwòh-t'aū.

Ni kîn sẑ yūng-î tak-chaî.

Ni kîn sẑ yūng m̄-yūng-î à?

Ni kîn sẑ yūng-î kwòh-t'aū.

Ni kîn sẑ yūng-î tak-chaî.

Kóh kîn sẑ naān kwòh-t'aū.

Kóh kîn sẑ naān tak-chaî.

Kóh kîn sẑ naān m̄-naān à?

Kóh kîn sẑ naān kwòh-t'aū.

Kóh kîn sẑ naān tak-chaî.

Neĭ kè ch'e kwaì kwòh-t'aū.

Neĭ kè ch'e kwaì tak-chaî.

Kam-yât laăng kwòh-t'aū.

Kam-yât laăng tak-chaî.

Sheûng kòh uêt kam-yât ît kwòh-t'aū.

Sheûng kòh uêt kam-yât ît tak-chaî.

Ni kaan fōng* ti yān toh kwòh-t'aū.

Ni kaan fōng* ti yān toh tak-chaî.

Kóh kaan fōng* oo-tso kwòh-t'aū.

Kóh kaan fōng* oo-tso tak-chaî.

Kóh kaan fōng* oo m̄-oo-tso à?

Kóh kaan fōng* oo-tso kwòh-t'aū.

Kóh kaan fōng* oo-tso tak-chaî.

Kam-nîn ch'un-t'in shap kwòh-t'aū.

Kam-nîn tung-t'in kon tak-chaî.

LESSON 44

2. tak

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

K'uĭ yám tsaú.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak hó toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak m̄-toh.

K'ui yám tsau yám-tak toh m̄-toh a?

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak m̄-toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak hó toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak keî toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak t'aaî toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak fei-sheūng-chi toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak toh kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak toh m̄-toh à?

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak toh kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak toh tak-chaî.

K'ui shîk in.

K'uĭ shîk in shîk-tak toh kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ shîk in shîk-tak toh tak-chaî.

K'uĭ shîk in shîk-tak toh m̄-toh à?

K'uĭ shîk in shîk-tak toh kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ shîk in shîk-tak toh tak-chaî.

K'uĭ shîk faân shîk-tak shiú.

K'uĭ shîk faân shîk-tak shiú kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ shîk faân shîk-tak shiú tak-chaî.

K'uĭ haāng lô haāng-tak t'aaî maân.

LESSON 44

2. tak ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

K'uĭ yám tsaú.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak hó toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak m̄-toh.

K'ui yám tsau yám-tak toh m̄-toh a?

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak m̄-toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak hó toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak keî toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak t'aaî toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak fei-sheūng-chi toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak toh.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak toh kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak toh m̄-toh à?

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak toh kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak toh tak-chaî.

K'ui shîk in.

K'uĭ shîk in shîk-tak toh kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ shîk in shîk-tak toh tak-chaî.

K'uĭ shîk in shîk-tak toh m̄-toh à?

K'uĭ shîk in shîk-tak toh kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ shîk in shîk-tak toh tak-chaî.

K'uĭ shîk faân shîk-tak shiú.

K'uĭ shîk faân shîk-tak shiú kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ shîk faân shîk-tak shiú tak-chaî.

K'uĭ haāng lô haāng-tak t'aaî maân.

LESSON 44

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

K'uĭ haāng lô haāng-tak maân kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ haāng lô haāng-tak maân tak-chaî.

K'uĭ fàn kaaù fàn-tak t'aaì tsó.

K'uĭ fàn kaaù fàn-tak tsó kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ fàn kaaù fàn-tak tsó tak-chaî.

K'uĭ heí shan heí-tak t'aaì ch'î.

K'uĭ heí shan heí-tak ch'î kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ heí shan heí-tak ch'î tak-chaî.

K'uĭ tûk shue tûk-tak t'aaì k'ān-lîk.

K'uĭ tûk shue tûk-tak k'ān-lîk kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ tûk shue tûk-tak k'ān-lîk tak-chaî.

K'uĭ kè saì-ló tûk shue tûk-tak t'aaì laăn.

K'uĭ kè saì-ló tûk shue tûk-tak laăn kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ kè saì-ló tûk shue tûk-tak laăn tak-chaî.

K'uĭ kóng shuèt-wâ kóng-tak t'aaì taaî-sheng.

K'uĭ kóng shuèt-wâ kóng-tak taaî-sheng kwòh-t'aū.

K'uĭ kóng shuèt-wâ kóng-tak taaî-sheng tak-chaî.

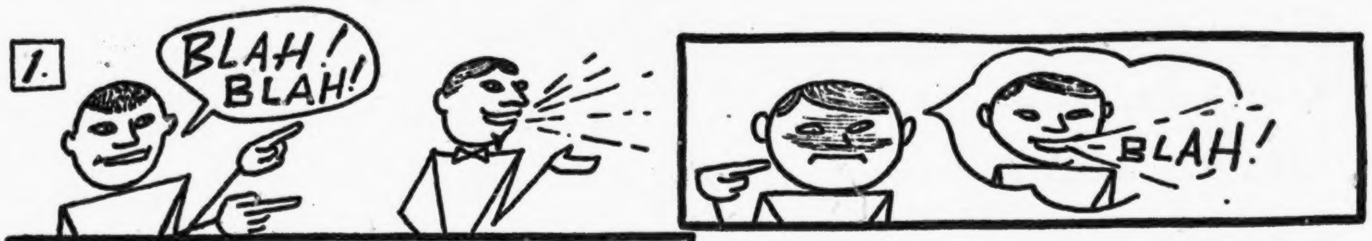
K'uĭ kóng shuèt-wâ kóng-tak t'aaì shaì-sheng.

K'uĭ kóng shuèt-wâ kóng-tak shaì-sheng kwòh-t'aū.

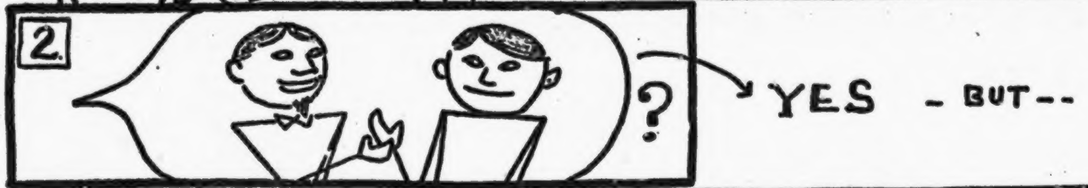
K'uĭ kóng shuèt-wâ kóng-tak shaì-sheng tak-chaî.

LESSON 44

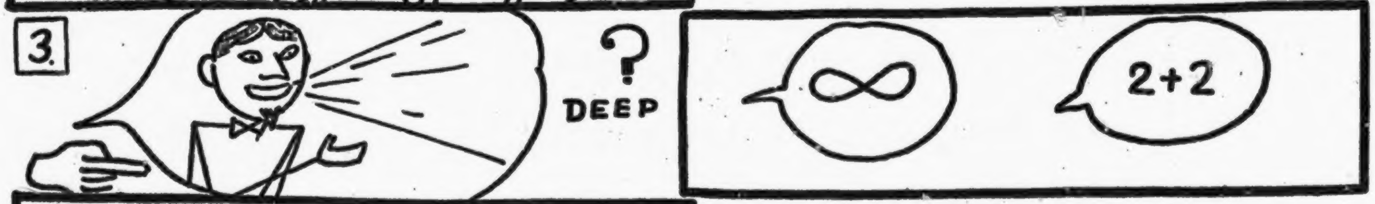
1.


BLAH! BLAH!
BLAH!

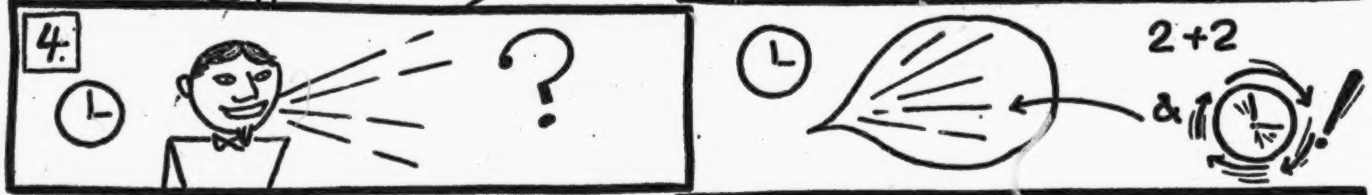
2.



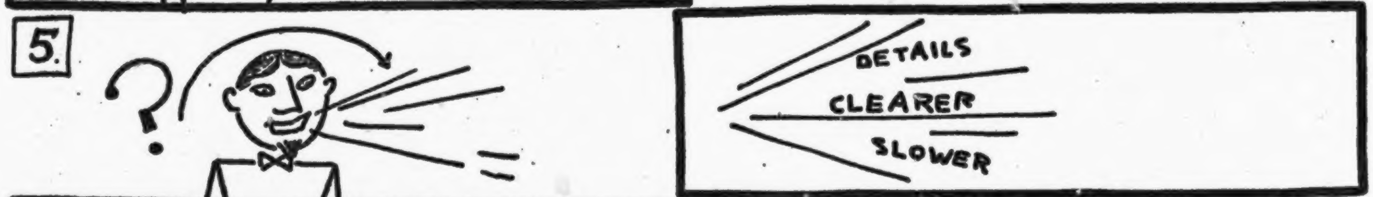
3.



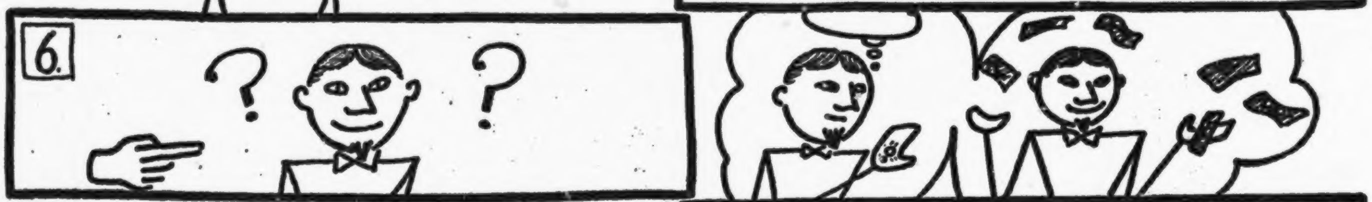
4.



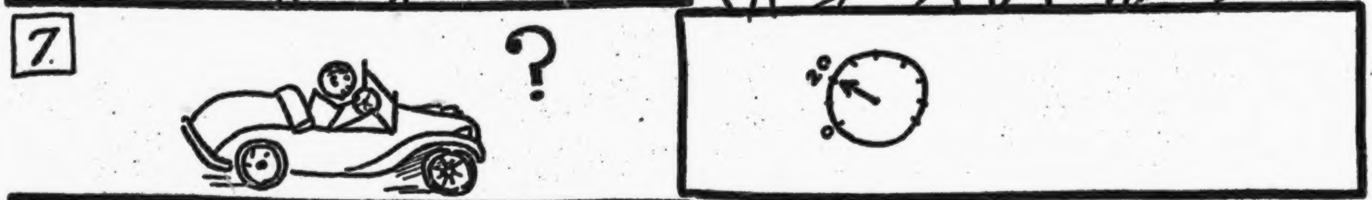
5.


?
DETAILS
CLEARER
SLOWER

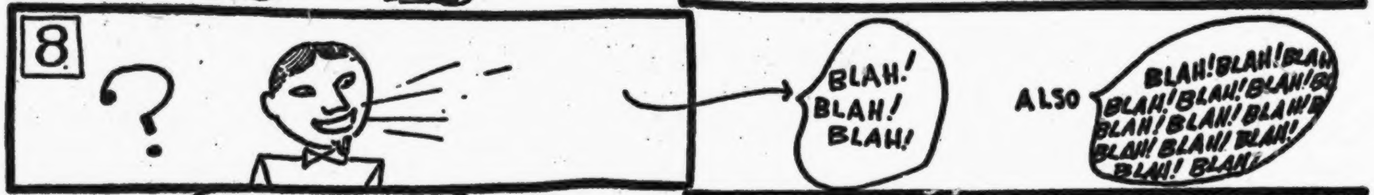
6.



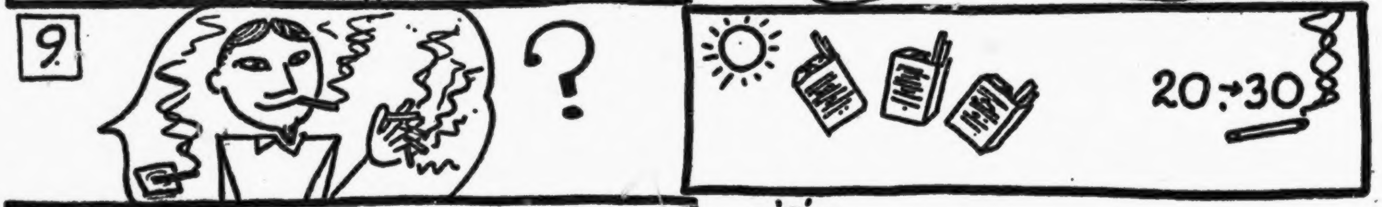
7.



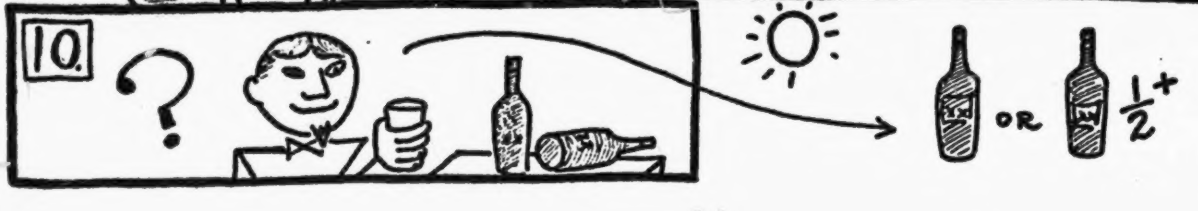
8.


?
BLAH! BLAH! BLAH!
ALSO
BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH! BLAH!

9.



10.



LESSON 44

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: M̄-koi neĭ m̄-hó kòm ts'ō, m̄-koi neĭ tsîng ti. Yaŭ yān haí kóh shuè kóng-kán yĕ.

   B: Chan-haî m̄-hó ì-sz̀, ngŏh kóng-tak kòm taaî-sheng.

2. A: Yaŭ yān wâ, neĭ shik k'uĭ, haî mà?

   B: Haî, ngŏh shik k'uĭ; pat-kwòh ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ m̄-haî t'aaì shûk.

3. A: Neĭ ĭ-waî k'uĭ ni ts'z̀ kóng ti yĕ sham m̄-sham à?

   B: Ngŏh ĭ-waî yaŭ ti yĕ sham-tak-chaî; yaŭ-ti yĕ ts'în-tak-chaî.

4. A: Neĭ kòk-tak k'uĭ ni ts'z̀ kóng-tak tím-yeûng* à?

   B: Ngŏh kòk-tak k'uĭ ni ts'z̀ kóng-tak kaán-taan kwòh-t'aū, î-ch'é faaì kwòh-t'aū.

5. A: K'uĭ ying-koi tím-yeûng* kóng chì hó à?

   B: K'uĭ ying-koi kóng-tak ts'eūng-saì ti, ts'ing-ch'óh ti, t'ūng maân ti.

6. A: Neĭ wâ, neĭ shik k'uĭ, neĭ kòk-tak k'uĭ kè yān tím-yeûng* à?

   B: K'uĭ yaŭ-shî siú-sam tak-chaî, yaŭ-shî taaî-ì tak-chaî; pat-kwòh, k'uĭ haî yat-kòh hó yān.

7. A: K'uĭ haí kung-lô shaí ch'e kè shî-haû, shaí-tak keí faaì à?

   B: Haí kung-lô, k'uĭ shaí ch'e shaí-tak maân kwòh-t'aū, yat tím-chung haāng î-shâp leĭ kòm sheûng-hâ*; k'uĭ siú-sam kwòh-t'aū.

8. A: K'uĭ kóng yĕ kóng-tak hó mà?

   B: K'uĭ kóng shuèt-wâ kóng-tak toh kwòh-t'aū, î-ch'é kóng-tak mŏ haî-t'úng; k'uĭ sam-kap kè shî-haû, kóng-tak faaì kwòh-t'aū.

9. A: Yaŭ yān wâ, k'uĭ shîk in shîk-tak hó toh, haî mà?

   B: Yaŭ-shî la, yaŭ-shî k'uĭ yat yât shîk leŭng saam paau in-tsaí, waâk-ché î-saam-shâp chi in-tsaí.

LESSON 44

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: K'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak kán m̄-kán-iù â?

B: Wâ-m̄-tîng, yaŭ-shī yat yât yám yat-tsun wai-sẑ-keî*, waâk-ché taaî-poòn tsun wai-sẑ-keî*, k'uĭ yám tsaú yám-tak toh kwòh-t'aū.

LESSON 44

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Please don't be so noisy. Be quiet. Someone is giving a speech there.

   B: I should be ashamed of myself. I talked so loudly.

2. A: Someone said you know him, is that right?

   B: Right. I know him. But I am not very well acquainted with him.

3. A: Do you consider the subjects he is talking about this time difficult?

   B: I think some of them are very difficult. The others are too simple.

4. A: What do you think of the speech he made this time?

   B: I think the speech he made this time is too simple. Besides, he talks too fast.

5. A: How should he put it then?

   B: He should elaborate the subject, make it clearer, and speak a little more slowly.

6. A: You said you know him. What do you think of him as a person?

   B: Sometimes he is too careful and at times too careless. Nevertheless, he is a good man.

7. A: When he is driving on the highway, how fast does he travel?

   B: He drives very slowly on the highway. He travels at the rate of about 20 miles per hour. He is too careful.

8. A: Does he do well in speaking?

   B: He talks too much, and is not systematic enough. When he gets excited, he talks too rapidly.

9. A: Someone said he smokes a great deal, is that right?

   B: Sometimes. At times he smokes 2 or 3 packs of cigarettes in a day, perhaps 20 to 30 cigarettes.

LESSON 44

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

10. A: Does he drink excessively?

B: I can't say that for sure. Sometimes he can finish a bottle of whiskey in one day. At times more than half of a bottle. At any rate, he drinks too much.

LESSON 44

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: T'aū-sin ngŏh-teî kóng-kán Wōng Siù-Waî kè sẑ. Ngŏh-teî kóng-tò pin shuè à?

   B: Ngŏh-teî kóng-tò k'uĭ kè kwan-yîng, kóh kòh kwan-yîng leî neĭ kè sé-tsẑ-laū keí uĕn à?

2. A: Kóh kòh kwan-yîng leî ngŏh kè sé-tsẑ-laū hó uĕn.

   B: Taaî-yeùk* keí uĕn à?

3. A: Kóh kòh kwan-yîng, haí ngŏh sé-tsẑ-laū kè tung-naām pîn, taaî-yeùk* î-paàk-î-shâp-nğ leĭ kòm sheûng-hâ*.

   B: Kóh shuè yaŭ mŏ fei-kei-ch'eūng à?

4. A: Yaŭ, kwan-yîng kè sai-pak-pîn yâ-î leĭ shuè, yaŭ yat-kòh hó san-sik kè fei-kei-ch'eūng.

   B: Kwan-yîng kè t'îng-ch'e-ch'eūng haí pin shuè à?

5. A: T'îng-ch'e-ch'eūng haí kwan-yîng kè taaî-moōn-haú kè yaû-pîn.

   B: Wōng Siù-Waî keí noî* faan laî uk-k'eí yat ts'z̀ à?

6. A: K'uĭ mooĭ kòh tsau-moôt faan laî uk-k'eí yat ts'z̀.

   B: K'uĭ haí kwan-sẑ kei-kwaan tsô fàn-lîn kaaù-koon, k'uĭ kè kung-tsòk ts'îng-yîng tîm-yeûng* à?

7. A: Tuì-ue ni kòh mân-t'aî, ngŏh m̄-chi-tò; ngŏh chí-haî chi-tò, k'uĭ mooĭ yât iù sheūng-t'ōng, kóng kwan-sẑ kè yĕ.

   B: Tuì-m̄-chuê, ngŏh m̄-ying-koi mân ni kòh mân-t'aî. Kóh shuè kè heì-haû hó mà?

8. A: Kóh shuè kè heì-haû hó hó, hâ-t'in m̄-haî keí ît, tung-t'in m̄-haî keí laăng.

   B: Ch'un-t'in kè shî-haû, kóh shuè yaŭ mŏ ni shuè kòm shap à?

9. A: Ch'un-t'in kè shî-haû, kóh shuè mŏ ni shuè kòm shap; taân-haî, ch'au-t'in kè shî-haû, kóh shuè peí ni shuè kon hó toh.

   B: Kóh shuè yaŭ mŏ ni shuè kòm kon-tsêng à?

LESSON 44

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. A: Yaŭ ti teî-fong oo-tso, yaŭ ti teî-fong kon-tsêng. Pat-kwòh, yat-poon-laĭ-kóng, kóh shuè kon-tsêng kwòh ni shuè hó toh.

B: Kóm, chan-haî hó là! Â, Leĭ Sheûng-Waì, Wōng Siù-Waì kè tîn-wâ* laî là!

11. A: M̄-koi, Hōh Chung-Sẑ. Neĭ haî Wōng Siù-Waî, haî mà? Yaŭ mat kwaì-kòn à?
C: Leĭ Sheûng-Waì; ni kòh tsau-moôt fòng-chóh hôk chi-haû, ngŏh seúng huì paaì-haû neĭ; tak-haān mà?

12. A: Laĭ-paaì-nğ keí tím-chung neĭ fòng hôk à?

C: Laĭ-paaì-nğ, ngŏh-teî seì-tím saam-kòh-kwat fòng hôk.

13. A: Fòng-chóh hôk chi-haû, neĭ shaî m̀-shaí faan uk-k'eí sin à?

C: Fòng-chóh hôk chi-haû, ngŏh seúng faan uk-k'eí kìn-hă ngŏh kè ka-yān.

14. A: Kìn-chóh ka-yān chi-haû, neĭ chûng huì pin shuè à?

C: Kìn-chóh ka-yān chi-haû, ngŏh tsik-haak huì wán neĭ.

15. A: Laĭ-paaì-nğ hâ-chaù, ngŏh waâk-ché huì kaai maaĭ ti yĕ; uē-kwóh ngŏh m̄-haí shuè, m̀-koi neĭ táng keí fan-chung, tak mà?

C: Hó à, ngŏh yat-tîng táng neĭ.

A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, ngŏh-teî sing-k'eî-nğ tsoì-kìn la!

C: Sing-k'eî-nğ tsoì-kìn.

LESSON 44

WORD LIST

1.	ts'ō	noisy; to create a commotion
2.	tsîng-ti	quieter; be quiet, be still, be calm
3.	sham	deep, profound, hard to comprehend; deeply, difficult, advance
4.	tak-chaî	too (excessive)
5.	ts'ín	simple and easy to comprehend, shallow
6.	kaán-taan	simple, brief
7.	kwòh-t'aū	too (excessive), beyond
8.	ying-koi	ought to, should
9.	ts'eūng-saî	detailed; in detail
10.	siú-sam	careful, cautious
11.	taaî-ì	careless; general idea
12.	haî-t'úng	system
13.	mŏ-haî-t'úng	not systematic, without system
14.	sam-kap	anxious, hurried, eager, excited
15.	paau	package, pack, parcel; include
16.	wai-sẑ-keî*	whiskey
17.	taaî-poòn	more than half, over half

LESSON 44

READING MATERIAL

1068

思 sz: to think; to reflect; to consider.

思想 sz-seúng: to think; to consider; to speculate.

心思 sam-sz: pensive.

思慮 sz -luî: serious thought.

1486

應 ying: right; proper; ought.

應 yìng: to respond; echo; to fulfill.

應該 ying-koi: ought; should.

應用 yìng yûng: practical; useful.

485

該 koi: ought; right; altogether; the said.

唔該 m̄-koi: thank you (for your trouble).

不該 pat-koi: ought not; not proper.

應該 ying-koi: should; ought.

思 應 該

思 應 該

思 应 该

771

怒 nô: anger; passion; rage.

發怒 faàt nô: to lose one's temper.

激怒 kik nô: to incite anger; to arouse anger.

475

叫 kiù: to call; to call out; style.

叫做 kiù tsô: it is called.

叫醒 kiù séng: to awaken one.

叫門 kiù moōn: to knock at the door.

呼叫 foo kiù: to shout.

怒 叫

怒 叫

怒 叫 叫

LESSON 44

READING MATERIAL

416

急 kap: quick; haste; urgent; anxious.

心急 sam-kap: in a flutter; anxious.
性急 sing-kap: impatient.
急症 kap ching: acute or virulent disease.
急用 kap yûng: urgently needed.

1197

暫 tsaâm: temporary; temporarily; for the present.

暫時 tsaâm-shī: temporarily; for a while.

暫住 tsaâm chuê: to lodge temporarily.

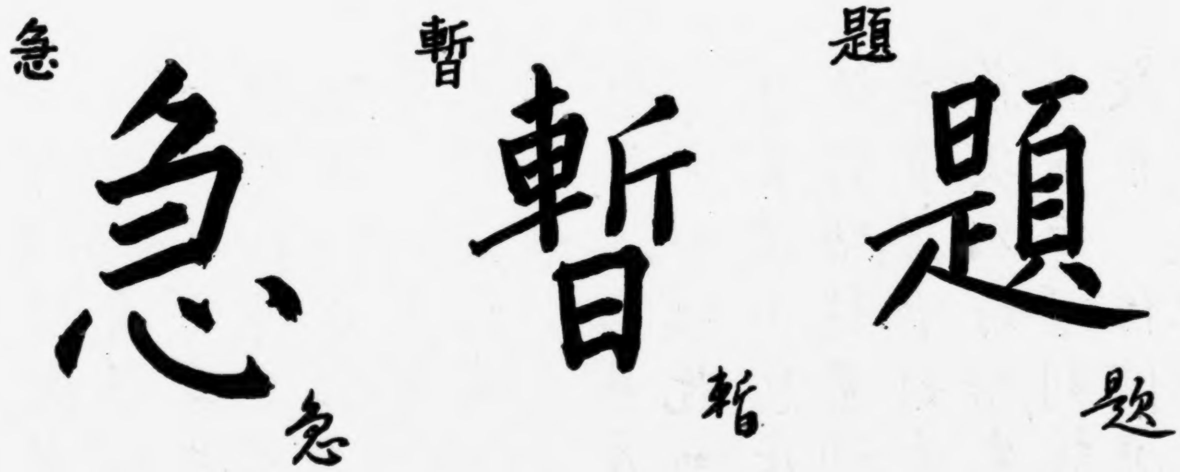
暫緩 tsaâm oôn: to delay a little.

1110

題 t'aī: title; theme; to compose; to discuss; forehead.

題目 t'aī-mûk: theme; subject; heading.

題名 t'aī mēng: to nominate.



249

系 haî: link; succession; department

世系 shaī-haî: successive generation

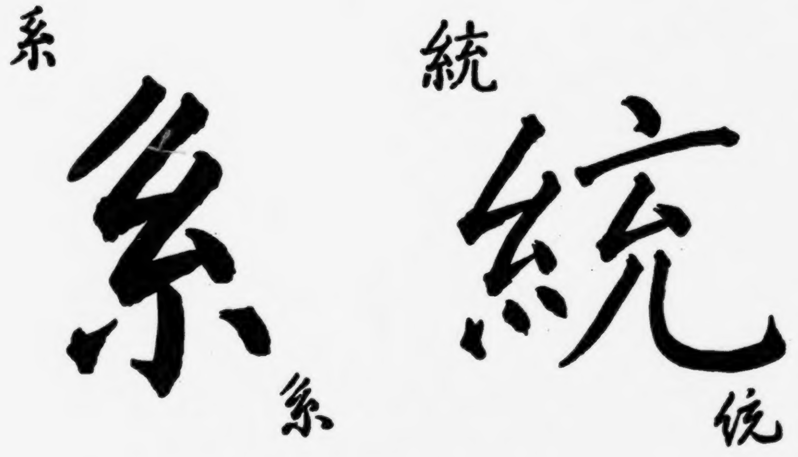
系統 haî-t'úng: system

1364

統 t'úng: to lead and command; to rule; the whole; all.

統一 t'úng-yat: to unify.

統計 t'úng-kaī: general total; statistics.



LESSON 44

READING MATERIAL

喺大-Faû有好多野睇,有好多野聽. 而家唔睇得kòm多là. 陳英同黃小姐想飲chóh早茶至慢慢去wáán. 佢地入去一間茶樓飲茶. 嗰處嘅地方好乾淨,又唔係幾ts'ō;啲野又平又lèng,又好食. 真係好là.

飲完茶之後,陳英想去見佢嘅親-ts'ik. 黃小姐話,佢呢次食野食得多過頭. 佢想先行吓街至去. 佢又話,唔使kòm心急;遲啲,早啲去都冇問題,但係唔好喺親-ts'ik處住. 雖然暫時喺處住,都係唔便利,唔好意思嘅là. 陳英話,如果係敢,而家就應該先去酒店wán房;wán chóh房至去做第二樣嘅事;敢,至有系統kà.

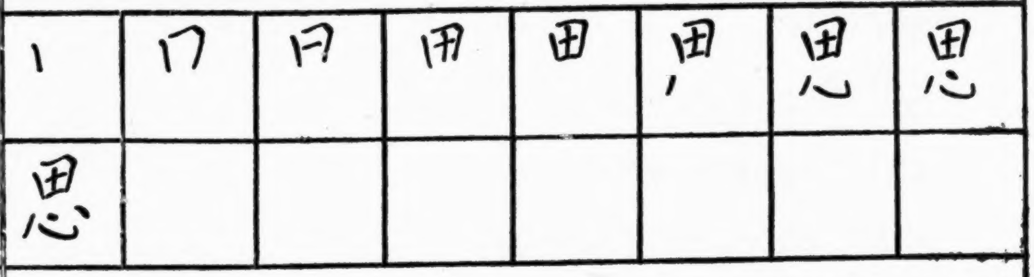
而家佢地行去wán房,陳英行快得-chaî;黃小姐行慢得-chaî. 黃小姐而家好似有啲發怒. 佢叫陳英唔好行kòm快. 佢話,佢食野食得太多,行得kòm快,太辛苦là.

LESSON 44

WRITING MATERIAL

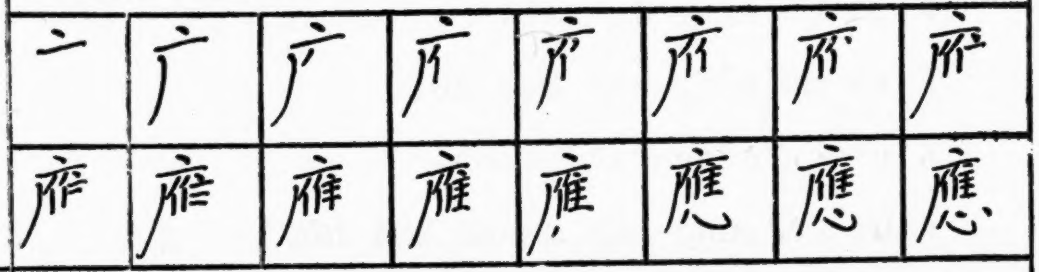
思

Character Number 1068 **Radical Number** 61
Stroke Number 9 心



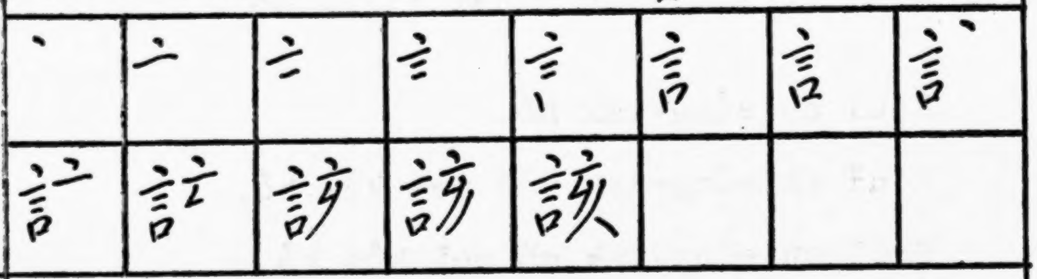
應

Character Number 1486 **Radical Number** 61
Stroke Number 17 心



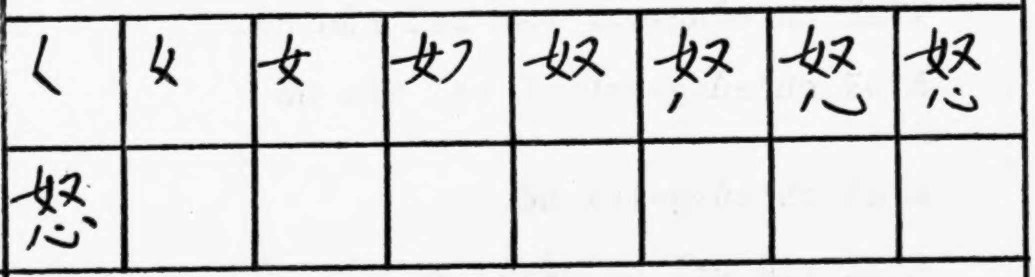
該

Character Number 485 **Radical Number** 149
Stroke Number 13 言



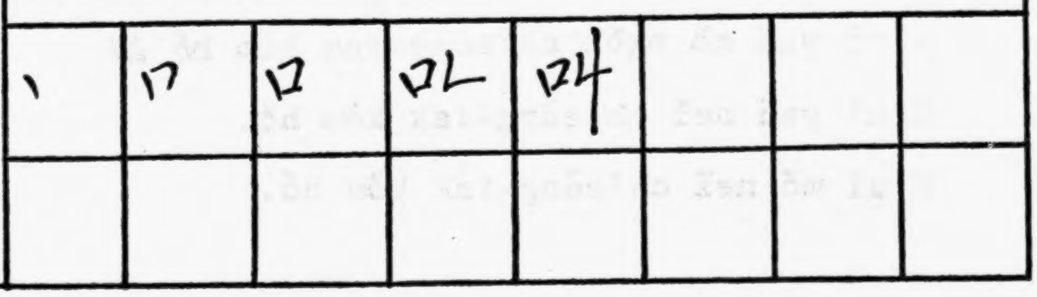
怒

Character Number 771 **Radical Number** 61
Stroke Number 9 心



叫

Character Number 475 **Radical Number** 30
Stroke Number 5 口



LESSON 45

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. tak

ch'eùng

ch'eùng tak hó

ch'eùng tak m̄-hó

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak m̄-hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng tak hó m̄-hó à?

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak keî hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak hó hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak m̄-haî keî hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak m̄-haî hó hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak m̄-haî t'aaî hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak yaŭ neĭ kòm hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak mŏ neĭ kòm hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak yaŭ mŏ ngŏh kòm hó à?

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak yaŭ neĭ kòm hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak mŏ neĭ kòm hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng-tak hó.

K'uĭ yaŭ neĭ ch'eùng-tak kòm hó.

K'uĭ mŏ neĭ ch'eùng-tak kòm hó.

K'uĭ yaŭ mŏ ngŏh ch'eùng-tak kòm hó à?

K'uĭ yaŭ neĭ ch'eùng-tak kòm hó.

K'uĭ mŏ neĭ ch'eùng-tak kòm hó.

LESSON 45

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

K'uĭ haāng-tak yaŭ neĭ kòm faaì.

K'uĭ haāng-tak mŏ neĭ kòm faaì.

K'uĭ yaŭ neĭ haāng-tak kòm faaì.

K'uĭ mŏ neĭ haāng-tak kòm faaì.

K'uĭ shîk-tak yaŭ neĭ kòm toh.

K'uĭ shîk-tak mŏ neĭ kòm toh.

K'uĭ yaŭ neĭ shîk-tak kòm toh.

K'uĭ mŏ neĭ shîk-tak kòm toh.

Neĭ heí-tak yaŭ k'uĭ kòm tsó.

Neĭ heí-tak mŏ k'uĭ kòm tsó.

Neĭ yaŭ k'uĭ heí-tak kòm tsó.

Neĭ mŏ k'uĭ heí-tak kòm tsó.

2. tak

ch'eùng

ch'eùng koh

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak m̄-hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak hó m̄-hó à?

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak m̄-hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak yaŭ neĭ kòm hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak mŏ neĭ kòm hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak yaŭ mŏ ngŏh kòm hó à?

LESSON 45

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak yaŭ neĭ kòm hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak mŏ neĭ kòm hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh yaŭ neĭ ch'eùng-tak kòm hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh mŏ neĭ ch'eùng-tak kòm hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh yaŭ mŏ ngŏh ch'eùng-tak kòm hó à?

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh yaŭ neĭ ch'eùng-tak kòm hó.

K'uĭ ch'eùng koh mŏ neĭ ch'eùng-tak kòm hó.

K'uĭ haāng lô haāng-tak yaŭ neĭ kòm faaì.

K'uĭ haāng lô haāng-tak mŏ neĭ kòm faaì.

K'uĭ haāng lô yaŭ neĭ haāng-tak kòm faaì.

K'uĭ haāng lô mŏ neĭ haāng-tak kòm faaì.

K'uĭ shîk faân shîk-tak yaŭ neĭ kòm toh.

K'uĭ shîk faân shîk-tak mŏ neĭ kòm toh.

K'uĭ shîk faân yaŭ neĭ shîk-tak kòm toh.

K'uĭ shîk faân mŏ neĭ shîk-tak kòm toh.

K'uĭ heí shan heí-tak yaŭ neĭ kòm tsó.

K'uĭ heí shan heí-tak mŏ neĭ kòm tsó.

K'uĭ heí shan yaŭ neĭ heí-tak kòm tsó.

K'uĭ heí shan mŏ neĭ heí-tak kòm tsó.

yaū shuí

chíng sùng

t'iù mŏ

shaí ch'e

yám tsaú

kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ*
sé tsẑ

3. tak

peí

kwòh

K'uĭ sé tsẑ sé-tak peí neĭ lèng.

K'uĭ sé tsẑ sé-tak peí neĭ lèng hó toh.

K'uĭ sé tsẑ peí neĭ sé tak lèng.

K'uĭ sé tsẑ peí neĭ sé tak lèng hó toh.

K'uĭ sé tsẑ yaŭ mŏ ngŏh sé-tak kòm lèng à?

K'uĭ sé tsẑ peí neĭ sé-tak lèng.

K'uĭ sé tsẑ sé-tak peí neĭ lèng.

K'uĭ sé tsẑ sé-tak lèng.

K'uĭ sé tsẑ sé-tak lèng kwòh neĭ.

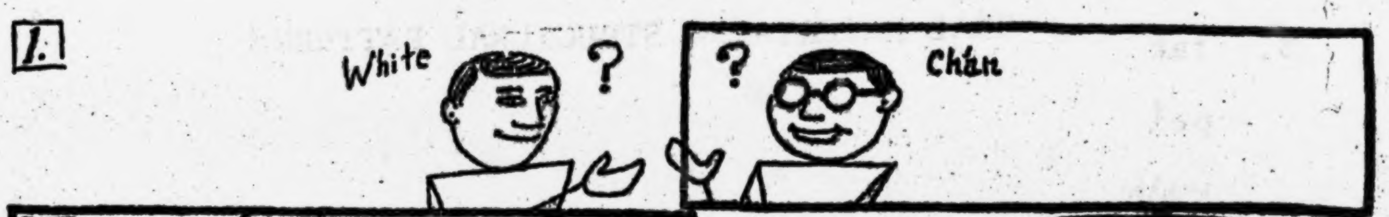
K'uĭ sé tsẑ sé-tak yaŭ mŏ ngŏh kòm lèng à?

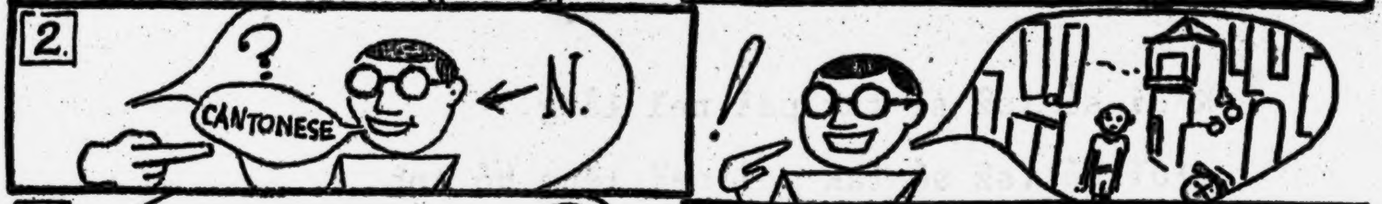
K'uĭ sé tsẑ sé-tak lèng kwòh neĭ.

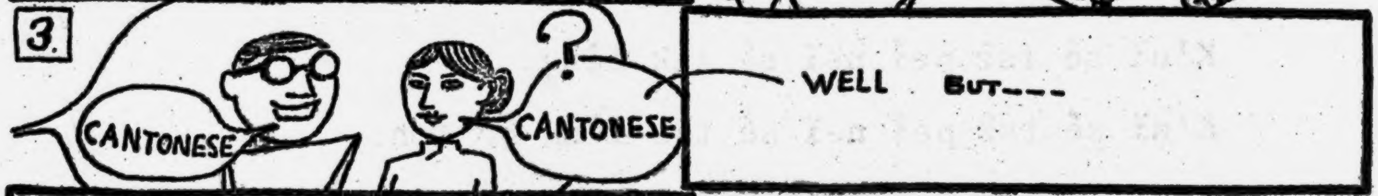
Ngŏh sé tsẑ sé-tak lèng kwòh k'uĭ.

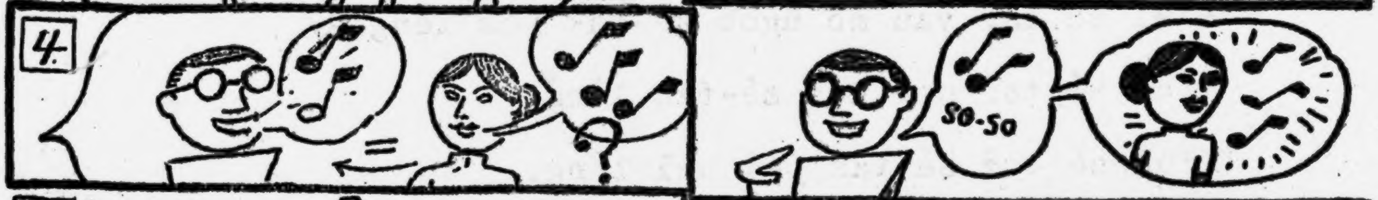
Ngŏh sé tsẑ sé-tak lèng kwòh k'uĭ hó toh.

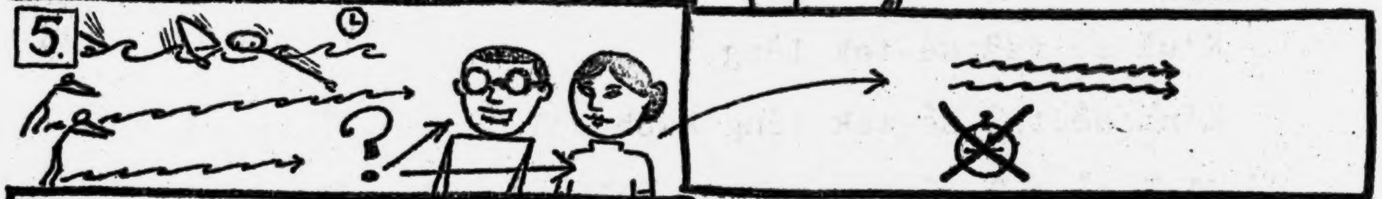
LESSON 45

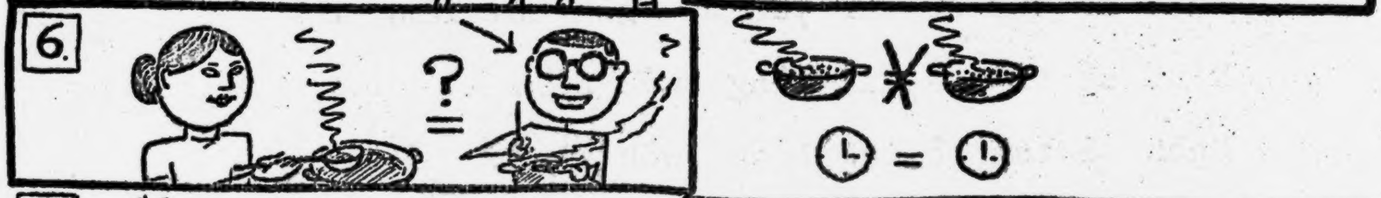

1.
White
?
?
Chán

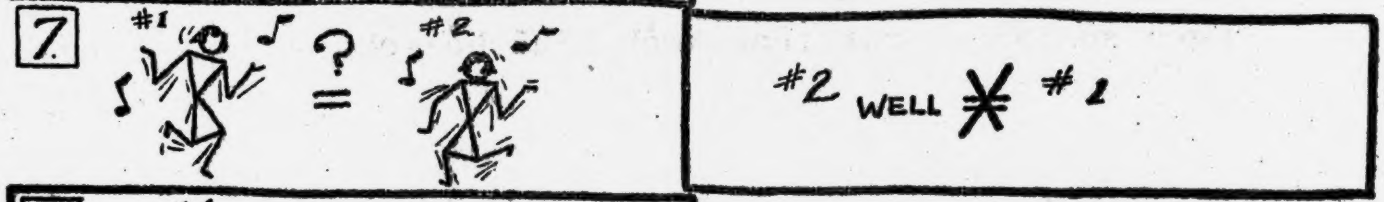

2.
?
CANTONESE
N.
!

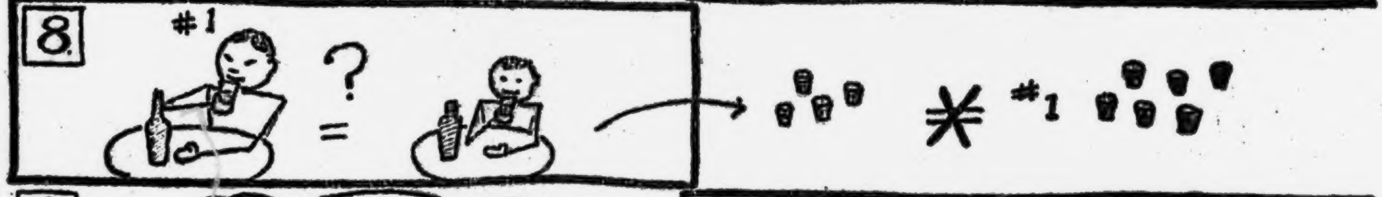

3.
CANTONESE
?
CANTONESE
WELL BUT---

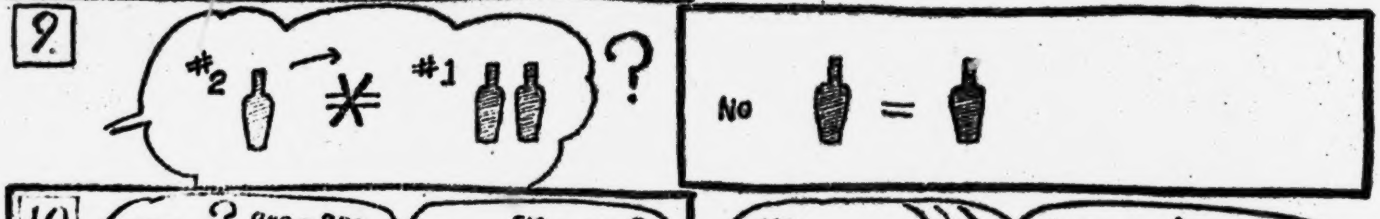

4.
=
?
SO-SO

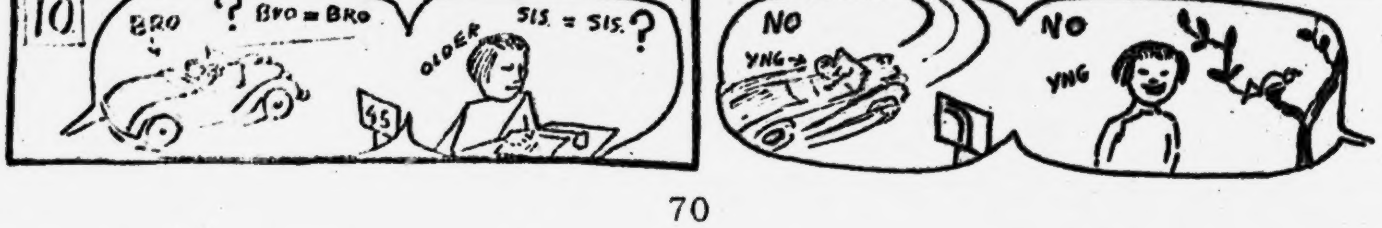

5.
?


6.
?
=
=


7.
#1
?
=
#2
#2 WELL ✱ #1


8.
#1
?
=
✱ #1


9.
#2 ✱ #1
?
NO =


10.
BRO ? BRO = BRO
OLDER
SIS. = SIS. ?
45
NO
YNG→
NO
YNG

LESSON 45

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Ch'ān Sin-Shaang, hó la-mà?

   B: Hó hó, yaŭ-sam, neĭ ne, Paâk Sin-Shaang?

   A: To haî kóm la, p'îng-p'îng-sheūng-sheūng la!

2. A: Neĭ haî pak-fong yān, tîm-kaaí neĭ kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ* kóng-tak kòm laū-leî à?

   B: Neĭ kwòh-tseúng che, saì-ló-koh kè shī-haû, ngŏh haí Shaáng-Shēng chuê-chóh hó noî.

3. A: Neĭ kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ* kóng-tak kòm laū-leî, neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* kóng-tak yaŭ mŏ neĭ kòm laū-leî à?

   B: K'uĭ kóng-tak m̄-ts'ŏh, taân-haî k'uĭ kóng-tak mŏ ngŏh kòm laū-leî.

4. A: Neĭ ch'eùng koh yaû ch'eùng-tak kòm hó, neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* yaŭ mŏ neĭ ch'eùng-tak kòm hó à?

   B: Ngŏh ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak mā-mā*-teî* che, k'uĭ ch'eùng-tak peí ngŏh hó hó toh.

5. A: Kóng-tò yaū-shuí, neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ,pin-kòh yaū shuí yaū-tak faaì ti, pin-kòh yaū-tak uĕn ti à?

   B: Sui-în k'uĭ yaū shuí yaū-tak yaŭ ngŏh kòm uĕn, taân-haî k'uĭ yaū-tak mŏ ngŏh kòm faaì.

6. A: Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* chíng sùng chíng-tak hó hó, neĭ yaŭ mŏ k'uĭ chíng-tak kòm hó à?

   B: Kóng-tò chíng sùng, ngŏh mŏ k'uĭ chíng-tak kòm hó; pat-kwòh, ngŏh yaŭ k'uĭ chíng-tak kòm faaì.

7. A: Neĭ kè taaî nuĭ* t'iù mŏ t'iù-tak hó hó, neĭ kè taî-î nuĭ* t'iù-tak yaŭ mŏ k'uĭ kòm hó à?

   B: Ngŏh kè taî-î nuĭ* t'iù mŏ yîk-to t'iù-tak hó hó; taân-haî k'uĭ t'iù-tak mŏ ngŏh kè taaî nuĭ* kòm hó.

8. A: Yaŭ yān wâ, neĭ kè taaî tsaí yám tsaú yám-tak toh kwòh-t'aū, neĭ kè saì tsaí yaŭ mŏ k'uĭ yám-tak kòm toh à?

   B: Ngŏh kè saì tsaí yám tsaú yîk-to yám-tak hó toh; taân haî, k'uĭ yám tsaú mŏ ngŏh kè taaî tsaí yám-tak kòm kán-iù.

LESSON 45

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

9. A: Kóm, tsik-haî wâ, neĭ kè saí tsaí kè tsaú-leûng mŏ taaî tsaí kè kòm hó, haî mà?

B: M̄-yat-tîng, ngŏh ĭ-waî k'uĭ leŭng-kòh yăn kè tsaú-leûng ch'a-m̄-toh.

10. A: Neĭ kè taaî-ló shaí ch'e shaí-tak hó siú-sam, neĭ kè saî-ló shaí-tak yaŭ mŏ k'uĭ kòm siú-sam à?

B: Ngŏh kè saî-ló shaí ch'e shaí-tak mŏ taaî-ló kòm siú-sam, k'uĭ taaî-î kwòh-t'aŭ.

A: Neĭ kè taaî-chí tûk shue tûk-tak hó k'ān-lîk, neĭ kè mooĭ* yaŭ mŏ k'uĭ tûk-tak kòm k'ān-lîk à?

B: Ngŏh kè mooĭ* tûk shue mŏ taaî-chí tûk-tak kòm k'ān-lîk, k'uĭ laăn tak-chaî.

LESSON 45

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Mr. Ch'ān, how are you?

   B: Very well, thank you. And you, Mr. White?

   A: Same as usual.

2. A: You are a northerner; how can you speak Cantonese with such fluency?

   B: You flatter me. When I was a child, I lived in Metropolitan Canton for some time.

3. A: You speak Cantonese so fluently. Does your wife speak just as well?

   B: She isn't bad at all. However, she doesn't speak as fluently as I do.

4. A: You also sing well. Does your wife sing as well as you do?

   B: I can get by, but she sings much better than I.

5. A: Speaking of swimming, who swims faster and farther, you or your wife?

   B: She swims as far as I, but not as fast as I.

6. A: Your wife cooks very well. Do you cook as well?

   B: As far as cooking is concerned, I do not cook as well as she. But I cook just as fast.

7. A: Your oldest daughter dances very well. Does your second daughter dance as well?

   B: My second daughter also dances very well , but she does not dance as well as my oldest daughter.

8. A: Someone said that your oldest son does excessive drinking. Does your younger son drink as much as he?

   B: My younger son also drinks much. But he does not drink as much as my oldest son.

9. A: Therefore you mean to say that your younger son's capacity for liquor is not as great as your oldest son's, is that right?

LESSON 45

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

B: Not necessarily. I think their capacities for liquor are about the same.

10. A: Your older brother drives very carefully. Does your younger brother drive as carefully as he?

B: My younger brother does not drive as carefully as my older brother. He is too careless.

A: Your older sister studies very diligently. Does your younger sister study as diligently as she?

B: My younger sister does not study as diligently as my older sister. She is too lazy.

LESSON 45

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Paâk Chung-Kaaù, neĭ kân-loî keí hó la-mà?

B: Hó hó, yaŭ-sam, neĭ ne, Hōh Haaû-Cheúng.

A: P'îng-p'îng-sheūng-sheūng la,Paâk Chung-Kaaù.

2. A: Paâk Chung-Kaaù, ni waî* haî pin-kòh à? Neĭ chûng meî t'ūng ngŏh kaaì-shiû.

B: Ni waî* haî Leĭ Siù-Kaaù, ngŏh seúng kaaì-shiû k'uĭ t'ūng neĭ seung-shik.
Ni waî* haî Leĭ Siù-Kaaù, ni waî* haî Hōh Haaû-Cheúng.

3. A: Leĭ Siù-Kaaù haî m̄-haî neĭ kè t'ūng-sẑ à?

B: Haî, Leĭ Siù-Kaaù haî ngŏh kè lŏ t'ūng-sẑ, yaû haî kaû t'ūng-hôk.

4. A: Leĭ Siù-Kaaù, neĭ hó-ts'z̆ hó mîn-shûk kóm kè*!

C: Neĭ yîk-to hó-tsz̆ hó mîn-shûk, Hōh Haaû-Cheúng.

5. A: Neĭ keì m̄-keì-tak ngŏh-teî ĭ-ts'în haí pin shuè kìn-kwòh kà?

C: Ngŏh keì-tak là, ngŏh ĭ-ts'în haí Kwóng-Chau kìn-kwòh neĭ.

6. A: Neĭ ĭ-ts'în yaŭ huì-kwòh Kwóng-Tung me?

C: Huì-kwòh lòh! Ngŏh haí Kwóng-Chau kè Lû[illegible]-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû kè shî-haû, neĭ haí yat-kaan hôk-haaû kaaù-kán shue, keì-tak mà?

7. A: Haî là, ngŏh keì-tak là, Leĭ Siù-Kaaù.

B: Koó-m̄-tò, ngŏh-teî saam-kòh yān to haî lŏ p'āng-yaŭ, chan ngaam là!

8. A: Â, Paâk Chung-Kaaù, kóng-chóh kòm nọî, ngŏh chûng meî mân neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì*; k'uĭ keí hó la-mà?

B: K'uĭ ni keí yât kòk-tak m̄-haî keí shue-fûk.

9. A: K'uĭ kòk-tak tîm-yeûng* m̄-shue-fûk à?

B: K'uĭ ts'în-yât kòk-tak t'aū t'ùng, faàt-ît faàt-tak keí ko.

LESSON 45

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. A: Haî m̄-haî yan-waî t'in-heì m̄-hó à?

B: Hóh-nāng haî là, ni leŭng-kòh laĭ-paaì kè t'in-heì hó m̄-hó.

11. A: Haí sheûng leŭng-kòh laĭ-paaì chi-noî, neĭ kóh shuè kè t'in-heì tím-yeûng* à?

B: Haí sheûng leŭng-kòh laĭ-paaì chi-noî, ngŏh kóh shuè, yaŭ-shî sheûng-chaù hó-t'in, hó ît; hâ-chaù faan-fung, lôk taaî uĕ; yê-maăn-hak hó laăng, lôk taaî shuèt.

12. A: Waâk-ché yan-waî kóm-yeûng*, neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* kòk-tak m̄-haî keí shue-fûk là!

B: Ngŏh koó haî là! Yan-waî t'in-heì m̄-hó, shóh-ĭ k'uĭ kòk-tak m̄-haî keí shue-fûk.

13. A: Uē-kwoh haî kóm, k'uĭ iù siú-sam ti, m̄-hó huì kòm toh kaai là!

B: Haî, ni kòh ì-kìn hó hó, ngŏh to haî kóm seúng.

14. A: K'uĭ î-ka haí pin shuè à?

B: K'uĭ î-ka haí uk-k'eí t'aú-hă.

15. A: K'uĭ hó-chóh chi-haû, neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ laî ngŏh shuè ts'ŏh-hă la, hó mà?

B: Hó à, k'uĭ hó-chóh chi-haû, ngŏh yat-tîng t'ūng k'uĭ laî paaì-haû neĭ.

LESSON 45

WORD LIST

1.	to haî kôm la!	same here, me too, the feeling is mutual, that goes for me too.
2.	pak-fong	north side, northern part
3.	pak-fong yān	northerner, people from the north
4.	ch'eùng	to sing
5.	koh	song
6.	ch'eùng koh	to sing, sing a song
7.	kóng-tò	speaking of, regarding, concerning, as far as...is concerned
8.	yaū	to swim
9.	shuí	water
10.	yaū shuí	to swim; swimming
11.	chíng	to make, fix, do, prepare, cook
12.	sùng	food, meal, dishes of food
13.	chíng sùng	to cook, prepare chinese dishes
14.	leûng(leūng)	capacity, volume, (to measure)
15.	tsaú-leûng	capacity for liquor
16.	shaí ch'e	to drive (a car)
17.	laăn	lazy
18.	shue-fûk	comfortable

LESSON 45

READING MATERIAL

1117

等 táng: a class; degree; to wait; equal to.

上等 sheûng táng: first class; best quality.

頭等 t'aū táng: first class.

平等 ng-táng: equality; equal.

等候 táng-haû: to wait for.

293

可 hóh: can; may; possible; to mermit

可以 hóh-ĭ: can; possible

可靠 hóh-k'aaù: reliable

可憐 hóh-līn: pitiful

可惜 hóh-sik: it is a pity

796

玩 oôn: to toy; to play; to enjoy.

遊玩 yaū-oôn: to ramble about.

玩具 oôn-kuî: toy; plaything.

等 可 玩

等 可 玩

等 可 玩

817

辦 paân: to do; to manage; to perform.

辦事 paân-sẑ: to transact business.

辦法 paân-faàt: method of action.

辦事處 paân-sẑ-ch'uè: an office.

查辦 ch'ā-paân: to investigate and take act~~ion~~.

168

法 faàt: law; rules means; French

法子 faàt-tsź: means ways

設法 ch'ĭt-faàt: find a means

法律 faàt-lût: laws

法院 faàt-ûn: a court of law

辦 办 法

辦 法

办 法

LESSON 45

READING MATERIAL

580

懶 laǎn: lazy; reluctant.

懶惰 laǎn-tôh: lazy; slothful.

偷懶 t'au laǎn: to stay away from work; to shirk work.

576

啦 la: phonetic.

呀 a: final particle

呀 a: final particle

呀 ā: final particle

呀 à: mildly emphatic; calling attention

懶 啦 呀

懶 啦 呀

懒 啦 呀

1099

底 taí: the underside; end; finally.

底下 taí-hâ: below; underneath.

海底 hoí taí: the bottom of the sea.

到底 tò-taí: after all; finally.

607

量 leûng: capacity; to judge; to estimate.

力量 lîk-leûng: strength; ability.

量力 leûng-lîk: to weigh one's strength or ability.

大量 taaî-leûng: broad minded; generous.

底 量

底 量

底 量

LESSON 45

READING MATERIAL

而家陳英同黃小姐去 wán 房. 黃小姐行得冇陳英 kòm 快. 黃小姐話, wán 房都唔使 kòm 心急 kà. 頭先食 chóh kòm 多野,而家行得 kòm 快,太辛苦啦.

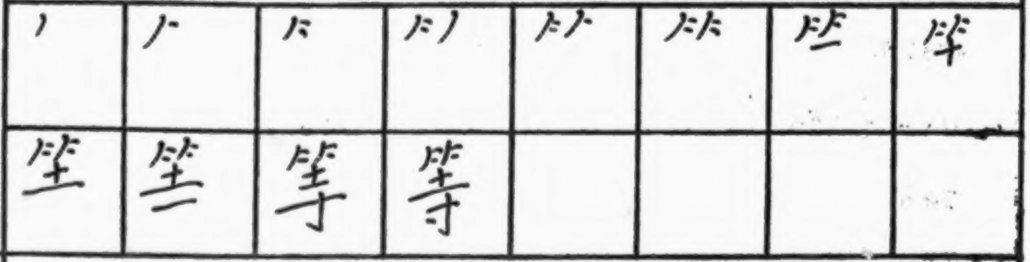
陳英而家行路行得冇頭先 kòm 快啦. 佢知道黃小姐而家懶行. 佢想叫黃小姐去 ts'aan-室處坐吓先. 等佢自己快啲行去 wán 房. 敢樣做黃小姐可以 t'aú 吓; 佢又可以快啲去 wán 房. wán chóh 房之後,就可以去玩啦. 但係,黃小姐一定要一齊去 wán 房至得呀. 陳英冇辦法,佢只有同黃小姐慢慢地敢行去 wán 房.

佢地行吓行吓,重未睇見有好嘅酒店. 到底陳英係一個有心嘅人;佢就話,不如先去飲啲酒,同時可以 t'aú 吓. 黃小姐都係敢話. 黃小姐嘅酒量冇陳英嘅 kòm 大. 但係陳英唔想飲得太多,因為重有第二樣嘅事做.

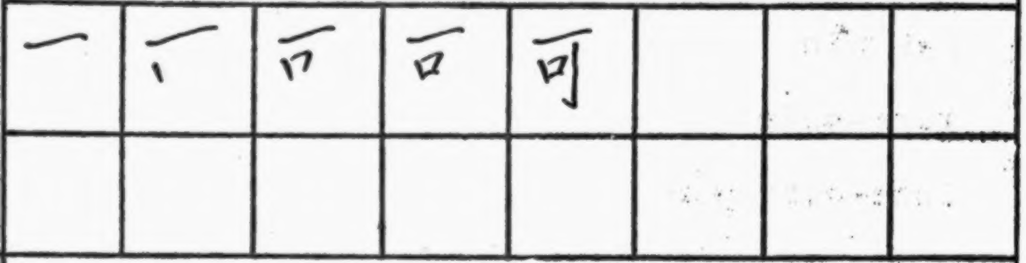
LESSON 45

WRITING MATERIAL

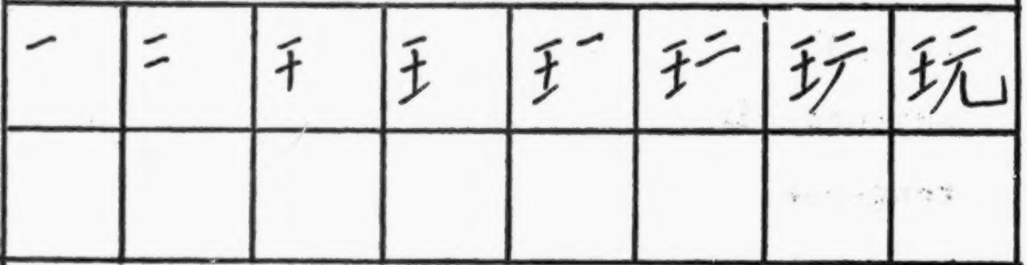
等	Character Number 1117 Stroke Number 12	Radical Number 118 ⺮，竹



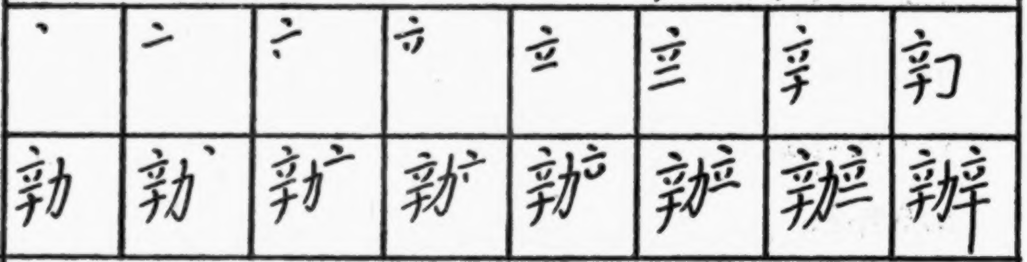
可	Character Number 293 Stroke Number 5	Radical Number 30 口



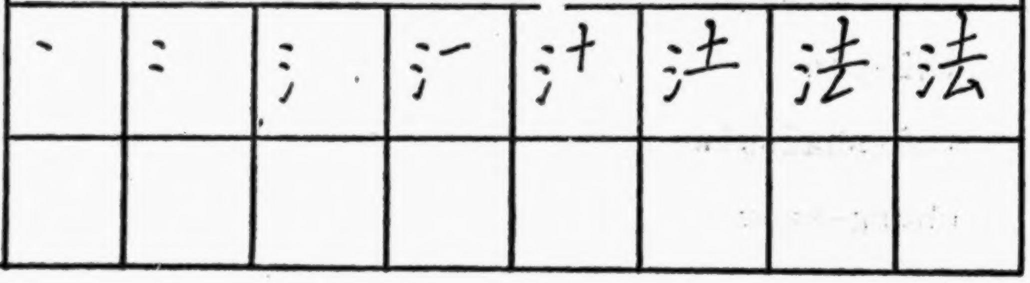
玩	Character Number 796 Stroke Number 8	Radical Number 96 王，玉



辦	Character Number 817 Stroke Number 16	Radical Number 160 辛，辛



法	Character Number 168 Stroke Number 10	Radical Number 85 氵，水



LESSON 46

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. tung

tung-pîn

naām

naām-pîn

sai

sai-pîn

pak

pak-pîn

tung-naām

tung-naām-pîn

sai-naām

sai-naām-pîn

sai-pak

sai-pak-pîn

tung-pak

tung-pak-pîn

sheûng-pîn

hâ-pîn

ts'în-pîn

haû-pîn

chóh-pîn

chóh-shaú-pîn

yaû-pîn

yaû-shaú-pîn

chung-kaan

LESSON 46

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

2. tung-pîn

ni kòh shîng-shĭ kè tung-pîn

haí ni kòh shîng-shĭ kè tung-pîn

Ni kaan uk haí ni kòh shîng-shĭ kè tung-pîn.

Ni kaan uk haí ni kòh shîng-shĭ kè pin pîn à?

Ni kaan uk haí ni kòh shîng-shĭ kè tung-pîn.

sheûng-pîn

hâ-pîn

shaan kè sheûng-pîn

haí shaan kè sheûng-pîn

K'uĭ kè uk haí shaan kè sheûng-pîn.

K'uĭ kè uk haí pin shuè à?

K'uĭ kè uk haí shaan kè sheûng-pîn.

Ngŏh kè uk haí shaan kè hâ-pîn.

ts'în-pîn

ngŏh kè ts'în-pîn

k'eĭ haí ngŏh kè ts'în-pîn

K'uĭ k'eĭ haí ngŏh kè ts'în-pîn.

K'uĭ k'eĭ haí neĭ kè pin pîn à?

K'uĭ k'eĭ haí ngŏh kè ts'în-pîn.

K'uĭ k'eĭ haí pin shuè à?

K'uĭ k'eĭ haí ngŏh kè ts'în-pîn.

K'uĭ k'eĭ haí ngŏh kè chóh-pîn.

K'uĭ k'eĭ haí ngŏh kè chóh-shaú-pîn.

K'uĭ k'eĭ haí ngŏh kè yaû-pîn.

K'uĭ k'eĭ haí ngŏh kè yaû-shaú-pîn.

LESSON 46

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

chung-kaan

neĭ t'ūng ngŏh kè chung-kaan

K'uĭ haì neĭ t'ūng ngŏh kè chung-kaan.

K'uĭ k'eĭ haì neĭ t'ūng ngŏh kè chung-kaan.

K'uĭ k'eĭ haì pin-kòh t'ūng pin-kòh kè chung-kaan à?

K'uĭ k'eĭ haì neĭ t'ūng ngŏh kè chung-kaan.

3. tung-pîn kè ts'în-pîn

Ni kaan uk kè tung-pîn kè ts'în-pîn

Ni kaan uk kè tung-pîn kè ts'în-pîn yaŭ yān.

Ni kaan uk kè tung-pîn kè ts'în-pîn yaŭ mŏ yān à?

Ni kaan uk kè tung-pîn kè ts'în-pîn yaŭ yān.

haû-pîn kè chóh-pîn

Ni kaan uk kè haû-pîn kè chóh-pîn yaŭ ch'e.

sheûng pîn kè yaû-pîn

Kóh cheung t'oī* kè sheûng-pîn kè yaû-pîn hó oo-tso.

Kóh cheung t'oī* kè sheûng-pîn kè yaû-pîn oo m-oo-tso à?

Kóh cheung t'oī* kè sheûng-pîn kè yaû-pîn hó oo-tso.

ni kòh shîng-shĭ kè tung-pîn

shaan kè sheûng-pîn

ngŏh kè ts'în-pîn

ngŏh t'ūng neĭ kè chung-kaan

tung-pîn kè ts'în-pîn

haû-pîn kè chóh-pîn

sheûng-pîn kè yaû-pîn

LESSON 46
ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

4. haí

haí tung-naām-pîn

haí tung-naām-pîn shâp leĭ

haí Naú-Yeùk tung-naām shâp leĭ

Kóh kòh shîng-shĭ haí Naú-Yeùk kè tung-naām shâp leĭ.

Kóh kòh shîng-shĭ leí Naú-Yeùk kè tung-naām shâp leĭ.

Kóh kòh shîng-shĭ leí Naú-Yeùk keí uĕn à?

Kóh kòh shîng-shĭ leí Naú-Yeùk kè tung-naām shâp leĭ.

Kóh kòh shîng-shĭ haí Naú-Yeùk kè tung-naām shâp leĭ.

5. ch'uí-chóh....chi-ngoî

ch'uí-chóh

ch'uí-chóh k'uĭ

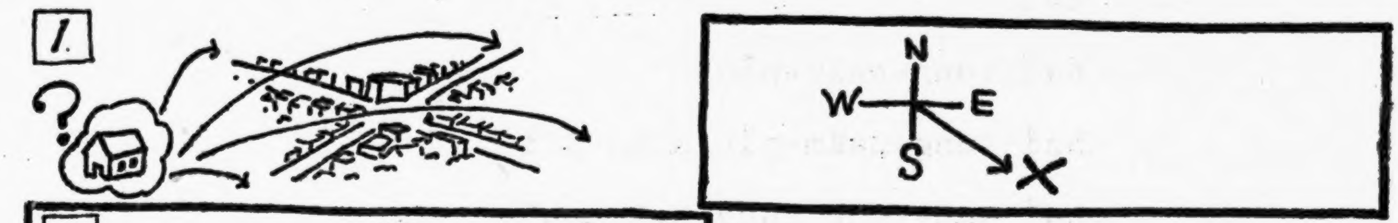
ch'uí-chóh k'uĭ chi-ngoî

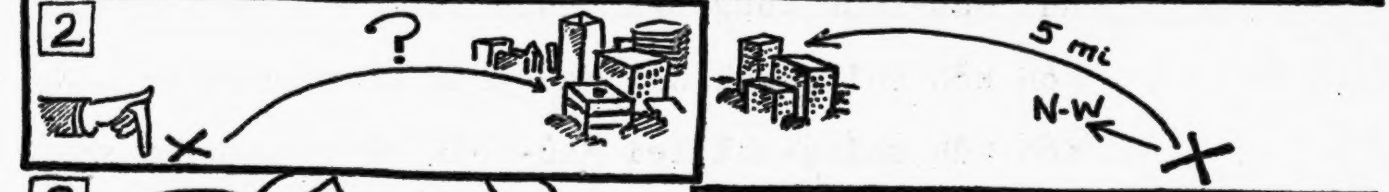
haí kóh kaan uk, ch'uí-chóh k'uĭ chi-ngoî

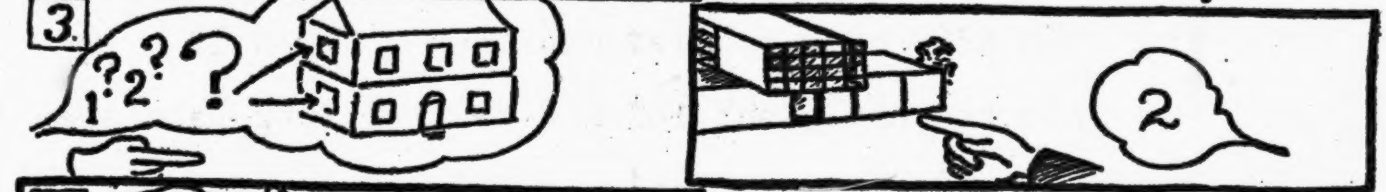
Haí kóh kaan uk, ch'uí-chóh k'uĭ chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ hó toh yān.
Haí kóh kaan uk, ch'uí-chóh k'uĭ chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ pin-kòh à?

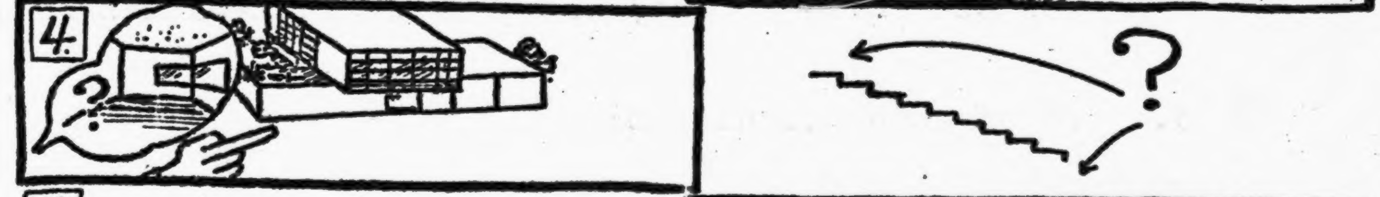
Haí kóh kaan uk, ch'uí-chóh k'uĭ chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ hó toh yān.

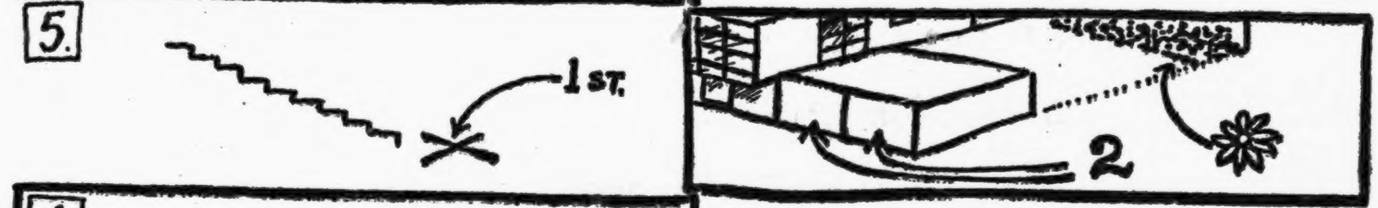
LESSON 46

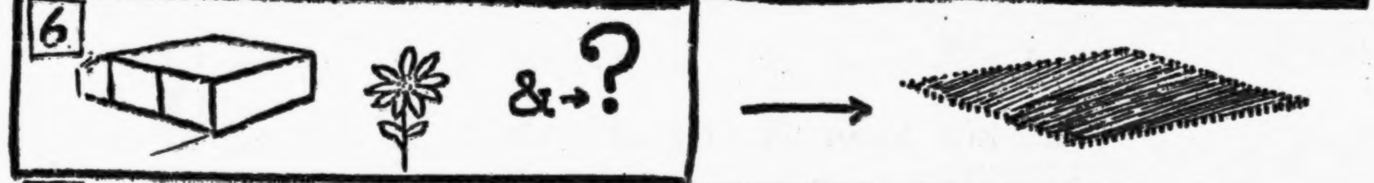


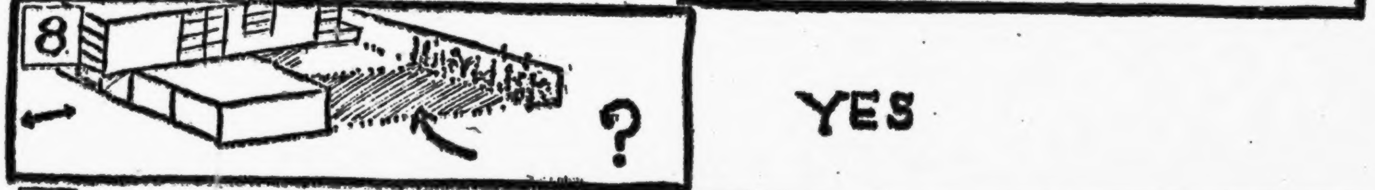


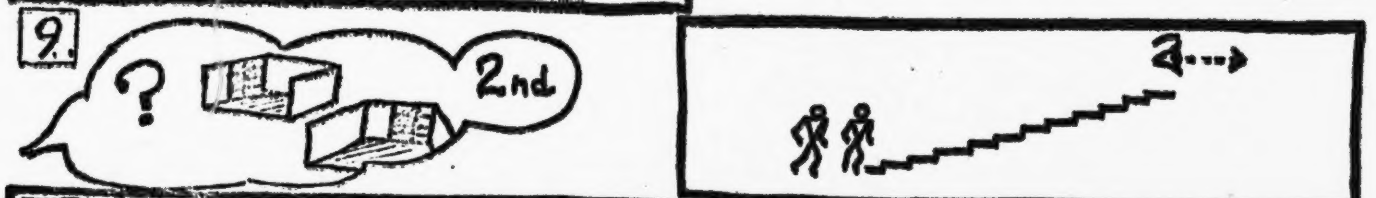


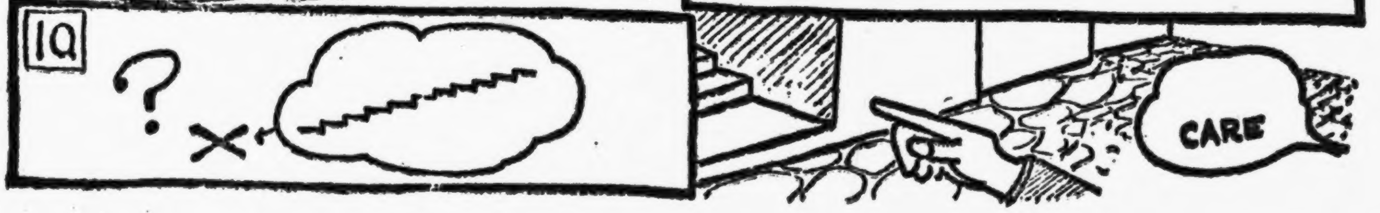












LESSON 46

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Neĭ ni kaan uk haí ni kòh shîng-shĭ kè pin pîn à?

B: Ngŏh ni kaan uk haí ni kòh shîng-shĭ kè tung-naām-pîn.

2. A: Shĭ-k'ui leî ni shuè keí uĕn à?

B: Shĭ-k'ui haí ni shuè kè sai-pak-pîn, leî ni shuè taaî-yeùk* nğ leĭ kòm sheûng-hâ*.

3. A: Neĭ ni kaan uk yaŭ keí-toh ts'āng laū* à?

B: Neĭ t'aí-hă,ngŏh ni kaan uk yaŭ leŭng-ts'āng.

4. A: Ni kaan uk yaŭ keí-toh kaan fōng* à?

B: Neĭ kóng laū-sheûng, yik-waâk lāu-hâ à?

5. A: Neĭ kóng laū-hâ sin la!

B: Laū-hâ yaŭ leŭng-kòh ch'e-fōng, ch'e-fōng kè haû-pîn haî fa-uēn*

6. A: Ch'uî-chóh leŭng-kòh ch'e-fōng t'ūng fa-uēn* chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ ti mi-yĕ à?

B: Ch'uî-chóh leŭng-kòh ch'e-fōng t'ūng fa-uēn* chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ yat-faaî ts'ó-teî, haî-kòm-toh.

7. A: Kóh faaî ts'ó-teî haí pin shuè à?

B: Kóh faaî ts'ó-teî haí fa-uēn* kè ts'în-pîn.

8. A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm; tsik-haî wâ, kóh faaî ts'ó-teî haí fa-uēn* t'ūng ch'e-fōng kè chung-kaan, haî mà?

B: Haî là, kóh faaî ts'ó-teî haí fa-uēn* t'ūng ch'e-fōng kè chung-kaan.

9. A: Î-laū* yaŭ keí kaan fōng* à?

B: Ngŏh-teî yat-ch'aî sheŭng huî t'aí-hă la!

10. A: Laū-t'ai haí pin shuè à?

B: Laū-t'ai haí ni shuè, siú-sam ti.

LESSON 46

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: On which side of this city is this house of yours situated?

   B: This house of mine is situated on the southeast side of this city.

2. A: How far is the business district of the city from here?

   B: The business district of the city is about 5 miles northwest of here.

3. A: How many stories does this house of yours have?

   B: You take a look, this house of mine has two stories.

4. A: How many rooms are there in this house?

   B: Are you talking about upstairs or downstairs?

5. A: You tell me about downstairs first.

   B: There are two garages downstairs, behind the garages is the flower garden.

6. A: Besides the two garages and flower garden, is there anything else?

   B: Besides the two garages and the flower garden, there is a lawn and that's all.

7. A: Where is the lawn?

   B: The lawn is in front of the flower garden.

8. A: If that is the case, that means the lawn is in between the flower garden and the garages, isn't that right?

   B: Right, the lawn is in between the flower garden and the garages.

9. A: How many rooms are there on the second floor?

   B: Let us go up together and take a look.

10. A: Where is the staircase?

    B: The staircase is over here. Be careful.

LESSON 46

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Paâk Chung-Kaaù, ngŏh-teî chìng-wâ kóng-tò neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì*, haî mà?

B: Haî, chûng kóng k'uĭ, tsô mi-yĕ à, Hŏh Haaû-Cheúng.

2. A: Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* haî yat-kòh hó ch'ung-mìng hó poón-sẑ kè nuĭ-yān*.

B: Neĭ kwòh-tseúng che, k'uĭ chì-haî yat-kòh hó p'ìng-sheŭng kè nuĭ-yān* che.

3. A: K'uĭ m̄-chì kóm, ì-ch'é tsô sẑ hó yìng-chan, hó foô-tsaàk.

B: Ngŏh kòk-tak, k'uĭ tsô sẑ mŏ neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* kòm yìng-chan, kòm foô-tsaàk.

4. A: Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* chung m̄-chung-ì kóng shuèt-wâ kà?

B: K'uĭ m̄-haî keì chung-ì kóng shuèt-wâ, taân-haî hó ooĭ kóng shuèt-wâ.

5. A: K'uĭ kóng wâ* kè shì-haû, kóng-tak taaî m̄-taaî-seng à?

B: K'uĭ kóng wâ kè shì-haû, kóng-tak m̄-taaî-seng, k'uĭ kóng-tak hó saì-seng.

6. A: Ngŏh koó, mooĭ kòh yìng-shik k'uĭ kè yān, to hó foon-heì k'uĭ, haî mà?

B: Haî, mooĭ kòh yìng-shik k'uĭ kè p'āng-yaŭ, to hó foon-heì k'uĭ.

7. A: A, tò ì-ka, ngŏh chûng meî mân neĭ leŭng-waî*; neĭ leŭng waî* seúng yám ti mi-yĕ à; hūng-ch'ā, kà-fe, yik-waâk tsaú à?

B: Mi-yĕ to m̄-kán-iù, taân-haî ngŏh m̄-hóh-ĭ yám-tak t'aaì toh kà-fe.

8. A: Tìm-kaaì neĭ m̄-hóh-ĭ yám tak t'aaì toh kà-fe à?

B: Uē-kwóh ngŏh yám-chóh t'aaì toh kà-fe, ngŏh yê-maăn m̄-fàn-tak.

9. A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, yám ti hūng-ch'ā la!

B: Hó à, hūng-ch'ā peì-kaaù kà-fe hó ti.

LESSON 46

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. A: Paâk Chung-Kaaù, ngŏh seúng mân neĭ taî-î kòh mân-t'aî.

B: Mi-yĕ mân-t'aî à?

11. A: Neĭ kè pô-tuî* chuè-fōng haî pin shuè à?

B: Ngŏh kè pô-tuî* chuè-fōng haî yat-kòh hó saî kè shaan shuè.

12. A: Kóh kòh shaan leî ni shuè yaŭ keî uĕn à?

B: Kóh kòh shaan leî ni shuè kè tung-pîn taaî-yeùk* yat-paàk-paàt-shâp leĭ kòm sheûng-hâ*.

13. A: Neĭ kè pô-tuî* yaŭ keî-toh koon-ping à?

B: Taaî-yeùk* yaŭ leŭng-ts'in koon-ping kòm-sheûng-hâ*.

14. A: Ts'în keî yât pò-chî wâ, Taaî-Mô-Shaan lôk taaî shuèt, lôk-chóh seî nğ yât; neĭ kóh shuè ne?

B: Ngŏh kóh shuè tsaû haî Taaî-Mô-Shaan, lôk shuèt lôk-chóh nğ yât, hó laăng.

15. A: Kóm, neĭ kóh shuè t'ūng ngoî-pîn kè kaau-t'ung pîn m̄-pîn-leî à?

B: Kóh shuè t'ūng ngoî-pîn kè kaau-t'ung fei-sheūng-chi m̄-pîn-leî.

LESSON 46

WORD LIST

1.	**shîng-shĭ**	city
2.	**tung-naām pîn**	southeast, southeast side
3.	**shĭ-k'ui**	business district of a city, downtown
4.	**sai-pak pîn**	northwest, northwest side
5.	**ts'āng**	AN, story of a building layer
6.	**ts'āng laū***	AN, story of a building, floor
7.	**laū-sheûng**	upstairs, upper floor
8.	**laū-hâ**	downstairs, lower floor
9.	**ch'e-fōng**	garage
10.	**fa**	flower
11.	**fa-uēn***	flower garden
12.	**ch'uī**	to remove (dress, hat, etc)
13.	**ch'uī-chóh.. chi-ngoî**	besides, in addition to, with the exception of
14.	**faaî**	AN, a piece of, a slice of
15.	**ts'ó**	grass, weed
16.	**ts'ó-teî**	lawn
17.	**î-laū***	second floor
18.	**laū-t'ai**	stair, staircase

LESSON 46

READING MATERIAL

6

差 ch'a: wrong, different.

差 ch'aai: a messenger.

差啲多 ch'a-ti-toh: almost, nearly most.

差得遠 ch'a-tak-uēn: very different, far from it.

郵差 yaū-ch'aai: a postman.

933

山 shaan: mountain; hill.

山頂 shaan téng: top of a mountain.

山嶺 shaan-lǐng: hill; mountain.

山脈 shaan-mâk: mountain range.

156

花 fa: flowers; blossom

花王 fa-wōng: gardener

花紅 fa-hūng: reward

花園 fa-uēn: garden

花布 fa-pò: flowered cloth

差 山 花

差 山 花

差 山 花

728

南 naām: the South.

南洋 naām-yeūng: The East Indies.

南京 naām-king: Nanking.

西南 sai-naām: southwest.

指南針 chí-naām-cham: the compass.

1276

草 ts'ó: grass; plant; vegetation.

青草 ts'ing ts'ó: green grass.

草地 ts'ó teî: meadow; lawn.

草木 ts'ó-mûk: grass and tress; vegetation.

南 草

南 草

南 草

LESSON 46
READING MATERIAL

1300

全	ts'uĕn: all; complete; perfect.
完全	uĕn-ts'uĕn: complete; perfect.
全球	ts'uĕn k'aū: the whole world.
全體	ts'uĕn-t'aí: whole body or group.

1219

層	ts'āng: a layer; stratum; story of house; degree.
一層	yát ts'āng: a layer; a story(of a house)
層次	ts'āng-ts'ž: order; series; gradation.

1105

梯	t'ai: ladder; step, stair.
木梯	mûk t'ai: a wooden ladder.
樓梯	laū-tai: stair.

全　　層　　梯

全　層　梯

全　　層　　梯

898

般	poon: a sort; kind; manner; way.
一般	yat-poon: alike; same as; in general.

[illegible]

塊	faai: clod; lump; pieces(cl.)
一塊布	yat-faai pò: a piece of cloth
一塊地	yat-faai teí: a plot of ground

般　　塊

般　塊

般　　塊

LESSON 46

READING MATERIAL

陳英同黃小姐飲chóh啲酒之後，黃小姐而家覺得有頭先kòm瘡啦。而家佢地又要去wán房啦。佢地行過兩t'iū街che，就睇見一間大酒店。

呢間大酒店有五層樓，一層高過一層；樓上的人差唔多都可以睇見全個城市啦。南便有T'ōng人-Faû，東便有山，有水。酒店嘅前便有一大塊草地；草地上有花，又紅又綠，又香又lèng。酒店裏便有tā大樓梯。呢間酒店，喺外便睇黎，係唔錯嘅。佢地睇過啲房啦，地方都好乾淨，有電燈，有冷熱水，都幾便利。一般黎講，啲房都唔算貴啦。

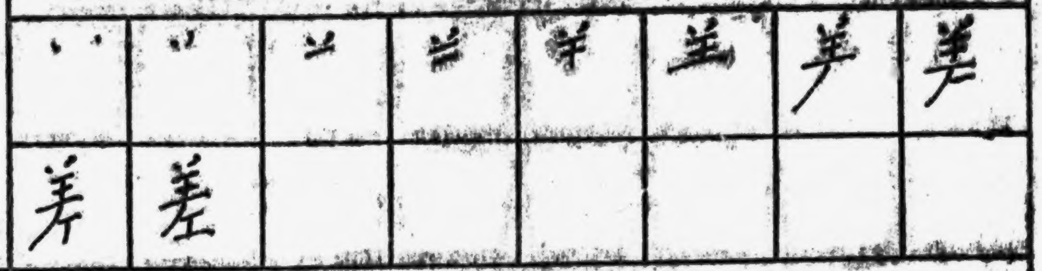
而家wán倒房啦，時候重早，佢地打算去wán陳英嘅親-ts'ik。

LESSON 46

WRITING MATERIAL

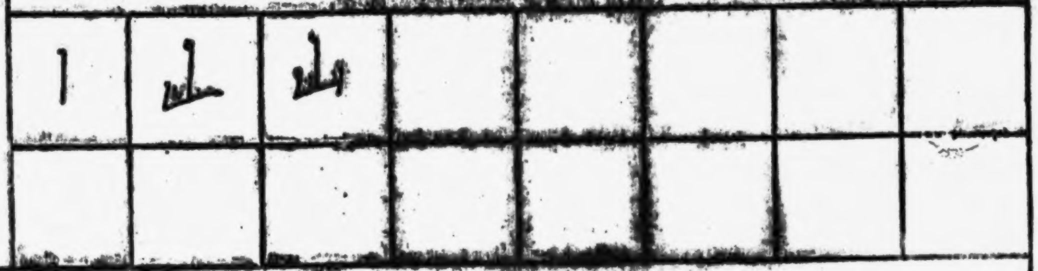
差

Character Number 6 Radical Number 48
Stroke Number 10 工



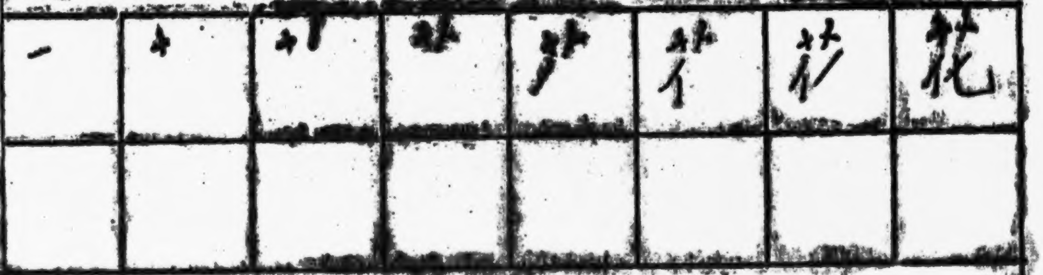
山

Character Number 933 Radical Number 46
Stroke Number 3 山



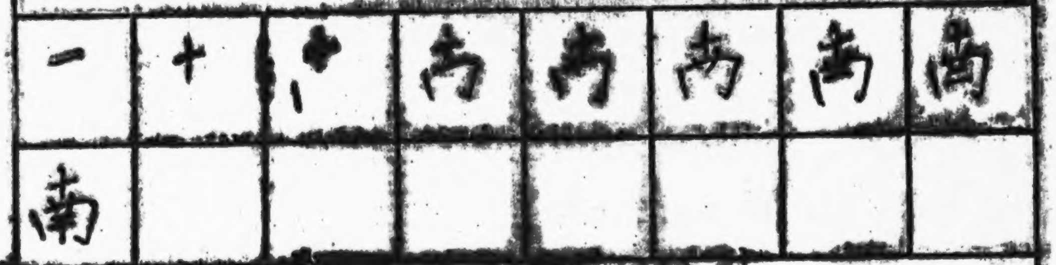
花

Character Number 158 Radical Number 140
Stroke Number 8 艹 , 艸



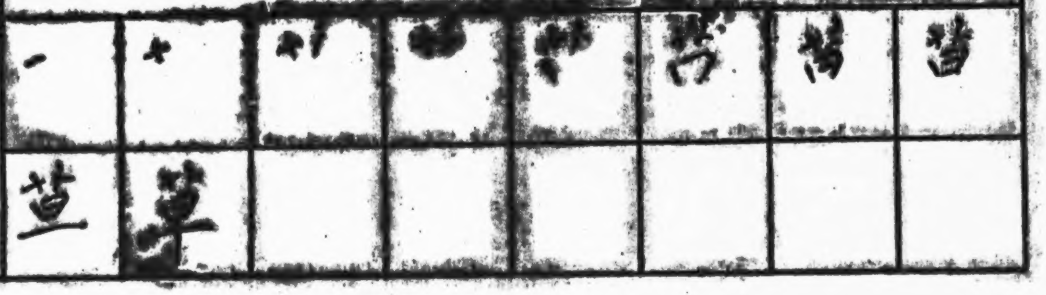
南

Character Number 728 Radical Number 24
Stroke Number 9 十



草

Character Number 1276 Radical Number 140
Stroke Number 10 艹 , 艸



LESSON 47

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

chóh

chóh-pîn

chóh-shaú-pîn

Neĭ k'eĭ haí ngŏh kè chóh-shaú-pîn.

Ngŏh k'eĭ haí neĭ kè pin pîn à?

Neĭ k'eĭ haí ngŏh kè chóh-shaú-pîn.

yaû

yaû-pîn

yaû-shaú-pîn

Ngŏh ts'ŏh haí neĭ kè yaû-shaú-pîn.

ts'în-pîn

Neĭ kè ts'în-pîn haî Wōng Sin-Shaang.

haû-pîn

Neĭ kè haû-pîn haî Leĭ Sin-Shaang.

sheûng-pîn

Sheûng-pîn yaŭ hó toh yān..

hâ-pîn

Hâ-pîn mŏ yān.

ngoî-pîn

ni kaan uk kè ngoî-pîn

Ni kaan uk kè ngoî-pîn yaŭ hó toh ch'e.

luĭ-pîn

Ni kaan uk yaŭ hó toh fōng*.

Ni kaan uk kè luĭ-pîn yaŭ hó toh fōng*.

LESSON 47

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

chung-kaan

fàn-fōng* t'ŭng haàk-t'eng kè chung-kaan

Fàn-fōng* t'ŭng haàk-t'eng kè chung-kaan haî shai-shan-fōng*.

tung

tung-pîn

tung-pîn* yān

Ngŏh haî tung-pîn* yān.

Neĭ haî pin shuè yān à?

Ngŏh haî tung-pîn* yān.

tung-pô

tung-pô kè teî-fong

Tung-pô kè teî-fong hó laăng.

Tung-pô kè teî-fong laăng m̀-laăng à?

Tung-pô kè teî-fong hó laăng.

tung-fong

tung-fong yān

Ngŏh haî tung-fong yān.

Neĭ haî pin shuè yān à?

Ngŏh haî tung-fong yān.

naăm

naăm-pîn

naăm-pîn* yan

Ngŏh haî naăm-pîn* yān.

naăm-pô

naăm-pô kè shîng-shĭ

Naam-pô kè shîng-shĭ hó ît.

LESSON 47

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Naam-pô kè shîng-shĭ ît m̄-ît à?

Naam-pô kè shîng-shĭ hó ît.

naām-fong

Ngŏh haî Meĭ-Kwòk naām-fong yān.

Neĭ haî Meĭ-Kwòk pin shuè yān à?

Ngŏh haî Meĭ-Kwòk naām-fong yān.

sai

sai-pîn

sai-pô

Meĭ-Kwòk kè sai-pô.

Ka-Shaáng haî Meĭ-Kwòk kè sai-pô.

Ka-Shaáng haî Meĭ-Kwòk pin shuè à?

Ka-Shaáng haî Meĭ-Kwòk kè sai-pô.

sai-fong

sai-fong yān

Meĭ-Kwòk yān haî sai-fong yān, Chung-Kwòk yān haî tung-fong yān.

pak

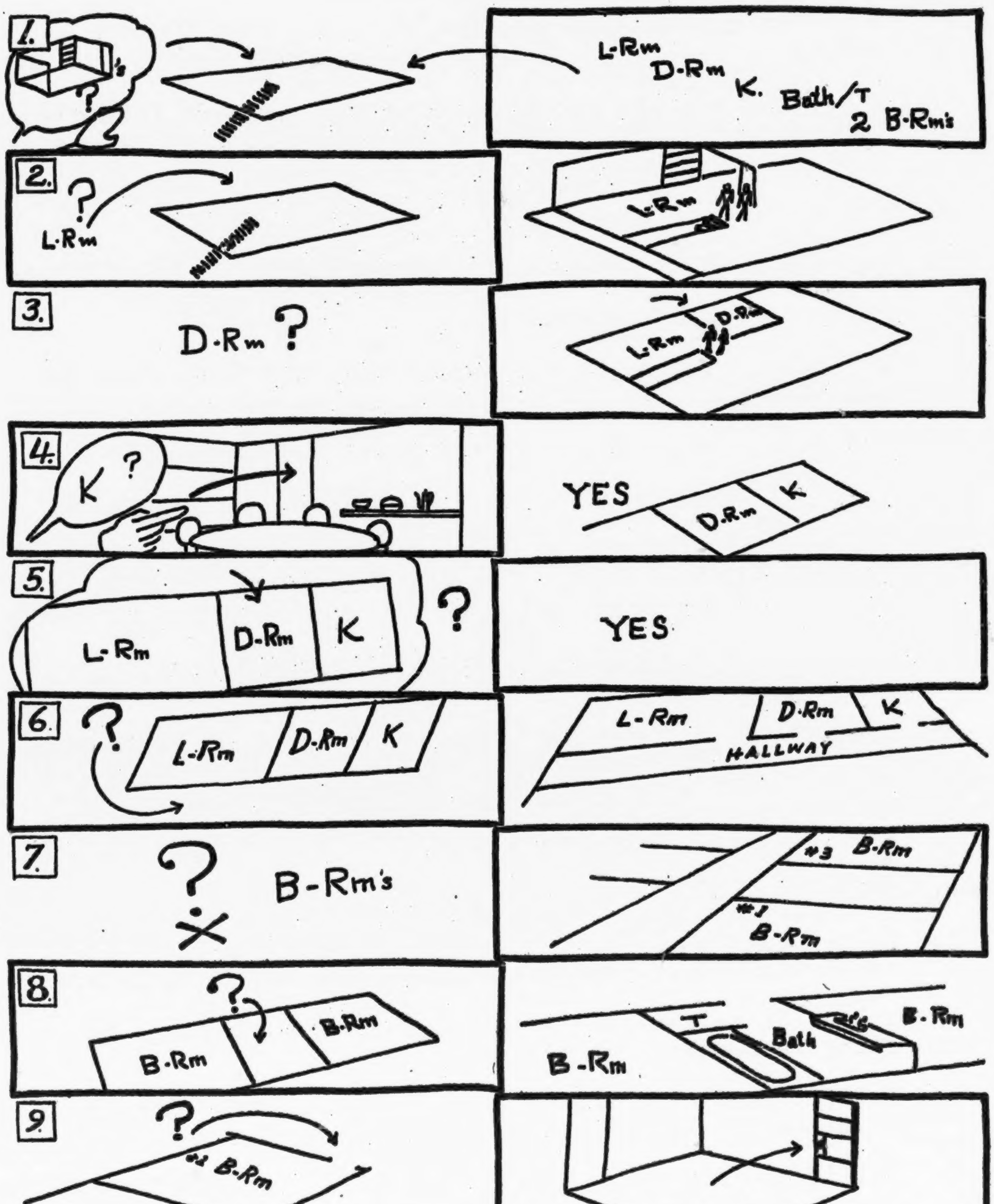
pak-pîn

pak-pîn* yān

pak-pô

Pak-fong yān shîk mâk, naām-fong yān shîk maĭ.

LESSON 47


1.
L-Rm
D-Rm
K.
Bath/T
2 B-Rm's
2.
?
L-Rm
L-Rm
3.
D-Rm ?
D-Rm
L-Rm
4.
K ?
YES
D-Rm
K
5.
L-Rm
D-Rm
K
?
YES
6.
?
L-Rm
D-Rm
K
L-Rm
D-Rm
K
HALLWAY
7.
?
B-Rm's
#3 B-Rm
#1 B-Rm
8.
?
B-Rm
B-Rm
T
Bath
B-Rm
B-Rm
9.
?
#2 B-Rm
10.
?
?

LESSON 47

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Neĭ ni ts'āng laū* yaŭ keí-toh kaan fōng* à?

B: Ni ts'āng laū*yaŭ yat-kòh haàk-t'eng, yat-kòh faân-t'eng, yat-kòh ch'uî fōng*, yat-kòh shaî-shan-fōng* t'ūng ts'z̀-shóh, leŭng-kòh fàn-fōng*.

2. A: Pin kaan haî haàk-t'eng à?

B: Ni kaan ch'eūng-fong kè haî haàk-t'eng.

3. A: Faân-t'eng haî pin shuè à?

B: Kóh kaan seì-fong kè haî faân-t'eng, haî haàk-t'eng kè yaû-shaú-pîn.

4. A: Haî faân-t'eng yaû-pîn kè haî m̄-haî ch'uî-fōng* à?

B: Haî, faân-t'eng yaû-pîn kè haî ch'uî-fōng*; faân-t'eng haî ch'uî-fōng* kè tsóh-pîn.

5. A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, faân-t'eng haî haàk-t'eng t'ūng ch'uî-fōng* kè chung-kaan, haî mà?

B: Haî, faân-t'eng haî haàk-t'eng t'ūng ch'uî-fōng* kè chung-kaan.

6. A: Haàk-t'eng, faân-t'eng, t'ūng ch'uî-fōng* kè ts'în-pîn haî mi-yĕ à?

B: Haàk-t'eng, faân-t'eng, t'ūng ch'uî-fōng* kè ts'în-pîn haî yat-t'iū laăng-hông*.

7. A: Fàn-fōng* haî pin shuè à?

B: Laăng-hông* kóh-pîn taî-yat kaan fōng* haî fàn-fōng*, taî-î-kaan fōng* yîk-to haî fàn-fōng*.

8. A: Taî-yat kaan fàn-fōng* t'ūng taî-î kaan fàn-fōng* kè chung-kaan haî mi-yĕ à?

B: Taî-yat kaan fàn-fōng* t'ūng taî-î kaan fàn-fōng* kè chung-kaan haî shaî-shan-fōng* t'ūng ts'z̀-shóh.

9. A: Taî-î-kaan fàn-fōng* kè tsuì yaû-shaú-pîn haî mi-yĕ à?

B: Taî-î kaan fàn-fōng* kè tsuì yaû-shaú-pîn haî waāng-moōn*.

LESSON 47

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: Waāng-moōn* kè ngoî-pîn haî mi-yĕ à?

B: Waāng-moōn* kè ngoî-pîn haî k'ē-laū*; neĭ t'aî-hă, ni ts'āng laū* kè seì-mìn chau-waî to yaŭ k'ē-laū*.

LESSON 47

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: How many rooms are there on this floor?

B: There is a living room, a dining room, a kitchen, a bathroom with toilet, and two bedrooms on this floor.

2. A: Which is the living room?

B: The rectangular one is the living room.

3. A: Where is the dining room?

B: The square one is the dining room. It is on the right hand side of the living room.

4. A: Is the one on the right of the dining room the kitchen?

B: Yes. The one on the right of the dining room is the kitchen. Therefore, the dining room is on the left of the kitchen.

5. A: If that is the case, the dining room is between the living room and the kitchen, isn't that right?

B: Yes. That's right.

6. A: What is in front of the living room, dining room, and kitchen?

B: A hallway is in front of the living room, dining room and kitchen.

7. A: Where are the bedrooms?

B: The first room on the other side of the hallway is a bedroom. The next room is also a bedroom.

8. A: What is between the first and the second bedroom?

B: The bathroom with toilet is between the first and the second bedroom.

9. A: What is on the extreme right of the second bedroom?

B: A side door is on the extreme right of the second bedroom.

10. A: What is on the outside of the side door?

B: A balcony is on the outside of the side door. Take a look. There are balconies all around the four sides of this floor.

LESSON 47

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Paâk Chung-Kaaù, chìng-wâ ngŏh-teì kóng-tò pin shuè à?

   B: Hōh Haaû-Cheúng, chìng-wâ ngŏh-teì kóng-tò Taaì-Mô-Shaan.

2. A: Neĭ kóh shuè lôk kòm taaì shuèt, ch'ut yâp kòm m̄-pîn-leì, neĭ tá-suèn tìm paân à?

   B: Ni ti haì hó p'ìng-sheūng kè sẑ, ngŏh mŏ mat tá-suèn.

3. A: Tuì-ue neĭ kè tseung-loì, neĭ yaŭ mi-yĕ kaì-waâk à?

   B: Ngŏh haì yat-kòh kwan-yān, ngŏh hó naān chi-tò ngŏh tseung-loì huì pin shuè, t'ūng tsô mi-yĕ.

4. A: Neĭ kè sheûng-sz tiû neĭ huì pin shuè, neĭ tsaû huì pin shuè, naì mà?

   B: Mŏ-ts'òh là, k'uĭ tiû ngŏh huì pin shuè, ngŏh tsaû huì pin shuè, mŏ-paân-faàt.

5. A: Hâ kòh uêt seì-hô, neĭ-teì fòng m̄-fòng kà à?

   B: Fòng à; hâ kòh uêt seì-hô, nğ-hô, t'ūng lûk-hô ngŏh-teì to fòng kà; chúng-kûng fòng saam-yât kà.

6. A: Kóh chân-shì, neĭ ooĭ m̄-ooĭ huì pin shuè waán à?

   B: Ngŏh toh-sò ooĭ huì luĭ-haāng, tò-shuĕ huì waán-hă.

7. A: Neĭ chún-peì tsẑ-keì yat-kòh yān huì, yik-waâk t'ūng ka-yān yat-ch'aì huì à?

   B: Iù t'aì ts'ìng-yìng k'uèt-tìng.

8. A: Haì tìm-yeûng* kè ts'ìng-yìng, neĭ tsaû yat-kòh yān huì à?

   B: Ue̱-kwóh ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* m̄-tak-haān, ngŏh tsaû yat-kòh yān huì.

9. A: Haì tìm-yeûng* kè ts'ìng-yìng, neĭ tsaû t'ūng ka-yān yat-ch'aì huì à?

   B: Uē-kwóh uk-k'eì mŏ sẑ, ngŏh tsaû t'ūng ka-yān yat-ch'aì huì.

10. A: Neĭ ooĭ m̄-ooĭ m̄-huì à?

    B: Wâ-m̄-tìng, uē-kwóh t'aaì mā-faān, ngŏh-teì to m̄-huì.

LESSON 47

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Paâk Chung-Kaaù, neĭ t'ai-hă ch'eung kè ngoî-pîn, t'in kòm yam!

B: Ôh, t'in kòm yam, hó-ts'ž tsaû-laî lôk uĕ là! Ngŏh iù tsaú là!

12. A: Tím-kaaì neĭ kòm faaì ch'é à? Chûng ts'ŏh-hă la!

B: Yan-waî ngŏh kè saì-man-tsaí haí uk-k'eí táng-kán ngŏh.

13. A: K'uĭ haí uk-k'eí táng neĭ tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: K'uĭ haí uk-k'eí táng ngŏh shîk faân.

14. A: M̄-hó tsaú là! Ī-ka lôk-kán uĕ là, hó taaî uĕ là!

B: Ngŏh iù tsik-haak tsaú là!

15. A: Paâk Chung-Kaaù, Leĭ Siù-Kaaù, pat-ūe haí ni shuè shîk ts'aan pîn-faân; shîk-uēn faân chì ch'é la!

B: M̄-hó là, ngŏh m̄-seúng k'uĭ-teî haí uk-k'eí táng ngŏh.

A: Tím-kaaì neĭ m̄-tá tîn-wâ* peí k'uĭ, kiù k'uĭ-teî m̄-hó táng neĭ à?

B: Hó la, táng ngŏh tá tîn-wâ* peí ngŏh kè taaî-tsaí, kiù-k'uĭ-teî m̄-hó táng ngŏh.

LESSON 47

WORD LIST

1. haàk-t'eng	living room, parlor
2. t'eng	hall, large room, room
3. faân-t'eng, ts'aan-t'eng	dining room
4. ch'uī-fōng* ch'uē-fōng*	kitchen
5. shan	body
6. saí-shan fōng*	bathroom, washroom
7. ts'z̀-shóh	toilet, restroom, lavatory, latrine
8. fàn-fōng*	bedroom
9. ch'eūng-fong	rectangle, rectangular
10. seì-fong	square
11. hông*	lane, alley
12. laăng-hông*	hallway, corridor
13. waāng	crosswise, horizontal, sideway
14. waāng-moōn*	side door
15. k'ē	to ride (on an animal), mount, stride
16. k'ē-laū*	balcony, veranda
17. chau, Chau	perimeter, surname
18. waī	to encircle, surround
19. chau-waī	all around
20. seî-mîn	four sides, four directions

LESSON 47

READING MATERIAL

1132

廳 t'eng: hall; room; government; office.

客廳 haàk-t'eng: reception room; parlor.

飯廳 faân-t'eng: dining room.

1384

園 uēn: garden; orchard; park.

花園 fa-uēn: flower garden.

菜園 ts'oì uēn: vegetabl garden.

菓園 kwóh uēn: an orchar

136

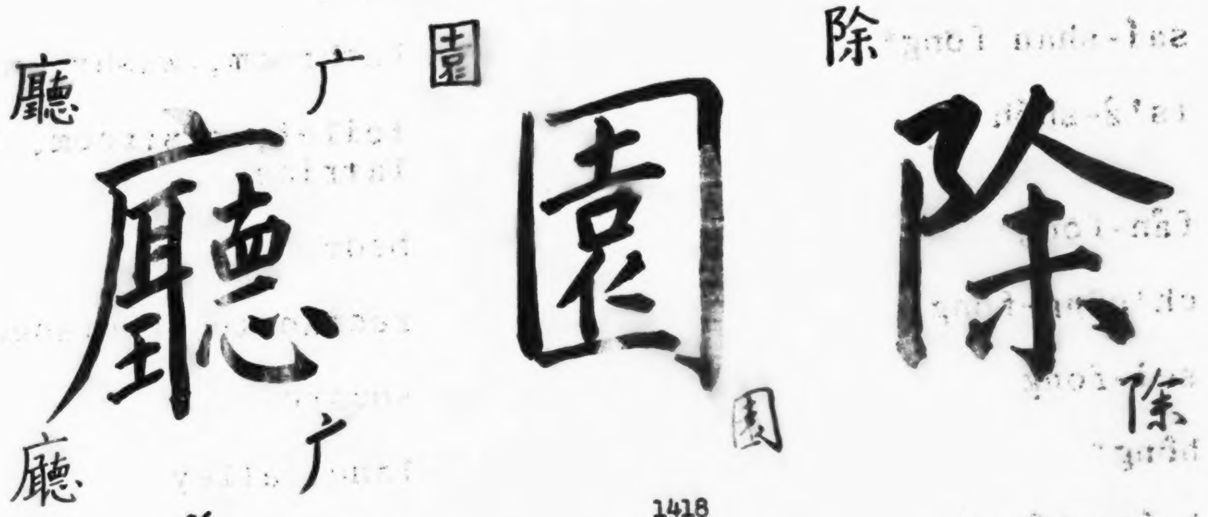
除 ch'uī: to deduct laying aside

除咗 ch'uī-chóh: after deducting

除非 ch'uī-fei: unless; except

開除 hoi-ch'uī: dismiss

除數 ch'uī-shò: division (Arith)



36

周 chau: everywhere, all, surname complete, to a [illegible]

周圍 chau-wai: all around

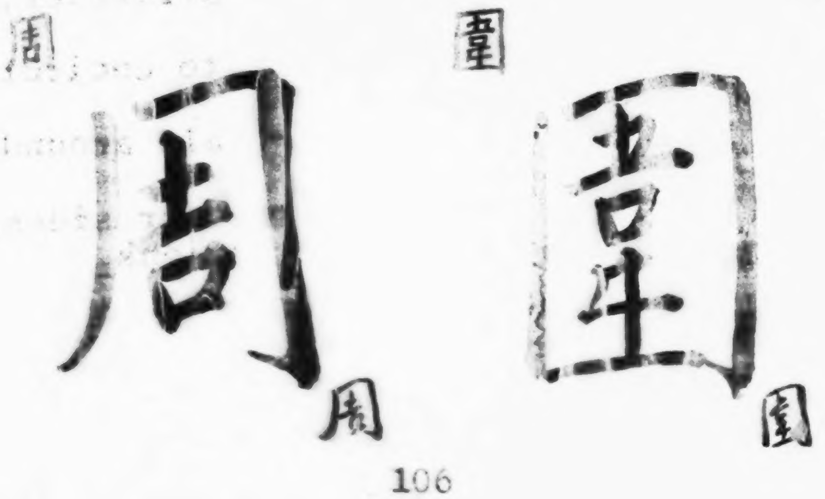
周到 chau-tou: well arranged, assiduity, assiduous, attentive.

1418

圍 waī: to surround; to enclose.

圍牆 waī-ts'eūng: a boundary wall.

圍攻 waī kung: to beseige.



LESSON 47

READING MATERIAL

784

汙 oo: dirty; foul: filthy; impure.

汙糟 oo-tso: dirty; filthy.

姦汙 kaan-oo: to rape.

1336

厠 ts'ì: a privy; rest room; lavatory.

厠所 ts'ì-shóh: privy; water-closet.

水厠 shuí ts'ì: water-closet.

434

騎 k'ō: to ride astride of .

騎馬 k'ō ma: to ride a horse.

騎兵 k'ō-ping: cavalry.

騎

汙 污 厠

汙 厠 騎

汚 廁 厠 騎

1253

淺 ts'ín: shallow; easy; simple.

淺水 ts'ín shuí: the water is shallow.

擱淺 kòk-ts'ín: to run aground.

941

深 sham: deep; intense; abstruse; very.

深夜 sham yê: late at night.

深交 sham kaau: intimate friendship.

深信 sham sùn: to believe firmly.

淺 深

浅 深

浅 深

LESSON 47

READING MATERIAL

陳英同黃小姐 wán chóh 房之後，佢地而家去探親-ts'ik啦．佢地行吓 k'ing 吓；冇幾耐 che，就行到啦．嗰個親-ts'ik住喺三-Faān-市嘅東便，離T'ōng人-Faû 冇幾遠．嗰處地方好好，近山近水，又唔污-tso又唔 ts'ō．

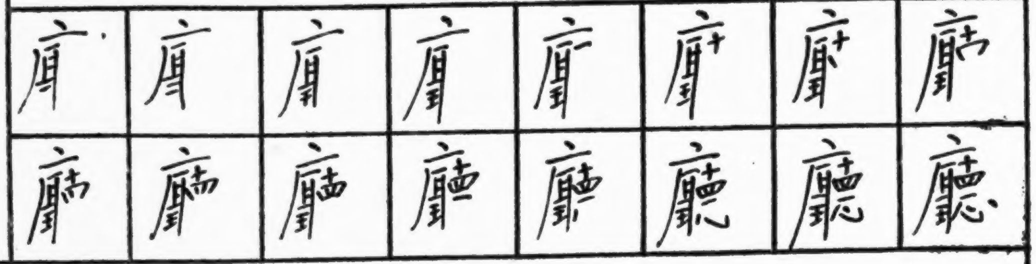
佢嘅親-ts'ik嘅屋唔大唔細，樓下有两個大客廳，一個 ts'aan-廳，洗身房，ch'uī-房，厠所．樓上有三個 fàn-房，两個洗身房，两個厠所．呢間屋有两層樓，每層都有騎樓；喺騎樓你可以睇見遠處嘅高山綠水．屋嘅後便有車房，前便有花園．除 chóh 花園之外，屋嘅周圍都有草地．間屋係淺紅嘅，周圍嘅草地係深綠嘅．綠處有一點紅，真係 lèng 啦．住喺呢啲地方，你話幾快樂呀！

LESSON 47

WRITING MATERIAL

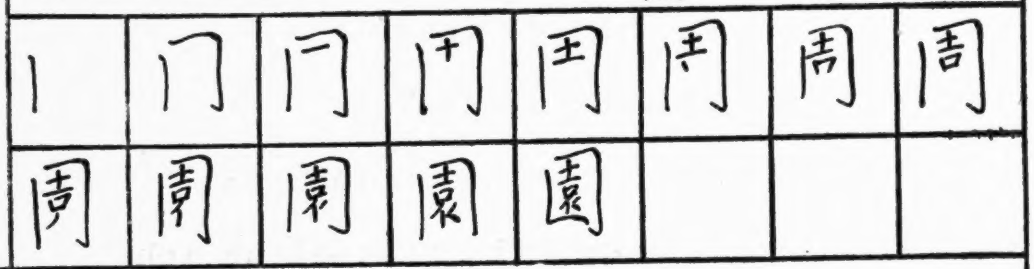
廳

Character Number 1132 **Radical Number** 53
Stroke Number 25 广



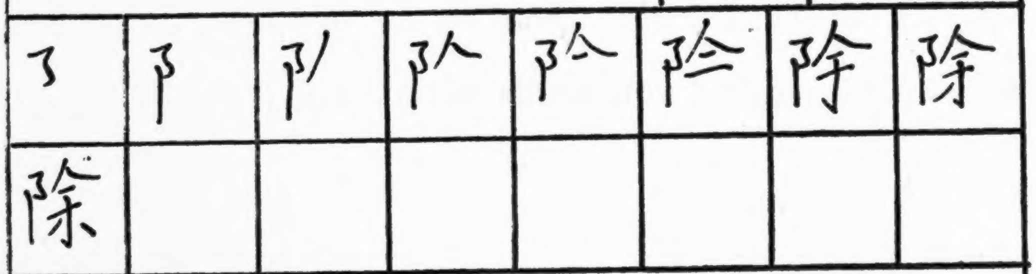
園

Character Number 1384 **Radical Number** 31
Stroke Number 13 囗



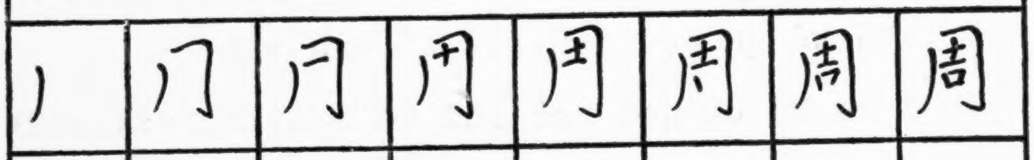
除

Character Number 136 **Radical Number** 170
Stroke Number 9 阝，阜



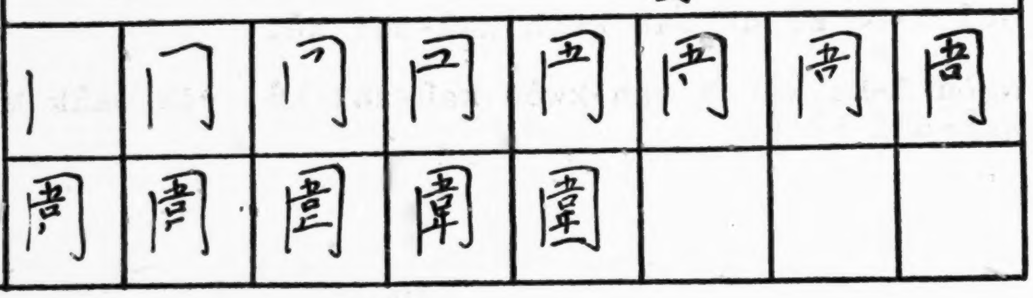
周

Character Number 36 **Radical Number** 30
Stroke Number 8 口



圍

Character Number 1418 **Radical Number** 31
Stroke Number 13 囗



LESSON 48

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. peí, peí-kaaù

kwòh

taaî

Neĭ kè uk taaî.

Neĭ kè uk peí ngŏh kè uk taaî.

Ngŏh kè uk peí neĭ kè uk taaî, yik-waâk saì à?

Neĭ kè uk peí ngŏh kè uk taaî.

Neĭ kè uk peí ngŏh kè uk taaî ti.

Neĭ kè uk peí-kaaù ngŏh kè uk taaî ti.

Neĭ kè uk peí-kaaù ngŏh kè uk taaî hó toh.

Neĭ kè uk taaî kwòh ngŏh kè uk.

Neĭ kè uk taaî kwòh ngŏh kè uk hó toh.

Neĭ kè uk taaî kwòh ngŏh kè hó toh.

Neĭ kè uk san.

Neĭ î-ka kè uk san.

Neĭ î-ka kè uk peí kaû-shî kè san.

Neĭ î-ka kè uk peí kaû-shî kè san ti.

Ngŏh î-ka kè uk peí kaû-shî kè san ti, yik-waâk kaû ti à?

Neĭ î-ka kè uk peí kaû-shî kè san ti.

Neĭ î-ka kè uk peí-kaaù kaû-shî kè san ti.

Neĭ î-ka kè uk peí-kaaù kaû-shî kè san hó toh.

Neĭ î-ka kè uk san kwòh kaû-shî kè.

Ngŏh î-ka kè uk san kwòh kaû-shî kè, yik-waâk kaû kwòh kaû-shî kè à?

LESSON 48
ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Neĭ î-ka kè uk san kwòh kaû-shî kè.

Neĭ î-ka kè uk san kwòh kaû-shî kè hó toh.

2. tsuì, chì; kwoh-t'aū, tak-chaî

Ì-Faû kè yān toh.

Taaî-Faû kè yān toh.

Lōh-Shaáng kè yān toh.

Î-Faû kè yān toh, Taaî-Faû kè yān toh ti.

Î-Faû kè yān toh, Taaî-Faû kè yān toh ti, Lōh-Shaáng kè yān tsuì toh.

Ì-Faû kè yān toh, Taaî-Faû kè yān toh ti, Lōh-Shaáng kè yān chì toh.

Î-Faû, Taaî-Faû, t'ūng Lōh-Shaáng, pin shuè kè yān tsuì toh à?

Î-Faû, Taaî-Faû, t'ūng Lōh-Shaáng, Lōh-Shaáng kè yān tsuì toh.

Î-Faû, Taaî-Faû, t'ūng Lōh-Shaáng, Lōh-Shaáng kè yān chì toh.

Naú-Yeùk kè yān toh.

Naú-Yeùk kè yān toh kwòh-t'aū.

Naú-Yeùk kè yān toh tak-chaî.

Naú-Yeùk kè yān toh m̀-toh à?

Naú-Yeùk kè yān toh kwòh-t'aū.

Naú-Yeùk kè yān toh tak-chaî.

3. yaŭ mŏ.....kòm...?

yaŭ....kòm...

mŏ.....kòm...

LESSON 48

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

chuê haí ni shuè

Chuê haí ni shuè hó shue-fûk.

Chuê haí ni shuè shue m̄-shue-fûk à?

Chuê haí ni shuè hó shue-fûk.

Chuê haí neĭ shuè yîk-to shue-fûk.

Chuê haí neĭ shuè yaŭ ni shuè kòm shue-fûk.

Chuê haí ngŏh shuè yaŭ mŏ ni shuè kòm shue-fûk à?

Chuê haí neĭ shuè yaŭ ni shuè kòm shue-fûk.

Chuê haí ni shuè hó shue-fûk, chuê haí k'uĭ shuè m̄-shue-fûk.

Chuê haí k'uĭ shuè mŏ ni shuè kòm shue-fûk.

Chuê haí k'uĭ shuè yaŭ mŏ ni shuè kòm shue-fûk à?

Chuê haí k'uĭ shuè mŏ ni shuè kòm shue-fûk.

4. poón-sẑ

ch'ung-mīng

p'ēng, kwaì

taaî, saì

ko, aí

feî, shaù

laăng, ît

mōng, tak-haān

kwooî

ch'eūng, tuén

tûng, nuĕn

toh, shiú

naān, yūng-î

LESSON 48

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

kon, shap

kon-tsêng, oo-tso

faaì, maân

tsó, ch'î

k'ăn-lîk, laăn

sham, ts'ìn

siú-sam, taaì-ì

ts'eŭng-saì, kaán-taan

ts'ō, tsîng

pîn-leî

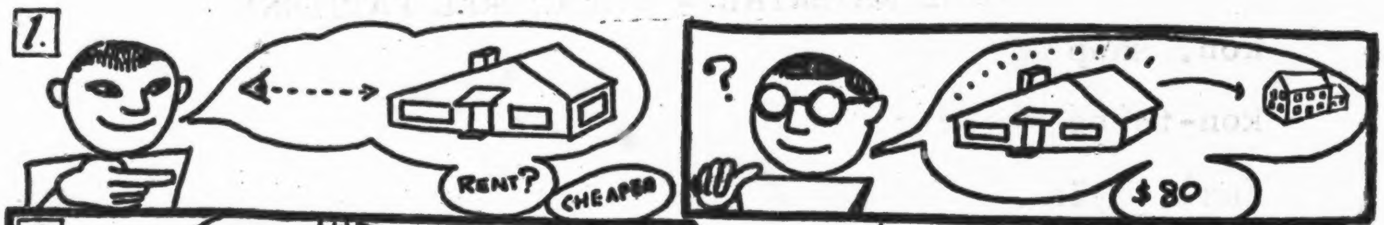
foòt, chaàk

san, kaû

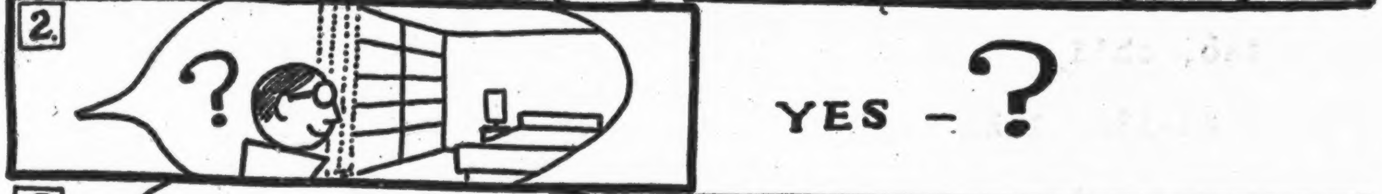
shue-fûk

LESSON 48

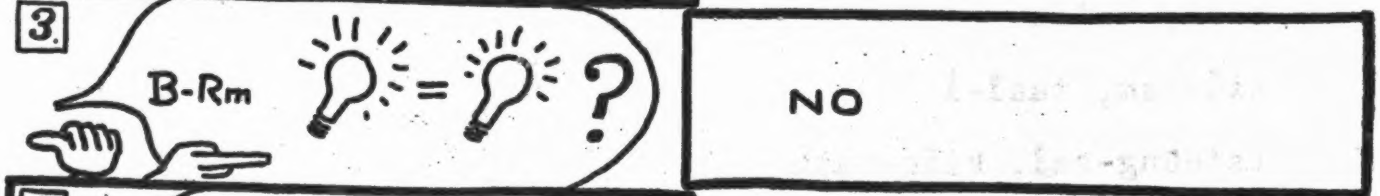
1.


RENT?
CHEAPER
?
$80

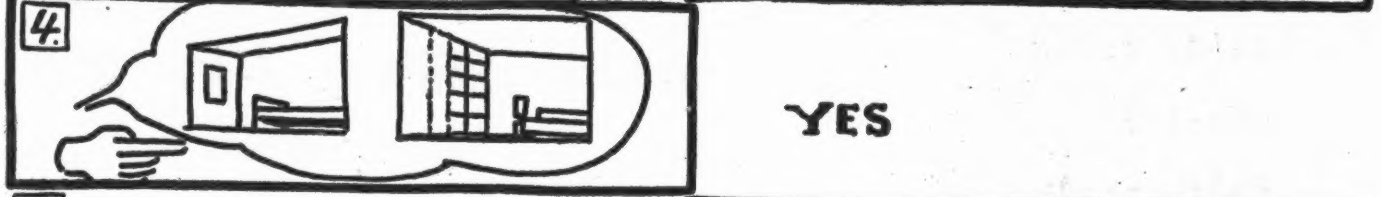
2.



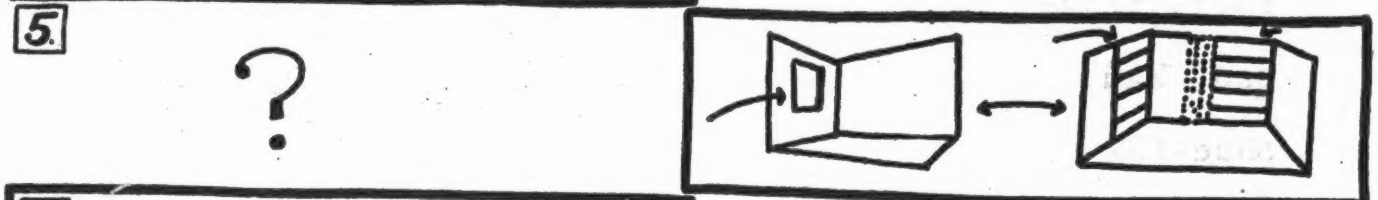
3.



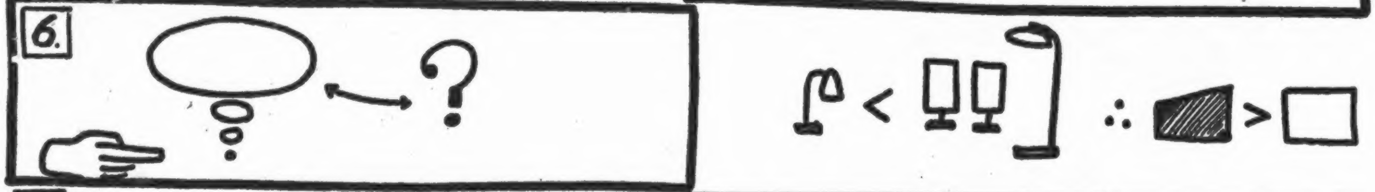
4.



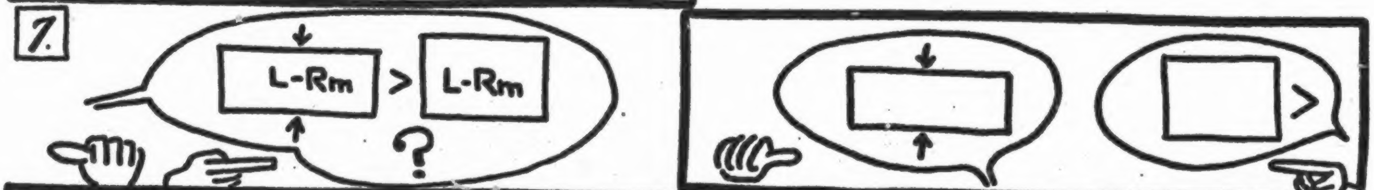
5.



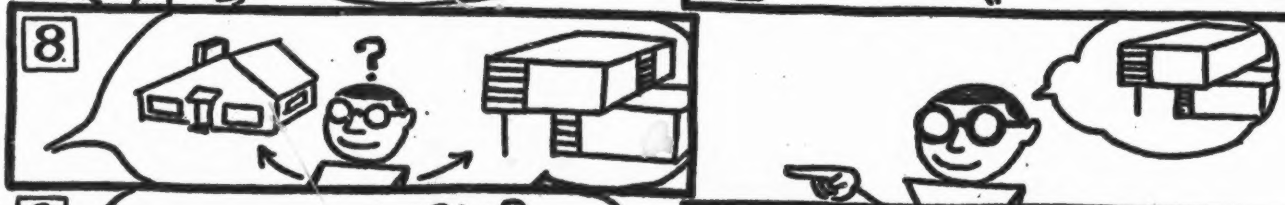
6.



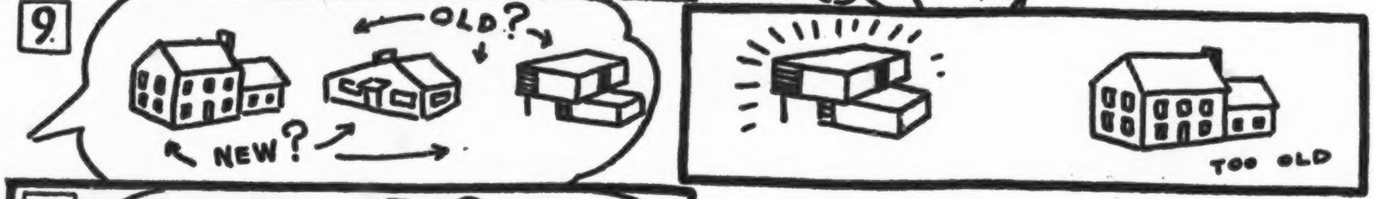
7.



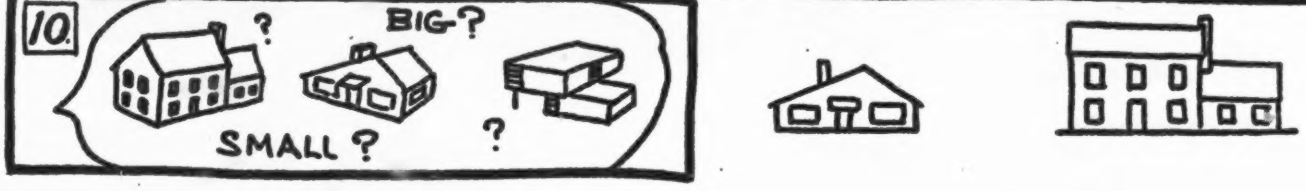
8.



9.


OLD?
NEW?
TOO OLD

10.



LESSON 48

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Ch'ān-King-Leĭ, ngŏh ĭ-king t'aí-kwòh neĭ kè uk, ngŏh kòk-tak k'uĭ m̄-yaî.

B: Haî me? Ngŏh ĭ-waî k'uĭ peí ĭ-ts'în kè hó hó toh.

A: Mooĭ kòh uêt uk-tso keí toh à?

B: Mooĭ kòh uêt uk-tso paàt-shâp man.

A: Kóm, neĭ kè peí ngŏh kè p'ēng là!

2. A: Neĭ yaŭ mŏ t'aí-kwòh ngŏh kè fàn-fōng* à?

B: Yaŭ, ngŏh ĭ-ts'în t'aí-kwòh neĭ kè fàn-fōng*. Neĭ kóm-yeûng* mân, haî mi-yĕ î-sz à?

3. A: Ngŏh seúng mân, neĭ kòk-tak neĭ kè fàn-fōng* yaŭ mŏ ngŏh kè kòm kwong à?

B: Ngŏh kòk-tak, ngŏh kè fàn-fōng* mŏ neĭ kè kòm kwong.

4. A: Neĭ tsik-haî wâ, neĭ kè fàn-fōng* peí-kaaù ngŏh kè òm ti, haî mà?

B: Tong-în la, ngŏh kè fàn-fōng* peí-kaaù neĭ kè òm ti.

5. A: Neĭ chi m̄-chi-tò tîm-kaaî à?

B: Ngŏh nám-tó là, yan-waî ngŏh shuè kè ts'eung peí-kaaù neĭ shuè kè shiú hó toh, shóh-ĭ ngŏh kè fàn-fōng* peí-kaaù neĭ kè òm hó toh.

6. A: Neĭ tsoì nám-hă, chûng yaŭ mŏ k'eĭ-t'a kè leĭ-yaū à?

B: K'eĭ-t'a kè leĭ-yaū haî, ngŏh kè fàn-fōng* kè tîn-tang shiŭ kwòh neĭ kè, shóh-ĭ ngŏh kè fàn-fōng* òm kwòh neĭ kè.

7. A: Neĭ kòk-tak neĭ kè haàk-t'eng chaàk ti, yik-waâk ngŏh kè chaàk ti à?

B: Ngŏh kòk-tak ngŏh kè haàk-t'eng chaàk ti, neĭ kè foòt kwòh ngŏh kè hó toh.

8. A: Peí-kaaù-laî-kóng; neĭ ĭ-waî, chuê haî neĭ shuè shue-fûk ti, yik-waâk chuê haî ngŏh shuè shue-fûk ti à?

B: Ngŏh ĭ-waî, chuê haî neĭ shuè shue-fûk hó toh.

LESSON 48

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

9. A: **Neĭ ĭ-ts'în kè uk, în-tsoî kè uk, t'ūng ngŏh kè uk, pin kaan chì san, pin kaan chì kaû à?**

B: **Neĭ kè chì san, ngŏh ĭ-ts'în kè chì kaû, ngŏh ĭ-ts'în kè kaû kwòh-t'aū.**

10. A: **Neĭ kaû-shî kè uk, î-ka kè uk, t'ūng ngŏh kè uk, pin kaan chì saì, pin kaan chì taaî à?**

B: **Ngŏh î-ka kè chì saì, kaû-shî kè tsuì-taaî, kaû-shî kè taaî tak-chaî.**

LESSON 48

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Manager Ch'ān, I've already taken a look at your house. I think it is not bad.

   B: You think so? I think it is much better than the one I had before.

   A: How much is the rent per month?

   B: It is $80.00 per month.

   A: If that is the case, yours is cheaper than mine.

2. A: Have you taken a look at my bedroom?

   B: Yes, I did. Why do you ask?

3. A: I would like to ask you whether your bedroom is as bright as mine?

   B: I think my bedroom is not as bright as yours.

4. A: Do you mean your bedroom is darker than mine?

   B: Certainly. My bedroom is darker than yours.

5. A: Do you know why?

   B: I have figured it out. It is because there are fewer windows in my place than yours; therefore, my bedroom is much darker than yours.

6. A: Think it over again. Are there any other reasons?

   B: The other reason is that there are fewer lights in my bedroom than yours; therefore my bedroom is darker than yours.

7. A: Do you think your living room is narrower than mine or mine narrower than yours?

   B: I think my living room is narrower. Yours is much wider than mine.

8. A: Comparatively speaking, do you think living at your place is more comfortable, or at mine?

   B: I think living at your place is much more comfortable.

LESSON 48

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

9. A: Which is the newest and the oldest, your former house, your present house, or my house?

B: Yours is the newest and my former house the oldest. My former one was too old.

10. A: Which is the smallest and the largest, your former house, your present house, or my house?

B: My present house is the smallest, and the former one is the largest. The former house was too large.

LESSON 48

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. B: Ts'ìng mân, neĭ ni shuè haî m̄-haî î-lìng-seì-saam-kaú hô tîn-wâ* à?

C: Haî à, ni shuè haî î-lìng-seì-saam-kaú, neĭ haî pin waî* à?

2. B: Neĭ haî m̄-haî Kwong-Mìng à? Ngŏh haî pā-pa à.

C: Oh, neĭ haî pā-pa, neĭ haî pin shuè tá laî kà?

3. B: Ngŏh haî Hōh Haaû-Cheúng shuè tá laî, neĭ-teî haî m̄-haî táng-kán ngŏh shîk faân à?

C: Haî à, ngŏh-teî táng neĭ shîk faân, táng-chóh hó noî lòh! Neĭ faan m̄-faan laî shîk faân à?

4. B: Ī-ka lôk-kán uĕ, ngŏh m̄-faan laî shîk faân là!

C: Kóm, neĭ haî pin shuè shîk faân à?

5. B: Hōh Haaû-Cheúng kiù ngŏh haî k'uĭ shuè shîk maăn-faân; shîk-uēn faân chì faan laî.

C: Hó la, kam-maăn tsó ti faan laî wòh! M̄-hó faan-tak kòm yê pòh!

6. B: Hó à, neĭ fòng-sam la!

C: Hó la, haî kóm la!

7. A: Paâk Chung-Kaaù, chìng-wâ ngŏh t'eng neĭ t'ūng neĭ kè taaî-tsaì kóng tîn-wâ*, k'uĭ hó ooĭ kóng.

B: Haî, k'uĭ t'ūng ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* yat-yeûng kòm ooĭ kóng wâ*

8. A: Neĭ kè taaî-tsaì ì-ka haî pin shuè tûk shue à?

B: K'uĭ ì-ka haî ni kòh shēng kè yat-kaan Chung-Mān hôk-haaû tûk-kán shue.

9. A: K'uĭ keî shî, haî pin shuè ch'ut shaì à?

B: K'uĭ haî yat-kaú-seì-lìng nîn, haî Taaî-Faû T'ōng-Yān-Faû ch'ut shaì.

10. A: K'uĭ tûk shue k'ān m̄-k'ān-lîk à?

B: K'uĭ tûk shue hó k'ān-lîk.

LESSON 48

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: K'uĭ mooĭ yât fòng-hôk, faan uk-k'eí chi-haû, yaŭ mŏ tsẑ-shau kà?

B: Yaŭ, k'uĭ mooĭ yât fòng-hôk, faan uk-k'eí chi-haû, ts'at-tîm-poòn hoi-ch'í tsẑ-shau.

12. A: Uēn-loî k'uĭ kòm k'ān-lîk; m̄-kwaaì-tak, k'uĭ tûk shue tûk-tak kòm hó la!

B: K'uĭ tûk-tak mā-mā-teî* che, neĭ kwòh-tseúng che!

13. A: Uē-kwóh k'uĭ haí yat-kaú-seì-lîng nîn ch'ut shaì, k'uĭ tsaû-laî iù tong ping là!

B: Haî là, k'uĭ tsaû-laî iù tong ping là!

14. A: Neĭ kè t'aai-t'aaì* kòm poón-sẑ; neĭ kè taaî-tsaí yaû kòm ch'ung-mîng; neĭ kè ka-t'îng yat-tîng hó faaì-lôk là!

B: Haî, ngŏh-teî kè ka-t'îng hó faaì-lôk.

15. A: Paâk Chung-Kaaù, Leĭ Shiù-Kaaù, ngŏh-teî hốh-ĭ hoi-ch'í shîk maăn-faân là!

B: Hōh Haaû-Cheúng, neĭ kè t'aai-t'aaì* chíng sùng chíng-tak chan hó.

A: Neĭ haàk-heì che, k'uĭ chíng sùng mŏ neĭ kè t'aai-t'aaì* chíng-tak kòm hó.

B: Ôh, ni waî* haî Hōh t'aai-t'aaì*, haî mà?

A: Chan tuì-m̄-chuê, ngŏh m̄-keì-tak-chóh t'ūng neĭ-teî kaaì-shiû; ni waî* haî Paâk Chung-Kaaù, ni waî* haî Leĭ Shiù-Kaaù.

B: Ôh, Hōh t'aai-t'aaì*.

D: Paâk Chung-Kaaù, Leĭ Shiù-Kaaù.

LESSON 48

WORD LIST

1.	yaî	bad, inferior, poor
2.	me?	interrogative final particle expressing surprise, negative final particle
3.	tso tso peî neĭ; t'ūng neĭ tso	rent, rental; to rent to rent to you; to rent from you
4.	ì-sz	meaning, thought, idea
5.	kwong	bright, shiny; brightness, light
6.	òm	dark, gloomy, obscure
7.	tong-în*	of course, certainly, naturally
8.	nám-tó	to have it figured out, think of
9.	k'eī-t'a	other, the rest of
10.	leĭ-yaū	reason
11.	tîn	electricity
12.	tang	light, lamp
13.	tîn-tang	light, electric light
14.	foòt	wide, broad; width
15.	peì-kaaù-laî-kóng	comparatively speaking
16.	shue-fûk	comfortable
17.	san	new
18.	chì, tsuì	most, (superlative degree)

LESSON 48

READING MATERIAL

60

窗 ch'eung: window

窗門 ch'eung-moōn*: a window

百頁窗 paak-îp-ch'eung: Venetian blind

570

光 kwong: light; bright; glory; naked; uncovered.

天光 t'in kwong: day break.

日光 yât-kwong: the sun; daylight.

光頭 kwong t'aū: bald-head.

光明 kwong-mīng: bright; clear;illuminous.

1163

到 tò: to reach; to get; to come; until; arrive.

到來 tò loī: to arrive.

收到 shau tò: to receive.

到底 tò-taí: finally; after all.

到處 tò ch'uè: everywhere.

窗 光 到

窗 光 到

窻 窻 窓 光 到

448

其 k'eī: a demonstrative & possessive pronoun; his; her; its; this; that.

其餘 k'eī-uē: the rest of them; as to the rest.

其中 k'eī-chung: among them; therein.

其實 k'eī-shât: in point of fact; in truth; actually

1077

他 t'a: other; another; he; it.

他人 t'a-yān: others.

他們 t'a moōn: they; them.

其 他

其 他

其 他

LESSON 48

READING MATERIAL

227

服 fûk: garments; to serve; mourning clothes

服從 fûk-ts'ūng: to submit to: to obey

着服 cheùk fuk: to go into mourning

服務 fûk-mô: to serve; service

服毒 fûk tûk: to take poison

1232

將 tseùng, tseung: military commander; sign of future tense; will; shall.

將來 tseung-loī: in the future.

將到 tseung tò: approaching; about to come.

將死 tseung sź: about to die.

1268

租 tso: to rent; to lease; rental; tax.

租屋 tso uk: to rent a house.

租賃 tso-yâm: to let out; to take on lease.

收租 shau tso: to collect rental.

租界 tso-kaaì: foreign concession.

服 將 租

服 將 租

服 將 租

1456

由 yaū: from; by; to permit.

由你 yaū neǐ: as you please.

由來 yaū-loī: cause; origin; reason.

654

嗎 mà: interrogative ending in the sentence.

去街嗎 huì kaai mà: are you going out?

嗎啡 ma-fe : morphine.

由 嗎

由 嗎

由 嗎

LESSON 48

READING MATERIAL

陳英嘅親-ts'ik嘅屋真係lèng啦，地方又好；住喺處你話幾shue-服呀！黃小姐好想陳英，將來有錢嘅時候，會買間敢樣嘅屋。如果冇錢買呢，租間黎住都唔緊要嘅。

陳英話，比較黎講，佢嘅屋雖然冇佢嘅親-ts'ik嘅kòm lèng，但係有kòm大。陳英嘅屋有好多窗，夠光，又夠foòt，又夠新。講到fàn-房呢，陳英嘅屋處有五個fàn-房，樓下有兩個，樓上有三個。佢嘅親-ts'嘅屋處，樓上只有三個fàn-房，樓下一個都冇。其他嘅房呢，兩處都有kòm多。你話邊個嘅屋處有多啲fàn-房呢？當然係陳英嘅多過佢嘅親-ts'ik嘅。你話係嗎？

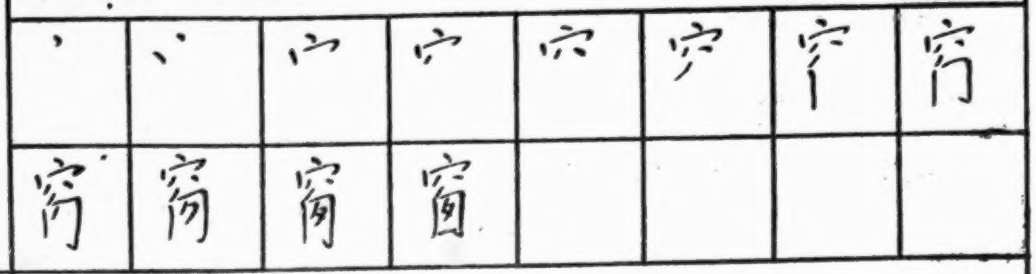
黃小姐覺得呢啲說話有意思，有理由。

LESSON 48

WRITING MATERIAL

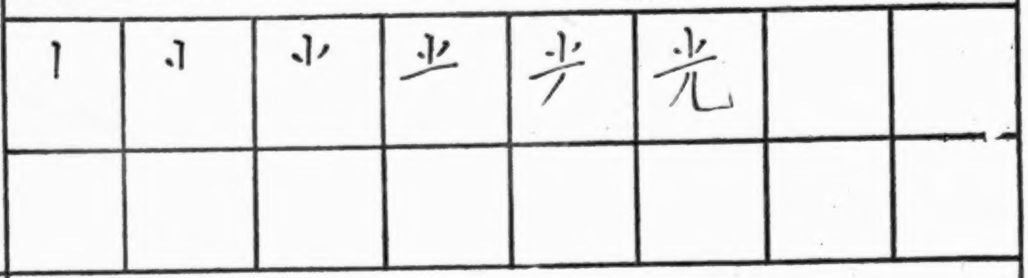
窗

Character Number	60	Radical Number	116
Stroke Number	12		穴



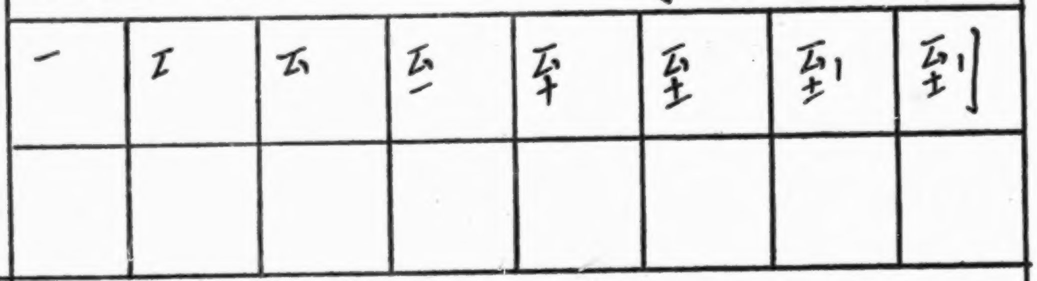
光

Character Number	570	Radical Number	10
Stroke Number	6		儿



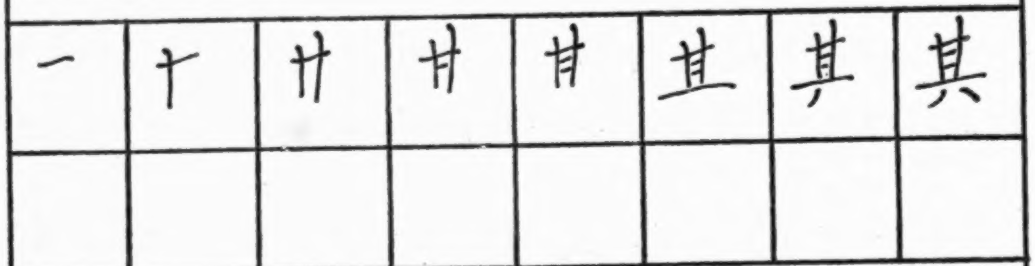
到

Character Number	1163	Radical Number	18
Stroke Number	8		刂，刀



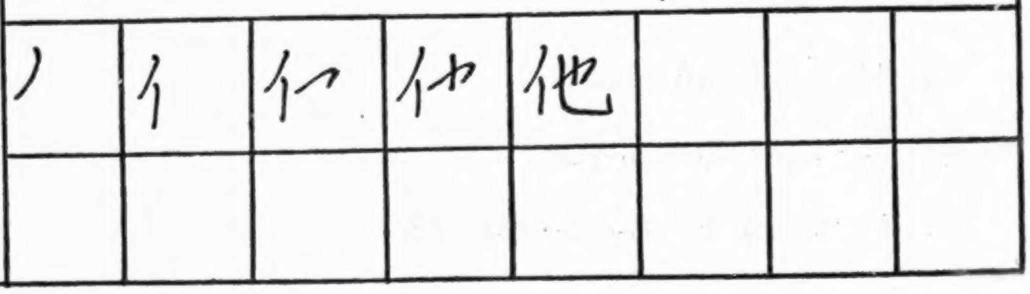
其

Character Number	448	Radical Number	12
Stroke Number	8		八



他

Character Number	1077	Radical Number	9
Stroke Number	5		亻，人



LESSON 49

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. yaŭ mŏ....kòm....?

   yaŭ....kòm....

   mŏ.....kòm....

   t'ūng..yat-yeûng kòm...

   tsaú

   Ni ti tsaú hó.

   Ni ti tsaú m̄-hó.

   Ni ti tsaú hó m̄-hó à?

   Ni ti tsaú hó.

   Ni ti tsaú m̄-hó.

   Ni ti tsaú keî hó.

   Ni ti tsaú m̄-haî keî hó.

   Ni ti tsaú hó, kóh ti tsaú yîk-to hó.

   Ni ti tsaú hó, kóh ti tsaú yaŭ ni ti tsaú kòm hó.

   Ni ti tsaú hó, kóh ti tsaú mŏ ni ti tsaú kòm hó.

   Ni ti tsaú hó, kóh ti tsaú yaŭ mŏ ni ti tsaú kòm hó à?

   Ni ti tsaú hó, kóh ti tsaú yaŭ ni ti tsaú kòm hó.

   Ni ti tsaú hó, kóh ti tsaú t'ūng ni ti tsaú yat-yeûng kòm hó.

   Ni ti tsaú hó, kóh ti tsaú mŏ ni ti tsaú kòm hó.

2. Ni ti tsaú hó.

   Ni ti tsaú hó-yám.

   Ni ti tsaú m̄-hó-yám.

   Ni ti tsaú hó m̄-hó-yám à?

LESSON 49

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Ni ti tsaú m̄-hó-yám.

Ni ti tsaú keí hó-yám.

Ni ti tsaú m̄-haî keí hó-yám.

Ni ti tsaú hó-yám, kóh ti tsaú yîk-to hó-yám.

Ni ti tsaú hó-yám, kóh ti tsaú yaŭ ni ti tsaú kòm hó-yám.

Ni ti tsaú hó-yám, kôh ti tsaú mŏ ni ti tsaú kòm hó-yám.

Ni ti tsaú hó-yám, kóh ti tsaú yaŭ mŏ ni ti tsaú kòm hó-yám à?

Ni ti tsaú hó-yám, kóh ti tsaú yaŭ ni ti tsaú kòm hó-yám.

Kóh ti tsaú t'ūng ni ti tsaú yat-yeûng kòm hó-yám.

Kóh ti sùng hó.

Kóh ti sùng hó-shîk.

Ni ti sùng yaŭ mŏ kóh ti sùng kòm hó-shîk à?

Ni ti sùng mŏ kóh ti sùng kòm hó-shîk.

Ni ti sùng yaŭ kóh ti sùng kòm hó-shîk.

Ni ti sùng t'ūng kóh ti sùng yat-yeûng kòm hó-shîk.

Ngŏh kè uk mŏ neĭ kè kòm hó-chuê.

Neĭ kè uk yaŭ k'uĭ kè kòm hó-chuê.

Ni t'ò sai-chong yaŭ kóh t'ò kòm hó-cheùk.

Ni t'ò sai-chong t'ūng kóh t'ò yat-yeûng kòm hó-cheùk.

Ni t'ò sai-chong mŏ kóh t'ò kòm hó-cheùk.

Ni fân tsaâp-chì yaŭ kóh fàn kòm hó-t'aí.

Kóh poón wâ*-pò t'ūng ni poón yat-yeûng kòm hó-t'aí.

Ni ch'ut tîn-ying mŏ kóh ch'ut kòm hó-t'ai.

Ni ti yam-ngôk yaŭ kóh ti yam-ngôk kòm hó-t'eng.

Ni ti yam-ngôk t'ūng kóh ti yam-ngôk yat-yeûng kòm hó-t'eng.

LESSON 49

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Ni ti yam-ngôk mŏ kóh ti yam-ngôk kòm hó-t'eng.

Ngŏh chi pat yaŭ neĭ chi pat kòm hó-sé.

Ngŏh chi pat t'ūng neĭ chi pat yat-yeûng kòm hó-sé.

Neĭ chi pat mŏ k'uĭ chi pat kòm hó-sé.

Ngŏh ĭ-waî kà-fe t'ūng hūng-ch'ā yat-yeûng kòm hó-yám.

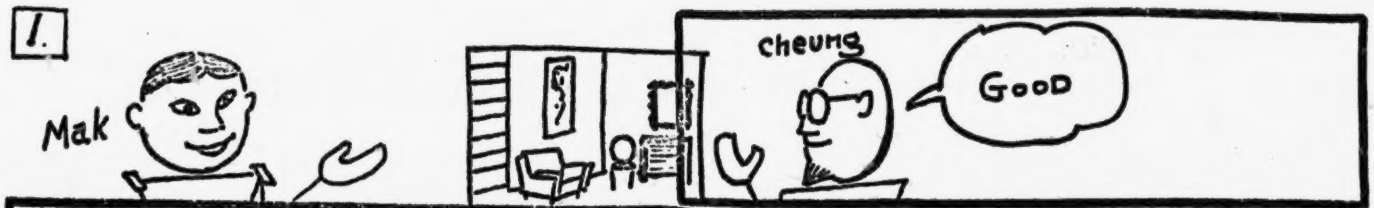
Ngŏh ĭ-waî kà-fe mŏ hūng-ch'ā kòm hó-yám.

Neĭ ĭ-waî kà-fe yaŭ mŏ hūng-ch'ā kòm hó-yám à?

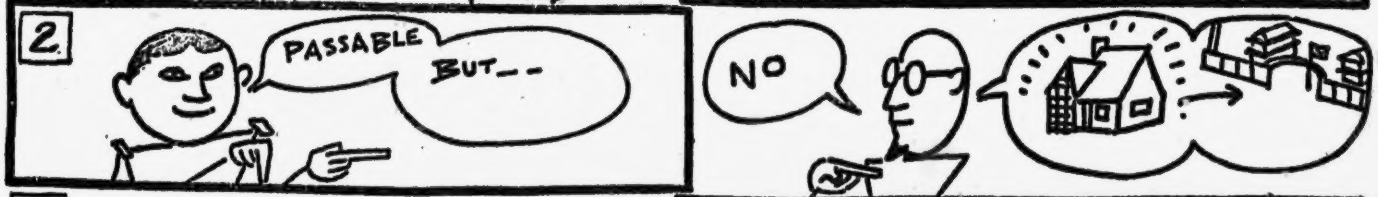
Ngŏh ĭ-waî kà-fe t'ūng hūng-ch'ā yat-yeûng kòm hó-yám.

Ngŏh ĭ-waî kà-fe mŏ hūng-ch'ā kòm hó-yám.

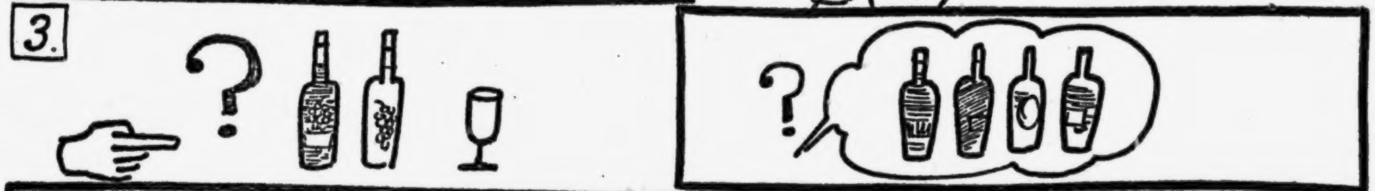
1.


Mak
Cheung
GOOD

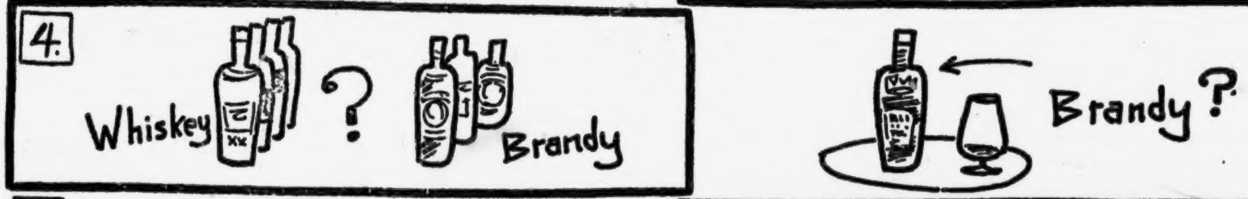
2.


PASSABLE BUT--
NO

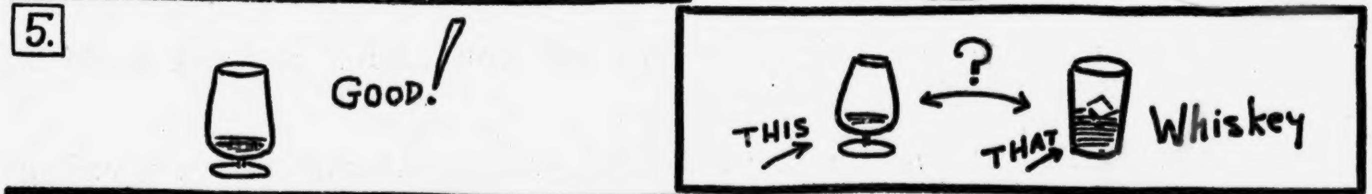
3.



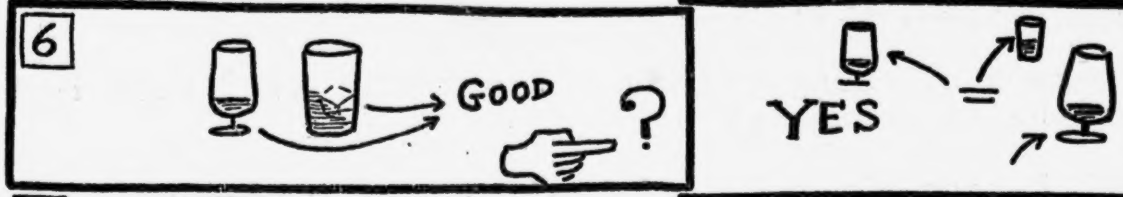
4.


Whiskey
XX
?
Brandy
Brandy?

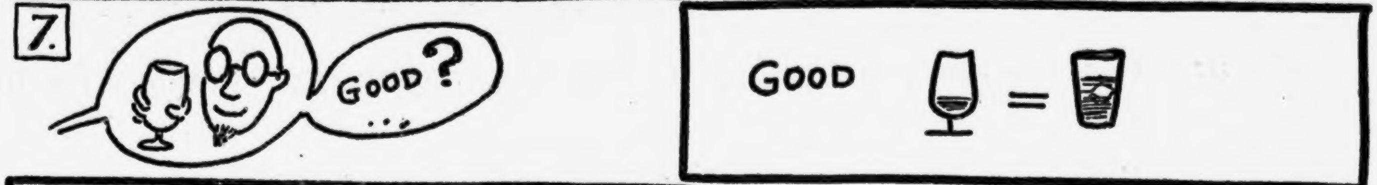
5.


GOOD!
THIS
?
THAT
Whiskey

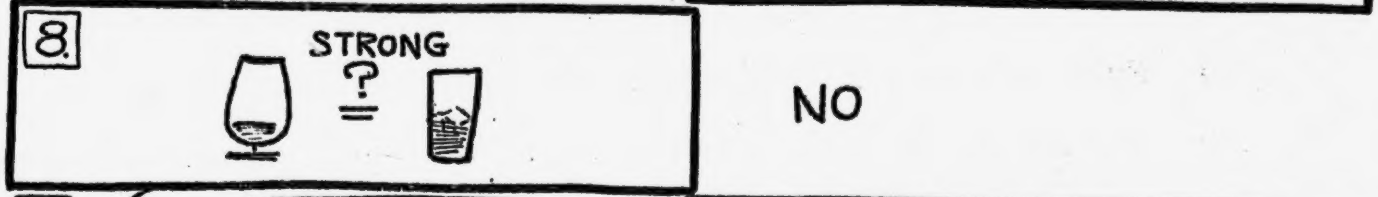
6.



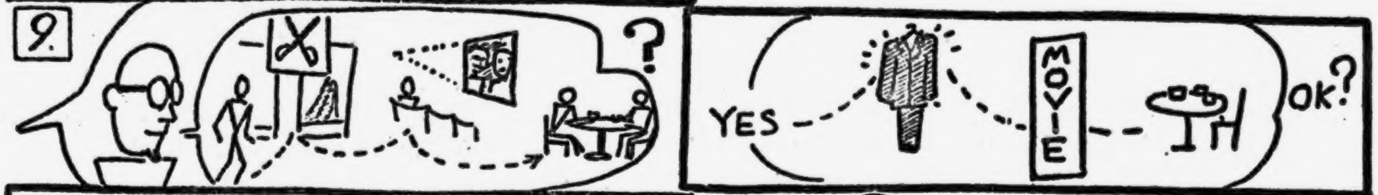
7.



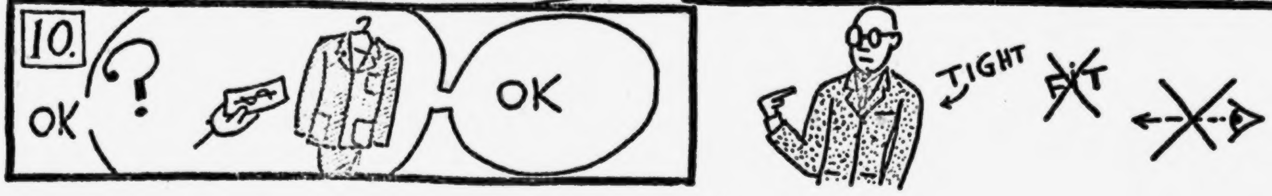
8.



9.


?
YES
MOVIE
OK?

10.


OK?
OK
TIGHT
FIT

LESSON 49

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Cheung Kaaù-Shaû, ts'ĭng ts'ŏh, ts'ĭng ts'ŏh.

B: Mâk Chung-Waì, neĭ kaan uk chan lèng. Ti ka-sz yaû kòm san-sik, ni shuè yat-tîng hó hó-chuê là.

2. A: Kwòh-tak-huì la. Pat-kwòh, ngŏh koó ngŏh ni shuè mŏ neĭ kóh shuè kòm hó-chuê.

B: Kóm yaû m̄-haî, ngŏh kóh shuè peî kwan-yĭng hó-chuê ti la!

3. A: Neĭ seúng yám ti mi-yĕ tsaú à?

B: Neĭ ni shuè yaŭ pin chúng tsaú à?

4. A: Ni shuè yaŭ kòk chúng wai-sẑ-keî* pât-laan-teî*, táng-táng; neĭ chung-ì pin chúng à?

B: Ch'uî-pîn* la! Pin chúng to m̄-kán-iù; kan-kuì neĭ kè king-îm, wai-sẑ-keî* hó m̄-hó-yám à?

5. A: Kan-kuì ngŏh kè king-îm, ngŏh kòk-tak ni chúng wai-sẑ-keî* hó hó-yám.

B: Ni chúng wai-sẑ-keî* yaŭ mŏ kóh chúng wai-sẑ-keî* kòm hó-yám à?

6. A: Leŭng-chúng to ch'a-m̄-toh, leŭng-chúng to yat-yeûng kòm hó-yám, neĭ seúng shì-hă mà?

B: Uē-kwóh ni chúng yaŭ kóh chúng kòm hó-yám, ngŏh tsaû shì-hă ni chúng la!

7. A: Neĭ ĭ-king yám-chóh yat-pooi là. Hó m̄-hó-yám à?

B: Keí hó-yám, ni chúng t'ūng kóh chúng yat-yeûng kòm hó-yám.

8. A: Neĭ kòk-tak ni chúng yaŭ mŏ kóh chúng kòm maăng à?

B: Ngŏh kòk-tak ni chúng mŏ kóh chúng kòm maăng.

9. A: Cheung Kaaù-Shaû, t'aū-sin neĭ wâ, neĭ seúng huì maaĭ ti yĕ sin; maaĭ-chóh yĕ chì t'aí heì shîk faân, haî mà?

B: Haî, ngŏh seúng maaĭ t'ò sai-chong sin. Maaĭ-chóh sai-chong chì t'aí heì t'ūng shîk maăn-faân, hó mà?

LESSON 49

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: Hó à! Tím-kaaî neĭ kòm kap maaĭ sai-chong à? Ch'î ti m̄-tak me?

B: Yan-waî ngŏh ni t'ò sai-chong chaàk-chóh ti, m̄-haî keî hó-cheûk, yaû m̄-haî keî hó-t'aî.

A: Hó la, kóm, ngŏh-teî yat-ts'aî huì la!

LESSON 49

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Prof. Cheung, please be seated.

   B: Lt. (1st Lt) Mâk, your house is really beautiful. The furniture is so modern. This place must be very comfortable.

2. A: It's all right. But I don't think my place is as comfortable as yours though.

   B: No, that isn't so. My place is better than an Army camp.

3. A: What do you want to drink?

   B: What do you have?

4. A: All kinds of whiskey, and brandy. Which do you prefer?

   B: Anything will do. Any kind is all right with me. According to your experience, is the whiskey any good?

5. A: According to my experience, I think this kind of whiskey is very good.

   B: Is this kind of whiskey as good as that?

6. A: Both kinds are about the same. They are just as good. Would you like to try some?

   B: If this kind is just as good as the other, I'll try some.

7. A: You have already had one glass. How do you like it?

   B: Pretty good. This kind is just as good as the other.

8. A: Do you think this kind is just as strong as the other?

   B: I don't think so.

9. A: Prof. Cheung, a while ago you said you would like to do some shopping. After that, you would like to go to a movie and have supper, isn't that right?

   B: Yes. I would like to buy a suit. After that, I'll go to the movie and have supper. Is that all right with you?

LESSON 49

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

10. A: Fine. Why are you in such a hurry to buy the suit? Can't you wait?

B: Because this suit is too tight, and it doesn't fit too well. Besides, it doesn't look too good.

A: I see. If that is the case, let us go!

LESSON 49

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān.

   C: Tsó-shān, tsó-shān.

2. A: Ts'ìng mân, ni shuè haî m̄-haî Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû kè sé-tsẑ-laū à?

   C: Haî, ni shuè haî Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû kè sé-tsẑ-laū.

3. A: Ts'ìng mân, k'uĭ î-ka haí m̄-haí tô à?

   C: Tuì-m̄-chuê, k'uĭ î-ka m̄-haí tô, yaŭ mat kwaì-kòn à?

4. A: K'uĭ iù keí shî chì faan kung à?

   C: K'uĭ ĭ-king faan-chóh kung, k'uĭ ngaam-ngaam haāng-chóh ch'ut huì.

5. A: K'uĭ chûng yaŭ keí noî chì faan laî ni shuè à?

   C: K'uĭ chûng yaŭ shâp fan-chung kòm sheûng-hâ*, tsaû faan laî là; m̄-koi neĭ táng-hă la!

6. A: Ngŏh sìng Kam, ngŏh haî Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

   C: Ôh, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, m̄-koi neĭ haí haàk-t'eng shuè ts'ŏh-hă la; k'uĭ tsaû-laí faan laî là!

7. B: Chìng-wâ yaŭ mŏ yān wán ngŏh à?

   C: Â, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû, neĭ faan laî lā!? Chìng-wâ yaŭ waî* Kam Sheûng-Kaaù laî wán neĭ.

8. B: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù î-ka haí pin shuè à?

   C: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù î-ka haí haàk-t'eng shuè táng neĭ.

9. A: Â, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû, neĭ faan laî lā!?

   B: Tuì-m̄-chuê, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, ngŏh ngaam-ngaam huì paan-fōng* shuè t'aí-hă ti hôk-shaang.

10. A: Neĭ huì paan-fōng* shuè tsô mi-yĕ à?

    B: Ngŏh huì paan-fōng* shuè t'aí-hă ti hôk-shaang haaú shì.

LESSON 49

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: K'uĭ-teî haaú mi-yĕ shì à?

B: K'uĭ-teî haaú taaî-haaú.

12. A: Ts'aam-ka taaî-haaú kè hôk-shaang toh m̂-toh à?

B: Ts'aam-ka taaî-haaú kè hôk-shaang hó toh, taaî-yeùk* yat-paàk yān chóh-yaû*.

13. A: K'uĭ-teî toh-shò haî kam-nîn kè pat-îp-shaang, haî m̂-haî à?

B: K'uĭ-teî toh-shò haî kam-nîn kè pat-îp-shaang, yaŭ-ti haî ch'ut-nîn* kè pat-îp-shaang.

14. A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, ch'uî-chóh ni ts'ẑ taaî-haaú chi-ngoî, k'uĭ-teî chûng iù haaú mi-yĕ shì à?

B: Ch'uî-chóh ni ts'ẑ taaî-haaú chi-ngoî, k'uĭ-teî chûng yaŭ pat-îp-shì.

15. A: Ying-koi ts'aam-ka taaî-haaú kè hôk-shaang yaŭ mŏ tò-ts'aî à?

B: Ying-koi ts'aam-ka taaî-haaú kè hôk-shaang, toh-shò tò-chóh

LESSON 49

WORD LIST

1.	ka-sz	furniture
2.	kóm-yaû-m̂-haî	No, that is not so
3.	kòk	each, every, various
4.	chúng (chùng)	kind, sort, category, seed,(to plant)
5.	pât-laan-teî*	brandy
6.	táng-táng	etc., so forth
7.	ts'uî-pîn*	at your convenience, as you please
8.	kan-kuì	according to, based on; basis
9.	king-îm	experience; to experience
10.	shì-hă	to try, to experiment
11.	pooi	cup, glass
12.	maăng	strong, furious, fierce, powerful
13.	sai-chong	suit of American style clothes
14.	chaàk	narrow, tight

LESSON 49

READING MATERIAL

149

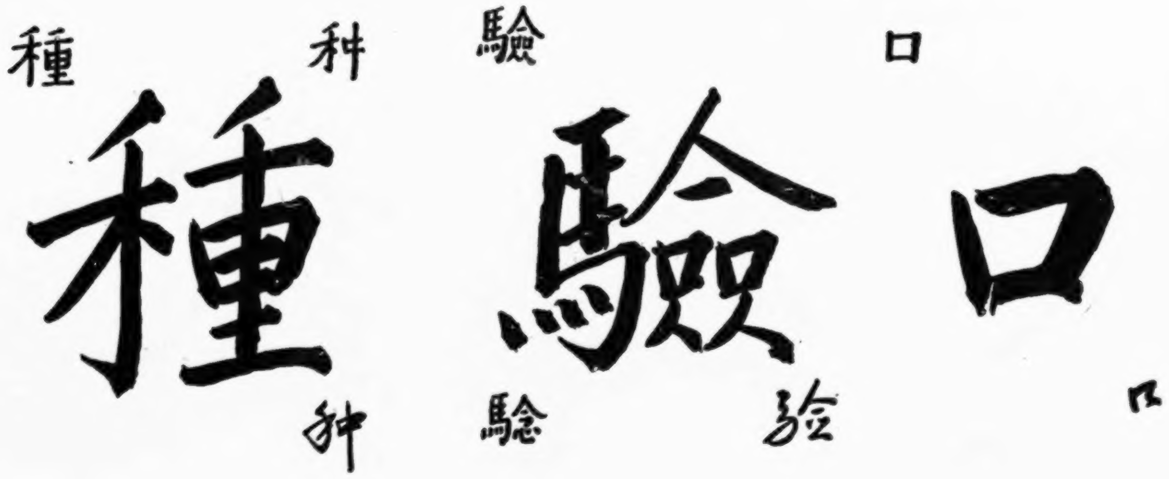
種	chúng: seed; germ race chung: to plant
種類	chúng-luî: class; variety
種族	chúng-tsûk: race of men
種子	chúng-tsź: seeds
種菜	chùng ts'oì: to plant vegetable

352

驗	îm: to fulfil; investigate; assay
試驗	shì-îm: examination; experimer
經驗	king-îm: experience

260

口	haú: mouth; port hole (Cl.kŏh)
人口	yān-haú: population
海口	hoí-haú: port
生口	shaang-haú: cattle in general
口才	haú-ts'oī: eloquence

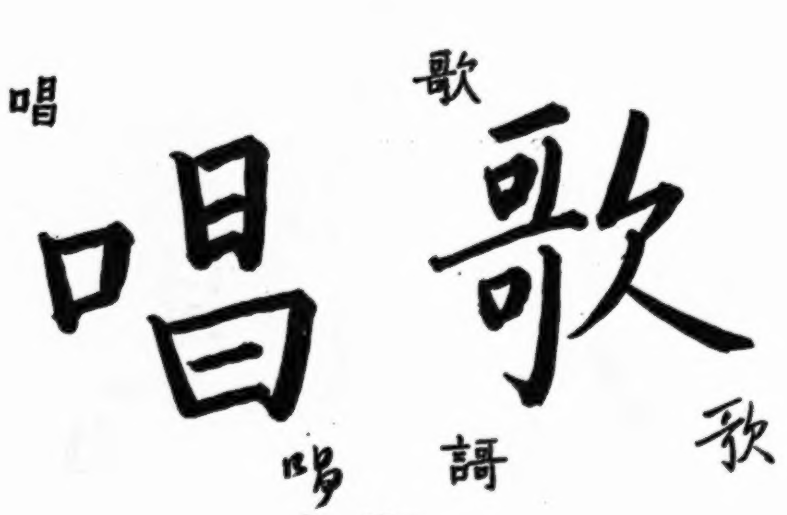


62

唱	ch'eùng to sing; to recite.
唱歌	ch'eùng-koh: to sing songs

482

歌	koh: song; to sing; to chant.
唱歌	ch'eùng koh: sing songs.
歌劇	koh-k'êk: opera.
歌詩	koh-shi: ode



LESSON 49

READING MATERIAL

834

拔	pât: to pull up; to uproot; to elevate.
拔除	pât ch'uī: to root up; to eradicate.
提拔	t'aī-pât: to promote; to elevate.

664

猛	maăng: savage violent; fierce.
猛烈	maăng-lĭt: fiery; ferocious.
猛獸	maăng-shaù: wild animal.
猛力	maăng-lĭk: with all one's strength.

976

試	shì: to try; to test; to verify.
試驗	shì-îm: to try; to test.
筆試	pat shì: written examination.

拔 猛 試

拔 猛 試

拔 猛 试

530

句	kuì: sentence; phrase.
一句話	yat-kuì-wâ: one sentence.
成句	shīng kuì: a complete sentence.
串句 or 作句	ch'uèn kuì or tsŏk kuì: to make up sentence with words given,

1315

隨	ts'uī: to follow; to comply with.
隨便	ts'uī-pîn: as one wishes; in accordance with one's convenience.
隨行	ts'uī hāng: to accompany.
隨員	ts'uī uĕn: retinue; valet.

句 隨

句 隨

句 隨

LESSON 49

READING MATERIAL

陳英知道黃小姐好中意佢嘅親-ts'ik嘅屋. 佢話,住喺乜野地方都唔緊要嘅. 有錢呢,就住喺好嘅地方;冇錢呢,平平常常地方乾淨,過得去敢就得啦. 黃小姐話冇錯;不過有啲人以為呢啲野有嗰啲kòm好食,呢種拔-la-地有嗰種kòm猛;但係,亦都有啲人以為呢啲野唔係幾好食,唔係幾好飲嘅. 敢,各人有各人嘅意思同經驗啦嗎,真係乜野都要試吓至得kà.

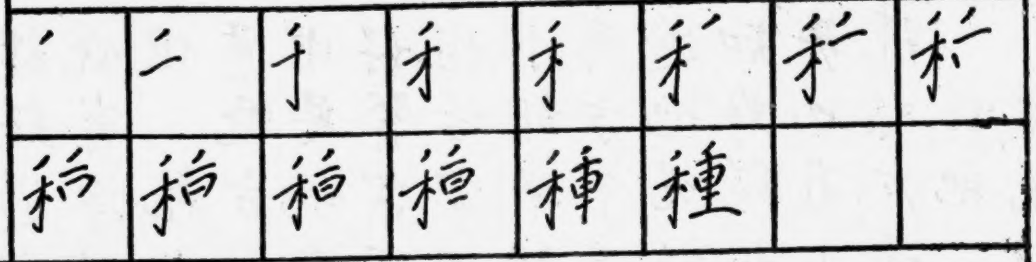
佢地行吓講吓,已經行到門口,聽見有人喺嗰處唱歌. 陳英唔想即刻叫開門. 佢地等chóh一陣,門就開chóh啦,原來係佢嘅親-ts'ik李先生開門. 佢地講chóh幾句客氣話,李先生就請陳英同黃小姐入去客廳處坐. 李太太都喺處. 佢叫陳英同黃小姐隨便,唔使客氣.

LESSON 49

WRITING MATERIAL

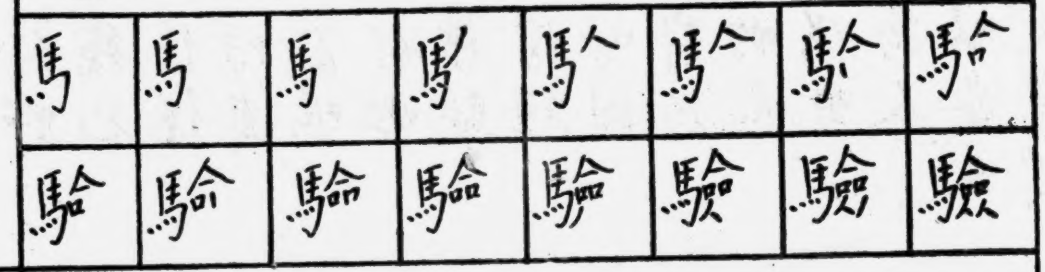
種

Character Number 149 **Radical Number** 115
Stroke Number 14 禾



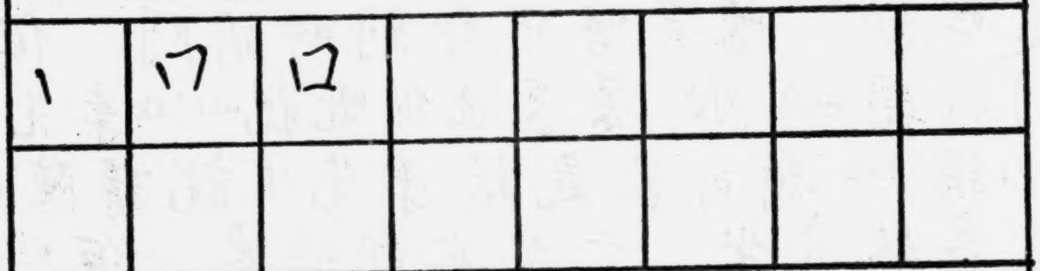
驗

Character Number 352 **Radical Number** 187
Stroke Number 22 馬



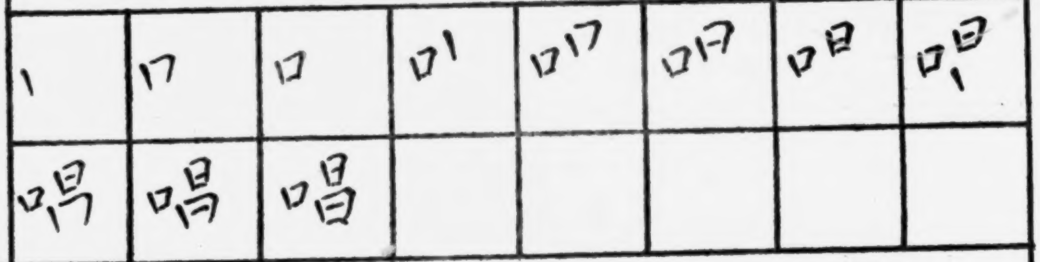
口

Character Number 260 **Radical Number** 30
Stroke Number 3 口



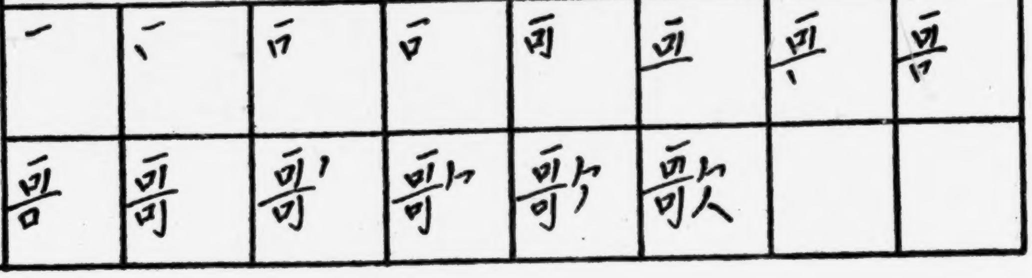
唱

Character Number 62 **Radical Number** 30
Stroke Number 11 口



歌

Character Number 482 **Radical Number** 76
Stroke Number 14 欠



LESSON 50

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. yaŭ mŏ...kòm...?

yaŭ...kòm, t'ūng...yat-yeûng kòm

mŏ...kòm

Ni t'iū lô hó.

Ni t'iū lô hó-haāng.

Ni t'iū lô yaŭ kóh t'iū lô kòm hó-haāng.

Ni t'iū lô t'ūng kóh t'iū lô yat-yeûng kòm hó-haāng.

Ni t'iū lô mŏ kóh t'iū lô kòm hó-haāng.

Ni t'iū lô yaŭ mŏ kóh t'iū lô kòm hó-haāng à?

Ni t'iū lô yaŭ kóh t'iū lô kòm hó-haāng.

Ni t'iū lô t'ūng kóh t'iū lô yat-yeûng kòm hó-haāng.

Ni t'iū lô mŏ kóh t'iū lô kòm hó-haāng.

hó-t'aì

Paâk-shik kè sut-shaam hó-t'aì.

Yaŭ yān wâ, paâk-shik kè sut-shaam hó-t'aì.

Yaŭ yān wâ, laām-shik kè sut-shaam t'ūng paâk-shik kè sut-shaam yat-yeûng kòm hó-t'aì.

Yaŭ yān wâ, laām-shik kè sut-shaam mŏ paâk-shik kè sut-shaam kòm hó-t'aì.

Laām-shik kè sut-shaam yaŭ mŏ paâk-shik kè sut-shaam kòm hó-t'aì à?

Laām-shik kè sut-shaam yaŭ paâk-shik kè sut-shaam kòm hó-t'aì.

Laām-shik kè sut-shaam mŏ paâk-shik kè sut-shaam kòm hó-t'aì.

LESSON 50

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Meĭ-Kwòk kè ch'e hó hó-shaí.

Ying-Kwòk kè ch'e yîk-to hó hó-shaí.

Ying-Kwòk kè ch'e keí hó-shaí.

Ying-Kwòk kè ch'e m̄-haî keí hó-shaí.

Ying-Kwòk ch'e yaŭ Meĭ-Kwòk ch'e kòm hó-shaí.

Ying-Kwòk ch'e t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk ch'e yat-yeûng kòm hó-shaí.

Ying-Kwòk ch'e yaŭ Meĭ-Kwòk ch'e kòm hó-shaí.

Ying-Kwòk ch'e yaŭ mŏ Meĭ-Kwòk ch'e kòm hó-shaí à?

Ying-Kwòk ch'e yaŭ Meĭ-Kwòk ch'e kòm hó-shaí.

Ying-Kwòk ch'e t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk ch'e yat-yeûng kòm hó-shaí.

Ying-Kwòk ch'e mŏ Meĭ-Kwòk ch'e kòm hó-shaí.

Ngŏh kòk-tak pât-laan-teî* t'ūng wai-sẑ-keî* yat-yeûng kòm hó-yám.

Ngŏh kòk-tak pât-laan-teî* yaŭ wai-sẑ-keî* kòm hó-yám.

Ngŏh kòk-tak pât-laan-teî*mŏ wai-sẑ-keî* kòm hó-yám.

Ni kaan ts'aan-shat kè waî* hó-ts'ŏh.

Kóh kaan ts'aan-shat kè waî*yaŭ ni kaan kè kòm hó-ts'ŏh.

Kóh kaan ts'aan-shat kè waî*mŏ ni kaan kè kòm hó-ts'ŏh.

2. peí, peí-kaaù

   kwòh

   Ni t'iū lô hó-haāng.

   Kóh t'iū lô hó-haāng.

   Kóh t'iū lô peí ni t'iū lô hó-haāng ti.

   Kóh t'iū lô peí-kaaù ni t'iū lô hó-haāng hó toh.

LESSON 50

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Kóh t'iū lô t'ūng ni t'iū lô, pin t'iū hó-haāng ti à?

Kóh t'iū lô hó-haāng ti.

Kóh t'iū lô peí ni t'iū lô hó-haāng ti.

Kóh t'iū lô peí-kaaù ni t'iū lô hó-haāng ti.

Kóh t'iū lô peí-kaaù ni t'iū lô hó-haāng hó toh.

Ni t'iū lô hó-haāng.

Kóh t'iū lô hó-haāng.

Kóh t'iū lô hó-haāng ti.

Kóh t'iū lô hó-haāng hó toh.

Kóh t'iū lô hó-haāng kwòh ni t'iū lô.

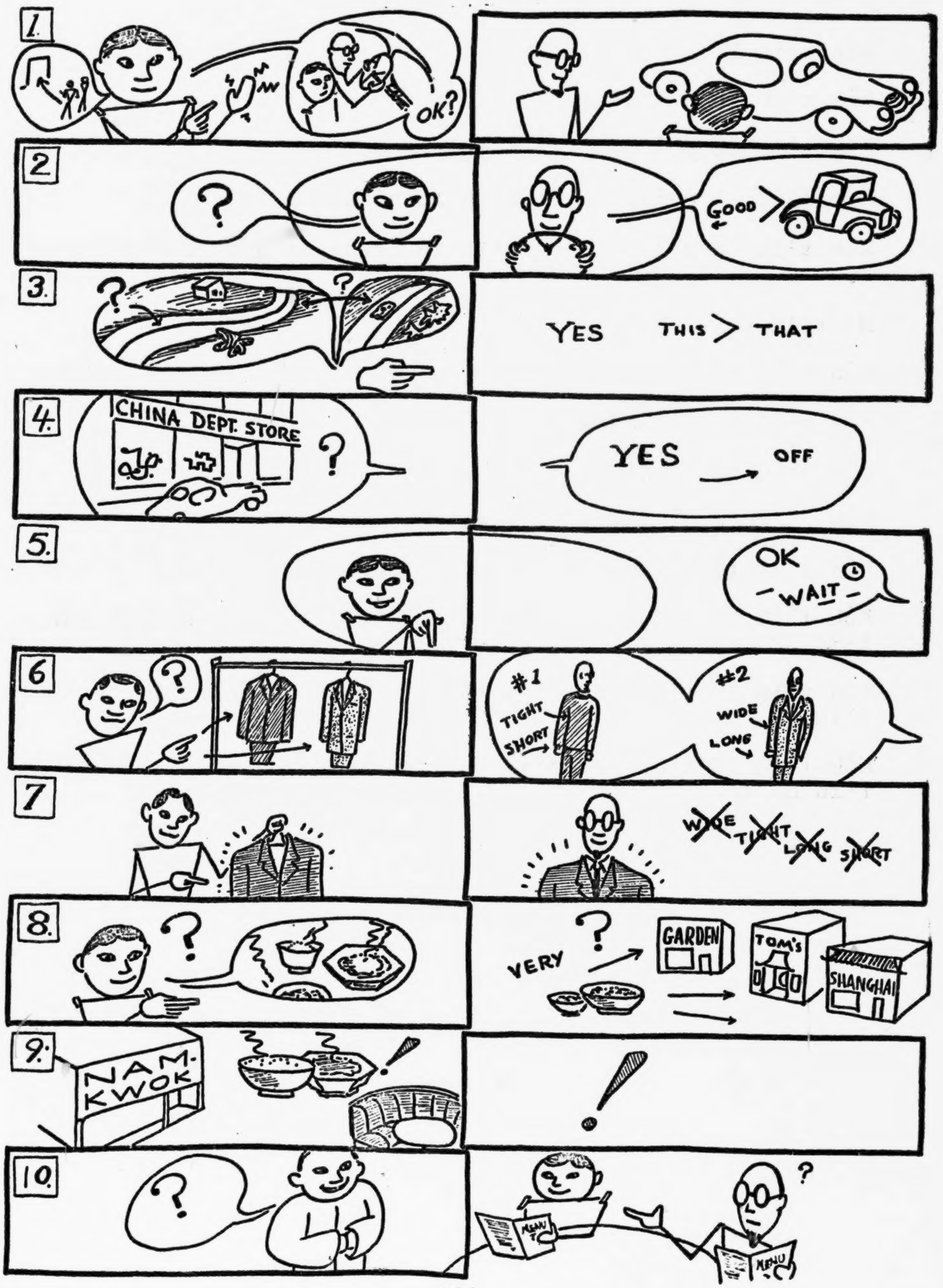
Kóh t'iū lô hó-haāng kwòh ni t'iū lô hó toh.

Kóh t'iū lô t'ūng ni t'iū lô, pin t'iū hó-haāng kwòh pin t'iū à?

Kóh t'iū lô t'ūng ni t'iū lô, kóh t'iū hó-haāng kwòh ni t'iū.

Kóh t'iū lô t'ūng ni t'iū lô, kóh t'iū hó-haāng kwòh ni t'iu hó toh.

LESSON 50


1.
OK?
2.
?
GOOD >
3.
?
?
YES THIS > THAT
4.
CHINA DEPT. STORE
?
YES → OFF
5.
OK
WAIT
6
?
#1
TIGHT
SHORT
#2
WIDE
LONG
7
~~WIDE~~ ~~TIGHT~~ ~~LONG~~ ~~SHORT~~
8.
?
VERY ?
GARDEN
TOM's
SHANGHAI
9.
NAM-KWOK
!
!
10.
?
MENU
?
MENU

LESSON 50

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Cheung Kaaù-Shaû, ngŏh-teî î-ka yat-ts'aî huì kaai. Kam-yât ngŏh shaú t'ùng, neĭ shaí ngŏh kè ch'e, tak mà?

B: Tong-în* tak la! Neĭ sheŭng ch'e sin la.

2. A: Neĭ kòk-tak ni kà ch'e hó m̄-hó-shaí à?

B: Chan hó-shaí, k'uĭ hó-shaí kwòh ngŏh kà hó toh.

3. A: Neĭ shûk lô mà? Ni t'iū lô hó-haāng ti, yik-waâk t'aū-sin kóh t'iū lô hó-haāng ti à?

B: Ngŏh hó shûk lô. Ni t'iū lô peí-kaaù t'aū-sin kóh t'iū hó-haang ti.

4. A: Ngŏh-teî tò-chóh Chung-Kwòk Paàk-Fòh-Kung-Sz meî à?

B: Ngŏh-teî ĭ-king tò-chóh Chung-Kwòk Paàk-Fòh-Kung-Sz là. Taaî-ka lôk ch'e la.

5. A: Ngŏh haí ch'e shuè táng neĭ, neĭ tsẑ-keí yâp huì la!

B: Hó, ngŏh tsẑ-keí yat-kòh yān yâp huì; m̄-koi neĭ táng-yat-chân.

6. C: Sin-shaang, neĭ shì-chóh leŭng-t'ò sai-chong, neĭ chung-ì pin t'ò à?

B: Taî-yat t'ò t'aaì chaàk, t'aaì tuén. M̄-haî keí hó-cheùk. Taî-î t'ò yaû foòt, yaû ch'eūng. Yîk-to m̄-hó-cheùk.

7. C: Neĭ shì-hă ni t'ò, t'aí-hă hó m̄-hó-cheùk?

B: Ni t'ò laām-shik kè m̄-foòt m̄-chaàk. M̄-ch'eūng m̄-tuén. M̄-chí hó hó-cheùk, î-ch'é hó hó-t'aí.

8. A: Cheung Kaaù-Shaû, neĭ t'ŏ m̄-t'ŏ-ngŏh à?

B: Ngŏh hó t'ŏ-ngôh, pin kaan ts'aan-shat ti yĕ chì hó-shîk à?

9. A: Naām-Kwòk Ts'aan-Shat la! M̄-chí ti yĕ hó-shîk, î-ch'é ti waî* yaû hó-ts'ŏh.

B: Keì-în haî kóm, ngŏh-teî tsaû huì Naām-Kwòk la!

LESSON 50

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. D: Sin-shaang, iù ti mi-yĕ shîk à? Seúng tîm ti mi-yĕ sùng à?

B: Neĭ mân ni waî* Mâk Chung-Waì la!

LESSON 50

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Prof. Cheung let's go now. My hand hurts today. Will you do the driving for me, please?

   B: Certainly. Get into the car first.

2. A: How do you like the performance of this car?

   B: It is really good. It is much better than mine.

3. A: Do you know your way well? Is this road better than the one a while ago?

   B: Yes, I do. This road is better than the one before.

4. A: Have we come to the China Department Store yet?

   B: Yes, we have. Let us get out here.

5. A: I'll wait for you in the car. You go in by yourself.

   B: Fine, I'll go in by myself. Will you please wait?

6. C: Sir, you've tried on 2 suits. Which one do you like?

   B: The first suit was too tight and too short. It didn't fit me. The second one was too large and too long. It didn't fit me, either.

7. C: Will you try this one on and see whether it fits?

   B: This blue suit isn't large or tight. It isn't long or short. Not only does it fit well, but it also looks very nice.

8. A: Prof. Cheung, are you hungry?

   B: I am very hungry. Which restaurant serves the best food?

9. A: Nam-Kwȍk Restaurant of course! Not only is the food delicious, the seats are also very comfortable.

   B: Since it is so good, let's go to Nām-Kwȍk then.

10. D: Gentlemen, what would you like to have? What would you like to order?

    B: Please ask this gentleman, Lt. (1st Lt.) Mâk.

LESSON 50

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû, ngŏh-teî chìng-wâ kóng-tò pin shuè à?

   B: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, ngŏh-teî chìng-wâ kóng-tò hôk-shaang ts'aam-ka taaî-haaú.

2. A: Neĭ chìng-wâ kóng, yaŭ ti hôk-shaang mŏ ts'aam-ka taaî-haaú, tîm-kaaî à?

   B: K'uĭ-teî mŏ ts'aam-ka taaî-haaú kè leĭ-yaū hó toh.

3. A: Tsuì kán-iù kè leĭ-yaū haî mi-yĕ à?

   B: Tsuì kán-iù kè leĭ-yaū haî, k'uĭ-teî m̄-seúng haaú-shì.

4. A: Tîm-kaaî k'uĭ-teî m̄-seúng haaú-shì à?

   B: Ngŏh koó, k'uĭ-teî kòk-tak haaú-shì naān kwòh-t'aū.

5. A: Tò-taî; ni ts'z̀ taaî-haaú hó naān, yik-waâk hó yūng-î à?

   B: Naān yik-waâk yūng-î, hó naān kóng; mooĭ kòh yān kè î-kìn to m̄-t'ūng.

6. A: Haaú-shì kè yĕ hó sham, yik-waâk hó ts'în à?

   B: Yaŭ yān wâ, yaŭ ti yĕ hó sham, yaŭ-ti yĕ ts'în tak-chaî.

7. A: Neĭ kòk-tak ni ts'z̀ haaú-shì naān m̄-naān à?

   B: Ngŏh kòk-tak ni ts'z̀ haaú-shì hó yūng-î.

8. A: Haaú-shì kè shî-haû, yaŭ mŏ yān ch'î tò à?

   B: Haaú-shì kè shî-haû, yaŭ seì nğ kòh yān ch'î tò.

9. A: Ch'î tò-chóh keî noî, k'uĭ-teî tsaû m̄-hóh-ĭ ts'aam-ka taaî-haaú à?

   B: Iù t'aî ts'îng-yîng; p'ó-t'ung-laî-kóng, ch'î tò-chóh yat-kòh kwat, k'uĭ-teî tsaû m̄-hóh-ĭ ts'aam-ka taaî-haaú.

10. A: Uē-kwóh taaî-haaú m̄-k'âp-kaàk, k'uĭ-teî hóh m̄-hóh-ĭ ts'aam-ka pat-îp shì à?

    B: Uĕ-kwóh taaî-haaú m̄-k'âp-kaàk, k'uĭ-teî m̄-hóh-ĭ ts'aam-ka pat-îp shì.

LESSON 50

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Tuì-ue ni kòh mân-t'aî, neĭ kóng-tak m̄-kaù ch'eūng-saì.

B: Neĭ tsik-haî wâ, ngŏh kóng-tak t'aaì kaán-taan, haî mà?

12. A: Haî, neĭ hóh m̄-hóh-ĭ kóng-tak ch'eūng-saì ti à?

B: Hó la, yat-chân-kaan ngŏh hóh-ĭ kóng-tak ch'eūng-saì ti.

13. A: K'uĭ-teî haaú-uēn shì meî à?

B: K'uĭ-teî chî-haî haaú-chóh taî-yat t'ōng che!

14. A: K'uĭ-teî chûng iù haaú keî-toh t'ōng, chì haaú-uēn à?

B: K'uĭ-teî chûng iù haaú nğ t'ōng chì haaú-uēn.

15. A: Ni leŭng yât, neĭ ch'uî-chóh faan hôk-haaû chi-ngoî,
chûng yaŭ mŏ huì pin shuè à?

B: Ni leŭng yât, ngŏh ch'uî-chóh faan hôk-haaû chi-ngoî,
yaû huì yat-kaan kung-sz shuè maaĭ ti yĕ.

LESSON 50

WORD LIST

1.	shaú t'ùng	hurts hand, hand aches
2.	sheŭng ch'e	to get on (in) the car, board a vehicle
3.	hó-shaî	good to drive (a car)
4.	shûk lô	to be familiar with the roads, know the way well
5.	fòh	cargo, goods, articles, merchandise
6.	paàk-fòh kung-sz	department store
7.	lôk ch'e	to get off a vehicle
8.	laām	blue
9.	shik	color
10.	laām-shik	blue color
11.	t'ŏ	stomach, abdomen, belly
12.	ngôh	hungry; hunger
13.	t'ŏ-ngôh	to be hungry
14.	hó-shîk	good to eat, tasty, delicious
15.	keì-în	since
16.	tîm sùng	or order food, to order dishes of food

LESSON 50

READING MATETIAL

441

記 kèi: to remember; recollect; to note down.

記號 kèi-hò: a mark; a sign; trademark.

記性 kèi-sìng: memory.

忘記 mōng-kèi: forget.

書記 shue-kèi: secretary.

日記 yât kèi: a diary.

927

相 seung: together; mutual; reciprocal.

相反 seung-fáan: contrary; opposed to.

相識 seung-shik: to be acquainted with.

相當 seung-tòng: corresponding to; proper.

相片 seung-p'ìn: photo.

548

關 kwaan: a bar; barrier; to bolt; to bar; serious; to involve.

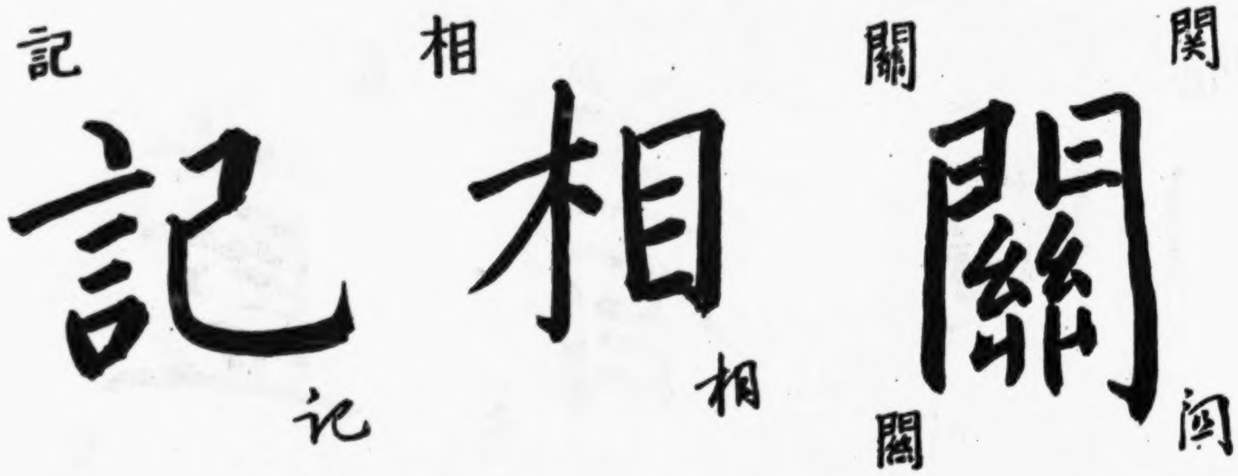
海關 hói-kwaan: maritime customs.

稅關 shùi-kwaan: customs service.

關係 kwaan-hâi: connection; serious; important.

關心 kwaan-sam: concerned for.

關頭 kwaan-t'āu: crucial stage.



191

貨 fòh: goods; cargo

貨物 fòh-mât: goods; cargo

洋貨 yeūng fòh: foreign

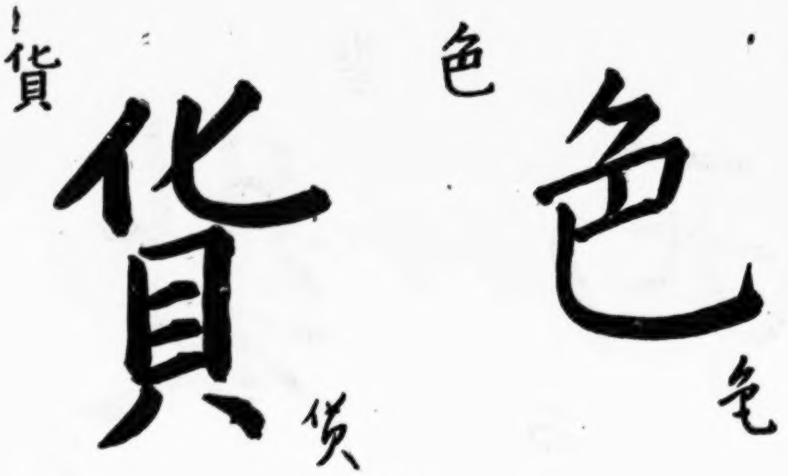
貨倉 fòh-tsòng: warehouse

981

色 shik: color; appearance; beauty; lustful pleasure.

深色 sham shik: deep color; high colored.

起色 héi-shik: improvement; prosperity.



LESSON 50

READING MATERIAL

1024

順 shûn: convenient; obedient; in sympathy with; to follow.

順從 shûn-ts'ūng: to comply with; to yield to; to obey.

順風 shûn-fung: a favorable wind.

順利 shûn-leî: prosperous; flourishing.

51

着 chêuk: right; completed action; put, attain to

遇着 uê-chêuk: to meet with

着力 chêuk-lîk: to exert oneself

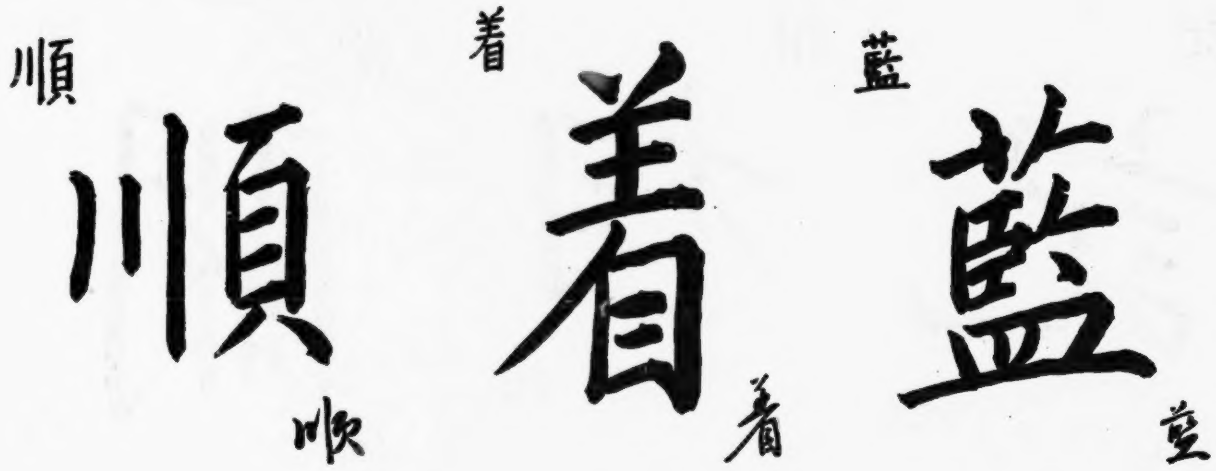
着急 chêuk-kap: impatient, restless

579

藍 laãm: blue; indigo.

藍色 laãm shik: blue color.

藍靛 laãm-tîn: vegetable indigo.



908

西 sai: west; occidental; foreign.

西裝 sai-chong: western dress or style.

西藏 sai-tsông: Tibet.

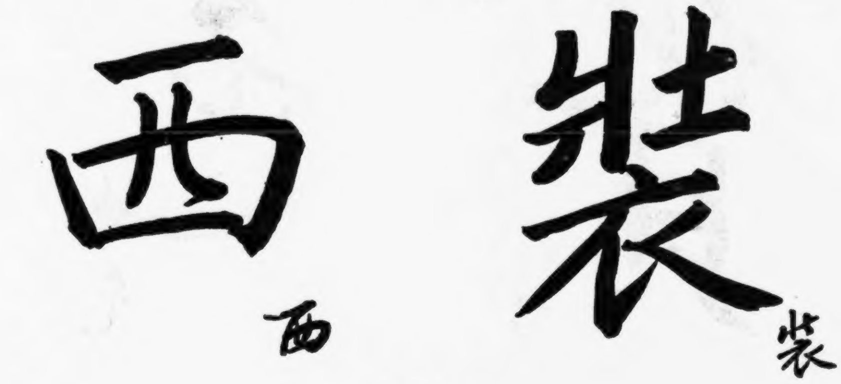
111

裝 chong: to dress; to pack; load

裝滿 chong-moŏn: packed full

唐裝 t'ŏng-chong: Chinese costume

裝置 chong-chì: to instal



LESSON 50

READING MATERIAL

而家佢地喺客廳處. 李先生話,真係估唔到係陳英黎探佢地. 陳英話,呢次佢去各處玩,順便黎拜候拜候. 佢頭先冇打電話黎,真係對唔住. 李先生叫佢唔使客氣.

陳英見黃小姐一句說話都冇講;佢知道佢頭先唔記得一件事. 佢就即刻介紹黃小姐同佢嘅親-ts'ik相識. 李太太就同黃小姐 k'ing. 佢地講嘅野係關於黃小姐去玩嘅地方,三-Faān-市嘅地方比較二-Faû 嘅點樣. 佢地又講關於呢處嘅天氣好過邊處嘅,對於三-Faān-市地方熟唔熟呢,最近有冇去百貨公司買過野,等等.

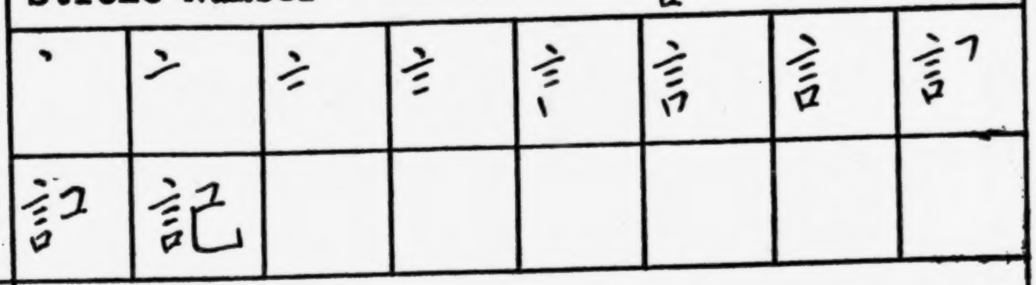
黃小姐見倒李太太着chóh 一 t'ò 藍色嘅西裝,唔 chaàk 唔短,真係好睇. 黃小姐想知道 t'ò 西裝係李太太買嘅 yik-或係佢做嘅.

LESSON 50

WRITING MATERIAL

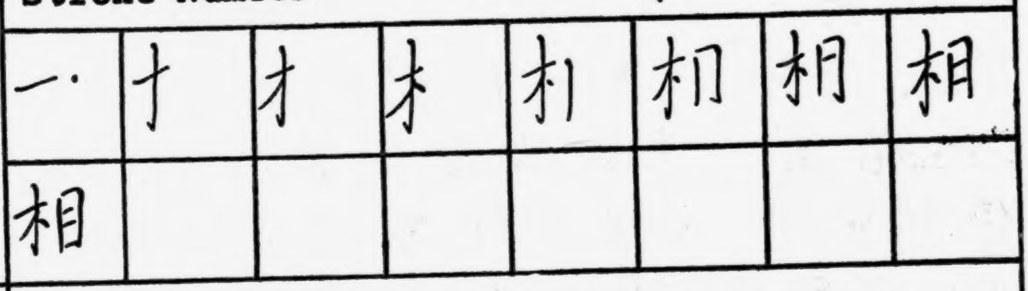
記

Character Number 441
Stroke Number 10
Radical Number 149
言



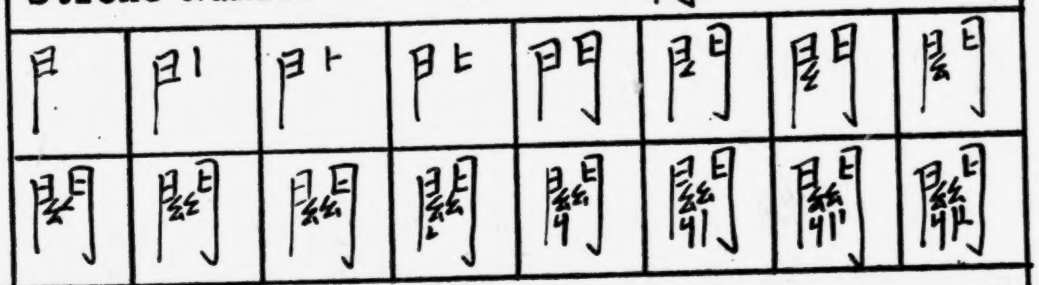
相

Character Number 927
Stroke Number 9
Radical Number 75
木



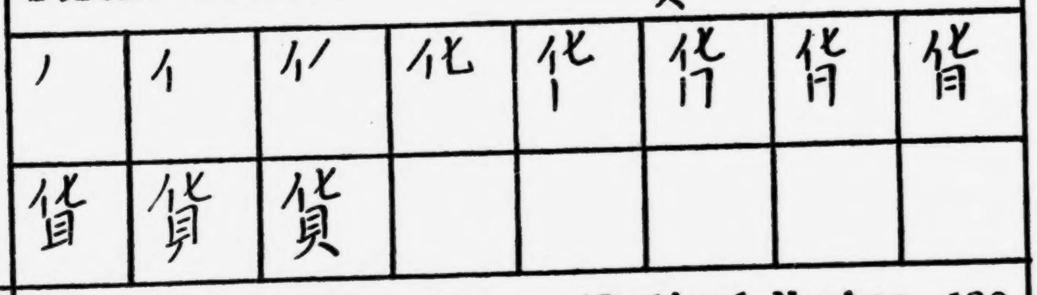
關

Character Number 548
Stroke Number 19
Radical Number 169
門



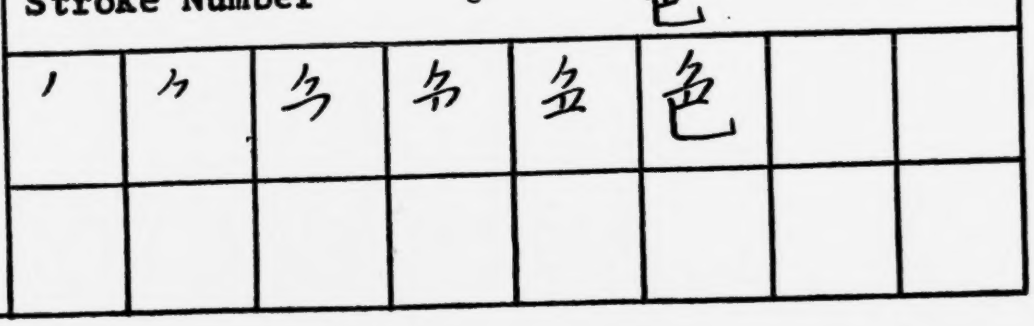
貨

Character Number 191
Stroke Number 11
Radical Number 154
貝



色

Character Number 981
Stroke Number 6
Radical Number 139
色



LESSON 51

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. yaŭ mŏ...kòm...?

yaŭ......kòm...

mŏ.......kòm

hó-shîk

Uē* hó-shîk.

Uē* hó m̄-hó-shîk à?

Uē* m̄-hó-shîk.

Uē* hó-shîk.

Uē* keí hó-shîk.

Uē* m̄-haî keí hó-shîk.

Uē* hó-shîk, ngaū-yûk yîk-to hó-shîk.

Ngaū-yûk yaŭ uē* kòm hó-shîk.

Ngaū-yûk mŏ uē* kòm hó-shîk.

Ngaū-yûk yaŭ mŏ uē* kòm hó-shîk à?

Ngaū-yûk yaŭ uē* kòm hó-shîk.

Ngaū-yûk t'ūng uē* yat-yeûng kòm hó-shîk.

Ngaū-yûk mŏ uē* kòm hó-shîk.

Chue-yûk yaŭ ngaū-yûk kòm hó-shîk.

Chue-yûk t'ūng ngaū-yûk yat-yeûng kòm hó-shîk.

Chue-yûk mŏ ngaū-yûk kòm hó-shîk.

Chue-yûk mŏ ngaū-yûk t'ūng uē* kòm hó-shîk.

Chue-yûk yaŭ mŏ ngaū-yûk t'ūng uē* kòm hó-shîk à?

Chue-yûk yaŭ ngaū-yûk t'ūng uē* kòm hó-shîk.

Chue-yûk mŏ ngaū-yûk t'ūng uē* kòm hó-shîk.

LESSON 51

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Uē*-t'ong yaŭ ngaū-yûk t'ong t'ūng chue-yûk t'ong kòm hó-yám.

Uē*-t'ong mŏ ngaū-yûk t'ong t'ūng chue-yûk t'ong kòm hó-yám.

2. peí, peí-kaaù

kwòh

chì, tsuì

Ngaū-yûk hó-shîk.

Uē* yîk-to hó-shîk.

Uē* peí ngaū-yûk hó-shîk ti.

Uē* peí ngaū-yûk hó-shîk hó toh.

Uē* t'ūng ngaū-yûk, pin yeûng hó-shîk à?

Uē* peí ngaū-yûk hó-shîk ti.

Uē* peí ngaū-yûk hó-shîk hó toh.

Uē* hó-shîk.

Uē* hó-shîk kwòh ngaū-yûk.

Uē* hó-shîk kwòh ngaū-yûk hó toh.

Uē* hó-shîk.

Uē* hó-shîk kwòh ngaū-yûk.

Uē* hó-shîk kwòh ngaū-yûk hó toh.

Kà-fe, hūng-ch'ā, t'ūng heì-shuí, ngŏh kòk-tak heì-shuí chì hó-yám.

Kà-fe, hūng-ch'ā, t'ūng heì-shuí, neĭ kòk-tak pin yeûng chì hó-yám à?

Kà-fe, hūng-ch'ā, t'ūng heì-shuí, ngŏh kòk-tak heì-shuí chì hó-yám.

Kà-fe, hūng-ch'ā, t'ūng heì-shuí, ngŏh kòk-tak heì-shuí tsuì hó-yám.

LESSON 51

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

3. saaì

saaì

M-koi-saaì.

Toh-tsê-saaì.

shîk-uēn

shîk-uēn-saaì

Ti yĕ shîk-uēn-saaì.

Ti yĕ tsô-uēn-saaì.

Ti yĕ maaî-saaì.

Ti yĕ ĭ-king maaî-saaì.

Ti yān to huì-saaì.

Ti yān huì-saaì meî à?

Ti yān to huì-saaì.

Kóh ti yān yâp-saaì kóh kaan fōng*

Kóh ti yān yâp-saaì kóh kaan fōng* meî•à?

Kóh ti yān yâp-saaì kóh kaan fōng*

Kóh ti yān ĭ-king yâp-saaì huì kóh kaan fōng*.

Kóh ti yān ĭ-king ch'ut-saaì huì.

saaì

ts'òh-saaì

koó ts'òh-saaì

K'uĭ koó ts'òh-saaì.

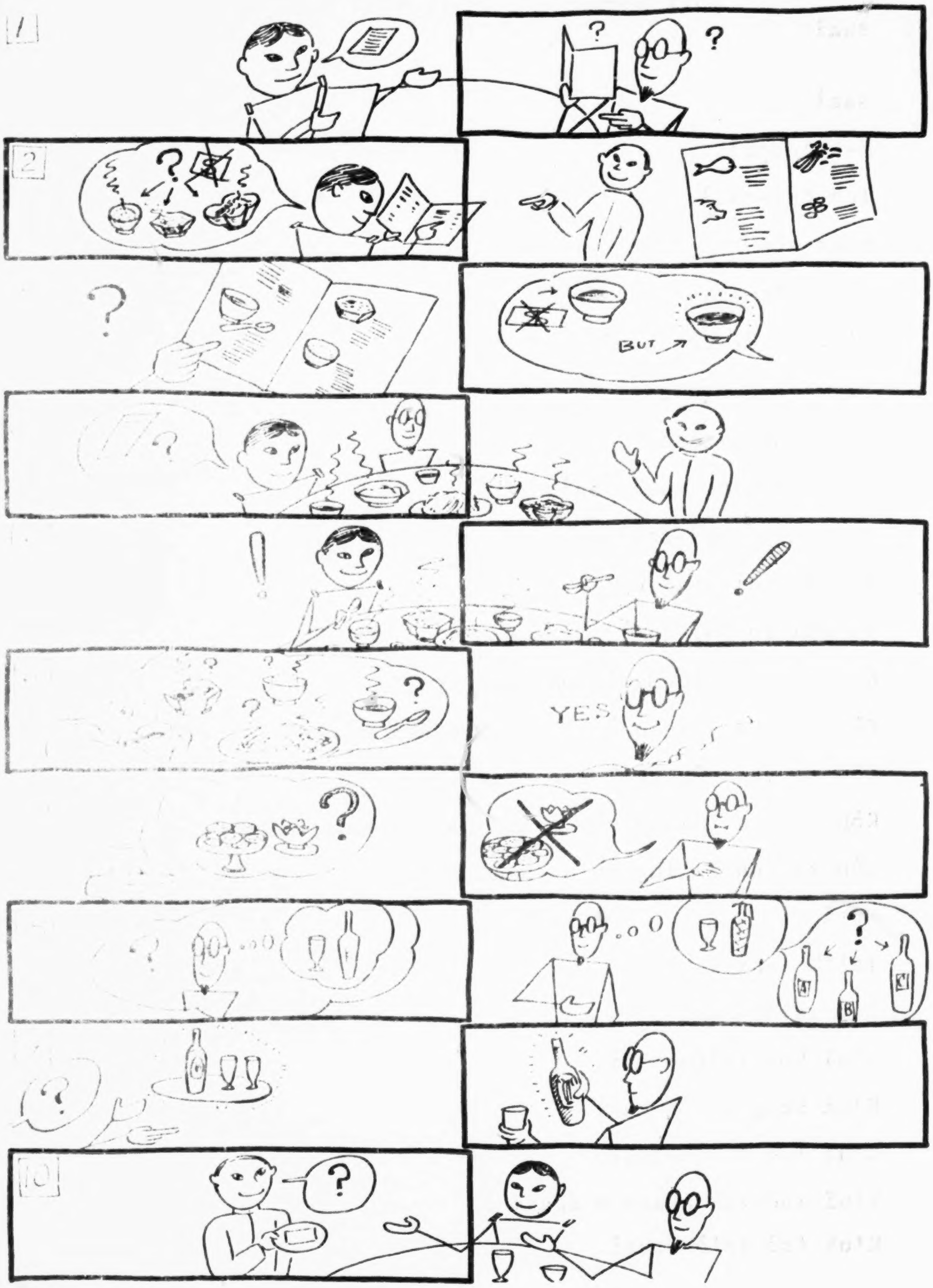
K'uĭ kóng ts'òh-saaì.

K'uĭ tsô ts'òh-saaì.

K'uĭ tsô-tak ngaam m̄-ngaam à?

K'uĭ tsô ts'òh-saaì.

LESSON 51


1
2
BUT
YES
A
B
C
10

LESSON 51

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Cheung Kaaù-Shaû, neĭ tím sùng la!

B: Mâk Chung-Waì, ngŏh m̄-haî keì ooĭ tím sùng, pat-uē neĭ tím la!

2. A: Hó la, táng ngŏh tím la! Fóh-keì, neĭ ĭ-waî pin meî sùng chì hó-shîk, kà-ts'în yaû m̄-haî keì kwaì à?

D: M-koi neĭ t'aí-hă ni cheung ts'aan-taan.
Ni meî uē* la, chue-yûk la, ch'ing-ts'oì la, kai-taân* la, yaû p'ēng yaû hó-shîk.

3. A: Ni meî t'ong hó-yám mà?

D: Ni meî t'ong yaû p'ēng yaû hó-yám, taân-haî mŏ kóh meî kòm hó-yám pòh!

4. A: Ti sùng tò ts'aî meî à, fóh-keì?

D: Ti sùng ĭ-king tò-ts'aî là, sin-shaang!

5. A: Cheung Kaaù-Shaû, ti sùng ĭ-king tò ts'aî là, ngŏh-teî heí-faaî* la!

B: Hó à, ngŏh-teî heí-faaî* la!

6. A: Ti sùng kè meî-tô hó mà, hó-shîk mà? Ti t'ong hó-yám mà?

B: Ti sùng kè meî-tô chan hó, chan hó-shîk; ti t'ong yaû hó-yám.

7. A: Chûng iù ti mi-yĕ shîk à, Cheung Kaaù-Shaû?

B: Haî-kòm-toh kaù là, ngŏh shîk-tak hó paaú là!

8. A: Neĭ kéng m̄-kéng-hòt à? Seúng yám ti heì-shuí mà?

B: Ngŏh kòk-tak keí kéng-hòt. Pin chúng heì-shuí chì hó-yám à?

9. A: Ni chúng heì-shuí m̄-chí hó-yám, î-ch'é hóh-ĭ kaaí hòt, neĭ iù mà?

B: Keì-în ni chúng heì-shuí kòm hó, ngŏh tsaû iù la!

10. D: Sin-shaang, chûng iù ti yĕ shîk mà?

B: Kaù là, m̄-koi neĭ maaî-taan, fóh-keì.

LESSON 51

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: **Táng-ngŏh-laĭ, Cheung Kaaù-Shaû, neĭ m̄-hó tsaang.**

B: **Toh-tsê-saaì là-pòh, Mâk Chung-Waì.**

A: **M̄-hó haàk-heì.**

LESSON 51

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Prof. Cheung, please order the food.

   B: Lt. Mâk, I don't quite know how to do it. Don't you think it would be better for you to do it?

2. A: Fine. I'll be happy to do it. Waiter, what do you recommend? Which dishes do you think are the best and are not so expensive?

   D: Please take a look at this menu. These dishes of fish, pork, green vegetables, and eggs are reasonable and delicious.

3. A: Is this soup good?

   D: This soup is inexpensive and delicious. But it is not as good as that.

4. A: Waiter, are all the dishes here?

   D: The dishes are all here, sir.

5. A: Prof. Cheung, the dishes are all here. Let us start eating.

   B: Fine, let's do that.

6. A: Are the dishes tasty and delicious? Is the soup good?

   B: The dishes are really tasty and delicious. The soup is good, too.

7. A: Prof. Cheung, what else would you like to have?

   B: That would be enough. I am very full.

8. A: Are you thirsty? Do you care for some soft drinks?

   B: I am [illegible] best?

9. A: This kind is not only good but also will quench your thirst. Would you like to have some?

   B: Since it is so good, then I'll have some.

10. D: Gentlemen, is there anything else that you would like to have?

LESSON 51

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

B: That will be all. Please give me the check, waiter.

A: Let me take care of that, Prof. Cheung. Please don't fight for it.

B: Thanks very much, Lt. Mâk.

A: You are very welcome.

LESSON 51

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû, t'aū-sin ngŏh-teî kóng-tò pin shuè à?

B: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, t'aū-sin ngŏh-teî kóng-tò huì kung-sz maaĭ yĕ.

2. A: Neĭ huì kung-sz shuè maaĭ ti mi-yĕ à?

B: Ngŏh huì kung-sz shuè maaĭ yat-kîn laĭ-mât.

3. A: Neĭ maaĭ yat-kîn laĭ-mât sùng peí pin-kòh à?

B: Ngŏh maaĭ yat-kîn laĭ-mât sùng peí ngŏh kè p'āng-yaŭ.

4. A: Neĭ sùng laĭ-mât peí neĭ kè p'āng-yaŭ tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: Ngŏh sùng laĭ-mât peí ngŏh kè p'āng-yaŭ, yan-waî k'uĭ hâ kòh laĭ-paaì pat-îp.

5. A: Neĭ sùng mi-yĕ peí k'uĭ tsô pat-îp laĭ-mât à?

B: Ngŏh sùng yat-kòh paâk-kam shaú-piu peí k'uĭ tsô pat-îp laĭ-mât.

6. A: Kóh kòh paâk-kam shaú-piu, neĭ pong-ts'àn pin kaan kung-sz maaĭ kà?

B: Kóh kòh paâk-kam shaú-piu, ngŏh pong-ts'àn Chung-Kwòk Kung-Sz maaĭ kè.

7. A: Kóh kòh shaú-piu, tîng-kà keí-toh ts'în* à?

B: Kóh kòh shaú-piu, tîng-kà nğ-shâp-î kòh lûk.

8. A: Haû-loî, k'uĭ-teî yaŭ mŏ p'ēng ti maaî peí neĭ à?

B: Yaŭ, kóh kòh king-leĭ tá paàt-nğ-chìt maaî peí ngŏh.

9. A: Nğ-shâp-î kòh lûk tá paàt-nğ-chìt, tsik-haî keí-toh ts'în* à?

B: Nğ-shâp-î kòh lûk tá paàt-nğ-chìt, tsik-haî seí-shâp-seî kòh ts'at-hō-yat.

10. A: Uēn-loî tîng-kà haî nğ-shâp-î kòh lûk, î-ka k'uĭ-teî maaî seí-shâp-seî kòh ts'at-hō-yat; tsik-haî p'ēng-chóh keí-toh à?

B: Tsik-haî p'ēng-chóh ts'at-kòh paàt-hō-kaú-tsź.

LESSON 51

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: **Neĭ maaĭ piu kè shî-haû, neĭ yaŭ mŏ taaî kaù ts'în* à?**

    B: Ngŏh taaî kaù ts'în*; ngŏh peî nğ shâp man k'uĭ, k'uĭ chaaú faan nğ kòh î-hō-kaú peî ngŏh.

12. A: **Chung-Kwòk Kung-Sz haí pin shuè à?**

    B: **Chung-Kwòk kung-Sz haî Naām Ch'ing-Nîn-Ooî* tsóh-shaú-pîn taî-î-kaan uk.**

13. A: **Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû, tím-kaaí î-ka ngoî-pîn kòm ts'ō kà?**

    B: **Yan-waî yaŭ ti hôk-shaang ngaam-ngaam haaú-uēn shì.**

14. A: **Neĭ wâ, k'uĭ-teî ĭ-king haaú-uēn taaî-haaú, haî m̄-haî à?**

    B: **M-haî, k'uĭ-teî chî-haî haaú-uēn taî-yat t'ōng, k'uĭ-teî î-ka lôk t'ōng.**

15. A: **K'uĭ-teî lôk t'ōng kè shî-haû, k'uĭ-teî m̄-hóh-ĭ tsîng ti me?**

    B: **Tong-în* hóh-ĭ la; pat-kwòh, ts'ō yat leŭng fan-chung m̄-kán-iù.**

LESSON 51

WORD LIST

1.	meì, (meì*)	taste, smell, (kind or dish of food)
2.	kả-ts'ìn	price, cost
3.	ts'aan-taan	menu
4.	uε*	fish
5.	chue-yûk	pork (pig's meat)
6.	ts'eng-ts'oì	green vegetables
7.	kai-taân*	chicken egg
8.	t'ong	soup
9.	faaì, faaì-tsź (faaì*)	chopsticks
10.	heì faaì*	to start eating, let us eat
11.	meì-tô	taste
12.	paaú	full from eating
13.	kéng-hỏt	thirsty
14.	heì-shuì	soft drink soda water
15.	kaaí	to quench (thirst), explain, untie, neutralize, loosen
16.	kaaì hỏt	to quench thirst
17.	táng-ngŏh-laì	let me do it, let me take care of that
18.	chaang	to compete, fight, argue
19.	lả-pỏh	final particle, emphatic

LESSON 51

READING MATERIAL

1258

靜 tsíng: quiet; peaceful; retiring.

靜思 tsíng sz: to think quietly.

靜候 tsíng haû: to await; quietly.

1180

肚 t'ŏ: stomach; abdomen.

肚痛 t'ŏ t'ùng: pain in the abdomen.

腸肚 ch'eūng t'ŏ: the intestines.

758

餓 ngôh: hungry; hunger.

肚餓 t'ŏ ngôh: hungry.

餓鬼 ngôh kwaí: hungry ghost(who receives no sacrifices).

靜　肚　餓

靜　肚　餓

静　肚　餓

655

麻 mā: hemp; linen.

麻雀 mā-tseûk: sparrow.

麻木 mā-mûk: numb without feeling.

麻醉 mā-tsuì: drugged; stupified.

麻煩 mā-faān: trcublesome; inconvenience.

163

煩 faān: to annoy; worry; trouble

麻煩 mā-faān: to bother; troublesome

煩悶 faān-moôh: depressed; annoyed chagrined

麻　煩

麻　煩

蔴　麻　煩

LESSON 51

READING MATERIAL

686

味 meî: taste; flavor; smell.

味道 meî-tô: taste of a thing.

氣味 heì-meî: odor; flavor.

海味 hoí-meî": marine delicacies.

趣味 ts'uì-meî: interest; interesting.

314

喝 hòt: to call out; bawl

喝住 hòt-chuê: call to stop

喝彩 hòt-ts'oí: to applaud; acclamation

377

解 kaaí: to loosen; explain; to release

解開 kaaí-hoi: untie

解明 kaaí-mīng: explain clearly

解釋 kaaí-shik: explain; interpret

解散 kaaí-saàn: disperse; disband

味 喝 解

味 喝 解

味 喝 解

272

汽 heì: gas; steam

汽車 heì-ch'e: automobile

汽油 heì-yaū: gasoline

汽水 heì-shuí: soda-water; soda-pop

93

整 chíng: to make; do; arrange

修整 sau-chíng: to repair

整齊 chíng-ts'aī: orderly; neat and tidy

汽 整

汽 整

汽 整

LESSON 51

READING MATERIAL

而家屋嘅周圍好靜。街燈着chóh 啦，到處都有燈光。陳英同黃小姐重喺佢地嘅親-ts'ik處。佢地真係好 k'ing 啦。李太太而家請陳英同黃小姐飲茶，食烟。佢話，大家k'ing得kòm 有味，而家覺得kóng- 渴嗎，肚餓嗎？不如大家飲pooi 茶解吓渴至再 k'ing 啦！如果唔想飲茶，可以飲酒，飲汽水呀。陳英同黃小姐一齊話，飲pooi 茶得啦，唔好客氣。

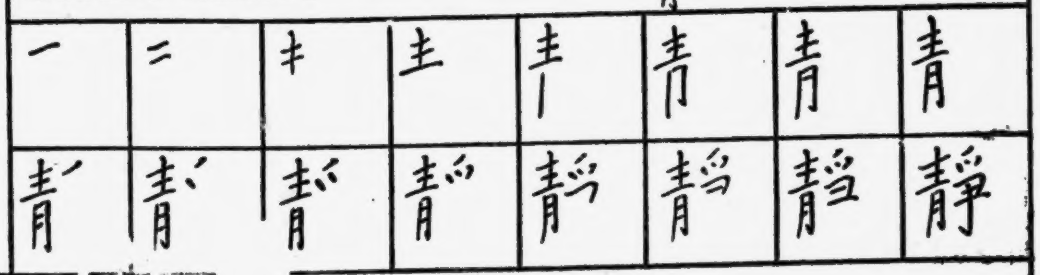
而家已經下午七點啦。陳英同黃小姐坐chóh kòm 耐，覺得唔好意思；佢地想走啦。李先生同李太太一定要佢地喺處食ts'aan便飯，順便喺處過夜，唔使kòm 麻煩去酒店住。李太太想即刻去ch'uī房整sùng。李先生話，大家去ts'aan-室食好啲。陳英同黃小姐睇見親-ts'ik kòm 有心。如果唔同佢地去，又唔好意思。

LESSON 51

WRITING MATERIAL

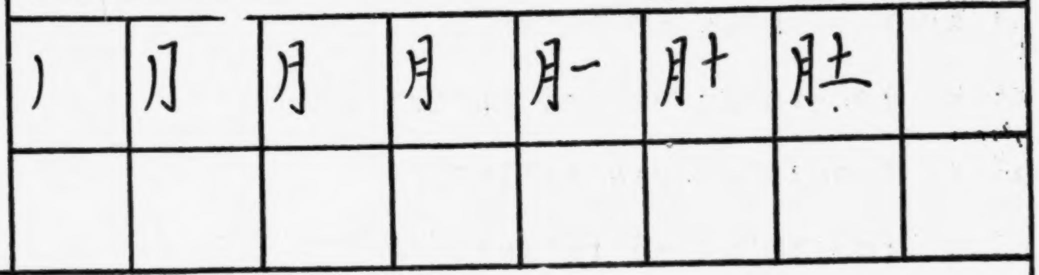
靜

Character Number 1258
Stroke Number 16
Radical Number 174
青



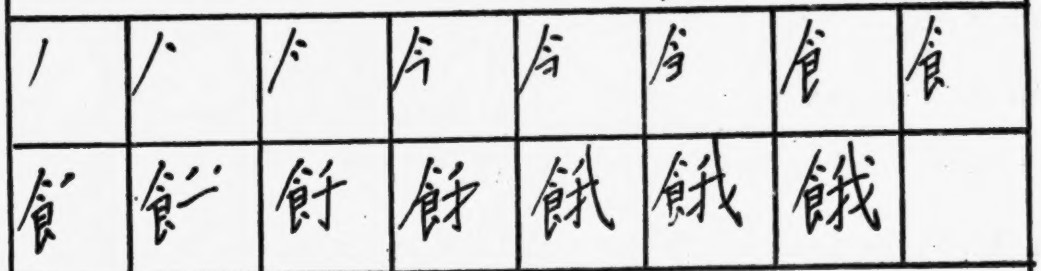
肚

Character Number 1180
Stroke Number 7
Radical Number 130
月，肉



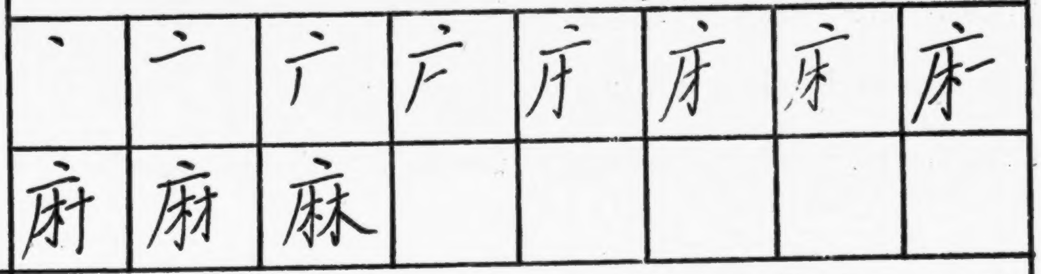
餓

Character Number 758
Stroke Number 15
Radical Number 184
食，飠



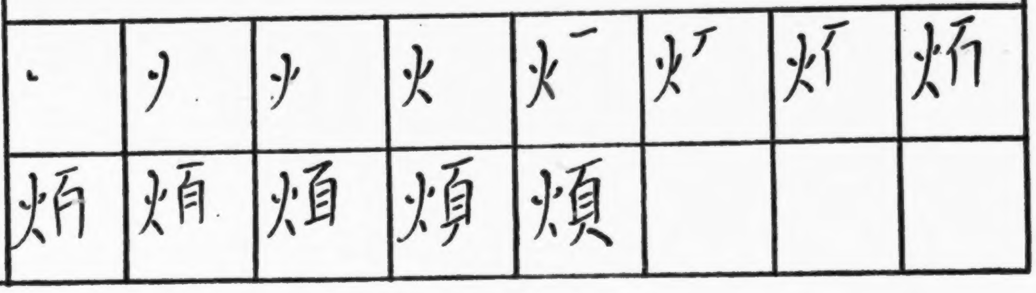
麻

Character Number 655
Stroke Number 11
Radical Number 200
麻



煩

Character Number 163
Stroke Number 13
Radical Number 86
火，火



LESSON 52

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. yaŭ mŏ...?

yaŭ...

mŏ....

yaŭ ts'în*

K'uĭ kè foô-ts'an yaŭ ts'în*.

K'uĭ kè foô-ts'an mŏ ts'în*.

K'uĭ kè foô-ts'an yaŭ mŏ ts'în* à?

K'uĭ kè foô-ts'an yaŭ ts'în*.

K'uĭ kè foô-ts'an mŏ ts'în*.

yaŭ fei

yaŭ fei maaî

Ni kaan heì-uên* yaŭ fei maaî.

Ni kaan heì-uên chûng yaŭ fei maaî.

Ni kaan heì-uên* mŏ fei maaî.

Ni kaan heì-uên* chûng yaŭ mŏ fei maaî à?

Ni kaan heì-uên* chûng yaŭ fei maaî.

Ni kaan heì-uên* chûng yaŭ taaî-pá fei maaî.

2. yaŭ mŏ....? yaŭ...., mŏ....

....m̄....?

LESSON 52

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

huì Taaî-Faû

Ngŏh huì Taaî-Faû.

Ngŏh k'ām-yât huì Taaî-Faû.

Ngŏh k'ām-yât yaŭ huì Taaî-Faû.

Ngŏh k'ām-yât mŏ huì Taaî-Faû.

Neĭ k'ām-yât yaŭ mŏ huì Taaî-Faû à?

Ngŏh k'ām-yât huì Taaî-Faû.

Ngŏh k'ām-yât yaŭ huì Taaî-Faû.

Ngŏh k'ām-yât mŏ huì Taaî-Faû.

Ngŏh huì Taaî-Faû.

Ngŏh t'ing-yât huì Taaî-Faû.

Ngŏh t'ing-yât m̄-huì Taaî-Faû.

Neĭ t'ing-yât huì m̄-huì Taaî-Faû à?

Ngŏh t'ing-yât huì Taaî-Faû.

Ngŏh t'ing-yât m̄-huì Taaî-Faû.

3. yaŭ mŏ....?

   yaŭ....

   mŏ

   ...t'ūng...yat-yeûng kòm....

   hó-t'aí

   tîn-yíng hó-t'aí

   Ni kaan heì-uên* kè tîn-yíng hó-t'aí.

LESSON 52

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Kóh kaan heì-uên* kè tîn-yíng yîk-to hó-t'ai.

Kóh kaan heì-uên* kè tîn-yíng yaŭ ni kaan kè kòm hó-t'aì.

Kóh kaan heì-uên* kè tîn-yíng mŏ ni kaan kè kòm hó-t'aí.

Kóh kaan heì-uên* kè tîn-yíng yaŭ mŏ ni kaan kè kòm hó-t'aí à?

Kóh kaan heì-uên* kè tîn-yíng yaŭ ni kaan kè kòm hó-t'aí.

Kóh kaan heì-uên* kè tîn-yíng mŏ ni kaan kè kòm hó-t'aî.

Kóh kaan heì-uên* kè tîn-yíng t'ūng ni kaan kè yat-yeûng kòm hó-t'aí.

4. hă

t'aí heì

t'aí-hă heì

Ngŏh seúng huì t'aí-hă heì.

saàn pô

saàn-hă pô

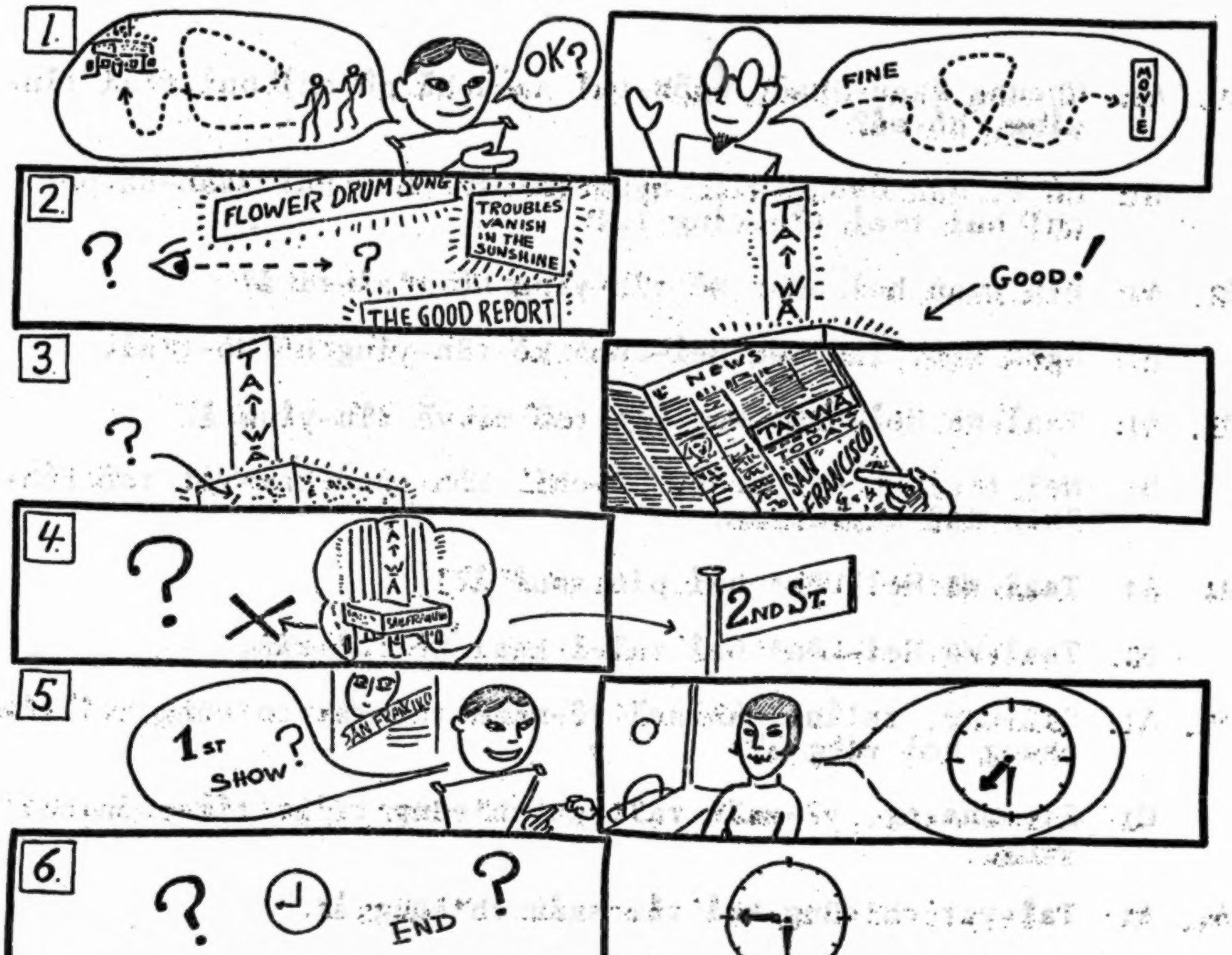
K'uĭ huì saàn-hă pô.

t'eng yam-ngôk

t'eng-hă yam-ngôk

K'uĭ haí uk-k'eí t'eng-hă yam-ngôk.

LESSON 52


1.
OK?
FINE
MOVIE
2.
FLOWER DRUM SONG
TROUBLES VANISH IN THE SUNSHINE
THE GOOD REPORT
TATWA
GOOD!
3.
TATWA
NEWS
TATWA TODAY SAN FRANCISCO
4.
TATWA
SAN FRANCISCO
2ND ST.
5.
1ST SHOW?
SAN FRANCISCO
6.
END
7.
7:30
YES
8
No. 5
9.
YES
10
GOOD!

LESSON 52

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Cheung Kaaù-Shaû, ngŏh-teî saàn-hă pô chì huì t'aí tîn-yíng, hó mà?

   B: Hó à, Mâk Chung-Waì; ngŏh-teî tò-shuè huì saàn-hă pô chì huì t'aí tîn-yíng la!

2. A: Pin kaan heì-uên* kè tîn-yíng hó-t'aí-ti à?

   B: Ngŏh koó, Taaî-Wā Heì-Uên* kè tîn-yíng hó hó-t'aí.

3. A: Taaî-Wā Heì-Uên* kam-yât tsô mi-yĕ tîn-yíng à?

   B: Neĭ t'aí-hă ni cheung pò-chí, kóh shuè kam-yât tsô Fóh-Shiu Kaû-Kam-Shaan.

4. A: Taaî-Wā Heì-Uên* haí pin shuè à?

   B: Taaî-Wā Heì-Uên* haí taî-î kaai kè foô-kân.

5. A: Siú-Ché, ts'íng mân neĭ yê-maăn taî-yat ch'eūng keí tím-chung hoi yíng à?

   C: Sin-shaang, yê-maăn taî-yat ch'eūng ts'at-tím-poòn hoi yíng.

6. A: Taî-yat ch'eūng keí tím saàn ch'eūng à?

   C: Taî-yat ch'eūng kaú-tím-poòn saàn ch'eūng.

7. A: Ts'at-tím-poòn kóh ch'eūng, chûng yaŭ mŏ fei maaî à?

   C: Ts'at-tím-poòn kóh ch'eūng, chûng yaŭ taaî-pá fei maaî.

8. A: Cheung Kaaù-Shaû, tím-kaaí kòm heung à, neĭ mān-tó mà?

   B: Mān-tó, waâk-ché kóh kòh nuĭ maaî p'iù-uēn ch'ā-chóh heung-shuí.

9. A: Neĭ t'aí-hă! Yaŭ kòm toh hung waî* haí shuè.

   B: Haî à, hó toh waî* to ts'ŏh m̀ moŏn.

10. A: Neĭ kòk-tak ni ch'ut tîn-yíng hó-t'aí mà, ti yam-ngôk hó-t'eng mà?

    B: Ngŏh kòk-tak ni ch'ut tîn-yíng m̀-haî keí hó-t'aí. Taân-haî ti yam-ngôk hó hó-t'eng.

LESSON 52

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Prof. Cheung, let us take a walk before going to the movie, shall we?

   B: Fine, Lt. (1/Lt) Mâk, let's walk around before going to see the movie.

2. A: Which (theater's) movie is better?

   B: I think the movie at Taaî-Wā Theater is very good.

3. A: What movie is being shown today at the Taaî-Wā Theater?

   B: Take a look at this newspaper. It is showing "San Francisco" today.

4. A: Where is the Taaî-Wā Theater?

   B: Taaî-Wā Theater is in the vicinity of Second Street.

5. A: Miss, please tell me when the first evening show will start?

   B: Sir, the first evening show will start at 7:30.

6. A: When will the first show be over?

   C: The first show will be over by 9:30.

7. A: Are there any more tickets for the 7:30 show?

   C: There are quite a few tickets left for the 7:30 show.

8. A: Prof. Cheung, what a good smell! Do you smell it?

   B: Yes, I do, perhaps the lady in the ticket-box put on some perfume.

9. A: Look! There are so many empty seats here.

   B: Yes, many seats are not filled.

10. A: Do you think the movie is good, and the music is beautiful?

    B: I don't think the movie is very good, but the music is beautiful.

LESSON 52

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû, chìng-wâ ngŏh-teî kóng-tò pin shuè à?

B: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, chìng-wâ ngŏh-teî kóng-tò hôk-shaang kè haaú-shì.

2. A: Tìm-kaaì yaŭ-ti yăn haì laăng-hông* shuè ch'eùng-koh à?

B: Yaŭ ti hôk-shaang haaú-uēn shì chi-haû, kwooî kwòh-t'aū, shóh-ĭ ch'eùng-hă koh.

3. A: Ni chúng ts'ìng-yìng p'ó m̄-p'ó-t'ung à?

B: Ni chúng ts'ìng-yìng hó p'ó-t'ung.

4. A: Ngŏh koó, k'uĭ-teî haaú-shì yat-tîng haaú-tak hó san-foó là!

B: Yaŭ-ti hôk-shaang haaú-shì haaú-tak hó san-foó.

5. A: Yaŭ mŏ hôk-shaang tsôk-maăn mŏ fàn-kwòh à?

B: Yaŭ, yaŭ-ti hôk-shaang tsôk-maăn shìng-maăn mŏ fàn-kwòh.

6. A: Neĭ tìm-kaaì chi-tò-tak kòm ts'ing-ch'óh à?

B: Yaŭ ti hôk-shaang t'ūng ngŏh kóng.

7. A: Neĭ î-ka tak-haān mà, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû?

B: Ngŏh î-ka tsaâm-shì m̄-tak-haān, neĭ yaŭ mi-yĕ sẑ à?

8. A: Ngŏh seúng t'ūng neĭ huì yám pooi kà-fe.

B: Tuì-m̄-chuê, ngŏh mŏ shî-haû, ngŏh m̄-huì-tak.

9. A: Tìm-kaaì neĭ m̄-huì-tak à?

B: Yan-waî ngŏh chûng iù huì paan-fōng* shuè.

10. A: Neĭ chûng iù huì paan-fōng* shuè tsô mi-yĕ à?

B: Ngŏh chûng-iù huì paan-fōng* shuè, ngŏh foô-tsaàk taî-î t'ōng kè taaî-haaú.

11. A: Táng neĭ haaú-uēn-shì chi-haû, ngŏh-teî yat-ts'aî ch'ut huì shîk aàn-chaù, hó mà?

B: Hó à, táng yat-chân, ngŏh-teî yat-ts'aî ch'ut-huì shîk aàn-chaù la!

LESSON 52

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

12. A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, ngŏh seúng tsaú sin là!

B: Neī yat-chân tsoì laî la!

13. A: Neī seúng ngŏh keî-shī tsoì laî à?

B: Neī leŭng-kòh chung-t'aū chi-haû tsoì laî la!

14. A: Hó la, leŭng-kòh chung-t'aū chi-haû, ngŏh tsoì laî paaì-haû la!

B: M̄-hó-kóm-wâ, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

15. A: Yat-chân tsoì-kìn.

B: Yat-chân tsoì-kìn.

LESSON 52

WORD LIST

1. saàn-pô	to take a walk, stroll
2. heì-uên*	theater
3. tsô	to show, do, make, perform
4. fóh	fire
5. shiu	to burn
6. Kaû-Kam-Shaan	San Francisco
7. foô-kân	vicinity; near-by
8. taî-yat ch'eūng	first show, first showing
9. hoi	to open
10. yíng	to show (movie), project, shadow
11. hoi-yíng	to start a movie
12. saàn	to dismiss, scatter, end
13. saàn-ch'eūng	show is over, show ended
14. fei, p'iù	ticket
15. taaî-pá	plenty, many, lots of, a great deal
16. maaî-p'iù-uēn	ticket-seller
17. mān-tó	to smell, be able to smell
18. ch'ā	to smear, put on, apply on
19. moŏn	full, filled
20. ch'ut	A.N. for movie, show, opera
21. hung-waî*	vacant seat

LESSON 52

READING MATERIAL

1374

魚 uē, uē*: fish in general.

魚雷 uē-luī: torpedo.

沙甸魚 sha-tin-uē: sardine.

118

豬 chue: pig; swine (Cl. chĕk)

豬肉 chue-yuk: pork

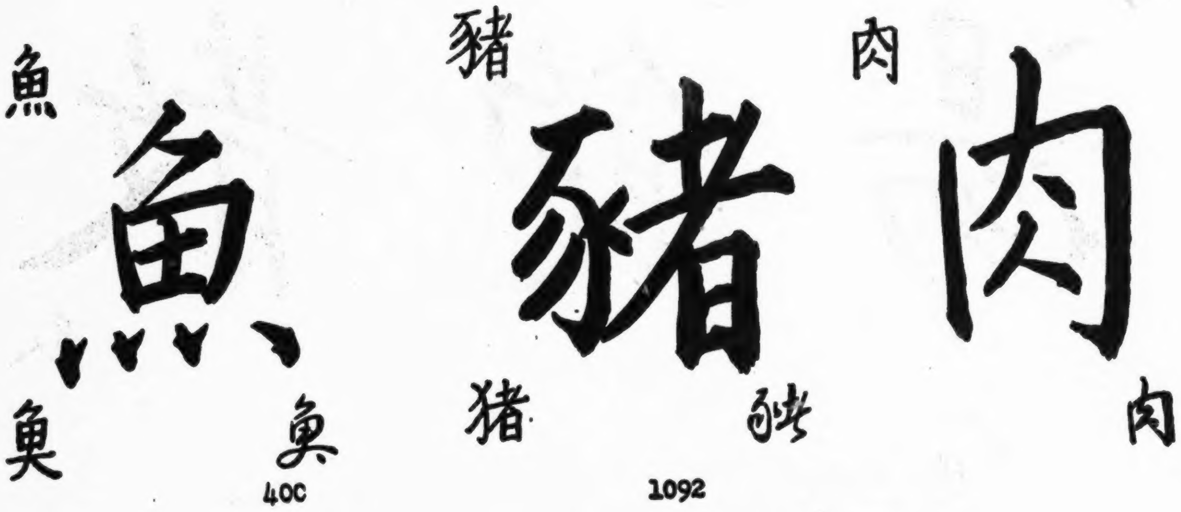
山豬 shaan chue: wild hog

1494

肉 yûk: flesh· meat· pulp of fruit

牛肉 ngaū-yûk: beef.

肉丸 yûk uēn*: meat ball.



400

鷄 kai: the fowl; chickens

火鷄 fóh-kai: turkey

山鷄 shaan-kai: pheasant

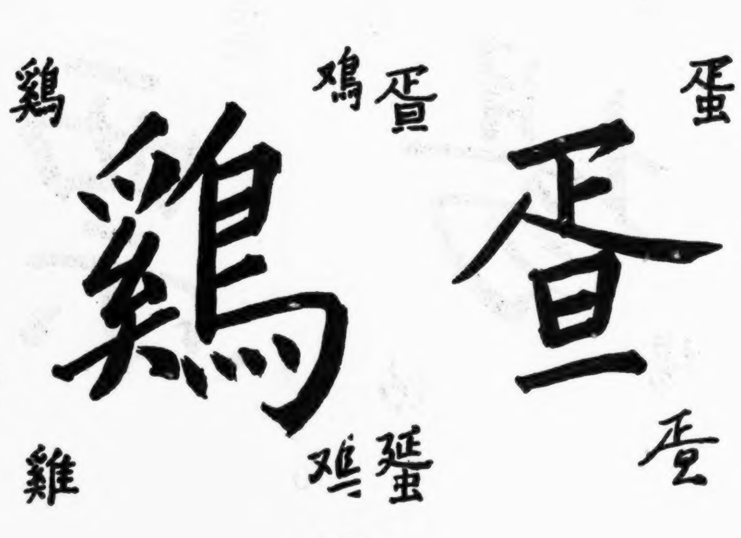
田鷄 t'īn-kai: frog

1092

蛋 taân*: egg; name of southern tribe.

鷄蛋 kai-taân*: hen's egg.

皮蛋 p'eī-taân*: preserved egg.



LESSON 52

READING MATERIAL

1193

湯 t'ong: soup; broth.

肉湯 yûk t'ong: meat soup.

菜湯 ts'oì t'ong: vegetable soup.

820

飽 paaú: to eat plenty; filled; full; satisfied.

食飽 shik paaú: to eat one's fill; satisfied.

肚飽 t'ŏ paaú: a full stomach; feeling of fullness.

907

散 saàn: to disperse; to dissolve; miscellaneous; medicine powder.

散工 saán kung: odd job; day laborer.

分散 fan-saàn: dissipated; scattered.

散會 saàn ooi: to adjourn a meeting.

湯　　飽　　散

湯　飽　散

湯　　飽　　散

63

場 ch'eūng: - "field"; floor place

墳場 fān-ch'eūng graveyard

戰場 chȋn-ch'eūng: battle ground

運動場 wân-tûng-ch'eūng. athletic field

870

票 p'iù, piu: a ticket(for lottery, theatre); a document.

開票 hoi piu: to make a drawing.

戲票 heì p'iù: theatre ticket.

場　坊　票

場　票

場　坊　票

LESSON 52

READING MATERIAL

既然李先生同李太太kòm 有心請食晚-ts'aan，陳英同黃小姐就同佢地一齊去食啦。佢地大家坐車去到一間好大嘅ts'aan-室。佢地叫chóh 幾味：魚，猪肉，雞蛋，湯，等等，真係好味道。大家都食得好飽。

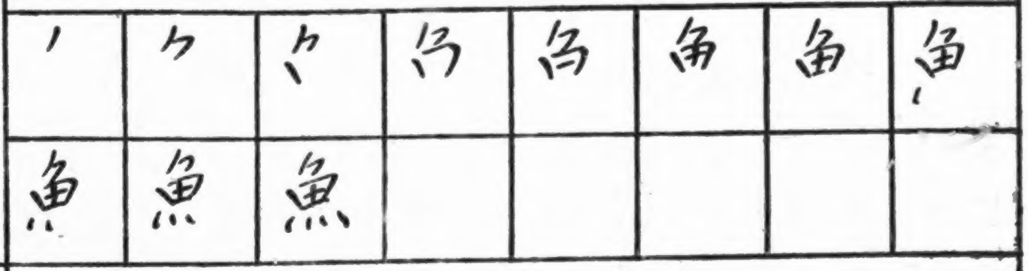
佢地食chóh ts'aan 之後，已經下午九點啦，大家就行吓街散吓步。陳英想請佢嘅親-ts'ik去睇電影。佢知道第二場九點半開影，重有時候去睇戲。佢嘅親-ts'ik都中意去。佢地去到戲院嘅時候，第一場ngaam-ngaam 散場。陳英想快啲走去買票；李先生叫陳英唔好chaang，唔好kòm 客氣，等佢peí 錢同大家買飛好啦。陳英覺得喺嗰處chaang peí- 錢唔好睇，就peí 李先生買，票啦！

LESSON 52

WRITING MATERIAL

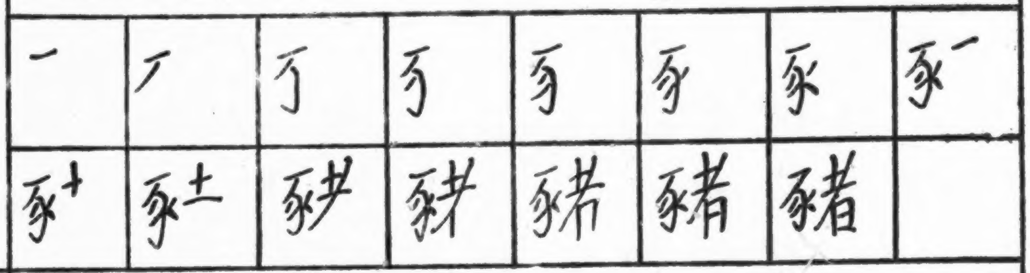
魚

Character Number 1374 **Radical Number** 195
Stroke Number 11 魚



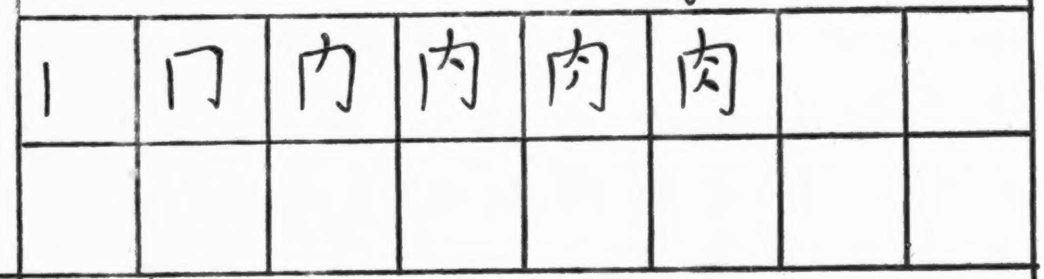
豬

Character Number 118 **Radical Number** 152
Stroke Number 15 豕



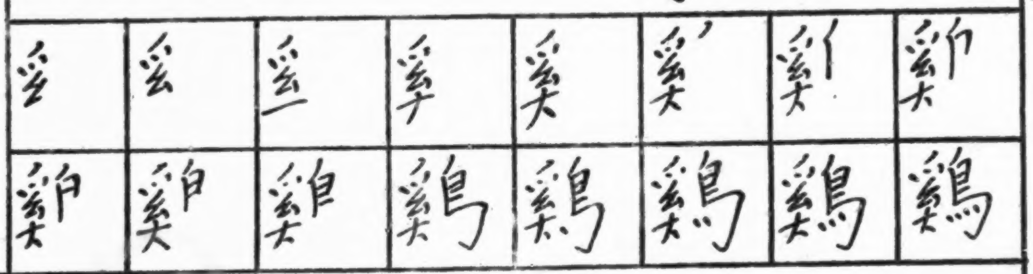
肉

Character Number 1494 **Radical Number** 130
Stroke Number 6 肉



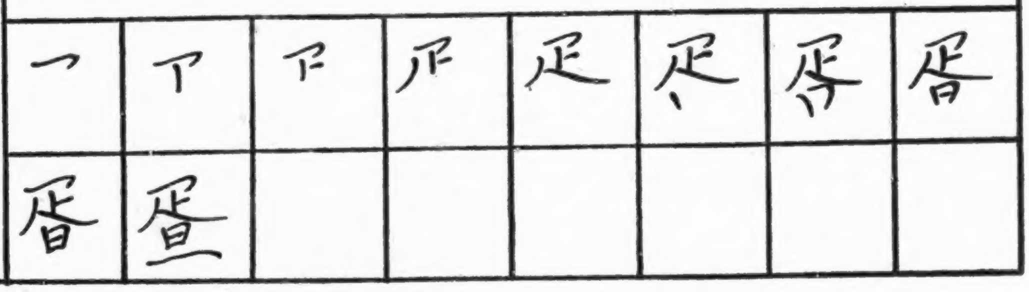
鷄

Character Number 400 **Radical Number** 172
Stroke Number 21 鳥



疍

Character Number 1092 **Radical Number** 142
Stroke Number 10 疋



LESSON 53

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. **ti**

ni ti, kóh ti

ti

ni ti

ni ti yān

Ni ti yān haî hôk-shaang.

Pin ti yān haî hôk-shaang?

Ni ti yān haî hôk-shaang.

Kóh ti yān haî hôk-shaang.

Ni ti haî hôk-shaang.

Kóh ti haî hôk-shaang.

Pin ti haî hôk-shaang à?

Ni ti haî hôk-shaang.

Kóh ti haî hôk-shaang.

Kóh ti haî m̄-haî hôk-shaang à?

Kóh ti yān haî m̄-haî hôk-shaang à?

Kóh ti yān haî hôk-shaang.

Kóh ti haî hôk-shaang.

Ni ti haî mi-yĕ?

Ni ti haî shue.

Ni ti haî m̄-haî shue.

Ni ti haî shue.

Ni ti m̄-haî shue.

LESSON 53

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

2. ti

yaŭ ti

ti

yaŭ ti

yaŭ ti yān

Yaŭ ti yān chung-ì yám kà-fe.

Yaŭ ti yān chung-ì yám ch'ā.

Yaŭ ti yān chung-ì yám mi-yĕ, yaŭ ti yān chung-ì yám mi-yĕ à?

Yaŭ ti yān chung-ì yám kà-fe, yaŭ ti yān chung-ì yám ch'ā.

Yaŭ ti

Yaŭ ti haî Chung-Mān Shue.

Yaŭ ti shue haî Chung-Mān shue.

Yaŭ ti haî Ying-Mān shue.

Ni shuè ti shue, yaŭ ti haî Chung-Mān shue, yaŭ ti haî Ying-Mān shue.

Ni shuè ti shue, yaŭ ti haî mi-yĕ shue, yaŭ ti haî mi-yĕ shue à?

Ni shuè ti shue, yaŭ ti haî Chung-Mān shue, yaŭ ti haî Ying-Mān shue.

3. ti

Ngŏh ko.

K'uĭ ko ti.

K'uĭ peí ngŏh ko ti.

K'uĭ peí-kaaù ngŏh ko ti.

LESSON 53

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

4. ti

ch'ā

ti ch'ā

Ti ch'ā hó.

Ti ch'ā hó m̄-hó à?

Ti ch'ā hó.

Ti ch'ā hó-yám.

Ti ch'ā m̄-hó-yám.

Ti ch'ā kei hó-yám.

Ti ch'ā m̄-haî kei hó-yám.

Ti ch'ā m̄-haî hó hó-yám.

Ti ch'ā hó m̄-hó-yám à?

Ti ch'ā kei hó-yám.

Ti ch'ā m̄-haî kei hó-yám.

Ti ch'ā hó-yám.

Ti ch'ā hó nūng.

Ti ch'ā nūng kwòh-t'aū.

Ti kà-fe t'aăm kwòh-t'aū.

Ti kà-fe t'aăm m̄-t'aăm à?

Ti kà-fe t'aăm kwòh-t'aū.

Ti kà-fe t'aaì foó.

Ti kà-fe t'îm kwòh-t'aū.

Ti faân hó-shîk.

Ti hôk-shaang hó háng tûk shue.

LESSON 53

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Ti hôk-shaang hó ch'ung-mīng.

Ti yān haāng-tak hó faaì.

Ti tsaú hó maăng.

Neĭ seúng yám ti ch'ā mà?

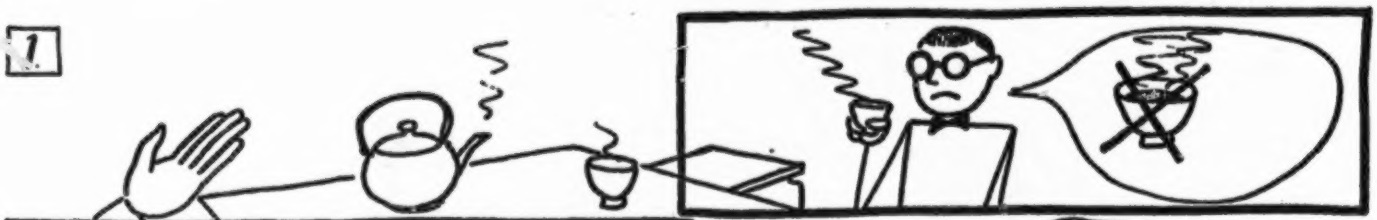
Ngŏh seúng yám ti ch'ā.

Ngŏh seúng t'ūng ti hôk-shaang k'ing-hă.

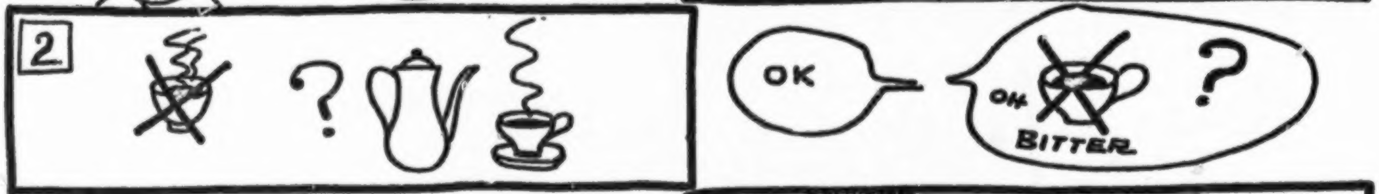
Ngŏh huì maaĭ ti yĕ.

LESSON 53

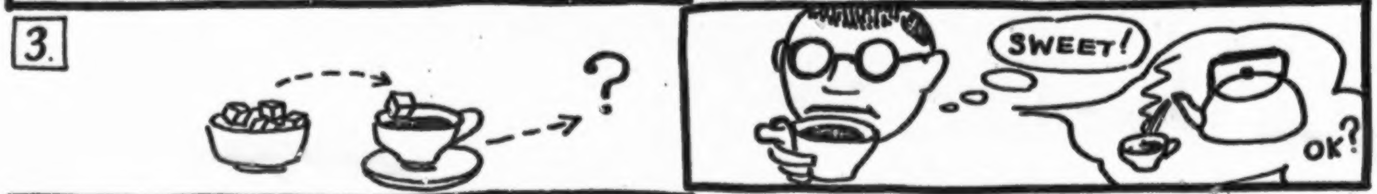
1.



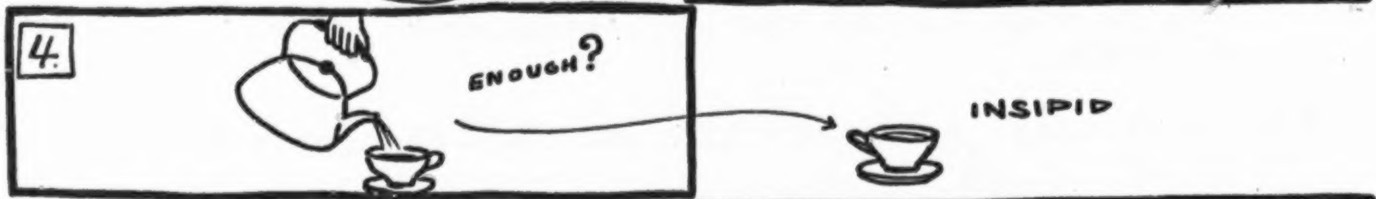
2.


OK
OK
BITTER

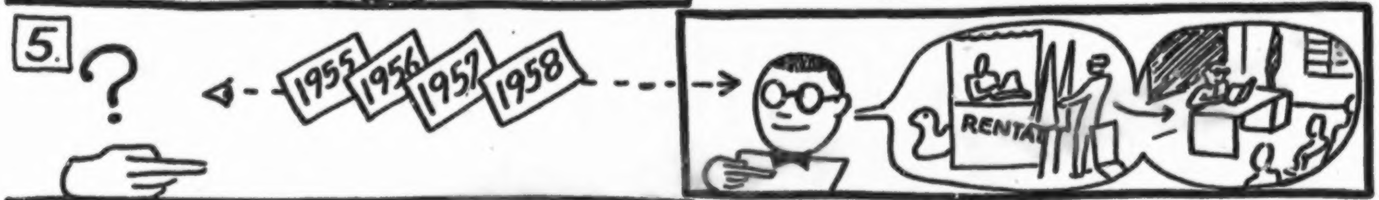
3.



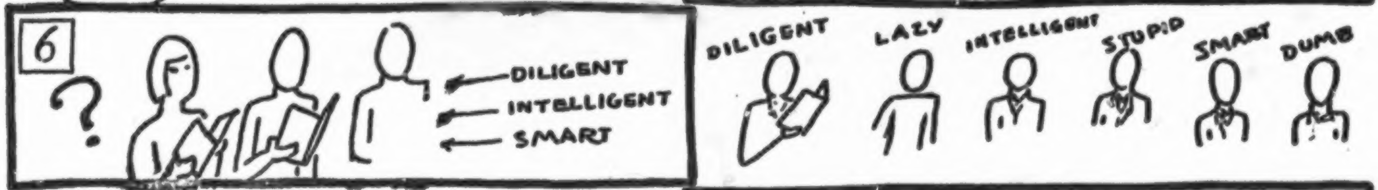
4.


ENOUGH?
INSIPID

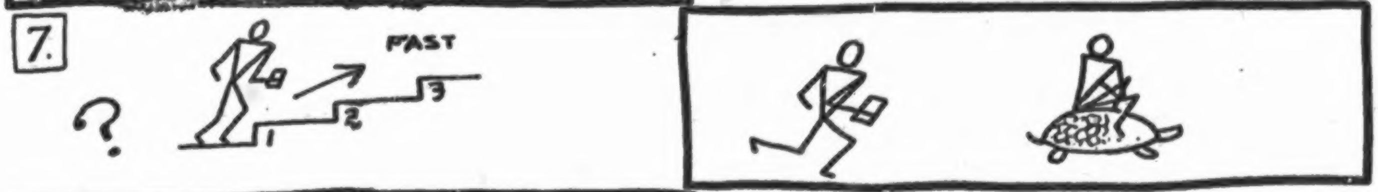
5.


1955
1956
1957
1958
RENTAL

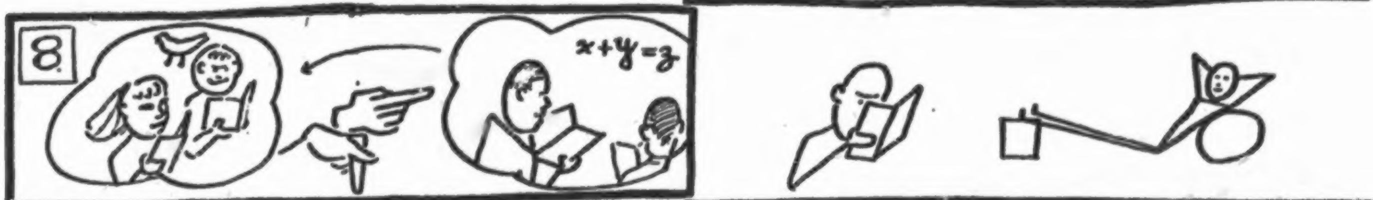
6.


DILIGENT
INTELLIGENT
SMART
DILIGENT
LAZY
INTELLIGENT
STUPID
SMART
DUMB

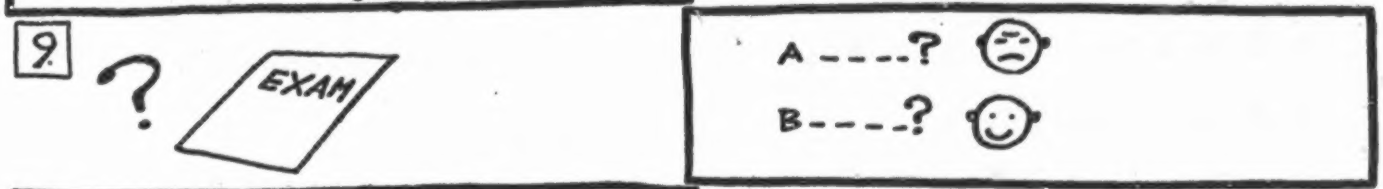
7.



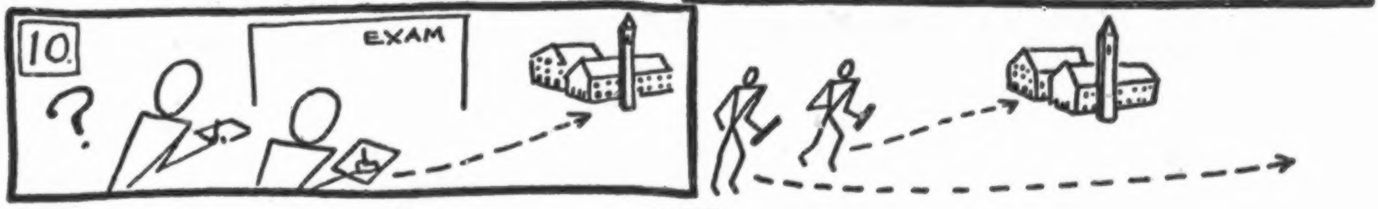
8.



9.



10.



LESSON 53

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Mă Sin-Shaang, ts'íng ts'ŏh, yám ti ch'ā mà?

B: Ôh, ti ch'ā t'aaì nūng, ngŏh m̄-yám-tak ni ti ch'ā.

2. A: Uē-kwóh ti ch'ā nūng kwòh-t'aū, yám ti kà-fe la!

B: Hó à! Ôh, ti kà-fe t'aaì foó. Tím-paân à?

3. A: Tuì-m̄-chuê, táng ngŏh peí ti t'ōng neĭ la! Ts'íng neĭ shì-hă, ī-ka ti kà-fe kaù t'îm mà?

B: Táng ngŏh shì-hă; ôh, ti kà-fe t'îm kwòh-t'aū. M̄-koi neĭ ka ti kwán-shuí, hó mà?

4. A: Hó à, kòm toh shuí kaù meî à?

B: Â, neĭ ka shuí ka-tak toh kwòh-t'aū, ī-ka ti kà-fe yaû t'aaì t'aăm.

5. A: Mă Sin-Shaang, m̄-kìn neĭ kòm noî, neĭ kân-loì tsô ti mi-yĕ à?

B: Ĭ-ts'īn ngŏh t'ūng p'ăng-yaŭ tsô ti siú shang-ì, ī-ka haí yat-kaan chung-hôk shuè kaaù shue.

6. A: Ti hôk-shaang k'ān-lîk mà, ts'ung-mīng mà, lek mà?

B: Yaŭ ti hôk-shaang hó k'ān-lîk, yaŭ ti hó laăn. Yaŭ ti hó ts'ung-mīng, yaŭ-ti hó pân. Yaŭ-ti hó lek, yaŭ-ti hó ch'ún.

7. A: Ti hôk-shaang tsùn-pô-tak faaì mà?

B: Yaŭ ti hôk-shaang tsùn-pô-tak hó faaì, yaŭ ti hôk-shaang tsùn-pô-tak hó maân.

8. A: Neĭ ti hôk-shaang yaŭ mŏ ni kaan siú-hôk ti hôk-shaang kòm háng tûk shue à?

B: Yaŭ ti hôk-shaang hó háng tûk shue, yaŭ ti uēn-ch'uēn m̄-háng hôk.

9. A: Neĭ-teî ni ts'z̀ uêt-haaú ti t'aī-mûk sham m̄-sham à?

B: Yaŭ ti t'aī-mûk hó sham, yaŭ ti hó ts'în.

10. A: Neĭ kóh shuè ti hôk-shaang chún m̄-chún-peî huì haaú taaî-hôk à?

LESSON 53

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. B: **Yaŭ ti hôk-shaang tá-suèn haaú taaî-hôk, yaŭ ti m̄-tá-suèn haaú.**

LESSON 53

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Mr. Mǎ, please be seated. Do you care for some tea?

   B: Oh, the tea is too strong, I cannot drink this tea.

2. A: If the tea is too strong, have some coffee!

   B: Fine. Oh, the coffee is too bitter. What can be done?

3. A: I'm sorry. Let me give you some sugar. Please try this. Is the coffee sweet enough now?

   B: Let me try. Oh, the coffee is too sweet. Will you please add some boiling water, all right?

4. A: Surely. Is that enough water?

   B: Oh, you have added too much water. The coffee is now tasteless.

5. A: Mr. Mǎ, I haven't seen you for so long; what have you been doing lately?

   B: My friend and I had a small business. But I'm now teaching in a high school.

6. A: Are the students diligent, intelligent, and smart?

   B: Some students are very diligent, some very lazy. Some are very intelligent, some very stupid. Some are very smart and some very dumb.

7. A: Do the students progress rapidly?

   B: Some students progress very rapidly; some very slowly.

8. A: Are your students as willing to study, as the students in this elementary school are?

   B: Some students are willing to study, but some are completely unwilling to learn.

9. A: Are the questions in this monthly examination difficult?

   B: Some questions are very difficult; some very easy.

10. A: Are the students at your place prepared to take the university entrance examination?

    B: Some students plan to go to the university, some do not.

LESSON 53

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ngŏh haî Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, ngŏh laî wán Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû.

C: Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû ngaam-ngaam huì-chóh Leĭ Haaû-Cheúng kè sé-tsẑ-laū. K'uĭ-teî chûng kóng-kán shuèt-wâ, yaŭ mat kwaì-kòn à, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

2. A: Kam chiu-tsó ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ ī-king kóng-kwòh, ngŏh-teî yat-ts'aî huì Ŭen-Tung Ts'aan-Shat shîk aàn-chaù. K'uĭ yaŭ mō kóng peí neĭ chi à?

C: Â, k'uĭ yaŭ kóng-kwòh ni kín sẑ. Taân-haî, k'uĭ ngaam-ngaam t'ūng hôk-shaang haaú-uēn shì chi-haù, Leĭ Haaû-Cheúng kiù k'uĭ huì haaû-cheúng kè sé-tsẑ-laū.

3. A: Ch'íng-mân Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû keí shî leĭ-hoi paan-fōng* kà?

C: Ī-ka haî shâp-yat-tím nğ-shâp-nğ-fan, k'uĭ hó-ts'ž haî shâp-yat-tím taâp shâp leĭ-hoi paan-fōng* kè.

4. A: Haaû-cheúng sé-tsẑ-laū haî pin shuè à?

C: Haaû-cheúng sé-tsẑ-laū haî Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû kè sé-tsẑ-laū kè yaû-shaú-pîn taî-saam-kaan fōng*.

5. A: Neĭ koó, k'uĭ chûng yaŭ keí noî chì faan-tak-laî à?

C: M̄-saî keí noî k'uĭ tsaû faan-laî kà là! A, Ch'ān Kaaû-Shaû haāng-kán laî là!

6. A: Â, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû, neĭ faan-laî lā tím-kaaî kôm mōng à?

B: Ī-ka haî hôk-shaang taaî-haaú kè shî-haû, shóh-ĭ ngŏh hó mōng.

7. A: Ngŏh-teî t'aū-sin kóng-kwòh, ngŏh-teî yat-ts'aî huì Ūen-Tung Ts'aan-Shat shîk aàn-chaù. Neĭ chûng keì-tak mà?

B: Keì-tak, neĭ t'ūng ngŏh kóng-siù, haî mà?

8. A: Haî, ngŏh t'ūng neĭ kóng-siù che, Leĭ Haaû-Cheúng yaŭ hó kán-iù kè sẑ t'ūng neĭ k'ing, haî mà?

B: Haî, k'uĭ yaŭ ti hó kán-iù kè yĕ t'ūng ngŏh k'ing, ngŏh mŏ paân-faàt m̄ t'ūng k'uĭ k'ing, lîng neĭ haî ni shuè táng-chóh kòm noî. Chan m̄-hó ī-sz̀.

LESSON 53

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

9. A: Kóh ti mân-t'aî haî kwaan-ue mi-yĕ kà?

B: Kóh ti mân-t'aî haî kwaan-ue hôk-shang kè mân-t'aî, hó-ts'ẑ hôk-shang kè tûk-shue, sheŭng t'ōng, lôk t'ōng, ni ts'z̀ taaî-haaú kè t'aî-mûk, táng-táng.

10. A: Ngŏh-teî î-ka mŏ mat shî-haû, m̄-hó kóng kòm toh là, pat-uē shîk-chóh aàn-chaù chì kóng la!

B: Haî à, ngŏh chûng yaŭ nğ-shâp fan-chung tsaû faan kung là!

11. A: Neĭ tá-suèn tîm-yeûng* huì Uĕn-Tung Ts'aan-Shat à? Ts'ŏh pa-sẑ*, yik-waâk tsẑ-keî saî ch'e huì à?

B: Ngŏh ĭ-waî haāng lô huì chì hó, haāng lô tsuì faaì.

12. A: Tîm-kaaî haāng lô huì chì faaî à?

B: Yan-waî î-ka ngaam-ngaam haî chung-nğ fòng kung kè shî-haû, lô shuè ti ch'e kòm toh, saî ch'e hó naān, pa-sẑ* iù táng hó noî.

13. A: Uĕn-Tung Ch'ā-Laū leî ni shuè yaŭ keî uĕn à?

B: Uĕn-Tung Ch'ā-Laū leî ni shuè mŏ keî uĕn che tsuì toh haî poòn leĭ lô kòm sheûng-hâ*

14. A: Uē-kwóh haî kòm k'ăn, haāng lô huì m̄-saî keî noî che.

B: Haî lòh, uē-kwóh ngŏh-teî haāng-tak faaì, shâp fan-chung tsóh-yaû* tsaû tò là!

15. A: Uē-kwóh táng pa-sẑ* iù táng keî noî à?

B: Hó hóh-nāng iù táng shîng shâp fan-chung.

A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, ngŏh-teî haāng huì là!

B: Hó à!

LESSON 53

WORD LIST

1.	yūng, nūng	strong, thick (liquid)
2.	foó	bitter
3.	t'ōng, (t'ōng*)	sugar, (candy)
4.	t'îm	sweet
5.	ka	to add; addition
6.	kwán	to boil; boiled, boiling
7.	kwán shuî	boiling water, boiled water
8.	t'aăm	flat in taste, no taste, insipid
9.	siú	small, little, tiny
10.	chung-hôk	middle school, high school
11.	lek	smart, brilliant
12.	pân	stupid, foolish
13.	ch'ún	dumb, stupid, foolish
14.	siú-hôk	elementary school, grammar school
15.	háng	to be willing; willingly
16.	uēn-ts'uēn	completely; complete, entire
17.	uêt-haaú	monthly examination
18.	t'aî-mûk	examination question, problem, topic
19.	taaî-hôk	college, university

LESSON 53

READING MATERIAL

719

滿 moŏn: full; entire; complete.

滿地 moŏn teî: all over the ground.

滿意 moŏn-ì: pleased; satisfied.

滿期 moŏn k'eī: at the expiration of the term.

滿足 moŏn-tsuk: to satisfy; satisfied.

1287

菜 ts'oì: vegetable; herb; food in general.

生菜 shaang-ts'oì: lettuce.

白菜 paâk-ts'oì: white vegetable.

1195

糖 t'ōng: sugar; sweet.

白糖 paâk t'ōng: refined granulated sugar.

黃糖 wōng t'ōng: brown ungranulated sugar.

滿 菜 糖

滿 菜 糖

滿 菜 糖

1139

甜 t'īm: sweet; agreeable.

甜味 t'īm meî: a sweet taste.

清甜 ts'ing t'īm: fresh and sweet.

1089

淡 t'aăm, taam: watery; weak.

冲淡 ch'ung t'aăm: dilute; tasteless.

心淡 sam-t'aăm: to lose interest in.

甜 淡

甜 淡

甜 淡

LESSON 53

READING MATERIAL

780

暗 ɔ̀m: dark; gloomy; secret.

暗中 ɔ̀m-chung : secretly; privately.

暗殺 ɔ̀m shaàt: assissination.

暗號 ɔ̀m hô: countersign.

215

附 foô: neighboring: adjacent

附近 foô-kʼan: neighboring; near to

附錄 foô lûk: an appendix

368

加 ka: to add to; increase; promote

加多 ka-toh: to add more

加數 ka-shò: addition

加工 ka kung: extra work

增加 tsang-ka: to increase

暗 附 加

暗 附 加

暗 附 加

559

滾 kwán: to boil.

滾水 kwán shuí: boiling water.

滾熱辣 kwán-ît-laât: boiling hot.

254

肯 háng: willing; will

肯唔肯 háng-m-háng: willing or not

首肯 shaú háng: nod affirmatively

允肯 wăn-háng: to permit

滾 肯

滾 肯

滾 肯

LESSON 53

READING MATERIAL

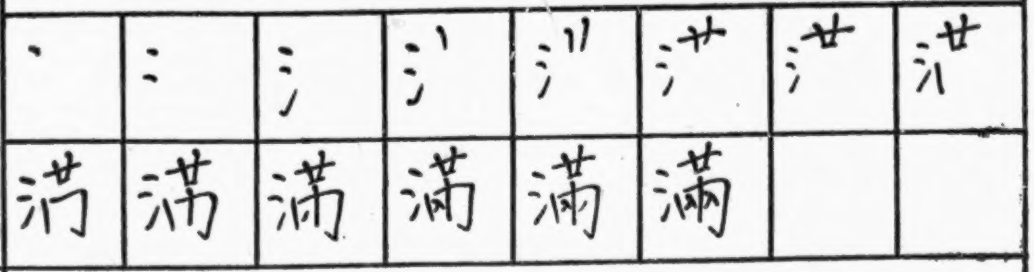
陳英,黃小姐,同李先生,李太太去睇戲啦. 呢 ch'ut 電影好好睇,唔怪得 kòm 好生意,啲位差唔多都坐滿啦.

佢地睇完戲嘅時候,已經好夜啦. 啲街 kòm 靜 kòm 暗. 佢地睇戲睇 chóh kòm 耐,黃小姐覺得有啲頭痛. 大家都唔想去食 siu-夜,但係想去 wán 啲野飲吓至翻去 fàn-覺. 佢地就入去一間 ts'aan室. 呢間 ts'aan-室喺戲院嘅附近. 佢地唔睇菜-taan 啦,陳英同李先生 kòk-人要 chóh 一 pooi kà-fe ;黃小姐同李太太 kòk-人要 chóh 一 pooi茶. 啲 kà-fe 好苦,啲茶好 mūng . 如果 kà-fe 苦,就應該放多啲糖,但係陳英唔中意食甜嘅野. 啲茶又 mūng 又凍,就應該加啲滾水,但係有啲人唔中意太淡. 李太太唔中意 mūng 茶,佢就加啲滾水,令啲茶淡啲. 黃小姐呢,mūng 茶淡茶都唔緊要,乜野都肯試吓. 真係 kòk-人中意嘅野都唔同啦!

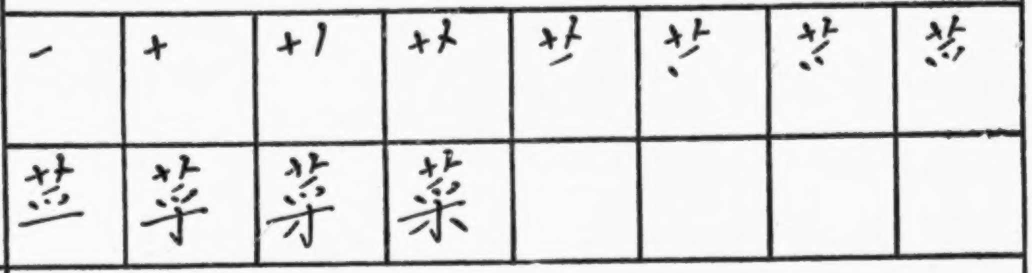
LESSON 53

WRITING MATERIAL

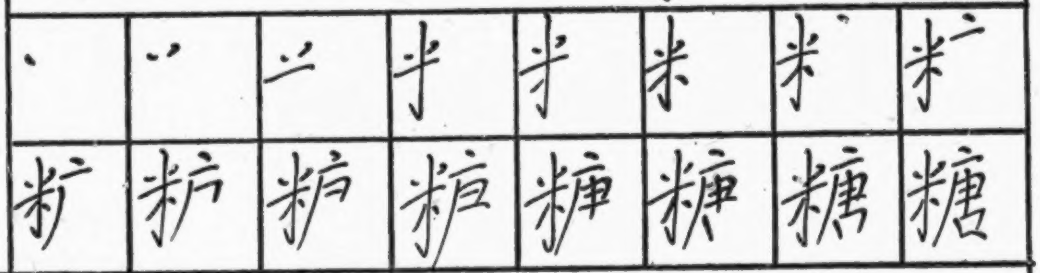
滿	**Character Number** 719 **Stroke Number** 14	**Radical Number** 85 氵，水



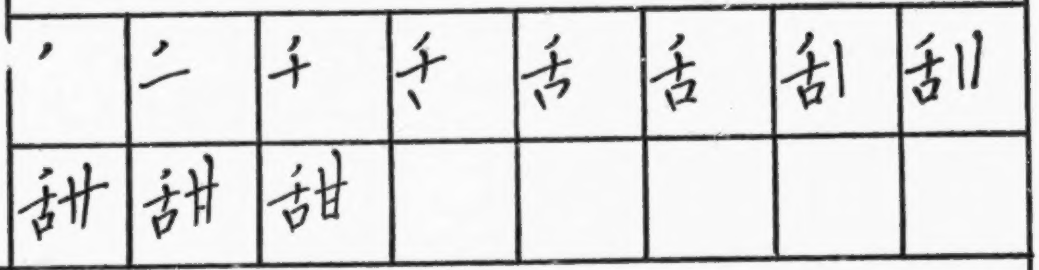
菜	**Character Number** 1287 **Stroke Number** 12	**Radical Number** 140 艹，艸



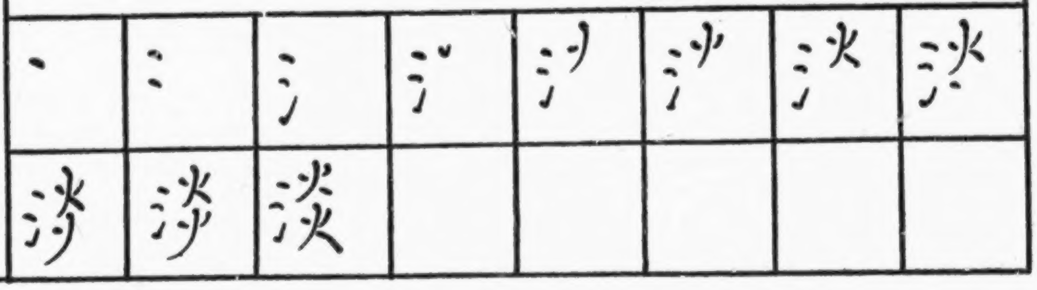
糖	**Character Number** 1195 **Stroke Number** 16	**Radical Number** 119 米



甜	**Character Number** 1139 **Stroke Number** 11	**Radical Number** 99 甘



淡	**Character Number** 1089 **Stroke Number** 11	**Radical Number** 85 氵，水



LESSON 54

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. ti
shaang-kwóh
ti shaang-kwóh
Ti shaang-kwóh t'îm.
Ti shaang-kwóh m̄-t'îm.
Ti shaang-kwóh t'îm m̄-t'îm à?
Ti shaang-kwóh m̄-t'îm.
Ti shaang-kwóh t'îm.
Ti shaang-kwóh hó t'îm.
Ti shaang-kwóh m̄-haî hó t'îm.
Ti shaang-kwóh m̄-haî hó t'îm.
Ti shaang-kwóh m̄-haî keí t'îm.
Ti shaang-kwóh suen.
Ti shaang-kwóh m̄-suen.
Ti shaang-kwóh suen m̄-suen à?
Ti shaang-kwóh m̄-suen.
Ti shaang-kwóh suen.
Ti shaang-kwóh keí suen.
Ti shaang-kwóh m̄-haî keí suen.

Ti kà-fe hó foó.
Ti ch'ā t'aaì nūng.
Ti sùng haām kwòh-t'aū.
Ti sùng t'aăm tak-chaî.
Ti chue-yûk shaang.

LESSON 54

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Ti uē* shûk.

Ti uē*hó shûk.

Ti faân ngaâng.

Ti faân uĕn.

Ti shuí kwán.

Ti shuí m̄-kwán.

Ti shuí m̄-kaù kwán.

Ti tîn-tang hó kwong.

Ti tîn-tang hó òm.

Ti shue hó sham.

Ti haaú-shì t'aī-mûk hó ts'ín.

2. ti

yaŭ ti

Ti shaang-kwóh hó t'īm.

Ti shaang-kwóh hó suen.

Yaŭ ti shaang-kwóh hó t'īm.

Yaŭ ti shaang-kwóh hó suen.

Ti shaang-kwóh t'īm m̄-t'īm à?

Yaŭ ti shaang-kwóh hó t'īm.

Yaŭ ti shaang-kwóh hó suen.

Yaŭ ti shaang-kwóh hó t'īm, yaŭ ti shaang-kwóh hó suen.

Yaŭ ti yān hó ts'ung-mīng, yaŭ ti yān hó pân.

Yaŭ ti yān hó laăn, yaŭ ti yān hó k'ān-lîk.

Ti yān haāng-tak hó faaì.

LESSON 54

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Ti uē* laât-laât-teî*.

Ti uē* laât m̄-laât à?

Ti uē* laât-laât-teî*.

suen

suen-suen-teî*

Ti shaang-kwóh suen-suen-teî*.

Ti shaang-kwóh suen m̄-suen à?

Ti shaang-kwóh suen-suen-teî*.

haām

haām-haām-teî*

Ti ngaū-yûk haām-haām-teî*.

Ti ngaū-yûk haām m̄-haām à?

Ti ngaū-yûk haām-haām-teî*.

Lôk-chóh ti îm, ti ngaū-yûk haām-haām-teî*.

ngaâng

ngaâng-ngaâng-teî*

Ti faân ngaâng-ngaâng-teî*.

Ti faân ngaâng m̄-ngaâng à?

Ti faân ngaâng-ngaâng-teî*.

paaú

paaú-paaú-teî*

Ngŏh paaú-paaú-teî.

Ngŏh chûng paaú-paaú-teî*.

Ngŏh m̄-t'ŏ-ngôh, ngŏh chûng paaú-paaú-teî.*

Neĭ t'ŏ m̄-t'ŏ-ngŏh à?

Ngŏh m̄-t'ŏ-ngôh, ngŏh chûng paaú-paaú-teî*.

LESSON 54

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Ti yān haāng-tak hó maân.

Ti yān haāng-tak faaì m̄-faaì à?

Yaŭ ti yān haāng-tak hó faaì, yaŭ ti yān haāng-tak hó maân.

Ti hôk-shaang ch'eùng koh ch'eùng tak hó hó.

Ti hôk-shaang ch'eùng koh ch'eùng tak m̄-hó.

Ti hôk-shaang ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak hó m̄-hó à?

Yaŭ ti hôk-shaang ch'eùng koh ch'eùng-tak hó hó, yaŭ ti hôk-shaang ch'eùng-tak m̄-hó.

3. teî*

foó

foó-foó-teî*

Ti kà-fe foó-foó-teî*.

Ti kà-fe foó m̄-foó à?

Ti kà-fe m̄-foó.

Ti kà-fe foó-foó-teî*.

t'îm

t'îm-t'îm-teî*

Ti kà-fe t'îm-t'îm-teî*.

Ti kà-fe t'îm m̄-t'îm à?

Ti kà-fe t'îm-t'îm-teî*.

Lôk-chóh ti t'ōng, ti kà-fe t'îm-t'îm-teî*.

Lôk-chóh ti t'ōng, ti kà-fe t'îm mà?

Lok-chóh ti t'ōng, ti kà-fe t'îm-t'îm-teî*.

laât

laât-laât*-teî*

LESSON 54

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

shaang

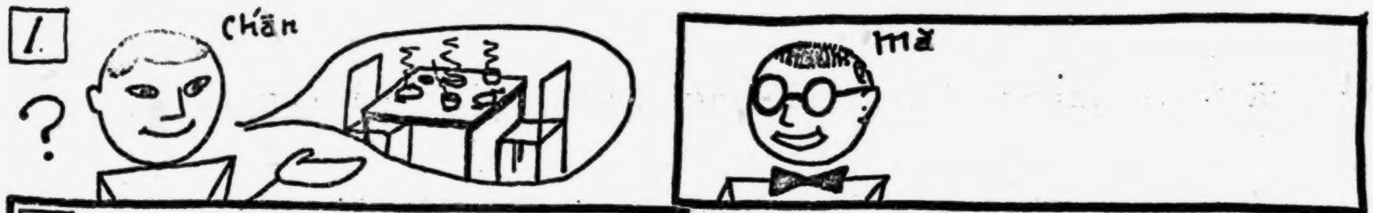
shaang-shaang-teî*

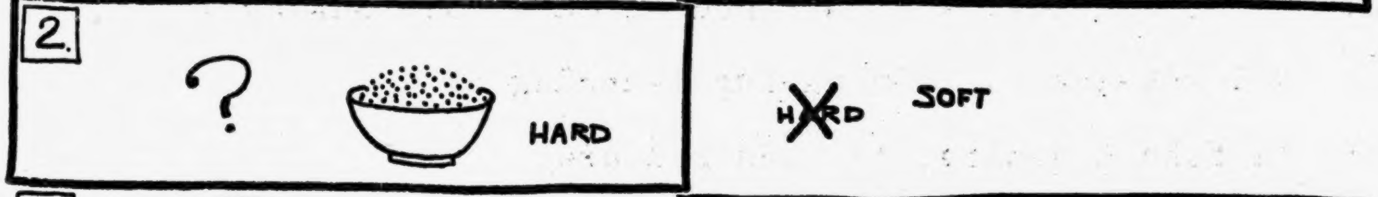
Ti chue-yûk shaang-shaang-teî*.

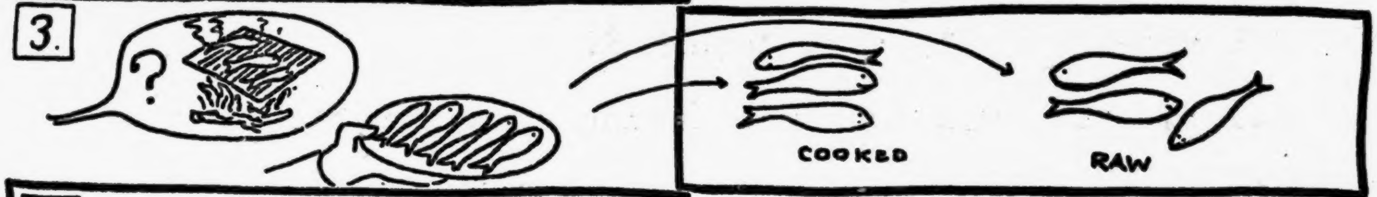
Ti chue-yûk chûng shaang-shaang-teî*.

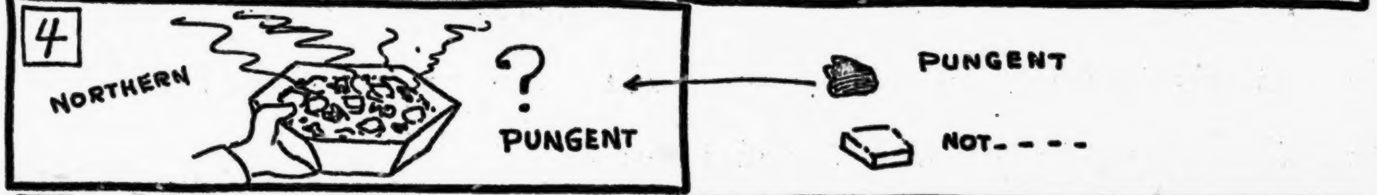
Ti chue-yûk meî shûk, chûng shaang-shaang-teî*.

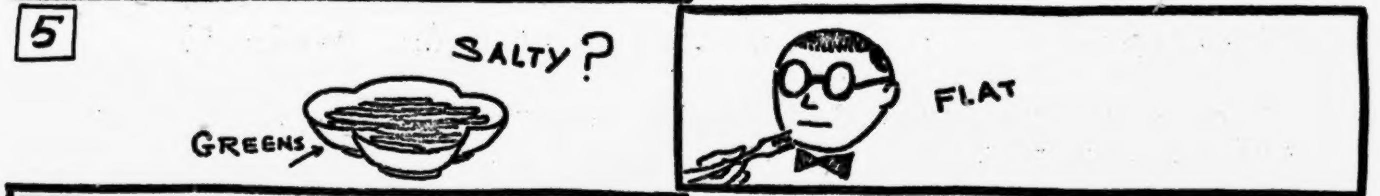
LESSON 54

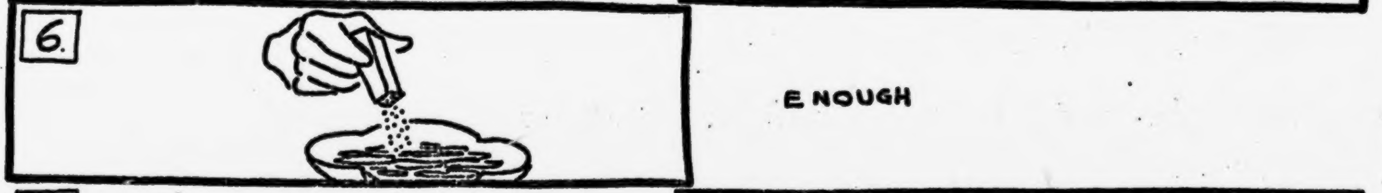

1.
Chăn
?
mă

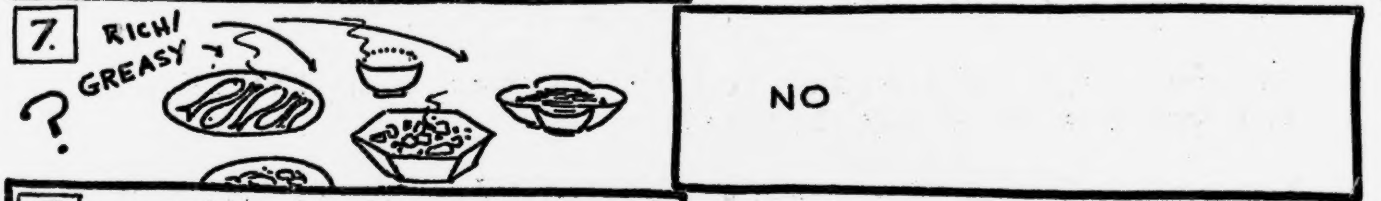

2.
?
HARD
~~HARD~~
SOFT

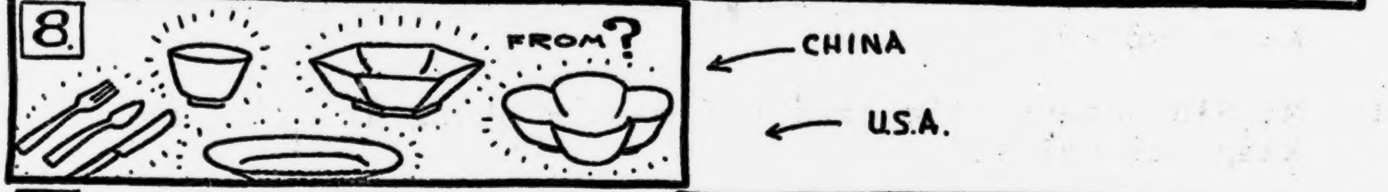

3.
?
COOKED
RAW

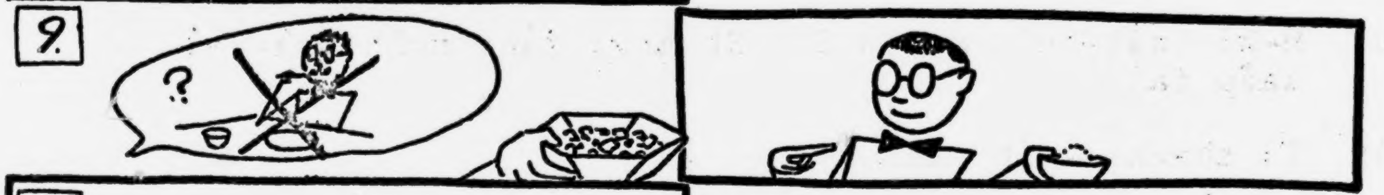

4
NORTHERN
?
PUNGENT
PUNGENT
NOT- - - -

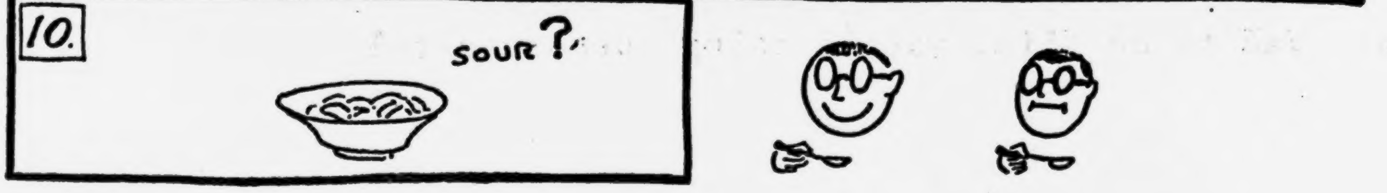

5
SALTY?
GREENS
FLAT


6.
ENOUGH


7.
RICH/
GREASY
?
NO


8.
FROM?
CHINA
U.S.A.


9.
?


10.
SOUR?

LESSON 54

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Mă-Sin-Shaang, haî ngŏh shuè shîk ts'aan pîn-faân la, hó mà?

B: Hó à, tím-kaaí kòm haàk-heì à, Ch'ān Sin-Shaang!?

2. A: Neĭ kòk-tak ti faân ngaâng m̄-ngaâng à?

B: Ti faân m̄-ngaâng, ti faân keí uĕn.

3. A: Neĭ shì-hă ti uē* shûk m̄-shûk à?

B: Yaŭ ti shûk, yaŭ ti chûng shaang-shaang-teî*.

4. A: Ni tîp haî pak-fong ts'oì, laât m̄-laât à?

B: Ni tîp shùng, yaŭ ti yĕ hó laât, yaŭ ti m̄-haî keí laât.

5. A: Ti ch'eng-ts'oì kaù m̄-kaù haām à?

B: Ti ch'eng-ts'oì t'aăm tak-chaî; pat-kwòh, m̄-kán-iù.

6. A: Uē-kwóh ti ch'eng ts'oì t'aăm tak-chaî, táng ngŏh t'ūng neĭ lôk ti îm la!

B: Hó la! Kòm toh îm kaù là!

7. A: Neĭ kòk-tak ti shùng naû mà, feî mà?

B: Ti shùng uēn-ch'uēn m̄-naû, m̄-feî.

8. B: Ti oón, tîp, ch'î-kang, to, ch'a, chan lèng là! K'uĭ-teî yaū pin shuè wân laî kả?

A: Toh-shò haî yaū Chung-Kwòk wân laî kè, yaŭ ti haî Meĭ-Kwòk tsô kè.

9. A: Mă Sin-Shaang, tím-kaaí neĭ m̄-shîk shùng à? Táng ngŏh kaảp peí neĭ la!

B: M̄-hó haàk-heì, Ch'ān Sin-Shaang; táng ngŏh tsẑ-keí kaảp la!

10. A: Ti shaang-kwóh suen m̄-suen à?

B: Yaŭ ti hó t'îm, yaŭ ti chûng suen-suen-teî*.

LESSON 54

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Mr. Mǎ, how would you like having dinner at my place?

   B: Fine. It is very nice of you, Mr. Ch'ān.

2. A: Do you think the rice is hard?

   B: The rice is not hard, the rice is quite soft.

3. A: Please see if the fish are cooked or not.

   B: Some of them are well-done, and some are still a little raw.

4. A: This is a dish of Northern Chinese food. Is it hot?

   B: Some things in this dish are hot. Others are not.

5. A: Is the green vegetable salty enough?

   B: The green vegetable is absolutely tasteless. But never mind.

6. A: If the green vegetable is flat in taste, let me put in some salt for you.

   B: Fine. That is enough.

7. D: Do you think the food is too rich and greasy?

   B: The food is not at all rich or greasy.

8. B: The bowls, dishes, spoons, knives and forks are really beautiful. Where were they imported from?

   A: Most of them were imported from China. Some were made in America.

9. A: Mr. Mǎ, why don't you eat the food? Let me help you.

   B: Please don't be so formal, Mr. Ch'ān. I'll help myself.

10. A: Are the fruits sour?

    B: Some of them are very sweet, and some are still a little sour.

LESSON 54

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ch'ān Kaàu-Shaû, neĭ haî ni kòh shîng-shĭ Chuê-chóh kòm noî. Neĭ tuì-ue ni kòh shîng-shĭ kè lô yat-tîng hó shûk là.

B: Haî, ngŏh hó shûk ni shuè ti lô, ngŏh chi-tò tîm-yeûng* huì Uĕn-Tung Ch'ā-Laū.

2. A: Keì-în ngŏh-teî k'uèt-tîng haāng lô huì, ngŏh-teî iù haāng faaì ti là!

B: M̄-saì kòm kap, Uĕn-Tung Ch'ā-Laū yat-chân-kaan tsaû tò là!

3. A: Ngŏh-teî kòm faaì tò-chóh Uĕn-Tung Ch'ā-Laū, ni shuè ti teî-fong chan lèng, chan kon-tsêng là.

B: M̄-chî ti teî-fong lèng t'ūng kon-tsêng, î-ch'é ti waî* yaû hó-ts'ŏh.

4. A: Ni kaan ts'aan-shat ti ts'aan kwaì m̄-kwaì à, hó m̄-hó-shîk à?

B: Ni shuè foô-kân ti ts'aan-shat to ch'a-m̄-toh.

5. A: Yaŭ ti yān wâ, ni kaan ts'aan-shat ti yĕ hó; yaŭ ti yān wâ, kóh kaan ti ts'aan m̄-ts'òh. Tò-taî pin shuè ti yĕ hó à?

B: Tò-taî pin shuè ti yĕ hó-shîk, neĭ shì-kwòh chì chi.

6. A: Neĭ kòk-tak ni shuè ti shaang-ì hó mà?

B: Ni shuè kè shaang-ì hó-kwòh hó toh k'eî-t'a kè ts'aan-shat.

7. A: Laî ni shuè shîk yĕ ti yān, toh-shò haî pin ti yān à?

B: Mi-yĕ yān to yaŭ, i-shaang, hôk-shaang, kwan-yān, kung-yān, paàk-fòh kung-sz kè king-leĭ, táng-táng.

8. A: Ngŏh-teî mŏ keí toh shî-haû. Kan-kuì neĭ kè king-îm, shîk mi-yĕ chì faaì à?

B: Kan-kuì ngŏh kè king-îm, ngŏh ĭ-waî shîk faaì-ts'aan chì faaì.

9. A: Â, fóh-keì laî-kán là; k'uĭ ning-chuê cheung ts'aan-taan, to, ch'a, faaì-tsź, táng-táng.

LESSON 54
ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

C: Leŭng-waî* sin-shaang iù ti mi-yĕ shîk à?

10. A: Ngŏh-teî iù leŭng-kòh faaì-ts'aan, m̄-koi neĭ faaì ti.

C: M̄-shaí keí noî che, sin-shaang. Iù ti mi-yĕ yám à? Kà-fe, hūng-ch'ā?

11. A: Leŭng-pooi kà-fe la, m̄-koi neĭ.

C: M̄-shaí m̄-koi.

12. A: Ti ts'aan laî là, ngŏh-teî faaî ti shîk là!

B: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, neĭ kòk-tak ti yĕ kaù meî mà?

13. A: Ti yĕ kè meî-tô hó hó, m̄-haî hó haām, yaû m̄-haî hó t'aām.

B: Ngŏh ti ngaū-yûk shaang-shaang-teî*. Neĭ ti ngaū-yûk shûk mà?

14. A: Ngŏh ti ngaū-yûk yîk-to m̄-haî keí shûk.

B: M̄-kán-iù, poòn-shaang shûk kè ngaū-yûk chûng hó-shîk ti.

15. A: Neĭ kè piu keí tîm-chung à?

B: Ngŏh kè piu î-ka shâp-î-tîm taâp kaú. Ngŏh-teî iù tsik-haak tsaú là!

C: Hó à, sin-shaang.

A: Táng ngŏh laí la, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû, m̄-hó chaang.

LESSON 54

WORD LIST

1. ngaâng	hard, firm, stiff, solid
2. uĕn	soft, tender
3. shaang	raw, uncooked, unfamiliar, not acquainted with; to be born, produce
4. shaang-shaang-teî*	a bit raw
5. tîp, tîp*	plate, dish, saucer
6. laât	hot (taste), pungent, acrid
7. haām	salty
8. lôk	down, to deposit, put on
9. îm	salt
10. naû	rich (food), satiated
11. ch'î-kang	spoon
12. to	knife
13. ch'a	fork
14. yaū	by, from, by way of
15. oón	bowl
16. kaâp	to pick up (like with chopsticks), clip, clip together
17. shaang-kwóh	fruit, fresh fruit
18. suen	sour

LESSON 54

READING MATERIAL

310

巷	hông: a small street; alley; lane
巷口	hông-haú: entrance to a lane
冷巷	laăng-hông̃: passageway; corridor

1228

謝	tsê: to give thanks; to take leave, to decline; to perish.
多謝	toh-tsê: thank you; many thanks.
謝客	tsê haàk: to decline a visitor.

[illegible]

留	laū: to keep; to stay; to stop; to restrain; to leave behind.
留心	laū-sam: to pay attention; attentive.
留學	laū-hôk: to go abroad to study.
留意	laū-ì: to be attentive; careful.
停留	t'¯ng-laū: to stop at; to put up at.

巷 謝 留 畄

巷 謝 留

巷 谢 畱 㽞

1158

刀	to: knife; sword.
大刀	taaî to: long-handled sword.
刺刀	ts'ì-to: bayonet.

793

碗	oón: bowl; small dish.
飯碗	faân oón: rice bowl.
湯碗	t'ong oón: large bowl; soup bowl.

刀 碗

刀 碗

刀 椀 盌 碗

LESSON 54

READING MATERIAL

887

播 pòh: to scatter; to sow; to scatter.

播音 pòh-yam: broadcasting.

傳播 ch'uēn-pòh: to be spread; to be disseminated.

748

硬 ngaâng: hard; strong; unyielding; obstinate.

堅硬 kin-ngaâng: solid; stiff.

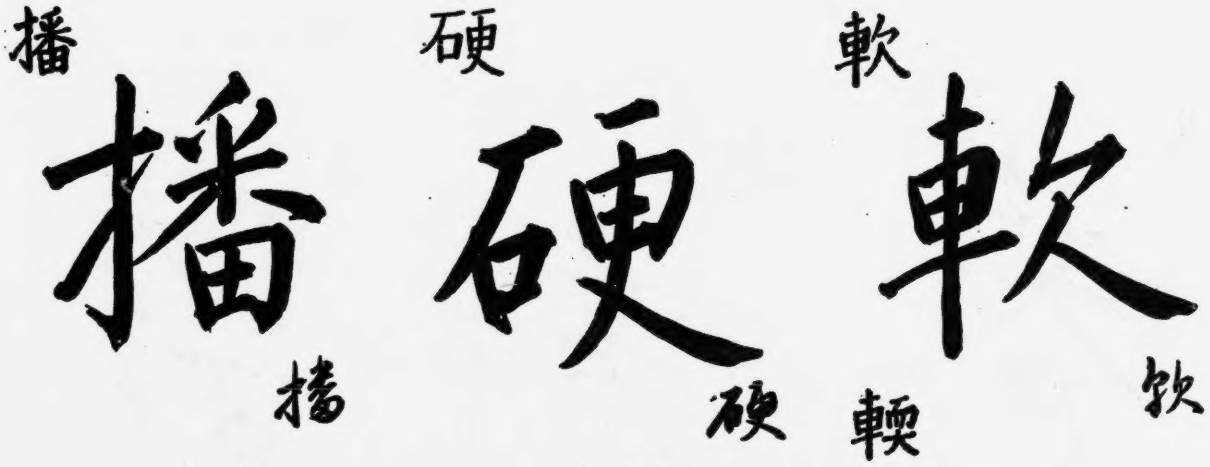
强硬 k'eūng-ngaâng: rigid; repelling.

1391

軟 uĕn: weak; feeble; yielding; soft, pliable.

軟弱 uĕn-yeûk: weak; feeble.

柔軟 yaū-uĕn: soft; pliable; meek.



1047

酸 suen: sour; acid; grieved.

酸醋 suen-ts'ò: vinegar.

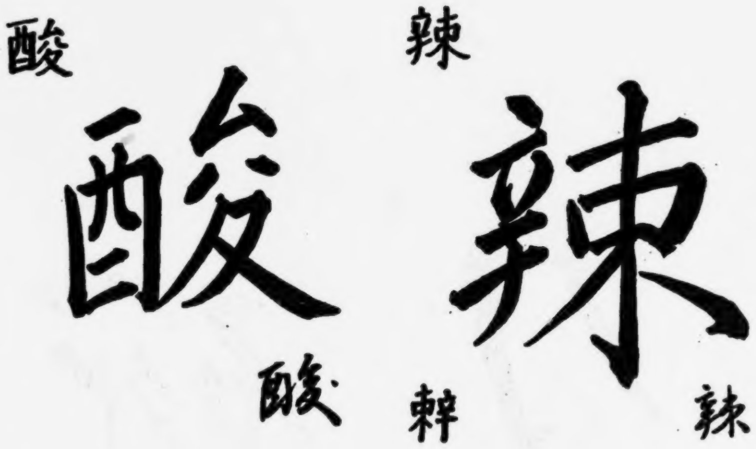
寒酸 hōn-suen: fallen on hard times.

583

辣 laât: pungent; hot; biting acrid.

苦辣 foó-laât: bitter & sharp(hot).

辣手段 laât, shaú-tuên: cruel & harsh.



LESSON 54

READING MATERIAL

佢地飲完野嘅時候，已經好夜啦。啲街巷kòm 靜kòm暗。大家都想翻去fàn-覺。陳英同黃小姐已經租chóh 房；佢地唔去李先生處fàn 啦。酒店離T'ōng-人Faû冇幾遠；佢地亦都唔使李先生車佢地翻去。陳英同黃小姐多謝李先生同李太太。陳英對李先生話，佢同黃小姐打算喺呢幾日之內離開三-Faān- 市；如果有時候，佢地會再黎拜候。李先生話，唔好客氣，如果有時候，再taû- 留幾日，請隨便黎坐。

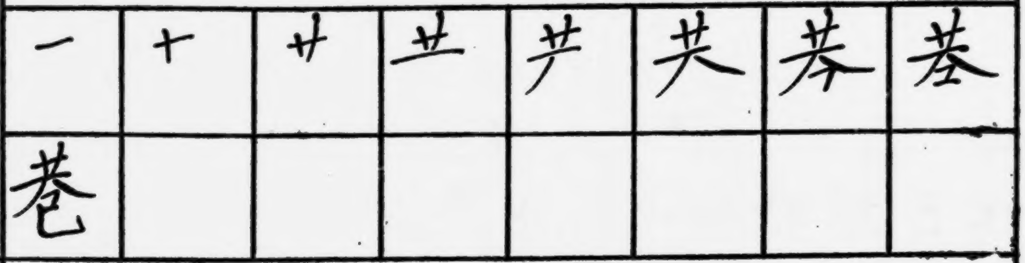
李先生同李太太shaí車翻去屋-k'ei 啦。陳英同黃小姐行翻去酒店。佢地覺得李先生同李太太好有心，真係好人啦。黃小姐話，頭先李先生喺ts'aan-室請佢地食ts'aan，嗰啲野好夠味播。甜酸苦辣haām 五味都有。各種野都好，只係啲飯硬啲，唔夠軟。講到嗰啲碗tîp，刀ch'a，佢估都係由中國運黎嘅。陳英都係kòm話。好夜啦！佢地要快啲翻去fàn 啦。

LESSON 54

WRITING MATERIAL

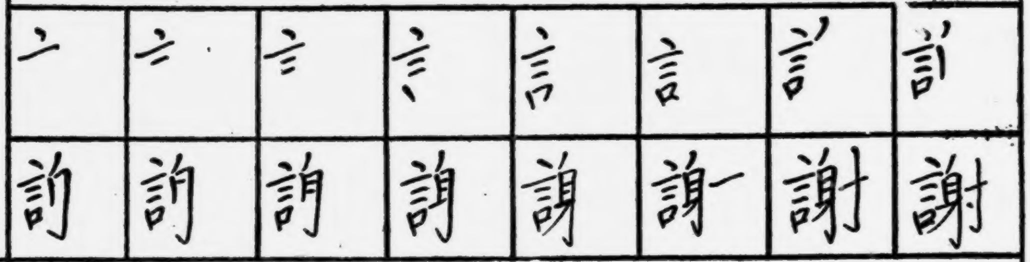
巷

Character Number 310 **Radical Number** 49
Stroke Number 9 己 , 己



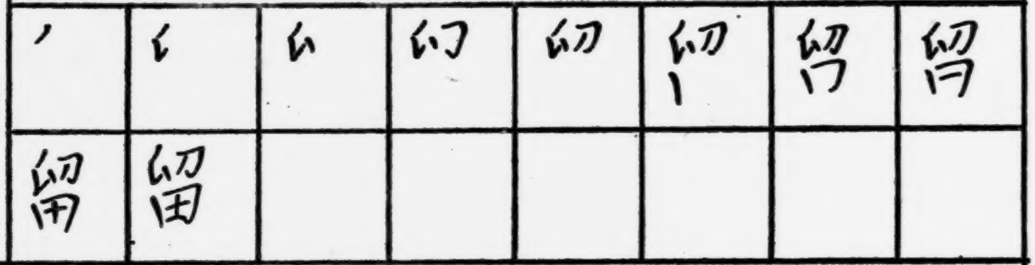
謝

Character Number 1228 **Radical Number** 149
Stroke Number 17 言



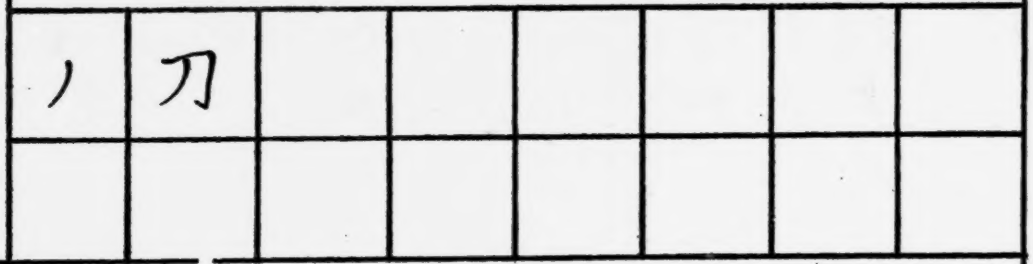
留

Character Number 593 **Radical Number** 102
Stroke Number 10 田



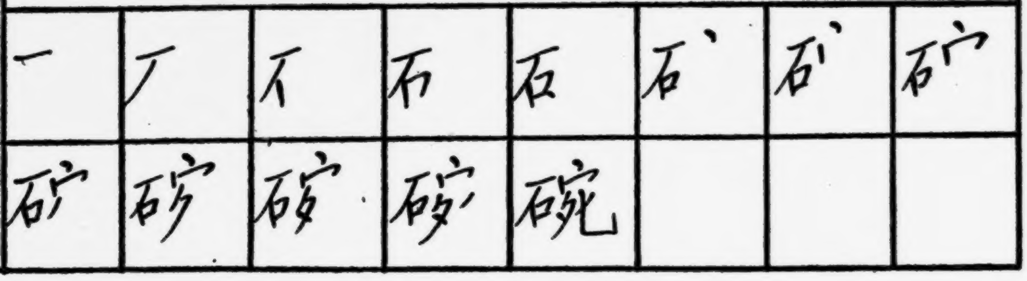
刀

Character Number 1158 **Radical Number** 18
Stroke Number 2 刀



碗

Character Number 793 **Radical Number** 112
Stroke Number 13 石



LESSON 55

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. ti

a. ni ti

kóh ti

pin ti?

b. hó ti

Neĭ peí ngŏh hó ti.

c. ti yān

Ti yān haāng-tak hó faaì.

ti yĕ

Ti yĕ hó-shîk.

ti shî-haû

Ti shî-haû kwòh-tak hó faaì.

ti teî-fong

Ti teî-fong hó kon-tsêng.

d. yaŭ ti

Yaŭ ti yān hó mōng, yaŭ ti yān hó tak-haān.

2. tó

t'aí

t'aí-tó

Ngŏh t'aí-tó.

Neĭ t'aí m̄-t'aí-tó à?

Ngŏh t'aí-tó.

Ngŏh t'aí-m̄-tó.

LESSON 55

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Ngŏh m̄-t'aí-tó.

Ngŏh m̄-t'aí-tó k'uĭ.

Ngŏh m̄-kìn-tó k'uĭ.

Ngŏh huì wán k'uĭ, taân-haî kìn m̄-tó k'uĭ.

Ngŏh huì wán k'uĭ, taân-haî wán m̄-tó k'uĭ.

t'eng

t'eng-tó

t'eng-m̄-tó

Ngŏh t'eng m̄-tó k'uĭ kóng mi-yĕ.

mān

mān-tó

mān-m̄-tó

Ngŏh mān m̄-tó ti meî.

p'ùng

p'ùng-tó

Ngŏh p'ùng-tó k'uĭ.

Ngŏh p'ùng-m̄-tó k'uĭ.

Ngŏh m̄-p'ùng-tó k'uĭ.

Ngŏh haí hôk-haaû m̄-p'ùng-tó k'uĭ.

Ngŏh haí hôk-haaû m̄-chông-tó k'uĭ.

Ngŏh haí hôk-haaû m̄-wán-tó k'uĭ.

Ngŏh haí hôk-haaû wán-m̄-tó k'uĭ.

Ngŏh taàp-m̄-tó fei-kei.

Ngŏh tá tîn-wâ*.

Ngŏh tá-m̄-tó tîn-wâ*.
Ngŏh tá-m̄-tó tîn-wâ* peí k'uĭ.

LESSON 55

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

3. maaî

haāng

Haāng laî!

Haāng-maaî laî!

M̄-koi neĭ haāng-maaî laî!

M̄-koi neĭ haāng-maaî huì!

M̄-koi neĭ haāng-maaî ti!

M̄-koi neĭ k'eĭ-maaî ti!

M̄-koi neĭ ts'ŏh-maaî ti!

M̄-koi neĭ-teî ts'ŏh-maaî yat-ts'aî.

4. p'à

Ngŏh p'à.

Neĭ p'à m̀-p'à à?

Ngŏh m̀-p'à.

Ngŏh p'à.

Ngŏh p'à k'uĭ.

Ngŏh p'à k'uĭ m̀-laî.

Neĭ ĭ-waî k'uĭ laî m̀-laî à?

Ngŏh p'à k'uĭ m̀-laî.

Ngŏh p'à.

Ngŏh p'à laăng.

Ngŏh p'à tùng.

Ngŏh p'à ît.

Ngŏh p'à ts'ō.

Ngŏh p'à feî.

LESSON 55

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

5. ...chi-haû

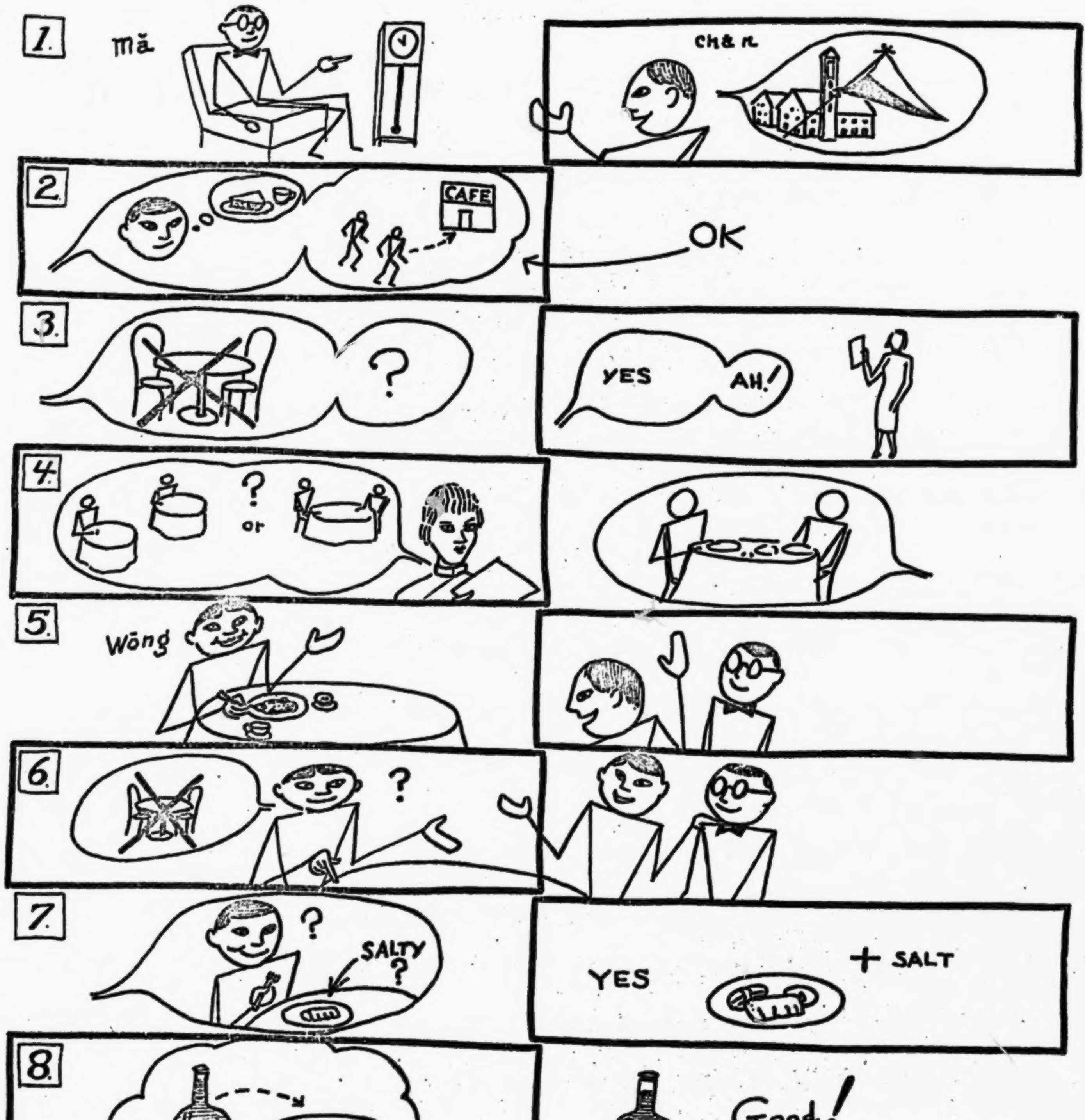
K'uĭ shîk faân.

K'uĭ shîk-chóh faân.

K'uĭ shîk-chóh faân chi-haû, k'uĭ huì kaai.

Shîk-chóh faân chi-haû, k'uĭ huì kaai.

LESSON 55


1.
mă
chan
2.
CAFE
OK
3.
?
YES
AH!
4.
?
or
5.
Wŏng
6.
?
7.
?
SALTY
?
YES
+ SALT
8.
SOY SAUCE
SOY SAUCE
Good!
9.
?
OK
10.
?
NO
SWEET!

LESSON 55

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Lŏ Ch'ān*, ngŏh haí neĭ shuè ts'ŏh-chóh kòm noî. Kwán-kaaú saaî!

B: Ngŏh-teî taaî-ka to haî lŏ t'ūng-hôk. M̄-hó-kóm-wâ, lŏ Mă.

2. A: Ngŏh koó, neĭ ĭ-king t'ŏ-ngôh là! Pat-uē taaî-ka ch'ut huì shîk ti yĕ la!

B: Hó la, ts'uî-pîn shîk ti la!

3. A: Ti waî* to ts'ŏh moŏn saaî. Ngŏh-teî mŏ waî* ts'ŏh. Tím-suèn-hó ne?

B: Haî lōh! Ti waî* to ts'ŏh moŏn saaì. Â, kóh kòh nuĭ taaì-waî* laî-kán là!

4. C: Sin-shaang, neĭ-teî seúng fan-hoi ts'ŏh, yik-waâk ts'ŏh-maaî yat-ts'aî à?

B: Ngŏh-teî seúng ts'ŏh-maaî yat-ts'aî, pik ti to m̄-kán-iù.

5. D: Lŏ Ch'ān*, yaû haí ni shuè p'ùng-tó neĭ.

B: Chan ngaam là! Lŏ Wōng*, yaû haí ni shuè chông-tó neĭ.

6. B: Ti waî* ts'ŏh moŏn saaì, ngŏh haí ni shuè taàp waî*, tak mà?

D: Tong-în* hóh-ĭ la! Ts'uî-pîn* ts'ŏh.

7. A: Ti tím-sam hó-shîk mà? Kaù haām mà?

B: Ti tím-sam hó hó shîk, taân-haî m̄-kaù haām.

8. A: Uē-kwóh ti tím-sam m̄-kaù haām, lôk ti shî-yaū la.

B: Ti shî-yaū chan lèng, hó hó meî-tô.

9. A: Neĭ ni pooi kà-fe kòm nūng, neĭ seúng ka ti ngaū-naaĭ mà?

B: Hó à, ka-chóh ti ngaū-naaĭ chi-haû, ti kà-fe mŏ kòm foó, hó yám hó toh.

10. A: Ngŏh-teî ĭ-king shîk-uēn faân, neĭ seúng iù ti suèt-ko mà?

B: M̄-hó lòh! Ngŏh p'à ti suèt-ko t'îm kwòh-t'aū.

LESSON 55

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Ch'ān, I have been here for so long. I've caused you so much inconvenience.

   B: We were school-mates,so please don't say that, Mǎ.

2. A: I think you are hungry. We had better go out to have something to eat.

   B: It's all right with me. Let us get something to eat.

3. A: All seats are taken. We don't have any table. What shall we do?

   B: Yes, the seats are all taken. Ah, the hostess is coming!

4. C: Gentlemen, do you wish to sit separately or together?

   B: We would like to sit together. We don't mind if it is a little crowded.

5. D: Ch'ān, I bump into you here again.

   B: What a coincidence for me to run into you here, Wōng!

6. B: The seats are all taken; may I share this table with you?

   D: Of course, you may. Make yourself comfortable. Please sit down.

7. A: Is the Chinese lunch good? Is it salty enough?

   B: The Chinese lunch is very good. But they are not salty enough.

8. A: If the food is not salty enough, please use soy sauce.

   B: The soy sauce is really good. It's very tasty.

9. A: Your coffee is so strong. Do you wish to add some cream?

   B: Fine, thank you. With the cream the coffee is not so strong; it's much better to drink now.

10. A: We have already finished eating. Would you like to have some ice cream?

    B: No, thank you. I'm afraid the ice cream is too sweet for me.

LESSON 55

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû, ngŏh-teî ĭ-king shîk-uēn nğ-ts'aan; ngŏh-teî keî shî tsoì-kìn à?

B: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, ngŏh-teî kam-maăn fòng-chóh kung chi-haû tsoì-kìn la, hó mà?

2. A: Hó à, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû, kam-yât hâ-nğ neĭ keî tîm fòng kung à?

B: Ngŏh mooĭ yât hâ-nğ to haî nğ tîm-chung fòng kung, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

3. A: Pat-kwòh, neĭ kam-maăn fòng-chóh kung chi-haû, chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ sẑ à?

B: Fòng-chóh kung chi-haû, ngŏh chûng iù kìn haaû-cheúng yat ts'z̀, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

4. A: Kìn-chóh haaû-cheúng chi-haû, neĭ chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ sẑ à?

B: Kìn-chóh haaû-cheúng chi-haû, ngŏh chûng iù huì fei faàt.

5. A: Fei-uēn faàt chi-haû, yaû tîm à?

B: Fei-uēn faàt chi-haû, ngŏh faan uk-k'eî t'aì so; t'aì-uēn so chi-haû, uēn-ts'uēn mŏ sẑ là!

6. A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, neĭ kam-maăn keî tîm chì tak-haān à, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû?

B: Lûk-tîm tò lûk tîm-poòn tsóh-yaû* la; kóm, ngaam m̄-ngaam neĭ ti shî-haû à?

7. A: Hó ngaam, ngŏh-teî haî pin shuè kìn à?

B: Haî ngŏh shuè waâk-ché neĭ shuè to m̄-kán-iù.

8. A: Pat-uē ngŏh huì wán neĭ la, neĭ haî uk-k'eî tańg ngŏh la!

B: Hó à, uē-kwóh kóh chân-shî ngŏh chûng meî faan laî, m̄-koi neĭ haî ngŏh uk-k'eî ts'ŏh hâ* Ngŏh kè t'aaî-t'aaî* haî uk-k'eî.

9. A: Ngŏh meî laî chi-ts'în, ngŏh sin tá tîn-wâ* peî neĭ, tîm à?

B: Hó, neĭ kè ì-kìn hó hó; taaî-ka to m̄-shaî táng.

LESSON 55

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. A: Neî kè tîn-wâ* haî m̄-haî î-lîng-saam-î-kaú hô à?

B: M̄-haî, ngŏh kè tîn-wâ* haî î-lîng-î-saam-kaú.

11. A: M̄-kán-iù, uē-kwóh tá ts'òh-chóh, ngŏh ooî wán tîn-wâ*po* kè, fòng-sam.

B: Hó la, kam-maăn lûk-tîm tò lûk-tîm-poòn tsoì-kìn, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

12. A: Â, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû, ngŏh-teî kam-maăn kìn-chóh chi-haû, huì pin shuè waán ả?

B: Ngŏh-teî haî uk-k'eî ts'ŏh-hă, yám ti tsaú; yám-uēn tsaú, ngŏh-teî huì ngoî-pîn shîk maăn-faân; tîm à, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

13. A: Hó à, ngŏh-teî huì pin kaan ts'aan-shat shîk faân à?

B: Ni kòh mân-t'aî, ngŏh-teî tò kóh chân-shî chì k'uèt-tîng la.

14. A: Shîk-uēn faân, yaû tîm à; neî seúng huì t'aî tîn-yîng mà, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû?

B: Hó à, tò kóh chân-shî tsoì-k'ing la! Ngŏh-teî chûng yaŭ taaî-pá shî-haû, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

15. A: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn!

B: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn!

LESSON 55

WORD LIST

1.	**kaaú-kwán saaì**	I have caused you so much trouble, I have bothered you so much
2.	**mŏ waî* ts'ŏh**	no seat available, all seats occupied, no place to sit
3.	**tîm-suèn-hó?**	What shall I do?
4.	**nuĭ taaì-waî***	hostess, usherette, stewardess
5.	**fan-hoi**	to separate, divide, split
6.	**maaî**	to be closed together, to bury, embed
7.	**ts'ŏh-maaî yat-ts'aî**	to sit together
8.	**pik**	crowded, to crowd, force, compel
9.	**p'ùng**	to bump into, run into, meet, collide
10.	**chông**	to run into, collide, strike against
11.	**taàp waî***	to share a table, add a seat
12.	**tîm-sam**	Chinese luncheon, pastry, snack, refreshment
13.	**yaū**	oil
14.	**shî-yaū**	soya sauce
15.	**ngaū-naaĭ**	cow's milk, cream
16.	**suèt-ko**	ice cream
17.	**p'à**	to be afraid of, fear, be frightened

LESSON 55

READING MATERIAL

189

火 fóh: fire; fever; to burn

火燭 fóh-chuk: conflagration; on fire

火山 fóh shaan: volcano

火水 fóh-shuí: kerosene

火酒 fóh-tsaú: alcohol

1001

燒 shiu: to burn; to roast; feverish.

燒火 shiu fóh: to light a fire.

燒酒 shiu-tsaú: distilled spirit.

1457

油 yaū: oil; grease; paint; to oil.

猪油 chue yaū: lard.

生油 shaang yaū: peanut oil.

電油 tīn yaū: gasoline.

火 燒 油

火 燒 油

火 燒 油

804

怕 p'à: to fear; to dread; lest; probably.

怕死 p'à-sź: to be afraid of death.

怕醜 p'à-ch'aú: bashful; ashamed.

848

逼 pik: to crowd; to press upon; to urge; to oppress; to force.

壓逼 aàt-pik: to oppress; to browbeat.

強逼 k'eūng-pik kaaù yûk: compulsory education.

怕 逼

怕 逼

怕 佰 逼

LESSON 55

READING MATERIAL

727

奶	naaĭ: milk; the breast of a woman; the title of respect for a woman; madam.
奶奶	naaĭ-naaí: madam; Mrs.(old woman).
師奶	sz-naai: Mrs.(middle aged); madam.
少奶	siù-naai: Mrs(young woman).

1053

雪	suèt: snow; ice; to wipe out.
雪茄	suèt-ka: cigar.
雪恥	suèt ch'ĭ: to wipe away disgrace.

754

牛	ngaū: cattle.
牛油	ngaū-yaū: butter.
牛奶	ngaū-naaĭ: cow's milk.

奶 雪 牛

奶 雪 牛

嬭 奶 雪 牛

478

糕	ko: kind of cake; pastry; dumplings; custard.
雞蛋糕	kai-taân-ko: egg sponge cake.
鬆糕	sung-ko: a kind of steamed pastry.

905

碰	p'ùng: to collide; meet unexpectedly; knock; bump.
碰着	p'ùng cheûk: to meet; to run across.
碰機會	p'ùng kei-ooî: look for opportunity.

糕 碰

糕 碰

餻 糕 掽 碰

LESSON 55

READING MATERIAL

昨晚陳英同黃小姐好夜至翻去酒店fàn-覺。佢地fàn到今日朝早十點至起身。雖然佢地好夜fàn，但係佢地fàn-chóh八個鐘頭kòm耐；佢地夠fàn啦。

起身之後，陳英覺得好肚餓，佢想去飲早茶。但係黃小姐只係想飲啲牛奶，食啲雪糕。佢地行出酒店嘅時候，睇見街處啲人來來去去，真係逼啦。如果行路唔小心，就會被chông倒碰倒啦。今日係禮拜六，有啲人唔使做工。佢地都出街買野，到處waán吓。

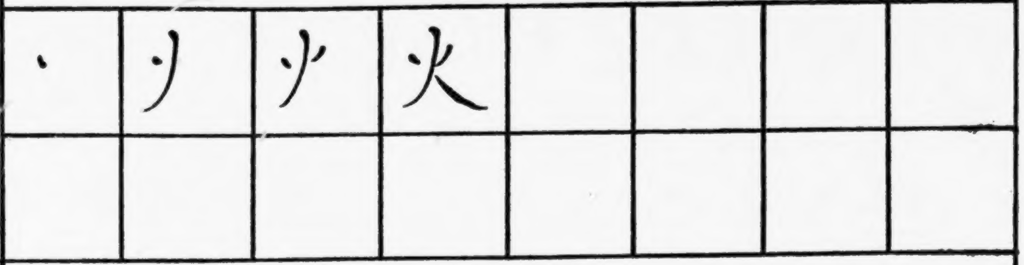
陳英同黃小姐而家去到一間茶樓。聽聞話，呢間茶樓舊時被火燒過，近來整翻好。睇情形，啲waî*好似坐滿啦；佢地以為冇waî*坐。但係女帶waî*話，重有幾個 wai，佢就請陳英同黃小姐去嗰處坐。啲地方好lèng。佢地要chóh啲點心，味道唔錯，但係唔夠haām；陳英就落啲shî-油。黃小姐怕食得太飽；佢只係食chóh一味kòm多。

LESSON 55

WRITING MATERIAL

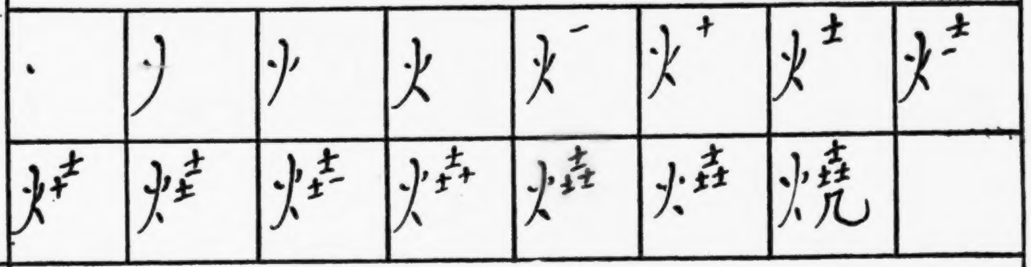
火

Character Number 189　**Radical Number** 86
Stroke Number 4　火



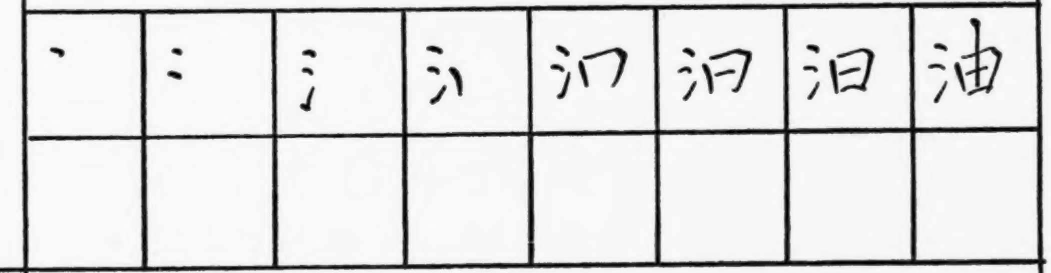
燒

Character Number 1001　**Radical Number** 86
Stroke Number 15　火



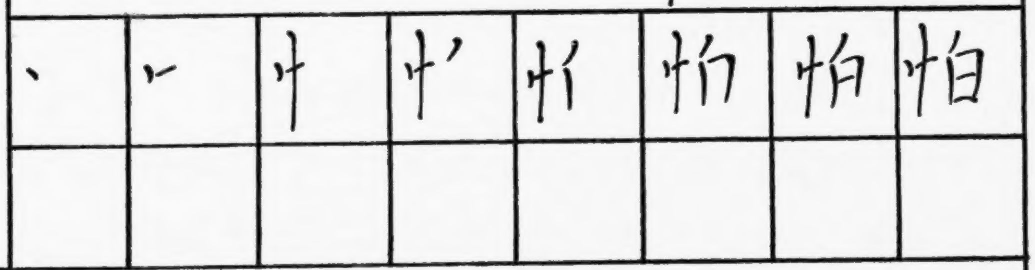
油

Character Number 1457　**Radical Number** 85
Stroke Number 8　氵，水



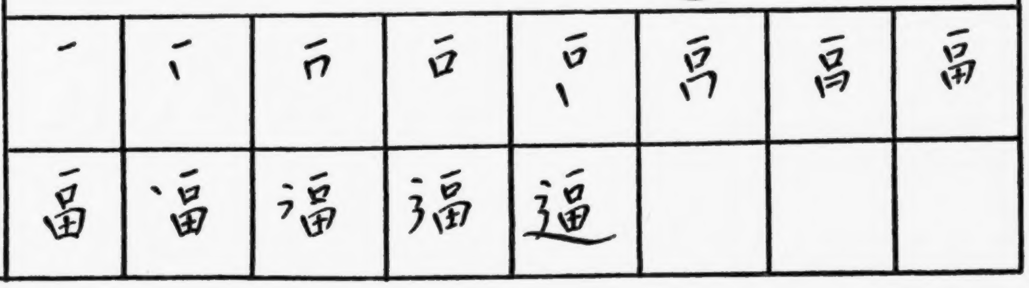
怕

Character Number 804　**Radical Number** 61
Stroke Number 8　忄，心



逼

Character Number 848　**Radical Number** 162
Stroke Number 13　辶，辵



LESSON 56

ORAL MATERIĂL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Partitive Noun

pooi

yat-kỏh pooi

pooi

yat-pooi

yat-pooi ch'ā

ni pooi ch'ā

Ni pooi haî ch'ā.

Ni pooi haî mi-yĕ à?

Ni pooi haî ch'ā.

ni pooi ch'ā

Ni pooi ch'ā hó nūng.

Ni pooi ch'ā nūng m̄-nūng à?

Ni pooi ch'ā hó nūng.

hôp*

yat-kỏh hôp *

ni kỏh hôp *

hôp

yat-hôp

yat-hôp péng

ni hôp péng

Ni hôp péng haî ngŏh kẻ.

Ni hôp haî péng.

paau

LESSON 56

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

yat-kòh paau

yat-paau

yat-paau fóh-ch'aaî

tsun

yat-kòh tsun

yat-tsun

yat-tsun tsaú

oō

yat-kòh oō

yat-oō

yat-oō ch'ā

oón

yat-kóh oón

yat-oón

yat-oón faân

aang

yat-kòh aang

yat-aang

yat-aang t'ōng

tîp

yat-kòh tîp *

yat-tîp

yat-tîp shùng

toî *

yat-kòh toî *

LESSON 56

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

2. hó, m̄-hó

a. hó

K'uĭ hó.

K'uĭ m̄-hó.

K'uĭ hó m̄-hó à?

K'uĭ hó.

K'uĭ m̄-hó.

K'uĭ hó m̄-hó.

b. M̄-hó!

M̄̇-hó huì!

Neĭ m̄-hó huì!

Neĭ m̄-hó huì kóh shuè!

Ngŏh hó m̄-hó huì kóh shuè à?

Neĭ m̄-hó huì kóh shuè!

Neĭ hóh-ĭ huì kóh shuè!

3. kòm, kóm

kòm

kòm ts'ung-mīng

K'uĭ kòm ts'ung-mīng.

K'uĭ hó-ts'z̆ hó ts'ung-mīng.

K'uĭ hó-ts'z̆ hó ts'ung-mīng kóm yeûng*.

K'uĭ haāng-tak kòm faaì.

K'uĭ haāng-tak hó-ts'z̆ hó faaì.

LESSON 56

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

K'uĭ haāng-tak hó-ts'z̆ hó faaì kóm yeûng*

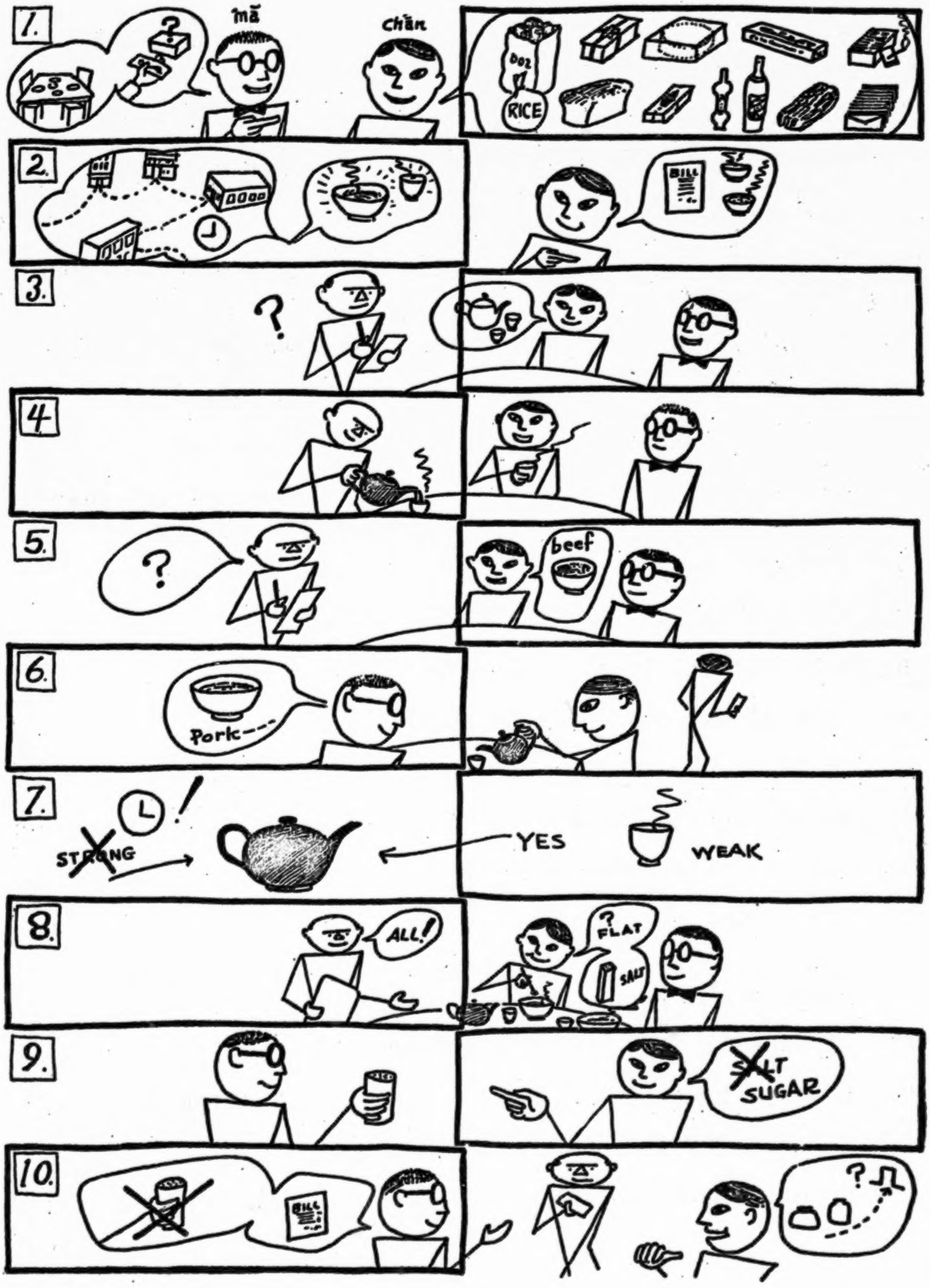
K'uĭ haāng-tak kòm faaì.

K'uĭ hó faaì kóm haāng.

K'uĭ tsô-tak kòm siú-sam.

K'uĭ hó siú-sam kóm tsô.

LESSON 56


1.
mă
chĕn
?
DOZ
RICE
2.
BILL
3.
?
4.
5.
?
beef
6.
Pork
7.
STRONG
!
YES
WEAK
8.
ALL!
? FLAT
SALT
9.
SALT
SUGAR
10.
BILL
?

LESSON 56

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Lŏ Ch'ān*, ngŏh-teî ĭ-king shîk-uēn maăn-faân, neĭ seúng huì maaĭ ti mi-yĕ à?

B: Ngŏh seúng huì maaĭ yat-ta ch'aāng*, yat-hôp t'ōng*, yat-hôp péng, yat-t'iū in-tsaí, yat-paau fóh-ch'aaî, yat-toî maĭ, yat t'iū mîn-paau, yat-pông ngaū-yaū, yat-tsun yaū, yat-tsun wai-sẑ-keî*, yat-chaàt mîn, t'ūng yat-chaàt sùn-fung.

2. A: Ngŏh-teî maaĭ yĕ maaĭ-chóh kòm noî, ngŏh yaû t'ŏ-ngôh là!

B: Ni ts'z̀, táng ngŏh ts'éng neĭ shîk siu-yê* la!

3. C: Sin-shaang, neĭ leŭng waî* iù ti mi-yĕ shîk à?

B: Fóh-keì, m̄-koi neĭ ch'ung oō ch'ā laî sin la!

4. C: Sin-shaang, ch'ā laî là, táng ngŏh t'ūng neĭ-teî cham ch'ā la!

B: M̄-shaî. M̄-koi, m̄-koi.

5. C: Neĭ-teî leŭng waî* iù ti mi-yĕ shîk à?

B: Ngŏh iù yat-tîp ngaū-yûk mîn.

6. A: Ngŏh iù yat-oón chue-yûk chuk.

B: Lŏ Mă, ngŏh-teî yám pooi ch'ā chì k'ing la!

7. A: Ni oō ch'ā chûng meî kaù nūng, táng yat-chân.

B: Haî, ti ch'ā chûng hó t'aăm.

8. C: Sin-shaang, ti yĕ tò-ch'aî là.

B: H̲eí-faaì* la. Tím-kaaí ngŏh tîp mîn kòm t'aăm kà? M̆-koi neĭ peí aang îm ngŏh, Lŏ Mă.

9. A: Ni aang haî îm, M̄-hó lôk t'aaì toh à!

B: Lŏ Mă, ni aang m̄-haî îm à. Ni aang haî t'ōng à!

10. A: Tuì-m̄-chuê, ngŏh peí ts'òh-chóh neĭ.

B: Ngŏh-teî shîk-uēn là. Ngŏh-teî tsaú meî à?

LESSON 56

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

A: Fóh-kèi, m̂-koi neĭ maaì-taan.

B: Táng ngŏh laì, ni ts'z̀ táng ngŏh ts'éng.

LESSON 56

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Ch'ăn, we have already finished our supper, what do you wish to buy?

B: I wish to buy a dozen oranges, a box of candy, a box of cake, a carton of cigarettes, a pack of matches, a sack of rice, a loaf of bread, a pound of butter, a bottle of oil, a bottle of whiskey, a bundle of noodles, and a batch of envelopes.

2. A: We have been shopping for so long. I am hungry again.

B: Let me treat you to a night snack this time.

3. C: Gentlemen, what do you wish to have?

B: Waiter, will you bring us a pot of tea first.

4. C: Gentlemen, here is the tea. Let me pour for you.

B: No, thank you.

5. C: What do you two wish to have?

B: I would like to have beef noodles.

6. A: I'd like to have a bowl of pork porridge.

B: Mă, let us have some tea before we talk.

7. A: This pot of tea is not yet strong enough. Let's wait a moment.

B: Yes, the tea isn't quite ready yet.

8. C: Gentlemen, the food is here.

B: Shall we eat? Why are my noodles so tasteless? Mă, please hand me the salt.

9. A: This is salt. Don't put on too much!

B: Mă, this is not salt. It is sugar.

10. A: I'm sorry, I've given you the wrong thing.

B: We have finished eating. Shall we go?

A: Waiter, please give me the check.

B: Please give it to me. I invited you.

LESSON 56

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ts'íng-mân, ni shuè haî m̄-haî î-lîng-î-saam-kaú à?

B: Tuì-m̄-chuê, ni shuè haî î-lîng-î-saam-paàt. Neĭ tá ts'òh-chóh là!

2. A: Ts'íng-mân, neĭ ni shuè haî m̄-haî î-lîng-î-saam-kaú à?

C: Haî à, neĭ haî pin-waî* à?

3. A: Ngŏh haî Kam Sheûng-Kaaù; ts'íng-mân, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû haí shuè mà?

C: Â, neĭ haî Kam Sheûng-Kaaù; ngŏh haî Ch'ān T'aaì-T'aaì*. Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû huì-chóh fei faàt.

4. A: K'uĭ huì-chóh fei faàt; k'uĭ t'aū-sin kóng-kwòh ni kîn sẑ. K'uĭ yaŭ mŏ haí ngoî-pîn tá tîn-wâ* faan laî à?

C: Yaŭ, k'uĭ huì-chóh chi-haû, k'uĭ yaŭ tá tîn-wâ* faan laî.

5. A: K'uĭ wâ, keí noî chì hóh-ĭ faan laî à?

C: K'uĭ wâ, k'uĭ shâp fan-chung chi-noî hóh-ĭ faan laî. Neĭ laî ts'ŏh-hă la!

6. A: Hó à, Ch'ān T'aaì-T'aaì*, ngŏh tsik-haak laî.

C: Yat-Chân kìn, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

7. A: Ch'ān T'aaì-T'aaì*, mŏ kìn neĭ kòm noî, kân-loî keí hó la mà?

C: Keí hó, yaŭ-sam; neĭ ne, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

8. A: P'îng-p'îng-sheūng-sheūng la! Ch'ān T'aaì-T'aaì*.

C: Neĭ kòk-tak ngŏh ni kaan uk tím-yeûng* à, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

9. A: Neĭ-teî kè haàk-t'eng chan lèng, uk kè chau-waî yaû yaŭ kòm toh fa ts'ó.

C: Mā-mă*-teî* che, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

10. A: Ni kaan uk haî neĭ-teî tso kè, yik-waâk haî maaĭ kè à ?

C: Ĭ-ts'în haî ngŏh-teî tso kè, haú-loî ngŏh-teî maaĭ-chóh k'uĭ.

LESSON 56

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

11. A: Tím-kaaí neĭ-teî maaĭ-chóh k'uĭ à?

C: Yan-waî ngŏh-teî mooĭ kòh uêt iù peí hó toh uk-tso, shóh-ĭ ngŏh-teî k'uèt-tîng maaĭ-chóh k'uĭ.

12. A: Ni kaan uk maaĭ-chóh keí-toh ts'ìn*à?

C: Ni kaan uk maaĭ-chóh î-maân-î-ts'in keí man; neĭ wâ, kwaì mà?

13. A: Peí-kaaù laî kóng, î-maân-î-ts'in keí man m̄-haî hó kwaì. Neĭ ni shuè yaŭ keí-toh kaan fōng* à?

C: Ngŏh-teî ni shuè yaŭ leŭng-kòh fàn-fōng*, yat-kòh haàk-t'eng, yat-kòh faân-t'eng, yat-kòh ch'uē-fōng*, yat-kòh saí-shan-fōng*, t'ūng ts'z̀-shóh, t'ūng yat-kòh ch'e-fōng.

14. A: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, î-maân-î-ts'in keí man hó p'ēng là, Ch'ān T'aaì-T'aaì*.

C: Neĭ seúng chau-waî t'aí-hă mà, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

15. A: Hó à, Ch'ān T'aaì-T'aaì*.

C: Ngŏh-teî sin t'aí ch'uē-fōng* la, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

A: Tím to hó la!

LESSON 56

WORD LIST

1.	ta; (tá)	dozen, (to hit, strike)
2.	ch'aāng*	orange (AN-kỏh)
3.	hôp	box, carton, paper container
4.	péng	cake (AN-kỏh)
5.	fóh-ch'aaî	match (AN-paau, hôp)
6.	toî	bag, sack, pocket, pouch
7.	mîn-paau	bread (AN-t'iū, kỏh)
8.	pông	pound, scale, to weigh
9.	ngaū-yaū	butter
10.	chaảt	bundle, batch, to bind
11.	mîn	noodle
12.	sùn-fung	envelope (AN-kỏh)
13.	oō	pot
14.	ch'ung ch'ā	to make some tea
15.	cham	to pour out, (tea, liquor, wine) pour, deliberate
16.	cham ch'ā	to pour some tea
17.	chuk	porridge, gruel, congee
18.	aang	jar, jug, shaker

LESSON 56

READING MATERIAL

786

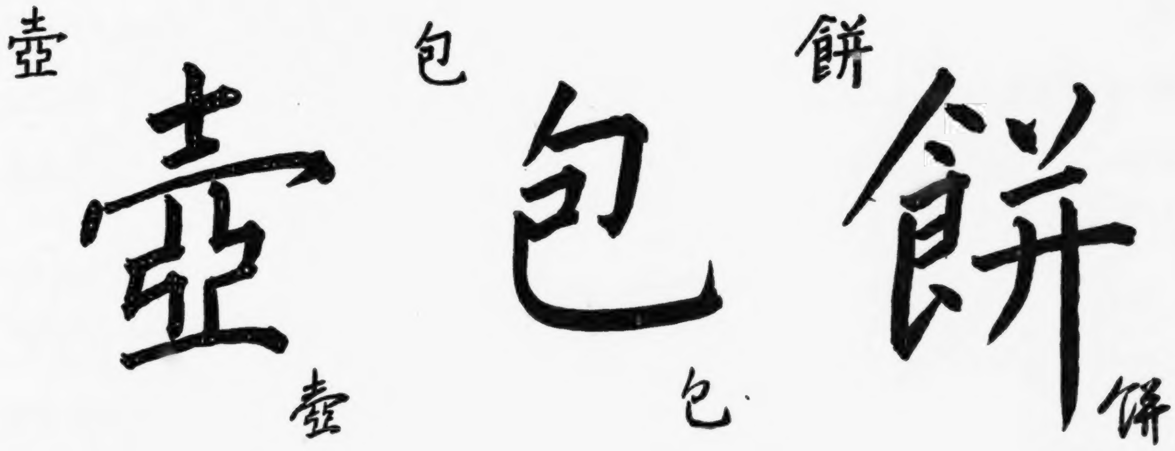
壺	oō: jug; pot: tankard.
茶壺	ch'ā oō: a teapot.
酒壺	tsaú oō: winepot.
水壺	shuí oō: water pot.

819

包	paau: to enclose; to wrap up; to include; a bundle.
包工	paau-kung: to contract for work.
包圍	paau-waī: to surround(as by soldiers).

844

餅	péng· cake; pastry.
餅食	péng shîk: pastry; cake.
餅乾	péng-kon: cracker; biscuit.

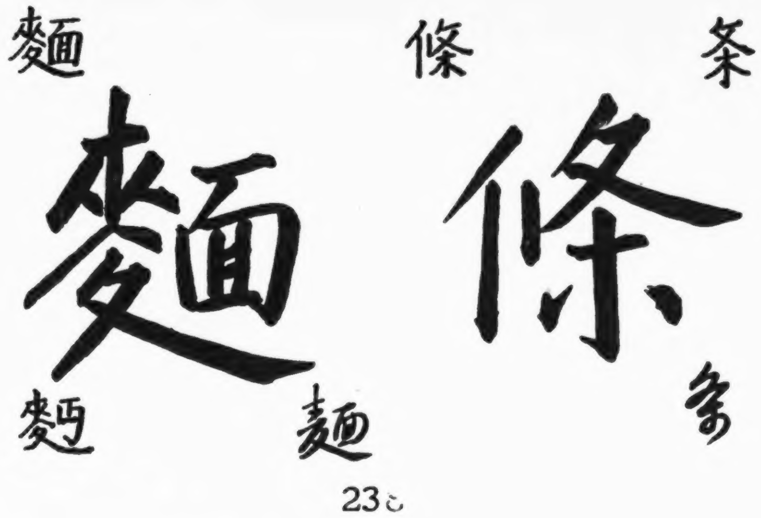


692

麵	mîn: wheat noodle.
麵粉	mîn-fán: wheat flour.
麵包	mîn-paau: bread.

1157

條	t'iū: of thing long and slender.
條件	t'iū-kîn: article; term of contract.
條例	t'iū-laî: rule; regulation; by-law.
條約	t'iū-yeùk: a treaty.



LESSON 56

READING MATERIAL

658

埋	maaī: with; beside; to conceal; to bury.
收埋	shau maaī: to store; to put away; to hide.
埋沒	maaī-moôt: hidden; in the background.
埋來	maaī loī: to come close.
埋岸	maaī ngôn: (the boat) arrive at a pier.

1090

單	taan: single; odd; alone; only; bill; receipt; commercial document.
單獨	taan-tûk: alone; single.
簡單	kaán-taan: simple; plain.
菜單	ts'oì taan: bill of fare; menu.

1186

袋	toî: bag; sack; pouch; purse; pocket.
皮袋	p'eī toî: leather bag.
衫袋	shaam toî*: coat pocket.

埋 單 单 袋

埋 單 袋

埋 單 袋

230

封	fung: to seal; close up; Cl for letters
一封信	yat-fung sùn: a letter
信封	sùn-fung: an envelope
封鎖	fung-sóh: to blockade

11

柴	ch'aaī: firewood
火柴	fóh-ch'aaī (fóh-ch'aaī*): matches
破柴	p'òh-ch'aaī: to split firewood.

封 柴 柴

封 柴

封 柴

LESSON 56

READING MATERIAL

陳英同黄小姐喺茶樓飲早茶。陳英食chóh 幾tîp 點心，飲chóh 幾pooi 茶。頭先ch'ung chóh一大壺茶，而家陳英cham 吓cham 吓，一陣間就飲shaaì壺茶啦。黄小姐唔係幾想飲茶。陳英cham-chóh 一pooi 茶peí 佢；而家佢都飲唔shaaì。佢地坐chóh 好耐啦。佢地叫fóh-記埋單，要走啦！

飲完茶之後，佢地去行街。街處有好多人，有男人，女人，大人，細-man-tsaí。有啲行來行去；有啲k'eí 喺街處；有啲買緊野。有中國人，有美國人。有啲人講廣東話；有啲人講英文；有啲人講嘅說話唔係英文，又唔係廣東話，唔知道佢地講乜野話。如果靜靜地敢睇吓呢啲人，係好有意思嘅。

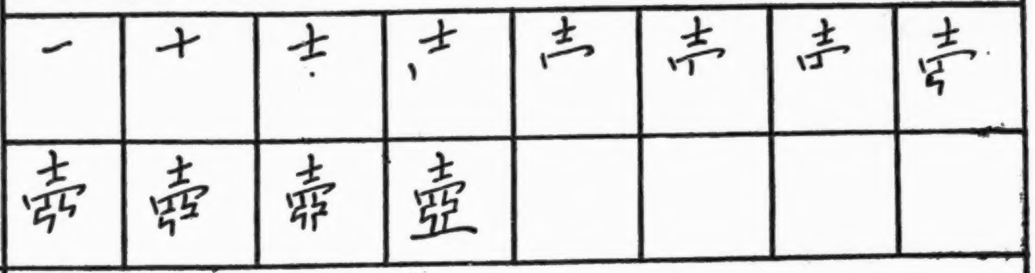
喺T'ōng-人埠有好多中國野賣。黄小姐買chóh 一袋生kwóh，三包糖，一hôp 餅，一hôp 麵。陳英買chóh 一chaàt 信封，一條烟-tsaí 同一hôp 火柴。佢地買chóh kòm-多野，去行街好唔利便。

LESSON 56

WRITING MATERIAL

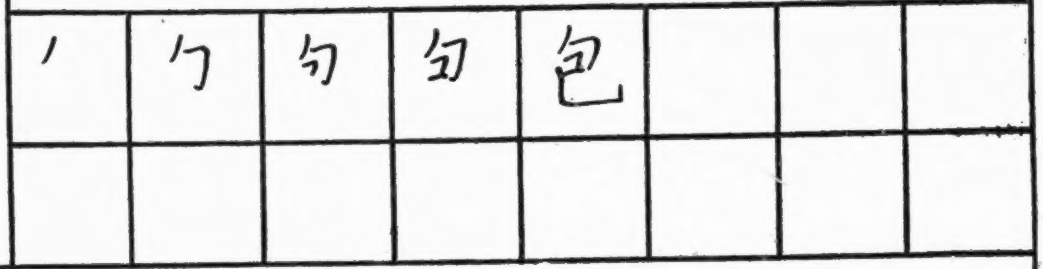
壺

Character Number 786 Radical Number 33
Stroke Number 12 士



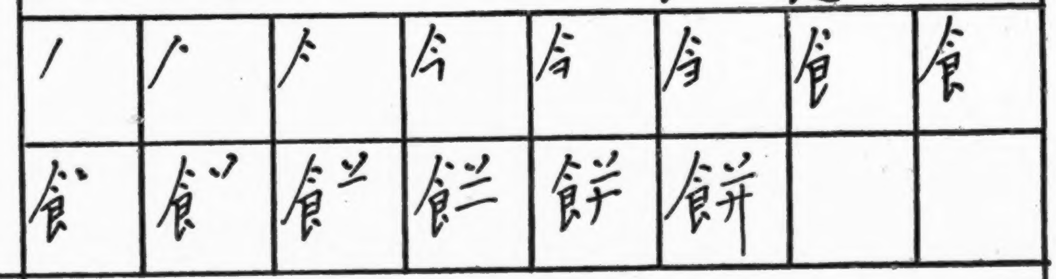
包

Character Number 819 Radical Number 20
Stroke Number 5 勹



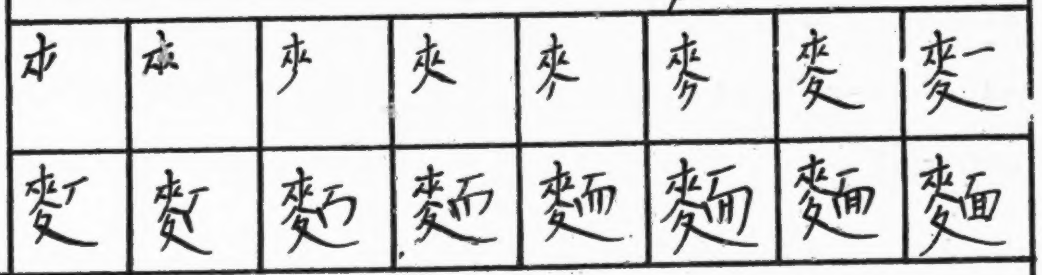
餅

Character Number 844 Radical Number 184
Stroke Number 14 飠，食



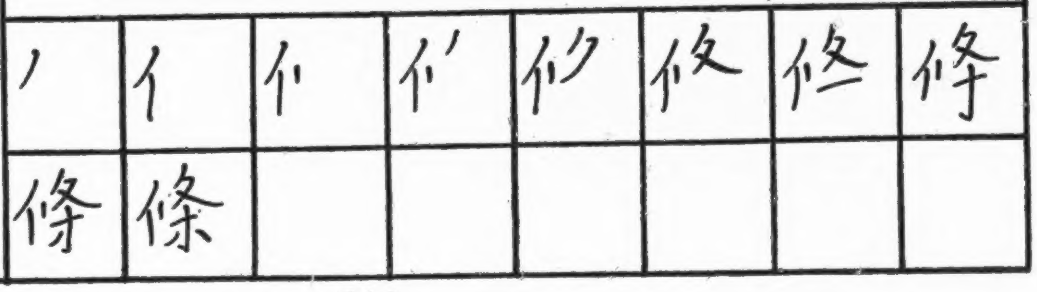
麵

Character Number 692 Radical Number 199
Stroke Number 20 麥



條

Character Number 1157 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 10 亻，人



LESSON 57

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. Partitive Noun

koòn

yat-kòh koòn

koòn

yat-koòn

yat-koòn ngaū-naaĭ

yat-koòn mâk-shuí

hôp

yat-kòh hôp

yat-hôp

yat-hôp péng

yat-hôp t'ōng*

yat-hôp sùn-chí

paau

yat-kòh paau

yat-paau

yat-paau in

yat-paau in-tsaí

yat-paau fóh-ch'aaî

yat-paau maĭ

toî

yat-kòh toî

yat-toî

yat-toî maĭ

tsun

LESSON 57

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

yat-kȍh tsun
yat-tsun
yat-tsun tsaú
yat-tsun wai-sẑ-keî*
yat-tsun pât-laan-teî*
yat-tsun mâk-shuí
tîp
yat-kȍh tîp
yat-tîp
yat-tîp shùng
yat-tîp mîn
yat-tîp faân
oón
yat-kȍh oón
yat-oón
yat-oón faân
yat-oón chuk
aang
yat-kȍh aang
yat-aang
yat-aang t'ōng
yat-aang îm
oō
yat-kȍh oō
yat-oō
yat-oō ch'ā

LESSON 57

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

yat-oŏ kà-fe

yat-oŏ kwán-shuì

pooi

yat-kòh pooi

yat-pooi

yat-pooi ch'ā

yat-pooi kà-fe

yat-pooi kwán-shuì

ta

yat-ta ch'aāng*

yat-ta p'īng-kwóh

pông

yat-pông ngaū-yûk

yat-pông ngaū-yaū

2. ch'uī-chóh...chi-ngoî

ch'uī

ch'uī-chóh

ch'uī-chóh maaĭ yĕ chi-ngoî

k'uĭ ch'uī-chóh maaĭ yĕ chi-ngoî

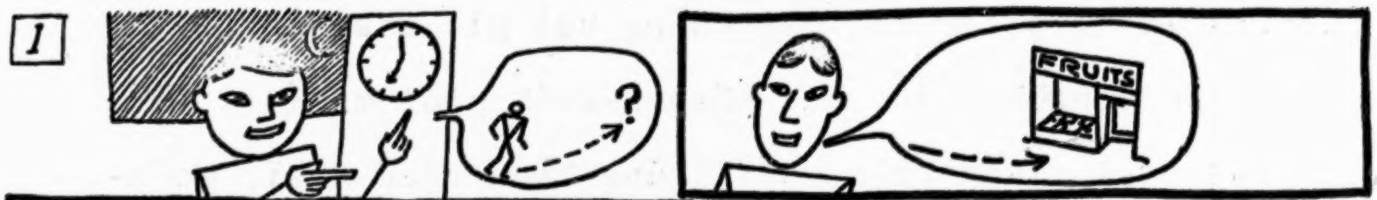
K'uĭ ch'uī-chóh maaĭ yĕ chi-ngoî, chûng huì fei faàt.

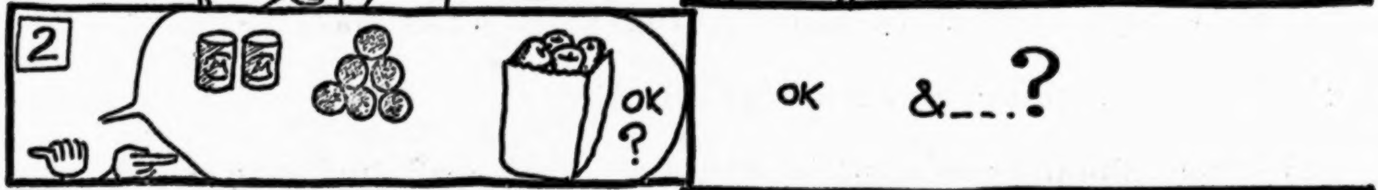
K'uĭ ch'uī-chóh maaĭ yĕ t'ūng fei faàt chi-ngoî, chûng huì t'aí heì.

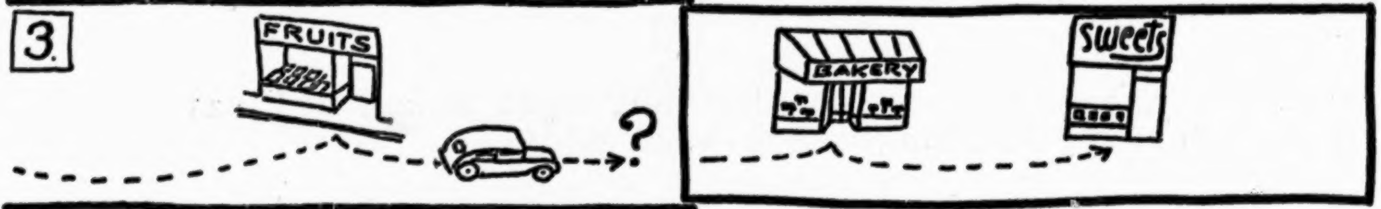
Ni shuè ch'uī-chóh yaŭ hôk-shaang chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ sin-shaang.

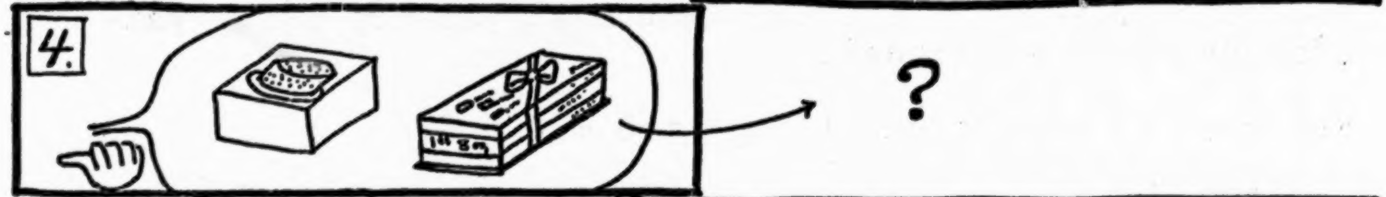
Ngŏh ch'uī-chóh ooĭ cha heì-ch'e chi-ngoî, chûng ooĭ cha fei-kei.

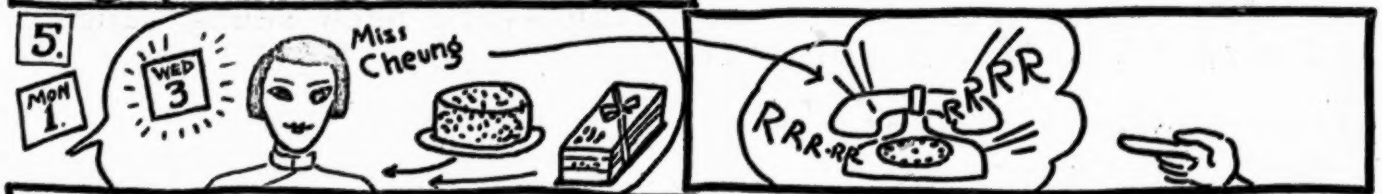
LESSON 57

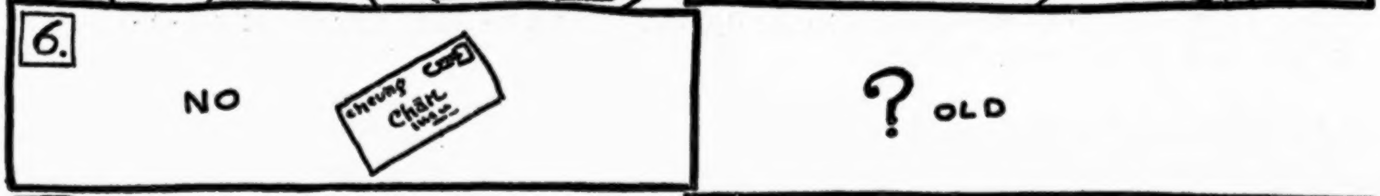

1
?
FRUITS

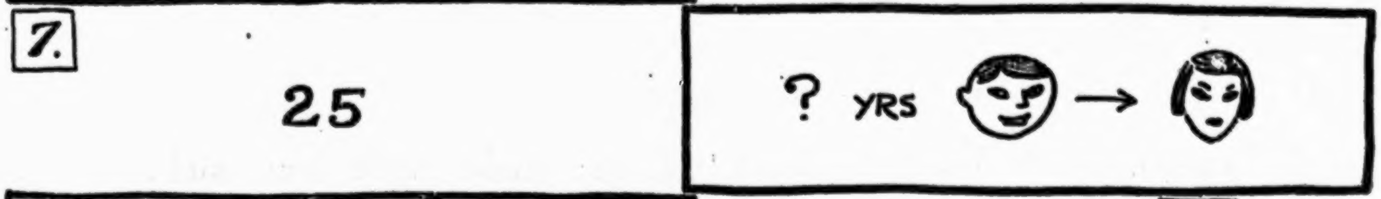

2
OK
?
OK &....?

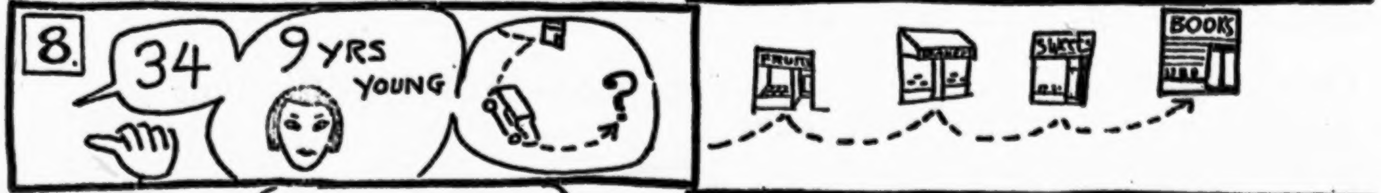

3.
FRUITS
?
BAKERY
Sweets

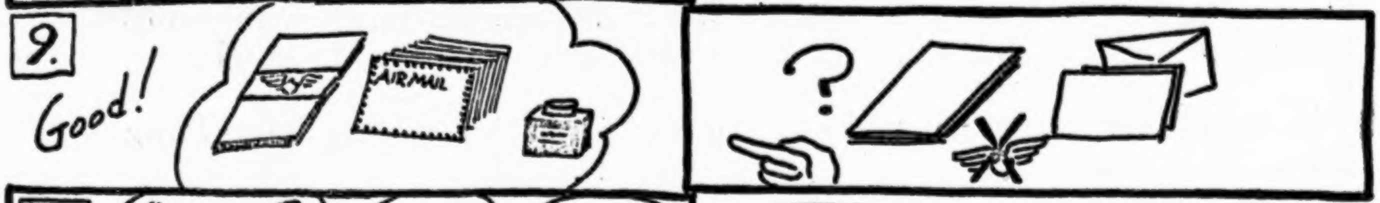

4.
?

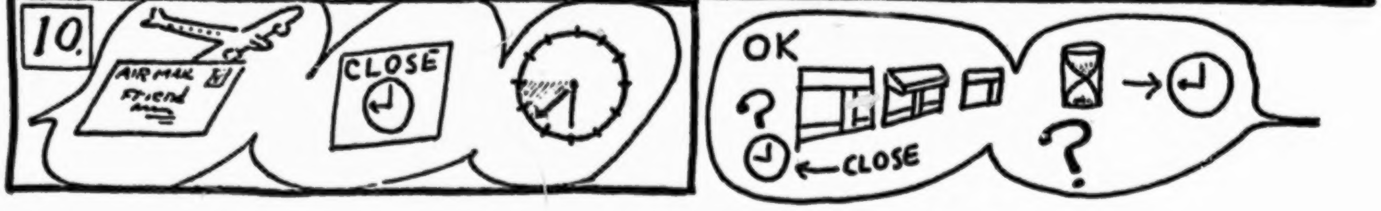

5.
MON 1.
WED 3
Miss Cheung
RRR-RR
RRRR


6.
NO
Cheung Chan
? OLD


7.
25
? YRS


8.
34
9 YRS YOUNG
?
FRUITS
BOOKS


9.
Good!
AIRMAIL
?


10.
AIRMAIL Friend
CLOSE
OK
?
←CLOSE
?

LESSON 57

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Lŏ Leĭ, ĭ-ka hó yê là, neĭ chûng huì pin shuè à?

   B: Lŏ Ch'ăn*, ngŏh seúng huì shaang-kwóh p'ò* maaĭ ti yĕ.

2. A: Mā-faān neĭ t'ūng ngŏh maaĭ leŭng-kòon ngaū-naaĭ, pòon-ta ch'aāng*, t'ūng ta-pòon p'îng-kwóh, tak mà?

   B: Hó à, chûng seúng maaĭ ti mi-yĕ à?

3. A: Huì-chóh shaang-kwóh p'ò* chi-haû, neĭ yaû huì pin shuè à?

   B: Huì-uēn shaang-kwóh p'ò* chi-haû, ngŏh seúng huì yat-kaan péng p'ò*, t'ūng t'ōng-kwóh p'ò*.

4. A: Kóm, tsoì mā-faān neĭ t'ūng ngŏh maaĭ yat-hôp péng, yat-hôp pông-pòon kè t'ōng*.

   B: Neĭ maaĭ ti péng t'ūng t'ōng* tsô mi-yĕ à?

5. A: Haû-yât haî Cheung Siú Tsé kè shaang-yât, ngŏh seúng sùng ti péng t'ūng t'ōng* peî k'uĭ.

   B: K'uĭ yaŭ mŏ tá tîn-wâ* peî neĭ à?

6. A: Mŏ, k'uĭ mŏ tá tîn-wâ* peî ngŏh. Taân-haî ngŏh shau-tò k'uĭ kè yat-fung sùn.

   B: K'uĭ kam-nîn keî suì à?

7. A: K'uĭ kam-nîn yâ-ngĕ suì.

   B: Neĭ taaî kwòh k'uĭ keî-toh suì à?

8. A: Ngŏh kam-nîn sa-â-seî suì. K'uĭ saì kwòh ngŏh kaú suì. Neĭ chûng huì pin shuè à?

   B: Ch'uì-chóh kóh saam-kòh teî-fong chi-ngoî, ngŏh chûng seúng huì yat-kaan shue-kûk.

9. A: Ngaam là! Ts'íng neĭ shûn-pîn t'ūng ngŏh maaĭ yat-taâp hōng-hung sùn-chĭ sùn-fung, t'ūng yat tsun mâk-shuí.

   B: Tím-kaaì neĭ m̀-maaĭ p'ó-t'ung kè sùn chí t'ūng sùn-fung à?

LESSON 57

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. A: Yan-waî ngŏh iù tsik-haak ooî sùn peí p'āng-yaŭ, ngŏh seúng keì hōng-hung sùn.

B: Hó la! Neĭ chi m̄-chi-tò, kam-maăn ti p'ò-t'aū* keí tím-chung shaan moōn à?

A: Kam-maăn ti p'ò-t'aū* kaú-tím chì shaan moōn.

B: Chûng yaŭ keí noî à?

A: Chûng yaŭ taaî-pá shî-haû, chûng yaŭ shíng kòh-poòn chung-t'aū kòm noî.

LESSON 57

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Leǐ, it is very late now. Are you still going somewhere?

B: Ch'ān, I want to go to the fruit store to buy something.

2. A: May I trouble you to buy two cans of milk, a half dozen oranges, and a dozen and a half apples for me?

B: Surely. Is there anything else you wish to buy?

3. A: Where else will you go after the fruit store?

B: I want to go to a bakery and a confectionery after going to the fruit store.

4. A: In that case, may I trouble you again to buy me a cake and $1\frac{1}{2}$-lb box of candy?

B: Why are you buying the cake and candy?

5. A: The day after tomorrow will be Miss Cheung's birthday. I wish to give the cake and candy to her.

B: Did she phone you?

6. A: No, she didn't phone me. But I received a letter from her.

B: How old is she this year?

7. A: She is 25 years old.

B: How many years older are you than she?

8. A: I am 34 years old. She is 9 years younger than I. Where else will you go?

B: Besides those three places, I still wish to go to a book store.

9. A: Fine! If it is not too much trouble, please buy me a stack of airmail stationery and a bottle of ink.

B: Why don't you buy the ordinary stationery and envelopes?

LESSON 57

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

10. A: Because I must answer my friend's letter immediately. I want to send it airmail.

B: Fine. Do you know at what time the stores will be closed tonight?

A: They will not be closed until 9 o'clock tonight.

B: How much time do I have?

A: You still have plenty of time. There is still an hour and a half as yet.

LESSON 57

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ch'ān T'aaì-T'aaì*, neĭ kaan uk kè ch'uē-fōng* chan taaî, yaû yaŭ kòm toh ch'eung.

   C: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, neĭ kaan uk kè ch'uē-fōng* tîm à?

2. A: Ngŏh kè ch'uē-fōng* mŏ neĭ kè kòm toh ch'eung, mŏ neĭ kè kòm taaî.

   C: Ngŏh kè ch'uē-fōng* haî ch'eūng-fong kè; neĭ kè ne, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

3. A: Ngŏh kè ch'uē-fōng* haî seì-fong kè.

   C: Ngŏh kè fàn-fōng* hóh-ĭ fòng leūng-cheung ch'ōng; neĭ kè tîm à, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

4. A: Ngŏh kè fàn-fōng* chí hóh-ĭ chai yat-cheung ch'ōng; ngŏh kè fàn-fōng* peí neĭ kè fàn-fōng* chaàk hó toh, Ch'ān T'aaì-T'aaì*.

   C: Neĭ kè uk yaŭ mŏ k'ē-laū* à, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

5. A: Ngŏh kè uk sui-în saì-kwòh neĭ kè, taân-haî ngŏh kè uk yaŭ k'ē-laū*.

   C: Neĭ kè uk kè chau-waî to yaŭ k'ē-laū*, haî mà, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

6. A: M̄-haî, chí haî uk kè naām-pîn yaŭ k'ē-laū*. A, neĭ ni shuè chîng mà, Ch'ān T'aaì-T'aaì*?

   C: Ngŏh ni shuè hó chîng.

7. A: Neĭ ni shuè tsuì chîng kè shî-haû haî keí shî à?

   C: Ngŏh ni shuè tsuì chîng kè shî-haû haî chiu-t'aū-tsó t'ūng yê-maăn. Neĭ kóh shuè tsîng mà, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

8. A: M̄-tsîng, ngŏh kóh shuè ts'ō tak-chaî.

   C: Tîm-kaaî neĭ kóh shuè kòm ts'ō à, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

9. A: Yan-waî ngŏh shuè leî shĭ-k'ui hó k'ăn, shî-shî yaŭ hó toh yān t'ūng heì-ch'e loî-loî-huì-huì, shóh-ĭ hó ts'ō.

   C: Neĭ kóh shuè kè foô-kân yaŭ mŏ hôk-haaû à, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

LESSON 57

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

10. A: Yaŭ, ngŏh kóh shuẻ foŏ-kân yaŭ yat-kaan chung-hôk, t'ŭng yat-kòh hó taaî kè wân-tûng ch'eŭng.

    C: Uē-kwóh haî kỏm, neĭ kè saì-man-tsaí huì tûk-shue hó pîn-leî là, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

11. A: Haî, ngŏh kè saì-man-tsaí huì tûk-shue hó pîn-leî.

    C: Neĭ kóh shuẻ foô-kân yaŭ mŏ paàk-fòh kung-sz t'ŭng heì-uên* à, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

12. A: Ngŏh shuẻ kè foô-kân ch'uî-chóh yaŭ hôk-haaû chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ keî kaan paàk-fòh kung-sz t'ŭng heì-uên*.

    C: Kóm, neĭ-teî huì maaĭ yĕ t'ŭng t'aì heì to hó pîn-leî là, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

13. A: Haî à, Ch'ăn T'aaì-T'aaî*. Â, neĭ ni shuẻ leî shĭ-k'ui keî uĕn â?

    C: Ngŏh ni shuẻ leî shĭ-k'ui taaî-yeùk ts'at leî kòm sheûng-hâ*.

14. A: Kóm, neĭ-teî ch'ut yâp hó m̄-pîn-leî; haî mà, Ch'ăn T'aaì-T'aaî*?

    C: Haî là, ngŏh-teî mooĭ ts'z̀ huì kaai kè shĭ-haû to iù ts'ŏh ch'e, shóh-ĭ ch'ut yâp hó m̄-pîn-leî.

15. A: Ngŏh-teî k'ing-chóh kòm noî, tîm-kaaî Ch'ăn Kaaù-Shaû chûng meî faan laî kà, Ch'ăn T'aaì-T'aaî*?

    C: Ngŏh koó k'uĭ tsaû faan laî là, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù. K'uĭ faan laî chi-haû, ngŏh-teî yat-ts'aî ch'ut huì shîk maăn-faân la!

LESSON 57

WORD LIST

1. koòn	can, container
2. p'îng-kwóh	apple
3. péng p'ò*	bakery
4. t'ōng-kwóh p'ò*	confectionery, candy store
5. shaang-yât	birthday, date of birth
6. shau-tò	to have received
7. fung	AN for letter, telegram; to seal, close down
8. suì	age, year (in age)
9. shue kûk	book store
10. taâp	stack, bundle, pile (of books, papers)
11. hōng-hung sùn	airmail letter
12. sùn-chí	letter writing paper, stationery
13. mâk-shuí	ink
14. p'ó-t'ung sùn	ordinary mail, ordinary letter
15. ooî sùn	to answer one's letter, reply
16. p'ò-t'aū*, p'ò*, p'ò	store, shop, firm
17. shaan	to shut, close, turn off (light)
18. shaan moōn	to close the door, shut the door, close up

LESSON 57

READING MATERIAL

1156

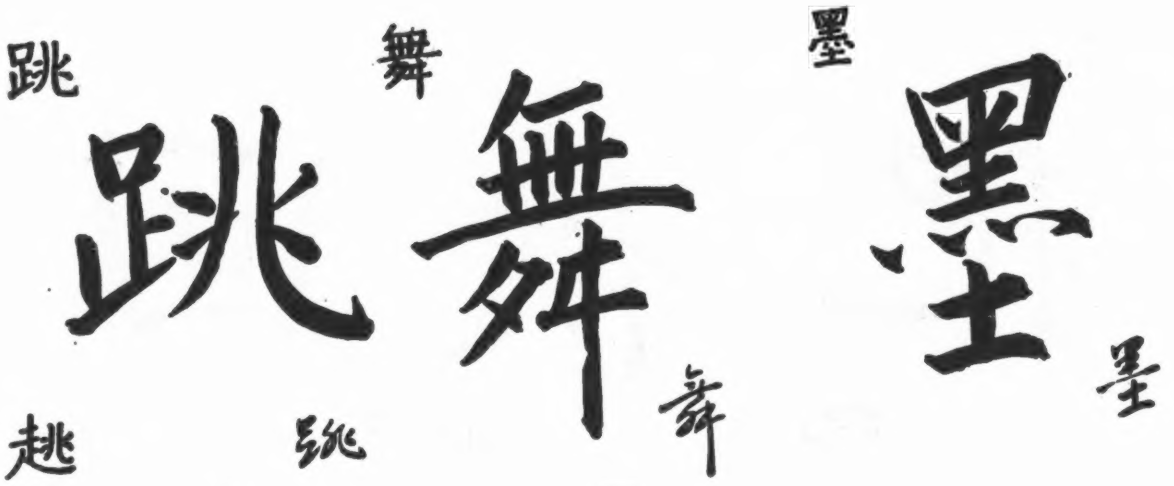
跳	t'iù:	to leap; to jump; to bounce; to dance.
跳起	t'iù heí:	to jump up.
跳舞	t'iù-mǒ:	to dance.

702

舞	mǒ:	dance; to make posture to music; play.
跳舞	t'iù mǒ:	to dance; dancing.
跳舞會	t'iù-mǒ-ooî:	a dancing ball.

669

墨	mâk:	ink; black.
墨水	mâk-shuí:	foreign ink.
墨汁	mâk-chap:	native liquid ink.
墨水筆	mâk-shuí-pai:	fountain pen.
墨魚	mâk-uē:	cuttle fish.

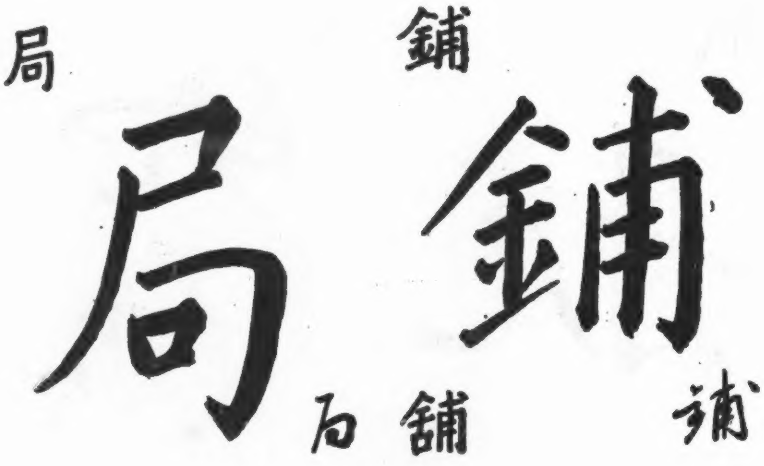


536

局	kûk:	shop; establishment; game.
郵政局	yaū-chìng-kûk:	a post office.
分局	fan kûk:	a branch office.
時局	shī-kûk:	the present situation.
結局	kìt-kûk:	the end; the conclusion.

883

鋪	p'o:	to spread out; to arrange.
鋪	p'ò:	a shop; a store; to spread out.
鋪頭	p'ò t'aû:	a shop; a store.
鋪面	p'ò-mîn:	shop front; shop floor.



LESSON 57

READING MATERIAL

801

把	pá:	to grasp; a sheaf; classifier.
把守	pá-shaú:	to guard; to hold fast.
把握	pá-ak:	security; safeguard.

955

收	shau:	to receive; to gather; to bring to a close to harvest; to store away.
收到	shau tò:	to receive.
收工	shau kung	to stop work.
收效	shau haaû:	to have results.

791

回	ooī:	to turn about; back.
回覆	ooī-fuk:	to answer.
回國	ooī kwòk:	to return to one's country.
回想	ooī seúng:	to recall; to remember(thing).

把 收 回 廻

把 收 囬 回

把 收 收 回 廻 四

309

航	hōng:	to navigate sail
航海	hōng-hoí:	sailing navigation
航空	hōng-hung:	aviation
航業	hōng îp:	shipping business

322

空	hung:	empty; void vain
空中	hung-chung:	the space; in the air
空虛	hung-hui:	empty
空閑	hung-haān:	at leisure; unoccupied

航 空

航 空

航 空

LESSON 57

READING MATERIAL

陳英同黃小姐買chóh好多野,行街好唔利便.陳英想去第二處再買啲野.但係黃小姐想先ning啲野翻去酒店至再做其他嘅事;去跳舞亦好,睇戲亦好,做乜野事黃小姐都唔緊要.陳英想吓而家重有大把時候,先ning啲野翻去酒店都好嘅.

佢地翻到酒店嘅時候,陳英收到一封信;呢封信係佢父親寄黎嘅.陳英有啲心急,有啲怕,唔知係乜野事呢!最後,佢開-chóh封信睇吓;原來佢嘅父親叫佢最好喺呢幾日之內翻去屋-k'eí,因為大後日係陳英母親嘅生日.嗰封信話,陳英翻唔翻去都要即刻回信.

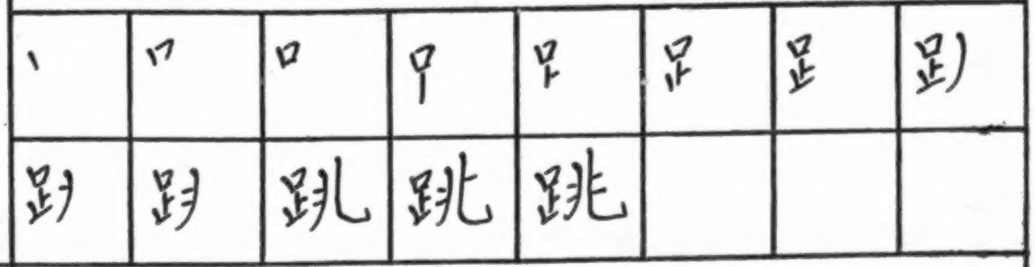
關於呢個翻唔翻去嘅問題,陳英問黃小姐有冇意見.黃小姐話,如果係敢,就應該早啲翻去啦.陳英要即刻寄封航空信peí佢嘅父親,但係佢冇信紙,冇信封,冇墨水.而家佢要去書局買啦,唔知啲舖頭shaan-chóh門未呢?

LESSON 57

WRITING MATERIAL

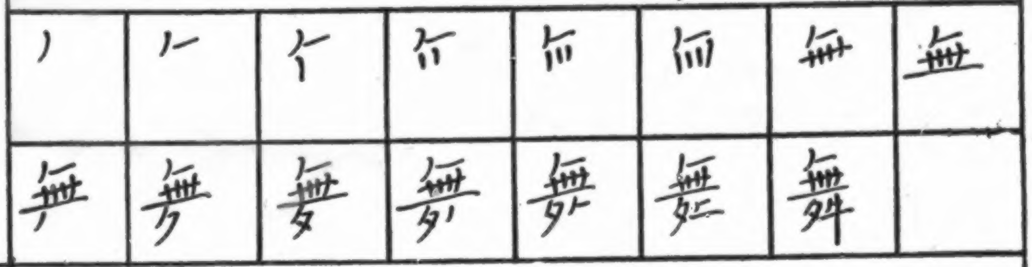
跳

Character Number 1156 **Radical Number** 157
Stroke Number 13 ⻊，足



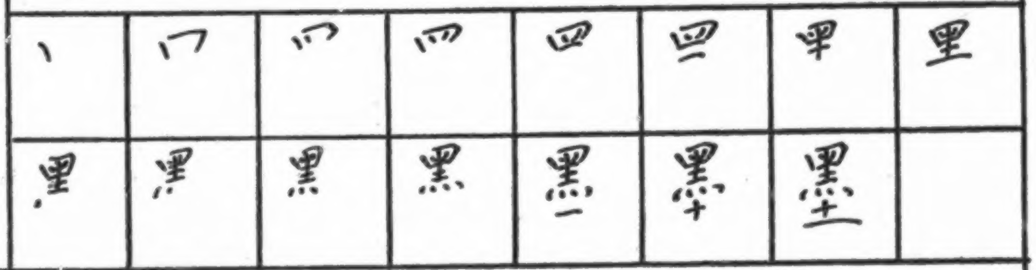
舞

Character Number 702 **Radical Number** 136
Stroke Number 15 舛



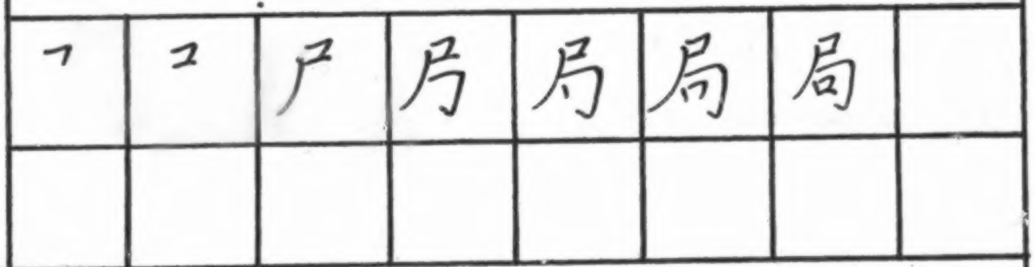
墨

Character Number 669 **Radical Number** 32
Stroke Number 15 土



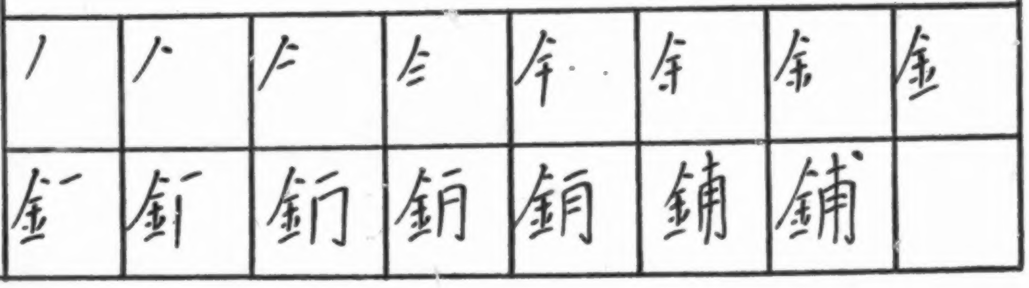
局

Character Number 536 **Radical Number** 44
Stroke Number 7 尸



鋪

Character Number 883 **Radical Number** 167
Stroke Number 15 釒，金



LESSON 58

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Genitive

Kwóng-Tung

Kwóng-Tung Wâ*

Ngŏh hôk Kwóng-Tung Wâ*.

Chung-Mān

Chung-Mān tsẑ

Ngŏh sé   ung-Mān tsẑ.

Chung-Mān

Chung-Mān shue

Ngŏh tûk Chung-Mān shue.

K'uĭ tûk Ying-Mān shue.

tîn-yíng

Chung-Kwòk

Chung-Kwòk tîn-yíng

Ngŏh huì t'aí Chung-Kwòk tîn-yíng.

Neĭ huì t'ai mi-yĕ tîn-yíng à?

Ngŏh huì t'aí Chung-Kwòk tîn-yíng.

K'uĭ huì t'aí Meĭ-Kwòk tîn-yíng.

Yât-Poón

yam-ngôk

Yât-Poón yam-ngôk

K'uĭ chung-ì t'eng Yât-Poón yam-ngôk.

tîn-wâ*

kung-sz

tîn-wâ* kung-sz

LESSON 58

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Ngŏh huì tîn-wâ* kung-sz.

K'uĭ huì paàk-fòh kung-sz maaĭ yĕ.

Hung-Kwan

kei-teî

Hung-Kwan kei-teî

Meĭ-Kwòk Hung-Kwan kei-teî

Meĭ-Kwòk haî Uĕn-Tung yaŭ hó toh Hung-Kwan kei-teî.

Meĭ-Kwòk haí Uĕn-Tung yaŭ mŏ Hung-Kwan kei-teî à?

Meĭ-Kwòk haî Uĕn-Tung yaŭ hó toh Hung-Kwan kei-teî.

Lûk-Kwan

kaaù-koon

Lûk-Kwan kaaù-koon

K'uĭ haî yat-kòh Lûk-Kwan kaaù-koon.

K'uĭ haî yat-kòh Lûk-Kwan kaaù-koon, yik-waâk Hung-Kwan kaaù-koon à?

K'uĭ haî yat-kòh Lûk-Kwan kaaù-koon.

Lûk-Kwan

sheûng-waì

Lûk-Kwan sheûng-waì

Ngŏh haî yat-kòh Lûk-Kwan sheûng-waì.

wân-tûng

wân-tûng ooî*

wân-tûng uēn

wân-tûng ch'eūng

Hó toh wân-tûng uēn ts'aam-ka wân-tûng ooî*

Ni kòh wân-tûng ch'eūng yaŭ hó toh wân-tûng uēn.

LESSON 58

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Ch'ing-Nîn-Ooî*

Naām Ts'ing-Nîn-Ooî*

Nuĭ Ts'ing-Nîn-Ooî*.

Kwóng-Chau

ts'aan-shat

Kwóng-Chau ts'aan-shat

Kwóng-Chau ts'aan-shat hó taaî.

taaî-hôk

kaaù-shaû

taaî-hôk kaaù-shaû

K'uĭ tsô-kwòh taaî-hôk kaaù-shaû.

K'uĭ tsô-kwòh chung-hôk haaû-cheúng.

pa-sẑ*

pa-sẑ* chaâm

K'uĭ huì pa-sẑ* chaâm taàp pa-sẑ*.

tîn-ch'e chaâm

fóh-ch'e chaâm

fei-kei ch'eūng

fei-kei

p'iù

fei-kei p'iù

pa-sẑ*p'iù

fóh-ch'e p'iù

tîn-yîng p'iù

haaú-shì

t'aĭ-mûk

LESSON 58

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

haaú-shì t'aī-mûk

Ni ts'z̀ kè haaú-shì t'aī-mûk hó naān.

p'ò*

yûk

yûk p'ò*

ka-sz p'ò*

fei-faàt p'ò*

tsaâp-fòh p'ò*

yeûk

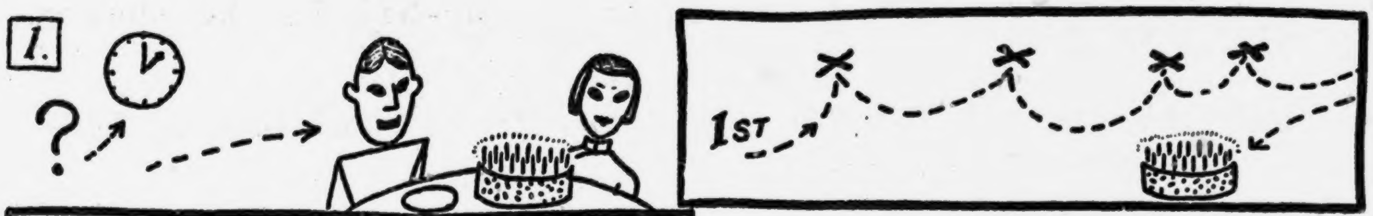
yeûk-fōng

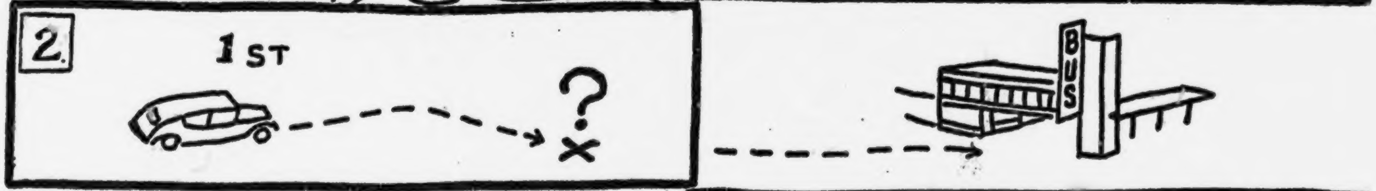
K'uī huì yeûk-fōng maaī yeûk.

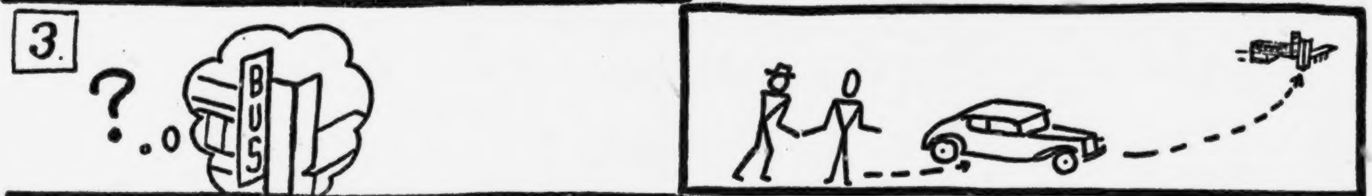
Partitive Noun, Genitive

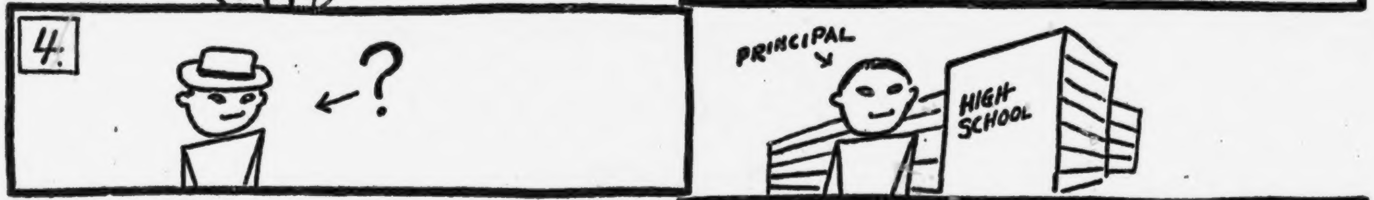
yat-oón faân	faân-oón
yat-pooi ch'ā	ch'ā-pooi
yat-tîp shùng	sùng-tîp*
yat-hôp péng	péng-hôp*
yat-tsun tsaú	tsaú-tsun
yat-oō ch'ā	ch'ā-oō*
yat-aang īm	īm-aang
yat-aang t'ōng	t'ōng-aang

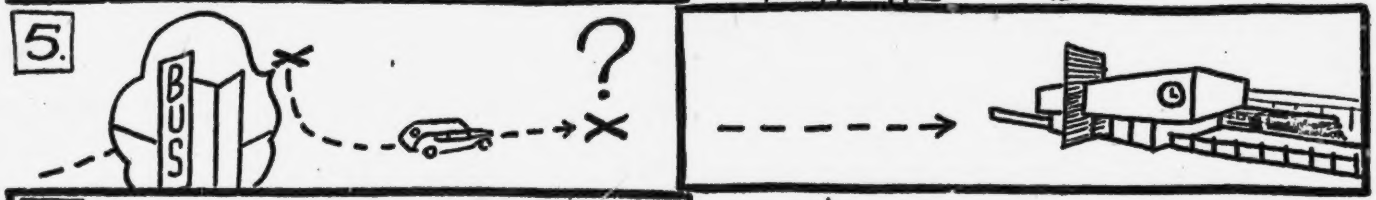
LESSON 58

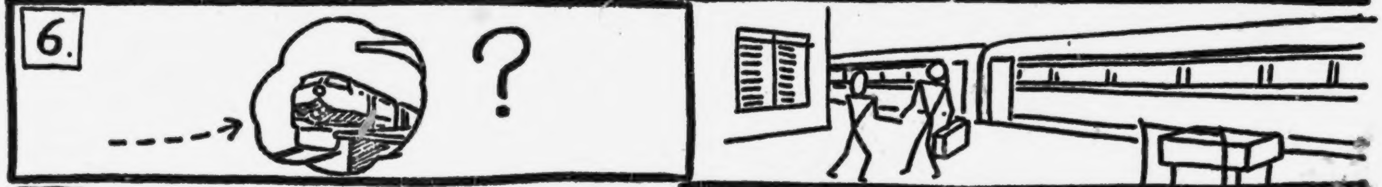

1.
1ST

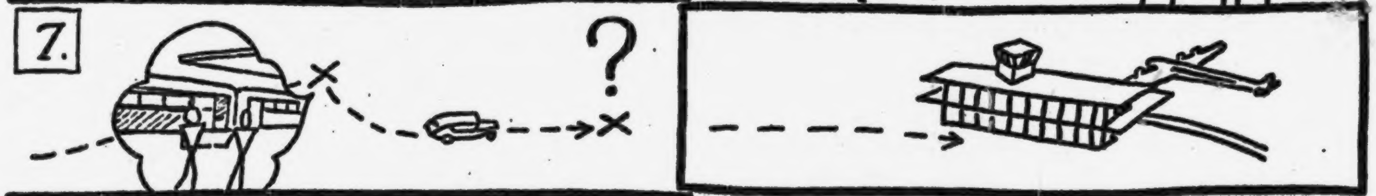

2.
1 ST
BUS

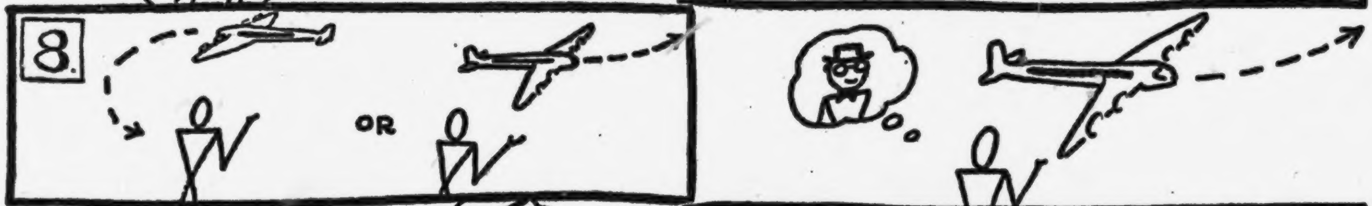

3.
BUS

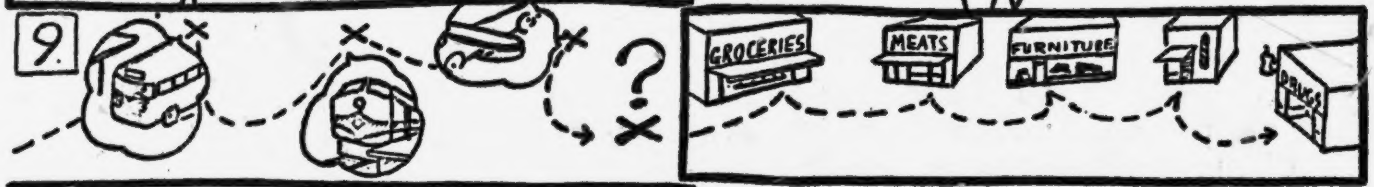

4.
PRINCIPAL
HIGH SCHOOL

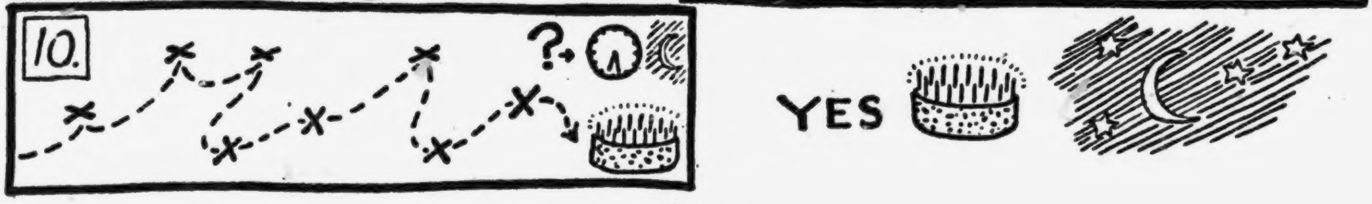

5.
BUS


6.


7.


8.
OR


9.
GROCERIES
MEATS
FURNITURE
DRUGS


10.
YES

LESSON 58

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Neĭ seúng keí shî huì ts'aam-ka Cheung-Siú-Tsé kè shaang-yât ooî* à?

   B: Ngŏh iù sin huì keí kòh teî-fong, īn-haû huì Cheung Siú-Tsé kè shaang-yât-ooî*.

2. A: Neĭ iù sin huì pin shuè à?

   B: Ngŏh iù sin huì pa-sẑ* chaâm.

3. A: Neĭ huì pa-sẑ* chaâm tsô mi-yĕ à?

   B: Ngŏh iù sùng ngŏh kè kaû t'ūng-sẑ huì taàp pa-sẑ*.

4. A: Neĭ kè kaû t'ūng-sẑ ī-ka tsô-kán mi-yĕ à?

   B: K'uĭ ī-ka haî yat-kòh chung-hôk haaû-cheúng.

5. A: Huì-chóh pa-sẑ* ch'e-chaâm, neĭ tsoì huì pin shuè à?

   B: Huì-chóh pa-sẑ* ch'e-chaâm chi-haû, ngŏh yaû huì fóh-ch'e chaâm.

6. A: Neĭ huì fóh-ch'e chaâm tsô mi-yĕ à?

   B: Ngŏh huì fóh-ch'e chaâm tsìp ch'e, tsìp ngŏh kè p'āng-yaū.

7. A: Huì-chóh fóh-ch'e chaâm tsìp ch'e chi-haû, neĭ yaû huì pin shuè à?

   B: Huì-chóh fóh-ch'e chaâm tsìp ch'e chi-haû, ngŏh iù huì fei-kei ch'eūng.

8. A: Neĭ huì fei-kei ch'eūng tsìp fei-kei, yik-waâk sùng fei-kei à?

   B: Ngŏh huì fei-kei ch'eūng sùng fei-kei, sùng ngŏh kè p'āng-yaŭ taàp fei-kei.

9. A: Ch'uī-chóh ni ti teî-fong chi-ngoî, neĭ chûng huì pin shuè à?

   B: Ch'uī-chóh ni ti teî-fong chi-ngoî, ngŏh chûng iù huì tsaâp-fòh p'ỏ*, yûk p'ỏ*, ka-sz p'ỏ,* fei-faàt p'ỏ*, t'ūng yeûk-fōng.

LESSON 58

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

10. **A:** **Neĭ iù huì kòm toh teî-fong, neĭ chûng yaŭ mŏ shî-haû huì Cheung Siú-Tsé kè shaang-yât ooî* à?**

B: **Yaŭ kè, m̂-shaî taam-sam.**

A: **Ngŏh koó, neĭ huì-uēn ni ti teî-fong chi-haû, ch'a-m̂-toh t'în-haak là!**

B: **Haî là, t'în-haak to m̂-kán-iù.**

LESSON 58

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: When will you go to Miss Cheung's birthday party?

   B: I have to go to a few places first.

2. A: Where do you have to go?

   B: I have to go to the bus depot.

3. A: Why do you have to go to the bus depot?

   B: I have to take my colleague there. He is taking the bus.

4. A: What does your colleague do?

   B: He is a high school principal.

5. A: After having been to the bus depot, where will you go?

   B: After that, I will go to the rail station.

6. A: What are you going to do there?

   B: I have to meet a friend of mine.

7. A: After that, where will you go next?

   B: I'll have to go to the airport.

8. A: Are you going to the airport to meet a friend or to see someone off?

   B: I'm going to the airport to see a friend off.

9. A: Besides these places, where else do you have to go?

   B: I have to go to a grocery store, meat market, furniture store, barber shop, and a drug store.

10. A: Since you have to go to so many places, do you have time to go to Miss Cheung's birthday party?

    B: Yes, I do. Please do not worry.

    A: I guess after you have been to all these places, it will be night time.

    B: I suppose so. But it doesn't matter.

LESSON 58

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Ch'ān T'aaì-T'aaì*, neĭ t'èng-hă, hó-ts'ž yaŭ yān tá moōn.

C: Haî à, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù; m̄-koi neĭ táng yat-chân, táng ngŏh huì hoi moōn.

2. A: Ôh, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû, neĭ faan laî là; ngŏh t'ūng neĭ kè T'aaì-T'aaì* haî neĭ ni shuè táng-chóh hó noî là!

B: Tuì-m̄-chuê, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù; ngŏh ngaam-ngaam huì-chóh fei faàt.

3. A: Kóh kaan fei-faàt p'ò* kè shaang-ì yat-tîng hó hó là; haî mà, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû?

B: Haî, haî kóh shuè táng fei faàt kè yān hó toh.

4. A: M̄-kwaaì-tak neĭ kòm noî chî faan laî la, Ch'ān Kaaù Shaû; pat-kwòh, m̄-kán-iù.

B: Seúng yám ti mi-yĕ tsaú à, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

5 A: Ngŏh ngaam-ngaam yám-chóh leŭng-pooi wai-sẑ-keî*; kaù lả, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû.

B: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, t'eng-mān wâ, neĭ kè tsaú-leûng hó hó; tsoì yám pooi la!

6. A: Hó la, m̄-koi neĭ tsoì peí yat-pooi wai-sẑ-keî* ngŏh la!

B: Yám-uēn ni pooi, ngŏh-teî hóh-ĭ yat-ts'aî ch'ut huì shîk faân là. Ngŏh koó, neĭ yat-tîng hó t'ō-ngôh lả, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

7. A: Ngŏh chûng paaú-paaú-teî*. À, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû; neĭ kè shaam shap-chóh là. Uēn-loî lôk uĕ ngŏh to m̄-chi-tò.

B: M̄-kán-iù, táng yat-chân tsaû ooĭ hó t'in kà là!

8. A: Hó naān kóng, t'in-heì shî-shĭ m̄-t'ūng kè, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû.

B: Neĭ kóng-tak mŏ ts'òh. Kam-chiu-tsó t'in-yam, taaî-mô; chung-nğ kè shî-haû hó-t'in; î-ka lôk uĕ.

9. A: T'aū-sin hó hó-t'in, hó kwong; î-ka t'in-yam, t'in kòm òm, yat-chân-kaan waâk-ché lôk taaî uĕ lả, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû.

LESSON 58

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

B: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, neĭ kóng-tak ngaam; ngŏh-teî pat-uē faaì ti ch'ut huì là!

10. A: Ī-ka mŏ uĕ, ngŏh-teî faaì ti ch'ut moōn-haú la!

B: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, neĭ huì-kwòh hó toh teî-fong, chuè-fōng kè teî-fong shî-shî m̄-t'ūng. Mooĭ kòh teî-fong kè t'in-heì yîk-to m̄-t'ūng, haî mà?

11. A: Haî, mooĭ kòh teî-fong kè t'in-heì to m̄-t'ūng.

B: Shóh-ĭ neĭ-teî shî-shî iù chún-peî faan-fung lôk-uĕ là, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

12. A: Haî là, ngŏh-teî yat-tîng iù hó siú-sam; uē-kwóh m̄-haî, tsaû hó yūng-î tak-tó pêng.

B: M̄-chí neĭ-teî kwan-yān iù siú-sam, ngŏh-teî yîk-to iù siú-sam.

13. A: Haî, taaî-ka to haî yat-yeûng, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû.

B: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, neĭ seúng huì pin kaan ts'aan-shat shîk maăn-faân à?

14. A: Kwaan-ue ni kòh mân-t'aî, táng neĭ-teî lĕung-waî* k'uèt-tîng la, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû.

B: Ngŏh-teî huì T'ōng-Yān Faû kè Kwóng-Chau Ts'aan-Shat la; neĭ yaŭ mŏ ì-kìn à, Fong-Laān?

15. A: Hó à, Kwóng-Chau Ts'aan-Shat m̄-chí ti yĕ hó hó-shîk, ī-ch'é ti waî* yaû hó ts'ŏh.

B: Neĭ uê-peî hó meî à, Fong-Laān?

C: Ngŏh uê-peî hó là! Ngŏh-teî ī-ka huì la!

LESSON 58

WORD LIST

1.	ooî*	party, association
2.	shaang-yât ooî*	birthday party
3.	în-haû	then, afterwards, before (not until then)
4.	pa-sẑ* chaâm	bus depot, bus stop, bus station
5.	chung-hôk haaû-cheúng	high school principal
6.	fóh-ch'e chaâm	railway station, train station
7.	tsìp	to meet (means of transportation), receive, welcome, catch (ball, etc)
8.	taàp	to take (means of transportation), ride (the train, bus, airplane, etc)
9.	tsaâp-fòh	sundries, sundry goods, groceries
10.	tsaâp-fòh p'ò*	grocery store
11.	yûk p'ò*	meat market, butcher shop
12.	ka-sz p'ò*	furniture store
13.	fei-faàt p'ò*	barber shop
14.	yeûk	drug, medicine
15.	yeûk-fōng	drug store, pharmacy

LESSON 58

READING MATERIAL

1472

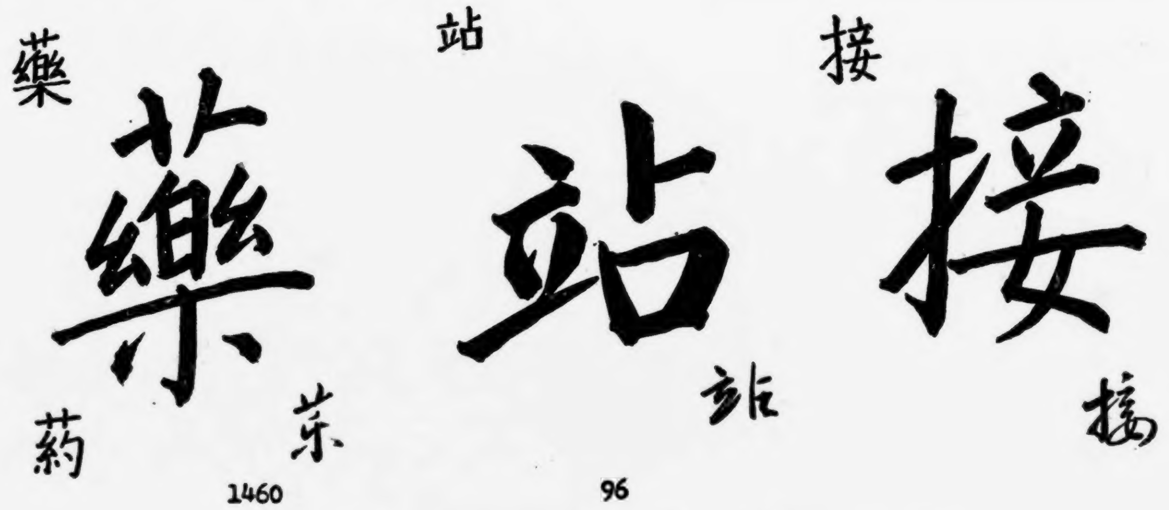
藥	yeûk: drug.
藥水	yeûk-shuí: liquid medicine.
藥房	yeûk-fōng: modern drug store.

15

站	chaâm: station, to stand.
車站	ch'e-chaâm: bus-station or railway station.
站長	chaâm-cheúng: station master.

1263

接	tsìp: to receive; successive; to connect; to splice.
接手	tsip shaú: to take over a post.
接濟	tsip tsaì: to support; to help.
接吻	tsìp-măn: to kiss.
直接	chî -tsìp: direct; at first hand.

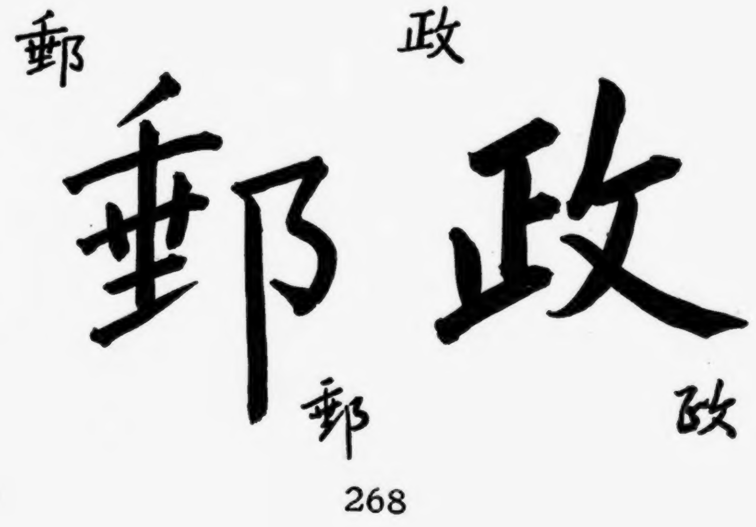


1460

郵	yaū: post office; lodge.
郵政	yaū-chìng: postal service.
郵票	yaū-p'iù: postage stamp.
郵差	yaū-ch'aai: postman.

96

政	chìng: to rule; administration; law
政府	chìng-foó: the government
政治	chìng-chî: politics
政策	chìng-ch'aàk: policy



LESSON 58

READING MATERIAL

1083

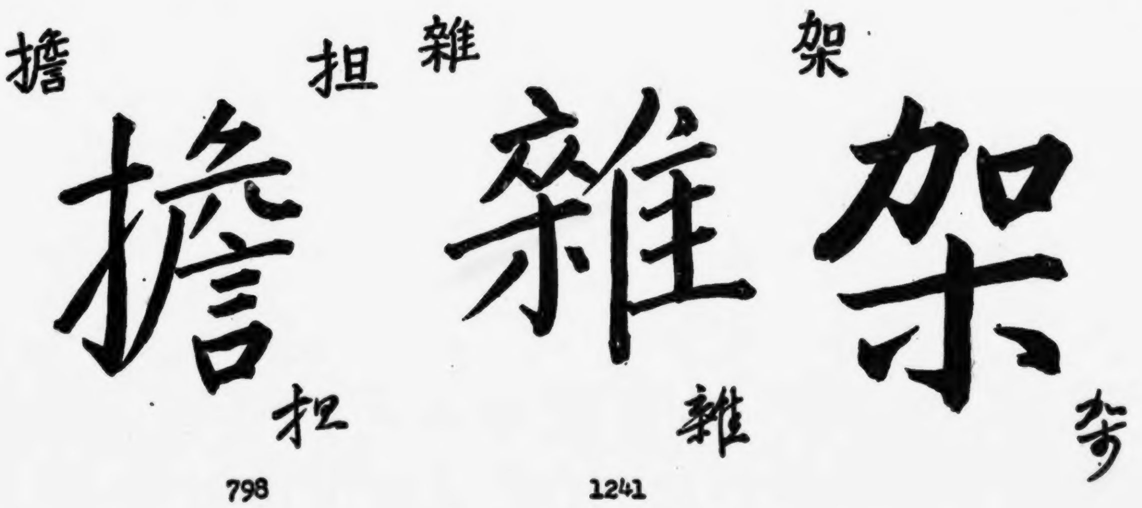
擔	taam: to carry on a pole.
擔水	taam shuí to carry water
擔任	taam-yâm: to undertake.
擔保	taam-pò: to go security for; to guarantee.
擔心	taam-sam: to be anxious.

1203

雜	tsaap: mixed; confused; miscellaneous.
雜貨	tsaâp fòh. miscellaneous goods.
雜費	tsaâp fai: sundry expenses
複雜	fuk-tsaâp complicated; complex.

374

架	kà: a frame; staging
十字架	shâp-tsẑ-kà: the Cross
架設	kà-ch'ìt: to set up
書架	shue-kà: book case

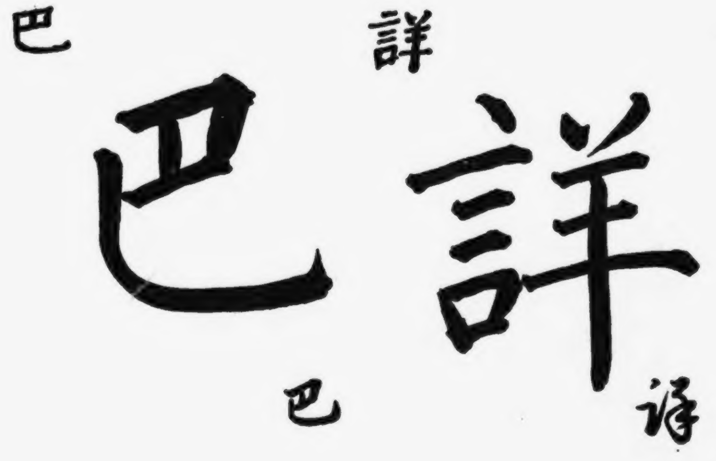


798

巴	pa: a large snake; an ancient state.
巴結	pa-kìt: to flatter; toady.
巴黎	pa-laī: Paris.

1241

詳	ts'eūng: to discuss; to judge; minutely; detailed.
詳細	ts'eūng-saì: minutely in detail.
詳悉	ts'eūng sik: clearly understand; to know in detail.



LESSON 58

READING MATERIAL

陳英要即刻去買啲野,一陣就翻黎啦.佢担心書局會shaan-門,所以要快啲出去.但係黃小姐要同陳英一齊去;黃小姐想順便去雜貨鋪買啲野,同去藥房買啲藥.佢叫陳英唔好kòm心急;T'ōng人埠嘅鋪頭好夜至shaan-門架,放心啦!

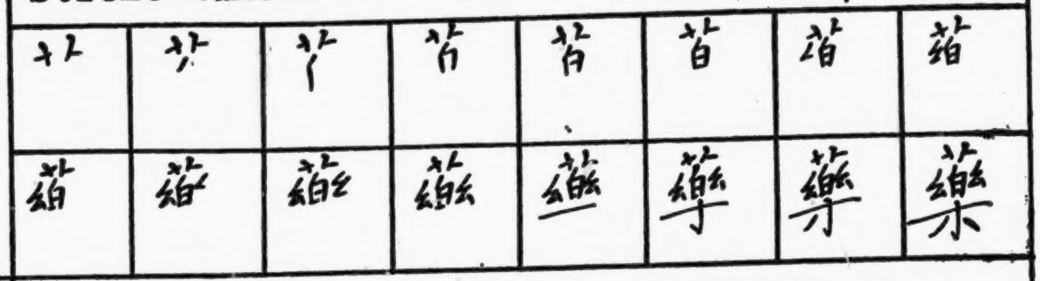
陳英同黃小姐去街啦.陳英去書局買chóh信封信紙之後,就翻去酒店寫信講peí佢嘅父親知道嗰封信話,佢同黃小姐決定喺後日shaí-車翻去;但係喺上午或者下午到屋-k'ei,就話唔定啦.佢請佢嘅父母唔好去巴士站接車.佢話,重有好多説話想講,但係冇幾耐就可以見倒佢地,不如等佢翻去,然後再詳細啲講啦!

陳英寫好封信;佢唔等黃小姐翻黎酒店,就即刻去郵政局寄信啦.佢行翻黎酒店嘅時候,喺街處佢睇見黃小姐ning-緊兩大包野,慢慢地*敢行.

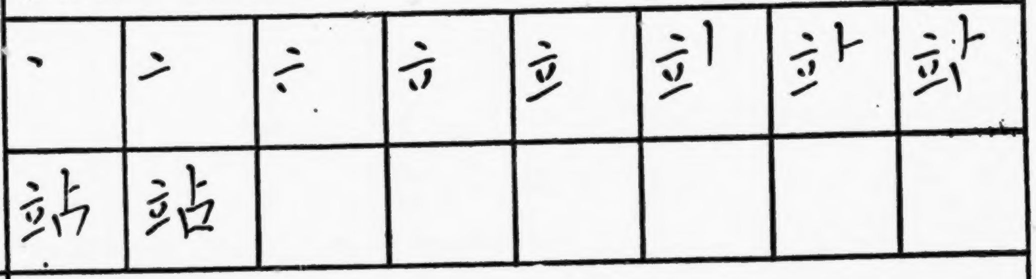
LESSON 58

WRITING MATERIAL

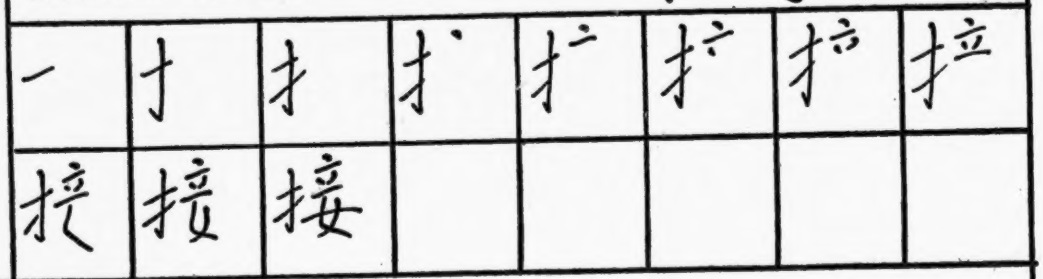
藥	Character Number 1472 Stroke Number 19	Radical Number 140 艹，艸



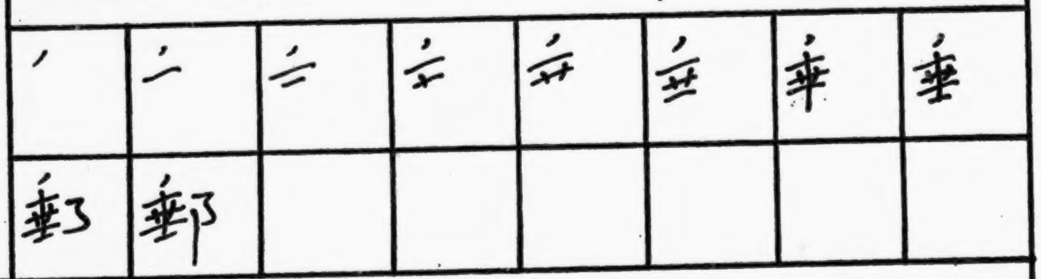
站	Character Number 15 Stroke Number 10	Radical Number 117 立



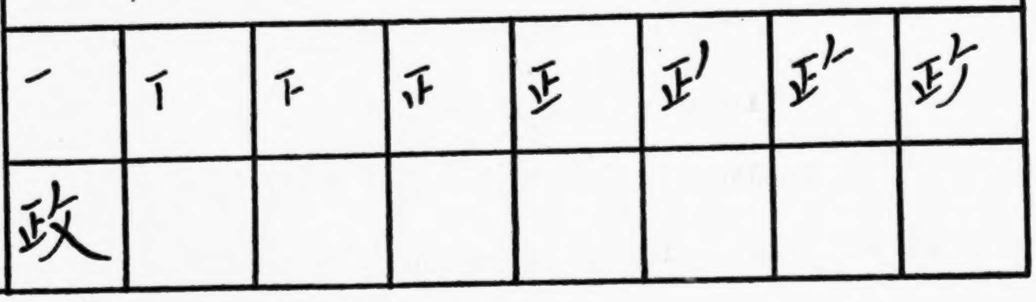
接	Character Number 1263 Stroke Number 11	Radical Number 64 扌，手



郵	Character Number 1460 Stroke Number 10	Radical Number 163 阝，邑



政	Character Number 96 Stroke Number 9	Radical Number 66 攵，攴



LESSON 59

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

kè

1. ngŏh

ngŏh kè

ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì*

Ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* haî Kwóng-Tung yān.

Neĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* haî pin shuè yān à?

Ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* haî Kwóng-Tung yān.

k'uĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì*

k'uĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* kè mŏ-ts'an

K'uĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* kè mŏ-ts'an kè saì-ló.

K'uĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* kè mŏ-ts'an kè saì-ló haî ngŏh kè lŏ p'aāng-yaŭ.

K'uĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* kè mŏ-ts'an kè saì-ló haî m̄-haî neĭ kè p'aāng-yaŭ à?

K'uĭ kè t'aaì-t'aaì* kè mŏ-ts'an kè saì-ló haî ngŏh kè p'aāng-yaŭ.

2. ni shuè

ni shuè kè

Ni shuè kè hôk-shaang haî Meĭ-Kwòk yān.

Ni shuè ti hôk-shaang haî Meĭ-Kwòk yān.

Kóh shuè kè t'in-heì keí hó.

Kóh shuè kè t'in-heì hó m̄-hó à?

Kóh shuè kè t'in-heì m̄-haî keí hó.

Kóh shuè ti t'in-heì m̄-haî keí hó.

Kóh shuè kè naām-pîn kè t'in-heì hó m̄-hó.

Kóh shuè kè naām-pîn kè t'in-heì hó m̄-hó à?

LESSON 59

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Kóh shuè kè naām-pîn kè t'in-hei hó m̄-hó.

Chung-Kwòk kè naām-pîn kè shîng-shĭ

Chung-Kwòk kè naām-pîn kè shîng-shĭ kè yān

Chung-Kwòk kè naām-pîn kè shîng-shĭ kè yān toh-shò kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ*.

Chung-Kwòk kè naām-pîn kè shîng-shĭ kè yān toh-shò kóng mi-yĕ wâ* a?

Chung-Kwòk kè naām-pîn kè shîng-shĭ kè yān toh-shò kóng Kwóng-Tung wâ*.

3.

ngŏh kè

ngŏh kè uk

ngŏh kè uk kè luĭ-pîn

ngŏh kè uk kè luĭ-pîn kè ka-sz

Ngŏh kè uk kè luĭ-pîn kè ka-sz hó san.

Neĭ kè uk kè luĭ-pîn kè ka-sz san m̄-san à?

Ngŏh kè uk kè luĭ-pîn kè ka-sz hó kaû.

K'uĭ kè uk kè ngoî-pîn kè fa-uēn* kè fa hó lèng.

4.

ni kaan uk

ni kaan uk kè ts'în-pîn

ni kaan uk kè ts'în-pîn kè tsóh-pîn

Ni kaan uk kè ts'în-pîn kè tsóh-pîn yaŭ hó toh yān.

kóh kaan uk

LESSON 59

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

kóh kaan uk kè haû-pîn

kóh kaan uk kè haû-pîn kè yaû-shaú-pîn

Kóh kaan uk kè haû-pîn kè yaû-shaú-pîn yaŭ yat-faaì ts'ó-teî.

chung-kaan

Ni kaan paan-fōng* t'ūng kóh kaan paan-fōng* kè chung-kaan yaŭ
yat-t'iū laăng-hông*.

5.

sheûng kòh laĭ-paaì

sheûng kòh laĭ-paaì kam-yât

sheûng kòh laĭ-paaì kè kam-yât

sheûng kòh laĭ-paaì kè kam-yât kè sheûng-nğ

Sheûng kòh laĭ-paaì kè kam-yât kè sheûng-nğ hó hó-t'in.

Sheûng kòh laĭ-paaì kè kam-yât sheûng-nğ hó hó-t'in.

6.

....kè shî-haû

Ngŏh tsôk-yât huì kaai.

ngŏh tsôk-yât huì kaai kè shî-haû

Ngŏh tsôk-yât huì kaai kè shî-haû, ngŏh kìn-tó k'uĭ.

Ngŏh tsôk-yât kìn-tó k'uĭ.

ngŏh tsôk-yât kìn-tó k'uĭ kè shî-haû

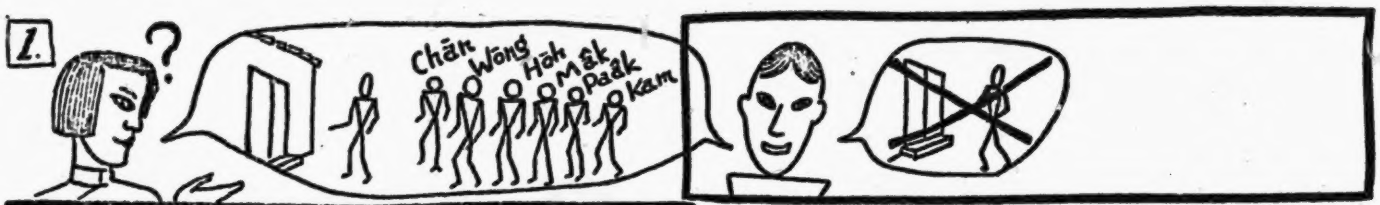
Ngŏh tsôk-yât kìn-tó k'uĭ kè shî-haû, ngŏh maaĭ-kán yĕ.

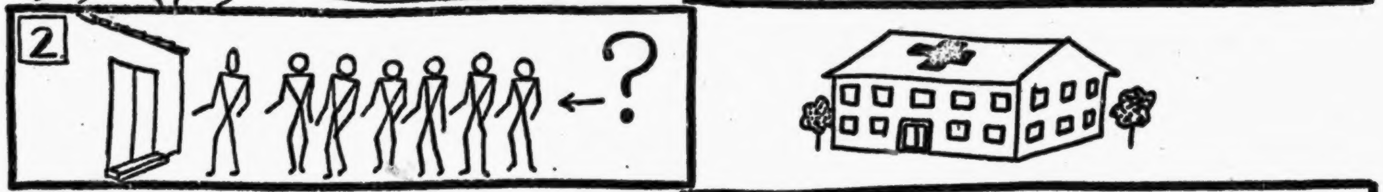
Ngŏh maaĭ-kán yĕ.

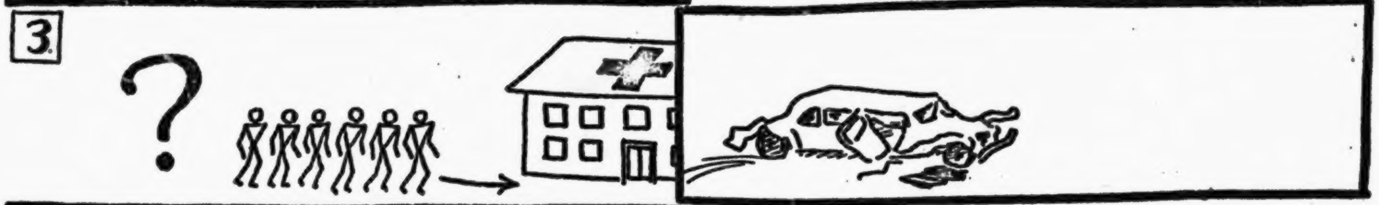
ngŏh maaĭ-kán yĕ kè shî-haû

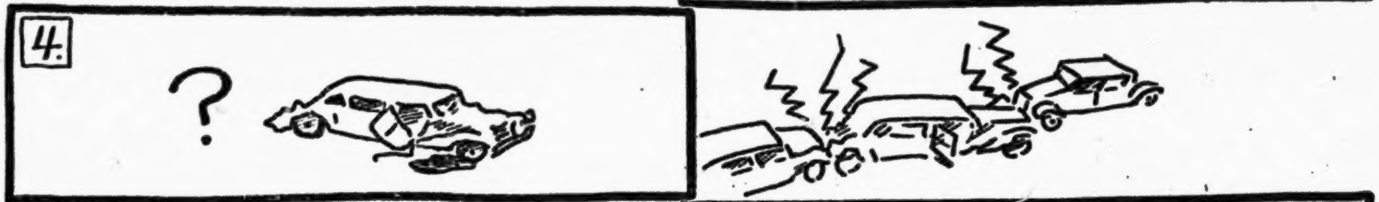
Ngŏh tsôk-yât maaĭ-kán yĕ kè shî-haû, ngŏh kìn-tó k'uĭ.

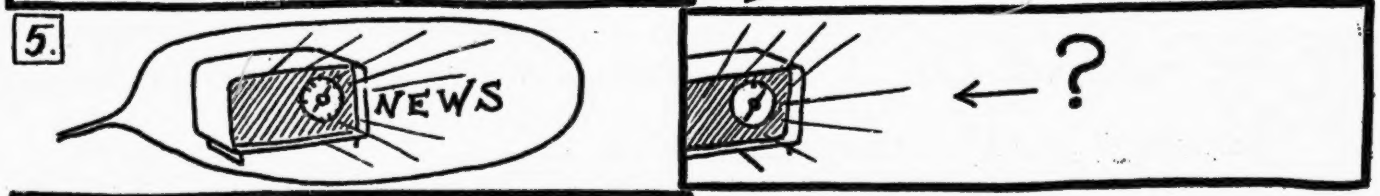
LESSON 59

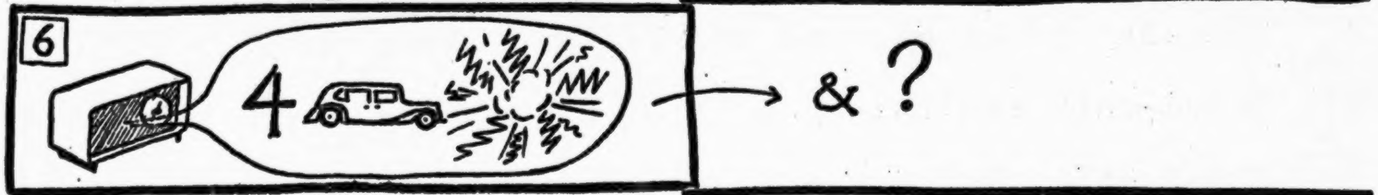

1.
?
Chăn
Wōng
Hōh
Măk
Paăk
Kam

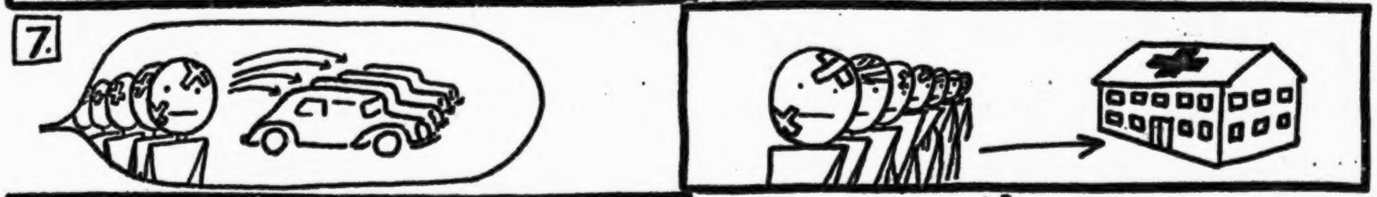


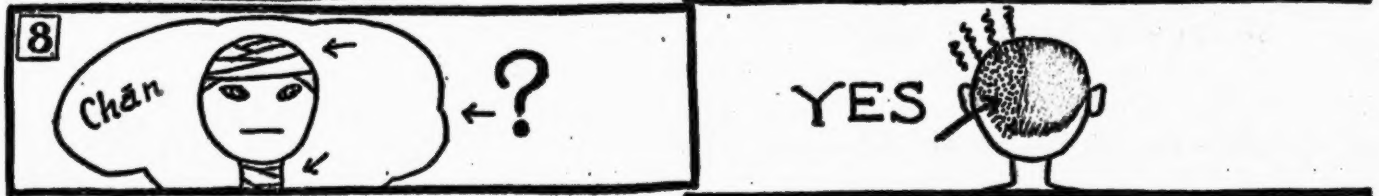


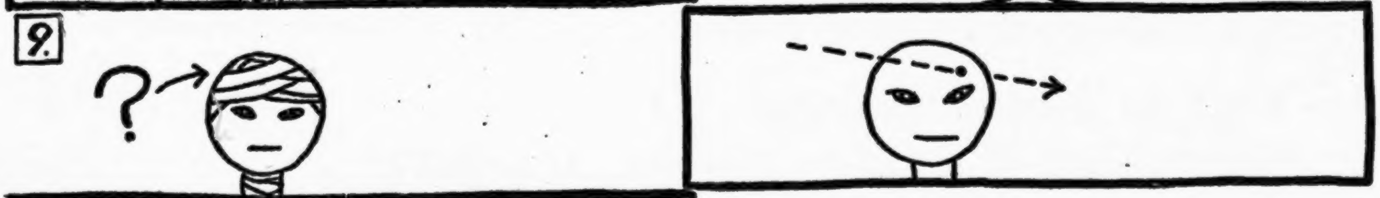


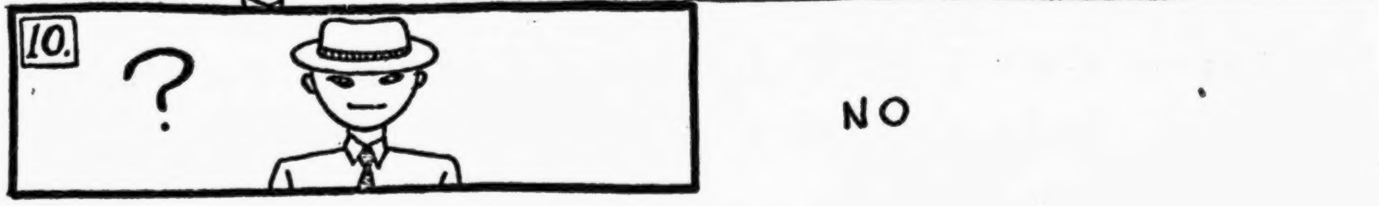












LESSON 59

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Leĭ-Sin-Shaang, neĭ tuì ngŏh kóng-kwòh, wâ, neĭ t'ūng Ch'ān Sin-Shaang, Wōng Sin-Shaang, Hōh Sin-Shaang, Mâk Sin-Shaang, Paâk Sin-Shaang t'ūng Kam Sin-Shaang laî ngŏh shuè; tîm-kaaî chí-haî neĭ tsẑ-keî yat-kòh yān laî à?

   B: Cheung Siú-Tsé, poón-loî ngŏh-teî haî yat-ts'aî laî kè.

2. A: Neĭ wâ, poón-loî neĭ-teî yat-ts'aî laî; î-ka k'uĭ-teî haí pin shuè à?

   B: K'uĭ-teî î-ka haî i-uên* shuè.

3. A: Tîm-kaaî k'uĭ-teî haî i-uên* shuè à?

   B: Yan-waî k'uĭ-teî kè heì-ch'e shat-sẑ.

4. A: K'uĭ-teî kè heì-ch'e tîm-yeûng* shat-sẑ à?

   B: K'uĭ-teî kè heì-ch'e t'ūng lîng-ngoî leŭng-kà ch'e chông ch'e.

5. A: Ôh, ngŏh keì-tak là, ngŏh chìng-wâ t'eng-tó san-mān*pò-kò.

   B: San-mān* pò-kò tîm-yeûng* kóng à?

6. A: San-mān* pò-kò wâ, yaŭ seì-kà ch'e chông ch'e.

   B: Ch'uî-chóh kóm chi-ngoî, k'uĭ chûng kóng ti mi-yĕ à?

7. A: Ch'uî-chóh kóm chi-ngoî, san-mān* pò-kò chûng wâ, ch'e luĭ-pîn kè yān to seung-chóh.

   B: Mŏ-ts'òh, k'uĭ-teî to seung-chóh, to yâp-chóh i-uên*.

8. A: T'eng-mān wâ, Ch'ān Sin-Shaang kè t'aū t'ūng kéng to seung-chóh; haî mà?

   B: Haî, k'uĭ kè t'aū t'ūng kéng to seung-chóh, t'aū-faàt yîk-to shiu-chóh hó toh.

9. A: K'uĭ kè t'aū seung-tak tîm-yeûng* à?

   B: K'uĭ kè t'aū ch'uen-chóh.

10. A: Kóm, k'uĭ hóh m̄-hóh-ĭ taaì mô*, t'ūng tá t'aai à?

    B: Tong-în m̄-hóh-ĭ la, k'uĭ m̄-taaì-tak mŏ* m̄-tá-tak t'aai.

LESSON 59

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Mr. Leǐ, you told me that you and Mr. Ch'ān, Mr. Wōng, Mr. Hōh, Mr. Mâk, Mr. Paâk, and Mr. Kam are coming, why did you come just by yourself?

B: Miss Cheung, we were supposed to come together.

2. A: What happened?

B: They are in the hospital.

3. A: What? They are in the hospital?

B: They had an automobile accident.

4. A: How did they get into an accident?

B: Their car collided with two other cars.

5. A: My goodness! I remember I just heard the news over the radio.

B: What did the news say?

6. A: The news said there were four cars involved in the collision.

B: What else did it say?

7. A: The people inside the cars were all injured.

B: That's right. They were all injured. All of them were sent to the hospital.

8. A: I heard Mr. Ch'an's head and neck were injured. Is that so?

B: Yes, that's right. A lot of hair was burnt, too.

9. A: How badly was his head injured?

B: His head has a large wound.

10. A: Can he still wear a hat and put on a tie?

B: Of course not. He can do neither.

LESSON 59

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, ngŏh-teî ĭ-king tò-chóh Kwóng-Chau Ts'aan-Shat là. Neĭ t'aí-tó moōn-haú kóh seì-kòh taaî tsẑ mà?

B: T'aî-tó, kóh seì kòh Chung-Mān tsẑ sé-tak hó lèng.

2. A: Neĭ ĭ-ts'în yaŭ mŏ laî-kwòh ni kaan Kwóng-Chau Ts'aan-Shat à, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

B: Ngŏh ĭ-ts'în t'eng-kwòh k'uĭ kè mēng*, taân-haî ngŏh mŏ laî-kwòh.

3. A: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, neĭ kòk m̄-kòk-tak Kwóng-Chau Ts'aan-Shat taaî-kwòh Uĕn-Tung Ts'aan-Shat à?

B: Ngŏh kòk-tak k'uĭ-teî to ch'a-m̄-toh kòm taaî.

4. A: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, neĭ chung-ì ts'ŏh ngoî-pîn ti waî*, yik-waâk luĭ-pîn ti waî* à?

B: Neĭ mân neĭ kè T'aaì-T'aaì* la, táng k'uĭ k'uèt-tîng la!

5. C: Ngŏh foon-heí ts'ŏh luĭ-pîn ti waî*, luĭ-pîn mŏ ngoî-pîn kòm ts'ō.

B: Kóh kòh nuĭ taaì-waî* haăng-kán laî là!

6. D: Sin-Shaang, T'aaì-T'aaì*, neĭ-teî saam-waî* chung-ì ts'ŏh pin ti waî* à?

C: Ngŏh-teî chung-ì ts'ŏh tsîng ti kè.

7. D: Kóm, ts'îng yàp huì luĭ-pîn ti saì fōng* la!

C: M̄-koi-saaì, Siú-Tsé.

8. A: Kóh kòh fóh-keì haăng-kán laî là!

E: Sin-Shaang, T'aaì-T'aaì*, iù ti mi-yĕ ch'ā yám à?

9. A: Ts'uî-pîn*la, m̄-koi neĭ ch'ung oō hūng ch'ā la!

E: Neĭ-teî chung-ì ti ch'ā t'aăm ti kè, yik-waâk nūng ti kè à?

10. A: M̄-hó t'aaì t'aăm, m̄-hó t'aaì nūng.

LESSON 59

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

B: Hó à, Sin-Shaang, seúng tîm ti mi-yĕ sùng à?

11. A: Táng ngŏh-teî nám-hă sin la, fóh-keì. Fong-Laān, neĭ chung-ì shîk ti mi-yĕ sùng à?

C: Ngŏh seúng shîk ti suen kè, laât-laât*-teî* kè sùng.

12. A: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, neĭ seúng tîm ti mi-yĕ sùng à?

B: Ngŏh mi-yë to m̄-kán-iù, tsuì kán-iù haî m̄-hó tîm ti t'aaì feî, t'aaì naû kè sùng.

13. C: Kóm, ngŏh-teî mooĭ yeûng tîm ti la!

A: Hó la; tîm ti uē*, kai, ngaū-yûk, chue-yûk, ts'eng-ts'oì, kai-taân*, t'ong, t'ūng keì oón paâk-faân la; kaù meî à?

14. B: Kaù là, haî kòm toh kaù là!

C: Uē-kwóh m̄-kaù shîk, ngŏh-teî tsoì kiù la!

15. A: Fóh-keì, ngŏh-teî iù ni keí meî sùng, m̄-koi neĭ faaì ti.

B: Hó à, sin-shaang, m̄-shaí keí noî che.

LESSON 59

WORD LIST

1. poón-loî	originally; original, in the beginning, at first
2. shat-sẑ	accident, mishap, to have an accident
3. lîng-ngoî	other, besides, aside from
4. chông-ch'e	collision of cars
5. sheung	to hurt, wound, injure, get hurt, hurt
6. kéng	neck
7. t'aū-faàt	hair (on the head)
8. ch'uen	to pierce, puncture, break
9. taaì	to wear, put on (hat, glasses)
10. mô, mô*	hat, cap
11. taaî mô*	to wear a hat, put on a hat
12. t'aai	necktie, tie
13. tá t'aai	to put on a necktie (or bow-tie)

LESSON 59

READING MATERIAL

169

髮 faàt: hair of the head(Cl. t'iū)

剪髮 tsín-faàt: to cut the hair

飛髮 fei-faàt: to cut the hair

704

帽 mô*: a cap; hat.

戴帽 taai mô*: to wear hat.

毡帽 chin-mô*: felt hs or cap.

草帽 ts'ó-mô*: straw h

677

物 mât: things in general; articles.

物件 mât-kín. thing; article.

物主 mât c uó. owner.

生物 shaan -mât: living thing.

食物 shîk-mât: the eatable.

貨物 fòn mât: goods.

髮 帽 物

髮 帽 物

髮 巾 物

1067

私 sz: clandestine; private; partial.

私心 sz sam: selfish; partial.

私見 sz kîn: private opinion; private end.

117

牀 ch'ōng: bed; couch

牀鋪 ch'ōng-pò: bedding

牀褥 ch'ōng-yûk: mattress

彈弓牀 taân-kung ch'ōng: spring bed; sofa

私 牀

私 牀

私 床 牀

LESSON 59

READING MATERIAL

620

另	lîng: separate; distinct; alone.
另外	lîng-ngoî: extra.
另加	lîng ka: additional.
另自	lîng tsẑ: by itself; apart.

130

穿	ch'uen: to drill through; perforate
穿窿	ch'uen-lung: to perforate
穿衣服	ch'uen i-fûk: to put on clothes
穿針	ch'uen cham: thread a needle

1005

梳	shoh: a comb; to comb; to dress hair.
梳頭	shoh t'aū: to comb the hair.

另 穿 梳

另 穿 梳

另 穿 梳

157

化	fà· to change; to transform; melt
化學	fà-hôk: chemistry
文化	mān-fà: culture; civilization
消化	siu-fà: to digest
進化	tsùn-fà: evolution

1172

套	t'ò: a covering; case; noose; trap; to trap.
手套	shaú-t'ò: glove.
一套衣服	yat t'ò i-fûk: a suit of clothes.

化 套

化 套

化 套

LESSON 59

READING MATERIAL

陳英寄chóh信啦. 佢喺街處睇見黃小姐ning-緊兩大包野慢慢敢行. 陳英係一個好有心嘅人. 佢就即刻走上去同黃小姐ning啲野. 頭先黃小姐ning-緊兩大包野,好辛苦;而家唔使ning啦,shue-服好多. 佢地慢慢敢行,慢慢敢講. 黃小姐對陳英講關於陳英母親生日嘅事. 陳英話,對於呢件事,佢已經回chóh信peí佢嘅父親. 佢同黃小姐決定早啲翻去.

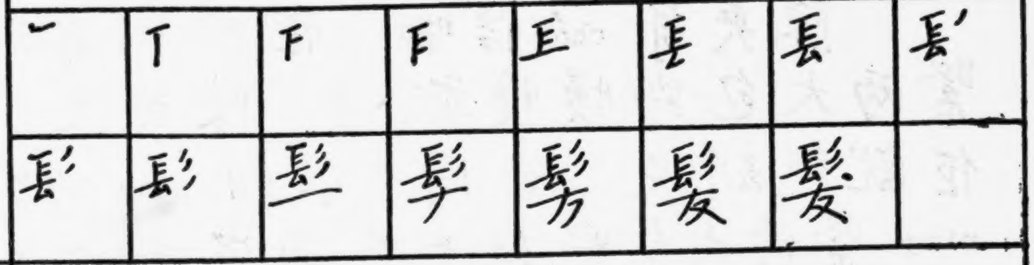
陳英同黃小姐ning啲野翻去酒店之後,佢有好多事想做. 有錯,佢啲頭髮長啦,佢想去飛髮. 佢嘅帽穿chóh啦,佢要去買第二件. 另外,重要買件帽peí佢嘅父親,買啲禮物peí佢嘅母親;又要去ka-私鋪睇吓啲梳化牀,又想去買套西裝. 除chóh要做呢啲事之外,佢重有其他嘅事要做;但係,佢而家想唔倒啦!

LESSON 59

WRITING MATERIAL

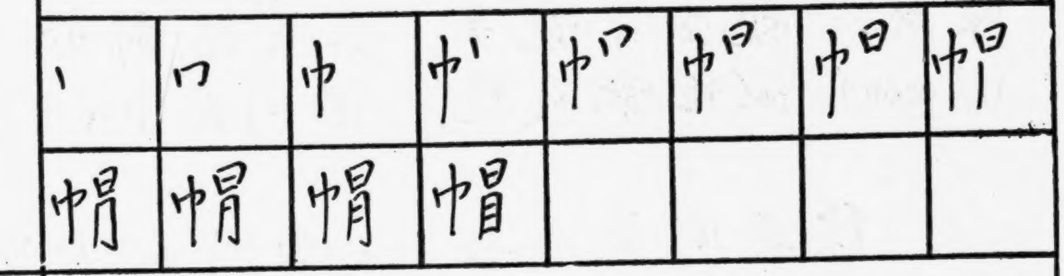
髮

Character Number 169
Stroke Number 15
Radical Number 190
髟



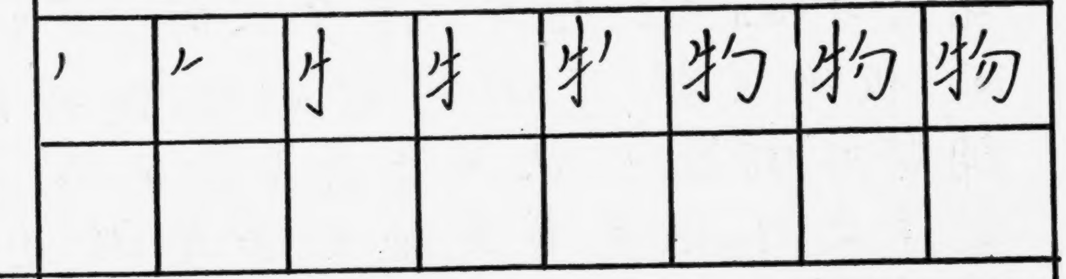
帽

Character Number 704
Stroke Number 12
Radical Number 50
巾



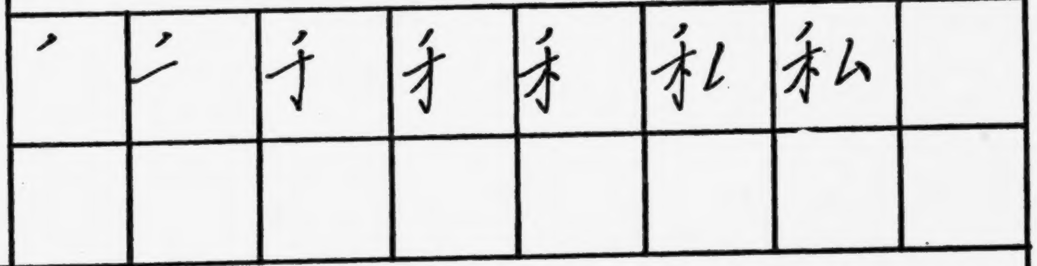
物

Character Number 677
Stroke Number 8
Radical Number 93
牛，牜



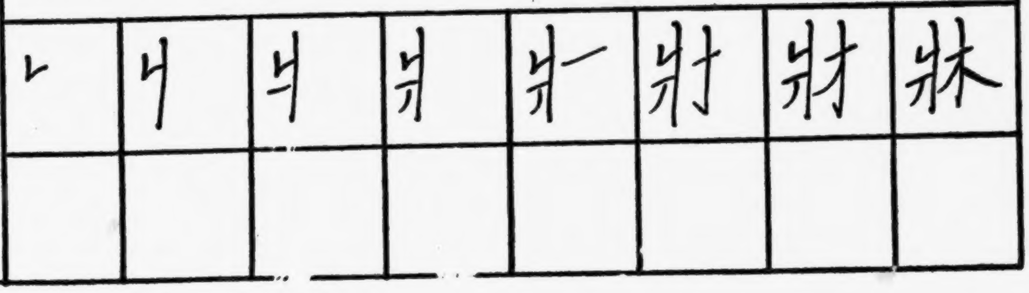
私

Character Number 1067
Stroke Number 7
Radical Number 115
禾



牀

Character Number 117
Stroke Number 8
Radical Number 90
爿



LESSON 60

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

1. kè

a. ngŏh kè

haî ngŏh kè

Ni kà ch'e haî ngŏh kè.

Ni kà ch'e haî pin-kòh kè à?

Ni kà ch'e haî pin-kòh kà?

Ni kà ch'e haî ngŏh kè.

Ni kà ch'e haî k'uĭ kè.

Ni kà ch'e haî m̄-haî neĭ kè à?

Ni kà ch'e haî m̄-haî neĭ kà?

Ni kà ch'e m̄-haî ngŏh kè.

Ni kà ch'e m̄-haî ngŏh kè, haî ngŏh kè taaî-ló kè.

b. ngŏh kè

ngŏh kè ch'e

Ni kà haî ngŏh kè ch'e.

Ni kà m̄-haî ngŏh kè ch'e.

Ni kà haî m̄-haî neĭ kè ch'e à?

Ni kà haî ngŏh kè ch'e.

Ni kà m̄-haî ngŏh kè ch'e.

Ni kà m̄-haî ngŏh kè ch'e, haî ngŏh kè foô-ts'an kè p'aāng yaŭ kè ch'e.

Ni kà haî pin-kòh kè ch'e à?

Ni kà haî ngŏh kè ch'e.

Pin kà haî neĭ kè ch'e à?

Ni kà haî ngŏh kè ch'e.

LESSON 60

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

Pin kà haî neĭ kè ch'e à?

Ni kà haî ngŏh kè ch'e.

Ni keî kà ch'e, pin kà haî neĭ kè ch'e à?

Ni keî kà ch'e, ni kà haî ngŏh kè ch'e.

Ni keî kà ch'e, pin yat-kà haî neĭ kè ch'e à?

Ni keî kà ch'e, ni yat-kà haî ngŏh kè ch'e.

c. Ni kà ch'e haî ngŏh kè.

Ni kà haî ngŏh kè ch'e.

Ni kà ch'e haî pin-kòh kè à?

Ni kà ch'e haî pin-kòh kà?

Ni kà ch'e haî ngŏh kè.

Ni kà haî pin-kòh kè ch'e à?

Ni kà haî ngŏh kè ch'e.

Pin kà ch'e haî neĭ kè à?

Pin kà ch'e haî neĭ kà?

Ni kà ch'e haî ngŏh kè.

Pin kà haî neĭ kè ch'e à?

Ni kà haî ngŏh kè ch'e.

Ni kà ch'e haî m̂-haî neĭ kè à?

Ni kà ch'e haî m̂-haî neĭ kà?

Ni kà ch'e haî ngŏh kè.

Ni kà haî m̂-haî neĭ kè ch'e à?

Ni kà haî ngŏh kè ch'e.

LESSON 60

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

2. chốh

sheung

sheung-chốh

K'uĭ sheung-chốh.

K'uĭ mŏ sheung.

K'uĭ yaŭ mŏ sheung à?

K'uĭ sheung-chốh.

K'uĭ mŏ sheung.

K'uĭ kè t'aū sheung-chốh.

K'uĭ kè ngaăn chúng-chốh.

K'uĭ kè yaû-ngaăn chúng-chốh.

K'uĭ kè shaú t'uĕn-chốh.

K'uĭ kè t'aū ch'uen-chốh.

K'uĭ tsôk-yât pêng-chốh.

K'uĭ î-ka hó-chốh.

Ti yĕ kwaî-chốh.

Ti yĕ p'ēng-chốh.

Ti saî-man-tsaî ko-chốh taaî-chốh.

Ngŏh t'ūng neĭ to lŏ-chốh.

K'uĭ shaû-chốh ti.

Ngŏh feî-chốh hô toh.

Ngŏh ti shaam chaàk-chốh, kaû-chốh.

LESSON 60

ORAL MATERIAL - STRUCTURAL PATTERNS

3. cheùk

cheùk shaam

Ngŏh cheùk shaam.

Ngŏh cheùk shaam cheùk foò.

Ngŏh cheùk shaam cheùk foò cheùk haaì.

Ngŏh cheùk shaam cheùk foò cheùk haaì cheùk mât.

Ngŏh cheùk shaam.

Ngŏh cheùk-chóh shaam.

Neĭ cheùk-chóh shaam meî à?

Ngŏh cheùk-chóh shaam.

Ngŏh meî cheùk shaam.

taaì

taaì mô*

Ngŏh taaì mô*.

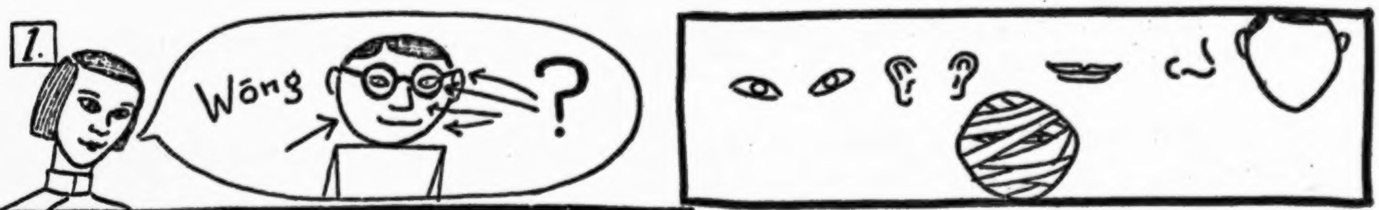
Ngŏh taaì ngaăn-kèng*.

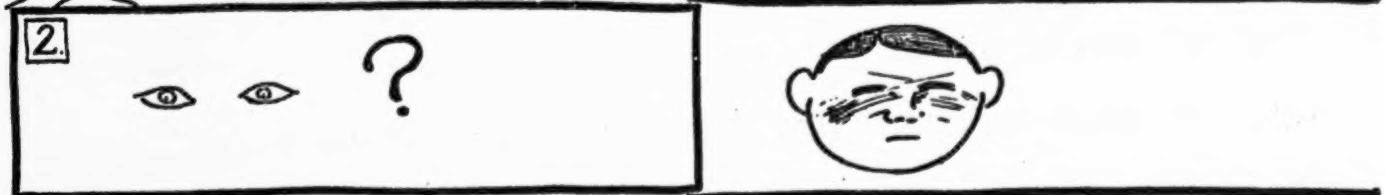
tá

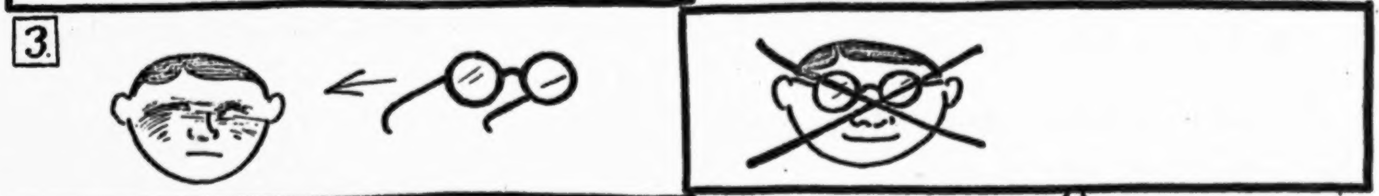
tá t'aai.

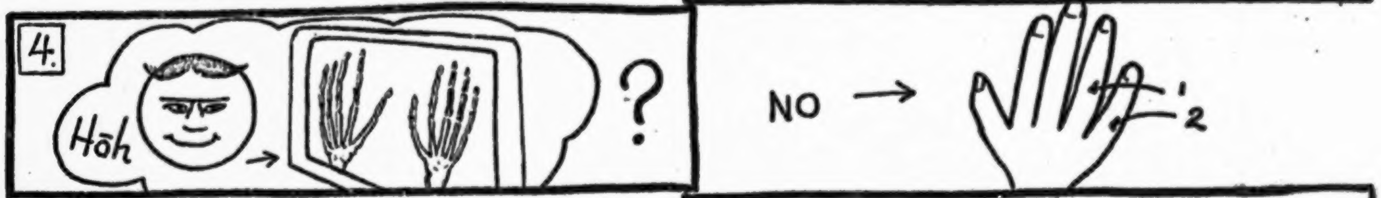
Ngŏh tá t'aai.

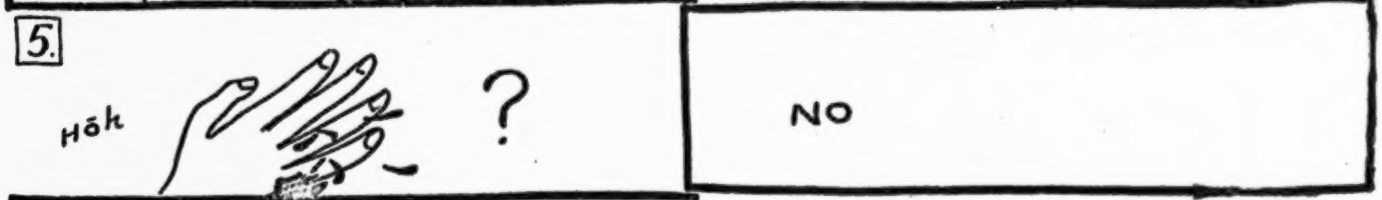
LESSON 60

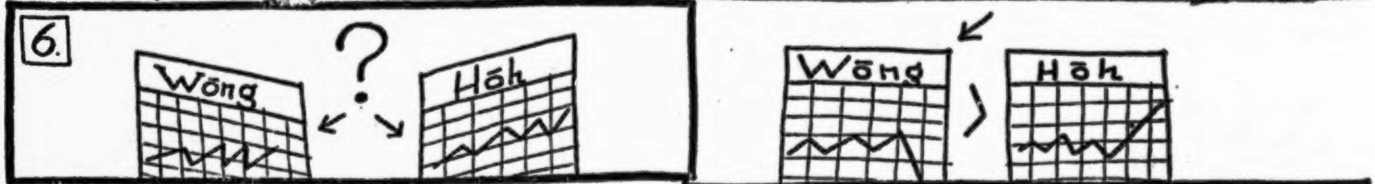

1.
Wōng

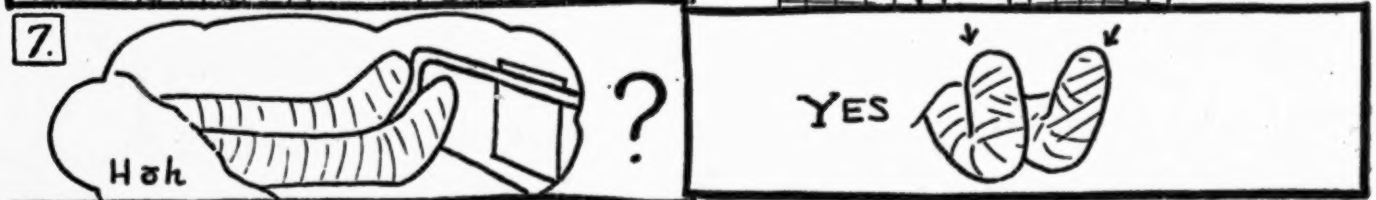

2.

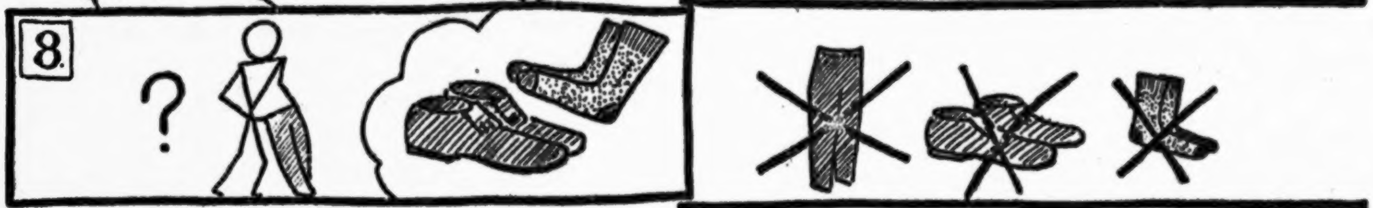

3.

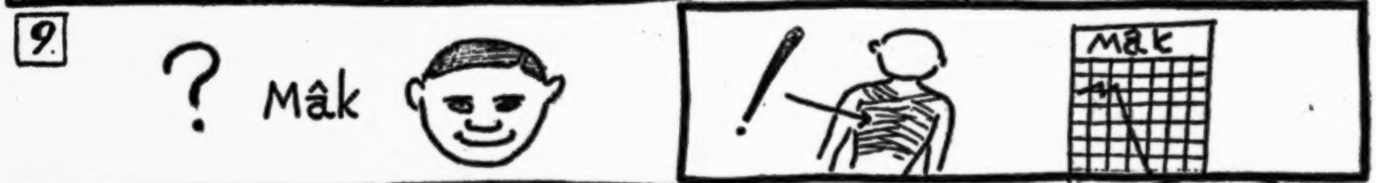

4.
Hōh
NO
1
2

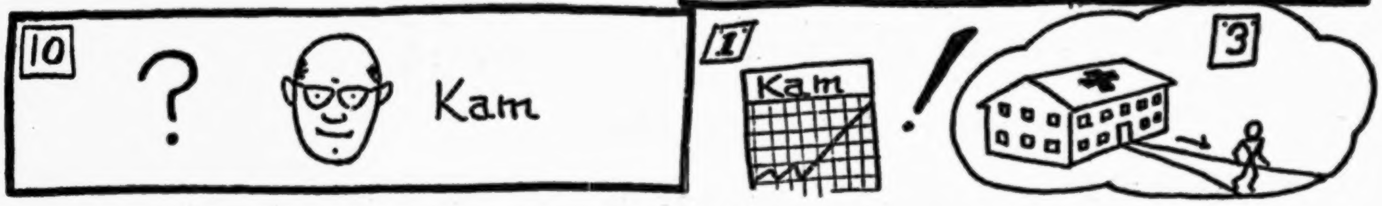

5.
Hōk
NO


6.
Wōng
Hōh
Wōng
Hōh


7.
Hōh
YES


8.


9.
Mâk
Mâk


10
Kam
1
Kam
3

LESSON 60

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. A: Leî Sin-Shaang; Wōng Sin-Shaang kè ngaăn, ĭ, haú, peî, t'ūng mîn seung-tak kán-iủ mả?

   B: K'uĭ kè ngaăn, ĭ, haú, peî, t'ūng mîn to seung-tak keî kán-iủ.

2. A: K'uĭ kè ngaăn seung-tak tîm-yeûng* ả?

   B: K'uĭ kè chóh-ngaăn t'ūng yaû-ngaăn to chúng-chóh.

3. A: Uē-kwóh k'uĭ kè leŭng-chèk ngaăn to chúng-chóh, k'uĭ chung taaî m̄-taaî-tak ngaăn-kèng* ả?

   B: M̄-hóh-ĭ, k'uĭ m̄-taaî-tak ngaăn-kèng*.

4. A: Těng-mān-wâ, Hōh Sin-Shaang kè shaú-chî uēn-ts'uēn t'uĕn saaî, haî mả?

   B: M̄-haî, chî-haî k'uĭ kè yaû-shaú kè leŭng-chèk shaú-chî t'uĕn-chóh che.

5. A: K'uĭ laū huèt laū-tak toh mả?

   B: K'uĭ laū huèt laū-chóh m̄-haî keî toh.

6. A: Wōng Sin-Shaang kè ts'îng-yîng peî-kaaủ Hōh Sin-Shaang kè hó ti, yik-waâk yaî ti ả?

   B: Wōng Sin-Shaang kè ts'îng-yîng yaî-kwỏh Hōh Sin-Shaang kè hó toh.

7. A: Hōh Sin-Shaang kè leŭng-chèk keủk to seung-chóh, haî mả?

   B: Haî lả, k'uĭ kè chóh-keủk t'ūng yaû-keủk to seung-chóh.

8. A: Kóm, k'uĭ tîm hóh-ĭ cheủk foỏ, cheủk haaî, cheủk mât ả?

   B: K'uĭ m̄-hóh-ĭ cheủk foỏ, cheủk haaî, t'ūng cheủk mât.

9. A: Mâk Sin-Shaang kè ts'îng-yîng tîm ả?

   B: K'uĭ kè hung-pô seung-tak fei-sheūng-chi kán-iủ. K'uĭ kè ts'îng-yîng tsuî yaî.

10. A: K'uĭ ooĭ m̄-ooĭ yaŭ ngaî-hîm ả?

   B: Wâ-m̄-tîng, ngŏh iủ mân i-shaang chî chi-tỏ.

   A: Kam Sin-Shaang kè ts'îng-yîng tîm ả?

   B: K'uĭ kè ts'îng-yîng tsuî hó; ngŏh koó, yat leŭng yât chi-noî, k'uĭ hóh-ĭ ch'ut uén*.

LESSON 60

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

1. A: Mr. Leĭ, how's Mr. Wōng's eyes, ears, mouth, nose, and face?

   B: They are all quite seriously injured.

2. A: How are his eyes?

   B: His left eye and right eye are swollen.

3. A: If they are swollen, can he wear his eye glasses?

   B: I should say not.

4. A: I was told that all of Mr. Hoh's fingers were broken. Is that correct?

   B: No, only two fingers of his right hand are broken.

5. A: Did he bleed much?

   B: No, he didn't.

6. A: Is Mr. Wōng's condition better or worse than Mr. Hōh's?

   B: Mr. Wōng's condition is much worse.

7. A: Both of Mr. Hoh's legs are injured, isn't that so?

   B: Yes, his left leg and right leg are injured.

8. A: How can he wear his trousers, shoes and socks?

   B: He cannot wear such things.

9. A: How is Mr. Mâk's condition?

   B: His chest injury is extremely serious. His condition is the worst.

10. A: Would he be in any kind of danger?

    B: I'll have to ask the doctor before I can say for sure.

    A: How is Mr. Kam's condition?

    B: His condition is the best. I suppose he will be discharged from the hospital within a day or so.

LESSON 60

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

1. A: Fong-Laān, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, ti sùng ĭ-king tò-ts'aî là!

B: Ngŏh-teî taaî-ka heî-faaî* la!

2. A: Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, neĭ kòk-tak ti sùng kaù haām mà?

B: Ngŏh kòk-tak ni tîp ts'ing-ts'oî ngaū-yûk m̄-kaù haām.

3. A: Uē-kwóh ni tîp ts'ing-ts'oî ngaū-yûk t'aăm tak-chaî, lôk ti îm waâk-ché shî-yaū la!

B: Ngŏh kòk-tak lôk shî-yaū hó-kwòh lôk îm.

4. A: Fong-Laān, ti sùng t'ūng t'ong hó-shîk mà, kaù meî mà?

C: Táng ngŏh shì-hă chî chi-tò. Â, ti sùng t'ūng t'ong to m̄-ts'òh.

5. A: Ti chue-yûk t'ūng ngaū-yûk kaù shûk mà?

C: Ti chue-yûk kaù shûk là; ti ngaū-yûk chûng shaang-shaang-teî*.

6. A: Ti ngaū-yûk shaang ti m̄-kán-iù. Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, neĭ hó p'à shîk feî t'ūng naû kè sùng, haî mà?

B: Haî, ngŏh hó p'à shîk feî t'ūng naû kè sùng.

7. A: Ti chue-yûk feî mà, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

B: Ni tîp chue-yûk m̄-feî.

8. A: Uē-kwóh neĭ kòk-tak ti sùng feî t'ūng naû, yám pooi nūng ch'ā la, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù.

B: M̄-shaî là, ti sùng m̄-haî feî, m̄-haî naû à!

9. A: Fong-Laān, neĭ kòk-tak ti faân ngaâng mà?

C: M̄-ngâang, ti faân keî uĕn.

10: A: Fong-Laān, ni tîp sùng leî neĭ shuè kòm uĕn, neĭ kaàp-tó mà?

C: Ngŏh kaàp-tak-tó, m̄-koi.

11. A: Ngŏh-teî ĭ-king shîk-uēn faân, neĭ-teî yat-chân seúng huì t'aî tîn-yíng mà?

LESSON 60

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION

C: Kam-maăn Chung-Kwòk Heì-Uên* kè tîn-yíng hó hó-t'ai;
neĭ seúng huì mà, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

12. B: Kam-maăn Chung-Kwòk Heì-Uên* tsô mi-yĕ heì à?

C: Neĭ t'aí-hă ni cheung pò-chí, Chung-Kwòk Heì Uên* kam-yât tsô "Kam-yât kè T'oî-Waan".

13. B: 'Kam-yât kè T'oî-Waan "haî kóng mi-yĕ kè à?

C: K'uĭ kông kwaan-ue T'oî-Waan kè kwan-sẑ, kaau-t'ung, hôk-haaû, táng-táng.

14. A: Yê-maăn taî-yat ch'eŭng keí tîm-chung hoi yíng à, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

B: Kan-kuì ni cheung pò-chí wâ, yê-maăn taî-yat ch'eŭng ts'at-tîm-poòn hoi yíng.

15. A: Neĭ kè piu î-ka keí tîm à, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù?

B: Ngŏh kè piu î-ka lûk-tîm-poòn, chûng yaŭ shîng yat tîm-chung chì hoi yíng.

A: Ngŏh-teî chaú là. Fóh-keì, m̄-koi neĭ maaî-taan.

B: Táng ngŏh laî la, Ch'ān Kaaù-Shaû.

A: M̄-hó haàk-heì, Kam Sheûng-Kaaù, táng ngŏh ts'éng.

LESSON 60

WORD LIST

1. ngaăn	eye
2. ĭ	ear
3. haú	mouth
4. peî	nose
5. chúng	to puff up, to swell, swollen
6. ngaăn-kèng*	eye glasses
7. shaú-chí	finger
8. t'uĕn (tuên)	to break, cut off, broken, (to decide)
9. chẻk	AN for finger, leg, eye, ear, hand, animal, ship
10. laū huèt	to bleed, bleeding, hemorrhage
11. keủk	foot
12. foỏ	pants, trousers
13. mât	socks, stocking
14. hung pô	chest, breast
15. ngaî-hîm	danger, dangerous, critical, risky
16. ch'ut uên*	to check out from the hospital, leave the hospital

LESSON 60

READING MATERIAL

956

手	shaú: hand; arm; a hand.
手指	shaú-chí: the finger.
手段	shaú-tuên: ability; skill; scheme.
手鎗	shaú-ts'eung: pistol; revolver.

747

眼	ngaăn: eye: opening; arch.
眼皮	ngaăn-p'eī: eyelid.
眼眉	ngaăn-meī: eyebrow.
眼鏡	ngaăn-kèng: spectacles; eyeglasses.
近視眼	kân-shî ngaăn: short sightedness

341

耳	Ĭ: the ear
耳仔	Ĭ-tsaí: the ear
耳聾	ĭ-lūng: deaf

手　眼　耳

手　眼　耳

手　眼　耳

841

鼻	peî. the nose
鼻涕	peî-t'aî: nasal mucous.
鼻祖	peî tsó· founder of a family; first ancestor.

489

各	kŏk: all;every; each.
各種	kŏk chúng: every kind.
各人	kŏk yān: every person; each one.
各國	kŏk kwŏk: every country; each nation.
各方面	kŏk fong-mîn: from every view points; all sides.

鼻　各

鼻　各

鼻　各

LESSON 60

READING MATERIAL

665

襪 maât: stockings; hose.

布襪 pò maât: cotton stockings.

襪帶 maât taaî: garter.

織襪 chik maât: to knit socks.

210

褲 foò: trousers; drawers

長褲 ch'eûng foò: trousers; slach

內褲 noî foò: drawers

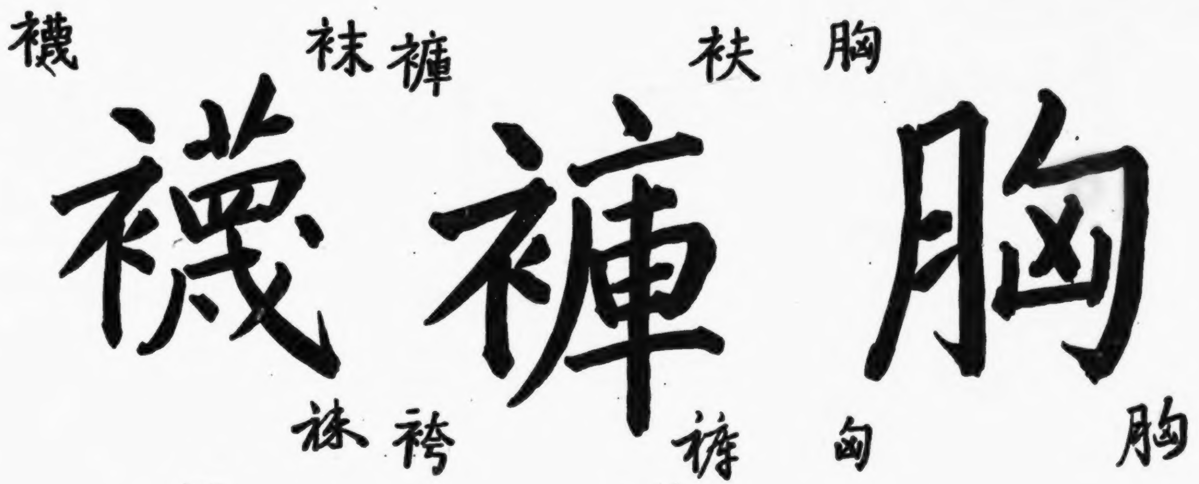
324

胸 hung: the breast; thorax

胸膛 hung-t'ōng: the chest

胸懷 hung-waaî: bosom

胸骨 hung-kwat: breast bone



592

流 laū: to flow along; a current; spread about; scattered.

流血 laū huèt: bleeding.

流淚 laū luî: to weep.

流利 laū-leî: fluent.

流域 laū-wîk: river basin.

流行 laū-haāng: prevalent; spreading(disease); fashionable.

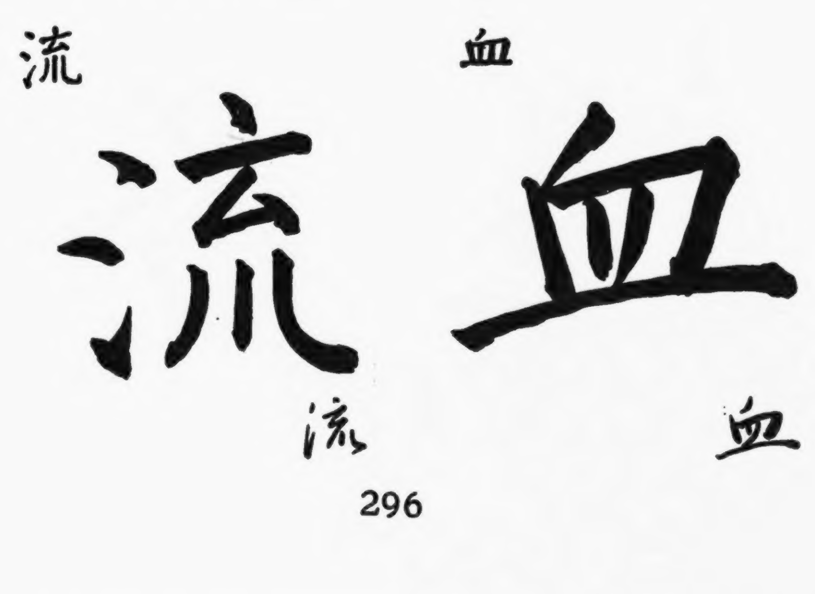
317

血 huèt: blood

血管 huèt-koón: blood vessels

血脈 huèt-mâk: the pulse

血統 huèt-t'úng: blood relation



LESSON 60

READING MATERIAL

頭先黃小姐買 chóh 兩大包野；陳英問黃小姐嗰兩包係乜野。黃小姐話，而家唔講得 peí 陳英聽。佢叫陳英快啲去街，做佢嘅事；等陳英翻黎至再講。而家陳英去街；黃小姐喺酒店等陳英。同時，黃小姐想洗頭，洗袜，同整好啲 shaam，袂等等。佢地各有各人嘅事，各做各人嘅事啦。而家陳英同黃小姐都好忙。

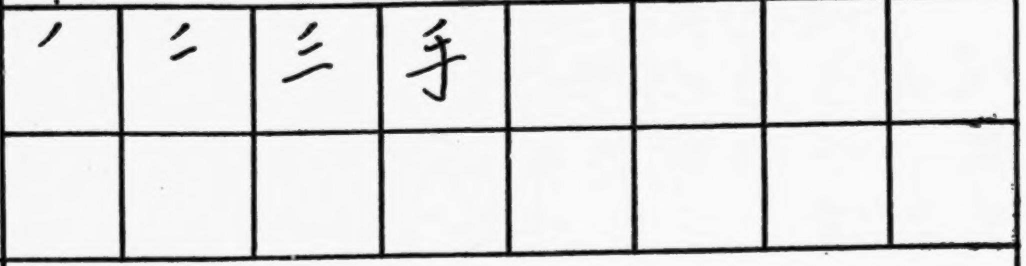
黃小姐正話整緊佢嘅 shaam，袂嘅時候，佢聽倒好似有打門聲；開門一睇，uēn 來係陳英。佢 taaì-chóh 件新帽，着 chóh 套新西裝，兩 chèk 手都 ning 滿 shaai 野。黃小姐同陳英放好啲野，除-chóh 件帽，睇見陳英飛 chóh 髮，飛得唔錯。陳英睇見黃小姐洗 chóh 頭，啲頭髮整得好好睇。黃小姐問陳英有乜野新聞。陳英話，啲舖頭嘅生意好好。頭先喺街處佢見倒兩個人 chông-車，真係令人怕啦。佢地嘅眼，耳，口，鼻，面都 chíng shaaì，胸部流血；後來有人車 chóh 佢地去醫院。而家唔知佢地點樣啦！

LESSON 60

WRITING MATERIAL

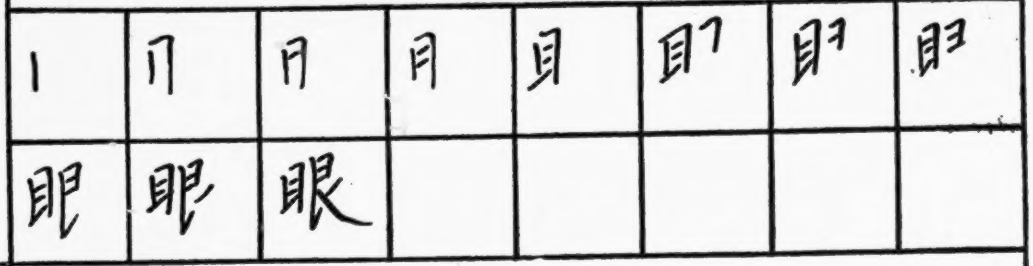
手

Character Number 956 **Radical Number** 64
Stroke Number 4 手



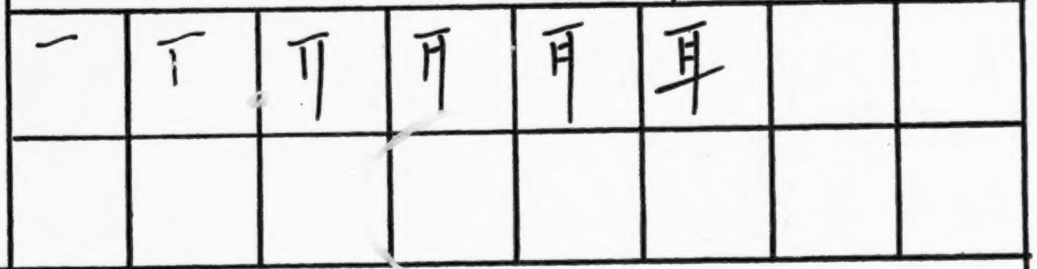
眼

Character Number 747 **Radical Number** 109
Stroke Number 11 目



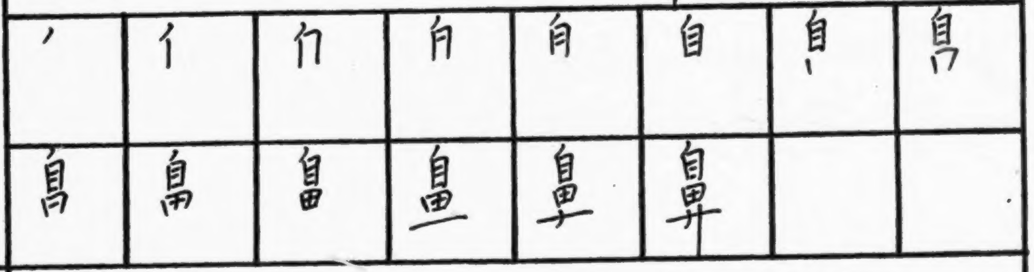
耳

Character Number 341 **Radical Number** 128
Stroke Number 6 耳



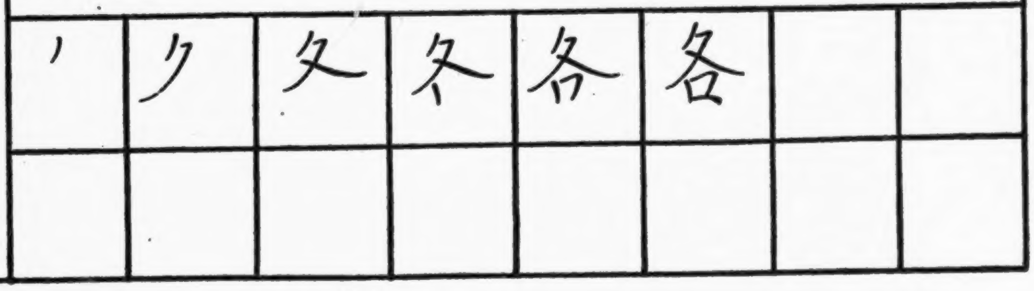
鼻

Character Number 841 **Radical Number** 209
Stroke Number 14 鼻



各

Character Number 489 **Radical Number** 30
Stroke Number 6 口



DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE

VOLUME IV

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

ED022179

AL 001 479

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Volume IV

March 1966

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

PREFACE

The Chinese Cantonese Course, consisting of 166 lessons in 8 volumes, is one of the Defense Language Institute's Basic Course Series. The material was developed at the Defense Language Institute's Curriculum Development Board.

The course is designed to train native English language speakers to Level 3 proficiency in comprehension and speaking and Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Chinese Cantonese. The texts are intended for classroom use in the Defense Language Institute's intensive programs employing the audio-lingual methodology. Tapes accompany the texts.

All inquiries concerning these materials, including requests for authorization to reproduce, will be addressed to the Director, Defense Language Institute, U. S. Naval Station, Anacostia Annex, Washington, D. C. 20390.

C W Chaney

C. W. CHANEY
Colonel, U.S. Army
Director

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 21-40
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 41-60
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VIII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 set	Flash Cards for 1500 Most Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	27 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	27 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
		Also available in compact form for comprehension or review purposes:
	3 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:	1 reel	*Hong Kong*, MF 20-8799,(P)(A)* 9 min.
	1 reel	*Hong Kong Welcomes You*, MF 20-9363, (I) 15 min.
	1 reel	*An Oriental City, Canton*, MF 20-9075, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	*Farming in South China*, MF 20-7829, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	*Taiwan, Island of Freedom*, AFIF 103, 23 min.
	1 reel	*Formosa*, LSFC 21, 13 min.
	1 reel	*Miracle in Free China*, MF 20-9114, 30 min.
	1 reel	*Free China's Fighting Men*, MF 30-8444, (I) 14 min.

---

* Available in magnastriped Chinese-Cantonese narrations. (P) Primary version, (I) Intermediate version, (A) Advanced version.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Formosa, Blueprint for a Free China, MOT 18, 24 min.
1 reel	China EF 258, 17 min.
1 reel	China, the Land and the People, MF 20-8939, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	Peiping Family, MF 20-8966, 20 min.
1 reel	The Chinese Village, a Legend, MF 20-9341, 15 min.
1 reel	Red China, AFIF 97, 27 min.
1 reel	China, Far East, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657 FC, (I) 14 min.
1 reel	Far East, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657, 30 min.
1 reel	Southeast Asia, Lands and Peoples, MF 20-8862, 13 min.
1 reel	Southeast Asia, SIS AFS No. 6, MF 30-8771, 33 min.
1 reel	The Village that Refused to Die, MF 20-9748, 60 min.
1 reel	Siam, MF 20-9269, 31 min.
1 reel	Burma, People of the River, MF 20-9028, 14 min.
1 reel	Letter from Indonesia, MF 20-8695, 27 min.
1 reel	The Philippines, AFIF 48, 15 min.
2 reels	Portrait of an American Family, MF 30-8449 (CC), 60 min.
1 reel	Men Against Tanks, MF 7-7898, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	Production of Combat Intelligence, MF 30-1494, (P)(A) 18 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Rifle Company, LSFC-3, (P)(A) 35 min.
1 reel	Infantry Battalion, LSFC-1, (P)(A) 21 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE (TOISHAN) 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters (Toishan Conversion Table)
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	24 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	24 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-26
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 27-55
	1 vol.	Volume III, Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	14 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	14 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	27 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

	27 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 210-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Volume I, Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume II, Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Volume III, Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Volume V, Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, 14 min.
	1 reel	Mighty Chinese Armed Forces, LS-86, 22 min.
	1 reel	Production of Combat Intelligence, MF 30-1494, 18 min.

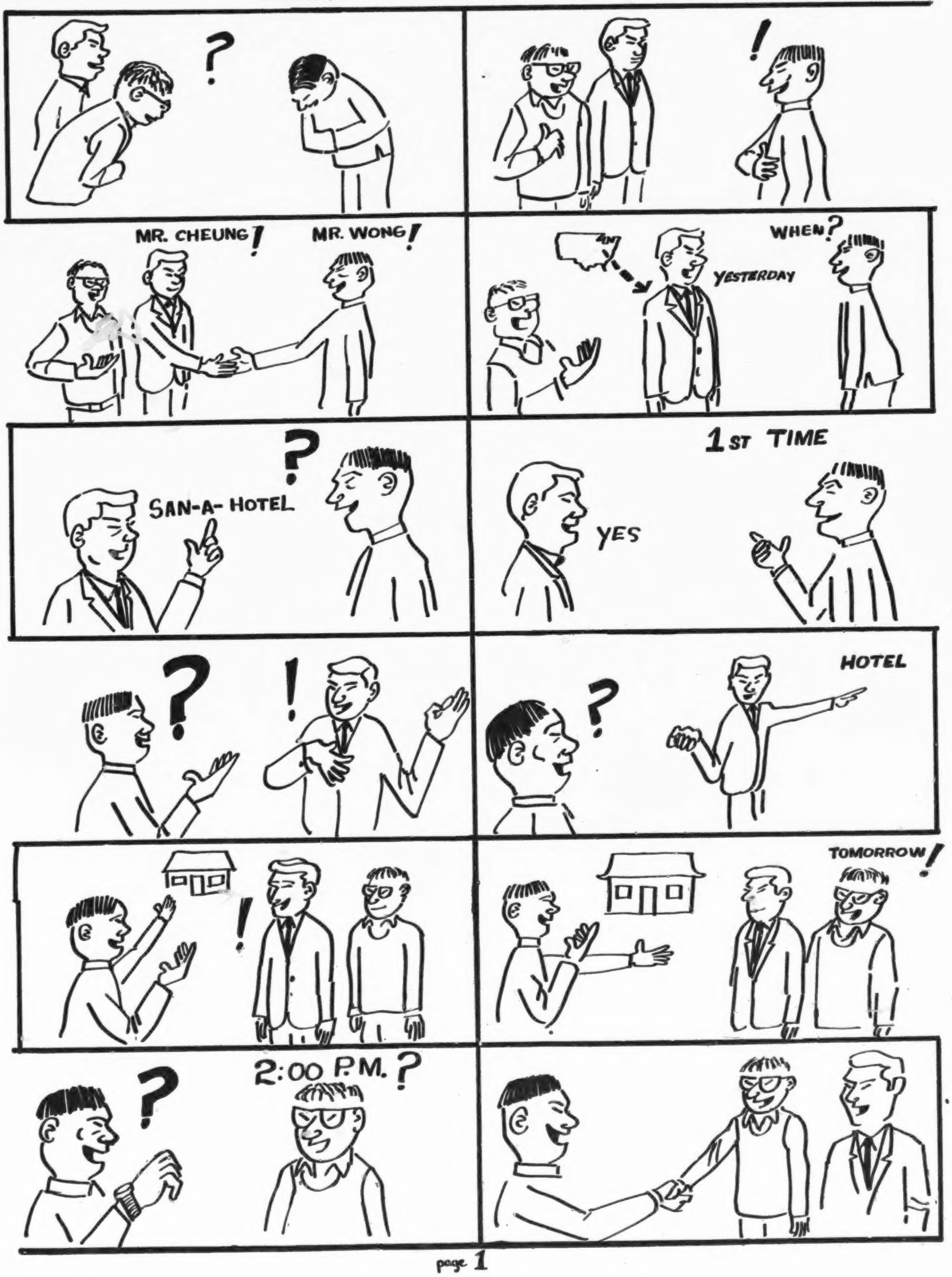
* For Official Use Only

CHINESE-CANTONESE 96-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-16
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 17-32
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 33-48
	1 vol.	Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded on tape
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

LESSON 1


?
!
MR. CHEUNG!
MR. WONG!
YESTERDAY
WHEN?
SAN-A-HOTEL
?
1ST TIME
YES
?
!
?
HOTEL
!
TOMORROW!
?
2:00 P.M.?

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Leĭ. Cheung sin-shaang, neĭ hó mà?

Cheung. Hó hó, neĭ ne, Leĭ sin-shaang?

L. Ngŏh hó. Hó noî mŏ kìn neĭ là pòh.

C. Taaî-ka kâm wâ.

L. Tâng ngŏh kaaì-shiû ngŏh kè p'āng-yaŭ t'ūng neĭ seung-shik, Cheung sin-shaang, ni-waî* haî Wōng sin-shaang, Wōng sin-shaang, ni-waî* haî Cheung sin-shaang.

C. Wōng sin-shaang.

W. Cheung sin-shaang.

L. Wōng sin-shaang chìng-wâ yaū Meĭ-Kwòk laì kà.

C. Haî me? Keì-shì tò kà?

W. Ts'ìn-yât tò kè.

C. Ī-ka haî pin-shuè chuê à?

W. Tsaâm-shì haî San-À-Tsaú-Tìm chuê.

C. Wōng sin-shaang, ch'oh-ts'z̀ tò Chung-Kwòk ā?

W. Haî à, Cheung sin-shaang.

C. Kòk-tak ni-shuè tîm à?

W. Fei-sheūng-chi hó.

C. Ī-ka neĭ-teî leŭng-waî* huì pin-shuè à?

W. Ngŏh tâ-suèn t'ūng Leĭ sin-shaang faan-huì tsaú-tìm shîk faân; ts'îng maaì yat-ts'aì* laì la.

C. Sam-lĭng lòh, ngŏh ì-ka iù faan uk-k'eì.

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. M̄-shaî haàk-heì pòh.

C. M̄-haàk-heì, Leĭ sin-shaang, ts'îng neĭ t'ūng Wōng sin-shaang t'ing-yât laì shè-hâ tsang-kwong hă, hó mà?

L. Hó à. Ngŏh t'ing-yât yat-tîng t'ūng Wōng sin-shaang tò kwaì-foó paaì-haû.

C. Taaî-yeûk* keì-tîm-chung hôh-ĭ laì ne?

L. Taaî-yeûk* hâ-nğ leŭng-tîm-chung, hó mà?

C. Hó à. T'ing-yât tsoì-kìn.

L. Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

W. Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

LESSON 1

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Leĭ. How are you, Mr. Cheung?

Cheung. Very well, and you, Mr. Leĭ?

L. I'm fine. Haven't seen you for a long time.

C. I should say so.

L. Let me introduce my friend to you. Mr. Cheung, this is Mr. Wōng; Mr. Wōng, this is Mr. Cheung.

C. Mr. Wōng.

Wōng. Mr. Cheung.

L. Mr. Wōng has just come from the United States.

C. Is that so? When did you arrive?

W. I arrived the day before yesterday.

C. Where are you staying now?

W. Temporarily, I'm staying at the San-Ȧ Hotel.

C. Mr. Wōng, is this the first time you've come to China?

W. Yes, Mr. Cheung.

C. How do you like this place?

W. Extremely well.

C. Where are you both going now?

W. I plan to return with Mr. Leĭ to the hotel to have dinner. Please come with us.

C. No, thank you. I have to go home now.

W. You need not be modest.

LESSON 1

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

C. No, I am not. Mr. Leǐ, I wish to invite you and Mr. Wǒng to come to my house to visit us. Is that all right?

L. Yes. Mr. Wǒng and I definitely will come to your house to visit tomorrow.

C. About what time can you come?

L. About two o'clock in the afternoon. Is that all right?

C. All right. See you again tomorrow.

L. See you again.

W. See you again.

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Col. Mă, you have just come from Canton, China. Is that right?
2. I plan to study Cantonese at the Defense Language Institute next year.
3. I wish to invite you and Sgt Mâk to have dinner at my house tonight.
4. He is staying at a relative's home this time.
5. I shall be extremely happy to pay a visit to your house tomorrow.
6. Temporarily, his unit is stationed in Hong Kong.
7. They are both very modest.
8. No, thank you. I have to go to work now.
9. We know each other. We are old schoolmates.
10. Your visit has brightened my humble abode.
11. He will arrive at approximately 6 a.m. tomorrow morning.
12. This is the first time we are all gathered together in this classroom.
13. He was discharged from the hospital the day before yesterday.
14. You have waited a long time. I am sorry!
15. Generally speaking, airmail letters do not take more than a week to get here from Formosa.
16. I shall answer all my mail as soon as I return to the hotel.
17. Let me do this by myself. Is that all right?

6

LESSON 1

WORD LIST

1.	seung-shik	to be acquainted
2.	ch'oh-ts'z̀	first time
3.	sam lǐng	than you!
4.	shè-hâ	my house
5.	tsang-kwong	to brighten
6.	kwaì-foó	your residence
7.	paaì-haû	to pay a visit

LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

1217

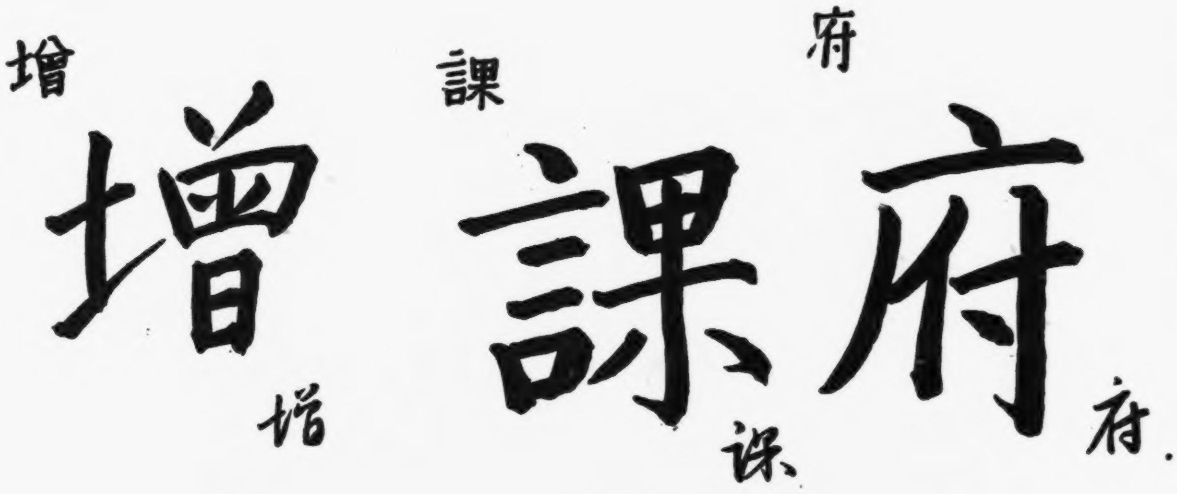
增	tsang: to add to; to increase.
增多	tsang-toh: to add to.
增見識	tsang kìn-sik: to enrich knowledge.

192

課	fòh: a lesson; task
功課	kung-fòh: schoo. work; home worl
上課	shéung fòh: hol classes; atten classes

205

府	foó: district prefioture; a palace
府上	foó-sheûng: polite term for "Your residence"
貴府	kwaì-foó: ditto

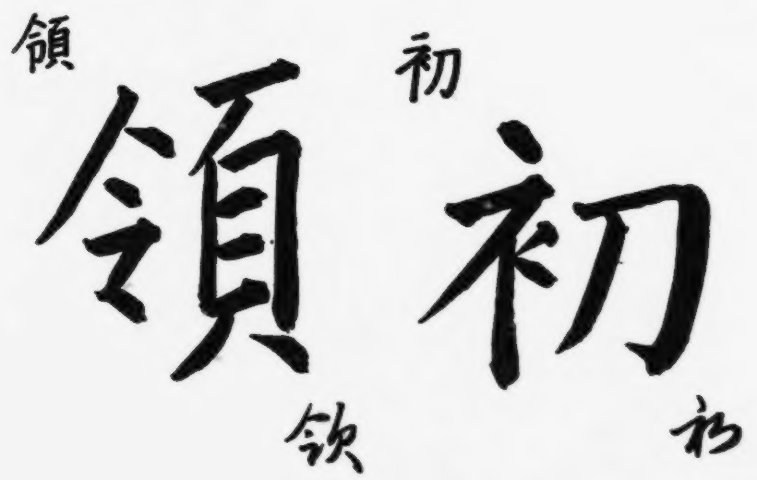


618

領	lǐng: to receive; the collar.
領事館	lǐng-sẑ-koón: consulate.
總領事	tsúng lǐng-sẑ: consul general.
領袖	lǐng-tsaû: a leader; chief.
領土	lǐng-t'ó: territory colony.

108

初	ch'oh: first original
當初	tong-ch'oh: at the beginning
初幾	ch'oh keí: first part of the month (up to 10)
初時	ch'oh-shī: at first



LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

1451

一 yat: the numeral one; a unit; unity.

一定 yat-têng: certainly; decidedly.

一帶 yat-taaì: nearby; all along.

一樣 yat-yeûng: similarly; alike.

1422

位 waî, wai: seat; throne; site.

高位 ko waî: high position.

好位置 hó waî-chì· a good or advantageous position or site.

幾多位 keí-toh waî*: how many persons?

343

二 î: numeral two; second

第二 taî-î: second; the next

第二日 taî-î yât: the next day

二等 î-táng: second class

一 位 二

一 位 二

壹 弌 一 位 弍 貳 二

55

掌 cheúng: palm of hand, to control.

手掌 shaú-cheúng: palm of hand

掌櫃 cheúng-kwaî*: cashier

38

州 chau a political division, district a state

廣州 Kwóng-chau: Canton

掌 州

掌 州

掌 州

LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

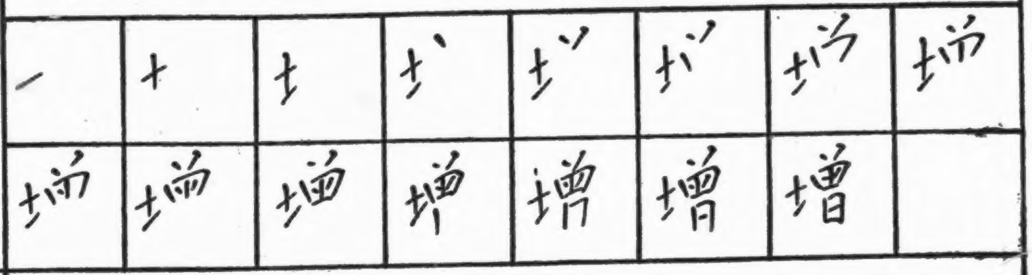
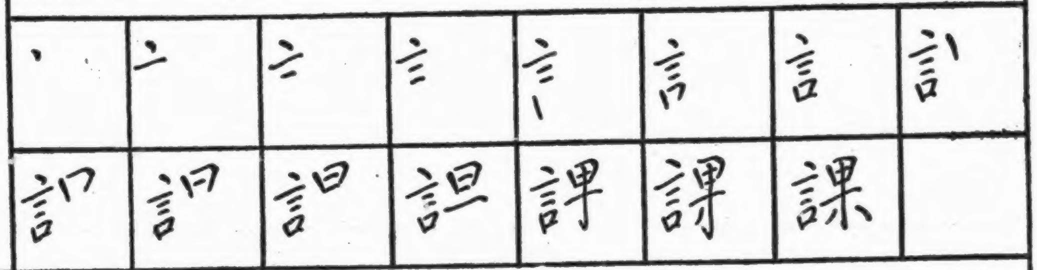
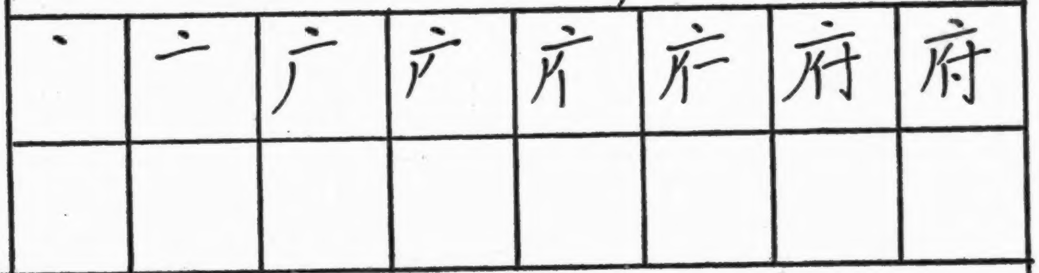
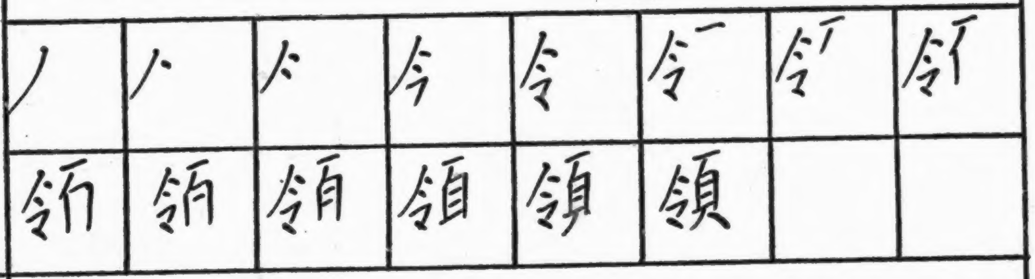
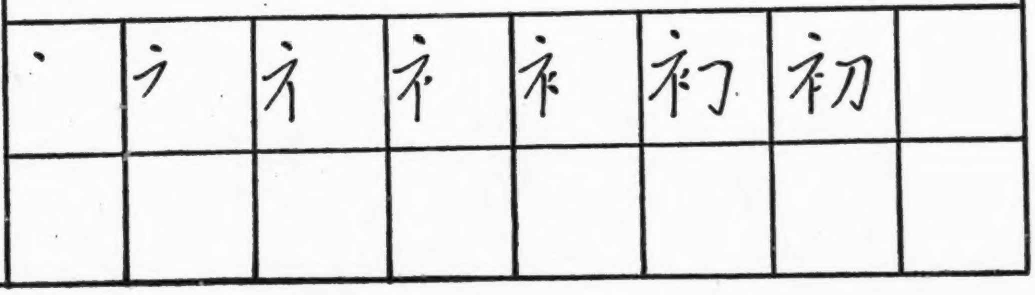
老黃喺三Faān市出世,喺美國大.佢喺三Faān市T'ōng人Faû中文學校讀過書;所以佢識中文,會講廣東話.佢而家喺美國陸軍當完兵,要番去廣州睇吓

佢到chôh兩日之後,同sìng李kè朋友行街.碰倒一位張先生.張先生同李先生都係舊相識,就介紹pei老黃.老黃當然好歡喜同張先生認識.K'ing chóh幾句之後,佢就要請埋張先生一齊去佢住kè酒店食飯.不過張先生要即刻番屋k'ei.只可以心領,唔可以去.

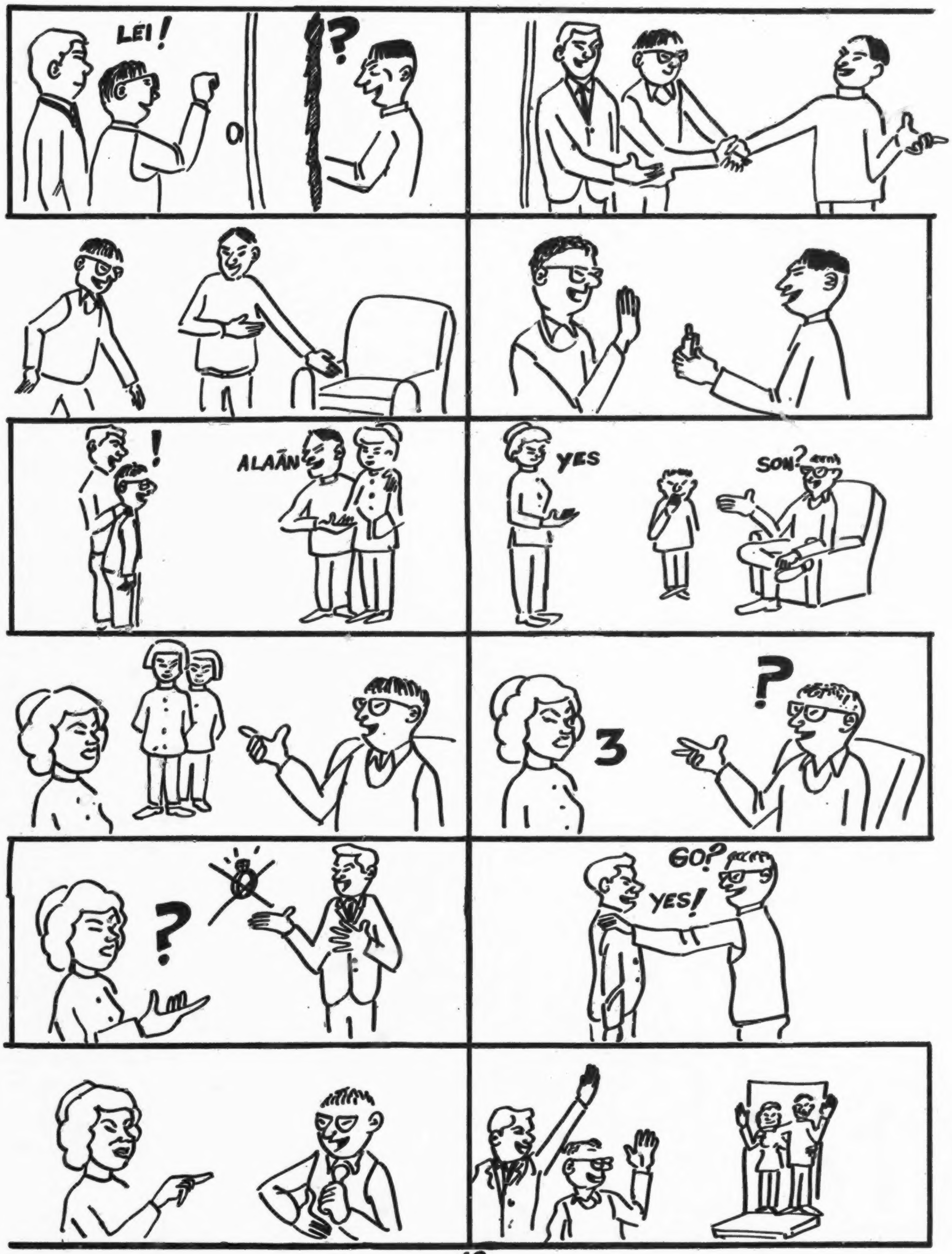
大約張先生亦都好中意老黃.雖然係初次相識,分手kè時候,就請老黃第二日兩點鐘去佢貴府坐吓,k'ing吓.

LESSON 1

WRITING MATERIAL

增	Character Number 1217 Stroke Number 15	Radical Number 32 土，土	
課	Character Number 192 Stroke Number 15	Radical Number 149 言	
府	Character Number 206 Stroke Number 8	Radical Number 53 广	
領	Character Number 618 Stroke Number 14	Radical Number 181 頁	
初	Character Number 108 Stroke Number 7	Radical Number 18 刀	

LESSON 2


LEI!
?
!
ALAÃN
YES
SON?
3
?
?
GO?
YES!

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Cheung. Pin-waî* à?

Leĭ. Ngŏh à.

C. Neĭ haî pin-waî*à?

L. Ngŏh haî Leĭ-Seì à.

C. Ŏh. Leĭ sin-shaang, Wōng sin-shaang, ts'îng yâp-laì la.

L. Cheung sin-shaang.

W. Cheung sin-shaang.

C. Ts'îng ts'ŏh, ts'îng ts'ŏh.

L. M̄-shaî-k'ui là.

C. Shîk in mà?

L. Toh-tsê, toh-tsê.

C. Wōng sin-shaang ne?

W. Shiú-shîk, shiú-shîk.

C. Táng ngŏh kaaì-shiû ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì* t'ūng neĭ seung-shik. À-Laān, ni waî* haî Wōng sin-shaang. Wōng sin-shaang, ni-kòh haî ngŏh kè t'aaì-t'aaì*.

Cheung t'aaì-t'aaì*. Wōng sin-shaang.

W. Cheung t'aaì-t'aaì*.

C.T.T. Ts'îng ts'uì-pîn*-ts'ŏh la.

W. Ni-waî* haî neĭ kè lîng-lōng* ā?

C. Haî à, ni-kòh haî ngŏh kè shiú-ì.

W. Kôh-leŭng-waî* haî neĭ kè ts'in-kam ā?

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C. Haî à, kóh-leŭng-kòh haî ngŏh kè shiú-nuĭ*.

W. Neĭ tsúng-kûng yaŭ keì-toh-waî* lîng-lōng* ts'in-kam à?

C. Tsúng-kûng yaŭ saam-kòh.

C.T.T. Wōng sin-shaang, neĭ ne?

W. Ngŏh tsûng-meì-ts'ăng kìt-fan.

L. Ngŏh-teì ts'ŏh-chóh kòm noì, pat-uē ch'ê lòh, hó mà, Wōng sin-shaang?

W. Hó à.

C.T.T. Ts'ŏh hă t'im la.

L. Kaaú-kwân saaì lòh. Ngŏh-teì yaŭ shĭ-haû tsoì laĭ paaì-haû.

W. Ts'îng, ts'îng.

C. Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

LESSON 2

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Cheung. Who is it?

Leĭ. It's me.

C. Who are you?

L. I'm Leĭ Seì.

C. Oh. Mr. Leĭ, Mr. Wōng, please come in.

L. Mr. Cheung.

Wōng. Mr. Cheung.

C. Please be seated.

L. Thank you.

C. Do you smoke?

L. Thank you.

C. Mr. Wōng?

W. I don't smoke.

C. Let me introduce my wife to you. À Laān, this is Mr. Wōng.
Mr. Wōng, this is my wife.

Mrs. Cheung. Mr. Wōng.

W. Mrs. Cheung.

Mrs. C. Please make yourselves at home.

L. Is this your son?

C. Yes, this is my son.

W. Are those two your daughters?

C. Yes, those two are my daughters.

LESSON 2

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. Altogether how many children do you have?

C. Three altogether.

Mrs. C. And you, Mr. Wōng?

W. I've not yet married.

L. We have been here so long, we'd better leave. Is that all right, Mr. Wōng?

W. Yes.

Mrs. C. Stay for a while longer.

L. We've already troubled you enough. We'll come to visit you again when we have time.

W. Good-bye.

C. See you again.

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Please be seated and make yourself at home.

2. It's me, your former schoolmate. Do you still remember?

3. I went together with my family to visit relatives in Europe.

4. He asked me "Do you smoke cigarettes or cigars?" And I told him, "I don't smoke!."

5. Your son is taller and heavier than mine.

6. My daughter dances better than yours.

7. There are four Colonels, three Lieutenant Colonels and two Majors in this classroom; a total of nine officers.

8. I am married, but my elder brother is not yet married.

9. They are not going to come in this rain, therefore, we might as well go home.

0. When she left, she forgot to take her package and her coat.

1. We have been here since quarter to seven, and we have caused you enough trouble.

2. I wish I could stay for a while longer.

3. I guess these are your children. Is that right, Mr. Leĭ?

4. Since you have to go to the airport, I will not ask you to stay.

5. Altogether, how many brothers and sisters do you have?

6. How long have you been here?

7. If you are not going to stay for a while longer, where will you go next?

LESSON 2

WORD LIST

1.	m̀-shaì k'ui	don't be so formal
2.	shiú shîk	I don't smoke
3.	lîng-lŏng*	your son
4.	shiú-ì	my son
5.	ts'in-kam	your daughter
6.	shiú-nuĭ*	my daughter
7.	meî-ts'ăng	not yet
8.	kaaú-kwân saaì	caused enough trouble

LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

750

危 ngaī: dangerous; peril; hazard.

危險 ngaī-hím: dangerous.

臨危 lām ngaī: near death; in danger.

危機 ngaī-kei: crisis; critical point.

280

險 hím: dangerous; risky

保險 pó-hím: insurance

危險 ngaī-hím: dangerous

197

訪 fóng: to inquire into; to visit

訪問 fóng-mân: to inquire

訪查 fóng ch'ā: to investigate

訪員 fóng-uēn: newspaper reporter

拜訪 paaì-fóng: visit

危　　險　　訪

危險訪

危　　险　　访

337

兒 Ī: infant; a male child

嬰兒 ying-Ī: infant

小兒 siú-Ī: my son

兒童 Ī-t'ūng: children

450

脚 keùk: the feet; legs.

脚指 keùk-chí: toes.

脚板 keùk-paán: sole of the foot.

跛脚 pai keùk: lame; crippled.

兒　　脚

兒脚

兒　　腳　　脚

LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

1218

曾 tsang, ts'āng: to increase; great; past; finished; done.

曾祖 tsang-tsó: great grandfather.

曾孫 tsang-suen: great grandchild.

未曾 meî-ts'āng: not yet.

曾經 ts'āng-king: already.

405

金 kam: gold; money; precious

足金 tsuk-kam: pure gold

千金 ts'in-kam: "Your daughter"

金幣 kam-paî: gold currency

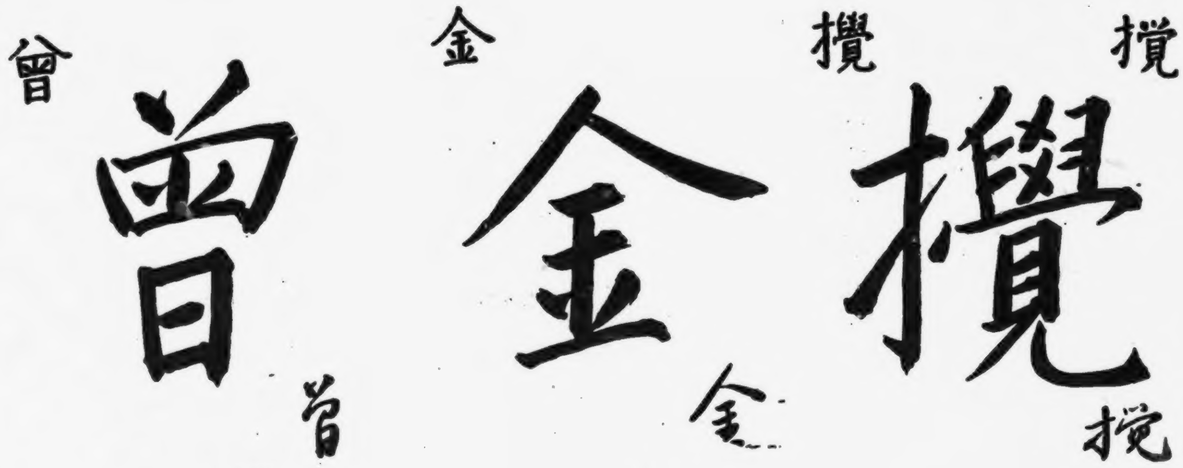
396

攪 kaaú: to mix; disturb; excite

攪擾 kaaú-iŭ: to disturb; to trouble

攪混 kaaú-wân: to stir to mix

攪亂 kaaú-luên: to throw into disorder



106

阻 chóh: to hinder; impede

阻住 chóh-chuê: to hinder

阻礙 chóh-ngoî: hindrance; to hinder

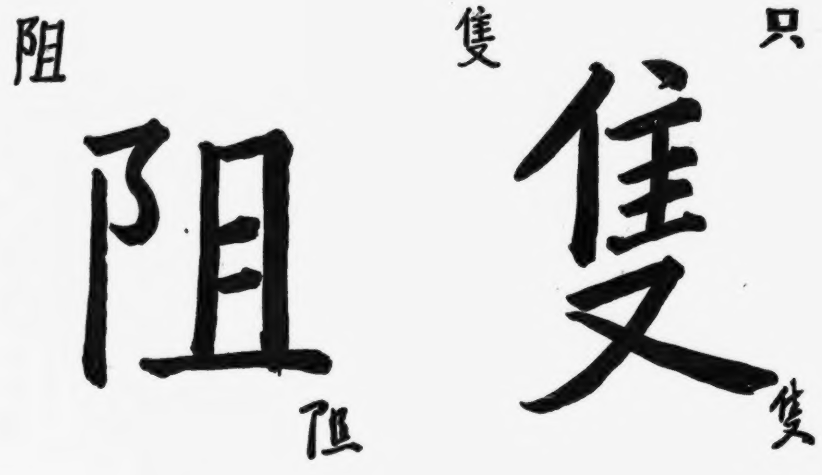
阻止 chóh-chí: to stop

49

隻 chèk: Cl. of birds; animals, ships, limbs etc.

一隻船 yat chèk shuĕn: a boat

一隻眼 yat chèk ngaăn: an eye



LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

黃李兩人喺約定kè時間到張先生府上拜候.張先生請佢地入去.坐落之後,就請茶請烟,客氣一番.

張先生介紹佢kè太太亞Laān pei 老黃認識.老黃喺嗰處又見到一個生得好聰明kè細man-仔,佢就問張先生係唔係佢kè令lōng*張先生話呢個係佢地kè小兒.老黃將帶黎kè美國餅乾 pei 佢.佢打開睇吓,非常之歡喜.

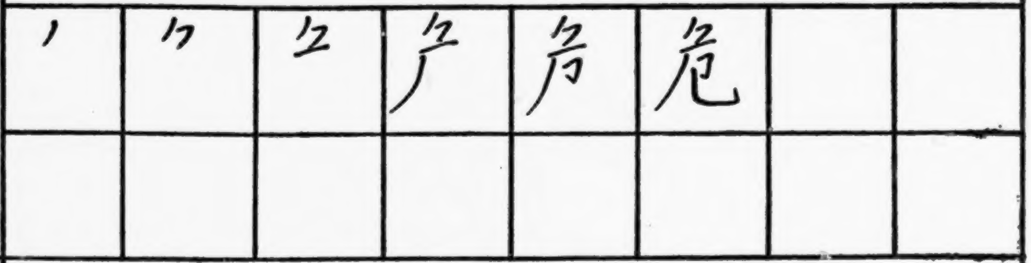
老黃又問張太太有冇千金.佢話有兩個女.後來老黃見坐chôh好耐,太過攪滾.就同老李離開張府.

LESSON 2

WRITING MATERIAL

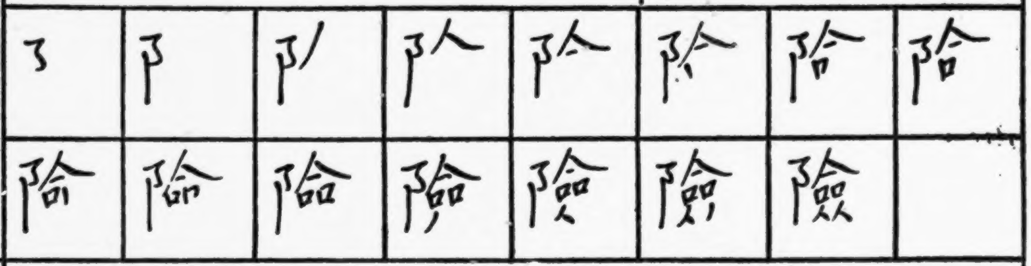
危

Character Number 750 Radical Number 26
Stroke Number 6 卩 · 㔾



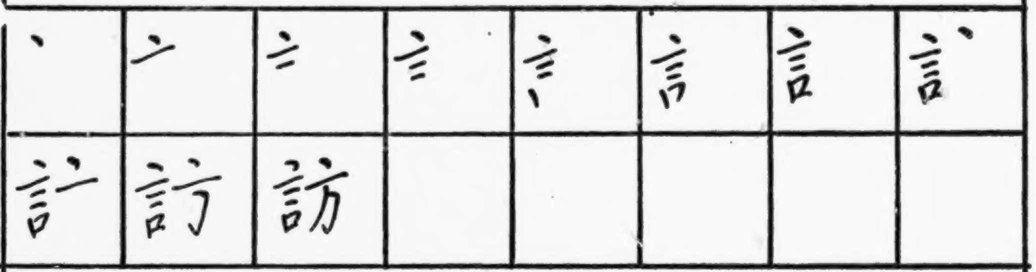
險

Character Number 280 Radical Number 170
Stroke Number 15 阜，阝



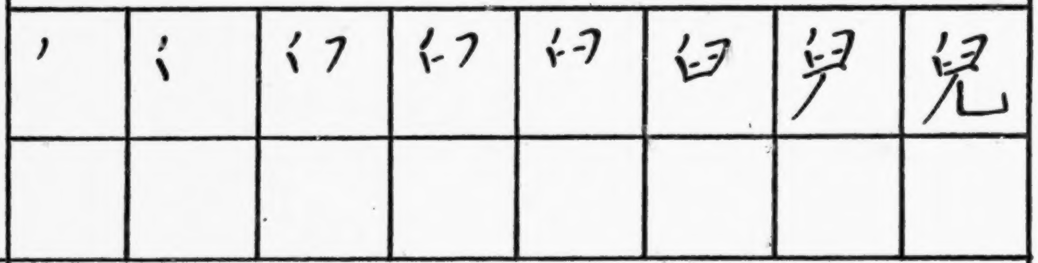
訪

Character Number 197 Radical Number 149
Stroke Number 11 言



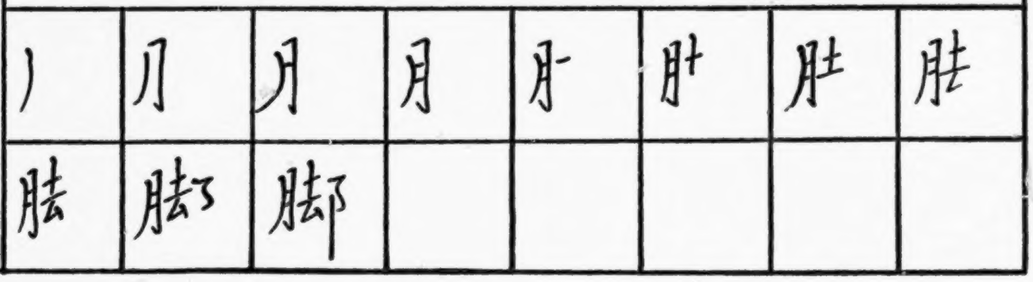
兒

Character Number 337 Radical Number 10
Stroke Number 8 儿

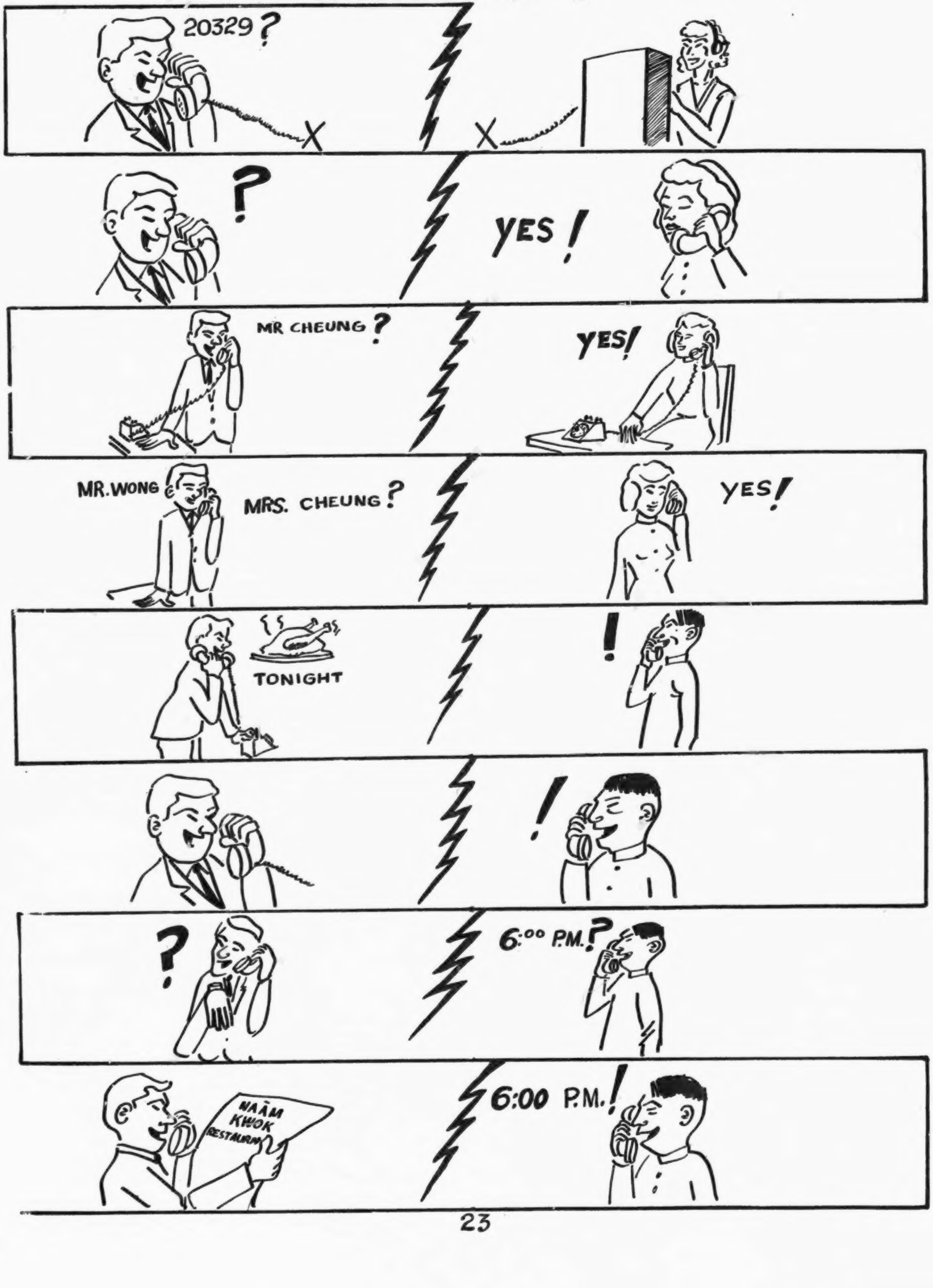


腳

Character Number 450 Radical Number 130
Stroke Number 11 肉，月



LESSON 3


20329?
?
YES!
MR CHEUNG?
YES!
MR. WONG
MRS. CHEUNG?
YES!
TONIGHT
!
!
?
6:00 P.M.?
NAÀM KWOK RESTAURN
6:00 P.M.!

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Waì, î-lìng-saam-î-kaú-hô ā?

Kaàp. Taàp ts'òh sìn là.

W. Tuì-m̄-chuê, tuì-m̄-chuê.

W. Waì, neĭ-teî pin-shuè à? Haî-m̄-haî Cheung kung-koón à?

Cheung t'aaì-t'aaì*. Haî à. Wân pin-waî* à?

W. Cheung sin-shaang haî shuè mà?

C.T.T. Haî shuè à. Neĭ haî pin-waî* à?

W. Ngŏh haî Wōng Pîng-Ch'uēn à. Neĭ haî Cheung T'aaì-T'aaì* mà?

C.T.T. Haî à. M̄-koi neĭ tâng yat-chân.

Cheung. Wōng sin-shaang, yaŭ mat kwaì-kòn à?

W. Mŏ mat tâk-pît sẑ; pat-kwòh kam-maăn ngŏh seúng ts'îng neĭ t'ūng Cheung t'aaì-t'aaì* ch'ut-laì shîk faân che.

C. Mat kòm haàk-heì à?

W. M̄-haî kâm wâ, shîk ts'aan pîn-faân che.

C. Kâm tsaû toh-tsê sin là pòh.

W. Taaî-yeùk* keì-tîm-chung hóh-ĭ ch'ut-laì à?

C. Taaî-yeùk* lûk-tîm-chung, hô mà?

W. Hó à. Ngŏh haì Naām-Kwòk-Tsaú-Ka tâng neĭ-teî la.

C. Ngŏh-teî lûk-tîm-chung kìn la.

LESSON 3

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. Hello, 20329?

A. You have the wrong connection.

W. I'm sorry.

W. Hello, what number is this? Is this Cheung's residence?

Mrs. C. Yes, who do you want?

W. Is Mr. Cheung there?

Mrs. C. Yes, he is here. Who are you?

W. I'm Wōng-Pîng-Ch'uēn. Are you Mrs. Cheung?

Mrs. C. Yes, please wait a minute.

Cheung. Mr. Wōng, what can I do for you?

W. Nothing in particular; however, I'd like to invite you and Mrs. Cheung out for dinner tonight.

C. That's very kind of you!

W. Not at all, we'll just have an informal dinner.

C. We'll be delighted. (Lit. translation: Then, thank you in advance)

W. About what time can you come?

C. About six o'clock. Is that all right?

W. Good. I'll wait for you at the Naām Kwŏk Restaurant.

C. We'll meet at six o'clock.

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Hello, will you please let me talk to Colonel Wōng?
2. I think I have the wrong number, I am sorry!
3. This is Colonel Wōng's residence. Whom do you want?
4. I am Colonel Wōng. What can I do for you?
5. Nothing in particular. I am going to see a friend off at the airport.
6. I'll wait for you at the bus station around 10 o'clock tomorrow morning.
7. It is very kind of you to come to visit us again!
8. It is just an informal dinner, nothing special.
9. Kwòk Wā Restaurant is one of the best known restaurants in Chinatown.
10. I'd like to invite you and Miss Hōh to my birthday party.
11. He is only eighteen, and he should not be drinking.
12. Please come in here first, and have a cup of tea.
13. I'll be delighted to come. Thank you very much.
14. About what time can you come to my house for dinner?
15. I have to stay home tonight to study for the examination.
16. Driving at high speed is very dangerous.
17. No, thank you! I don't smoke and I don't drink.

LESSON 3

WORD LIST

1.	taàp ts’òh sìn	wrong number in telephoning
2.	kung-koón	residence
3.	tâk-pît	special, particular unusual
4.	m̂-haî kóm wâ	not at all
5.	pîn-faân	informal meal, ordinary meal
6.	tsaú-ka	restaurant

LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

243

考	haaú: to examine; question
考試	haaú-shì: examination
考查	haaú-ch'ā: to investigate

1031

線	sìn: a thread; wire; clue; line.
電線	tîn-sìn: telegraph wire.
路線	lô-sìn: route.
防禦線	fōng-uê sìn: line of defense

1113

特	tâk: only; alone; specially; purposely.
特别	tâk-pît: special; particular; peculiar.
特性	tâk-sìng: peculiarity; individuality.
特色	tâk-shik: distinctive.

考 線 特

考 線 特

考 綫 線 特

867

别	pît: different; other; separation; to differentiate; to part.
分别	fan-pît: to distinguish; difference.
送别	sùng-pît: to see one off.

967

傷	sheung: to injure; to wound; to be distressed; a wound.
打傷	tá sheung: to wound.
傷風	sheung-fung: to catch a cold.

别 傷

别 傷

别 傷

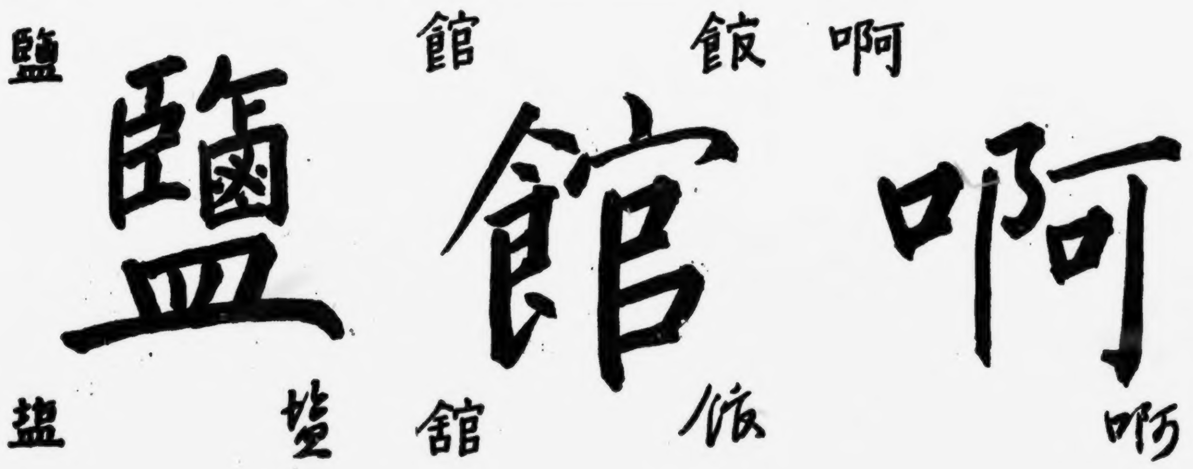
LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

348
鹽 Īm: salt
生鹽 shaang Īm: raw salt
熟鹽 shûk Īm: prepared salt
瀉鹽 sè-Īm: epsom salt

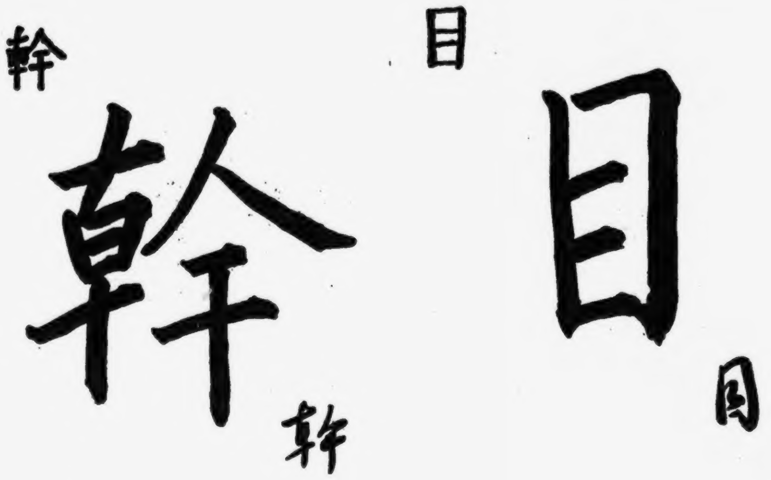
521
館 koón: inn; hall; school.
書館 shue-koón: school.
酒館 tsaú-koón: restaurant.
旅館 luǐ-koón: hotel; inn.

777
啊 ôh: emphatic particle(surprise or disappointment); interjection oh!



500
幹 kòn: ability; skill; business.
能幹 nāng-kòn: capable; talented.
才幹 ts'oī-kòn: ability; talent.
事幹 sî-kòn: an affair; a matter.

724
目 mûk: eye; index; item; to view.
題目 t'aī-mûk: topic; theme.
目的 mûk-tik: goal; end; purpose.
目錄 mûk-lûk: index; table of contents.
目前 mûk-ts'Īn at present for the time being.



LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

一日下午,張公館kè電話fat然heúng là.黃Pîng全打黎kè.張太太認出嗰個人kè聲音,知到佢即係尋日黎探佢地kè老黃.

張先生初時唔知到有乜特別事幹,快啲接電話.啊,原来老黃請佢地去食飯.雖然佢覺得老黃客氣一啲,不過呢啲係佢一塲kè美意,唔可以話唔去.佢地就約定喺嗰晚六點鐘喺南國酒家相會.

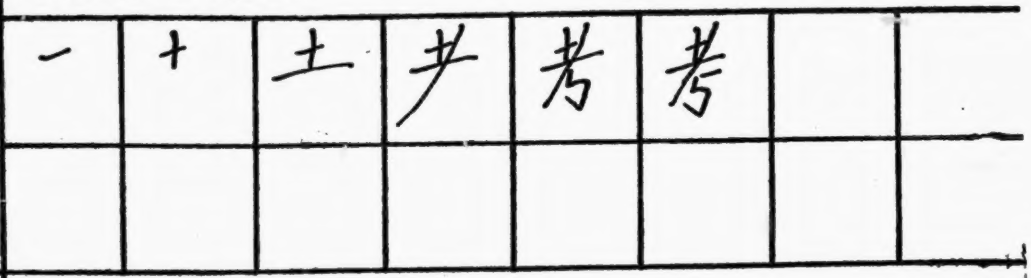
嗰晚張太太着件新shaam着對新haaī.呢啲都係張先生喺上個禮拜買黎送peī佢做生日kè禮物.張先生亦都着一套西裝.

LESSON 3

WRITING MATERIAL

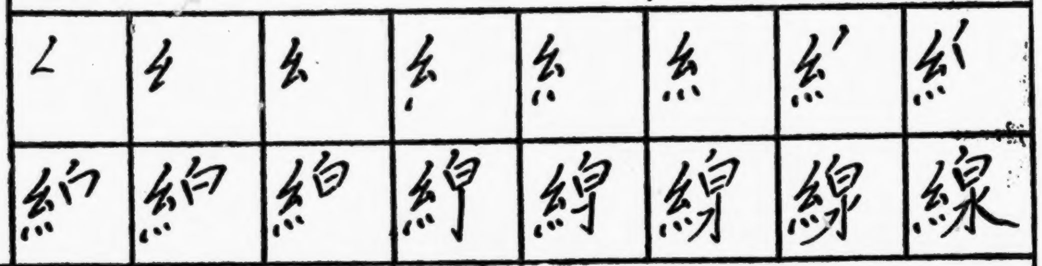
考

Character Number 243 Radical Number 125
Stroke Number 6 老



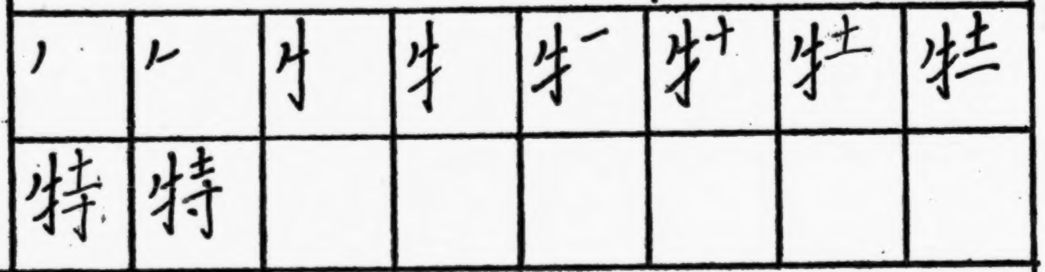
線

Character Number 1031 Radical Number 120
Stroke Number 16 糸 , 糹



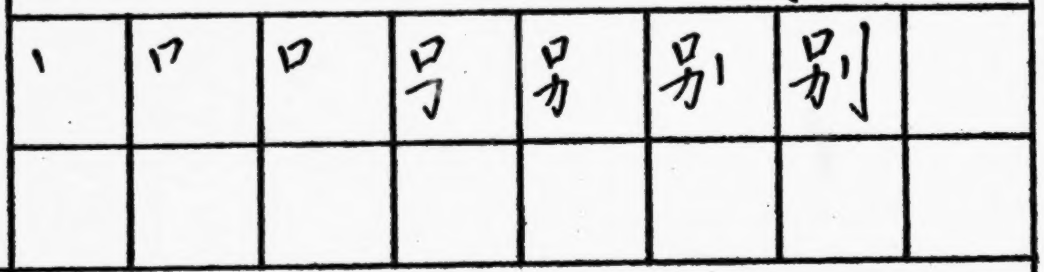
特

Character Number 1113 Radical Number 93
Stroke Number 10 牛 , 牜



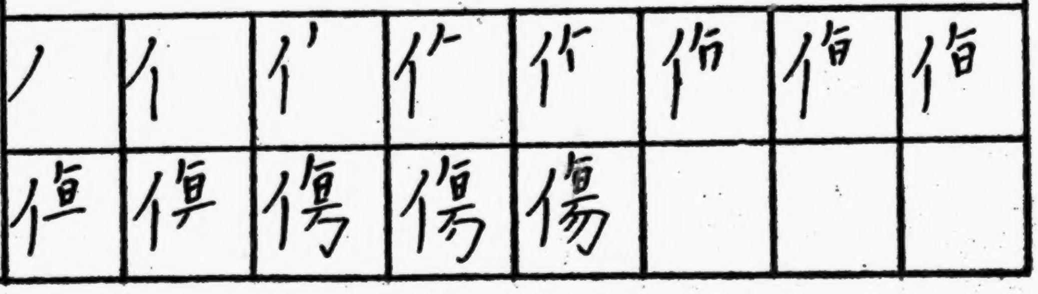
別

Character Number 867 Radical Number 18
Stroke Number 7 刀 , 刂

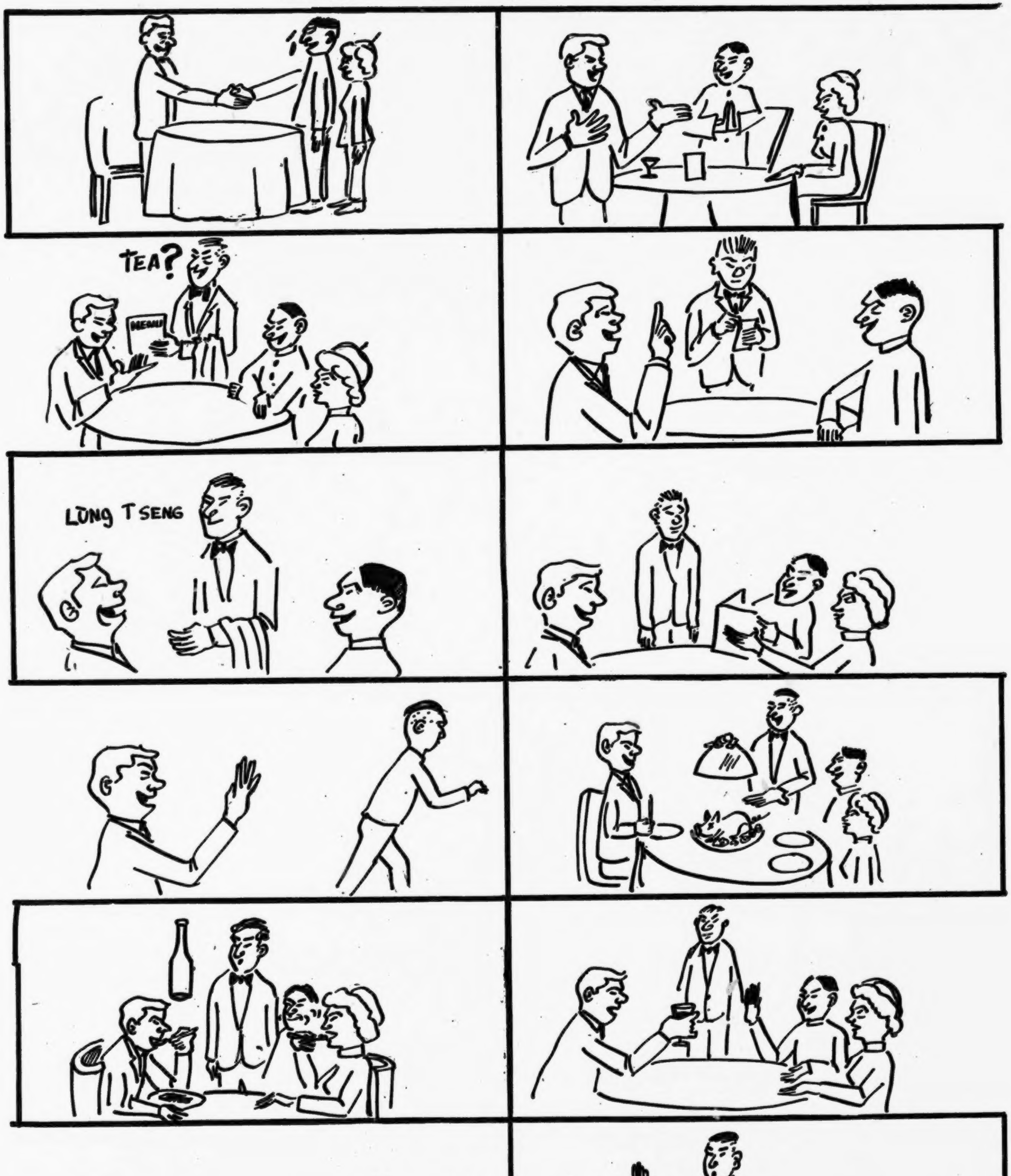


傷

Character Number 967 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 13 人 , 亻



LESSON 4


TEA?
LŪNG TSENG

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Cheung sin-shaang, Cheung t'aaì-t'aaì*.

Cheung. Wōng sin-shaang, m̄-hó-ì-sz̀, lîng neĭ tâng-chóh kòm noî.

W. Laî-chóh mŏ keî noî che.

C. Tuì-m̄-chuê wòh, ngŏh-teî laî-ch'î-chóh.

W. Ŏh, m̄-kân-iù, m̄-kân-iù. Ts'îng ts'ŏh, ts'îng ts'ŏh.

Fóh-keì. Sin-shaang, yâm mat ch'ā ne? Ni-cheung haî kam-maăn kè ts'oì-taan.

W. Cheung sin-shaang, Cheung t'aaì-t'aaì*, chung-ì yâm mi-yĕ ch'ā à?

C. Ts'uì-pîn* la, Wōng sin-shaang.

W. Fóh-keì, ts'îng neĭ ch'ung oō Lūng-Tsêng laî la.

Fóh-keì. Hó hó.

W. Cheung sin-shaang, Cheung t'aaì-t'aaì*, ts'îng neĭ-teî leŭng-waî* tîm ts'oì la.

C. Tsaû tîm ni-keî-meî*, hó mà?

W. Hó à. Fóh-keì, m̄-koi neĭ faaì-ti.

F. Sin-shaang, sheŭng ts'oì lòh.

W. Ts'îng taaî-ka heî-faaì* là.

Cheung t'aaì-t'aaì*. Wōng sin-shaang, ni-ti sùng chan-haî hó-shîk là.

F. Sin-shaang, yâm tsaú mà?

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. Cheung sin-shaang, Cheung t'aaì-t'aaì*, yám ti mi-yĕ tsaú à?

C. Ngŏh-teî hó-shiú yám tsaú kà pòh.

W. Yám se-shiú Pe-Tsaú la, hó mà?

C. Hó la, yám shiú-shiú la.

W. Fóh-keì, m̄-koi neĭ maaì-taan la.

C. Toh-tsê saaì là pòh, Wōng sin-shaang.

W. M̄-toh-tsê, neĭ sheúng-mîn* che.

LESSON 4

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. Mr. Cheung, Mrs. Cheung.

Cheung. Mr. Wōng, I'm ashamed of myself for making you wait so long.

W. I've not been here very long.

C. I'm sorry. We have come late.

W. Oh, it doesn't matter. Please sit down.

Waiter. What kind of tea would you like to drink, sir? Here's tonight's menu.

W. Mr. and Mrs. Cheung, what kind of tea would you like to drink?

C. Anything you wish, Mr. Wōng.

W. Waiter, please make us a pot of Lūng-Tsέng.

Wa. Very well.

W. Mr. and Mrs. Cheung, will you please select the dishes?

C. We'll have these dishes then. Is that all right?

W. Good. Waiter, please hurry a bit.

Wa. Dinner is served, sir.

W. Let's start eating.

Mrs. C. These dishes are really tasty, Mr. Wōng.

Wa. Some liquor to drink, sir?

W. Mr. and Mrs. Cheung, what kind of liquor would you like to drink?

LESSON 4

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

C. We seldom drink.

W. Would you like to have some beer?

C. Good. We'll have a little.

W. Waiter, please make out the check.

C. Thanks for everything, Mr. Wōng.

W. Not at all. You have honored me.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I didn't know you could come to my birthday party. I'm honored!
2. Waiter, will you please get us chopsticks?
3. It doesn't matter. Please bring me the check.
4. I know a little bit of Cantonese and a little bit of English.
5. You can see from this menu that the food is not expensive.
6. Are you really thirsty? Didn't you have two bottles of beer just now?
7. You have to walk a little bit faster or you will be late.
8. Since you know so much Chinese, I am sure you can read the menu.
9. Dinner is served. Please be seated.
10. If you are going to take care of the check, you might as well also order the food.
11. The dishes are all here. Let's start eating.
12. The dishes are tasty and delicious, and this pot of tea is excellent.
13. Please order anything you wish. It doesn't matter to me.
14. This man is an employee of the China Department Store.
15. Please make us a pot of tea. We would like to have Lūng-Tsěng.
16. Mrs. Leǐ, I am ashamed of myself. I forgot to

telephone you yesterday.

17. There is a unusual taste in this beer. Have you noticed it?

LESSON 4

WORD LIST

1.	Lũng-Tsêng	a brand of Chinese tea
2.	sheŭng ts'oì	dinner is served
3.	se-shiú	a little bit
4.	pe-tsaú	beer
5.	sheúng-mîn*	I'm honored

LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

1230

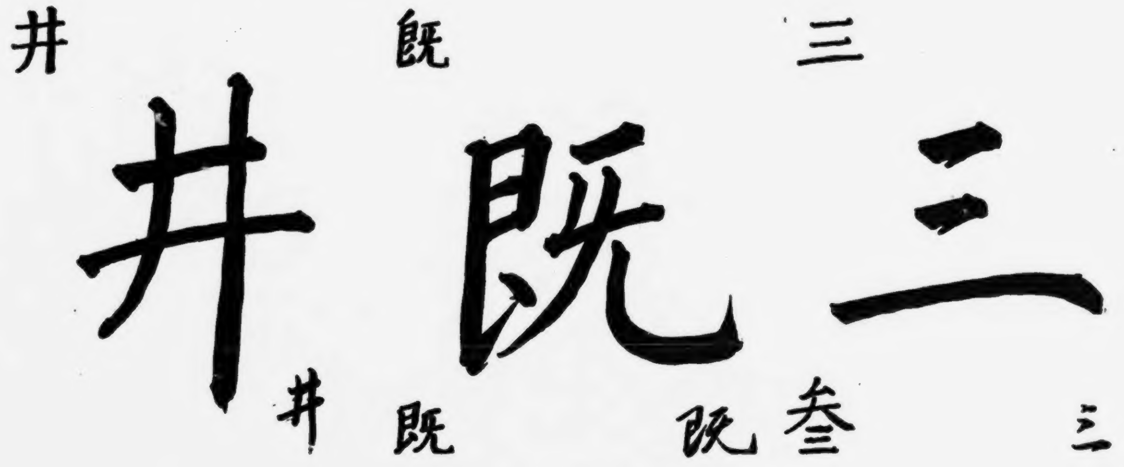
井	tséng, tsíng: well; deep pit.
井水	tséng shuí: water from the well.

442

既	keì: already; since.
既然	keì-īn: since; seeing that; whereas.

906

三	saam: the numeral three.
三角形	saam-kòk-yīng: triangle.
三角	saam-kòk: thirty cents; triangle.

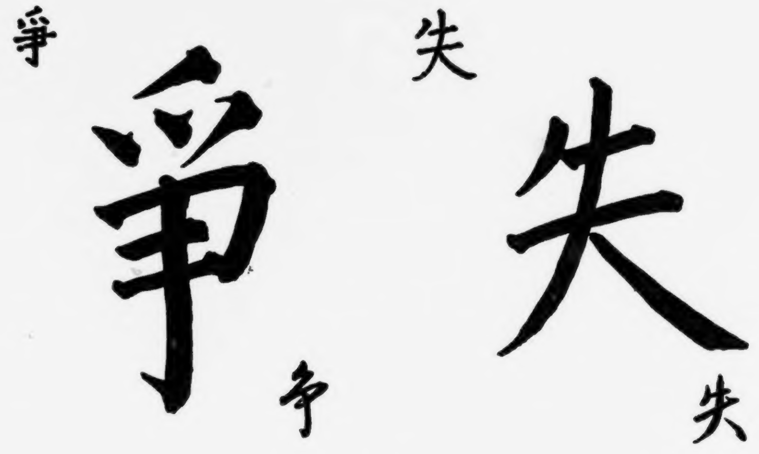


18

爭	chaang: to debate wrangle, contest
爭	chang: ditto.
爭執	chaang-chap: disagreement.
爭啲	chaang-ti: almost, nearly.
爭論	chaang-lûn: to dispute, argue
	chìn-chang war

952

失	shat: to lose; to err; a fault.
失火	shat-fóh: accidental fire.
失業	shat îp: to lose one's employment.
失望	shat-mông: hopelessness; despair.



LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

970

賞 sheúng: to reward; to bestow; to confer upon.

打賞 tá-sheúng: to reward; tip.

賞罰 sheúng fât: reward and punishment.

392

夾 kaàp: to press together; to squeeze

夾埋 kaàp-maaī: to put or press together

夾萬 kaàp-maàn: a safe

夾衣 kaàp-i: quilted clothing

夾帶 kaàp-taaī: carry secretly

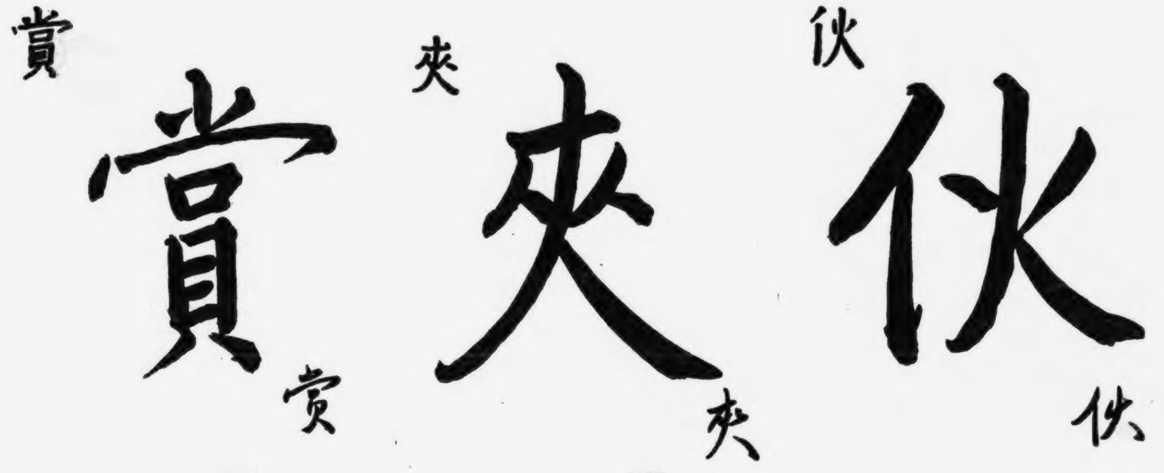
190

伙 fóh: tools; goods

伙食 fóh-shîk: provisions

伙記 fóh-keì: waiter employee of a store

伙頭 fóh-t'aū: a cook



920

四 seì: the numeral four.

四方 seì-fong: everywhere; square.

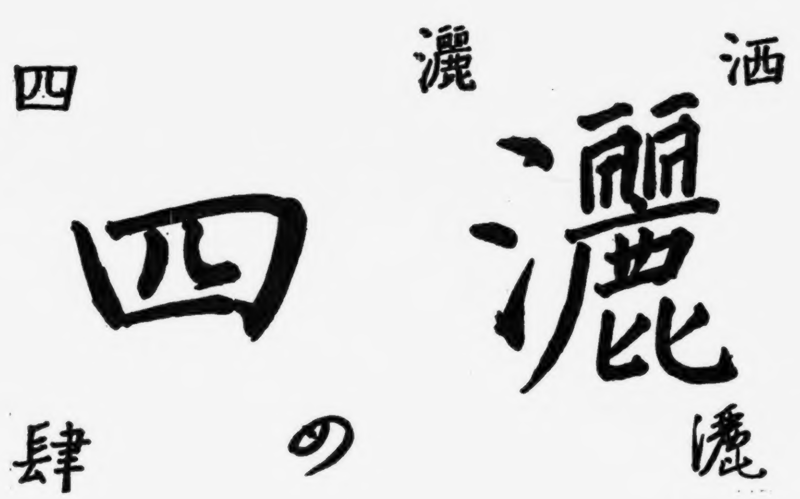
四圍 seì-waī: every direction; four points of compass

931

灑 shá: to sprinkle (liquid); scatter; to spill.

灑花 shá fa: watering pot.

灑水 shá shuí: to sprinkle water.



LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

張先生同太太準備下午六點鐘去老黃 kè 晚飯約會.但係張太太要着 i 服,灑香水;夾埋着對新 haaī 又唔行得快;所以佢地到遲 chôh 成半個鐘頭.老黃等 chôh 好耐,但係佢冇辦法.

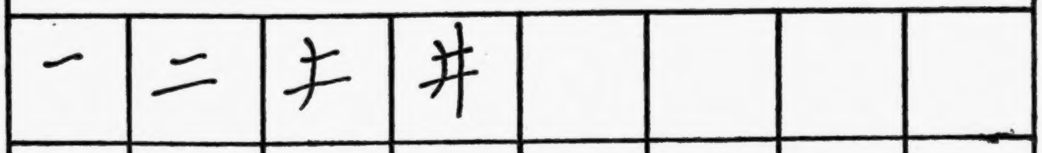
老黃因為佢地 kồm 賞面黎到,先叫伙記 ning 茶黎;等佢地解渴.佢地坐喺處講吓廣州 kè 同美國各處地方 kè 情形.有幾耐伙記就 ch'ung chóh 一 lūng-井茶同 ning 三張菜單黎.老黃就請張先生點幾味好菜.

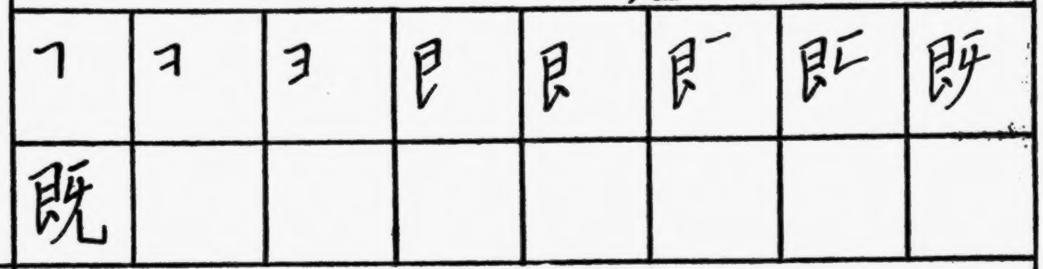
老黃又問佢地中意飲 mi-野酒.張太太話唔飲得太猛太辣 kè,所以只係叫 chôh 幾 pooi pe-酒.

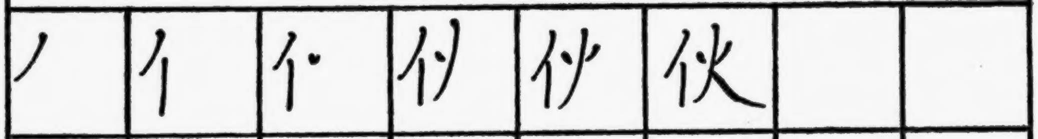
LESSON 4

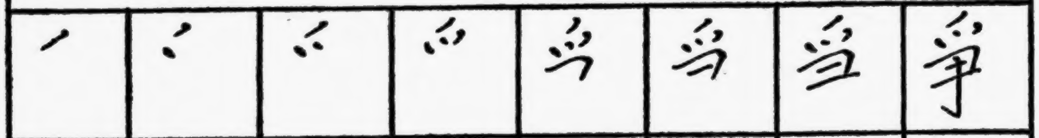
WRITING MATERIAL

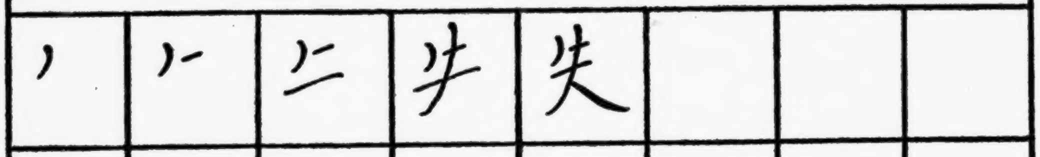
井	Character Number 1230 Radical Number 7 Stroke Number 4 二
既	Character Number 442 Radical Number 71 Stroke Number 9 无，旡
伙	Character Number 190 Radical Number 9 Stroke Number 6 人，亻
爭	Character Number 18 Radical Number 87 Stroke Number 8 爪，爫
失	Character Number 952 Radical Number 37 Stroke Number 5 大



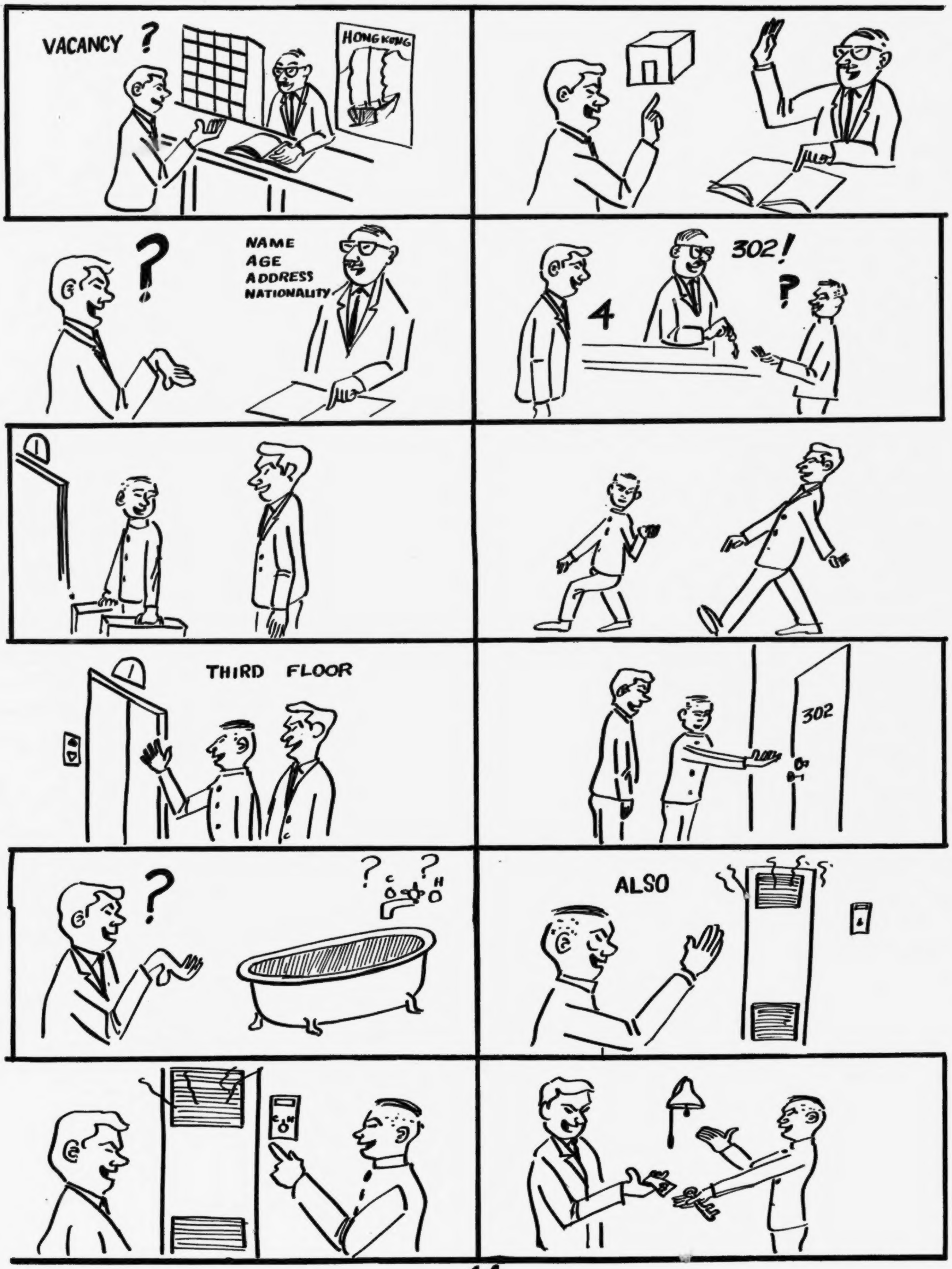








LESSON 5


VACANCY ?
HONG KONG
?
NAME
AGE
ADDRESS
NATIONALITY
4
302!
?
THIRD FLOOR
302
?
? C H ?
ALSO
C H

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Sin-shaang, yaŭ-mŏ fōng* à?

Sz-leĭ. Yaŭ la, sin-shaang, neĭ iù pin-chúng fōng* ne?

W. Ngŏh seúng hoi kaan taan-yān-fōng*.

S. Hó hó. Ts'îng neĭ sin chuè-ch'aàk la.

W. Chuè-ch'aàk shaú-tsûk tîm-yeûng* kà?

S. Hó kaán-taan kè che. Ts'îng neĭ tseung neĭ kè sīng-mīng, nīn-suì, teî-chî, kwòk-tsîk, sé haî ni-cheung piú-kaàk-chî sheûng-pîn, tsaû tak là.

W. Ŏh!

S. Fôh-keì, ts'îng neĭ taaì Wōng sin-shaang sheŭng-huì saam-līng-î-hô fōng* la.

Fóh-keì. Sin-shaang, neĭ yaŭ keî-kîn hāng-leĭ à?

W. Yaŭ seì-kîn, haî moōn-haú-shuè.

F. M̄-koi neĭ tâng hă, ngŏh huì lôh-chóh ti hāng-leĭ yâp-laī sin.

W. M̄-koi, m̄-koi.

F. Sin-shaang, ts'îng haî ni-pîn laī la.

W. Hó hó.

F. Saam-līng-î-hô fōng* haî saam-laū*, ts'îng neĭ ts'ŏh shing-kòng-kei sheŭng-huì la.

F. Ni-kaan tsaû haî là, sin-shaang.

W. Ni-kaan fōng* yaŭ saî-shan-fōng*, yaŭ laăng-ît-shuî mà?

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

F. Yaŭ à. Pat-chî yaŭ laăng-ît-shuì, ì-ch'ê yaŭ laăng-ît-heì ťim pòh.

W. Laăng-ît-heì kè chaì haî pin-tô à? Tîm hoi kà?

F. Ne, haî ni-tô à, sin-shaang. Kâm-yeûng* tsaû hoi laăng-heì, kâm-yeûng* tsaû hoi ît-heì.

W. M̄-koi neĭ là. Ni-ti ts'ìn* haî ning laì tá-sheúng neĭ kè.

F. Toh-tsê, sin-shaang, uē-kwôh neĭ iù mi-yĕ, ts'îng neĭ kâm hă tîn-chung la. Ni-t'iū haî moōn-shī.

W. M̄-koi saaì lòh.

LESSON 5

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. Do you have a vacancy?

Manager. Yes, sir, we have. What kind of room would you like to have?

W. I'd like to have a single room.

M. Surely. Will you please register first?

W. What is the registration procedure?

M. It is very simple. Please write your name, age, address, and nationality on this card. That's all.

W. Oh!

M. Boy, please take Mr. Wōng up to Room 302.

Boy. How many pieces of baggage do you have, sir?

W. I have four. They are at the doorway.

B. Please wait a moment. I'll take the baggage in first.

W. Thank you.

B. Please come this way, sir.

W. Very well.

B. Room 302 is on the third floor. Please take the elevator up.

B. This is the one, sir.

W. Is there a bathroom in this room? Is there hot and cold water?

LESSON 5

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

B. Yes. Not only is there hot and cold water, but also there is a cooling and heating system.

W. Where is the control switch for the cooling and heating system? How do you turn it on?

B. Right here, sir. You turn this way for cool air, that way for warm.

W. Thank you. Here's your tip.

B. Thank you, sir. If you need anything, please press the electric bell. This is the door key.

W. Thank you for everything.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. This hotel is very inexpensive, but all the rooms have hot and cold water.
2. This is the switch to stop the elevator, and that is the one to start it.
3. I don't have the key to open this door. How about you?
4. The electric bell is next to the doorway. You have to press it hard.
5. Thank you for bringing up the baggage. Here is a tip for you.
6. My house does not have a cooling and heating system. It is an old house.
7. This form is very simple. All you have to do is write down your registration number.
8. It does not look like a single room to me. What do you think?
9. I have registered at the office, but the procedure is not very simple.
10. Do you know his name, age, address, and nationality?
11. What kind of drink do you want, whiskey or brandy?
12. I don't believe there is a vacancy in this hotel.
13. He has ten keys and he doesn't know which one is for the car.
14. If you need anything, please tell me 24 hours in advance.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. It is very kind of you. Thank you for everything.

16. He puts his baggage near the door of the elevator and waits.

17. You don't have to worry, the clerk will come very soon.

LESSON 5

WORD LIST

1.	pin chúng	what kind?
2.	taan-yān fōng*	single room
3.	chuè-ch'aàk	to register; registration
4.	shaú-tsûk	procedure
5.	kaán-taan	simple
6.	sìng-mìng	full name
7.	nìn-shuì	age
8.	teî-chì	address
9.	kwòk-tsîk	nationality
10.	piú-kaàk-chì	form
11.	hāng-leǐ	baggage, luggage
12.	moōn-haú	doorway
13.	shing-kòng-kei	elevator
14.	laăng-ît heì	hot and cold air
15.	tá sheúng	to tip, reward
16.	kâm	to press down
17.	tîn-chung	electric bell, door bell
18.	moōn-shì	door key
19.	chaì	switch
20.	laăng ît shuì	hot and cold water
21.	lóh	to take

LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

869

表 piú: to show forth; external; cousin of different surname.

表示 piú-shì: to show forth; manifest.

表現 piú-ìn: to manifest; to show forth.

表情 piú-ts'ìng: expression of emotion.

383

格 kaàk: model; pattern

資格 tsz-kaàk: qualification; ability

性格 sìng-kaàk: character; temperament

格式 kaàk-shik: pattern; model; example

1319

續 tsûk to continue; to join onto; to connect; to succeed to.

手續 shaú-tsûk: procedure; process.

續假 tsûk kà: to extend one's leave.

表 格 續

表格續

表 格 续

1033

姓 sìng: a clan; surname.

貴姓名 kwài sìng-mēng: what is your name?

姓名 sìng-mēng: full name.

687

名 mēng: name; fame; reputation.

名字 mēng-tsž: name of person, shop, etc.

名片 mēng-p'ìn: a visiting card.

出名 ch'ut-mēng: well known.

名譽 mēng-uê: reputation; honorary.

姓 名

姓名

姓 名

LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

738

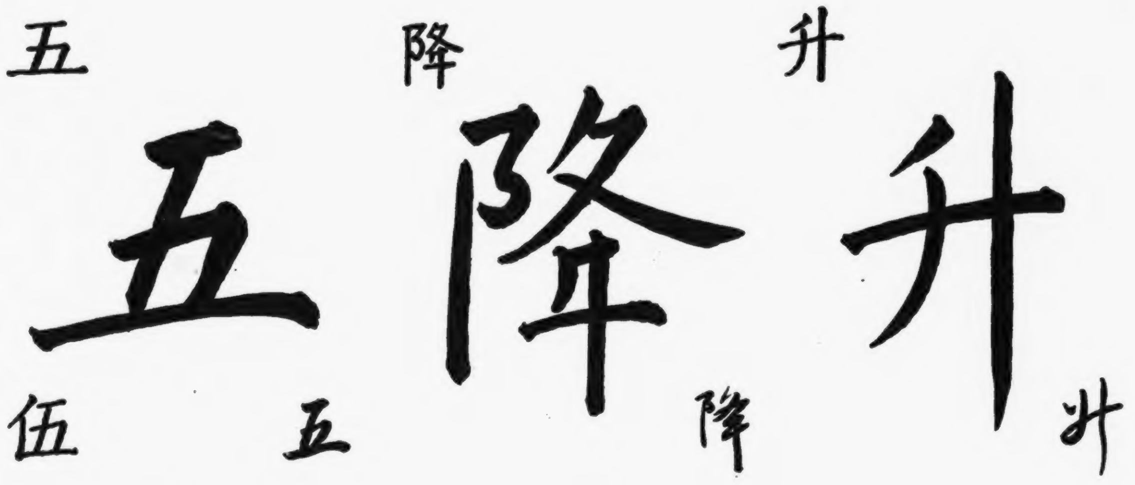
五	nğ: the numeral five.
五穀	nğ kuk: the five grains; grains in general.
五族	nğ tsûk: the five races of the Chinese Republic.

506

降	kòng(or hŏng): to descend; come down from heaven; to condescend.
降級	kòng kap: to degrade.
升降機	shing-kòng-kei: elevator.
降臨	kòng-lām: advent; coming.
降雨	kòng uě: to rain.

990

升	shing. to rise; to ascend; a pint, carrying pole.
升高	shing-ko: to ascend.
升任	shing yâm: promotion.

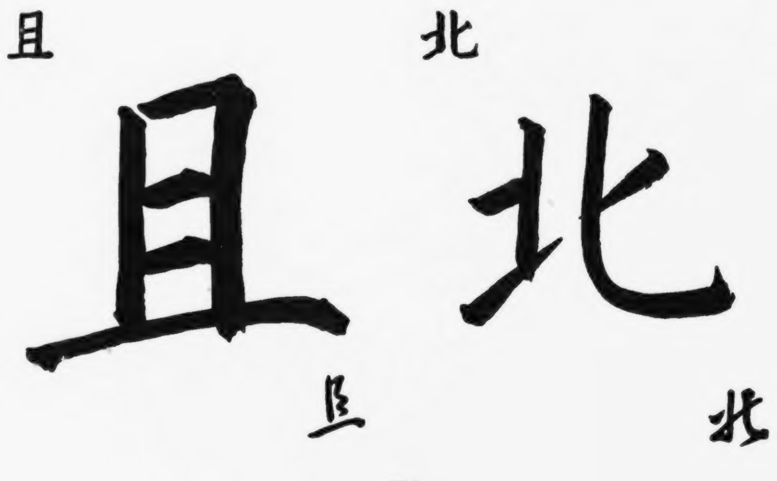


48

且	ch'é: also; moreover
尚且	sheûng-ch'é: but yet; still
況且	fòng-ch'é: moreover
而且	Ī-ch'é: also

826

北	pak: north; to flee.
北京	pak-king: Peking.
北平	pak-p'7ng: Peking.
敗北	paaî-pak: defeated; routed.



LESSON 5

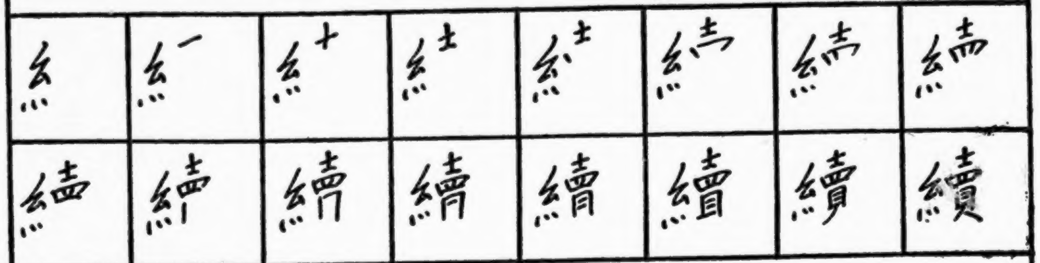
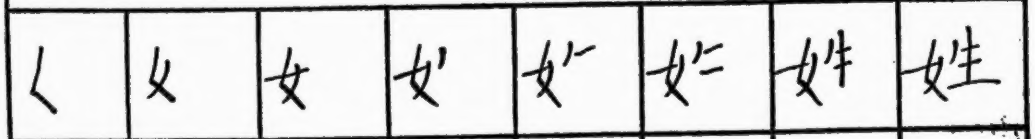
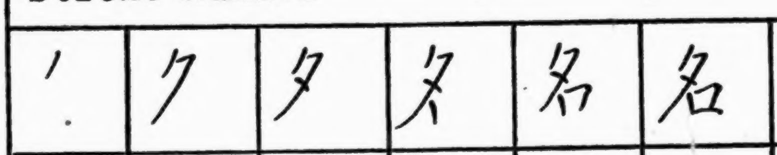
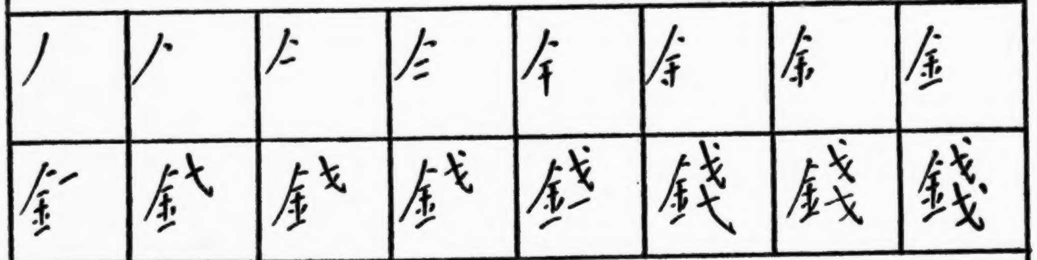
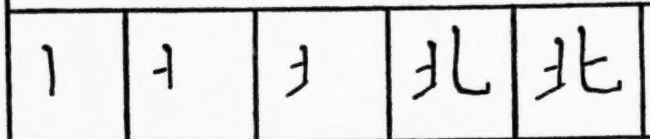
READING MATERIAL

黃 Pìng 全初到省城嘅時候,住喺新A酒店.但係嗰處地方唔係幾乾淨,啲 fàn 房又細,ka私太舊,窗門heùng北唔夠光,有啲住客講說話講得好大聲.住得唔係幾shue服.

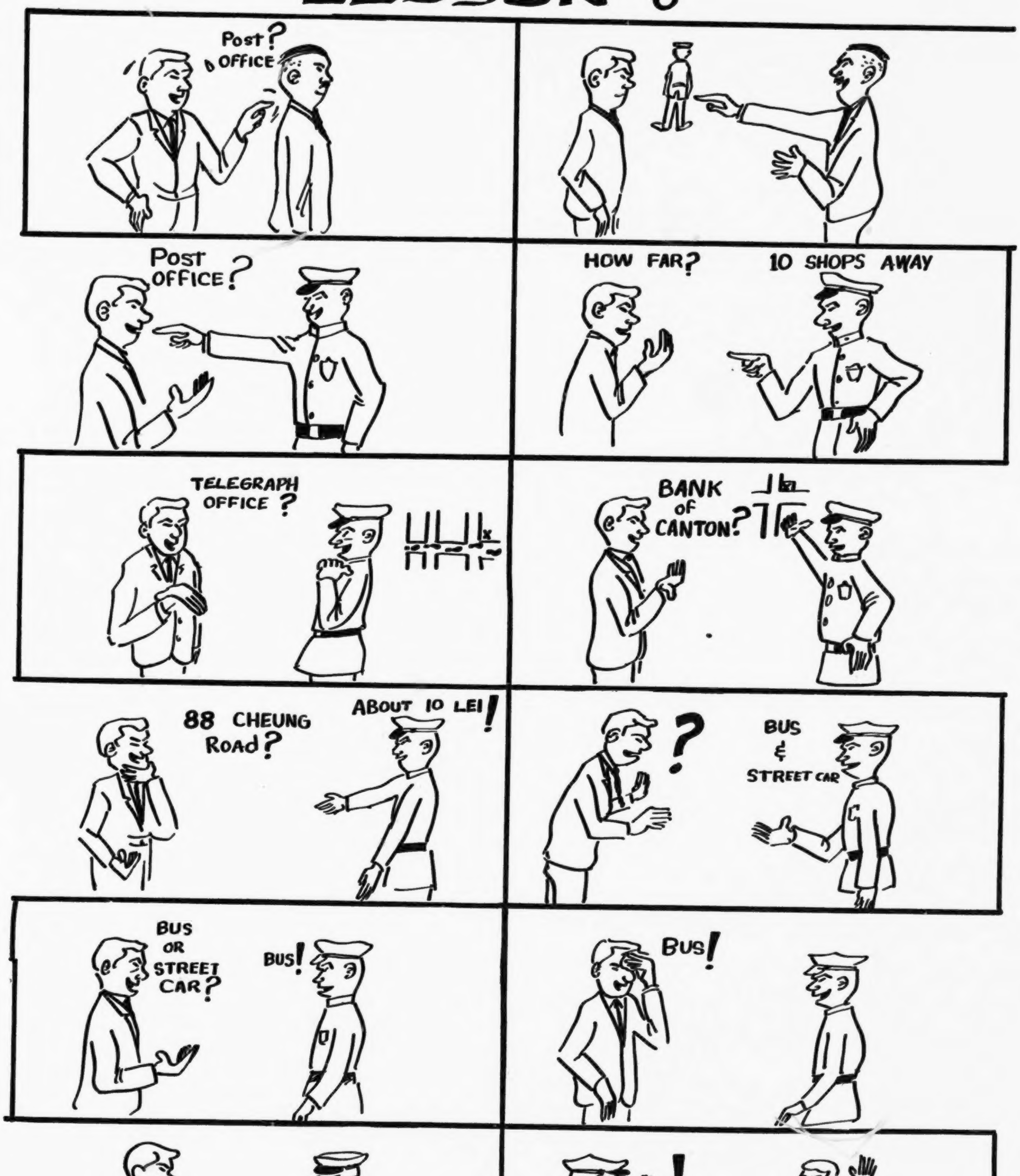
佢住 chōh 一個 sing-k'eī kòm上下,就喺附近 wán 過第二間新式啲嘅酒店.Yâ幾層kòm高,總共有四百 sa-a幾個房.每個房都有洗身房.不只有冷熱水,而且有冷熱氣.上落有升降機.價錢亦都唔係太貴.雖然佢又要做 chuè ch'aàk 嘅手續,喺表格紙上便寫姓名,年-suì等等,亦唔算麻煩.

LESSON 5

WRITING MATERIAL

續	Character Number 1319 Radical Number 120 Stroke Number 21 糸，糹 
姓	Character Number 1033 Radical Number 38 Stroke Number 8 女 
名	Character Number 687 Radi.al Number 30 Stroke Number 6 口 
錢	Character Number 1255 Radical Number 167 Stroke Number 16 金，釒 
北	Character Number 826 Radical Number 21 Stroke Number 5 匕，匕 

LESSON 6


Post? OFFICE
POST OFFICE?
HOW FAR?
10 SHOPS AWAY
TELEGRAPH OFFICE?
BANK OF CANTON?
88 CHEUNG ROAD?
ABOUT 10 LEI!
?
BUS & STREET CAR
BUS OR STREET CAR?
BUS!
BUS!
!

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Tui-m̄-chuê, tui-m̄-chuê, ts'ing mân yaû-ching-kûk hai pin-tô à?

Lô-yān. Chan-haî tui-m̄-chuê là, ngŏh to-haî ch'oh-ts'è tò ni-shuê kè che, ts'ing neī mân kŏh-waî* king-ch'aàt la.

W. Sin-shaang, ts'ing mân yaû-ching-kûk hai pin-tô à?

King-ch'aàt. Yaû-ching-kûk hai ts'in-pîn kŏh-t'iû Waî-Oi-Lô.

W. Taaî-yeùk* kei-uĕn ne?

K. Ŏh, taaî-yeùk* shâp-lĕng-kaan p'ò-waî* tsaû haî lòh.

W. Ts'ing mân tîn-pò-kûk hai pin-shuê ne?

K. Tîn-pò-kûk hai haû-pîn kŏh-t'iû kaai. Neī iù haāng faan-chuèn-t'aû leùng-kòh-kaai-haû tsaû kin-tŏ lòh.

W. Yaû ts'ing mân neī Kwŏng-Tung-Ngān-Hōng hai pin-tô ne?

K. Kwŏng-Tung-Ngān-Hōng hai kŏh-t'aû; neī heùng kŏh-t'iû-kaai yat-chîk haāng-tò taî-sei-kòh-kaai-haû, chuèn yaû-shaû-pîn tsaû haî lòh.

W. Chung-Ching-Lô paàt-shâp-ts'at-hô lei ni-shuê yaŭ kei-uĕn à?

K. Kei-uĕn kà-pòh. Taaî-yeùk* lei ni-shuê yaŭ shĕng sei-leī kòm uĕn kà-pòh!

W. Kòm uĕn kā! Yaŭ-mō ch'e hŏh-ī hui-tak-tò kŏh-shuê kà?

K. Yaŭ à. Tîn-ch'e kung-kûng-hei-ch'e to hui-tak-tò kè.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. Tîn-ch'e tò kóh-shuè faaì-ti a, yik-waâk kung-kûng-heì-ch'e tò kóh-shuè faaì-ti ne?

K. Kung-kûng-heì-ch'e faaì-ti.

W. Ue-kwóh haî kóm, ngŏh pat-uē taàp kung-kûng-heì-ch'e là.

K. Ngŏh to-haî kóm wâ lòh.

W. M-koi-saaì, hó-tsoî neĭ wâ peì ngŏh chi, m̄-haî ngŏh yat-tîng ooĭ tông-shat-lô lòh.

K. M-shaî m̄-koi, ni-ti haî ngŏh ying-fân tsô kè chik-chaàk.

LESSON 6

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. I beg your pardon. May I ask where the post office is?

Pedestrian. I'm awfully sorry. I'm also here for the first time. Please ask that policeman.

W. Sir, may I ask where the post office is?

Policeman. The post office is on Waî-Oì Road, that street in front of us.

W. About how far?

P. Oh, about ten or more shops away.

W. May I ask where the telegraph office is?

P. The telegraph office is on the street behind us. You have to walk back two blocks (street intersections) then you'll see it.

W. May I also ask where the Bank of Canton is?

P. The Bank of Canton is over there. You follow that street and walk straight until you come to the fourth intersection, turn right, and the bank is there.

W. How far is 87 Chung-Chìng Road from here?

P. Rather far. About four miles from here.

W. That far! Is there any vehicle going there?

P. Yes, both streetcar and bus go there.

W. Will the streetcar or bus get there faster?

P. The bus is faster.

LESSON 6

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. If that's the case, I might as well take the bus.

P. I'd say so.

W. Thank you for everything. It is a good thing you told me, otherwise, I'd definitely have lost my way.

P. Not at all. This is my duty.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. It is a good thing that you can swim. Otherwise, what would you do?
2. It is the clerk's duty to show you the restroom, the kitchen and the bath.
3. He should be more careful in his driving, especially on the highway.
4. If that is the case, we have to drive another 20 miles before we will be there.
5. The telegraph office is right next to the Post Office.
6. He had to turn around and go back because he had forgotten his luggage.
7. There are eight policemen at the street intersection, not too far from the Bank of America.
8. This store space is narrower and smaller than that one.
9. If you go along the other side of the street, you will reach the butcher shop.
10. You have to go two blocks, turn right, and the bus station is there.
11. The Bank of California is over there. It is not too far from here.
12. It is far away, but there are street cars and buses going there.
13. You should finish your study before you go to bed.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. We had a delicious lunch in a Chinese restaurant the day before yesterday.

15. Generally speaking, buses are faster than street cars.

16. There were four cars involved in a collision at the intersection.

17. It is the policeman's duty to take the injured to the hospital.

LESSON 6

WORD LIST

1.	mân lô	to ask for directions
2.	kìng-ch'aàt	policeman
3.	keì uěn	quite far; how far?
4.	shâp-lēng	ten or more, between ten and twenty
5.	p'ò-waî*	store space
6.	tîn-pò kûk	telegraph office
7.	haāng-faan-chuèn-t'aū	to walk back, turn around and go back
8.	kaai-haú	street intersection, block
9.	ngān-hōng (*)	bank
10.	yat-chîk	straight
11.	leǐ	mile
12.	leì	distant from
13.	kung-kûng heì-ch'e	bus
14.	uē-kwóh haî kóm	if that is the case
15.	tông-shat-lô	to lose one's way, to stray
16.	ying-fân	ought to, should
17.	chik-chaàk	duty and responsibility
18.	hó-tsoî	it is a good thing that

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

86

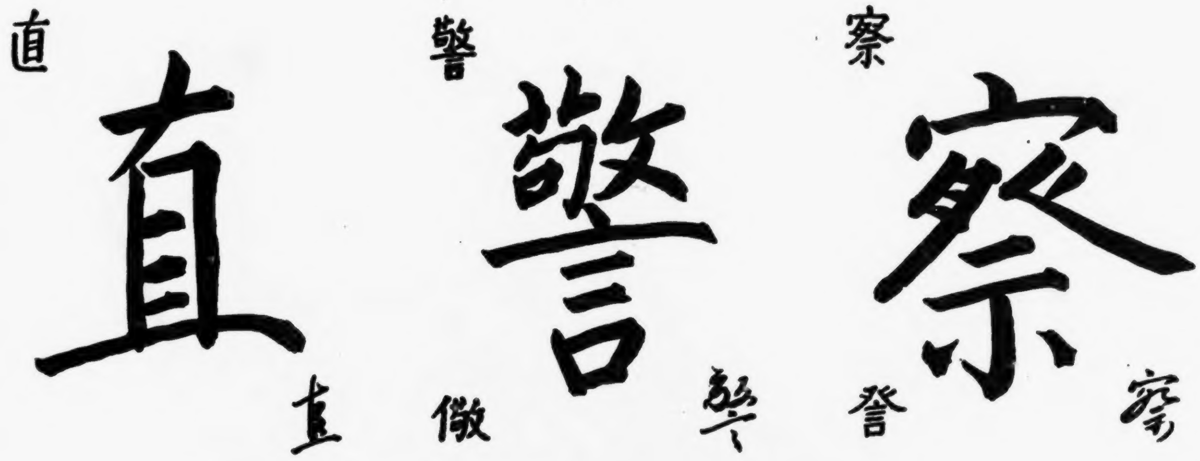
直	chîk: straight
直去	chîk huì: straight ahead
直言	chîk în: outspoken frankness
忠直	chung-chîk: unaffected; artless

466

警	kíng: to warn; to caution.
警察	kíng-ch'aàt: police.
警戒	kíng-kaaì: to admonish.
警醒	kíng síng: to awaken; to exhort.
警報	kíng-pò: (air raid) siren.

20

察	ch'aàt: to examine, investigate
查察	ch'ā-ch'aàt: to inquire
監察	kaam-ch'aàt: inspection, examination
警察	kíng-ch'aàt: policeman.

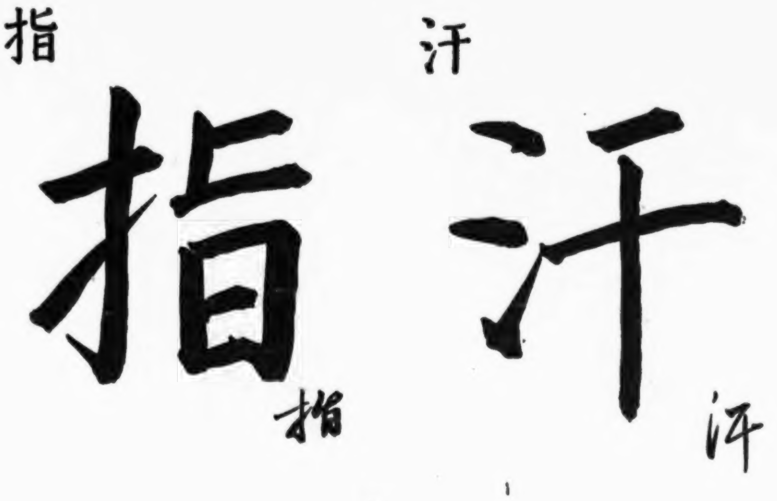


69

指	chí: finger (Cl. chèk) to point, indicate
手指公	shaú-chí-kung: thumb
指教	chí-kaaù: to advise
指揮	chí-fai: to command
指甲	chí-kaàp: finger nail

306

汗	hôn: perspiration, sweat
出汗	ch'ut hôn: to perspire
流汗	laû hôn: to sweat; perspire



LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

85

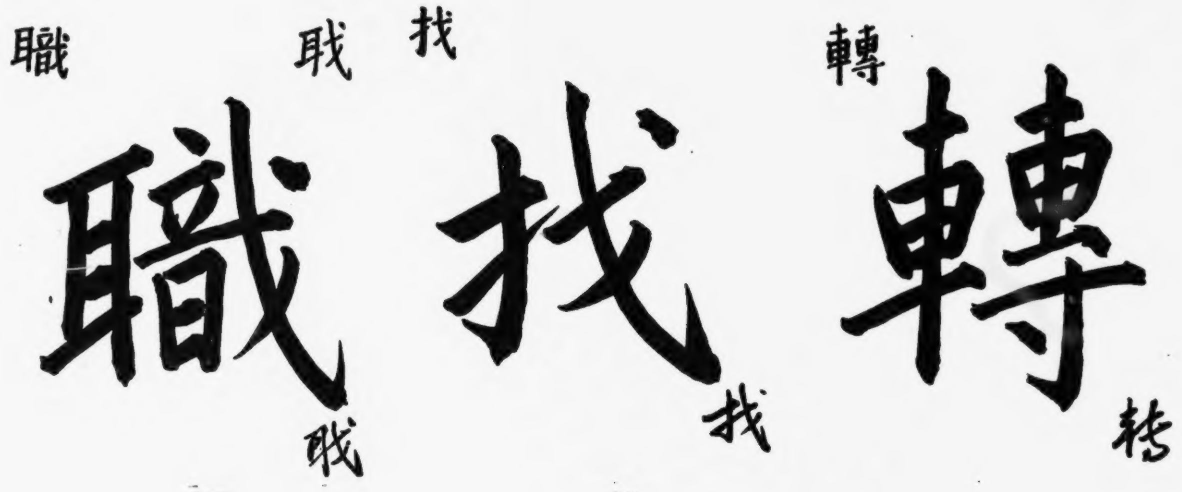
職	chik: duty
職業	chik-îp: occupation; profession
職員	chik-uēn: personnel; staff
職位	chik-wâi: position

21

找	chaaú: to seek, to change (as money)
找尋	chaaú-ts'ām: to seek, search for
找換處	chaaú-oôn-ch'uè: money exchanger

129

轉	chuén: change; rotate
轉	chuèn: to turn
轉灣	chuèn-waan: turn a bend
轉頭	chuén-t'aū: to turn back
調轉頭	tiû-chuèn-t'aū: to turn around; on the contrary

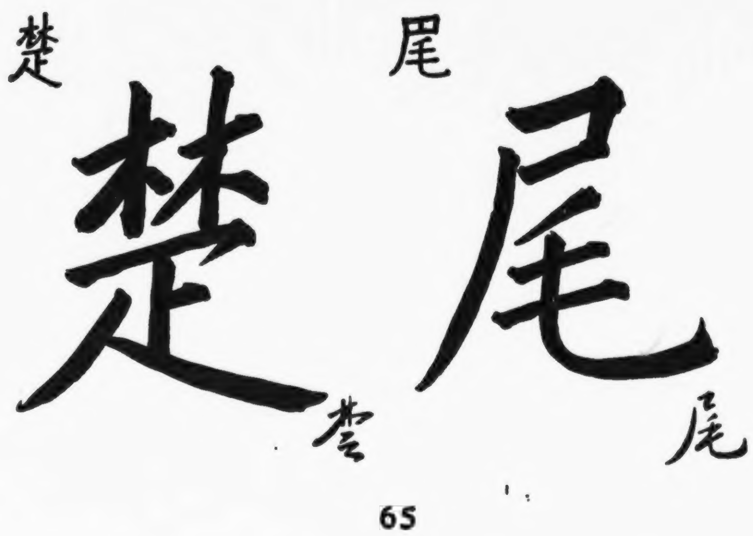


109

楚	ch'óh: distressing; painful; clear
苦楚	foó-ch'óh: hard; distressing;
清楚	ts'ing-ch'óh: clear

684

尾	meǐ: the tail; end.
擺尾	paaí meǐ: to wag the tail.
尾後	meǐ-haû: afterwards.
數尾	shò meǐ: balance left; unpaid balance.



LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

朝早七點鐘,老黃起身洗面着shaam之後,去酒店樓下食早ts'aan.點解佢要kòm早預備出街呢?因為佢有好幾件事要辦;即係去郵政局寄信,去電報局打電報,去銀行找錢等等.

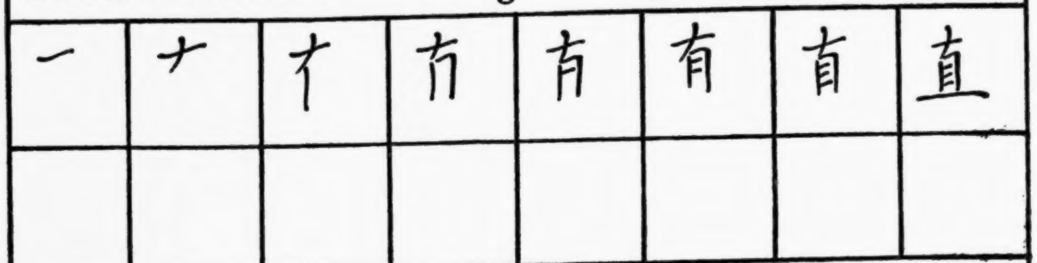
老黃唔係幾識路,先要知清楚點樣去嗰啲地方.呢件事最好係問警察,因為警察有指點行人嘅職責.佢問明之後,而家知道邊處可以直去,邊處可以taap電車或公共汽車,點樣轉車

LESSON 6

WRITING MATERIAL

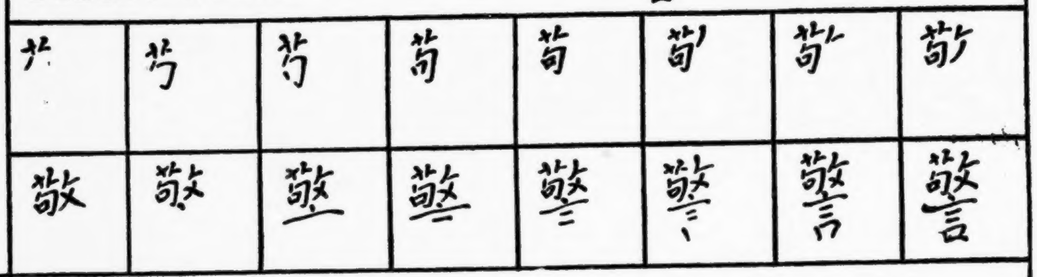
直

Character Number 86 **Radical Number** 109
Stroke Number 8 目



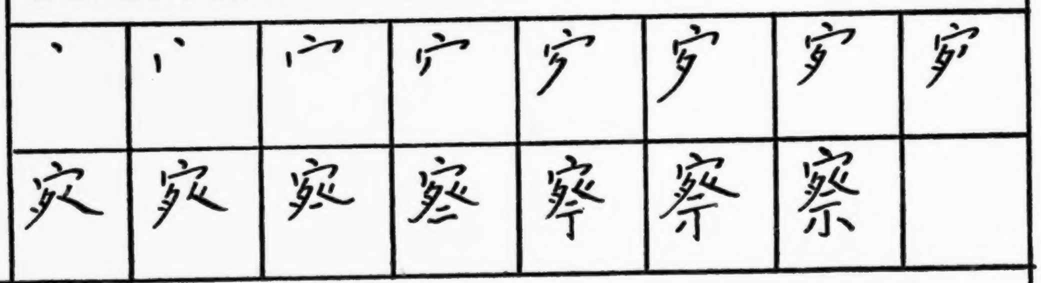
警

Character Number 466 **Radical Number** 149
Stroke Number 20 言



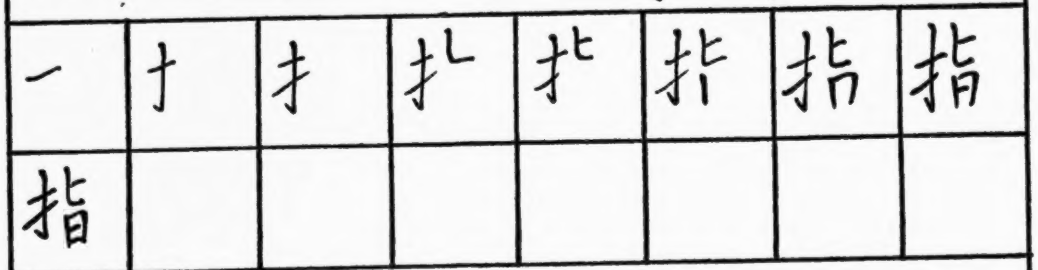
察

Character Number 20 **Radical Number** 146
Stroke Number 15 宀



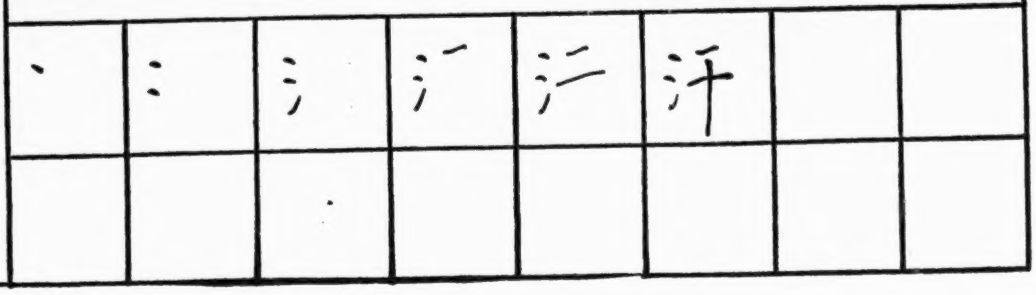
指

Character Number 69 **Radical Number** 64
Stroke Number 9 手，扌

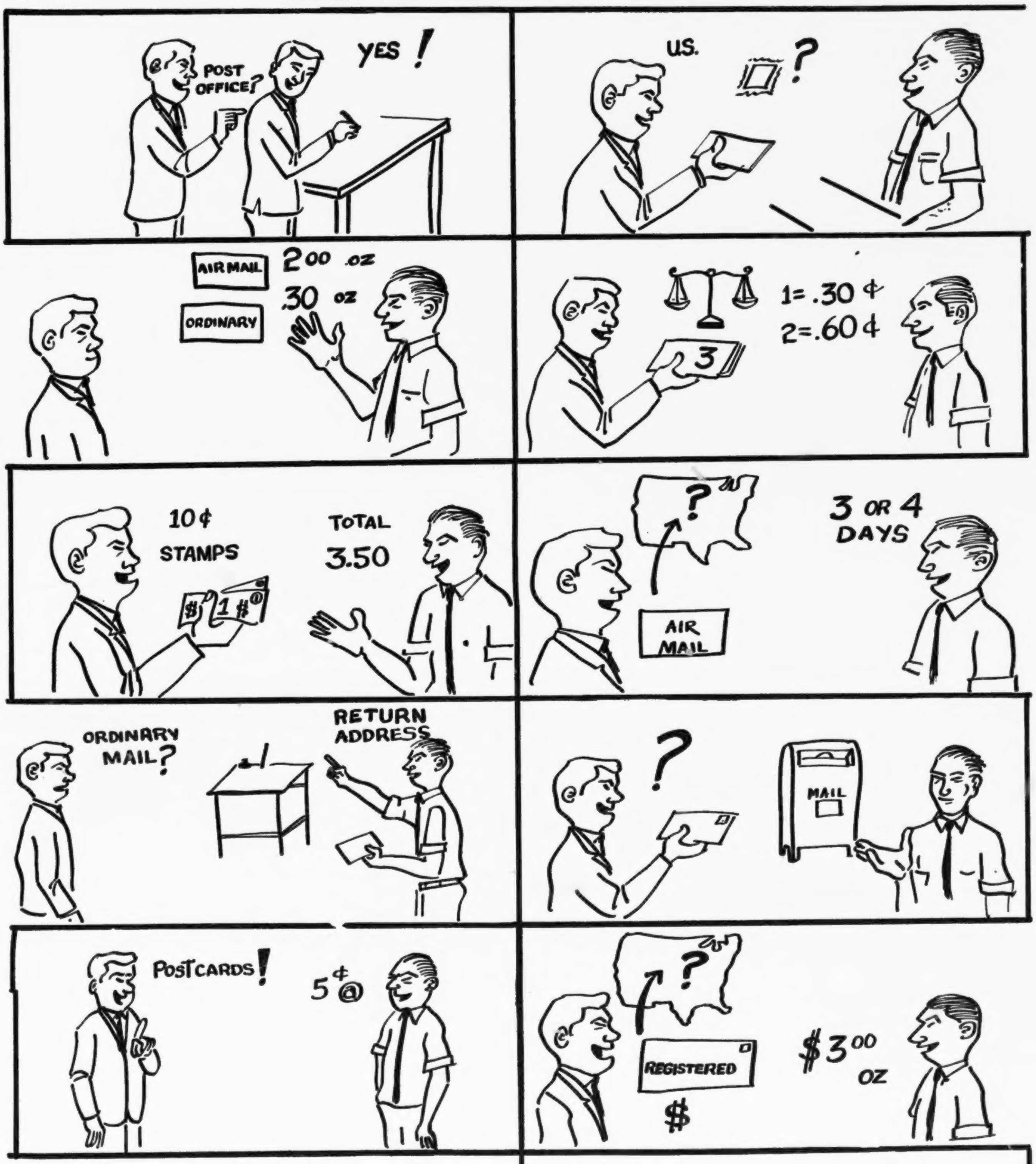


汗

Character Number 306 **Radical Number** 85
Stroke Number 6 水，氵



LESSON 7


POST OFFICE?
YES!
US.
?
AIR MAIL
ORDINARY
2 00 .oz
.30 oz
1=.30¢
2=.60¢
3
10¢
STAMPS
$ 1 $
TOTAL
3.50
?
AIR MAIL
3 OR 4 DAYS
ORDINARY MAIL?
RETURN ADDRESS
?
MAIL
POSTCARDS!
5¢ @
?
REGISTERED
$
$3 00 OZ
?
CUSTOMS DECLARATION
?

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Sin-shaang, ni-kaan haî-m̄-haî yaū-chìng-kûk à?

Lô-yān. Mŏ-ts'òh là.

W. Ngŏh seúng keì keí fung-sùn huì Meĭ-Kwòk, ts'ìng mân iù keì-toh-ts'ìn* yaū-faì à?

Kûk-uēn. Keì-huì Meĭ-Kwòk kè hōng-hung-sùn mooĭ on-sẑ* leŭng-man, p'ìng-sheūng-sùn mooĭ on-sẑ* saam-hō-tsź.

W. M̄-koi neĭ t'ūng ngŏh ch'ìng hă ni-saam-fung p'ìng-sheūng-sùn la.

K. Ni-fung saam-hō-tsź; ni-leŭng-fung kwòh ch'ŭng, mooĭ-fung lûk-hō-tsź.

W. Ngŏh chûng seúng maaĭ leŭng-kòh-ngān-ts'ìn* yat-hō-tsź kè yaū-p'iù.

K. Tsúng-kûng saam-kòh-poòn-ngān-ts'ìn*.

W. Hōng-hung-sùn iù keî-noî ìn-haû keì-tò Meĭ-Kwòk à?

K. Taaî-yeùk* saam-seì-yât.

W. P'ìng-sheūng-sùn ne?

K. Taaî-yeùk* saam-kòh laĭ-paaì.....waì ! Sin-shaang, neĭ m̄-keì-tak-chóh sé ni-fung-sùn kè ooì-t'aū-teî-chî pòh. Kóh-cheung-t'oì* yaŭ mâk-shuî yaŭ pat haî-shuè.

W. Tuì-m̄-chuê, tấng ngŏh sé-faan k'uĭ la. Ni-keî-fung-sùn tấm lôk pin-shuè à?

K. Ts'ìng neĭ tấm lôk sùn-seung la.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. Ngŏh chûng seúng maaĭ keî-cheung mĭng-sùn-p'ìn* t'im pòh.

K. Nḡ-kòh-sin cheung.

W. Ts'îng mân keì Meĭ-Kwòk kwà-hô hōng-hung-sùn iù keî-toh-ts'ĭn* à?

K. Mooĭ-on-sẑ* saam-man.

W. Keì ti mât-kîn* huì Meĭ-Kwòk yaŭ mi-yĕ shaú-tsûk à?

K. Uē-kwóh neĭ seúng keì paau-kwóh ch'ut haú, tsaû iù t'ĭn yat-cheung pò-kwaan-chî, sê mĭng haî mi-yĕ mât-kîn*, tsaû-haî kòm toh là.

LESSON 7

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. Is this the post office, sir?

Pedestrian. Yes, that's right.

W. I'd like to mail several letters to the United States. May I ask how much postage I'll need?

Clerk. Airmail letters to the United States are $2 per ounce; ordinary letters are 30¢ per ounce.

W. Will you please weigh these three ordinary letters for me?

C. This one is 30¢. These two are overweight; they are 60¢ each.

W. I also would like to buy $2 worth of 10¢ stamps.

C. The total is $3.50.

W. How long does it take for an airmail letter to reach the United States?

C. About three or four days.

W. What about ordinary mail?

C. About three weeks. Say, mister, you forgot to write the return address on this letter. There is ink and pen on that desk.

W. I'm sorry. Let me write it down. Where shall I drop these letters?

C. Please drop them into the mailbox.

W. I'd also like to buy a few postcards.

C. They're 5¢ each.

LESSON 7

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. May I ask how much it will cost to send a registered airmail letter to the United States?

C. It's $3 per ounce.

W. What is the procedure for sending articles to the United States?

C. If you want to send a parcel from here, you'll have to fill out a customs declaration form stating clearly what the articles are. That's all.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. You have to fill out the custom declaration form and then bring it back to the Post Office.
2. This thing is too big! You cannot send it to New York by parcel post.
3. This parcel will get to San Francisco in a week's time, if you send it out by air mail.
4. He has received a registered air mail letter from his father.
5. You can get fifty 4¢ stamps with two dollars.
6. He sent me a postcard from Sacramento.
7. He dropped his two letters, three postcards, and one big parcel into the mailbox.
8. There is no return address on this letter, but I know it is from my mother.
9. She does not remember how many postcards she sent out.
10. After dropping them into the mailbox, she then remembered that she didn't put stamps on them.
11. This airmail letter is overweight, and the clerk in the Post Office has to weigh it before he knows how much the postage will be.
12. The postage fee for this registered parcel is two dollars and fifteen cents.
13. He weighs one hundred pounds and ten ounces.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. Please give me ten cents' worth of postal stamps.

15. Ordinary letters to Hong Kong are five cents per ounce, and air mail letters are twenty-five cents per ounce.

16. You have to state clearly on that custom declaration form, what the articles are in the parcel.

LESSON 7

WORD LIST

1.	yaū-faī	postage
2.	kûk uēn	postal clerk
3.	hōng-hung sùn	airmail letter
4.	on-sẑ*	ounce
5.	p'īng-sheūng sùn	ordinary mail
6.	hō-tsź	dime
7.	ch'īng	to weigh
8.	kwòh ch'ŭng	overweight
9.	yaū-p'iù	postal stamp
10.	īn-haû	then, before
11.	keī-tak	to remember
12.	ooī-t'aū teî-chí	return address
13.	tám-lôk	to deposit into
14.	mīng-sùn-p'īn*	postcard
15.	sin	cent, fairy
16.	kwà-hô	to register
17.	mât-kîn*	articles, thing, matter
18.	paau-kwóh	parcel, parcel post
19.	t'īn	to fill out
20.	pò-kwaan-chí	custom declaration form

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

546

掛 kwà or k'wa: to hang up; suspend; be in suspense; anxiety.

掛心 k wà-sam: anxious; worried.

掛住 k wà chuê: to hang; to be anxious; to care.

掛號 k wà-hô: to register.
掛號信 k wà-hô sùn: registered letter.

781

安 on: peace; quiet; comfort; to settle.

安靜 on-tsîng: repose.

安心 on-sam: put the mind at ease.

安全 on-ts'uēn: secured; safe(of things).

644

六 lûk: the numeral six.

六畜 lûk ch'uk: the six domestic animals(horse, ox, goat, pig, dog, fowl)

六甲 lûk-kaàp: pregnancy.

掛　安　六

掛　安　六

挂　掛　安　陸　六

1220

七 ts'at: the numeral seven.

七月 ts'at-uêt: July.

七手八脚 tsàt shaú paàt keùk: too many cooks spoil the broth; many persons do the same job.

172

費 faì: fee; to spend; waste

費用 faì-yûng: expenses

費事 faì-sî: troublesome

學費 hôk-faì: tuition

七　費

七　費

柒　七　费

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

924

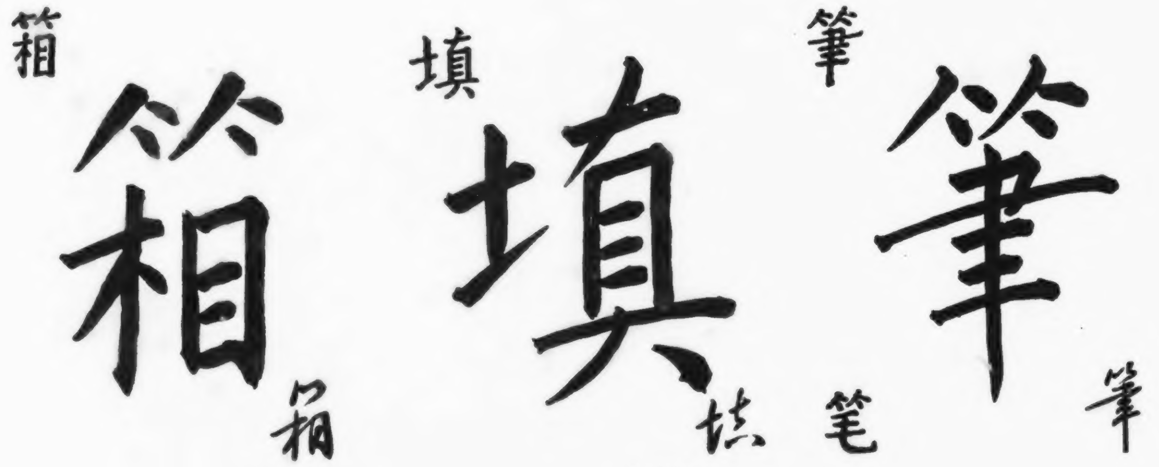
箱	seung: a box; a chest; case.
木箱	mûk seúng: wooden box.
皮箱	p'eī seúng: leather trunk.

1144

填	t'Īn: to fill in; to fill up; to make good.
填平	t'Ī: p'ēng. to fill up.
填債	t'Īn chaaì: to pay a debt.

832

筆	pat: a pencil; pen.
毛筆	mō-pat: Chinese brush pen.
鉛筆	uēn-pat: lead pencil.
主筆	chué-pat: editor.

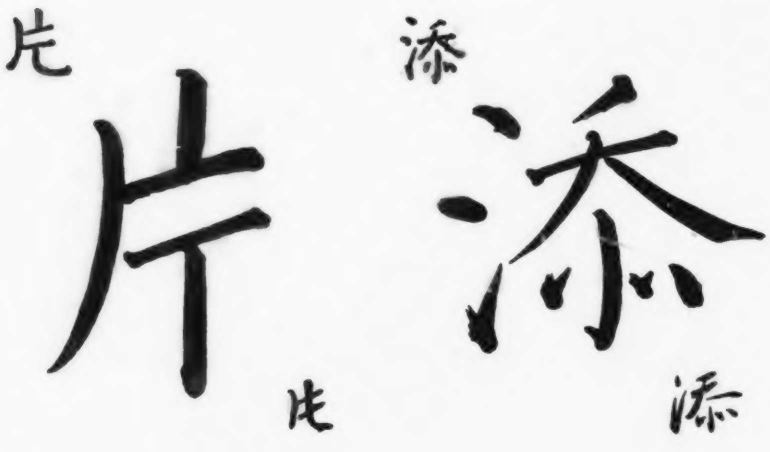


859

片	p'ìn:a slice; strip; piece.
名片	mēng-p'ìn: a visiting card.
相片	seùng-p'ìn: photo.

1138

添	t'im: also; more; to add to.
添多啲	t'im toh ti: to add more.
添丁	t'im ting: to bear a son.



LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

廣州同美國嘅城市差唔多,喺街邊處都有信箱.將信件 tàm 落去,就可以安全寄到各處.但係老黃一定要去郵政局一行,因為佢唔知到寄航空信要幾多郵費,佢又要買啲郵 p'iū 同幾張明信片添.對於包 kwóh 出口嘅手續,同埋使唔使填一張報關紙,yīk都要問明白.

佢寄嘅信又係掛號嘅,所有掛號郵件都要喺郵政局至寄得.

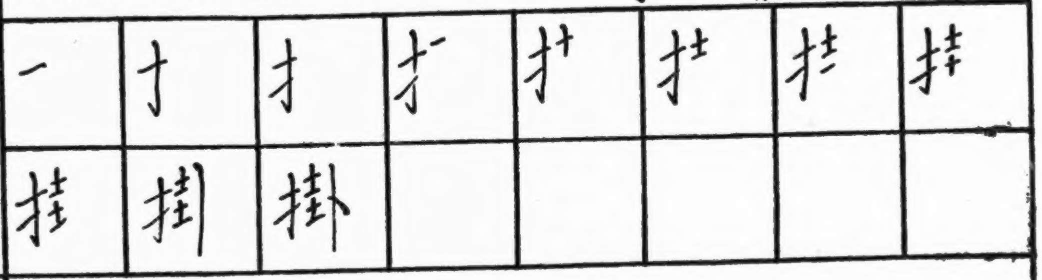
佢呢次去郵政局重有一chŭng好處;即係佢唔記得喺信封上面寫回頭地 chī ,個位 kûk-uēn 睇到 là 就借一枝筆 pei 佢,寫番回頭地 chī .

LESSON 7

WRITING MATERIAL

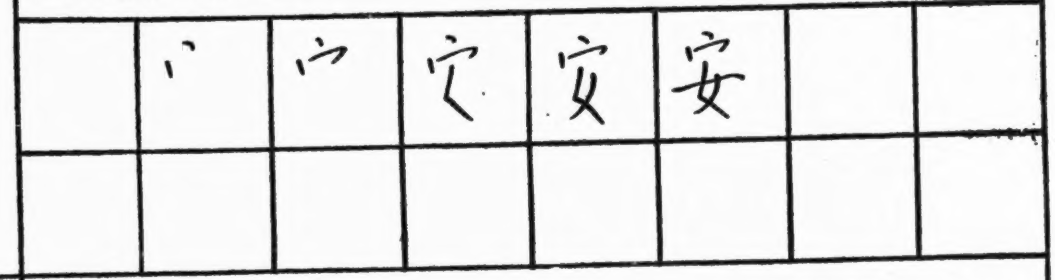
掛

Character Number 546 **Radical Number** 64
Stroke Number 11 手，扌



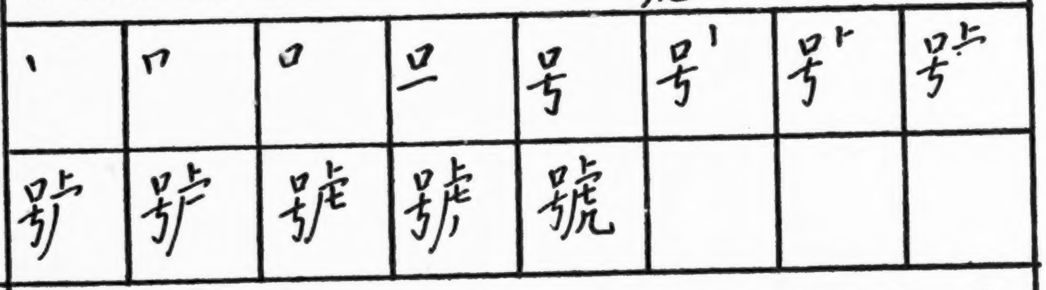
安

Character Number 781 **Radical Number** 40
Stroke Number 6 宀



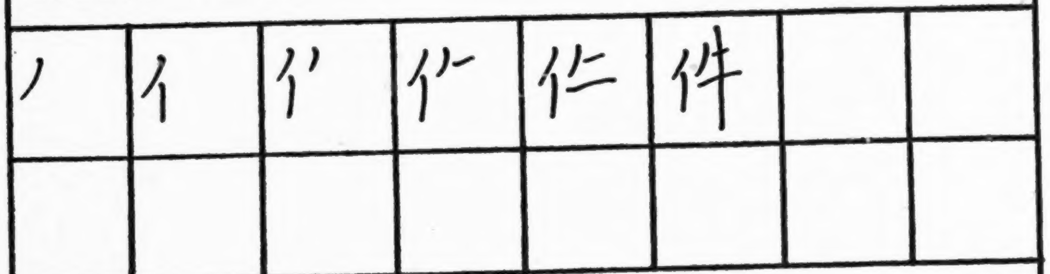
號

Character Number 292 **Radical Number** 141
Stroke Number 13 虎，虍



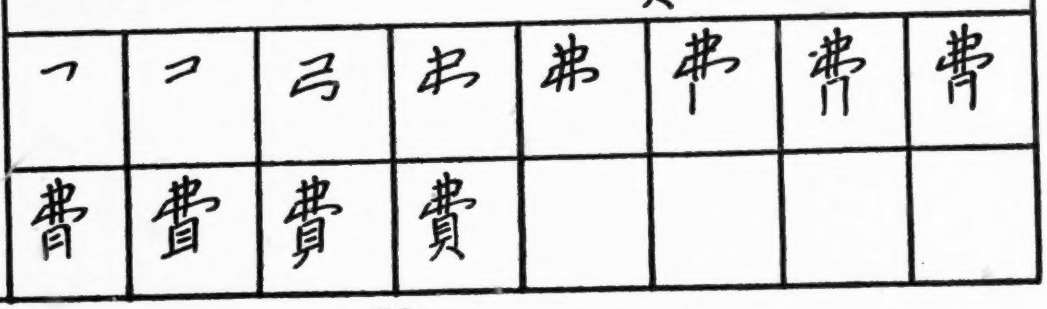
件

Character Number 461 **Radical Number** 9
Stroke Number 6 人，亻

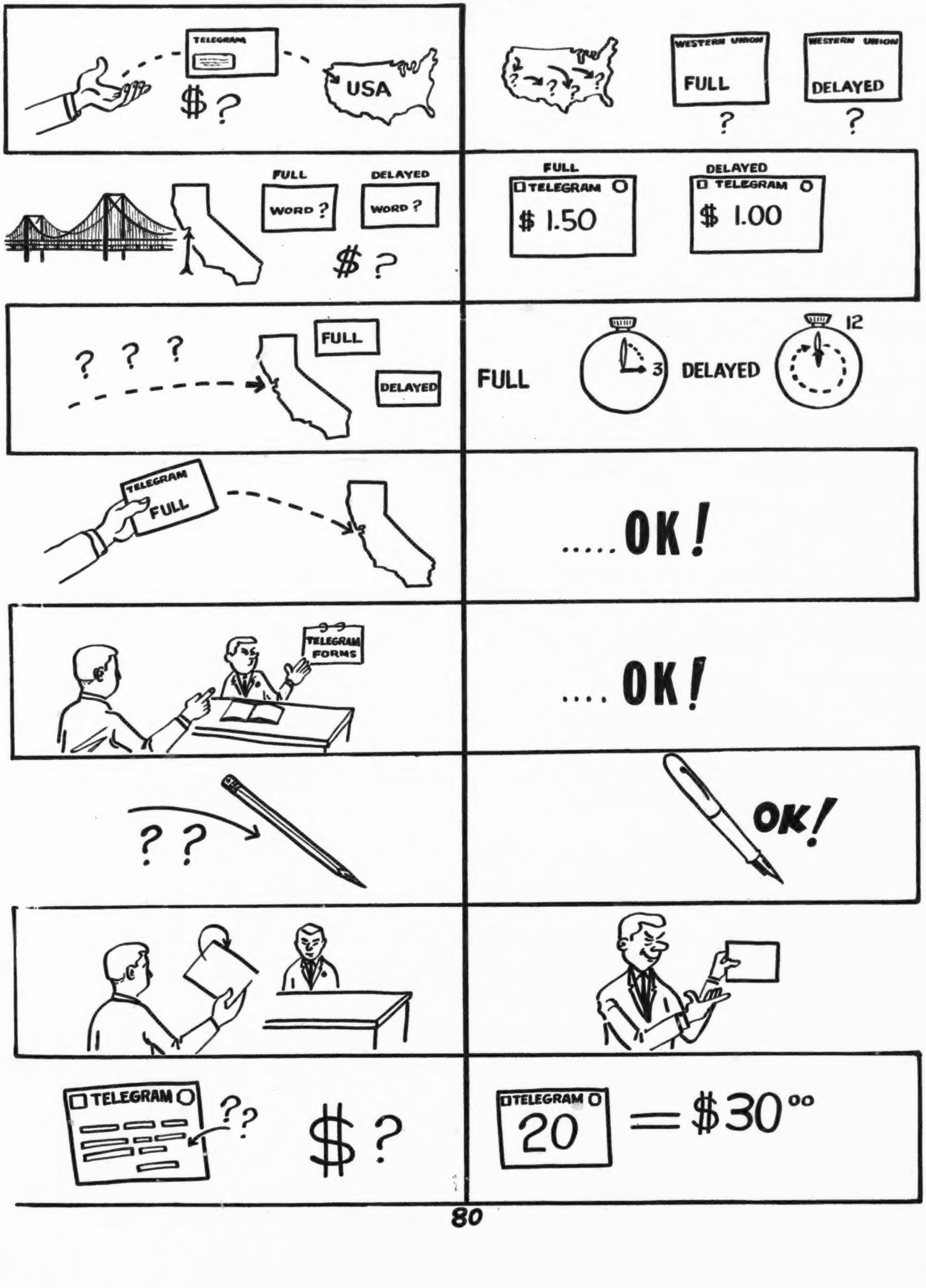


費

Character Number 172 **Radical Number** 154
Stroke Number 12 貝



LESSON 8


TELEGRAM
$?
USA
? ? ?
WESTERN UNION
FULL
?
WESTERN UNION
DELAYED
?
FULL
WORD ?
DELAYED
WORD ?
$?
FULL
TELEGRAM
$ 1.50
DELAYED
TELEGRAM
$ 1.00
? ? ?
FULL
DELAYED
FULL
3
DELAYED
12
TELEGRAM
FULL
.....OK!
TELEGRAM FORMS
....OK!
??
OK!
TELEGRAM
??
$?
TELEGRAM
20
= $30⁰⁰

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Sin-shaang, tá tîn-pò huì Meĭ-kwòk iù keì-toh ts'ìn* à?

Chik-uēn. Neĭ seúng tá tîn-pò huì Meĭ-Kwòk pin-shuè ne? Neĭ seúng tá faaì-tîn a, yik-waâk maân-tîn ne?

W. Ngŏh seúng tá huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ. Faaì-tîn maân-tîn mooĭ-kòh tsẑ iù keì-toh ts'ìn* à?

C. Tá huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ, faaì-tîn kòh-poòn ngān-ts'ìn* yat-kòh tsẑ; maân-tîn yat-man yat-kòh tsẑ.

W. Faaì-tîn t'ūng maân-tîn iù keì noì ìn-haû tò Saam-Faān-Shĭ à?

C. Ŏh, faaì-tîn m̀-shaì keì noì, saam-seì-kòh chung-t'aū tsaû-tò Saam-Faān-Shĭ lòh, maân-tîn iù shâp-î-kòh chung-t'aū tsóh-yaû* ìn-haû tò pòh.

W. Kám a, ts'îng neĭ t'ūng ngŏh tá fung faaì-tîn la.

C. Hó à, sin-shaang.

W. Ts'îng neĭ peî cheung tîn-pò-chî kwòh ngŏh la.

C. Hó hó.

W. Ngŏh yûng uēn-pat sê, tak-m̀-tak à?

C. Tak, pat-kwòh yûng mâk-shuì-pat sê peì-kaaù ts'ing-ch'ôh-ti.

W. Ngŏh ĭ-king sê-hó tîn-mān lòh. M̄-koi neĭ t'ūng ngŏh t'aî hă, hóh-m̀-hôh-ĭ kaám-shiú keì-kòh tsẑ?

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C. Sê tak hó kaân-taan, hó ts'ing-ch'ôh là. Tsaû kâm-yeûng* tâ ch'ut-huì la.

W. Tsúng-kûng yaŭ kèi-toh-kòh tsẑ à? Kèi-toh ts'ìn* à?

C. Î-shâp-kòh tsẑ. Tsúng-kûng saam-shâp man.

LESSON 8

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. How much does it cost to send a telegram to the United States, sir?

Clerk. To what part of America would you like to send the telegram? Do you wish to send a full rate or delayed telegram?

W. I wish to send it to San Francisco. How much per word is the full rate and the delayed telegram?

C. The full rate telegram is $1.50 per word to San Francisco; the delayed telegram is $1 per word.

W. How long does it take for full rate and delayed telegrams to reach San Francisco?

C. Oh, the full rate telegram does not take very long. It will reach San Francisco in three or four hours. The delayed telegram will take about twelve hours.

W. In that case, will you please send a full rate telegram for me?

C. Very well, sir.

W. Will you please give me a telegram form?

C. Very well.

W. Is it all right if I write it with a pencil?

C. Surely, but it would be much clearer if you use a fountain pen.

LESSON 8

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. I've already written the telegram message. Will you please look it over for me and see if it is possible to eliminate a few words?

C. It is written very plainly and clearly. Send it as it is.

W. How many words are there altogether? How much is it?

C. Twenty words. The total is $30.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I would like to send a telegram to New York. How much is it per word for full rate and the delayed telegram?
2. Please send this telegram message for me by night-letter.
3. Each person will be given one and a half dollars for an hour's work.
4. Will you please look this over for me, and see if it is all right?
5. It takes approximately three hours to reach San Francisco by bus.
6. Your writing is very good, and the message is very clear.
7. You may go now but you have to come back in an hour's time.
8. He had been gone for five hours and should be in San Francisco by now.
9. You can stay here and wait, but I don't know when he will be back.
10. He did send us a telegram, but the message was not very clear.
11. Even though he has a fountain pen, he uses a pencil.
12. There are twenty-two words in this message. How much is it?
13. That clerk in the telegraph office is a very beautiful young woman.
14. She received the telegram while she was sitting on the lawn in front of her house.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. The distance between San Francisco and the U.S. Army Language School is approximately one hundred and thirty miles.
16. I've already written the letter, but I don't know where the Post Office is in this city.
17. You can eliminate at least ten words in this message and it will still be very clear.

LESSON 8

WORD LIST

1.	chik-uēn	office clerk
2.	faaì tîn	full rate telegram
3.	maân tîn	night-letter
4.	tîn-pỏ-chí	telegram form
5.	tîn-mān	telegram message
6.	kaám-shiú	to reduce, diminish, eliminate

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

385	
減	kaám: to diminish; lessen; subtract
減少	kaám-shiú: to diminish
減數	kaám-shò: subtraction
減輕	kaém-heng: relieve; to mitigate

1388	
員	uēn: an official; a person of some position.
委員	waí-uēn: specially deputed offcial.

1259	
清	ts'ing: clear; pure; to clear off.
清水	ts'ing shuí: clear water.
清閑	ts'ing-haān: quiet leisure.
清早	ts'ing-ts'o: early morning.

減　　員　　清

減　　員　　清

減　　减　　贠　　清

961	
受	shaû: to receive; to sustain; to endure.
受苦	shaû foó to suffer; to endure hardship.
受罰	shaû fât: to be punished.
受賞	shaû sheúng: to be rewarded.

1189	
檯	t'oī, t'oī*. table.
餐檯	ts'aan t'oī*: dining table.
八仙檯	paàt-sin-t'oī*: square table for 8 persons.
寫字檯	sé-tsẑ-t'oī*: writing table
二檯	î t'oī*: second hand.

受　　檯　　枱

受　　檯

受　　枱

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

896

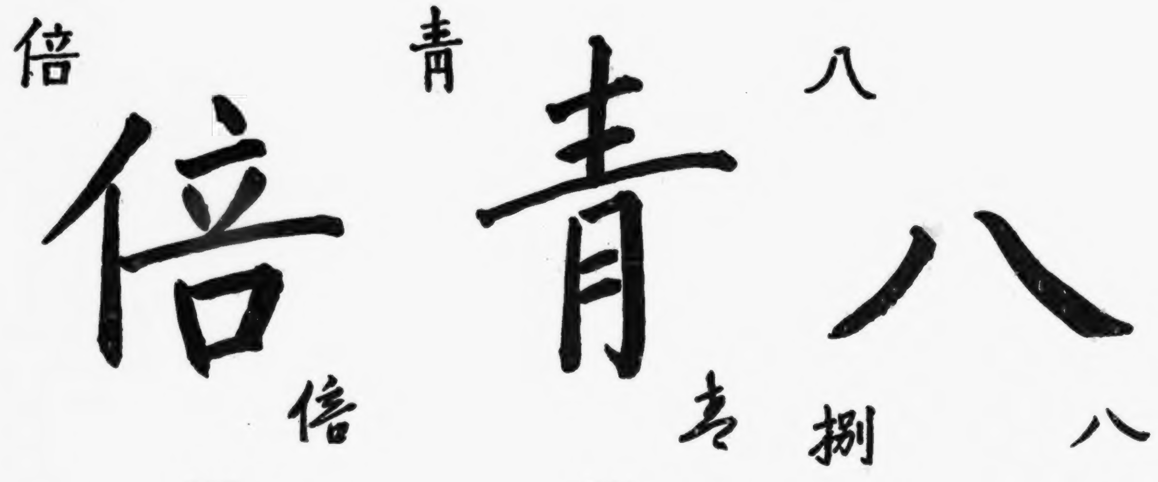
倍	p'ooĭ: times; fold; to increase.
加倍	ka-p'ooĭ: add as much again.
十倍	shâp p'ooĭ: tenfold.

1260

青	ts'ing, ts'eng: color of nature; green; blue; black.
青色	ts'ing shik: color of leaves.
青年	ts'ing-nĭn: youthhood; spring time of life.
青春	ts'ing-ch'un: early life; youth.

818

八	paàt: the numeral eight.
八字	paàt-tsẑ: horoscope
八成	paàt-shĭng: eighty percent.

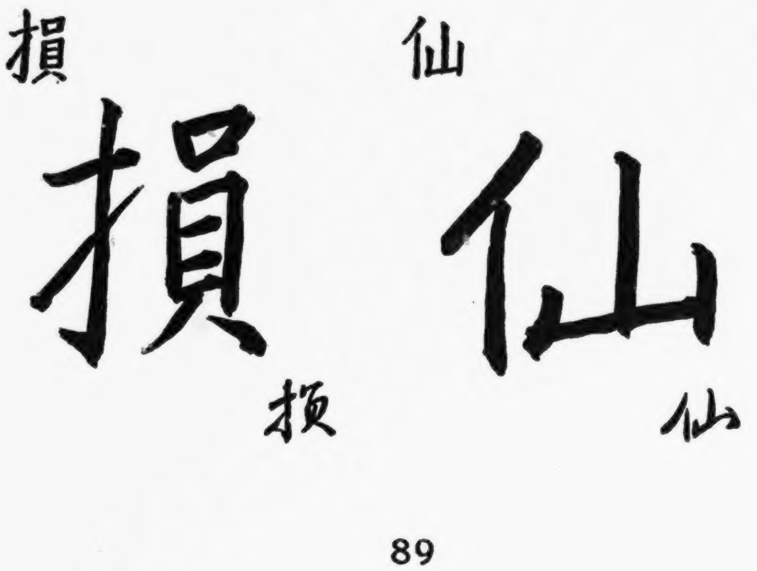


1051

損	suén: to wound; to injure; to spoil
損傷	suén-sheung: to injure; to damage.
損失	suén-shat: loss; damage.

1029

仙	sin: fairy; genius.
神仙	shān-sin: fairy; spirit.
仙遊	sin yaū: to ramble with the spirits; to die.



LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

老黃有一件緊要嘅事，要佢嘅父親同佢做，所以寄 chôh 信之後，重要去電報局打電報.

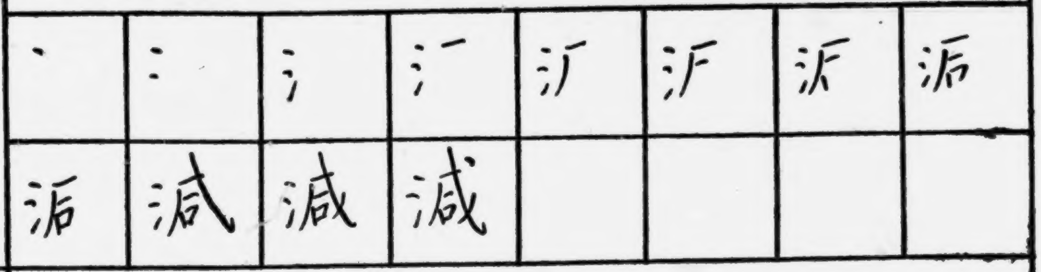
佢到 chôh 電報局，先喺枱處用一枝青色嘅墨水筆，喺電報紙上便，寫清楚電文，交 pei 嗰位電報局嘅職員；問明白快電同慢電要用幾多錢，幾多時候．雖然打慢電可以減少電費，但係佢呢件要做嘅事，如果遲 chôh，就會受到損失；所以佢打快電，總共用 chôh 三十文 lìng 幾個仙．比較打慢電多唔到一倍，但係時候可以快 chôh 三四倍.

LESSON 8

WRITING MATERIAL

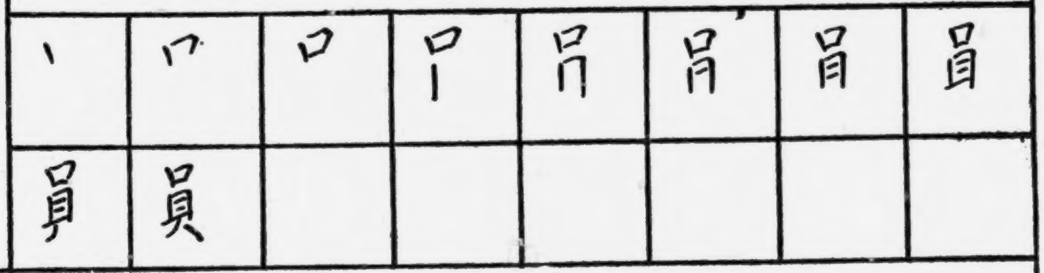
減

Character Number 385
Stroke Number 12
Radical Number 85
水，氵



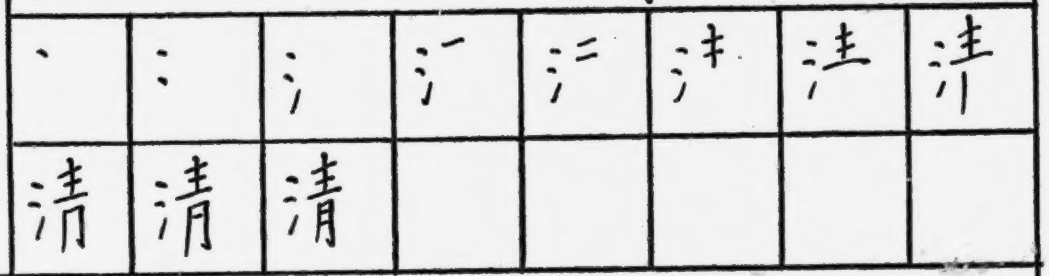
員

Character Number 1388
Stroke Number 10
Radical Number 30
口



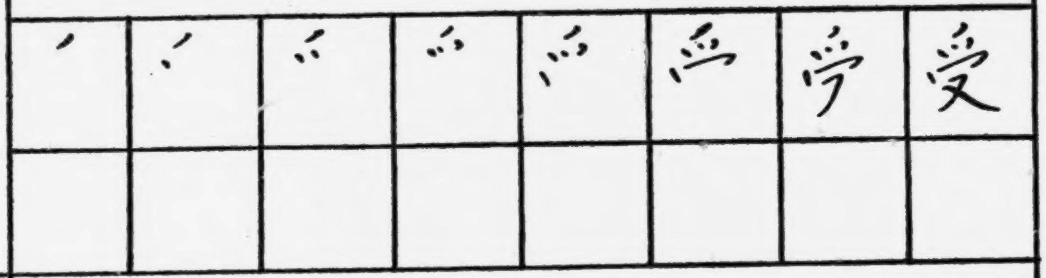
清

Character Number 1259
Stroke Number 11
Radical Number 85
水，氵



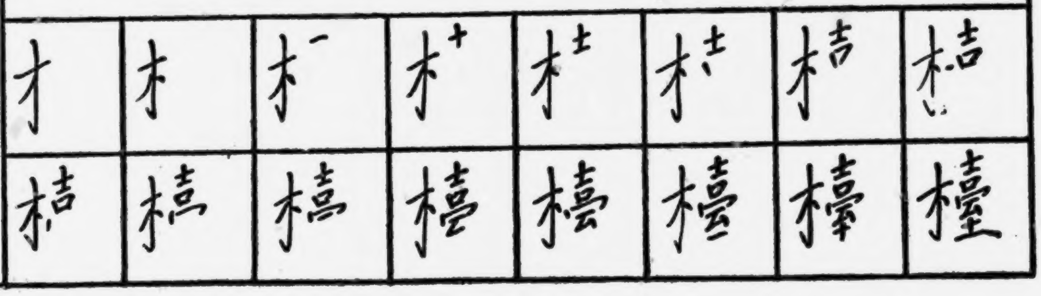
愛

Character Number 961
Stroke Number 8
Radical Number 29
又

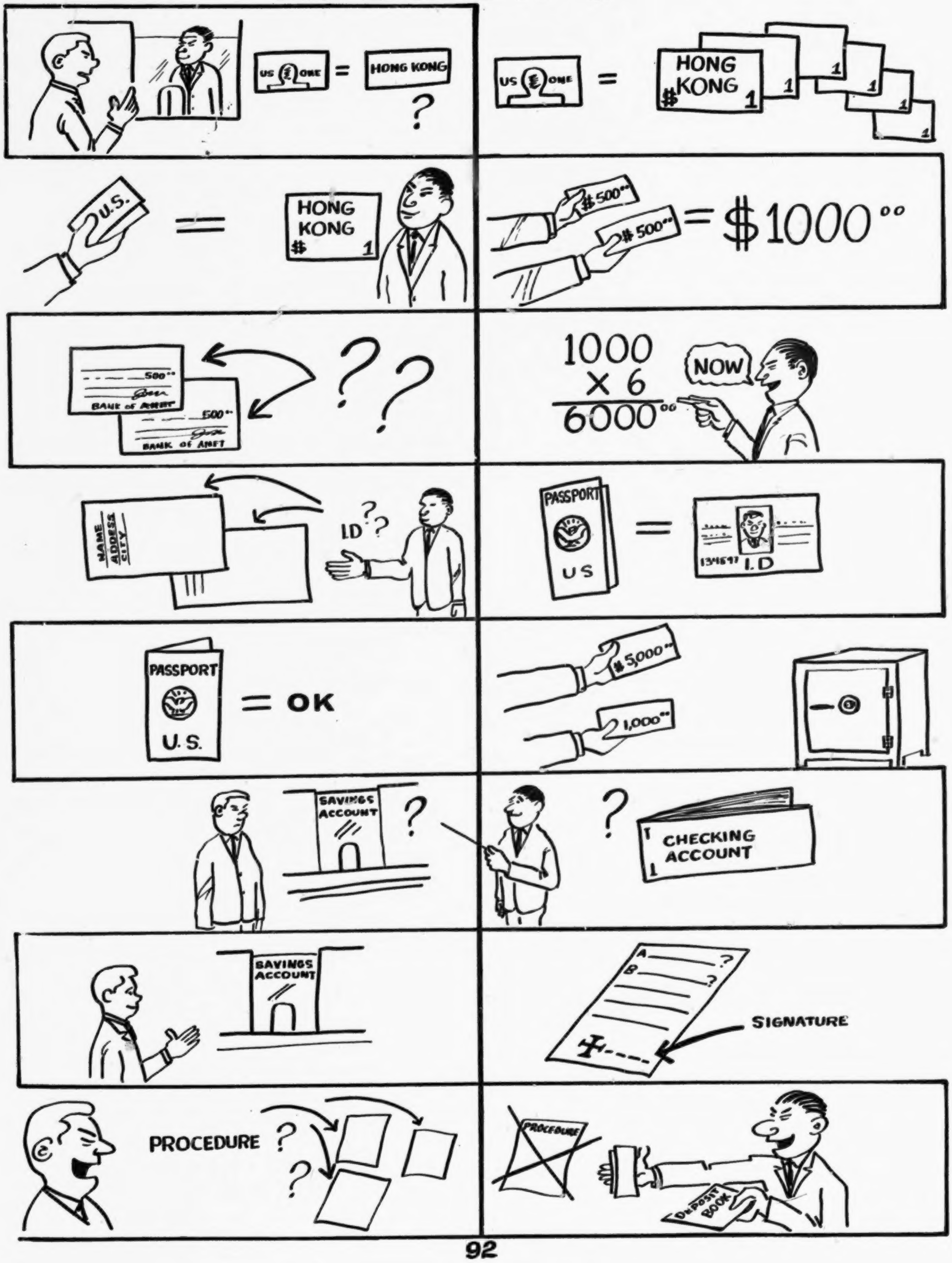


檯

Character Number 1189
Stroke Number 18
Radical Number 75
木，木



LESSON 9


US ONE = HONG KONG ?
US ONE = HONG KONG $ 1
1 1 1 1 1
U.S. = HONG KONG $ 1
$500.00 $500.00 = $1000.00
500.00 BANK OF AMER
500.00 BANK OF AMER
??
1000
× 6
6000.00
NOW
NAME ADDRESS CITY
I.D ??
PASSPORT US = 134597 I.D
PASSPORT U.S. = OK
$5,000.00
1,000.00
SAVINGS ACCOUNT ?
? CHECKING ACCOUNT
SAVINGS ACCOUNT
A ?
B ?
SIGNATURE
PROCEDURE ? ?
PROCEDURE
DEPOSIT BOOK

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Kam-yât Meĭ-Kam t'ūng Kóng-Chî tîm oôn à?

Chik-uēn. Meĭ-Kam ā? Yat peî lûk à.

W. Ngŏh yaŭ leŭng-cheung Meĭ-Kwòk Ngān-Hōng kè ooî-p'iù,
ngŏh seúng oôn-chóh k'uĭ.

C. Ts'îng neĭ peî kóh-leŭng-cheung ooî-p'iù ngŏh t'aî hă la.

W. Nā, ni-leŭng-cheung haî Meĭ-Kwòk Ngān-Hōng kè ooî-p'iù,
mooĭ-cheung nğ-paâk man, tsúng-kûng yat-ts'in-man Meĭ-Kam.

C. Neĭ seúng oôn saaî k'uĭ ā?

W. Haî à, tsúng kûng oôn-tak keî-toh ts'în* à?

C. Yat peî lûk kaî-suèn, tsúng-kûng oôn-tak Kóng-Chî lûk-ts'in-man. Neĭ seúng în-tsoî oôn ā?

W. Haî à.

C. Ts'îng neĭ haî ni-leŭng-cheung ooî-p'iù haû-pîn ts'im neĭ kè mēng*. Neĭ yaŭ chîng-mîng-shue mŏ à?

W. Ngŏh yûng ngŏh kè oô-chiù laî tsô chîng-mîng, tak mà?

C. Yûng oô-chiù laî tsô chîng-mîng chî-hó là.

W. Ngŏh seúng sin lôh yat-ts'in-man în-foôn. K'eî-uē nğ-ts'in-man ts'uēn haî ngān-hōng.

C. Neĭ iù hoi yat-kòh-oô-haú sin tak pòh. Hoi kòh ch'uĕ-ch'uk-oô-haú a, yik-waâk hoi kòh sheung-îp-oô-haú ne?

W. T'ūng ngŏh hoi kòh ch'uĕ-ch'uk-oô-haú la.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C. Ts'îng neĭ tseung ni-cheung ts'im-mēng*-k'aat t'īn-hó, īn-haû ts'im neĭ kè mēng* haî ni-shuè la.

W. Tsûng yaŭ k'eī-t'a kè shaú-tsûk mà?

C. Mŏ k'eī-t'a kè shaú-tsûk lòh. Ni-shuè yat-ts'in man, ts'îng neĭ só hă la. Ni-poón haî neĭ kè ts'uēn-foón-chīp.

LESSON 9

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. What is the rate of exchange today of U.S. dollars to HK dollars?

Teller. For U.S. dollars? It's one to six.

W. I have two U.S. bank drafts. I'd like to have them exchanged.

T. Please let me see the two drafts.

W. Here they are. These are the two U.S. bank drafts. They are for $500 each. The total is $1,000 U.S. currency.

T. Do you wish to completely exchange both of them?

W. Yes, how much is the total exchange?

T. At the rate of one to six, they come to an exchange total of $6,000, HK currency. Do you wish to exchange the drafts now?

W. Yes.

T. Please endorse your name on the back of the two drafts. Have you any identification card?

W. May I use my passport for identification?

T. It is best to use the passport for identification.

W. I'd like to first draw $1,000 in cash; the remaining $5,000 is to be deposited in the bank.

T. You have to open an account first. Do you want to open a savings account or a commercial checking account?

LESSON 9

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. Please open a savings account for me.

T. Will you please fill out this signature card and then sign your name here?

W. Is there still other procedures?

T. No other procedures. Here are $1,000. Please count it. This is your deposit book.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I went to the bank with the money, but I'd forgotten the deposit book.
2. The clerk in the bank wants to see his passport or other identification papers.
3. He does not have any Hong Kong dollars. All his cash is in U.S. currency.
4. You have to have a commercial checking account before you can write a check.
5. If I give you three Hong Kong dollars for fifty cents of U.S. money, can you figure out the rate of exchange between U.S. and HK dollars?
6. Please sign your name plainly and clearly on this custom declaration form.
7. I can prove the luggage is mine because I have my passport in it.
8. I need some cash to buy a new car.
9. You have to sign the same name as the one on this signature card.
10. He wants to save some money before he is married.
11. Your calculation is right. I owe you two dollars.
12. He started to save some money each week last year, and he has now over one thousand dollars in his savings account.

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

13. I have to have the rest of the money you owe me the day after tomorrow.

14. This check is not good because he did not sign it.

15. He had drawn $1,000 from his savings account and deposited it into his commercial checking account.

16. This is not the right book for this class and you have to go to the bookstore to exchange it.

17. I want to know how many officers there are. Please count them for me!

LESSON 9

WORD LIST

1.	Meĭ kam	U.S. dollar
2.	Kóng chí	Hong Kong dollar
3.	oôn	to change, exchange
4.	yat peí lûk	1 to 6 ratio
5.	ooî-p'iù	bank draft, money order cashier check
6.	kaì-suèn	to figure out, calculate
7.	ts'im mēng*	to sign
8.	chìng-mīng-shue	ID card, identification paper
9.	oô-chiù	passport
10.	chìng-mīng	to identify, certify, prove
11.	în-foón	cash
12.	k'eī-uē	remaining
13.	ts'uēn	to deposit, keep
14.	oô-haú	account
15.	ch'uĕ-ch'uk	saving; to save
16.	sheung-îp oô-haú	commercial checking account
17.	k'aat	card
18.	ts'uēn-foón chìp	deposit book

LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

795

換 oôn: to change; to exchange; to barter.

替換 t'aì-oôn: to relieve one another.

更換 kang-oôn: to change; to replace.

1249

簽 ts'im to sign; tc endorse.

簽名 ts'im mēng to sign one's name.

簽字 ts im-tsẑ: to affix one's signature

牙簽 ngā-tsím: tooth-pick.

969

商 sheung: to deliberate; to consult; a merchant.

商量 sheung-leũng: to deliberate; to consult.

商會 sheung-ooî: chamber of commerce,

換 簽 商

換 簽 商

換 簽 商

1301

存 ts'uēn: to preserve; to keep; to continue.

保存 pó-ts'uēn: to preserve; to conserve.

存欵 ts'uēn foón: balance on hand; deposit.

223

欵 foón: to treat courteously; an item; an amount

欵待 foón-toî: to treat cordially

欵式 foón-shik: pattern; style

存欵 ts'uēn foón: deposit

存 欵

存 欵

存 款 欵

LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

789

户 oô: door; family; population.

户口 oô-haû: the household.

铺户 p'ò-oô: a shop.

1372

餘 uē: surplus; remainder.

有餘 yaŭ-uē: more than sufficient.

餘力 uē lîk: spare energy.

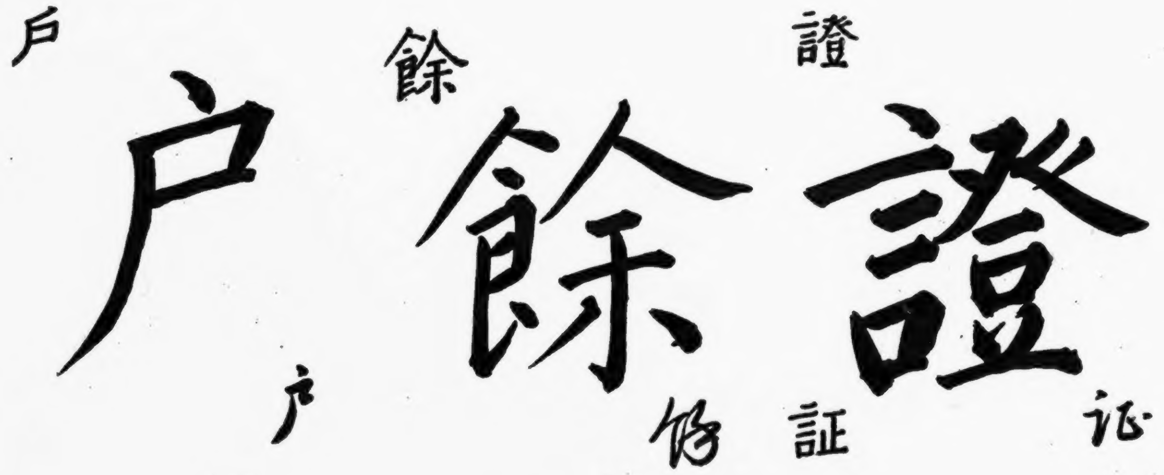
'95

證 chìng: to witness evidence

證人 chìng-yān: a witness

證據 chìng-kuì: proof evidence; testimonial

證明 chìng-mìng: to testify; to prove



788

護 oô: to protect; to preserve; to defend.

保護 pó-oô: to protect.

護照 oô-chiù: passport.

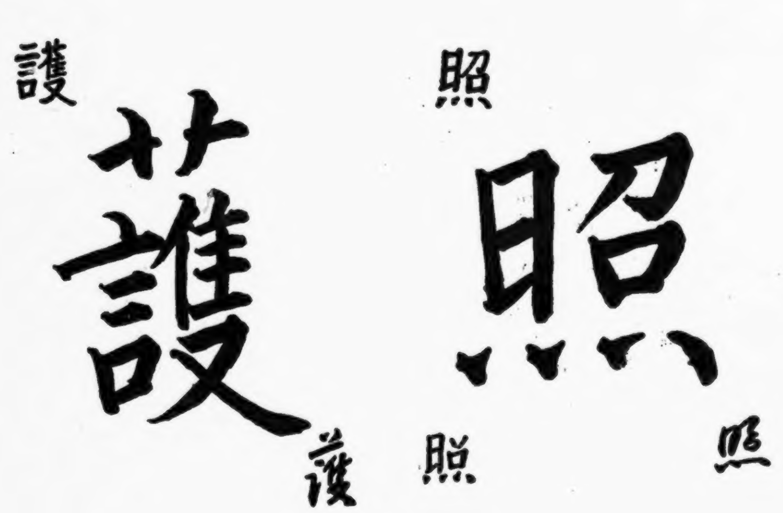
103

照 chiù: to shine upon; according to

照鏡 chiù-kèng: to look in a mirror

照舊 chiù-kaû: as formerly

護照. oô-chiù: a passport



LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

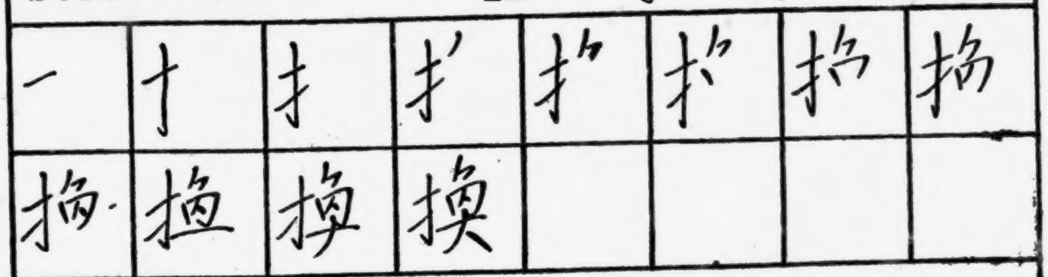
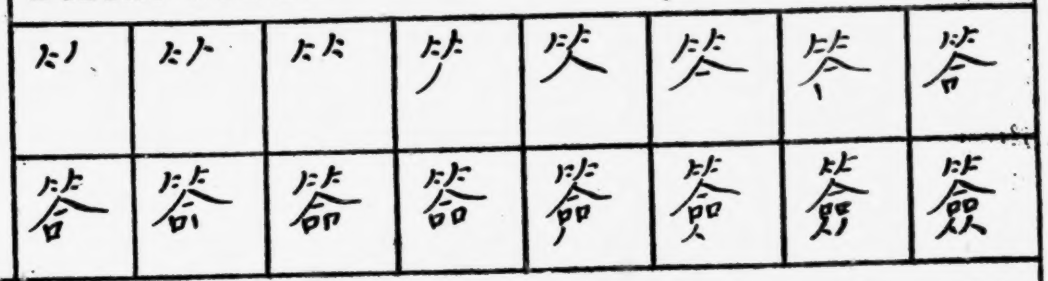
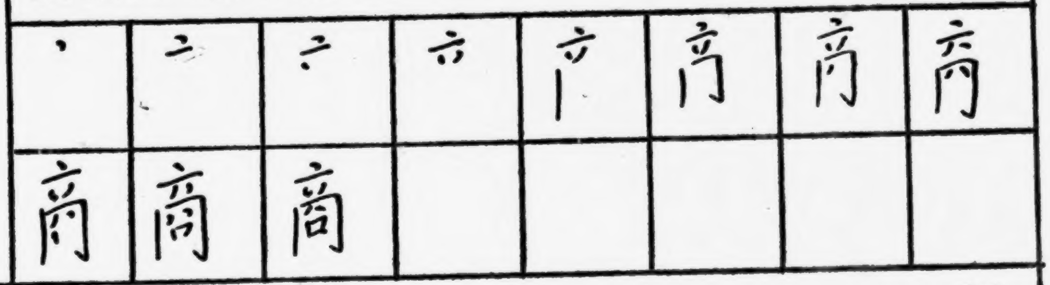
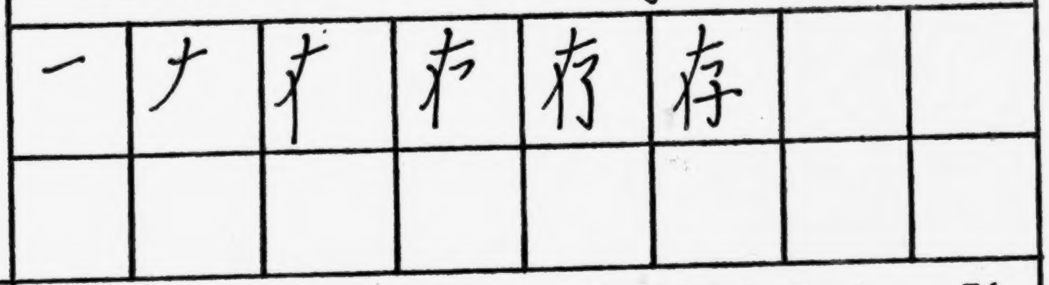
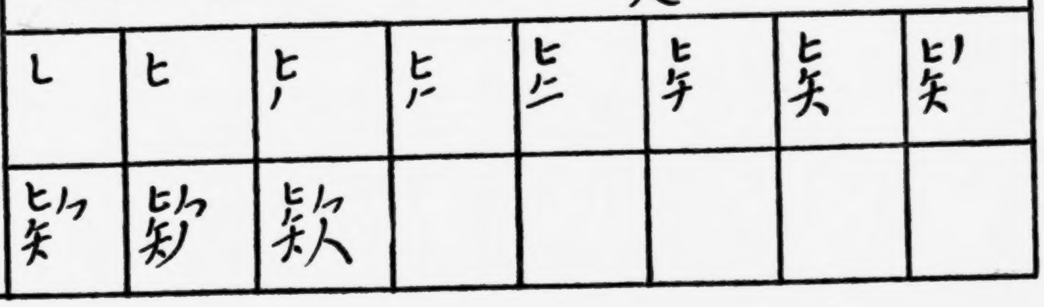
喺廣州除 chôh 用中國錢之外,亦可以用港紙,但係唔可以用美金.老黄有兩張美國銀行嘅 ooî 票,每張五百文.佢去廣東銀行找換一張,就有現款做費用;其餘一張呢,就喺銀行開一個ch'uĕ ch'uk 户口,存喺嗰處.因為佢唔係番去廣州做生意,唔使開商îp 户口.

銀行嘅職員shaŭ先問佢有冇證明書,佢就將護照 peî 佢地睇,然後喺 ooî 票簽名.

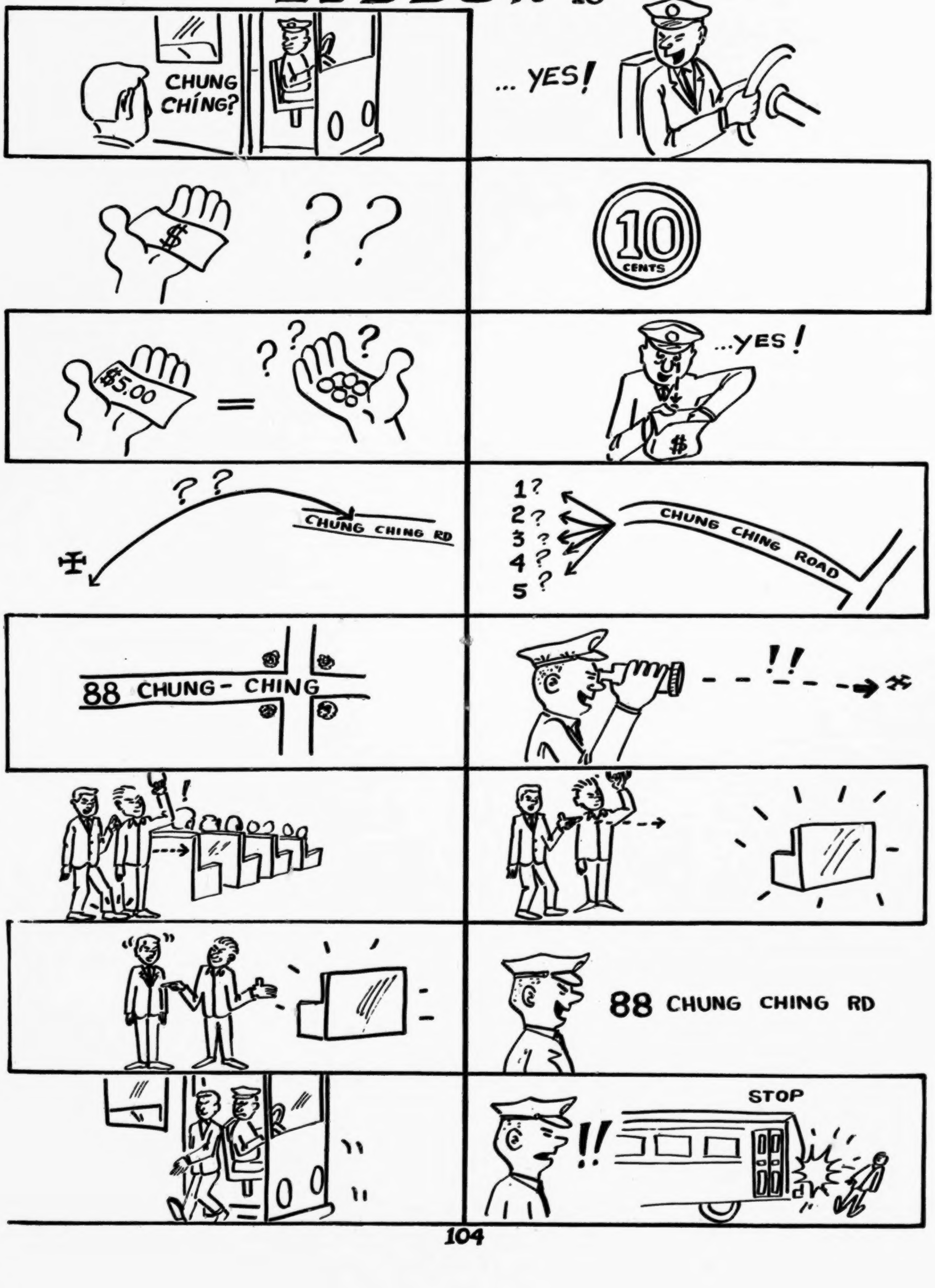
嗰日嘅 ooî 價係一比六計算,五百文美金就換 chôh 三千文港紙;銀行又將一本存款 chîp peî 佢.

LESSON 9

WRITING MATERIAL

換	**Character Number** 795 **Stroke Number** 12 **Radical Number** 64 手，扌	
簽	**Character Number** 1249 **Stroke Number** 19 **Radical Number** 118 竹，⺮	
商	**Character Number** 969 **Stroke Number** 11 **Radical Number** 30 口	
存	**Character Number** 1301 **Stroke Number** 6 **Radical Number** 39 子	
欵	**Character Number** 223 **Stroke Number** 11 **Radical Number** 76 欠	

LESSON 10


CHUNG CHÍNG?
... YES!
$
??
10
CENTS
$5.00
=
???
...YES!
$
??
CHUNG CHING RD
1?
2?
3?
4?
5?
CHUNG CHING ROAD
88 CHUNG - CHING
!!
!
88 CHUNG CHING RD
!!
STOP

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Ts'îng mân ni-kà pa-sẑ* haî-m̄-haî huì Chung-Chìng-Lô kà?

Maaî-p'iù-uēn. Haî, sheŭng ch'e la.

W. Iù keì-toh ts'ìn* ch'e-p'iù à?

M. Mooĭ-waî* yat-hō-tsź.

W. Sin-shaang, nğ-man yaŭ-mŏ-tak chaaú à?

M. Táng ngŏh t'aì hă sin. Yaŭ à.

W. Ts'îng mân Chung-Chìng-Lô leì ni-shuè yaŭ keì uĕn à?

M. Chung-Chìng-Lô keì-toh hô ne?

W. Chung-Chìng-Lô paàt-shâp-paàt-hô.

M. Keì uĕn kà pòh. Tò kóh-shuè kè shī-haû, ngŏh kiù neĭ la.

W. Sin-shaang, ts'îng neĭ tsè-mé-ti, peì ngŏh haāng huì ts'ìn-pîn, tak mà?

Tuì-m̄-chuê, tuì-m̄-chuê, ngŏh yaaî-ts'an neĭ.

Taàp-haàk. M̄-kán-iù, m̄-kán-iù.

W. Kóh-shuè yaŭ kòh-waî* pòh, neĭ m̄-huì ts'ŏh me?

T. Haî pòh. Neĭ m̄-ts'ŏh me?

W. Ngŏh k'eĭ hă tak là.

Maaî-p'iù-uēn. Taî-î-kòh chaâm tsaû-haî Chung-Chìng-Lô paàt-shâp-paàt-hô kè foô-kân là.

W. Kám, Ngŏh lôk ch'e là.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M. Táng yat-chân, táng yat-chân. Táng kà ch'e t'ìng-tîng sin, m̄-haî tsaû-ooĭ faàt-shang ì-ngoî kà là.

LESSON 10

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. May I ask whether or not this bus is going to Chung Chìng Road?

Conductor. Yes, come aboard.

W. How much is the car fare?

C. Ten cents per person.

W. Have you any change for a $5 bill, mister?

C. Let me take a look first. Yes, I have.

W. May I ask how far Chung Chìng Road is from here?

C. What number is it on Chung-Chìng Road?

W. No. 88 Chung-Chìng Road.

C. It's quite far. When we reach there, I'll call you.

W. Sir, will you please move over a little, so that I can walk to the front.

I'm sorry, I stepped on you.

Passenger. Never mind.

W. There is a seat. Why don't you take it?

P. Oh. Yes. Don't you want it?

W. I'll just stand.

Conductor. The next stop is in the vicinity of No. 88 Chung-Chìng Road.

W. In that case, I'll get off the bus.

LESSON 10

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

C. Wait a moment, wait a moment. Let the bus stop first, or an accident may happen.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. They had an automobile accident but no one was injured.
2. The collision happened at the intersection which is not far away from the bus stop.
3. Passengers have to wait until the car comes to a full stop before they can get off.
4. In the vicinity of Chinatown, there were too many accidents in the last couple of days.
5. If you don't have your train ticket, you are not going to get a seat, and you will have to stand all the way.
6. The bus conductor was injured in the neck and head in the collision.
7. Please move over a little so that the other passengers can come aboard.
8. Let me take a look at your check and your ID card, then I may be able to exchange it for you.
9. The bus fare is only fifteen cents, and the conductor definitely will not have any change for a $100 bill.
10. May I ask what is your name, and what are you doing here?
11. How far is the U.S. Army Language School from downtown?
12. Since there are only thirty seats in the bus, the first thirty persons will have seats and the rest that come aboard later will have to stand.
13. No one should take such a large package into the bus.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. In the vicinity of the bus station, there are grocery stores, meat markets, barber shops, drug stores, and candy stores.
15. You can take the No. 5 bus, and you will get to the airport.
16. You have to get off this bus after the next block if you want to go to the train station.
17. He stopped the car in time. Otherwise, an accident would have happened.

LESSON 10

WORD LIST

1.	ch'e p'iù	bus fare, train ticket
2.	tsè-mé-ti	to move over a little
3.	yaaí-ts'an	to step on
4.	taàp-haàk	passenger
5.	t'ìng-tîng	to stop completely, come to full stop
6.	faàt-shaang	to happen, occur
7.	ì-ngoî	accident

LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

422

九 kaú: the numeral nine.

九龍 kaú-lūng: Kowloon

1225

秋 ts'au: autumn.

秋季 ts'au-kwaì: the autumn season

秋天 ts'au-t'in: autumn.

1148

停 t'Īng: to stop; to rest; to cease; to delay.

停工 t'Īng kung: to cease work.

停車 t'Īng ch'e: to stop a vehicle; to stop a machine.

停戰 t'Īng chìn: truce; armistice.

九 秋 停

九 秋 停

玖 九 秋 停

1032

星 sing: a star; planet; point of light.

星期 sing-k'eī: Sunday.

行星 hāng sing: planet.

668

米 maǐ: rice.

白米 paâk maǐ: ordinary rice.

糯米 nôh-maǐ: glutinous (sweet) rice.

西米 sai-maǐ: tapioca.

星 米

星 米

星 米

LESSON 10
READING MATERIAL

949

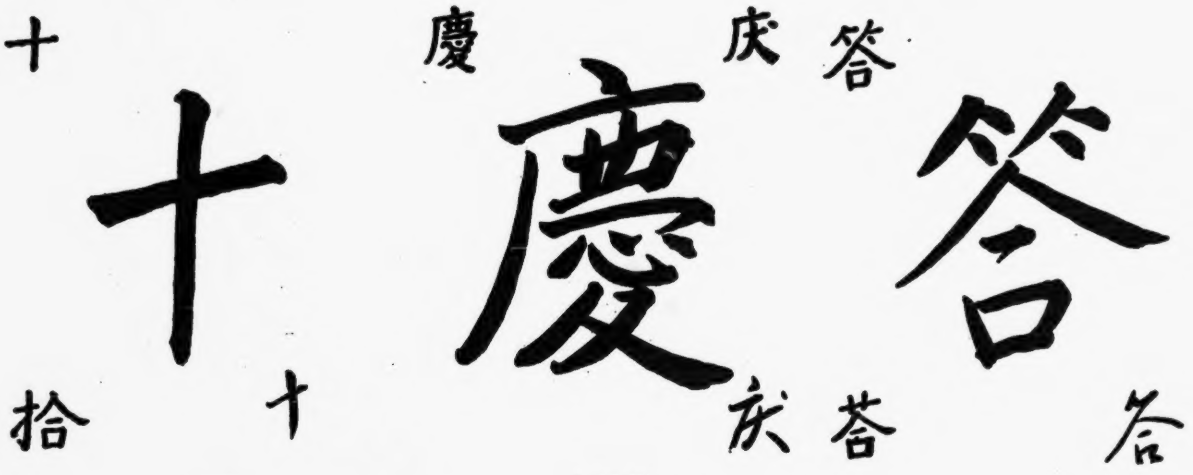
十	shâp: the numeral ten.
十分	shâp-fan: ten parts; perfectly· very.
十足	shâp-tsuk: complete; entire.

287

慶	hìng: celebrate; congratulate; joyful; happy
慶祝	hìng-chuk: to celebrate
慶賀	hìng-hôh: to congratulate

1096

答	taàp: to answer; to respond to.
報答	pò-taàp: to repay; to requite.
答覆	taàp-fuk: to answer; to reply.
答謝	taàp tsê: to make a return present.

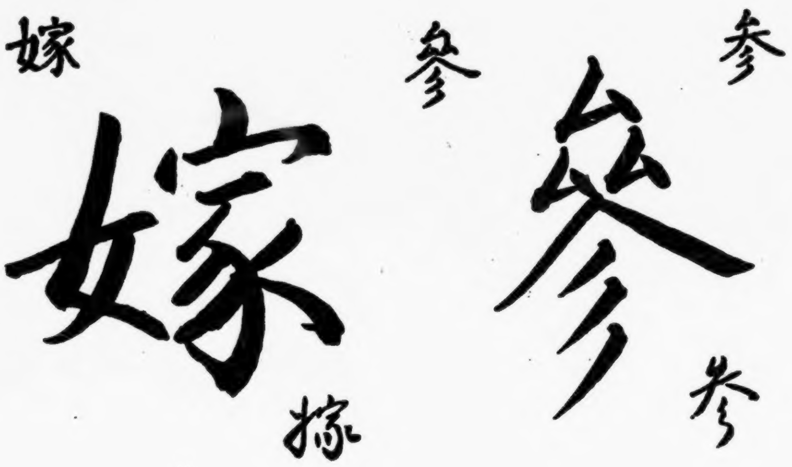


373

嫁	kà: marry a husband
嫁女	kà nuĭ: marry off a daughter
嫁粧	kà-chong: trousseau; dowry
出嫁	ch'ut kà: girl's marriage
嫁禍	kà-wôh: to bring evil upon.

1198

參	ts'aam: to take part in; to consult.
參觀	ts'aam-koon: to visit; to look over.
參與	ts'aam-uĕ: to participate in.
參謀	ts'aam-maū: military adviser; military staff.



LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

星 k'eĭ 日下午四點鐘,老黃出街,去中正路八十八號,參加一個朋友嘅嫁女慶會.嗰處係幾遠嘅,佢又唔識路,要 taàp 巴士.佢 k'eĭ 喺一間米鋪門口,等 chôh 一陣.街上行人,來來 wŏng wŏng.冇幾耐,巴士黎到 là,停喺街邊.老黃上 chôh 車.車票一 hō 子,唔算太貴.

巴士內便,唔只坐滿人,而且重有好多人 k'eĭ 喺處.老黃要叫人地借 mê 啲,至可以行去前便.嗰陣時係秋天,天氣涼好多,亦唔覺得好辛苦.

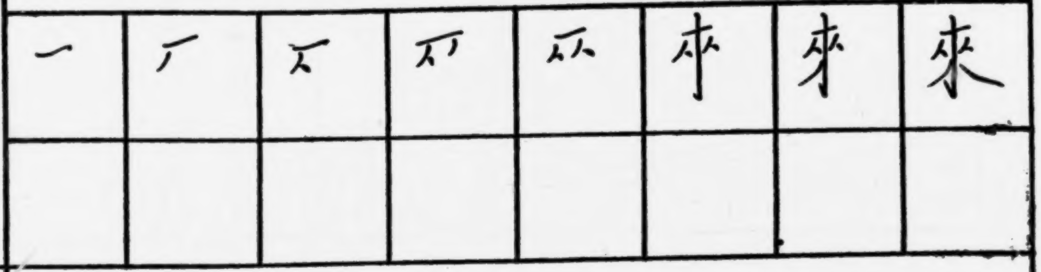
大約半個鐘頭 kòm 上下,巴士停 là;賣票員叫老黃落車,因為嗰處就係中正路八十八號嘅附近.

LESSON 10

WRITING MATERIAL

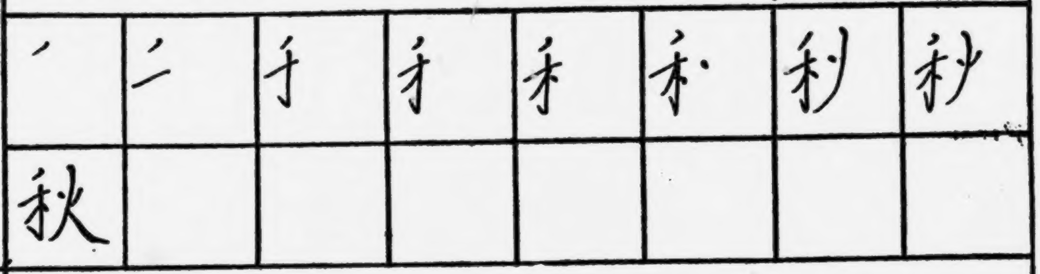
來

Character Number 630 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 8 人



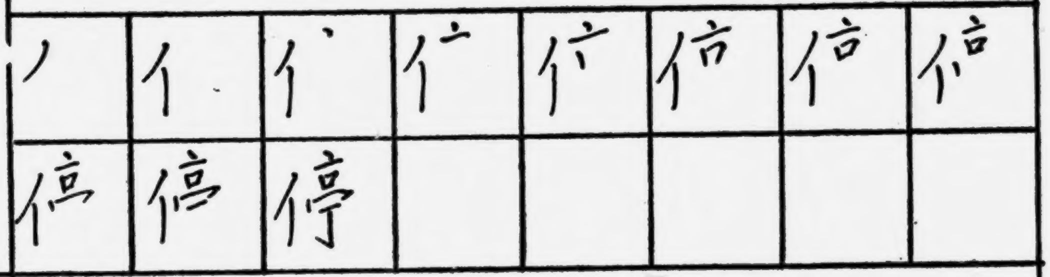
秋

Character Number 1225 Radical Number 115
Stroke Number 9 禾，禾



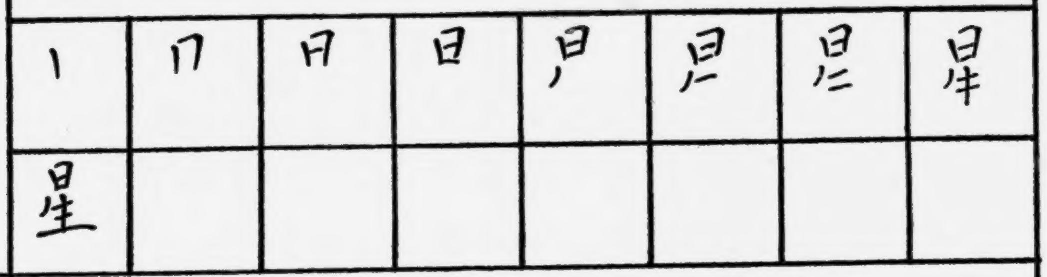
停

Character Number 1148 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 11 人，亻



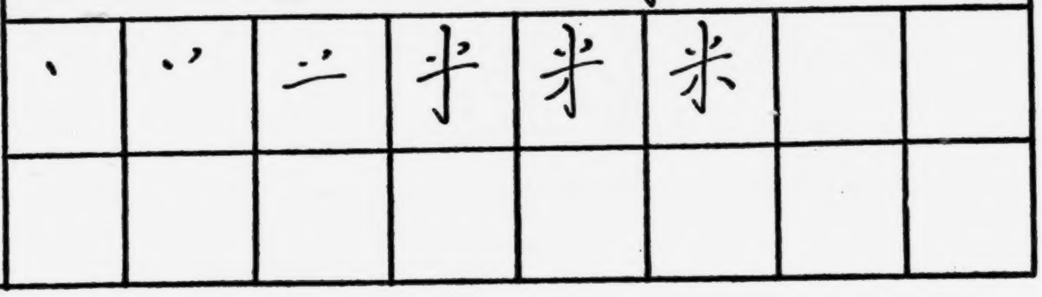
星

Character Number 1032 Radical Number 72
Stroke Number 9 日

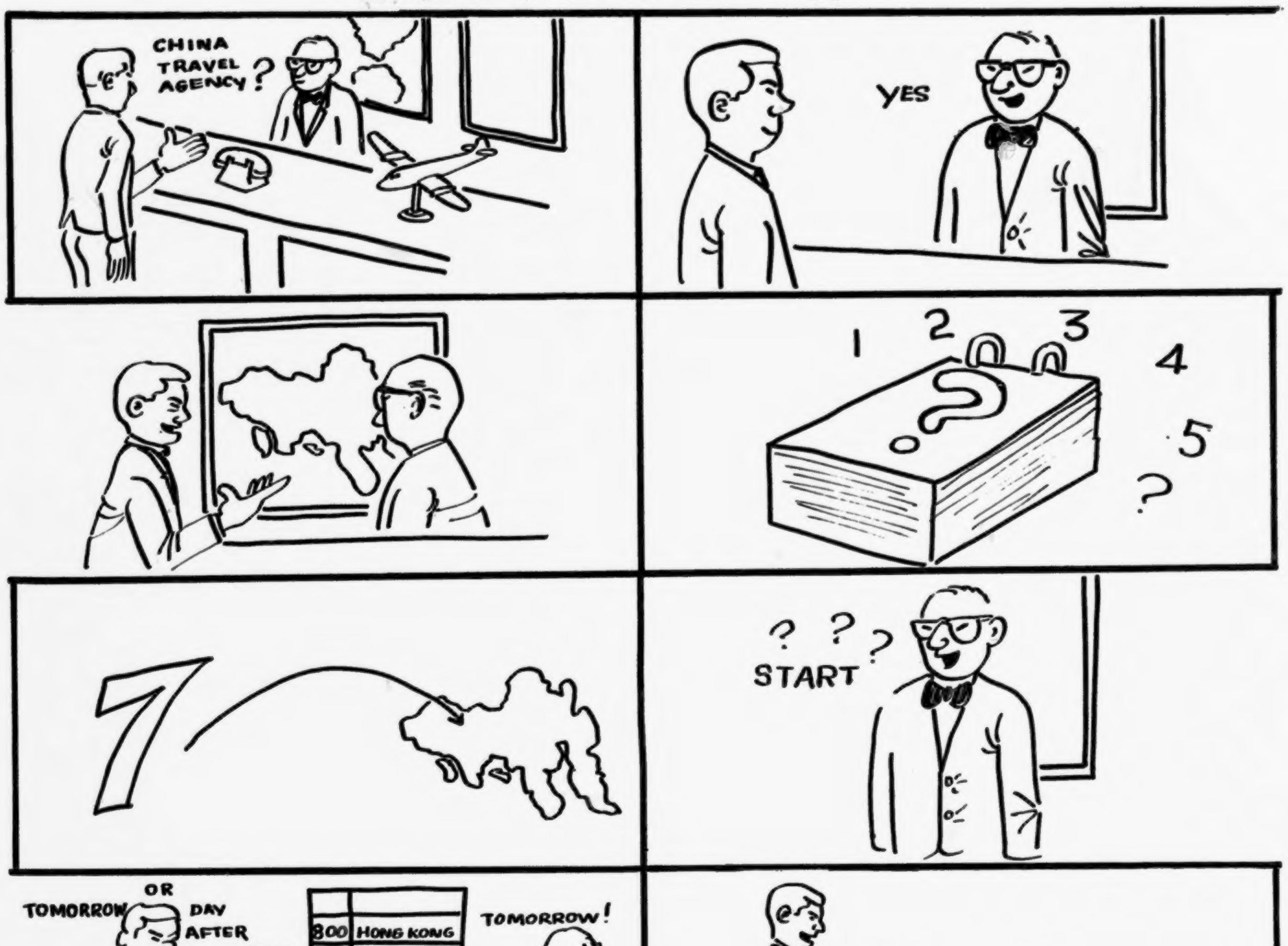


米

Character Number 668 Radical Number 119
Stroke Number 6 米



LESSON 11


CHINA TRAVEL AGENCY ?
YES
1 2 3 4 5 ?
7
? ? ? START
TOMORROW OR DAY AFTER TOMORROW
8:00 HONG KONG
TOMORROW!
?? = TICKET
$ FARES
10:00 FIRST CLASS
7:00 SECOND CLASS
5:00 THIRD CLASS
← FIRST CLASS $ 10.00
?? ?
HONG KONG
STATION
10.00

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Ni-shuè haî Chung-Kwòk-Luĭ-Hāng-Shĕ mà?

Chik-uēn. Haî à, sin-shaang, yaŭ mat kwaì-kòn à?

W. Ngŏh seúng ts'ìng neĭ-teî t'ūng ngŏh kaì-waâk yat-kòh tuén-k'eì luĭ-hāng. Huì Heung-Kóng yaū-laăm hă.

C. Sin-shaang seúng haî Heung-Kóng taû-laū keî-toh yât ne?

W. Tá-suèn haî Heung-Kóng taû-laū yat-kòh laĭ-paaì.

C. Wōng sin-shaang keî-shì* hóh-ĭ heî-ch'ìng à?

W. T'ing-yât yîk tak, haû-yât yîk tak, mŏ mat mân-t'aì.

C. Kám tsaû taàp t'ing-chiu paàt-tîm kóh-paan tsó-ch'e huì Heung-Kóng, hó mà?

W. Hó hó. Ch'e-p'iù iù keî-toh ts'ìn* à?

C. T'aū-táng shâp-man, î-táng ts'at-man, saam-táng nğ-man.

W. Ts'ìng neĭ t'aì ngŏh maaĭ cheung t'aū-táng p'iù la. Ngŏh tò-chóh Heung-Kóng kè shì-haû, tîm-yeûng* à?

C. M̄-shaî taam-sam. Ngŏh-teî ooĭ tá ch'eūng-t'ō-tîn-wâ* huì Heung-Kóng paân-sẑ-ch'uè. K'uĭ-teî ooĭ p'aaì yān huì fóh-ch'e-chaâm tsìp neĭ kè ch'e.

W. Kám tsaû t'ŏh-tòng saaì là. Ni-shuè shâp-man. Lō-faān-saaì, lō-faān-saaì.

LESSON 11

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. Is this the China Travel Agency?

Clerk. Yes, sir. What can I do for you?

W. I'd like to ask you to plan a short trip for me. I wish to go on a tour of Hong Kong.

C. How many days do you wish to stay in Hong Kong?

W. I plan to stay in Hong Kong for a week.

C. Mr. Wōng, when can you start on your trip?

W. Either tomorrow or the day after tomorrow will be all right; it doesn't matter.

C. In that case, how about taking the eight o'clock train tomorrow morning for Hong Kong?

W. Fine. How much is the train ticket?

C. It's $10 for first class; $7, second class; and $5, third class.

W. Please give me a first class ticket. What shall I do after I reach Hong Kong?

C. Don't worry. We'll make a long distance telephone call to our Hong Kong office. They'll send some one to the railway station to meet your train.

W. In that case, everything has been well taken care of. Here is $10. Thank you for your trouble.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. He is planning a 6-month trip to the Far East in the year after next.
2. The travel agency has a clerk to meet you at the airport.
3. My wife will stay in New York for sightseeing, but I have to come back the day after tomorrow.
4. I worried about his injury. Therefore, I took the early train to get here.
5. He is visiting friends in Hong Kong for a short time.
6. We have not enough money to go first class; so we buy third class tickets.
7. It is not a question of money. It is a question of satisfaction.
8. The telegram was dispatched to my office yesterday morning.
9. I made three long distance telephone calls to my office here in the States while I was in the Far East.
10. I have to be at the railway station before seven tomorrow morning if I plan to start my journey on the morning train.
11. You have taken care of everything most satisfactorily. Much obliged.
12. It is very kind of you to meet me at the airport. Thank you very much.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

13. Will you please take this letter to that man over there?

14. Mr. Leĭ is substituting for Mr. Wōng, and Mr Ma for Mr. Ch'ān.

15. Please do not worry about your husband. The news over the radio reported everybody was all right in the plane accident.

16. You may purchase your ticket at the railway station or through the Canton Travel Agency.

17. I shall be in Hong Kong at 7 a.m. July 7. Please send someone to meet me at the airport.

LESSON 11

WORD LIST

1.	luĭ-hāng shĕ	travel agency
2.	tuên-k'eī	short period
3.	yaū-laăm	to tour, visit, sightseeing
4.	heī-ch'īng	to start on a journey
5.	tsô ch'e	early train, morning train
6.	t'aū-tâng	first class
7.	t'aī	to substitute for
8.	ch'eūng-t'ō	long distance
9.	paân-sẑ-ch'uè	office
10.	p'aaī	to send, dispatch
11.	t'ŏh-tòng	well taken care of, satisfactorily done
12.	lō-faān-saaī	much obliged, thank you for everything

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

809

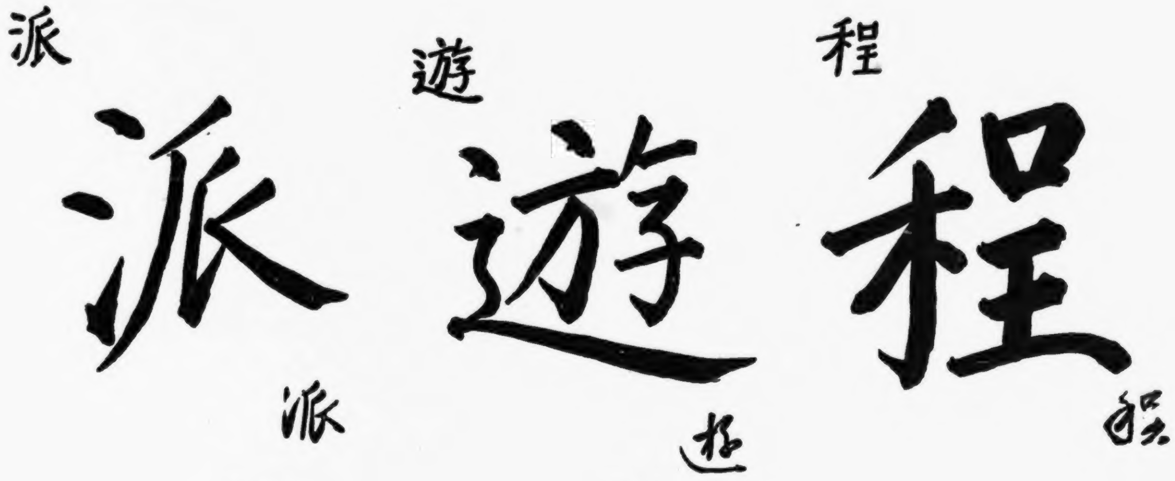
派	p'aaì: branch; sect; tribe; to distribute; to depute; to send.
黨派	tóng-p'aaì: clique; faction.
左派	tsóh p'aaì: the "Leftist"
分派	fan-p'aaì: to distribute.

1458

遊	yaū: to saunter; to roam; to travel.
遊戲	yaū-heì: sport; amusement.
交遊	kaau yaū: social intercourse.
遊街	yaū-kaai: parade.

98

程	ch'īng: route; journey
起程	heí-ch'īng: to begin a journey
章程	cheung ch'īng: rules; regulations
程度	ch'īng-tồ: standard; grade

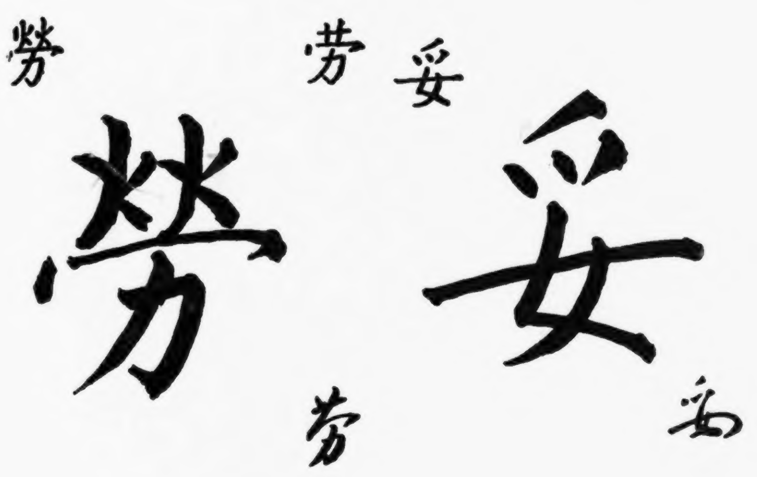


626

勞	lō: toil; service; distress; to trouble.
勞苦	lō-foó: laborious.
勞動者	lō-tûng-ché: laborer.
勞神	lō shān: to weary; to require attention.

1183

妥	t'ŏh: settled; secure; safe; ready.
妥當	t'ŏh-tòng: properly or validly done.
辦妥	paân t'ŏh: satisfactorily arranged.
講妥	kóng t'ŏh: come to an agreement.



LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

778

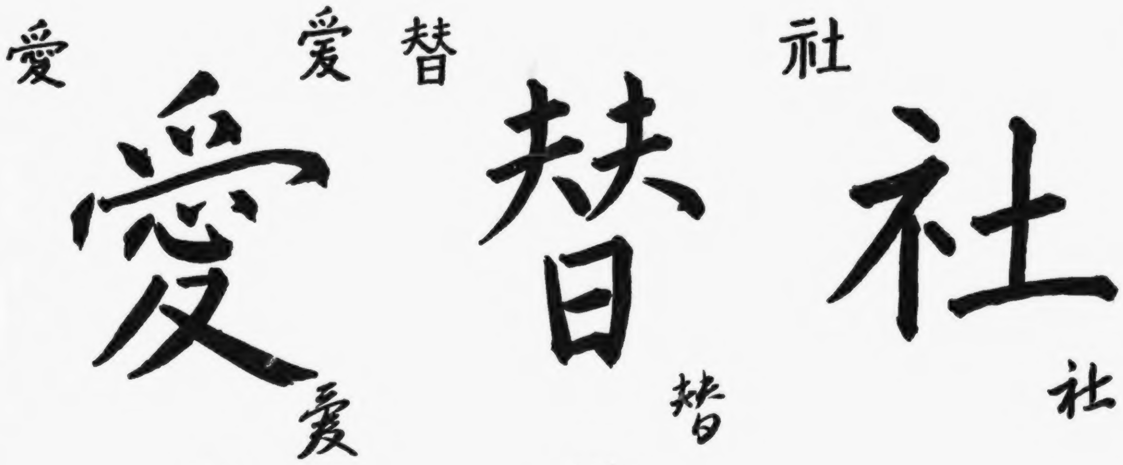
愛	oì: to love; a delight in.
愛情	oì-ts'īng: feelings of affection.
愛惜	oì-sik: to be sparing of; be careful of; to take good care of.
愛國	oì kwŏk: to love one's country.

1108

替	t'aì: to substitute for; in the place of; for.
替工	t'aì kung: to take another's place in work.
替代	t'aì-toî: in place of; on behalf of.

963

社	shĕ: tutelary deity; village; society.
社會	shĕ-ooī: society; community.

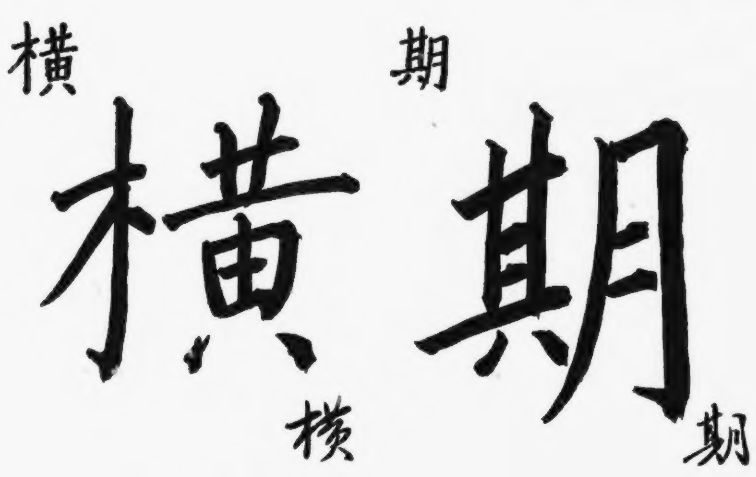


1410

横	waāng: crosswise; perverse; at the side.
横行	waāng hāng: perverse conduct; prevailing.
横財	waāng ts'oī: windfall; good luck.

446

期	k'eī: an appointed time; a period.
日期	yât-k'eī: a fixed date.
時期	shī-k'eī: period.
期限	k'eī-haân: time limit.
滿期	moŏn k'eī: the time is up.
過期	kwòh k'eī: to pass the time limit.
假期	kà-k'eī: vacation period.



LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

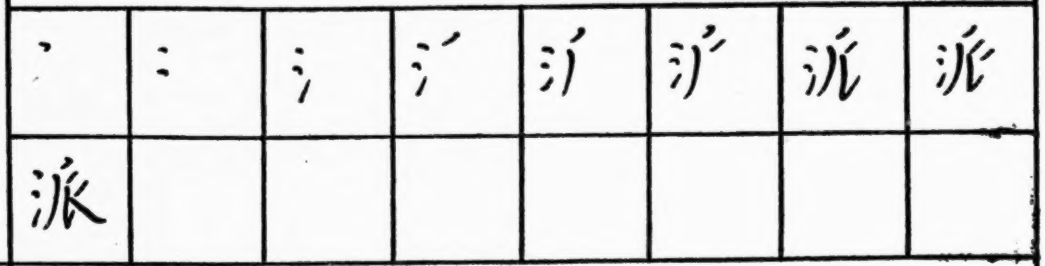
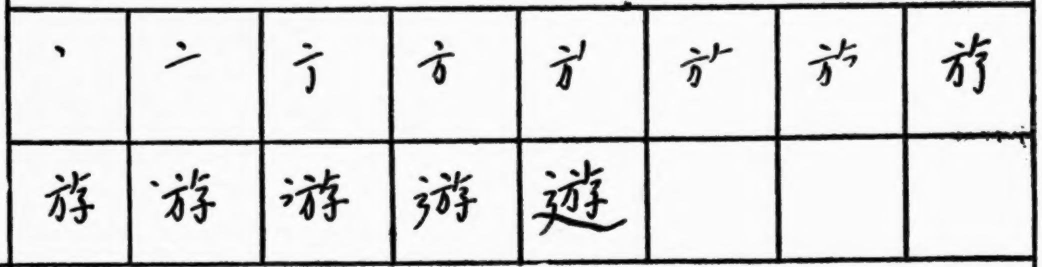
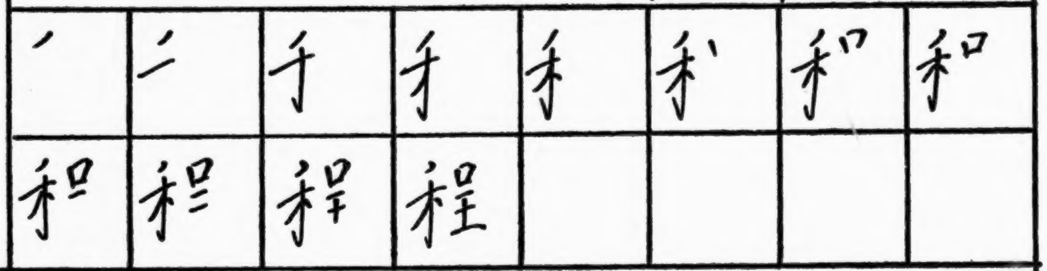
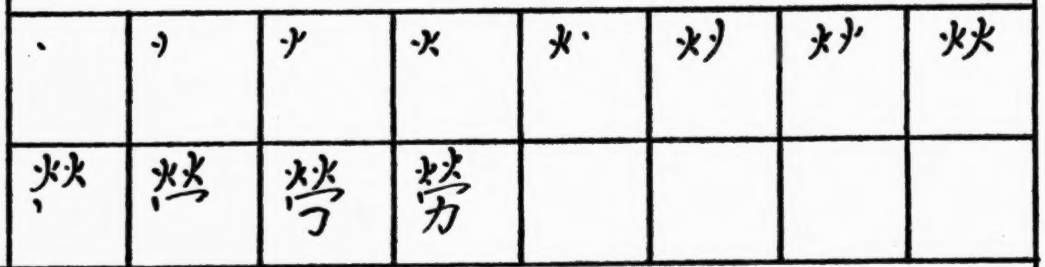
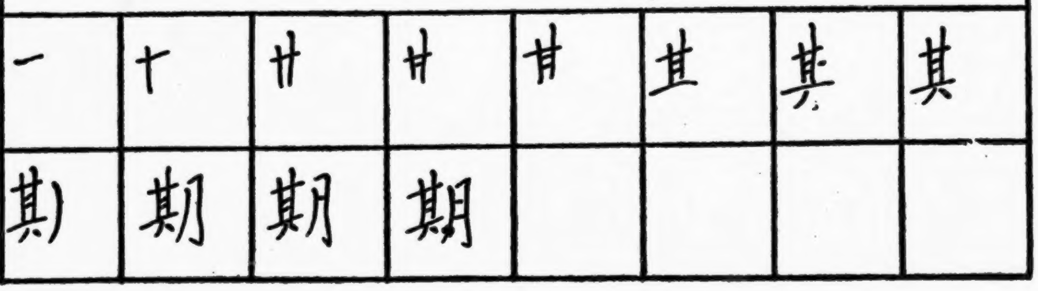
老黃喺廣州住chôh 幾個星期,想去第二處遊laăm -,做一個短期旅行.佢打算去香港,因為佢聽聞話香港係好可愛嘅地方;有好多野睇.但係佢唔知到點樣去.最好嘅辦法,就係請一個旅行社 替佢計劃,因為旅行社 辦事係好妥當嘅;佢自己唔使担心,又唔使勞煩朋友.到香港嘅時候,旅行社 又派人接車同wán酒店.

老黃决定之後就去一間呌做中國旅行社 ,買chôh一張頭等車票,用chôh十文,喺聽日taàp早班車去香港.

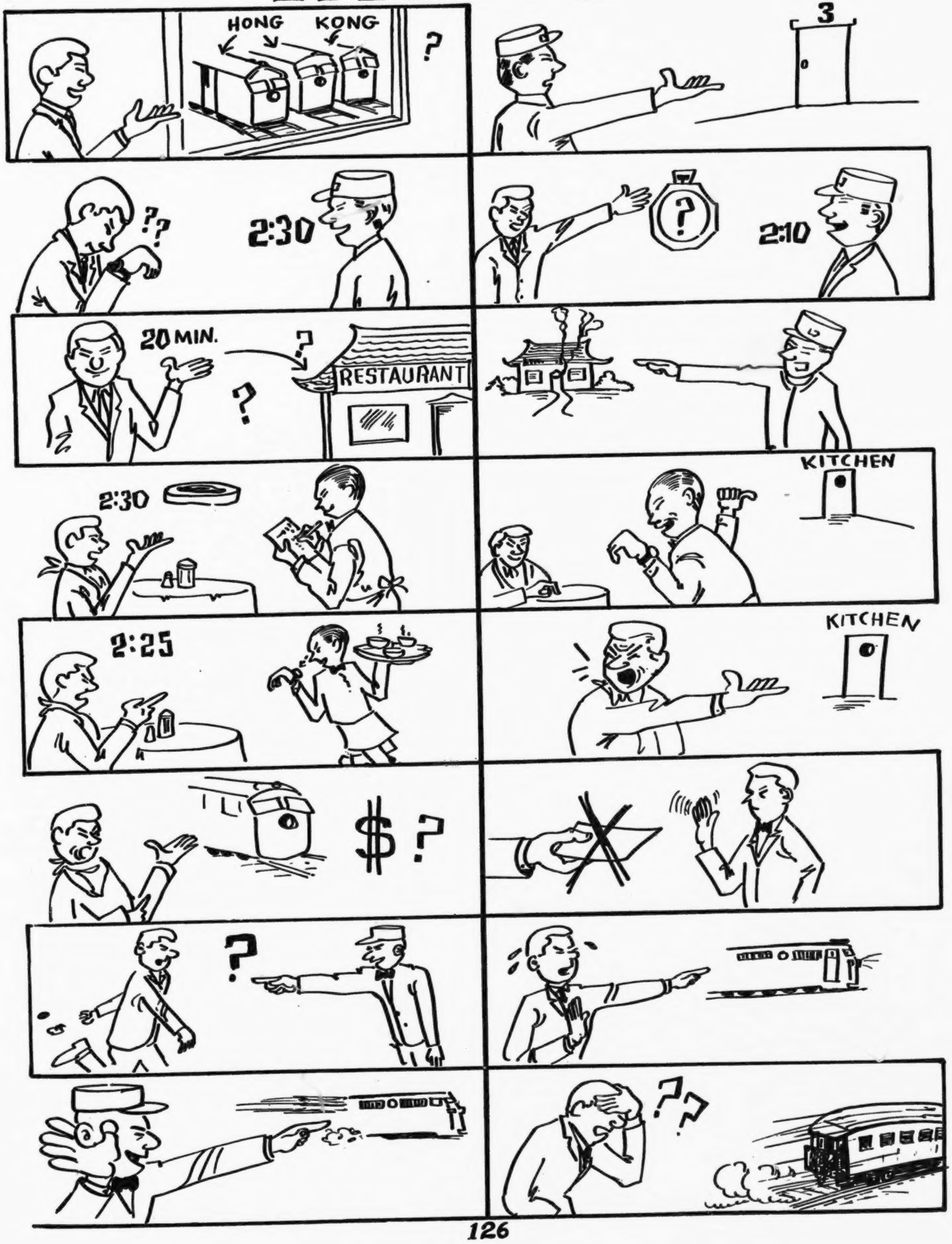
廣州去香港嘅路程,不過七八十里,火車行幾點鐘就可以到la.

LESSON 11

WRITING MATERIAL

派	Character Number 809 Stroke Number 9 Radical Number 85 水，氵	
遊	Character Number 1458 Stroke Number 13 Radical Number 162 辵，辶	
程	Character Number 98 Stroke Number 12 Radical Number 115 禾，禾	
勞	Character Number 626 Stroke Number 12 Radical Number 19 力	
期	Character Number 446 Stroke Number 12 Radical Number 74 月	

LESSON 12


HONG
KONG
?
3
??
2:30
?
2:10
20 MIN.
?
?
RESTAURANT
2:30
KITCHEN
2:25
KITCHEN
$?
?
??

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Ts'îng mân pin-kà fóh-ch'e haî huì Heung-Kóng kè?

Chaâm-uēn. Neĭ yaū taî-saam-tô chaâp-haú yâp-huì, kóh-kà fóh-ch'e tsaû-haî huì Heung-Kóng kè.

W. Neĭ chi-m̄-chi-tò kóh-kà fóh-ch'e keî shì* hoi ch'e ne?

C. Kóh-kà fóh-ch'e hâ-nğ leŭng-tîm-poòn hoi ch'e.

W. Ī-ka keî-tîm à?

C. Ī-ka leŭng-tîm shâp-fan.

W. Chûng yaŭ î-shâp fan-chung ìn-haû hoi ch'e. Ngŏh pat-uē huì shîk ti yĕ sin. Neĭ chi-m̄-chi-tò pin-shuè yaŭ ts'aan-shat à?

C. Ni-kòh fóh-ch'e-tsaâm yaŭ kaan ts'aan-shat. Ne! Haî kóh-shuè!

W. Fóh-keì, Ngŏh iù kón leŭng-tîm-poòn kóh-kà fóh-ch'e. Ts'îng neĭ peî yat-tîp ngaū-p'ā* ngŏh la.

Fóh-keì. Sin-shaang, neĭ kè shì-haû hó màn pòh. Ngŏh kiù fóh-t'aū* tsik-hak chîng peî neĭ la.

W. Neĭ t'aî hă kòh chung, ì-ka leŭng-tîm î-shâp-nğ-fan lòh. Tîm-kaaî chûng m̄-ning ngŏh kè ngaū-p'ā* laî à?

F. Ngŏh ĭ-king fan-foò fóh-t'aū* faaì-ti kà là. Táng ngŏh huì ch'uē-fōng* ts'ui hă k'uĭ.

W. Ts'ui k'uĭ to mŏ yûng là. Ngŏh iù kón kóh-tô ch'e. Keî-toh ts'ìn* à?

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

F. M̄-hó kaì lòh. Ngŏh-teî lîng neĭ tấng-chốh kồm noî. Chan-haî tuì-m̄-chuê.

W. Ngŏh kam-ts'z̀ iù tsaú là, m̄-haî kốn-m̄-tó fốh-ch'e là.

Chaâm-uēn. Sin-shaang, sin-shaang! Neĭ tsô mi-yĕ tsaú tak kồm faaì à?

W. M̄-hó chốh-chuê ngŏh. Ngŏh iù kốn kốh-kà fốh-ch'e.

C. Mat wâ*? Kốh-kà fốh-ch'e ĭ king hoi-shaú haāng-kấn là.

W. Paî là, paî là. Kà fốh-ch'e uêt-haāng uêt-faaì. Ni-ts'z̀ chan-haî chui-m̄-tó kà fốh-ch'e. Tîm-suèn-hố ne? Tîm-suèn-hố ne?

LESSON 12

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. May I ask which train goes to Hong Kong?

Porter. Go in by the third gate. That's the train that goes to Hong Kong.

W. Do you know when that train leaves?

P. That train leaves at 2:30 p.m.

W. What time is it now?

P. It is now 2:10.

W. There are still twenty minutes before the train leaves. I had better go to eat something first. Do you know where I can find a restaurant?

P. This railway station has a restaurant. There! Over there!

W. Waiter, I have to catch the 2:30 p.m. train. Please give me a steak.

Waiter. You have very little time, sir. I'll ask the cook to prepare it for you immediately.

W. Take a look at the clock. It is now already 2:25. Why don't you bring the steak?

Wa. I've already told the cook to hurry. Let me go to the kitchen to hurry him.

W. There's no use to hurry him. I've got to catch that train. How much is it?

LESSON 12

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wa. You owe nothing. We made you wait so long. I'm awfully sorry.

W. Now I'll have to run, otherwise I won't catch the train.

Porter. Say, mister. Why are you running so fast?

W. Don't delay me. I have to catch that train.

P. What did you say? That train is already beginning to move.

W. What a mess! The train is moving faster and faster. This time I really can't catch the train. What shall I do? What shall I do?

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The plane is about to leave. What shall I do?
2. He is driving too slowly on the way to the airport, and he will not be able to catch the plane.
3. Even though she is very hungry, she walks faster and faster.
4. What did you say? They are in the hospital?
5. This time the gate is opened, but there is a car obstructing the way.
6. Please do not rush me because I have to count my money first.
7. He ordered his breakfast just now and he wants to have it immediately.
8. The manager left instructions to give every young lady a ten percent discount on hats.
9. The cook fixed a delicious lunch, but we had to wait a long time for it.
10. The train will start in less than five minutes, but he is still having coffee in the restaurant.
11. She chased away all her friends because they didn't help her at all.
12. An employee at the train station stands by the gate to help people get on and off the train.
13. The time for the plane to leave is extremely close and he has to run all the way from the gate.

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. This restaurant has ten cooks in addition to twenty other employees.
15. I think I owe you ten dollars, and I am awfully sorry that I cannot pay you back right now.
16. This cook does not know how to prepare Chinese dishes, but he cooks the best steak in town.
17. It is now 2:15 and I have to leave immediately.

LESSON 12

WORD LIST

1.	kôn (fôh-ch'e)	to catch (a train), chase after
2.	chaâm-uēn	train station employee
3.	chaâp-haŭ	gate
4.	màn	close in time, verge
5.	fôh-t'aū*	cook, chef
6.	fan-foò	to order, give instruction, ask
7.	ts'ui	to rush, hurry someone
8.	kaì	to count, calculate
9.	chôh	to block, obstruct, hinder
10.	mat wâ*?	what did you say?
11.	uêt-haāng-uêt-faaì	to move faster and faster
12.	chui	to pursue, chase
13.	paî là	too bad! Alas!

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

553

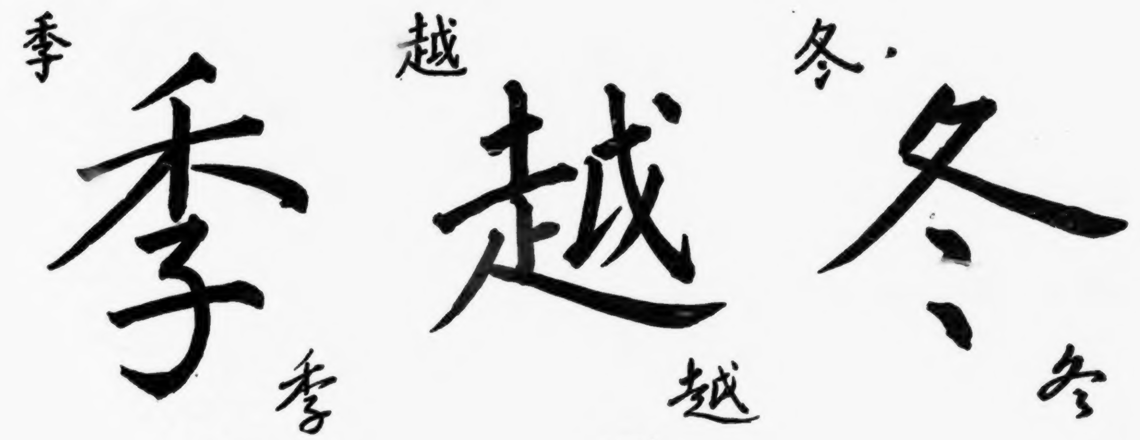
季	kwaì: season; quarter; young; last.
四季	sz̀ kwaì: the four seasons.
夏季	hâ-kwaì: summer.
每季	mooĭ kwaì: quarterly; every season.

1397

越	uêt: to pass over; to exceed.
越南	uêt-naām: Viet-nam
越界	uêt kaaì: to pass beyond the territory.
越軌	uêt-kwaí: out of the beaten track; out of legal activity.

1357

冬	tung: winter.
冬天	tung-t'in: winter.
冬至	tung-chì: winter solstice.

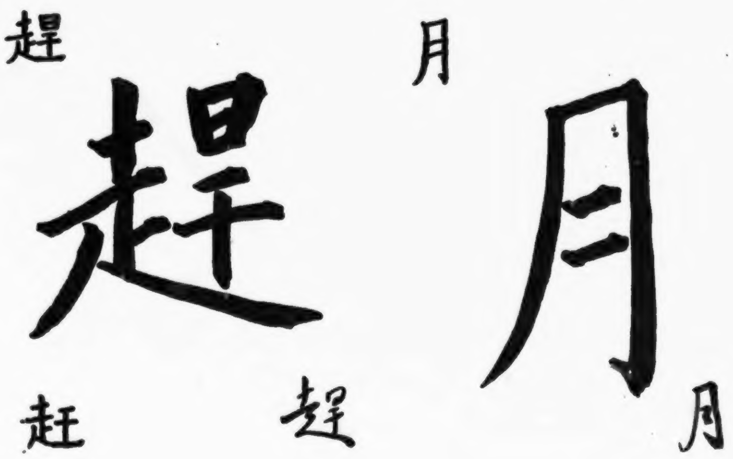


498

趕	kón: to drive out; to eject; to expel; to pursue.
趕緊	kón-kán: pressing; hurry up.
趕上	kón-sheǔng: to catch up to.
趕車	kón che: to catch a train, car, etc.
趕走	kón-tsaú: to drive away.

1396

月	uêt: moon; a month.
月光	uêt-kwong: moonlight.
賞月	sheúng uêt: to worship the moon on the 15th of the 8th month.



LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

1311

催	ts'ui: to urge; to hasten; to press on.
催促	ts'ui-ts'uk: to urge; to impel; to force.
催眠術	ts'ui-mīn-shût hypnotism.

1498

容	yūng: to contain; to endure; demeanor; look.
容貌	yūng-maaû: looks; visage; appearance.
容忍	yūng-yán: patient; forbearing.

565:

骨	kwat: the bone.
骨肉	kwat-yûk: bone & flesh; close tie and blood.
骨節	kwat-tsìt: joints.
駁骨	pòk kwat: to reset the bones.
冇腰骨	mŏ-iu-kwat: no backbone; unreliable.

催 容 骨

催 容 骨

催 容 骨

1323

進	tsùn to advance; to proceed; to enter; to offer.
進行	tsùn-hāng: to advance; to make headway.
進步	tsùn-pô: to make progress.
進兵	tsùn ping: advance of troops.

133

追	chui: to pursue; to chase
追到	chui-tò: caught up with
追究	chui-kaù: to investigate; follow up

進 追

進 追

進 追

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

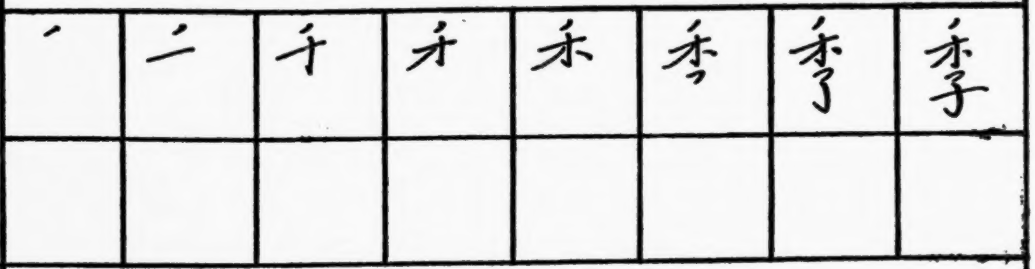
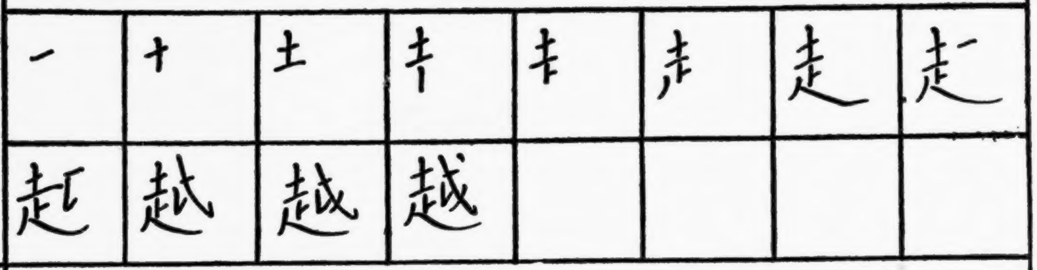
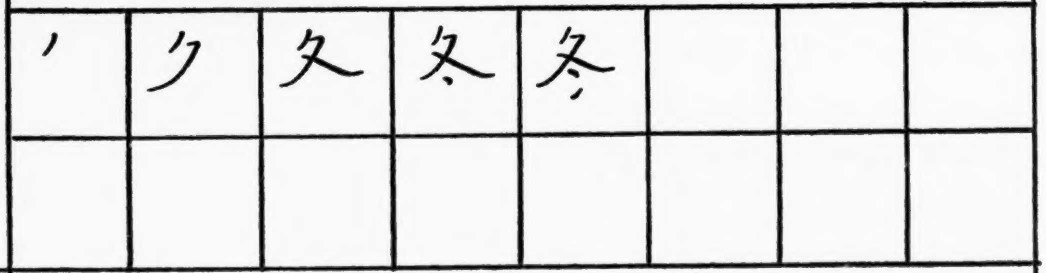
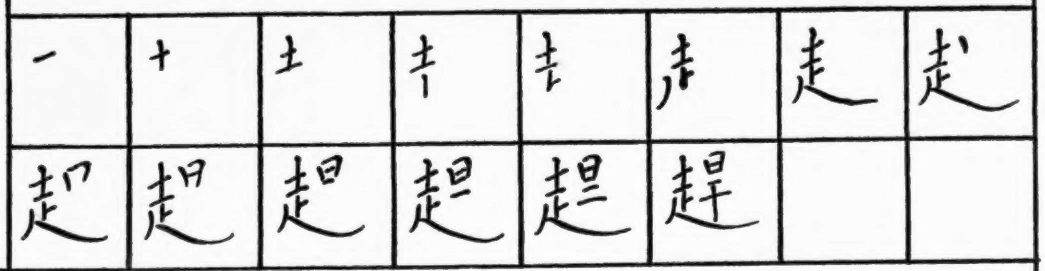
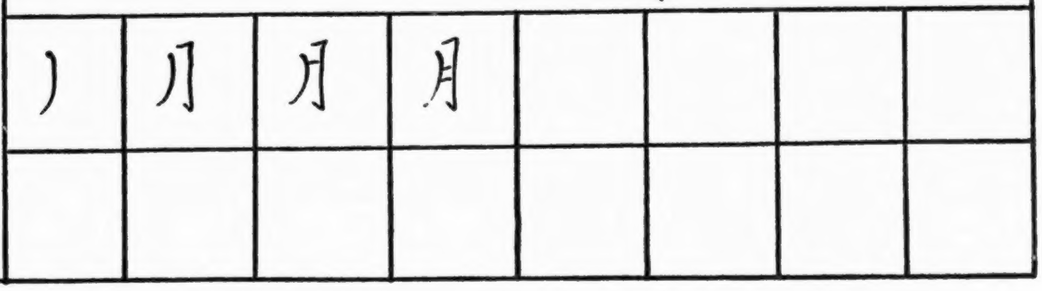
十一月十四日,老黃由廣州taàp早車去香港短期旅行.佢應該早啲起身,但係嗰陣時係冬季,天氣好冷;早起身唔係幾容-î.酒店伙記催chôh 佢兩次,然後喺十二点一個骨下牀.佢taàp唔倒早車,但係重可以taàp兩點半嗰架火車.

佢趕到車站,重有二十分鐘然後開車,佢未食過野,就喺火車站嘅ts'aan室食啲野先.佢嘅時候好màn 佢叫伙記 fan-foò 伙頭即刻整一tîp 牛 p'ā* peî 佢,越快越好.

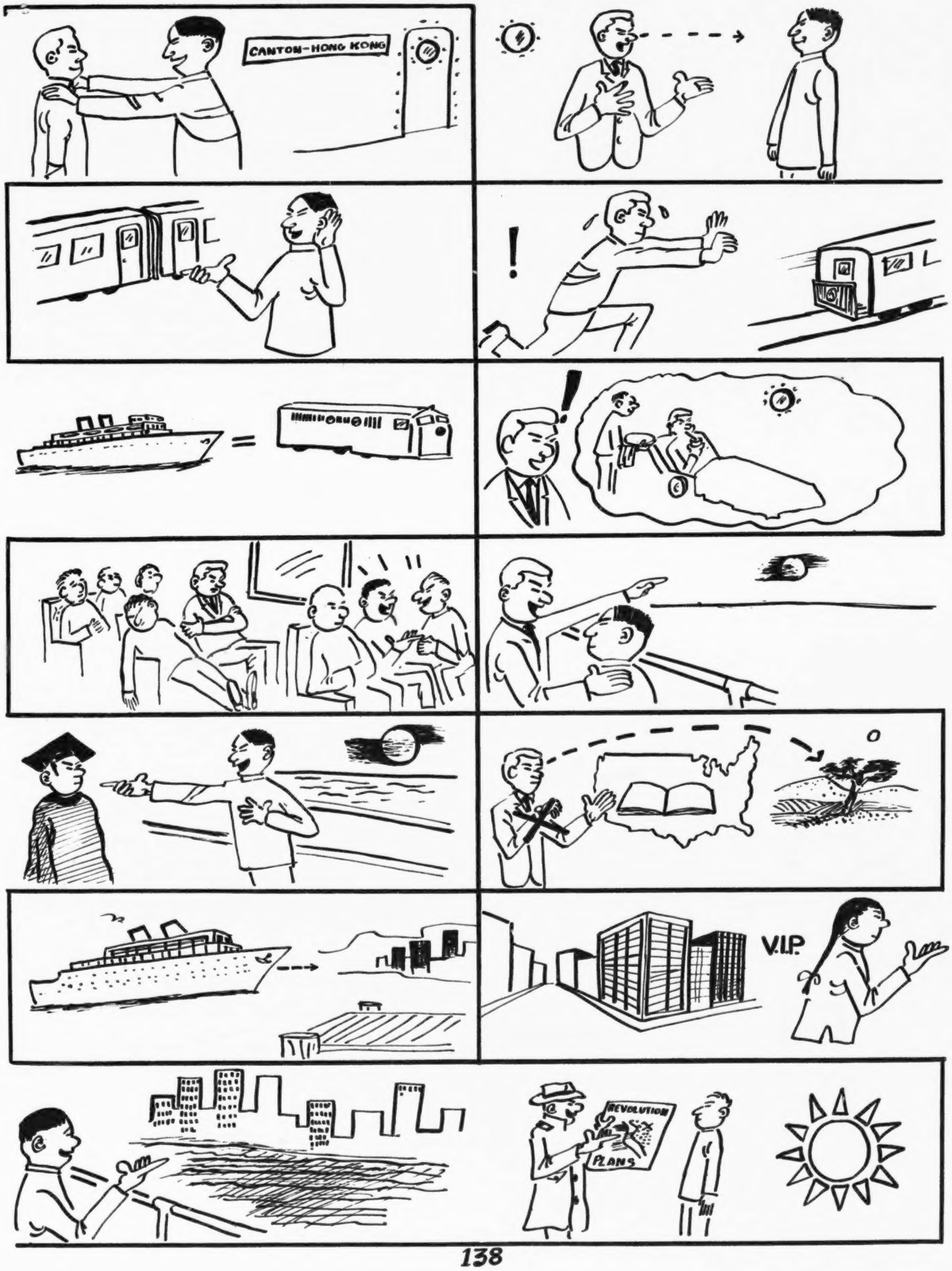
冇幾耐就到開車嘅時候là,牛p'ā*重未ning黎,老黃唔再等là,趕去taàp車.嗰架火車已經開shaù行緊,越行越快,老黃yîk都追唔倒,佢而家唔知點算好.

LESSON 12

WRITING MATERIAL

季	**Character Number** 553 **Radical Number** 39 **Stroke Number** 8 子	
越	**Character Number** 1397 **Radical Number** 156 **Stroke Number** 12 走	
冬	**Character Number** 1357 **Radical Number** 15 **Stroke Number** 5 冫	
趕	**Character Number** 498 **Radical Number** 156 **Stroke Number** 14 走	
月	**Character Number** 1396 **Radical Number** 74 **Stroke Number** 4 月	

LESSON 13


CANTON-HONG KONG
V.I.P.
REVOLUTION
PLANS

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Cheung. Kòm ngaam à. Koó-m̄-tò ooĭ haî Shaáng-Kóng shuēn* kìn-tó neĭ.

Wōng. À-Cheung. Haî ne, faàt mûng to koó-m̄-tò ooĭ haî ni-shuè kìn-tó neĭ.

C. Ngŏh t'eng-kìn À-Leĭ wâ neĭ kam-yât hâ-nğ taàp fóh-ch'e huì Heung-Kóng. Tîm-kaaî neĭ koî-pìn kaì-waâk, taàp shuēn huì Heung-Kóng à?

W. M̄-chîk-tak kóng là. Ngŏh ch'oh-shī seúng taàp fóh-ch'e. taân-haì kón ch'e kón-m̄-tó.

C. Kòm-m̄-hó-ts'oî à. Taàp shuēn t'ūng taàp ch'e mŏ mat fan-pît kè che. Pat-uē mōng-keì kam-yât hâ-nğ kè sẑ pâ* la.

W. Neĭ kóng tak tuì là. Ngŏh koó-m̄-tò taàp shuēn peî-kaaù taàp-ch'e chûng shue-fûk-ti.

C. Haî à, taàp fóh-ch'e kè shī-haû, yaû ts'ō yaû yān toh, taàp shuēn tsaû uēn-ch'uēn m̄-t'ūng là.

W. À-Cheung, neĭ t'aî hă kóh-ti fung-kîng; t'aî hă kóh-ti uêt-shik, chan-haî yaŭ shi-ì là.

C. À-Wōng*, neĭ chan-haî yat-kòh mān-yān shi-yān là. Hó-ts'z̆ ngŏh tsô shaang-ì kè yān, tsaû wĭng-uĕn m̄-ooĭ sheúng fung-kîng sheúng uêt-shik kè là.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. M̄-hó kám wâ. Ngŏh haî Meĭ-Kwòk kè shī-haû, tûk shue tûk tak mōng. To mö shī-haû sheúng fung-kîng t'ūng uêt-shik. Sui-în ngŏh ī-ka tsòk-haàk-t'a-heung, chuk-kîng-sheung-ts'īng, ngŏh chûng ooĭ tàî hă fung-kîng t'aî hă uêt-shik che.

C. Ni-chèk shuēn ĭ-king leî-hoi Kwóng-Chau-Shĭ. Neĭ tàí kîn Kwóng-Chau kè tang-shik mà? Ne.

W. Kwóng-Chau haî yat-kòh kòm taaî kè shīng-shĭ. Ch'ut m̄-shiú waĭ-yān.

C. Haî là. Kòh kòh Chung-Kwòk-Yān to wâ Kwóng-Chau haî kaàk-mîng kè ch'aàk-uēn-teî laĭ kà.

LESSON 13

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Cheung. What a coincidence. I never thought I'd see you on a Canton-Hong Kong steamship.

Wōng. Yes, Cheung. I never dreamed I'd see you here.

C. I heard Leĭ say that you took a train for Hong Kong this afternoon. Why have you changed your plans and taken a steamship for Hong Kong?

W. It isn't worth mentioning. I intended to take a train at first, but I was unable to catch it.

C. Such bad luck! There isn't much difference between taking a train and taking a steamship. You might as well forget this afternoon's incident.

W. What you say is right. I didn't imagine that taking a steamship would be more comfortable than taking a train.

C. Yes, when taking a train, it is noisy and crowded. Taking a steamship is entirely different.

W. Cheung, take a look at that scenery; take a look at the moonlight: it is really poetic.

C. Wōng, you are really a scholar and a poet. A businessman such as I would never know how to enjoy the scenery and moonlight.

LESSON 13

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. Don't say that. When I was in the United States, I was busy studying. I didn't even have time to enjoy the scenery and the moonlight. Although now I'm sojourning in another place, the scenery stirs up my sad feelings. I, nevertheless, like to take a look at the scenery and the moonlight.

C. This ship has already left the city of Canton. Can you see the lights of Canton? There!

W. Canton is such a big city. It has produced many important persons.

C. Yes. The Chinese say that Canton is the base of operations for revolutions.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. San Francisco has the majority of Chinese-Americans in the U.S.
2. The American revolution is being studied in every school.
3. There were many great men who fought in the Revolution.
4. The clerk puts on the red and green lights in the hall for dancing.
5. Scholars and poets should have poetic inspirations from moon-light and other scenery.
6. When sojourning in other places, everything seems to be completely different.
7. Children seem to be making noises for ever and ever.
8. This class is very noisy, but that class is not.
9. He dreams every night, but he always forgets his dreams.
10. You would never guess that he can speak Cantonese fluently.
11. This train is so noisy and crowded. I wish I had taken the steamship for the journey.
12. The scenery here is not entirely different from that in China.
13. We are very comfortable today, but we shouldn't forget we have to work hard tomorrow.
14. What you said is not all correct, yet it is not completely wrong.
15. When sojourning in other places, a look at the scenery would stir up many sad feelings.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. **He is not only a scholar, but also a great man.**

17. **A poet does not change his feeling toward the scenery; he is influenced by it.**

18. **He was not injured in the accident. He was very lucky.**

LESSON 13

WORD LIST

1.	faàt mûng	to dream
2.	koì-pìn	to change, alter
3.	hó-ts'oì	lucky, fortunate
4.	fan-pît	difference
5.	mōng-keì	to forget
6.	tuì	right, correct; towards
7.	fung-kìng	scenery
8.	uêt shik	moon-light
9.	shi ì	poetic inspiration
10.	mān-yān	scholar
11.	shi-yān	poet
12.	wĭng-uĕn	forever
13.	tsòk-haàk t'a heung	sojourning in other places
14.	chuk kìng sheung ts'ìng	to stir up one's feelings when looking at the scenery
15.	tang shik	lights
16.	waĭ-yān	great man
17.	kaàk-mîng	revolution
18.	ch'aàk-uēn-teî	base of operations
19.	m̄-chîk-tak	is not worth while
20.	shuēn	boat, ship
21.	fóh-shuēn	steamship

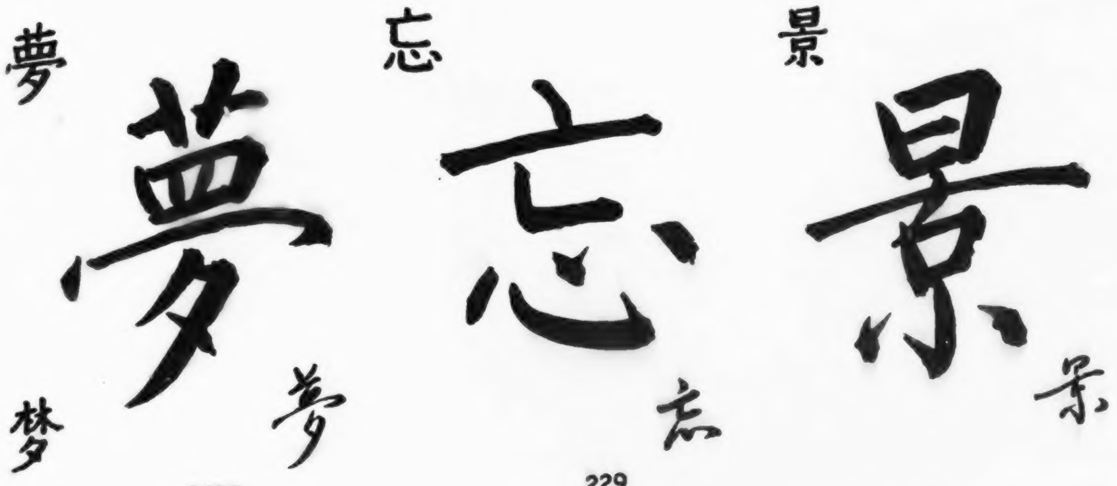
LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

725	
夢	mûng: to dream; a dream.
發夢	faàt mûng: to dream.
夢見	mûng kìn: to see in a dream.

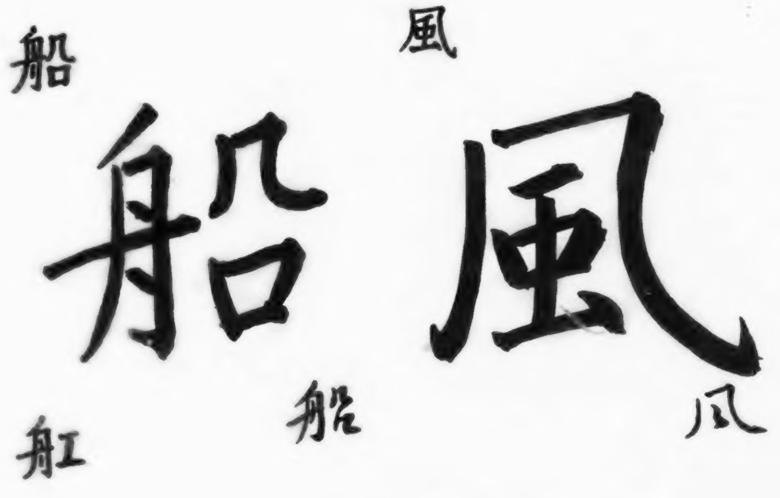
712	
忘	mōng: to forget; unconscious.
忘記	mōng-keì: to forget.
忘恩	mōng yan: ungrateful.
忘本	mōng poón: ungrateful.

469	
景	kíng: scenery; view; prospect; sight.
風景	fung-kíng: scenery; landscape.
景緻	kíng-chì: view; scenery.
景況	kíng-fòng: prospects; circumstances.



1013	
船	shuēn: a boat; ship; a junk.
輪船	lūn-shuēn: power driven boat.
帆船	faān-shuēn: sailing boat.
船廠	shuēn ch'óng: a shipyard.
船票	shuēn p'iù: boat ticket.

229	
風	fung: wind; rumor; custom
打風	tá fung: typhoon
風俗	fung-tsûk: common customs
風濕	fung-shap: rheumatism
風景	fung-kíng: scenery.



LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

852

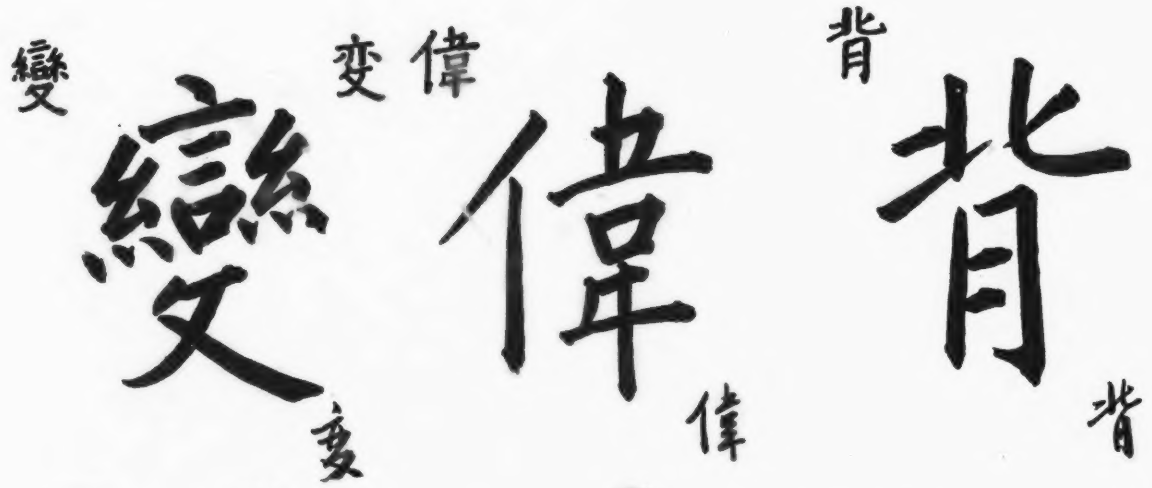
變	pìn: to change; to alter; to transform.
變成	pìn shīng: to become; to change into.
變化	pìn-fà: transformation

1421

偉	waĭ: great; gigantic; powerful; strong; mighty.
偉人	waĭ-yān: great man; hero.
偉大	waĭ-taaî: great; gigantic.

893

背	pooì: the back; spine; to repudiate.
背後	pooì-haû: behind the back.
背命	pooì mêng: disobey order.

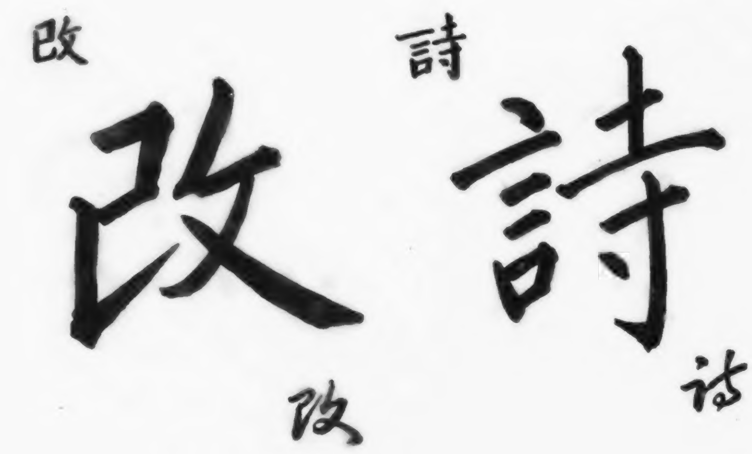


486

改	koí: to change; to alter; amend.
改過	koí kwòh: to mend one's ways; to repent.
改善 改良	koí-shîn, or koí-leūng: to reform; to improve.
改變	koí-pìn: to change; to alter.
改期	koí k'eī: postpone.

975

詩	shi: song; poem; ode.
詩經	shi-king: the book of odes.
作詩	tsòk shi: to compose a poem.



LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

廣州同香港嘅交通除 chôh 有火車之外重有火船，有啲火船喺晚頭黑開行，第二日朝頭早就可以到 là. 老黃 taàp 唔倒火車，就改變計劃；搭夜船去香港. 佢上船之後，有人喺後便叫佢，佢睇吓原來係老張. 真係好似發夢一樣估唔到會同老張同船.

佢地兩人 k'eĭ 喺船面傾吓，睇吓風景，賞吓月色. 老黃覺得呢種景色，好有詩意，而且坐船又比較坐車 shue 服得多；心中快樂，完全忘記 chôh 趕火車嗰種情形 là.

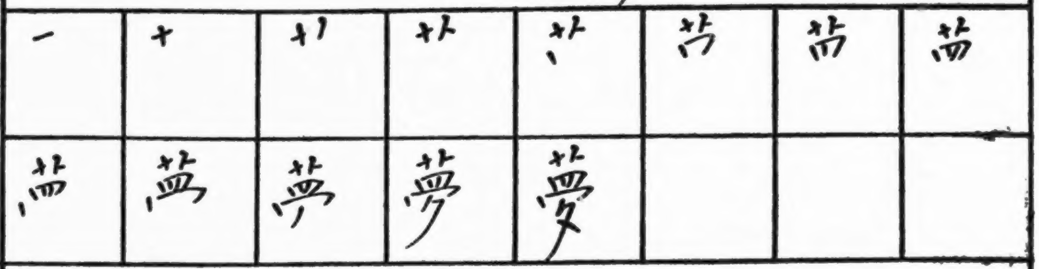
老張又講好多關於廣州嘅事. 老黃知道廣州真係一個好大嘅城市，出唔少偉人，ts'aan館整啲菜又係全中國最好味道嘅.

LESSON 13

WRITING MATERIAL

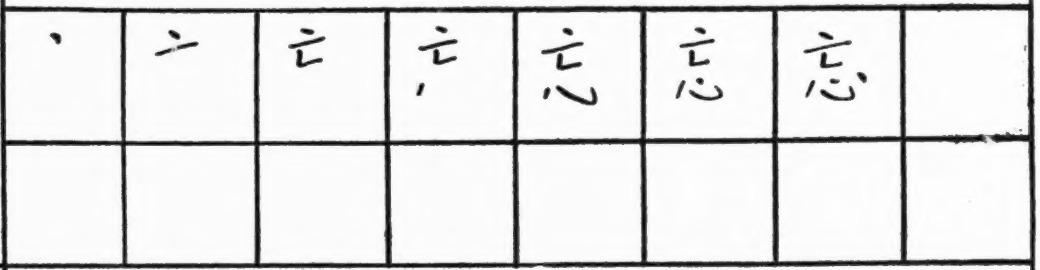
夢

Character Number 725 **Radical Number** 36
Stroke Number 13 夕



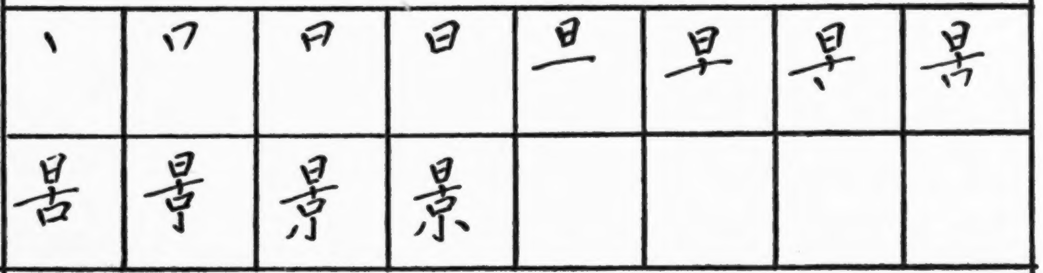
忘

Character Number 712 **Radical Number** 61
Stroke Number 7 心 , 忄



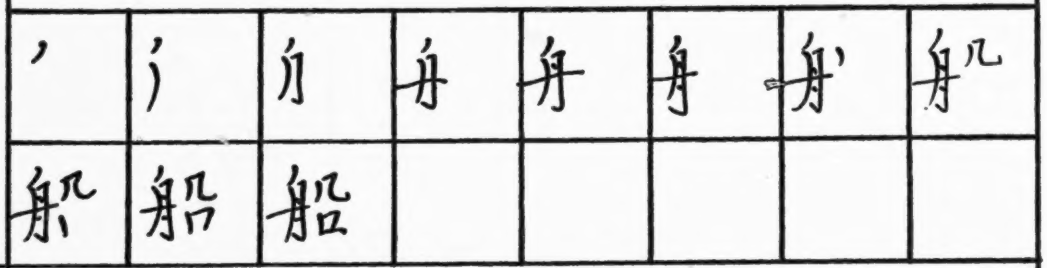
景

Character Number 469 **Radical Number** 72
Stroke Number 12 日



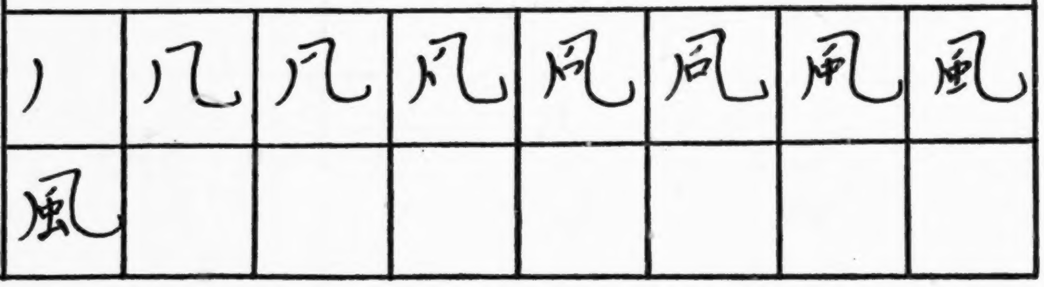
船

Character Number 1013 **Radical Number** 137
Stroke Number 11 舟

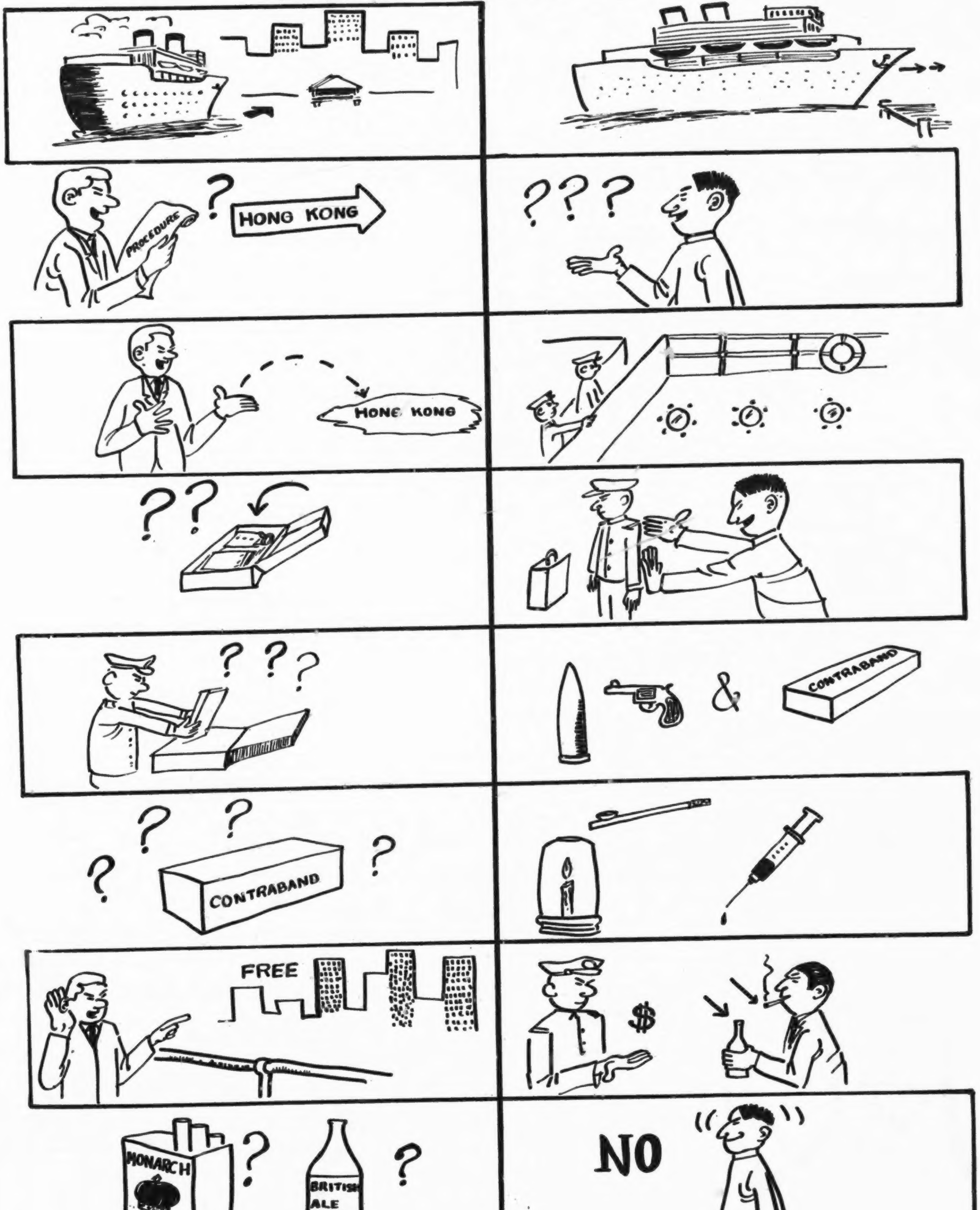


風

Character Number 229 **Radical Number** 182
Stroke Number 9 風



LESSON 14


PROCEDURE
?
HONG KONG
???
HONG KONG
??
???
&
CONTRABAND
?
?
?
CONTRABAND
?
FREE
$
MONARCH
MADE IN ENGLAND
?
BRITISH ALE
?
NO

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Ngŏh-teî ì-ka hóh-ĭ kìn-tó Heung-Kóng kè kóng-haú là.

Cheung. Haî là. Ī-ka chèk shuēn maân-maân*-teî* shaî-yâp
Heung-Kóng kè kóng-haú là.

W. "Yâp kwòk mân kàm; yâp heung mân tsûk" Neĭ hóh-m̄-hóh-ĭ
kóng hă yâp Heung-Kóng kè shaú-tsûk peî ngŏh t'eng ne?

C. Hóh-ĭ. Neĭ seúng chi-tò mi-yĕ shaú-tsûk ne?

W. Ngŏh seúng chi-tò ngoî-kwòk-yān yâp Heung-Kóng kè shaú-tsûk haî tîm-yeûng* kè.

C. Chèk shuēn tò mă-t'aū kè shī-haû, tsaû yaŭ Kîng-Ch'aàt-Kûk
Ī-Mān-Pô kè kîng-ch'aàt sheŭng shuēn kîm-ch'ā oô-chiù.

W. K'uĭ-teî kîm-m̄-kîm-ch'ā ngŏh-teî kè haāng-leĭ ne?

C. K'uĭ-teî m̄-kîm-ch'ā haāng-leĭ. Lîng-ngoî yaū Shuî-Sz kîng-ch'aàt t'ūng Hoî-Kwaan-Shuì-Mô-Kûk chik-uēn kîm-ch'ā.

W. Shuî-Sz kîng-ch'aàt saú mi-yĕ, Hoî-Kwaan chik-uēn saú mi-yĕ ne?

C. Shuî-Sz kîng-ch'aàt saú ts'eung-haaî; Hoî-Kwaan chik-uēn saú waî-kàm-pán.

W. Waî-kàm-pán haî mi-yĕ ne?

C. A-p'ìn-in táng-táng tsaû haî waî-kàm-pán là.

W. Ngŏh t'eng yān kóng Heung-Kóng haî yat-kòh mō-shuì-faû,
haî-m̄-haî à?

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C. Heung-Kóng haî yat-kȍh mō-shuì-faû. Taân-haî uē-kwóh taaì ngoî-kwȍk tsô kè in tsaú táng-táng yâp haú, tsaû iù pȍ kwaan naâp shuì là.

W. Taaì Ying-Kwȍk tsô kè in tsaú táng-táng yâp haú, shaî-m̄-shaî pȍ kwaan ne?

C. M̄-shaî, Heung-Kóng haî Ying-Kwȍk kè tsîk-mān-teî. Taaì Ying-Kwȍk tsô kè in tsaú yâp haú, m̄-shaî pȍ kwaan.

LESSON 14

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. We can see the harbor of Hong Kong now.

Cheung. Yes. The ship is now slowly steaming into the harbor of Hong Kong.

W. "A person who is entering a foreign country should ask what are the restrictions"; "A person who is entering a village should ask what are the customs". Can you tell me the procedure of entry into Hong Kong?

C. Surely. What kind of precedure would you like to know?

W. I'd like to know the procedure for foreigners entering Hong Kong.

C. When this ship arrives at the wharf, there will be policemen from the Immigration Section of the Police Department coming on board the ship to inspect the passports.

W. Will they inspect our baggage?

C. No, they don't inspect the baggage. The baggage will be inspected separately by the policemen from the Water Police and the revenue officers from the Customs House.

W. What will the policemen from the Water Police search for, and what will the revenue officers from the Customs House search for?

C. The policemen from the Water Police will search for arms and ammunition; the revenue officers from the Customs

LESSON 14

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

House will search for contraband goods.

W. What are contraband goods?

C. Contraband goods are opium and the like.

W. I've heard people say that Hong Kong is a free port, isn't it?

C. Hong Kong is a free port. But if a person brings in foreign-made cigarettes and liquor, he has to make a customs declaration and pay the duty.

W. If a person brings in British-made cigarettes and liquor, is it necessary to make a customs declaration?

C. No, Hong Kong is a British colony. If a person brings in British-made cigarettes and liquor, it isn't necessary to make a customs declaration.

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. This is the big ship that sailed into the harbor last night.
2. Hong Kong is a British Crown Colony, but the population is practically all Chinese.
3. You have to make a custom declaration on foreign-made cigarettes and liquor; and pay duty right here.
4. If this is manufactured in Great Britain, you don't have to go through the Custom House.
5. Even though it is a free port, there are revenue offices in Hong Kong.
6. The Hong Kong Water Police inspects all baggage for arms and ammunition.
7. Revenue Officers from the Custom House are searching for contraband goods at the pier.
8. When entering a foreign country, you should report your local address to the Immigration Department of that country.
9. Near the Number 5 Pier, there is the Custom House, Immigration Office and Water Police Station.
10. You should ask about the restrictions before you enter the country.
11. Would you like to have a cigarette? It is foreign made.
12. The Police do not inspect your passport, but the Immigration Official does.
13. There are procedures written here and all you have to do is follow them.

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. That man has forgotten his ticket, but the officer of the ship let him come on board the liner.
15. This ship is so large that we cannot have it navigated into small harbors.
16. There are officials from the Police, the Revenue Office, the Immigration Office and the Steamship Company waiting at the dock.

LESSON 14

WORD LIST

1.	kông-haú	harbor
2.	yâp kwòk mân kàm	upon entering a foreign country one should ask about its restrictions
3.	yâp heung mân tsûk	upon entering a village one should ask about its customs
4.	kîng-ch'aàt kûk*	police station
5.	ì-mān-pô	immigration department
6.	kîm-ch'ā	to inspect
7.	shuî-sz kîng-ch'aàt	water police
8.	hoì-kwaan	custom house
9.	shuì-mô kûk	revenue office
10.	saú	to search for
11.	ts'eung-haaî	weapon, arms and ammunition
12.	waì-kàm-p'án	contraband
13.	a-p'ìn-in	opium
14.	mō-shuì-faû	free port
15.	pò-kwaan	to declare customs
16.	naâp-shuì	to pay taxes
17.	tsîk-mān-teî	colony
18.	shaì yâp	to sail into, drive into, navigate into

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

275

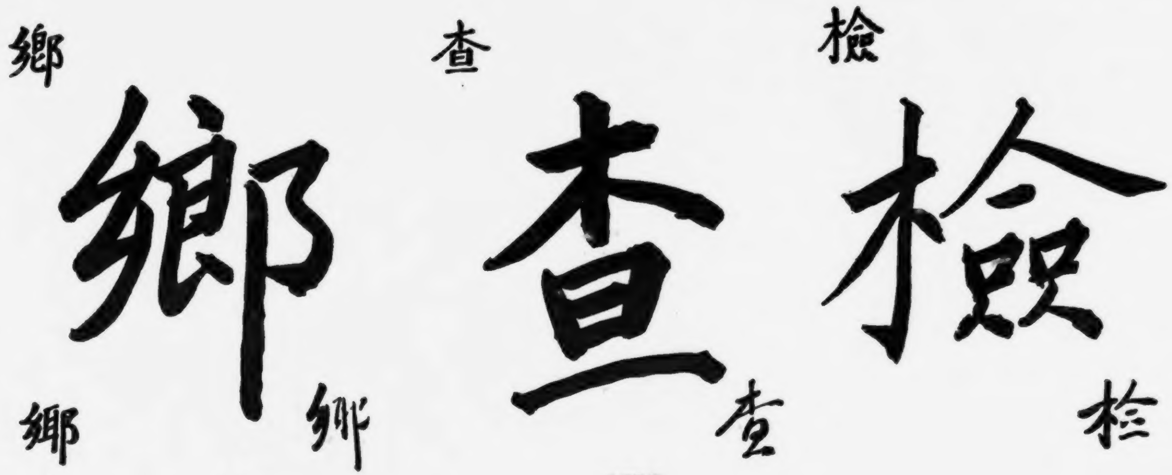
鄉	heung: village; countryside
鄉村	heung-ts'uen: the country
鄉下	heung-hâ*: rural native place; village
鄉民	heung mān: villagers
家鄉	ka-heung: home; native village

9

查	ch'ā: to examine, investigate.
查出	ch'ā-ch'ut: to find out, seek out.
查問	ch'ā-mân: to investigate.
查真	ch'ā-chan: to ascertain.

455

檢	kím: to examine; label.
檢查	kím-ch'ā: to search; to examine (e.g. baggage)
檢點	kím-tím: neatness; orderly, (habit, conduct, etc)

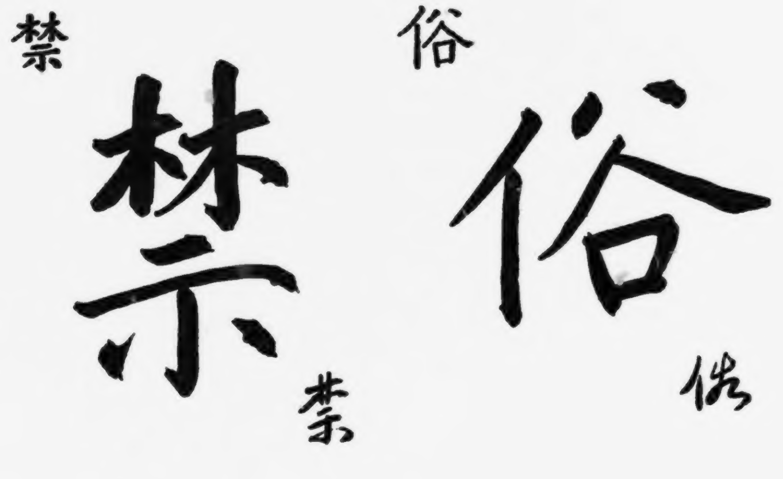


406

禁	kàm: to restrain; forbid; against
禁止	kàm-chí: to prohibit; forbid
禁地	kàm-teî: "closed" grounds
違禁	waī-kàm: to break a regulation; to offend against contraband regulation

1317

俗	tsûk: common; plebian; colloquial; vulgar.
世俗	shaì tsûk: the world; custom of the world.
俗語	tsûk uě: a proverb; common saying.
俗話	tsûk wâ: proverb; common saying.



LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

714

望	mông: to attentively look at from a distance; to hope; to expect.
希望	hei-mông: to hope.
望見	mông kìn: to see.
失望	shat-mông: disappointed.
觀望	koon-mông: to be undecided.

1016

税	shuì: tax; duty; revenue.
税關	shuì-kwaan: customs house.
所得税	shóh-tak-shuì: income tax.

298

海	hoí: the sea; waters
海島	hoí-tó: an island
海洋	hoí-yeūng: the ocean
海軍	hoí-kwan: navy
海關	hoí-kwaan: customs house

望　税　海

望 税 海

望 税 海

1419

違	waī: to oppose; to disobey.
違背	waī-pooī: to disobey; to violate.
違令	waī lîng: to disobey order.
違禁品	waī-kàm-pán: contraband goods.

827

品	pán: rank; class; kind; character; conduct.
紀念品	keí-nîm pán: article of remembrance.
品行	pán-hâng: conduct; behavior.

違 品

違 品

品 違

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

第二日朝頭早,隻船慢慢shai入香港嘅港口.老黃知道香港係英國嘅tsîk民地,同廣州唔同.佢照“入國問禁,入鄉問俗”嘅意思,先問老張關於入香港嘅手續.老張就講pei佢知海關職員點樣檢查;邊啲係違禁品;邊啲要打稅;邊啲唔使打稅.老黃聽完之後,知道自己唔使擔心,因為佢冇違禁品,冇打稅嘅野.雖然佢帶有少少美國嘅烟tsai,呢啲係佢自己用嘅,又唔算多,可以唔使報關.

老黃同老張講完之後,喺船面處望吓香港,見到好多屋,由海邊起到半山,kîk之好睇.

LESSON 14

WRITING MATERIAL

鄉

Character Number 275 Radical Number 163
Stroke Number 11 邑，阝

丿	𠃋	乡	乡丶	乡𠃌	乡白	乡白	乡皀
乡皀	乡皀了	鄉					

查

Character Number 9 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 9 木

一	十	才	木	木丶	杏	杳	杳
查							

檢

Character Number 455 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 17 木，木

十	才	才	木丿	木人	木亼	木亼	木合
木合	木合	木侖	木侖	木僉	木僉	木僉	檢

禁

Character Number 406 Radical Number 113
Stroke Number 13 示

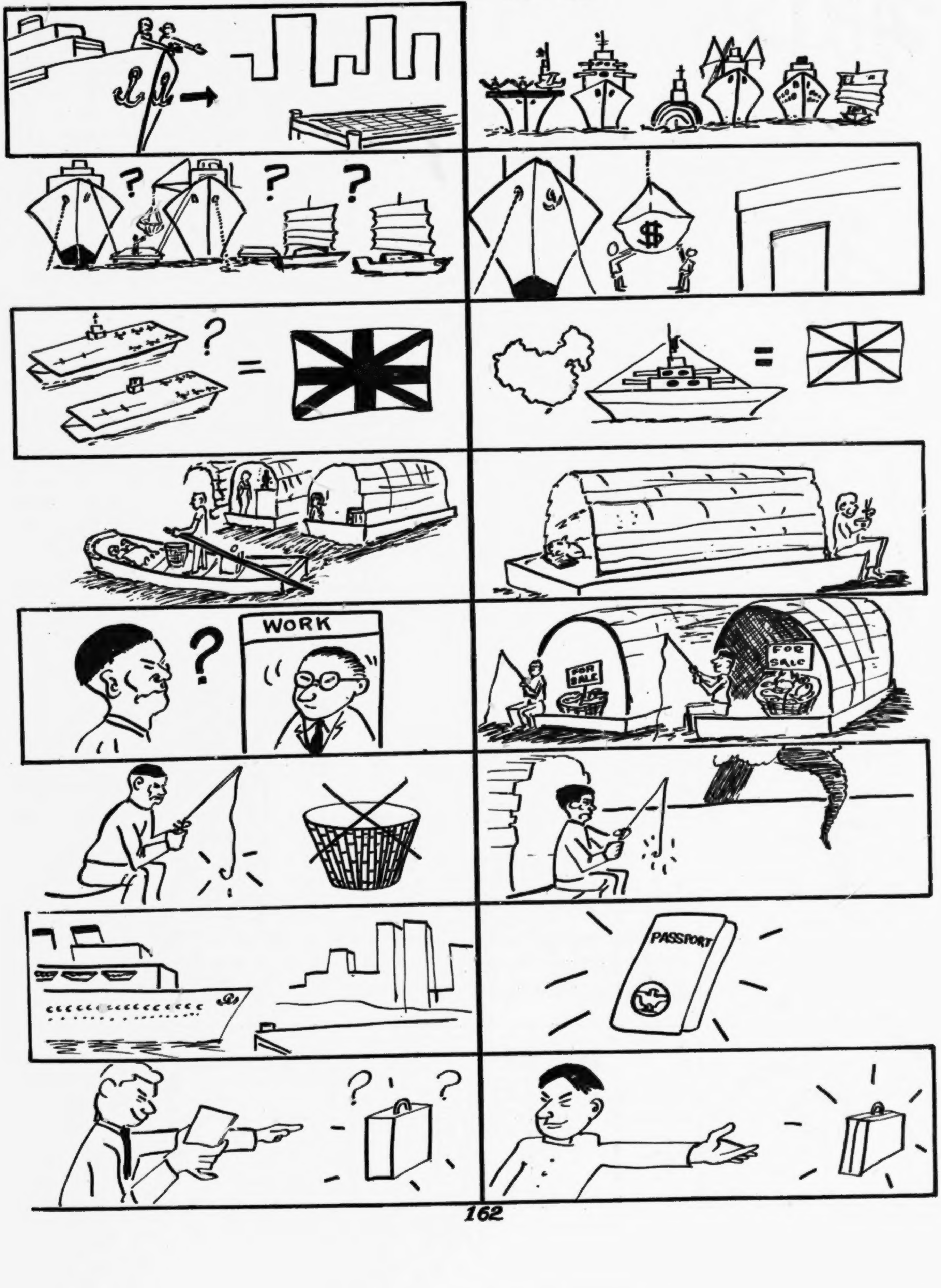
一	十	才	木	木一	村	材	林
林一	林二	林亍	林亍	禁			

俗

Character Number 1317 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 9 人，亻

丿	亻	亻丿	亻八	亻八	亻𠔉	亻谷	俗
俗							

LESSON 15


?
$
?
=
=
WORK
FOR SALE
FOR SALE
PASSPORT

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Cheung. Ni-chèk shuēn tseung-kân maaī ngôn, tseung-kân maaī mă-t'aū là.

Wōng. Ni-chèk shuēn tsaû-laī maaī ngôn, tsaû-laī maaī mă-t'aū là.

C. T'aî hă haî kóng-haú-shuè kè shuēn. Yaŭ kòm toh yaū-shuēn, fòh-shuēn, chìn-laâm, chué-lîk-laâm, k'ui-chûk-laâm, hōng-hung-mŏ-laâm, ts'īm-shuî-t'ĕng, yaû yaŭ kòm toh t'ĕng t'im.

W. Tîm-kaaî Heung Kóng kè kóng-haú yaŭ kòm toh shuēn t'ūng t'ĕng ne?

C. Yan-waî Heung-Kóng haî Tung-À yat-kòh taaî kè sheung-faû. Kòk kwòk kè shuēn to laî ni-shuè.

W. Tîm-kaaî yaû yaŭ kòm toh Ying-Kwòk kè chìn-laâm ne?

C. Yan-waî Heung-Kóng haî yat-kòh Ying-Kwòk Hoî-Kwan kan-kuì-teî, haî Ying-Kwòk Hoî-Kwan haî Uĕn-Tung kè kan-kuì-teî.

W. Neĭ t'aî hă kóh-ti t'ĕng. T'aî hă kóh-ti t'ĕng-ka kè yān.

C. Kóh-ti t'ĕng-ka kè yān yaû kiù-tsô Tâng-Ka-Yān. K'uĭ-teî haî k'uĭ-teî tsẑ-keî kè t'ĕng-shuè chuê. Haî k'uĭ-teî tsẑ-keî kè t'ĕng shîk. K'uĭ-teî haî t'ĕng-shuè chuê hó-ts'z̆ ngŏh-teî haî uk-shuè chuê yat-yeûng.

W. K'uĭ-teî haî pin-shuè wán shîk ne?

C. K'uĭ-teî haî hoî-sheûng wán shîk. Haî hoî-sheûng lóh uē* lóh haaĭ lóh ha, maaî peî kaai-shĭ

W. K'uĭ-teî wán shîk wán-tak-m̄-yūng-î pòh.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C. Haaī. Chan-haî m̄-yūng-î, yaū-k'eī-shî tâ fung lôk uĕ kè shī-haû, kàng naän là.

W. Chèk shuēn maaī ngôn, maaī mă-t'aū là.

C. Neĭ uê-peî-hó neĭ kè oô-chiù meî à?

W. Ngŏh uê-peî-hó ngŏh kè oô-chiù là. Neĭ chap-hó neĭ kè haāng-leĭ meî à?

C. Chap-hó hó noî là.

LESSON 15

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Cheung. This ship will soon come to shore and will soon dock.

Wōng. This ship will soon come to shore and will soon dock.

C. Look at the ships in the harbor! There are so many ocean liners, cargo ships, warships, battleships, destroyers, aircraft carriers, and submarines, also so many junks.

W. Why are there so many ships and junks in the harbor of Hong Kong?

C. Because Hong kong is one of the big commercial ports in the Far East. Ships of every nation call here.

W. Why are there also so many British warships?

C. Because Hong Kong is a British naval base--a British naval base in the Far East.

W. Look at those junks! Look at the people on the junks!

C. Those people on the junks are also called Tâng-Ka people. They live on their junks. They eat on their junks. They live on their junks as we live in our houses.

W. Where do they make their living?

C. They make their living on the sea. They catch fish, catch crabs, catch shrimp in the sea, and sell them to the markets.

W. It isn't easy for them to make a living.

LESSON 15

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

C. Huh! Indeed it isn't easy; it's more difficult especially during the time of the typhoons and rains.

W. The ship is coming to shore and approaching the wharf.

C. Do you have your passport ready yet?

W. I have my passport ready. Have you packed your baggage?

C. It's been packed for a long time.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. When we were small, we used to go to the stream to catch shrimp.
2. The pier is crowded. There are many children swimming and fishing.
3. I am ready for the trip to the Far East since I packed my luggage the day before yesterday.
4. It is more difficult to learn English than Chinese.
5. It is very difficult to earn a living if you don't want to work hard.
6. It isn't easy to drive on the highway, especially when it is dark.
7. The Tâng-ka people live in their junks and most of them earn their living by fishing.
8. There are U.S. naval bases in the Far East as well as along the U.S. coast.
9. Hong Kong is a commercial port, but there are many warships in the harbor almost all the time.
10. In addition to freighters from all over the world, Great Britain has battleships, submarines and carriers in the harbor.
11. Generally speaking, a destroyer is smaller than a battleship, and a battleship is smaller than an aircraft-carrier.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

12. This ocean-liner will leave for the Far East soon. She will return in about one month's time.
13. The freighter will dock tomorrow morning and you can get the cargo anytime after that.
14. There is an accident in the harbor. A large ocean-liner has collided with a battleship.
15. The steamship is sailing into the harbor right now and she will dock in two hours.
16. Please have your passports ready, and have your custom declaration forms filled out.

LESSON 15

WORD LIST

1.	tseung-kân	soon, about, near
2.	maaì ngôn (maaì mă-t'aū)	to dock
3.	yaū-shuēn	ocean liner, steamer
4.	fòh-shuēn	cargo ship, freighter
5.	chìn-laâm	warship
6.	chué-lîk-laâm	battleship
7.	k'ui-chûk-laâm	destroyer
8.	hōng-hung-mŏ-laâm	aircraft carrier
9.	ts'ìm-shuí-t'ĕng	submarine
10.	t'ĕng	junk, boat
11.	Tung-À	East Asia
12.	sheung-faû	commercial port
13.	hoí-kwan kan-kuì-teî	naval base
14.	Tâng-Ka-yān (t'ĕng-ka-yān)	Tang-ka people (boat people)
15.	wán shîk	to earn a living
16.	yaū-k'eī-shî	particularly, especially
17.	chap	to pack
18.	lóh uē*	to fish; fishing (crabbing)
19.	lóh ha	to catch shrimp
20.	kaai-shĭ	market, market place
21.	chi-yat	one of them

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

761

岸 ngôn: shore; bank.

上岸 sheūng ngôn: to go ashore; to land.

堤岸 t'aī-ngôn: a bund; a levee.

408

跟 kan: to follow; imitate

跟踪 kan-tsung: to trace one

跟隨 kan-ts'uī: to follow

跟住 kan-chuê: to follow; to imitate

91

戰 chìn: to fight; war; terrified

戰勝 chìn-shìng: victory; to win a battle

戰爭 chìn-chang: war

戰壕 chìn-hō: trench

戰場 chìn-ch'ēung: battle field

岸 跟 戰 战

岸 跟 戰

岸 跟 戦 戦

121

主 chué: lord; master; owner; to rule

主人 chué-yān: master

天主 t'in-chue: God

主意 chué-ì: resolution; decision; main ideas

主持 chué-ch'ī: to manage

918

些 se: a few; little; some.

些少 se-siú: a little.

快些 faaì se: be a little quicker.

主 些

主 些

主 些

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

34

執 chap: to pick up, grasp, hold.

執起黎 chap-héi-laī: to pick up

執籌 chap chaū:* to draw lots

固執 koò-chap: obstinate; stubborn.

執政 chap chîng: governmental administration

697

無 mō: negative; no; not; without; none.

無非 mō-fei: simply; solely.

無論 mō-lûn: no matter what.

無限 mō-haân: unlimited.

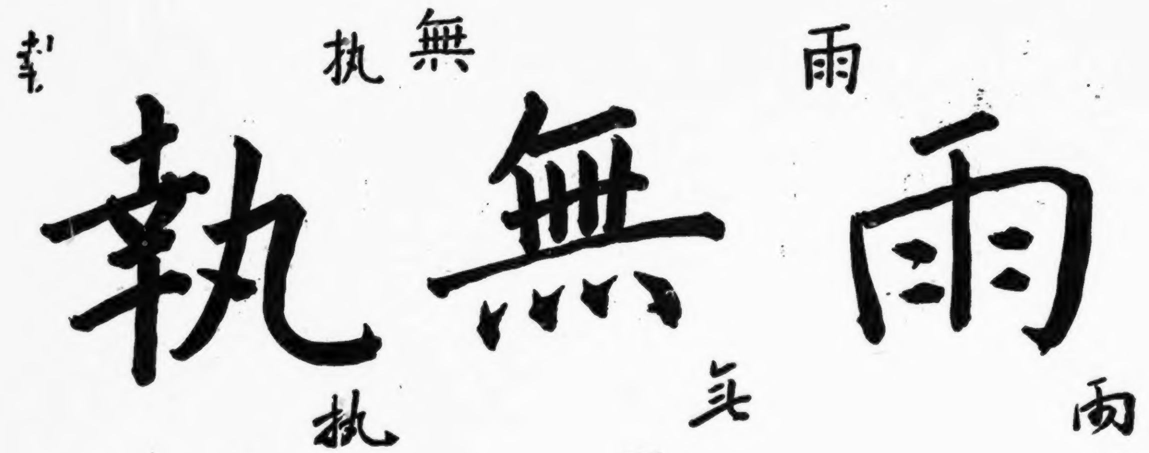
無窮 mō-k'ūng: endless.

1376

雨 uě: rain; shower; to rain.

落雨 lôk uě: to rain.

雨衣 uě-i: raincoat.



335

移 ī: to remove; to transmit

移開 ī hoi: to move away

移民 ī-mān: imm[illegible]ants

移交 ī-kaau: to transfer a position

705

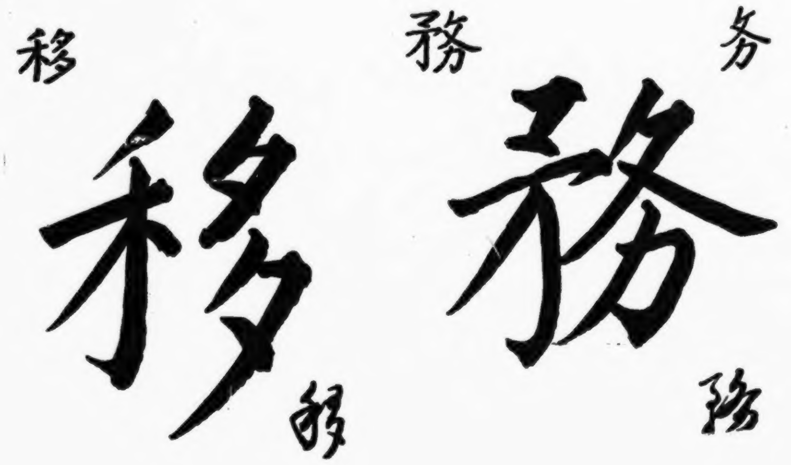
務 mô: function; business; to attend to earnestly.

事務 sž-mô: business; affairs.

家務 ka mô: home affair.

公務 kung mô: official affair; public affair.

服務 fûk-mô: to work for others.



LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

嗰隻船入 chôh 港口之後,慢慢移動,shaî 近海邊,shaî 埋 mă 頭.好多人都話"船埋岸 là,船埋岸 là!"大聲敢叫.老黃已經執好行李,無其他事務好做,預備喺船停定之後,就同老張跟住其他嘅人上岸.

香港係一個商 faû,港口有好多船,有郵船,有貨船.因為佢又係英國喺遠東嘅主要海軍根據地,平時亦都有些少戰 laâm.

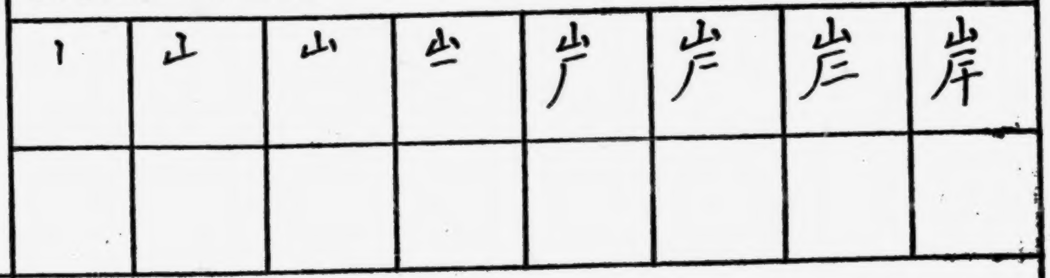
另外有一種船,叫做 t'ĕng;係用黎出海 lôh 魚嘅.嗰啲 lôh 魚嘅人,住喺 t'ĕng 處,叫做 tâng 家人.佢地嘅生活唔係容易,尤其 shî 打風落雨嘅時候,就 kàng 難 là.

LESSON 15

WRITING MATERIAL

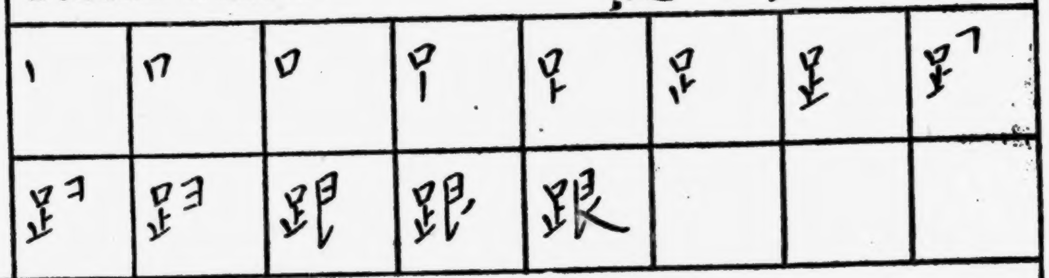
岸

Character Number 761 Radical Number 46
Stroke Number 8 山



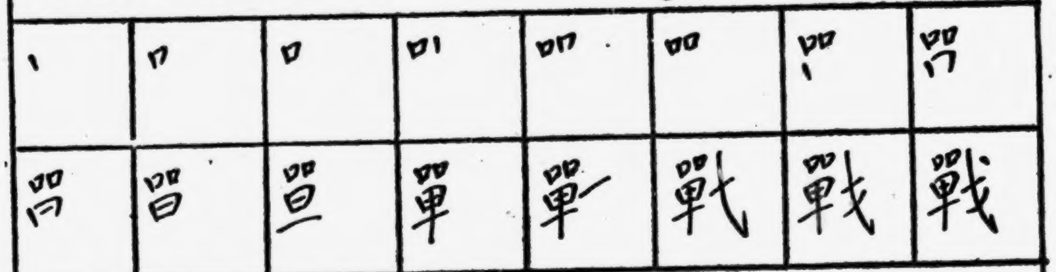
跟

Character Number 408 Radical Number 157
Stroke Number 13 足，⻊



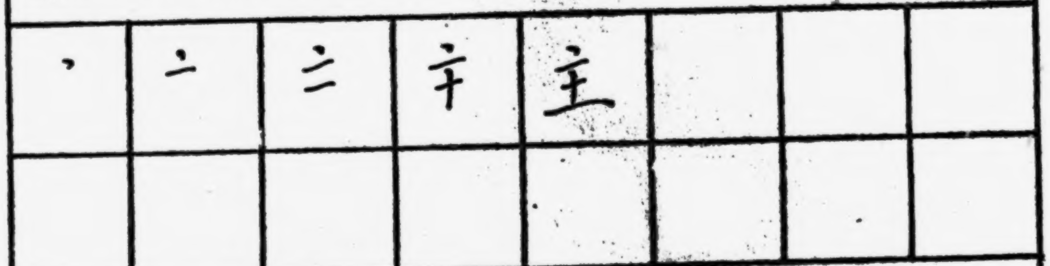
戰

Character Number 91 Radical Number 62
Stroke Number 16 戈



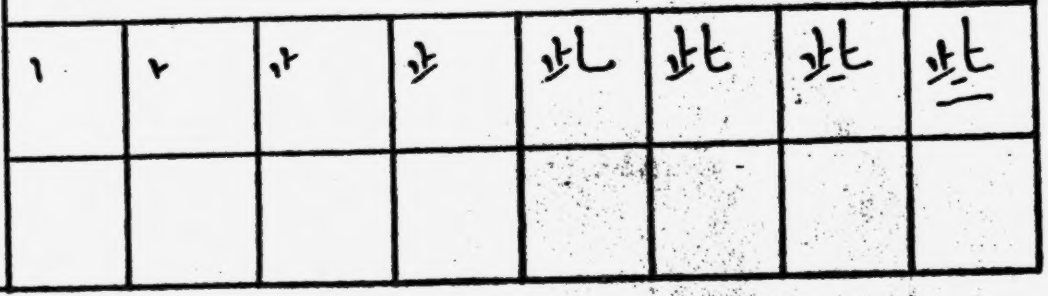
主

Character Number 121 Radical Number 3
Stroke Number 5 丶

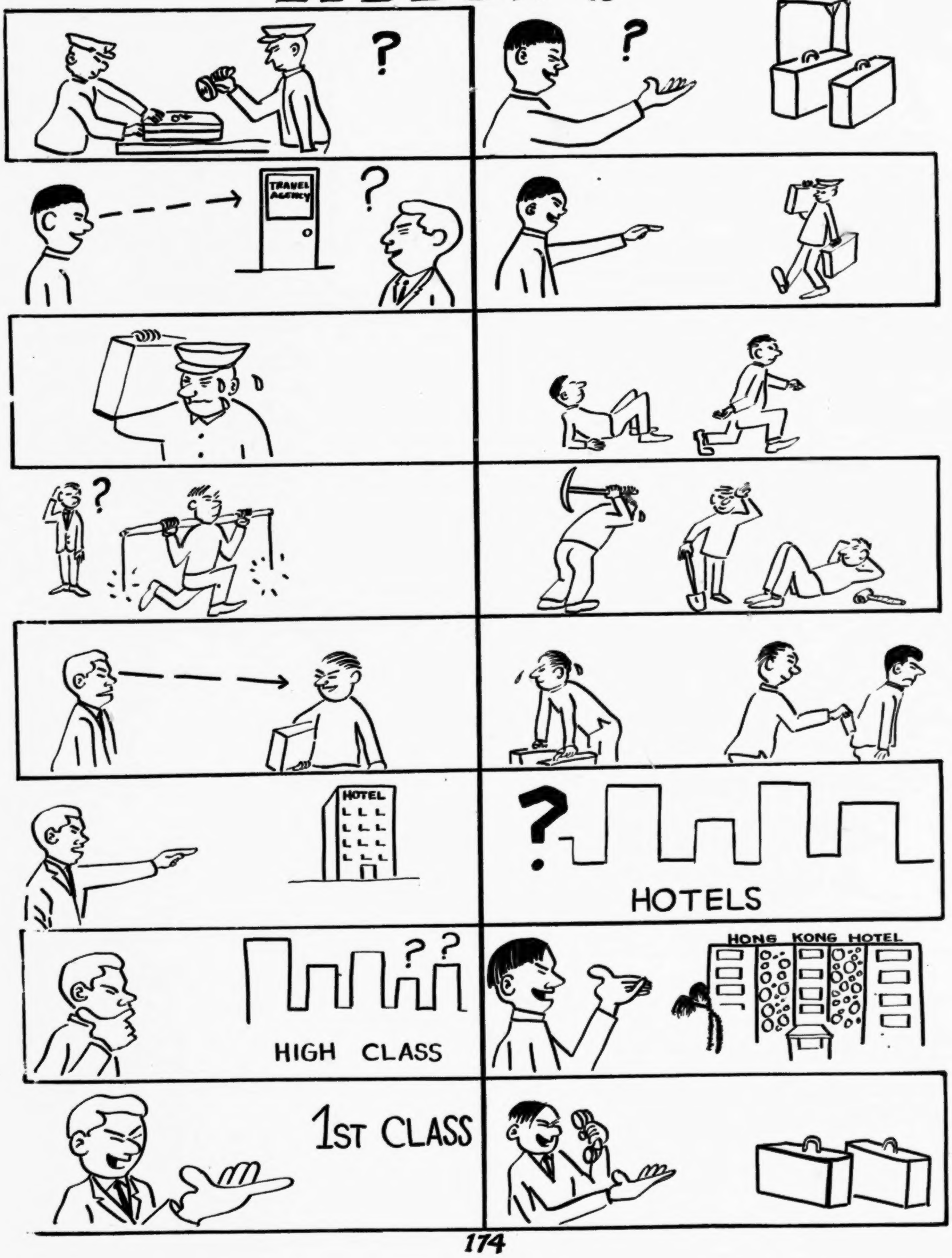


些

Character Number 918 Radical Number 7
Stroke Number 8 二



LESSON 16


?
?
TRAVEL AGENCY
?
?
HOTEL
?
HOTELS
? ?
HIGH CLASS
HONG KONG HOTEL
1ST CLASS

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Kîm-ch'ā-uēn oô-chiù, kîm-ch'ā-uēn haāng-leĭ là. Ngŏh-teî hóh-ĭ sheŭng ngôn meî à?

Cheung. Hóh-ĭ là. Neĭ iù-m̄-iù yān pong neĭ ning haāng-leĭ à?

W. Ngŏh yaŭ leŭng-kòh p'eî-kip, yat-kòh lŭng. Ngŏh iù wán yat-kòh yān pong ngŏh.

C. Ngŏh t'ūng neĭ wán yat-kòh luĭ-haāng-shĕ kè chik-uēn pong neĭ.

W. Pin-shuè yaŭ luĭ-haāng-shĕ kè chik-uēn ne?

C. Ne. Kóh-kòh cheùk chaì-fûk taaì fai-cheung kè yān tsaû-haî là.

W. K'uĭ hó-ts'ž hó m̄-tak-haān kâm-yeûng*. Pat-uē wán yat-kòh koo-lei pâ* la.

C. Wán koo-lei ā? Yaŭ-ti koo-lei k'aaù m̄-chuê kè pòh.

W. Tîm-kaaî yaŭ ti koo-lei k'aaù m̄-chuê ne?

C. K'uĭ-teî haî mŏ-tsó-chik kè foó-lîk. Uē-kwóh m̄-kìn-chóh neĭ kè haāng-leĭ, k'uĭ-teî m̄-p'ooî peî neĭ kè pòh.

W. Kâm-yeûng*, ngŏh-teî m̄-hó wán koo-lei là.

C. Yaŭ ti koo-lei haî kâm; yaŭ ti koo-lei m̄-haî kâm. K'uĭ-teî yaŭ ti chung-chîk; yaŭ ti m̄-chung-chîk.

W. K'uĭ-teî wán shîk to m̄-yūng-î, k'uĭ-teî kè shang-oôt to keî kaan-naān kè pòh.

C. À-Wōng*, neĭ sheŭng ngôn chi haû, tá-suèn huì pin-shuè ne?

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. Sheŭng ngôn chi haû, ngŏh tá-suèn huì yat-kaan tsaú-tìm.

C. Neĭ tá-suèn huì pin-kaan tsaú-tìm ne?

W. Ngŏh meî k'uèt-tîng. Ngŏh tá-suèn huì yat-kaan sheûng táng kè tsaú-tìm.

C. Ngŏh kè kaì-waâk t'ūng neĭ kè yat-yeûng. Ngŏh-teî huì Heung-Kóng-Taaî-Tsaú-Tìm, hó mà?

W. Hó à. Heung-Kóng-Taaî-Tsaú-Tìm haî yat-kaan t'aū-táng kè tsaú-tìm.

C. Uē-kwôh haî kám, ngŏh tsaû kiù yat-kòh Heung-Kóng-Taaî-Tsaú-Tìm kè fôh-keì t'ūng ngŏh-teî ning haāng-leĭ.

LESSON 16

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. They've finished inspecting the passports and the baggage. Can't we go ashore yet?

Cheung. Yes. Do you need somebody to carry the baggage for you?

W. I've two suitcases and a trunk. I need a person to help me.

C. I'll look for a clerk from the travel agency to help you.

W. Where are the clerks from the travel agency?

C. There. That person who is wearing a uniform and wearing the badge is a clerk.

W. He seems to be very busy. We'd better look for a coolie.

C. Look for a coolie? Some coolies are not dependable.

W. Why are some coolies not dependable?

C. They are laborers without an organization. If they lose your baggage, they do not compensate you for your loss.

W. In that case, we'd better not look for a coolie.

C. Some of the coolies are that way; some of the coolies are not that way. Some of them are honest; some of them are not honest.

W. It isn't easy for them to make a living. Their lives are rather difficult.

C. Wōng, where do you plan to go after you go ashore?

LESSON 16

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. I plan to go to a hotel after I go ashore.

C. To which hotel do you plan to go?

W. I haven't decided yet. I plan to go to a high class hotel.

C. My plan is the same as yours. Shall we go to the Hong Kong Hotel?

W. Good. The Hong Kong Hotel is a first class hotel.

C. If that is the case, I'll call a porter from the Hong Kong Hotel to take the baggage for us.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. My luggage disappeared when I was coming on board this ship.
2. This is one of the first class hotels in San Francisco, and the rooms are very comfortable.
3. Please make up your mind right now because the train is going to leave very soon.
4. It is very difficult to know a loyal and honest man when sojourning in other places.
5. He is undependable but he has no difficulty in earning his living.
6. This laborer had an accident at the pier yesterday, and the steamship company compensated him with a check for twenty dollars.
7. This group of coolies does not belong to any organization and they are very undependable.
8. The policemen wear blue uniforms in the winter and white ones in the summer.
9. This is the emblem of the DLIWC. Isn't it beautiful?
10. Thank you very much for helping me to carry this trunk and that suitcase up to the fourth floor.
11. Soldiers have to wear their uniform and all their insignia almost at all times.
12. He led the new students to see the classrooms.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

13. The indemnity you have to pay for this accident will be more than $1,000.

14. He tried last year to organize a travel agency in Chinatown.

15. This woman disappeared from New York two years ago and today she showed up in San Francisco.

16. He decided to go to the Far East by ship and not by plane.

LESSON 16

WORD LIST

1.	sheŭng ngôn	to go ashore
2.	p'eì-kip	suitcase
3.	lŭng	trunk, chest
4.	chaì-fûk	uniform
5.	fai-cheung	badge, button, emblem
6.	koo lei	coolie
7.	k'aaů-m̄-chuê	undependable
8.	tsó-chik	to organize; organization
9.	foó-lîk	laborer, coolie
10.	p'ooì	to pay back, compensate
11.	chung-chîk	loyal, honest
12.	shang-oôt	livelihood, living
13.	kaan-naān	difficult
14.	sheûng-táng	high class, first class
15.	m̄-kìn-chóh	lost, disappeared
16.	leūng-sam	conscience

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

84

織	chik: to weave; knit.
織布機	chik-pò-kei: a loom
紡織	fóng-chik: to spin and weave

842

皮	p'eī: skin; leather; fur.
皮鞋	p'eī-haaī: leather shoe.
皮箱	p'eī seung: leather trunk.

387

艱	kaan: difficult; hardship.
艱難	kaan-naān: difficult; distress.
艱險	kaan-hím: difficult and dangerous.

織 织 皮 艱, 艰

織 皮 艱

織 发 艱

1271

組	tsó: cord; girdle; to organize; section.
組織	tsó-chik: to organize.
改組	koí tsó: to re-organize.

866

必	pit: certainly; must.
必定	pit-têng: certainly; must.
必須	pit-sui: must; absolutely necessary.

組 必

組 必

組 必

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

399

靠	k'aaù: to lean on; trust in
倚靠	í-k'aaù: to depend or rely on
靠害	k'aaù-hoî: to betray; to get another into trouble.
靠得住	k'aaù-tak-chuê: trustworthy

602

良	leūng: virtuous; excellent; good.
良心	leūng-sam: conscience.
改良	koí-leūng: to reform; to improve.
良善	leūng-shîn: kind; good; virtuous.
良友	leūng yaù: a good friend.

154

章	cheung: chapter; rules, system
章程	cheung-ch'ing: rules by laws
第一章	taî yat cheung: Chapter I
圖章	t'ō-cheung: a seal or chop

靠 良 章

靠 良 章

靠 良 章

146

忠	chung: devoted; loyal
忠直	chung-chîk: upright; honest
忠心	chung-sam: loyal

581

爛	laân: broken; torn; decayed; worthless; bad; bright; glittering.
打爛	tá laân: to break; to beat to a jelly.
爛仔	laân-tsaí: rascal; hoodlum.
爛賤	laân-tsîn: cheap; low.

忠 爛

忠 爛

忠 爛

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

海關稅員檢查chôh護照同行李之後，就可以上岸là。但係老黃有幾件行李，皮kip又重，自己唔ning得kôm多。老張就想wân一個旅行社職員幫佢。但係佢地帶住fai章，走來走去，好似好唔得閒敢樣。老黃就想叫一個koo-lei，唔使等得太耐。老張話佢地係冇組織嘅苦力，有時會唔忠直，靠唔住。老黃睇見佢地個個着爛shaam，生活幾艱難，都要幫ts'ân吓。老張喺良心上亦都知道應該幫吓佢地。

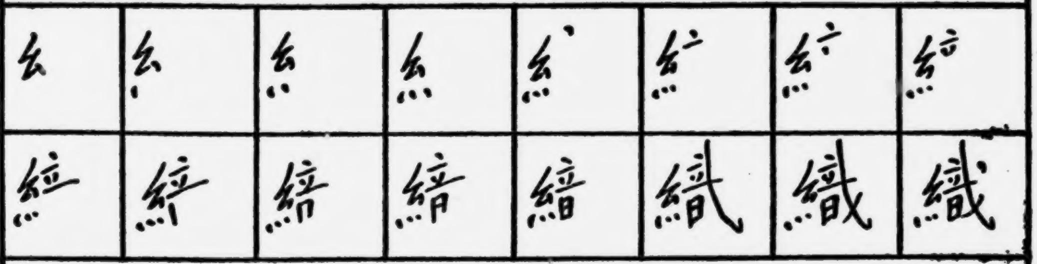
老黃同老張，大家都打算住一間上等嘅酒店。佢地就決定上岸之後，一齊去香港大酒店。

LESSON 16

WRITING MATERIAL

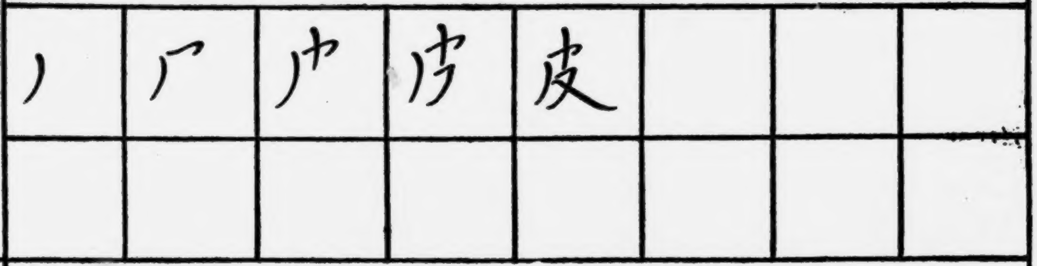
織

Character Number 84 **Radical Number** 120
Stroke Number 18 糸，糹



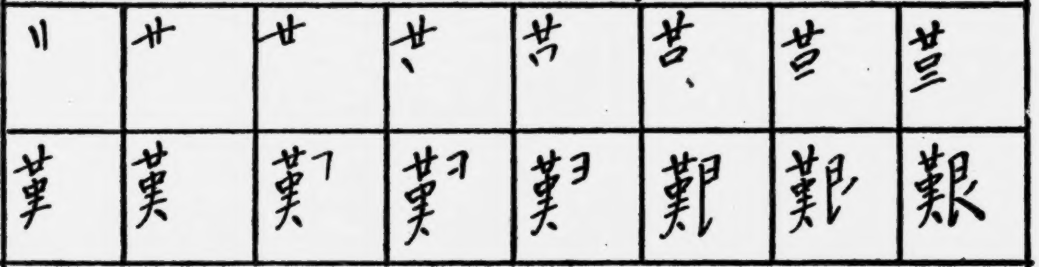
皮

Character Number 842 **Radical Number** 107
Stroke Number 5 皮



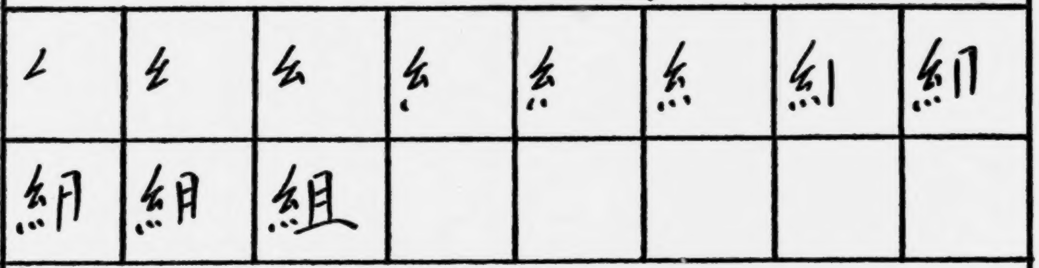
艱

Character Number 387 **Radical Number** 138
Stroke Number 17 艮



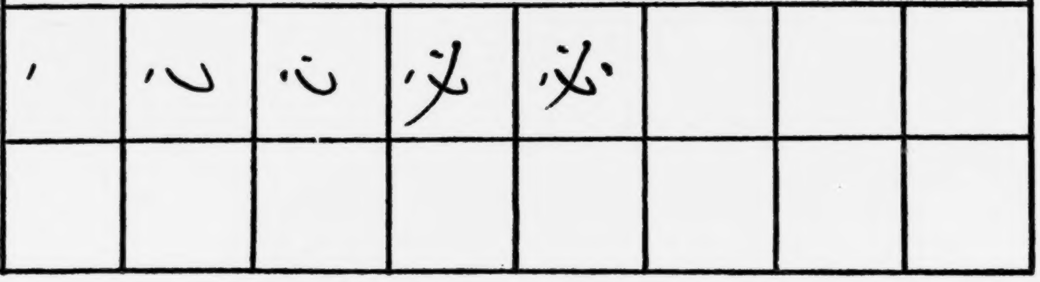
組

Character Number 1271 **Radical Number** 120
Stroke Number 11 糸，糹

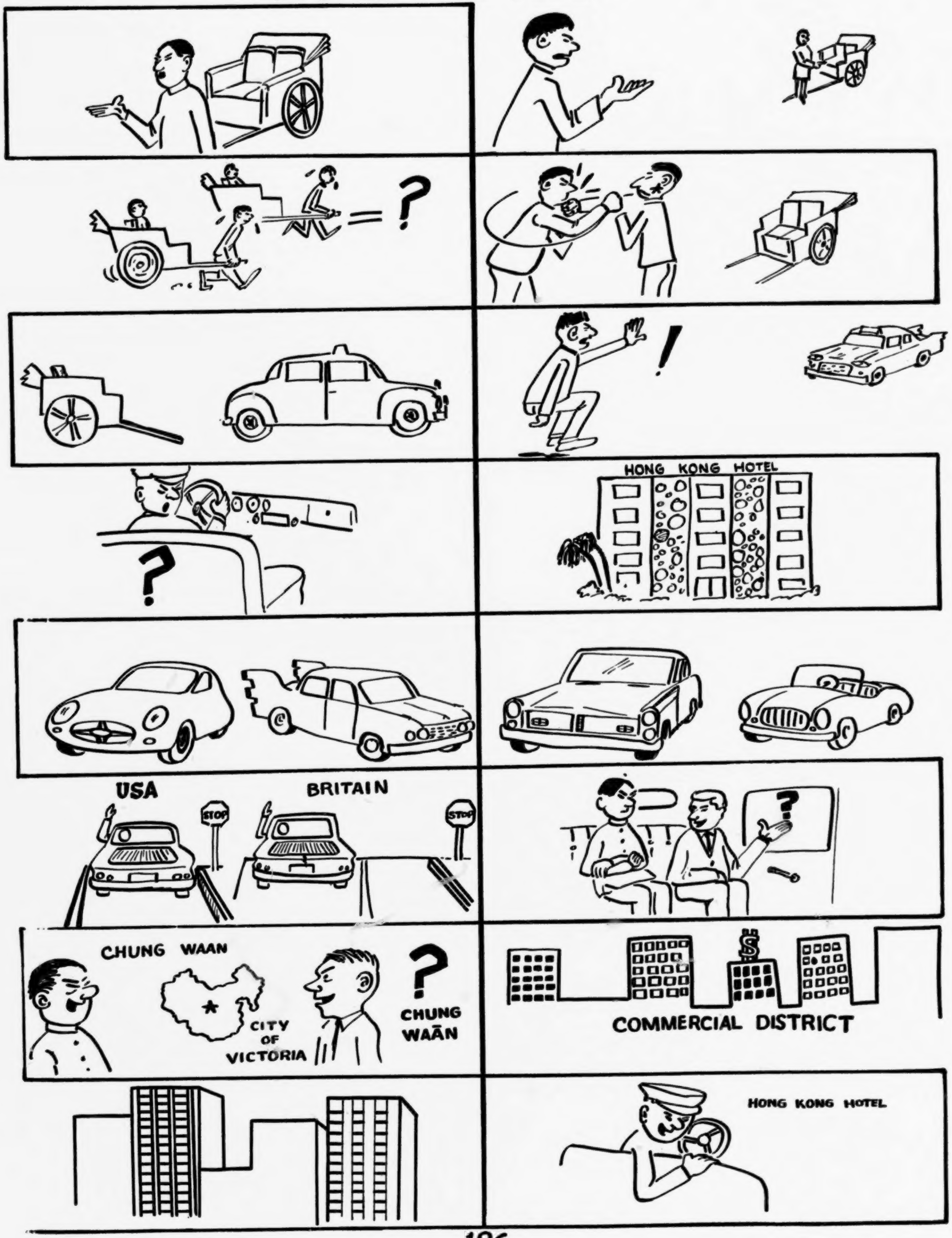


必

Character Number 866 **Radical Number** 61
Stroke Number 5 心，忄



LESSON 17


?
?
!
HONG KONG HOTEL
?
USA
STOP
BRITAIN
STOP
?
CHUNG WAAN
CITY OF VICTORIA
?
CHUNG WAĀN
$
COMMERCIAL DISTRICT
HONG KONG HOTEL

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Ch'e-tsaî-ló. Lik-shoh? lik-shoh?

Cheung. Kôh-ti haî ch'e-tsaî-ló, kiù ngŏh-teî ts'ŏh k'uĭ-teî kè ch'e-tsaî.

Wōng. Tîm-kaaî kòm toh ch'e-tsaî-ló laai k'uĭ-teî kè ch'e-tsaî maaì-laì ngŏh-teî-shuè ne?

C. K'uĭ-teî seúng tsô shaang-ì. Seúng chaang shaang-ì a-mă!

W. Ngŏh-teî ts'ŏh ch'e-tsaî yik-waak̂ ts'ŏh tik-sẑ* huì tsaú-tìm ne?

C. Ngŏh-teî ts'ŏh tik-sẑ* huì, hó mà? Tik-sẑ*. Tik-sẑ*.

Sz-kei. Sin-shaang, seúng huì pin-shuè ne?

C. Heung-Kóng-Taaî-Tsaú-Tìm.

W. Koó-m̄-tò Heung-Kóng yaŭ kòm toh san-shik kè heì-ch'e.

C. Heung-Kóng yaŭ hó toh san-shik kè Meĭ-Kwòk heì-ch'e t'ūng-maaì Ying-Kwòk heì-ch'e.

W. Heung-Kóng kè kaau-t'ung t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk kè kaau-t'ung m̄-t'ūng. Heung-Kóng kè kaau-t'ung haî tsóh-sheŭng-yaû-lôk, Meĭ-Kwòk kè kaau t'ung haî yaû-sheŭng-tsóh-lôk.

C. Haî-là. Neĭ ì-ka m̄-kwaàn ni-chúng kaau-t'ung. Kwòh saam-seì-yât, neĭ tsaû kwaàn là.

W. Ī-ka ngŏh-teî haî piṇ-shuè ne?

C. Ī-ka neĭ haî Heung-Kóng Chung-K'ui. Sai-Yān kiù ni-shuè tsô Wîk-Toh-Leî-À-Shìng. Chung-Kwòk-Yān p'ó-t'ung kiù ni shuè tsô Chung-Waān.

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. Chung-Waān haî mi-yĕ teî-fong ne?

C. Chung-Waān haî Heung-Kóng-Tó kè sheung-îp-k'ui.

W. T'aî hă kôh-ti kìn-chuk. Yaŭ ti haî Meĭ-Kwòk-shik kè kìn-chuk, yaŭ ti haî Ying-Kwòk-shik kè kìn-chuk.

Sz-kei. Sin-shaang, Heung-Kóng-Taaî-Tsaú-Tìm.

LESSON 17

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Ricksha coolie. Ricksha? Ricksha?

Cheung. Those are ricksha coolies asking us to take their ricksha.

Wōng. Why are there so many ricksha coolies pulling their rickshas to our place?

C. They wish to get business and compete with one another for business.

W. Shall we take the ricksha or a taxi to the hotel?

C. Let's take a taxi? Taxi! Taxi!

Driver. Where would you like to go, sir?

C. The Hong Kong Hotel.

W. I would have never guessed that Hong Kong had so many new model automobiles.

C. Hong Kong has many new model U.S. and British automobiles.

W. The traffic in Hong Kong differs from that in the United States. The traffic in Hong Kong keeps to the left and the traffic in the United States keeps to the right.

C. Of course, you aren't used to this kind of traffic now. After three or four days, you'll get used to it.

W. Where are we now?

C. You are in the central district of Hong Kong now. Occidentals call this place City of Victoria. The Chinese commonly call this place Chung Wāan.

LESSON 17

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. What kind of place is Chung Waān?

C. Chung Waān is the commercial district of the Island of Hong Kong.

W. Take a look at those buildings! Some are American-style buildings, and some are British-style buildings.

Driver. The Hong Kong Hotel, sir.

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. This man constructed a two-story house with a beautiful lawn in the front and a large garden in the back.
2. This house is not too far from the commercial district. The house is about two miles west of it.
3. Generally, he walks to work in the morning, but takes a taxicab home at night.
4. Victoria City is the commercial district of Hong Kong and is also the central district of the colony.
5. The British Crown Colony of Hong Kong is populated by Chinese as well as westerners.
6. I am used to having breakfast at six in the morning and dinner at six in the evening.
7. Even though you are accustomed to keep to the right when driving in the States, you have to keep to the left when driving in Hong Kong.
8. You may go with me in this taxicab or take that ricksha at the intersection. Which one do you prefer?
9. The ricksha coolie was arrested by the police because he blocked the traffic with his ricksha.
10. That chauffeur is a very loyal and honest employee, and he has been working for this taxicab company for more than 11 years.
11. The ricksha cannot possibly compete with the taxicab.

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

12. There are very modern railways, steamships, and airplanes in the Far East.
13. This is one of the Chinese-style buildings in San Francisco Chinatown.
14. The steamship companies are competing with airline companies for business.
15. The traffic in the commercial district is not very crowded on Sunday.
16. There are many new model British automobiles in the U.S.

LESSON 17

WORD LIST

1.	tik-sẑ*	taxicab
2.	lik-shoh (ch'e-tsaî)	ricksha
3.	ch'e-tsaî-lò	ricksha coolie
4.	laai	to pull, arrest
5.	sz-kei	chauffeur, driver
6.	t'ūng-maaì	and, with
7.	tsòh-sheŭng-yaû-lôk	keep to the left when driving
8.	yaû-sheŭng-tsòh-lôk	keep to the right when driving
9.	kwaàn	to be accustomed to
10.	chung k'ui	central district, central section
11.	sai-yān	westerner, Occidental
12.	sheung-îp-k'ui	commercial district
13.	kìn-chuk	to construct, build; building, architecture
14.	tò	island

LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

549

慣 kwaàn: accustomed to; habitual.

唔慣 m̀-kwaàn: unaccustomed to; unskilled.

習慣 tsaâp-kwaàn: a habit; habitual.

慣用 kwaàn yûng: usage.

460

建 kìn: to establish; to build.

建築 kìn-chuk: to construct; to build.

建設 kìn-ch'ìt: to establish.

建築學 kìn-chuk-hôk: science of architecture.

361

業 îp: property; trade

職業 chik-îp: profession

畢業 pat îp: graduation

商業 sheung-îp: commerce

業主 îp-chué: owner of property

慣 建 業

慣 建 業

惯 建 業

577

拉 laai: to draw; to pull; to drag; to move; to arrest.

拉手 laai shaú: to shake hands.

拉鋸 laai-kuì: to saw.

拉人 laai yān: to arrest.

拉薩 la-saàt: Lhasa.

983

式 shik: form; pattern; type.

合式 hôp shik: up to the mark; suitable.

正式 chìng-shik: formal; official.

拉 式

拉 式

拉 式

LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

140

築 chuk: to build; raise;

築馬路 chuk mă-lô: construct a road

築牆 chuk ts'eūng: to build a wall

1409

環 waān: ring; ornament; to encircle.

耳環 ĭ-waān: earrings.

環繞 waān-iŭ: to encircle; to surround.

533

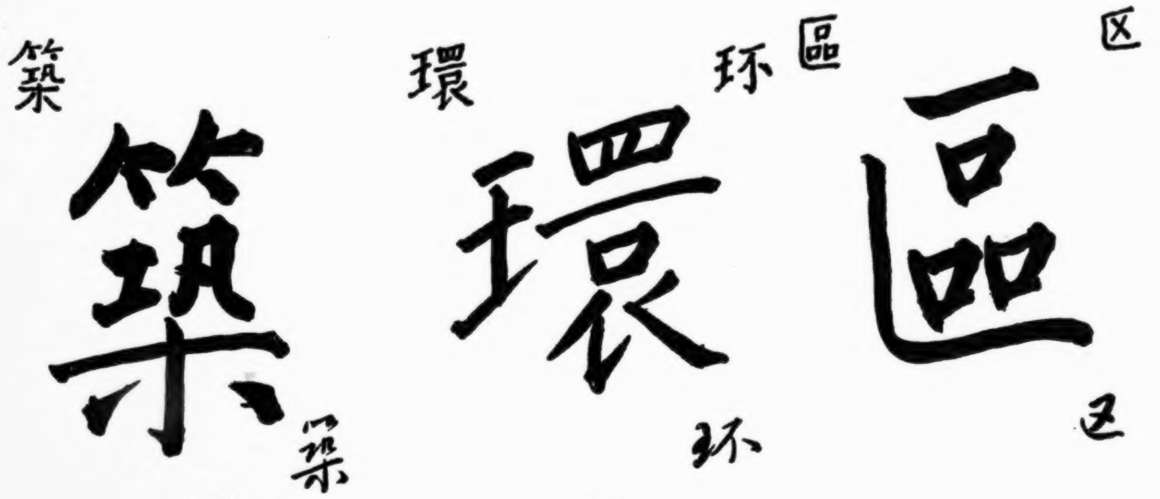
區 k'ui: place; region; small; petty; trifling.

區别 k'ui-pît: tó distinguish differences.

區域 k'ui-wîk: a territory; region.

中立區 chung-laâp k'ui: a neutral area.

教區 kaaù k'ui: diocese; vicariate; division.



1239

搶 ts'eúng: to take by force; to rob; to ravish.

搶刼 ts'eúng kìp: to rob; to plunder.

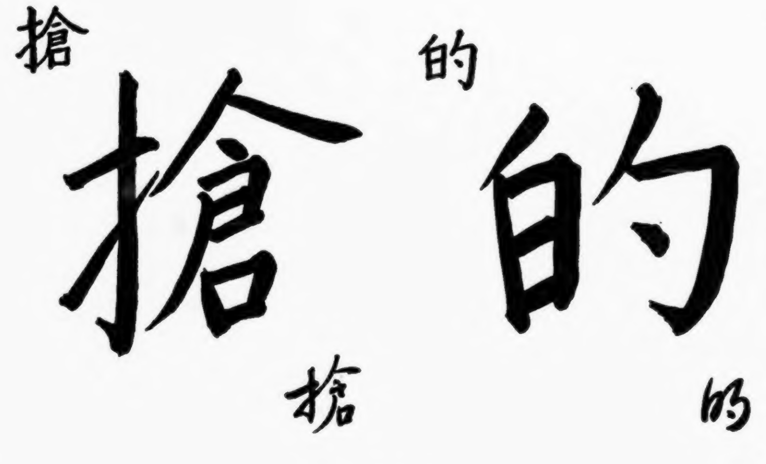
搶去 ts'eúng huì: to seize away; to take away by force.

1134

的 tik: clear; true; genuine.

的確 tik-k'òk: real; really.

的當 tik tòng: properly; satisfactorily.



LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

老黃同老張上岸嘅時候，好多拉人力車嘅車 tsai ló 搶住走埋黎佢地處爭做生意．亦都有幾架的士停喺處．老黃唔知道坐人力車好，或係坐的士好．老張話坐的士好啲，因為兩個人可以坐埋一ka車，一齊去酒店．

嗰架的士嘅司機喺左邊shai車，即係左上右落；但係美國嘅交通係右上左落，即係啲車喺街嘅右邊行．老黃唔見慣呢種情形，覺得好危險，要老張講 pei 佢知，然後明白．

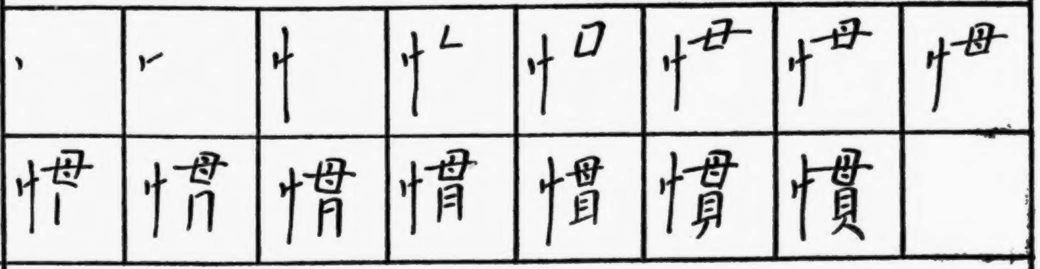
的士經過香港嘅中環商業區，見到好多建築物；有啲係美國式，有啲係英國式．有啲好高，比較廣州嘅高得多．有幾耐，司機喺一間大酒店嘅前便停車．呢間就係香港大酒店 la

LESSON 17

WRITING MATERIAL

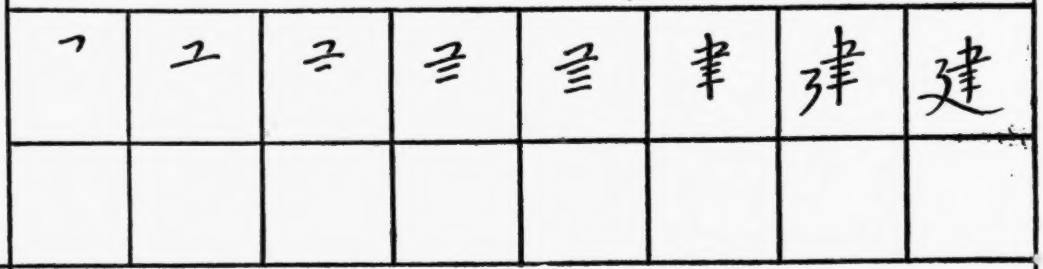
慣

Character Number 549 **Radical Number** 61
Stroke Number 15 心，忄



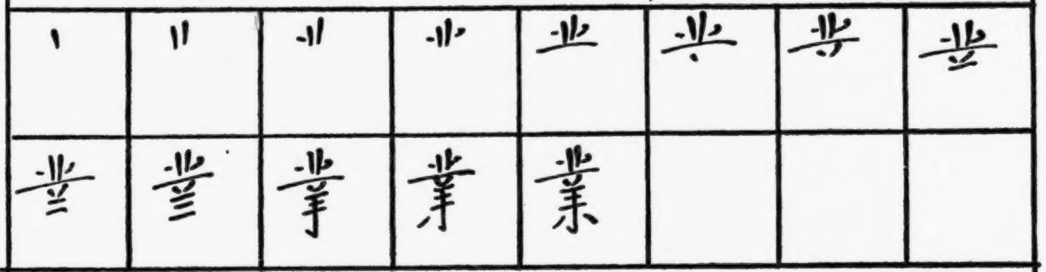
建

Character Number 460 **Radical Number** 54
Stroke Number 8 廴



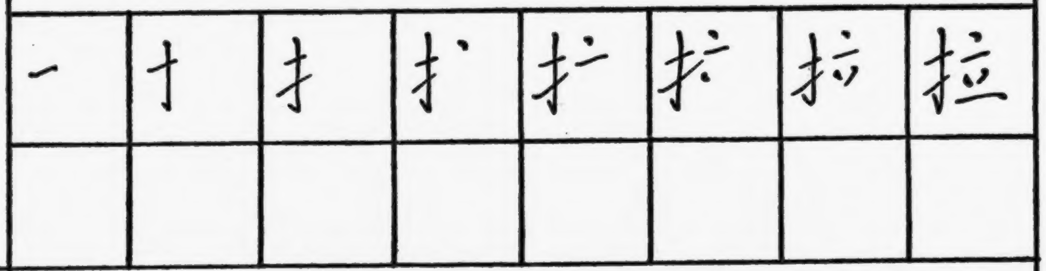
業

Character Number 361 **Radical Number** 75
Stroke Number 13 木



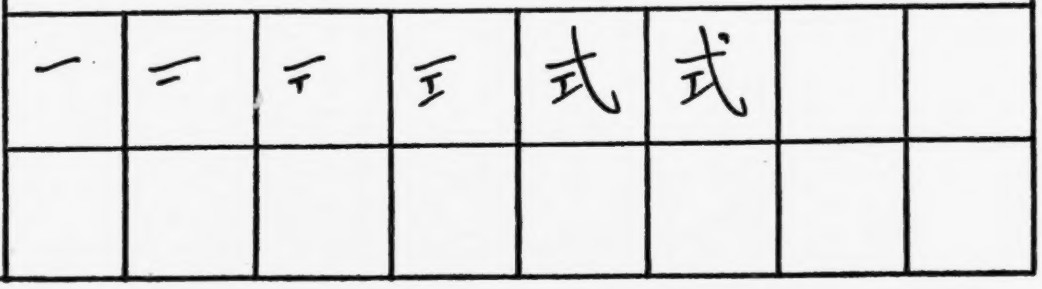
拉

Character Number 577 **Radical Number** 64
Stroke Number 8 手，扌

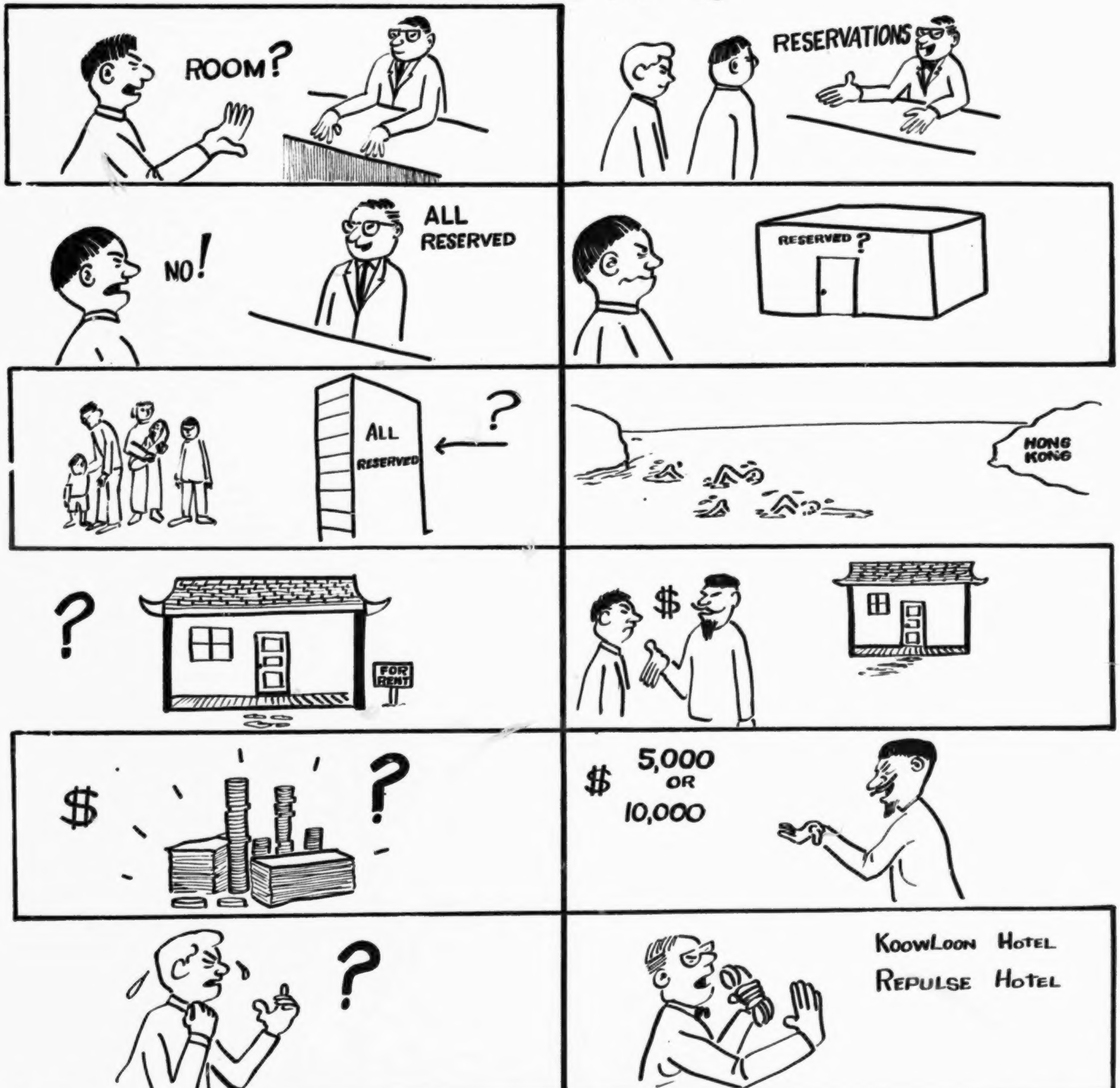


式

Character Number 983 **Radical Number** 56
Stroke Number 6 弋



LESSON 18


ROOM?
RESERVATIONS
NO!
ALL RESERVED
RESERVED?
ALL RESERVED
?
HONG KONG
?
FOR RENT
$
$
?
$ 5,000 OR 10,000
?
KoowLoon Hotel
Repulse Hotel
!
RESERVED
KOWLOON

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Cheung. Sz-leĭ, yaŭ-mŏ fōng* à?

Sz-leĭ. Neĭ leŭng-waî* sin-shaang yaŭ-mŏ uê-sin têng fōng* à?

C. Mŏ pòh, ngŏh-teî leŭng-kòh mŏ uê-sin têng fōng*.

S. Tuì-m̄-chuê, tuì-m̄-chuê. Ni-kaan tsaú-tìm mi-yĕ fōng* to mŏ; mi-yĕ fōng* to têng saaì là.

C. Mi-yĕ fōng* to mŏ; mi-yĕ fōng* to têng ts'ing ā?

S. Haî à. Heung-Kóng ì-ka kòm toh yān. Mi-yĕ fōng* to chuê moŏn; mi-yĕ fōng* to têng ts'ing là.

Wōng. Tîm-kaaî ooĭ yaŭ kấm-yeûng* kè în-tseûng ne?

S. Yan-waî shì-kûk kwaan-haî, m̄-shiú yān yaū Chung-Kwòk taaî-lûk tsaú-laì Heung-Kóng, shóh-ĭ ooĭ yaŭ kấm-yeûng* kè în-tsêung.

W. Tîm-kaaî k'uĭ-teî m̄-tso uk chuê ne?

S. Ī-ka m̄-yūng-ĭ tso uk chuê. Uē-kwóh yaŭ yat-kaan hung uk, îp-chuế tsaû iù lóh haaì-kam.

W. Yat-kaan p'ó-t'ung kè uk, iù keî toh ts'ìn* haaì-kam ne?

S. Kấm tsaû naan̄ kóng là. Îp-chuế yaŭ-shì iù lóh nğ-ts'in man Kóng-ngān*, yaŭ-shì iù lóh yat-maân.

W. Kòm-sai-leî. Chan-haî koó-m̄-tò là. À-Cheung, ngŏh-teî tîm-suèn-hó ne? Ngŏh-teî shì hă taî-î-kaan tsaú-tìm, hó mà?

S. Sin-shaang. Sin-shaang. Tấng yat-chân, tấng yat-chân,

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

tâng ngŏh tá tîn-wâ* huì Kaú-Lūng-Poòn-Tó-Tsaú-Tìm t'ūng Ts'în-Shuì-Waan-Tsaú-Tìm mân hă. T'aì hă yaŭ-mŏ fōng*.

M̄-koi, m̄-koi.

Kaú-Lūng-Poòn-Tó-Tsaú-Tìm yaŭ yat-kaan sheung-yān-fōng*.

Ngŏh ĭ-king fan-foò k'uĭ-teî t'ūng neĭ-teî têng-chuê laū-chuê là.

M̄-koi saaì, m̄-koi saaì. À-Cheung, ngŏh-teî kam-ts'ì chan hó-ts'oì chan hâng-wân là.

Ngŏh-teî ì-ka kwòh Kaú-Lūng, ngŏh-teî ì-ka taàp fôh-shuēn-tsaì kwòh Kaú-Lūng, hó mà?

LESSON 18

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Cheung. Do you have any rooms, manager?

Manager. Did you two gentlemen make reservations for rooms in advance?

C. No, we two didn't make reservations for rooms in advance.

M. I'm sorry. We don't have any room available; every room has been reserved.

C. No room is available; every room has been reserved?

M. Yes. There are so many people in Hong Kong now. Every room has been occupied; every room has been reserved.

Wōng. What's the reason for such a condition?

M. Because of the current situation, many people escaped to Hong Kong from the Chinese mainland. That is why such a condition exists.

W. Why don't they rent houses to live in?

M. It isn't easy to rent houses to live in now. If there is a vacant house, the landlord will ask for gratuity money.

W. How much gratuity money is asked for an ordinary house?

M. It's hard to say. Landlords sometimes ask for $5,000 in Hong Kong currency, sometimes $10,000.

W. Terrific! Really unbelievable. À-Cheung, what shall we do? Shall we try another hotel?

LESSON 18

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

M. Mister! Wait a moment, let me telephone the Kowloon Peninsula Hotel and the Repulse Bay Hotel and inquire. I'll see whether they have any rooms.

W. Thank you.

M. There is a double room in the Kowloon Peninsula Hotel I have already instructed them to reserve it and hold it for you.

W. Thank you for everything. Â-Cheung, this time we are really lucky, really fortunate.

C. Shall we go over to Kowloon now? Shall we take a ferry over to Kowloon now?

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. This is the ferry boat that we are going to take for Repulse Bay.
2. You are very fortunate. You would have missed this train if you had come here two minutes later.
3. This double room is, of course, much larger than that one, and it is also brighter and more comfortable.
4. He is going to try to swim from here to that peninsula the day after tomorrow.
5. Because of the current situation, you can rent a house at ten dollars a month, and you usually don't have to pay any key money.
6. This is the landlord of the building in that block and I am sure he will be able to help you.
7. The house is very beautiful, but the key money asked by the house owner is terrific.
8. These vacant classrooms are all reserved two months in advance.
9. All the seats in the auditorium are occupied by students.
10. The manager of the hotel has a rather close relationship with the landlord.
11. This condition exists because many people want to get rich fast.
12. He is a very good swimmer and he thinks he can escape by

swimming to San Francisco.

13. There isn't a single vacant house in this area and it is hard to say why.

14. We have made room reservations for five people three months in advance.

15. This classroom is available right now, but there are neither blackboards nor chairs.

16. Ordinarily, I get up at six in the morning and go to bed at ten in the evening.

LESSON 18

WORD LIST

1.	sz-leĭ	manager
2.	uê-sin	in advance
3.	têng ts'ing	all reserved
4.	chuê-moŏn	all occupied
5.	în-tseûng	condition
6.	shī-kûk	current situation
7.	kwaan-haî	relation
8.	taaî-lûk	mainland
9.	haaī-kam	key money, gratuity money
10.	îp-chuê	landlord, house owner
11.	sai-leî	terrible, severe
12.	poȍn-tȍ	peninsula
13.	sheung-yān-fōng*	double room
14.	hâng-wân	fortunate
15.	fȍh-shuēn-tsaî	ferry boat

LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

346

易 î: easy

易 yìk: to change; modify; barter

容易 yūng-î: easy

輕易 hing-î: easy; lightly; hardly.

237

鞋 haaī: low shoes; (Cl. chĕk 1; tui 2.)

拖鞋 t'oh-haaī#: slippers

鞋帶 haaī-taaī#: shoe lace

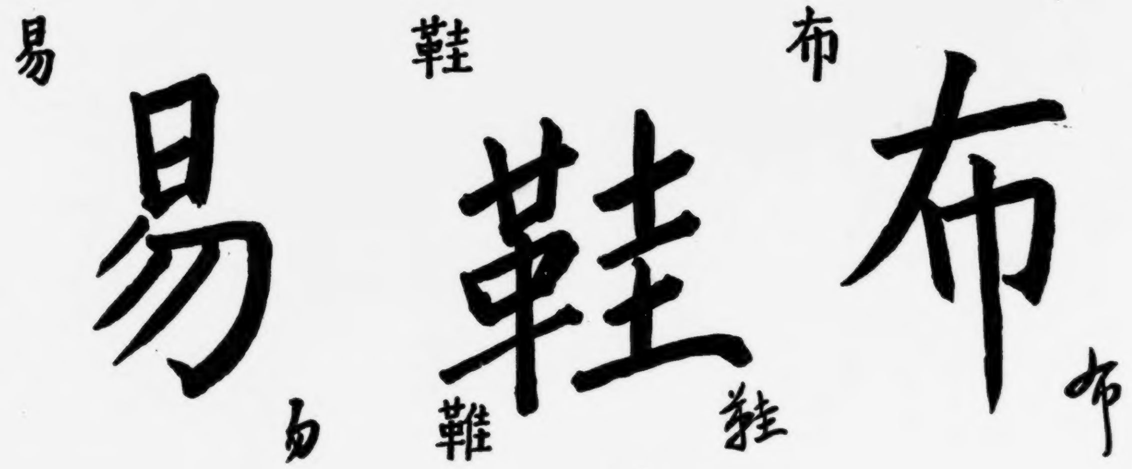
鞋膏 haaī-ko: shoe polish

874

布 pò: cloth(linen, cotton, plain silk).

檯布 t'oī# pò: table-cloth.

餐布 ts'aan pò: napkin.



56

帳 cheùng: a curtain screen, awning

蚊帳 man-cheùng: mosquito net

布帳 pò-cheùng: awning

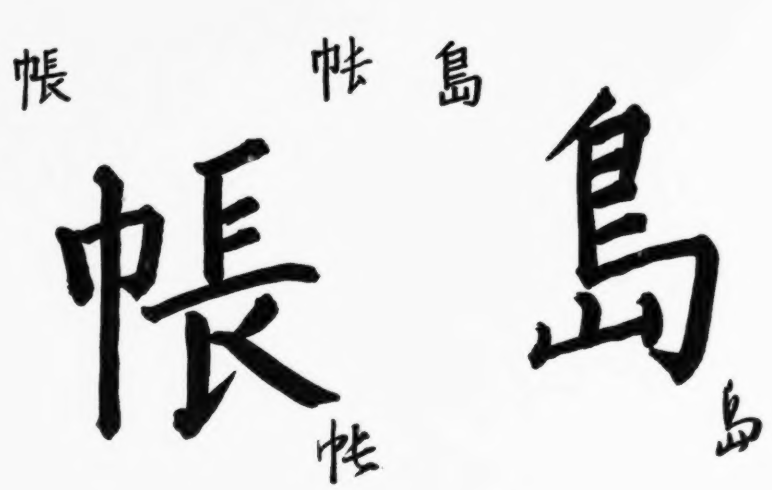
帳幕 cheùng-mòk: a tent

1161

島 tó: an island.

半島 poon-tó: peninsula.

群島 kwān-tó: Archipelago; group of islands.



LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

671

蚊	man: mosquito.
蚊帳	man-cheûng: mosquito net.

968

雙	sheung: a pair; couple; two.
雙手	sheung shaú: both hands.
雙親	sheung ts'an: one's parents.

1237

象	tseûng: elephant.
象牙	tseûng-ngā: ivory.
象棋	tseûng-k'eī: chess.

蚊 雙 双 象

蚊 雙 象

蚊 双 象

256

幸	hâng: fortunate; lucky
不幸	pat-hâng: misfortunate
幸運	hâng-wân: lucky

749

咬	ngaaŭ: to bite; to gnaw.
咬開	ngaaŭ hoi: to bite off.
咬牙切齒	ngaaŭ ngā ts'ìt ch'í: to gnash the teeth in anger.

幸 咬

幸 咬

幸 咬

LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

老張入去酒店司理部租房,司理問佢地有冇預先定房.老張話佢地正話由廣州黎到,冇預先定房.但係所有嘅房都住滿,或係定清;因為由中國大陸走黎香港嘅人非常之多,所以做成呢種現象.

呢啲由大陸走黎嘅人,想租屋住亦都唔容易.因為如果有空屋,業主除阻 lóh 貴租之外,又 lóh 一萬幾千文鞋金,所以有好多冇錢嘅人,租唔倒屋,又住唔起酒店,就taàp布帳喺山邊或空地黎住.好在香港冇蚊,唔怕 peí 蚊咬.

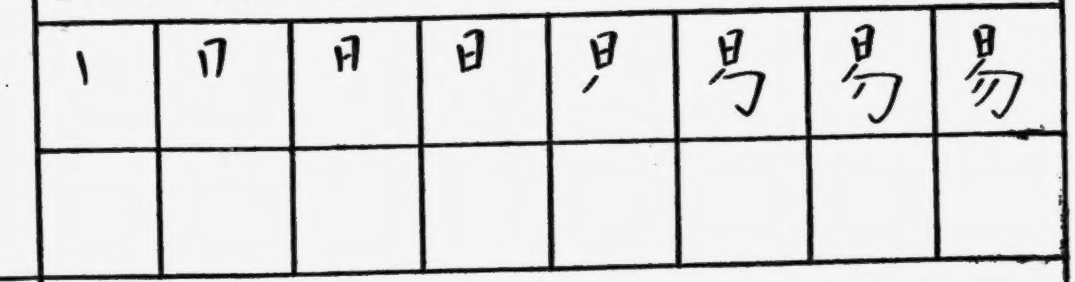
後來酒店嘅司理同佢地打電話九Lūng半島酒店問吓.都算老黃幸運,嗰處重有一間雙人房.

LESSON 18

WRITING MATERIAL

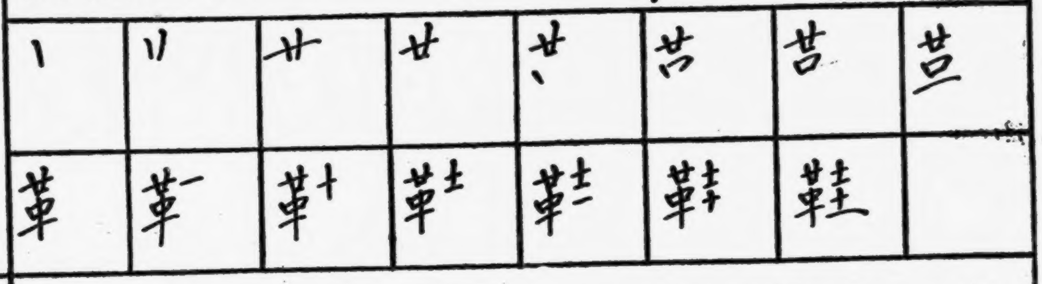
易

Character Number 346 **Radical Number** 72
Stroke Number 8 日



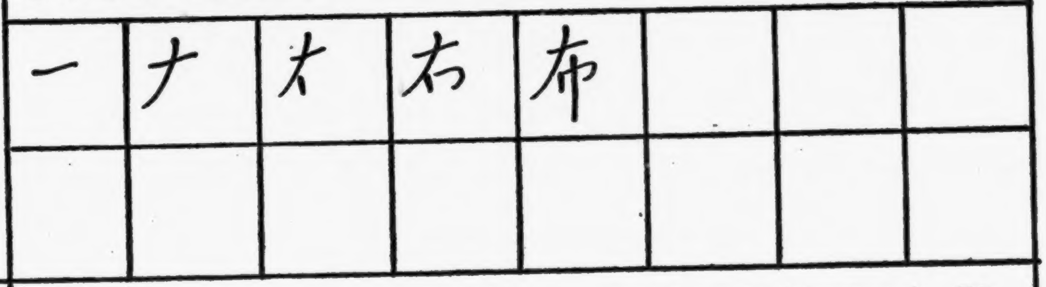
鞋

Character Number 237 **Radical Number** 177
Stroke Number 15 革



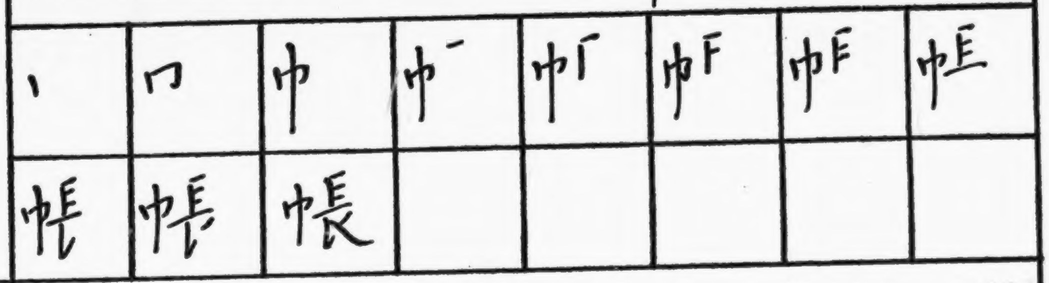
布

Character Number 874 **Radical Number** 50
Stroke Number 5 巾



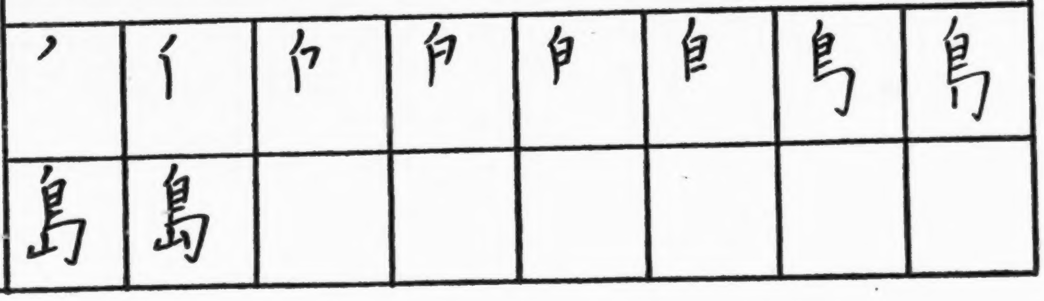
帳

Character Number 56 **Radical Number** 50
Stroke Number 11 巾

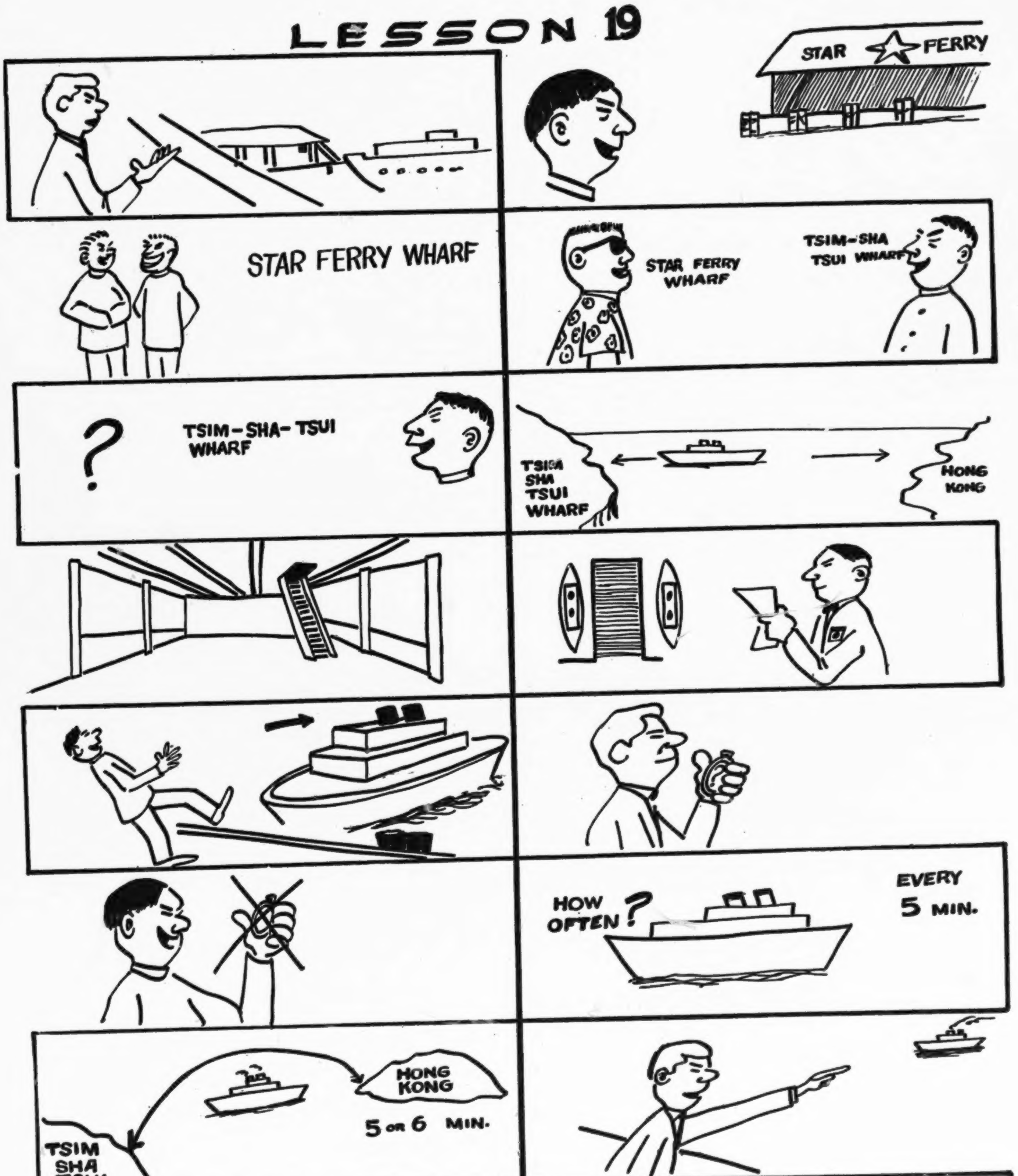


島

Character Number 1161 **Radical Number** 46
Stroke Number 10 山



LESSON 19


STAR FERRY
STAR FERRY WHARF
STAR FERRY WHARF
TSIM-SHA TSUI WHARF
?
TSIM-SHA-TSUI WHARF
TSIM SHA TSUI WHARF
HONG KONG
HOW OFTEN?
EVERY 5 MIN.
HONG KONG
5 OR 6 MIN.
TSIM SHA TSUI
ELECTRIC STAR
STAR FERRY WHARF

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Ā. Ni-tsôh tsaû haî fóh-shuēn-tsaî mă-t'aū.

Cheung. Haî là. Ni-tsôh tsaû haî Sẑ-T'a-Fa-Leî mă-t'aū.

W. Haî-m̄-haî kòh kòh Chung-Kwòk-Yān to kiù k'uĭ tsô Sẑ-T'a-Fa-Leî mă-t'aū ne?

C. M̄-haî. Sai-Yān kiù k'uĭ tsô Sẑ-T'a-Fa-Leî mă-t'aū. Chung-Kwòk-Yān p'ó-t'ung kiù k'uĭ tsô Tsim-Sha-Tsuî mă-t'aū.

W. Tîm-kaaî kiù k'uĭ tsô Tsim-Sha-Tsuî mă-t'aū ne?

C. Yan-waî ti fóh-shuēn-tsaî laî-laî-huî-huî Heung-Kóng Kaú-Lūng-Tsim-Sha-Tsuî-K'ui, shóh-ĭ kiù k'uĭ tsô Tsim-Sha-Tsuî mă-t'aū.

W. Ni-tsôh mă-t'aū chan-haî san-shik, chan-haî moh-tang là.

C. Haî à. Ni-tsôh mă-t'aū ch'ìt-peî chan-haî uēn-shîn, koón-leĭ chan-haî chau-tò là.

W. Ā. Fóh-shuēn-tsaî ngaam-ngaam hoi-chóh shan, kong-kong leî-hoi mă-t'aū. Ngŏh-teî tsaú-chóh ni-tô shuēn là.

C. Tsut, tsut, tsut. Ngŏh-teî haāng maân yat-pô, laî-ch'î yat-pô, tsaú-chóh ni-tô shuēn là.

W. Ngŏh-teî iù tấng keî noî în-haû yaŭ taî-î-tô shuēn ne?

C. Ngŏh-teî m̄-shaî tấng keî noî tsaû yaŭ taî-î-tô shuēn là.

W. Ni-ti fóh-shuēn-tsaî iù keî noî yat-tô ne?

C. Taaî-yeùk* mocĭ nğ-fan-chung yat-tô.

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. Ni-ti fôh-shuēn-tsaî yaū Heung-Kông tò Tsim-Sha-Tsuî [illegible]
kei noî ne?

C. Ni-ti fôh-shuēn-tsaî yaū Heung-Kông tò Tsim-Sha-Tsuî [illegible]
taaî-yeuk* ng-luk-fan-chung kòm sheûng-hâ*.

W. Mā. Yaū yat-chèk fôh-shuēn-tsaî tseung-kâu maaî [illegible]

C. Kôh-chèk fôh-shuēn-tsaî kiù-tsô Tîn-Sing.

W. Ā. M̄-kwaaì-tak yān-teî kiù ni-kòh mă-t'aū tsô [illegible]
leî mă-t'aū là.

LESSON 19

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. Ah! This is the ferry wharf.

Cheung. Yes, this is the Star Ferry Wharf.

W. Do the Chinese call it the Star Ferry Wharf?

C. No, Occidentals call it the Star Ferry Wharf. The Chinese commonly call it Tsim-Sha-Tsuî Wharf.

W. Why do they call it Tsim-Sha-Tsuî Wharf?

C. Because the ferries are travelling to and fro between Hong Kong and Tsim-Sha-Tsuî District, it is called the Tsim-Sha-Tsuî Wharf.

W. This wharf is really stylish, really modern.

C. Yes, the set-up of this wharf is really perfect and is well managed.

W. Ah! The ferry just started, it just left the wharf. We've missed this run.

C. Too bad! We were a step (bit) too slow, and came a step (bit) too late, and we've missed this run.

W. How long do we have to wait for the second run?

C. We don't have to wait very long for the second run.

W. How often do these ferries run?

C. Approximately five minutes per interval.

W. How long does it take these ferries to go from Hong Kong to Tsim-Sha-Tsuî?

LESSON 19

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

C. These ferries take approximately five or six minutes to go from Hong Kong to Tsim-Sha-Tsuî.

W. Hey! A ferry will soon arrive at the wharf.

C. That ferry is called the Electric Star.

W. Ah! It's no wonder this wharf is called the Star Ferry Wharf!

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The set-up in this restaurant is very stylish and very modern.
2. I am sorry, sir. You will have to wait another ten minutes.
3. His wife just left for Hong Kong the day before yesterday.
4. This is the large building that we have seen from the ferry boat.
5. Look at the tall buildings! No wonder it is very different!
6. The train just started two minutes ago. We just missed it.
7. This house, with three bedrooms, is perfect for a family of five.
8. He is a very capable man, and he will manage the hotel well.
9. How long has he been here, Mr. Leĭ?
10. There are two piers. This one is larger and that one is smaller.
11. This set-up is perfect, but I need a good man to manage it.
12. The set-up here is very modern, but it is not at all perfect.
13. You have the help of all modern and perfect methods. No wonder you came out first in the examination.
14. Since we missed the first boat, we have to wait for ten minutes for the second run.
15. The ferry travels to and fro once a day between those two cities.

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. There is a train every ten minutes, and a bus every five.

17. It takes approximately two hours and thirty minutes of driving to reach San Francisco.

LESSON 19

WORD LIST

1.	tsôh	AN, seat
2.	moh-tang	modern
3.	ch'ìt-peî	set-up
4.	uēn-shîn	perfect
5.	koón-leĭ	to manage, management
6.	chau-tò	service is good
7.	kong-kong	just
8.	taî-î-tô	second run
9.	sing	star

LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

100

設	ch'ìt: to set up; set forth devise
設立	ch'ìt-laâp: to establish.
設法	ch'ìt-faàt: to devise means; to find ways

523

管	koón: to oversee; to look; to look after; a tube.
管理	koón-leĭ: to govern; to manage.
管束	koón-ch'uk: to restrain.
管轄	koón-hât: to control to rule over.
氣管	heì-koón: the wind-pipe.
毛管	mō-koón: pores of the skin.

928

沙	sha: sand.
沙漠	sha-môk: desert.
沙灘	sha-t'aan: shallows; beach.
沙塵	sha-ch'ān: saucy; impertinent.

設 管 管 沙

設 管 沙

设 管 沙

1306

嘴	tsuí: lip; spout; bill of bird; mouth.
嘴唇	tsuí-shūn: lip.

1279

座	tsôh: couch; seat; throne; article for large buildings.
座位	tsôh-waĭ: a seat.
上座	sheúng tsôh: the seat of honor; seat above the salt.

嘴 座

嘴 座

嘴 座

LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

1116

登 tang: to ascend; to mount; to advance; to record.

登記 tang-keì: to record; to register; to enroll.

登報 tang pò: to insert in a newspaper.

登載 tang tsoì: insert; (as ad in newspaper)

1165

度 tô: a measure; standard; degree.

程度 ch'Īng-tô: standard; qualification.

高度 ko tô: height.

熱度 ît tô: degree of heat; temperature.

988

善 shîn: good; righteous; clever; skilled.

善事 shîn sẑ: virtuous deed.

善法 shîn faàt: good plan; clever scheme.

登 度 善

登 度 善

登 度 善

1247

尖 tsim: pointed; sharp; clever; point; tip.

尖刀 tsim to: sharp-pointed knife.

尖頂 tsim téng: pointed top.

1473

秧 yeung: shoot of (rice) plant; young plant.

禾秧 wōh-yeung: rice seedling.

揷秧 ch'aàp yeung: to transplant seedling.

尖 秧

尖 秧

尖 秧

LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

半島酒店喺香港對面嘅九 Lūng. 要坐火船 tsai 過海然後可以去到. 老黃同老張就快啲趕去尖沙嘴 Mă 頭 taâp 火船 tsai 過海.

呢啲火船 tsai 係特别整黎做過海用嘅. 設備完善, 管理周到; 船上有好多座位, 每五分鐘就有一度船開行. taâp 船嘅人亦都唔使趕得太緊要. 尖沙嘴 Mă 頭係一 chôh 新式建築物, kîk 之 moh 登.

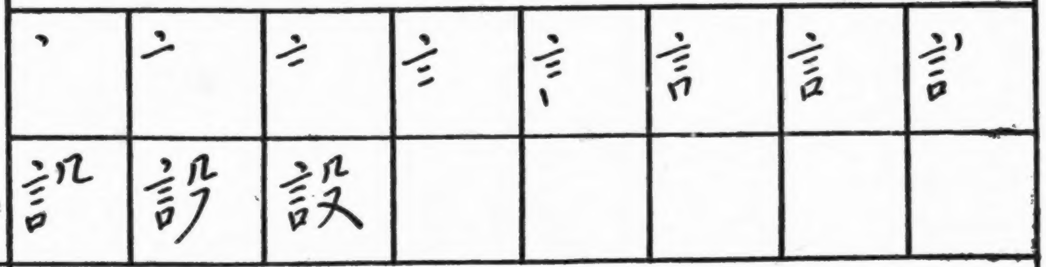
老黃上 chôh 船冇幾耐, 火船 tsai 又開始向對海 shai 去. 經過五六分鐘 kôm 上下, 就喺九 Lūng 埋岸.

LESSON 19

WRITING MATERIAL

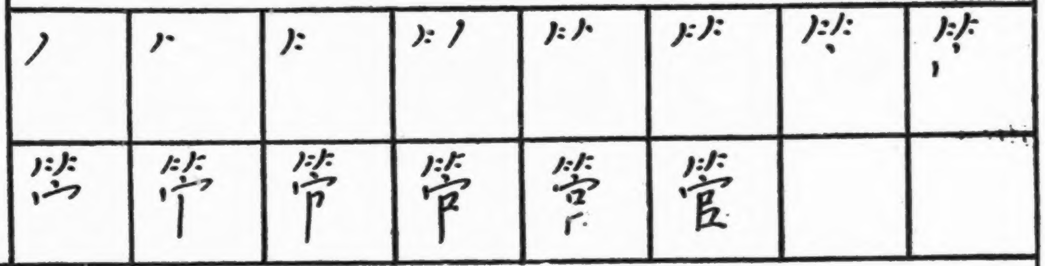
設

Character Number 100
Stroke Number 11
Radical Number 149
言



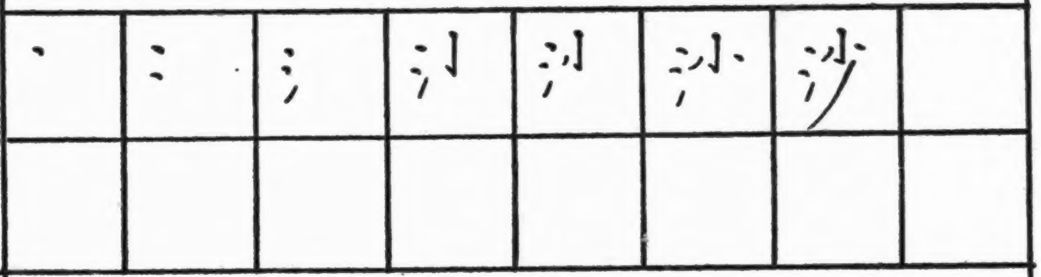
管

Character Number 520
Stroke Number 14
Radical Number 118
竹，⺮



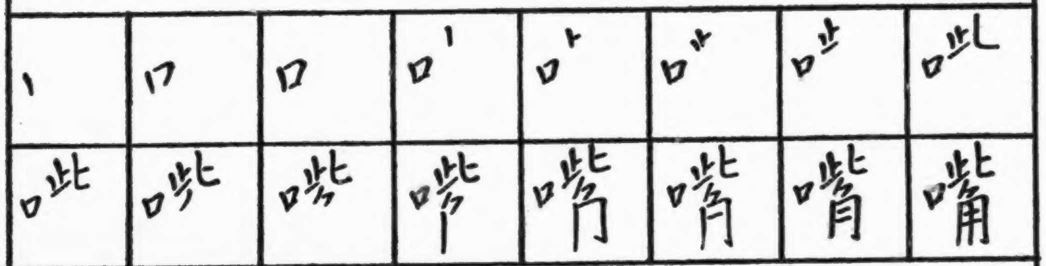
沙

Character Number 928
Stroke Number 7
Radical Number 85
水，氵



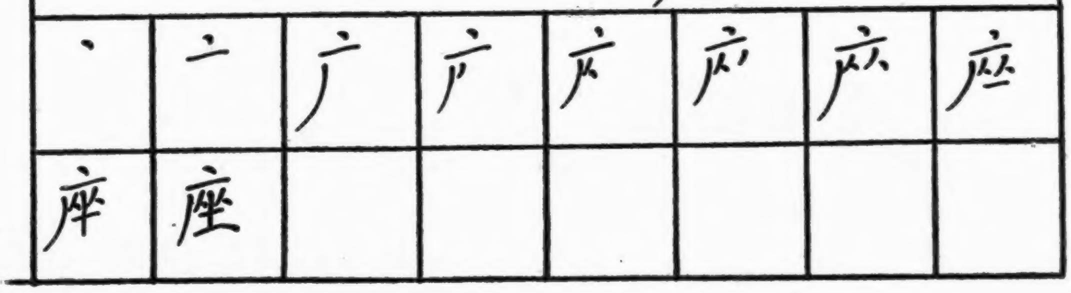
嘴

Character Number 1306
Stroke Number 16
Radical Number 30
口

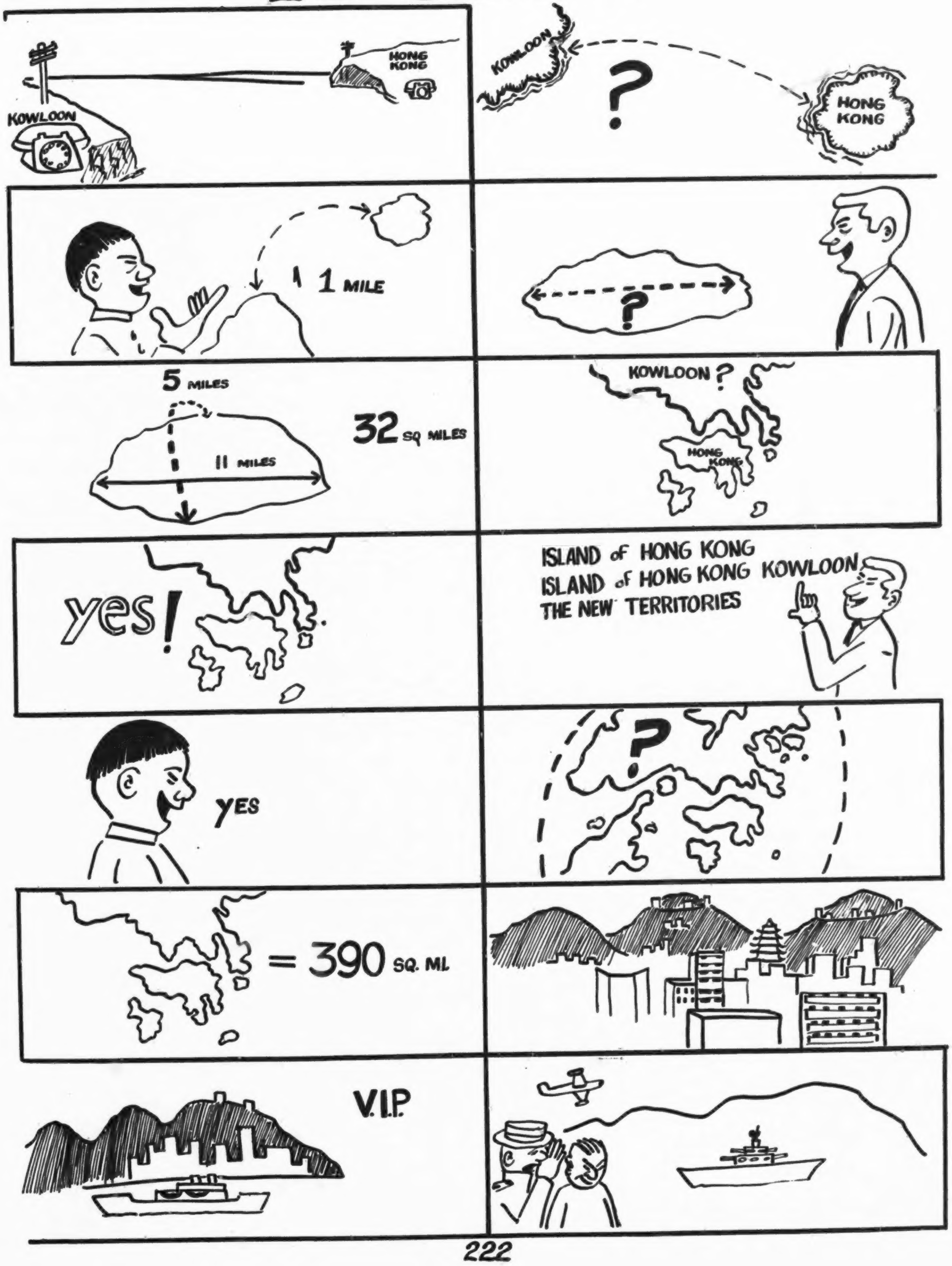


座

Character Number 1279
Stroke Number 10
Radical Number 53
广



LESSON 20


KOWLOON
HONG KONG
KOWLOON
?
HONG KONG
1 MILE
?
5 MILES
11 MILES
32 SQ MILES
KOWLOON ?
HONG KONG
yes!
ISLAND of HONG KONG
ISLAND of HONG KONG KOWLOON
THE NEW TERRITORIES
YES
?
= 390 SQ. MI.
V.I.P.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Heung-Kóng t'ūng Kaú-Lūng kè kaau-t'ung chan-haî pîn-leî là.

Cheung. Mŏ-ts'òh là. Sui-īn Heung-Kóng t'ūng Kaú-Lūng kaàk-hoi, taân-haî kaau-t'ung fei-sheūng-chi pîn-leî.

W. Heung-Kóng t'ūng Kaú-Lūng kaàk-hoi keî-uĕn ne?

C. Taaî-yeùk* yat Ying-Leĭ kòm sheûng-hâ*.

W. Heung-Kóng-Tó kè mîn-tsik yaŭ keî taaî à?

C. Heung-Kóng-Tó taaî-yeùk* shâp-yat Ying-Leĭ cheūng, leŭng Ying-Leĭ chì nğ Ying-Leĭ foòt. Mîn-tsik taaî-yeùk* saam-shâp-î Ying-Fong-Leĭ tsóh-yaû*.

W. Kaú-Lūng t'ūng San-Kaaì to haî shûk-ue Heung-Kóng kè, haî-m̄-haî?

C. Haî à. Kaú-Lūng San-Kaaì t'ūng-maaì foô-kân kè tó to haî shûk-ue Heung-Kóng kè.

W. Heung-Kóng yaŭ-shī chî Heung-Kóng-Tó, yaŭ-shī chî Heung-Kóng-Tó Kaú-Lūng San-Kaaì t'ūng-maaì foô-kân kè tó, haî-m̄-haî à?

C. Mŏ-ts'òh là.

W. Heung-Kóng kè tsúng-mîn-tsik yaŭ keî taaî ne?

C. Tsúng-mîn-tsik taaî-yeùk* saam-paàk-kaú-shâp Ying-Fong-Leĭ kòm sheûng-hâ*.

W. Neĭ nîng-chuèn-mîn t'aî hă Heung-Kóng, chan-haî meĭ-laî là.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

. Heung-Kông m̂-chî meĭ-laî, î-ch'ê chûng-iù.

Mŏ-ts'òh là. Heung-Kông m̂-chî haî yat-kòh meĭ-laî kè shing-shĭ, faān-shîng kè sheung-faû, mîng-shìng kè teî-fong, kwan-sẑ kè k'ui-wîk, hoî-kwan kè kan-kuì-teî, chìn-leûk kè iù-tîm, î-ch'ê haî yat-kòh chìng-chî oôt-tûng kè teî-fong laî kà.

LESSON 20

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. The communication between Hong Kong and Kowloon is really convenient.

Cheung. That's right! Although Hong Kong is separated from Kowloon, the communication is extremely convenient.

W. How great a distance separates Hong Kong and Kowloon?

C. Approximately one mile.

W. What's the area of the Island of Hong Kong?

C. The Island of Hong Kong is approximately 11 miles long and 2 to 5 miles wide. The area is approximately 32 square miles.

W. Do Kowloon and the New Territories belong to Hong Kong?

C. Yes, Kowloon, the New Territories and the islands in the vicinity belong to Hong Kong.

W. Is Hong Kong sometimes referred to as meaning the Island of Hong Kong, and other times referred to as meaning the Island of Hong Kong, Kowloon, the New Territories and the islands in the vicinity?

C. That's right!

W. What is the total area of Hong Kong?

C. The total area is approximately 390 square miles.

W. Turn around and take a look at Hong Kong. It's really beautiful!

C. Hong Kong is not only beautiful, but also important!

LESSON 20

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. That's right! Hong Kong is not only a beautiful city, a prosperous port, a scenic place, a military area, a naval base, and a strategic point, but also a place of political activities!

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Hong Kong is the center for all kinds of political activities.
2. The important point of this lesson is to know the method.
3. The island, ten miles north of here, is of strategical importance.
4. New York City is partly separated from the mainland. Is that right?
5. This school is on a military reservation.
6. San Francisco is a prosperous city with a number of scenic districts.
7. It is important to finish all your work, but it is more important to finish it on time.
8. That woman is not only rich, but she is also beautiful.
9. If you turn around, you will be looking at the blackboard.
10. This is not my book. I think it belongs to him.
11. It is very convenient if you can speak more than one language.
12. When I say Chinatown, I am referring to San Francisco's Chinatown.
13. This island is approximately 3 miles long and 2 to 3 miles wide, and the entire area is less than 10 square miles.
14. San Francisco is a beautiful city with all the modern conveniences.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. Please turn around and let me have a better look at your injury.

16. This table is not only long but also wide.

17. These two rooms are not separated and it is very convenient.

LESSON 20

WORD LIST

1.	kaàk-hoi	to separate
2.	mîn-tsik	area
3.	Fong-Leĭ	square mile
4.	shûk-ue	belong to
5.	chì	refer to, point
6.	nîng-chuèn-mîn	turn around
7.	chûng-iù	important
8.	faān-shîng	prosperous
9.	mìng-shìng	scenic
10.	k'ui-wîk	area, district, reservation
11.	chìn-leûk	strategic
12.	iù-tìm	important point
13.	chìng-chî	politics, political
14.	oôt-tûng	active, activity

LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

77

治 chî: to govern; rule

治理 chî-leĭ: to manage, to govern

自治 tsè-chî: self-government. self-manage

政治 ching-chî: politics

378

界 kaaì: region; boundary

世界 shaì-kaaì: the world

女界 nuĭ-kaaì: the female; women; woman's world

界限 kaaì-haân: limit boundary

邊界 pin-kaaì: boundaries

588

麗 laî: beautiful; elegant.

美麗 meĭ-laî: beautiful.

華麗 wā-laî: luxurious; ornamental.

秀麗 saù-laî: elegant; plain & quiet beauty.

高麗 ko-laî: Korea.

治 界 麗 麗

治界麗

治 界 麗

991

勝 shìng: to conquer; to overcome; to excel.

不勝言 pat shing īn: beyond description.

不勝任 pat shing yâm: not qualified for the post.

998

盛 shîng: to hold; to contain.

盛滿 shîng moŏn: filled with.

勝 盛

勝盛

勝 盛

LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

1022

屬	shûk: belonging to; connected with; related.
屬國	shûk kwòk: dependent state.
屬地	shûk-teî: colony; dependency.
親屬	ts'an-shûk: relative.

381

隔	kaàk: to seperate; a partition
隔離	kaàk-leî: neighboring; to isolate
隔日	kaàk yât: every other day
隔别	kaàk-pît: seperated (persons)
間隔	kaàn-kaàk: partition

1243

積	tsik: to pile up; to store; to gather; to accumulate; to hoard.
積分	tsik-fan: score; point.
積蓄	tsik-ch'uk: to save; to accumulate; the savings.

屬　属隔　積

屬　隔　積

属　隔　積

600

略	leûk: a few; little; in general.
大略	taaî-leûk: generally; an outline.
略略	leûk-leûk: somewhat; in general; a little.

1407

灣	waan: bay; a curve.
海灣	hoí-waan: a bay.
轉灣	chuèn waan to turn a corner.

略　灣　湾

略　灣

畧　略　湾

LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

火船tsaî shaî五六分鐘就到九Lūng,因為香港同九Lūng隔開大約一英里kôm遠.香港係一個島,十一英里長,兩英里至五英里foôt;面積有三十二英方里左右.九Lūng,新界同附近嘅島,都屬英國管治.所有呢啲地方嘅總面積有三百九十英方里kôm上下.

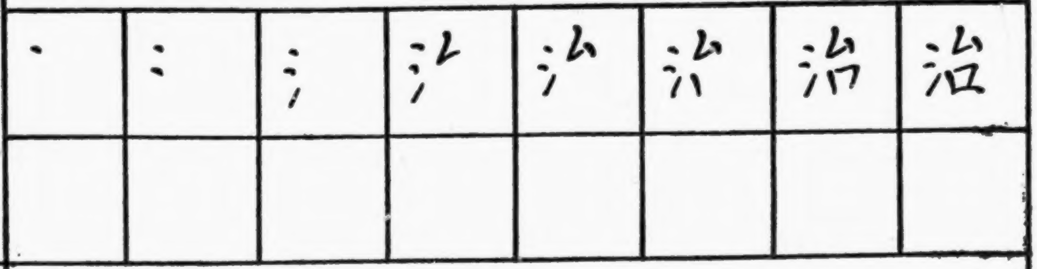
香港唔祇係一個faān盛嘅商埠,戰畧嘅要點,而且係一個美麗嘅城市.有好多名勝地方,可以遊樂;好似淺水灣就係其中之一.初到香港嘅人,最歡喜夜間由九Lūng方面,或海面嘅船,遠望島上嘅燈光;好似滿天faān星.呢種景色,唔係幾多地方可以見到嘅.

LESSON 20

WRITING MATERIAL

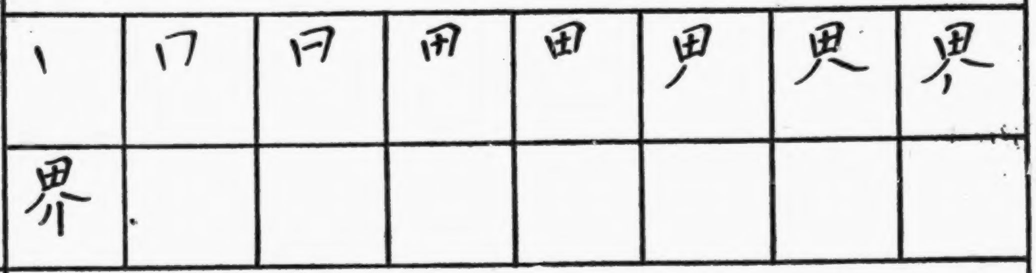
治

Character Number 77 **Radical Number** 85
Stroke Number 8 水，氵



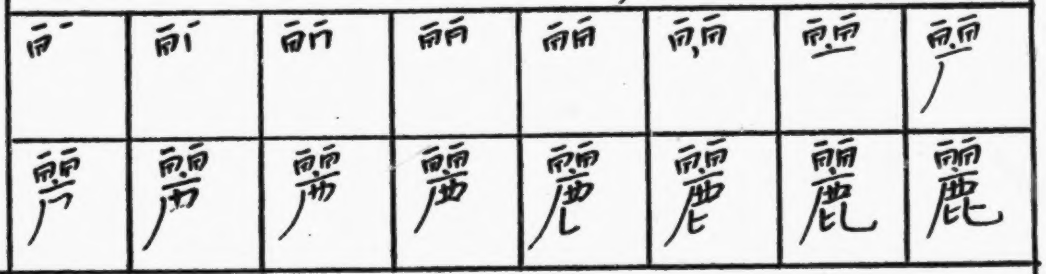
界

Character Number 378 **Radical Number** 102
Stroke Number 9 田



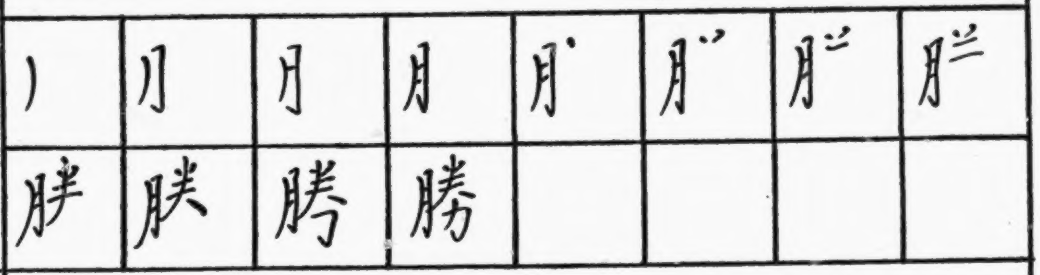
麗

Character Number 588 **Radical Number** 198
Stroke Number 21 鹿



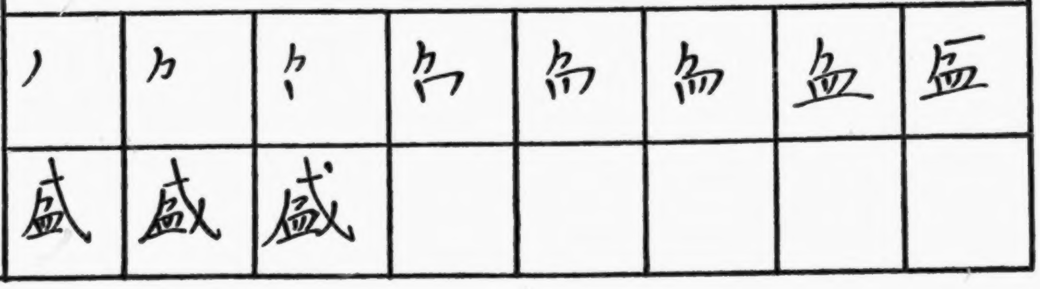
勝

Character Number 991 **Radical Number** 19
Stroke Number 12 力



盛

Character Number 998 **Radical Number** 108
Stroke Number 11 皿



張：冇錯鑏．

黃：香港嘅總面積有幾大呢？

張：總面積大約三百九十英方里咁上下．

黃：你擰轉面睇吓香港，真係美麗鑏！

張：香港唔祇美麗，而且重要！

黃：冇錯鑏．香港唔祇係一個美麗嘅城市，繁盛嘅商埠，名勝嘅地方，軍事嘅區域，海軍嘅根據地，戰畧嘅要點，而且係一個政治活動嘅地方黎架！

第二十課　搭火船仔

黃：香港同九龍嘅交通真係便利鏬．

張：冇錯鏬．雖然香港同九龍隔開，但係交通非常之便利．

黃：香港同九龍隔開幾遠呢？

張：大約*一英里咁上下*．

黃：香港島嘅面積有幾大呀？

張：香港島大約*十一英里長，兩英里至五英里濶．面積大約*三十二英方里左右*．

黃：九龍同新界都係屬於香港嘅，係唔係？

張：係呀．九龍新界同埋附近嘅島都係屬於香港嘅．

黃：香港有時指香港島，有時指香港島九龍新界同埋附近嘅島，係唔係呀？

度船罅．

張：卒卒卒！我地行慢一步，黎遲一步，走咗呢度船罅．

黃：我地要等幾耐然後有第二度船呢？

張：我地唔使等幾耐就有第二度船罅．

黃：呢啲火船仔要幾耐一度呢？

張：大約*每五分鐘一度．

黃：呢啲火船仔由香港到尖沙嘴要幾耐呢？

張：呢啲火船仔由香港到尖沙嘴要大約*五六分鐘咁上下*．

黃：嗱！有一隻火船仔將近埋碼頭罅！

張：嗰隻火船仔叫做電星．

黃：呀！唔怪得人地叫呢個碼頭做士他花利碼頭罅！

第十九課　到火船仔碼頭

黃：呀！呢座就係火船仔碼頭．

張：係罅．呢座就係士他花利碼頭．

黃：係唔係個個中國人都呌佢做士他花利碼頭呢？

張：唔係．西人呌佢做士他花利碼頭．中國人普通呌佢做尖沙嘴碼頭．

黃：點解呌佢做尖沙嘴碼頭呢？

張：因為啲火船仔黎黎去去香港九龍尖沙嘴區，所以呌佢做尖沙嘴碼頭．

黃：呢座碼頭真係新式，真係摩登罅．

張：係呀．呢座碼頭設備真係完善，管理真係周到罅．

黃：呀！火船仔啱啱開咗身，剛剛離開碼頭．我地走咗呢

地定住留住鎛．

黃：唔該嘥，唔該嘥．亞張，我地今次真好彩真幸運鎛．

張：我地而家過九龍，我地而家搭火船仔過九龍，好嗎？

黃：點解佢地唔租屋住呢？

司理：而家唔容易租屋住．如果有一間空屋，業主就要攞鞋金．

黃：一間普通嘅屋，要幾多錢*鞋金呢？

司理：敢就難講噃．業主有時要攞五千文港銀*．有時要攞一萬．

黃：咁犀利！真係估唔到噃．亞張，我地點算好呢？我地試吓第二間酒店．好嗎？

司理：先生！先生！等一陣，等一陣．等我打電話*去九龍半島酒店同淺水灣酒店問吓．睇吓有冇房*．

黃：唔該，唔該．

司理：九龍半島酒店有一間雙人房*．我已經吩咐佢地同你

第十八課　揾房*

張：司理，有冇房*呀？

司理：你兩位*先生有冇預先定房*呀？

張：冇播，我地兩個冇預先定房*.

司理：對唔住，對唔住．呢間酒店乜野房*都有．乜野房*都定嗮鋪．

張：乜野房*都冇；乜野房*都定清呀？

司理：係呀．香港而家咁多人．乜野房*都住滿；乜野房*都定清鋪．

黃：點解會有敢樣*嘅現象呢？

司理：因為時局關係，唔少人由中國大陸走黎香港，所以會有敢樣*嘅現象．

落．美國嘅交通係右上左落．

張：係鏬．你而家唔慣呢種交通．過三四日，你就慣鏬．

黃：而家我地喺邊處呢？

張：而家你喺香港中區．西人叫呢處做域多利亞城．中國人普通叫呢處做中環．

黃：中環係乜野地方呢？

張：中環係香港島嘅商業區．

黃：睇吓嗰啲建築！有啲係美國式嘅建築，有啲係英國式嘅建築．

司機：先生，香港大酒店！

第十七課　坐的士

車仔佬：瀝儍！瀝儍！

張：嗰啲係車仔佬，叶我地坐佢地嘅車仔．

黃：點解咁多車仔佬拉佢地嘅車仔埋黎我地處呢？

張：佢地想做生意．想爭生意吖嗎？

黃：我地坐車仔抑或坐的士去酒店呢？

張：我地坐的士去好嗎？的士！的士！

司機：先生，想去邊處呢？

張：香港大酒店！

黃：估唔到香港有咁多新式嘅汽車．

張：香港有好多新式嘅美國汽車同埋英國汽車．

黃：香港嘅交通同美國嘅交通唔同．香港嘅交通係左上右

黃：敢樣，我地唔好揾咕哩鑏．

張：有啲咕哩係敢；有啲咕哩唔係敢．佢地有啲忠直；有啲唔忠直．

黃：佢地揾食都唔容易，佢地嘅生活都幾艱難嘅播．

張：亞黃，你上岸之後，打算去邊處呢？

黃：上岸之後，我打算去一間酒店．

張：你打算去邊間酒店呢？

黃：我未決定．我打算去一間上等嘅酒店．

張：我嘅計劃同你嘅一樣．我地去香港大酒店，好嗎？

黃：好呀．香港大酒店係一間頭等嘅酒店．

張：如果係敢．我就呌一個香港大酒店嘅伙記同我地擰行李．

第十六課　上岸

黃：檢查完護照，檢查完行李鏬．我地可以上岸未呀？

張：可以鏬．你要唔要人帮你擰行李呀？

黃：我有兩個皮喼，一個槓．我要搵一個人帮我．

張：我同你搵一個旅行社嘅職員帮你．

黃：邊處有旅行社嘅職員呢？

張：呢！嗰個着制服帶徽章嘅人就係鏬．

黃：佢好似好唔得閒敢樣．不如搵一個咕哩罷喇．

張：搵咕哩呀？有的咕哩靠唔住嘅播

黃：點解有啲咕哩靠唔住呢？

張：佢地係有組織嘅苦力．如果唔見咗你嘅行李，佢地唔賠俾你嘅播．

住．喺佢地自己嘅艇食．佢地喺艇處住好似我地喺屋處住一樣．

黃：佢地喺邊處搵食呢？

張：佢地喺海上搵食．喺海上攞魚攞蟹攞蝦，賣俾街市．

黃：佢地搵食搵得唔容易播．

張：鞋！真係唔容易，尤其是打風落雨嘅時候，更難罅．

黃：隻船埋岸，埋碼頭罅．

張：你預備好你嘅護照未呀？

黃：我預備好我嘅護照罅．你執好你嘅行李未呀？

張：執好好耐罅．

第十五課　埋碼頭

張：呢隻船將近埋岸，將近埋碼頭罅．

黃：呢隻船就黎埋岸，就黎埋碼頭罅．

張：睇吓喺港口處嘅船！有咁多郵船，貨船，戰艦，主力艦，驅逐艦，航空母艦，潛水艇，又有咁多艇添．

黃：點解香港嘅港口有咁多船同艇呢？

張：因為香港係東亞一個至大嘅商埠．各國嘅船都黎呢處．

黃：點解又有咁多英國嘅戰艦呢？

張：因為香港係一個英國海軍根據地—係英國海軍喺遠東嘅根據地．

黃：你睇吓嗰啲艇！睇吓嗰啲艇家人！

張：嗰啲艇家嘅人又呌做蛋家人．佢地喺佢地自己嘅艇處

黃：水師警察搜乜野，海關職員搜乜野呢？
張：水師警察搜槍械，海關職員搜違禁品．
黃：違禁品係乜野呢？
張：鴉片烟等等就係違禁品㗎．
黃：我聽人講香港係一個無稅埠，係唔係呀？
張：香港係一個無稅埠．但係如果帶外國造嘅烟酒等等入口，就要報關納稅㗎．
黃：帶英國造嘅烟酒等等入口，使唔使報關呢？
張：唔使．香港係英國嘅殖民地．帶英國造嘅烟酒入口，唔使報關．

第十四課　入港口

黃：我地而家可以見倒香港嘅港口嗱．

張：係嗱．而家隻船慢*慢*地駛入香港嘅港口嗱．

黃：「入國問禁；入鄉問俗」．你可唔可以講吓入香港嘅手續俾我聽呢？

張：可以．你想知到乜野手續呢？

黃：我想知到外國人入香港嘅手續係點樣*嘅．

張：隻船到碼頭嘅時候，就有警察局移民部嘅警察上船檢查護照．

黃：佢地檢唔檢查我地嘅行李呢？

張：佢地唔檢查行李．另外由水師警察同海關稅務局職員檢查．

張：亞黃，你真係一個文人詩人鋝．好似我做生意嘅人，就永遠唔會賞風景賞月色嘅鋝．

黃：唔好敢話．我喺美國嘅時候，讀書讀得忙．都有時候賞風景同月色．雖然我而家「作客他鄉」，「觸景傷情」，我重會睇吓風景睇吓月色啫．

張：呢隻船已經離開廣州市．你睇見廣州嘅燈色嗎？呢！

黃：廣州係一個咁大嘅城市．出唔少偉人．

張：係鋝．個個中國人都話廣州係革命嘅策源地黎架．

第十三課　搭夜船

張：咁啱呀！估唔到會喺省港船處見倒你．

黃：亞張．係呢，發夢都估唔到會喺呢處見倒你．

張：我聽見亞李話你今日下午搭火車去香港．點解你改變計劃，搭船去香港呀？

黃：唔值得講嘞．我初時想搭火車，但係趕車趕唔倒．

張：咁唔好彩呀！搭船同搭車有乜分別嘅啫．不如忘記今日下午嘅事罷喇．

黃：你講得對嘞．我估唔到搭船比較搭車重舒服啲．

張：係呀．搭火車嘅時候又嘈又人多．搭船就完全唔同嘞．

黃：亞張，你睇吓嗰啲風景；睇吓嗰啲月色．真係有詩意嘞．

黃：你睇吓個鐘，而家兩點二十五分咯．點解重唔揨我嘅牛扒黎呀？

伙記：我已經吩咐伙頭快啲架鏬．等我去廚房催吓佢．

黃：催佢都冇用鏬．我要趕嗰度車．幾多錢呀？

伙記：唔好計咯．我地令你等咗咁耐．真係對唔住．

黃：我今次要走鏬，唔係趕唔倒火車鏬．

站員：先生，先生！你做乜野走得咁快呀？

黃：唔好阻住我．我要趕嗰架火車．

站員：乜話？嗰架火車已經開手行緊鏬．

黃：弊鏬，弊鏬！架火車越行越快．呢次真係追唔倒架火車．點算好呢？點算好呢？

第十二課　趕火車

黃：請問邊架火車係去香港嘅？

站員：你由第三道閘口入去，嗰架火車就係去香港嘅．

黃：你知唔知道嗰架火車幾時開車呢？

站員：嗰架火車下午兩點半開車．

黃：而家幾點呀？

站員：而家兩點十分．

黃：重有二十分鐘然後開車．我不如去食啲野先．你知唔知到邊處有餐室呀？

站員：呢個火車站有餐室．呢！喺嗰處！

黃：伙記，我要趕兩點半嗰架火車．請你俾一碟牛扒我喇．

伙記：先生，你嘅時候好呡播．我呌伙頭即刻整俾你喇．

職員：唔使擔心．我地會打長途電話去香港辦事處．佢地會派人去火車站接你嘅車．

黃：敢就妥當嘥鋝．呢處十文．勞煩嘥，勞煩嘥．

第十一課　計劃旅行

黃：呢處係中國旅行社嗎？

職員：係呀，先生，有乜貴幹呀？

黃：我想請你地同我計劃一個短期旅行，去香港遊覽吓．

職員：先生想喺香港逗留幾多日呢？

黃：打算喺香港逗留一個禮拜．

職員：黃先生幾時*可以起程呀？

黃：聽日亦得，後日亦得，冇乜問題．

職員：咁就搭聽日八點嗰班早車去香港，好嗎？

黃：好好．車票要幾多錢*呀？

職員：頭等十文，二等七文，三等五文．

黃：請你替我買張頭等票喇．我到咗香港嘅時候，點樣*呀？

對唔住，我踹親你．

搭客：唔緊要，唔緊要．

黄：嗰處有個位播，你唔去坐咩？

搭客：係播！你唔坐咩？

黄：我企吓得罅．

賣票員：第二個站就係中正路八十八號嘅附近罅．

黄：敢，我落車罅．

賣票員：等一陣，等一陣．等架車停定先，唔係就會發生意外架罅．

第十課　坐巴*士

黃：請問呢架巴*士係唔係去中正路架？

賣票員：係．上車喇！

黃：要幾多*錢車票呀？

賣票員：每位一毫子．

黃：先生，五文有冇得找呀？

賣票員：等我睇吓先．有呀．

黃：請問中正路離呢處有幾遠呀？

賣票員：中正路幾多號呢？

黃：中正路八十八號．

賣票員：幾遠架播．到嗰處嘅時候，我叫你喇．

黃：先生，請你借歪啲，俾我行去前便，得嗎？對唔住，

黃：我用我嘅護照黎做證明，得嗎？

職員：用護照黎做證明至好喇．

黃：我想先攞一千文現欵．其餘五千文存喺銀行．

職員：你要開一個户口先得播．開個儲蓄户口呀，抑或開個商業户口呢？

黃：同我開個儲蓄户口喇．

職員：請你將呢張簽名咭填好，然後簽你嘅名喺呢處喇．

黃：重有其他嘅手續嗎？

職員：冇其他嘅手續咯．呢處一千文，請你數吓喇．呢本係你嘅存欵摺．

第九課　銀行

黃：今日美金同港紙點換呀？

職員：美金呀？一比六呀！

黃：我有兩張美國銀行嘅滙票，我想換咗佢．

職員：請你俾嗰兩張滙票我睇吓喇？

黃：嗱！呢兩張係美國銀行嘅滙票，每張五百文，總共一千文美金．

職員：你想換嘥佢呀？

黃：係呀！總共換得幾多錢呀？

職員：一比六計算，總共換得港紙六千文．你想現在換呀？

黃：係呀．

職員：請你喺呢兩張滙票後便簽你嘅名，你有證明書冇呀？

黃：請你俾張電報紙過我喇．

職員：好好．

黃：我用鉛筆寫，得唔得呀？

職員：得，不過用墨水筆寫比較清楚啲．

黃：我已經寫好電文咯．唔該你同我睇吓，可唔可以減少幾個字？

職員：寫得好簡單，好清楚喇．就敢樣打出去喇．

黃：總共有幾多個字呀？幾多錢呀？

職員：二十個字．總共三十文．

第八課　打電報

黄：先生，打電報去美國要幾多錢*呀？

職員：你想打電報去美國邊處呢？你想打快電呀，抑或慢電呢？

黄：我想打去三藩市．快電慢電每個字要幾多錢*呀？

職員：打去三藩市：快電個半銀錢*一個字；慢電一文一個字．

黄：快電同慢電要幾耐然後到三藩市呀？

職員：啊！快電唔使幾耐，三四個鐘頭就到三藩市咯，慢電要十二個鐘頭左*右然後到播．

黄：敢呀，請你同我打封快電喇．

職員：好呀，先生．

黃：平常信呢？

局員：大約三個禮拜……喂！先生，你唔記得咗寫呢封信嘅回頭地址播．嗰張枱有墨水有筆喺處．

黃：對唔住，等我寫番佢喇．呢幾封信掭落邊處呀？

局員：請你掭落信箱喇．

黃：我重想買幾張明信片添播．

局員：五個仙張．

黃：請問寄美國掛號航空信要幾多錢呀？

局員：每安士三文．

黃：寄啲物件去美國有乜野手續呀？

局員：如果你想寄包裹出口，就要填一張報關紙，寫明係乜野物件，就係咁多鏬．

第七課　寄信

黃：先生，呢間係唔係郵政局呀？

路人：冇錯喇．

黃：我想寄幾封信去美國，請問要幾多錢郵費呀？

局員：寄去美國嘅航空信每安士兩文，平常信每安士三毫子．

黃：唔該你同我秤吓呢三封平常信喇．

局員：呢封三毫子；呢兩封過重，每封六毫子．

黃：我重想買兩個銀錢一毫子嘅郵票．

局員：總共三個半銀錢．

黃：航空信要幾耐然後寄到美國呀？

局員：大約三四日．

警察：廣東銀行喺嗰頭；你向嗰條街一直行到第四個街口，轉右手便就係咯．

黃：中正路八十七號離呢處有幾遠呀？

警察：幾遠架播！大約離呢處有成四里咁遠架播．

黃：咁遠架!?有冇車可以去到嗰處架？

警察：有呀．電車公共汽車都去得到嘅．

黃：電車到嗰處快啲呀，抑或公共汽車到嗰處快啲呢？

警察：公共汽車快啲．

黃：如果係敢，我不如搭公共汽車喇．

警察：我都係敢話咯．

黃：唔該嘥，好在你話俾我知，唔係我一定會蕩失路咯．

警察：唔使唔該，呢啲係我應份做嘅職責．

第六課　問路

黃：對唔住，對唔住，請問郵政局喺邊度呀？

路人：真係對唔住鋝，我都係初次到呢處嘅啫，請你問個*位警察喇．

黃：先生，請問郵政局喺邊度呀？

警察：郵政局喺前便嗰條惠愛路．

黃：大*約幾遠呢？

警察：啊！大*約十零間鋪*位就係咯．

黃：請問電報局喺邊處呢？

警察：電報局喺後便嗰條街．你要行番轉頭兩個街口就見倒咯．

黃：又請問你廣東銀行喺邊度呢？

伙記：多謝，先生．如果你要乜野，請你撳吓電鐘喇．呢條係門匙．

黃：唔該嘥咯．

伙記：唔該你等吓，我去攞咗啲行李入黎先．

黃：唔該，唔該．

伙記：先生，請喺呢便黎喇．

黃：好好．

伙記：三○二號房喺三樓，請你坐昇降機上去喇．

伙記：呢間就係鏬，先生．

黃：呢間房有洗身房，有冷熱水嗎？

伙記：有呀！不祇有冷熱水，而且有冷熱氣添播．

黃：冷熱氣嘅掣喺邊度呀？點開架？

伙記：呢！喺呢度呀，先生．敢樣就開冷氣，敢樣就開熱氣．

黃：唔該你鏬．呢啲錢係擰黎打賞你嘅．

第五課　住酒店

黃：先生，有冇*房呀？

司理：有喇，先生，你要邊種*房呢？

黃：我想開間單人*房．

司理：好好．請你先註册喇．

黃：註册手續點*樣架？

司理：好簡單嘅嗜．請你將你嘅姓名，年歲，地址，國籍，
寫喺呢張表格紙上便，就得鏬．

黃：哦！

司理：伙記，請你帶黃先生上去三○二號*房喇．

伙記：先生，你有幾件行李呀？

黃：有四件，喺門口處．

黄：唔多謝，你賞面啫。

張：就點呢幾味*，好嗎？

黃：好呀．伙記，唔該你快啲．

伙記：先生，上菜咯．

黃：請大家起筷*喇．

張太太*：黃先生，呢啲餸真係好食⿰金⿱虍子．

伙記：先生，飲酒嗎？

黃：張先生，張太太*，飲啲乜野酒呀？

張：我地好少飲酒架播．

黃：飲些少啤酒喇，好嗎？

張：好喇，飲少少喇．

黃：伙記，唔該你埋單喇．

張：多謝⿰口從⿰金⿱虍子播，黃先生．

第四課 食晚飯

黃：張先生，張太太*．

張：黃先生，唔好意思，令你等咗咁耐．

黃：黎咗冇幾耐啫．

張：對唔住喎，我地黎遲咗．

黃：啊！唔緊要，唔緊要．請坐，請坐．

伙記：先生，飲乜茶呢？呢張係今晚嘅菜單．

黃：張先生，張太太*，中意飲乜野茶呀？

張：隨*便喇，黃先生．

黃：伙記，請你冲壺龍井黎喇？

伙記：好好．

黃：張先生，張太太*，請你地兩位點菜喇．

張：乜咁客氣呀！

黃：唔係敢話，食餐便飯啫．

張：敢就多謝先鑄播．

黃：大約幾點鐘可以出黎呀？

張：大約六點鐘，好嗎？

黃：好呀．我喺南國酒家等你地喇．

張：我地六點鐘見喇．

第三課　打電話

黃：喂！二〇三二九號呀？

甲：搭錯線罅．

黃：對唔住，對唔住．

黃：喂！你地邊處呀？係唔係張公館呀？

張太太*：係呀．揾邊位*呀？

黃：張先生喺處嗎？

張太太*：喺處呀．你係邊位*呀？

黃：我係黃炳全呀．你係張太太*嗎？

張太太*：係呀．唔該你等一陣．

張：黃先生，有乜貴幹呀？

黃：冇乜特别事；不過今晚我想請你同張太太*出黎食飯啫．

張：總共有三個．

張太太：黃先生，你呢？

黃：我重未曾結婚．

李：我地坐咗咁耐，不如扯咯，好嗎，黃先生？

黃：好呀．

張太太：坐吓添喇．

李：攪滾嘥咯．我地有時候再黎拜候．

黃：請，請．

張：再見，再見．

張：黃先生呢？

黃：少食，少食．

張：等我介紹我嘅太太同你相識：亞蘭，呢位係黃先生．
　黃先生，呢個係我嘅太太．

張太太：黃先生．

黃：張太太．

張太太：請隨便坐喇．

黃：呢位係你嘅令郎呀？

張：係呀，呢個係我嘅小兒．

黃：嗰兩位係你嘅千金呀？

張：係呀，嗰兩個係我嘅小女．

黃：你總共有幾多位令郎千金呀？

第二課　探朋友

張：邊位呀？
李：我呀．
張：你係邊位呀？
李：我係李四呀．
張：啊！李先生，黃先生，請入黎喇．
李：張先生．
黃：張先生．
張：請坐，請坐．
李：唔使拘罅．
張：食烟嗎？
李：多謝，多謝．

李：好呀．我聽日一定同黃先生到貴府拜候．

張：大約幾點鐘可以黎呢？

李：大約下午兩點鐘，好嗎？

張：好呀．聽日再見．

李：再見，再見．

黃：再見，再見．

張：而家喺邊處住呀？

黃：暫時喺新亞酒店住．

張：黃先生初次到中國呀？

黃：係呀，張先生．

張：覺得呢處點呀？

黃：非常之好．

張：而家你地兩位*去邊處呀？

黃：我打算同李先生番去酒店食飯；請埋一齊*黎喇！

張：心領咯，我而家要番屋企．

黃：唔使客氣播！

張：唔客氣，李先生，請你同黃先生聽日黎舍下增光吓，
好嗎？

第一課　介紹

李：張先生，你好嗎？
張：好好，你呢，李先生？
李：我好．好耐冇見你罅播．
張：大家敢話．
李：等我介紹我嘅朋友同你相識：張先生，呢位係黃先生．
　黃先生，呢位係張先生．
張：黃先生．
黃：張先生
李：黃先生正話由美國黎架．
張：係咩！幾時到架？
黃：前日到嘅．

PREFACE

The Chinese Cantonese Course, consisting of 166 lessons in 8 volumes, is one of the Defense Language Institute's Basic Course Series. The material was developed at the Defense Language Institute's Curriculum Development Board.

The course is designed to train native English language speakers to Level 3 proficiency in comprehension and speaking and Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Chinese Cantonese. The texts are intended for classroom use in the Defense Language Institute's intensive programs employing the audio-lingual methodology. Tapes accompany the texts.

All inquiries concerning these materials, including requests for authorization to reproduce, will be addressed to the Director, Defense Language Institute, U. S. Naval Station, Anacostia Annex, Washington, D. C. 20390.

CW Chaney
C. W. CHANEY
Colonel, U.S. Army
Director

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course
Volume IV
(Character Text)

March 1966

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE

TEXT VOLUME

VOLUME V
LESSONS 1-20

ΠΤΟΛΕΜΕΙ
DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

ED022179

AL 001 479

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Text Volume

Volume V

Lessons 1-20

January 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

PREFACE

The Chinese Cantonese Course, consisting of 166 lessons in 8 volumes, is one of the Defense Language Institute's Basic Course Series. The material was developed at the Defense Language Institute's Curriculum Development Board.

The course is designed to train native English language speakers to Level 3 proficiency in comprehension and speaking and Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Chinese Cantonese. The texts are intended for classroom use in the Defense Language Institute's intensive programs employing the audio-lingual methodology. Tapes accompany the texts.

All inquiries concerning these materials, including requests for authorization to reproduce, will be addressed to the Director, Defense Language Institute, U. S. Naval Station, Anacostia Annex, Washington, D. C. 20390.

C W Chaney

C. W. CHANEY
Colonel, U.S. Army
Director

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume VIII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 set	Flash Cards for 1500 Most Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	27 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	27 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
		Also available in compact form for comprehension or review purposes:
	3 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:	1 reel	Hong Kong, MF 20-8799,(P)(A)* 9 min.
	1 reel	Hong Kong Welcomes You, MF 20-9363, (I) 15 min.
	1 reel	An Oriental City, Canton, MF 20-9075, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Farming in South China, MF 20-7829, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Taiwan, Island of Freedom, AFIF 103, 23 min.
	1 reel	Formosa, LSFC 21, 13 min.
	1 reel	Miracle in Free China, MF 20-9114, 30 min.
	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, (I) 14 min.

---

* Available in magnastriped Chinese-Cantonese narrations. (P) Primary version, (I) Intermediate version, (A) Advanced version.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Formosa, Blueprint for a Free China, MOT 18, 24 min.
1 reel	China EF 258, 17 min.
1 reel	China, the Land and the People, MF 20-8939, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	Peiping Family, MF 20-8966, 20 min.
1 reel	The Chinese Village, a Legend, MF 20-9341, 15 min.
1 reel	Red China, AFIF 97, 27 min.
1 reel	China, Far East, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657 FC, (I) 14 min.
1 reel	Far East, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657, 30 min.
1 reel	Southeast Asia, Lands and Peoples, MF 20-8862, 13 min.
1 reel	Southeast Asia, SIS AFS No. 6, MF 30-8771, 33 min.
1 reel	The Village that Refused to Die, MF 20-9748, 60 min.
1 reel	Siam, MF 20-9269, 31 min.
1 reel	Burma, People of the River, MF 20-9028, 14 min.
1 reel	Letter from Indonesia, MF 20-8695, 27 min.
1 reel	The Philippines, AFIF 48, 15 min.
2 reels	Portrait of an American Family, MF 30-8449 (CC), 60 min.
1 reel	Men Against Tanks, MF 7-7898, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	Production of Combat Intelligence, MF 30-1494, (P)(A) 18 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Rifle Company, LSFC-3, (P)(A) 35 min.
1 reel	Infantry Battalion, LSFC-1, (P)(A) 21 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE (TOISHAN) 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters (Toishan Conversion Table)
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	24 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	24 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-26
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 27-55
	1 vol.	Volume III, Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	14 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	14 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	27 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

	27 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 210-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Volume I, Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume II, Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Volume III, Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Volume V, Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, 14 min.
	1 reel	Mighty Chinese Armed Forces, LS-86, 22 min.
	1 reel	Production of Combat Intelligence, MF 30-1494, 18 min.

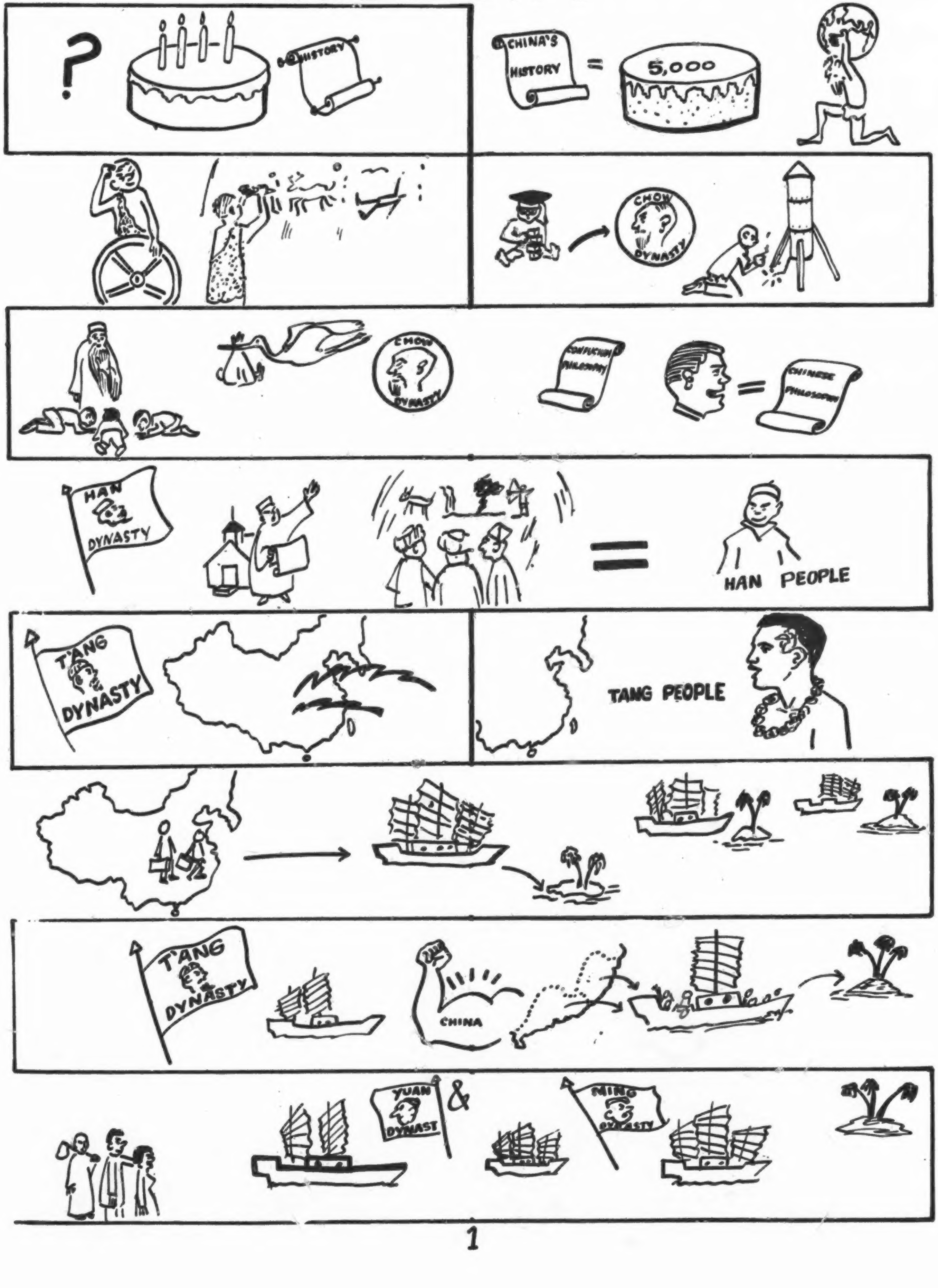
* For Official Use Only

CHINESE-CANTONESE 96-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-16
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 17-32
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 33-48
	1 vol.	Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded on tape
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

LESSON 1


?
HISTORY
CHINA'S HISTORY
=
5,000
CHOW DYNASTY
CHOW DYNASTY
CONFUCIUS PHILOSOPHY
=
CHINESE PHILOSOPHY
HAN DYNASTY
=
HAN PEOPLE
T'ANG DYNASTY
TANG PEOPLE
T'ANG DYNASTY
CHINA
YUAN DYNASTY
&
MING DYNASTY

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Chung-Kwòk kè lîk-sź yaŭ keì ch'eūng ne?

Cheung: Chung-Kwòk kè lîk-sź taaî-yeûk* yaŭ nğ-ts'in nīn kòm sheûng-hâ*, haî shaì-kaaì sheûng lîk-sź tsuì ch'eūng kè kwòk-ka chi yat.

W: Chung Kwòk kè mān-fà tîm-yeûng* ne?

C: Chung-Kwòk kè mān-fà faàt-taât tak fei-sheūng-chi tsó. Haî Chau-Ch'iū kè shī-haû, tsik haî kung-uēn ts'īn yat-yat-î-î nīn, mān-fà ĭ-king faàt-taât tak hó ko. Chung-Kwòk yān shūng-paaì Húng-Tsź, k'uĭ tsaû haî shaang haì ni kòh ch'iū-toî. K'uĭ kè chìt-hôk kiù tsô Húng-Tsź Chìt-Hôk, ngoî kwòk yān yaû kiù k'uĭ tsô Chung-Kwòk Chìt-Hôk. Tò-chóh Hòn-Ch'iū, tsik haî kung-uēn ts'īn î-līng-lûk nīn, ni chúng chìt-hôk kàng-ka faàt-taât. Kóh kòh shī-haû À-Chau sai pô kè kwòk-ka hó shūng-paaì Chung-Kwòk kè mān-fà, shóh-ĭ k'uĭ-teî kiù Chung-Kwòk yān tsô Hòn yān. Tò T'ōng-Ch'iū kè shī-haû, tsik haî sai-lîk lûk-yat-paàt nīn, Chung-Kwòk kè mān-fà fei-sheūng-chi faàt-taât, ì-ch'é ch'uēn tò hoî-ngoî, shóh-ĭ Naām-Yeūng* kòk shuè kè yān kiù Chung-Kwòk yān tsô T'ōng yān.

W: Haî m̄-haî haì T'ōng-Ch'iū kè shī-haû, Chung-Kwòk yān hoi-ch'ì tsîm-tsîm* heùng hoì ngoî ì mān ne?

C: Mŏ-ts'òh là. Yan-waî T'ōng-Ch'iū kè shī-haû, hoì sheûng kaau-t'ung faàt-taât, kwòk lîk yaû k'eūng, shóh-ĭ yaŭ hó toh yān heùng hoì ngoî ì mān, yaū-k'eì haî Kwóng-Tung t'ūng

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Fuk-Kìn leŭng shaáng kẻ yān, yaŭ hó toh yān heủng Naām-Yeūng ī mān, tỏ Uēn-Ch'iū t'ūng Mīng-Ch'iū kẻ shī-haû kảng toh.

LESSON 1

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: How old is China's history?

Cheung: China's history is about five thousand years old. It is one of the oldest countries in the world.

W: And what of the Chinese civilization?

C: The Chinese civilization developed very early. During the Chou Dynasty (1122 B.C.), the civilization was already highly developed. The Chinese people worship Confucius who was born during that dynasty. His philosophy is known as the Confucian Philosophy which foreigners also call the Chinese Philosophy. During the Han Dynasty (206 B.C.), this school of philosophy was further developed. At that time, the countries in Western Asia worshipped the Chinese civilization; therefore, they called the Chinese the "Han people". During the T'ang Dynasty (618 A.D.), the Chinese civilization was greatly developed; moreover, it was transmitted overseas. Therefore, people of various places in the South Pacific Ocean called the Chinese the "T'ang people".

W: Was it during the T'ang Dynasty that the Chinese started to gradually migrate overseas?

C: That is right. During the T'ang Dynasty, because maritime communication was developed and the nation was powerful there were a great many people migrating overseas; especially

LESSON 1

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

the people of Kwangtung and Fukien Province, who migrated in great numbers to areas of the South Pacific. There were many more emmigrants during the Yuan Dynasty and the Ming Dynasty.

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The house faces north but the garage faces south.
2. You will gradually learn the Chinese culture, history and philosophy.
3. The Southeast Asian area is one of the prosperous areas of the world.
4. News of the accident was transmitted by the newspapers.
5. Western calendars are being used throughout the world.
6. After many periods in Chinese history, Confucius remains to be worshipped.
7. The solar calendar did not come into general use until the time after Christ.
8. The Chau Dynasty was one of the predominant dynasties.
9. America is not one of the oldest countries in the world. It is one of the most important.
10. The Chinese civilization was fully developed during the Hòn Dynasty (618 A.D.).
11. In the T'ōng Dynasty maritime communication was improved. The Chinese started to migrate overseas.
12. Kwóng-Tung and Fuk-Kìn are the two provinces having the greatest number of people overseas.
13. These are immigrants who came to this country not too long ago.
14. The national strength of the U.S. is very powerful.

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. The manager of the travel agency has more worries than we do.
16. Many people have to change their way of life because of the current world situation.
17. Confucius is becoming more and more important in the study of philosophy.

LESSON 1

WORD LIST

1.	lîk-sź	history
2.	shaì-kaaì sheûng	in the world
3.	mā-fà	culture, civilization
4.	Chau-Ch'iū	Chou Dynasty
5.	kung-uēn ts'ìn	B.C. (Before Christ)
6.	shūng-paaì	to worship
7.	Húng-Tsź	Confucius
8.	Ch'iū-toî	dynasty, period, era, epoch
9.	chìt-hôk	philosophy
10.	Hòn-Ch'iū	Han Dynasty
11.	Hòn-Yān	Han People (Chinese)
12.	T'ōng-Ch'iū	T'ang Dynasty
13.	ch'uēn tò	to transmit
14.	Naām-Yeūng	Southeast Asian area
15.	tsîm-tsîm*	gradually
16.	kwòk lîk	national strength
17.	k'eūng	strong, powerful
18.	Fuk-Kìn	Fukien Province
19.	Uēn-Ch'iū	Yuan Dynasty
20.	Mīng-Ch'iū	Ming Dynasty

LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

1049

孫 suen: grandchild; descendant.

孫女 suen-nuǐ: grand-daughter.

外孫 ngoî-suen: daughter's child.

27

針 cham: needle, probe.

大頭針 taaî-t'aū-cham: a pin

指南針 chí-naām-cham: compass

1184

代 toî: a generation; instead of; on behalf of.

代表 toî-piú: representative; delegate.

代理 toî-leǐ: to act for another; agent.

孫 針 代

孫 針 代

孙 箴 鍼 针 代

303

漢 hòn: name of a dynasty of China; a man

漢人 Hòn yān: the Chinese

漢文 Hòn mān: Chinese

好漢 hó hòn: a brave man

大漢 taaî hòn: a man

326

孔 húng: an opening; an aperture; a hole

孔道 húng-tô: a thoroughfare

孔教 Húng-kaaù: Confucianism

孔夫子 Húng-foo-tsź: Confucius

毛孔 mō-húng: pores of the skin

漢 孔

漢 孔

漢 孔

LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

132

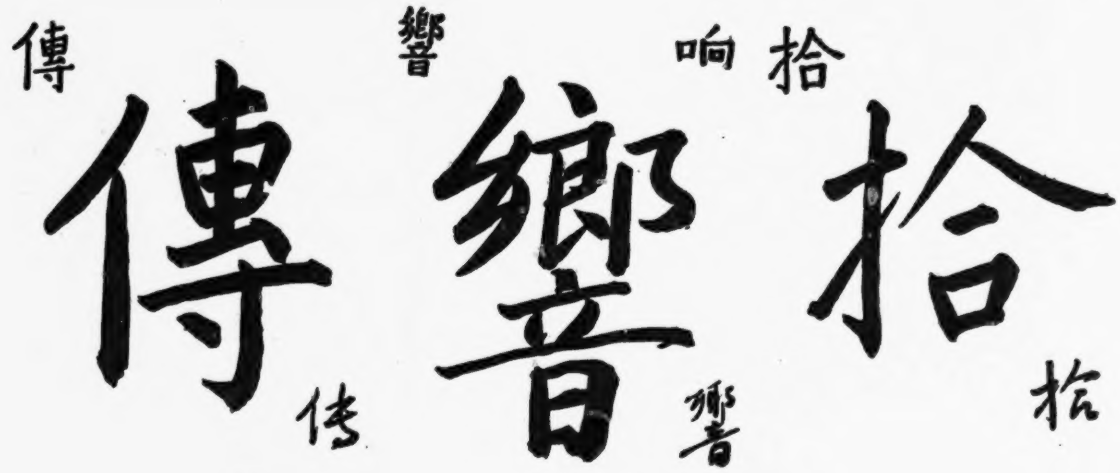
傳	ch'uēn: to announce; hand down
傳	chuên: biography record; story
傳話	ch'uēn-wâ:* act as interpreter; to interprete.
傳單	ch'uēn-taan: leaflet; handbill

277

響	heúng: a sound; noise; noisy
好響	hó heúng: sonorous; very loud.
響應	heúng-yìng: an echo; to respond
響亮	heúng-leûng: loud; clear-sounding

951

拾	shâp: to gather; to collect.
執拾	chap-shâp. to gather up; to put in order.
收拾	shau-shâp: to put in order; to injure, to "pay out".

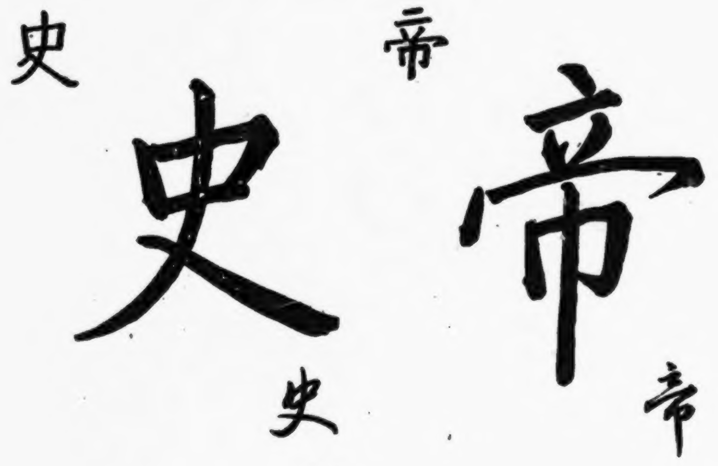


1072

史	sź: history.
歷史	lîk-sź: history.
史書	sź shue. historical book.

1101

帝	taì: the supreme ruler; a god; a ruler; emperor.
上帝	sheûng-taì: God; gods.
帝國主義	taì-kwòk chué-î: imperialism.



LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

中國有五千多年歷史，係世界上歷史最長國家之一。因為大約係由黃帝時起，所以中國人叫自己做黃帝嘅子孫。黃帝時期，已經發明好多野。最出名嘅就係指南針，船，車，等等。

中國文化喺公uēn前一一二二年，已經發達得好高。最出名嘅偉人孔子，就係生喺嗰個時代。中國人嘅思想，一直到現在，都受孔子chīt學嘅影響。

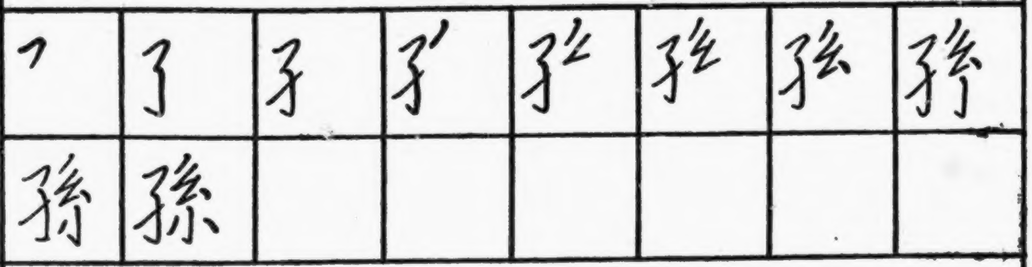
由黃帝到中華民國之初，轉換chón拾幾個朝代。每個朝代嘅時期，有長有短，或幾百年，或幾十年。喺漢朝同T'ōng朝嘅時候，中國文化傳到各國，所以外國人叫中國人做漢人或T'ōng人。

LESSON 1

WRITING MATERIAL

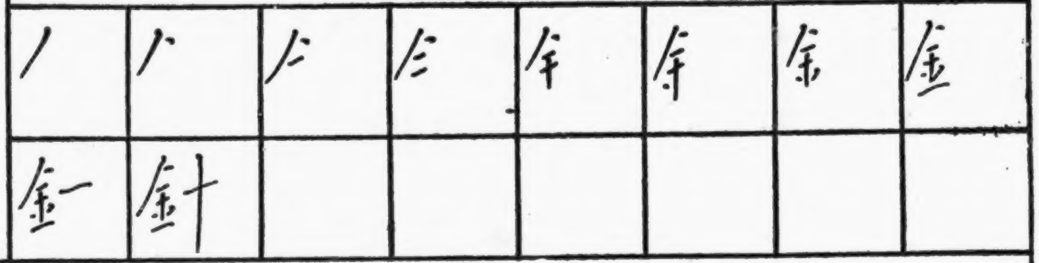
孫

Character Number 1049 Radical Number 39
Stroke Number 10 子，子



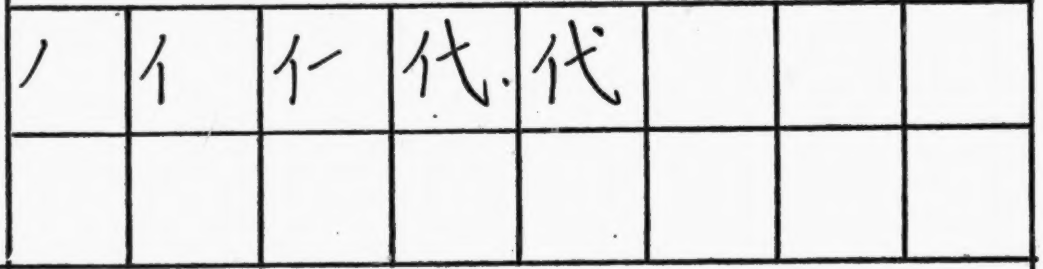
針

Character Number 27 Radical Number 167
Stroke Number 10 金，金



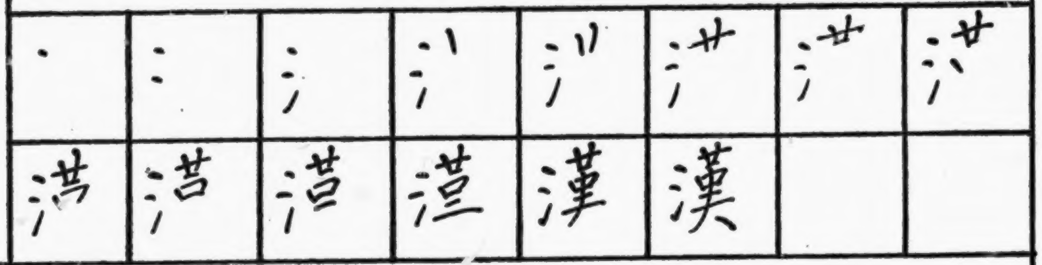
代

Character Number 1184 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 5 亻，人



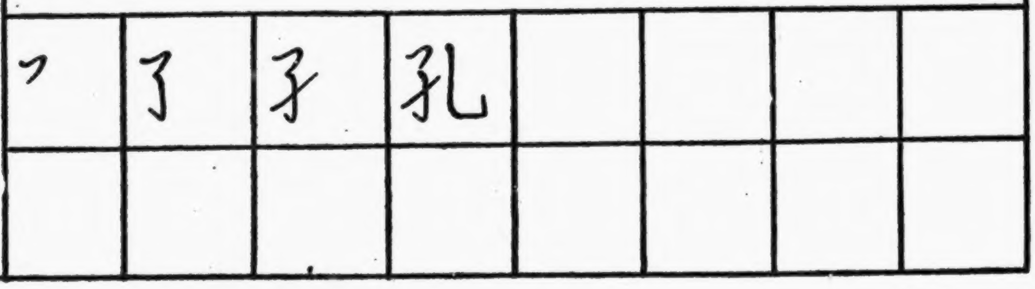
漢

Character Number 303 Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 14 氵，水

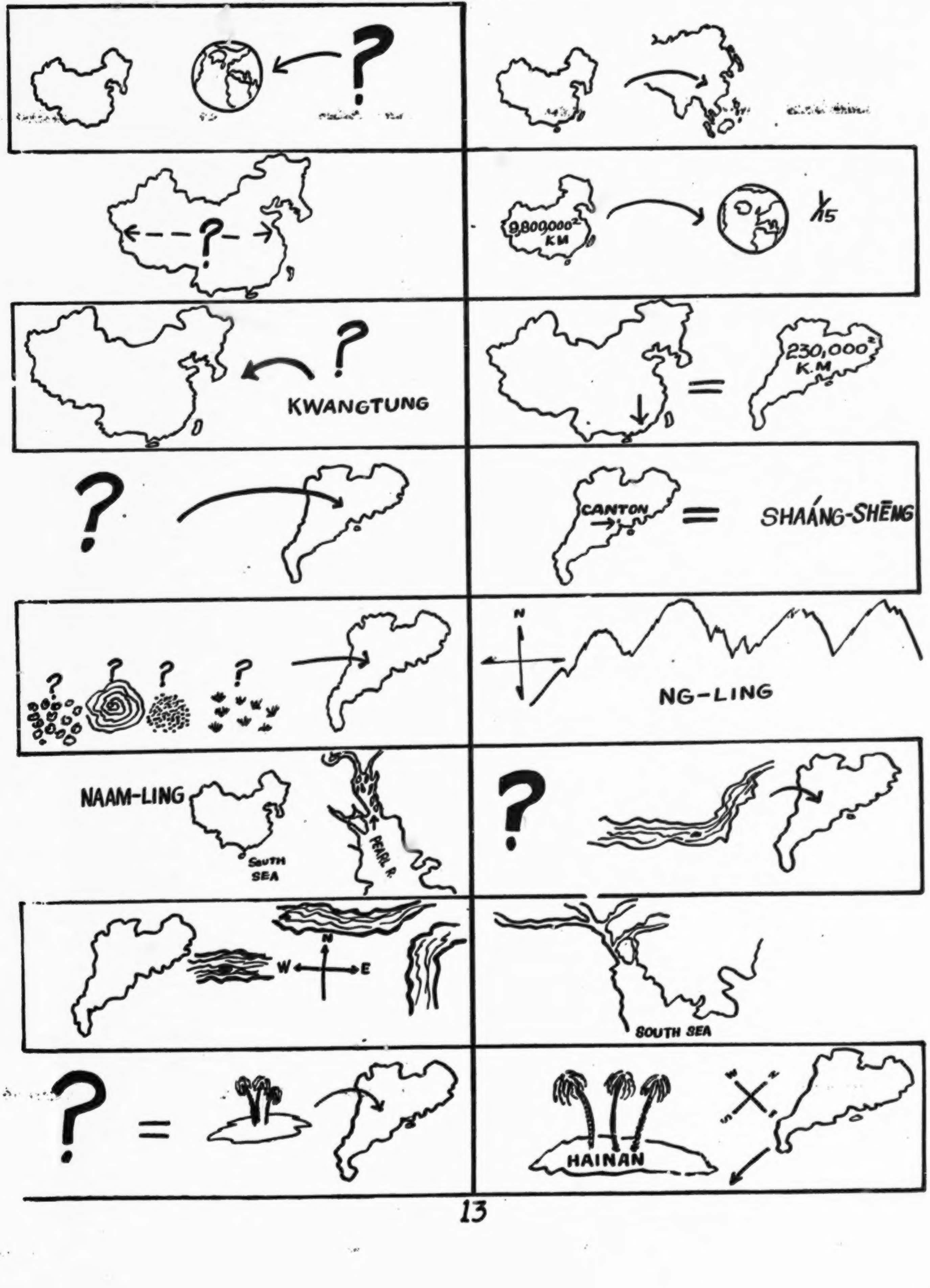


孔

Character Number 326 Radical Number 39
Stroke Number 4 子，子



LESSON 2


9,800,000²
KM
1/15
KWANGTUNG
230,000²
K.M
CANTON
SHAÁNG-SHĒNG
N
NG-LING
NAAM-LING
SOUTH
SEA
PEARL R.
N
W
E
SOUTH SEA
HAINAN

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Chung-Kwòk haî shaì-kaaì chuè-mìng kè koó kwòk chi yat, ni kòh kwòk-ka haî pin-shuè ne?

Cheung: Chung-Kwòk haì À-Chau kè tung naām pô, haî À-Chau yat kòh hó taaî kè kwòk-ka.

W: Chung-Kwòk kè mîn-tsik yaŭ keì taaî ne?

C: Chung-Kwòk kè mîn-tsik yaŭ kaú-paàk-paàt-shâp-maân fong-kung-leĭ, taaî-yeùk* chìm ts'uēn shaì-kaaì lûk-teî shâp-ngĕ-fân-chi-yat, chìm ts'uēn À-Chau mîn-tsik seì-fân-chi-yat.

W: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng haì pin-shuè ne? Kwóng-Tung Shaáng kè mîn-tsik yaŭ keì taaî ne?

C: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng haì Chung-Kwòk kè naām pîn, mîn-tsik taaî-yeùk* yaŭ î-shâp-saam-maân fong-kung-leĭ.

W: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng kè shaáng-ooî kiù tsô mi-yĕ mēng* ne?

C: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng kè shaáng-ooî kiù tsô Kwóng-Chau, Kwóng-Tung yān p'ó-t'ung kiù k'uĭ tsô Shaáng-Shēng.

W: Kwóng-Tung kè teî-yìng haî tîm-yeûng* kè ne?

C: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng kè pak pîn yaŭ Ngĕ-Lĭng Shaan-Mâk, ngŏh-teî p'ó-t'ung kiù k'uĭ tsô Naām-Lĭng. Naām pîn yaŭ Naām-Hoì. Chue-Kong Saam-Kòk-Chau yat taaì haî p'ìng-uēn.

W: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng yaŭ mi-yĕ taaî hōh ne?

C: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng taaî kè hōh haî Tung-Kong, Sai-Kong, Pak-Kong, ni saam t'iū kong to laū yâp Chue-Kong, ìn-haû yaū Chue-Kong laū yâp Naām-Hoì.

W: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng chì taaî kè tó kiù tsô mi-yĕ mēng* ne?

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng chì taaî kè tó kiù tsô Hoî-Naām Tó, haî Kwóng-Tung Shaáng kè sai-naām pîn.

LESSON 2

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: China is one of the most famous ancient countries in the world. Where is this country?

Cheung. China is situated in the south-eastern part of Asia, and is one of Asia's large countries.

W: How large is the area of China?

C: The area of China is 9,800,000 square kilometers. It occupies about one fifteenth of the land in the whole world or one fourth of the area of all Asia.

W: Where is Kwantung Province? How large is the area of Kwantung Province?

C: Kwantung Province is in southern China. Its area is about 230,000 square kilometers.

W: What is the name of the capital of Kwangtung Province?

C: The capital of Kwangtung Province is Canton. The Cantonese generally call it "Shaàng-Shēng" (which literally means "The City of the Province").

W: What is the topography of Kwantung Province?

C: The Nğ-Lĭng Mountain Range is in northern Kwangtung Province. We commonly call them the Naām-Lĭng. To the south is the South Sea. The area around the delta of the Pearl River is a plain.

W: What are the big rivers in Kwangtung Province?

C: The big rivers in Kwantung Province are the East River, the West River, and the North River. These three rivers flow into the Pearl River, and from the Pearl River into the South Sea.

LESSON 2

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W: What is the name of the largest island of Kwangtung Province?

C: The largest island of Kwangtung Province is called Hainan Island. It is located in southwestern Kwangtung Province.

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. There are several well known ancient countries in Asia. Some are extrememly important in the world today.
2. In the study of topography, we will learn about rivers, plains, mountain ranges and deltas.
3. The total land area of the world is approximately 150 million square kilometers.
4. It is believed that in total, the oceans and seas occupy three fourths of the world's surface.
5. In the vicinity of the South China Sea, there are many deltas and small islands.
6. The Pearl River flows through Canton, the provincial capital of Kwông-Tung.
7. Hoî-Naâm Island is located in the southwest of Kwông-Tung.
8. He is a famous person and does not need any introduction.
9. This country is the smallest in the world and has only a few hundred square kilometers of land.
10. He is planning to go to Asia to study the terrain of that area.
11. This ancient country has a long history of approximately 2000 years.
12. This is not the longest river in the world, but it flows into the largest ocean.
13. There are mountain ranges in this vicinity.

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. This student likes to study geography but not history.
15. I shall go to visit Hoî-Naam Island next year.
16. Swimming in the river is not as dangerous as swimming in the ocean.

LESSON 2

WORD LIST

1.	teĭ-leĭ	geography
2.	chuè-mīng	famous, well known
3.	koó kwòk	ancient country
4.	kwòk-ka	country, nation
5.	fong-kung-leĭ	square kilometer
6.	À-Chau	Asia
7.	chìm	to occupy
8.	lûk-teî	land
9.	shâp-nğ-fân-chi-yat	one fifteenth
10.	shaáng-ooî	provincial capital
11.	teî-yīng	topography, terrain
12.	Nğ-Lĭng shaan-mâk	Ng-Ling Mountain Range
13.	Naām-Lĭng	Naam-Ling Mountain Range
14.	Naām-Hoì	South China Sea
15.	Chue-Kong saam-kòk-chau	Pearl River Delta
16.	yat-taaì	vicinity, area
17.	p'īng-uēn	plain (terrain)
18.	hōh	river
19.	kong	river
20.	laū	to flow
21.	Hoì-Naām-Tó	Hainan Island

LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

510

古 koó: ancient; formerly; old.

古时 koó-shī: ancient times.

古人 koó-yān: the ancients.

古文 koó-mān: ancient classics

古代 koó-toî: ancient times; past ages.

613

連 līn: including; connecting; successive.

連埋 līn-maaī: together with.

連氣 līn-heì: continuously.

相連 seung-līn: adjoining.

連續 līn-tsûk: one after another;

589

臨 lām: to approach; about to; to regard.

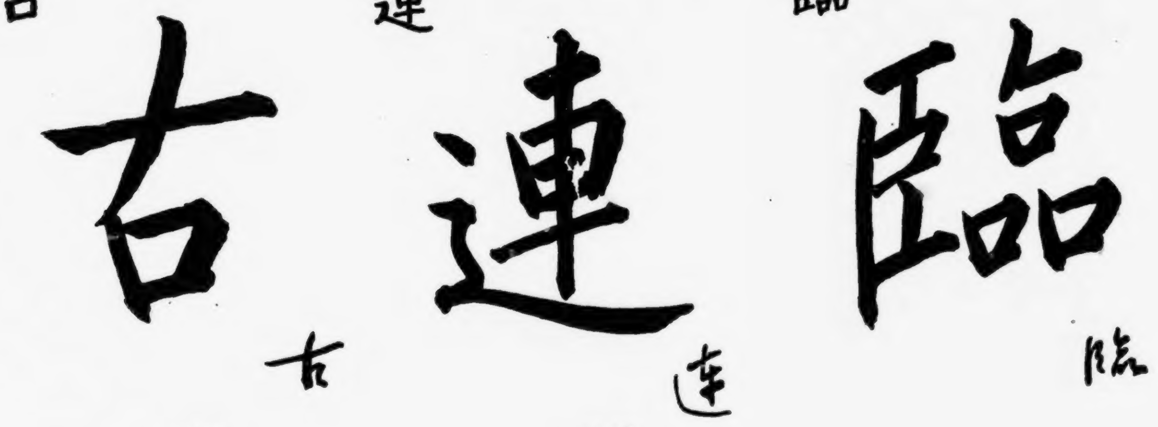
臨時 lām-shī: temporary.

臨行 lām haāng: about to depart.

臨近 lām-kân: close to (time); near; impending.

臨急 lām-kap: in a hurry; in the last minute.

古 連 臨



1475

洋 yeūng: foreign; ocean; vast.

洋人 yeūng-yān: a foreigner.

太平洋 t'aaì-p'īng-yeūng: The Pacific Ocean.

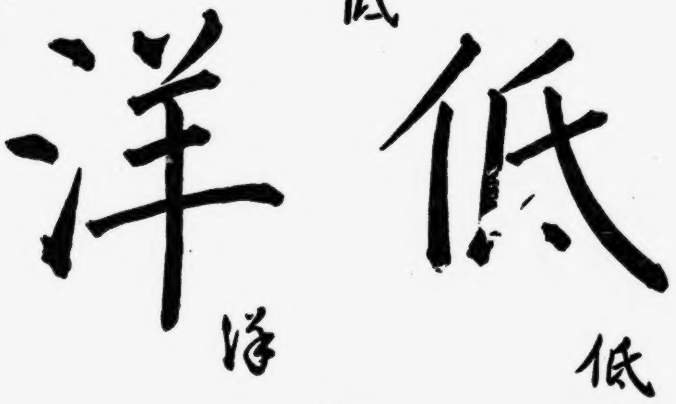
1098

低 tai: to bend down; to stoop; to lower; low.

低頭 tai t'aū: to lower the head.

減低 kaám tai: to lower the price.

洋 低



LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

279

向	heung: from; facing; towards
方向	fong-heung: direction
向來	heung-loī: hitherto
向北	heung pak: facing north

389

簡	kaán: to abridge; rude; simple
簡單	kaán-taan: simple plain
簡畧	kaán-leûk: abridge.
簡明	kaán-mīng: terse and clear

1188

台	t'oī: terrace; turret; platform; stage; honored.
天台	t'in-t'oī: terrace.
戲台	heī-t'oī: theatrical stage.
講台	kóng-t'oī: speaker's platform.

向 簡 台

向 簡 台

向 简 臺 台

119

珠	chue: pearl; bead (Cl. nap)
珍珠	chan-chue: a pearl
眼珠	ngaăn-chue: pupil of an eye.

502

江	kong: river.
江口	kong-haú: mouth of the river.
江山	kong-shaan: rivers and hills; the empire.
外江人	ngoî-kong-yān: a person from the distant land.
揚子江	yeūng-tsź-kong: Yangtze River.
江西	kong-sai: Kiangsi Province
江蘇	kong-so: Kiangsu Province

珠 江

珠江

珠 江

LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

中國唔只係一個古國，亦係一個大國。面積九百八十萬方公里。喺 À-Chau 東南部，西北連大陸，東南臨太平洋。所以西北部高，東南部低。大山大水係由西北向東南行。

廣東省地方嘅大山，叫做五 Lĭng 山 Mâk 簡單叫做南 Lĭng 廣東省有珠江。廣東省會廣州，就喺珠江三角 chau。

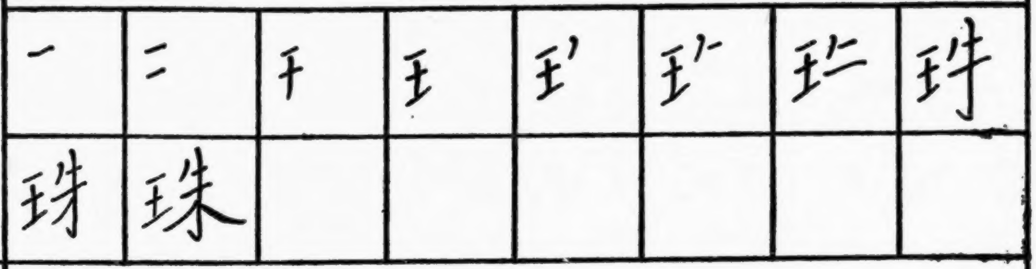
中國海岸有三個海。北部有黃海，過黃海就係高麗，同日本。中部有東海，有好多島，台灣就係其中之一。南部有南海，廣東省嘅海岸，完全喺南海。最大嘅島叫做海南島。

LESSON 2

WRITING MATERIAL

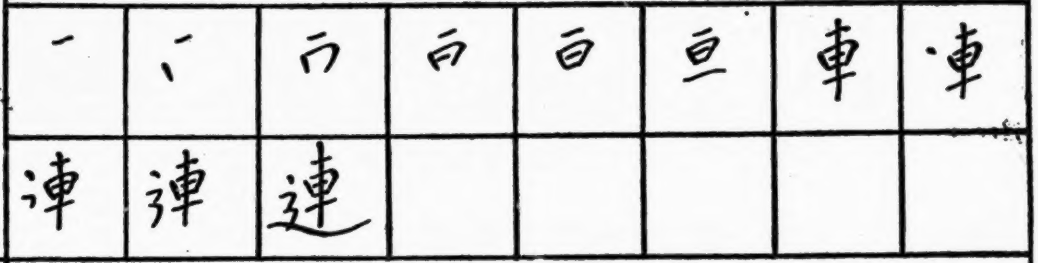
珠

Character Number 119 **Radical Number** 96
Stroke Number 10 王，玉



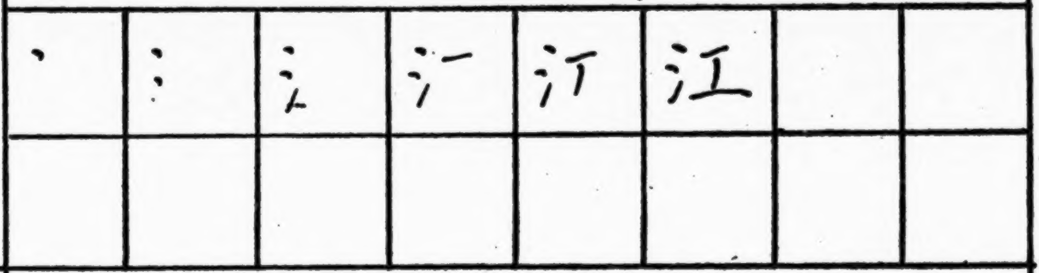
連

Character Number 613 **Radical Number** 162
Stroke Number 11 辶，辵



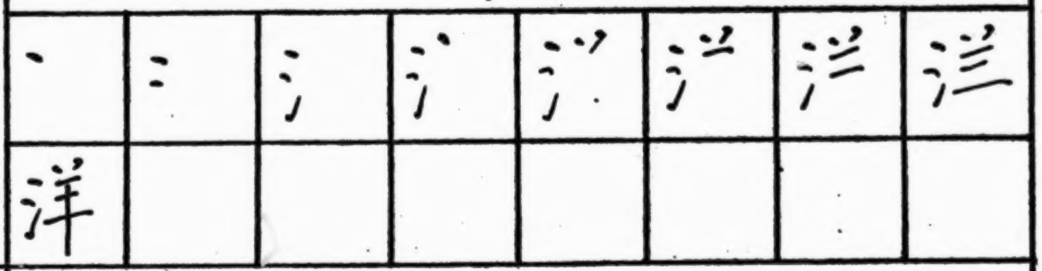
江

Character Number 502 **Radical Number** 85
Stroke Number 6 氵，水



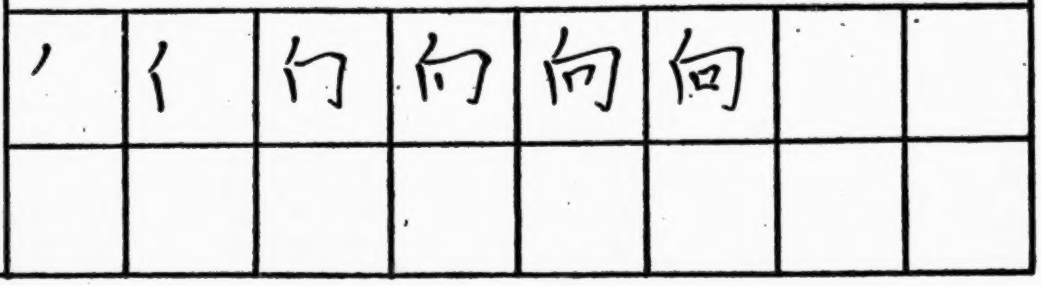
洋

Character Number 1475 **Radical Number** 85
Stroke Number 9 氵，水

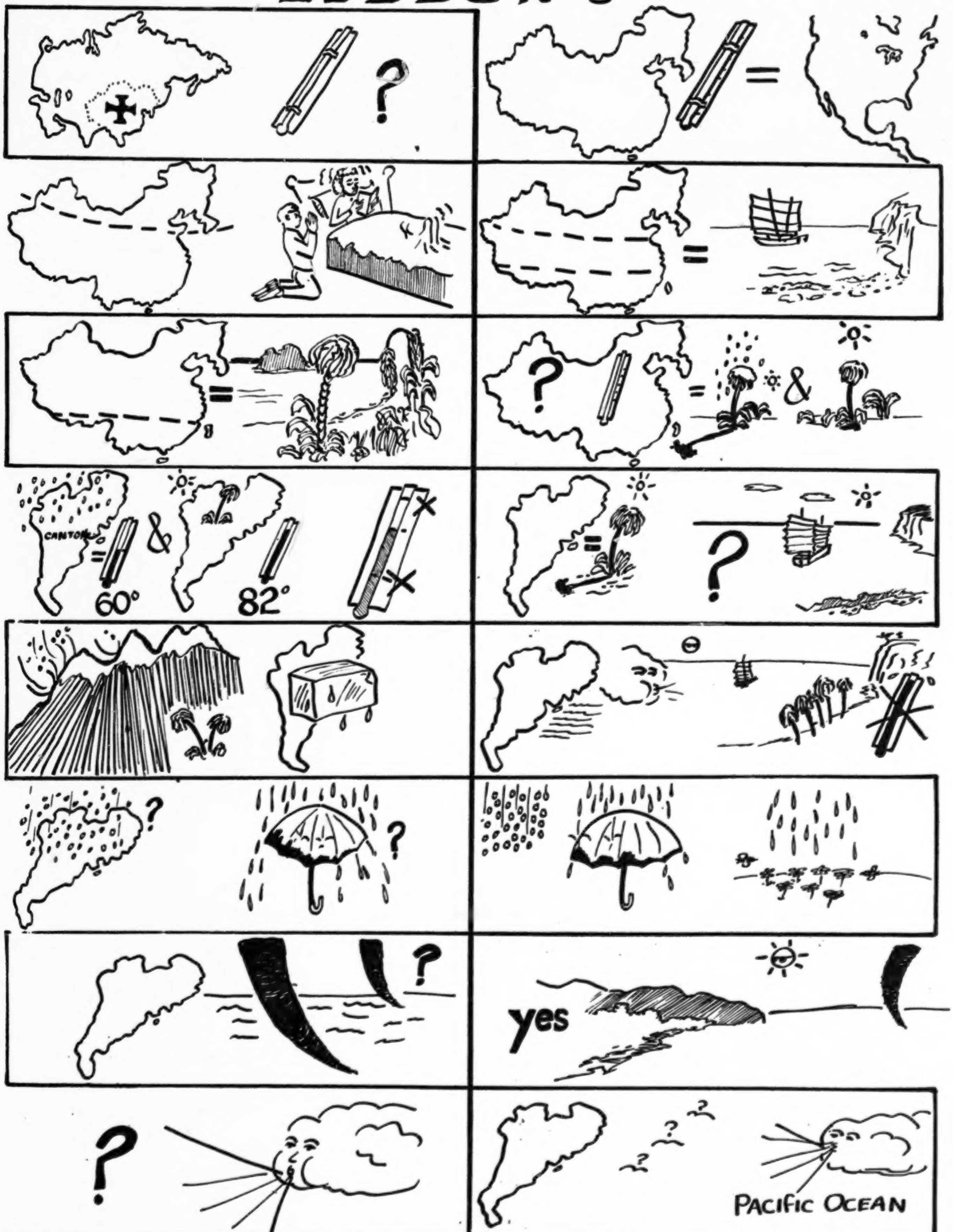


向

Character Number 279 **Radical Number** 30
Stroke Number 6 口



LESSON 3


?
=
=
=
?
=
&
CANTON
=
60°
&
82°
=
?
?
?
?
yes
?
PACIFIC OCEAN

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Chung-Kwòk haì À-Chau taaî-lûk, haî mi-yĕ kè heì-haû ne?

Cheung: Chung-Kwòk kè heì-haû t'ūng Pak-Meĭ-Chau kè heì-haû ch'a-m̄-toh, to haî taaî-lûk heì-haû, Wā Pak kè heì-haû haî hōn taaì kè heì-haû; Wā Chung kè heì-haû haî wan taaì kè heì-haû; Wā Naām kè heì-haû haî à-ît taaì kè heì-haû.

W: Wā Naām kè wan-tô, tung kwaì taaî-yeûk* keî toh tô, hâ kwaì taaì-yeùk* keî-toh tô ne?

C: Tung kwaì kè shī-haû, Kwóng-Chau kè p'ìng-kwan wan-tô haî Wā-Shî-Piú lûk-shâp tô kòm sheûng-hâ*. Hâ kwaì kè shī-haû, Kwóng-Chau kè p'ìng-kwan wan-tô haî Wā-Shî-Piú paàt-shâp-î tô kòm sheûng-hâ*, shóh-ĭ Kwóng-Tung m̄-haî hó laăng m̄-haî hó ît, heì-haû hó wan-wòh.

W: Keì-ìn Kwóng-Tung haì ît taaì kè teî-fong, tìm-kaaì heì-haû wan-wōh ne?

C: Yan-waî Kwóng-Tung kè pak pîn yaŭ Naām-Lĭng Shaan-Mâk, tung kwaì kè shī-haû, k'uĭ choh-chuê pak pîn ch'ui laì kè hōn laū, shóh-ĭ hai tung-t'in kè shī-haû, Kwóng-Tung m̄-haî hó laăng. Kwóng-Tung kè naām pîn kân hoì; hâ kwaì kè shī-haû yaŭ hoì fung t'iū-tsìt, shóh-ĭ haì hâ-t'in kè shī-haû, Kwóng-Tung m̄-haî hó ît.

W: Kwóng-Tung yaŭ mŏ suèt lôk kà? Uĕ leûng toh m̄-toh ne?

C: Kwóng-Tung hó shiú lôk suèt, taân-haî shī shī lôk uĕ, shóh-ĭ uĕ leûng hó toh; ch'un-t'in kè shī-haû tsaû haî uĕ kwaì.

W: Kân hoì kè teî-fong shī shī tá fung. Kám, Kwóng-Tung yaŭ mŏ tá fung ne?

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C: Yaŭ, tå fung kè shī-haû toh shò haî hâ-t'in.

W: Ni ti fung haî yaū pin-shuè ch'ui laī kè ne?

C: Ni ti fung haî yaū Naām T'aaì-P'īng-Yeūng ch'ui laī kè.

LESSON 3

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: China is on the continent of Asia, what is her climate?

Cheung: The climate of China is almost the same as that of North America. Both have continental climates. The climate of North China is that of the Frigid Zone. The climate of Central China is of the Temperate Zone. The climate of South China is of the Sub-Tropic Zone.

W: In South China what is the approximate temperature in the winter and in the summer?

C: In the winter the average temperature in Canton is about 60° F. In the summer the average temperature in Canton is about 82° F. Therefore, Kwangtung is neither very cold nor very hot, but rather it is temperate.

W: If Kwangtung is in the Tropic Zone, why is the climate temperate?

C: Because there is the Naām-Lǐng Mountain Range in the north of Kwangtung. In the winter this range shuts out cold waves from the north; therefore, in the winter the weather of Kwangtung is not very cold. The southern part of Kwangtung is contiguous to the sea. In the summer the weather is tempered by the sea breeze; therefore, in the summer it is not very hot in Kwangtung.

W: Is there snow-fall in Kwangtung? Is the rainfall plentiful?

C: In Kwantung, snow-fall is infrequent, but it rains quite often; therefore the rainfall is plentiful. Spring is the rainy season.

LESSON 3

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W: Typhoons are very often prevalent in areas near the sea. That being so, are there typhoons in Kwangtung?

C: Yes, typhoons most often occur in the summer.

W: From where do such winds come?

C: The winds blow in from the South Pacific Ocean.

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Rain is not infrequent in this area in winter.
2. The clerk will tell you how to regulate the speed of the elevator.
3. You will become accustomed to the sea breeze if you live near the ocean.
4. There is a change of direction of the cold wind coming from the north.
5. Fruits are plentiful in the Tropical Zone.
6. The climate here is temperate the entire year.
7. It was very cold last night and the temperature dropped to 30° F.
8. Two houses are being constructed every day.
9. Summer is here but the weather is still quite cold.
10. The average temperature of this area is 50° F.
11. There will be a cold and wet winter this year.
12. He has a temperature and he should be in the hospital.
13. A large area of the U.S. is in the Sub-Tropical Zone.
14. There is rain in the Temperate Zone and sometimes snow.
15. The climate of Central China is very much the same as that of the U.S.
16. The average temperature in the Frigid Zone is about 30° F.
17. Spring is not the best time of the year for touring in the U.S.

LESSON 3

WORD LIST

1.	hōn taaì	frigid zone
2.	Wā-̀Chung	Central China
3.	wan taaì	temperate zone
4.	à-ît taaì	sub-tropical zone
5.	wan-tô	temperature
6.	tô	degree
7.	p'ìng-kwan	average
8.	Wā-Shî-piû	Fahrenheit thermometer
9.	wan-wōh	temperate
10.	ît taaì	tropical zone
11.	hōn laū	cold wave
12.	hoì fung	sea breeze
13.	t'iū-tsìt	to regulate
14.	uĕ-leûng	rainfall

LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

1011

暑 shué: summer heat; hot.

暑假 shué-kà*: summer vacation.

避暑 peî shué: to escape the heat.

144

春 ch'un: Spring season

春天 ch'un-t'in: springtime

春季 ch'un kwaì: spring season

242

限 haân: limit; boundary; to restrict

限制 haân-chaì: to restrict; restriction

有限 yaŭ-haân: "limited"

暑 春 限

暑 春 限

暑 春 限

1430

永 wĭng: eternal, forever.

永遠 wĭng-uĕn: eternally forever.

永生 wĭng-shaang: eternal life; never die.

永久 wĭng-kaú. permanence; perpetuity

558

均 kwan: equal; uniform.

均分 kwan fan: to divide equally.

平均 p'ĭng-kwan: average; even.

永 均

永 均

永 均

LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

1425

温 wan: warm; gentle; benign.

温和 wan-wōh: mild; benign

温習 wan-tsaâp: to review (lesson).

温暖 wan-nuǎn: warm; lukewarm.

1432

和 wōh: peace; in harmony; peaceful; together.

和平 wōh-p'īng: peaceful; calm; mild.

和氣 wōh-heì: cordial; affable.

和約 wōh-yeǔk: peace treaty.

調和 t'iū-wōh: to mix properly.

304

寒 hōn: cold; freezing; humble; poor

寒冷 hōn laǎng: cold

寒帶 hōn taaì: frigid zone

寒暑表 hōn-shué-piú: thermometer

温 和 寒

温 和 寒

温 和 寒

925

霜 seung: hoar frost; frostlike; sublimate.

落霜 lôk seung: frosty.

299

害 hoî: to wound; injure; detriment

害處 hoî ch'uè: evils; bad points

有害 yaŭ hoî: harmful detrimental

損害 suén-hoî: damage; injuries

霜 害

霜 害

霜 害

LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

中國因為地方大，全國氣候分做三帶，北部係寒帶，中部屬温帶，南部為À熱帶。中國嘅氣候大約同北美Chau差唔多。

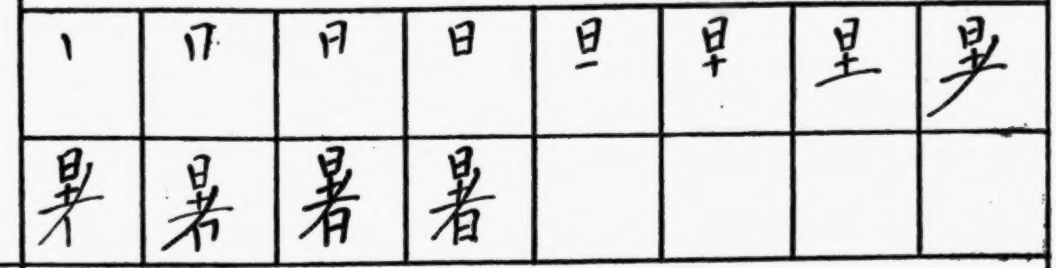
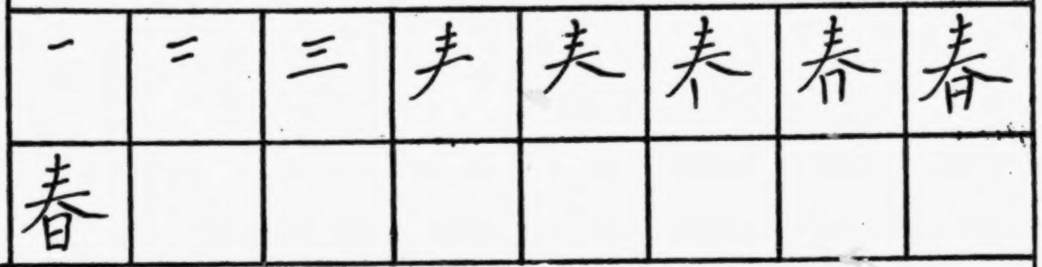
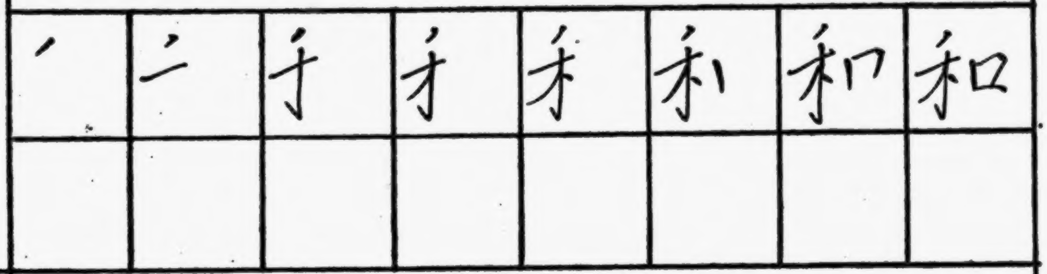
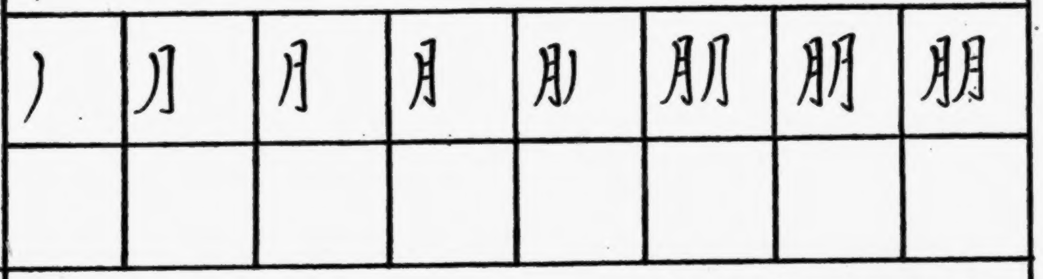
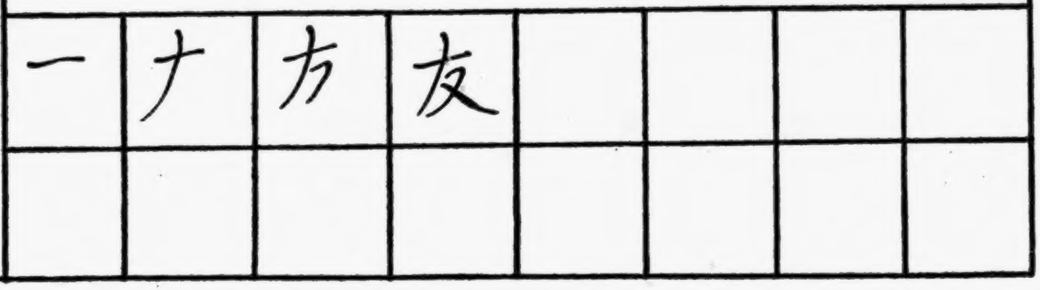
普通黎講，除阻西北兩部，因為山多地高，比較非常之冷，或者非常之熱之外，其餘地方，唔算太冷，亦都唔算太熱。

廣東省氣候，雖然、係屬於À熱帶，但係因為近海，有海風調節，暑天時候，熱kîk都有限，平均温度係華氏表八十二度。

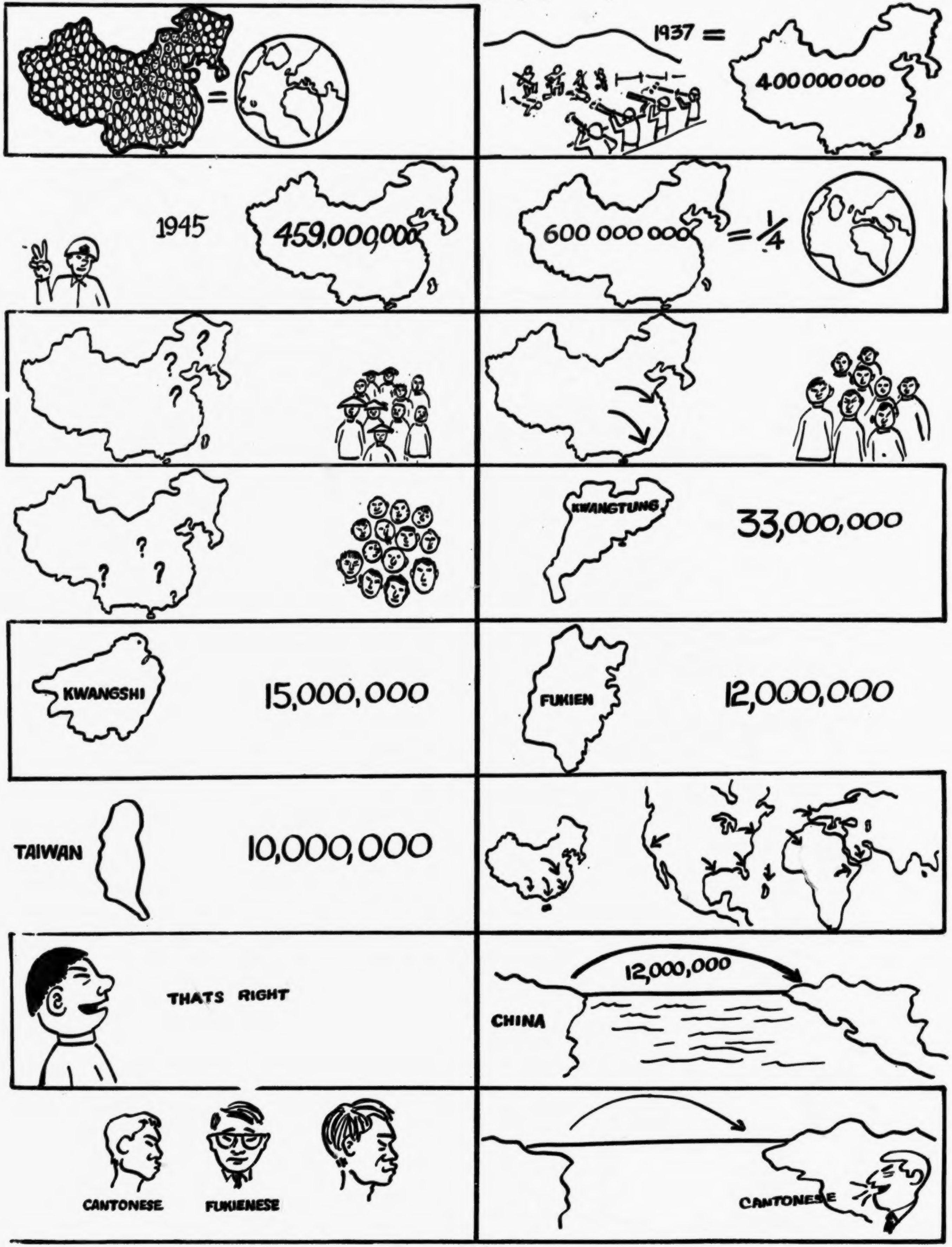
廣東好少落雪，只係有時落霜。廣東人有啲永遠未見過雪。但係雨量好多。春天就係雨季、夏季時候亦時常打風，有時損害好大。

LESSON 3

WRITING MATERIAL

暑	Character Number 1011 Stroke Number 12 Radical Number 72 日	
春	Character Number 144 Stroke Number 9 Radical Number 72 日	
和	Character Number 1432 Stroke Number 8 Radical Number 30 口	
朋	Character Number 829 Stroke Number 8 Radical Number 74 月	
友	Character Number 1463 Stroke Number 4 Radical Number 29 又	

LESSON 4


1937 =
400000000
1945
459,000,000
600 000 000
= 1/4
KWANGTUNG
33,000,000
KWANGSHI
15,000,000
FUKIEN
12,000,000
TAIWAN
10,000,000
THATS RIGHT
12,000,000
CHINA
CANTONESE
FUKIENESE
CANTONESE

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Chung-Kwòk haî ts'uēn shaì-kaaì yān-haú tsuì toh kè kwòk-ka, k'eì-shât ts'uēn kwòk kè yān-haú yaŭ keì toh ne?

Cheung: Haî k'òng-chìn chi ts'ìn, tsik haî yat-kaú-saam-ch'at nìn chi ts'ìn, Chung-Kwòk kè yān-haú taaî-yeùk* yaŭ seì-maân-maân yān tsóh-yaû*. K'òng-chìn shìng-leî chi haû, tsik haî yat-kaú-seì-nğ nìn chi haû, Chung-Kwòk kè yān-haú tsang-ka tò seì-maân-maân-nğ-ts'in-kaú-paàk keì maân yān. Tsuì kân Chung-Kwòk kè yān-haú tsang-ka tò lûk-maân-maân yān tsóh-yaû*, taaî-yeùk* chìm ts'uēn shaì-kaaì yān-haú seì-fân-chi-yat.

W: Kám. Chung-Kwòk pin-shuè kè yān-haú chì toh ne?

C: Chung-Kwòk uēn hoì yat taaì kè yān-haù chì toh, Wā Naām kòk shaáng kè yān-haú yîk-to hó toh.

W: Wā Naām pin shaáng kè yān-haú chì toh ne?

C: Wā Naām kòk shaáng luĭ pîn, Kwóng-Tung Shaáng kè yān-haú tsuì toh, taaî-yeùk* yaŭ saam-ts'in-saam-paàk-maân yān tsóh-yaû*. Taî-î haî Kwóng-Sai Shaáng, taaî-yeùk* yaŭ yat-ts'in-nğ-paàk-maân yān tsóh-yaû*. Taî-saam haî Fuk-Kìn Shaáng, taaî-yeùk* yaŭ yat-ts'in-î-paàk-maân yān tsóh-yaû*. Taî-seì haî T'oì-Waan Shaáng, taaî-yeùk* yaŭ yat-ts'in-maân yān tsóh-yaû*.

W: Ngŏh t'eng yān kóng, Wā Naām kè yān m̄-chì fan-saàn haì kwòk noî kòk shaáng, ì-ch'é saàn-hoi haì hoì ngoî kòk kwòk t'im, haî m̄-haî à?

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C: Mŏ-ts'òh là. Haî hoî ngoî kè Wā-K'iū yaŭ yat-ts'in-î-paàk-maấn yān tsóh-yaû*; kóh ti yān toh shò haî Kwóng-Tung yān t'ūng Fuk-Kìn yān, yaū k'eī haî Kwóng-Tung yān. Shóh-ĭ haî hoî ngoî kè Wā-K'iū ch'a-m̄-toh to kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ*.

LESSON 4

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wŏng: China has the largest population in the world. Actually, how large is her population?

Cheung: Before the War of Resistance, that is before 1937, the population of China was approximately four hundred million. After the victory in the War of Resistance, that is after 1945, it had increased to four hundred and fifty-nine million. Recently it has grown to approximately six hundred million people and constitutes about one fourth of the total population of the world.

W: In that case, what part of China is the most populous?

C: That area along the coast of China is the most populous. The population of the provinces in South China is also very large.

W: Which province of South China is the most populous?

C: Among the provinces of South China, Kwangtung Province has the largest population, with about thirty-three million people. Kwangshi Province is the second with about fifteen million. Fukien Province is the third with about twelve million. The fourth is Taiwan Province with about ten million.

W: I heard that the population of South China is scattered not only throughout every province in China but also in foreign countries. Is that so?

LESSON 4

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

C: That is right. The number of the overseas Chinese is approximately twelve million people. Those people are mostly Cantonese and Fukienese, especially Cantonese. Therefore, almost all the overseas Chinese speak Cantonese.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The city is not only politically important but also strategically vital.
2. The police scattered all over the area to search for contraband.
3. T'oī-Waan Province has a number of scenic areas for tourists.
4. Kwóng-Sai Province is situated to the west of Kwóng-Tung.
5. Custom Houses are set up along the coast and in various large cities.
6. Before this year is over, we will see snow.
7. The victory is ours, if we have enough strength.
8. The set-up of this building has improved recently.
9. After the rain, we will go for a ride on the ferry boat.
10. The war of resistance was fought to the last man,
11. Actually, you are very fortunate to be here.
12. Hong Kong has a population of more than three million.
13. Before the war, the population of Hong Kong was approximately 750,000.
14. If that is the case, no one will be here.
15. He is the third person who has been injured in an accident at that intersection.
16. What is the total population of the world?
17. New York is the most populated city in the world.

LESSON 4

WORD LIST

1.	k'eī-shât	actuaaly, in fact
2.	k'òng-chìn	war of resistance
3.	shìng-leî	victory
4.	uēn hoí	along the coast
5.	Kwóng-Sai Shaáng	Kwangsi Province
6.	T'oī-Waan Shaáng	Taiwan Province
7.	fan-saàn	to scatter, disperse
8.	saàn-hoi	to scatter
9.	Wā K'iū	Overseas Chinese

LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

840

避 peî: to flee from; avoid; to escape.

避難 peî naân: to escape danger; to avoid calamity.

避暑 peî shué: to escape the summer heat.

690

免 mǐn: to avoid; to forgive; to excuse.

免致 mǐn-chì: lest; in order to avoid.

免稅 mǐn shuì: duty free.

免職 mǐn chik: to dismiss from office

17

產 ch'aán: to produce; bear; productions; estate.

產業 ch'aán-îp: real estate

家產 ka-ch'aán: family possessions.

土產 t'ó-ch'aán: native product.

生產 shaang-ch'aán: to raise, to bear a child, to produce

避 免 產

避 免 產

避 免 產

979

是 shî: yes; positive, certain; right; such; this; that; mandarin verb "to be".

是非 shî-fei: right and wrong; scandal.

508

抗 k'òng: to withstand; to oppose.

抵抗 taí-k'òng: to oppose; to resist.

反抗 faán-k'òng: to rebel; to turn against.

抗議 k'òng-ǐ: to protest to object to.

是 抗

是 抗

是 抗

LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

1389

沿 uēn: following; to follow along; to continue.

沿路 uēn lô: all along the road.

沿岸 uēn ngôn: along the shore; coastal.

沿海一帶 uēn hoí yat taaì: all along the coast.

649

論 lûn: to discuss; to reason; discourse; ism; -ology.

辯論 pîn-lûn: debate.

爭論 chaang lûn: to dispute.

討論 t'ó-lûn: to discuss.

論文 lûn-mān: thesis.

954

實 shât. true; sure; certainly, solid; fruit.

實價 shât kà: fixed price, real price.

實行 shât-hāng: to put into practice; to take effect.

沿 論 實 寔

沿 論 實

沿 论 实

1447

印 yàn: a seal; to print.

蓋印 k'oì yàn: to seal; to stamp.

印度 yàn-tô: India.

236

孩 haaī: child

嬰孩 ying-haaī: infant

孩童 haaī-t'ūng: boy

印 孩

印 孩

印 孩

LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

中國係人口最多嘅國家.一百幾十年前,已經話有人口四萬萬.一九四五年抗戰勝利之後,又增加幾千萬.中國ying孩嘅產生,好似冇法子避免一樣,陸續大量增加.最近增加到六萬萬人kòm上下tsìm全世界人口四分之一.到底將來增加到點樣,就好難講la.

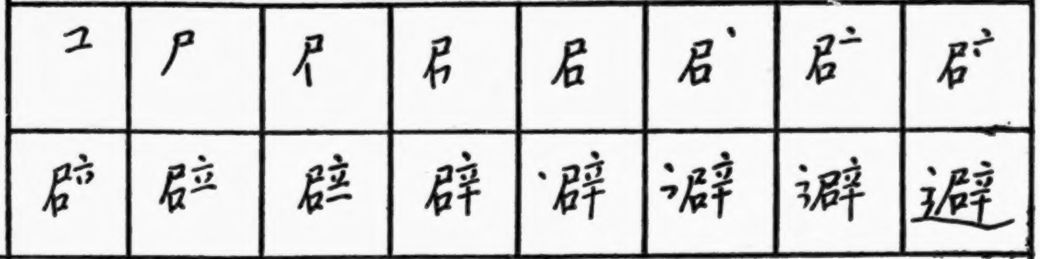
喺中國嘅外國人,最深嘅印象,就係不論喺邊個城市,都見到滿街係人.Yaū其是沿海一帶,人口更多.華南各省裏便,以廣東省人口最多,大約三千三百萬人左右.台灣一個島,亦都有一千萬人左右.其實華南嘅人,重有好多去外國添.海外華k'ìu總共有一千萬人以上,喺美國嘅,多數講廣東話.

LESSON 4

WRITING MATERIAL

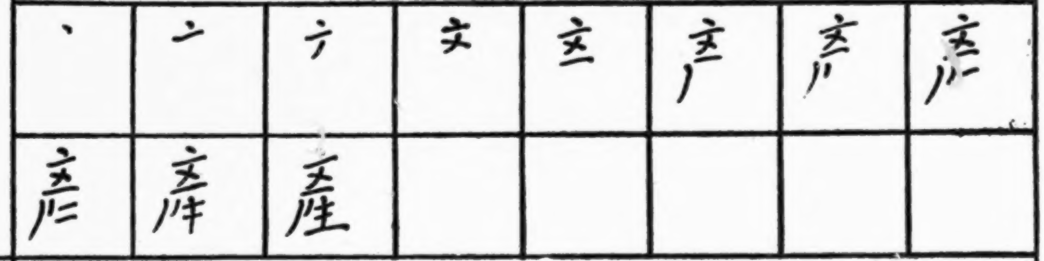
避

Character Number 840 **Radical Number** 162
Stroke Number 17 辶，辵



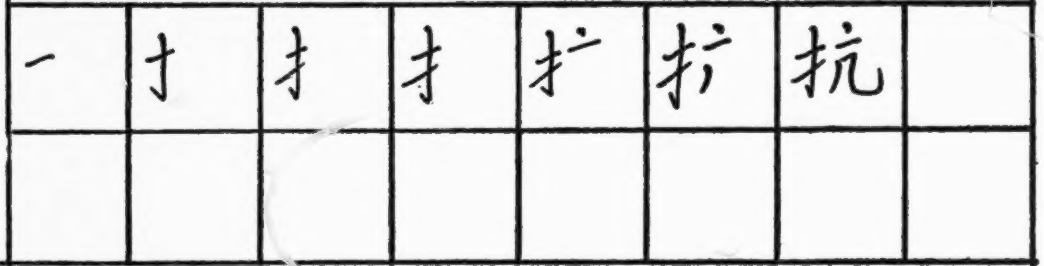
產

Character Number 17 **Radical Number** 100
Stroke Number 11 生



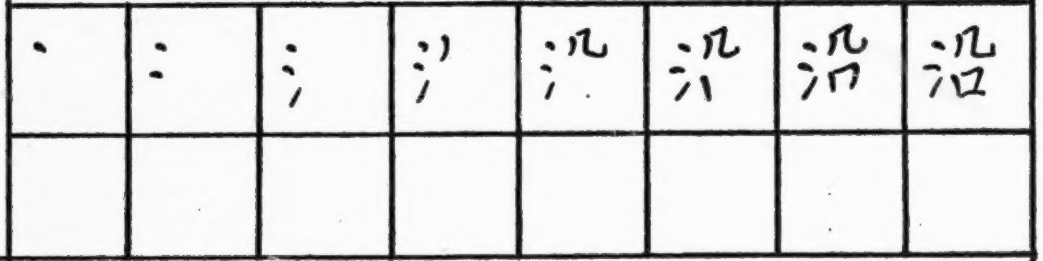
抗

Character Number 508 **Radical Number** 64
Stroke Number 7 扌，手



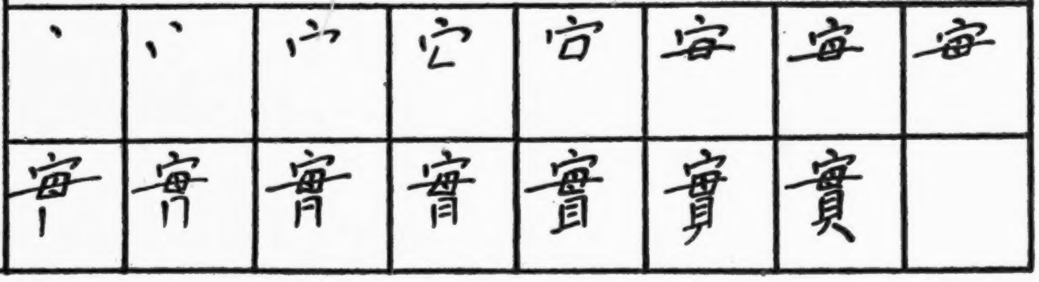
沿

Character Number 1389 **Radical Number** 85
Stroke Number 8 氵，水

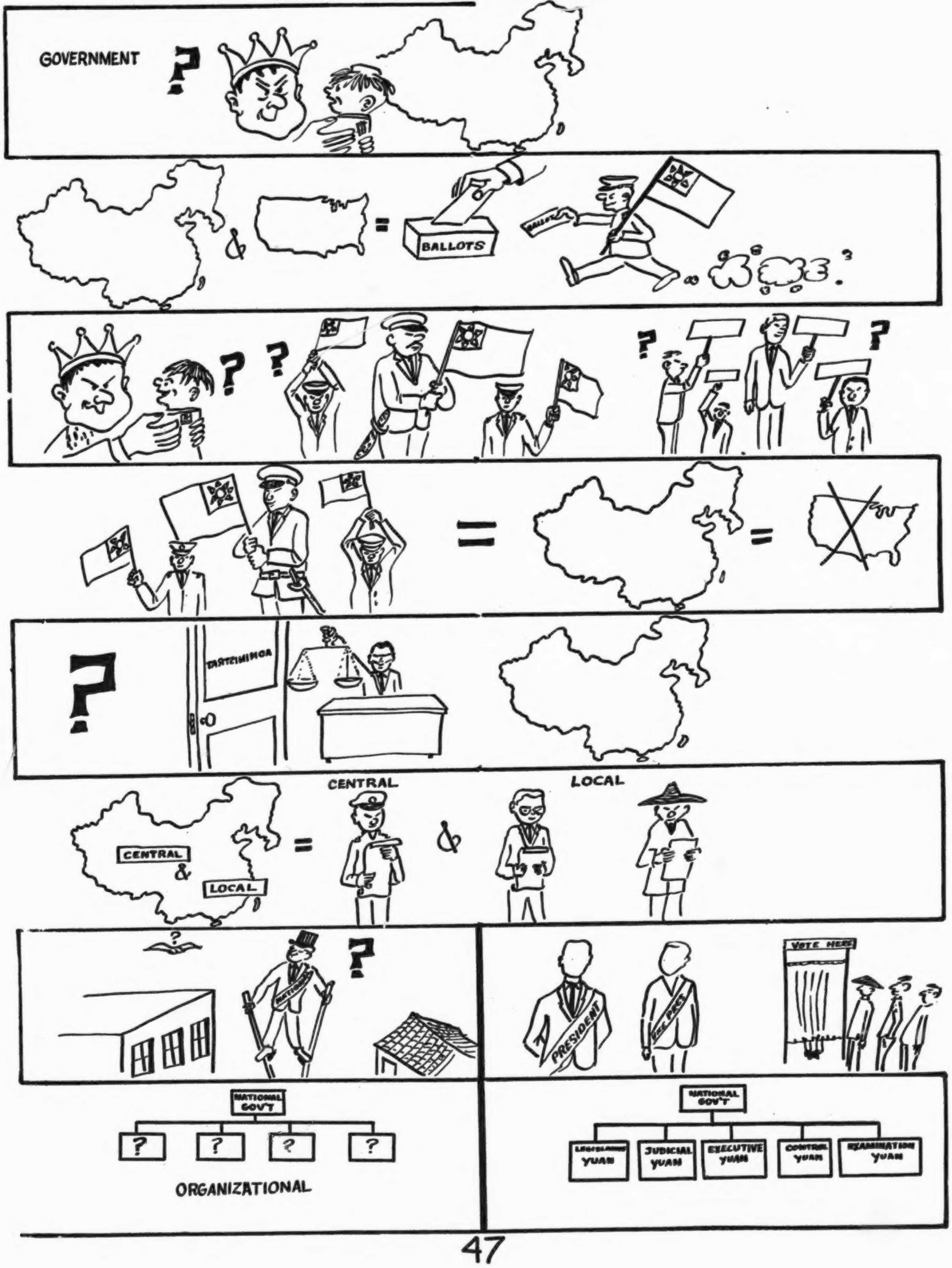


賓

Character Number 954 **Radical Number** 40
Stroke Number 15 宀



LESSON 5


GOVERNMENT
?
&
=
BALLOTS
BALLOTS
?
?
?
?
=
=
?
ADMINISTRAT
CENTRAL
&
LOCAL
=
CENTRAL
&
LOCAL
?
?
NATIONAL
PRESIDENT
VICE PRES
VOTE HERE
NATIONAL GOV'T
?
?
?
?
ORGANIZATIONAL
NATIONAL GOV'T
LEGISLATIVE YUAN
JUDICIAL YUAN
EXECUTIVE YUAN
CONTROL YUAN
EXAMINATION YUAN

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Chung-Kwòk kè Kwòk-Mān-Chìng-Foó ts'oi-yûng pin chúng chìng-t'aî ne?

Cheung: Chung-Kwòk t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk to haî mān-chuế kwòk-ka, Chung-Kwòk kè chìng-t'aî t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk kè yat-yeûng, shóh-ĭ Kwòk-Mān-Chìng-Foó yîk-to ts'oi-yûng mān-chuế chìng-t'aî.

W: Chung-Kwòk kè chìng-foó ts'oi-yûng chung-yeung-tsaâp-k'uēn chaì, yik-waâk teî-fong-fan-k'uēn chaì ne?

C: Chung-Kwòk kè chìng-foó ts'oi-yûng chung-yeung-tsaâp-k'uēn chaì, m̄-yûng teî-fong-fan-k'uēn chaì. Shóh-ĭ ni tîm t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk kè chìng-foó m̄-t'ūng.

W: Chung-Kwòk kè haāng-chìng chaì-tô haî tîm-yeûng* kè ne?

C: Chung-Kwòk kè haāng-chìng chaì-tô fan-hoi chung-yeung haāng-chìng t'ūng teî-fong haāng-chìng. Chung-yeung haāng-chìng tsik-haî Kwòk-Mān-Chìng-Foó kè haāng-chìng; teî-fong haāng-chìng tsik haî shaáng chìng-foó t'ūng uên chìng-foó kè haāng-chìng.

W: Kwòk-Mān-Chìng-Foó tsuì ko kè cheúng-koon haî pin kòh ne?

C: Kwòk-Mān-Chìng-Foó tsuì ko kè cheúng-koon haî Tsúng-T'úng, taî-î haî Foò Tsúng-T'úng. K'uĭ-teî to haî yaū yān-mān suến-kuì kè.

W: Kwòk-Mān-Chìng-Foó chi hâ yaŭ ti mi-yĕ kei-kwaan ne?

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C: Kwòk-Mān-Chīng-Foó chi hâ yaŭ nğ kòh uên*, tsik haî Lâp-Faàt Uên*, Sz-Faàt uên*, Haāng-Chìng Uên*, Kaam-Ch’aàt Uên* t’ūng Haaú-Shì Uên*.

LESSON 5

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: What (kind of) system of government has the Republic of China adopted?

Cheung: Both China and the United States of America are democratic countries, and the system of government of both countries is the same; therefore, the government of the Republic of China also has adopted the democratic system of government.

W: Has the Chinese government adopted a system of centralization of authority or a system of decentralization?

C: The Chinese government adopted a system of centralization of authority and does not use the system of decentralization; therefore, in this respect, the Chinese government differs from the government of the United States.

W: What is the administrative system of China like?

C: The administrative system of China is divided into the central administration and the local administration. The central administration is the administration of the national government. The local administration is the administration of the provincial and the district government.

W: Who is the highest official of the national government?

C: The highest official of the national government is the president, the second highest is the vice-president. They are elected by the people.

LESSON 5

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W: What are the organizations under the national government?

C: Under the national government there are five Yuan; namely the Legislative Yuan, the Judicial Yuan, the Executive Yuan, the Control Yuan, and the Examination Yuan.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The president is elected to be the highest official of the government.
2. The U.S. Government has been a democracy for almost 200 years.
3. The Yuan is a high administrative organization of the Chinese Government.
4. The U.S. Government has adopted the system of decentralization of authority.
5. On the other hand the Chinese government uses the system of centralization of authority.
6. The president, as well as the vice-president, are elected by the people.
7. The district government is under the provincial government which is, in turn, under the national government.
8. The U.S. Government is divided into the Executive, Legislative and Judicial branches.
9. Beside these three branches, the Chinese Government also has the Control Yuan and the Examination Yuan.
10. The vice-president is not the highest official of the nation.
11. The school's administration is headed by the principal.
12. The officials of the local government must report to the provincial government.
13. He is the sort of man who wants things done immediately.
14. What kind of books do you usually read?

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. She does not have the authority to plan various activities here.

16. A government will do well under a democratic system.

LESSON 5

WORD LIST

1.	chìng-foó	government
2.	Kwòk-Mān-Chìng-Foó	Chinese Government
3.	chìng-t’aî	system of government
4.	mān-chuê	democracy
5.	chung-yeung-tsaâp-k’uēn chaì	system of centralized authority
6.	teî-fong-fan-k’uēn chaì	system of decentralized authority
7.	haāng-chìng	administration
8.	chaì-tô	system
9.	fan-hoi	to divide
10.	chung-yeung haāng-chìng	central administration
11.	teî-fong haāng-chìng	local administration
12.	shaáng chìng-foó	provincial government
13.	uên-chìng-foó	district government
14.	cheúng-koon	official
15.	tsúng-t’úng	president
16.	foò tsúng-t’úng	vice-president
17.	suên-kuî	to elect
18.	Uên*	Yuan (a high administrative organization of China)
19.	Lâp-Faàt Uēn*	Legislative Yuan
20.	Sz-Faàt Uên*	Judicial Yuan
21.	Haāng-Chìng Uên*	Executive Yuan

LESSON 5

WORD LIST

22.	Kaam-Ch'aàt Uên*	Control Yuan
23.	Haaú-Shì Uên*	Examination Yuan
24.	yān-mān	people
25.	ts'oí-yûng	to adopt

LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

1107

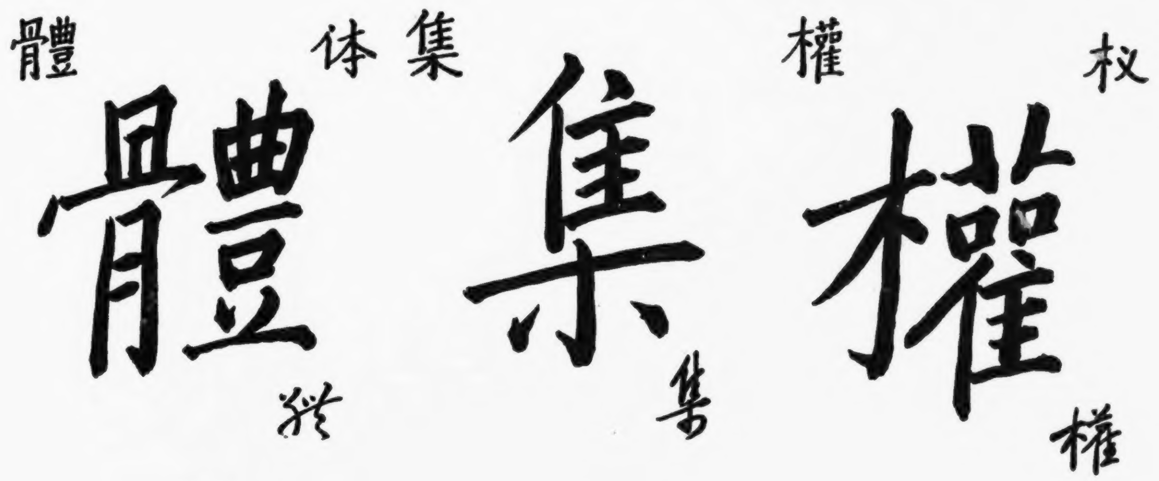
體	t'aí: body; trunk, substance, appearance; to treat with consideration.
全體	ts'uēn-t'aí: the whole body of.
體面	t'aí-mîn: reputation; face.
主體	chué t'aí: subject.

1205

集	tsaâp: to collect; to gather. an assembly.
集會	tsaâp ooî. to assemble; to meet; meeting.
集議	tsaâp ĭ: to gather for discussion.
集股	tsaâp koó. to collect capital for business.

525

權	k'uēn: authority; power.
權力	k'uēn-lîk: power; influence.
版權	paán k'uēn: copyright
權利	k'uēn-leî: rights & privileges
選舉權	suén-kuí k'uēn: right to vote.

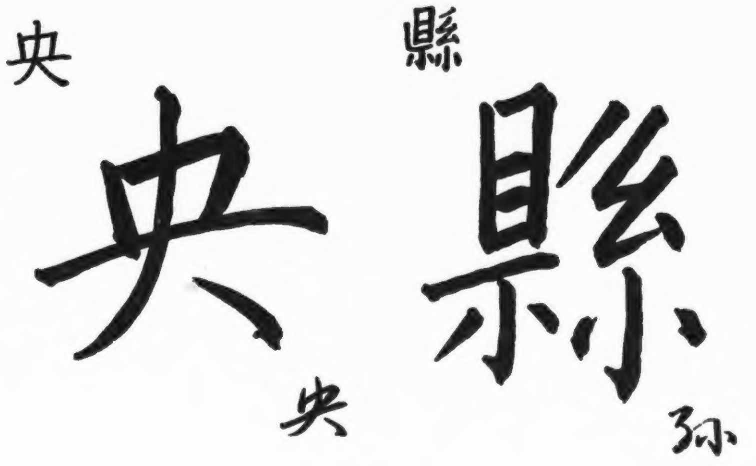


1474

央	yeung: the middle; center; to entreat.
中央	chung-yeung: the center; middle.
中央政府	chung-yeung chìng-foó: the central government.

1394

縣	uên: governmental district.
縣長	uên-cheúng: district magistrate.
縣城	uên shīng: district city.



LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

97

稱 ch'ing: state; to praise

稱 ch'ing: to weigh; to estimate

相稱 seung-ch'ing: symmetrical; in accordance with

稱職 ch'ing-chik: able to fulfil the responsibility

1050

選 suén: to choose; to select.

選舉 suén-kúi: to elect; to vote.

選擇 suén-chaàk: to choose; to select.

591

立 lâp: to set up; to establish; perpendicular; immediately.

立刻 lâp-hak: at once; right away.

成立 shīng-lâp: to establish

中立 chung-lâp: neutrality

獨立 tûk-lâp: independent.

稱 選 选 立

稱 選 立

秤 稱 选 立

1146

訂 tîng, têng: to arrange; to settle; to edit; to collate.

訂立 tîng-laâp: to draw up.

訂定 tîng-têng: to conclude; to settle.

訂約 tîng yeùk: to make an agreement.

1651

律 lût: statute; law.

法律 faàt-lût: the law; code.

一律 yat-lût: uniformly; without distinction.

律師 lût-sz: a lawyer.

刑律 yīng lût: criminal law.

訂 律

訂 律

订 律

LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

中國現在叫做中華民國，佢嘅政體當然係民主政體，同美國一樣，不過美國屬地方分權制。中國係中央集權制。即係，雖然各省有省政府，各縣有縣政府，但係最高嘅權力，都集中中央政府。

中國中央政府叫做國民政府，簡稱國府。國民政府嘅總統，由國民Ĭ會選出，但係亦可以話由人民選出。因為國民Ĭ會嘅代表，係由各地方選派，連海外華k'iu都有派代表。

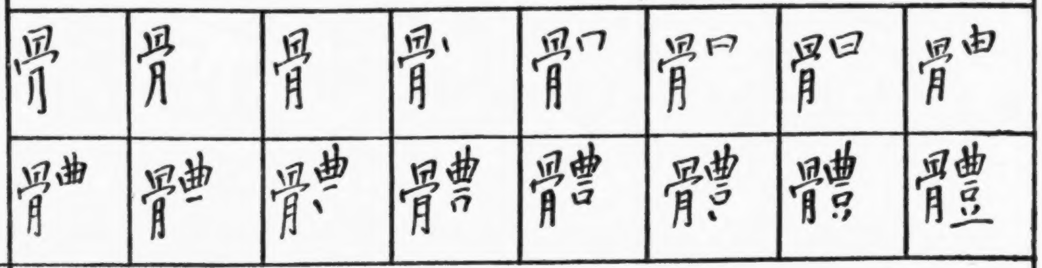
國民政府設有五個院，分別主管各種事務。內中有個立法院，係訂立法律嘅機關，好似美國嘅國會一樣。

LESSON 5

WRITING MATERIAL

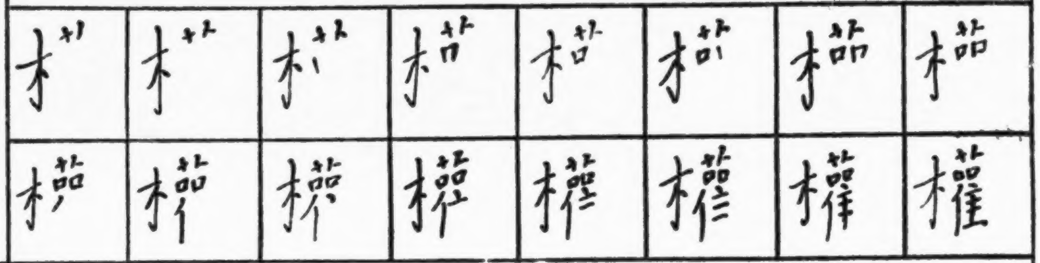
體

Character Number 1107 Radical Number 188
Stroke Number 23 骨



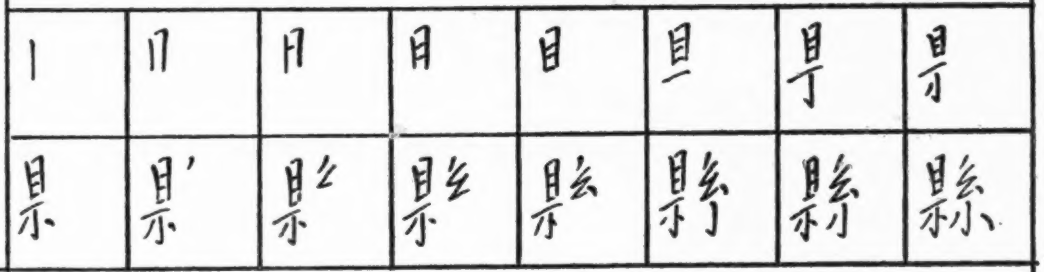
權

Character Number 525 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 22 木 ， 木



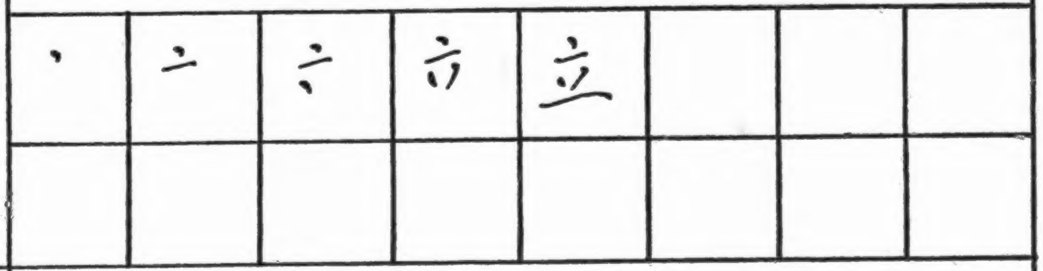
縣

Character Number 1394 Radical Number 120
Stroke Number 16 糸



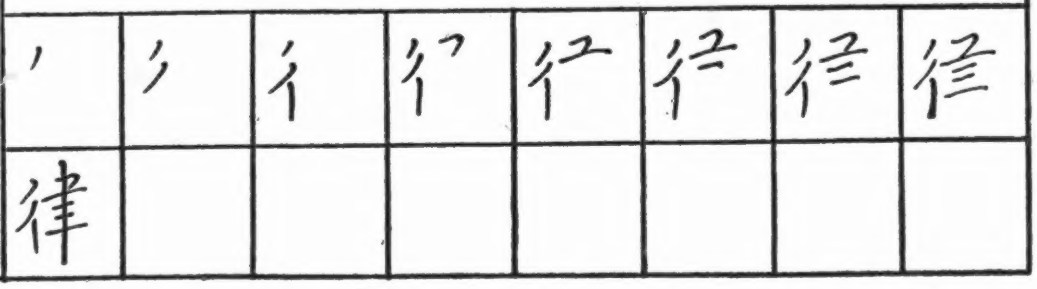
立

Character Number 591 Radical Number 117
Stroke Number 5 立

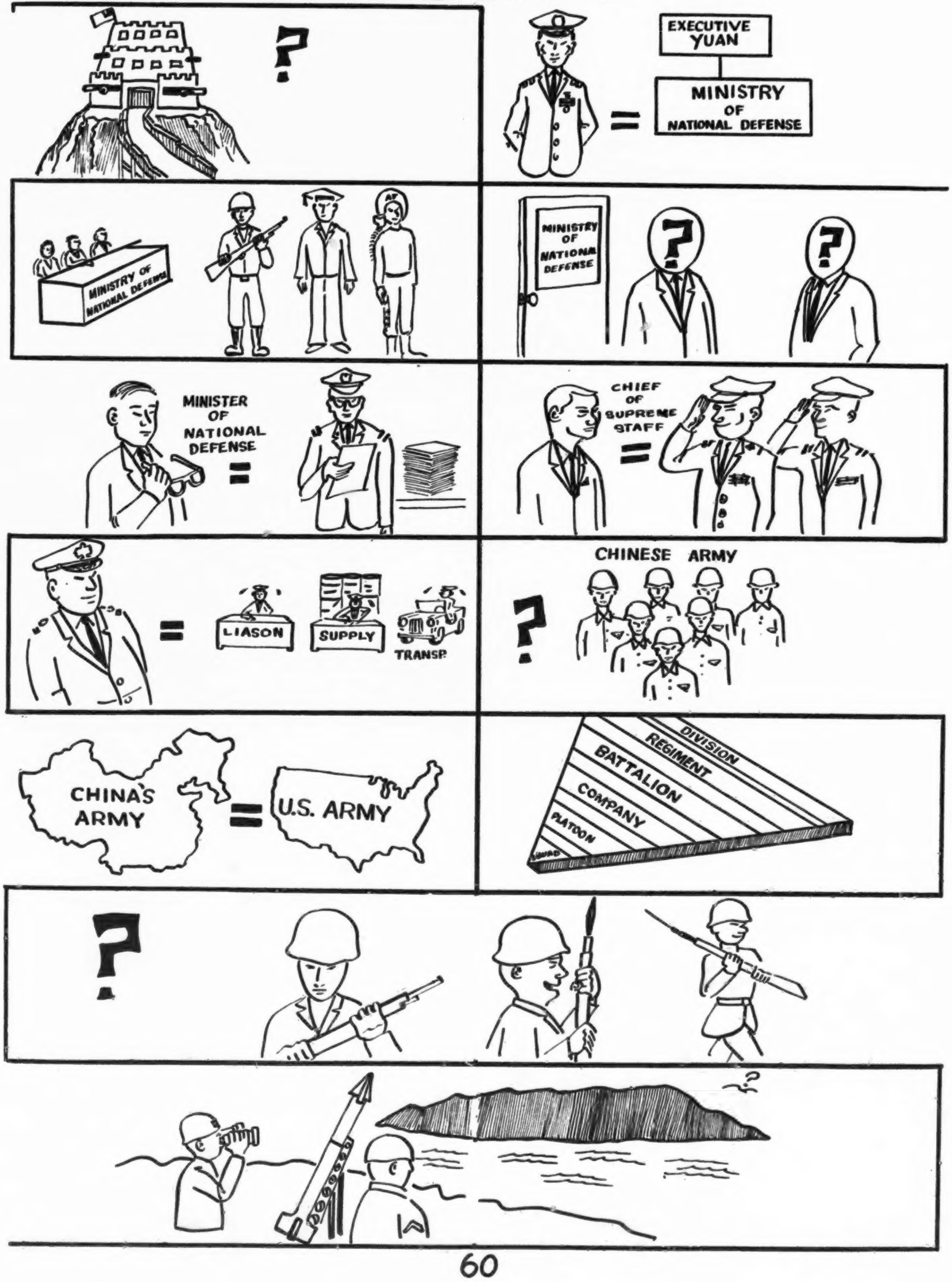


律

Character Number 651 Radical Number 60
Stroke Number 9 彳



LESSON 6


?
EXECUTIVE YUAN
=
MINISTRY OF NATIONAL DEFENSE
MINISTRY OF NATIONAL DEFENSE
AF
MINISTRY OF NATIONAL DEFENSE
?
?
MINISTER OF NATIONAL DEFENSE
=
CHIEF OF SUPREME STAFF
=
=
LIASON
SUPPLY
TRANSP.
CHINESE ARMY
?
CHINA'S ARMY
=
U.S. ARMY
DIVISION
REGIMENT
BATTALION
COMPANY
PLATOON
SQUAD
?
?

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Chung-Kwòk kwan-sẑ kei-kwaan kè tsó-chik haî tîm-yeûng* kè ne?

Cheung: Heāng-Chìng-Uên* kè hâ pîn yaŭ yat kòh pô, kiù tsô Kwòk-Fōng Pô. Ni kòh pô haî Chung-Kwòk chìng-foó tsuì ko kè kwan-chìng kei-kwaan, foô-chaàk chî-fai Lûk Hoî Hung saam kwan.

W: Kwòk-Fōng Pô kè chué-iù cheúng-koon kiù tsô mi-yĕ ne?

C: Kwòk-Fōng Pô yaŭ leŭng kòh chué-iù cheúng-koon: yat kòh kiù tsô Kwòk-Fōng-Pô-Cheúng, foô-chaàk kwan-chìng; yat kòh kiù tsô Ts'aam-Maū-Tsúng-Cheúng, foô-chaàk kwan-lîng.

W: Chung-Kwòk Lûk Hoî Hung saam kwan cheúng-koon kè koon-haām haî mi-yĕ ne?

C: K'uĭ-teî haî Lûk-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng, Hoî-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng, t'ūng Hung-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng; chûng yaŭ yat kòh Luēn-K'ān Tsúng-Sz-Lîng, foô-chaàk luēn-lòk, kung-k'ap, t'ūng wân-shue táng táng kè kung-tsòk.

W: Chung-Kwòk Lûk-Kwan kè taan-waî* yaŭ pin keî kòh ne?

C: Chung-Kwòk lûk-kwan kè taan-waî* yaŭ kwan, sz, t'uēn, yìng, līn, p'aaì, paan, t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk kè p'in-chaì ch'a-m̄-toh.

W: Kwan-tuî* kè yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ ne?

C: Kwan-tuî* kè yâm-mô haî pó-waî kwòk-ka kè lĭng-t'ó, chué-k'uēn t'ūng fōng-uê ngoî kwòk kè ts'am-leûk.

LESSON 6

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wŏng: What is the structure of the Chinese military organiation?

Cheung: Under the Executive Yuan there is a ministry which is called the Ministry of National Defense. This ministry is the highest military administrative organization of the Chinese government, and it is responsible for the command of the army, navy, and air force.

W: Who are the important officials in the Ministry of National Defense?

C: There are two important officials in the Ministry of National Defense: one of them, called the Minister of National Defense, is responsible for the military administration; the other, called the Chief of Supreme Staff, is responsible for the military command.

W: What are the titles of the commanding officers of the Chinese Army, Navy, and Air Force?

C: They are the Commander-in-chief of Ground Forces, the Commander-in-chief of Naval Forces, and the Commander-in-chief of Air Forces; there is also a Commander-in-chief of Combined Service Forces, who is responsible for matters of liaison, supply transportation, etc.

W: What are the units of the Chinese Army?

C: Similar to the system of the United States of America, the units of the Chinese Army are army, division, regiment, battalion, company, platoon, and squad.

LESSON 6

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W: What is the mission of the armed forces?

C: The mission of the armed forces is to protect the territory and sovereignty of their country and to defend against foreign invasion.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The Defense Department is responsible for defending against any invasion.
2. Everyone has the duty to protect the sovereignty of his country.
3. Japan invaded the U.S. territory in 1941.
4. He is the liaison officer between the Army and the Navy.
5. This army organization deals with transportation.
6. The commander comes to inspect the four battalions of this regiment.
7. This company received orders to scatter its men in that area.
8. The main supply line of this army is too long.
9. The chief of staff is one of the important persons in the military organization.
10. The platoon system is working wonderfully.
11. There are three squads in this area waiting to be transported to the division headquarters.
12. This army needs transportation for all three of its divisions.
13. The Secretary of Defense is the highest official in the Department of Defense.
14. The President of the U.S. is also the Commander-in-Chief of the Army, Navy and Air Force.
15. The liaison officer has a very important mission.
16. The Secretary of the U.S. Army is a civilian.

LESSON 6

WORD LIST

1.	kwan-chìng kei-kwaan	military organization
2.	chî-fai	to command
3.	chuê-iù	important, main, major
4.	Kwòk-Fōng Pô-Cheúng	Minister of National Defense
5.	Ts'aam-Maū Tsúng-Cheúng	Chief of Staff
6.	kwan-lîng	military order
7.	tsúng-sz-lîng	commander-in-chief
8.	luēn-k'ān	combined services
9.	luēn-lòk	liaison
10.	kung-k'ap	supply
11.	wân-shue	transportation; to transport
12.	yìng	battalion
13.	lìn	company
14.	p'aaì	platoon
15.	paan	squad
16.	p'in-tsaì	system
17.	pó-waî	to protect
18.	lĭng-t'ó	territory
19.	chuê-k'uēn	sovereignty, right
20.	fōng-uê	to defend
21.	ts'am-leûk	to invade, invasion
22.	koon-haām	title
23.	yâm-mô	mission
24.	tsó	section

LESSON 6

WORD LIST

25.	luĭ	brigade
26.	chún cheùng	brigadier general

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

201

防 fōng: to guard against; to protect from.

防備 fōng-peî: to watch for; to guard against.

提防 t'aī-fōng: to be aware of

防軍 fōng kwan: defence corps

957

守 shaú: to keep; to guard; to observe.

保守 pó-shaú: to retain; to keep; to hold.

守秘密 shaú peì-mât: to keep a secret.

871

保 pó to preserve; to keep; to secure; to bond.

擔保 taam-pó: to guarantee.

保險 pó-hím: to insure against; to take risk.

保證人 pó-chìng-yān: a voucher; guarantor.

防 守 保

防 守 保

防 守 保

1169

土 t'ó. earth; soil; place; local; native.

土音 t'ó yam: local accent.

土人 t'ó yān: native; aborigine.

1144

任 yâm: to sustain; be responsible; an office; trust.

任意 yâm-ì: as one pleases; voluntary.

信任 sùn-yâm: to have confidence in.

任用 yâm-yûng: to employ; to engage.

土 任

土 任

土 任

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

1423

衛 waî: to defend; to preserve; to guard.

衛生 waî-snaang: health; hygiene.

衛兵 waî ping: a body guard.

1214

侵 ts'am: to invade; to usurp

侵略 ts am-leûk: to encroach upon; to invade.

侵犯 ts'am-faân: to trespass.

侵佔 ts'am-chìm: to invade and occupy.

703

武 mǒ: military; martial; brave.

武官 mǒ-koon: military official.

武力 mǒ-lîk: by force of arms.

武裝 mǒ-chong: under arms.

衛 侵 武

衛 侵 武

衛 侵 武

271

器 heì: dish; implement; ability

器具 heì-kuî: tools; utensils

器皿 heì-mǐng: vessel; small articles of use

器械 heì-haaî: instruments; equipment

小器 siú heì: petty; narrow-minded.

170

揮 fai: to move; to shake

發揮 faàt-fai: make known; to manifest

器 揮

器 揮

器 揮

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

國民政府之下五個院.最重要嘅一個,算係行政院.因為呢個院主管全國嘅行政.行政院長嘅職任,等於美國政府嘅國務hing。行政院內有一個機關叫做國防部,主理軍事,統領海陸空三軍.

國防部嘅主要任務,當然係負責保衛國土,防守邊界要地,反抗外來侵略.海陸空三軍完全聽國防部嘅命令,同指揮.

中國軍事設備現時更加完備.有好多最新式武器.空軍有各種飛機.海軍亦都有戰laâm.但係中國最大嘅武器,要算軍隊嘅士氣.每個士兵都清楚認識佢做軍人嘅職責.

LESSON 6

WRITING MATERIAL

防

Character Number 201 Radical Number 170
Stroke Number 6 阝，阜

了	阝	阝丶	阝亠	阝亐	防		

守

Character Number 957 Radical Number 40
Stroke Number 6 宀

丶	丶丶	宀	宀一	宁	守		

保

Character Number 871 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 10 亻，人

丿	亻	亻丨	亻冂	亻口	亻口一	亻口十	亻口木
保							

土

Character Number 1169 Radical Number 32
Stroke Number 3 土

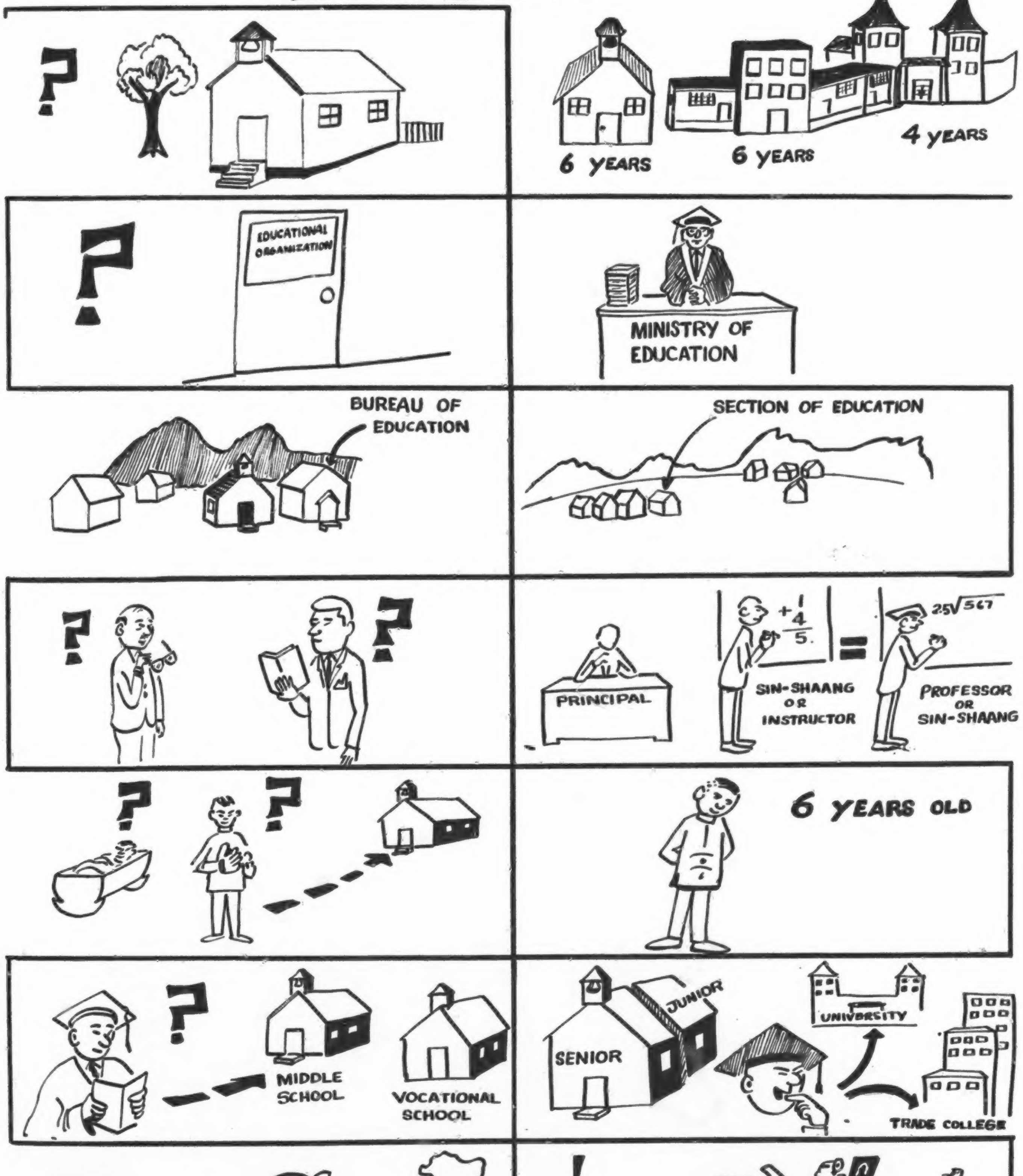
一	十	土					

任

Character Number 1444 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 6 亻，人

丿	亻	亻丿	亻𠂉	仟	任		

LESSON 7


?
6 YEARS
6 YEARS
4 YEARS
?
EDUCATIONAL ORGANIZATION
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION
BUREAU OF EDUCATION
SECTION OF EDUCATION
?
?
PRINCIPAL
+1/4/5.
=
SIN-SHAANG OR INSTRUCTOR
25√567
PROFESSOR OR SIN-SHAANG
?
?
6 YEARS OLD
?
MIDDLE SCHOOL
VOCATIONAL SCHOOL
SENIOR
JUNIOR
UNIVERSITY
TRADE COLLEGE
?
COLLEGE
=
!
=

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Chung-Kwòk kè kaaù-yûk chaì-tô haî tîm-yeûng* kè ne?

Cheung: P'ó-t'ung laī kóng, Chung-Kwòk kè kaaù-yûk chaì-tô tsik haî siú hôk lûk nīn, chung hôk lûk nīn t'ūng taaî hôk seì nīn.

W: Chung-Kwòk kaaù-yûk haāng-chìng kei-kwaan kiù tsô mi-yĕ ne?

C: Chung-Kwòk kaaù-yûk haāng-chìng tsuì ko kei-kwaan kiù tsô Kaaù-Yûk Pô; mooĭ kòh shaáng chûng yaŭ Kaaù-Yûk T'eng; mooĭ kòh shĭ yaŭ Kaaù-Yûk Kûk* waâk-chê Kaaù-Yûk Foh; mooĭ kòh uên yaŭ Kaaù-Yûk Foh.

W: Haaû-cheúng t'ūng kaaù-sz yaŭ mi-yĕ fan-pît ne?

C: Haaû-cheúng haî yat kaan hôk-haaû kè tsuì ko foô-chaàk yān; kaaù shue kè yān kiù tsô kaaù-sz, p'ó t'ung kiù k'uĭ tsô sin-shaang; taaî hôk kè sin-shaang kiù tsô kaaù-shaû.

W: Chung-Kwòk kè saì-man-tsaì keì suì hoi-ch'ì yâp hôk-haaû tûk shue ne?

C: Chung-Kwòk kè saì-man-tsaì taaî-yeùk* tò lûk suì kè shī-haû tsaû hoi-ch'ì yâp hôk-haaû tûk shue.

W: Siú hôk pat-îp ĭ haû, yaŭ ti mi-yĕ kè kaaù-yûk ne?

C: Siú hôk pat-îp ĭ haû, tsaû hóh-ĭ yâp chung hôk, waâk-chê chik îp hôk-haaû. Chung hôk yaû fan-hoi ch'oh-chung t'ūng ko-chung. Ch'oh-chung pat-îp ĭ haû, hóh-ĭ yâp ko-chung, waâk-chê sz-faân hôk-haaû. Ko-chung pat-îp ĭ haû hóh-ĭ yâp taaî hôk, waâk-chê chuen-foh hôk-haaû.

W: Chung-Kwòk kè taaî hôk yaŭ keì toh kòh hôk-uên* ne?

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C: Chung-Kwòk kè taaî hôk yaŭ mān-hôk uên*, leĭ-hôk uên*, faàt-hôk uên*, i-hôk uên*, kung-hôk uên*, nūng-hôk uên* táng táng, t'ūng Meĭ-Kwòk kè taaî hôk ch'a-m̄-toh.

LESSON 7

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wŏng: What is the Chinese educational system like?

Cheung: In general, the Chinese educational system consists of six years of elementary school, six years of middle school, and four years of university.

W: What are the Chinese educational administrative organizations?

C: The highest educational administrative organization in China is known as the Ministry of Education. There is also a Department of Education in each province. Each city has a Bureau of Education or a Section of Education; and each district has a Section of Education.

W: What is the difference between a principal and an instructor?

C: A principal is the person in a school with highest responsibility. The one who teaches is an instructor and is known generally as Sin-Shaang. The Sin-Shaang in a university is called a professor.

W: At what age do the Chinese children begin school?

C: The Chinese children begin school when they reach the age of about six.

W: What kind of education do they receive after their graduation from the elementary school?

C: After their graduation from the elementary school, they can enter either the middle school or the vocational school. The middle school is divided into junior high and senior high.

LESSON 7

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

After their graduation from junior high, they can enter either senior high or a normal school. After their graduation from senior high, they can enter either a university or technical college.

W: How many colleges does a university have in China?

C: Similar to the university in the United States of America, a Chinese university has the college of arts and literature, the college of sciences, the college of law, the college of medicine, the college of engineering, and the college of agriculture.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The Chinese educational system is not exactly the same as that of the U.S.
2. He is working as a clerk in the Bureau of Education.
3. I have known the principal of this elementary school for a long time.
4. The Department of Education plans to build another academic institution before the end of this year.
5. A high school education is not necessary for this kind of work.
6. She is a professor of the medical college at the University of Hong Kong.
7. This student is registered in the college of law but he spends most of his time in the college of agriculture.
8. The normal school is a part of the college of arts and letters.
9. After graduating from a technical college, a person may not go into the vocation he studied.
10. In some universities, the college of engineering is a part of the college of science.
11. The difference between an instructor and a professor is very great in terms of responsibilities and duties.
12. Almost twenty years of schooling are required before a person can graduate from a medical school in the U.S.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

13. Under the British system, there will be no more than one university in any city or district.

14. A person can enter a certain college without graduating from high school.

15. The teachers of this academic institution are of different nationalities.

LESSON 7

WORD LIST

1.	kaaù-yûk	education
2.	siû hôk	elementary school
3.	chung hôk	high school
4.	taaî hôk	university, college
5.	kaaù-yûk t'eng	department of education
6.	foh	section
7.	fan-pît	difference
8.	kaaù-sz	teacher
9.	chik-îp	vocation, profession, occupation
10.	ch'oh-chung	junior high school
11.	ko-chung	senior high school
12.	sz-faân hôk haaû	normal school
13.	chuen-foh hôk haaû	technical college
14.	hôk-uên*	academic institute
15.	mān-hôk uên*	college of arts and letters
16.	leĭ-hôk uên*	college of sciences
17.	faàt-hôk uên*	college of law
18.	i-hôk uên*	college of medicine
19.	kung-hôk uên*	college of engineering
20.	nūng-hôk uên*	college of agriculture

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

188

科	foh: series; rank; department
科學	foh-hôk: science
科長	foh cheúng: chief of a department
内科	noî-foh: medical practice.
外科	ngoî-foh: surgical.

1066

師	sz: division; army; master; teacher.
師長	sz cheúng: divisional commander teacher.
師表	sz-piú: a pattern; model

107

助	chôh: to assist; help
幫助	pong-chôh: to aid; assist
内助	noî-chôh: helpmate (wife)
樂助	lôk-chôh: free-will contribution

科 師 助

科 師 助

科 師 助

518

官	koon: officer; official.
官長	koon-cheúng: officials; ruler.
文官	mān-koon: civil official.
升官	shing koon: to be promoted.
法官	faàt-koon: a judge.

1175

圖	t'ō : plan; chart; map; scheme; plot; seal.
圖樣	t'ō-yeûng: plan; diagram.
圖書館	t'ō-shue-koón: library.
繪圖	kw'ooì t'ō: to sketch; to paint.

官 官 圖 图

官 圖

官 图

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

872

補	pó: to mend; to patch; to fill up; to supplement.
補身	pó shan: nourishing; invigorating.
補助	pó-chŏh: to help; to assist.

166

範	faân: pattern; standard
模範	mō-faân: model; example
範圍	faân-waī: limits scope; sphere

128

專	chuen: single; special
專心	chuen-sam: engrossed in; concentration
專家	chuen-ka: a specialist
專門	chuen-moōn: specialization
專科	chuen-foh: special course

補 範 專

補 範 專

補 範 耑 专

1496

育	yûk: to bear; to nurture; to rear; to foster.
教育	kaaû-yûk: education; to teach.
體育	t'ái-yûk: physical training.

915

修	sau: to repair, to improve; to adorn; to cultivate
修整	sau-chíng: to repair; to put in order.
修身	sau shan: to cultivate virtuous conduct.

育 修

育 修

育 修

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

普通黎講,中國嘅教育制度大約同美國嘅一樣,即係小學六年,中學六年,大學本科四年.中學亦分初中三年,高中三年,不過多數同埋喺一間學校.

中國全國教育行政,由行政院教育部主理.然後每省有教育廳,每個市或每個縣有教育局,分別打理各地方嘅教育行政.

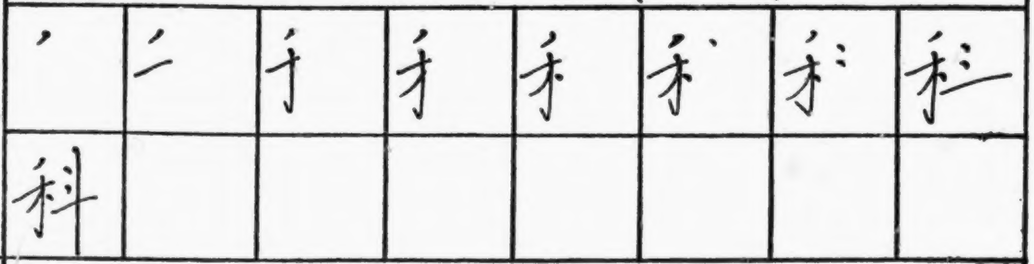
中國學校有啲係官立,或者叫做公立.但係有好多係私立嘅.亦有啲係半官私,即係私立學校得到政府補助經費.普通大學嘅課程,分為文科理科兩種有啲專教一科,叫做專門學校,訓練教員嘅叫做師範學校.各大學都自設有圖書館,利便學生自修.

LESSON 7

WRITING MATERIAL

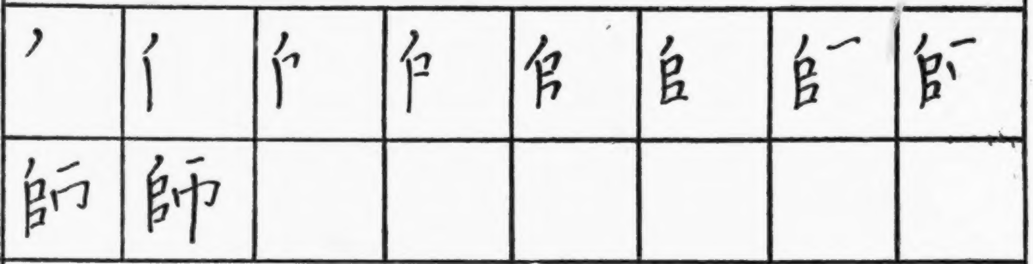
科

Character Number 188 Radical Number 115
Stroke Number 9 禾，禾



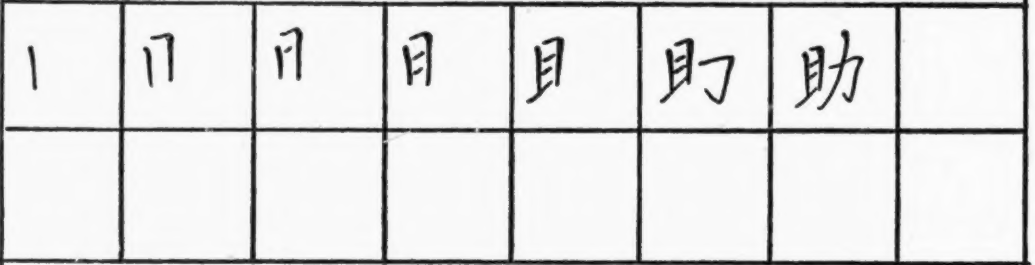
師

Character Number 1066 Radical Number 50
Stroke Number 10 巾



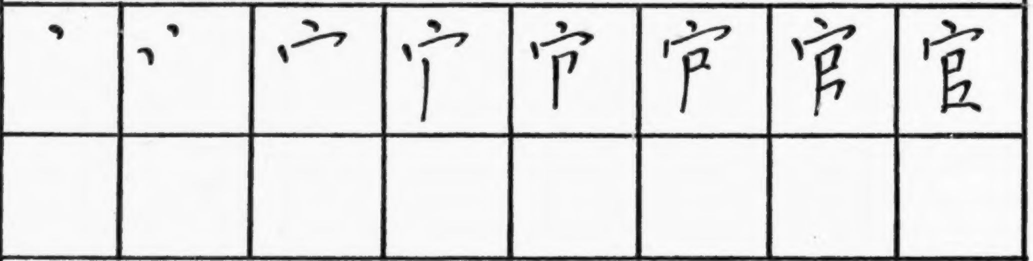
助

Character Number 107 Radical Number 19
Stroke Number 7 力



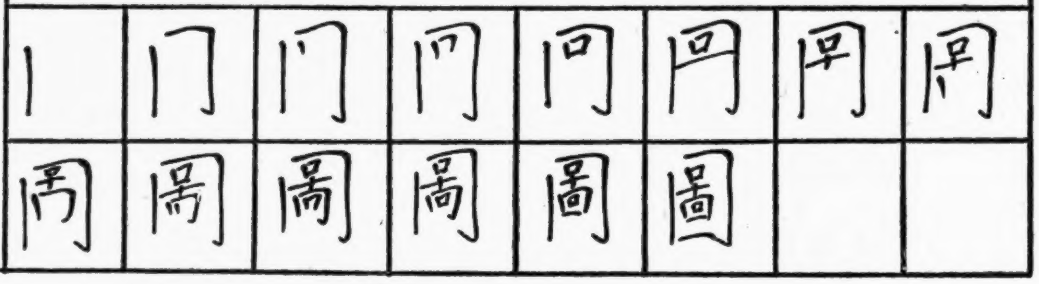
官

Character Number 518 Radical Number 40
Stroke Number 8 宀

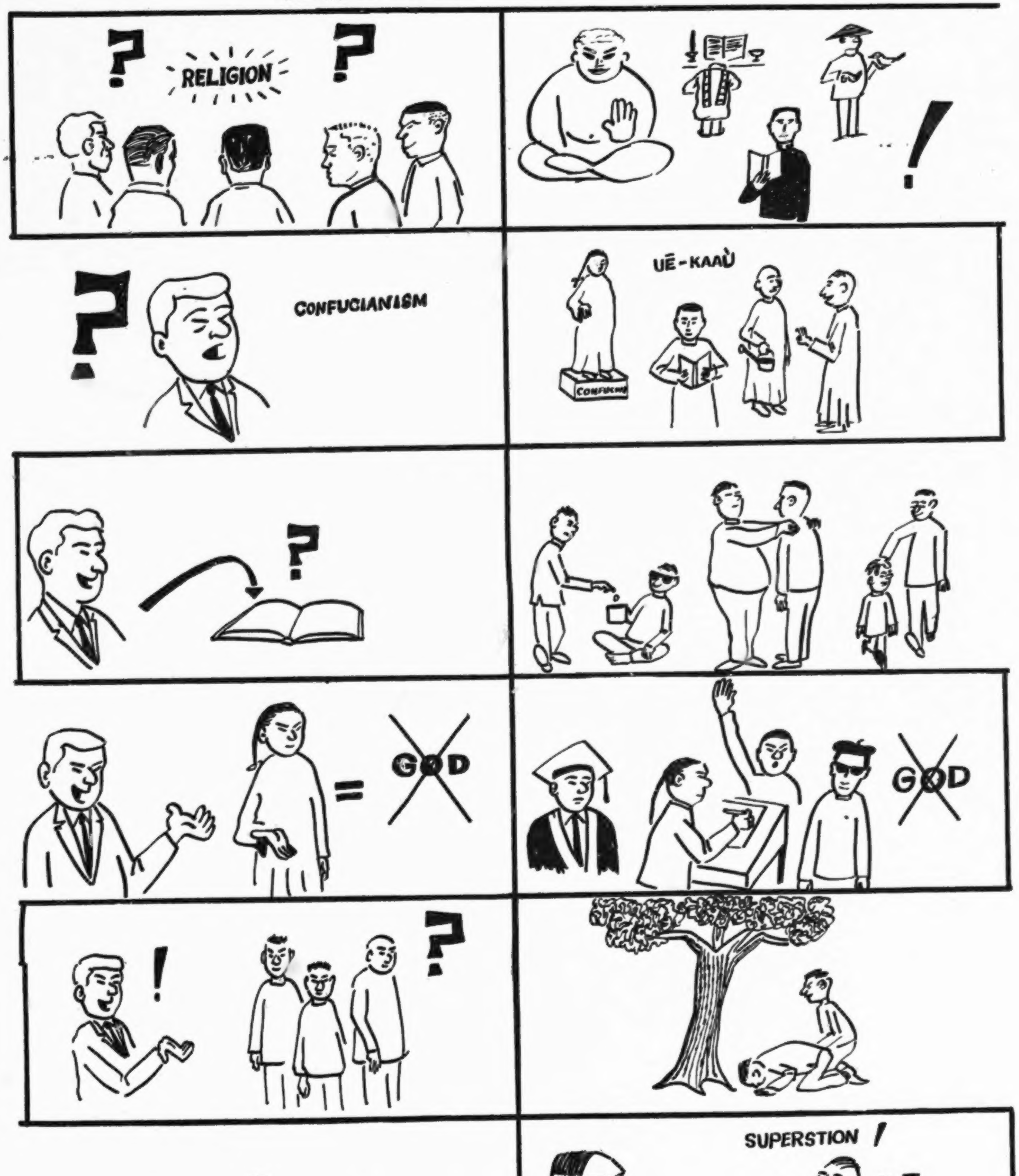


圖

Character Number 1175 Radical Number 31
Stroke Number 14 囗



LESSON 8


?
RELIGION
?
!
?
CONFUCIANISM
UĒ-KAAÙ
?
GOD
GOD
!
?
SUPERSTION !
NOT
RELIGION

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Chung-Kwòk yān sùn mi-yĕ kaaù ne?

Cheung: Chung-Kwòk haî yat kòh sùn-yeŭng tsẑ-yaū kè kwòk-ka, shóh-ĭ yaŭ hó toh tsung-kaaù, yaŭ ti sùn Kei-Tuk Kaaù, yaŭ ti sùn T'in-Chué Kaaù, yaŭ ti sùn Fât Kaaù, yaŭ ti sùn Tô Kaaû, yaŭ ti sùn Húng Kaaù, yaŭ ti mi-yĕ to sùn, mi-yĕ to paaì.

W: Húng Kaaù haî mi-yĕ ne?

C: Húng Kaaù yaû kiù tsô Uē Kaaù, Húng Kaaù poón-loì m̄-haî yat chúng tsung-kaaù, chì-haî yat chúng chìt-hôk. Sùn Húng Kaaù kè yān sùn Húng-Tsź kè chìt-hôk, shūng-paaì Húng-Tsź shóh kaaù kè lūn-leĭ, tô-tak, tûk Húng-Tsź shóh sé kè shue.

W: Húng-Tsź shóh kaaù kè lūn-leĭ, tô-tak, t'ūng shóh sé kè shue haî kwaan-ue mi-yĕ ne?

C: Húng-Tsź shóh kaaù kè lūn-leĭ, tô-tak, t'ūng shóh sé kè shue haî kwaan-ue yān, î, laĭ, chì, sùn, shīng.

W: Kám, Húng-Tsź m̄-haî wâ k'uĭ tsẑ-keî haî shān, tsẑ-keî haî Sheûng-Taì là pòh?

C: Haî là. Húng-Tsź haî yat kòh mān-yān, chuè-tsòk ka, kaaù-yûk ka, chìng-chî ka, t'ūng chìt-hôk ka. K'uĭ m̄-haî shān, m̄-haî Sheûng-Taì.

W: Neĭ wâ yaŭ-ti yān mi-yĕ to sùn, mi-yĕ to paaì, k'uĭ-teî sùn mi-yĕ paaì mi-yĕ ne?

C: Kuĭ-teî sùn yat p'oh shuê ooĭ peî fuk k'uĭ-teî kè shī-haû,

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

k'uĭ-teî tsaû paaì kôh p'oh shuê, k'uĭ-teî sùn yat-faaì shêk ooĭ peî shaû k'uĭ-teî kè shī-haû, k'uĭ-teî tsaû paaì kôh faaì shêk. Ni-ti haî maī-sùn, m̄-haî sùn kaaù.

LESSON 8

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: In what religion do the Chinese believe?

Cheung: China is a country of freedom of worship, therefore there are many religions. Some of the people believe in Protestantism, some believe in Catholicism, some believe in Buddhism, some believe in Toaism, some believe in Confucianism, some believe in anything.

W: What is Confucianism?

C: Confucianism is also known as Uē-Kaaù. Originally it was not religion, but a school of philosophy. The followers of Confucianism believe in the philosophy of Confucius, worship the ethics and virtue taught by Confucius and read the books written by him.

W: To what do the ethics and virtues taught by Confucius and the books written by him pertain?

C: The ethics and virtues which were taught by Confucius and the books which were written by him pertain to humanity, righteousness, rites, sagaciousness, faith, and sincerity.

W: In that case, does it mean that Confucius did not claim himself as a deity or a God?

C: That is right, Confucius was a scholar, an author, and educator, a politician, and a philosopher. He was not a deity or God.

W: You said some people believe in anything and worship anything.

LESSON 8

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

What do they believe, and what do they worship?

C: When they believe a tree can give them felicity, they worship that tree. When they believe a stone can give them longevity, they worship that stone. This is superstition not belief in a religion.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Confucius should not be looked upon as a deity.
2. His wife went through college but she is still very superstitious.
3. A lot of people believed that happiness and longevity go together.
4. This is the tree that we saw from the top of that rock.
5. The author of this book is very intelligent as well as very capable.
6. He has faith in God and also faith in himself.
7. Sincerity is this man's greatest virtue.
8. Because of his humanitarian attitude, he is doing his best to help others.
9. The example of righteousness set by many great men in history should help us to face our difficulties.
10. Taoism has a different set of ethics when compared with that of Buddhism.
11. He is a politician but he believes in Protestantism.
12. Those who believe in Catholicism also believe in God.
13. A philosopher may be an educator; but an educator may not be a philosopher.
14. We believe in freedom of religion as well as freedom of speech and freedom of press in the U.S.
15. Chinese people worship their ancestors.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. Liberty is one of the most valuable things that we have in the U.S.

LESSON 8

WORD LIST

1.	tsung-kaaù	religion
2.	sùn-yeŭng	faith, worship
3.	tsẑ-yaū	free, freedom, liberty
4.	Kei-Tuk Kaaù	Protestantism
5.	T'in-Chuè Kaau	Catholicism
6.	Fât-Kaaù	Buddhism
7.	Tô-Kaaù	Toaism
8.	Hḿng-Kaaù	Confucianism
9.	Uē-Kaaù	Confucianism
10.	paaì	to worship
11.	lūn-leĭ	ethics
12.	tô-tak	virtue
13.	yān	humanity
14.	î	righteousness
15.	chì	sagaciousness
16.	shĭng	sincerity
17.	shān	deity, God
18.	Sheûng-Taì	God
19.	chuè-tsòk ka	author, writer
20.	p'oh	classifier, auxiliary noun
21.	fuk	felicity, happiness
22.	shêk	stone, rock
23.	shaû	longevity

LESSON 8

WORD LIST

24.	maī-sùn	superstition, superstitious
25.	shuê	tree

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

946

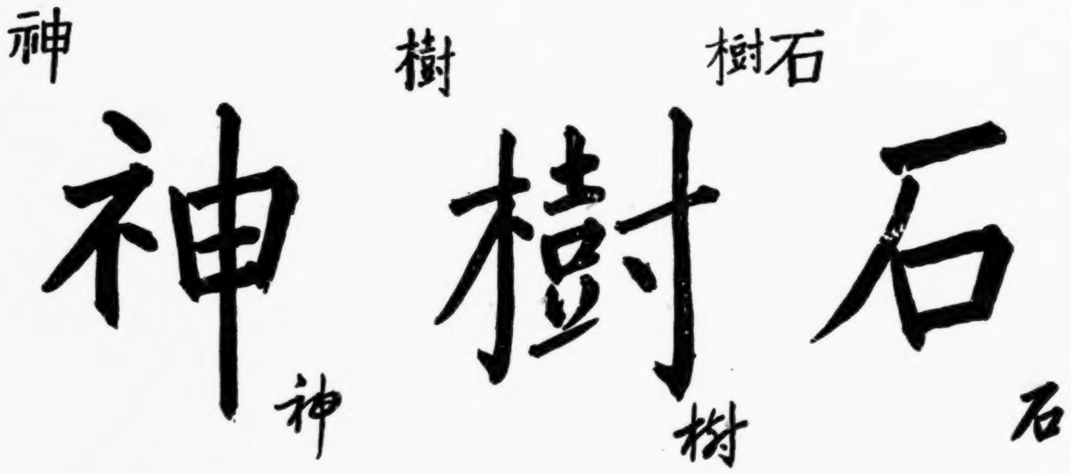
神	shān: spirit; deity; divine; the spirit; energy.
神父	shān-foô: priest.
神經	shān-king: the nerve; crazy.

1012

樹	shuê: tree; plant; to plant.
樹木	shuê mûk: trees.
樹林	shuê-lām: forest; grove.

965

石	shêk: stone; rock; firm; a weight; measure.
石頭	shêk-t'aū: stone; boulder.
石油	shêk-yaū: petroleum.

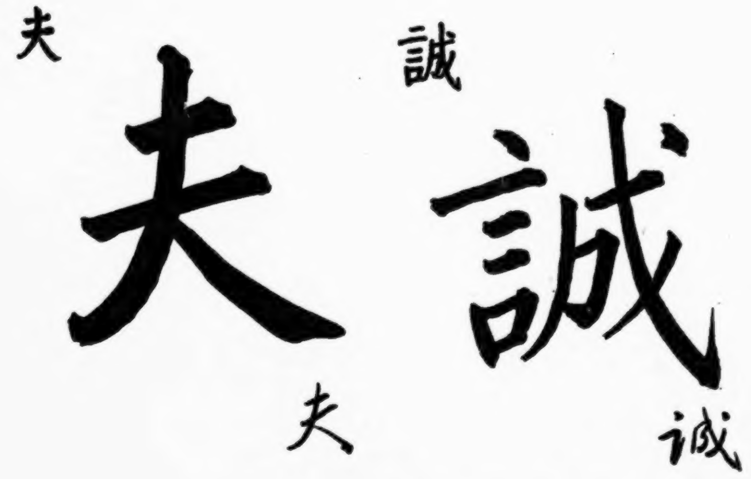


203

夫	foo: husband; man.
丈夫	chêung-foo: husband.
夫人	foo-yān: wife; Mrs.
夫婦	foo foŏ: husband and wife
工夫	kung-foo: work

994

誠	shīng: sincere; faithful.
誠實	shīng-shât: sincere; guiltless; honest.
誠意	shīng-ì: sincerity.



LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

224

福 fuk: happiness; blessed; felicity

幸福 hâng-fuk: happiness; felicity

福利 fuk-leî: welfare

發福 faàt-fuk: to grow fat

1289

財 ts'oī: property; wealth; valuables.

財物 ts'oī mât: property; effects; valuables.

財政 ts'oī-chìng: finance.

財產 ts'oī-ch'aán: property; estate.

1112

德 tak: virtue; goodness; conduct; power.

德行 tak-hâng: moral deed; upright conduct.

德國 tak-kwòk: Germany.

福　財　德

福　財　德

福　財　德

667

迷 maī: to deceive; to bewitch; to be possessed

迷信 maī-sùn: superstition

昏迷 fan-maī: faint; unconscious.

迷惑 maī-waák: to delude; to infatuate.

1325

宗 tsung: ancestor; origin; sort.

宗旨 tsung-chí: purpose; the leading idea.

宗教 tsung-kaaù: religion.

迷　宗

迷　宗

迷　宗

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

中國係一個信 yeũng 自由嘅國家，有人信基 Tuk 教，有人信天主教，有人信回教，信邊種教，都係隨每個人中意。

但係有啲外國人，以為中國係孔教嘅國家，拜孔夫子。其實孔子唔係一個教主，亦冇話自己係神，或係上帝，佢只係講道德。幾千年來，中國人跟住佢所教嘅去做，所以佢嘅學說，就成為教條一樣。但係冇人好似拜神敢黎拜佢。所以孔子唔係神。

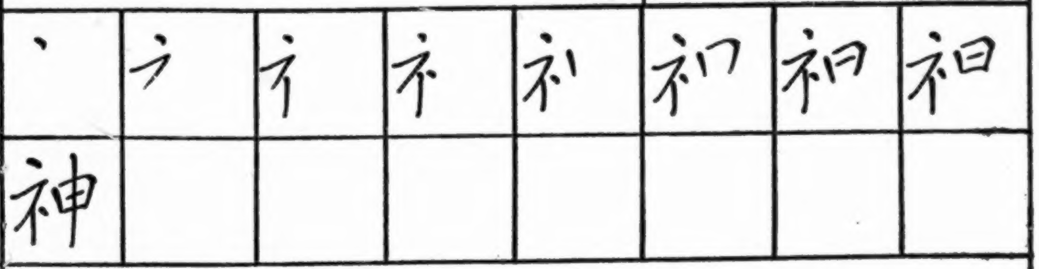
不過，有啲中國人，唔係信定一種教，只係迷信，乜野都拜，好似拜石頭做神，拜樹木做神，誠心去拜，望呢啲神 pei 財 pei 福佢地。但係呢種迷信嘅人，現時少阻好多啦。

LESSON 8

WRITING MATERIAL

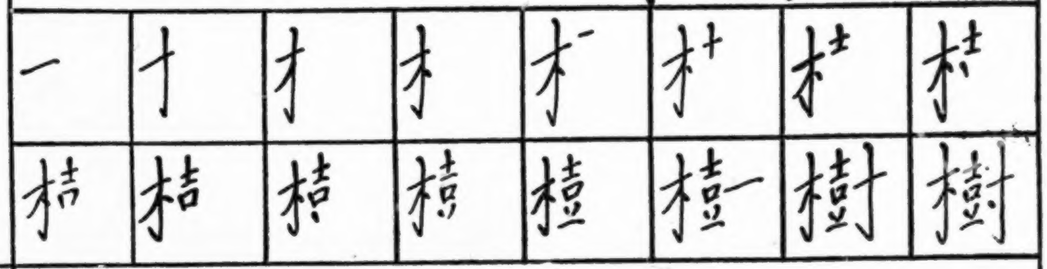
神

Character Number 946	Radical Number 113
Stroke Number 9	礻，示



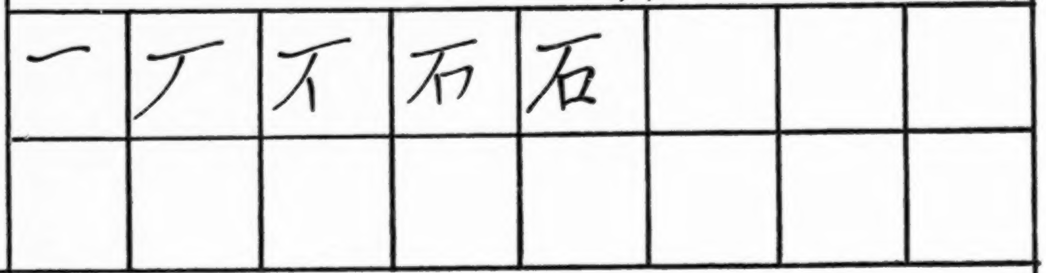
樹

Character Number 1012	Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 16	木，木



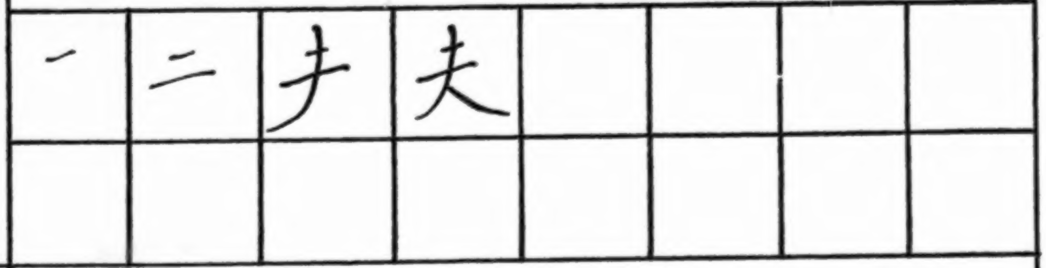
石

Character Number 965	Radical Number 112
Stroke Number 5	石



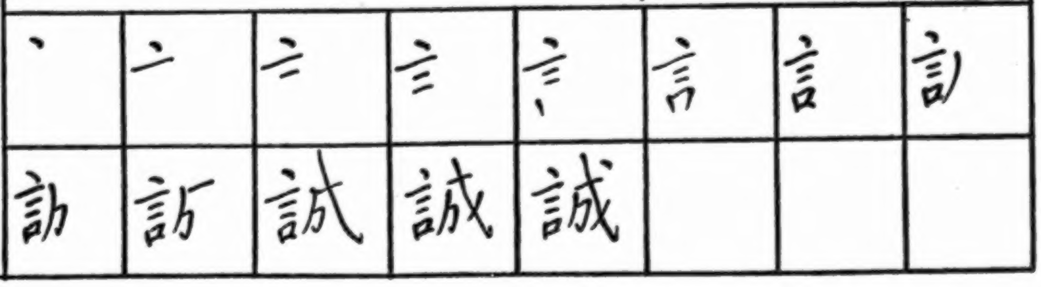
夫

Character Number 203	Radical Number 37
Stroke Number 4	大

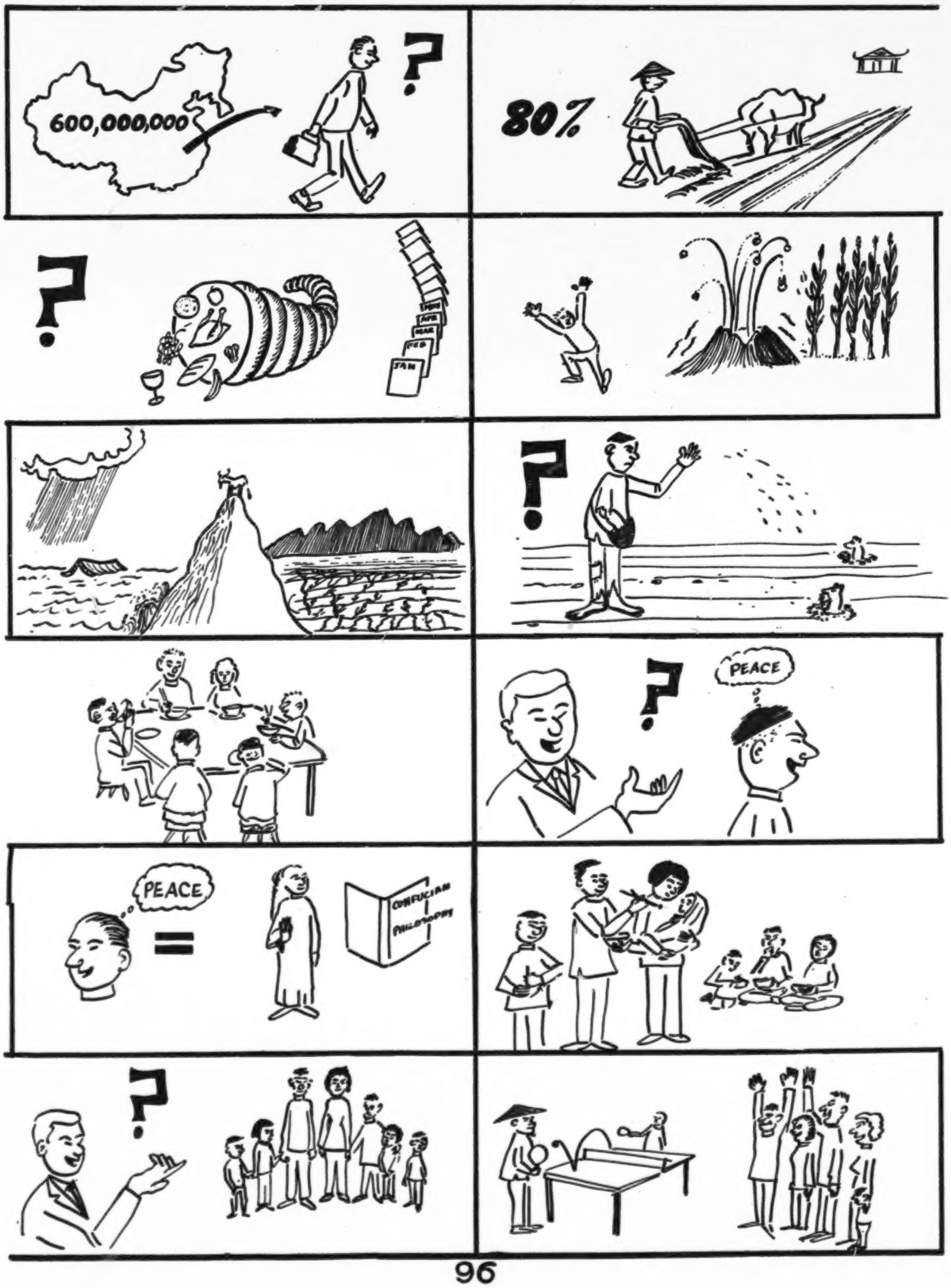


誠

Character Number 994	Radical Number 149
Stroke Number 13	言



LESSON 9


600,000,000
?
80%
?
MAY
APR
MAR
FEB
JAN
?
?
PEACE
PEACE
CONFUCIAN PHILOSOPHY
?

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Chung-Kwòk ī-ka yaŭ lûk-maân-maân kàm toh kè yān-haú, k'uĭ-teî kè shang-oôt tîm-yeûng* ne?

Cheung: Chung-Kwòk kè yān-haú paàk-fân-chi-paàt-shâp haî nūng yān, shóh-ĭ k'uĭ-teî kè shang-oôt toh shò t'ūng nūng îp yaŭ kwaan-haî.

W: Chung-Kwòk mooĭ nīn kè nūng ch'aán-pán kaù m̄-kaù kung-k'ap ts'uēn Chung-Kwòk yān ne?

C: Uē-kwóh mŏ t'in tsoi kè shī-haû, Chung-Kwòk mooĭ nīn kè nūng ch'aán-pán hóh-ĭ kaù kung-k'ap ts'uēn Chung-Kwòk yān, uē-kwóh yaŭ shuî tsoi, hŏn tsoi, t'ūng k'eī-t'a t'in tsoi kè shī-haû, tsaû m̄-kaù là.

W: Chung-Kwòk nūng yān kè shang-oôt, haî m̄-haî hó kaan-naān ne?

C: Chung-Kwòk nūng yān kè shang-oôt sui-īn hó kaan-naān, taân-haî k'uĭ-teî hó chi tsuk, ī-ch'é yaŭ yat-chúng tsing-shān sheûng kè faaì-lôk, t'ūng ka-t'ìng sheûng kè faaì-lôk.

W: Ni ti tsing-shān sheûng kè faaì-lôk, t'ūng ka-t'ìng sheûng kè faaì-lôk haî tîm-yeûng* kè ne?

C: Tsing-shān sheûng kè faaì-lôk haî shaû Húng-Kaaù kè yìng-heúng, tsik haî shaû Húng-Tsź chìt-hôk kè ying-heúng, shóh-ĭ k'uĭ-teî to yaŭ "chi tsuk sheūng lôk" kè t'aaì-tô. Ka-t'ìng kè faaì-lôk, tsaû haî Chung-Kwòk taaî ka-t'ìng chaì-tô kè hó ch'uè, yan-waî uk-k'eì kè yān, foô mŏ, tsaí nuĭ*, hing taî, tsź mooî*, to chuê maaì yat-ts'aì*, taaî-ka oì-oô, taaî-ka pong-chôh.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W: Haî m̄-haî hó toh Chung-Kwòk yān chung-ì taaî ka-t'ìng chaì-tô ne?

C: Haî là. Hó toh Chung-Kwòk yān chung-ì taaî ka-t'ìng chaì-tô, yaŭ ti taaî ka-t'ìng yaŭ keì shâp kòh yān chuê haì yat shuè, yaŭ ti taaî ka-t'ìng yaŭ seì nğ toî chuê haì yat shuè, k'uĭ-teî tsô kung kè shī-haû, yat-ts'aī* tsô kung, faaì-lôk kè shī-haû yat-ts'aī* heúng-shaû.

LESSON 9

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: China now has a population of six hundred million, what is their livelihood?

Cheung: Eighty per cent of the Chinese population are farmers; therefore, their livelihood is most closely related to agriculture.

W: Are the Chinese agricultural products sufficient to supply all the Chinese each year?

C: In absence of calamities, the Chinese agricultural products are sufficient to supply all the Chinese each year. If there are floods, draughts, or other calamities, the agricultural products are not sufficient.

W: Are the lives of the Chinese farmers hard and difficult?

C: Although the lives of the Chinese farmers are hard and difficult, they are well contented. Moreover, they possess peace of mind and enjoy family pleasures.

W: What is the nature of this peace of mind and enjoyment of family pleasure?

C: Peace of mind is the result of the influence of Confucianism, that is, the influence of the Confucian philosophy. There exists the state of mind of "Content bringing happiness." The family pleasures are the essence of the Chinese large family system, since all members of the household: parents, children, brothers, and sisters, are living together; caring for each other, and assisting one another.

LESSON 9

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W: Are there many Chinese who like the large family system?

C: Yes, many Chinese like the large family system. Some large families have several score of people living together and some have four or five generations living together. When they work they work together; when they are happy they rejoice together.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. This is not the time to think of poetry.
2. We can enjoy many agricultural products here.
3. They need all the help they can get to prevent a flood.
4. Draughts and other calamities change the livelihood of farmers.
5. We are not in any way directly connected with agriculture.
6. Even though he is not rich he is very contented.
7. My family doctor influenced me to study medicine.
8. He may be old, but his spirit is as young as a ten-year-old.
9. Each and every member of his family has the same attitude toward this matter.
10. We shall go together next Monday afternoon.
11. Two days ago, they were strangers; but now they live together under the same roof.
12. I need your help to cook this chicken.
13. Parents love their children and wish them happiness.
14. His attitude is influenced by Buddhism; but he is not superstitious.
15. The life of an American farmer is not difficult.

LESSON 9

WORD LIST

1.	nūng-yān	farmer, peasant
2.	nūng-îp	agriculture
3.	kwaan-haî	relationship, connection
4.	nūng-ch'aán-pán	agricultural product
5.	t'in-tsoi	calamity
6.	shuì-tsoi	flood
7.	hŏn-tsoi	draught
8.	chi-tsuk	content, satisfied
9.	tsing-shān	spirit, mind
10.	ka-t'īng	family
11.	shaû	by, to receive
12.	yîng-heúng	influence
13.	chi tsuk sheūng lôk	happiness in contentment
14.	t'aaì-tô	attitude
15.	chuê-maaī	live together
16.	yat-ts'aī*	together
17.	oì-oô	to love
18.	pong-chôh	to assist; help
19.	toî	generation
20.	heúng-shaû	to enjoy, enjoyment

LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

776

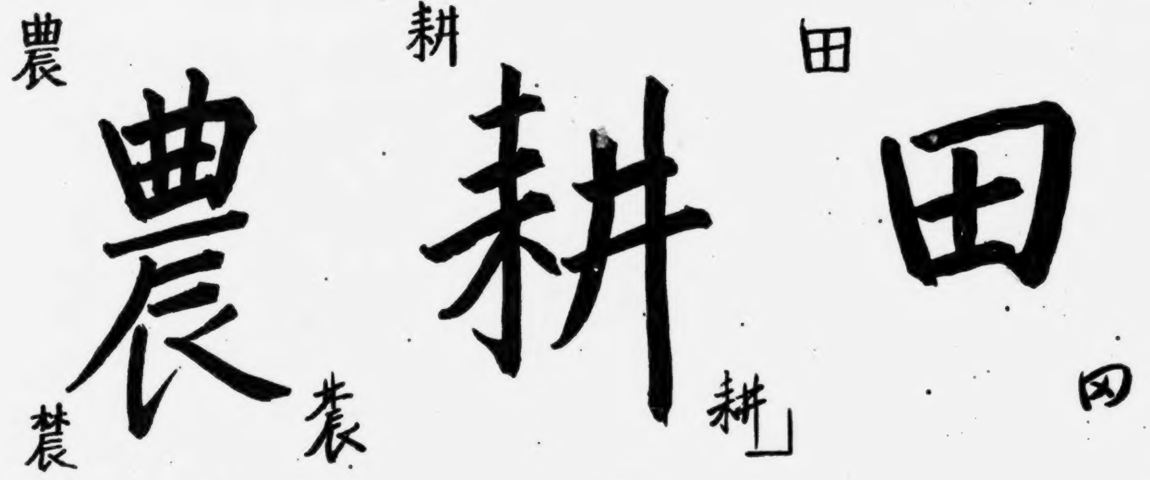
農	nūng: to plant; to farm; to cultivate.
農夫	nūng-foo: a farmer.
農業	nūng-îp: agriculture.
農產	nūng ch'aán: agricultural product.

390

耕	kaang: to plow; till; cultivate
耕田	kaang t'Īn: to plough the fields; farming
耕種	kaang-chùng: to plow & sow; agriculture

1143

田	t'Ī: field; land.
田地	t'Īn-teî: cultivated field.
禾田	wōh t'Īn: rice field.

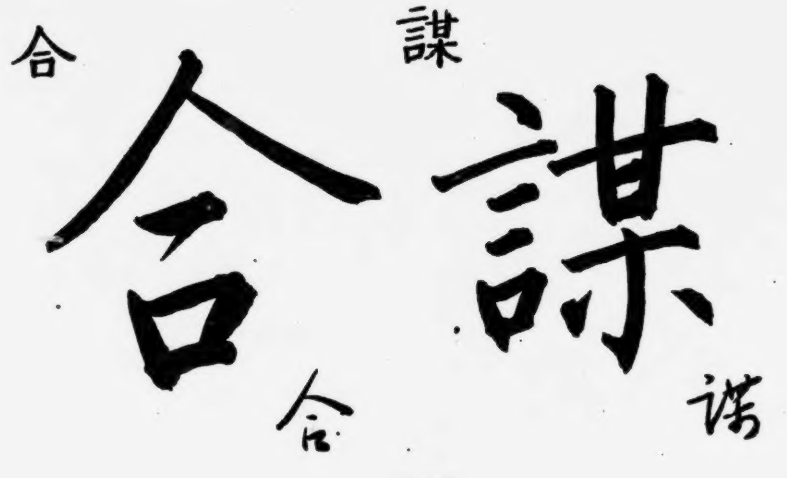


312

合	hôp: to agree with; match together
合同	hop-t'ūng: a contract
合用	hôp-yûng: useful
合作	hôp-tsòk: cooperation
合格	hôp-kaàk: eligible; pass the exam.

679

謀	maū: to plot; to plan.
謀生	maū-shaang: to seek a living.
謀反	maū fa̍n: to plan rebellion; treason.
謀害	maū hoî: to deliberate injury.
陰謀	yam-maū: secret plot.



LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

1026

息 sik; to rest; quiet; interest on money; production.

休息 yau-sik: to rest.

入息 yâp-sik: income.

1282

災 tsoi: calamity; affliction

災難 tsoi-naân: calamity; suffering.

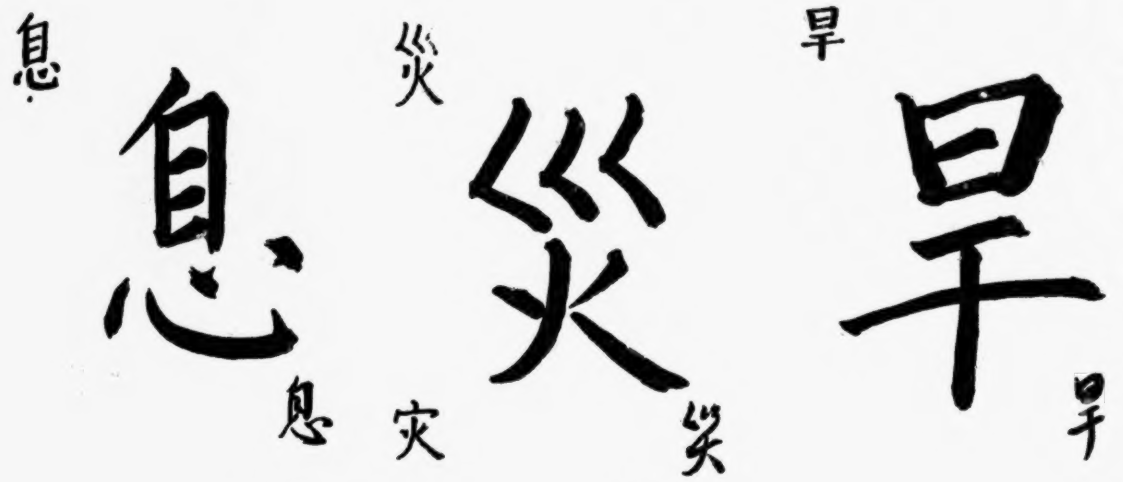
水災 shuí tsoi: flood.

305

旱 hŏn: dry; drought

天旱 t'in hŏn: drought

旱災 hŏn tsoi: distress from drought



231

豐 fung: abundant; prolific

豐足 fung-tsuk: plentiful

豐年 fung nīn: a plentiful year.

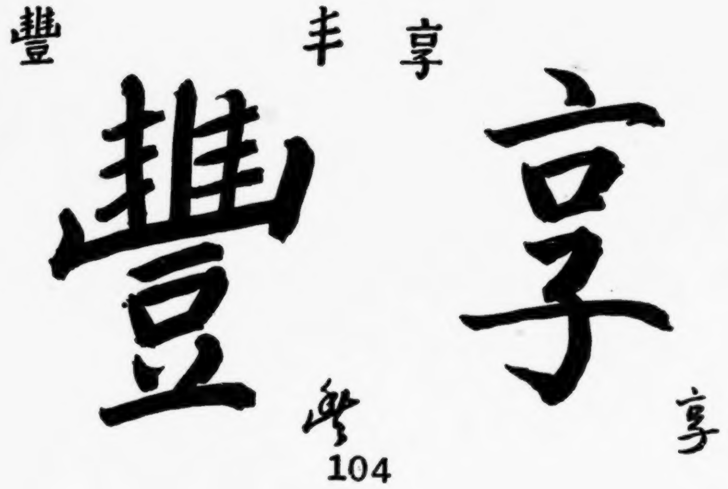
豐富 fung-foò: rich; opulent; abundant

278

享 heúng: to enjoy; to receive

享福 heúng fuk: to enjoy happiness

享受 heúng-shaû: to enjoy; receive



LESSON 9

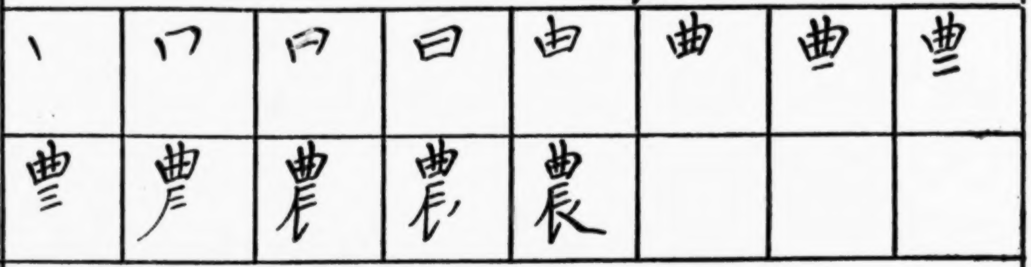
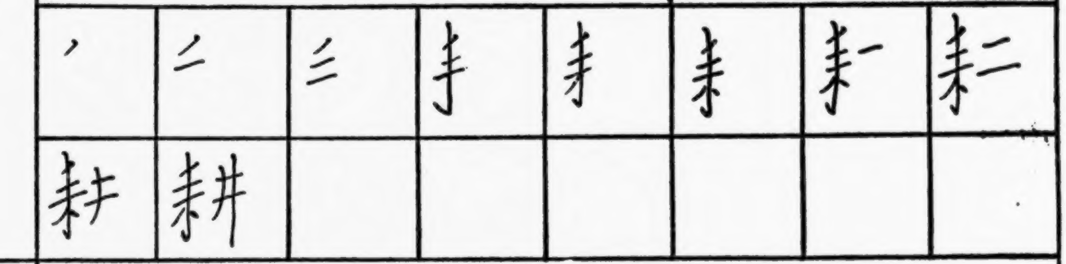
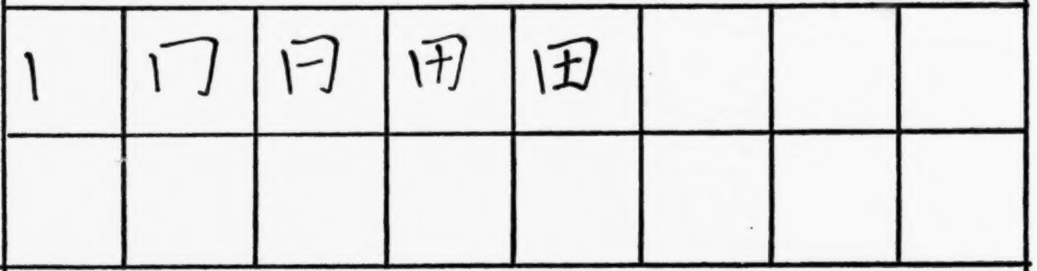
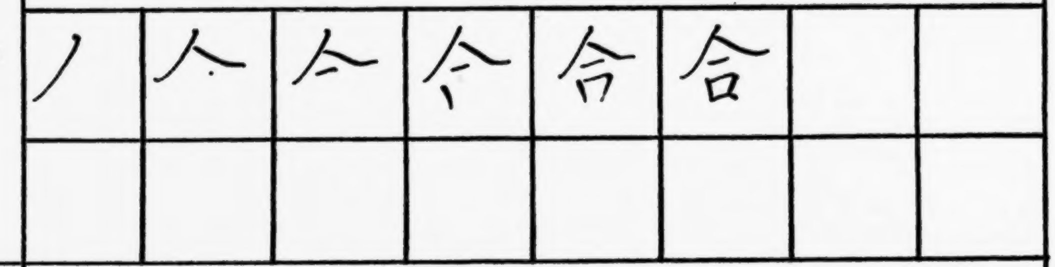
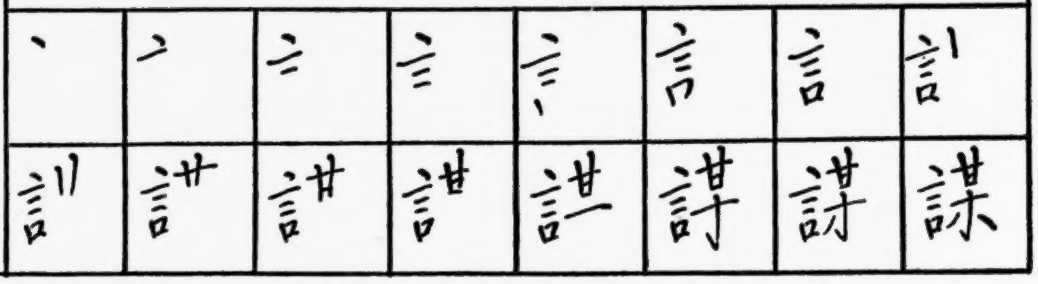
READING MATERIAL

中國向來都係農業嘅國家，大多數人以耕田種菜謀生。佢地嘅生活，當然比較第二種職業嘅人辛苦啲。如果冇天災，時年好，所種嘅野得到豐收，佢地可以安樂啲，但係有水災，旱災等等。佢地嘅生活就更艱難啦。無論點樣，佢地成年做工，都要好勤力。中國人有一句話“日出而作，日入而息”就係形容農人嘅勤力同辛苦。

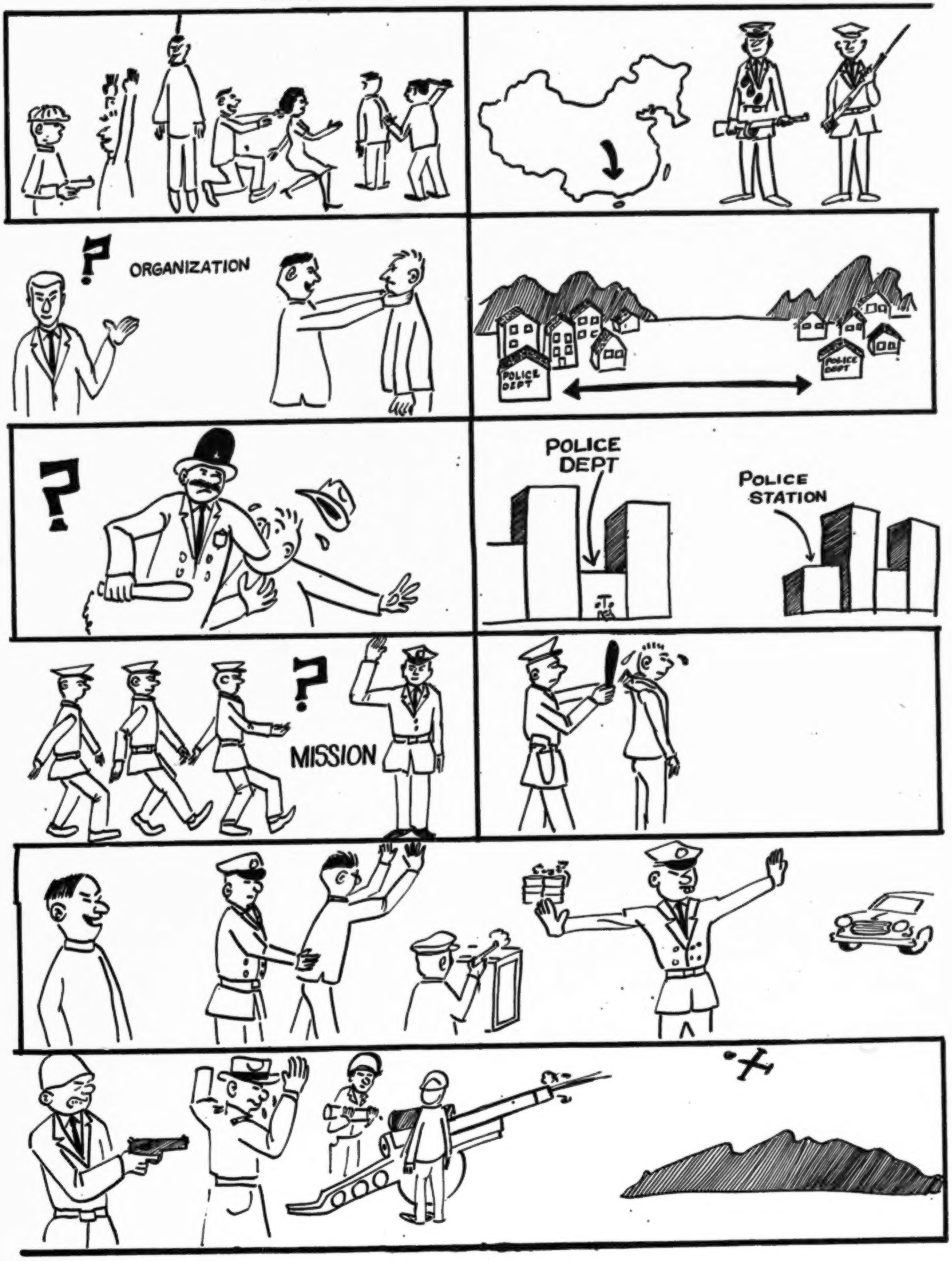
不過中國農人雖然辛苦，佢地受孔子道理嘅影響，睇重家庭，父母子女，兄弟，姊妹，大家同住，大家愛護，大家幫助，大家合作亦都得到好多快樂。喺過年過節嘅時候亦都有好多活動。總之，佢地嘅生活雖然唔容易，亦唔係乜野享受都冇。

LESSON 9

WRITING MATERIAL

農	Character Number 776 Stroke Number 13	Radical Number 161 辰	
耕	Character Number 390 Stroke Number 10	Radical Number 127 耒	
田	Character Number 1143 Stroke Number 5	Radical Number 102 田	
合	Character Number 312 Stroke Number 6	Radical Number 30 口	
謀	Character Number 679 Stroke Number 16	Radical Number 149 言	

LESSON 10


ORGANIZATION
POLICE DEPT
POLICE DEPT
POLICE DEPT
POLICE STATION
MISSION

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Mooĭ kòh shīng-shĭ to yaŭ tá kìp, k'eūng kaan, t'au yĕ, maū shaàt, nĝ-shaàt, tsẑ-shaàt kè òn-kîn* faàt-shang, haî m̄-haî à?

Cheung: Mooĭ kòh shīng-shĭ to yaŭ tá kìp, k'eūng kaan, t'au yĕ, maū shaàt, nĝ-shaàt, tsẑ-shaàt kè òn-kîn* faàt-shang. Wā-Naām kè shīng-shĭ yîk-to haî yat-yeûng, taân-haî Wā-Naām kè shīng-shĭ kè chî-on suèn hó là.

W: Kòk shuè teî-fong yaŭ mi-yĕ kei-kwaan waī-ch'ī chî-on ne?

C: Kòk shuè teî-fong yaŭ Kîng-Ch'aàt Kûk* waī-ch'ī chî on.

W: Kòk shuè teî-fong kè Kîng-Ch'aàt Kûk* yûng mi-yĕ paân-faàt waī-ch'ī chî-on ne?

C: Mooĭ kòh shīng-shĭ yaŭ yat kòh Kîng-Ch'aàt Kûk*, haî shĭ noî mooĭ yat kòh k'ui-wîk yaû yaŭ yat kòh Kîng-Ch'aàt Fan-Kûk*.

W: Kîng-ch'aàt kè chué-iù yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ ne?

C: Kîng ch'aàt kè chué-iù yâm-mô haî waī-ch'ī teî-fong chî-on, pó-oô yān-mān kè shaang-mîng, ts'oī-ch'aán, uê-fōng kòk chúng òn-kîn* kè faàt-shang t'ūng waī-ch'ī kaau-t'ung táng táng. Taân-haî haî chìn shī kè yâm-mô haî fōng-chí kaàn-tîp oôt-tûng, hîp-chôh fōng hung, chí-fai shoh-saàn yān-haú táng táng.

LESSON 10

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: Do cases of robbery, rape, larceny, murder, manslaughter, and suicide occur in every city?

Cheung: Cases of robbery, rape, larceny, murder, manslaugher, and suicide occur in every city. Cities of South China are no exception. But the internal control and regulation of cities in South China is considered good.

W: What organization is charged with the maintenance of internal order in each community?

C: Each community has the Police Department to maintain internal order.

W: What method does the Police Department of each community use to maintain internal order?

C: Every city has a police department and within each district of the city there is a police station.

W: What is the primary mission of the police force?

C: The primary mission of the police force is to maintain local internal order, to protect lives and properties of the citizens, to prevent commission of crimes, and to maintain traffic order. But their wartime mission is to prevent spy activities, to assist in air defense, to conduct the evacuation of the population, etc.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Evacuation of students may be necessary during wartime.
2. The army requested assistance from the air force.
3. The spy is trying to prevent us from maintaining order in the city.
4. It is the duty of the police to protect our lives and properties.
5. The police in this district prevented many cases of robbery.
6. It seems to be a case of manslaughter rather than a case of murder.
7. Rapes and larcenies are not very common in small cities.
8. In a large city, there can be at least one suicide case a day.
9. The writing that you have done may be considered good.
10. It is the regulation of the school that you should attend classes five days a week.
11. Citizens are protected by the local police force.
12. In addition to prevention of crimes, the police also takes care of traffic.
13. Conducting evacuation of the people is one of the police force's wartime missions.
14. Special training to prevent spy activities is very important.
15. Maintaining internal order is the primary mission of the police department.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. Crimes in big cities are common; and cities in China are of no exception.

LESSON 10

WORD LIST

1.	tá-kìp	robbery
2.	k'eūng-kaan	rape
3.	t'au yĕ	larceny
4.	maū-shaàt	murder
5.	nĝ-shaàt	manslaughter
6.	tsẑ-shaàt	suicide
7.	òn-kîn*	case
8.	chî-on	order, peace
9.	suèn	consider
10.	waī-ch'ī	to maintain
11.	k'ui-wîk	district
12.	fan-kûk	police station
13.	pó-oô	protect
14.	shaang-mîng	life
15.	ts'oī-ch'aấn	property
16.	uê-fōng	prevent
17.	chìn shī	wartime
18.	fōng-chî	to prevent, stop
19.	kaàn-tîp	spy
20.	hîp-chôh	to assist
21.	fōng hung	air defense
22.	shoh-saàn	evacuate, evacuation

LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

451

強 k'eũng: to force; to compel.

勉強 mĭn-k'eũng: against one's will; to force.

強迫 k'eũng-pik: to coerce; to force.

強 k'eũng: strong; violent.

強壯 k'eũng-chòng: strong and healthy.

強盛 k'eũng-shîng: powerful (of country)

1124

偷 t'au: to steal; to pilfer; by stealth.

偷走 t'au tsaú: to steal away.

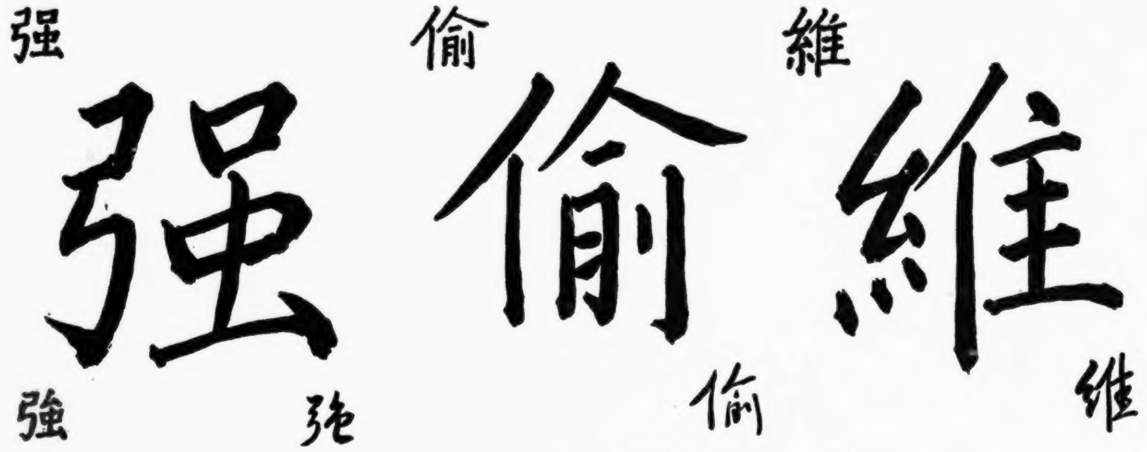
偷閒 t'au haān: to waste time; to idle.

1420

維 waī: to connect; to fasten.

維持 waī-ch'ī: to aid; to maintain.

維新 waī-san: to reform; to modernize.



81

持 ch'ī: to grasp; hold; support

維持 waī-ch'ī: to maintain; uphold; to aid

主持 chuó-ch'ī: to manage; to direct.

支持 chi-ch'ī: to support

302

看 hòn: to look at; view; examine.

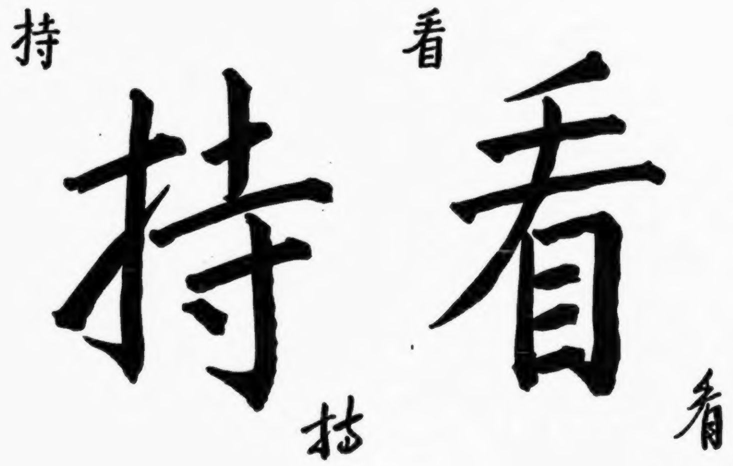
看 hon: to watch.

看戲 hòn heí: to see a play.

看書 hòn shue: to read books.

看護 hon-oô: a nurse.

看守 hòn-shaú: to guard.



LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

423

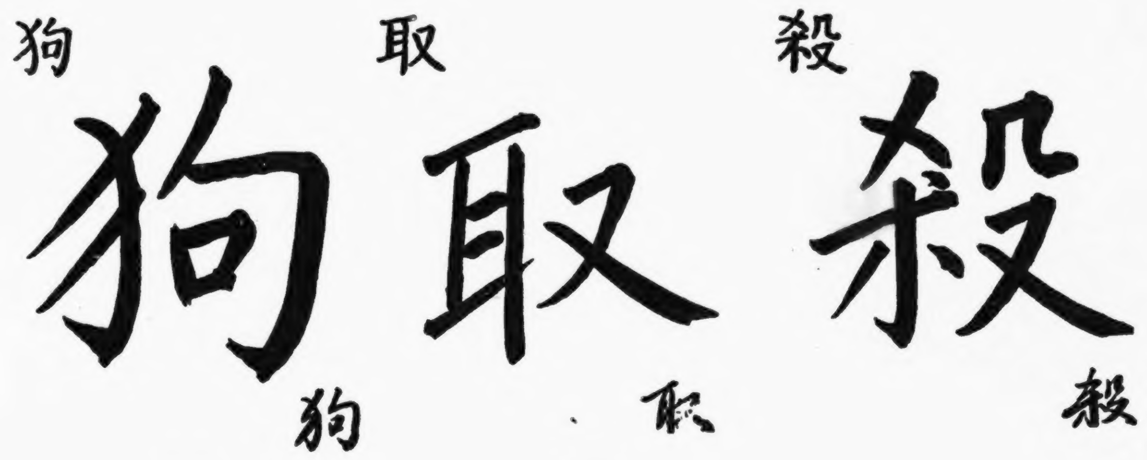
狗	kaú:	dog
獵狗	lîp kaú:	Hunting dog
癲狗	tin kaú:	mad dog
海狗	hoí-kaú:	the seal

1312

取	ts'uí:	to take; to appropriate; to receive.
取利	ts'uí leî:	to derive interest.
取決	ts'uí-k'uèt:	to decide.

937

殺	shaàt:	to kill; to slay.
殺人	shaàt yān:	to kill a person.
自殺	tsẑ shaàt:	suicide.
謀殺	maū shaàt:	to plot murder.

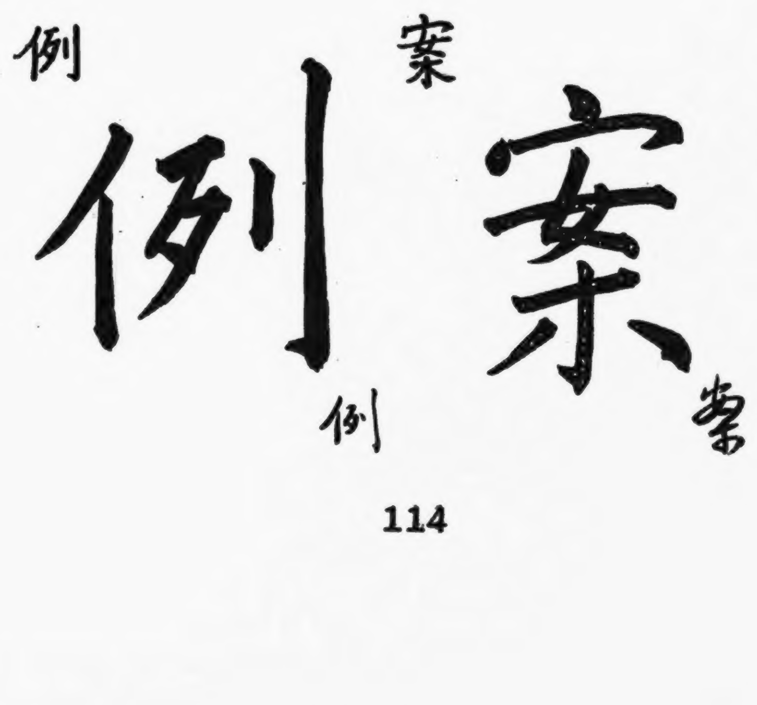


587

例	laî:	law; regulation; rule; custom.
例外	laî-ngoî:	exception.
違例	waī laî:	to violate a rule.
例如	laî-mē:	for example.
例假	laî-kà:	the customary vacation.

783

案	òn:	case at law, judge's desk.
案件	òn-kîn:	a case at law.
審案	shám òn:	to try a case.
案情	òn ts'Īng:	facts or details of a case.



LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

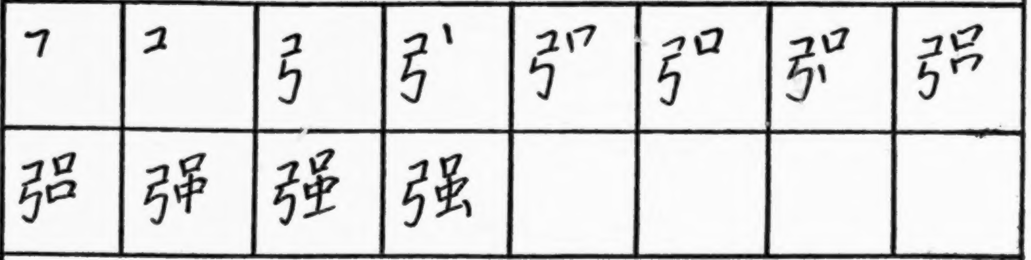
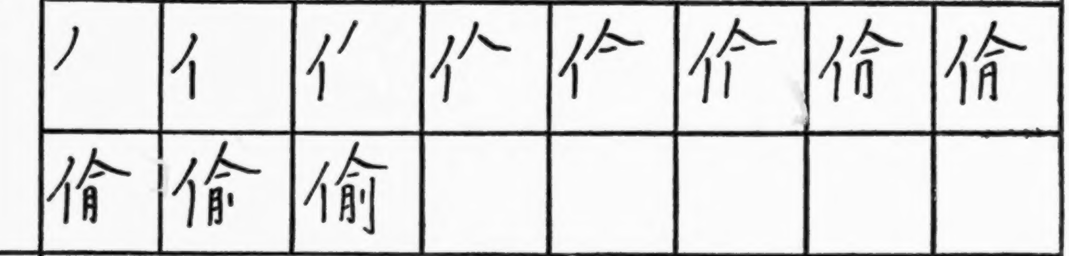
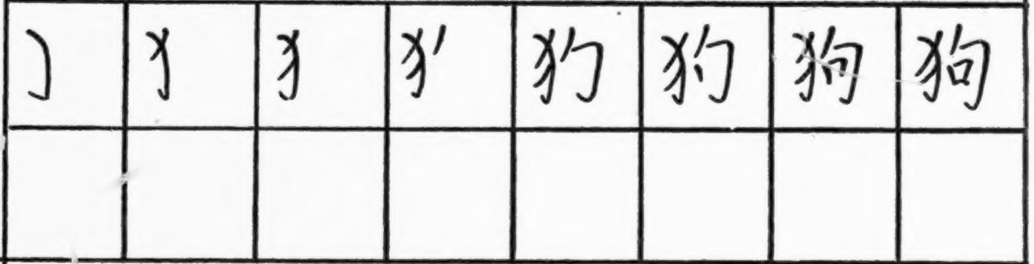
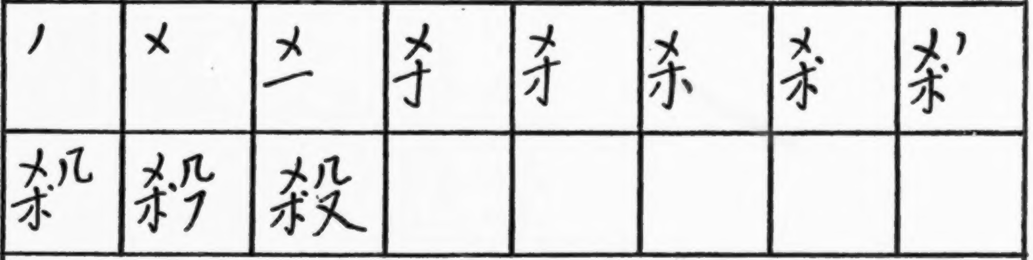
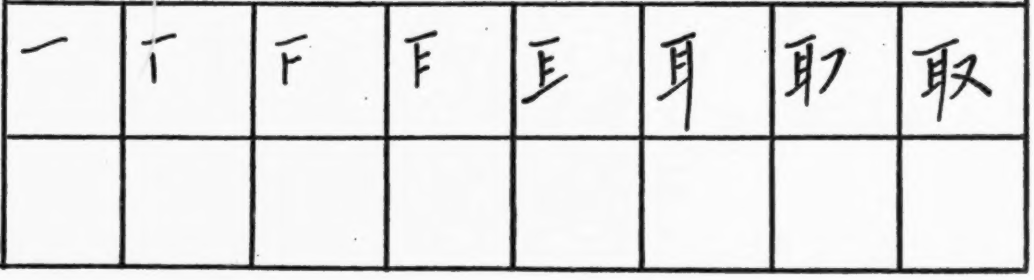
一個人有職業有入息就唔會去偷野.但係有啲人太懶,唔喜歡做工,又有啲人道德唔好,唔守律例,所以有偷野,强搶,打kɪp ,謀殺,種種案件發生.因ts'ź一個地方上治安就有問題.

中國人大多數係農民.佢地嘅生活雖然艱苦,但係安分守己.只有少數人唔中意呢種生活.又因為冇其他職業,就去偷野.普通黎講,鄉下嘅治安問題,冇城市嘅kðm Im重.

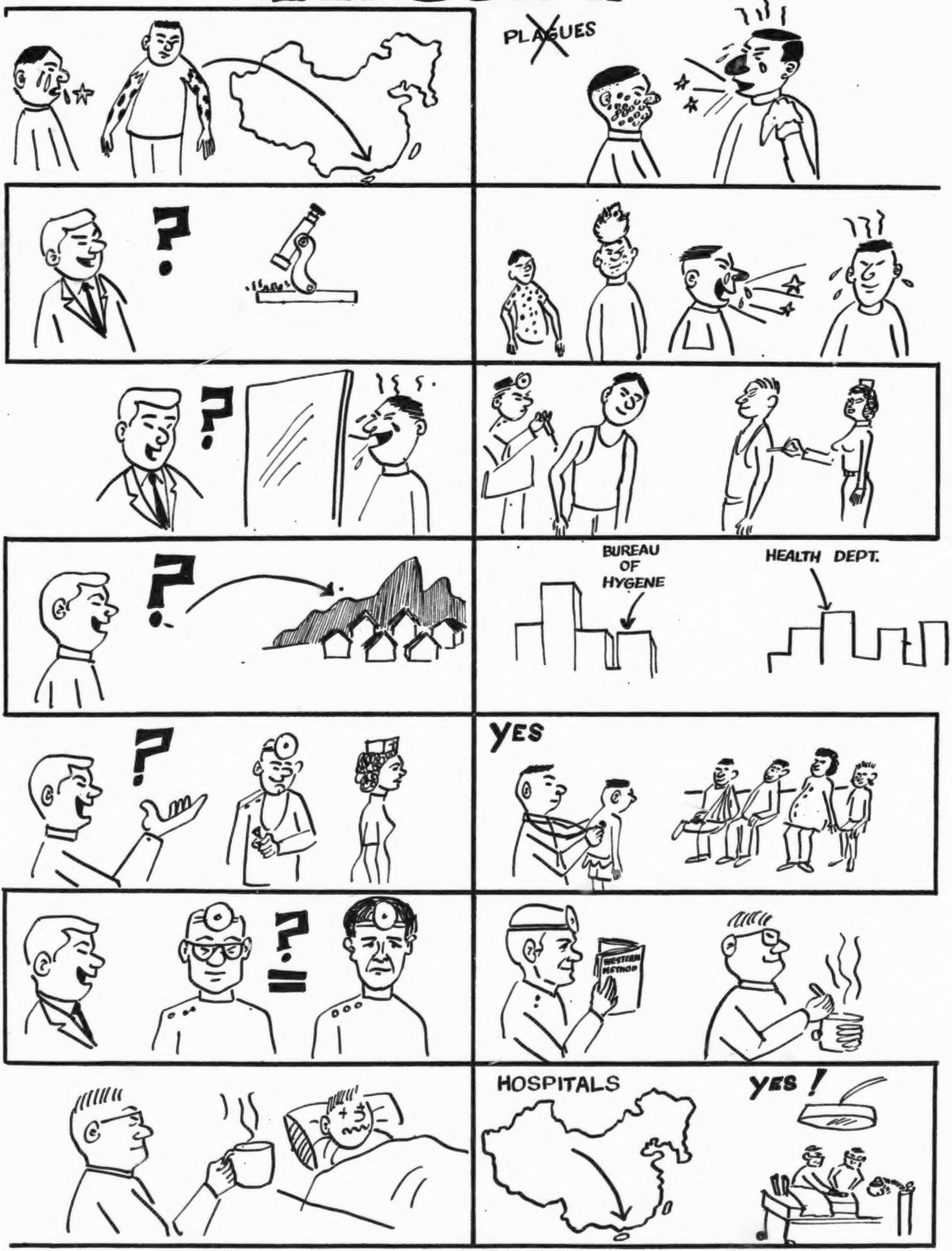
中國城市地方維持治安嘅責任當然由警察員擔.各城市照地方情形,設立或大或小嘅警察局.鄉下多數用狗黎看守門口.

LESSON 10

WRITING MATERIAL

强	Character Number 451 Radical Number 57 Stroke Number 12 弓 
偷	Character Number 1124 Radical Number 9 Stroke Number 11 亻, 人 
狗	Character Number 423 Radical Number 94 Stroke Number 8 犭, 犬 
殺	Character Number 937 Radical Number 79 Stroke Number 11 殳 
取	Character Number 1312 Radical Number 29 Stroke Number 8 又 

LESSON 11


~~PLAGUES~~
BUREAU OF HYGENE
HEALTH DEPT.
YES
WESTERN METHOD
HOSPITALS
YES!

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Wā Naām shī shī to yaǔ wan-yîk, laū-hāng sỉng kẻ pêng-chỉng, t'ūng ch'uēn-ǐm pêng faảt-shang, haî m̄-haî ả?

Cheung: Wā Naām hó shiú wan-yîk, taû-haî shī shī to yaǔ laū-hāng sỉng kẻ pêng-chỉng, t'ūng ch'uēn-ǐm pêng.

W: Tsuỉ p'ó-t'ung kẻ laū-hāng sỉng kẻ pêng-chỉng, t'ūng ch'uēn-ǐm pêng haî pin keî chúng ne?

C: Tsuỉ p'ó-t'ung kẻ laū-hāng sỉng kẻ pêng-chỉng, t'ūng ch'uēn-ǐm pêng haî fỏk-luên, sheung-hōn, paâk-haū, t'in-fa, shuî-taû*, oh-leî, faảt-laăng, t'ūng laū-hāng-sỉng-kóm-mô tảng tảng.

W: Ngŏh-teî hóh-ǐ yûng mi-yĕ uê-fōng paân-faảt uê-fōng ni ti pêng-chỉng ne?

C: Ngŏh-teî hóh-ǐ yûng tá cham, chủng taû* kẻ paân-faảt uê-fōng ni ti pêng-chỉng.

W: Kỏk shuẻ yaǔ mi-yĕ waî-shang kei-kwaan ne?

C: Mooǐ shaáng yaǔ yat kỏh Waî-Shang Kûk*, mooǐ kỏh shīng-shǐ to yaǔ Shǐ-Chỉng-Waî-Shang Kûk*, Shǐ-Chỉng-Waî-Shang Kûk* chi hâ yaû yaǔ hó toh waî-shang tuî*.

W: Mooǐ kỏh shīng-shǐ kẻ i-shang t'ūng hon-oô toh m̄-toh ne?

C: Toh. Mooǐ kỏh shīng-shǐ kẻ i-shang t'ūng hon-oô hó toh. Pat-kwỏh yān-haú t'aaỉ toh, shóh-ǐ m̄-kaủ i-shang, m̄-kaủ hon-oô.

W: Sai-i t'ūng chung-i yaǔ mi-yĕ fan-pît ne?

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C: Sai-i haî yûng sai fong i-yeûk kè fong-faàt i-chî pêng yān. Chung-i haî yûng Chung-Kwòk i-yeûk kè fong-faàt i-chî pêng yān. Chung-Kwòk kè i-yeûk fong-faàt toh shò yûng ts'ó-yeûk, tseung ts'ó-yeûk chué hó peì pêng yān yám.

W: Wā Naām kòk shaáng yaŭ mŏ hó kè i-uên* ne?

C: Yaŭ. Wā Naām kòk shaáng yaŭ hó toh kaan hó kè i-uên*, yaŭ ti i-uên* kè ch'ìt-peî hó san-shik, hó uēn-shîn.

LESSON 11

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wŏng: Do plagues, epidemic diseases, and contagious diseases occur frequently in South China?

Cheung: There are very few plagues in South China, but epidemic and contagious diseases occur quite frequently there.

W: What are the most common epidemic and contagious diseases?

C: The most common epidemic and contagious diseases are cholera, typhoid, diphtheria, small-pox, chicken-pox, dysentery, malaria, and influenza.

W: What precautionary measures can we take to guard against these diseases?

C: By means of injection and vaccination we can guard against these diseases.

W: What health organizations does each community have?

C: Each province has a Bureau of Hygiene, moreover each city also has a city health department under which there are many health groups.

W: Are there many doctors and nurses in each city?

C: Yes, there are many doctors and nurses in every city, but there are too many people. Thus there are not sufficient doctors and nurses.

W: What is the difference between a Western medical doctor and a Chinese medical doctor?

C: A Western medical doctor applies the Western method of medical treatment to cure the sick and a Chinese medical doctor applies the Chinese method of medical treatment to cure the sick. The Chinese method of medical treatment generally utilizes herbs which are brewed for the sick to drink.

W: Are there good hospitals in the various provinces of South China?

C: Yes. There are many good hospitals in the various provinces of South China. Some hospitals are modern and well equipped.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. There is a great difference between a Western and a Chinese medical doctor.
2. Nurses are just as important as doctors.
3. Many of the vaccinations and injections against various epidemic diseases are conducted by the municipal government.
4. Influenza and malaria are dangerous and contagious diseases.
5. Dysentery and diphtheria can be prevented by means of injections.
6. We can prepare ourselves against smallpox by vaccinations.
7. Typhoid and cholera are not very common in the U.S.
8. In Europe, plagues happened very frequently a few hundred years ago.
9. Hygiene is one of the means to fight contagious diseases.
10. Herbs have been used by Chinese medical doctors for more than 4,000 years.
11. Western medical doctors use vaccines to cure patients from diseases.
12. Drugs are utilized to cure the sick.
13. Chinese herbs are usually brewed for the sick to take.
14. Health groups are organized in small communities to fight diseases.
15. Injection is one of the best precautionary measures against diseases.

LESSON 11

WORD LIST

1.	waî-shang	hygiene
2.	wan-yîk	plague
3.	laū-hāng sìng	epidemic
4.	pêng-chìng	disease
5.	ch'uēn-ĭm pêng	contagious diseases
6.	fởk-luên	cholera
7.	sheung-hōn	typhoid
8.	paâk-haū	diphtheria
9.	t'in-fa	small-pox
10.	shuí-taû*	chicken-pox
11.	oh-leî	dysentery
12.	faảt-laăng	malaria
13.	laū-hāng-sìng-kóm-mô	influenza
14.	tả cham	injection
15.	chùng taû*	vaccination
16.	shĭ-chìng	municipal government administration
17.	waî-shang tuî*	health department
18.	hon-oô	nurse
19.	sai-i	doctor who practices western medicine
20.	chung-i	doctor who practices Chinese medicine
21.	i-yeûk	medicine, drug

LESSON 11

WORD LIST

22.	i-chî	to cure, to heal, to treat, treatment
23.	ts'ó-yeûk	herb
24.	chué	to cook

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

1034

性	sìng: nature; disposition.
性情	sìng-ts'ìng: natural disposition.
性命	sìng-mêng: life.
性别	sìng-pît: sex; gender.

1071

死	sź, seí: to die; death; to kill.
死屍	seí-shi: a corpse.
死路	seí-lô: a death road; dead end road.
打死	tá seí: to kill.
病死	pêng seí: death from sickness.

351

染	ǐm: to infect; dye; infection
傳染	ch'uēn-ǐm: to spread(disease)
染布	ǐm pò: to dye cloth
染病	ǐm pêng: catch disease
傳染病	ch'uēn-ǐm pêng: contagious disease.

性 死 染

性 死 染

性 死 染

123

注	chuè: to fix the mind on; to pour; to record
注意	chuè-ì: to heed; "notice"; to pay attention to
注射	chuè-shê: to inject; syringes
注重	chuè-chûng: to emphasize

261

喉	haū: the throat
喉嚨	haū-lūng: the gullet
喉急	haū-kap: impatient; hasty
水喉	shuí-haū: water pipe
白喉	paâk-haū: Diptheria

注 喉

注 喉

注 喉

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

[illegible]

腸 ch'eūng: bowels; intestines; feelings (Cl. t'iū)

臘腸 lâp-ch'eūng*: dried sausage

心腸 sam-ch'eūng: inward thoughts

[illegible]

亂 luên: confusion; rebellion.

心亂 sam-luên: disturbed; confused.

擾亂 iū-luên: disturb; disorder; tumult.

作亂 tsòk-luên: to rebel; to raise a disturbance.

87

值 chik: price; worth; to happen.

價值 kà-chîk: cost; price

適值 shik-chîk just happen to be

值日 chîk-yât: one's day on duty

腸 肠 亂 乱 値

腸 亂 值

肠 乱 值

1484

疫 yîk: pestilence; epidemic.

疫症 yîk-chìng: epidemic; pestilence.

473

潔 kìt: to purify; to clean; pure;

潔淨 kìt-tsîng: clean; tidy.

清潔 tsing-kìt: clear & clean; well-kept (ground)

純潔 shūn-kìt: pure; upright.

疫 潔

疫 潔

疫 潔

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

中國人又有一句俗語話,"平安值千金."可知平安冇病係好重要同有價值là.想冇病,就要預防.

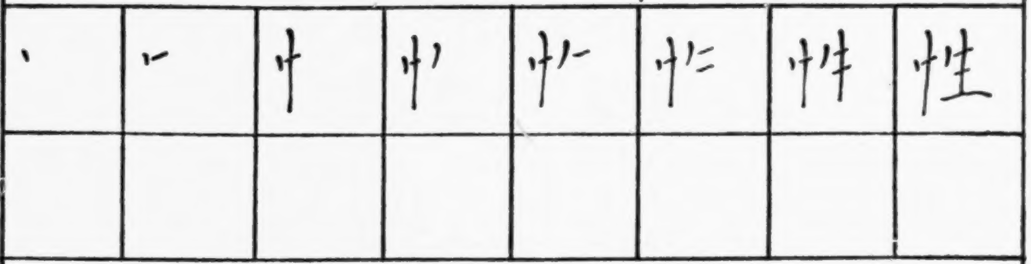
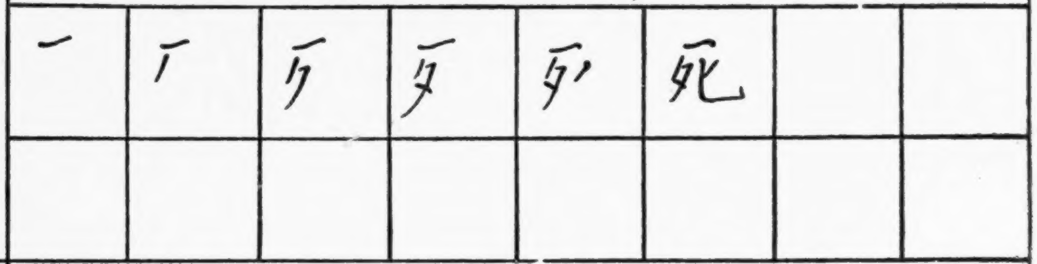
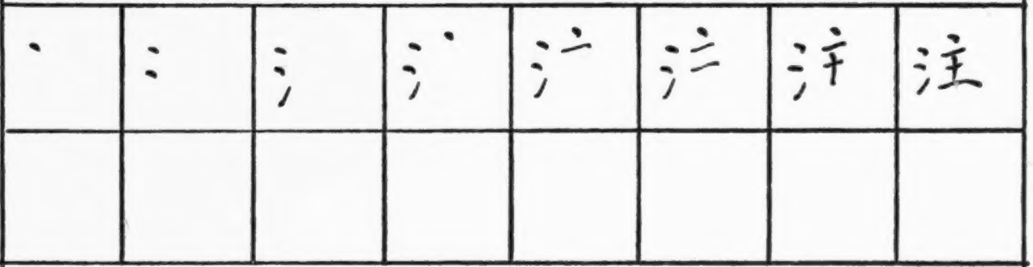
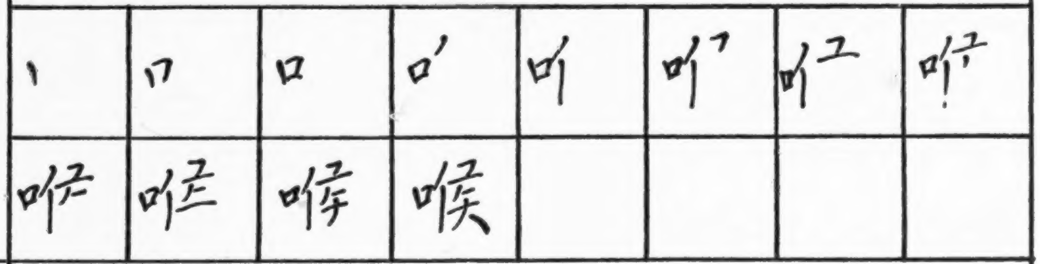
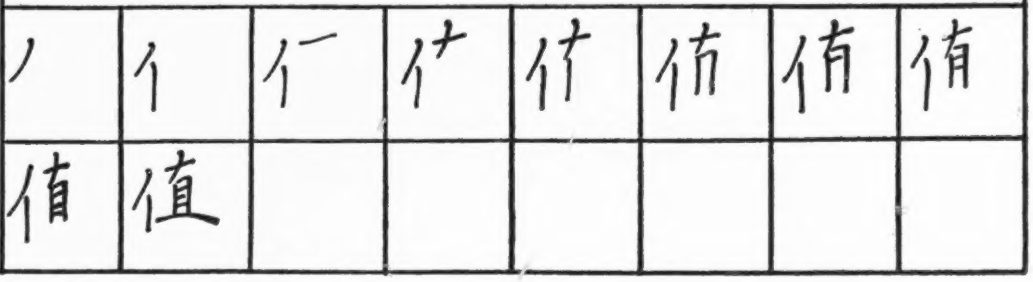
打針,種taû* 等等就係預防嘅方法.但係不論在城市抑或鄉間,人人都可以做得到,又係最容易嘅,就係清潔.食啲野要清潔,住啲地方亦都要清潔.中國人話"病由口入",即係話食嘅,野唔乾淨,腸肚受影響,就會生病.

危險嘅病chìng 好似白喉,天花,fòk亂等等,可以傳染.傳染得太利害,就變成wan疫.所以我地要加意預防有傳染性嘅病chìng.

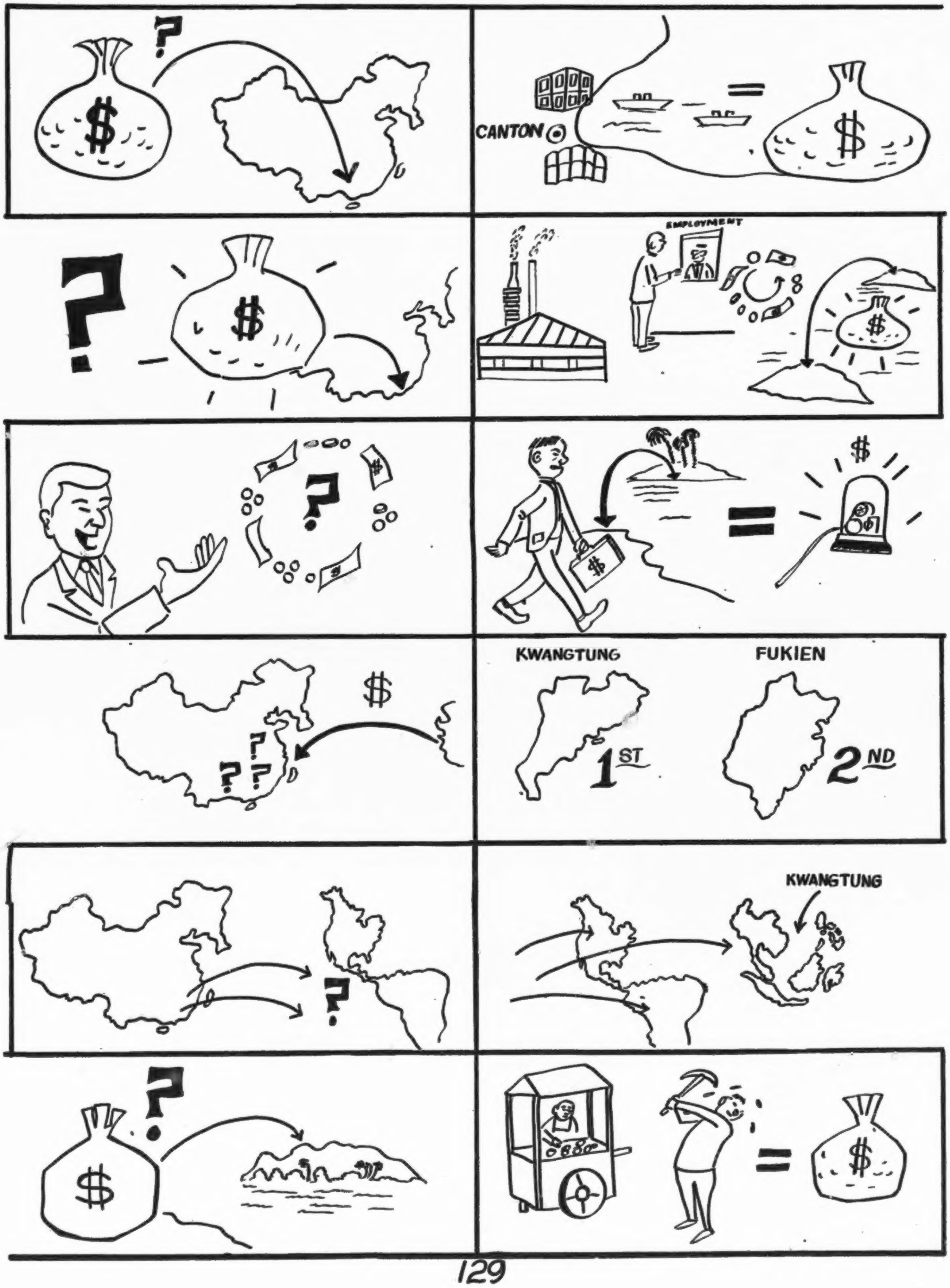
中國近來對於衛生問題,更加注意.各城市都設有衛生局辦理衛生嘅事務.

LESSON 11

WRITING MATERIAL

性	Character Number 1034 Radical Number 61 Stroke Number 8 忄，心 
死	Character Number 1071 Radical Number 78 Stroke Number 6 歹 
注	Character Number 123 Radical Number 85 Stroke Number 8 氵，水 
喉	Character Number 261 Radical Number 30 Stroke Number 12 口 
值	Character Number 87 Radical Number 9 Stroke Number 10 亻，人 

LESSON 12


CANTON
EMPLOYMENT
KWANGTUNG
FUKIEN
1ST
2ND
KWANGTUNG

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Wā Naām kè king-tsaì ts'īng-yīng tîm-yeûng* ne?

Cheung: Kwóng-Chau haî Wā Naām sheung îp kè chung-sam tîm, yaû haî kwòk-tsaì maû-yîk kè taaî sheung-faû, shóh-ĭ Wā Naām kè king-tsaì hó faān-wīng.

W: Tîm-kaaì Wā Naām kè king-tsaì faān-wīng ne?

C: Yan-waî kung îp faàt-taât, shóh-ĭ shat-îp yān shiú. Yan-waî sheung îp faān-shîng, shóh-ĭ kam-yūng laū-t'ung, ī-ch'ế Wā Naām kè Wā-K'iū ooî-foón hó toh, shóh-ĭ king-tsaì faān-wīng.

W: Tîm-kaaì Wā Naām kè kam-yūng laū-t'ung ne?

C: Yan-waî Wā Naām kè king-tsaì faān-wīng yaŭ ts'īn* kè yān háng t'aū tsz tsô shaang ì, yaū-k'eī haî Wā-K'iū kè tsz-poón hó toh, shóh-ĭ kam-yūng laū-t'ung.

W: Haì Wā Naām pin shaáng kè k'iū ooî chì toh ne?

C: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng kè k'iū ooî chì toh, k'eī ts'z̀ haî Fuk-Kìn Shaáng.

W: Kwóng-Tung t'ūng Fuk-Kìn leŭng shaáng kè Wā-K'iū toh shò haì pin keì kwòk ne?

C: Kwóng-Tung kè Wā-K'iū toh shò haì Naām-Meĭ-Chau t'ūng Pak-Meĭ-Chau, yaū-k'eī haî haì Meĭ-Kwòk t'ūng Ka-Nā-Taaî leŭng kwòk kàng toh. Fuk-Kìn kè Wā-K'iū toh shò haì Naām-Yeūng* kòk kwòk, hó-ts'ž Fei-Lût-Pan, Uêt-Naām, T'aaì-Kwòk, Mĭn-Tîn, t'ūng Yàn-Naī táng kwòk; taân-haî haì kóh ti teî-fong, Kwóng-Tung kè Wā-K'iū yîk-to m̄-shiú.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W: Wā-K'iū kè king-tsaì ts'ìng-yìng tîm-yeûng* ne?

C: Yan-waî Wā-K'iū toh shỏ to hó k'ān-kîm, yaû hó ooĭ tsô shaang-ì, shóh-ĭ Wā-K'iū kè king-tsaì hó faàt-taât.

LESSON 12

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: What is the economic condition in South China?

Cheung: Canton is the center of commerce in South China and also a large port of international trade; therefore, the economy in South China is thriving.

W: Why is the economy in South China thriving?

C: Because industry is flourishing, unemployment is therefore low; because commerce is thriving, money therefore circulates freely. In addition, there is a great sum of remittance from the overseas Chinese; therefore the economy prospers.

W: Why does money in South China Circulate freely?

C: Because the economy of South China is thriving, rich people, especially overseas Chinese who have large amounts of capital are willing to invest in businesses; therefore, money circulates freely.

W: Which province in South China receives the greatest part of remittance from the overseas Chinese?

C: Kwangtung Province receives the greatest part of remittance from the overseas Chinese, Fukien Province is the next.

W: In what foreign countries do the majority of the overseas Chinese from Kwangtung and Fukien Province reside?

C: The overseas Chinese from Kwangtung primarily reside in North and South America, especially in the United States and Canada. The overseas Chinese from Fukien primarily

LESSON 12

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

reside in the countries of the South Pacific such as the Philippines, Vietnam, Thailand, Burma and Indonesia. In those places, however, there are also a great many overseas Chinese from Kwangtung.

W: How are economic conditions among the overseas Chinese?

C: Because most of the overseas Chinese are very industrious and frugal and also capable in business matters, the economic state of the overseas Chinese is very prosperous.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Indonesia is in the southeast of China.
2. Many Americans invest their money in Burma and Thailand.
3. Agriculture is the main economy of Vietnam.
4. The Philippines received a great deal of military assistance from the United States.
5. Canada is to the north of the United States.
6. Hong Kong is the place to which remittance by Chinese abroad are usually sent.
7. In order to have industrial prosperity, capital and trade are necessary.
8. Unemployment will decrease with the development of industry.
9. New York is the center of the world of finance.
10. With enough money to circulate, the city will be prosperous.
11. Most of the Chinese in the U.S. are very industrious.
12. The majority of the students in this school are soldiers.
13. In recent years, many Chinese put their money in investments.
14. Overseas Chinese are willing to invest in import and export business.
15. Laundry is not considered an industry by many people.
16. He does not have enough capital to enable him to control the business.

LESSON 12

WORD LIST

1.	king-tsaì	economy, economical
2.	chung-sam tîm	center, central point
3.	maû-yîk	trade, to trade
4.	faān-wīng	prosperous
5.	kung-îp	industry, industrial
6.	shat-îp	unemployment, unemployed
7.	kam-yūng	money, finance
8.	laū-t'ung	to circulate, circulation
9.	ooî-foón	remittance, to remit money
10.	hång	willing
11.	t'aū-tsz	to invest money, investment
12.	tsz-poón	capital
13.	k'iū ooî	remittance by Chinese abroad
14.	Ka-Nā-Taaî	Canada
15.	Fei-Lût-Pan	Philippines
16.	Uêt-Naām	Vietnam
17.	T'aaì-Kwòk	Thailand
18.	Mĭn-Tîn	Burma
19.	Yàn-Naî	Indonesia
20.	k'ān-kîm	industrious and frugal

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

1329

資 tsz: property; wealth; fee.

資本 tsz-poón: capital.

資本主義 tsz-poón chué-î: capitalism.

郵資 yau tsz: postage money.

286

興 hing: to rise; raise; to prosper; to begin

興 hìng: to rejoice; excite; joyful.

好興 ho hìng: much in vogue

興工 hing kung: to start working

高興 ko-hìng: glad.

興趣 hing-ts'uì: interest

67

支 chi: branch, to pay

支銀 chi-ngān*: to pay out money

支店 chi-tìm: a branch (shop etc.)

支票 chi-p'iù: check

支持 chi-ch'ī: to support, maintain

資 興 兴 与 支

資 興 支

资 兴 支

1414

委 waí: to delegate; to give over.

委員 waí-uēn: deputy; delegate; special commission.

委任 waí yâm: to appoint; to delegate.

委託 waí t'òk to entrust.

1190

託 t'òk: to commit; to entrust with; to charge with.

拜託 paaì-t'òk: to ask a favor

託辭 t'òk ts'z̄: excuse; pretense.

委 託

委 託

[illegible] 讬

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

1210

際 tsaì: intercommunication; limit; boundary.

國際 kwòk-tsaì: international.

國際法 kwòk-tsaì-faàt: international law.

1127

投 t'aū: to throw; to fling; to give over.

投票 t'aū più: to vote by ballot; to bid.

投案 t'aū òn: to appear before the court.

投機 t'aū-kei: to speculate.

824

幣 paî: money; coin.

幣制 paî-chaì: monetary system; currency.

際 际 投 幣

際 投 幣

际 投 幣

1209

濟 tsaì: to aid; to help; to relieve.

救濟 kaù-tsaì: to rescue; to relieve

經濟學 king-tsaì-hôk: economics.

540

功 kung: merit; rank; meritorious.

功勞 kung-lō: merit.

功課 kung-fòn: school work.

成功 shīng-kung: successful.

用功 yûng-kung: energetic; diligent.

濟 済 功

濟 功

済 功

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

中國嘅經濟情形,比較黎講.華南最好,工商業都發達,市面貨幣流通.華南嘅經濟 kôm 好,有乜野原因呢。

第一,華南近海,對外交通便利,所以國際出入口生意好大.香港,廣州都係主要商港.

第二,華南廣東同福建兩省,好多人去外國謀生呢啲華 k'iū ,wán 倒錢,委託親人朋友,向國内投資.華南因為得到呢種資本支持,工業農業都興盛.

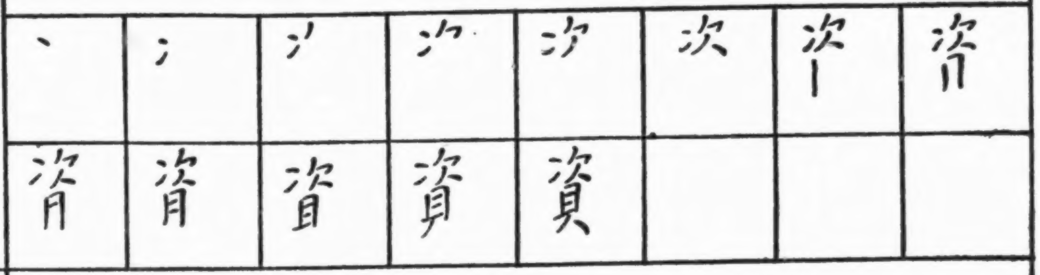
華 k'iū 對於華南經濟,有好大功勞.福建省人,多數去南洋,廣東省人,多數去南北美 Chau 所以喺美國嘅華人,多數講廣東話.

LESSON 12

WRITING MATERIAL

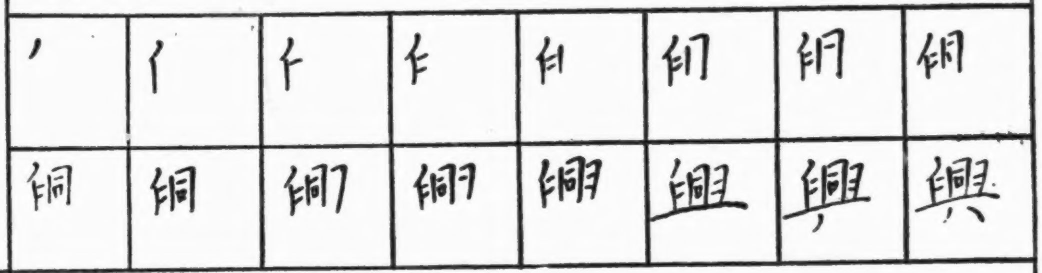
資

Character Number 1329
Stroke Number 13
Radical Number 154
貝



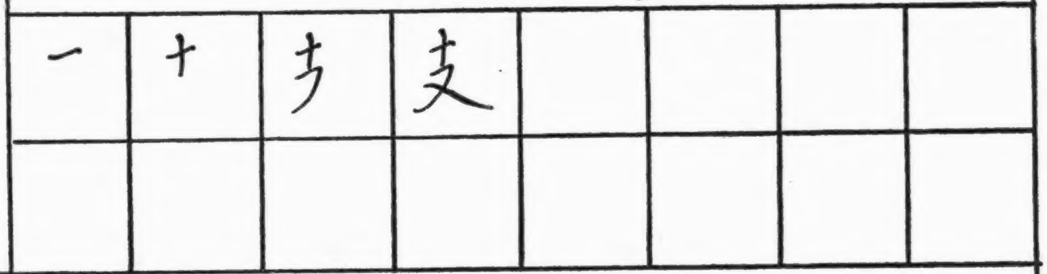
興

Character Number 286
Stroke Number 16
Radical Number 134
臼



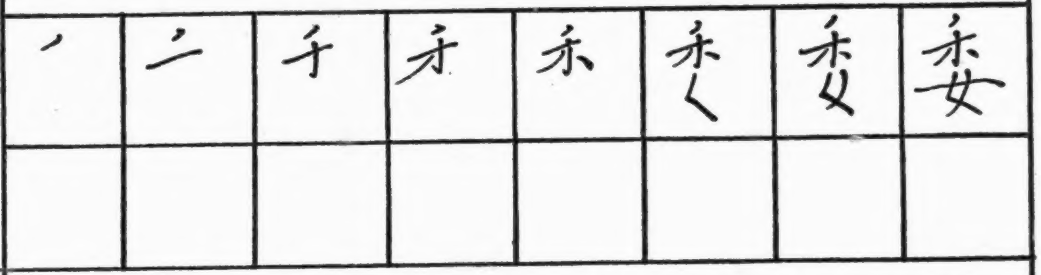
支

Character Number 67
Stroke Number 4
Radical Number 65
支



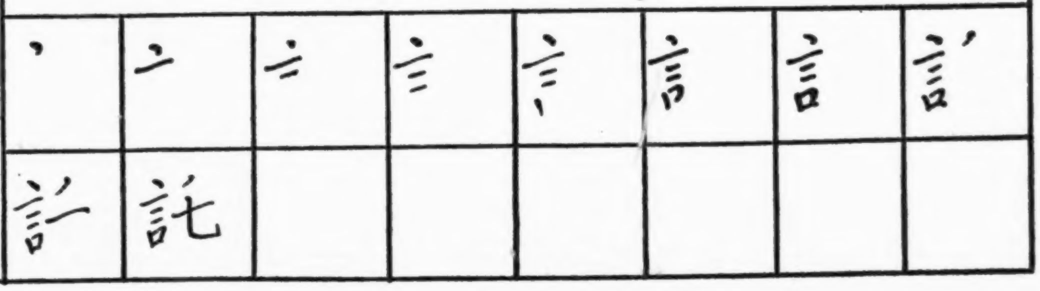
委

Character Number 1414
Stroke Number 8
Radical Number 38
女

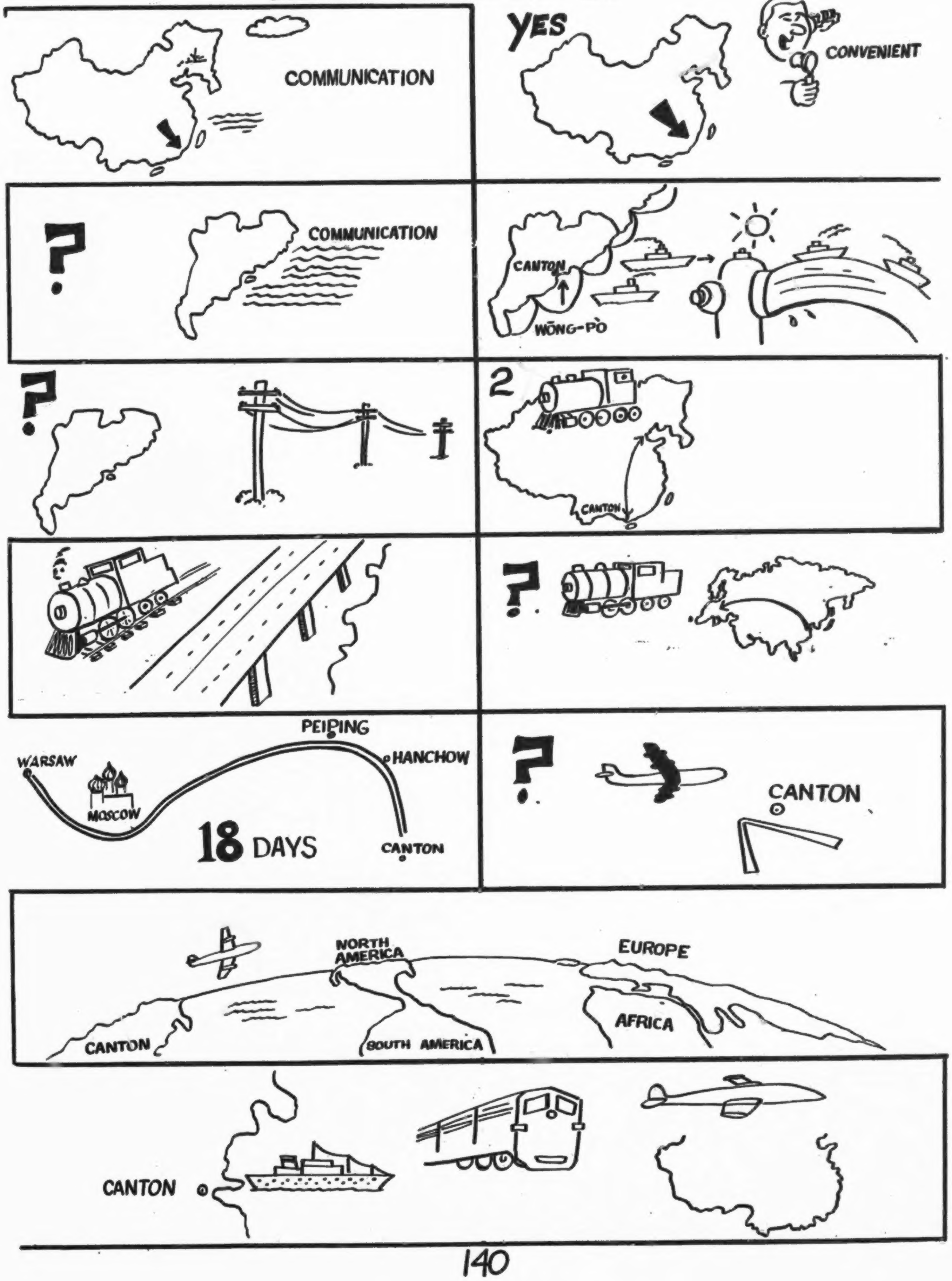


託

Character Number 1190
Stroke Number 10
Radical Number 149
言



LESSON 13


COMMUNICATION
YES
CONVENIENT
?
COMMUNICATION
CANTON
WŌNG-PŌ
?
2
CANTON
?
PEIPING
WARSAW
HANCHOW
MOSCOW
18 DAYS
CANTON
?
CANTON
NORTH AMERICA
EUROPE
AFRICA
CANTON
SOUTH AMERICA
CANTON

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Wā Naām kè hoî lûk hung kaau t'ung pîn m̄-pîn-leî à?

Cheung: Pîn-leî. Wā Naām hoî lûk hung kè kaau-t'ung fei-sheūng-chi pîn-leî.

W: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng kè hoî-sheûng kaau-t'ung tîm-yeûng* à?

C: Haî Kwóng-Chau kè foô-kân yaŭ yat kòh t'in-īn kè kóng-haú, kiù tsô Wōng-Pò. Shuēn-chèk loī-loī wŏng-wŏng, ch'ut-ch'ut yâp-yâp. Yaŭ ti loī wŏng ngoî kwòk, yaŭ ti loī wŏng Chung-Kwòk kè hoî ngôn. Yaŭ ti loī wŏng Kwóng-Tung Shaáng kè noî hōh, yât yât to "ch'uen-laū-pat-sik".

W: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng kè lûk-sheûng kaau-t'ung tîm-yeûng* ne?

C: Kwóng-Tung Shaáng yaŭ leŭng t'iū chué-iù kè t'ìt-lô: yat t'iū t'ìt-lô kiù tsô Kwóng-Kaú t'ìt-Lô, haî yaū Kwóng-Chau tò Kaú-Lūng: yat t'iū t'ìt-lô kiù tsô Uêt-Hòn T'ìt-Lô, haî yaū Kwóng-Chau tò Oō-Pak Shaáng kè Hòn-Haú. Ch'uī-chóh t'ìt-lô chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ hó toh kung-lô t'ung tò noî-teî kòk shaáng.

W: Yaū À-Chau yaŭ mŏ fóh-ch'e yat-chîk t'ung tò Au-Chau ne?

C: Tsẑ-ts'ūng Kwóng-Kaú T'ìt-Lô t'ūng Uêt-Hòn T'ìt-Lô tsìp kwaî chi-haû, yaū Kaú-Lūng hóh-ĭ ts'ŏh fóh-ch'e huì Hòn-Haú, yaū Hòn-Haú hóh-ĭ huì Pak-P'ìng, yaū Pak-P'ìng hóh-ĭ huì Tung-Pak kaú shaáng, yaū Tung-Pak kaú shaáng hóh-ĭ yâp Ngōh-Kwòk, king-kwòh Sai-Paàk-Leî-À, Môk-Sz-Foh, Wā-Sha, tò Au-Chau kòk kwòk. Chî iù shâp-paàt yât kòm noî.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W: Kwóng-Chau kè hung-chung kaau-t'ung tìm-yeûng* ne?

C: Kwóng-Chau yaŭ keì kaan hōng-hung kung-sz, yaŭ keì t'iū hōng-hung sìn. Yaū kóh shuè hóh-ĭ fei huì Heung-Kóng, Sheûng-Hoî, tsoì fei huì Pak-Meĭ-Chau, Naām-Meĭ-Chau, Au-Chau, Ò-Chau, t'ūng À-Chau kòk shuè kè teî-fong.

W: Kâm, Kwóng-Chau tsaû haî Wā Naām kè chuê-iù kaau-t'ung chung-sam là pòh.

LESSON 13

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: Is sea, land, and air communication convenient in South China?

Cheung: Yes, sea, land, and air communication is extremely convenient in South China.

W: How is the sea communication in Kwangtung?

C: In the vicinity of Canton, there is a natural harbor which is known as Wōng-Pò̄. Ships come and go. Some sail to and from foreign countries, some travel along the coast of China, and some traverse the inland rivers of Kwangtung Province. Everyday they are "flowing in and out incessantly."

W: How is the land communication in Kwangtung?

C: There are two main railroads in Kwangtung. One of them is known as the Canton-Kowloon Railroad and goes from Canton to Kowloon; the other is known as the Canton-Hankow Railroad and goes from Canton to Hankow in Hupeh Province. Besides the railroads there are also highways extending into the various provinces of China's interior.

W: Is there any train running directly from Asia to Europe?

C: From the time when the Canton-Kowloon Railroad and the Canton-Hankow Railroad were connected, a person could go from Kowloon to Hankow by train. From Hankow, he could go to Peiping. From Peiping, he could go to Manchuria. From Manchuria he could enter Russia, passing through Siberia, Moscow, Warsaw, and reach the various countries in Europe.

LESSON 13

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

It took only 18 days.

W: How is the air communication in Canton?

C: There are several aviation companies in Canton and a few air routes. From Canton you can fly to Hong Kong and Shanghai and then to North America, South America, Europe, Africa, Australia and various places in Asia.

W: In that case, Canton is the primary communication center of South China.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Australia and Africa have direct air routes to the U.S.
2. There are more than ten airplanes in the sky right now.
3. Warsaw is considered to be an important European city.
4. Moscow is the capital of Russia.
5. Siberia has a very cold climate and it is to the northwest of China.
6. He is passing through the United States on his way to Canada.
7. Peiping has been the capital of the Chinese for many dynasties.
8. Since the year 1911, China has been under the control of the Republic Government.
9. European trade has become prosperous since the end of the war.
10. There are railroads extending all the way from the east to the west coast.
11. Inland rivers are important transportation in China.
12. The Canton-Kowloon Railway has no connecting rails to reach Hong Kong.
13. Automobiles on the highway are "flowing in and out without stopping".
14. San Francisco is one of the largest cities on the west coast of the United States.
15. The military academy at Whampo trained nearly all officers of the Chinese Army.

16. The harbor at Wōng-Pò is one of the largest natural harbors in the Far East.

LESSON 13

WORD LIST

1.	t'in-īn	natural
2.	Wōng-Pò	Whampo
3.	hoî-ngôn	coast
4.	"ch'uen-laū-pat-sik"	"flowing in and out without stopping"
5.	Kwóng-Kaú T'ìt-Lô	Canton-Kowloon Railway
6.	noî-hōh	inland river
7.	t'ung-tò	to extend into
8.	Au-Chau	Europe
9.	tsẑ-ts'ūng	from the time when, since
10.	tsìp kwaî	to connect rail
11.	Pak-P'īng	Peiping
12.	Ngōh-Kwòk	Russia
13.	king-kwòh	to pass through, to pass by
14.	Sai-Paàk-Leĭ-À	Siberia
15.	Môk-Sz-Foh	Moscow
16.	Wā-Sha	Warsaw
17.	hung-chung	sky, in the air
18.	hōng-hung sìn	air route
19.	Fei-Chau	Africa
20.	Ò-Chau	Australia

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

464

京. king: a high peak; Capital City.

京都 king-to: capital; metropolis.

京炭 king t'aàn: charcoal.

601

糧 leūng: provisions, ration, tax.

出糧 ch'ut-leūng: to pay wages.

糧食 leūng shîk: provisions.

絕糧 tsuût leūng: food supplies cut off.

1438

往 wǒng: to go; to proceed; formerly.

往来 wǒng-loī: to associate with.

往往 wǒng-wǒng: frequently; generally.

京 糧 往

京 糧 往

京 粮 糧 往 往

294

河 hōh: a river; canal

運河 wān-hōh: a canal; grand canal

河流 hōh-lau: river's course

1152

鐵 t'ìt: iron; firmness.

生鐵 shaang t'ìt: cast iron.

鐵板 t'ìt paán: iron plate.

河 鐵 鉄

河 鐵

河 鉄

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

813

伯	paàk: father's elder brother; husband's elder brother; chief.
伯父	paàk-foō: a paternal uncle (senior to father).
伯母	paàk-mŏ: an aunt

131

川	ch'uen: a stream
四川	Seì-ch'uen: Szechuen (province of China)

1322

津	tsun: to pass over; ford; overflow; saliva.
津口	tsun haú: the mouth of a creek.
津貼	tsun-t'ìp: subsidy; to help with money.

伯 川 津

伯 川 津

伯 津

756

俄	ngōh: sudden.
俄羅斯	Ngōh-lōh-Sz: Russia.
白俄	Paâk-Ngōh: White Russian.
赤俄	Ch'ìk-Ngōh: Red Russian.

710

莫	môk: not; none; do not
莫非	môk-fei: it must be...
莫見怪	môk kìn kwaaì: do not take offense.

俄 莫

俄 莫

俄 莫

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

中國海岸有幾千里長。對外交通，向來都便利。主要嘅港口，北有天津，中有上海，南有廣州同香港。呢啲港口，每日都有船隻來來往往，出出入入。

對內交通呢，因為河道多，水上交通，亦都便利。好似華南嘅珠江，中部嘅長江，北部嘅黃河，大大細細嘅船隻，喺處航行，日日都"川流不息。"運糧食貨物到全國各處地方。

陸路交通除咗公路之外，因為有廣九，Uêt 漢，京漢三條鐵路連接，可以由香港直到北京，更可以經過西伯利 À 直到俄國莫 Sz 科。

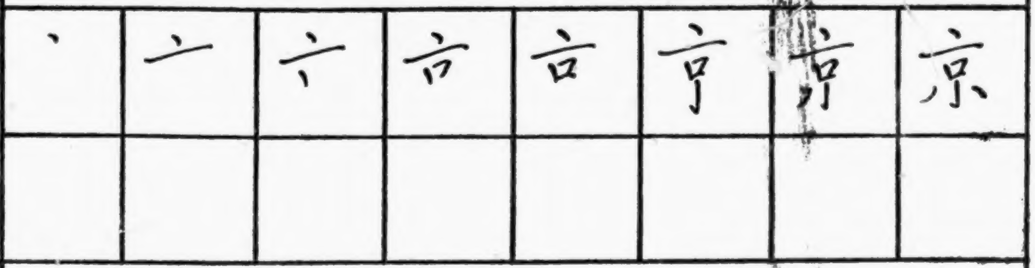
現時全世界交通都利用飛機，中國亦照樣做，所以對內對外交通都四通八達啦。

LESSON 13

WRITING MATERIAL

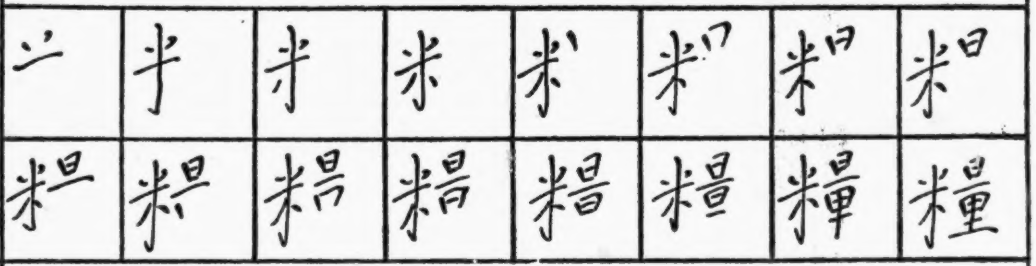
京

Character Number 464 Radical Number 8
Stroke Number 8 亠



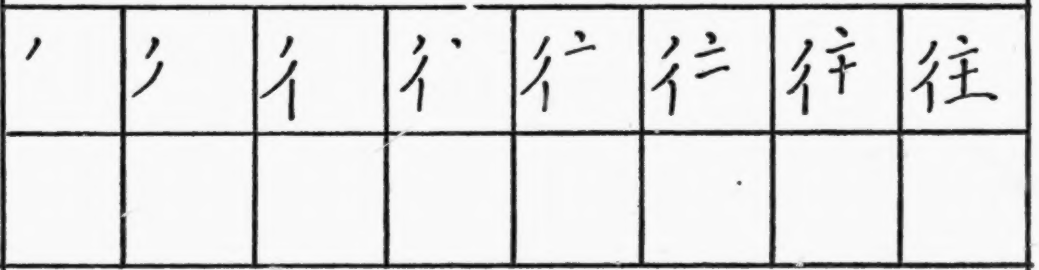
糧

Character Number 601 Radical Number 119
Stroke Number 18 米



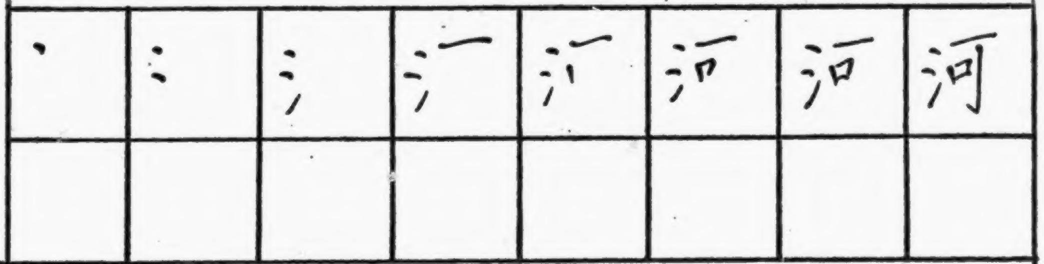
往

Character Number 1438 Radical Number 60
Stroke Number 8 彳



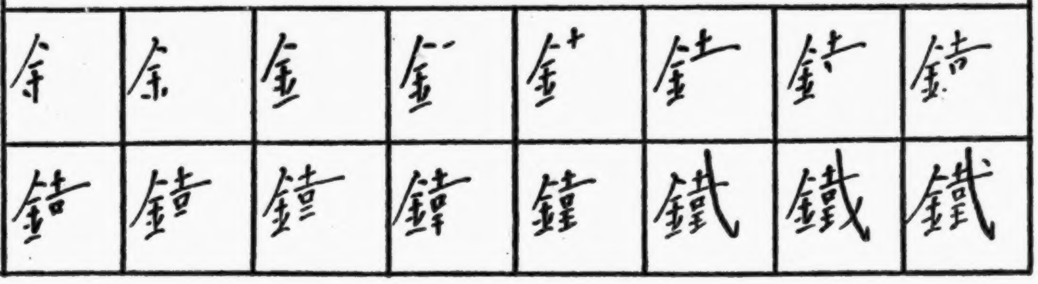
河

Character Number 294 Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 8 氵, 水

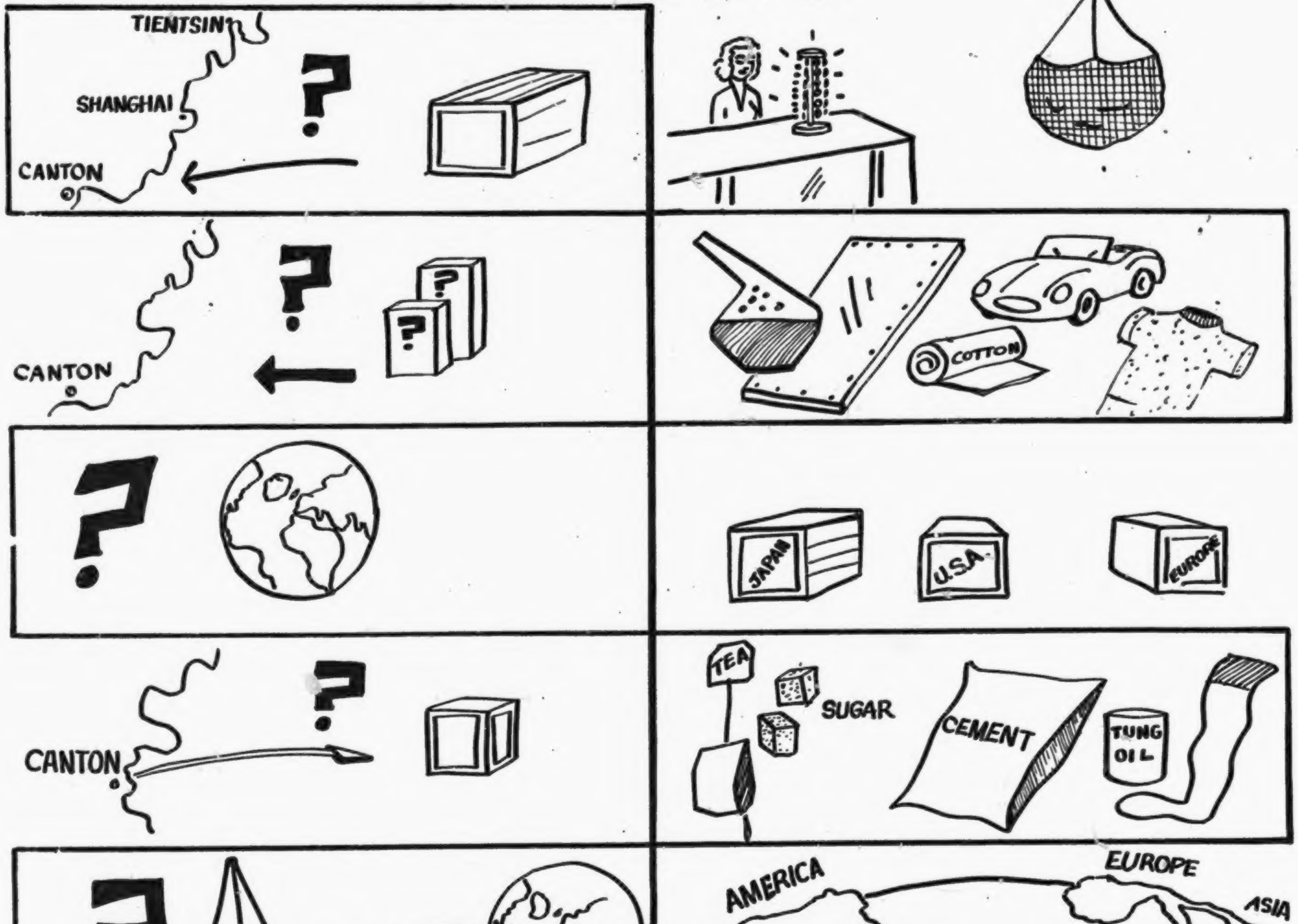


鐵

Character Number 1152 Radical Number 167
Stroke Number 21 釒, 金



LESSON 14


TIENTSIN
SHANGHAI
CANTON
?
CANTON
?
?
?
COTTON
?
JAPAN
U.S.A.
EUROPE
CANTON
?
TEA
SUGAR
CEMENT
TUNG OIL
?
AMERICA
EUROPE
ASIA
AFRICA
?
GIFT DEPT
DEPT STORE
STORE
5¢ 10 STORE
$
?
YES

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: T'in-Tsun haî Wā Pak yat kỏh chûng-iù kè sheung-faû,
Sheûng-Hoì haî Wā Chung yat kỏh chûng-iù kè sheung-faû,
Kwóng-Chau haî Wā Naām yat kỏh chûng-iù kè sheung-faû. Kám,
Kwóng-Chau kè chûng-iù sheung îp haî mi-yĕ ne?

Cheung: Kwóng-Chau kè chûng-iù sheung îp haî ch'ut-yât-haú
shaang-ì, paảk-fỏh kung-sz shaang-ì, táng táng.

W: Kwóng-Chau kè yâp-haú fỏh toh shỏ haî mi-yĕ ne?

C: Kwóng-Chau kè yâp-haú fỏh toh shỏ haî kei-heì, nğ kam, heì-ch'e, ìn-liû*, shîk pán, yeûk pán, mìn chik pán, mō chik pán, táng táng.

W: Ni ti fỏh toh shỏ yaū pin-shuè wân laī kè ne?

C: Yaŭ ti yaū Yât-Poón wân laī; yaŭ ti yaū Meĭ-Chau t'ūng Au-Chau kỏk kwỏk wân laī.

W: Kwóng-Chau kè ch'ut-haú fỏh toh shỏ haî mi-yĕ ne?

C: Kwóng-Chau kè ch'ut-haú fỏh toh shỏ haî ch'ā, t'ōng, shuî-naī, t'ūng-yaū, sz-faảt, táng táng.

W: Ni ti fỏh toh shỏ wân huì pin-shuè ne?

C: Yaŭ ti wân huì Meĭ-Chau, Au-Chau, Fei-Chau, yaŭ ti wân huì Ò-Chau, À-Chau.

W: Kwóng-Chau kè paảk-fỏh kung-sz shaang-ì haî tîm-yeûng* kè ne?

C: Kwóng-Chau kè paảk-fỏh kung-sz hó toh; shaang-ì kè kîng-chaang hó k'êk-lît.

W: Wā Naām kè sheung îp, yaū hoì ngoî Wā-K'iū t'aū tsz toh m̄-toh ne?

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C: Toh. Hoì ngoî kè Wā-K'iū hó toh haì Wā Naām kòk shuè t'aū tsz tsô shaang-ì, shóh-ĭ sheung îp hó faàt-taât.

W: Wā Naām kè sheung îp, ch'uī-chóh Chung-Kwòk yān t'aū tsz chi ngoî, yaŭ mŏ ngoî kwòk yān t'aū tsz ne?

C: Wā Naām kè sheung îp, ch'uī-chóh Chung-Kwòk yān t'aū tsz chi ngoî, yaū ngoî kwòk yān t'aū tsz kè yîk-to m̄-shiú.

LESSON 14

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: Tientsin is an important port in North China; Shanghai is an important port in Central China; Canton is an important port in South China. In that case, what are the important commercial enterprises in Canton?

Cheung: The important commercial enterprises in Canton are the import-export business, the department store business, etc.

W: Primarily, what goods does Canton import?

C: Most of the imports of Canton are machines, metals, automobiles, fuel, food stuffs, medicine, cotton goods, woolen goods, etc.

W: From where are most of these goods imported?

C: Some of them are imported from Japan; some are imported from various countries of America and Europe.

W: Primarily, what goods does Canton export?

C: Most of the exports from Canton are tea, sugar, cement, Tung oil, silk goods, etc.

W: To where are most of these goods exported?

C: Some of them are exported to America, Europe, Africa; some are exported to Australia and Asia.

W: How is the department store business in Canton?

C: There are many department stores in Canton and business competition is very keen.

LESSON 14

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W: Is there much investment from the overseas Chinese in the commercial enterprises in South China?

C: Yes, many overseas Chinese invest in business at various places in South China, therefore commerce is very prosperous.

W: In the commercial field in South China, is there any foreign investment other than that of the Chinese?

C: In the commercial field in South China, there is also much foreign investment other than that of the Chinese.

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. There was keen competition at the athletic meet last week.
2. Silk goods have been imported from Japan in recent years.
3. Tung oil is an important export product of China.
4. The cement industry is related to construction works.
5. Inland rivers as well as railroads are the chief means of transportation in this area.
6. Woolen goods usually come from Australia.
7. Cotton good are produced in the South and then transported to the coast for export.
8. China imports most all of the western medicines from the United States and Japan.
9. Food stuffs are much cheaper on the west coast than on the east coast.
10. My car uses a lot of gas, but it runs very well.
11. He is an import-export merchant and most of his business is related to metal.
12. This machine is to be sent to Tientsin the day after tommorow.
13. Shanghai is the market center for every kind of merchandise.
14. Central China is an agricultural area.
15. He will not send you his merchandise unless he receives the money.
16. Her dress is beautiful and it is made of silk.

LESSON 14

WORD LIST

1.	T' in-Tsun	Tientsin
2.	Sheûng-Hoî	Shanghai
3.	Wà Chung	Central China
4.	fòh	goods, merchandise
5.	kei-heì	machine
6.	nğ kam	metal
7.	ìn-liû*	fuel
8.	shîk pán	food stuff
9.	yeûk pán	medicine
10.	mìn chik pán	cotton goods
11.	mō chik pán	woolen goods
12	wân	to transport
13.	shuî-naì	cement
14.	t' ūng-yaū	tung oil
15.	sz-faàt	silk goods
16.	kîng-chaang	competition, to compete
17.	k'êk-lît	keen

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

1069

絲 sz: silk; fine thread or wire; minute.

生絲 shaang sz: raw silk.

絲髮 sz-faàt: silk goods.

絲毫 sz-hō: the least number or quantity

624

料 liû: stuff; material to calculate; to manage

原料 uēn-liû: raw material.

飲料 yám-liû: beverages.

料理 liû-leĭ: to manage; to control.

照料 chiû-liû: to look after, to take care of.

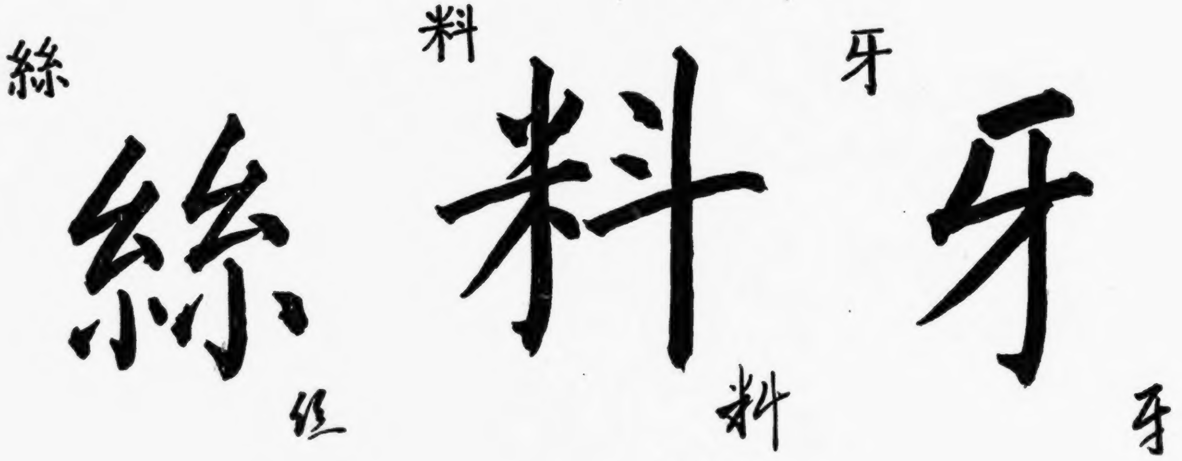
743

牙 ngā: tooth; screw thread.

牙齒 ngā-ch'í: the teeth.

牙粉 ngā-fán: tooth powder.

牙擦 ngā-ts'aàt: a tooth brush.



6 8

毛 mō: hair; fur; feather.

毛管 mō-koón: pores of skin.

鬆毛 sung mō: shaggy.

實毛 shât mō: short haired.

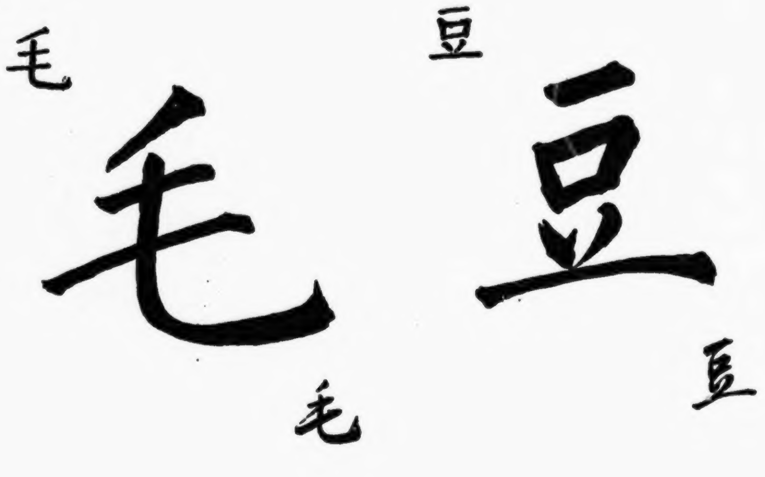
毛病 mō-pêng: failing; fault.

1123

豆 taû: a trencher; tray; bean; pea.

豆芽 taû-ngā: bean sprout.

豆腐 taû-foô: bean cake.



LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

42

綢 ch'aū (ch'aū*): silk; pongee, fine texture.

生綢 shaang-ch'aū*: raw pongee.

紡綢 fóng-ch'aū: semi-raw silk.

689

棉 mīn: cotton; cotton plant.

棉花 mīn-fa: cotton.

棉布 mīn pò: cotton cloth.

棉被 mīn peǐ: cotton quilt.

732

泥 naī: soil; mud; dirt to smear.

泥土 naī-tó: dirt; earth; soil.

泥磚 naī chuen: adobe brick.

綢 棉 泥

綢 棉 泥

绸 棉 坭 泥

35

質 chat: substance, disposition, to confront.

質 chi: (lit. pro) a pledge

品質 pán-chat: quality disposition

質問 chat-mân: to question; to ask.

472

競 kîng: to compete; quarrel.

競爭 kîng-chaang: to compete.

競走 kîng tsaú: foot race.

質 貭 競

質 競

质 竸

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

中國雖然係農業國家，但係乜野生意都有人做。好似天津，上海，廣州呢三個港口，做好大嘅出入口生意，所以商業更盛。

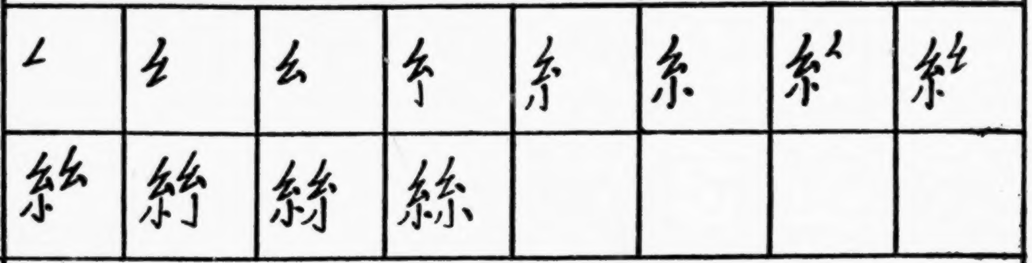
不過，中國因為工業重未好發達，所以入口貨多數係機器，五金，汽車，同in料，亦有藥品，食品，棉織品，毛織品，象牙等等。出口貨最出名嘅係絲綢，茶，糖，大豆，水泥。中國嘅絲綢因為質地好，全世界都聞名。差唔多冇第二國可以同佢競爭。

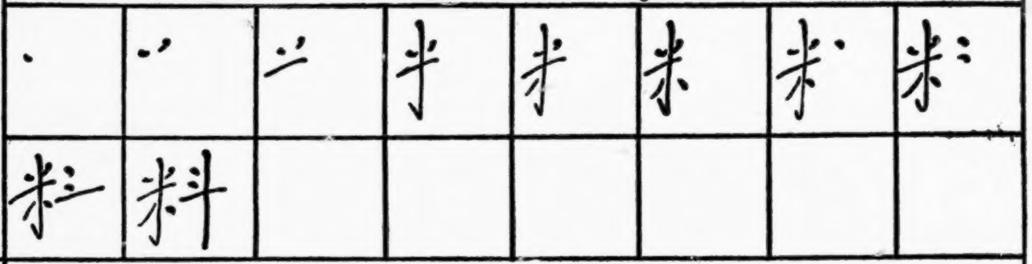
對內商業，近來百貨公司生意非常發達，而且公司嘅建築同設備，都極之新式，同美國嘅差唔多。

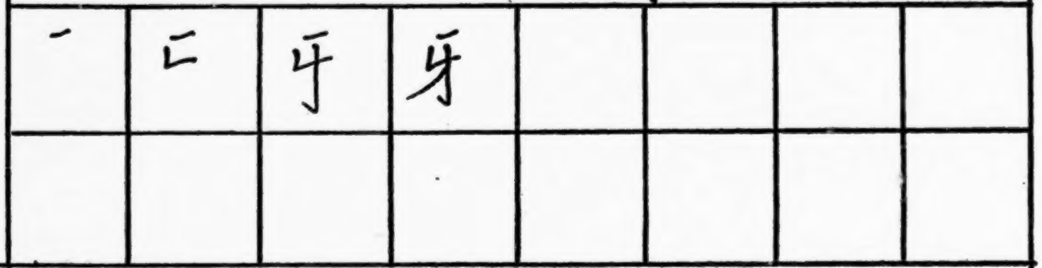
LESSON 14

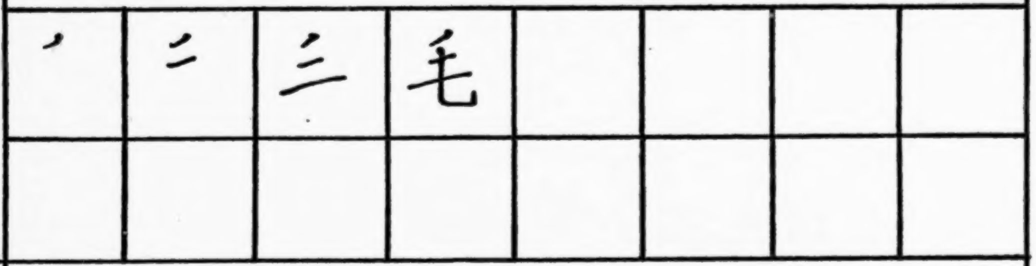
WRITING MATERIAL

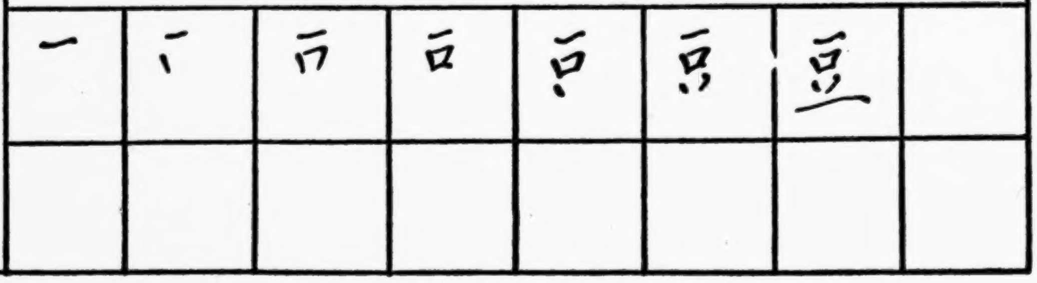
絲	Character Number 1069 Radical Number 120 Stroke Number 12 糸
料	Character Number 624 Radical Number 68 Stroke Number 10 米
牙	Character Number 743 Radical Number 92 Stroke Number 4 牙
毛	Character Number 698 Radical Number 82 Stroke Number 4 毛
豆	Character Number 1123 Radical Number 151 Stroke Number 7 豆



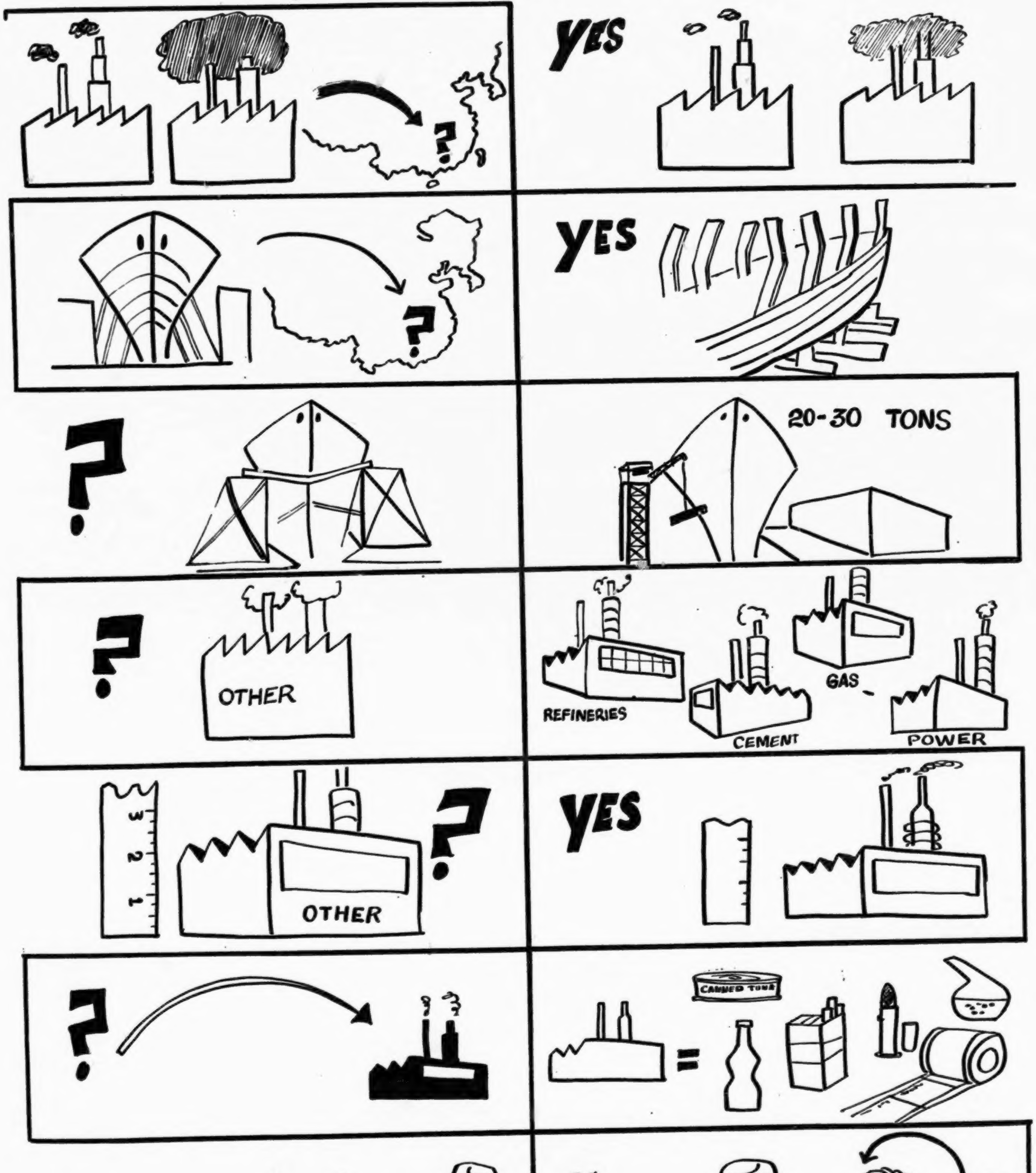








LESSON 15


YES
YES
20-30 TONS
OTHER
REFINERIES
GAS
CEMENT
POWER
3
2
1
OTHER
YES
CANNED TUNA
OR

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Wā Naăm yaŭ mŏ ch'ŭng kung îp, hing kung îp ne?

Cheung: Yaŭ. Wā Naām yaŭ ch'ŭng kung îp, yîk yaŭ hing kung îp.

W: Wā Naām yaŭ mŏ tsô shuēn ch'óng ne?

C: Yaŭ. Haì Fuk-Kìn Shaáng kè Mă-Meĭ, t'ūng Kwóng-Tung Shaáng kè Chaàm-Kong, to yaŭ hó taaî kè tsô shuēn ch'óng.

W: Ni ti tsô shuēn ch'óng kè shuēn-ò hóh-ĭ yūng-naâp tak keì taaî kè shuēn ne?

C: Ni ti tsô shuēn ch'óng kè shuēn-ò hóh-ĭ yūng-naâp tak leŭng saam maân tun kòm taaî kè shuēn.

W: Wā Naām chûng yaŭ mŏ k'eī-t'a kè kung-ch'óng ne?

C: Yaŭ. Wā Naām yaŭ lîn t'ōng ch'óng, shuì-naī ch'óng, tîn-heì ch'óng, mooī-heì ch'óng, táng táng.

W: Ch'uī-chóh ni ti taaî kw'aī-mō kè kung-ch'óng chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ mŏ saì kw'ai-mō kè kung-ch'óng ne?

C: Yaŭ la. Ch'uī-chóh ni ti taaî kw'ai-mō kè kung-ch'óng chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ m̄-shiú saì kw'ai-mō kè kung-ch'óng t'im.

W: Ni ti saì kw'ai-mō kè kung-ch'óng haî mi-yĕ kè kung-ch'óng ne?

C: Ni ti saì kw'ai-mō kè kung-ch'óng haî heì-shuì ch'óng, koòn-t'aū ch'óng, in-ts'ó ch'óng, fà-chong pán ch'óng, fà-hŏk pán ch'óng, t'ūng yàn-ch'aàt ch'óng, táng táng.

W: Ni ti kung-ch'óng yaū Chung-Kwòk yān t'aū tsz a, yik-waâk yaū ngoî kwòk yān t'aū tsz ne?

C: Ni ti kung-ch'óng yaū Chung-Kwòk yān t'aū tsz, yîk yaū ngoî kwòk yān t'aū tsz, yaū-k'eī haî hoì-ngoî kè Wā-K'iū t'aū tsz káng toh.

LESSON 15

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: Is there heavy and light industry in South China?

Cheung: Yes, there is heavy and light industry in South China.

W: Are there ship-building yards in South China?

C: Yes, there are big ship-building yards in Ma-Wei of Fukien Province and Chan-Chiang of Kwangtung Province.

W: How big a ship can the docks of these ship-building yards accommodate?

C: The docks of these ship-building yards can accommodate ships from twenty to thirty thousand tons.

W: Are there other manufactories in South China?

C: Yes, there are sugar refineries, cement factories, electric power plants, gas plants, etc.

W: Excluding these large scale manufactories, are there other small scale manufactories?

C: Yes, excluding these large scale manufactories, there are many small scale manufactories too.

W: What are these small scale manufactories?

C: These small scale manufactories are soft drink factories, canning factories, tobacco factories, cosmetic factories, chemical factories, printing presses, etc.

W: Are these manufactories the investments of the Chinese or the foreigners?

C: These manufactories are the investments of the Chinese and the foreigners. Investments of the overseas Chinese are especially numerous.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. There is a big printing press in the school here.
2. He finished college last year and is working in a chemical factory as an engineer now.
3. He studied chemistry in the United States for many years, and he is now going to manage a cosmetic factory in China.
4. There are two tobacco factories in this city, and each employs a couple of hundred workers.
5. Canning factories are not at all common in Africa.
6. A great number of soft-drink factories are doing excellent business here.
7. Many of the factories in the west are smaller in scale than those in the east.
8. The gate to the gas plant will be opened at 7:45 a.m.
9. I can never believe that I own this electric power plant.
10. It is very fortunate that you got a job in the sugar refinery.
11. The United States imports 5,000 tons of sugar every month.
12. This restaurant can accomodate a couple of thousand people.
13. Even though he finished college, he works at the dock.
14. This ship-building yard is one of the best in the country.
15. Light industries are just as important as heavy industries.
16. If I had money, I would invest in chemical enterprises.

LESSON 15

WORD LIST

1.	ch'ŭng kung-îp	heavy industry
2.	hing kung-îp	light industry
3.	tsô-shuēn-ch'óng	ship-building yard
4.	shuēn-ỏ	dock
5.	yūng-naâp	to accomodate, contain
6.	tun	ton
7.	lîn-t'ōng-ch'óng	sugar refinery
8.	tîn-heỉ-ch'óng	electric power plant
9.	mooī-heỉ-ch'óng	gas plant
10.	kw'ai-mō	scale
11.	kung-ch'óng	factory, manufactory
12.	heỉ-shuî ch'óng	soft drink factory
13.	koỏn-t'aū ch'óng	canning factory
14.	in-ts'ó ch'óng	tobacco factory
15.	fả-chong pán ch'óng	cosmetic factory
16.	fả-hôk pán ch'óng	chemical factory
17.	yản-ch'aảt ch'óng	printing press

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

26

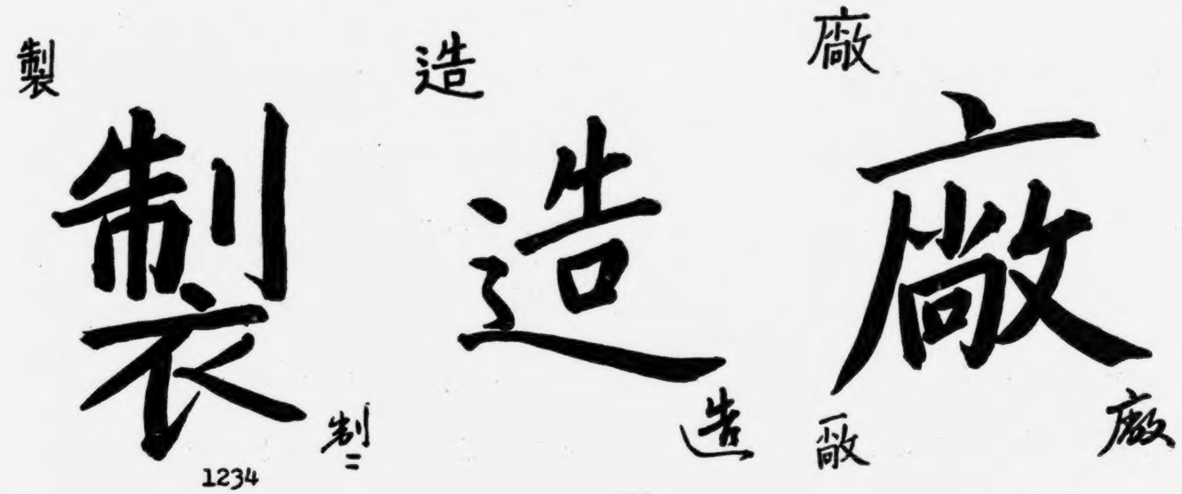
製	chaì: to make, to compound
製造	chaì-tsô: to manufacture
製造品	chaì-tsô-pán: manufactured arti les
製藥	chaì-yeûk: to compound medicines.

1273

造	tsô: to create; to originate; to build; to make.
造船	tsô shuēn: to build ships.
造謠言	tsô iū-īn: to institute false report; to spread rumor.

115

廠	ch'óng: shed; factory; works
機器廠	kei-hèi-ch'óng: machine shop
織布廠	chik-pò-ch'óng: weaving mill
工廠	kung-ch'óng: factory

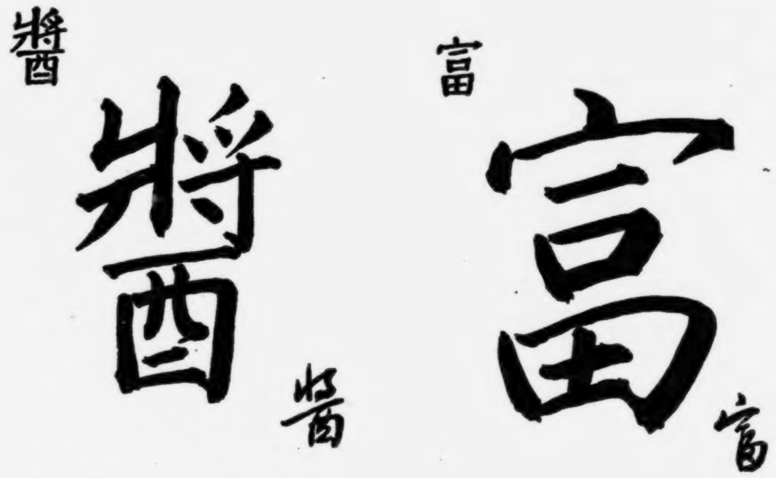


1234

醬	tseùng: condiment; sauce.
豆醬	taû tseùng: bean paste.
醬油	tseùng-yaū: soy sauce.

209

富	foò: rich; wealthy abundance
富貴	foò kwaì: riches and honor
富厚	foò haŭ: rich & influential



LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

1207

刷 ts'aàt: to clean; to brush; a brush.

印刷 yàn-ts'aàt: to print.

715

煤 mooī:coal: cinder.

煤炭 mooī-t'aàn: coal.

煤氣 mooī-heī: gas.

煤油 mooī-yaū: petroleum.

煤礦 mooī kw'ǒng: coal mine.

614

煉 lîn: to refine; to smelt.

煉鐵 lîn t'ìt: to smelt iron.

煉乳 lîn-nĕ: condensed milk.

刷　煤　煉

刷　煤　煉

刷　煤　煉

555

規 kw'ai: rule; law; custom; usage; compass.

規矩 kw'ai-kuí: manners; customs.

規則 kw'ai-tsak: regulations; rules of conduct.

規模 kw'ai-mō: plans; definite purpose.

699

模 mō: a pattern; model; example.

模範 mō-faân: model; example.

模形 mō-yīng: pattern; model; mold.

打指模 tá chí mō: to stamp with inked finger.

規　模

規　模

规　模

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

中國地方大,物產豐富,但係重工業唔係幾發達,所以大規模嘅工廠冇幾多.比較出名嘅,大約有幾間造船廠,煉糖廠,鐵廠,水泥廠.有幾個大城市好似上海,廣州,亦都有電氣廠,煤氣廠,不過,細規模工廠,非常之多.

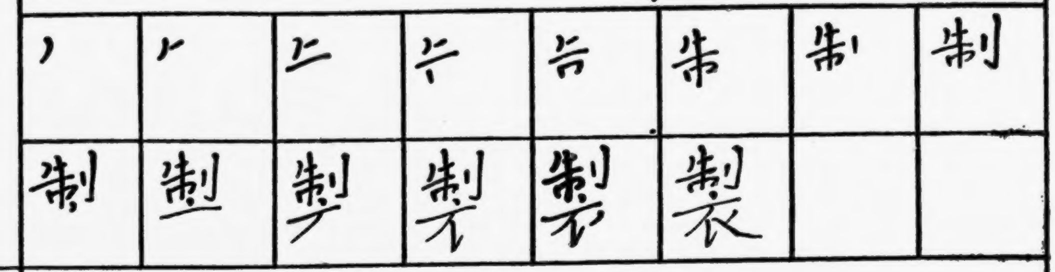
織布廠,製絲廠,汽水廠,煙草廠,醬油廠,印刷廠等等.唔只大城市有,細城市亦都有.呢啲工廠雖然規模細,但係得翻好多利權,國家經濟,亦得到好大幫助.

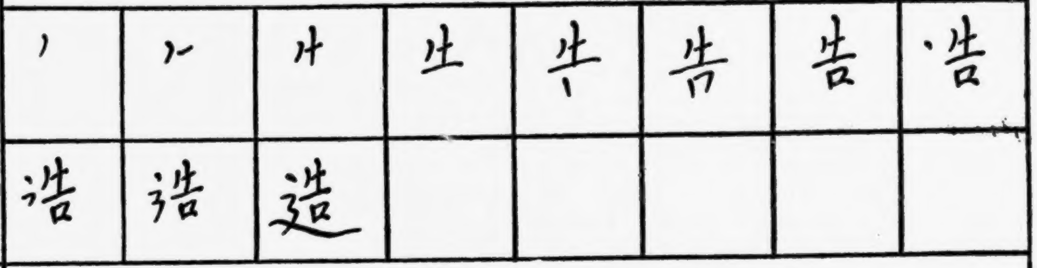
因為海外華k'iu 同外國投資,一日一日多,相信大規模工廠,亦一日一日增加,將來重工業一定好發達.

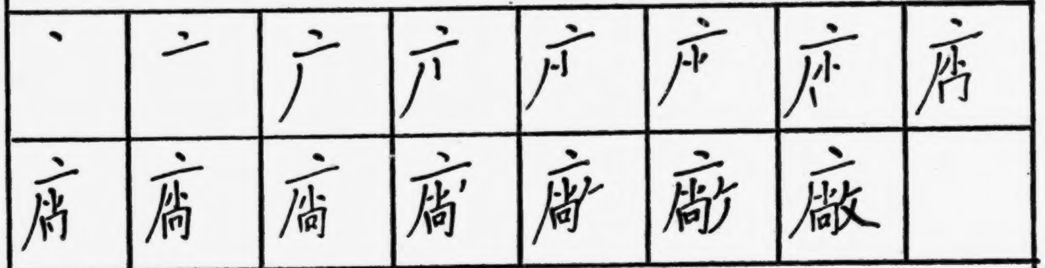
LESSON 15

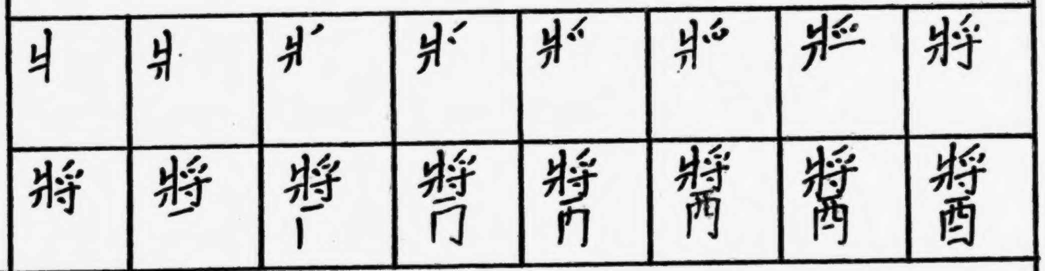
WRITING MATERIAL

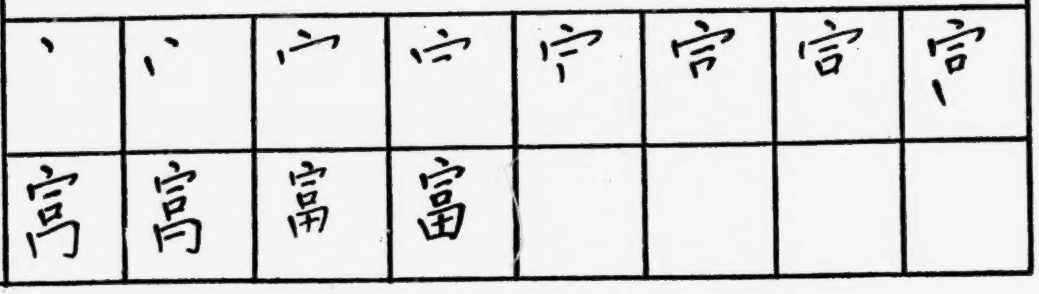
製	Character Number 26 Stroke Number 14 Radical Number 145 衣
造	Character Number 1273 Stroke Number 11 Radical Number 162 辶，辵
廠	Character Number 115 Stroke Number 15 Radical Number 53 广
醬	Character Number 1234 Stroke Number 18 Radical Number 164 酉
富	Character Number 209 Stroke Number 12 Radical Number 40 宀



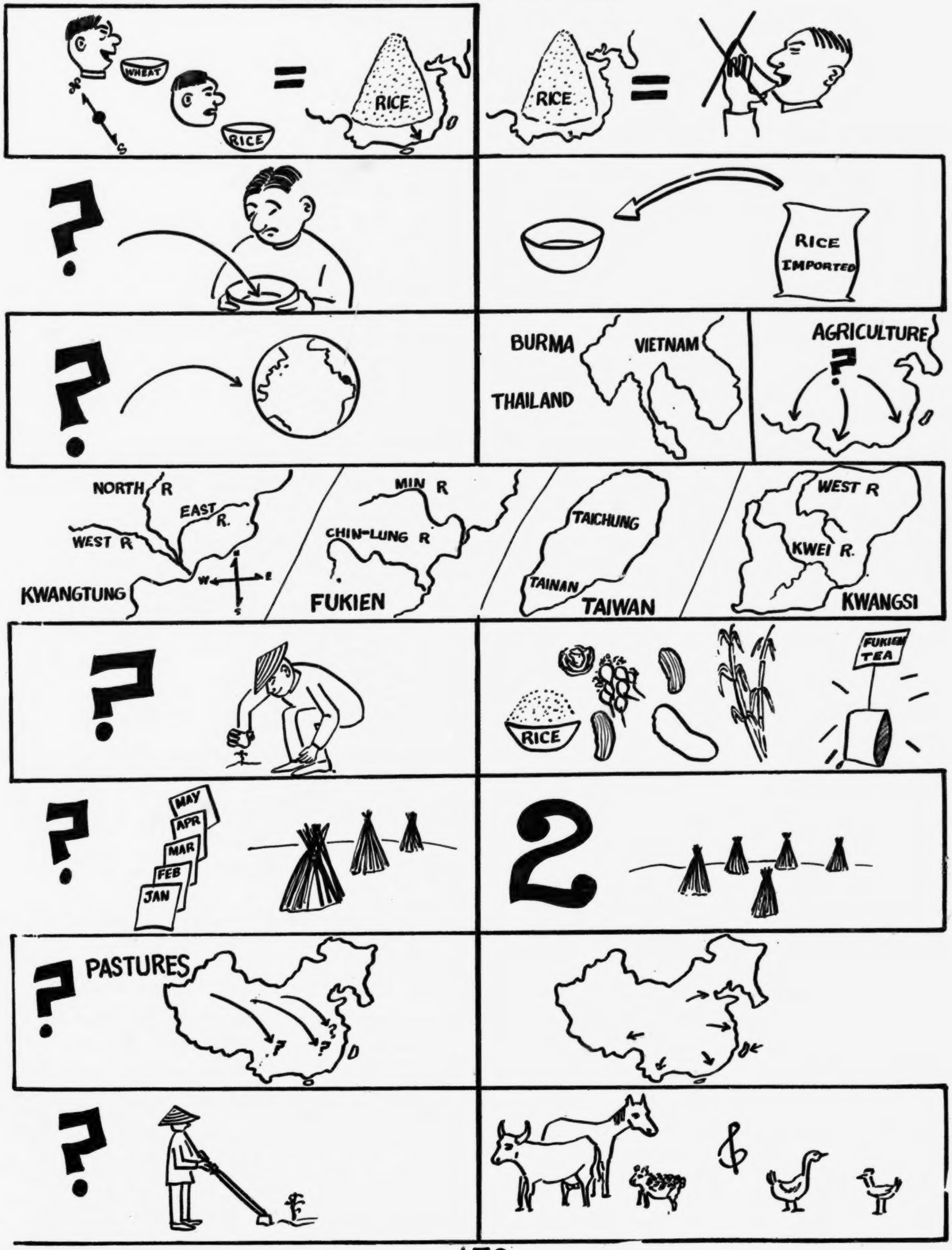








LESSON 16


WHEAT
S
RICE
=
RICE
RICE
=
?
RICE
IMPORTED
?
BURMA
VIETNAM
THAILAND
AGRICULTURE
?
NORTH R
EAST R.
WEST R
KWANGTUNG
W
E
S
MIN R
CHIN-LUNG R
FUKIEN
TAICHUNG
TAINAN
TAIWAN
WEST R
KWEI R.
KWANGSI
?
RICE
FUKIEN TEA
?
MAY
APR
MAR
FEB
JAN
2
?
PASTURES
?
?

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: **Wā** Pak kè yān toh shò shîk mâk; **Wā** Naām kè yān toh shò shîk maĭ. Kám, **Wā** Naām kè teî-fong yat-tîng ch'ut-ch'aán hó toh maĭ là.

Cheung: **Wā** Naām kè teî-fong ch'ut-ch'aán maĭ, taân-haî **Wā** Naām ch'ut-ch'aán kè maĭ m̄-kaù **Wā** Naām kè yān shîk.

W: K'uĭ-teî m̄-kaù maĭ shîk kè shī-haû, k'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* pó-kaù ne?

C: K'uĭ-teî m̄-kaù maĭ shîk kè shī-haû, k'uĭ-teî iù k'aaù yâp-haú kè maĭ.

W: Ni ti yâp-haú kè maĭ yaū pin kòh kwòk laī ne?

C: Ni ti yâp-haú kè maĭ yaū Uêt-Naām, T'aaì-Kwòk, t'ūng Mĭn-Tîn laī kè.

W: **Wā** Naām kè nūng îp k'ui haî pin-shuè ne?

C: **Wā** Naām kè nūng îp k'ui, Kwóng-Tung Shaáng fong-mîn, haî Tung-Kong, Sai-Kong, t'ūng Pak-Kong yat taaì; Fuk-Kìn Shaáng fong-mîn, haî Măn-Kong t'ūng Kaú-Lūng-Kong yat taaì; T'oī-Waan Shaáng fong-mîn, haî T'oī-Chung, t'ūng T'oī-Naām yat taaì; Kwóng-Sai Shaáng fong-mîn, haî Sai-Kong sheûng-yaū, t'ūng Kwaì-Kong yat taaì.

W: Kóh ti nūng yān chùng mi-yĕ ne?

C: Kóh ti nūng yān chùng maĭ, chùng ts'oì, chùng fa-shaang, chùng chè, chùng ch'ā, táng táng. Yaū-k'eī haî Fuk-Kìn kè ch'ā tsuì chuè-mēng.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W: K'uĭ-teî chùng kè maĭ, mooĭ nīn shau-wôk keî toh ts'ì ne?

C: Mooĭ nīn shau-wôk leūng ts'ì.

W: Wā Naām kè ch'uk-mûk ch'eūng haî pin-shuè ne?

C: Wā Naām ke ch'uk-mûk ch'eūng saàn-hoi haî Wā Naām kòk shuè.

W: Kôh ti ch'uk-mûk ch'eūng yeūng ti mi-yĕ ne?

C: Taaî-kè ch'uk-mûk ch'eūng toh shò yeūng ngaū, yeūng mă, waâk-ché yeūng yeūng; saî kè ch'uk-mûk ch'eūng toh shò yeūng chue, yeūng kai, yeūng aàp, yeūng ngōh, tâng tâng.

LESSON 16

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: The Northern Chinese eat mostly wheat and the Southern Chinese eat mostly rice. In that case, South China must have a high production of rice.

Cheung: South China does produce rice, but the rice produced in South China is not sufficient to feed the Southern Chinese.

W: When they do not have enough rice to eat, how do they remedy the deficiency?

C: When they do not have enough rice to eat, they have to depend on imported rice.

W: From which country is rice imported?

C: Rice is imported from Vietnam, Thailand, and Burma.

W: Where are the agricultural districts of South China?

C: The agricultural districts of South China are in the regions of the East River, the West River, and the North River of Kwangtung Province; in the regions of the Min River and the Chiu-Lung River of Fukien Province; in the regions of Taichung and Tainan of Taiwan Province; and in the regions of the upper West River and the Kwei River of Kwangsi Province.

W: What do the farmers of those regions cultivate?

C: Those farmers cultivate rice, vegetables, peanuts, sugar cane, tea, etc. The tea of Fukien is expecially famous.

W: How many times each year do they harvest the rice they cultivate?

LESSON 16

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

C: They harvest twice each year.

W: Where are the pastures in South China?

C: The pastures are scattered throughout South China.

W: What do they raise in those pastures?

C: They primarily raise cattle, horses, or sheep in the big pastures; and pigs, chickens, ducks, geese, etc., in the small pastures.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. My parents raise chickens and ducks according to modern methods.
2. The children are scattered all over the parking lot.
3. The scenery in the pasture is changed completely now.
4. The harvest of last year was the better of the last two years.
5. The sugar canes we harvested are the tallest in the area.
6. A small amount of oil can be obtained from peanuts.
7. This is a piece of rich land for cultivation.
8. He spends many hours everyday in planting flowers.
9. I want to be friendly with both sides.
10. When we were young, we had to depend upon our parents.
11. This whole thing is wrong and we have to do something to remedy the situation.
12. The products from your factory are too expensive as compared to others.
13. I wish to have a small pasture to raise some beautiful horses.
14. This is the area famous for its natural beauty.
15. They harvest twice a year, in June and September.
16. Pigs are the most common animals to be seen in the country in China.

LESSON 16

WORD LIST

1.	ch'ut-ch'aân	to produce
2.	pố-kaủ	to remedy
3.	k'aaủ	to depend upon
4.	fong-mîn	side, area
5.	chủng	to cultivate, to plant
6.	fa-shaang	peanut
7.	chẻ	sugar cane
8.	shau-wôk	to harvest
9.	ch'uk-mûk ch'eūng	pasture
10.	saản-hoi	to scatter
11.	yeŭng	to raise (animate things)
12.	mâk	wheat
13.	aảp	duck
14.	ngōh	goose
15.	yeūng	sheep
16.	sheûng-yaū	upper river, upstream

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

670

麥	mâk: bearded grain wheat.
大麥	taaî-mâk: barley.
小麥	siú-mâk: rye.
麥粉	mâk-fán: oatmeal.

1480

養	yeǔng: to nourish; to rear; to bear.
養育	yeǔng-yûk: to rear; to bring up.
教養	kaaù-yeǔng: to raise and to instruct.
養病	yeǔng pêng: to nurse one's health.

425

救	kaù: to save; help.
救命	kaù mêng: to save life; save! help!
救火	kaù fóh: to fight fire.
救急	kaù kap: in emergency; first aid; emergency aid.
救主	kaù-chué: The Saviour.

麥 養 养 救

麥 養 救

麦 养 救

1434

獲	wôk: to obtain; to catch; to seize; to arrest.
獲利	wôk leî: to make profit.
獲罪	wôk tsuî: to commit an offense.

873

寶	pó: jewel; precious.
寶貴	pó-kwaì: valuable.
寶號	pó-hô: your valued firm, or store.

獲 寶 宝

獲 寶

獲 宝

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

734

粒 nap a kernel; for small things like beads, drops

一粒米 yat nap maǐ: a grain of rice.

一粒星 yat nap sing: a star.

141

畜 ch'uk: cattle; beasts; to rear

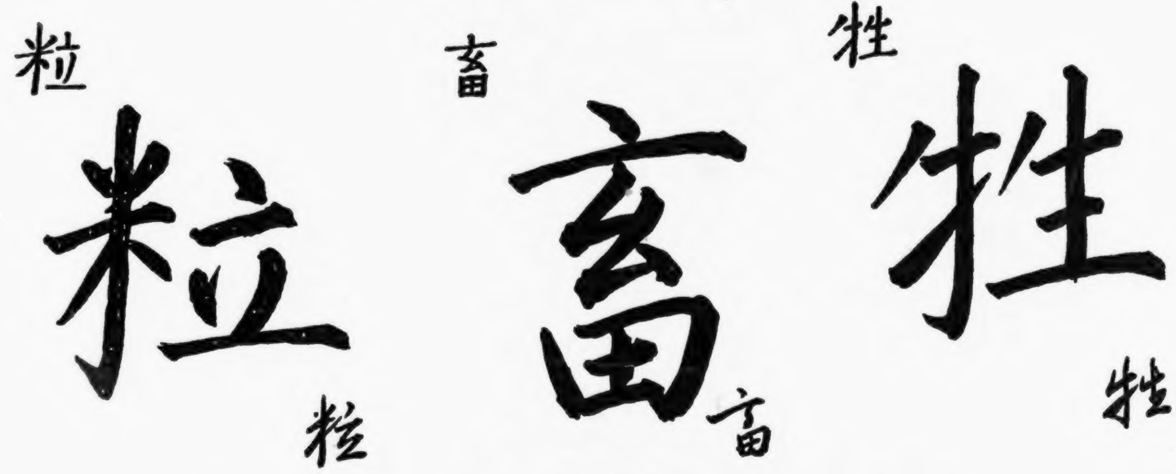
畜生 ch'uk-shang: animals

畜馬 ch'uk mǎ: to breed horse

935

牲 shaang: animal; sacrificial victim.

牲口 shaang-haú: cattle; draught animals.



110

鋤 ch'ōh: hoe; mattock (Cl. pá) to hoe; till

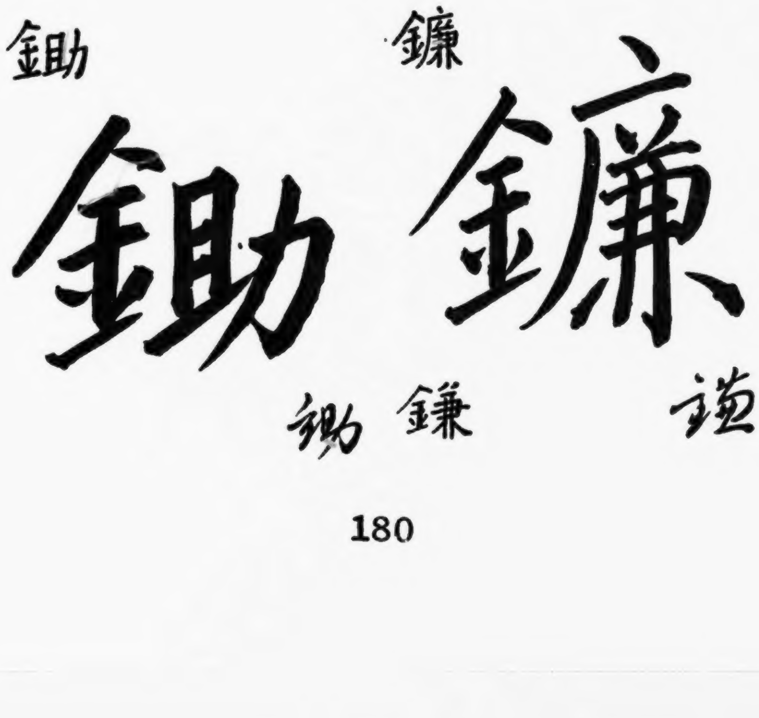
鋤頭 ch'ōh-t'aū: a heavy hoe

鋤地 ch'ōh teî: dig up the ground

610

鐮 līm: instrument for reaping.

鐮刀 līm-to: sickle.



LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

我地已經講過，中國係農業國。係唔係中國農業好發達呀？唔係，中國人大多數以耕種謀生。佢地重係靠人力同牛馬嘅力，由下種到收獲，用鋤頭用鐮刀，唔係用機器。佢地要勤勞。佢地嘅工作係極之辛苦，所以佢地對於每一粒米，都覺得寶貴。同時佢地又養畜牲黎補助。如果哈到水災旱災，就要政府救濟啦。

中國人嘅主要糧食係米同麥，南方人食米，北方人食麥。但係華南出產嘅米，重唔夠華南嘅人食，所以要靠南洋各地方出產嘅米黎補救。

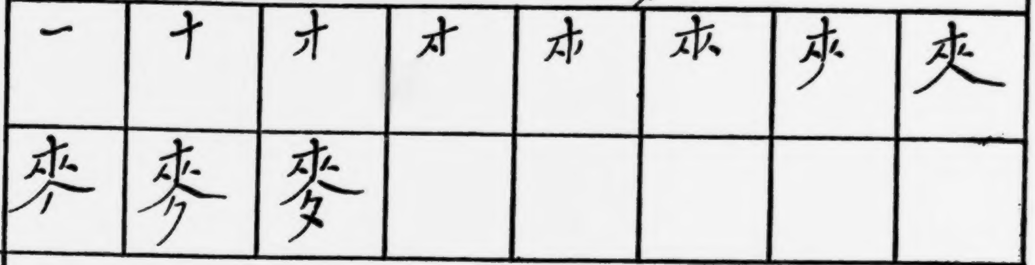
中國有啲大學已設立農科，政府亦喺各地方設立農業試驗場，用科學方法黎增加農業生產。

LESSON 16

WRITING MATERIAL

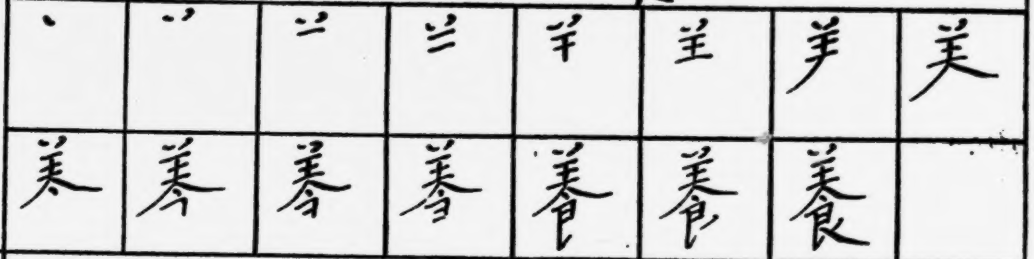
麥

Character Number 670 Radical Number 199
Stroke Number 11 麥



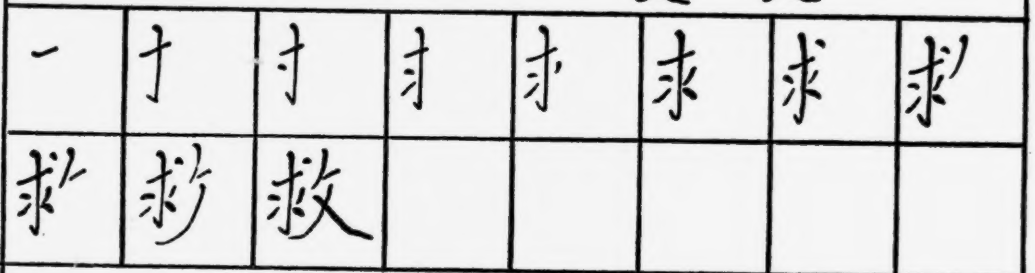
養

Character Number 1480 Radical Number 184
Stroke Number 15 食



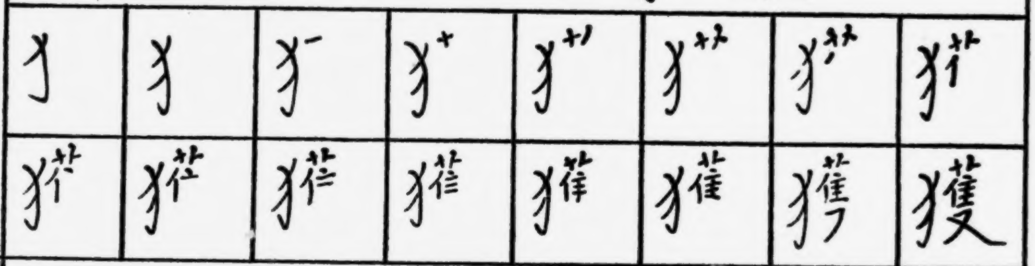
救

Character Number 425 Radical Number 66
Stroke Number 11 攵，攴



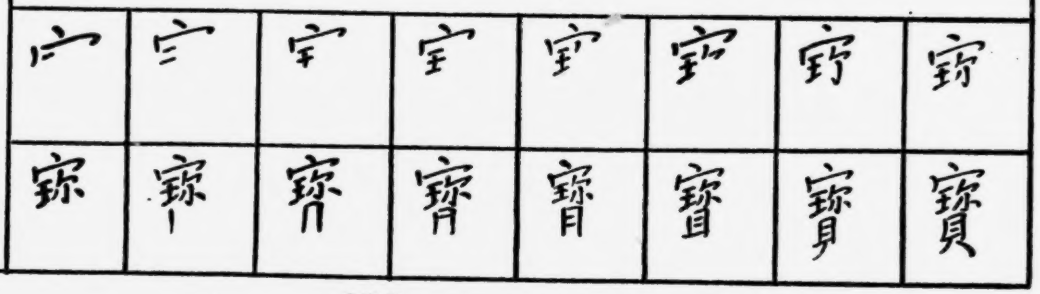
獲

Character Number 1434 Radical Number 94
Stroke Number 17 犭，犬

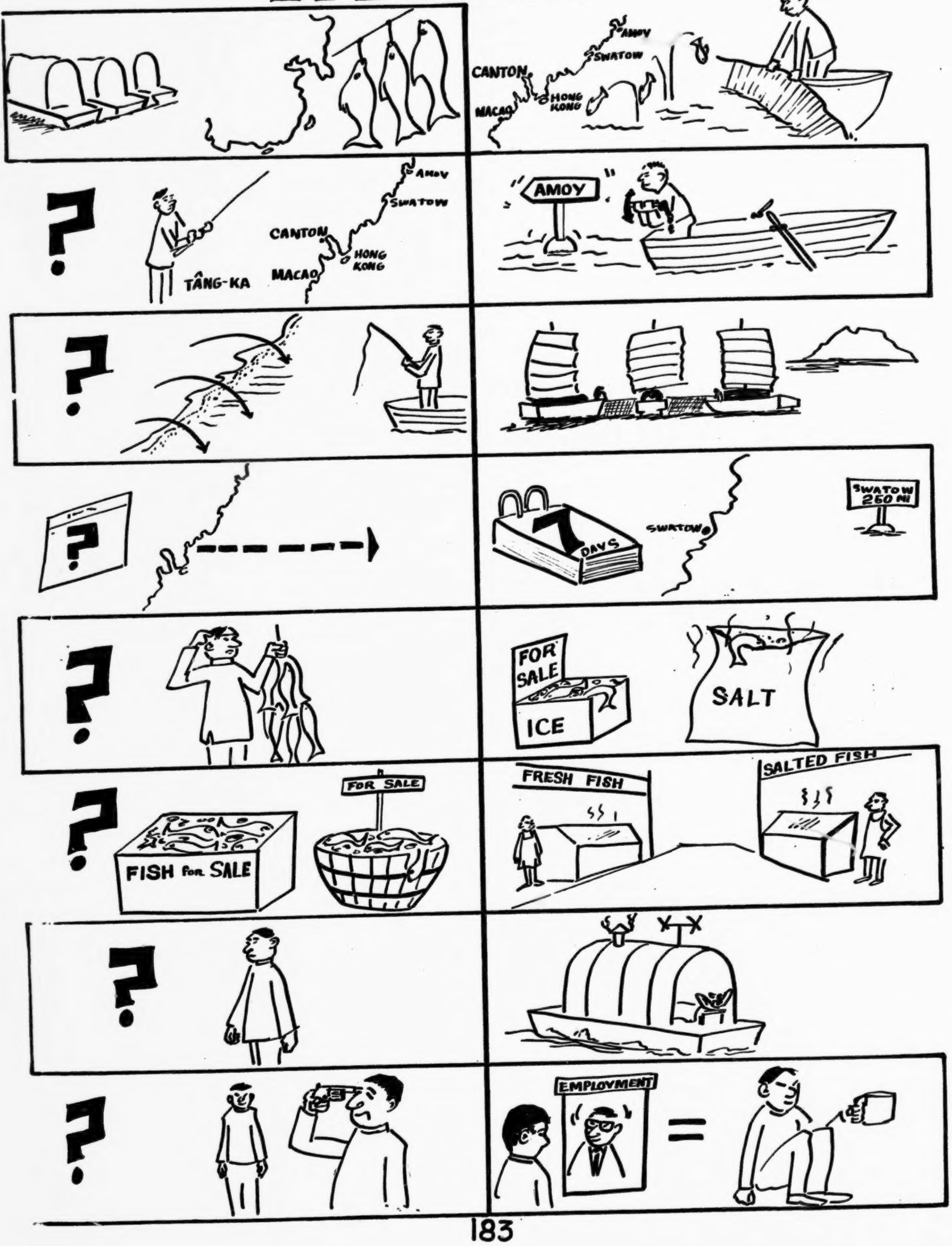


寶

Character Number 873 Radical Number 40
Stroke Number 19 宀



LESSON 17


CANTON
MACAO
HONG KONG
AMOY
SWATOW
?
TÂNG-KA
CANTON
MACAO
HONG KONG
AMOY
SWATOW
"AMOY"
?
?
7 DAYS
SWATOW
SWATOW 250 MI
?
FOR SALE
ICE
SALT
?
FISH for SALE
FOR SALE
FRESH FISH
SALTED FISH
?
?
EMPLOYMENT
=

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Wā Naām yat taaì yaŭ kòm toh t'ĕng-ka kè yān, uē îp yat-tîng hó faàt-taât là?

Cheung: Kwóng-Chau, Heung-Kóng, Ȯ-Mōōn*, Chaàm-Kong, Shaān-T'aū, Hâ-Mōōn yat taaì yaŭ hó toh t'ĕng-ka yān, p'ó-t'ung ngŏh-teî kiù k'uĭ-teî tsô Tâng-Ka yān. K'uĭ-teî kè chik-îp haî lóh uē*, shóh-ĭ ni ti teî-fong kè uē îp hó faàt-taât.

W: Kóh ti Tâng-Ka yān haì kóh ti teî-fong kè foô-kân lóh uē*, haî m̄-haî ne?

C: M̄-haî, k'uĭ-teî haì kóh ti teî-fong kè foô-kân t'īng k'uĭ-teî kè shuēn, m̄-haî haì kóh ti teì-fong kè foô-kān lóh uē*.

W: Kám, k'uĭ-teî haì pin-shuè lóh uē* ne?

C: K'uĭ-teî ch'ut hoí lóh uē*, k'uĭ-teî ch'ut hoì lòh uē* kè shī-haû, k'uĭ-teì toh shò leŭng saam chèk shuēn yat-ts'aī* kám huì, yûng mŏng laī lóh uē*.

W: K'uĭ-teî mooĭ ts'z̀ huì keì-toh yât, huì keì uĕn ne?

C: K'uĭ-teî mooĭ ts'z̀ huì lûk ch'at yât kòm noî, huì keì paàk leĭ kòm uĕn.

W: K'uĭ-teî lóh-tó uē* kè shī-haû, k'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* tsô ne?

C: K'uĭ-teî lóh-tó uē* kè shī-haû, k'uĭ-teî yûng suèt ts'ōng-chuê ti uē*, tsaû tòng sin uē* laī maaî, waâk-ché yûng īm ìp-chuê ti uē*, tsaû tòng haām uē* laī maaî.

W: Sin uê* maaî peì pin-shuè, haām uê* maaî peì pin-shuè ne?

C: Kóh ti sin uē* maaî peì sin uē laan, haām uê* maaî peì haām uē laan.

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W: Kám, kóh ti Tâng-Ka yān haî pin-shuè chuê à?

C: K'uĭ-teî haî k'uĭ-teî tsẑ-keî kè t'ĕng shuè chuê, haî k'uĭ-teî tsẑ-keî kè t'ĕng shuè shîk, hó ts'z̆ ngŏh-teî haî ngŏh-teî kè uk shuè yat-yeûng.

W: K'uĭ-teî kè shang-oôt tîm-yeûng* à?

C: K'uĭ-teî wán shîk wán tak m̄-yūng-î, shóh-ĭ shang-oôt hó kaan-naān.

LESSON 17

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wŏng: Since there are so many junk people in South China, the fishing industry must be very prosperous.

Cheung: In the areas of Canton, Hong Kong, Macao, Chaam-Kong, Swatow, and Amoy, there are many junk people, commonly called Tâng-ka people. Since their occupation is fishing, the fishing industry in those areas is very prosperous.

W: Do the Tâng-ka people catch fish in the vicinity of those places?

C: No, they anchor their boats in the vicinity of those places; they do not catch fish there.

W: In that case, where do they catch their fish?

C: They go out to sea to catch fish. When they go out to sea to catch fish, they usually go in groups of two or three boats. They use nets to catch fish.

W: For how many days and how far do they go each time?

C: They go out for 6 or 7 days at a time and as far out as several hundred miles.

W: What do they do when they catch the fish?

C: When they catch the fish they store them with ice, and sell them as fresh fish; or they preserve them with salt, and sell them as salted fish.

W: Where do they sell the fresh and salted fish?

C: They sell the fresh fish to the fresh fish stalls, and the salted fish to the salted fish stalls.

LESSON 17

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W: Well, where do the Tâng-ka people live?

C: They live on their own junks and eat on their own junks, just as we do in our own houses.

W: How is life for them?

C: It is not easy for them to make a living, therefore their lives are very hard and difficult.

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. It is very difficult to forget the dream I had last night.
2. Even though he is a poet, he makes his living by working as a cook.
3. Every member of my family loves to eat salted fish.
4. He works in the fresh fish stall and the job is not easy.
5. The Chinese used to preserve fish and vegetables in salt.
6. Her cook buys fresh fish every Friday for supper.
7. It is impossible to regard an aircraft-carrier as a freighter.
8. You are not going to use this for a long time, so you should keep it in storage.
9. The Tâng-ka people use nets to fish.
10. Many of the overseas Chinese in Thailand came from Swatow.
11. Amoy is one of the many trading centers in the southern part of China.
12. Fishery is the principal occupation of the Tâng-ka people.
13. The British Navy has anchored a battleship in the harbor.
14. There are many beautiful houses in this vicinity.
15. Do you want to go fishing with me?
16. How far can you walk in an hour's time?

LESSON 17

WORD LIST

1.	uē îp	fishery
2.	t'ĕng-ka yān	junk people
3.	Shaản-T'aū	Swatow
4.	Hâ-Moŏn	Amoy
5.	Tâng-Ka yān	Tâng-ka people
6.	mŏng	net
7.	ts'ōng-chuê	to keep in storage
8.	tỏng	to regard as
9.	sin uē*	fresh fish
10.	ìp-chuê	to preserve in salt
11.	haām uē*	salted fish
12.	sin uē laan	fresh fish stall
13.	wản shîk	to make a living
14.	kaan-naān	difficult

LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

139

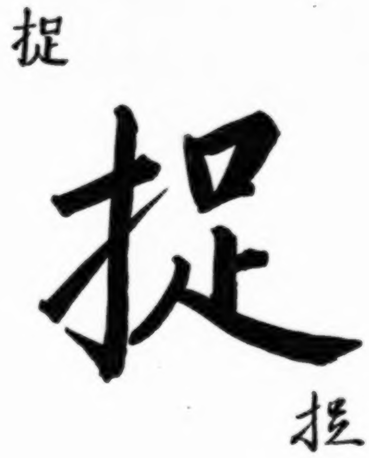
捉	chuk: to arrest; to catch; seize
捉住	chuk-chuê: to seize
捉賊	chuk ts'âak: to capture robbers

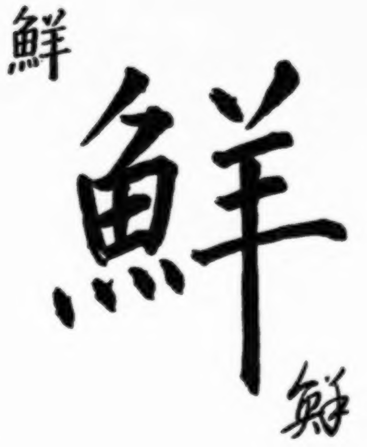
1030

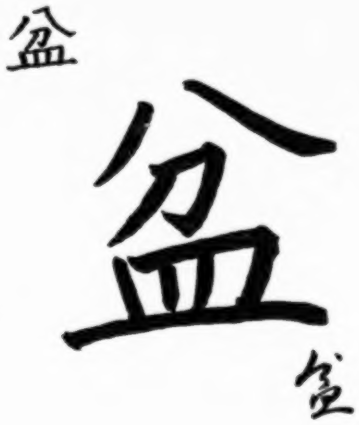
鮮	sin: fresh; new; newly slaughtered.
鮮明	sin-mēng: brand new.
鮮魚	sin uē: fresh fish.

903

盆	p'ōon: a bowl; basin; tub.
面盆	mîn-p'ōon: a wash basin.
洗身盆	saí-shan-p'ōon: bath tub.





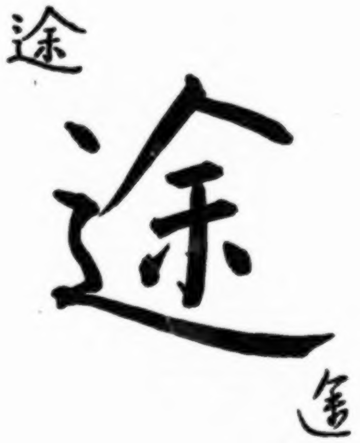


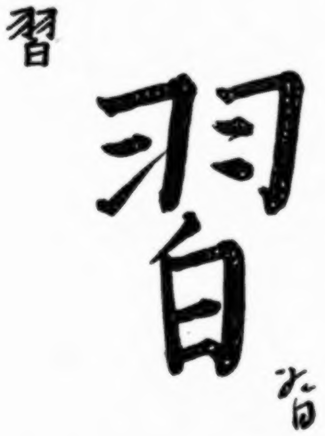
1178

途	t'ō: road; path; journey; career.
途中	t'ō-chung: on the road.
沿途	uēn-t'ō: along the way.
長途	ch'eūng t'ō: long distance.
前途	ts'în-t'ō: the future; the road ahead.

1204

習	tsaâp to practise; a custom; habit
學習	hôk-tsaâp: to learn by practice; to apprentice.
習俗	tsaâp tsûk: habit and custom.
習染	tsaâp ĭm: corrupted by bad example.





LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

1439

旺 wông: brillant; vigorous; prosperous.

旺月 wông uêt: prosperous month of the year.

1363

桶 t'úng: cask; tub; pail; chest; box.

水桶 shuí t'úng: pail; bucket.

1297

藏 ts'ōng: to conceal; to store up; to hoard.

隱藏 yán-ts'ōng: to conceal.

家藏 ka ts'ōng. family treasure.

旺 桶 藏

旺 桶 藏

旺 桶 藏

40

臭 ch'aù: stench bad smell

臭氣 ch'aù-heì a bad smell

臭名 ch'aù mēng*: bad reputation

臭丸 ch'aù-uēn* moth-ball

457

堅 kin: strong; stable; firm.

堅固 kin-koò: strong; stable.

堅持 kin-ch'ī: persistent; tenacious.

堅決 kin-k'uèt: firm; determined.

臭 堅

臭 堅

臭 堅

LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

中國東南近海。喺沿海kui住嘅人，好多以捉魚做職業。廣東人叫佢地做疍家人。

廣東人喜歡食海鮮，所以ue人嘅生意，有時亦好旺。如果你到香港街市一行，就見到有一桶桶一盆盆生生跳嘅魚，放喺處賣，啲魚好新鮮，所以味道極之好。

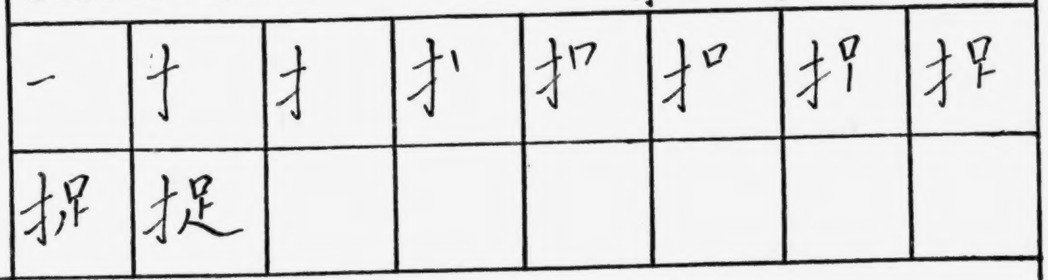
中國嘅工人農人，又中意用鹽ip魚，叫做haām魚，藏喺屋處，可以時常有魚食。做生意嘅人，又可以運去較遠嘅地方，都唔怕啲魚爛或者臭。haām魚嘅用途好大，魚肉比較新鮮魚堅實。中意食haām魚嘅人，亦話好好味道。有啲習慣食haām魚嘅人，如果冇得食就唔歡喜là

LESSON 17

WRITING MATERIAL

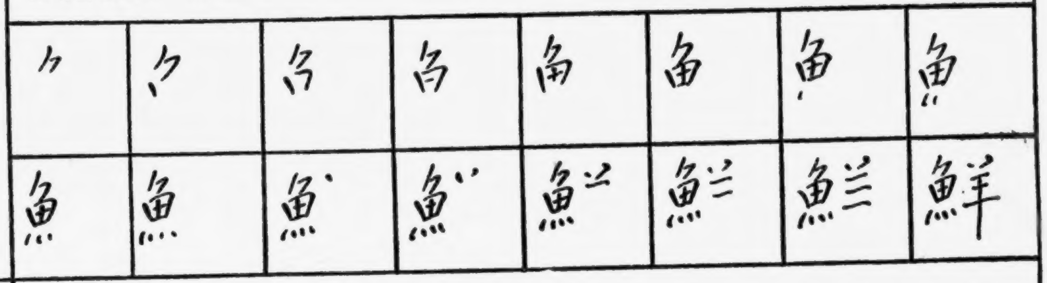
捉

Character Number 139 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 10 扌，手



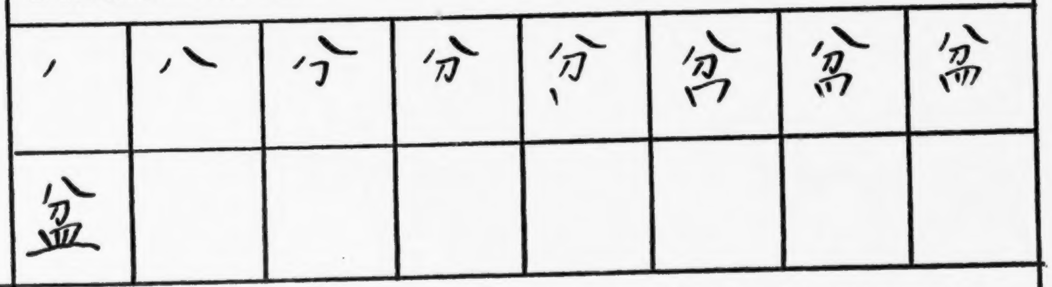
鮮

Character Number 1030 Radical Number 195
Stroke Number 17 魚



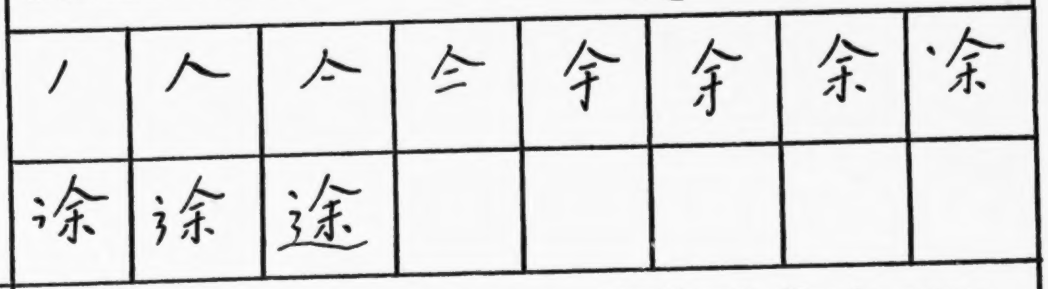
盆

Character Number 903 Radical Number 108
Stroke Number 9 皿



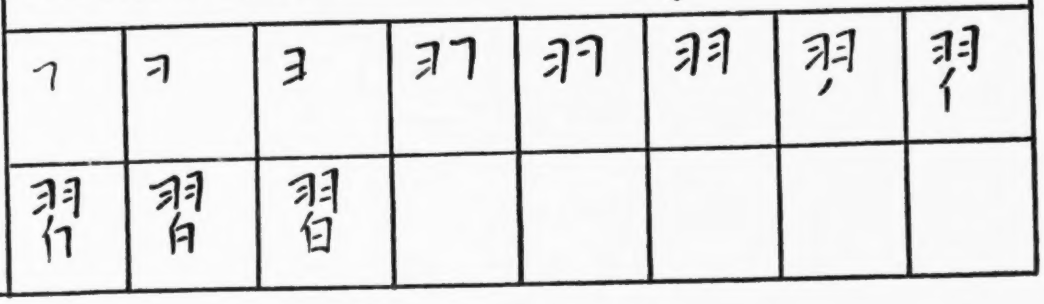
途

Character Number 1178 Radical Number 162
Stroke Number 11 辶，辵

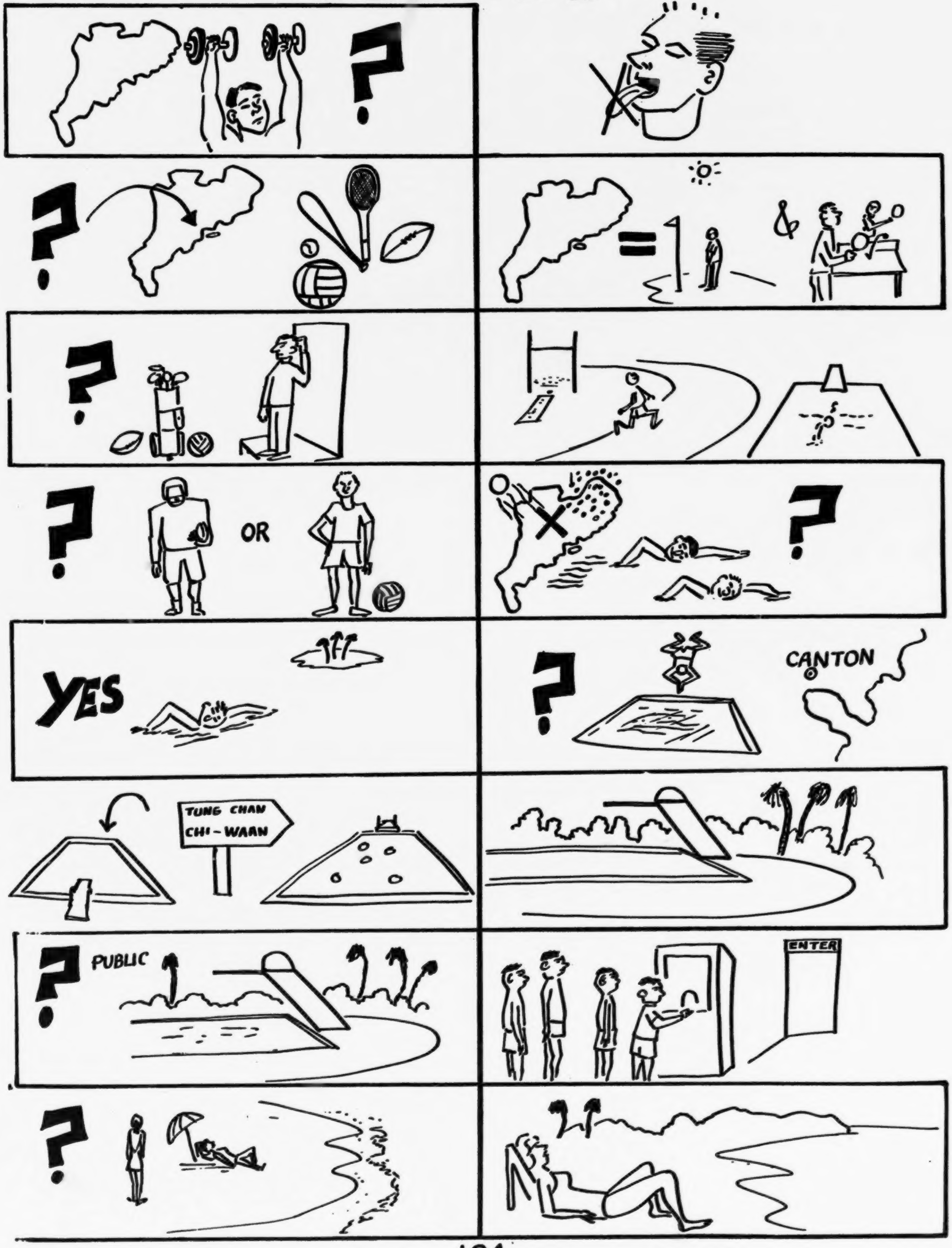


習

Character Number 1204 Radical Number 124
Stroke Number 11 羽



LESSON 18


?
?
?
?
OR
?
YES
?
CANTON
TUNG CHAN
CHI-WAAN
?
PUBLIC
ENTER
?

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Ngŏh t'eng yān kóng, toh shò Kwóng-Tung yān foon-heî wân-tûng, ni kuì shuèt-wâ, chan tîng ká ne?

Cheung: Ni kuì shuèt-wâ m̄-haî "īn-kwòh-k'eī-shât."

W: Tîm kaaî toh shò Kwóng-Tung yān foon-heî wân-tûng ne?

C: Yan-waî Kwóng-Tung kè t'in-heì shik-hôp oô ngoî wân-tûng, yîk-to shik-hôp oô noî wân-tûng.

W: K'uĭ-teî chung-ì pin chúng oô ngoî wân-tûng ne?

C: K'uĭ-teî chung-ì t'īn kìng wân-tûng. K'uĭ-teì yîk-to chung-ì tá tsuk-k'aū tá mŏng-k'aū, t'ūng yaū shuî táng táng.

W: K'uĭ-teî tá kè tsuk-k'aū haî Meĭ-Kwòk tsuk-k'aū yik-waâk Ying-Kwòk tsuk-k'aū ne?

C: K'uĭ-teî tá kè toh shò haî Ying-Kwòk tsuk-k'aū, m̄-haî Meĭ-Kwòk tsuk-k'aū.

W: Keì-īn Kwóng-Tung kân-chuê hoî, t'in-heì yaû m̄-laăng m̄-ît, kâm, Kwóng-Tung yān haî m̄-haî hó chung-ì yaū shuî ne?

C: Mŏ-ts'òh là. Toh shò Kwóng-Tung yān to hó chung-ì yaū shuî, shóh-ĭ hó toh Kwóng-Tung yān yaū shuî yaū tak hó hó.

W: Haî Kwóng-Chau yaŭ mi-yĕ hó leĭ-seúng kè yaū shuî kè teî-fong ne?

C: Ch'uî-chóh haî shĭ noî yaŭ hó toh yaū-wîng ch'î chi ngoî, haî kaau-ngoî kè Tung-Shaan t'ūng Laî-Chi-Waan yaŭ hó taaî, hó leĭ-seúng kè yaū-wîng ch'eūng. Kóh shuè kè yaū-wîng ch'eūng, m̄-chî fung-kîng hó, î-ch'ế kìn-chuk tak hó meĭ-laî, ch'ìt-peî tak hó uēn-shîn.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W: Kóh leŭng shuè haî m̄-haî kung-kûng kè yaū-wîng ch'eūng ne?

C: Haî là. Kóh leŭng shuè to yaŭ hó lèng kè fōng*, tso peì yaū shuì kè yān kà.

W: Kám, haì hoí-pin kè yaū-wîng ch'eūng yat-tîng kàng hó, haî m̄-haî à?

C: Tsẑ-în la. Hoì-pin kè yaū-wîng ch'eūng haî yat kòh t'in-în kè yaū-wîng ch'eūng; m̄-chì hoì shuì hó, yeūng-kwong hó, ì-ch'é fung-kìng hó.

LESSON 18

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: I have heard people say that most of the people of Kwangtung like sports, is this true or false?

Cheung: This is not an exaggerated statement.

W: Why is it that most of the people of Kwangtung like sports?

C: Because the weather in Kwangtung is suitable for out-door sports, and also suitable for in-door sports.

W: What kind of out-door sports do they like?

C: They like track and field sports. They also like football, tennis, swimming, etc.

W: Is the football game they play American football or English football?

C: They usually play English football (soccer), and not American football.

W: Since Kwangtung is contiguous to the sea and the weather is neither cold nor hot, do the people of Kwangtung therefore enjoy swimming a great deal?

C: Yes, most people of Kwangtung like swimming very much; therefore many of them swim very well.

W: What are the ideal places for swimming in Canton?

C: Besides many swimming pools in the city, there are large and ideal swimming establishments at Tung-Shaan and Laî-Chi-Waan in the suburbs of Canton. Those swimming establishments not only have nice scenery, but also beautiful structures and complete facilities.

LESSON 18

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W: Are the swimming establishments at those two places open to the public?

C: Yes. Those two places have beautiful rooms which can be rented to the swimmers.

W: Well, the swimming establishments on the beaches must be much better, right?

C: Naturally. The swimming establishments on the beaches are natural swimming places; not only is the sea water and the sunshine good, but the scenery is also beautiful.

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I will pay you the rent on the first of the month.
2. It may be raining now, but we will have sunshine in the afternoon.
3. The house constructed by the bay is most ideal for poets.
4. This public swimming pool is not suitable for our use.
5. He may not be rich, but he owns a swimming establishment in the suburban area.
6. The American usually does not play British soccer.
7. Tennis one of the best outdoor sports and is suitable for youngsters as well as for adults.
8. When we talk about football, we mean American football.
9. This athlete participates in tracks and field sports but does not get into any indoor sports.
10. Please do not aggravate your injury; otherwise, you will have to stay in the hospital for months.
11. This time of the year is not suitable for swimming.
12. Walking in the sunshine outside the city is not a bad idea.
13. This is a beautiful bay, but I don't think it is suitable for swimming.
14. We can rent a car and drive to the suburban area.
15. The beaches in Hong Kong are ideal swimming places.
16. The scenery here is beautiful; but it is just too cold to swim.

LESSON 18

WORD LIST

1.	tîng	or
2.	īn-kwỏh-k'eī-shât	exaggeration, to exaggerate
3.	shik-hôp	suitable
4.	oô-ngoî wân-tûng	outdoor sport
5.	oô-noî wân-tûng	indoor sport
6.	t'īn-kỉng wân-tûng	track and field sport
7.	tả tsuk-k'aŭ	to play football
8.	tả mŏng-k'aŭ	to play tennis
9.	yaŭ-shuỉ	to swim, swimming
10.	Ying-Kwỏk tsuk-k'aŭ	British soccer
11.	leĭ-seúng	ideal
12.	yaŭ-wîng ch'î	swimming pool
13.	kaau-ngoî	outside the city, suburban area
14.	yaŭ-wîng ch'eŭng	swimming establishment
15.	waan	bay
16.	kỉn-chuk	structure, to construct
17.	kung-kûng	public
18.	tso	rent
19.	tsẑ-īn	natural, of course
20.	yeŭng-kwong	sunshine

LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

432

球	k'aū·	ball: sphere; round gem.
網球	mǒng-k'aū:	tennis .
足球	tsuk-k'aū:	succer.
籃球	laām-k'aū:	basketball.
賽球	ts'oī k'aū:	a match.
地球	teî-k'aū:	the earth
氣球	heī-k'aū:	the balloon.

1461

游	yaū:	to float; to swim; to travel; to wander.
游水	yaū-shuí:	to swim.
上游	sheûng-yaū:	upper course of the river.
下游	hâ-yaū:	lower course of the river.
游蕩	yaū-tông:	wandering; to ramble.

1483

益	yik:	advantage; benefit; profit; to increase.
有益	yaǔ yik:	beneficial.
益處	yik ch'uè:	advantage; benefit.

球 游 益

球 游 益

球 游 益 益

204

呼	foo:	to call out; to shout
稱呼	ch'ing-foo:	to address; to call

1316

足	tsuk:	the foot; enough; complete.
手足	shaú-tsuk:	hands and feet; brothers.
失足	snat-tsuk.	to slip; to blunder.

呼 足

呼 足

呼 足

LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

449

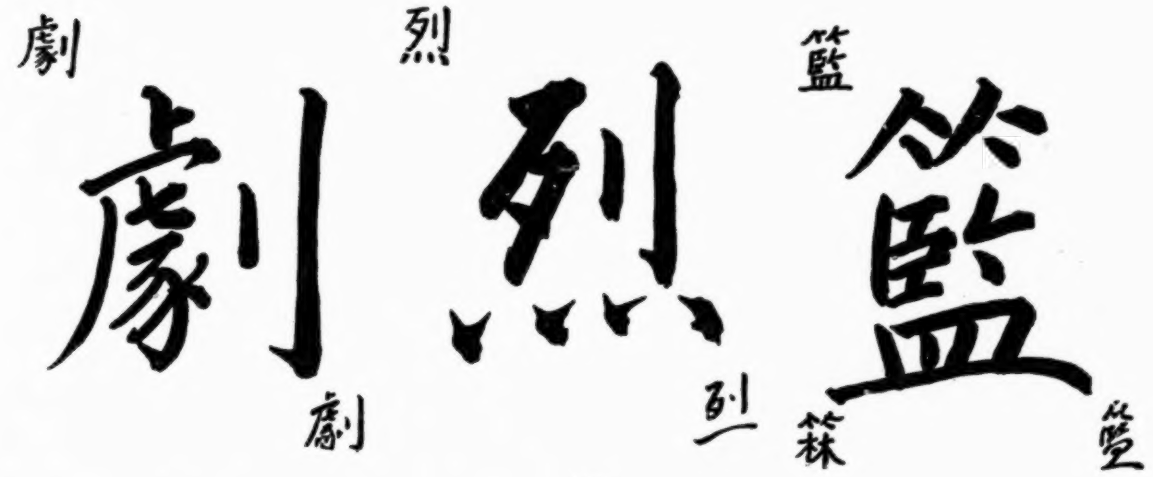
劇	k'êk:	more; very; troublesome; a stage play.
白話劇	paâk-wâ-k'êk:	a play in colloquial.
劇烈	k'êk-lît:	severe; fierce.
喜劇	heí-k'êk:	comedy.
悲劇	pei-k'êk:	tragedy.

622

烈	lît·	blazing; fierce; virtuous; heroic.
烈火	lît fóh:	a blazing fire.
烈日	lît yât:	the hot sun.
猛烈	maăng-lît:	fierce; violent.
忠烈	chung-lît:	faithful; honest.

578

籃	laām:	a large basket.
藤籃	t'āng laām:	rattan basket.
花籃	fa-laām:	basket for flowers.

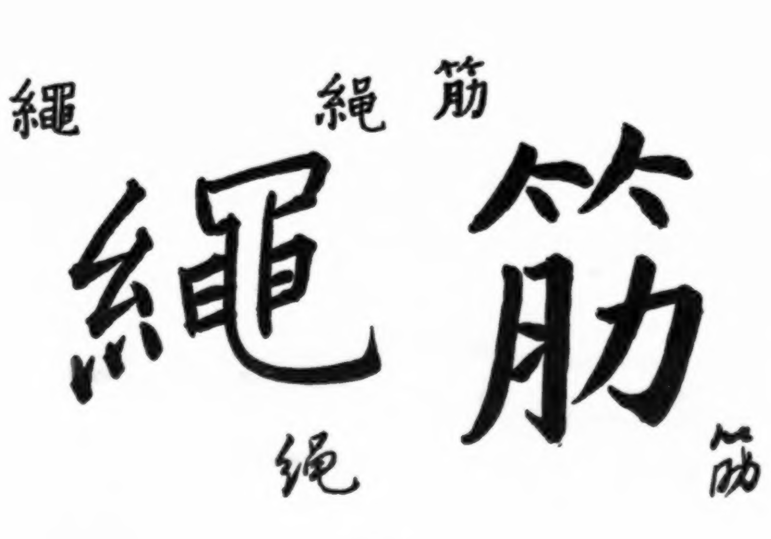


993

繩	shīng:	a string; line; cord.
繩索	shīng-sòk:	rope; cordage; rigging.
繩仔	shīng·tsaí:	a small string; cord.

411

筋	kan:	sinews; muscles
筋肉	kan-yûk:	muscles
抽筋	ch'au kan:	spasms of muscles



LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

世界上每個國家，現在都注重運動。中國學校，由小學到大學，都設有體育一課，要學生運動。小學生跳繩，ts'oì p'aaú 做種種遊戲。中學以上，有比較劇烈嘅運動，好似玩籃球，足球等等，每次遠東運動會，或世界運動會，都有中國運動員參加。

普通黎講，運動對於邊個人都有益。因為户外運動，唔只可以强筋肉，又可以呼k'ap新鮮空氣，所以好多人喜歡喺得閒嘅時候，做各種不同嘅運動。

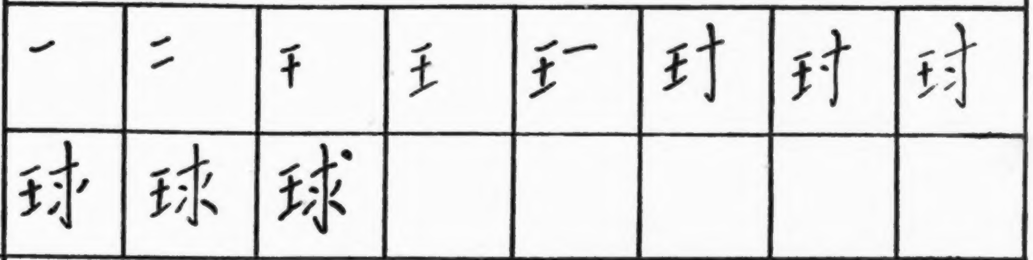
因為廣東近海，所以廣東人中意游水。廣州有幾個好大嘅公共游水塲，建築美麗，設備完善，夏季時候，男男女女，都争着去遊水。

LESSON 18

WRITING MATERIAL

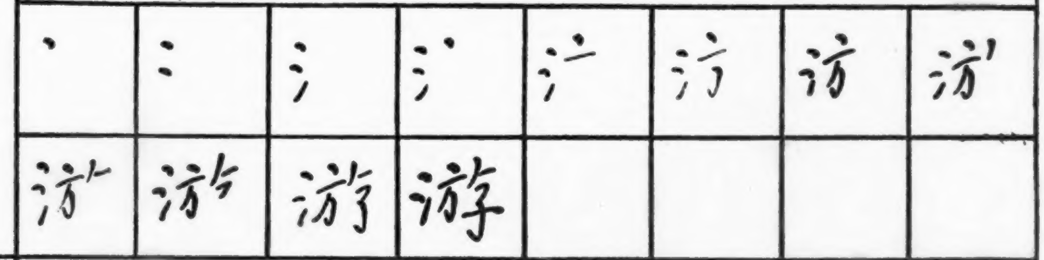
球

Character Number 432 Radical Number 96
Stroke Number 11 王 , 玉



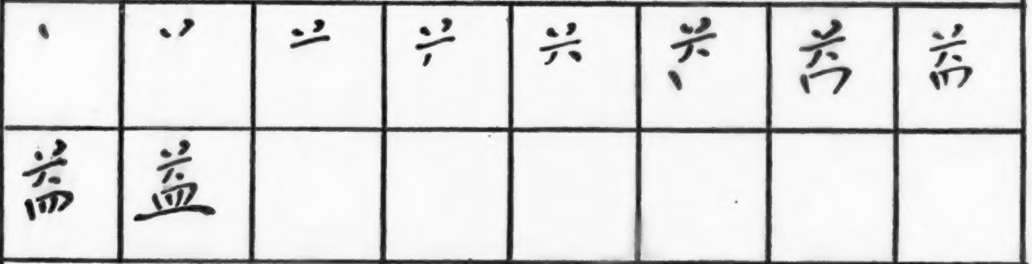
游

Character Number 1461 Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 12 氵, 水



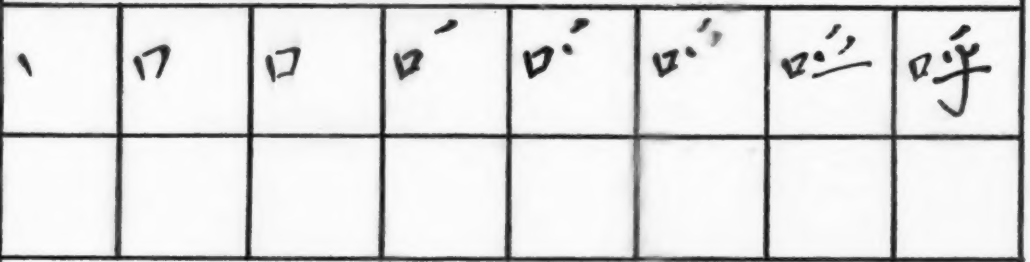
益

Character Number 1483 Radical Number 108
Stroke Number 10 皿



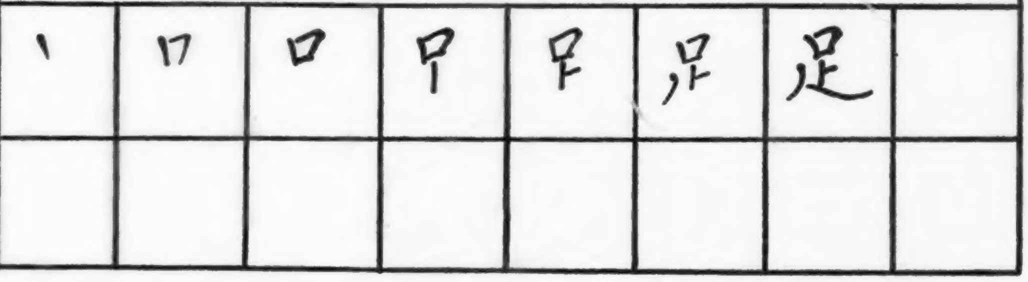
呼

Character Number 204 Radical Number 30
Stroke Number 8 口

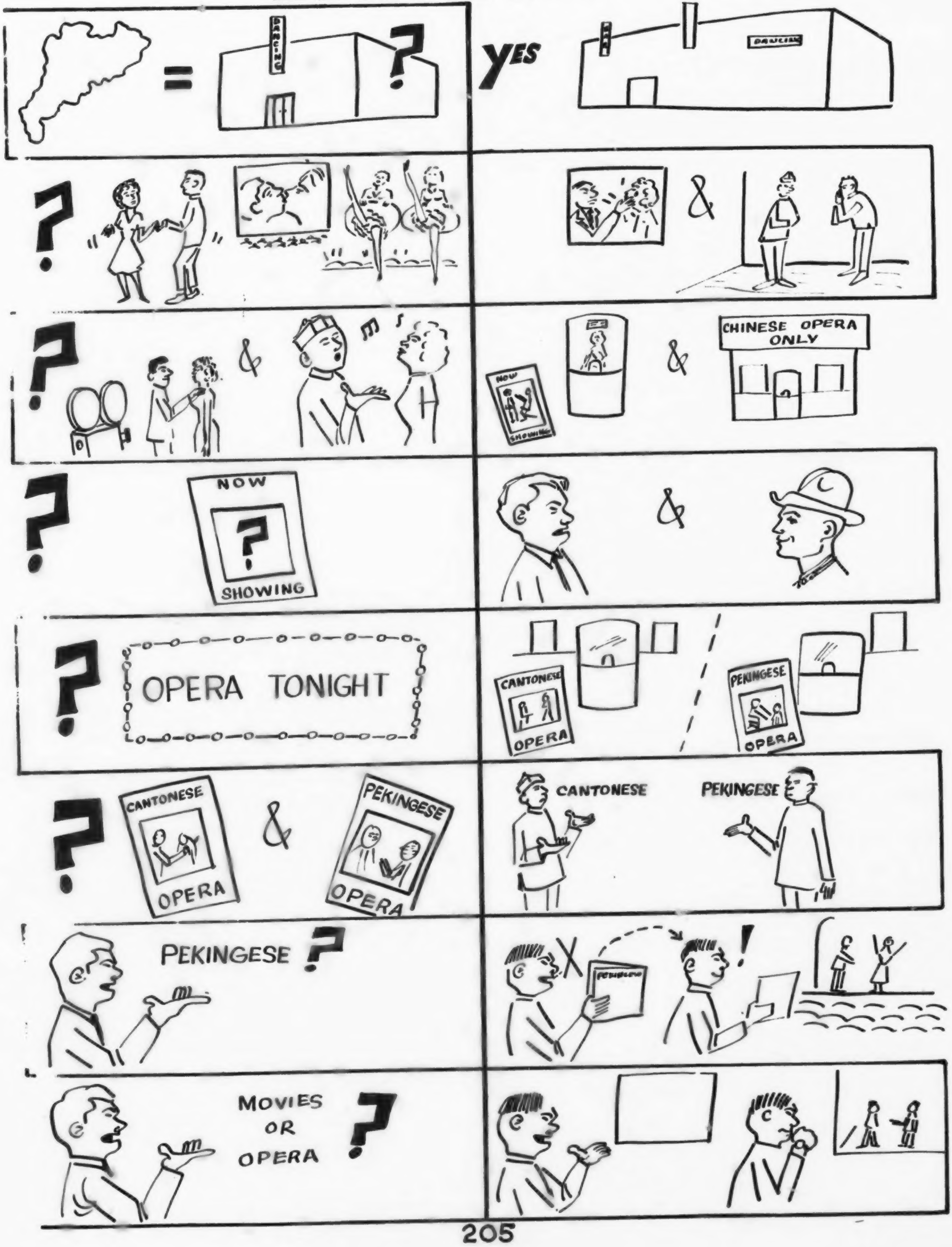


足

Character Number 1316 Radical Number 157
Stroke Number 7 足



LESSON 19


=
DANCING
?
YES
DANCING
?
&
?
&
NOW
SHOWING
&
CHINESE OPERA ONLY
?
NOW
?
SHOWING
&
?
OPERA TONIGHT
CANTONESE
OPERA
PEKINGESE
OPERA
?
CANTONESE
OPERA
&
PEKINGESE
OPERA
CANTONESE
PEKINGESE
PEKINGESE ?
!
MOVIES
OR
OPERA
?

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Kwóng-Tung yaŭ mŏ uē-lŏk kè teì-fong à?

Cheung: Yaŭ. Kwóng-Tung yaŭ hó toh uē-lŏk kè teì-fong.

W: Kwóng-Tung yaŭ mi-yĕ uē-lŏk kè teì-fong ne?

C: Yaŭ tîn-yìng heì-uên*, yaŭ taaî-heì heì-uên* táng táng.

W: Tîn-yìng heì-uên* t'ŭng taaî-heì heì-uên* yaŭ mi-yĕ fan-pît ne?

C: Tîn-yìng heì-uên* chuen yìng tîn-yìng; taaî-heì heì-uên* chuen tsô taaî-heì.

W: Tîn-yìng heì-uên* shóh yìng kè tîn-yìng haî pin chúng ne?

C: Yaŭ ti tîn-yìng heì-uên* shóh yìng kè tîn-yìng haî Chung-Kwòk tîn-yìng; yaŭ ti tîn-yìng heì-uên* shóh yìng kè tîn-yìng haî Meĭ-Kwòk tîn-yìng.

W: Taaî-heì heì-uên* shóh tsô kè taaî-heì haî pin chúng ne?

C: Yaŭ ti taaî-heì heì-uên* shóh tsô kè taaî-heì haî Uêt K'êk; yaŭ ti taaî-heì heì-uên* shóh tsô kè taaî-heì haî King K'êk.

W: Uêt K'êk t'ŭng King K'êk yaŭ mi-yĕ fan-pît ne?

C: Uêt K'êk haî yûng Kwóng-Tung wâ* ìn ch'eùng kè. King K'êk haî yûng Pak-King wâ* ìn-ch'eùng kè. K'uĭ-teî shóh cheûk kè fûk-chong to ch'a-m̄-toh, taân-haî shuèt-wâ tsaû m̄-t'ŭng là.

W: Kám, neĭ mìng m̄-mìng paâk King-K'êk ne?

C: Ts'ŭng-ts'ìn ngŏh uēn-ts'uēn m̄-nìng-paâk, ì-ka tsîm-tsîm* mìng-paâk shiú-shiú, taân-haî tsúng kòk tak k'uĭ mŏ Uêt K'êk kòm hó.

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W: Neĭ chung-ì t'aì tîn-yìng, yik-waâk t'aì taaî-heì ne?

C: Ngŏh chì chung-ì t'aì tîn-yìng, taân-haî yaŭ shī yîk-to t'aì taaî-heì. Yan-waî t'aì taaî-heì iù hó toh shī-haû, ī-ch'é ngŏh yaû shī-sheūng m̂-tak-haān, shôh-ĭ hó shiú t'aí taaî-heì.

LESSON 19

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: Are there places of entertainment in Kwangtung?

Cheung: Yes, there are many places of entertainment in Kwangtung.

W: What kinds of places of entertainment are there in Kwangtung?

C: There are movie theaters and Chinese opera houses, etc.

W: What is the difference between movie theaters and Chinese opera houses?

C: Movie theaters show only motion pictures; Chinese opera houses perform only Chinese operas.

W: What kind of motion pictures are shown in the movie theaters?

C: The motion pictures shown in some of the movie theaters are Chinese; some are American.

W: What kind of Chinese operas are performed in the Chinese opera houses?

C: The Chinese operas performed in some of the Chinese opera houses are Cantonese operas; others are Pekinese operas.

W: What is the difference between a Cantonese and a Pekinese opera?

C: The Cantonese opera is performed in the Cantonese dialect and the Pekinese opera is performed in the Pekinese dialect. The costumes worn in these performances are about the same, but the languages used are different.

W: In that case, do you understand the Pekinese opera?

C: Formerly I did not understand it at all; now I gradually

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

am learning to understand it a little; however, I still feel that they are not as good as the Cantonese operas.

W: Do you like to go to the movies or to Chinese operas:

C: I like most to go to the movies, but sometimes I also go to see Chinese operas. But because it takes a long time to watch a Chinese opera, and since I have very little spare time, I seldom go to the opera.

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. When I was in New York, I went to shows very often.
2. It is estimated that the theater can seat 3,200 persons.
3. Do you know that Mrs. Wōng was formerly with the Pekinese opera?
4. During the opera season, the theaters are doing good business.
5. The costumes worn in Cantonese operas are usually very large, but they are always very beautifully made.
6. You have to go to sing a song at the auditorium tonight.
7. Peking dialect has few things similar to Cantonese.
8. My doctor specializes in contagious diseases.
9. I would never go to see an opera if I had to pay ten dollars for a ticket.
10. My younger sister performed in an opera at the age of three.
11. The students learn to understand and to speak the language gradually.
12. For entertainment, I would rather go to see a movie than to see an opera.
13. Motion pictures are very inexpensive in China.
14. Do you know who is going to perform in that opera tonight?
15. My mother made me this costume for the party.
16. I would love to go to see the movie with you, but I would rather stay home to study.

LESSON 19

WORD LIST

1.	uē-lôk	entertainment
2.	heì-uên*	theater
3.	taaî-heì	opera
4.	chuen	to specialize
5.	Uêt K'êk	Cantonese opera
6.	King K'êk	Pekinese opera
7.	ìn	to perform (in a show)
8.	ch'eùng	to sing
9.	Pak-King wâ*	Peking dialect
10.	fûk-chong	costume, dressing
11.	ts'ūng-ts'ìn	formerly
12.	tsúng	whole, all
13.	shì-sheūng	often

LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

514

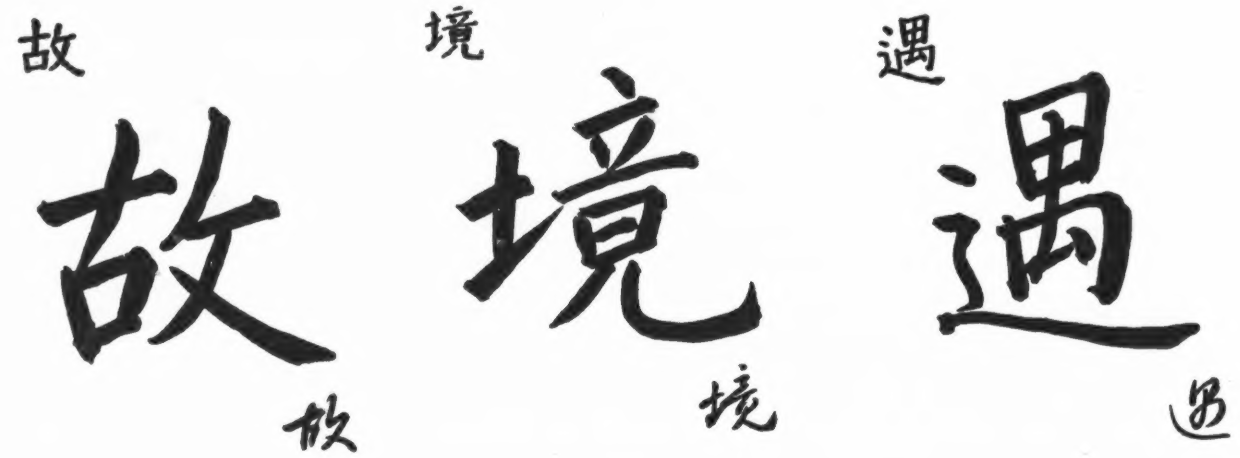
故	kò	to cause; to make; purposely, old; to die.
故此	kò-ts'ź	therefore
何故	hōh-kò	why
故意	kò-î	purposely.
故事	kò-sẑ	a story; a legend.
身故	shan kò	dead; deceased.

467

境	kíng	a boundary; district; region; place.
境界	kíng-kaaî	boundary; frontier.
境地	kíng-teî	territory.
越境	uêt kíng	to cross the boundary.

1380

遇	uê	to meet; to happen; to occur.
遇見	uê-kìn	to happen; to meet.
遇事	uê sẑ	when something happens.
遇險	uê hím	to encounter danger.

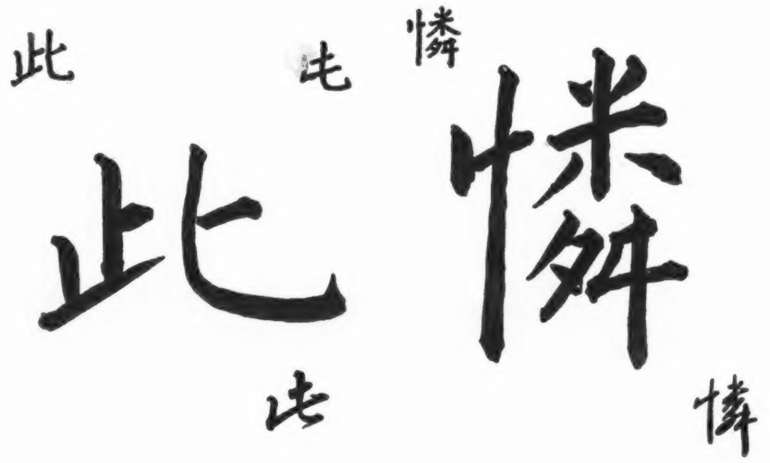


1333

此	ts'ź	this; now; here.
此處	ts'ź ch'uè	this place; here.
因此	yan-ts'ź	on this account; therefore.
此次	ts'ź ts'z̀	this time.

612

憐	līn	to pity; to sympathize.
憐憫	līn-mǎn	to pity; to have compassion for.
可憐	hóh-līn	pitiful; to sympathize.
乞憐	hat līn	to ask for pity.



LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

836

悲 pei: to grieve; to sympathize with.

悲哀 pei-oi: grief-stricked; sad.

悲觀 pei koon: pessimistic

1453

憂 yau: grieved; depressed; anxious; sad.

憂愁 yau-shaū: sad; depressed.

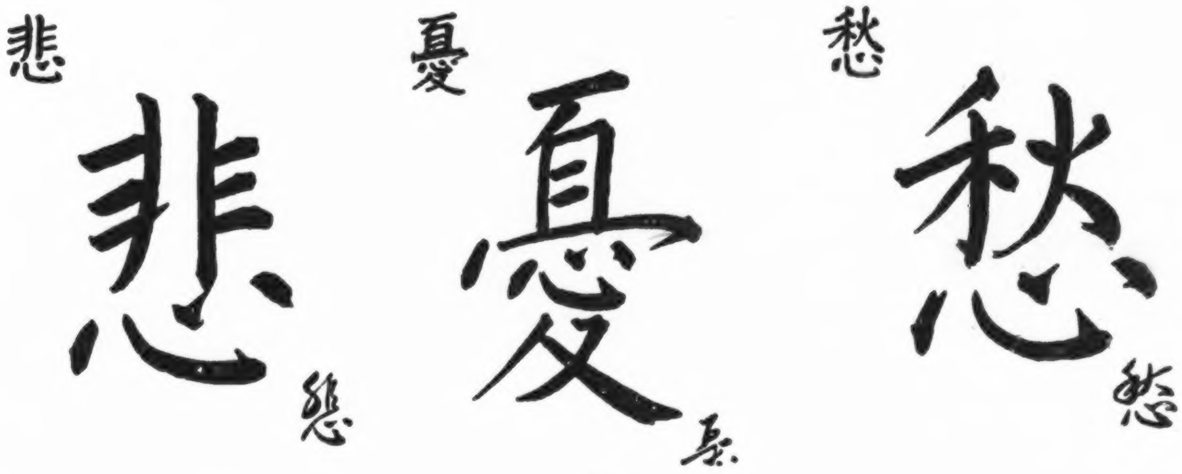
憂心 yau-sam: heavy heart; anxious.

960

愁 shaū: anxiety; grief.

愁悶 shaū-moôn: grieved; melancholy.

愁容 shaū yūng: mournful; downcast countenance.



1373

娛 uē: to enjoy; to rejoice; to give pleasure; to entertain.

娛樂 uē-lôk: amusement; entertainment.

娛樂場 uē-lôk ch'eūng: recreation ground.

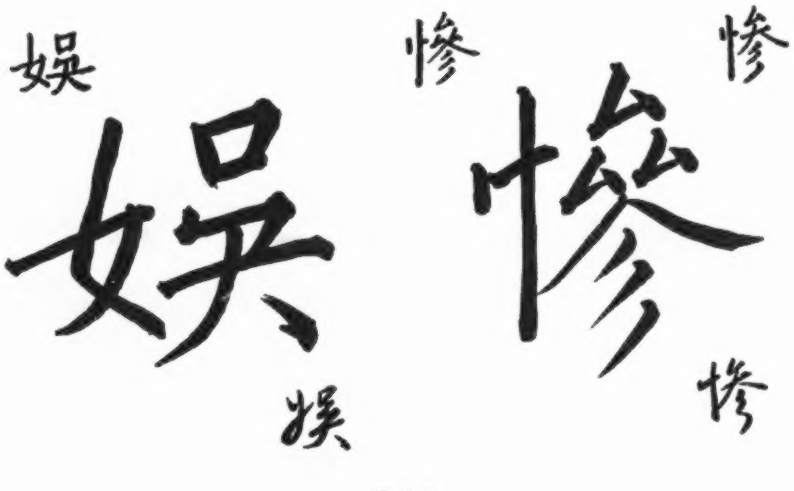
1199

慘 ts'aám: cruel; inhumane; distressing.

慘刑 ts'aám yīng: cruel punishment; torture.

慘狀 ts'aám chông: wretchedness; miserable condition.

慘極 ts'aám kîk: very pitiful.



LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

一個人有時境遇唔好,就會憂愁.如果遇到悲慘嘅事,就更加傷心可憐.但係時常憂愁係無益嘅.故此有好多娛樂嘅地方.去睇吓,遊吓玩吓,有憂嘅人,可以得到快樂,有愁嘅人可以解愁.

娛樂嘅地方係乜呢?遊樂場,電影戲院,大戲戲院等等就係啦.

講到電影,中國以前多數放影美國影片.現在可以自己製片,而且所製嘅片,運去海外放影,所以中國電影業好發達.

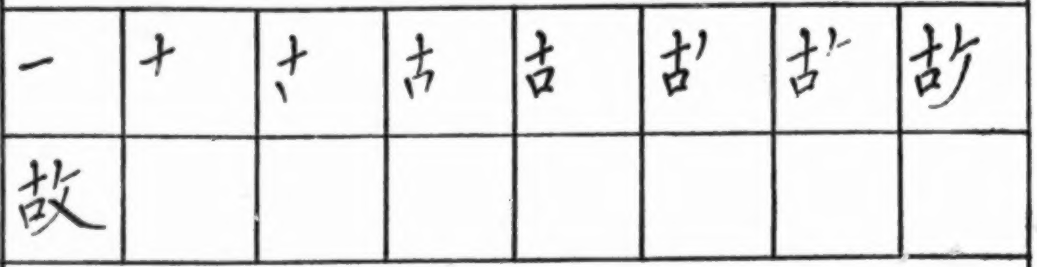
大戲分做 **Uêt-** 劇同京戲兩種. **Uêt-** 劇用廣東話唱,京戲用北京話唱.

LESSON 19

WRITING MATERIAL

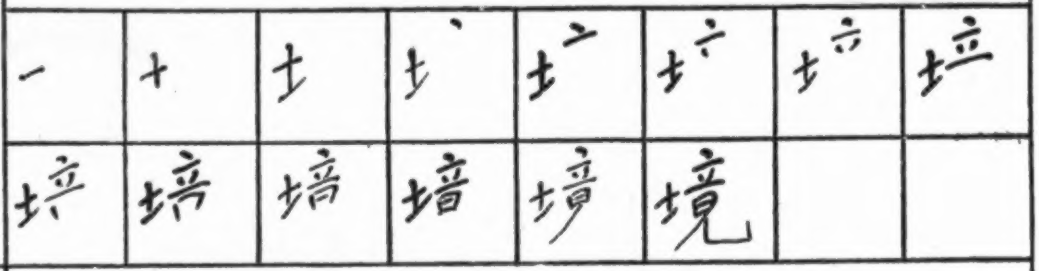
故

Character Number 514 Radical Number 66
Stroke Number 9 攵，攴



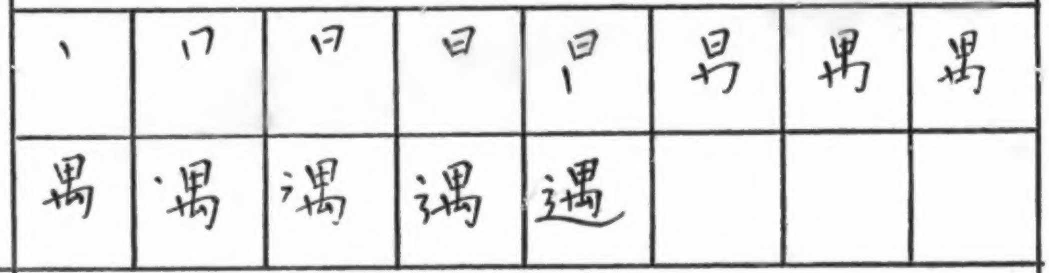
境

Character Number 467 Radical Number 32
Stroke Number 14 土，土



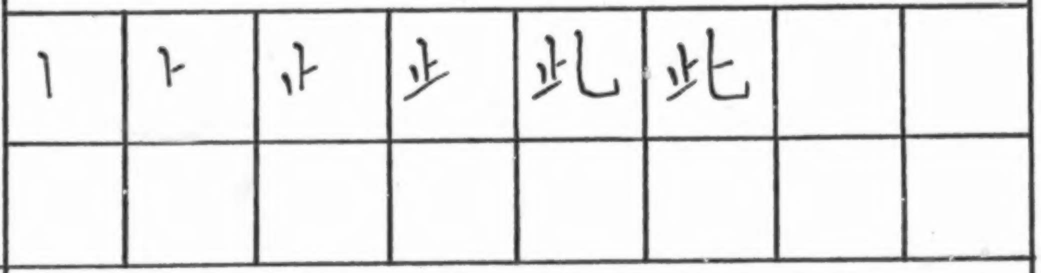
遇

Character Number 1380 Radical Number 162
Stroke Number 13 辶，辵



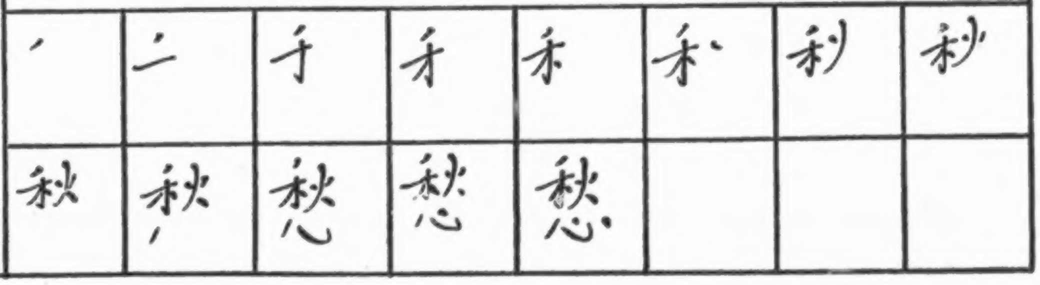
此

Character Number 1333 Radical Number 77
Stroke Number 6 止，止

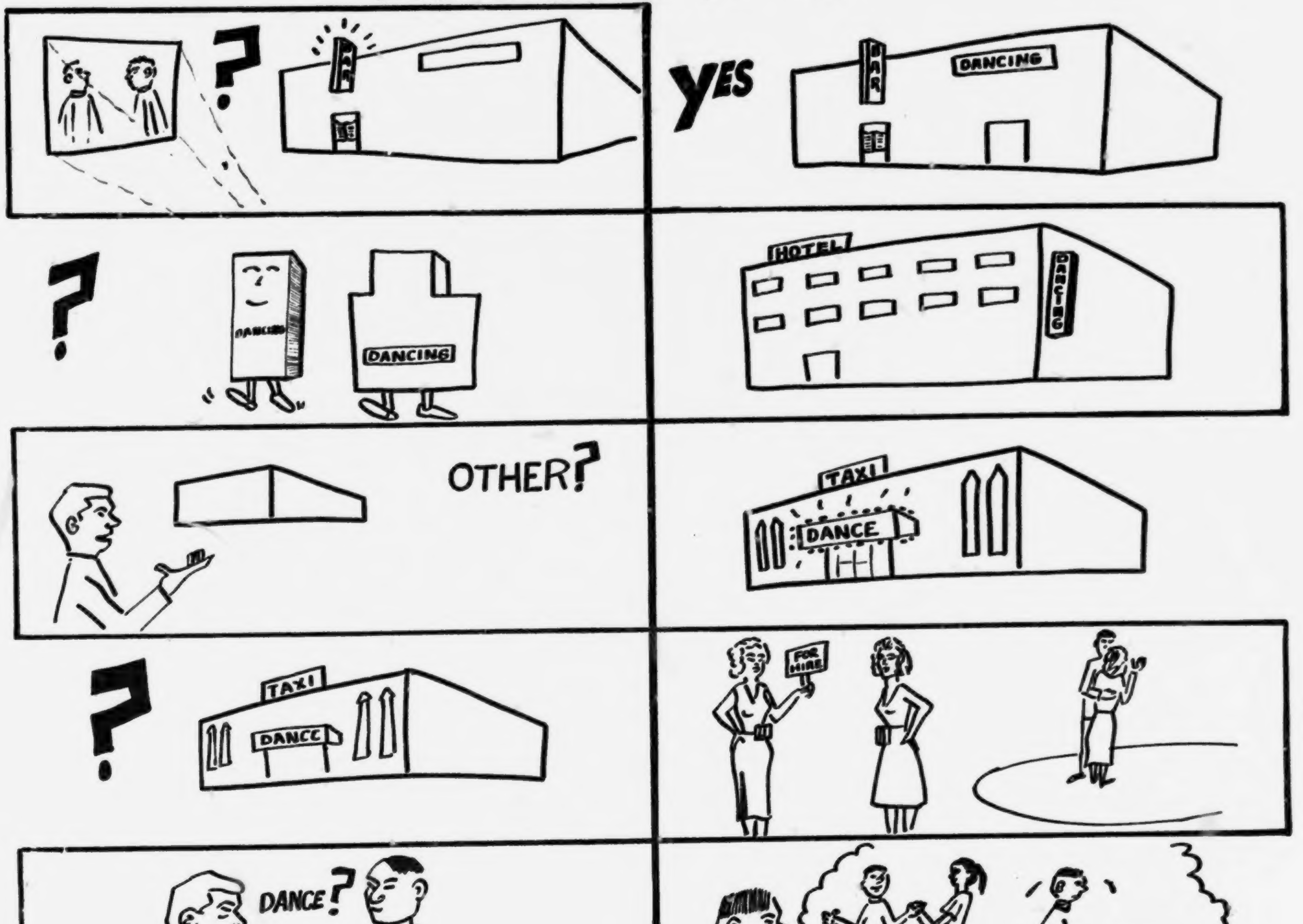


愁

Character Number 960 Radical Number 61
Stroke Number 13 心



LESSON 20


?
YES
DANCING
?
DANCING
DANCING
HOTEL
DANCING
OTHER?
TAXI
DANCE
?
TAXI
DANCE
FOR HIRE
DANCE?
?
CIRCUS
TODAY
&
BARNUM
BAILEY
CIRCUS
?

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng: Ch'uī-chôh heī-uên* chi ngoî, Kwóng-Tung chûng yaŭ mŏ k'eī t'a uē-lôk kè teî-fong à?

Cheung: Yaŭ la. Ch'uī-chôh heī-uên* chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ t'iù mŏ ch'eūng, yê-tsúng-ooî*, tâng tâng.

W: Pin-shuè yaŭ t'iù mŏ ch'eūng ne?

C: Mooĭ kaan taaî tsaú-tīm to yaŭ t'iù mŏ ch'eūng.

W: Ch'uī-chôh kôh ti taaî kè tsaú-tīm yaŭ t'iù mŏ ch'eūng chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ mŏ k'eī-t'a kè t'iù mŏ teî-fong ne?

C: Yaŭ la. Ch'uī-chôh kôh ti taaî kè tsaú-tīm yaŭ t'iù mŏ ch'eūng chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ hó toh mŏ t'eng.

W: Ni ti mŏ t'eng haî tīm-yeûng* kà?

C: Ni ti mŏ t'eng yaŭ mŏ-nuĭ* t'ūng mŏ-haàk t'iù mŏ kè.

W: Neĭ chung-ī t'iù mŏ mà?

C: Ngŏh haî î-shâp keī suī kè shī-haû, hó chung-ī t'iù mŏ; pat-kwòh ī-ka lŏ-chôh, ī-ch'ê tsô kung yaû tsô tak kòm mōng, shôh-ĭ hó shiú t'iū mŏ.

W: Haî kwóng-Tung Shaáng kè taaî shīng-shĭ yaŭ mŏ mă-heī più-în ne?

C: Yaŭ. Yaŭ shī yaŭ mă-heī piú-în. Kôh ti mă-heī paan, yaŭ ti haî yaū Chung-Kwòk yān piú-în kè, yaŭ ti haî yaū ngoî kwòk yān piú-în kè. Yaŭ mă-heī piú-în kè shī-haû, shīng-shĭ luĭ pîn hó ît-naaû, yan-waî hó toh yān yaū heung-hâ* laī t'aī.

W: Mă-heī paan luĭ pîn t'ūng foô-kân yaŭ mŏ hó waân kè yĕ à?

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C: Ch'uì-chôh mă-heì paan luĭ pîn yaŭ sz-tsź, lŏ-foó, t'ŭng tseûng kè piú-în chi ngoî, mă-heì paan kè foô-kân chûng yaŭ hó toh hó waán kè yĕ, hó t'aì kè yĕ, t'ŭng hó shîk kè yĕ t'im.

LESSON 20

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: Excluding the theaters, are there any other places of entertainment in Kwangtung?

Cheung: Yes, excluding the theaters, there are dancing establishments, night clubs, etc.

W: Where are the dancing establishments?

C: There is a dancing establishment in each big hotel.

W: Excluding those dancing establishments in the big hotels, are there other places for dancing?

C: Yes, excluding those dancing establishments in the big hotels, there are many commercial dance halls. (taxi dance hall).

W: What are these commercial dance halls?

C: In the commercial dancing halls, there are taxi dancers to dance with the patrons.

W: Do you like to dance?

C: When I was in my twenties, I liked to dance very much. But now that I have grown older and am so busy with my work, I seldom dance.

W: Are there any circus performances in the big cities of Kwangtung?

C: Yes, sometimes there are circus performances. Some of those circuses are performed by the Chinese, and some by the foreigners. When the circus is in town the city is very

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

lively and busy, for many people come from the rural districts to see the shows.

W: Are there many things one can do for amusement at the circus and in its vicinity?

C: Besides the performances by the lions, tigers, and elephants in the circus, there are many things one can do for amusement, many things to see and many things to eat in the vicinity of the circus.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The elephant has a long trunk and is a large animal.
2. There are four lions in that circus, but not all of them will perform.
3. I would like to play on the beach in the sun.
4. It is very quiet in the rural district and communications are very convenient.
5. She works in a dancing establishment, but she is not a dancing girl.
6. I would like to invite you to have some fun at a night club on your birthday.
7. This restaurant has a beautiful dancing hall in the back.
8. I am an old man, but I have never been to a night club before.
9. This dancing girl speaks Chinese as well as Japanese.
10. This place will be very busy after 11:30 p.m.
11. Chinatown is a noisy place during Saturdays and Sundays.
12. Horses are very important in any circus.
13. This is the second time for me to see a circus.
14. He lives in the rural district, but he works in the city.
15. We have five instructors excluding Mr. Lee.
16. There are restaurants, night clubs and even swimming pools in this hotel.

LESSON 20

WORD LIST

1.	yaū-lôk	amusement
2.	t'iù-mŏ-ch'eūng	dancing establishment
3.	yê-tsúng-ooî*	night club
4.	mŏ-t'eng	dance hall
5.	mŏ-nuĭ*	chorus girl or taxi dancer
6.	lŏ	old (in age)
7.	mă-heì	circus
8.	piú-ín	to perform, performance
9.	ît-naaû	busy, noisy
10.	heung-hâ*	rural district
11.	ʊôn, waán	to play
12.	sz-tsź	lion
13.	tseûng	elephant

LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

'99

爸 . pa: father.

亞爸 à-pa: papa; father.

爸爸 pa-pa: papa; father.

653

媽 ma: mother; nurse.

媽媽 mā-ma: mother.

姑媽 koo-ma: paternal aunt.

姨媽 ī-ma: maternal aunt.

481

哥 koh: an elder brother.

亞哥 à-koh: elder brother.

大哥 taaî-koh: eldest brother.

爸 媽 哥

爸 媽 哥

爸 妈 哥

1211

妻 ts'ai: wife.

妻子 ts'ai-tsź: wife; wife and children.

932

曬 shaaì: to expose to the sun; to sunbathe.

曬乾 shaaì kon: to dry in the sun.

生曬 shaang shaaì: to dry in fresh.

妻 曬 晒

妻 曬

妻 曬

LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

973

尚 sheûng: still; besides; superior; to esteem; to desire.

高尚 ko-sheûng: noble; liberal; high-minded.

984

適 shik: to reach to; just then; to happen; to suit.

適當 shik-tòng: suitable; appropriate.

合適 hôp-shik: to meet; to suit.

1288

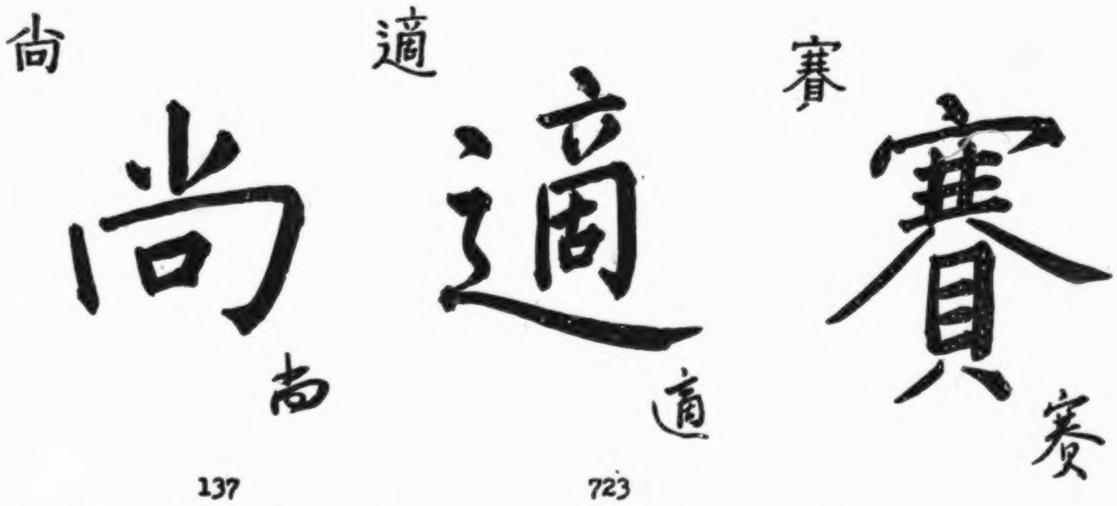
賽 ts'oì: to contest; to rival; exhibit.

賽球 ts'oì kaū: a ball game.

賽跑 ts'oì p'aaú: a foot race.

賽馬 ts'oì mǎ: horse race.

比賽 peí-ts'oì: a match; contest.



137

竹 chuk: bamboo

竹篙 chuk-ko: bamboo pole

竹笋 chuk-sún: bamboo shoot

723

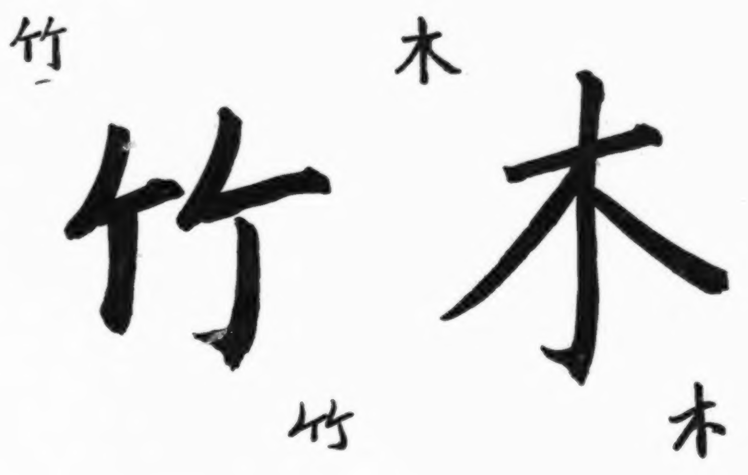
木 mûk: wood; tree; wooden.

樹木 shuê-mûk: tree.

木料 mûk liû: timber.

木瓜 mûk-kwa: papaya.

木工 mûk kung: carpenter.



LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

娛樂嘅辦法，除左睇戲之外，亦可以做其他嘅遊樂。雖然有啲遊樂使錢比較多啲，好似去跳舞場，夜總會，遊樂場等地方。但係有好多適當同高尚嘅遊樂，使錢冇幾多，所得嘅價值係一樣。好似夫妻兩個去游吓水，哥哥弟弟去睇學校賽球，爸爸媽媽去公園聽吓音樂。

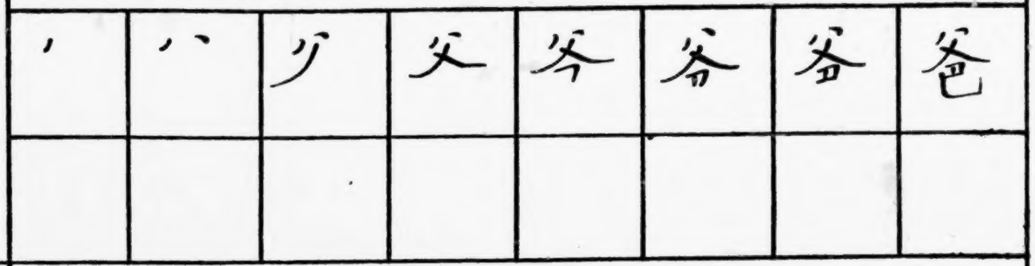
一般黎講，最好嘅遊樂係旅行。喺週末嘅時候，一班朋友到附近嘅海邊或山水美麗嘅公園旅行，喺處野ts'aan同做種種遊戲之外，又可以曬日頭，同睇吓啲花草竹木，你話幾快樂呢？如果能够去更遠嘅地方旅行，得益就更多咯。

LESSON 20

WRITING MATERIAL

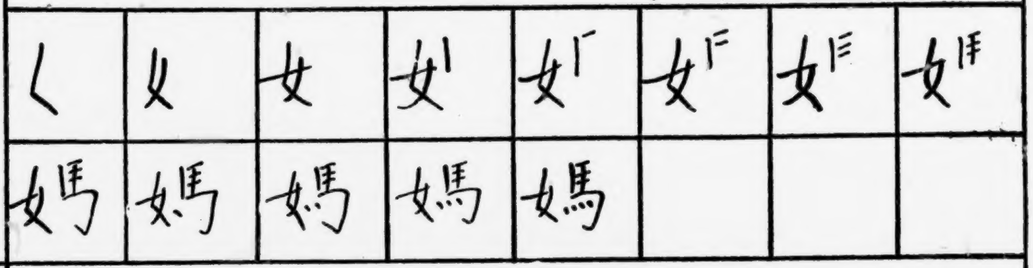
爸

Character Number 799 **Radical Number** 88
Stroke Number 8 父



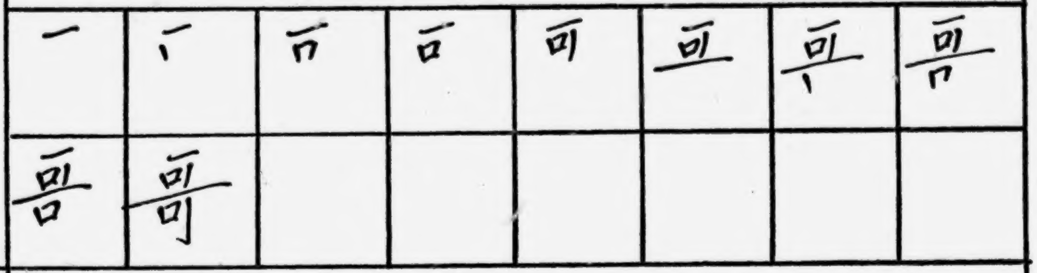
媽

Character Number 653 **Radical Number** 38
Stroke Number 13 女



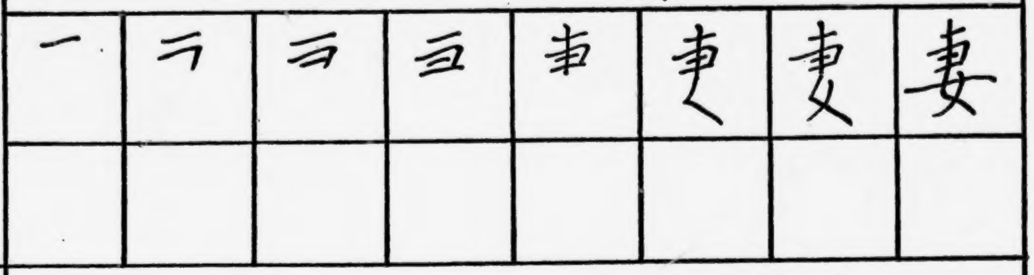
哥

Character Number 481 **Radical Number** 30
Stroke Number 10 口



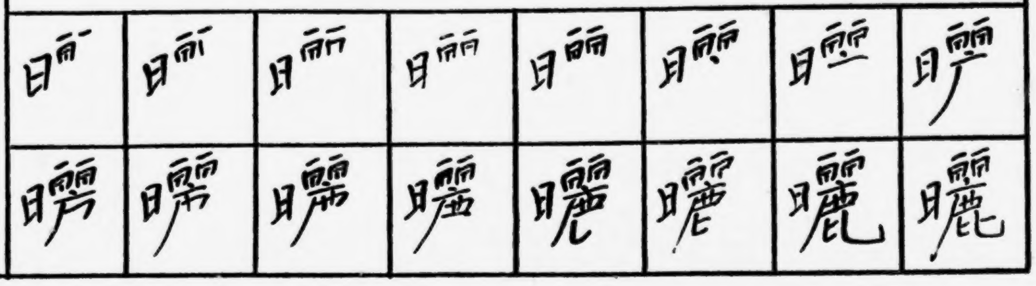
妻

Character Number 1211 **Radical Number** 38
Stroke Number 8 女



曬

Character Number 932 **Radical Number** 72
Stroke Number 25 日



DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE

TEXT VOLUME

VOLUME VI
LESSONS 1-20

ED022179

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

AL 001 479

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Text Volume

Volume VI

Lessons 1-20

March 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

PREFACE

The Chinese Cantonese Course, consisting of 166 lessons in 8 volumes, is one of the Defense Language Institute's Basic Course Series. The material was developed at the Defense Language Institute's Curriculum Development Board.

The course is designed to train native English language speakers to Level 3 proficiency in comprehension and speaking and Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Chinese Cantonese. The texts are intended for classroom use in the Defense Language Institute's intensive programs employing the audio-lingual methodology. Tapes accompany the texts.

All inquiries concerning these materials, including requests for authorization to reproduce, will be addressed to the Director, Defense Language Institute, U. S. Naval Station, Anacostia Annex, Washington, D. C. 20390.

CW Chaney

C. W. CHANEY
Colonel, U.S. Army
Director

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume VIII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 set	Flash Cards for 1500 Most Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	27 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	27 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
		Also available in compact form for comprehension or review purposes:
	3 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:	1 reel	Hong Kong, MF 20-8799,(P)(A)* 9 min.
	1 reel	Hong Kong Welcomes You, MF 20-9363, (I) 15 min.
	1 reel	An Oriental City, Canton, MF 20-9075, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Farming in South China, MF 20-7829, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Taiwan, Island of Freedom, AFIF 103, 23 min.
	1 reel	Formosa, LSFC 21, 13 min.
	1 reel	Miracle in Free China, MF 20-9114, 30 min.
	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, (I) 14 min.

* Available in magnastriped Chinese-Cantonese narrations. (P) Primary version, (I) Intermediate version, (A) Advanced version.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Formosa, Blueprint for a Free China, MOT 18, 24 min.
1 reel	China EF 258, 17 min.
1 reel	China, the Land and the People, MF 20-8939, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	Peiping Family, MF 20-8966, 20 min.
1 reel	The Chinese Village, a Legend, MF 20-9341, 15 min.
1 reel	Red China, AFIF 97, 27 min.
1 reel	China, Far East, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657 FC, (I) 14 min.
1 reel	Far East, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657, 30 min.
1 reel	Southeast Asia, Lands and Peoples, MF 20-8862, 13 min.
1 reel	Southeast Asia, SIS AFS No. 6, MF 30-8771, 33 min.
1 reel	The Village that Refused to Die, MF 20-9748, 60 min.
1 reel	Siam, MF 20-9269, 31 min.
1 reel	Burma, People of the River, MF 20-9028, 14 min.
1 reel	Letter from Indonesia, MF 20-8695, 27 min.
1 reel	The Philippines, AFIF 48, 15 min.
2 reels	Portrait of an American Family, MF 30-8449 (CC), 60 min.
1 reel	Men Against Tanks, MF 7-7898, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	Production of Combat Intelligence, MF 30-1494, (P)(A) 18 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Rifle Company, LSFC-3, (P)(A) 35 min.
1 reel	Infantry Battalion, LSFC-1, (P)(A) 21 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE (TOISHAN) 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	**1 vol.**	**Volume I, Lessons 1-20**
	1 vol.	**Volume II, Lessons 1-20**
	1 vol.	**Volume III, Lessons 1-20**
	1 vol.	**Volume IV, Lessons 1-20**
	1 vol.	**Volume V, Lessons 1-20**
	1 vol.	**Volume VI, Lessons 1-20**
	1 vol.	**Volume VII, Lessons 1-26**
Reference Material:	**1 vol.**	**Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters**
	1 vol.	**Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters (Toishan Conversion Table)**
	1 vol.	**English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary**
	1 vol.	**Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code**
Tape Material:		**The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:**
	24 reels	**Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.**
	24 reels	**Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.**
	48 reels	**Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.**
	48 reels	**Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.**
Film Material:		**Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course**

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-26
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 27-55
	1 vol.	Volume III, Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	14 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	14 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	27 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

	27 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 210-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Volume I, Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume II, Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Volume III, Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Volume V, Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, 14 min.
	1 reel	Mighty Chinese Armed Forces, LS-86, 22 min.
	1 reel	Production of Combat Intelligence, MF 30-1494, 18 min.

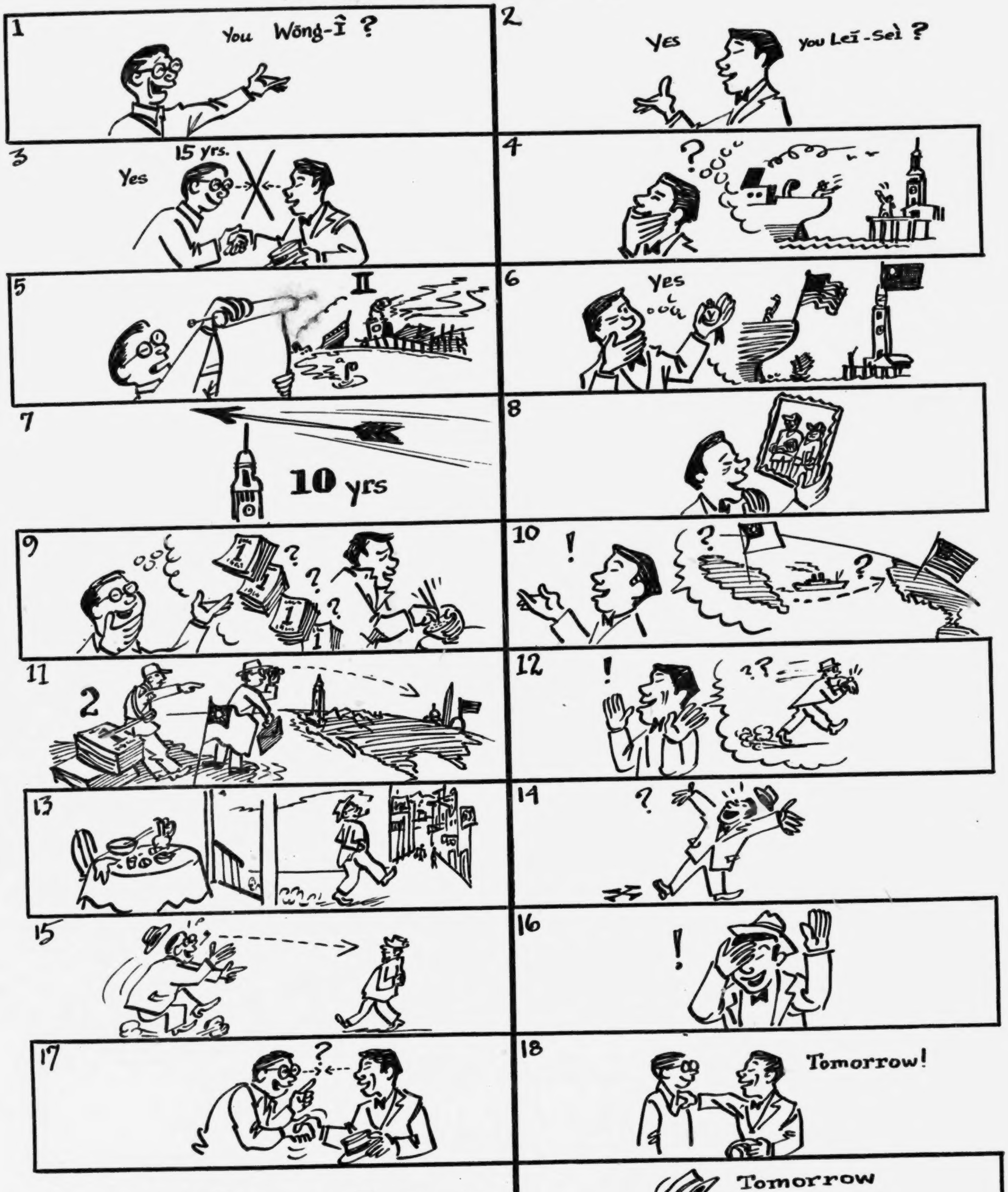
* For Official Use Only

CHINESE-CANTONESE 96-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-16
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 17-32
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 33-48
	1 vol.	Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded on tape
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

LESSON 1


1
You Wōng-Î ?
2
Yes
you Leī-Seì ?
3
Yes
15 yrs.
4
?
5
II
6
Yes
7
10 yrs
8
9
?
?
?
10
!
?
?
11
2
12
!
??
13
14
?
15
16
!
17
?
18
Tomorrow!
Tomorrow
Tomorrow

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Leĭ. Ôh, neĭ haî Wōng-Î, haî m̄-haî à?

Wōng. Haî à, neĭ haî Leĭ-Seì ā?

L. Haî, ngŏh-teî mŏ kìn mîn shâp-ngŏ nìn kòm-noì.

W. Tò-taì ngŏh-teî keì-shĭ fan shaú kè ne?

L. Kóng heì laì tsaû ch'eūng lòh, ngŏh-teî haî taî-î-ts'z̀ shaì-kaaì-taaî-chìn chi haû fan shaú kè.

W. Ngŏh keì-tak là, kóh chân-shĭ ngŏh faan-laì Meĭ-Kwòk, neĭ haî Chung-Kwòk kaì-tsûk t'ìng-laū.

L. Yât-tsź kwòh-tak chan faaì, yat-hă yaû shâp keî nìn.

W. Haî lòh, neĭ t'ūng ngŏh to lŏ-chóh lòh.

L. Haî à, haî ni shâp keî nìn, ngŏh shĭ-shĭ to kwà-chuê neĭ, m̄-chi neĭ tîm-yeûng*?

W. Waì, tò-taì neĭ keì-shĭ yaū T'oì-Waan laì Meĭ-Kwòk kà?

L. Leūng nìn ts'ìn, chìng-foó p'aaì ngŏh yaū T'oì-Waan laì Wā-Shîng-Tûn haaú-ch'aàt.

W. Kóm, neĭ hó la! Chìng-wâ neĭ seúng huì pin-shuè à?

L. Ngŏh ngaam-ngaam shîk-uēn faân ch'ut-laì shĭ-k'ui saàn hă pô.

W. Tîm-kaaî ngŏh haî ni-shuè kìn tó neĭ kà?

L. Haî lòh, ngŏh ngaam-ngaam saàn pô kè shĭ-haû, fat-ìn-kaan kìn-tó yat-kòh yān, kóh kòh yān hó-ts'ž haî neĭ.

W. Mat kòm ngaam kà! Ngŏh chan koó- m̄-tò!

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

L. Ngŏh-teî keî-shī kìn mîn ne?

W. T'ing-yât kìn mîn, hó mà?

L. Hó â, t'ing-yât tsoì-kìn.

W. T'ing-yât tsoì-kìn.

LESSON 1

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Leĭ. Oh, you are Wŏng-Î, aren't you.

Wŏng. Yes, are you Leĭ-Seì?

L. Yes, we haven't seen each other for fifteen years.

W. Actually when were we separated?

L. It is a long story; we were separated after World War II.

W. Yes, I remember, at that time I returned to the United States, and you stayed in China.

L. Time has gone by very quickly; it has been more than ten years.

W. Right, we have both grown older.

L. Yes, in all these years I have constantly thought of you, never knowing how you were getting along.

W. Say, actually when did you come from Formosa to the United States?

L. Two years ago, the Government sent me from Formosa to Washington D.C. on a tour of observation.

W. Then you are doing all right! Where were you intending to go a moment ago?

L. I had just finished my dinner and came out to the city for a stroll.

W. How was it that I met you here?

L. Well, I was just walking along when suddenly I saw a man who looked like you.

LESSON 1

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. How coincidental! I would never have believed it.

L. When shall we see each other again?

W. Let's get together tomorrow, all right?

L. All right, I'll see you tomorrow.

W. I'll see you tomorrow.

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Do you know that he is a Japanese American?
2. It is a coincidence that we meet again on the same train.
3. It is likely that I'll stay in Washington for another week.
4. We had good weather all through the summer, but all of a sudden it rained this morning.
5. I usually go for a walk with my younger sister after dinner.
6. It is getting late and it will be a few more miles before we reach downtown San Francisco.
7. You should go to Washington and make a survey there yourself.
8. At the time of World War II, he was merely a Major.
9. I don't remember anything of my childhood days in Hong Kong.
10. After all, he passed the final examination and graduated.
11. We will meet again tomorrow at the same restaurant.
12. I will never forget how happy I was at the reunion with my parents.
13. During World War II, my brother and I were separated.
14. Time has gone by very quickly and we have grown older.
15. Really, why didn't you study as hard as Mr. Chan?
16. I thought of you constantly but I had no way of learning where you were.
17. I can't imagine that we meet again after ten years' time.

LESSON 1

WORD LIST

1.	ch'ūng-fūng	reunion; to meet
2.	kìn mîn	to meet
3.	tò-taì	after all, actually
4.	fan shaú	to be separated
5.	taî-î-ts'z̀ shaì-kaaì-taaî-chìn	World War II
6.	keì-tak	to remember
7.	kôh chân-shì	at that time, then
8.	kaì-tsûk	to continue
9.	t'ìng-laū	to stay
10.	yât-tsź	days, time
11.	kwà-chuê	to think of, remember
12.	Wā-Shîng-Tûn	Washington
13.	haaú-ch'aàt	to observe, survey
14.	shĭ-k'ui	downtown, city proper
15.	saàn pô	to stroll
16.	fat-ìn-kaan	all of a sudden
17.	ts'z̆	to look like
18.	ngaam	coincidental
19.	hă	a moment
20.	Meĭ-tsîk	US citizenship

LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

402

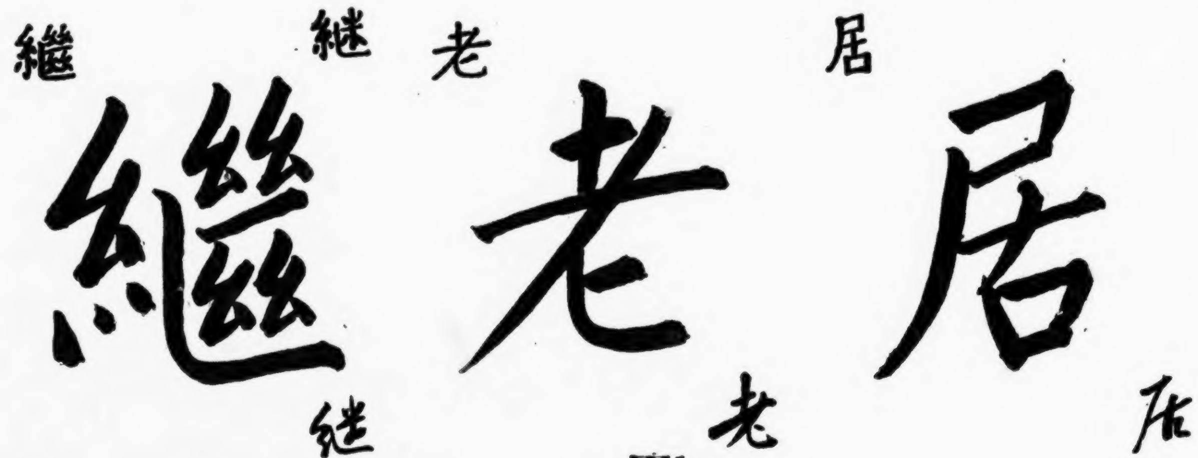
繼	kaì: to follow in line; hereditary continue
繼續	kaì-tsûk: succeeding; succession
繼業	kaì-îp: to follow or inherit father's profession
繼父	kaì- foô: step father

627

老	lŏ: aged; venerable
老豆	lŏ-taû: father.
老母	lŏ-mŏ: mother.
老公	lŏ-kung: husband.
老婆	lŏ-p'ŏh: wife.

528

居	kui: to dwell; to inhabit; a dwelling.
居住	kui-chuê: to reside.
居民	[illegible]-mān: inhabitant
寄居	keì kui: to board.

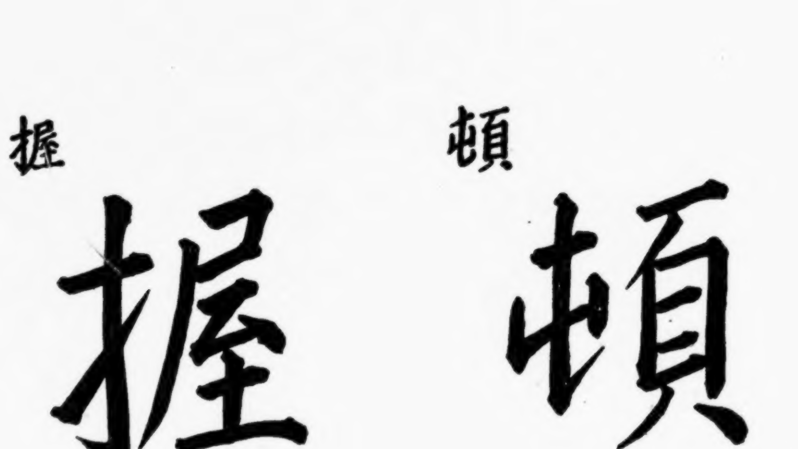


5

握	ak: grasp
握	aak: grasp
握手	aak-shaú: to shake hand.

1355

頓	tûn: to arrange; to knock; to bow; suddenly.
整頓	chíng-tûn: to set in order; to improve.



LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

755

偶 ngaŭ: image; paired; sudden; accidentally.

偶像 ngaŭ-tseûng: idol.

偶然 ngaŭ-īn: accidentally; suddenly.

佳偶 kaai ngaŭ: a happy pair.

623

了 liŭ: finished; very; to understand; Mandarin sign of completed action.

了事 liŭ sź: the affair is finished.

了解 liŭ-kaaí: to understand.

了不得 liŭ-pat-tak: exceedingly; extremely.

266.

希 hei: to hope; rare

希望 hei-mŏng: to hope for

希罕 hei-hón: rare

希奇 hei-k'eī: curious; strange

偶 了 希

偶 了 希

偶 了 希

295

何 hŏh: how; what; why?

何苦 hŏh-foó: why take the trouble

何必 hŏh-pit: why bother

何况 hŏh-fŏng: furthermore

181

忽 fat: suddenly; to disregard

忽然 fat-īn: suddenly.

忽畧 fat-leûk: to slight; to neglect

何 忽

何 忽

何 忽

LESSON 1

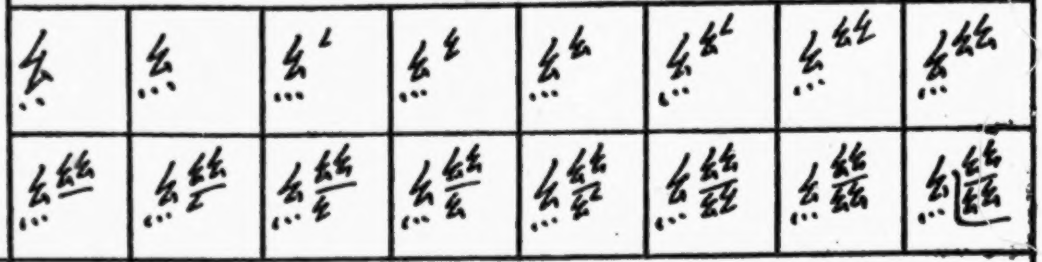
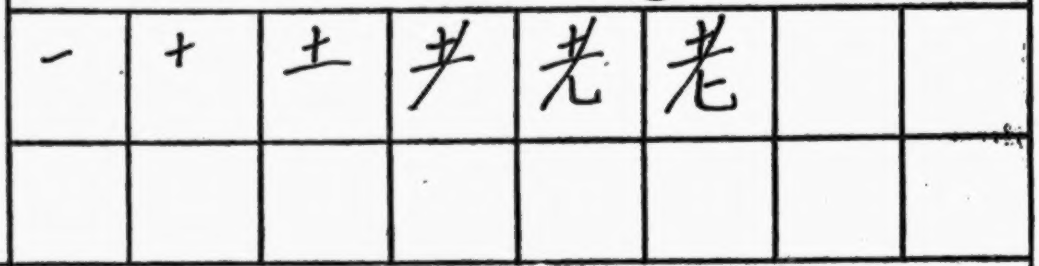
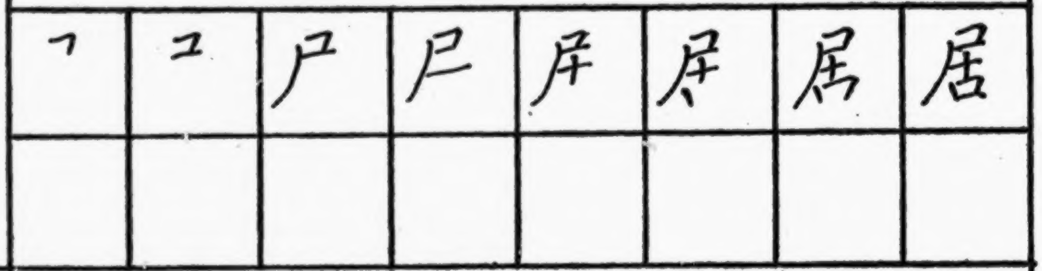
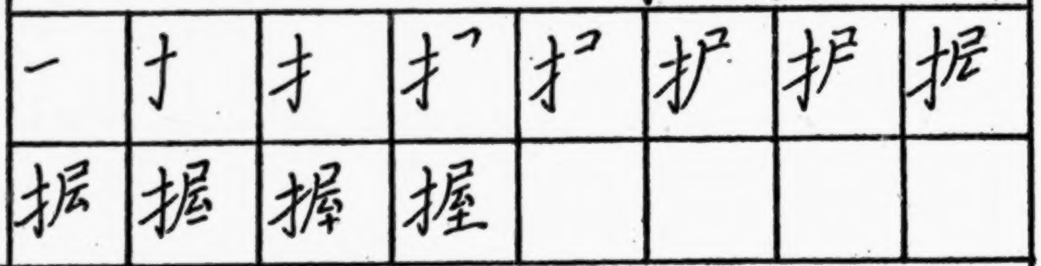
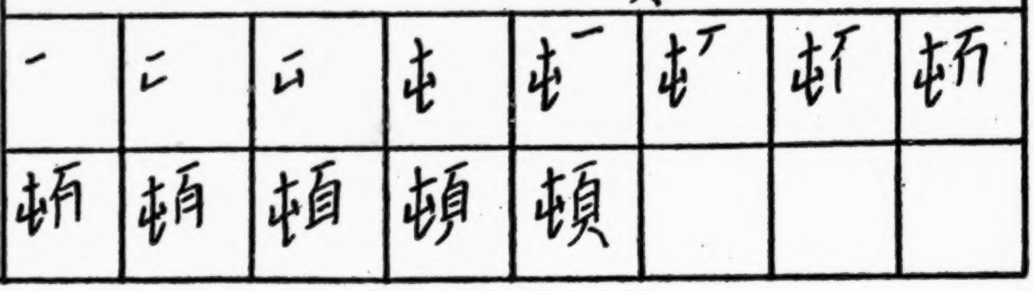
READING MATERIAL

不論家人亦好，朋友亦好，分離之後，一吓再相見，一定好歡喜。如果無意中偶然遇倒，就更加快樂啦。呢種心情，相信好多人都知道。

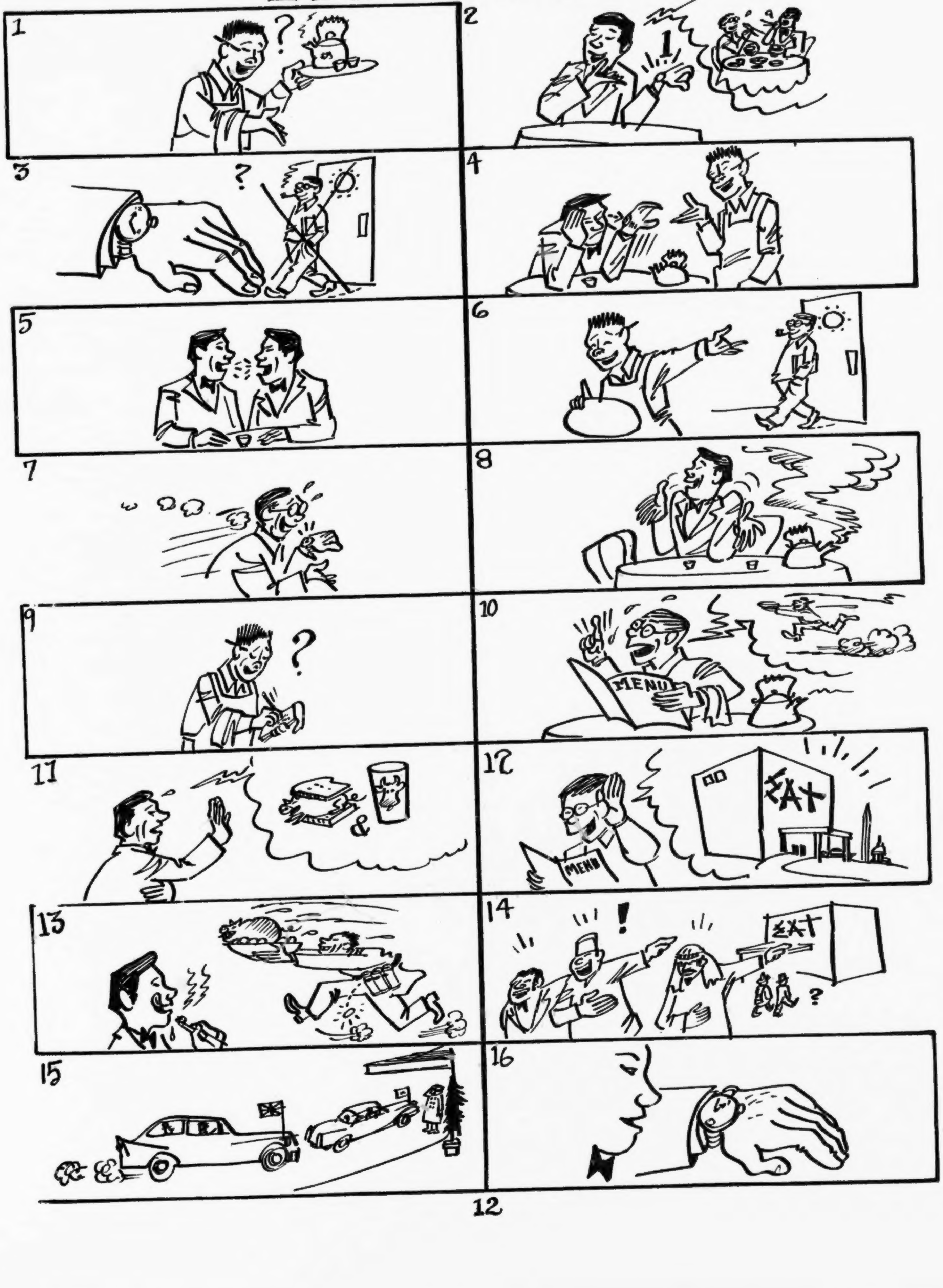
黃二同李四，喺第二次世界大戰嘅時候，大家認識。戰事了結，黃二翻黎美國，李四繼續停留喺台灣。雖然分手嘅時候，大家用力握手講句“後會有期”，但係各人居住一個地方，當時唔敢希望會再見。估唔到十幾年之後，老李忽然被中國政府派去華盛頓考察，無意之中大家重fūng。你話幾歡喜呢！“人間何處不相fūng”呢句說話，真係冇錯啦。但係經過十幾年嘅時候，老黃老李老咗啲。不過，未曾老到大家都唔可以認識。

LESSON 1

WRITING MATERIAL

繼	Character Number 402 Stroke Number 20 Radical Number 120 糸，糸	
老	Character Number 627 Stroke Number 6 Radical Number 125 老	
居	Character Number 528 Stroke Number 8 Radical Number 44 尸	
握	Character Number 5 Stroke Number 12 Radical Number 64 扌，手	
頓	Character Number 1355 Stroke Number 13 Radical Number 181 頁	

LESSON 2


1
?
2
1
3
?
4
5
6
7
8
9
?
10
MENU
11
&
12
MENU
EAT
13
14
!
EAT
?
15
16

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Fôh-Keî. Wân pin-waî* à, sin-shaang?

Wŏng. Ngŏh yeùk-chôh p'aāng-yaŭ laî ni-shuè shîk nğ-ts'aan,
ngŏh sin laî, k'uĭ yat-chân tsaû tò.

W. Ngŏh kè piu ĭ-king shâp-î-tîm seì-kòh tsẑ. Tîm-kaaî lŏ
Leĭ chûng meî tò kà!

F. Sin-shaang, neĭ t'aî-chuê neĭ kè piu tsô mi-yĕ à? M̄-shaî
sam kap.

W. Ngŏh tsẑ-keî t'ūng tsẑ-keî kông che.

F. Nā! Kôh kòh haî m̄-haî neĭ kè p'aāng-yaŭ à? K'uĭ laî-
kân là!

Leĭ. Chan haî m̄-hô ì-sz̀, ngŏh ì-ka chì laî.

W. M̄-kân-iù, ngŏh laî-chôh mŏ keî noî* che.

F. Leŭng-waî* sin-shaang iù ti mi-yĕ ne?

L. Ngŏh iù yat-kòh faaì-ts'aan, m̄-koi neĭ faaì-ti.

W. Ngŏh m̄-haî keî t'ŏ ngôh, ngŏh tsîng-haî iù yat-kòh
fôh-t'uî saam-mān-chî, t'ūng yat-pooi ngaū-naaĭ.

L. Ngŏh t'eng yān wâ nị kaan haî Wā-Shîng-Tûn tsuì taaì
tsuì hô tsuì ch'ut-mēng* kè ts'aan-shat, haî mà?

W. Haî à, m̄-chì kâm, ni-shuè kè chiu-foo yaû hô, yĕ yaû
p'ēng, yaû hô-shîk.

L. Kòh kòh yān to haî kôm wâ, pin ti yān shì shì laî ni-
shuè shîk faân kà?

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. Mi-yĕ yān to yaŭ. Yaŭ ti haî chìng-foó kè koon-uēn, yaŭ ti haî kòk kwòk kè ngoî-kaau-koon, yaŭ ti haî hó yaŭ teî-waî kè yān.

L. T'aî hă neĭ kè piu, tsaû-laĭ yat-tîm là.

W. Ngŏh-teî tsaú là, hó mà? Fóh-keì, m̄-koi neĭ maaĭ taan.

L. Tâng ngŏh laĭ, tâng ngŏh laĭ.

W. M̄-hó chaang, yān-teî t'aî kìn m̄-hó t'aî.

L. Kâm, taî-î-ts'z̀ tâng ngŏh laĭ la!

LESSON 2

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Waiter. Who are you looking for, sir?

Wōng. I made an appointment with a friend to come here for lunch. I've come first; he'll be here in a moment.

Wōng. It is twelve-twenty according to my watch, why hasn't Lŏ-Leĭ arrived yet?

Waiter. Sir, why do you keep looking at your watch? You needn't worry.

Wōng. I was just talking to myself.

Waiter. There, isn't that one your friend? He is coming over this way!

Leĭ. I am really sorry that I have come late.

Wōng. It doesn't matter, I have just been here a short time.

Waiter. What do you two gentlemen wish to have?

Leĭ. I wish to order a quick lunch, please hurry a bit.

Wōng. I am not very hungry. I'll just have a ham sandwich and a glass of milk.

Leĭ. I have heard that this is the largest the best and the most famous restaurant in Washington, is that right?

Wōng. Right. Not only is that so, but the service in this place is excellent and the food is inexpensive and delicious.

Leĭ. Everybody says so. What sort of people usually come here to eat?

LESSON 2

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. There are all sorts of people. Some are government officials some are diplomats of various foreign countries, and some are people of position.

Leĭ. Take a look at your watch, it is almost one o'clock.

Wōng. Shall we go? Waiter, please bring the bill.

Leĭ. Let me pay for it.

Wōng. Don't make a scene; people are watching and it doesn't look good.

Leĭ. Well, let me get it the next time.

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Will you please come closer so that I can hear what you say?
2. If you insist on going in first, you should let me know.
3. Since you have come all the way from Sacramento, let me take care of the hotel expense.
4. I shall be going in thirty minutes. When do you plan to leave?
5. Mr. Wong is a prominent man in San Francisco's Chinatown.
6. He is not a diplomat but he knows all the officials very well.
7. The hotel where I stay has very good service.
8. He ordered not only a chicken, but also a steak.
9. This restaurant's ham sandwiches are very well-known.
10. Would you like to have a glass of milk or a cup of coffee?
11. I ate a whole chicken two hours ago, but I am hungry already.
12. There! That is the watch you've been searching for. Isn't it?
13. I have an appointment with Professor Lee at two this afternoon.
14. He has a date with his girl friend at the New China Restaurant.
15. Please do not worry. She will be here very soon.
16. We will continue this discussion tomorrow if you have no time today.

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

17. He and his brother are fighting for that pretty girl.

LESSON 2

WORD LIST

1.	yeùk-ooî	appointment
2.	yeùk	to make an appointment, date
3.	piu	watch
4.	sam kap	anxious, worried, hurried
5.	nā!	there!
6.	t'ŏ-ngôh	hungry
7.	fôh-t'uì	ham
8.	saam-mān-chî	sandwich
9.	ngaŭ-naaĭ	milk
10.	ch'ut-mēng*	famous, well-known
11.	m̄-chì kâm	not only that, not only so
12.	chiu-foo	service (restaurant, hotel, etc)
13.	koon-uēn	official (personnel)
14.	ngoî-kaau-koon	diplomat
15.	yaŭ teî-waî	in high position, prominent
16.	tsaù	to leave, run
17.	tâng ngŏh laì	to let me pay, take care of
18.	chaang	to fight, insist
19.	haāng-maaì-laì	to walk close, come

LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

424

久 kaú: a long time

久不久 kaú-pat-kaú: now and then

長久 chéŭng-kaú: forever

好久 hó kaú: a good while

1256

精 tsing: essence; vitality; excellent; fine; semen.

精神 tsing-shān: mind; spirit; energy

精力 tsing-lîk: vigor; energy.

精神病 tsing-shān-pêng: mental disease.

1350

腿 t'uí: thigh; leg; ham.

大腿 taaî-t'uí: the thigh.

火腿 fóh-t'uí: cured ham.

久 精 腿

久 精 腿

久 精 腿

113

壯 chòng: strong; robust

壯健 chòng-kîn: healthy; hale

壯胆 chòng-taám: to strengthen one's courage

強壯 k'eŭng-chòng: strong

462

健 kîn: strong; vigorous; robust.

康健 hong-kîn: healthy.

壯健 chòng-kîn: healthy; robust.

健忘 kîn-mōng: habitually forgetful

壯 健

壯 健

壯 健

LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

1027

惜 sik: to pity; to feel for; to grudge.

可惜 hóh-sik: pitiable; regrettable.

痛惜 t'ùng-sik: to love intensively.

199

况 fòng: moreover; still more

况且 fòng-ch'é: moreover

何况 hòh-fòng: how much more? or still less?

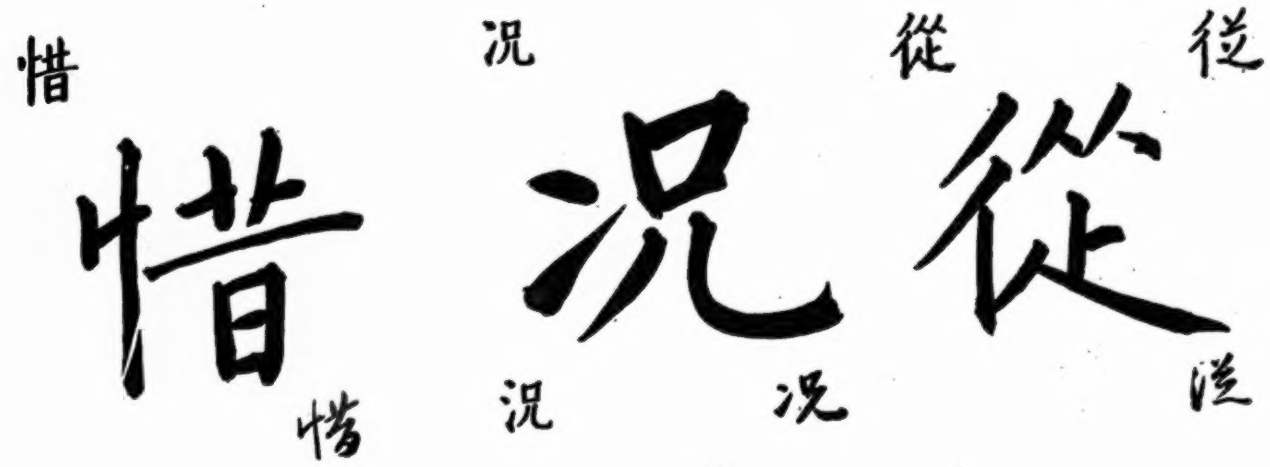
1327

從 ts'ūng: to follow; follower; attendant; second; to agree with; to obey; from.

隨從 ts'ūi-ts'ūng: attendant; retinue.

從前 ts'ūng-ts'īn: formerly.

從軍 ts'ūng kwan: to join the military service.



1042

訴 sò: to state; to inform; a plain; plea.

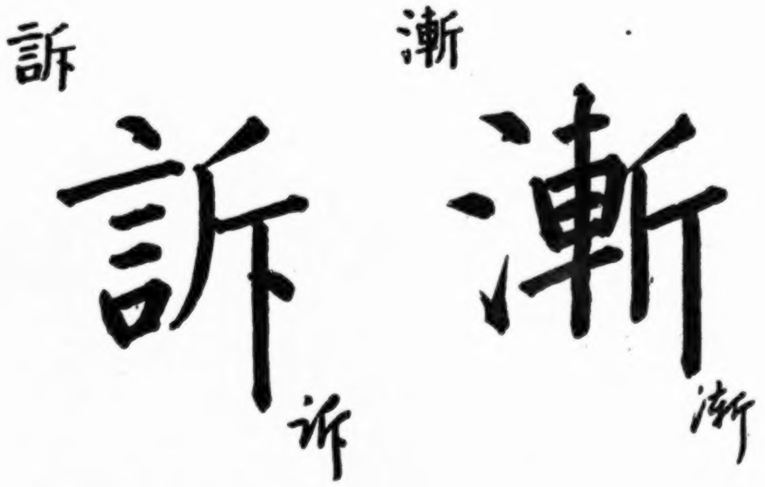
上訴 sheûng-sò: to appeal to a higher court.

訴訟 sò-tsûng: to file a charge.

1248

漸 tsîm: to degress; to imbue.

漸漸 tsîm-tsîm: gradually



LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

黃二同李四，久別重 fūng ，非常歡喜，可惜相見之時，時候無多，況且大家有千言萬語，要從頭訴說，一定 wân 個機會，詳細 k'ing 吓至得。所以大家約定喺一間華盛頓最出名嘅 ts'aan 館相會。

老黃先到，李四黎遲，雖然唔係幾好意思，但係多年朋友，唔算得緊要。

佢地 kè 目的，係見多啲，k'ing 多啲，大家都唔想食好多野。老李要一個快 ts'aan ，老黃只係要一個火腿三文治，同一 pooi 牛奶。佢地食吓，k'ing 吓，時候過得好快。冇幾耐，天漸漸黑、啦，然後分手約定下次再見。

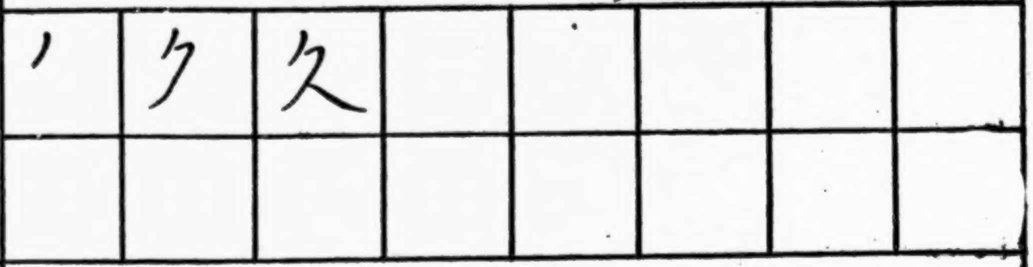
佢地呢次相會，覺得最滿意嘅，就係大家都重壯健，精神亦好。

LESSON 2

WRITING MATERIAL

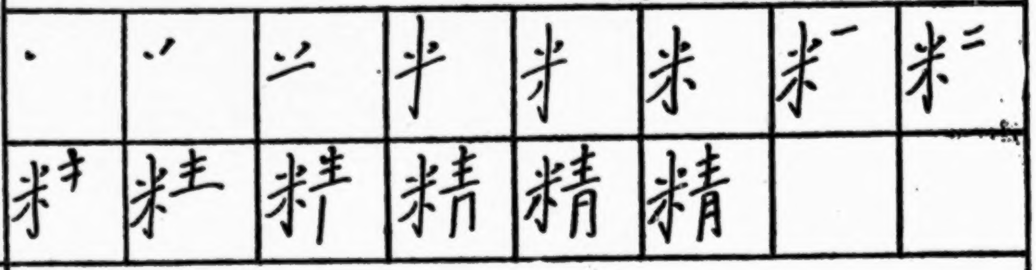
久

Character Number 424 Radical Number 4
Stroke Number 3
丿



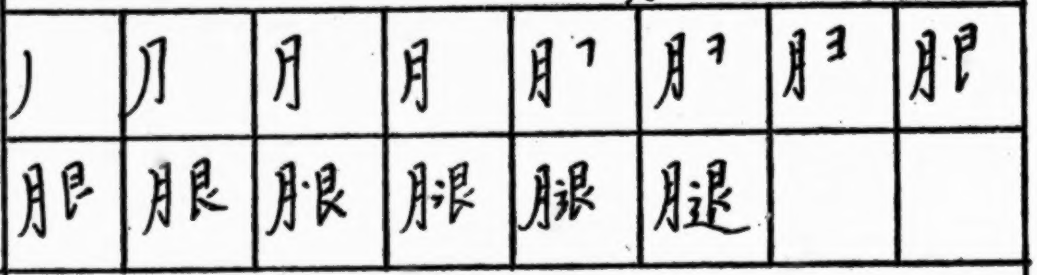
精

Character Number 1256 Radical Number 119
Stroke Number 14
米



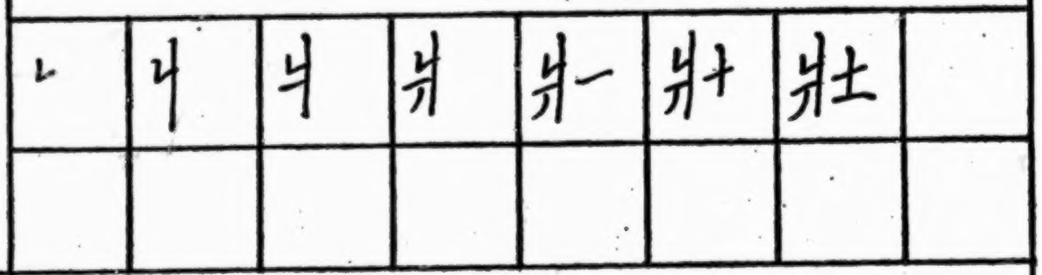
腿

Character Number 1350 Radical Number 130
Stroke Number 14
月，肉



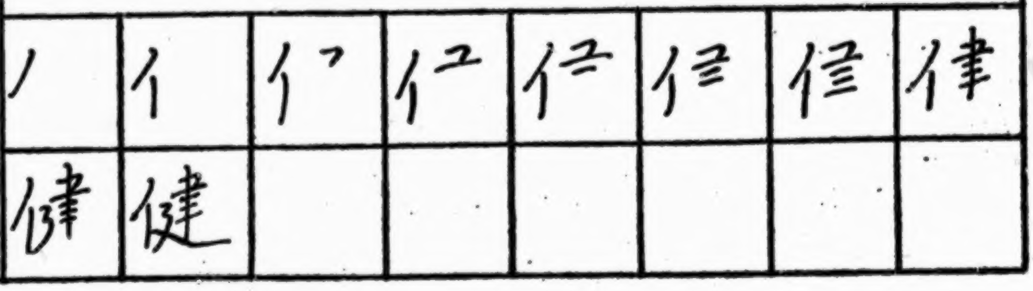
壯

Character Number 113 Radical Number 33
Stroke Number 7
土

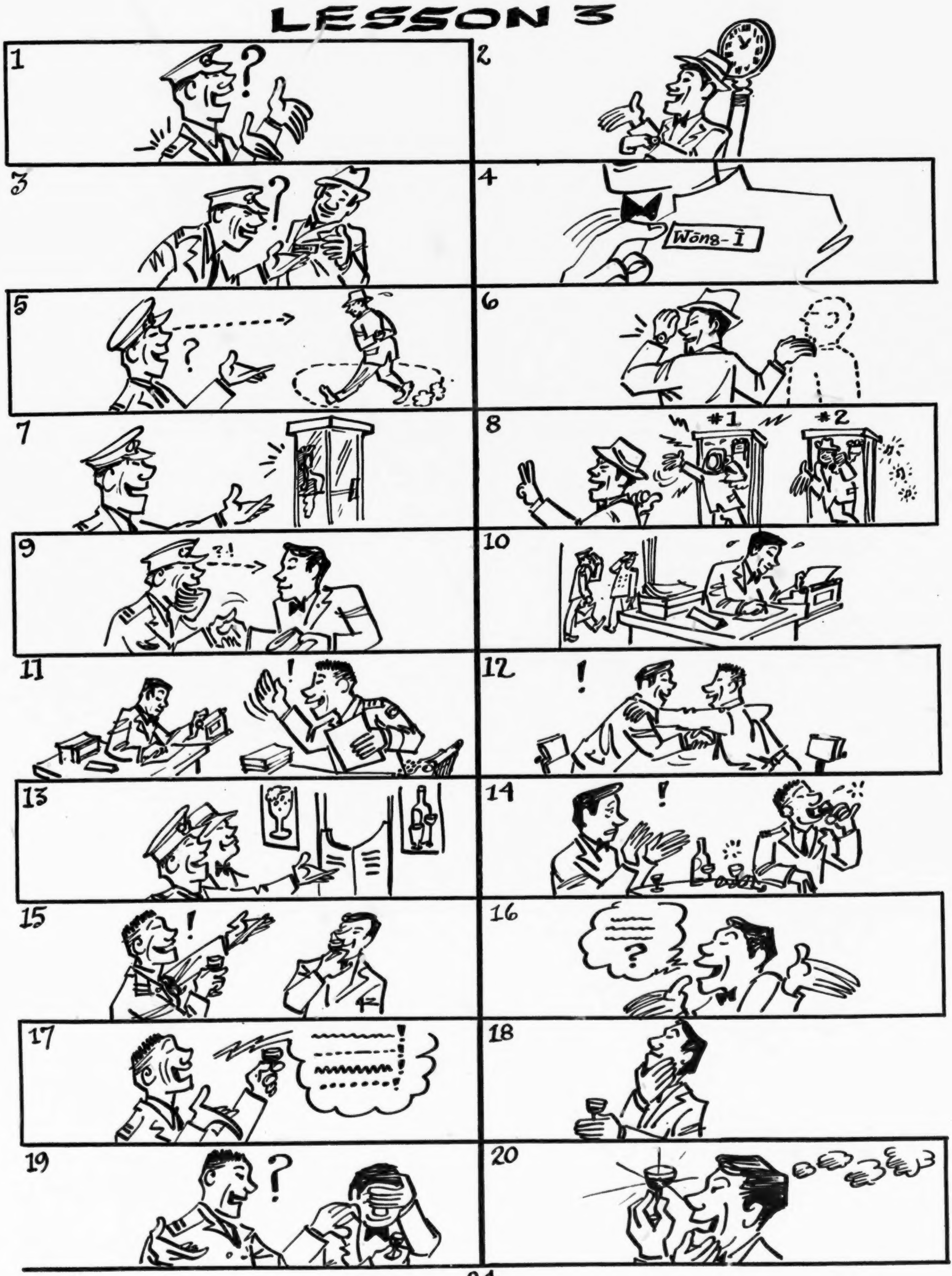


健

Character Number 462 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 10
亻，人



LESSON 3


1
?
2
3
?
4
Wōng-Ī
5
?
6
7
8
#1
#2
9
?!
10
11
!
12
!
13
14
!
15
!
16
?
17
!
18
19
?
20

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Sheûng-Waì: Sin-shaang, yaŭ mi-yĕ sẑ à?

Wōng. Mŏ mi-yĕ sẑ, ngŏh táng yān che.

S. Kwaì sìng-mìng à?

W. Ngŏh kiù-tsô Wōng-Î.

S. Ngŏh kìn neĭ haî ni shuè haāng-laì-haāng-huì, neĭ táng-kán pin-kòh à?

W. Ngŏh táng-kán ngŏh kè p'aāng-yaŭ, k'uĭ ì-ka chûng meî laĭ.

S. Tîm-kaaî neĭ m̄-tá tîn-wâ* peì k'uĭ ne?

W. Ngŏh tá-chôh leŭng-ts'ž tîn-wâ*, taî-yat-ts'ž tá m̄-t'ung, taî-î-ts'ž mŏ yān tsìp.

S. Ngŏh hó ts'ž haî pin shuè kìn kwòh neĭ kà*?

W. Ngŏh haî Lûk-Kwan-Pô tsô sẑ.

S. Ngŏh yîk-to haî Lûk-Kwan-Pô tsô sẑ.

W. Ôh! Uēn-loì ngŏh-teî haî t'ūng-sẑ.

S. Pat-uē ngŏh-teî yâm pooi tsaú chì kóng la!

W. Neĭ yâm-uēn yat-pooi yaû yat-pooi, neĭ kè tsaú-leûng chan hó.

S. Ngŏh-teî k'ing hă kaî*, yat-pîn yâm, yat-pîn k'ing, hó mà?

W. Neĭ seúng k'ing ti mi-yĕ ne?

S. Mi-yĕ to hó la, ts'uì-pîn* la!

W. Táng ngŏh nám hă!

S. Neĭ tap tai t'aū nám mi-yĕ à?

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. Ni ti tsaú t'ūng neĭ kẻ shuẻt-wâ yăn-heī ngŏh kẻ ooī-yik.
Táng ngŏh t'ūng neĭ kóng yat-kỏh koỏ-sẑ la.

LESSON 3

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Captain. What is the matter, sir?

Wŏng. Nothing in particular, I am just waiting for some one.

Captain. What is your name?

Wŏng. I am Wŏng-Î.

Captain. I saw you walking around here, whom are you waiting for?

Wŏng. I am waiting for my friend, and he still hasn't come.

Captain. Why don't you call him up?

Wŏng. I have telephoned him twice; the first time, I couldn't get the call through, and the second time, no one answered.

Captain. It seems that I have seen you somewhere.

Wŏng. I work at the Department of the Army.

Captain. I work at the Department of the Army also.

Wŏng. Oh, actually we are colleagues.

Captain. We had better have a drink; then we'll talk.

Wŏng. You have drunk one glass after another, your capacity for liquor is truly great.

Captain. We can chat a bit, talking and drinking at the same time, all right?

Wŏng. What do you want to talk about?

Captain. Anything is all right with me, suit yourself.

Wŏng. Let me think a moment.

LESSON 3

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Captain.	What are you thinking of with your head cast down?
Wōng.	This wine and your conversation have aroused my memories. Let me tell you a story.

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. He is not very takative, however he likes to tell stories to children.
2. When he approached, I had the feeling that something was wrong.
3. Because she didn't know how to get there, she failed to keep the appointment.
4. This night club is not very large, but most of the tables are vacant.
5. I'll have to send a telegram first before I am through with the office today.
6. I know my recollections are not very clear, but I don't think we have met in the past.
7. That woman looks like my teacher and she arouses my recollections of school days.
8. She casts down her head; however, I don't know if she is thinking or just being tired.
9. We have not seen each other for almost ten years; let's chat for a while.
10. At the club, many people talk while drinking.
11. I do not have a great capacity for liquor. What about you?
12. She is not only my colleague; she is also my superior.

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

13. In reality, Mr. Wong works for the Department of the Army. Didn't you know that?

14. It is not that I can't get the call through, but no one answers the phone.

15. I know a number of languages, for instance: Chinese, Japanese, Korean and English.

16. I have been waiting for you here since 7 p. m. Where have you been?

LESSON 3

WORD LIST

1.	k'ing kaî*	to chat
2.	tá m̄-t'ung	cannot get the call through
3.	mŏ yān tsìp	no one answers the phone
4.	hó ts'z̆	to seem; seemingly, alike; for instance
5.	Lûk-Kwan-Pô	Dept of the Army
6.	uēn-loì	in reality; actually really
7.	t'ūng-sẑ	colleague
8.	tsaú-leûng	capacity for liquor
9.	yat-pîn yám, yat-pîn k'ing	to talk while drinking
10.	tap tai t'aū	to cast down the head
11.	yăn-heì	to arouse
12.	ooì-yik	to recall; recollection, memories
13.	kò-sẑ	story, tale
14.	fòng-chóh kung	to have finished working
15.	k'ui-lôk-pô	club, night club
16.	shat yeùk	to fail to keep the appointment
17.	tsaú-maaì-laì	to come close, approach
18.	hó-k'ing	conversable, good conversationalist, talkative

LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

680

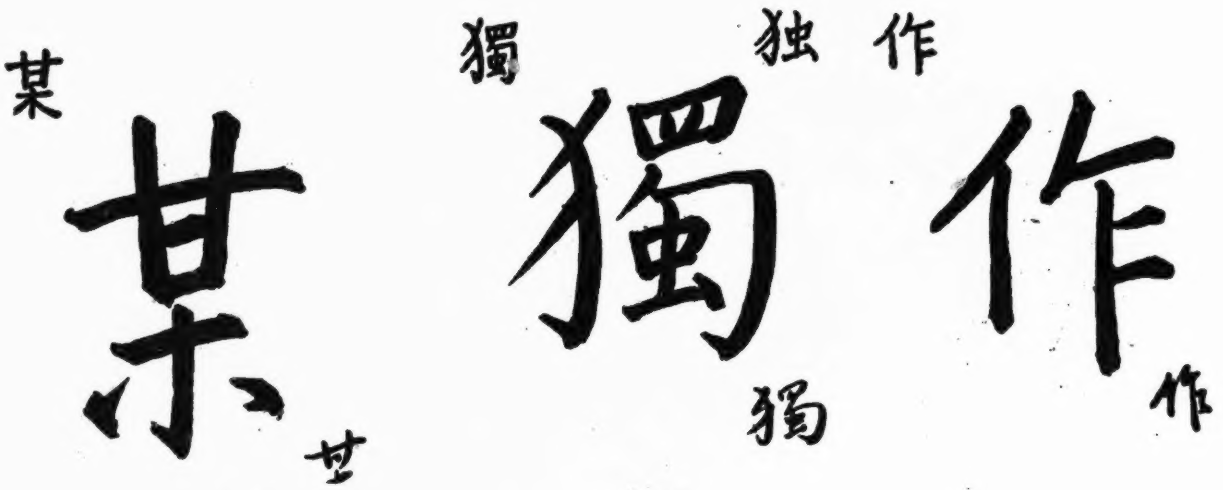
某	maǔ: a certain one; such and such.
某人	maǔ yān: so-and-so.
某甲	maǔ kaâp: a certain person.
某日	maǔ yât: such-and-such day.
某處	maǔ ch'uè: a certain place.

1353

獨	tûk: only merely; single.
獨立	tûk-laâp: to be independent.
獨裁	tûk-ts'oī: arbitrary; dictatorial

1293

作	tsòk: to make; to do; to act; to be; to become.
作文	tsòk mân: to write an essay; to compose.
作對	tsòk-tuì: to be an enemy.
著作家	chuò-tsòk ka: an author; a writer.

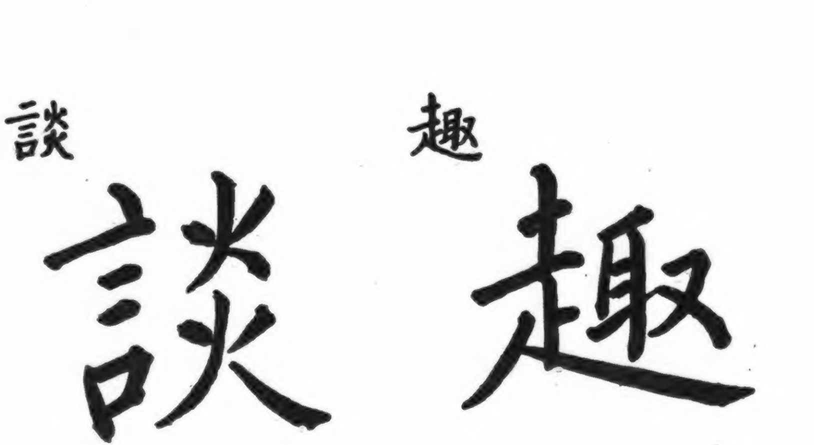


1087

談	t'aām: to talk; talk; language.
談話	t'aām wâ: to talk; to converse.
談論	t'aām lûn: to discuss.
談判	t'aām-p'oòn: negotiation.

1314

趣	ts'uì: interesting; pleasant; exciting.
趣味	ts'uì-meî: flavor; of pleasant flavor; interesting.
無趣	mō ts'uì: not interesting; flat.



LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

1403

懷 waaī: bosom; affection; to cherish.

懷孕 waaī yân: to become pregnant; conception.

懷念 waaī-nîm: to think of; in remembrance

345

異 î: foreign; strange; different.

奇異 k'eī-î: curious; wonderful; strange

詫異 ch'â-î: surprised.

異國 î-kwôk: foreign country

1449

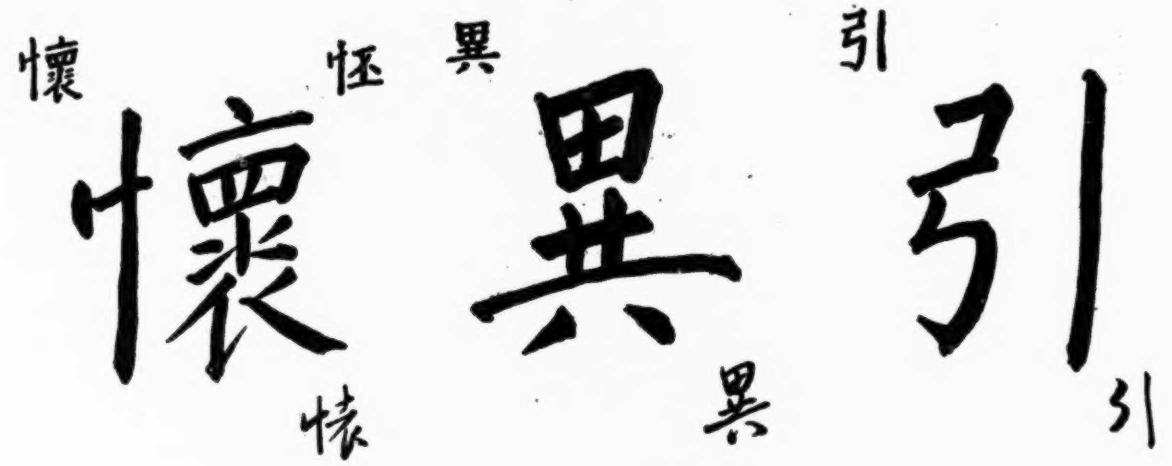
引 yǎn: to lead; to guide; to induce; to quote; a preface.

引誘 yǎn-yaŭ: to entice; to induce.

引起 yǎn heí: to arouse; to elicit.

引導 yǎn-tô: to lead; to instruct.

引渡 yǎn-tô: to extradite.



1095

歎 t'aàn: to sigh; to moan; to praise

歎氣 t'aàn-heì: to heave a sigh.

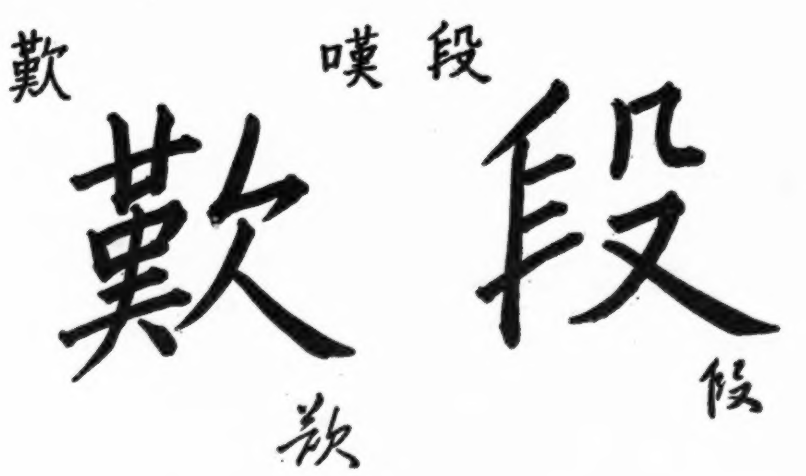
歎惜 t'aàn-sik: to sigh regretfully.

1341

段 tuên: part; piece; section; paragraph.

一段 yat tuên: a section; part; division.

一段新聞 yat tuên san-mān: a paragraph of news.



LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

某日，黃二去一間 k'ui 樂部等一個朋友，等阻好耐，呢個朋友重未黎，打阻兩次電話都打唔通。

黃二滿懷心事，單獨自己一個人，低頭行來行去。有一位少年軍人，見佢有乜樂趣，而且又好似面熟，佢想吓，大家都係異地作客，相 fūng 唔使曾相識嘅。就同老黃交談，原來大家都係喺陸軍部做事嘅。

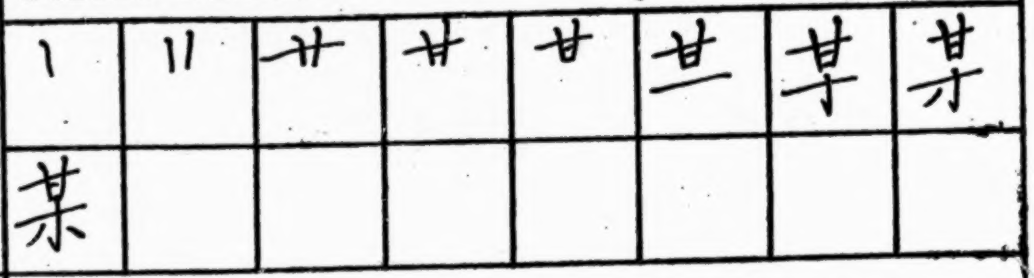
正係"酒 fūng 知己千 pooi 少"，大家都飲得好多。呢啲酒引起黃二嘅心事，佢歎阻一聲，就對呢位軍人講一段關於佢另外一個朋友嘅故事。

LESSON 3

WRITING MATERIAL

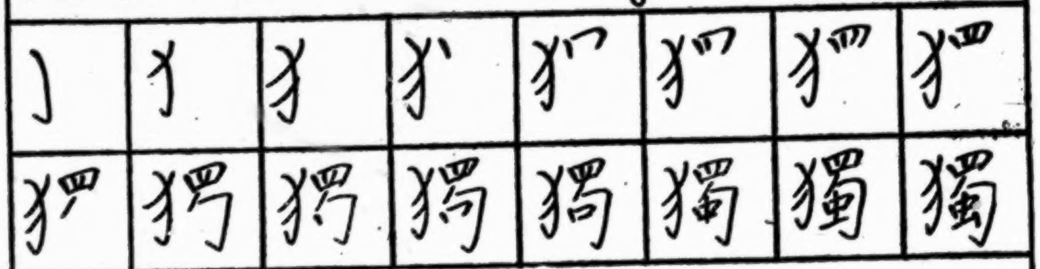
某

Character Number 680 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 9 木



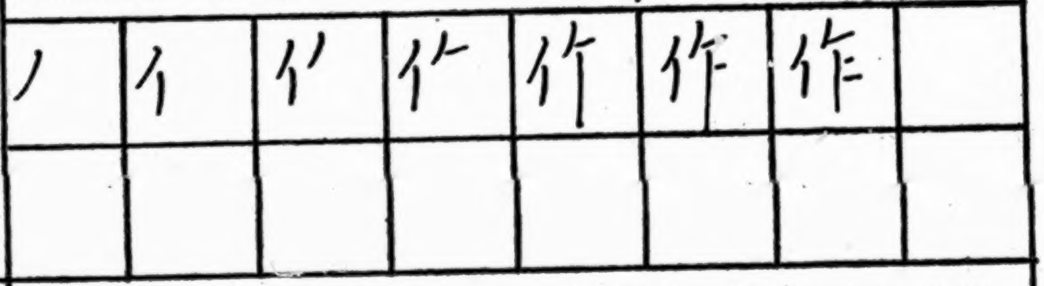
獨

Character Number 1353 Radical Number 94
Stroke Number 16 犭，犬



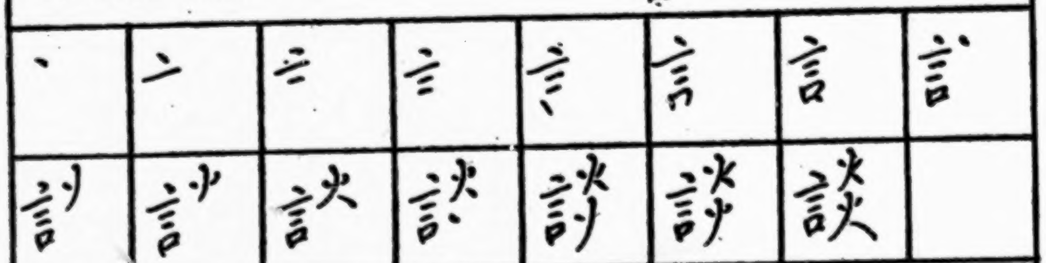
作

Character Number 1293 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 7 亻，人



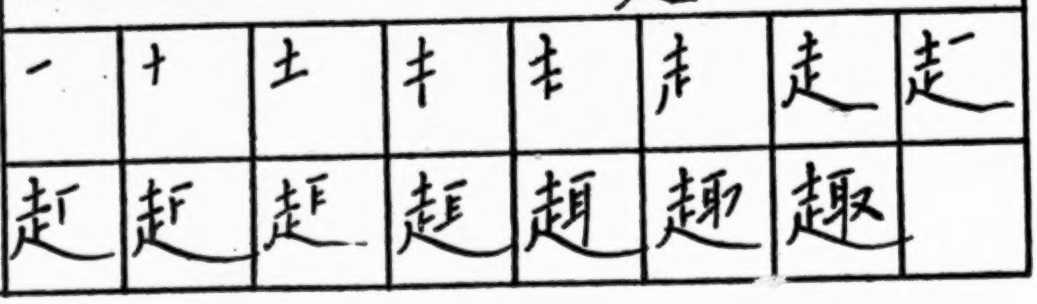
談

Character Number 1087 Radical Number 149
Stroke Number 15 言

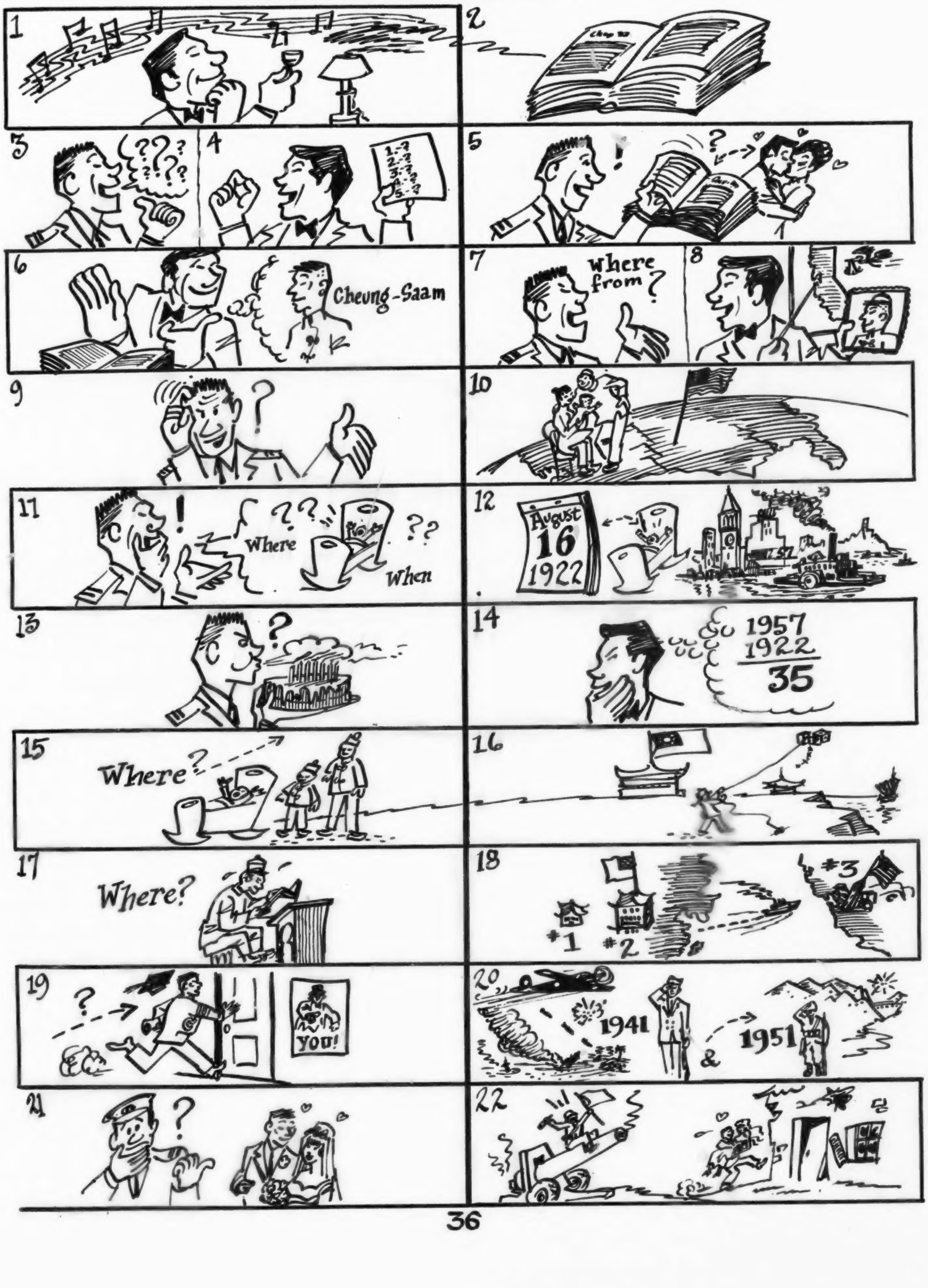


趣

Character Number 1314 Radical Number 156
Stroke Number 15 走



LESSON 4


1
2
3
4
5
6
Cheung-Saam
7
Where from?
8
9
10
11
Where
When
12
August
16
1922
13
14
1957
1922
35
15
Where?
16
17
Where?
18
#1
#2
#3
19
YOU!
20
1941
&
1951
21
22

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Ti yam-ngôk chan hó-t'eng, ti tang-kwong uêt-laì-uêt-òm.

W. Ni kòh koò-sẑ hó ch'eūng, ngŏh m̄-chi yaū pin shuè kóng heî chì hó.

Sheûng-Waì. Pat-uē táng ngŏh mân neĭ, neĭ taàp la, hó mà?

W. Hó! Pat-kwòh neĭ iù mân-tak yaŭ haî-t'ŭng ti chì hó pòh!

S. Tong-ìn* la! Ni kòh haî m̄-haî neĭ kè luên* oì koò-sẑ à?

W. M̄-haî, ni kòh haî kwaan-ue ngŏh kè p'aāng-yaŭ Cheung-Saam kè.

S. K'uĭ haî pin shuè yān à?

W. K'uĭ haî Meĭ-Kwòk Ka-Shaáng yān, yaû haî Chung-Kwòk yān.

S. Neĭ kâm kóng, haî mi-yĕ ì-sz à?

W. K'uĭ haî Meĭ-Kwòk ch'ut shaì, shôh-ĭ k'uĭ haî Meĭ-Kwòk tsîk yān. K'uĭ kè foô mŏ haî Chung-Kwòk yān, shôh-ĭ k'uĭ yaû haî Chung-Kwòk yān.

S. Òh! Uēn-loì haî kâm. K'uĭ keì shì haî pin shuè ch'ut shaì kà?

W. Yat-kaú-ì-ì-nìn paàt-uêt shâp-lûk-yât k'uĭ haì Ka-Shaáng Saam-Faān-Shĭ ch'ut shaì.

S. K'uĭ kam nìn keì taaî à?

W. Táng ngŏh kaì yat kaì, k'uĭ kam nìn sa-à-nğ suì.

S. K'uĭ haî pin shuè taaî à?

W. K'uĭ haî Chung-Kwòk taaî.

S. K'uĭ haî pin shuè tûk shue ne?

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. K'uĭ haì Chung-Kwòk tûk siú-hôk t'ŭng chung-hôk, chung-hôk pat-îp chi haû, k'uĭ laì Meĭ-Kwòk Ka-Shaáng tûk taaî-hôk.

S. Haû-loî yaû tîm à? K'uĭ yaŭ mŏ tong-kwòh ping à?

W. Yaŭ, yat-kaú-seì-yat-nìn Chan-Chue-Kóng peî t'au tsaâp chi haû, k'uĭ huì tong ping. Yat-kaú-nğ-ìng-nìn Hōn-Chìn paaù-faàt kè shĭ-haû, k'uĭ tsoì ts'ẑ tong ping.

S. K'uĭ kìt-chóh fan meî à?

W. Kìt-chóh fan; taî-î-ts'ẑ taaî-chìn kìt-ch'uk chi haû mŏ keî noî, k'uĭ kìt fan.

LESSON 4

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wŏng-Î. The music is really beautiful. The light is becoming dimmer and dimmer.

Wŏng. This is a long story, I do not know where I should begin.

Captain. You had better let me ask the questions, and you answer, all right?

Wŏng. All right, but you will have to ask them in proper order.

Captain. Of course. Is this the story of your romance?

Wŏng. No, this story concerns my friend Cheung-Saam.

Captain. Where is he from? (Of what place is he a native?)

Wŏng. He is from California, U.S.A., and he is also Chinese.

Captain. What do you mean by that?

Wŏng. He was born in the United States; therefore, he is a U.S. citizen. His parents are Chinese, so he is also a Chinese.

Captain. Oh. So that is the case. When and where was he born?

Wŏng. He was born on 16 August 1922 in San Francisco.

Captain. How old is he this year?

Wŏng. Let me figure it out. He is thirty-five years old this year.

Captain. Where did he grow up?

Wŏng. He grew up in China.

LESSON 4

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Captain. Where did he study?

Wŏng. He attended elementary and high school in China. After graduation from high school he came to study at a university in California, U.S.A.

Captain. After that what happened? Did he enlist in the military service?

Wŏng. Yes, after the sneak attack on Pearl Harbor in 1941, he enlisted in the military service. When the Korean War broke out in 1950 he enlisted again.

Captain. Has he gotten married yet?

Wŏng. He is married; he married soon after the end of World War II.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The lights are all off. What does it mean?
2. Will you please figure out the total that I owe you immediately?
3. Since his girl friend went away, he seems to have many things on his mind.
4. Even though she has no money, she does not appear to have any matters on her mind.
5. I shall end my business and enlist in the air force.
6. I visited New York City once, and I shall go there again soon.
7. The war broke out in the Far East three months ago.
8. He grew up in Pearl Harbor and enlisted in the military service.
9. A sneak attack would again cause another war.
10. He was graduated from the military academy and was sent to the Far East.
11. Concerning his work, he is very systematic.
12. Of course, love affairs are not work, but he is also very systematic about them.
13. Is that so. No wonder all the lights are dim in this room.
14. How old is your younger brother, and what is his name?
15. She wants to end her love affair with him right now.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. Concerning the color of street lights, the city government is very systematic.

17. Let me figure it out; she should have been eighteen years old the day before yesterday.

LESSON 4

WORD LIST

1.	tang-kwong	light
2.	òm	dim
3.	yaŭ haî-t'úng	systematic, in proper order
4.	luên*-oì	love affair
5.	kwaan-ue	to relate, concern
6.	tong-ìn*	of course
7.	uēn-loì haî kâm	so that is the case, if that is the case
8.	keì taaî?	how old (age)?
9.	haì...taaî	to grow up in...
10.	pat-îp	to graduate
11.	tong ping	to enlist in the military service
12.	Chan-Chue-Kóng	Pearl Harbor
13.	t'au tsaâp	sneak attack
14.	paaù-faàt	to break out
15.	tsoì ts'z̀	again
16.	kìt-ch'uk	to end
17.	sam-sẑ	matter on mind
18.	sam-sẑ ch'ūng-ch'ūng	many things on mind
19.	kaì-yat-kaì	to figure out, count
20.	mi-yĕ ì-sz?	what does it mean?

LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

1307

醉 tsuì: drunk; intoxicated.

飲醉 yám tsuì: to get drunk.

醉酒 tsuì-tsaú: intoxicated.

325

恐 húng: to fear; alarm; doubt

恐怕 húng-p'à: probably; perhaps

恐慌 húng-fong: panic dread; crisis

恐嚇 húng-haàk: to terrify; intimidate.

恐怖 húng-pò: frightened

71

止 chí: to halt; stop; end

止痛 chí-t'ùng: to stop pain

止步 chí-pô: to stop (no admittance)

醉 醉 醉

恐 恐 恐

止 止 止

1351

退 t'uì: to retire; to withdraw.

退回 t'uì-ooī: to return; to turn back.

退還 t'uì-waān: to return; unaccepted.

告退 kò t'uì: to resign; to withdraw.

739

伍 nǧ: the numeral five

入伍 yâp-nǧ: be a soldier.

退伍 t'uì-nǧ: to retire from the service

退 退 退

伍 伍 伍

LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

1459

柔 yaū: pliant; tender; mild.

柔弱 yaū-yeûk: effeminate; soft.

1140

典 tín: canon; rule; record; to mortgage; to pledge.

字典 tsẑ-tín: dictionary; lexicon.

大典 taaî tín: a great celebration.

典禮 tín-laĭ: ceremony.

245

効 haaû: to imitate; to toil; to copy

效法 haaû faât: to imitate; to copy to follow an example

效用 haaû-yûng: function utility

效果 haaû-kwóh: result

柔 典 效

柔 典 効

柔 典 典 効 効

258

恰 hap (hop): timely fitting; exact; to close

恰好 hap hó: just fit; just right

恰眼瞓 hap ngaán-fàn: to doze

244

巧 haaú: skillful; cunning

巧辯 haaú pîn: plausible argument

巧妙 haaú-miû: skillful

恰 巧

恰 巧

恰 巧

LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

暗暗燈光，柔和古典音樂，喺呢啲情形之下，最容易使人想番過去。黃二想起佢嘅朋友嘅故事，要講pei嗰位軍人聽。但係唔知道從邊處講起，而且有幾分醉意，恐怕講得冇系統。佢地就決定用問答嘅方法黎講。

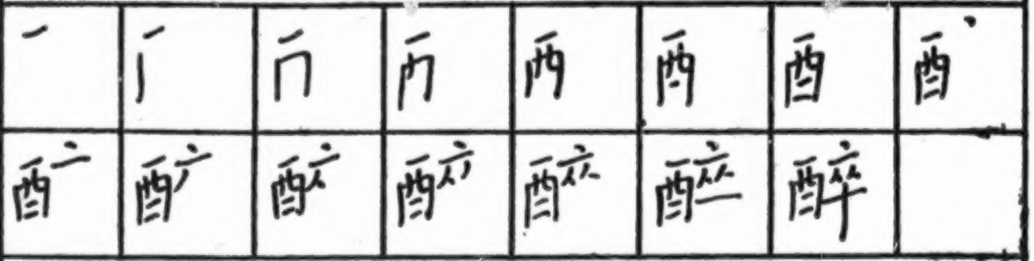
原來呢位張三，喺美國三Faān市出世之後，曾經去中國讀小學中學，後來番黎美國加省讀大學。恰巧第二次世界大戰發生，每個人都應該同國家効力。所以佢亦去當兵。戰事停止，張三退伍，以為可以繼續讀書。但係Hōn戰paaû發，佢再次入伍。佢曾愛上一個聰明美麗嘅女子，亦都要等到戰事了結之後，至可以結婚。因為呢個女子嘅原故，佢喺軍隊嘅時候，非常之擔心。

LESSON 4

WRITING MATERIAL

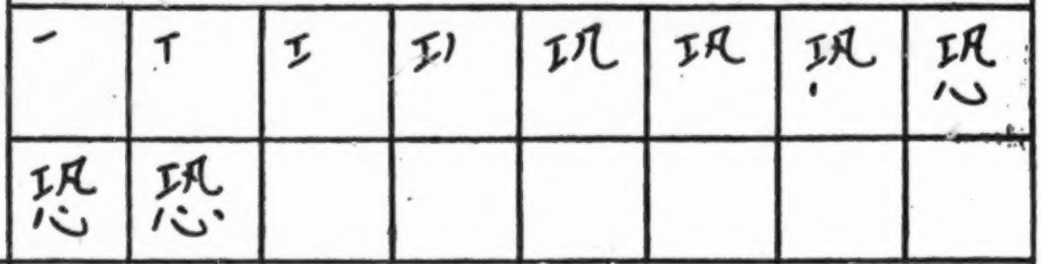
醉

Character Number 1307 **Radical Number 164**
Stroke Number 15 酉



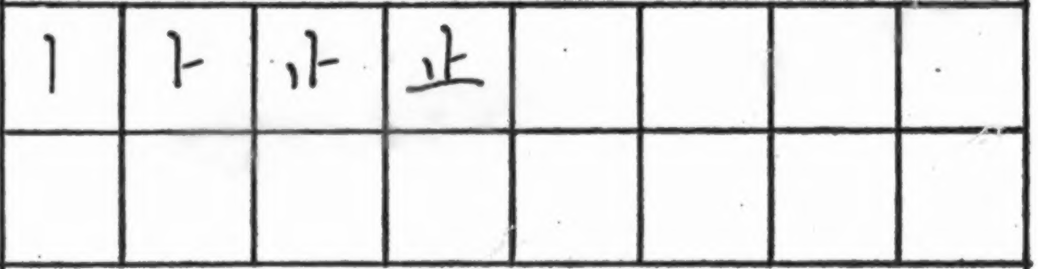
恐

Character Number 325 **Radical Number 61**
Stroke Number 10 心



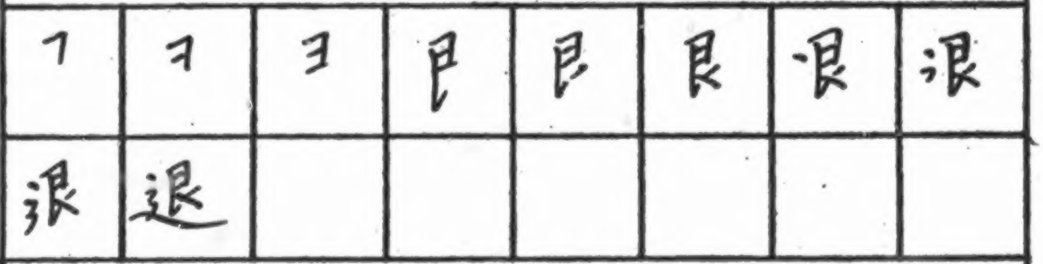
止

Character Number 71 **Radical Number 77**
Stroke Number 4 止



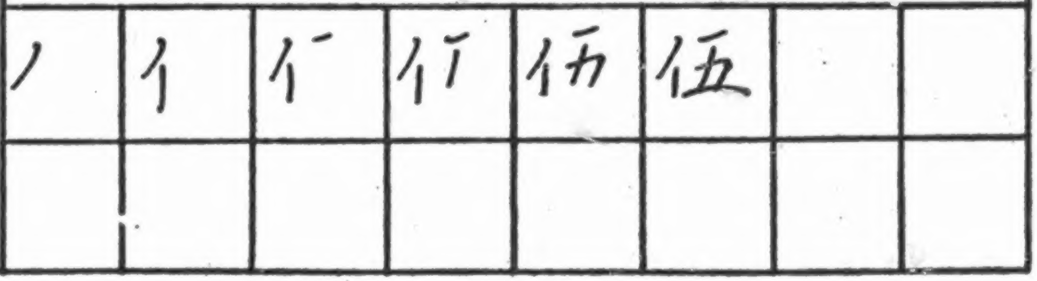
退

Character Number 1351 **Radical Number 162**
Stroke Number 10 辶，辵

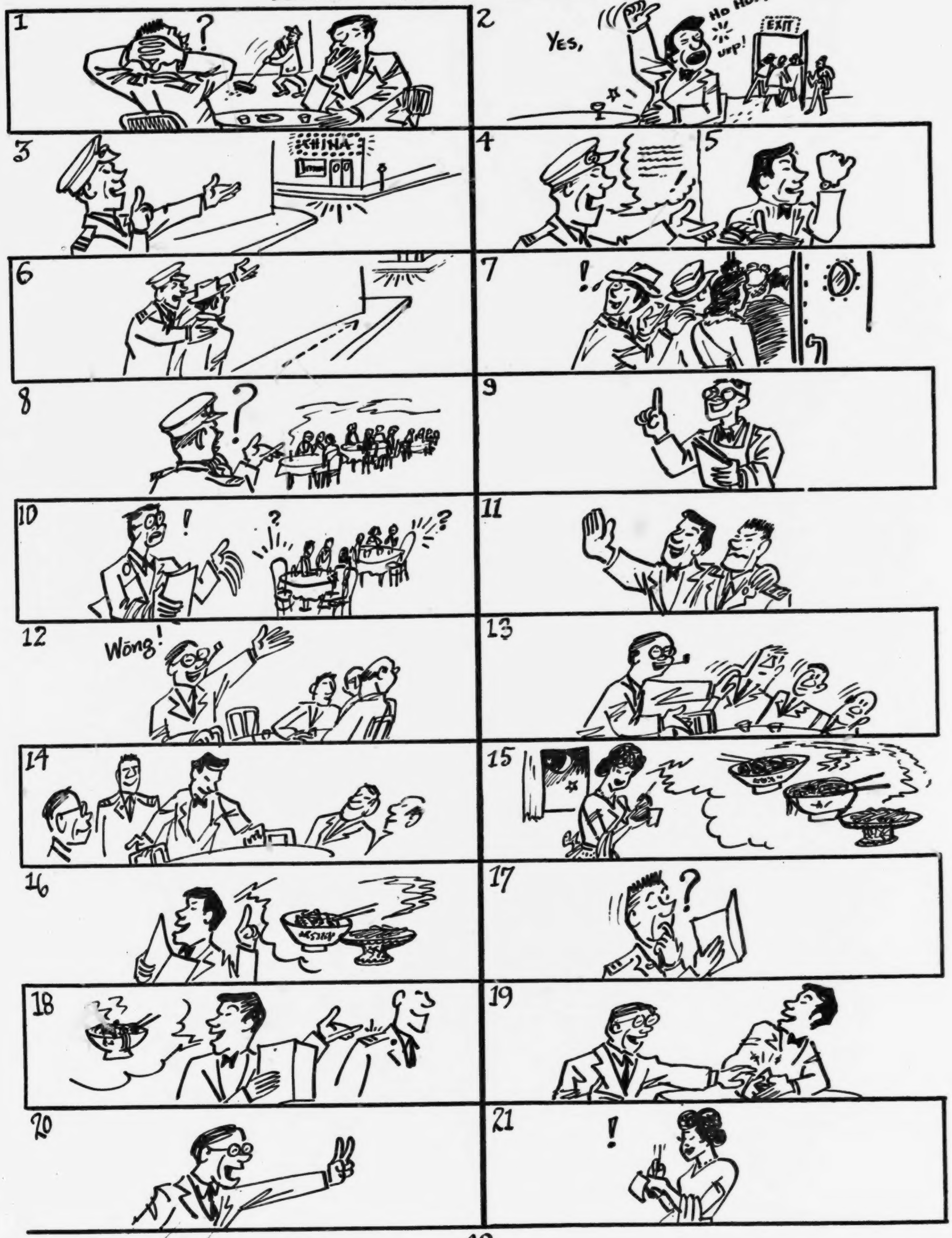


伍

Character Number 739 **Radical Number 9**
Stroke Number 6 亻，人



LESSON 5


1
?
2
Yes,
Ho Hum
urp!
EXIT
3
CHINA
4
5
6
7
!
8
?
9
10
!
?
?
11
12
Wōng!
13
14
15
16
17
?
18
19
20
21
!

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Sheûng-Waĭ. K'ui-lôk-pô tsaû-laĭ shaan moōn, neĭ m̄-t'ìng kám tá haàm lô, haî m̄-haî hó ngaăn-fàn à?

Wōng. Haî à, ti yān uêt-laĭ-uêt-shiú, ngŏh hó t'ŏ ngôh, hó ngaăn-fàn, pat-uē ngŏh-teî kiù ti yĕ shîk, hó mà?

S. Ngŏh t'aĭ-ĭ huĭ kaàk-leĭ kaai kè Chung-Kwòk ts'aan-shat shîk siu yê*.

S. Ngŏh tuĭ-ue neĭ kóng kè koò-sẑ hó yaŭ hìng-ts'uĭ.

W. Ngŏh taàp-yìng neĭ yaŭ shĭ-haû kaĭ-tsûk kóng-uēn.

S. Kóh kaan ts'aan-shat mŏ keî uĕn, ngŏh-teî haāng huĭ la!

W. Ni kaan ts'aan-shat kè shaang-ì chan hó.

S. Ngŏh-teî mŏ waî* ts'ŏh, tîm suèn hó ne?

Taaĭ-Waî*. Sin-shaang, tâng ngŏh t'ūng neĭ-teî wán-hă la!

T. Ngŏh ĭ-king tò-shuè wán-kwòh, ti waî* to ts'ŏh moōn saaĭ, neĭ-teî fan-hoi ts'ŏh, hó mà?

W. M̄-hó là, ngŏh-teî seúng ts'ŏh-maaĭ yat-ts'aĭ.

Leĭ. Lŏ Wōng*, yaû haî ni shuè kìn tó neĭ, chan ngaam là!

L. Neĭ haî ni shuè taàp waî*, taaî-ka pik-hă la!

W. M̄-koi saaĭ, ngŏh-teî keî kòh yān ts'ŏh haî ni cheung taaî t'oĭ* shuè.

Nuĭ-Chiu-Toî. Sin-shaang, kam-maăn kè uē-shaang chuk, ngaū-yûk ch'aaú mîn, ch'aaú fán hó lèng pòh!

W. Ngŏh iù yat-oón uē-shaang chuk, yat-tîp ngaū-yûk ch'aaú fán.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

S. Ngŏh m̀-chi-tò kiù mi-yĕ hó, neĭ t'ùng ngŏh tìm la!

W. Ni waî* Sheûng-Waì iù yat-tîp ngaù-yûk ch'aáu mìn.

L. Lŏ Wōng*, m̀-hó chaang peì ts'ìn*, nì ts'è tâng ngŏh laĭ.

L. Waì! M̄-koi neĭ tseung leŭng-cheung taan sè-maaĭ yat-ts'aĭ.

N. Hó à, sin-shaang.

LESSON 5

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Captain. The club is about to close. You keep yawning, are you very sleepy?

Wōng-Î. Yes, the crowd is getting smaller and smaller. I am very hungry and sleepy. Let us get something to eat, all right?

Captain. I suggest we go to the China Restaurant on the next street for a late evening snack.

Captain. I am very much interested in the story you were telling me.

Wōng. I promise that I will continue and finish it when I have time.

Captain. That restaurant is not far away, we can walk over.

Wōng. Business at this restaurant is really good.

Captain. There is no place for us to sit. What shall we do?

Steward. Let me look around for you, sir.

Steward. I've looked everywhere, the seats are all occupied, would you mind sitting separately?

Wōng. No, we wish to sit together.

Leĭ-Seì. Wōng* (literal translation: Old Wōng), what a coincidence, again meeting you here!

Leĭ. We can share the table with you, everybody crowd in a little.

LESSON 5

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. Thank you, we can all sit at this big table.

Waitress. Sir, tonight the raw fish congee, the beef fried noodles, and the fried rice sticks are excellent

Wōng. I want a bowl of raw fish congee and a plate of beef fried rice sticks.

Captain. I don't know what to order, you order it for me!

Wōng. This Captain wishes to have a plate of beef fried noodles.

Leǐ. Wōng* don't insist on paying, this time let me have the honor.

Leǐ. Hey, please put the two bills together.

Waitress. Very well, sir.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The story is so long; it seems that he will never finish telling it all.
2. I want a bowl of raw fish congee; and what do you want to order?
3. Both the steward and the waitress recommended fried rice-stick.
4. This restaurant is so crowded that I could never find a place there.
5. You should let them sit together since they are old friends.
6. I promise to help you, so please don't worry.
7. This work is very difficult to do but it is interesting.
8. May I suggest that we go to the restaurant on the next street?
9. It is very late and we might as well go to have some night snacks.
10. You should close the door when you come in here.
11. He is getting sleepy and is starting to yawn.
12. Because the price is set too high, fewer and fewer people come to this place to eat.
13. This theatre is showing a good movie and all seats are occupied.
14. This restaurant is too crowded and sharing the table with others is the only way that we can eat here.
15. I don't know how to order, so will you do it for me?

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. This is my suggestion and I think you will be interested.

LESSON 5

WORD LIST

1.	siu yê*	a late evening snack
2.	shaan moōn	to close for business
3.	tâ haàm-lô	to yawn
4.	ngaăn-fàn	sleepy
5.	uêt-laì uêt-shiú	fewer and fewer
6.	t'aì-ĭ	to suggest; suggestion
7.	kaàk-leì kaai	next street
8.	yaŭ hìng-ts'uì	interesting; interested in
9.	taàp-yìng	to promise
10.	ts'ŏh moŏn	full house, all seats occupied
11.	ts'ŏh-maaì yat-ts'aì	to sit together
12.	taàp waî*	to share the place
13.	pik	to crowd; crowded
14.	uē-shaang-chuk	raw fish congee
15.	ch'aaú fân	fried rice-stick; to fry rice-stick
16.	nuĭ-chiu-toî	waitress
17.	taaì-waî*	steward, stewardess
18.	tîm	order
19.	kông kîk to kông m̂-uēn	never finish telling at all

LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

1035

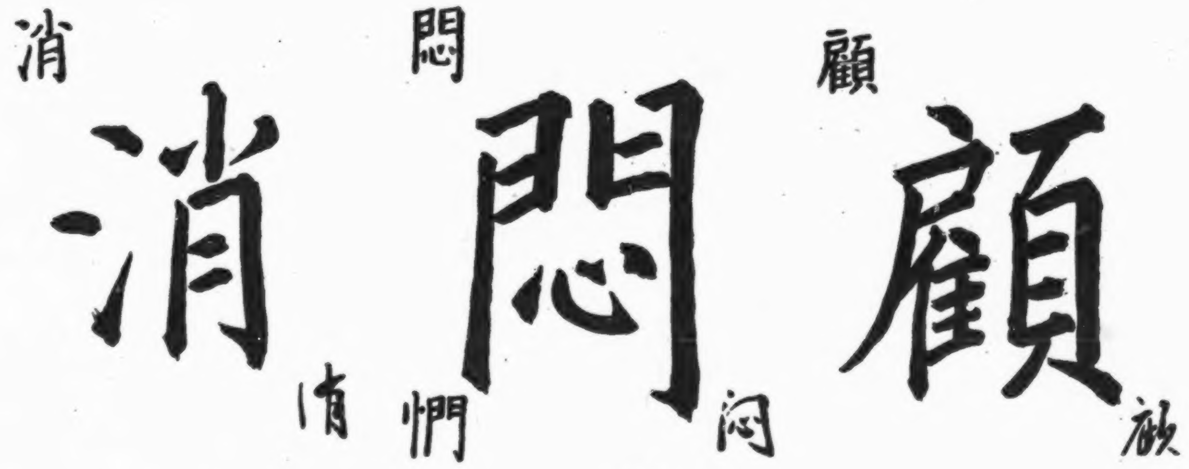
消	siu: to scatter; to disperse; to diminish.
消化	siu-fà: to digest.
取消	ts!uí-siu: to cancel; to annul.
消費	siu-faì: to consume; consumption.

720

悶	moôn: sad; distressed; melancholy; stupefy.
煩悶	faān-moôn: distressed; upset.
散悶	saàn moôn: to dissipate sorrow.

516

顧	koò: to look after; upon; take care of; regard.
照顧	chiù-koò: to look after; to care for; to patronize.
顧問	koò-màn: to advise; an adviser.
主顧	chué-koò: a customer.
顧客	koò-haàk: a customer.

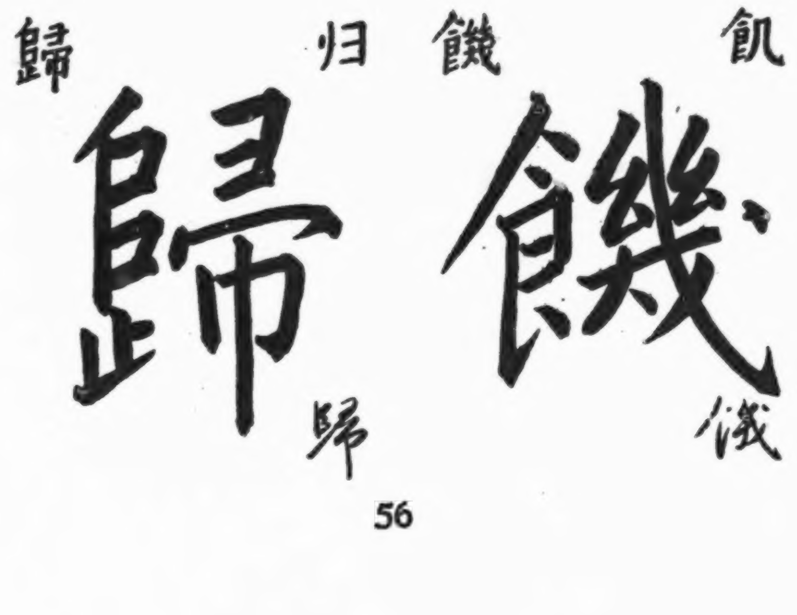


550

歸	kwai: to return; to go home.
歸家	kwai ka: to return home.
歸國	kwai kwǒk: to return to one's native country.
歸天	kwai t'in: to die.

436

饑	kei: dearth; hunger; famine.
饑餓	kei-ngôh: to suffer hunger.
饑荒	kei-fong: famine.



LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

1171

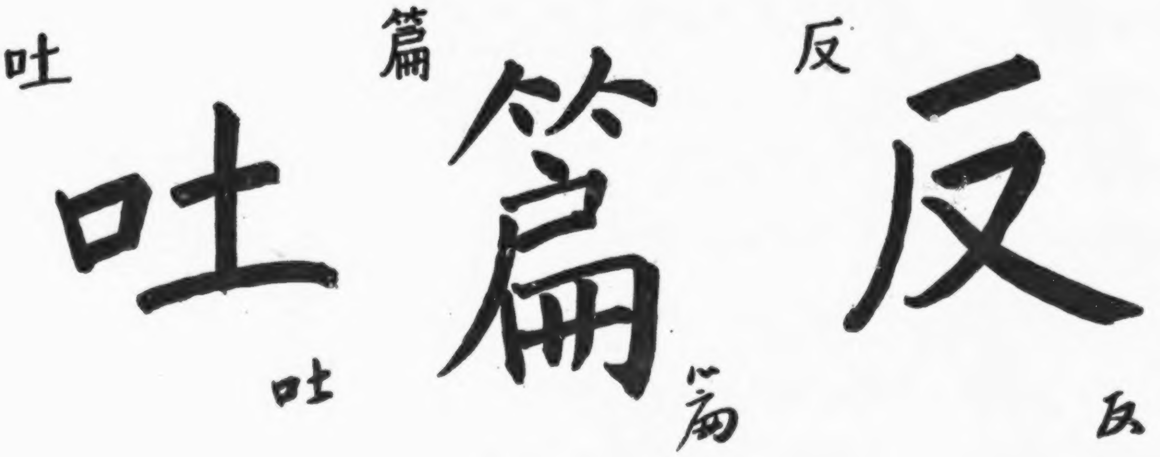
吐	t'ò: to throw up; to disclose.
吐血	t'ò huèt: to spit blood.
吐口水	t'ò haú-shuí: to spit; to eject saliva.

856

篇	p'in: chapter; book, leaf of a book.
長篇大論	ch'eūng p'in taaî lûn: a long and minute statement.

161

反	faán: to turn back or over; to rebel
反抗	faán-k'òng: violent opposition
反轉面	faán-chuèn-mîn: to turn over
相反	seung-faán: contrary
反對	faán-tuì: to oppose

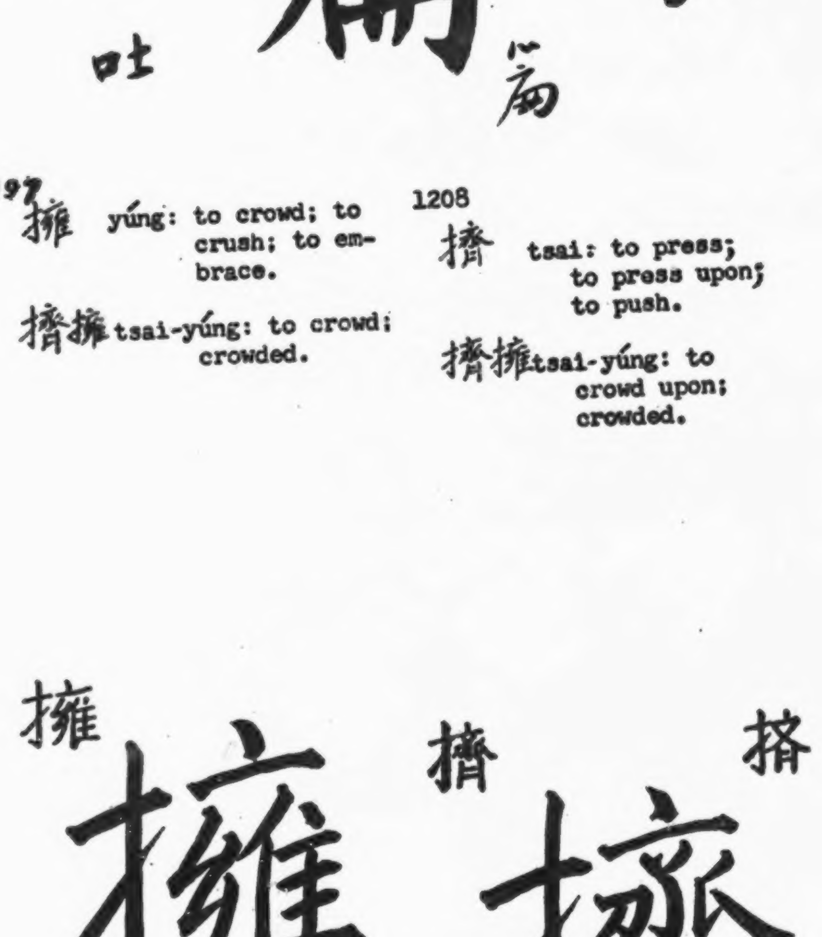


1497

擁	yúng: to crowd; to crush; to embrace.
擠擁	tsai-yúng: to crowd; crowded.

1208

擠	tsai: to press; to press upon; to push.
擠擁	tsai-yúng: to crowd upon; crowded.



LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

黄二最關心張三嘅就係好多年已經得唔到佢嘅消息，故此特別覺得煩悶。呢種心情，要吐阻出黎至安樂。所以佢越講越長篇。但係時候過得好快，k'ui 樂部將近收市，不只顧客越黎越少，已經喺處嘅人，亦都陸續歸家。

佢地兩個，此時反為覺得饑餓，就同去隔離街中國 ts'aan 館食 siu 夜。嗰處嘅顧客，又係非常之擁擠，啲位都坐滿。忽然見到李四亦喺處，佢地就坐埋一齊

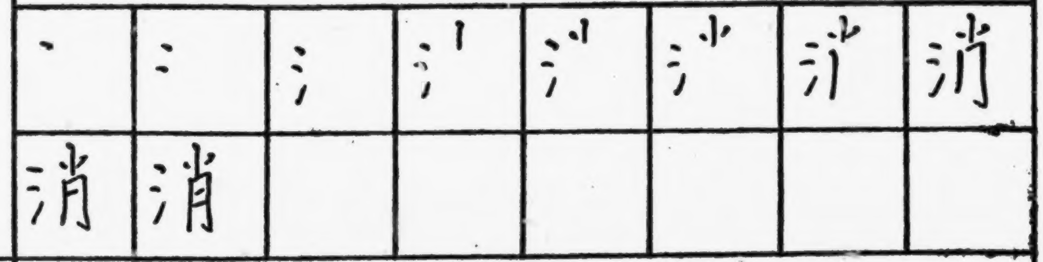
本來黄二重想繼續講佢嘅故事，但係大家都癐啦。況且肚餓嘅時候食野緊要啲，只好等下次有機會，然後再講。

LBSSON 5

WRITING MATERIAL

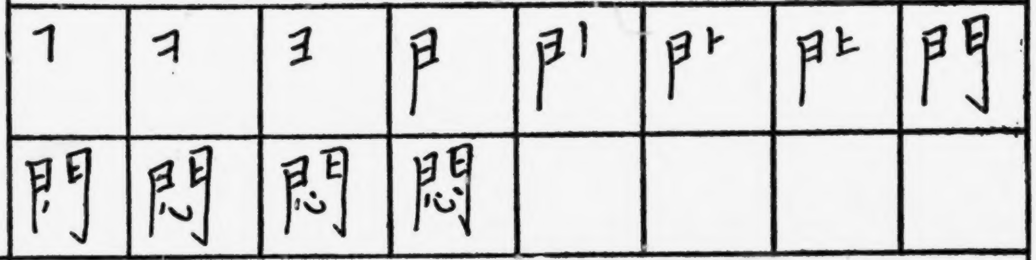
消

Character Number 1035 **Radical Number** 85
Stroke Number 10
氵, 水



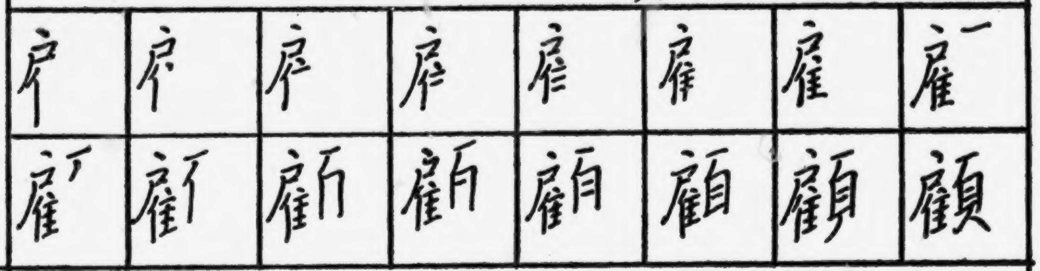
悶

Character Number 720 **Radical Number** 61
Stroke Number 12
心



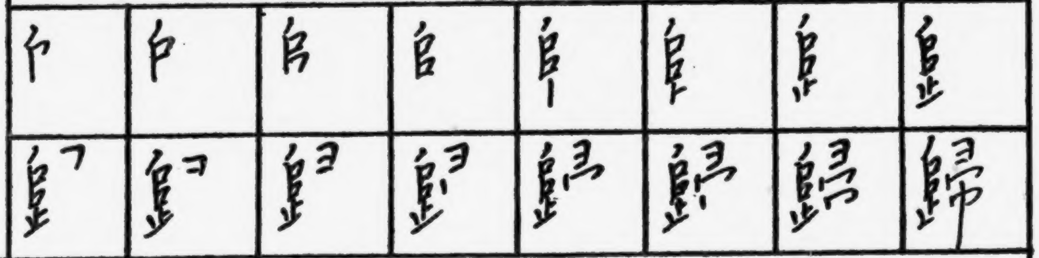
顧

Character Number 516 **Radical Number** 181
Stroke Number 21
頁



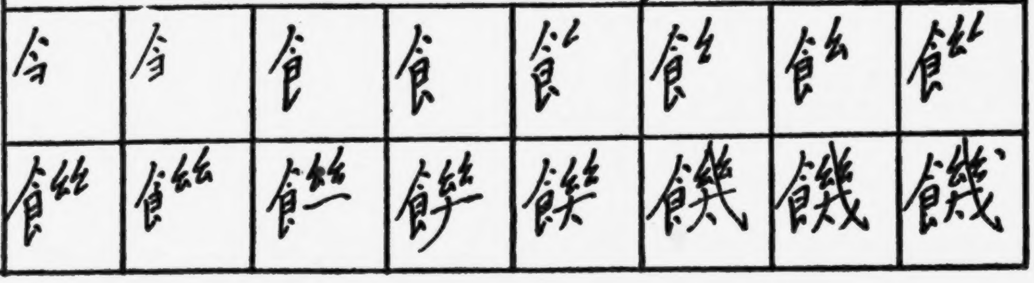
歸

Character Number 550 **Radical Number** 77
Stroke Number 18
止

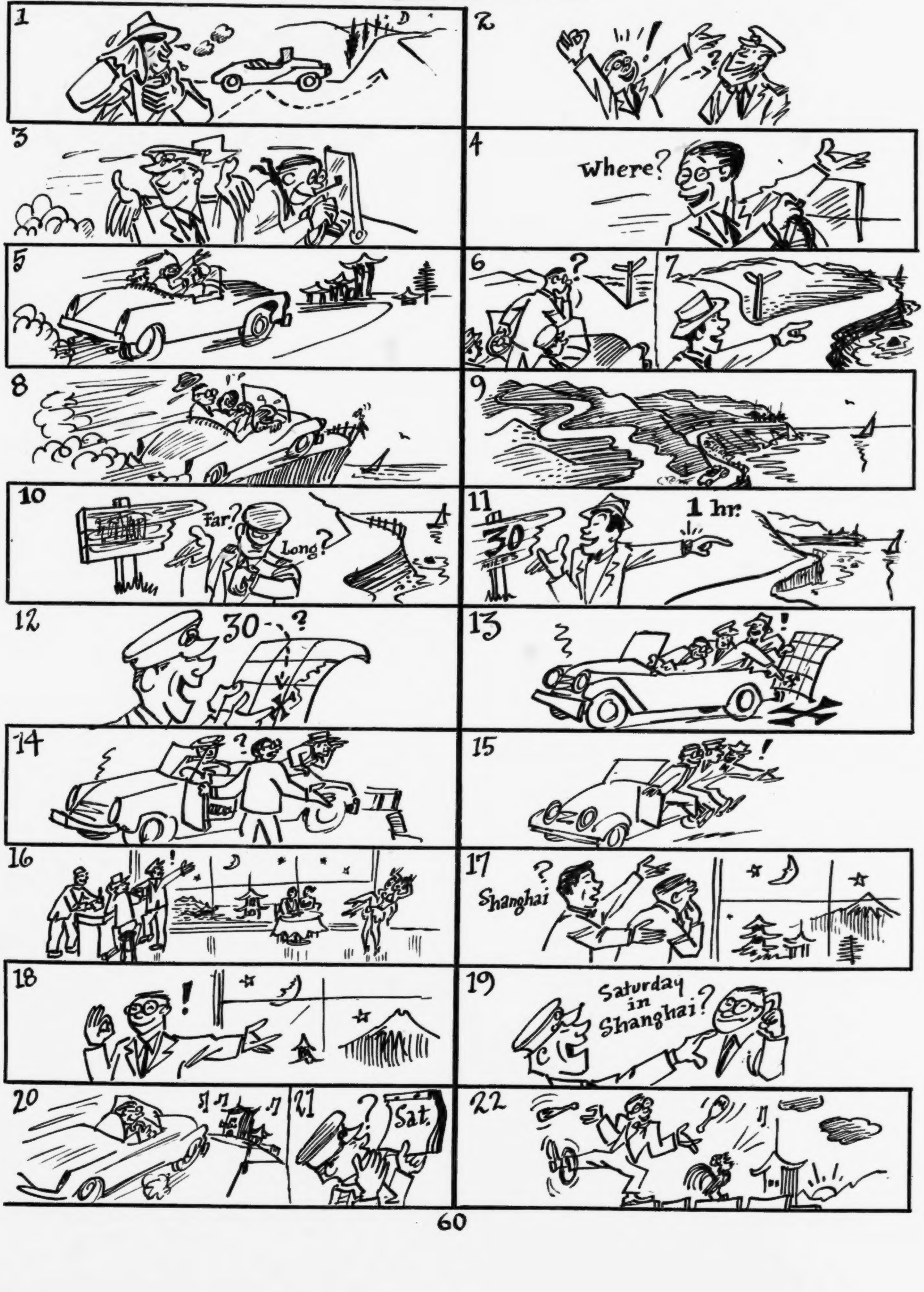


饑

Character Number 436 **Radical Number** 184
Stroke Number 20
食, 食



LESSON 6


1
2
3
4
Where?
5
6
7
8
9
10
Far?
Long?
11
30
MILES
1 hr.
12
30--?
13
14
15
16
17
Shanghai
18
19
Saturday in Shanghai?
20
21
Sat.
22

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Ngŏh kòk-tak hó paaú, hó īt, hó kêng-hòt; ngŏh t'aī-ĭ
huī yaū ch'e-hōh*.

Leĭ. Hó à, ngŏh to haî yat-yeûng. Sheûng-waī, neĭ wâ tîm à?

Sheûng-Waī. Ngŏh mŏ ī-kīn, ngŏh to hó chung-ī huī yaū ch'e-hōh*.

L. Ngŏh-teî huī pin shuè à?

W. Ngŏh-teî huī yat-kòh siú shīng shuè waân-hă.

L. Ngŏh-teî yaū pin t'iū lô huī à?

W. Ngŏh-teî yaū hoî-pin kè kung-lô huī.

L. Hoî-pin kung-lô m̄-haî keī hó haāng.

W. Haî, taân-haî k'ăn hó toh.

Sheûng-Waī. Kóh-shuè leī ni-shuè yaŭ keī uĕn à? Cha ch'e huī
iù keī noî à?

W. Kóh-shuè leī ni-shuè mŏ keī uĕn, taaî-yeùk* saam-shâp-leĭ
chôh-yaû*, cha ch'e huī iù yat-tîm-chung kòm noî.

Sheûng-Waī. Ngŏh-teî ĭ-king haāng-chôh saam-shâp-leĭ, tò-chôh
meî à?

W. Ngŏh-teî ĭ-king haāng-chôh saam-shâp-leĭ, ngŏh-teî
tò-chôh là.

L. Ngŏh-teî lôk ch'e t'aî-hă yĕ, hó mà?

W. Hó à, ngŏh-teî yat-ts'aī huī.

Sheûng-Waī. Ni-shuè kè yê kīng chan lèng, yaŭ kòm yau-tsîng kè
tsaú-pa t'ūng kòm wā-laî kè k'ui-lôk-pô.

W. Lŏ Leĭ, ni-shuè kè yê kīng yaŭ mŏ Sheûng-Hoī kè kòm
lèng à?

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

L. Ni-shuè kè yê kìng t'ŭng Sheûng-Hoì kè yat-yeûng kòm lèng.

Sheûng-Waì. Leĭ Sin-Shaang, neĭ haì Sheûng-Hoì kè shì-haû, mooĭ kòh Laĭ-Paaì-Lûk neĭ tìm kwòh kà?

L. Ngŏh haì Sheûng-Hoì kè shì-haû, mooĭ kòh Laĭ-Paaì-Lûk ngŏh toh-shò shaì ch'e tò-shuè huì waán.

Sheûng-Waì. Mooĭ kòh Shing-K'eì-Lûk neĭ tìm waán à?

L. Mi-yĕ to waán*, yaŭ shì tò t'in-kwong chì faan uk-k'eì.

LESSON 6

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wŏng. I feel satiated, hot, and very thirsty; I suggest we go for a drive.

Leĭ. Very good, I feel likewise Captain, what do you say?

Captain. I have no opinion, but I also enjoy going for drives.

Leĭ. Where shall we go?

Wŏng. We'll go to a small city to enjoy ourselves a little.

Leĭ. Which road shall we take?

Wŏng. We'll take the coastal highway.

Leĭ. The coastal highway is not very good to drive on.

Wŏng. That's true, but it is much shorter.

Captain. How far is that place from here, and how long does it take to drive there?

Wŏng. That place is not far from here, about thirty miles. It takes an hour to drive there.

Captain. We have driven thirty miles, have we arrived yet?

Wŏng. We have driven thirty miles, and we have arrived.

Leĭ. Let's get out of the car and look around, all right?

Wŏng. Good, we'll all go together.

Captain. The night scenery here is really beautiful, there are such quiet bars and gorgeous night clubs.

Wŏng. Leĭ, is the night scenery here as beautiful as that of Shanghai?

Leĭ The night scenery here is as beautiful as that of Shanghai.

LESSON 6

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Captain. Mr. Leĭ, when you were in Shanghai, how did you spend your Saturdays?

Leĭ. When I was in Shanghai, each Saturday I would usually drive to somewhere seeking recreation.

Captain. What did you do for the sake of recreation every Saturday?

Leĭ. I amused myself by doing all sorts of things; sometimes I did not return home until daybreak.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. You should get off the car at the last station if you want to get to the Post Office.
2. They talked all evening and didn't go to bed until daybreak.
3. This hotel is splendid and it is not too expensive.
4. We took a drive to a quiet place and talked for awhile.
5. I felt quite full even though I didn't eat too much.
6. I may feel full, but I am very thirsty.
7. The night scenery is gorgeous especially if you look at it high up on the hill.
8. If you have no other opinion, we might as well go to that bar and have a drink.
9. How did you spend the weekend when you were in San Francisco?
10. Although this night club is very famous, I think it is too noisy.
11. The coastal highway is very smooth and the scenery is really beautiful.
12. Do you still remember that peaceful bar where we first met ten years ago?
13. If you can get up early, be here at 5 a. m. to see the dawn.
14. Have you any idea who is that gentleman is over there?
15. We shall go to San Francisco by Highway 101.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. Please be careful and don't get off the car until it is stopped.

LESSON 6

WORD LIST

1.	yê kîng	night scenery
2.	paaú	to feel full; satiated
3.	kêng-hỏt	thirsty
4.	mŏ ì-kìn	no opinion, no idea
5.	yaū ch’e-hōh*	to take a drive, a driving excursion
6.	yau-tsîng	quiet, peaceful
7.	tsaú-pa	bar (liquor)
8.	wā-laî	gorgeous, splendid
9.	kwỏh	to spend (time, day, etc), cross
10.	t’in-kwong	daybreak, dawn
11.	lôk ch’e	to get off the car, alight

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

1109

提	t'aī: to raise; to lift; to bring forward.
提起	t'aī-heí: to speak of; to raise.
提倡	t'aī-ch'eung: to promote; to advocate; to introduce.
提醒	t'aī síng: to warn; to caution.

342

議	Ĭ: to deliberate; discuss; judge
會議	ooî-Ĭ: meeting for discussion; to hold a conference
提議	t'aī-Ĭ: to propose for discussion.
議院	Ĭ- uên*: parliament;

1385

圓	uēn: round; circular; a dollar.
圓圜	uēn-huen: a ring; circle.
圓形	uēn yīng: circular.

提　　議　　议 圓

提　議　圓

提　議　圆

1426

雲	wān: cloud.
浮雲	faū wān: passing cloud; drifting cloud.
雲集	wān tsaâp: to assemble in crowd.

492

確	k'ðk: really; surely; very.
確實	k'ðk-shât: certain; assuredly.
的確	tik-k'ðR: surely; certainly.
確証	k'ðk chīng: certain proof.

雲　確

雲　確

云　確

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

476

橋 k'iū: a bridge; cross beam.

過橋 kwòh k'iū: to cross a bridge.

吊橋 tiù-k'iū: suspension bridge.

橋躉 k'iū-tán: bridge piers.

648

輪 lūn: a wheel; to revolve; in turn.

輪流 lūn-laū: to revolve; in turn; to take turn.

車輪 ch'e-lūn: a wheel.

輪船 lūn-shuēn: a steamship.

輪值 lūn-chîk: to take one's turn.

986

閃 shím: to flash; to dodge.

閃電 shím tîn: flash of lightning.

閃避 shím-peî: to avoid; to dodge.

橋 桥 輪 閃

橋 輪 閃

桥 輪 闪

1007

爽 shóng: cheerful; lively; crisp; to dry; to fail.

爽快 shóng-faaì: refreshing; agreeable.

爽口 shóng-haú: pleasant to the taste.

134

吹 ch'ui: to blow; play wind instrument.

吹熄 ch'ui sik: to blow out (lamp)

吹口 ch'ui-haú: to whistle

吹號 ch'ui-hô: to give a signal (trumpeter)

爽 吹

爽 吹

爽 吹

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

黄二同嗰位軍人朋友，飲阻好多酒。兩家又食飽啦，覺得好熱同kēng 湯，就提議去遊車河。嗰陣時係月圓嘅時候，月色又好。天上一啲雲都冇，只有一輪明月，同幾粒星閃吓閃吓。

佢地 shai 車由海邊公路去，有海風吹黎，又涼又爽，又可以睇到海景，確係好玩嘅。

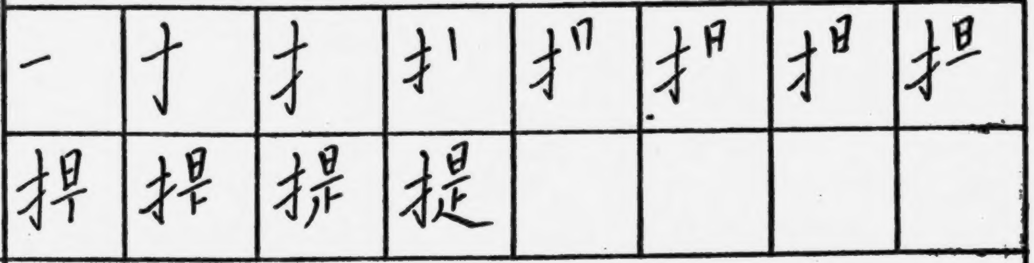
Shai 阻三十里左右，經過一度鐵橋，去到一個小城，佢地一齊落車睇吓。嗰處嘅夜景真lèng。根據李四嘅意見，呢啲夜景，有上海嘅一樣kòm lèng。李四重話，當佢喺上海嘅時候，每個禮拜六都shai 車去玩。有時玩到天光至歸家。

LESSON 6

WRITING MATERIAL

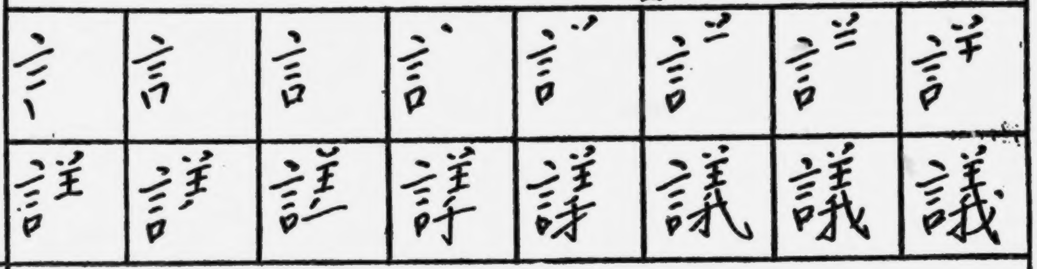
提

Character Number 1109 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 12 扌 · 手



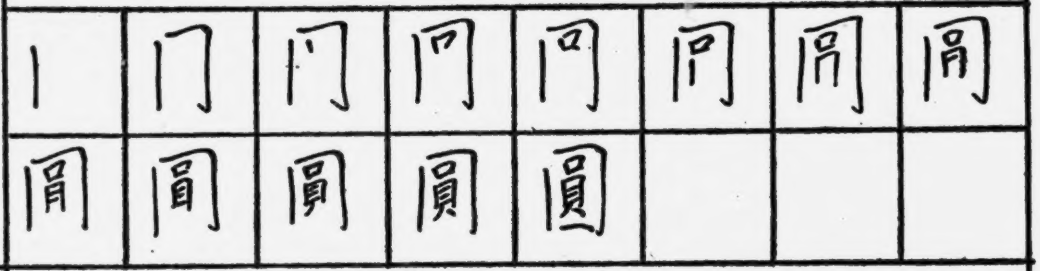
議

Character Number 342 Radical Number 149
Stroke Number 20 言



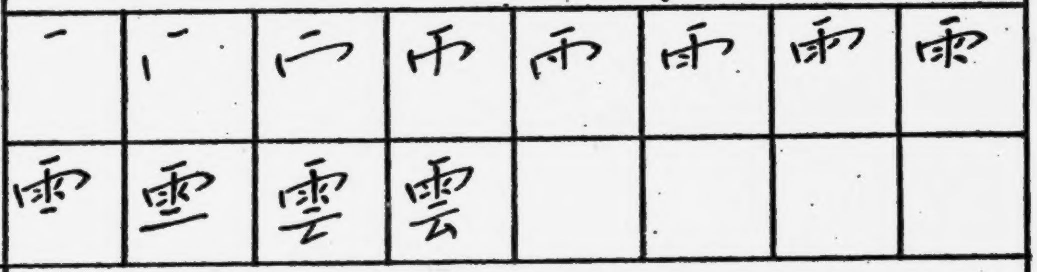
圓

Character Number 1385 Radical Number 31
Stroke Number 13 口



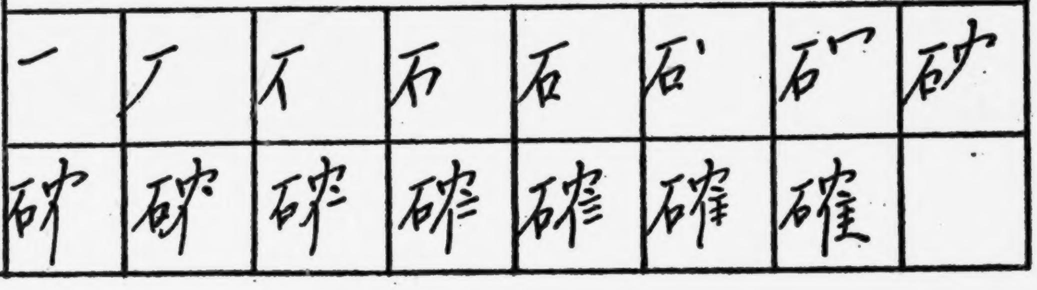
雲

Character Number 1426 Radical Number 173
Stroke Number 12 雨

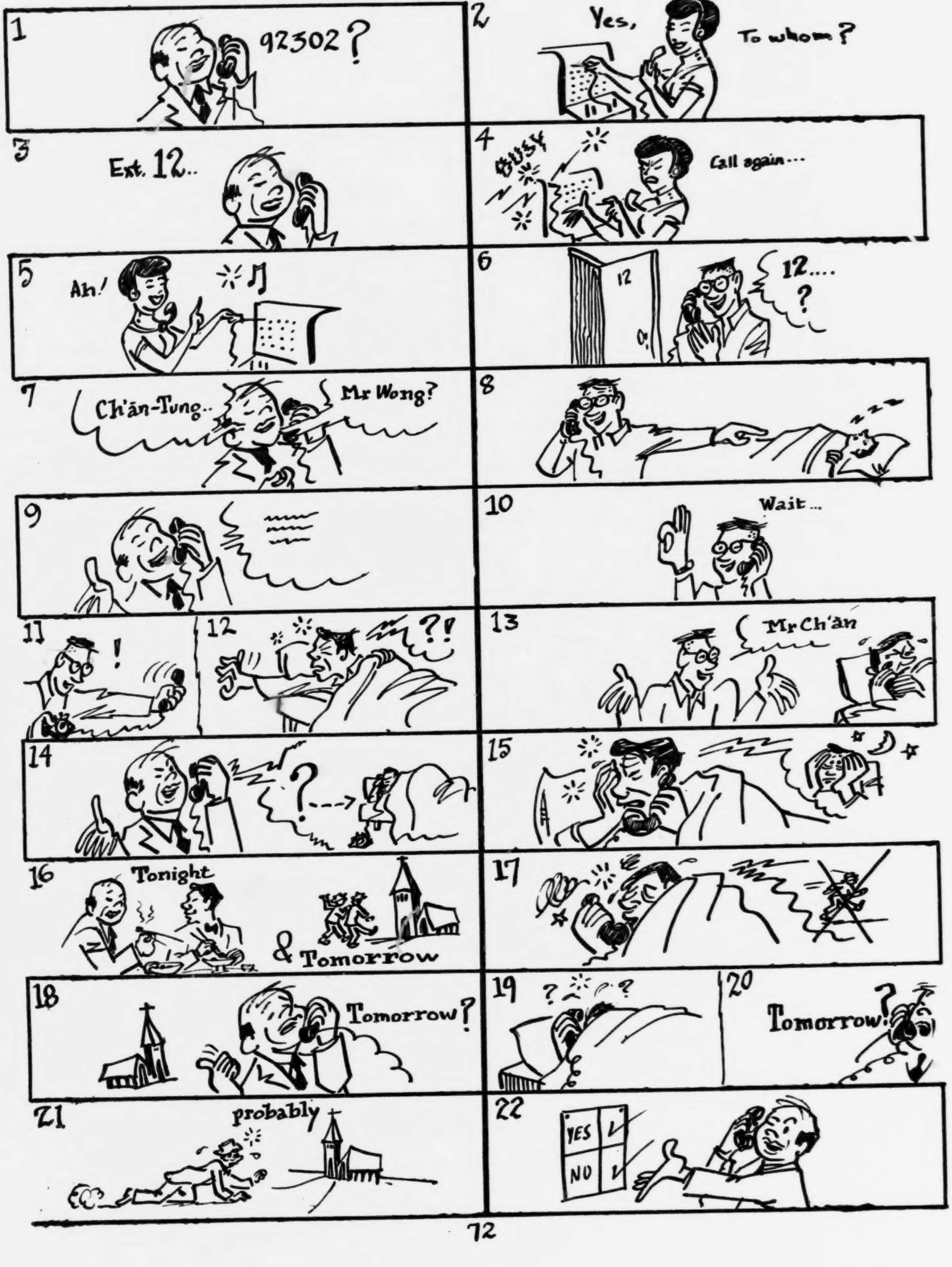


確

Character Number 492 Radical Number 112
Stroke Number 15 石



LESSON 7


1
92302?
2
Yes,
To whom?
3
Ext. 12..
4
BUSY
Call again...
5
Ah!
6
12
12....
?
7
Ch'ăn-Tung..
Mr Wong?
8
9
10
Wait...
11
!
12
?!
13
Mr Ch'an
14
?
15
16
Tonight
& Tomorrow
17
18
Tomorrow?
19
? ?
20
Tomorrow?
21
probably
22
YES
NO

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Ch'ān-Tung. Neĭ haî 92302 mà?

Tsìp-Sìn-Uēn. Haî, ni-shuè haî 92302, wán pin waî* à?

Ch'an. M̄-koi neĭ t'ūng ngŏh tsìp taî-shâp-î-hô fan-kei.

Tsìp-Sìn-Uēn. Kôh t'iū sìn hó mōng, neĭ táng yat-chân tsoì
tá laī.

Tsìp-Sìn-Uēn. Â! Táng yat-chân, kôh t'iū sìn tsìp t'ung-chóh.

T'ūng-Fōng*. Ni-shuè haî shâp-î-hô fan-kei shâp-î-hô fōng*, pin
waî* à?

C. Ngŏh haî Ch'ān-Tung, ts'ìng mân Wōng Sin-Shaang haî
shuè mà?

T'ūng-Fōng*. K'uĭ haî shuè, taân -haî k'uĭ chûng fàn-kán.

C. Ngŏh seúng t'ūng k'uĭ kóng keî kuī shuèt-wâ.

T'ūng-Fōng*. Hó la, ts'ìng neĭ táng-hă, m̄-hó shau sìn.

T'ūng-Fōng*. Lŏ Wōng*, yaû haî neĭ kè tîn-wâ*.

Wōng. Pin kòh kòm tsó tá laī kà? Chan t'ó-ìm.

T'ūng-Fōng*. Ch'ān Sin-Shaang tá laī kè.

C. Lŏ Wōng*, tîm-kaaî neĭ ī-ka chûng meî heî shan à?

W. Ngŏh tsòk-maăn shēng maăn mŏ fàn-kwòh, ī-ka seúng fàn
yaû fàn m̄-cheûk.

C. Ngŏh seúng yeùk neĭ kam-maăn huī shìk faân, t'ing-yât
yat-ts'aī huī kaaù-t'ōng.

W. Ngŏh kam-yât m̄-shue-fûk, m̄-huī-tak.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C. T'ing-yât huì-tak kaaù-t'ŏng mà?

W. Ī-ka m̀-kóng-tak-tîng.

C. Neĭ ĭ-waì neĭ t'ing-yât huì m̀-huì-tak à?

W. T'aî ts'ìng-yìng, ngŏh t'ing-yât waâk-ché huì-tak.

C. Kôm, neĭ t'aî ts'ìng-yìng k'uèt-tîng la.

LESSON 7

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Ch'ăn-Tung. Is this 92302? (literal translation: Are you 92302?)

Switchboard Operator. Yes, this is 92302. Whom are you looking for?

Ch'ăn. Please connect me with extension 12.

Switchboard Operator. That line is busy, call again in a moment.

Switchboard Operator. Ah, wait a moment, that line is connected.

Roommate. This is extension 12 room 12, who is it? (literal translation: Which person is it?)

Ch'ăn. I am Ch'ăn-Tung, may I ask if Mr. Wŏng is there?

Roommate. He is here, but he is still sleeping.

Ch'ăn. I would like to have a few words with him.

Roommate. All right. Wait a moment, Please don't hang up.

Roommate. Wŏng, there is a phone call for you again.

Wŏng. Who is calling so early? What a nuisance.

Roommate. It is Mr. Ch'ăn calling.

Ch'ăn. Wŏng, why have you still not gotten out of bed at this hour?

Wŏng. I did not sleep at all last night, now I want to sleep and I am unable to.

Ch'ăn. I wish to make an appointment with you for dinner tonight and to go to church together tomorrow.

Wŏng. Today I am not feeling well, I cannot go.

LESSON 7

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Ch'ān. Can you go to church tomorrow?

Wōng. At the present moment I cannot say for certain.

Ch'ān. Do you think you can go tomorrow?

Wōng. Knowing my condition, I will probably be able to go.

Ch'ān. Then, you decide accordingly.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Although he is my roommate, I have to decide according to the situation.
2. After surveying the situation, I think his love affair with Miss White will end soon.
3. I cannot say for sure right now, but I will find out for you immediately.
4. She was unable to fall asleep for the last two nights. No wonder she doesn't feel well.
5. She has a good voice and she sings in church every Saturday.
6. If you cannot fall asleep, why don't you telephone your girl friend and have a chat with her.
7. I was home last night but my roommate was out the whole night.
8. She was really mad and hung up without saying goodbye.
9. I could not get the line through to you last night. What happened?
10. If you want to call me, you may try FR 2-1441, Ext 118.
11. Have you met our new switchboard operator? She is not only pretty but also very capable.
12. I don't have to listen to their conversation because it has nothing to do with me.
13. She has a date with me for lunch here right now but she is not here yet.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. Please let me talk to Mr. Wong. This is urgent!

15. I am sorry, sir; but Mr. Wong will not be in until 9:30 a.m.

16. He is always a nuisance, calling up people late at night or very early in the morning.

LESSON 7

WORD LIST

1.	tuỉ-wâ	conversation, dialogue
2.	tsỉp-sỉn-uēn	telephone switchboard operator
3.	fan-kei	telephone extension
4.	tsỉp t'ung	to get the line through
5.	t'ūng-fōng*	roommate
6.	shau sỉn	to hang up (telephone)
7.	shēng maăn	whole night
8.	fản m̄-cheûk	unable to fall asleep
9.	kaaủ-t'ōng	church, chapel
10.	m̄-shue-fûk	not feel well
11.	m̄-kổng-tak-tîng	cannot say for sure
12.	t'aỉ ts'ỉng-yỉng	knowing, seeing, surveying the situation
13.	t'aỉ ts'ỉng-yỉng k'uềt-tîng	to decide according to the situation

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

922

醒 séng, síng: to awake; to rouse up.

叫醒 kiù séng: to wake.

提醒 t'aī-séng: to remind; to counsel.

1017

誰 shuī: who; whom; what; anyone; a "one"

誰不知 shuī-pat-chi: who does not know?

誰敢 shuī kóm: who dares?

1368

筒 t'ūng: pipe; tube.

信筒 sùn t'ūng: mail box.

醒 誰 筒

醒 誰 筒

惺 醒 谁 筒

1173

徒 t'ō: disciple; associate; in vain; on foot; banishment.

徒弟 t'ō-taî: apprentice; pupil.

徒勞無功 t'ō lō mō kung: to labor in vain.

徒刑 t'ō-yīng: penal servitude.

1500

用 yûng: to use; to employ; expenses.

用人 yûng yān: to employ people.

徒 用

徒 用

徒 用

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

1170

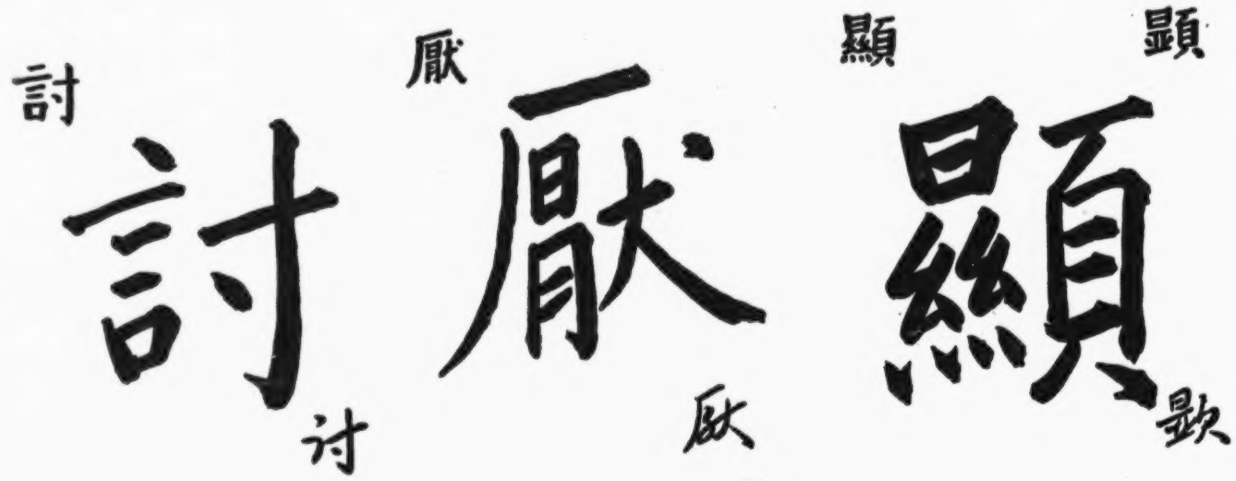
討	t'ó:	to punish; to extirpate; to ask for; to beg.
討賊	t'ó ts'aâk:	to extirpate robber.
討債	t'ó chaaì:	to demand payment of debt.

347

厭	ìm:	to dislike; tire of; bored
討厭	t'ó-ìm:	disgusting; disgusted
厭煩	ìm-faān:	troublesome
百厭	paàk-ìm:	mischievous
冇厭足	mǒ ìm-tsuk:	insatiate; greedy

283

顯	hín:	to make manifest; display
顯出	hín-ch'ut:	become manifest; to show
顯然	hín-īn:	evidently; apparently
顯微鏡	ín-meī-kòng:	microscope

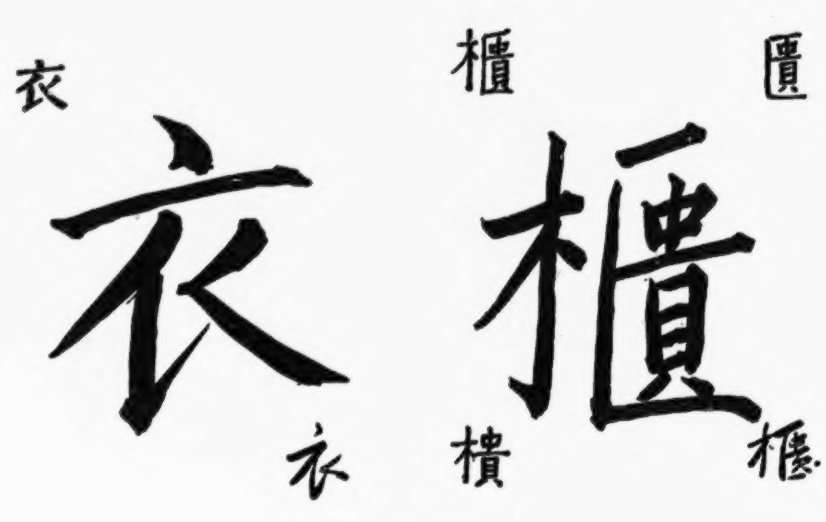


330

衣	i:	clothes
衣服	i-fûk:	clothing
内衣	noî-i:	underwear
睡衣	shuî-i:	pajamas
衣架	i-kà:	clothes hangers

554

櫃	kwaî:	wooden chest; cabinet; archives.
書櫃	shue-kwaî:	bookcase.
櫃桶	kwaî-t'úng:	a drawer,
雪櫃	suèt-kwaî:	refrigerator.



LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

黃二昨晚同朋友飲酒,遊車河,睇夜景,成晚冇fàn過.第二日fàn到唔知醒.誰知好早就有電話打黎,由同房嘅人接線.原來係佢嘅朋友陳東打黎嘅.同房嘅人叫醒佢.佢雖然覺得討厭,亦都要接轉電話筒黎聽.

陳東係一個誠心信敎嘅敎徒.每個禮拜都去敎堂.唔只自己去,重約朋友去添.呢次佢約黃二.先請黃二今晚食飯,然後聽日去敎堂.不過,黃二確係覺得唔係幾shue服,唔敢即刻答應,要睇情形決定.

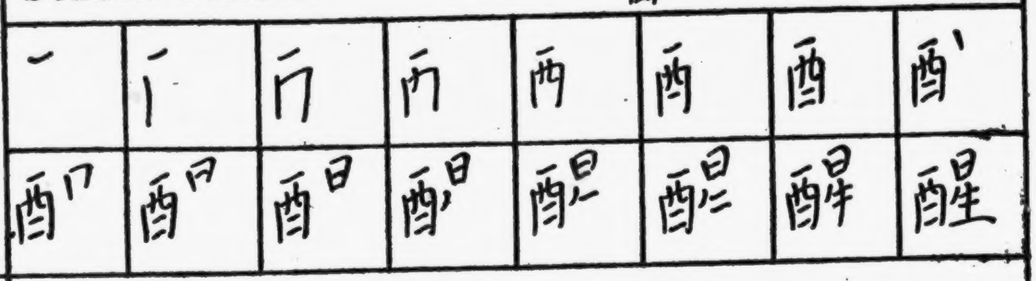
講完電話之後,黃二想吓,陳東kôm誠心,如果唔同佢去,顯出自己冇用.佢打算今晚唔去食飯,但係聽日去敎堂.

LESSON 7

WRITING MATERIAL

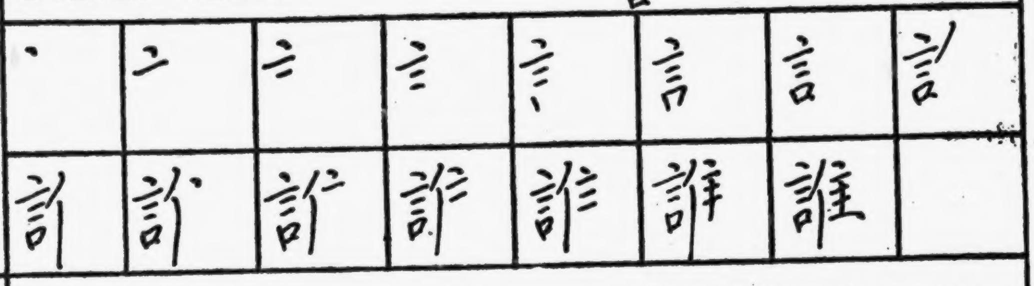
醒

Character Number 922 Radical Number 164
Stroke Number 16 酉



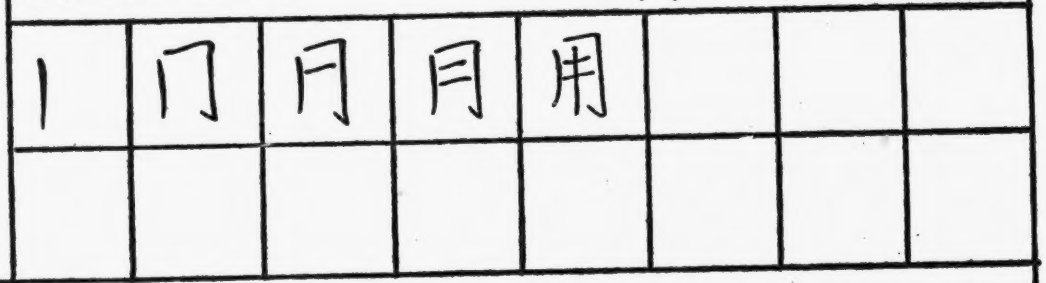
誰

Character Number 1017 Radical Number 149
Stroke Number 15 言



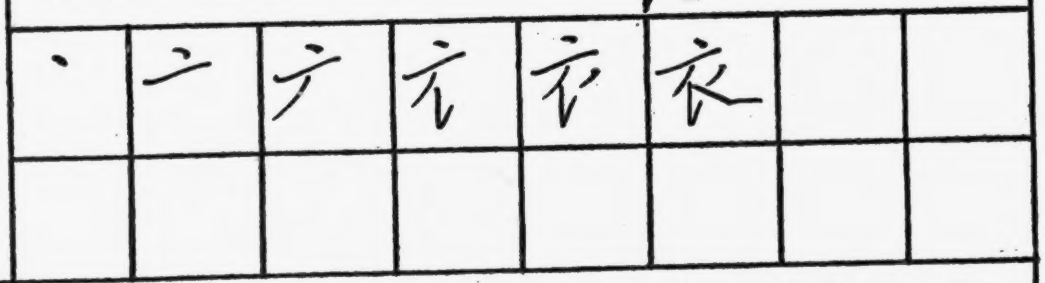
用

Character Number 1500 Radical Number 101
Stroke Number 5 用



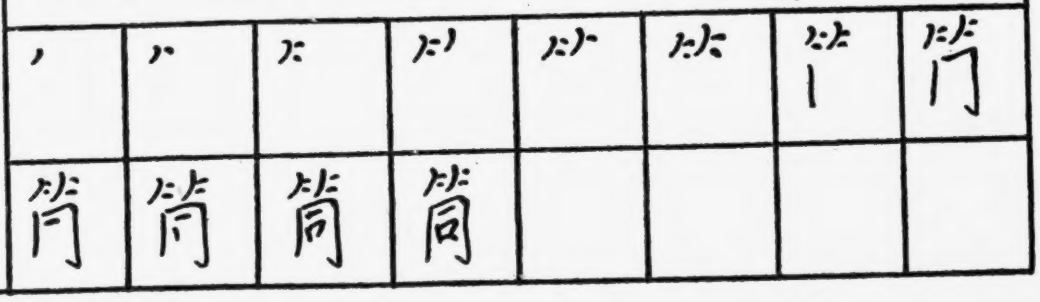
衣

Character Number 330 Radical Number 145
Stroke Number 6 衣

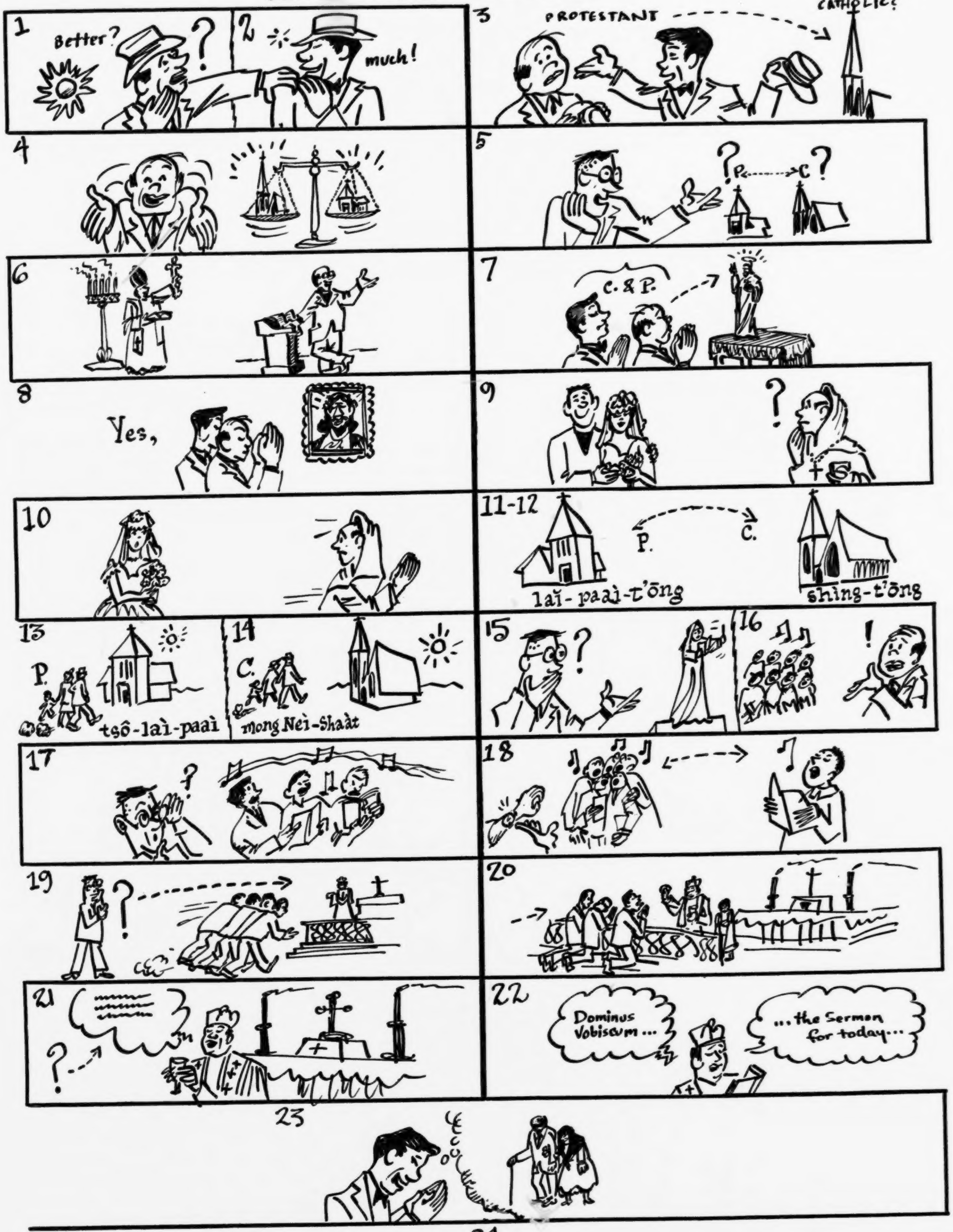


筒

Character Number 1368 Radical Number 118
Stroke Number 12 ⺮ , 竹



LESSON 8


1
Better?
?
2
much!
3
PROTESTANT
CATHOLIC?
4
5
?P.
C?
6
7
C.&P.
8
Yes,
9
?
10
11-12
P.
C.
laĭ-paai-t'ōng
shing-t'ōng
13
P.
tsô-laì-paaì
14
C.
mong Neì-Shaàt
15
?
16
!
17
?
18
19
?
20
21
?
22
Dominus Vobiscum ...
... the Sermon for today...
23

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Ch'ān-Tung.	Lŏ Wōng*, neĭ kam-yât kòk-tak hó ti mà?
Wōng-Î.	Yaŭ-sam, ngŏh kam-yât kòk-tak hó hó toh.
W.	Lŏ Ch'ān,* neĭ haî Kei-Tuk t'ō, tìm-kaaì neĭ laì T'in-Chuê-Kaaù-T'ōng à?
C.	Ngŏh mŏ-mat-shóh-waì kè*, ngŏh ĭ-waì kòk yaŭ kòk hó.
P'āng-Yaŭ.	T'in-Chuê-Kaaù tìm à? Kei-Tuk-Kaaù tìm à?
C.	T'in-Chuê-Kaaù ìm-suk ti, Kei-Tuk-Kaaù ts'uì-pîn* ti.
P.	T'in-Chuê-Kaaù t'ō t'ūng Kei-Tuk-Kaaù t'ō to sùn Yē-So kè, haî m̄-haî à?
C.	Haî, k'uĭ-teî to sùn Yē-So.
P.	Mûk-sz hóh-ĭ kìt fan, shān-foô hóh m̄-hóh-ĭ kìt fan kà?
C.	M̄-hóh-ĭ, shān-foô m̄-hóh-ĭ kìt fan.
P.	Laĭ-paaì-t'ōng t'ūng sìng-t'ōng* yaŭ mi-yĕ m̄-t'ūng?
C.	Kei-Tuk-Kaaù t'ō kiù kaaù-t'ōng tsô Laĭ-Paaì-T'ōng. T'in-Chuê-Kaaù t'ō kiù kaaù-t'ōng tsô Shìng-T'ōng*.
P.	Shìng-K'eì-Yât Kei-Tuk t'ō huì kaaù-t'ōng, kiù-tsô tsô-laĭ-paaì. T'in-Chuê-Kaaù ne?
C.	Shìng-K'eì-Yât T'in-Chuê t'ō huì kaaù-t'ōng, kiù-tsô mông neì-shaàt.
P.	Kôh kòh sau-nuĭ* tsô-kân mi-yĕ à?
C.	K'uĭ ì-ka chì-fai-kân shi-paan.
P.	Ch'eùng shi kè yān tìm ch'eùng faàt kà?
C.	K'uĭ-teî yaŭ shì hôp ch'eùng, yaŭ-shì tûk ch'eùng.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

P.	Ī-ka kòm toh yān huì shān-foô shuè tsô mi-yĕ?
C.	K'uĭ-teî huì lĭng shìng-t'aì.
P.	Shān-foô tsô Neì-Shaàt kè shī-haû, yûng pin chúng uĕ-ìn kà?
C.	Yûng Laai-Ting mān; taân-haî kóng tô kè shī-haû, k'uĭ yûng Ying-Mān.
P.	Lŏ Wōng*, neĭ ì-ka tsô-kân mi-yĕ à?
W.	Ngŏh ì-ka t'ūng ngŏh kè foô mŏ k'eì-t'ô.

LESSON 8

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Ch'ăn-Tung. Wŏng, do you feel better today?

Wŏng-Î. Thank you for your concern, I feel much better today.

Wŏng. Ch'ăn, you are a Protestant, why do you come to a Catholic church?

Ch'ăn. I am not very particular, I believe each has its own merits.

Friend. What is the nature of Catholicism and Protestantism?

Ch'ăn. Catholicism is more solemn, Protestantism is less formal.

Friend. Both a Catholic and a Protestant believe in Jesus, don't they?

Ch'ăn. Yes, they believe in Jesus.

Friend. A preacher is allowed to get married, is a Father?

Ch'ăn. A priest is not allowed to get married.

Friend. What is the difference between laĭ-paaì-t'ŏng and shìng-t'ŏng*?

Ch'ăn. The Protestants call the place of worship laĭ-paaì-t'ŏng, and the Catholics call it shìng-t'ŏng*.

Friend. The Protestants go to the place of worship on Sunday and call it going to church tsô laĭ-paaì. What about the Catholics?

Ch'ăn. The Catholics go to the place of worship on Sunday and call it going to a Mass mông neĭ-saàt.

Friend. What is that nun doing?

LESSON 8

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Ch'ăn. She is now conducting a choir.

Friend. How do the members of the choir sing?

Ch'ăn. Sometimes they sing in chorus, sometimes they sing in solos.

Friend. What are all of those people doing who are now going up to the Father?

Ch'ăn. They are going to receive the Sacrament of Holy Communion.

Friend. What language is used by the Father, when he is saying the Mass?

Ch'ăn He uses Latin; but he uses English when giving the sermon.

Friend. Wŏng, what are you doing now?

Wŏng. Now I am praying for my parents.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. This prayer is written in Latin and I can't read it. What am I going to do?
2. The preacher gave a long sermon after the choir sang hymns.
3. When he was ten years old, he received the Sacrament of Holy Communion for the first time.
4. The choir will sing together, but afterward you will have to do the solo.
5. This nun is very smart, and she teaches Latin in college.
6. Followers of the Catholic faith go to church and hear a Mass every Sunday.
7. He is a Protestant and he attends church service here every week.
8. This Father says his prayer in Japanese because he is Japanese.
9. Jesus was born almost 2000 years ago.
10. He is less formal with his friends but is very solemn with his children.
11. After I finished studying these two books, I found that each one had its own merit.
12. Do you know the detailed story of Jesus?
13. A priest has to be very careful in everything.
14. The nun, who stands at the balcony, seems to be very familiar. Do you know her?

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. This church has a large parking lot in the back.
16. When you talk to your students, you appear to be very solemn. Why?

LESSON 8

WORD LIST

1.	kaaù-t'ō	follower of a religion
2.	kòk yaŭ kòk hố	each has its own merit
3.	ìm-suk	solemn, austere
4.	ts'uì-pîn*	less formal
5.	Yē-So	Jesus
6.	mûk-sz	preacher, priest
7.	shān-foố	a father
8.	laĭ-paaì-t'ōng	Protestant church
9.	shìng-t'ōng*	Catholic church
10.	tsô laĭ-paaì	to attend church service
11.	môong neì-saàt	to hear a Mass
12.	sau-nuĭ*	nun (Catholic)
13.	shi-paan	choir
14.	ch'eùng shi	to sing hymns
15.	hôp ch'eùng	chorus singing (singing together)
16.	tûk ch'eùng	solo singing
17.	lĭng shìng-t'aì	to receive the Sacrament of Holy Communion
18.	Laai-Ting mān	Latin language
19.	kống tô	to sermon, preach
20.	k'eì-t'ố	to pray; prayer

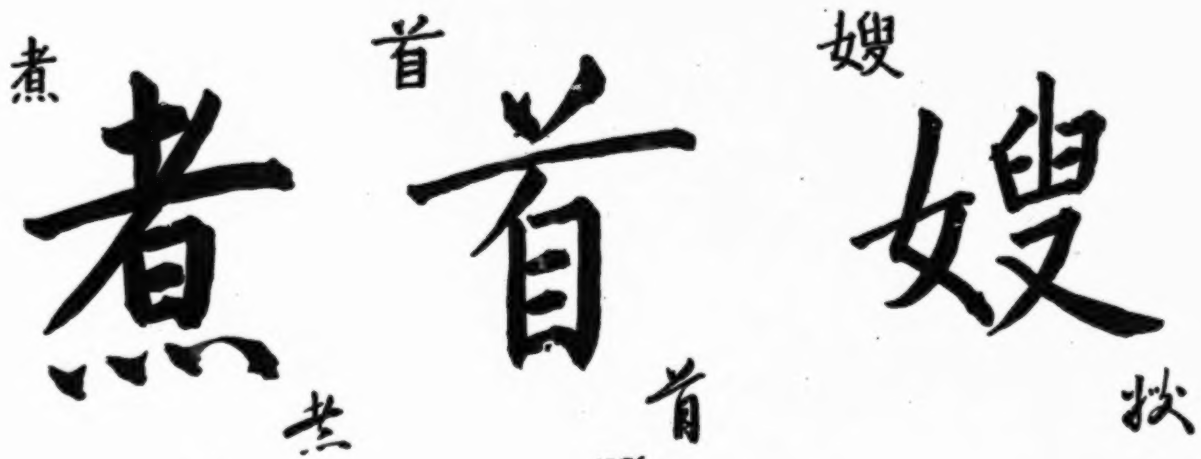
LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

122	
煮	chué: to cook; prepare food
煮飯	chué faân: to cook rice
煮熟	chué-shŭk: "done"

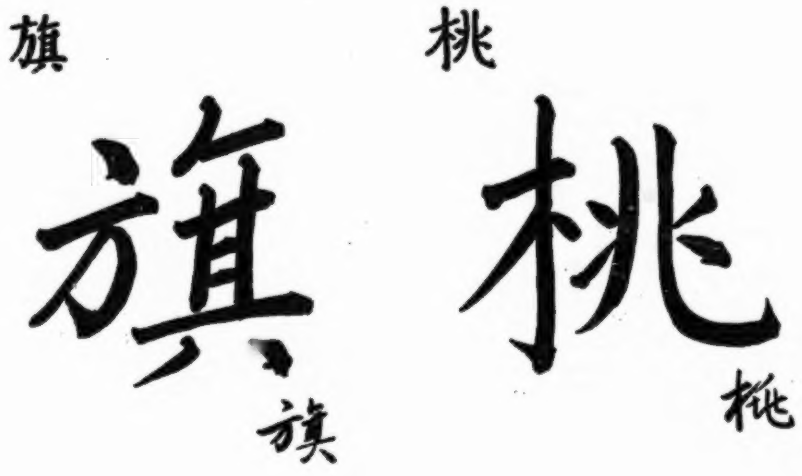
958	
首	shaú: to head; beginning; chief.
首先	shaŭ-sin: the first; most important.
首領	shaŭ-lǐng: a leader.

1039	
嫂	só: elder brother's wife; matron.
大嫂	taaî-só: elder brother's wife madam.
家嫂	ka-só: sister-in-law.



447	
旗	k'eī: a flag; banner.
國旗	kwŏk-k'eī: national flag.
升旗	shing k'eī: to hoist the flag.

1176	
桃	t'ō: peach.
楊桃	yeūng-t'$\overset{s}{\bar{o}}$: carambola.
櫻桃	ying-t'$\overset{s}{\bar{o}}$: cherry.



LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

562

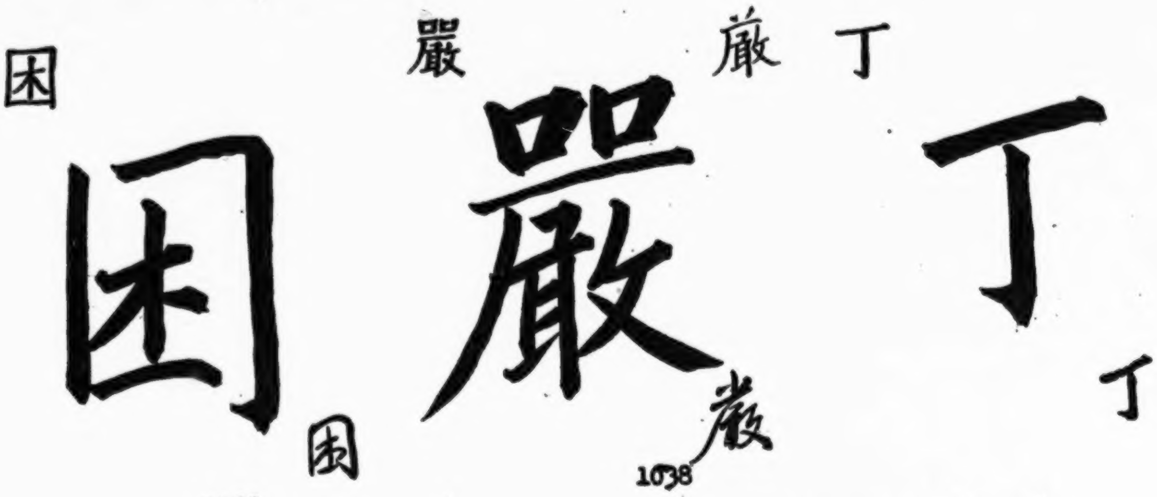
困	kw'àn: weary; exhausted; to confine.
困難	kw'àn-naān: difficulty; obstacle.
困住	kw'àn chuê: to confine; to restrain.
圍困	waī-kw'àn: surrourded; beseiged

349

嚴	īm: strict; firm; sterm; majestic
嚴禁	īm-kàm: strctly forbidden
嚴責	īm-cheȁk: to punish severely
嚴肅	īm-suk: grave; austire; serious.

1145

丁	ting: individual; a person; male; adult.
成丁	shīng ting: to become an adult.
丁憂	ting-yau: mourning for parents.

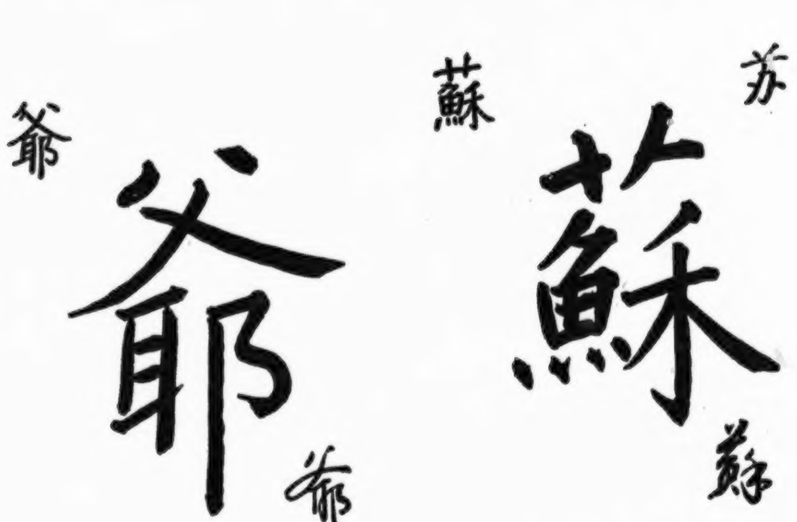


1466

爺	yē: sir; gentleman; term of respect.
老爺	lŏ-yē: sir.

1038

蘇	so: to revive; cheerful; name of various plants.
蘇格蘭	so-kaȁk-laān: Scotland.
蘇州	so-chau: Soochow.



LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

黃二決定同陳東去教堂，預先打電話通知佢。星期日好早就起身。佢已經覺得 shue 服好多。知道嚟禮拜堂坐幾個鐘頭，都唔會有困難，所以放心好多。

陳東帶佢去一間天主教堂，但係佢知道陳東係基 Tuk 教徒，佢就問陳東天主教同基 Tuk 教有乜唔同。陳東話，"大家都係信 Yē So，不過，天主教嚴 suk 啲，基 Tuk 教隨便啲。好似 mûk 師可以結婚，神父唔可以結婚，就係其中之一。神父做 Neī-Shaàt 嘅時候，要用拉丁文添播。

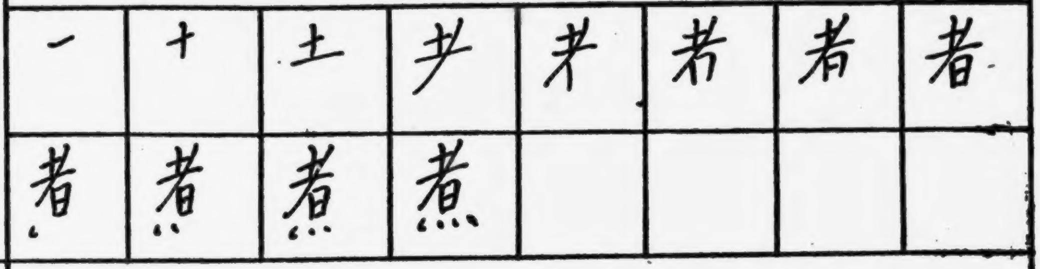
有幾耐，開首做禮拜啦，修女指揮詩班唱詩。佢地有時合唱，有時獨唱。

LESSON 8

WRITING MATERIAL

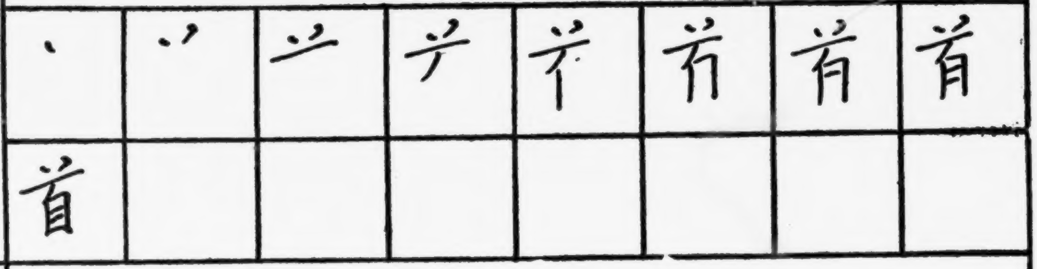
煮

Character Number 122
Stroke Number 12
Radical Number 86
灬 , 火



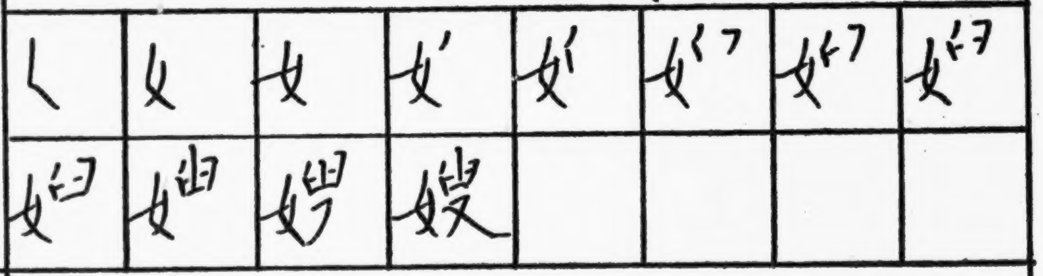
首

Character Number 958
Stroke Number 9
Radical Number 185
首



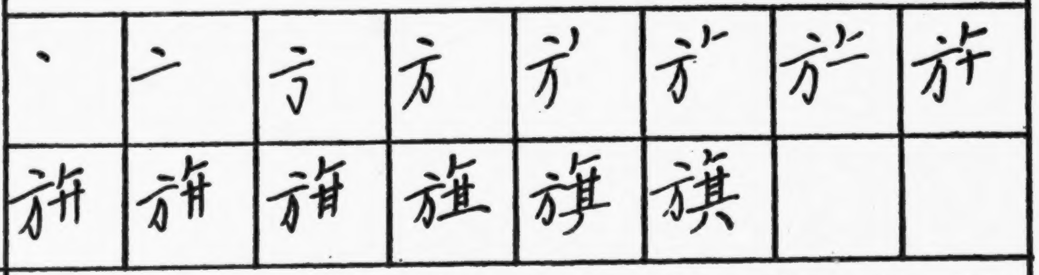
嫂

Character Number 1039
Stroke Number 12
Radical Number 38
女



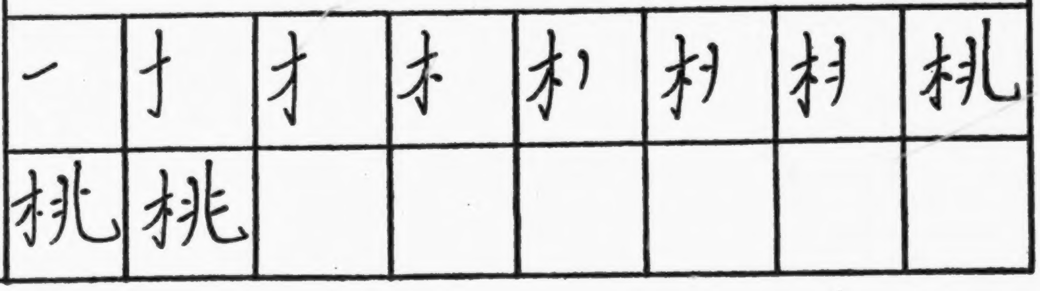
旗

Character Number 447
Stroke Number 14
Radical Number 70
方

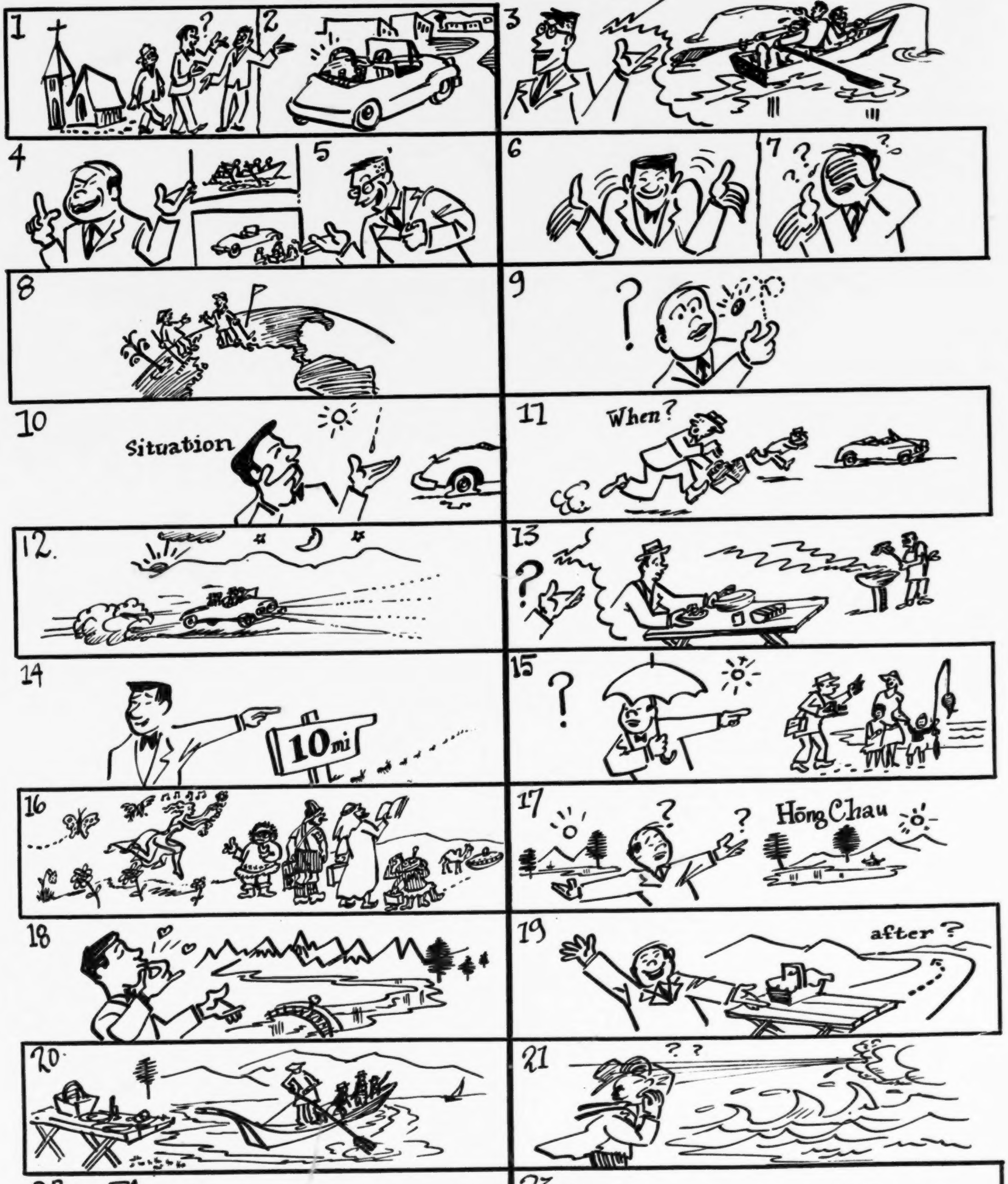


桃

Character Number 1176
Stroke Number 10
Radical Number 75
朩 , 木



LESSON 9


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
Situation
11
When?
12.
13
14
10 mi
15
16
17
Hồng Châu
18
19
after?
20
21
22
23

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î. Ngŏh-teî ĭ-king huì-uēn kaaù-t'ōng, taaî-ka sheung-leūng luĭ-haāng kè tsìt-mûk, hó mà?

P'aāng-Yaŭ Kaàp. Ngŏh t'aî-ĭ huì kaau-ngoî yĕ-ts'aan, t'ūng yaū ch'e-hōh*.

P'aāng-Yaŭ Uèt. Ngŏh t'aî-ĭ huì p'ā t'ĕng t'ūng tiù uē*.

Ch'ān-Tung. Ngŏh ĭ-waî p'ā t'ĕng peî-kaaù yĕ-ts'aan hó tak toh.

K. Ngŏh ĭ-waî p'ā t'ĕng mŏ yĕ-ts'aan kòm hó.

W. Ngŏh ĭ-waî p'ā t'ĕng t'ūng yĕ-ts'aan yat-yeûng kòm hó.

C. Mooĭ kòh yān kè hìng-ts'uì to m̄-t'ūng. Ngŏh-teî tîm-paân à?

W. Haî, ngŏh ĭ-waî shaì-kaaì sheûng mŏ leŭng-kòh yān kè hìng-ts'uì uēn-ts'uēn yat-yeûng.

C. Ngŏh-teî tîm-yeûng* k'uèt-tîng ne?

W. Ngŏh-teî t'aî ts'ìng-yìng k'uèt-tîng la.

C. Ngŏh-teî iù keî shî kón faan laî à?

W. Ngŏh-teî iù t'in-haak chi-ts'ìn kón faan laî.

C. Ni-shuè foô-kân yaŭ mŏ yĕ-ts'aan kè teî-fong à?

W. Yaŭ, leî ni-shuè shâp-leĭ yaŭ yat-kòh yĕ-ts'aan kè teî-fong.

C. Kóh-shuè kè heì-haû tîm-yeûng* à? Yaŭ mi-yĕ yaū-haàk à?

W. Kóh-shuè seì-kwaì-uē-ch'un. Kòk teî kè yaū haàk to yaŭ.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C.	Kóh-shuè kè fung-kìng yaŭ mŏ Chung-Kwòk Hōng-Chau kè kòm hó à?
W.	Yat-yeûng kòm shaan-mìng-shuî-saù.
C.	Ngŏh-teî ì-king tò-chóh là; yĕ-ts'aan chi-haû huì pin-shuè à?
W.	Yĕ-ts'aan chi-haû huì yaū hōh*.
C.	Kam-yât kè fung-lông taaî mà?
W.	M̄-taaî, kam-yât fung-p'ìng-lông-tsîng.
C.	Ngŏh-teî ì-ka huì yaū hōh*, p'ā t'ĕng, hó mà?

LESSON 9

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î. We have attended church, let's discuss a program for a trip, all right?

Friend A. I suggest we have a picnic and take a drive in the suburbs.

Friend B. I suggest we go boat-rowing and fishing.

Ch'ān-Tung. I believe boat-rowing is much better than a picnic.

A. I believe boat-rowing is not as good as a picnic.

Wōng. I believe boat-rowing is just as good as a picnic.

Ch'ān. Everyone's interests are different, what shall we do?

Wōng. Yes, I believe no two persons in the world have identical interests.

Ch'ān. How shall we decide?

Wōng. We shall decide according to the situation.

Ch'ān. When must we hurry back?

Wōng. We must hurry back before dark.

Ch'ān. Is there a picnic-ground in this vicinity?

Wōng. Yes, there is a picnic-ground ten miles from here.

Ch'ān. How is the climate there? What kind of tourists are there?

Wōng. There it is like spring the whole year round. There are tourists from all places.

Ch'ān. Is the scenery there as beautiful as that in Hangchow, China?

LESSON 9

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng. It is just as beautiful, with resplendent mountains and lucid streams.

Ch'ān. We have arrived. Where shall we go after the picnic?

Wōng. After the picnic we'll go for a water excursion.

Ch'ān. Are the wind and the waves strong today?

Wōng. No, the wind has ceased and the waves are calm today.

Ch'ān. Let's go on a water excursion and boat-rowing now, all right?

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The sea is calm in Spring and that is the best season for water excursions.
2. I don't think you should go swimming in such sea conditions.
3. It is because of the resplendent mountains and lucid streams that the tourists come to California.
4. You may not know it, but it is like Spring the whole year round in Formosa.
5. It is very difficult to drive in the rain especially when it is dark.
6. You should hurry and go back to see your parents in Hong Kong.
7. The boat is half-filled with water, and I don't know how to swim. What am I going to do?
8. Would you like to go fishing with me this coming Sunday?
9. I don't like to go boat-rowing, but I like to go to swim.
10. Nowadays, the city suburb is just as crowded as the city.
11. She wants to discuss the program with you.
12. There is no wind and the sea is calm today.
13. After the picnic, we should hurry home so that we can get there before dark.
14. I suggest that everybody stay in this vicinity until noon.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. The picnic ground in this vicinity is so dirty that fewer and fewer people would come.

16. Let us attend church service first, and then we shall decide while we eat our lunch.

LESSON 9

WORD LIST

1.	sheung-leūng	to discuss
2.	tsìt-mûk	program
3.	kaau-ngoî	outskirt, city suburb
4.	yĕ-ts'aan	picnic
5.	p'ā t'ĕng	boat-rowing
6.	tiù uē*	fishing
7.	tìm paân?	what to do?
8.	kón faan laì	to hurry back
9.	t'in-hak	dark, evening, night
10.	yaū haàk	tourist
11.	seì-kwaì-uē-ch'un	it is like Spring the whole year round
12.	shaan-mìng-shuì-saù	resplendent mountains and lucid streams
13.	yaū hōh*	water excursion
14.	fung-lông	sea condition (lit: wind and wave)
15.	fung-p'ìng-lông-tsîng	the sea is calm (lit: wind subsided and waves calm)

LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

1455

休 yau: to rest; to desist; to put away; to move.

休業 yau ìp: to suspend business.

休戰 yau chìn: truce; armistice.

50

尺 ch'èk: Chinese foot; a ruler (Cl. pa)

尺寸 ch'èk-ts'ùen: dimensions

間尺 kaàn-ch'èk: ruler (for drawing etc)

1201

贊 tsaàn: to assist, to aid; to second.

贊助 tsaàn chôh to aid.

贊成 tsaàn-shìng: to approve; to motion.

休 尺 贊

休 尺 贊

休 尺. 赞

633

浪 lông: waves; billows; unrestrained.

風浪 fung-lông: wind and waves.

浪子 lông-tsź: a spendthrift; a prodigal.

浪費 lông-fài: to squander.

495

感 kóm: to influence; affect; move.

感激 kóm-kik: deeply grateful.

感動 kóm-tûng: deeply moved.

感覺 kóm-kòk: sensation.

感情 kóm-ts'ìng: emotion; feeling.

浪 感

浪 感

浪 感

LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

917

秀 saù: plentiful; luxuriant; accomplished.

秀才 saù-ts'oī: lowest bachelor degree.

清秀 ts'ing-saù: genteel; well- bred.

681

畝 maŭ: Chinese acre. (6.10 mau=1 Eng acre)

一畝地 yat maŭ teî: an acre.

590

林 lām: a grove; a group of trees; etc.

樹林 shuê-lām: a forest.

森林 sam-lām: a big forest.

秀 畝 林

秀 畝 林

秀 畝 林

82

池 ch'ī: a cistern; pond (Cl kòn)

水池 shuí-ch'ī: pond

池塘 ch'ī-t'ōng: pond

886

坡 poh: slope of a hill; embankment.

山坡 shaan-poh: side of a hill.

斜坡 ts'ē poh: steep slope.

池 坡

池 坡

池 坡

LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

星期日係去教堂嘅日子，亦係休息嘅日子，所以黃二同佢嘅朋友，去完教堂之後，就商量做啲遊樂。佢地對於遊樂嘅方法，有種種意見。最後有人提議去一處地方旅行，同野 ts'aan。因為離十里噉遠，有一個地方「山明水秀」，幾百畝噉大，有樹林，有山坡，又有一個游水池。幾十尺長，冇風浪，可以游水。

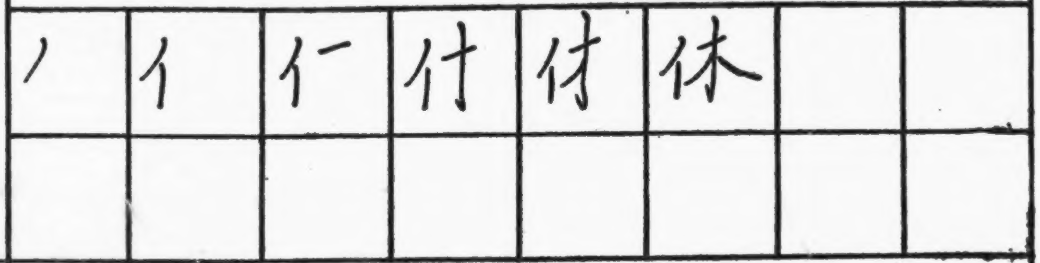
呢個意見，人人都贊成。就决定去旅行。佢地帶阻好多食物同涼水等等。喺嗰處或食，或飲，或玩，或休息，各有各好。最後重去遊河 p'a t'ĕng，將近天黑至番黎。每個人都感覺滿意。

LESSON 9

WRITING MATERIAL

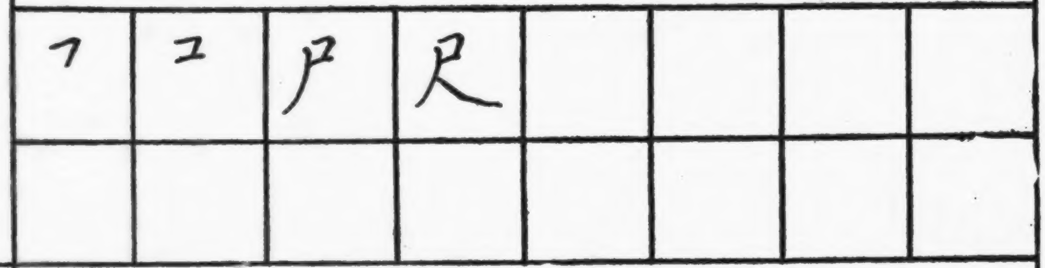
休

Character Number 1455 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 6 亻, 人



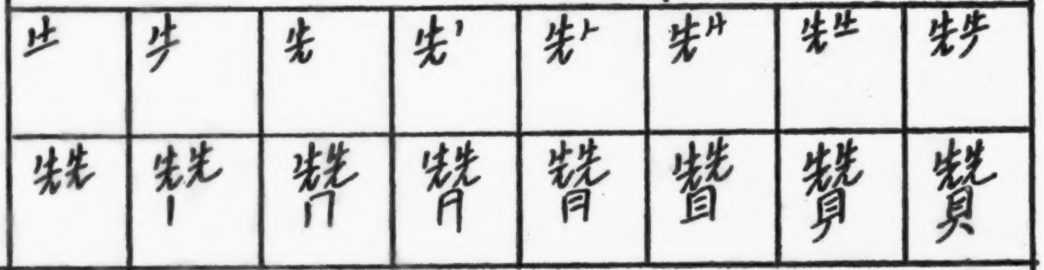
尺

Character Number 50 Radical Number 44
Stroke Number 4 尸



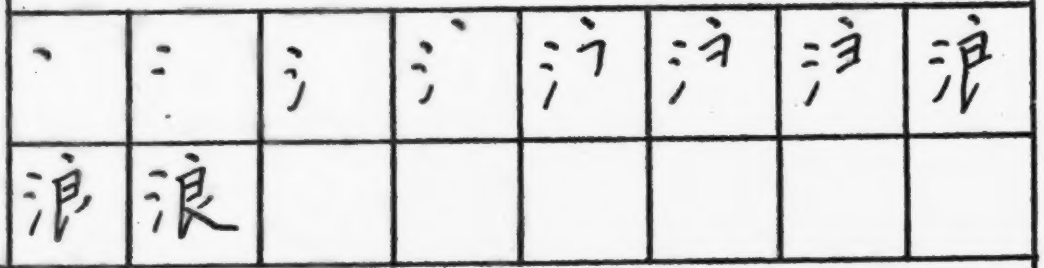
贊

Character Number 1201 Radical Number 154
Stroke Number 19 貝



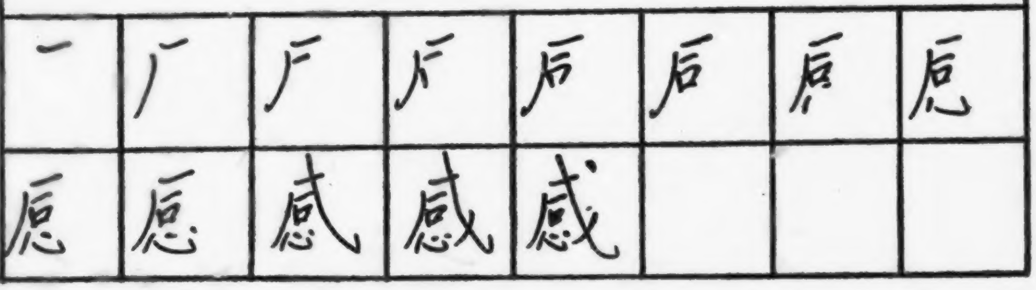
浪

Character Number 633 Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 10 氵, 水

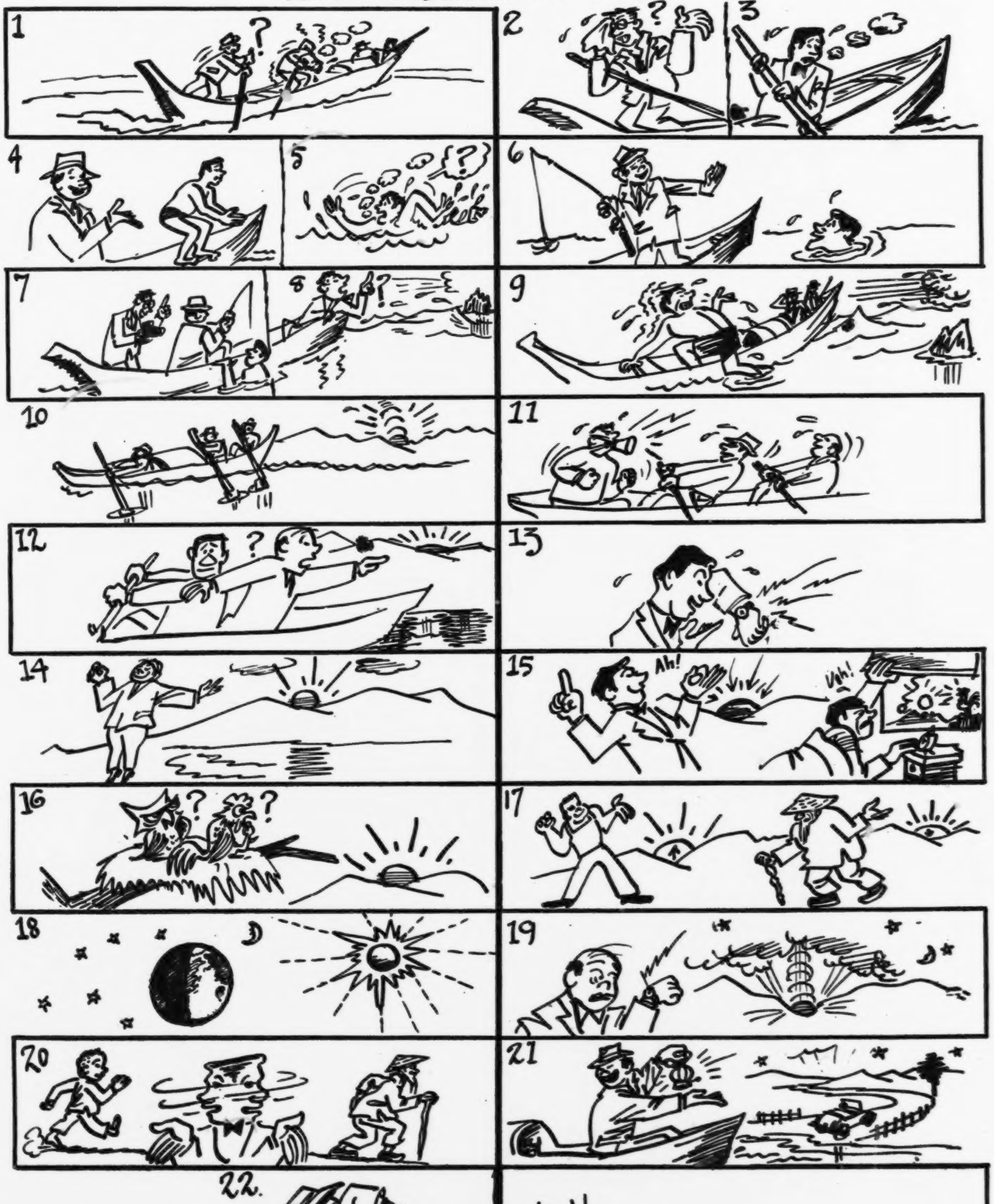


感

Character Number 495 Radical Number 61
Stroke Number 13 心



LESSON 10


1
?
2
?
3
4
5
?
6
7
8
?
9
10
11
12
?
13
14
15
Ah!
Voh!
16
?
?
17
18
19
20
21
22.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Ch'ān. Ngŏh-teî ĭ-king p'ā tò hoî chung-sam, neĭ-teî kwooî mà?

P'aāng-Yaŭ Kaàp. Ngŏh hó kwooî. Ngŏh-teî haî pin shuè t'ìng-yat-t'ìng à?

Wōng. Ngŏh to hó kwooî. Ngŏh-teî haî ni-shuè t'ìng-yat-t'ìng.

C. Lŏ Wōng*, Neĭ yaū shuî yaū-tak hó hó, shûn-pîn* yaū-hă la.

W. Ngŏh ì-ka mŏ ĭ-ts'ìn yaū-tak kòm hó, neĭ ne?

C. Ngŏh yaū-tak mŏ neĭ kòm hó. Ngŏh pat-uē tiù uē* hó ti.

K. Neĭ-teî yaū shuî t'ūng tiù uē*. Táng ngŏh t'ūng neĭ-teî yîng sheùng*.

P'aāng-Yaŭ Uèt. Ī-ka fung lông tìm à? Ti shuî tùng mà?

W. Ī-ka fung lông peî chìng-wâ kè taaî hó toh, ti shuî tùng kwòh-t'aū.

K. Ngŏh-teî p'ā-tak kòm maân; yât-t'aū* lôk-tak kòm faaì.

U. Ngŏh-teî faaì.ti p'ā faan huì la.

C. Ĭ-king yât-lôk-sai-shaan. Lŏ Wōng*, neĭ yaŭ mi-yĕ kóm-seúng à?

W. Ngŏh kòk-tak shì-kaàn kwòh-tak chan faaì.

C. Neĭ ĭ-waî t'aî yât-lôk yaŭ shi-ì mà?

W. Yat-ìn-naān-tsûn. Ngŏh ĭ-waî t'aî yât-lôk peî-kaaù t'aî yât-ch'ut yaŭ shi-ì tak toh.

C. Yât-ch'ut t'ūng yât-lôk yaŭ mi-yĕ m̄-t'ūng à?

K. Chiu-t'aū-tsó kè yât-t'aū* tseûng-ching nìn-ts'ing yān. Wōng-fan kè yât-t'aū*tseûng-ching lŏ-nìn yān. Ngaam mà?

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. Hó ngaam. Tsîk-yeūng-mō-haân-hó, chî-shî-kân-wōng-fan.

C. Haî, hóh-sik yât-lôk kè shī-kaàn t'aaì tuén, yat-hă tsaû kwòh.

W. Yān kè shaang-mîng to haî yat-yeûng, keî shâp nīn yat-hă tsaû kwòh.

C. Ngŏh-teî maaī ngôn là. Neĭ t'aî, ĭ-king haak tò t'aî m̄-kìn lô là.

W. Haî, ĭ-king haî maân-ka-tang-fôh kè shī-haû.

LESSON 10

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Ch'ān. We have rowed to the middle of the body of water, are you tired?

Friend A. I am tired. Where can we stop for a little while?

Wōng. I am also tired. Let's stop here for a little while.

Ch'ān. Wōng, you swim very well, take a swim at your pleasure.

Wōng. I do not swim as well now as I used to, how about you?

Ch'ān. I do not swim as well as you. I'd rather fish.

Friend A. You two swim and fish, let me take your picture.

Friend B. How strong is the wind and how rough is the sea now? Is the water cold?

Wōng. Now the wind is stronger and the sea is rougher than they were a short while ago. The water is too cold.

A. We are rowing so slowly, and the sun is setting so fast

B. Let's row back faster!

Ch'ān. The sun has set Wong, how do you feel?

Wōng. I feel that time has passed very quickly.

Ch'ān. Do you think it is inspiring to watch the sun set?

Wōng. One single word does not hold true for all situations, I believe that watching the sunset is much more inspiring than watching the sunrise.

Ch'ān. What is the difference between sunrise and sunset?

A. The sun in the morning symbolizes a young man, and the sun in the evening symbolizes an old man, right?

Wōng. Correct, sunset is boundlessly beautiful, but so close to the evening.

Ch'ān. Yes, it is a pity that the time of sunset is too short, it passes in a moment.

Wōng. The life of a man is likewise short, several decades pass in a glimpse of time.

Ch'ān. Let's go ashore. You see, it is already too dark to see the road.

Wōng. Yes, it is already time for the town to be lighted.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The communication between that island in the middle of the sea and here is not at all convenient.
2. You should take advantage of the opportunity to visit your daughter.
3. He loves to take pictures of the seas and the mountains.
4. It is a wonderful sight seeing the sunset at sea.
5. In wintertime, sunrise is much later than in the summer.
6. This old man is still very capable and he is stronger than some of the youngsters I have known.
7. The setting sun symbolizes the beginning of a beautiful evening.
8. For a youngster, the future is infinite if he works hard.
9. This pair of shoes is very beautiful, but it is too expensive.
10. It is a pity that the doctor came too late.
11. If you are happy, the time passes in no time.
12. In the twilight, you cannot see the road without lights.
13. You can see the town is all lighted from here.
14. His thoughts are not very easily comprehended.
15. Do you have any sad feeling after seeing the patient at the hospital?
16. Looking at the calm sea, she seems to be filled with many thoughts.

LESSON 10

WORD LIST

1.	hoì chung-kaan	the middle of the sea
2.	yìng seùng*	to take pictures
3.	yât lôk	sunset
4.	yât-lôk-sai-shaan	sunset (lit: sun sets below the west mountain)
5.	yât ch'ut	sunrise
6.	tseûng-ching	to symbolize
7.	lŏ-nīn yān	old man
8.	nīn-ts'ing yān	youngster
9.	tsîk-yeūng	the setting sun
10.	mō-haân	unlimited, infinite
11.	chì-shî	but
12.	wōng-fan	twilight
13.	hóh-sik	it is a pity
14.	yat-hă-tsaû-kwòh	to pass in no time
15.	maân-ka-tang-fóh	the town is lighted
16.	kóm-seúng	feeling, thought
17.	kaù-kìng	actually, in truth
18.	koon-tìm	point of view
19.	tsûn	to exhaust; end

LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

619

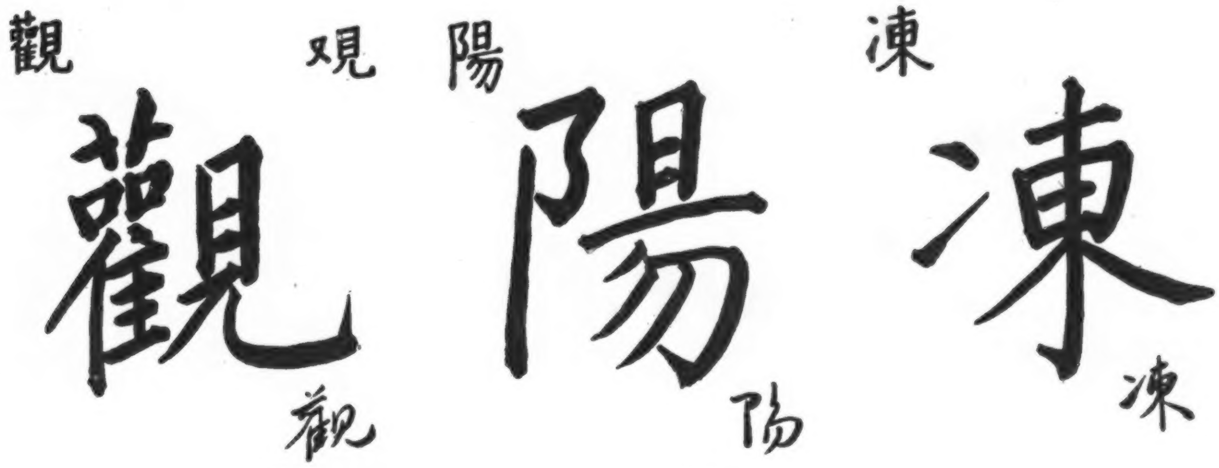
觀	koon: to look; to view.
觀念	koon-nîm: ideas; thoughts; impressions.
悲觀	pei-koon: pessimism.
樂觀	lŏk-koon: optimism.
觀察	koon-ch'aat: to observe; to study.

1478

陽	yeũng: positive or male principle; the sun; male; membrum virile.
陽電	yeũng tîn: positive electricity.
太陽	t'aaì-yeũng: the sun.

1359

凍	tùng: cold; icy.
凍水	tùng shuí: cold water.
凍死	tùng sź: to die of cold.

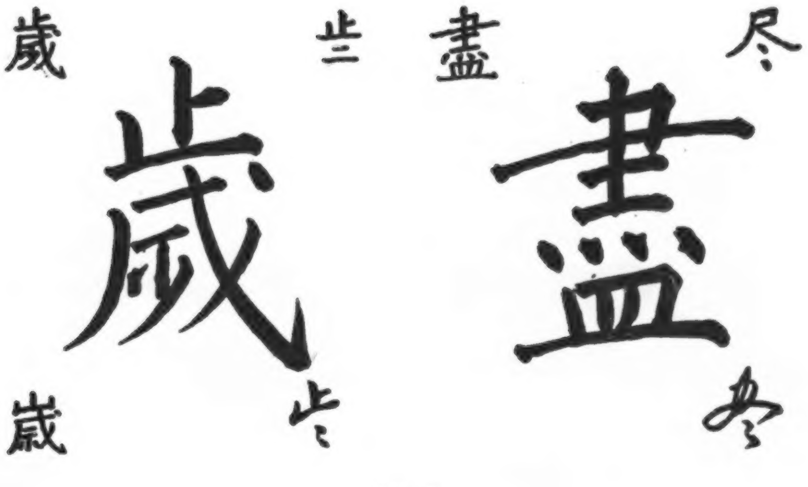


1058

歲	suì· year; age; old.
年歲	nīn-suì· age.
有幾多歲	yaŭ keí-toh suì: how old are you?

1324

盡	tsûn: to exhaust; all; end; entire.
盡力	tsûn lîk: with all one's strength; with all one's ability.
用盡	yûng tsûn: to use up.



LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

427

究 kaù: to investigate.

研究 Īn-kaù: to inquire into; to study thoroughly; to do a research.

追究 tsui-kaù: to follow up; to investigate.

究竟 kaù-kíng: actually; in truth.

468

竟 kíng: finally; after all.

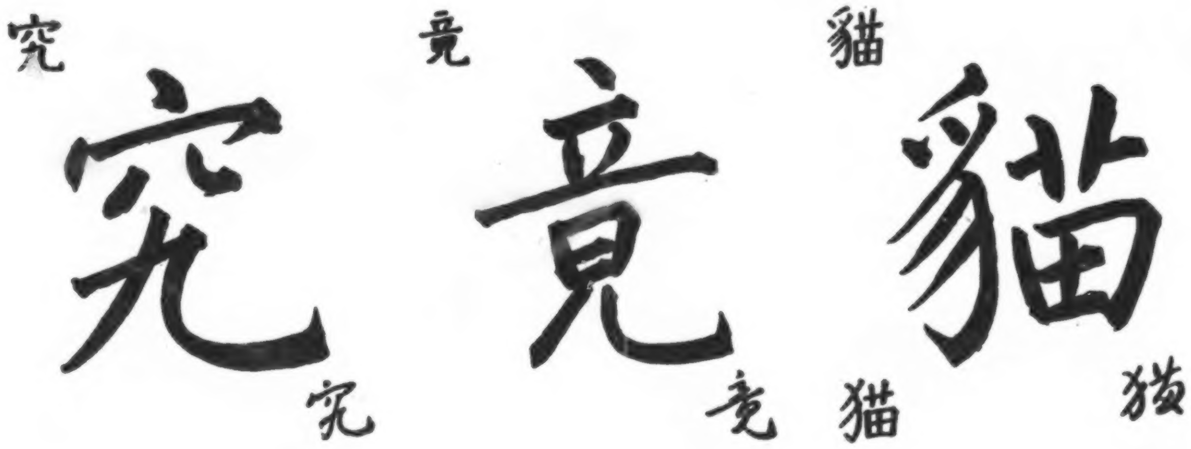
究竟 kaù-kíng: actually; in truth.

666

貓 maau: a cat.

野貓 yǒ maau: the wild cat.

貓兒頭鷹 maau-ī-t'aū-ying: the owl.



1010

鼠 shué: rat; mouse; squirrel.

老鼠 lǒ-shué: rat.

鼠疫 shué-yîk. bubonic plague.

1476

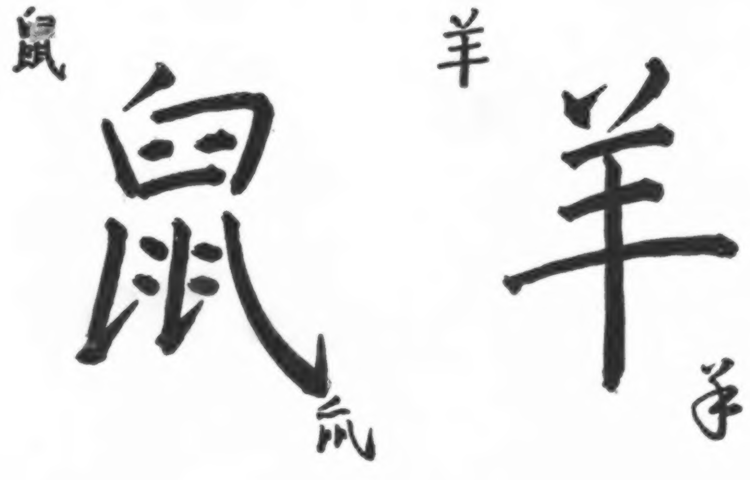
羊 yeūng: sheep; goat.

綿羊 mīn-yeūng: sheep.

山羊 shaan-yeūng: goat.

羊毛 yeūng-mō: wool; fleece; woolen.

羊城 yeūng-shēng. a name for Canton.



LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

一年三百六十五日，每日都有日出同日落。日出喺朝頭早，日落在黄fan。有人話，日出象ching青年人，日落象ching老年人。因為每個人嘅觀點唔同，對於日落就有好多感想。有人覺得睇日落比較睇日出有詩意，有人覺得日落嘅時候，陽光唔夠猛，凍一啲，所以唔中意。究竟日出好啲，yik或日落好啲呢，都係各人有各嘅意見。

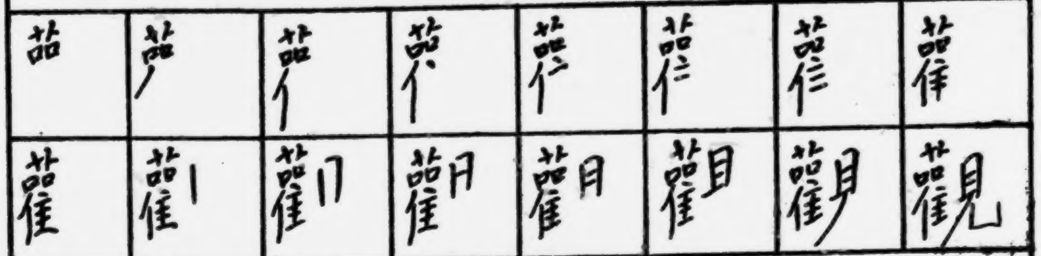
不過日出日落無盡期，人嘅生命，過吓一歲又一歲，幾十年一吓就過完。所以一個人喺年青嘅時候，就要勤力做事，認真做事，而且要有計劃。你話係唔係呢？

LESSON 10

WRITING MATERIAL

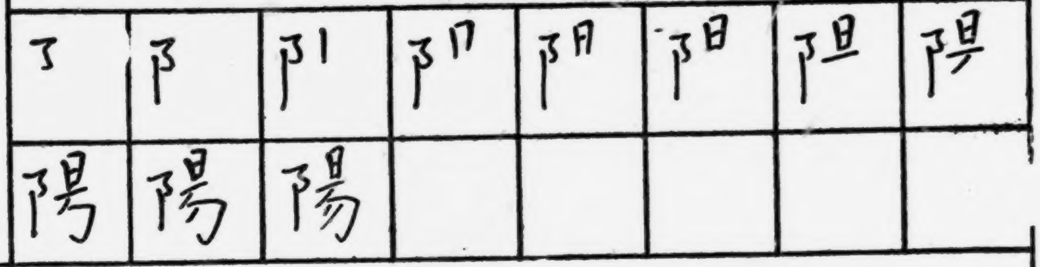
觀

Character Number 519 Radical Number 147
Stroke Number 25 見



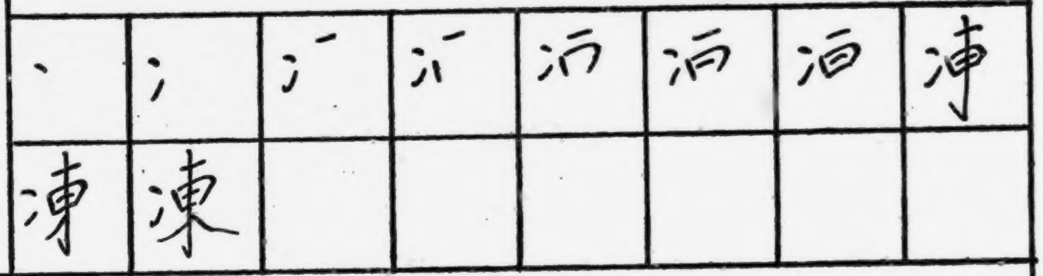
陽

Character Number 1478 Radical Number 170
Stroke Number 11 阝，阜



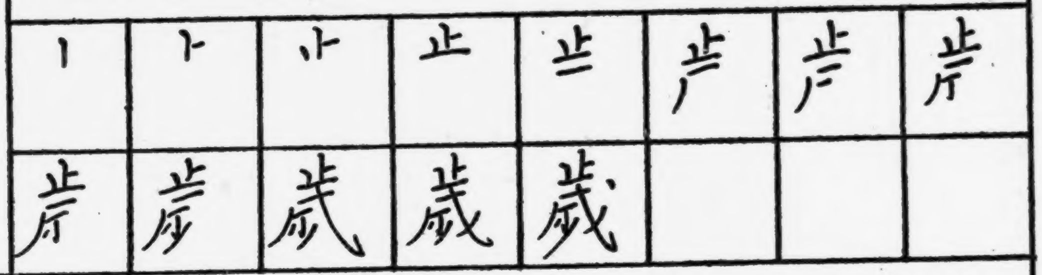
凍

Character Number 1359 Radical Number 15
Stroke Number 10 冫



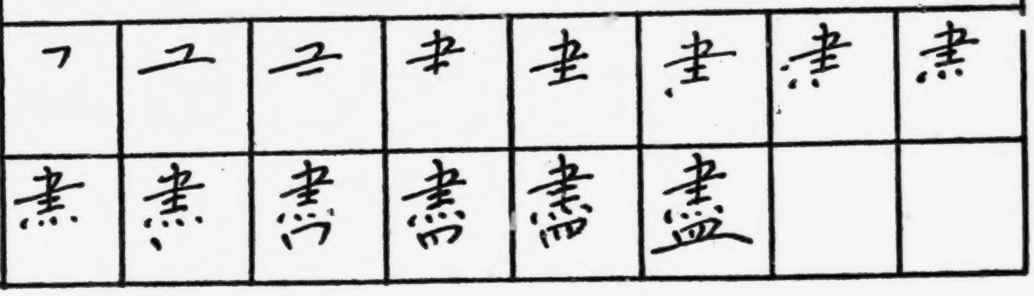
歲

Character Number 1058 Radical Number 77
Stroke Number 13 止

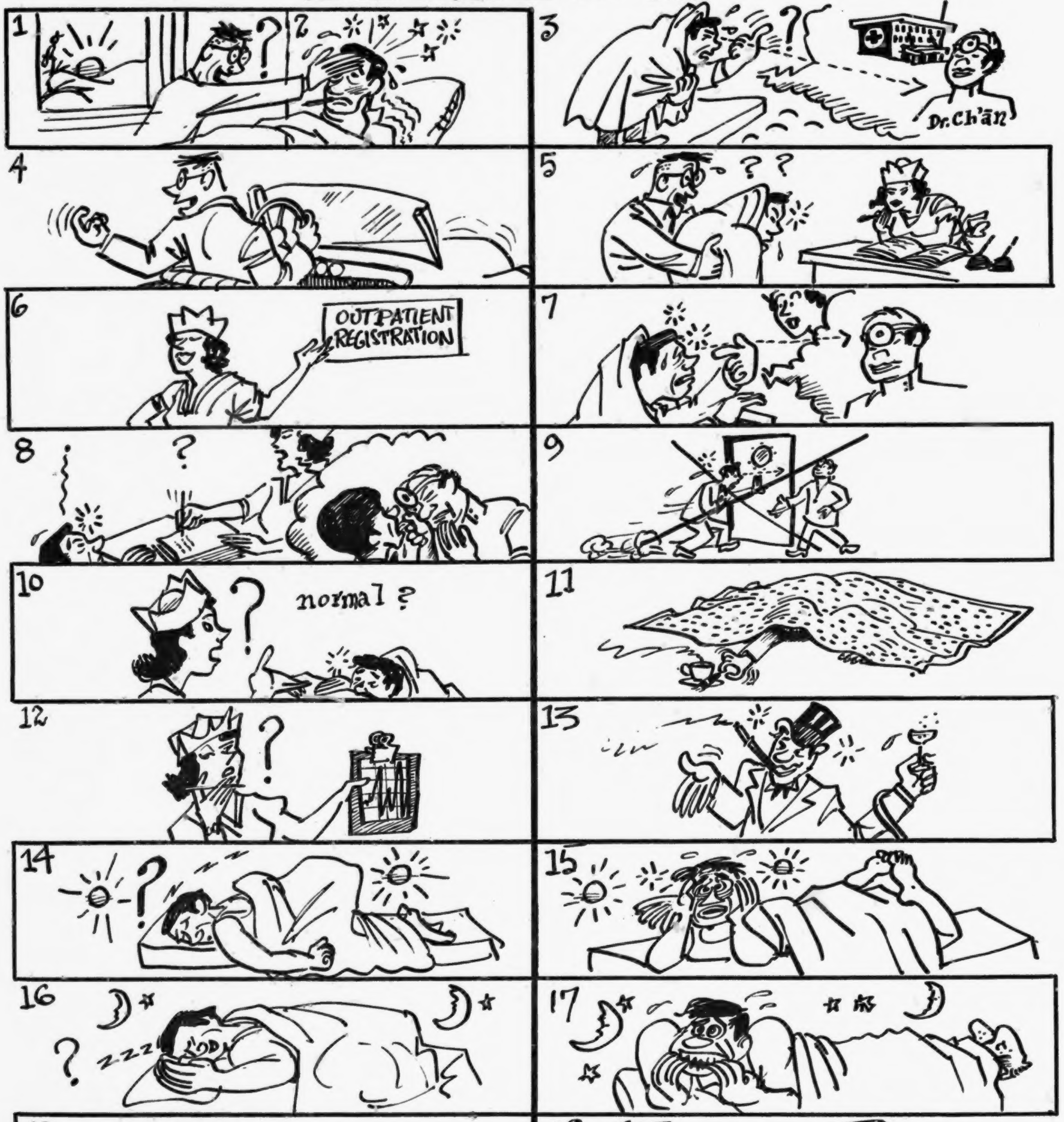


盡

Character Number 1324 Radical Number 108
Stroke Number 14 皿



LESSON 11


1
2
3
Dr. Ch'än
4
5
6
OUTPATIENT REGISTRATION
7
8
9
10
normal ?
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
NAME
AGE
N.
Occ.
Adr.
etc.
20
ok
Dr. Ch'än

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T'ūng-Fōng*. Kam-chiu-tsó neĭ kòk-tak tîm-yeûng* à?

Wōng. Ngŏh kè t'aū hó t'ùng, faàt laăng, faàt ît.

W. Neĭ taaì ngŏh huì i-uên* shuè kìn Ch'ān I-Shaang, tak mà?

T. Hó à, ngŏh taaì neĭ huì i-uên* shuè kìn Ch'ān I-Shaang la.

W.T. Ts'ìng mân ni-shuè haî m̄-haî moōn-ch'án kwà-hô-ch'uè à?

Hon-oô. Haî à, sin-shaang, ni-shuè haî moōn-ch'án kwà-hô-ch'uè, yaŭ mat kwaì kòn à?

W. Ngŏh kòk-tak m̄-shue-fûk, ngŏh laĭ t'aî pêng.

H. Neĭ ĭ-ts'ìn yaŭ mŏ laì-kwòh ni-shuè t'aî pêng à?

W. Mŏ, ngŏh ĭ-ts'ìn mŏ laì-kwòh ni-shuè t'aî pêng.

H. Neĭ kân-loì kè shaang-oôt chông-fòng chìng m̄-chìng-sheūng à?

W. Ngŏh kân-loì kè shaang-oôt chông-fòng m̄-chìng-sheūng.

H. Tîm-yeûng* m̄-chìng-sheūng à?

W. Ngŏh kân-loì kè yê shaang-oôt t'aaì toh, yìng-ch'aū toh kwòh-t'aū.

H. Neĭ ni keî yât kè shuî-mìn kaù m̄-kaù?

W. M̄-kaù, ni keî yât kè shuî-mìn m̄-kaù.

H. Ni keî maăn neĭ fàn-tak hó mà?

W. Ni keî maăn ngŏh fàn-tak hó m̄-hó.

W. Neĭ peî ni cheung piú-kaàk-chì ngŏh tsô mi-yĕ à?

H. Ngŏh seúng neĭ haî ni cheung piú shuè t'ìn neĭ kè sìng-mìng, nìn-lìng, tsîk-koòn, chik îp, teî-chì, tàng-tàng.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

H. Neĭ kè kwà-hô shaú-tsûk uēn-chỏh. Neĭ seúng kìn pin kỏh i-shaang à?

W. Ngŏh seúng kìn Ch'ān I-Shaang.

LESSON 11

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Roommate. How do you feel this morning?

Wŏng. I have a severe headache, a chill, and a fever.

Wŏng. Can You take me to the hospital to see Doctor Ch'ăn?

R. All right, I will take you to the hospital to see Doctor Ch'ăn.

Wŏng, Roommate. Is this the outpatient registration office?

Nurse. Yes sir, this is the outpatient registration office, what can I do for you?

W. I am not feeling well, I have come to see a doctor.

N. Did you ever come here to see a doctor before?

W. No, I never came here to see a doctor before.

N. Have your living habits been normal lately?

W. My living habits have not been normal lately.

N. In what respect have they not been normal?

W. I have had too much night life and social entertainment lately.

N. Did you have adequate sleep the last few days?

W. No, I did not have adequate sleep the last few days.

N. Were you able to sleep well the last few nights?

W. I was not able to sleep well at all the last few nights.

W. Why do you give me this blank form?

N. I want you to write down your name, age, nationality,

LESSON 11

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

occupation, address, etc. on this form.

Nurse. You have completed the registration procedure. Which doctor do you want to see?

Wŏng. I want to see Doctor Ch'ăn.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. According to the doctor's opinion, this may be malaria.
2. His occupation is physician but he can also sing and dance.
3. She has a fever and I think you should take her to see a doctor.
4. The outpatient department is on the right side of the registration office.
5. The world situation is normal and there should be an increase in tourists everywhere.
6. You have to write down your nationality and age on the blank form.
7. Normal social entertainments are necessary for people of all ages.
8. When you get older, you will only need a few hours of sleep every night.
9. Please let me know your new address and your new telephone number.
10. You are right. She is not a nurse; she is a doctor.
11. She is a very capable nurse and is a great help at the hospital.
12. I have a severe headache, a chill and a fever.
13. Too much night-life would cause anybody to get tired or sick.
14. You should go and see a doctor if you do not feel well.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. It is a pity that he spends all his time sleeping.
16. You may get a blank form from the outpatient registration office this afternoon.

LESSON 11

WORD LIST

1.	faàt laăng	to have a chill; malaria
2.	faàt ît	to have a fever; feverish; fever
3.	moŏn-ch'án	outpatient
4.	kwà-hô-ch'uè	registration office
5.	t'aì pêng	to see a doctor
6.	chông-fòng	condition, situation
7.	chìng-sheŭng	normal
8.	yìng-ch'aŭ	social entertainment
9.	shuî-mĭn	sleep; to sleep
10.	piú-kaàk-chí	blank form
11.	nĭn-lĭng	age
12.	tsîk-koòn	nationality
13.	chik-îp	occupation

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

1018

睡 shuî: to sleep; to lounge.

睡覺 shuî kaaù: to sleep.

睡衣 shuî-i: sleeping clothes.

1471

弱 yeûk: weak; feeble; infirm.

弱點 yeûk tím: weak point; weak side.

氣力衰弱 heì lîk shui yeûk: failing strength.

465

驚 king: to terrify; to frighten; to alarm.

驚慌 king-fong: frightened.

驚奇 king-k'eī: unbelievable

睡 弱 驚

睡 弱 驚

睡 弱 驚

194

慌 fong: nervous; fearful; alamed

驚慌 king-fong: alémed; scared

好慌 hó fong: very frightened

358

研 Īn: to grind, to powder

研究 Īn-kaù: to examine; to investigate; to study thoroughly; to do a research

慌 研

慌 研

慌 研 研

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

173

肺 faì: the lungs

肺病 faì pêng: consumption

44

酬 ch'aū: to pledge an offering.

應酬 yìng-ch'aū: social intercourse, social activity

酬勞 ch'aū-lō: repay one for trouble taken

307

康 hong: prosperity; peace

康健 hong-kîn: hale; healthy; strong

康年 hong nîn: a fruitful year

康熙 Hong-hei: Emperor Kang-hi (1662-1723)

肺 酬 康

肺 酬 康

肺 酬 康

1246

極 kîk: the extreme; utmost; superative degree.

北極 pak-kîk: North Pole.

極力 kîk-lîk: with all one's strength.

極端 kîk-tuen: extremity.

消極 siu-kîk: negative; listless; spiritless

積極 tsik-kîk: positive; energetic.

籍 tsîk: list; register; record.

入籍 yâp-tsîk: to become naturalized

户籍 oô-tsîk: a census; record of residence.

籍貫 tsîk-koòn: place of birth.

極 籍

極 籍

極 籍

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

普通有句說話，“樂極生悲。”即係話一個人經過極之快樂之後，或者會發生悲傷嘅事情。黃二近來應酬多，飲酒多，又唔够睡 mīn ，精神弱，就影響佢嘅健康。忽然覺得頭痛，發冷，發熱，唔起得身。佢以為休息一吓就冇事，但係經過一日，重未曾好。而且胸部有少少痛添。佢嘅同房驚慌佢會變成肺病，就同佢去見醫生。

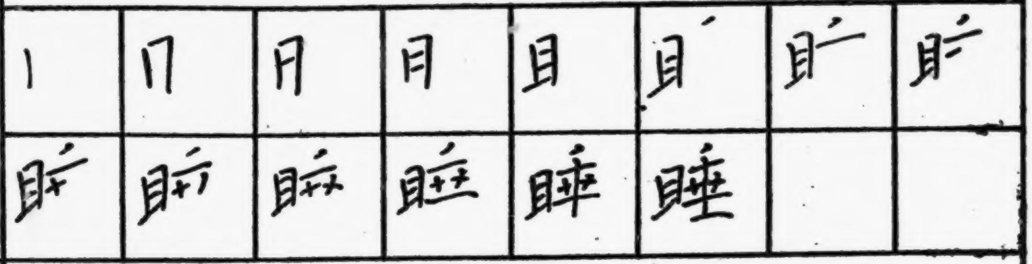
到咗醫生嘅醫務所，醫生問佢近來嘅生活情形之後，先叫佢掛號，填寫姓名年歲籍 koòn 然後研究佢嘅病情。

LESSON 11

WRITING MATERIAL

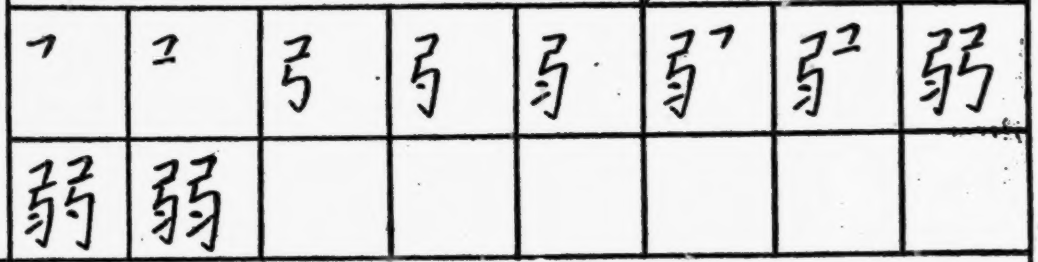
睡

Character Number 1018 Radical Number 109
Stroke Number 14 目



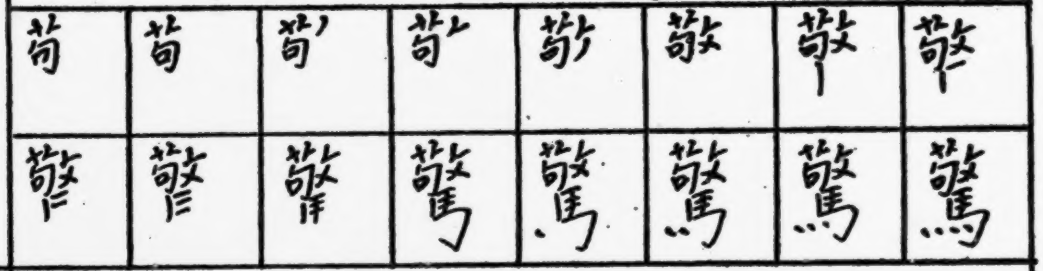
弱

Character Number 1471 Radical Number 57
Stroke Number 10 弓



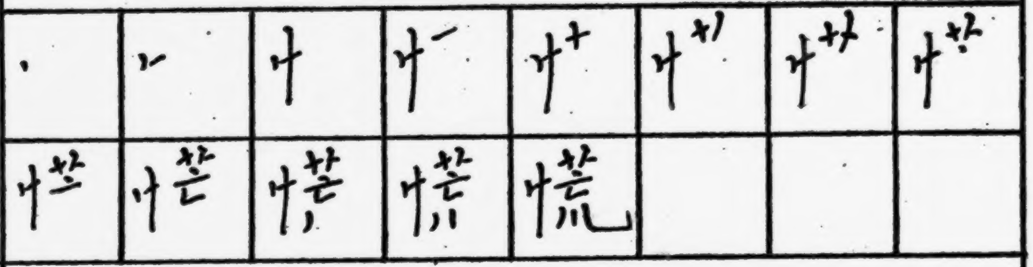
驚

Character Number 465 Radical Number 187
Stroke Number 23 馬



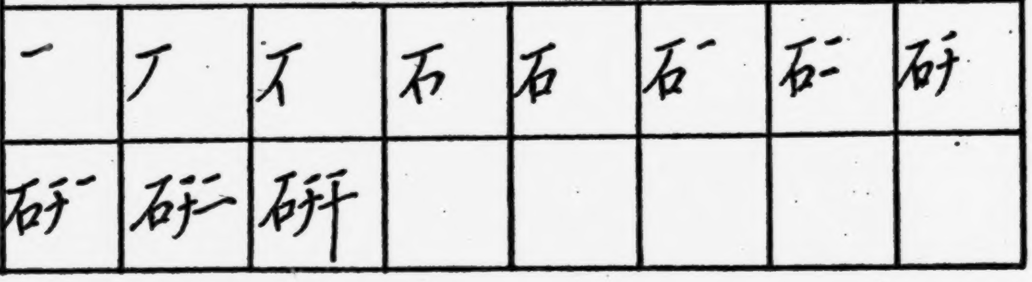
慌

Character Number 194 Radical Number 61
Stroke Number 13 忄，心

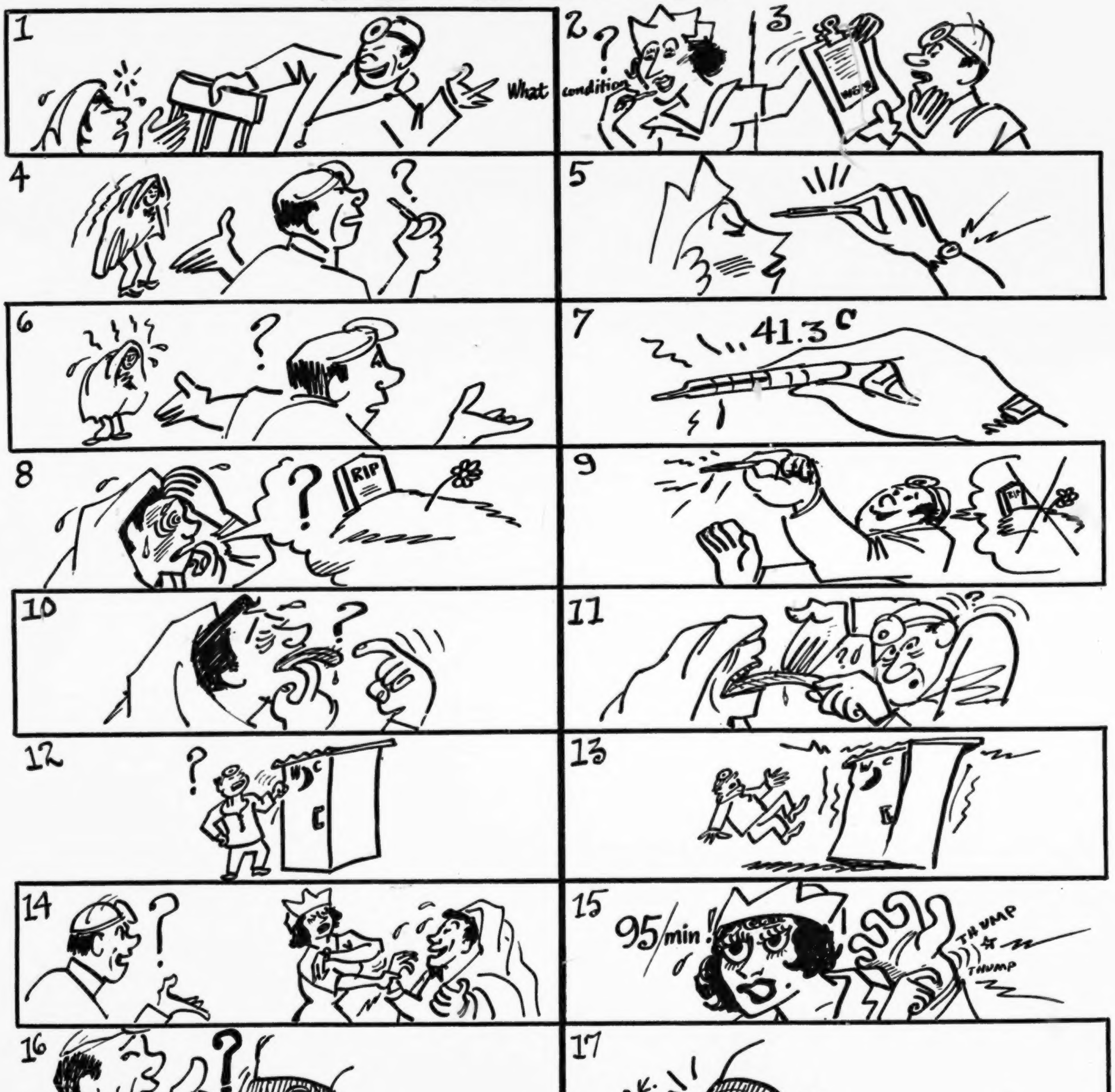


研

Character Number 358 Radical Number 112
Stroke Number 11 石



LESSON 12


1
What condition
2
?
3
4
?
5
6
?
7
41.3 C
8
?
RIP
9
RIP
10
?
11
?
12
?
W.C
13
W.C
14
?
15
95/min!
THUMP
THUMP
16
?
17
O.K.
18
?
19
20
?
21
Rx

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Ch'ān I-Shaang. Wōng Sin-Shaang, ts'ìng ts'ŏh, táng ngŏh t'ūng hon-oô kóng-hă.

C. Leĭ Siú-Tsé, Wōng Sin-Shaang kè pêng ts'ìng tìm-yeûng* à?

Hon-Oô. Ni cheung haî Wōng Sin-Shaang kè pêng ts'ìng pò-kò.

C. Neĭ t'ūng Wōng Sin-Shaang t'aàm-chóh ît meî à?

H. Ngŏh ĭ-king t'ūng k'uĭ t'aàm-chóh ît.

C. K'uĭ faàt ît mà? T'aì-wan keì ko à?

H. K'uĭ faàt ît faàt-tak hó ko, Shìp-Shî seì-shâp-yat-tô saam.

W. Ngŏh kè ît-tô keì-ìn kòm ko, ooĭ m̄-ooĭ yaŭ ngaì-hìm à?

C. Neĭ kè ît-tô sui-ìn kòm ko, taân-haî m̄-ooĭ yaŭ ngaì-hìm kè. Neĭ fòng-sam.

W. Kaù-kìng ngŏh yaŭ mi-yĕ pêng ne?

C. Ngŏh chûng meî chi-tò, ngŏh chûng meî hóh-ĭ ch'ân-tuèn.

C. Wōng Sin-Shaang, neĭ kè taaî-siú-pîn tìm à?

W. Ngŏh kè taaî-pîn m̄-haî keì t'ung.

C. Leĭ Siú-Tsé, Wōng Sin-Shaang kè mâk-pòk tìm à?

H. K'uĭ kè mâk-pòk t'iù-tak keì faaì, mooĭ fan chung kaú-shâp-nğ.

C. Huèt-aàt tìm à?

H. K'uĭ kè huèt-aàt keì chìng-sheūng.

C. Wōng Sin-Shaang, neĭ tsôk-maăn k'at-tak kán-iù mà?

W. Ngŏh tsôk-maăn k'at-tak hó kán-iù, k'at-chóh shēng maăn.

W. I-Shaang, kan-kuì neĭ kè kìm-ch'ā kè kìt-kwóh, neĭ kè ch'ân-tuèn haî tìm à?

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

C. Neī kè pêng hôh-nāng haî laū-haāng-shìng kám-mô, ni cheung haî neī kè yeûk-fong.

LESSON 12

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Doctor Ch'ān. Mr. Wōng, please take a seat, let me talk to the nurse.

D. Miss Leǐ, what is the condition of Mr. Wōng's sickness?

Nurse. This is Mr. Wōng's medical report.

D. Have you taken Mr. Wōng's temperature yet?

N. I have already taken his temperature.

D. Does he have a fever? How high is the body temperature?

N. He has a very high temperature, 41.3 degrees centigrade.

Wōng. My temperature is so high; is there any danger?

D. Although your temperature is high, there is no danger. Don't worry.

Wōng. What kind of sickness do I really have?

D. I don't know yet. I cannot diagnose it yet.

D. Mr. Wōng, how is your urination and defecation (bowel movement)?

Wōng. My defecation is not very smooth.

D. Miss Leǐ, how is Mr. Wōng's pulse?

N. His pulse is beating quite fast, 95 times per minute.

D. And the blood pressure?

N. His blood pressure is quite normal.

D. Mr. Wōng, did you have severe coughing last night?

W. I had severe coughing last night, I coughed the whole night.

LESSON 12

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. Doctor, based on the result of your examination, what is your diagnosis?

D. It is possible that your sickness is influenza. This is your prescription.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. This is the prescription for your cough, and that one is for your headache.
2. If it is possible, the doctor will give you a detailed medical report today.
3. According to this medical report, his condition is not at all severe.
4. Your blood pressure is normal; so don't worry.
5. Please jump fifty times and then I will take your pulse.
6. If your defecation is smooth, the condition of your sickness is better.
7. The doctor needs your urination and defecation to diagnose.
8. If I were you, I would not worry too much about him.
9. She worries about his condition, and she calls the doctor every hour.
10. According to the report of his body temperature, he is in a very dangerous condition.
11. The nurse reads the body temperature in Centigrade. Is that right?
12. The doctor orders the nurse to test his body temperature and his pulsation.
13. The medical report has everything in it.
14. It is not possible to diagnose his sickness yet.
15. My temperature is high, and my pulsation is very fast; but I feel fine.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. **He coughed severely last night and the doctor was called immediately.**

LESSON 12

WORD LIST

1.	pêng-ts'ìng	condition of sickness
2.	pêng-ts'ìng pỏ-kỏ	medical report
3.	t'aảm ît	to test body temperature
4.	t'aí-wan	body temperature
5.	Shìp-Shî	Centigrade
6.	ngaì-hím	danger; dangerous
7.	fòng-sam	do not worry
8.	ch'ẩn-tuèn	diagnosis; to diagnose
9.	taaî-siú-pîn	urination and defecation
10.	taaî-pîn t'ung	defecation is smooth
11.	mâk-pỏk	pulse; pulsation
12.	t'iủ	to jump, throb, exhibit a pulse
13.	huèt-aảt	blood pressure
14.	k'at	to cough; cough
15.	kẩn-iủ	severe
16.	hố h-nāng	possible
17.	yeûk-fong	prescription

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

1185

待 toî: to behave towards; to wait on; to treat; to await.

寬待 foon toî: to treat liberally.

虐待 yeûk-toî: to maltreat.

等待 táng-toî: to await; to expect.

329

依 i: in accord with; to rely on

依靠 i-k'aaù: to rely upon

依期 i-k'eī: punctual

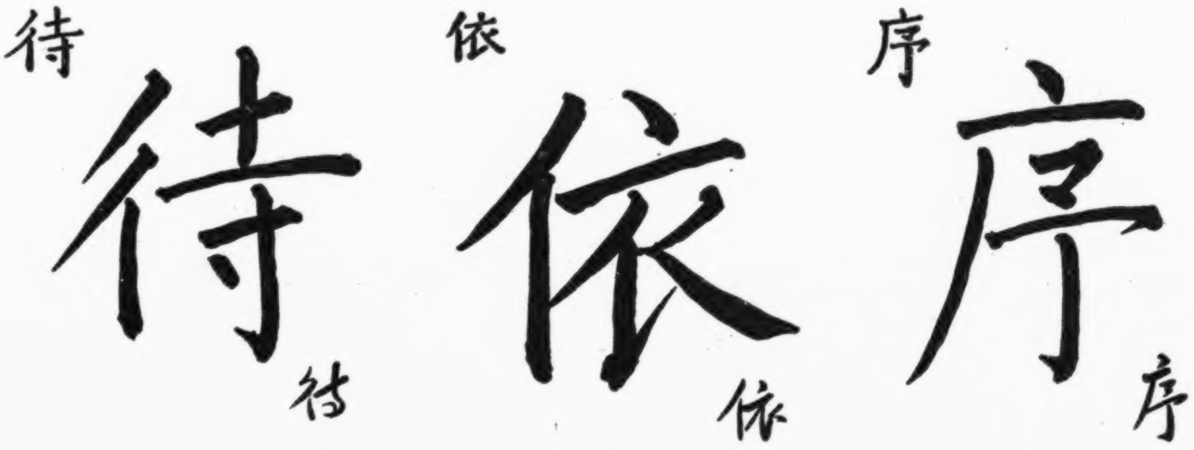
依然 i-īn: as usual; as before

1310

序 tsuî: series; in order; a preface.

次序 ts'ż-tsuî: order; series in order.

秩序 tît-tsuî: order.



114

狀 chông: appearence form; lawsuit; accusation

告狀 kò-chông: accusation; To sue in Court.

1343

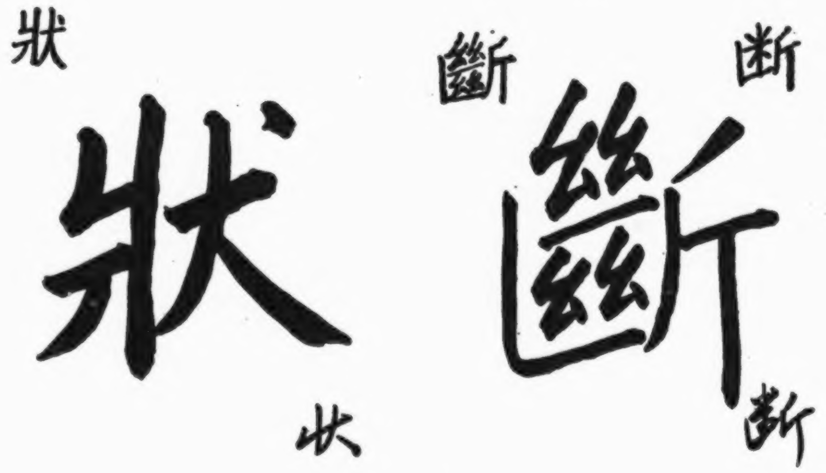
斷 tuèn: to determine; assuredly.

斷 t'uĕn: to cut off; to break.

斷定 tuèn-tîng: to decide; to settle; definite.

斷送 tuèn-sùng: to give up in despair.

斷絕 t'uĕn tsuêt: to cease; to cut off.



LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

4

壓	aàt: to repress, press down.
壓住	aàt-chuê: keep in check, repress
壓制	aàt-chaì: to oppress
壓力	aàt-lìk: pressure.

823

閉	paì: to close; to shut up; to stop.
閉塞	paì-sak: obstructed; stopped up; hidebound.
倒閉	tó-paì: to become bankrupt; to close.

911

塞	sak, ts'oì: to block up; to stop up; to obstruct.
塞滿	sak moŏn: to stuff full.
塞責	sak chaàk: to evade responsibility.
要塞	iù-ts'oì: a strategic fortress.

壓 压 閉 塞

壓 閉 塞

壓 闭 塞

843

疲	p'eī: lassitude; fatigue.
神疲	shān p'eī: exhausted; without energy.
疲倦	p'eī-kuên: weary, tired.

706

冒	mô: to falsify; to pretend; to risk.
冒充	mô-ch'ung: to pass oneself as.
冒認	mô yìng: to claim falsely.
感冒	kóm-mô: to catch a cold.
冒險家	mô-hím-ka: adventurer.

疲 冒

疲 冒

疲 冐

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

黃二喺醫院,先由看護探熱,驗血壓等等.呢啲係應有嘅手續.看護依着次序,做完呢種工作,對醫生報告.醫生又問黃二關於大小便嘅情形.黃二話佢嘅小便雖然正常,但係大便有些少閉塞.

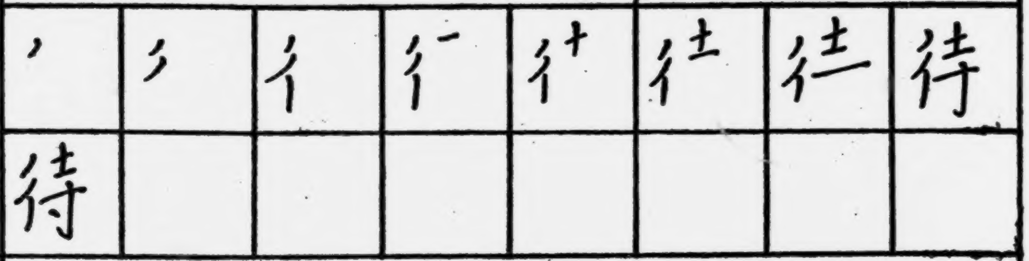
醫生知到黃二近來生活狀况唔正常,疲勞過頭,斷定佢嘅病係流行性感冒.唔會有危險.不過,最好入醫院住幾日可以得到休息,同時又有看護打理.但係黃二以為不必住醫院,醫生開一張藥方 pei佢之後,佢就番屋 k'ei .再等待幾日,然後打算.

LESSON 12

WRITING MATERIAL

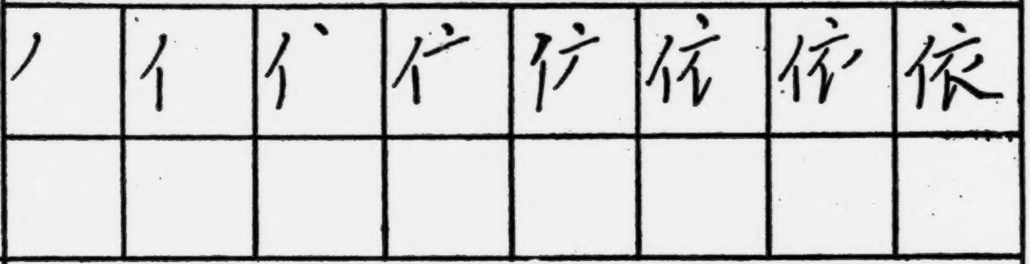
待

Character Number 1185 **Radical Number** 60
Stroke Number 9 彳



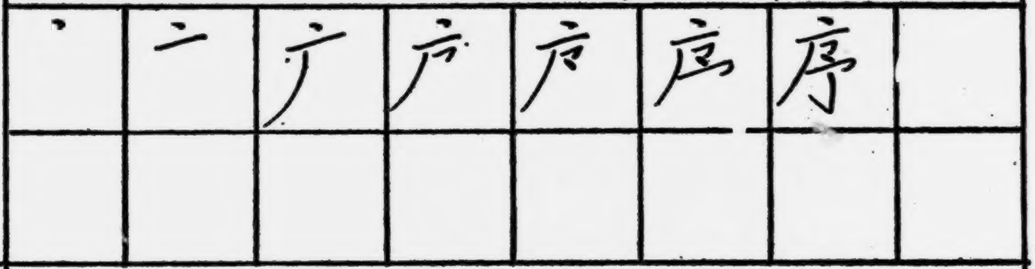
依

Character Number 329 **Radical Number** 9
Stroke Number 8 亻，人



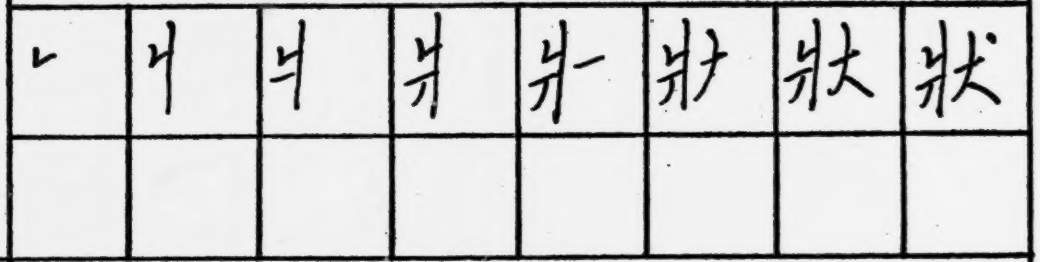
序

Character Number 1310 **Radical Number** 53
Stroke Number 7 广



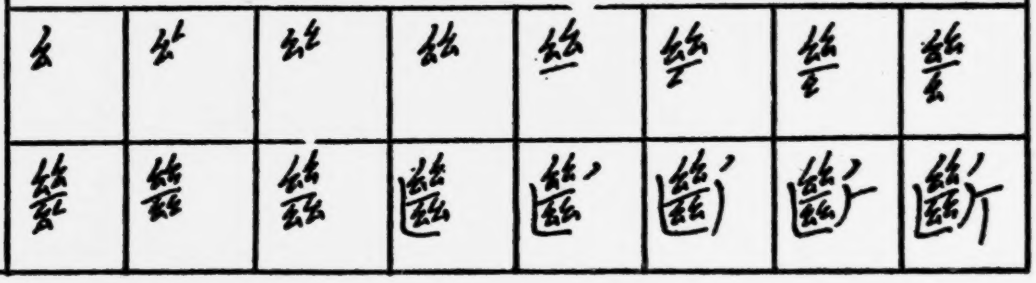
狀

Character Number 114 **Radical Number** 94
Stroke Number 8 犬

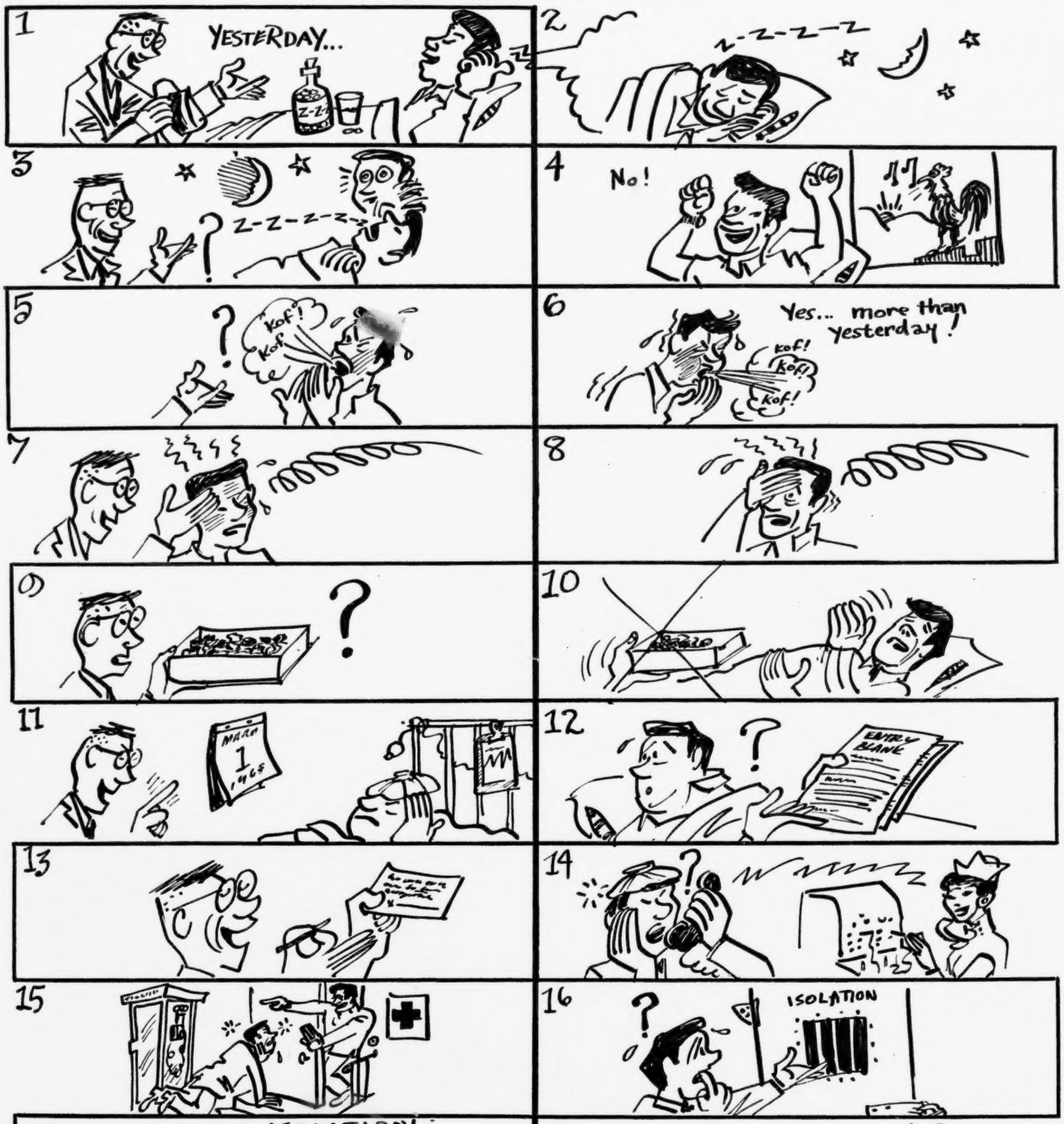


斷

Character Number 1343 **Radical Number** 69
Stroke Number 18 斤



LESSON 13


1
YESTERDAY...
Z-Z-Z
2
Z-Z-Z-Z-Z
3
Z-Z-Z-Z-Z
4
No!
5
Kof!
Kof!
6
Yes... more than yesterday!
Kof!
Kof!
Kof!
7
8
9
10
11
MARCH
1
1965
12
ENTRY BLANK
13
14
15
16
ISOLATION
17
ISOLATION
18
19
20
21
101

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T'ūng-Fōng*. Tsôk-yât neĭ shîk-chôh ti on-mĭn-yeûk p'ìn*, neĭ tsôk-maăn fàn-tak hó ti mà?

W. Ngŏh tsôk-maăn fàn-tak hó hó.

T. Neĭ tsôk-maăn fàn kaaù chi-haû, yaŭ mŏ sěng-kwòh à?

W. Mŏ, uēn-ts'uēn mŏ séng-kwòh, yat-kaaù fàn tò t'in-kwong.

T. Neĭ chûng yaŭ mŏ k'at à?

W. Yaŭ, neĭ t'eng-hĭ, ngŏh k'at-tak peî tsôk-yât chûng kân-iù ti.

T. Neĭ chûng yaŭ mŏ faàt shiu à? Neĭ kòk-tak t'aū-wān mà?

W. Ngŏh chûng yaŭ faàt shiu, ī-ch'ê t'aū hó wān.

T. Neĭ kè waî-haú tîm à?

W. Ngŏh kè waî-haú hó m̄-hó, mi-yĕ to m̄-seúng shîk.

T. Ngŏh ĭ-waî neĭ́ tsuî hó huî i-uên* chuê keî yât.

W. Ngŏh to haî kâm seúng. Yâp i-uên* kè shaú-tsûk mā m̄-mā-faān à?

T. M̄-mā-faān, chuê i-uên* kè shaú-tsûk hó kaán-taan.

W. Ngŏh-teî iù m̄-iù tá tîn-wâ* têng fōng* à?

T. Iù, neĭ meî yâp uên* chi-ts'ĭn, yat-tîng iù têng fōng*.

W. Ni kaan kaàk-leî-shat yaŭ mi-yĕ yûng-ch'uè à?

Kung-Yān. K'uĭ haî yûng laî kaàk-leî pêng-yān kè.

W. Ni-shuè yaŭ kòm toh kaan shaú-shût-shat, k'uĭ-teî yaŭ mi-yĕ yûng-ch'uè à?

Keî-Shût Yān-Yēn. Yaŭ ti haî p'ó-t'ung shaú-shût kè, yaŭ ti

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

haî taaî shaú-shût yûng kè.

W. Siú-Tsê, ngŏh chuê kè pêng-fōng* haî taî keî hô à? K'uĭ haî taan-yān fōng*, yik-waâk taaî fōng* à?

H. Wōng Sin-Shaang, neĭ chuê kè pêng-fōng* haî taî-yat-līng-yat hô, haî yat-kaan hó hó kè taan-yān fōng*.

LESSSON 13

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Roommate. Yesterday you took some sleeping pills, did you sleep better last night?

Wŏng. I slept very well last night.

R. After you fell asleep last night, did you ever wake up.

W. No, I did not awaken at all until daybreak.

R. Do you still cough?

W. Yes, you listen, I cough more severely than yesterday.

R. Do you still have a fever: Does your head feel dizzy?

W. I still have a fever, and my head feels dizzy.

R. How is your appetite?

W. I have a very poor appetite, I do not wish to eat anything.

R. I believe it is best for you to stay at a hospital for a few days.

W. I think so too. Is the hospitalization procedure complicate?

R. No, the hospitalization procedure is very simple.

W. Do we have to make a telephone call in order to reserve a room?

R. Yes, before you are admitted to the hospital, you must reserve a room.

W. For what is this isolation room used?

Worker. It is used for isolating patients.

W. There are so many operating rooms here, for what are they used?

Technician. Some are for ordinary operations, some for major operations.

LESSON 13

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. Miss, what is the number of my ward? Is it a single room or a general ward?

Nurse. Mr. Wŏng, your ward is No. 101; it is a very nice single room.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The ward is so small, but it is crowded.
2. Although this is not a major operation, there are four doctors in the operating room.
3. You have to stay in the isolation room for 24 hours.
4. He was hospitalized after the accident on the highway.
5. Generally speaking, if you want to enter the hospital, you have to have a doctor first.
6. This matter is very complicated and I don't know what to do.
7. I feel dizzy and I do not wish to eat anything.
8. His appetite is very good, but his wife does not wish to eat.
9. The doctor told me not to worry about his fever.
10. After waking up in the morning, she feels dizzy.
11. The doctor was awakened by the nurse to take care of the patient.
12. These pills are very expensive but you need them for your dizziness.
13. You have to be very careful with these pills because they are sleeping drugs.
14. If you do not have a prescription, you cannot get any sleeping drugs.
15. He was put in the ward after staying the isolation room for three days.
16. The operating room of this hospital is very modern.

LESSON 13

WORD LIST

1.	on-mīn-yeûk	sleeping drug
2.	yeûk-p'īn*	medical pills
3.	sêng (sīng)	to wake up, awaken
4.	faàt shiu	to have a fever; fever
5.	t'aū-wān	dizzy; dizziness
6.	waî-haú	appetite
7.	m̄-seúng-shîk	do not wish to eat
8.	m̄-faān	troublesome, complicated
9.	yâp uên*	to enter the hospital, be hospitalized
10.	kaàk-leī-shat	isolation room (hospital)
11.	shaú-shût-shat	operation room (hospital)
12.	taaî-shaú-shût	major operation
13.	pêng-fōng*	ward

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

1025

術 shût: a trick; device; jugglery.

戰術 ch n-shût: military strategy.

學術 hôk-shût: learning.

1114

吞 t'an: to swallow; to gulp down; to appropriate.

吞落 t'an lôk: to swallow down.

吞吐 t'an-t'ò: hesitatingly

1424

胃 waî: stomach; digestion.

胃口 waî-haú: appetite.

開胃 hoi waî: to stimulate the appetite; hearty appetite.

術 吞 胃

術 吞 胃

術 吞 胃

316

勸 huèn: to advise; exhort

勸導 huèn-tô: to advise; counsel

勸告 huèn-kò: advice; to advise; admonish

勸人 huèn yān: to give advice to some body

1393

願 uên: willing; to desire; wish for; to long for.

自願 tsẑ uên: of one's own free will.

願意 uên ì: willing; favorably inclined.

請願 ts'éng uên: a petition.

勸 劝 願

勸 願

勸 願

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

1055

需 sui: needful; to need; supplies.

需要 sui-iù: the needful; necessary.

必需 pit-sui: necessary; required.

急需 kap sui: to require urgently.

施 shi: to grant; to bestow aid; to confer on.

施舍 shi-shé: to give alms.

施行 shi-hāng: to carry out; to enforce.

535

拒 k'uĭ: to resist; to oppose; to refuse; to reject.

拒絶 k'uĭ-tsuêt: to refuse; to reject.

拒敵 k'uĭ tĭk: to resist an enemy

需　　施　　拒

需　　施　　拒

需　　施　　拒

1304

絶 tsuêt: to cut off; to sever; to destroy; to stop; the most.

絶路 tsuêt lô: dead end road; death road.

絶命 tsuêt mêng: to cut life short; death.

32

趁 ch'àn: to embrace an opportunity; whilst.

趁機會 ch'àn-kei-ooî: to take advantage of the opportunity

趁早 ch'àn-tsó: while it is early.

絶　　趁

絶　　趁

绝　　趁

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

醫院係醫病人嘅地方,如果需要施手術,就一定要入醫院至得.有啲人以為入醫院手續麻煩,或有其他嘅理由,雖然病得好緊要,亦拒絕入醫院. kôm 樣係唔應該嘅.

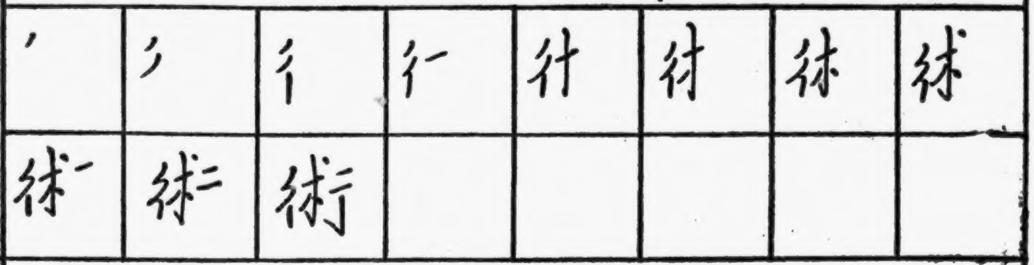
黃二初時亦唔想入醫院,但係佢歸家之後,呑食阻醫生開pei佢嘅藥片之後,重有發燒,重覺得頭 wān ,胃口極之唔好,乜野都唔想食.佢嘅同房以為佢應該趁早入醫院住幾日.如果等到病情加重,就會太遲啦.就勸黃二早啲入醫院.黃二本來亦都明白嘅.佢而家亦願意敢做,就由同房替佢定阻第一零一號嘅單人房.

LESSON 13

WRITING MATERIAL

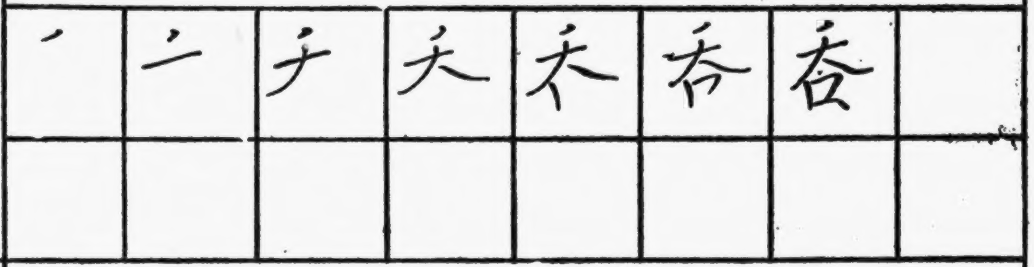
術

Character Number 1025 Radical Number 144
Stroke Number 11 行



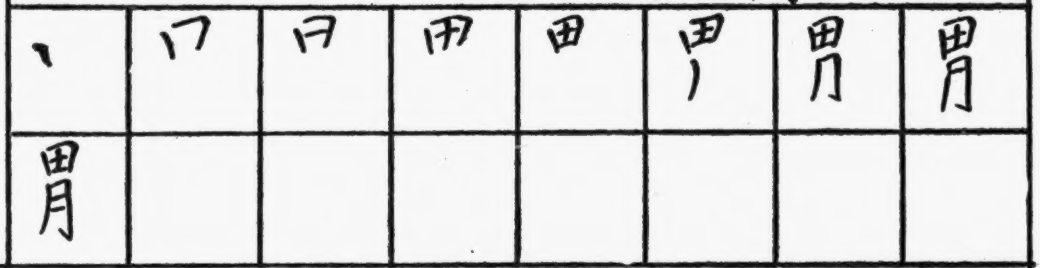
呑

Character Number 1114 Radical Number 30
Stroke Number 7 口



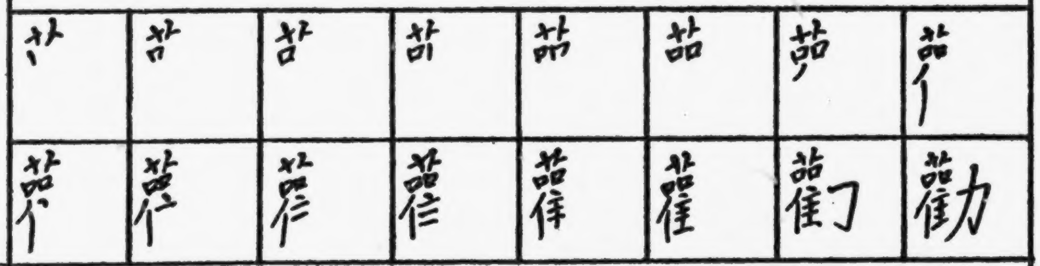
胃

Character Number 1424 Radical Number 130
Stroke Number 9 月，肉



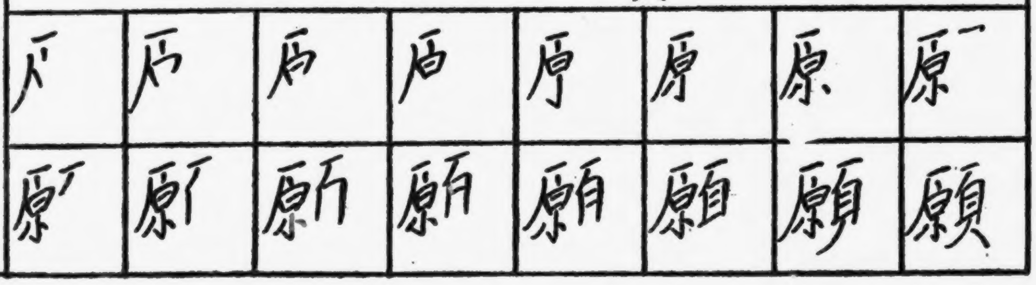
勸

Character Number 316 Radical Number 19
Stroke Number 20 力

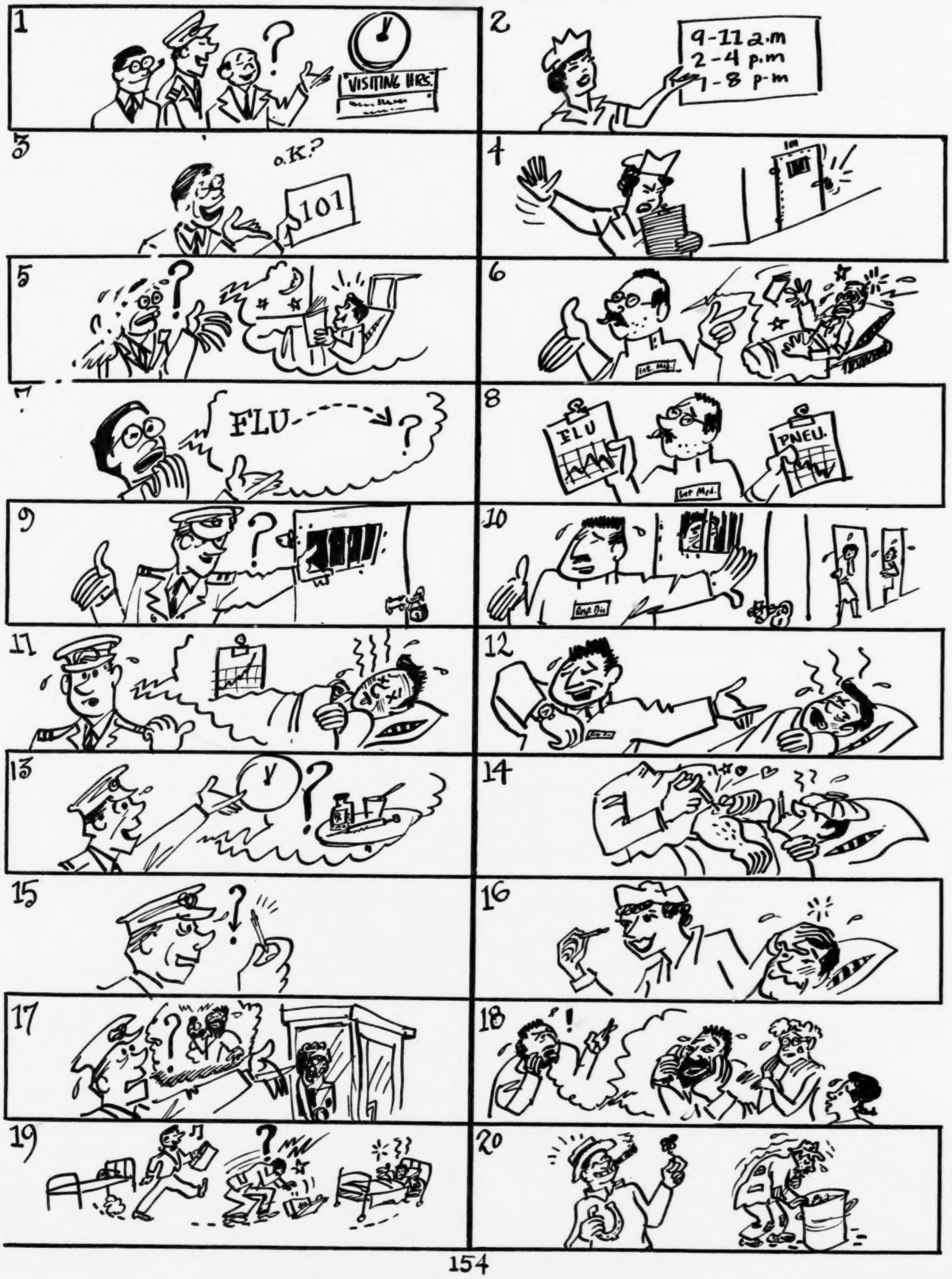


願

Character Number 1393 Radical Number 181
Stroke Number 19 頁



LESSON 14


1
?
VISITING HRS.
2
9-11 a.m
2-4 p.m
7-8 p-m
3
O.K.?
101
4
5
?
6
7
FLU
?
8
FLU
PNEU.
Int. Med.
9
?
10
11
12
13
?
14
15
?
16
17
?
18
!
19
?
20

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Leĭ-Seì, Ch'ān-Tung, Sheûng-Waì. Ts'îng mân t'aàm pêng kè shì-kaàn haî yaū keî tîm tò keî tîm à?

Mân-Sẑ-Ch'uè kè Paân-Sẑ-uēn. Sheûng-nğ yaū kaú-tîm tò shâp-yat-tîm, hâ-nğ yaū leŭng-tîm tò seì-tîm, yê-maăn yaū ts'at-tîm tò paàt-tîm.

Leĭ. Ngŏh seúng huì yat-lìng-yat-hô pêng-fōng* t'aàm pêng, tak mà?

P. Tuì-m̄-chuê, m̄-tak. Kóh kòh pêng-yān ĭ-king peî kaàk-leì-chóh.

L. Tîm-kaaî à? Tsôk-maăn k'uĭ chûng hó-teî-teî; tîm-kaaî pìn-fà-tak kòm faaì kà?

Noî-Foh Chué-Yâm. Pêng yaŭ shì pìn-fà-tak hó faaì kè.

L. K'uĭ tsuì ch'oh kè pêng haî laū-haāng-shìng kóm-mô, haû-loì chuèn-chóh tsô mi-yĕ pêng à?

N. K'uĭ tsuì ch'oh kè pêng haî laū-haāng-shìng kóm-mô, haû-loì chuèn-chóh tsô kap-shìng faì-ìm.

S. Tîm-kaaî neĭ-teî iù cheung k'uĭ kaàk-leì ne?

Foo-k'ap-Pêng-Foh chué-yâm. Waî k'eì-t'a pêng-yān kè on-ts'uēn heì-kìn, shóh-ĭ ngŏh-teî cheung k'uĭ kaàk-leì.

S. K'uĭ faàt ît faàt tò tsuì ko kè shì-haû, k'uĭ yaŭ mŏ fan-maì à?

F. Kóh chân-shì k'uĭ ch'a-m̄-toh uēn-ts'uēn fan-maì, uēn-ts'uēn pat-sîng-yān-sẑ.

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

S. Haû-loì neĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* i k'uĭ à?

F. Haû-loì ngŏh-teî t'ūng k'uĭ tá t'uì-ît cham t'ūng k'eūng-sam cham.

S. Ī-ka t'uì-chóh ît meî à?

Hon-Oô. T'uì-chóh hó toh là, taân-haî chûng yaŭ ti ît.

S. K'uĭ tsuì ngaì-hîm kè shĭ-haû, neĭ-teî yaŭ mŏ t'ung-chi k'uĭ kè ts'an-shûk?

N. Yaŭ, k'uĭ tsuì ngaì-hîm kè shĭ-haû, ngŏh-teî t'ung-chi k'uĭ kè ts'an-shûk.

L. Ni kòh pêng ooĭ m̄-ooĭ fûk-faât kà.

I-Shang. Yaŭ-hâng-yaŭ-pat-hâng, ni tîm iù t'aì yat-kòh yān kè ts'oì-shò.

LESSON 14

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Leĭ-Seì. Captain Ch'ăn-Tung. What are the hours for visiting patients?

Employee at the Information Office. From nine to eleven in the morning, from two to four in the afternoon, from seven to eight in the evening .

L. I wish to go to Ward 101 to visit a patient, is it all right?

Employee. I am sorry you may not. That patient has been isolated.

L. Why? Last night he was still all right. Why has his condition changed so quickly?

Chief of Internal Medicine. Illnesses sometimes change very rapidly.

L. His original illness was influenza, what did it develop into later?

C. His original illness was influenza, later it developed into acute pneumonia.

Captain. Why must you isolate him?

Chief of Respiratory Diseases Section. We isolated him for the sake of the safety of the other patients.

Captain. When his fever reached its height, did he become unconscious?

C. At that time he was almost completely unconscious.

Captain. What did you treat him with later?

LESSON 14

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

C. We later gave him a fever-relief and a heart stimulant injection.

Captain. Has the fever receded now?

Nurse. It has receded a lot, but he still has a slight temperature.

Captain. When his condition was most dangerous, did you inform his relatives?

Chief of Internal Medicine. Yes, at the time his condition was most critical we informed his relatives.

Leǐ. Will this sickness recur?

Doctor. Some people are fortunate and some are not, this will depend on the person's luck.

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. You are really very lucky. It is very true that some people are fortunate and some are not.
2. It appears that he has a relapse of malaria.
3. She became unconscious, and the doctor informed her relatives immediately.
4. I suggested a heart stimulant injection for this patient immediately.
5. This is the first time that I have heard of this fever relief injection.
6. For the sake of safety, the chief of internal medicine at the hospital called in two more doctors for the diagnosis.
7. This is not the "Respiratory Diseases Section". I think you better go to the information office first.
8. She was still all right last night, but this morning her condition had changed a great deal.
9. Dr. Wong is the doctor who took care of the unconscious patient.
10. Please do not worry. I will definitely tell you if it is acute pneumonia.
11. This office employee works in the information office but he doesn't know anything.
12. Dr. Lee has to go to visit a patient in San Francisco tomorrow.

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

13. When your fever reaches its height, you will be unconscious.

14. Depending on his luck, he may be worse or he may recover completely.

15. Every patient will be isolated for 24 hours as they enter this hospital.

LESSON 14

WORD LIST

1.	t'aàm pêng	to visit a patient
2.	mân-sẑ-ch'uè	information office
3.	paân-sẑ-uēn	office employee
4.	chûng hó-teî-teî	still good, still all right
5.	pìn-fà	to change
6.	noî-foh chuê-yâm	chief of internal medicine
7.	kap-sìng faì-ìm	acute pneumonia
8.	foo-k'ap-pêng-foh	respiratory diseases section
9.	on-ts'uēn	safety; safe
10.	waî...heì-kìn	for the sake of...
11.	fan-maî	unconscious
12.	pat-síng-yān-sẑ	unconscious
13.	t'uì-ît cham	fever relief injection
14.	k'eūng-sam cham	heart stimulant injection
15.	t'ung-chi	to inform
16.	ts'an-shûk	relatives
17.	fûk-faàt	to relapse, recur
18.	yaŭ-hâng-yaŭ-pat-hâng	some people are fortunate and some are not
19.	ts'oì-shò	luck

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

142

准 chún: to allow; permit

唔准 m̄-chún: not allowed

準期 chún-kēi: on time

419

吸 k'ap: to attract; to inhale.

吸力 k'ap-lîk: attracting force.

吸引 k'ap-yǎn: to draw; to attract.

呼吸 foo-k'ap: to breath; respiration.

吸收 k'ap-shau: to absorb.

1320

速 ts'uk: haste; quick; speedy.

速記 ts'uk kèi: shorthand.

速度 ts'uk tô: velocity; speed.

准 吸 速

准 吸 速

准 吸 速

226

復 fûk: to come back; again

復原 fûk-uēn: to recover from sickness

恢復 fooi-fûk: recuperate(back to normal condition)

1415

慰 wài: to comfort; to soothe; to caress.

安慰 on-wài: to comfort; to please.

慰問 wài-mân: to inquire after health.

慰勞 wài-lō: to comfort those who labor.

復 慰

復 慰

復 慰

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

1088

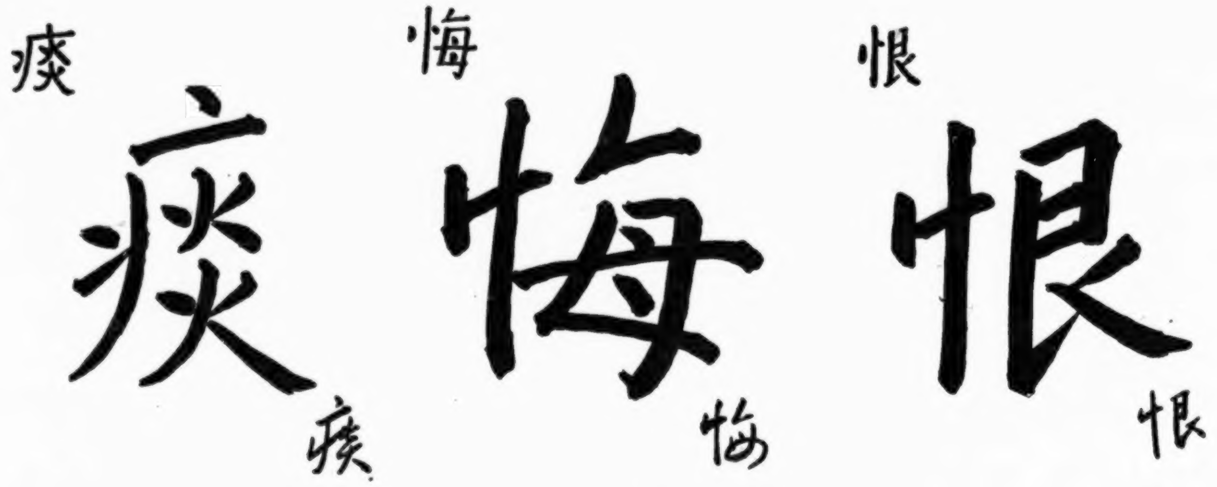
痰	t'aām: phlegm; mucus.
生痰	shaang t'aām: troubled with phlegm
吐痰	t'ò t'aām: expectorate

220

悔	fooì: to repent; contrition; to regret
痛悔	t'ùng-fooì: bitterly regret
悔改	fooì-koí: to repent and reform
後悔	haû-fooì: remorse

253

恨	hân: to hate; resent; crave
恨錢	hân ts'În*: avaricious.
悔恨	fooì-hân: remorse; regret
懷恨	waaī hân: cherish; hate.

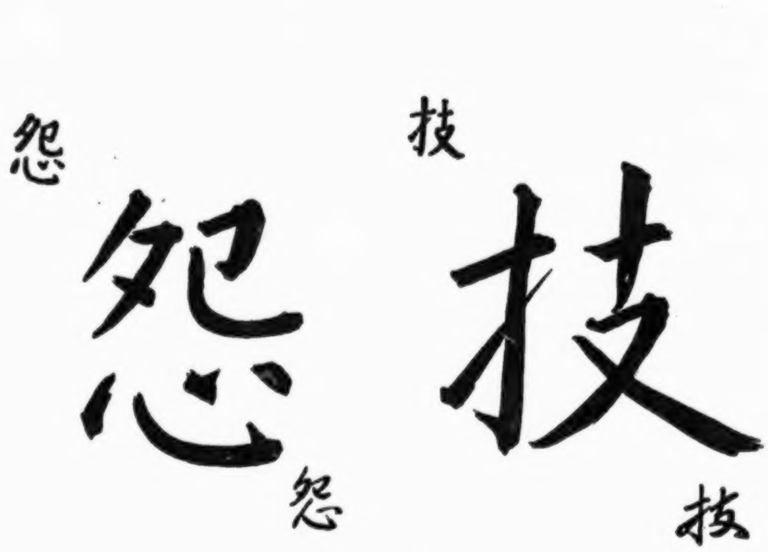


1382

怨	uèn: indignant with; to regret; to grumble; to complain.
怨恨	uèn-hân: to hate.
怨言	uèn-Īn : grumbling complaint.

444

技	keî: dexterous; skill.
技能	keî-nāng: talent; ability; skill.
絶技	tsuêt keî: extraordinary skill.



LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

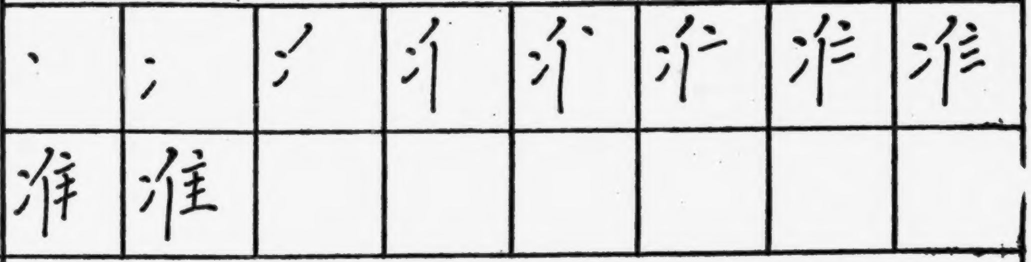
我地對於應該做嘅事，最好即刻做，遲阻就會發生變化。尤其是喺有病要入醫院。黃二因為遲阻入醫院，佢嘅流行性感冒，就變阻做急性肺 im。醫院要將佢隔離，因為恐怕佢傳染 pei 別人。

醫院喺每日一定嘅時間，係准人入去探病。黃二嘅朋友去探佢，見佢呼吸嘅速度好快，有時吐好多痰。黃二知到自己病情嚴重，亦都悔恨唔早啲入醫院。唔只現在受苦，更憂心將來復發，佢冇乜好怨，只係怨自己。佢嘅朋友安慰佢一番就離去啦。

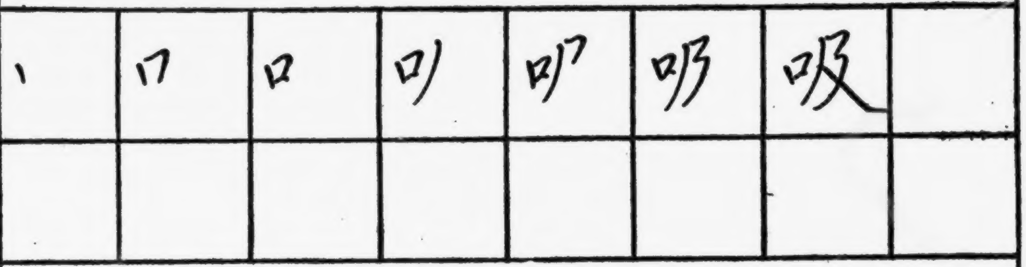
LESSON 14

WRITING MATERIAL

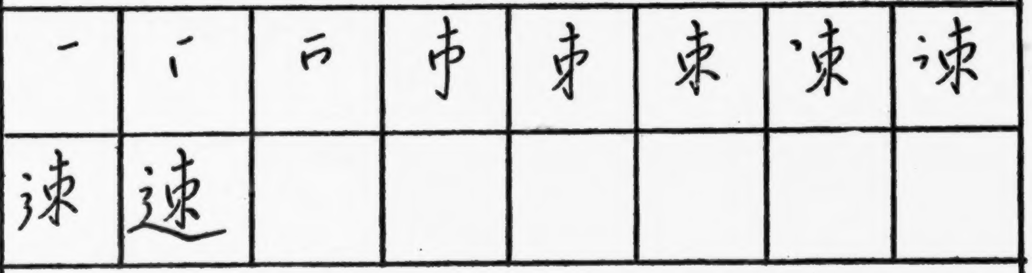
准	Character Number 142 Stroke Number 10	Radical Number 15 冫



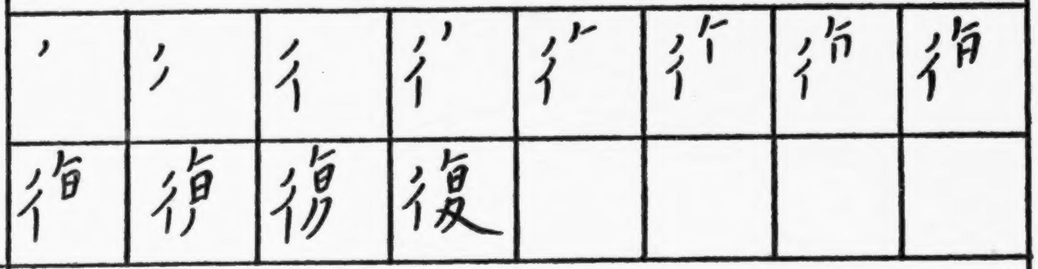
吸	Character Number 419 Stroke Number 7	Radical Number 30 口



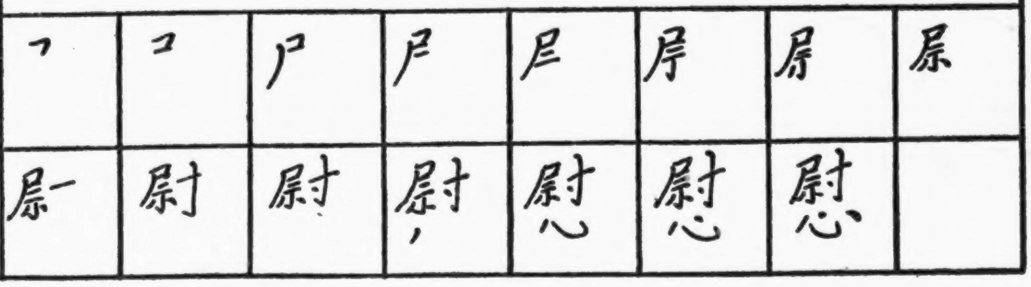
速	Character Number 1320 Stroke Number 10	Radical Number 162 辶，辵



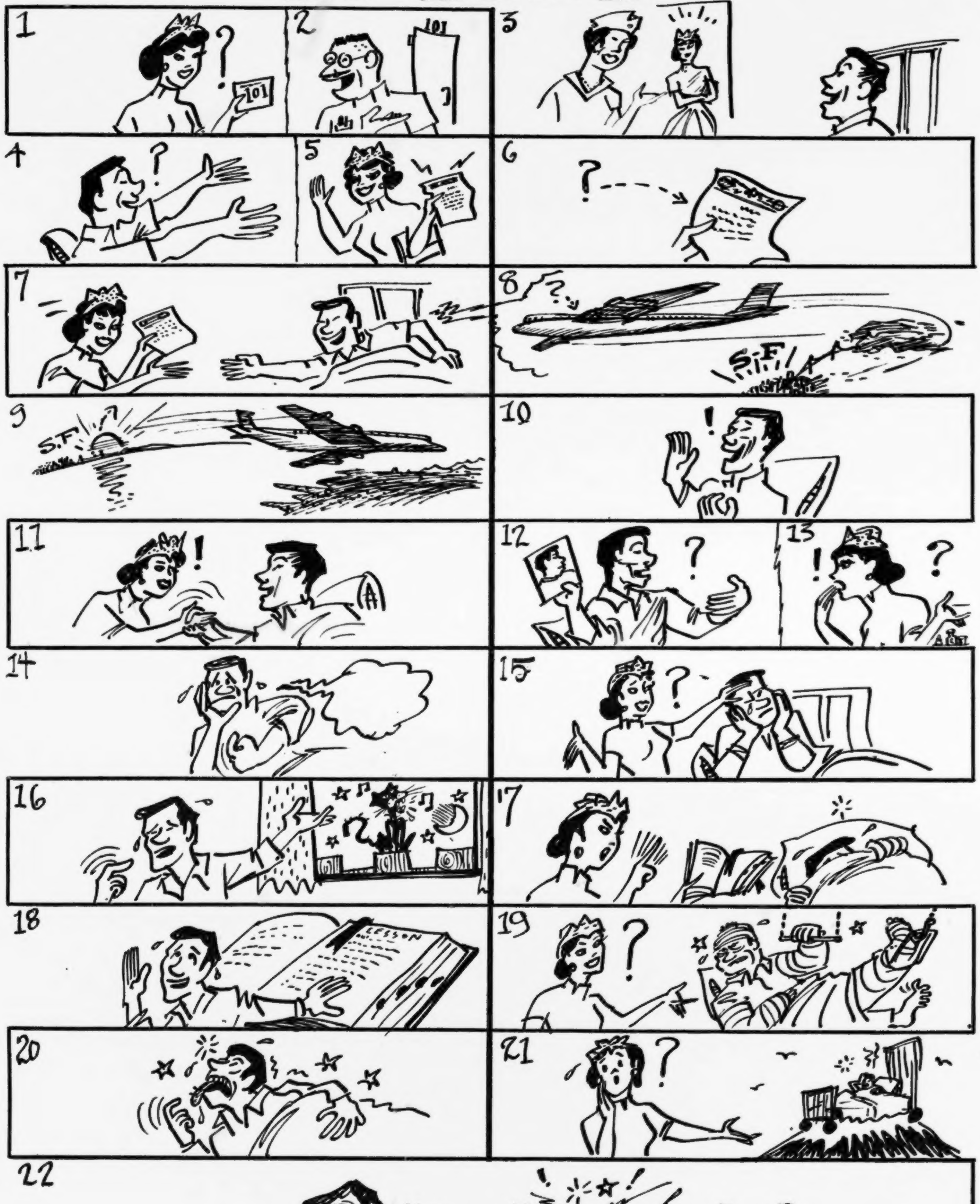
復	Character Number 226 Stroke Number 12	Radical Number 60 彳



慰	Character Number 1415 Stroke Number 15	Radical Number 61 心



LESSON 15


1
101
2
101
3
4
5
6
7
8
S.F.
9
S.F.
10
11
A
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
LESSON
19
20
21
22

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Hōh-Fong-Laān. Ngŏh seúng huì yat-lìng-yat hô pêng-fōng* t'aàm pêng, tak mà?

Chîk paan i-shaang. Tak à, kôh kaan haî yat-lìng-yat hô pêng-fōng*.

Hon-Oô. Wōng Sin-Shaang, yaŭ waî* hó lèng kè siú-tsê laì t'aì neĭ.

Wōng-Î. Fong-Laān, uēn-loì haî neĭ à? Neĭ tîm chi ngŏh pêng à?

H. Ngŏh shau tò neĭ foô-ts'an tá laì kè yat-fung kap tîn

W. Kóh fung tîn-pò tîm wâ à?

H. K'uĭ kiù ngŏh tsik-hak laì t'aì neĭ.

W. Neĭ haî m̄-haî yaū Saam-Faān-Shĭ chîk-tsìp fei laì kà?

H. Haî, ngŏh kam-chiu yaū Saam-Faān-Shĭ chîk-tsìp fei laì kè.

W. Neĭ tuì ngŏh kòm hó, ngŏh m̄-chi tîm-yeûng* kóm-kik neĭ.

H. Ni ti haî p'aāng-yaŭ kè poón-fân.

W. Neĭ kòk-tak ngŏh shaù-chóh hó toh, haî mà?

H. Neĭ shaù-chóh hó toh. Tîm-kaaì neĭ pêng shēng kóm à?

W. Ni ti to iù kwaaì ngŏh tsẑ-keì m̄-siú-sam, ngŏh yaŭ mat hó kóng!

H. Neĭ tîm-kaaì iù kwaaì neĭ tsẑ-keì à?

W. Ngŏh kwaaì ngŏh kân-loì shì shì ngaaì yê*.

H. King-kwòh ni ts'z̀ taaî pêng chi-haû, neĭ ying-koi tak-tò yat-kòh kaaù-fàn, haî mà?

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. Haî kè*, ngŏh ĭ-king tak-tô yat-kòh hó taaî kè kaaû-fàn.

H. Neĭ kòk-tak lîng yān tsuì t'ùng-foó kè yĕ haî mi-yĕ ne?

W. Ngŏh ĭ-waî lîng yān tsuì t'ùng-foó kè yĕ haî pêng.

H. Yat-kòh yān uē-kwóh yaŭ pêng, yaû mŏ yān tá-leĭ k'uĭ kè
shì-haû, tîm-yeûng* à?

W. Uē-kwóh haî kóm, k'uĭ kàng t'ùng-foó.

LESSON 15

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Hōh-Fong-Laān. I wish to go to Ward 101 to visit a patient, may I?

Doctor on duty. You may, that is Ward 101.

Nurse. Mr. Wōng, you have a pretty lady who has come to see you.

Wōng-Î. Fong-Laān, is that you? How did you know I was sick?

Hōh. I received your father's emergency telegram.

Wōng. What did that telegram say?

Hōh. He asked me to come to see you immediately.

Wōng. Did you fly here directly from San Francisco?

Hōh. Yes, this morning I flew here directly from San Francisco.

Wōng. You are so kind to me. I don't know how to repay you for this kindness.

Hōh. This is the duty of a friend.

Wōng. You see I am much thinner, right?

Hōh. You are much thinner. Why have you become so sick?

Wōng. For this I must blame myself for not being careful. What can I say?

Hōh. Why must you blame yourself?

Wōng. I blame myself for staying up late at night too often recently.

LESSON 15

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Hŏh. After going through this severe illness, you ought to have learned a lesson. Am I right?

Wŏng. Yes, I have already learned a great lesson.

Hŏh. What do you think is most painful to a person?

Wŏng. I think sickness causes a person the most pain.

Hŏh. What if a person is sick and has no one to look after him.

Wŏng. If so, he suffers more.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I have to blame myself for being so sick.
2. What he is doing will make others suffer more.
3. I learned a lesson from the accident I had last year.
4. She was much thinner when I saw her in Hong Kong.
5. I shall try my best to do my work when I am on duty here.
6. Even though he is not on duty at the moment, it is every doctor's duty to help the sick and the injured.
7. This emergency telegram was sent from San Francisco.
8. She was so kind to my mother and I am most grateful to her.
9. I think it is best if you would talk to her directly.
10. He is used to staying up late at night on weekends.
11. I shall receive a letter and some money from my father soon.
12. Can I help you, lady?
13. Are you on duty here, Miss?
14. I think you and I have the same feeling about this matter.
15. He is severely ill but his wife suffers more looking after him.
16. Without any money may not be most painful, but it certainly will be most difficult.

LESSON 15

WORD LIST

1.	kóm-seúng	feeling, thought
2.	chîk paan	on duty
3.	siú-tsé	miss, girl, lady
4.	shau-tò	to receive
5.	kap tîn	emergency telegram
6.	Saam-Fāan-Shĭ	San Francisco
7.	chîk-tsìp	directly
8.	tuì...hó	kind to
9.	kóm-kik	grateful to
10.	poón-fân	one's duty
11.	shaù-chóh	to become thinner
12.	pêng-shēng-kóm	to be so sick
13.	kwaaì ngŏh tsẑ-keì	to blame myself
14.	ngaaì yê*	to stay up late at night
15.	kaaù-fàn	lesson (one's experience)
16.	lîng yān t'ùng-foó	to make one suffer
17.	kàng	more

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

897

搬 poon: to move; to remove; to transport.

搬屋 poon uk: to change one's residence.

搬運 poon-wân: to transport elsewhere.

763

念 nîm: to ponder; to remember.

念書 nîm shue: to recite a lesson from memory; to go to school.

念頭 nîm-t'aū: thought; reflection.

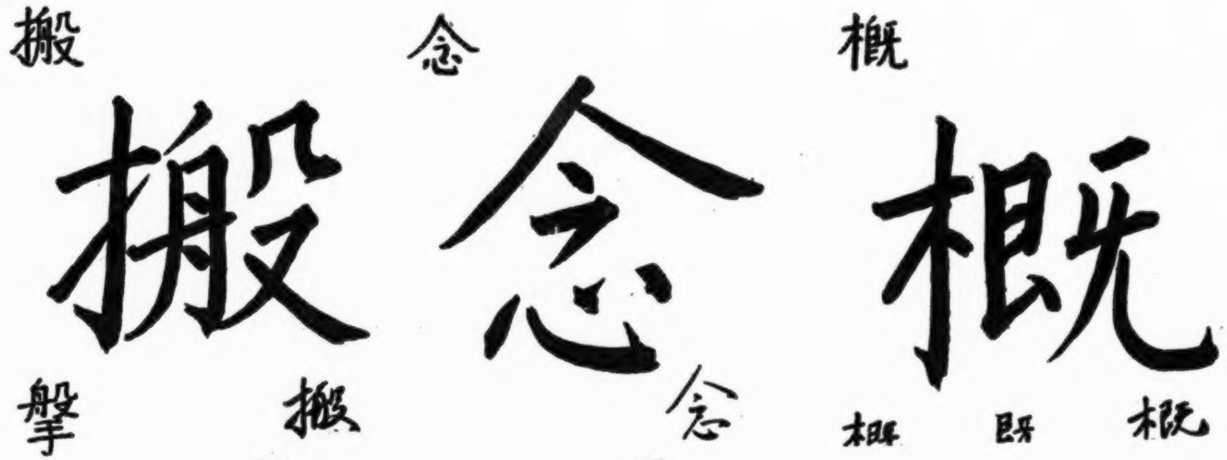
488

概 k'oì: the whole; altogether; in general.

大概 taaî-k'oì: probably; on the whole.

一概 yat-k'oì: altogether; entirely.

概論 k'oì-lûn: general outlines; sketch.



643

淚 luî: tears; to cry.

流淚 laū luî: to shed tears.

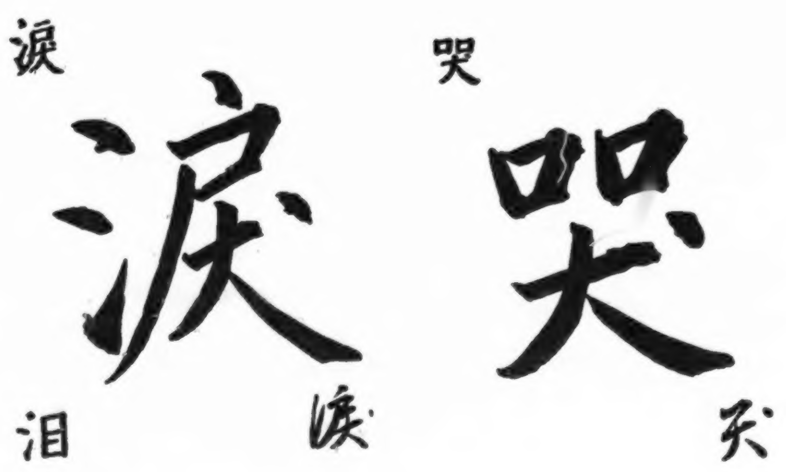
含淚 hām luî: tears in one's eyes.

眼淚 ngaăn-luî: tear drops.

321

哭 huk: to weep; wail; cry.

啼哭 t'aī-huk: wailing and weeping



LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

1062

鬆	sung: loose; slack; to let go.
放鬆	fòng-sung: to loosen; to ease off.
鬆身	sung shan: free; relaxed.

741

悟	nĝ: to arouse; to awake; to discern.
醒悟	síng-nĝ: to awaken; to be aroused.
覺悟	kòk-nĝ: to understand; to perceive.
悔悟	fooì-nĝ: to repent.

742

誤	nĝ: to mistake; to err.
誤會	nĝ-ooî: misapprehension; misunderstanding.
錯誤	ts'òh-nĝ: mistake; error.

鬆　　悟　　誤

鬆　　悟　　誤

鬆　　悟　　误

938

稍	shaaú: a little; to sprout slowly
稍可	shaaú hóh: fairly good.
稍知	shaaú chi: to have some knowledge of

452

激	kik: to provoke; arouse; excite.
激嬲	kik nau: to provoke; exasperate.
激烈	kik-lît: vehement; radical; violent.
感激	kóm-kik: deeply grateful.
激動	kik-tûng: to excite; to rouse up.

稍　　激

稍　　激

稍　　激

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

黃二經過幾日之後，病情減輕，差唔多完全退熱，頭部胸部，亦覺得鬆chǒh好多。醫院搬佢番去第一零一號房啦。佢知道冇危險，稍為安心。但係有好多感想。對於唔早啲入醫院嘅錯誤，佢而家亦都覺悟啦。

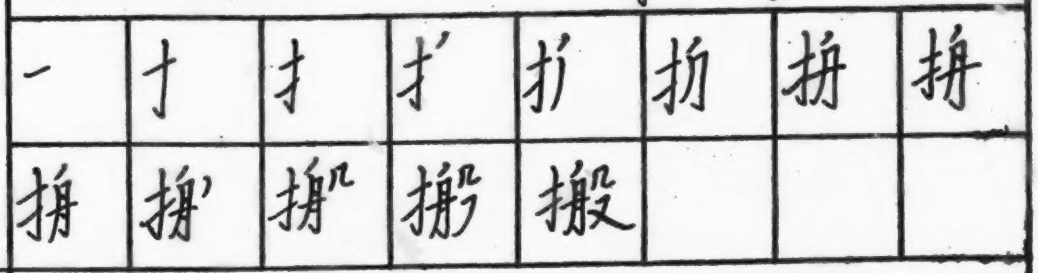
同時，佢極之思念一個人，呢個人就係佢嘅女朋友何小姐。大概佢嘅父親亦都知道佢嘅心事，打一封急電pei何小姐。何小姐即刻由三Faān市taàp飛機黎見佢。佢見到何小姐嘅時候，非常之感激，差唔多流出眼淚，如果唔係有看護喺處，佢真係要大哭一場lá。

LESSON 15

WRITING MATERIAL

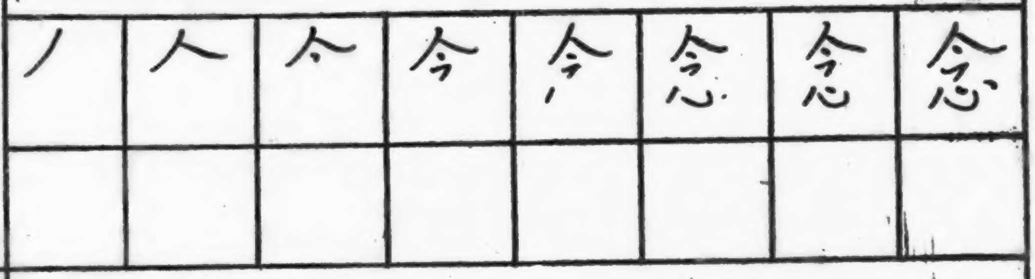
搬

Character Number 897 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 13 扌，手



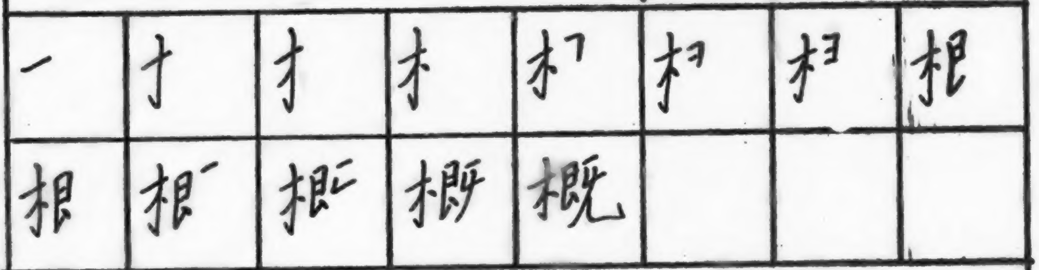
念

Character Number 763 Radical Number 61
Stroke Number 8 心



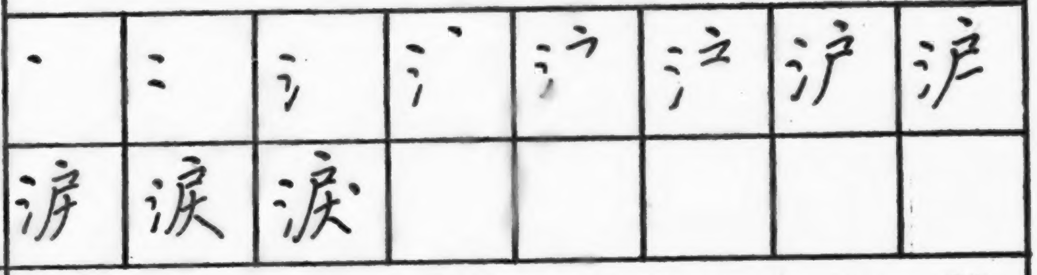
概

Character Number 488 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 13 木，木



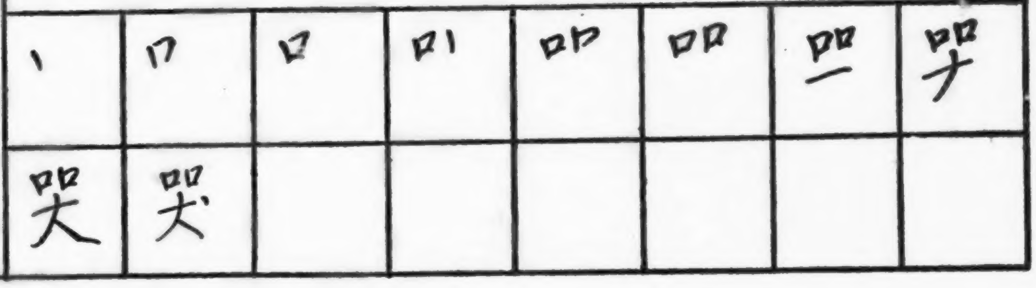
淚

Character Number 643 Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 11 氵，水

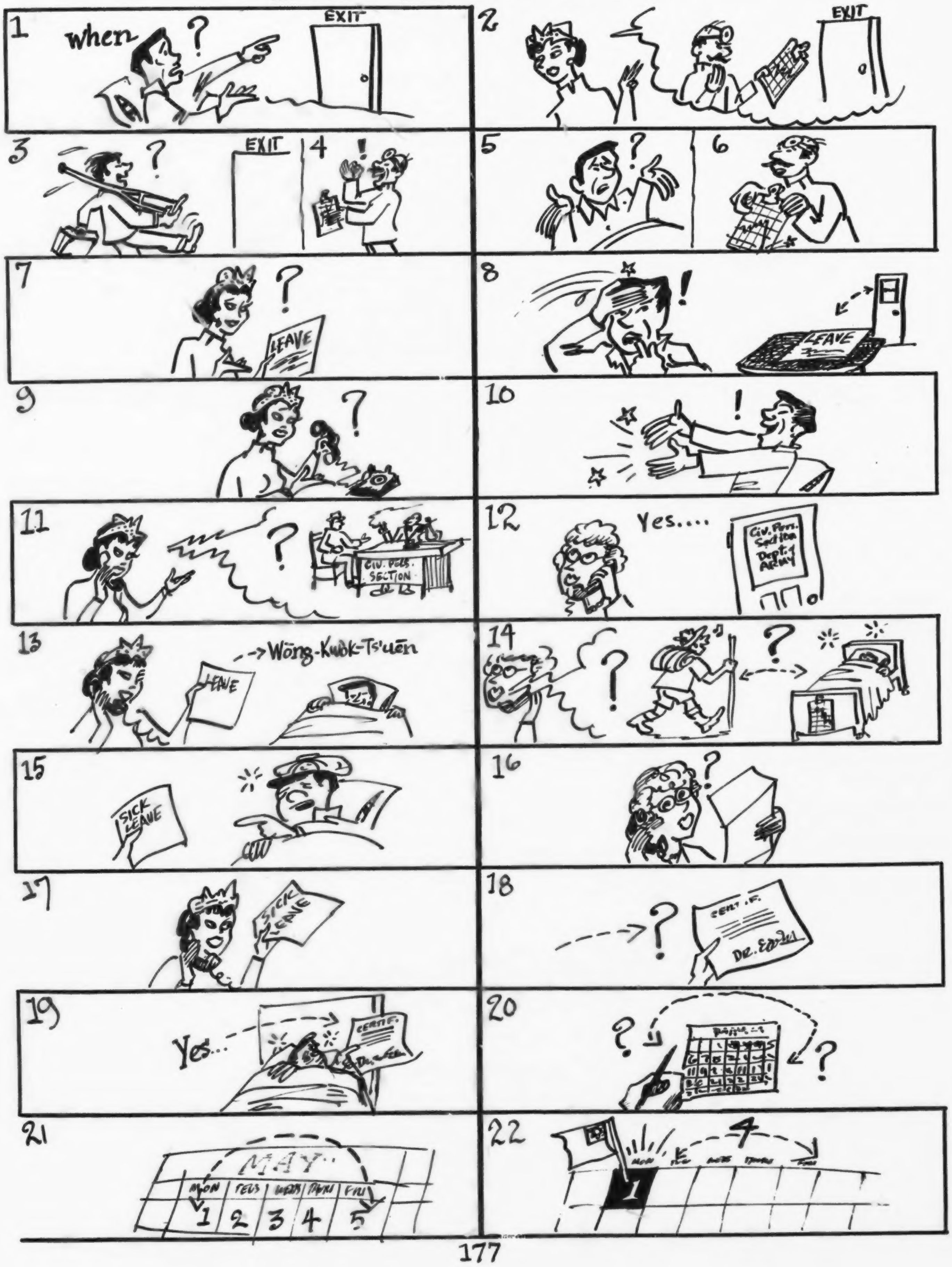


哭

Character Number 321 Radical Number 30
Stroke Number 10 口



LESSON 16


1
when ?
EXIT
2
EXIT
3
?
EXIT
4
!
5
?
6
7
?
LEAVE
8
!
LEAVE
9
?
10
!
11
?
CIV. PERS. SECTION
12
Yes....
Civ. Pers. Section Dept. of Army
13
Wōng-Kwòk-Ts'uēn
LEAVE
14
?
?
15
SICK LEAVE
16
?
17
SICK LEAVE
18
?
CERT. F.
Dr.
19
Yes...
CERTIF.
20
?
?
21
MAY
MON TUES WED THUR FRI
1 2 3 4 5
22
4
MON TUE WED THUR FRI
1

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î. I-shaang wâ ngŏh keì shì hóh-ĭ ch'ut uên* à?

Hōh-Fong-Laān. I-shaang wâ, neĭ chûng yaŭ keì yât chì hóh-ĭ ch'ut uên*.

W. Ngŏh iù m̄-iù táng uēn-ts'uēn fooi-fûk kîn-hong chì ch'ut uên* à?

Ch'ān I-Shaang. Neĭ tsuì hó táng neĭ uēn-ts'uēn fooi-fûk kîn-hong chì ch'ut uên*.

W. Tîm-kaaî à, Ch'ān I-Shaang?

I-Shaang. Neĭ tuì ni chúng pêng kè taî-k'òng-lîk hó yeûk, hó yūng-î fûk-faàt.

H. Kwòk-Ts'uēn, Neĭ heùng neĭ kè sé-tsẑ-laū ts'èng kà meî à?

W. Â! Ngŏh chûng meî heùng sé-tsẑ-laū ts'èng kà.

H. Neĭ seúng m̄-seúng ngŏh t'ūng neĭ heùng sé-tsẑ-laū ts'èng kà à?

W. Hó à, m̄-koi neĭ t'ūng ngŏh tá tîn-wâ* huì kóh-shuè la.

H. Ts'ìng mân ni-shuè haî Lûk-Kwan-Pô mān-chik yān-uēn yān-sẑ-ch'uè mà?

Nuĭ-Shue-Keì. Haî à, ni-shuè haî Lûk-Kwan-Pô mān-chik yān-uēn yān-sẑ-ch'uè.

H. Ngŏh seúng t'ūng ngŏh kè p'aāng-yaŭ Wōng-Kwòk-Ts'uēn ts'éng kà.

N. K'uĭ seúng ts'éng sẑ-kà yik-waâk pêng-kà?

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

H. K'uĭ seúng pó ts'êng pêng-kà.

N. K'uĭ seúng pó paân pêng-kà kè shaú-tsûk, haî mà?

H. Haî, k'uĭ seúng pó paân pêng-kà kè shaú-tsûk.

N. K'uĭ yaŭ mŏ i-shaang chî à?

H. Yaŭ, k'uĭ yaŭ i-shaang chî.

N. K'uĭ seúng ts'êng keî-toh yât pêng-kà? Yaū pin yât tò pin yât à?

H. K'uĭ seúng ts'êng nğ-yât pêng-kà, yaū ni kòh Laĭ-Paaî- Yat tò Laĭ-Paaî-Nğ.

N. Ni kòh Shing-K'eî-Yat fòng kà, k'uĭ ts'êng seî-yât kaù là.

LESSON 16

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng-Ī̂. When did the doctor say I could leave the hospital?

Hōh-Fong-Laān. The doctor said you still have a few days before you can leave the hospital.

Wōng. Must I wait till I have fully recovered before I leave the hospital?

Doctor Ch'ān. It is best for you to have fully recovered before you leave the hospital.

Wōng. Why, Doctor Ch'ān?

Doctor. Your resistance against this kind of disease is very weak. It is easy for you to have a relapse.

Hōh. Kwòk-Ts'uēn, have you requested leave from your office?

Wōng. Âh! I have not requested leave from the office.

Hōh. Do you want me to request leave from the office for you?

Wōng. Good. Please make a telephone call there for me.

Hōh. Is this the Civilian Personnel Section, Department of the Army, please?

Secretary. Yes, this is the Civilian Personnel Section, Department of the Army.

Hōh. I wish to request leave for my friend Wōng-Kwòk-Ts'uēn.

Secretary. Does he want to request ordinary leave or sick leave?

Hōh. He wants to make up a request for sick leave.

LESSON 16

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Secretary. He wants to make up the matter of requesting a sick leave, is that right?

Hŏh. Right, he wants to make up the matter of requesting a sick leave.

Secretary. Does he have a doctor's certificate?

Hŏh. Yes, he has a doctor's certificate.

Secretaray. How many days for sick leave does he want to request? From what day to what day?

Hŏh. He wants to request five days of sick leave, from Monday to Friday of this week.

Secretary. This Monday is a holiday, it is sufficient for him to request four days of leave.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. If you wish to request a sick leave, you need a doctor's certificate.
2. February 22 is Washington's birthday, and it will be a holiday.
3. She has been working at the Civilian Personnel Office for more than ten years.
4. No patient will be discharged from this hospital on any Sunday afternoon.
5. If a student wishes to be graduated next month, he should make up all the required procedures within this week.
6. The personnel office is very nice allowing you to make up the request for sick leave almost a month later.
7. The doctor said that she is still weak and needs a great deal of rest.
8. May I request an ordinary leave of three days this weekend?
9. Please talk to Capt. Ma about this. He takes care of all the requests for leave.
10. If you walk toward the north for two blocks, you will find my office.
11. This man has no resistance at all. He may never recover.
12. A doctor's certificate is not sufficient because I need more proof.
13. The nurse told me that he had a relapse last night.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. He was fully recovered and left the hospital yesterday.
15. I don't think your resistance against this kind of disease is strong enough.
16. Doctor, do you think I will be able to leave the hospital this weekend?

LESSON 16

WORD LIST

1.	ts'ếng (ts'îng pêng-kà	to request a sick leave
2.	ch'ut uên*	to leave a hospital, be discharged from the hospital
3.	fooi-fûk kîn-hong	to recover (health)
4.	taî-k'ồng-lîk	resistance
5.	yeûk	weak
6.	sế-tsẑ-lan̄	office
7.	heủng...	towards... from...
8.	mān-chik yān-uēn	civilian personnel
9.	ts'ếng (ts'îng) kà	to request a leave
10.	ts'ếng (ts'îng)sẑ-kà	to request an ordinary leave
11.	pố ts'ếng pêng kà	to make up the request for sick leave
12.	pố paân... shaú-tsûk	to make up the procedure of...
13.	i-shaang chî	doctor's certificate
14.	fồng kà	holiday
15.	yān-sẑ-ch'uè	personnel office

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

1291

材	ts'oī: material; stuff.
材料	ts'oī-liû: material.
藥材	yeûk-ts'oī: medicine; drug; medical herb or plant.

445

奇	k'eī: odd; strange; extraordinary; mysterious.
出奇	ch'ut-k'eī: unusual; strange.
奇怪	k'eī-kwaaì: strange; curious.
稀奇	hei-k'eī: rare; few.
好奇	hŏ-k'eī: inquisitive; curious.

1495

玉	yûk: jade stone; gem.
玉石	yûk-shêk: jade ston
玉器	yûk-heì: jade article.

材 奇 玉

材 奇 玉

材 奇 玉

1100

抵	taí: to push against; to oppose; to endure; equal to; to reach.
抵抗	taí-k'òng: to resist; to oppose
抵禦	taí-uê: to ward off.

769

腦	nŏ: brain; camphor.
腦力	nŏ lìk: mental power.
主腦	chué-nŏ: a leader; "the brain".

抵 腦

抵 腦

抵 脑

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

1404

壞	waaî: to spoil; to ruin; to destroy; spoiled.
學壞	hŏk waaî: to learn evil.
壞處	waaî ch'ùe: bad points.

616

靈	līng: spirit; force; cleverness.
靈魂	līng-wān: the soul.
靈通	līng-t'ung: quickness of understanding.
靈機	līng-kei: clever contrivance.
靈敏	līng-mǎn: bright; keen; quick.

650

弄	lûng: to toy with to mock; to work with.
戲弄	heì-lûng: to make fun of.
弄壞	lûng waaî: to spoil; to wreck; to put out of order.
弄璋	lûng-cheung: to bear a son.
弄瓦	lûng-ngǎ: to bear a daughter.

壞　坯　靈　灵　弄

壞　靈　弄

壊　灵　弄

1321

遵	tsun: to obey; to conform to.
遵守	tsun-shaú· to oberve, to obey
遵命	tsun mêng: to obey a command.

1489

仍	yīng: still; yet.
仍然	yīng-īn: still; after all.
仍在	yīng tsoî: still in existence.

遵　仍

遵　仍

遵　仍

LESSON 16

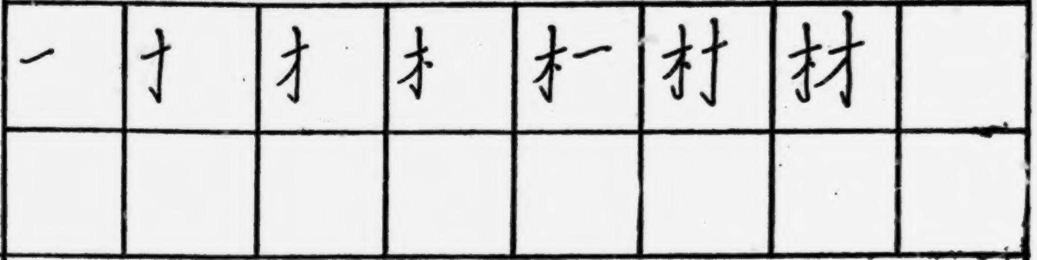
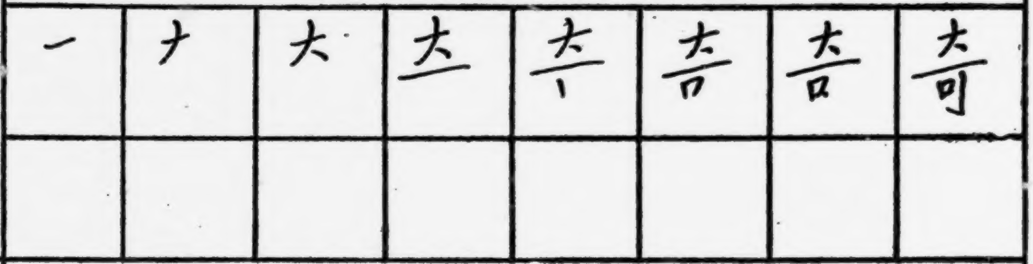
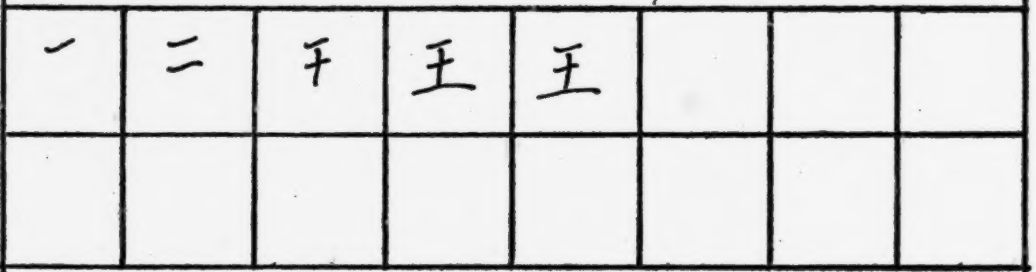
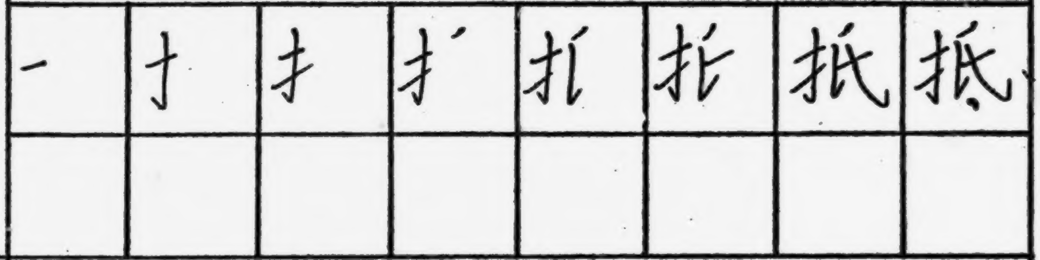
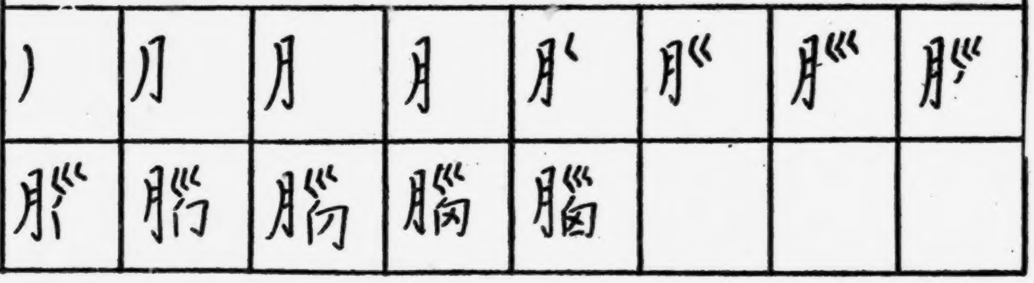
READING MATERIAL

何小姐唔係醫生，亦都唔係藥材，但係自從佢黎咗見黃二之後，黃二嘅病，好得好快。其實，講起黎冇乜奇怪，因為佢愛何小姐，何小姐好似係佢嘅靈 wan，況且何小姐又係一位如花似玉嘅美人，朝晚對住佢，而家心上又冇掛念，腦中又唔使多思想，精神就一日一日好啦。

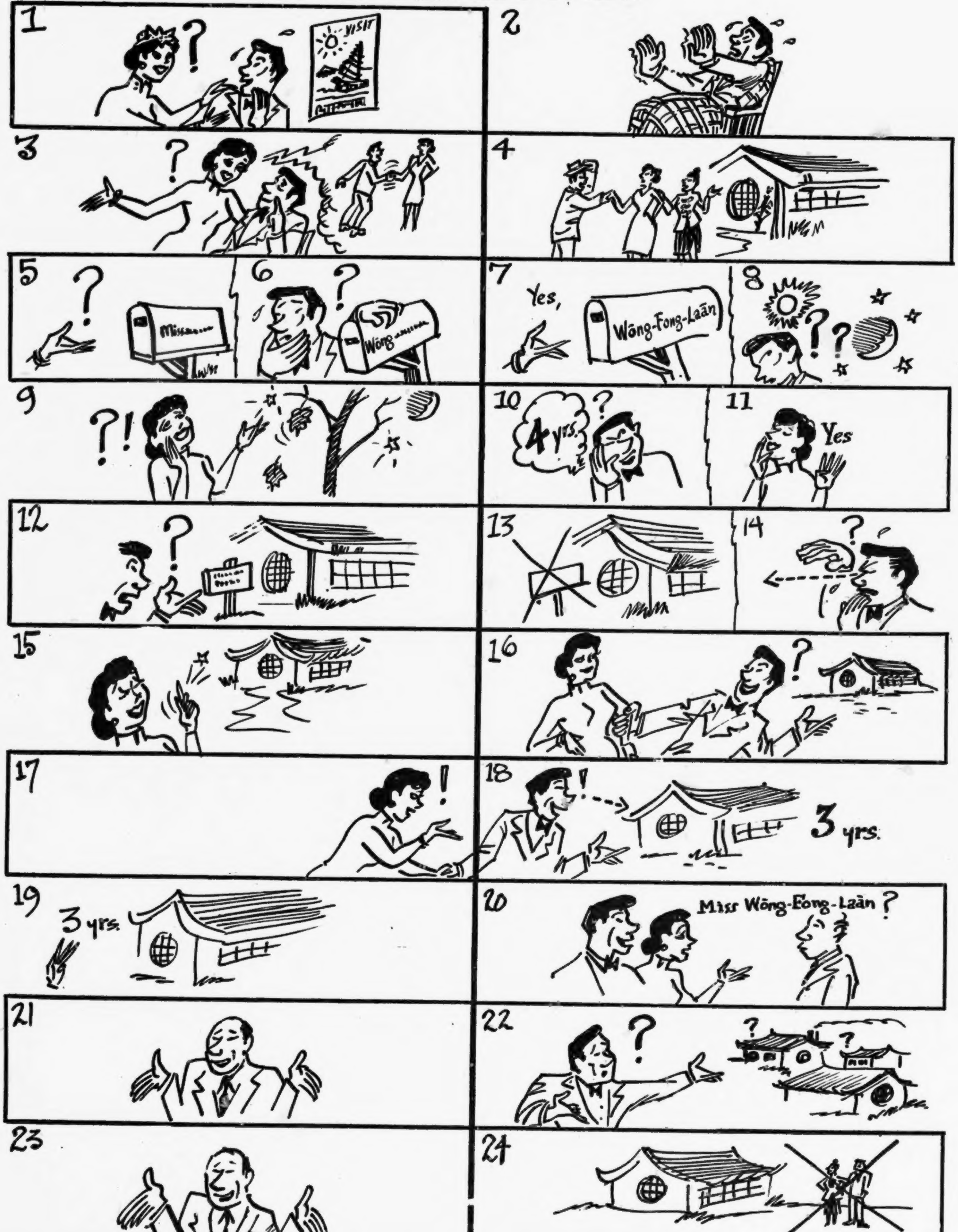
佢同醫生商量，打算出院，不過醫生覺得佢重未完全 fooi 復健康，抵抗力弱，舊病容易復發。勸佢喺醫院住多幾日。何小姐亦憂慮黃二弄壞身體，亦勸黃二遵照醫生嘅意見。不過，佢仍然未向寫字樓請假。呢種手續就要麻煩何小姐替佢辦啦。

LESSON 16

WRITING MATERIAL

材	Character Number 1291 Radical Number 73 Stroke Number 7 木，木 
奇	Character Number 445 Radical Number 37 Stroke Number 8 大 
玉	Character Number 1495 Radical Number 96 Stroke Number 5 王，玉 
抵	Character Number 1100 Radical Number 64 Stroke Number 8 扌，手 
腦	Character Number 769 Radical Number 130 Stroke Number 13 月，肉 

LESSON 17


1
?
VISIT
2
3
?
4
5
?
6
?
Wōng
7
Yes,
Wōng-Fong-Laān
8
? ?
9
?!
10
4 yrs.
?
11
Yes
12
?
13
14
?
15
16
?
17
!
18
!
3 yrs.
19
3 yrs.
20
Miss Wōng-Fong-Laān ?
21
22
?
?
?
23
24

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Hōh Siú-Tsê. Neĭ pêng-hó-chóh keì yât, neĭ seúng huì pin shuè siu-hîn à?

Wōng-Î. Ngŏh pêng-hó-chóh mŏ keì noî, ngŏh pin shuè to m̄-seúng huì.

H. Neĭ chûng keì m̄-keì-tak ngŏh-teî ĭ-ts'ìn haî pin shuè yîng-shik kà?

W. Keì-tak, ngŏh-teî ĭ-ts'ìn haî yat-kòh p'aāng-yaŭ kè uk-k'eî yîng-shik kè.

H. Neĭ chûng keì m̄-keì-tak k'uĭ kiù-tsô mi-yĕ mēng* à?

W. K'uĭ hó-ts'z̆ t'ūng ngŏh t'ūng sìng, t'ūng neĭ t'ūng mēng*, haî mà?

H. Haî, k'uĭ kiù-tsô Wōng-Fong-Laān.

W. Neĭ keì-tak kóh chân-shì haî yât-t'aū*, yik-waâk haî yê-maăn à?

H. Kóm to m̄-keì-tak? Kóh chân-shì haî yat-kòh ts'au-t'in kè wōng-fan.

W. Kóh yât kaàk ì-ka cheung-kân seì-nìn, haî-mà?

H. Hâi, kóh yât kaàk ì-ka cheung-kân seì-nìn.

W. Kóh kaan uk kè ngoî-pîn yaŭ mi-yĕ keì-hô kà?

H. Kóh kaan uk kè ngoî-pîn mŏ mi-yĕ taâk-pît keì-hô.

W. Kóh kaan uk yūng m̄-yūng-î yîng kà?

H. Kóh kaan uk keî yūng-î yîng kè.

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. Ngŏh-teî huì kôh-shuè ts'ŏh-hă, kaû-teî-ch'ūng-yaū, hó mà?

H. Hó à, ngŏh to haî kóm seúng.

W. Neĭ t'aî, ni kaan uk t'ūng saam-nīn ts'īn uēn-ts'uēn yat-yeûng.

H. Mŏ ch'òh, ni kaan uk t'ūng saam-nīn ts'īn uēn-ts'uēn yat-yeûng.

Wōng, Hōh. Sin-shaang, ts'ìng mân Wōng-Fong-Laān Nuĭ-Sẑ haî shuè mà?

Chuê-haàk. K'uĭ m̄-haî shuè. Â! K'uĭ m̄-haî ni-shuè chuê.

W. K'uĭ haî pin shuè chuê à?

Chuê-haàk. Ngŏh m̄-chi-tò k'uĭ haî pin shuè chuê.

W. Fong-Laān, neĭ t'aî-hă. "Moōn-t'ìng-i-kaû, yān-mín-ĭ-fei."

LESSON 17

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Miss Hŏh. It has been a few days since you recovered from your illness, where do you want to go to while away some time?

Wŏng-Î. It has not been long since my recoverey, I do not want to go anywhere.

Hŏh. Do you still remember where we met each other?

Wŏng. I remember, we met each other before at a friend's house.

Hŏh. Do you still remember what her name was?

Wŏng. It seems that she had the same surname as mine and the same given name as yours, didn't she?

Hŏh. Yes, she was called Wŏng-Fong-Laăn

Wŏng. Do you remeber if it was daytime or night time?

Hŏh. Don't you remember? It was an evening in autumn.

Wŏng. It has been almost four years since then, hasn't it?

Hŏh. Yes, it has been almost four years since then.

Wŏng. What kind of a sign was there on the outside of the house?

Hŏh. That house did not have any special sign on the outside.

Wŏng. Is it easy to recognize that house?

Hŏh. It is quite easy to recognize that house.

Wŏng. Let's go there to revisit the old place, all right?

Hŏh. Good I feel likewise.

Wŏng. You see, this house is the same as it was three years ago.

LESSON 17

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Hōh. Right, this house is the same as it was three years ago.

Wōng, Hōh. Sir, is Miss Wōng-FongLaān in, please?

Tenant. She is not in. Ah, she is not living here.

Wōng. Where does she live?

Tenant. I don't know where she lives.

Wōng. Fong-Laān, look, "the house is the same as before, but the people in it are different now."

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I don't recall this lady's name, but I am sure I know her.
2. The sun is very bright, and it is a very good day for swimming.
3. It is almost night time but we still have ten miles to drive.
4. They have the same last name and given name. No wonder they both came up when you called out the name.
5. I recognize this particular sign because I was a tenant here ten years ago.
6. Even though the house remains unchanged, the people are all different.
7. It seems only yesterday but it has been a long time since 1960 to now.
8. What do you do for relaxation here?
9. To revisit a place is fine, but it often brings back sad memories.
10. It has been more than two years between now and then.
11. Would you like to take a walk with me to kill some time?
12. I don't remember this place at all. Where are we now?
13. Will you wait for me in front of the drug store in an hour?
14. This is the same house in which we lived, but it looks different now!
15. My wife wishes to revisit the place where we first met.
16. My family and I have been separated for ten years.

LESSON 17

WORD LIST

1.	kaû-teî-ch'ŭng-yaŭ	to revisit a place
2.	siu-hìn	to kill time, relax
3.	keì-tak	to remember, recall
4.	t'ŭng sìng t'ŭng ming (mēng*)	to have the same last name and given name
5.	yât-t'aŭ*	day time, sun
6.	yê-maăn	night time
7.	kaàk...kaàk ì-ka	to separate, from...to now between...and now
8.	cheung-kân	almost, approximately
9.	keì-hô	sign, particular sign
10.	yîng	to recognize
11.	chuê-haàk	tenant
12.	moŏn-t'ìng-i-kaû	the house remains unchanged
13.	yăn-mîn-ĭ-fei	the people are different
14.	nuĭ-sẑ	lady, Miss

LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

219

灰 fooi: ashes; lime plaster

石灰 shék-fooi: lime from stone.

火灰 fóh-fooi: ashes

灰心 fooi-sam: despondent

263

厚 haŭ (hau): thick rich; sincere; honest

厚薄 haŭ-pôk: thickness

厚面皮 haŭ mîn-p'eī: shameless; brazenfaced.

厚待 haŭ toî: to treat kindly or sincerely.

1349

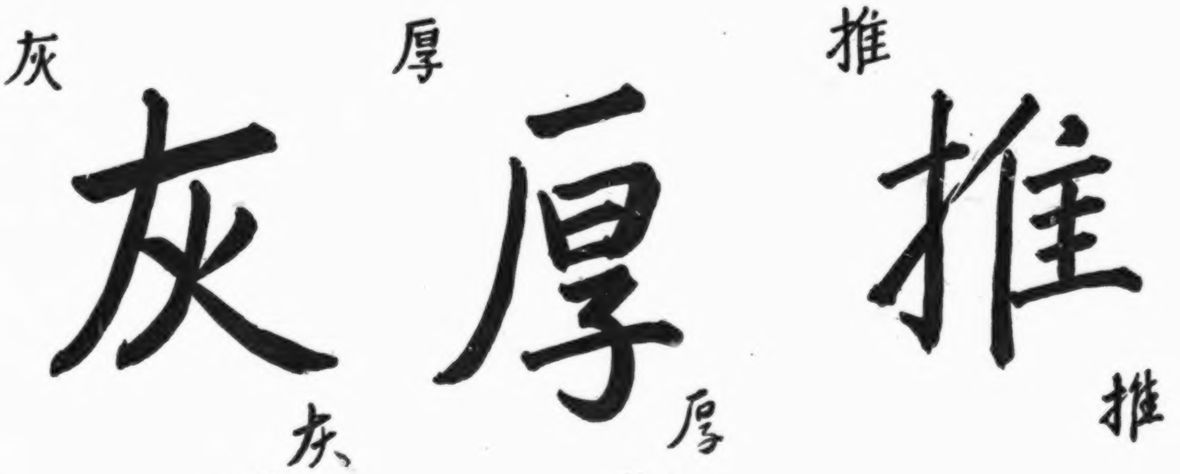
推 t'ui: to push; to decline; to avoid; to infer.

推辭 t'ui ts'z̄: to refuse; to decline.

推測 t'ui-ch'ak: to conjecture; to infer.

推想 t'ui-seúng: inference; deduction.

推舉 t'ui-kuí: to nominate.



1337

辭 ts'z̄: to decline; to refuse; to resign; speech; language.

辭職 ts'z̄ chik: to resign from one's post.

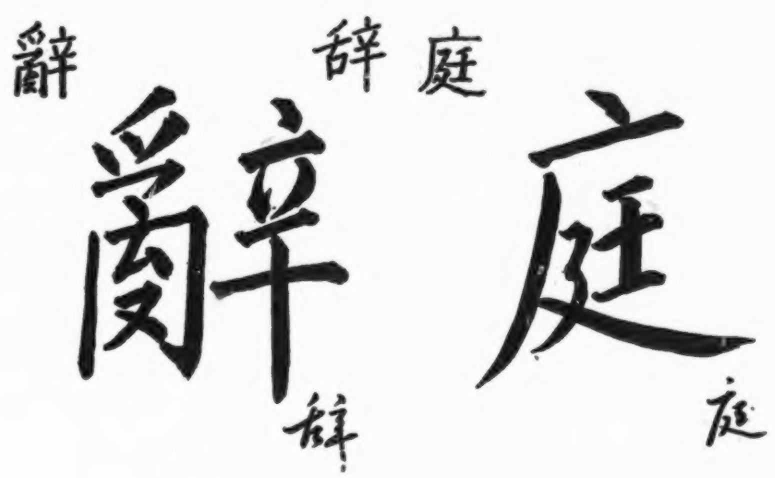
辭别 ts'z̄-pît: to take leave.

11.9

庭 t'īng: inner court; hall.

家庭 ka-t'īng: home; family.

法庭 faat-t'īng: a law court.



LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

943

甚 shâm: deeply; very.

甚少 shâm siú: very few; very seldom.

甚好 shâm hó: very good.

1125

透 t'aù: to see through; to pass through.

浸透 tsàm t'aù: to soak through.

透徹 t'aù-ch'ìt: to understand thoroughly.

284

獻 hìn: to present; offer

奉獻 fûng-hìn: to offer up; consecrate to

獻禮 hìn lǎi: offer presents

甚　透　獻

甚　透　獻

甚　透　献　献

513

鼓 koó: a drum; to drum up; to excite.

打鼓 tá koó: to beat a drum.

鼓手 koó shaú: a drummer

鼓勵 koó-laî: to stimulate; to encourage.

鼓掌 koó cheúng: to clap the hands; to applaud.

180

奮 fǎn: earnest endeavor: energetic

發奮 faàt-fǎn: to exert one's greatest effort

奮力 fǎn-lîk: to exert one's effort; to put forth effort

鼓　奮

鼓　奮

鼓　奮

LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

何小姐唔只生得美麗,而且細心.佢對於黃二嘅照顧,亦甚為透 ts'ìt,時時鼓 laî 佢唔好灰心.黃二病好出院之後,佢就獻議去外便消 hìn 吓.黃二本來唔想去,但係何小姐呢種厚意,唔可以推辭.

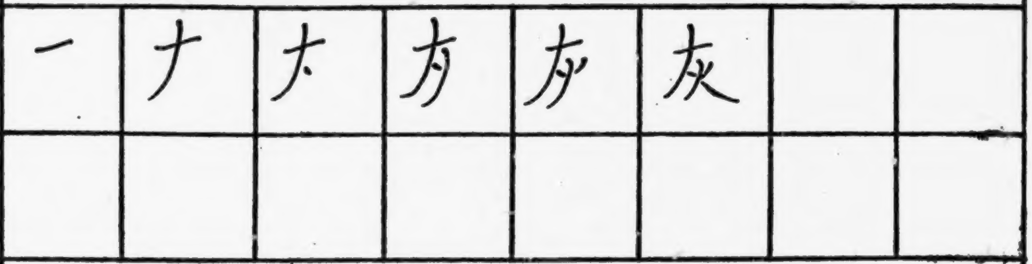
何小姐係有計劃嘅,佢想黃二得到興奮就帶佢去佢地喺四年前初次認識嘅地方重遊.原來佢地兩個,係喺一位朋友嘅屋 k'eî 相識嘅.呢位朋友姓黃叫做方 Laān,佢同黃二同姓,同何小姐同名.可惜現在黃女士已經搬咗屋啦,令佢地有”門庭依舊,人面已非”嘅感想.

LESSON 17

WRITING MATERIAL

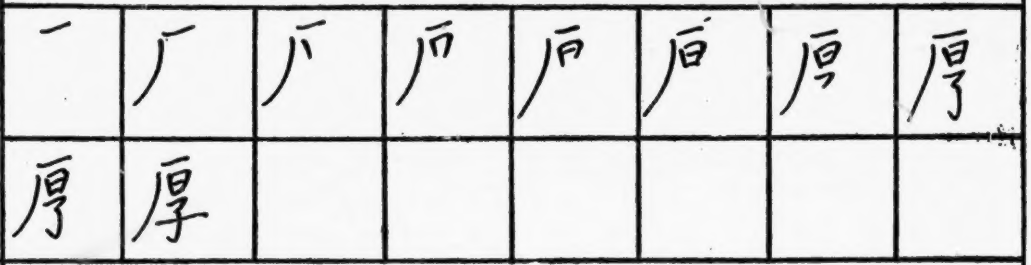
灰

Character Number 219 Radical Number 86
Stroke Number 6 火



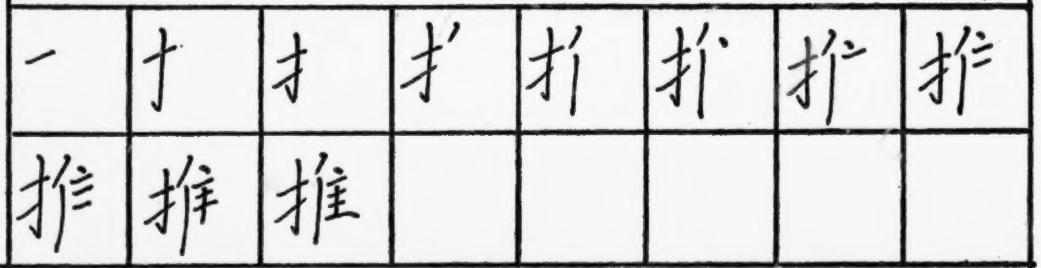
厚

Character Number 263 Radical Number 27
Stroke Number 10 厂



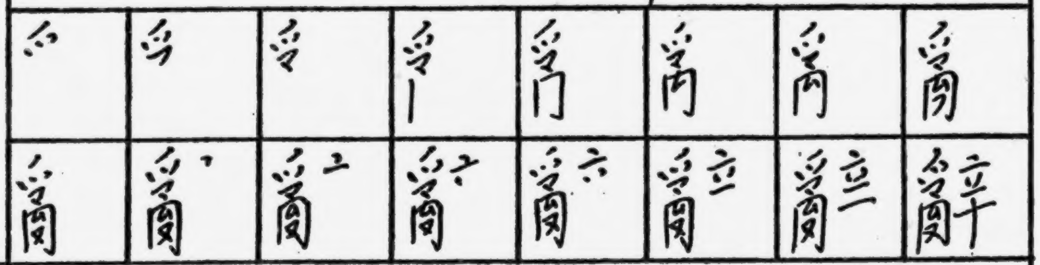
推

Character Number 1349 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 11 扌，手



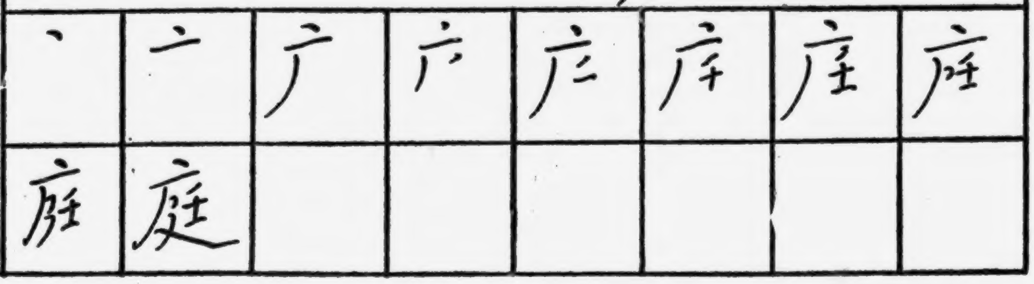
辭

Character Number 1337 Radical Number 160
Stroke Number 19 辛

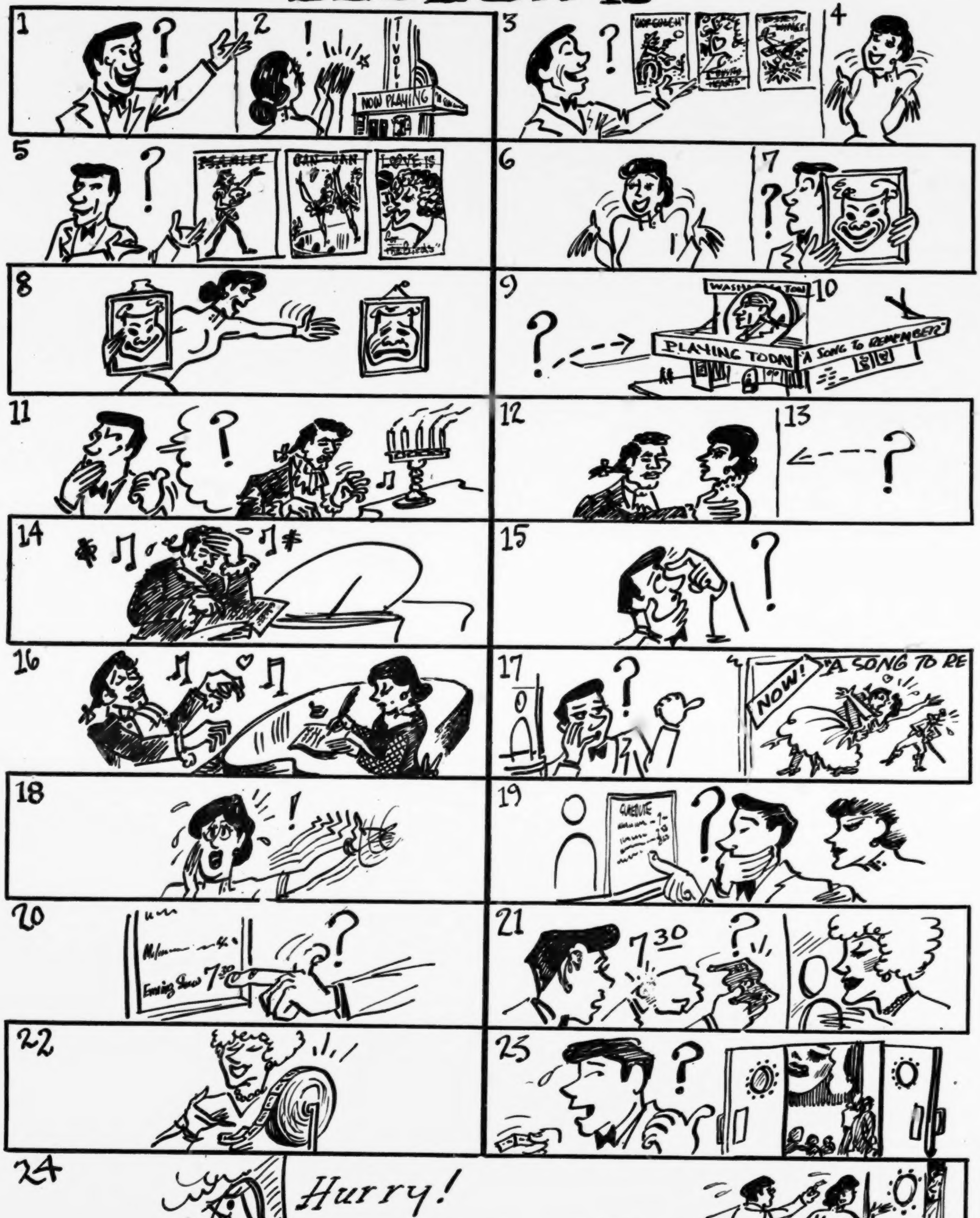


庭

Character Number 1149 Radical Number 53
Stroke Number 10 广



LESSON 18


1
2
TIVOLI
NOW PLAYING
3
LOVING HEARTS
4
5
CAN-CAN
LOVE IS
FOR THE BIRDS
6
7
8
9
10
WASHINGTON
PLAYING TODAY
"A SONG TO REMEMBER"
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
NOW!
"A SONG TO RE
18
19
SCHEDULE
20
Evening Show 7 30
21
7 30
22
23
24
Hurry!

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î. Neĭ yaŭ mŏ ì-sz huì t'aì tîn-yìng à?

Hōh-Fong-Laān. Ngŏh hó seúng huì t'aì tîn-yìng.

W. Neĭ seúng t'aì pin chúng tîn-yìng à?

H. Pin chúng tîn-yìng to tak.

W. Neĭ chì chung-ì t'aì pin chúng tîn-yìng à, mān-ngaì p'ìn*,
yam-ngôk p'ìn*, yik-waâk oì-ts'ìng p'ìn*?

H. Ngŏh tuì-ue ni saam-chúng tîn-yìng to yat-yeûng kòm chung-ì.

W. Neĭ tuì-ue heì-k'êk yaŭ hìng-ts'uì mà?

H. Ngŏh tuì-ue heì-k'êk hó yaŭ hìng-ts'uì, taân-haì ngŏh tuì-ue pei-k'êk kàng yaŭ hìng-ts'uì.

W. Kam-yât Wā-Shîng-Tûn Heì-Uên* tsô mi-yĕ tîn-tíng à?

H. Kam-yât Wā-Shîng-Tûn Heì-Uên* tsô "Yat-K'uk-Naān-Mōng".

W. Yaū pin kòh tsô chué-kòk à?

H. Yaū leŭng-kòh hó ch'ut-mĕng* kè naām nuĭ mīng-shing tsô
naām chué-kòk t'ūng nuĭ chué-kòk.

W. Ni ch'ut tîn-yìng haì miū-sè mi-yĕ kà?

H. K'uĭ miū-sé yat-kòh tsòk-k'uk-ka tîm-yeûng* shìng-mìng.

W. K'uĭ chûng kóng-k'âp ti mi-yĕ à?

H. K'uĭ chûng kóng-k'âp kóh kòh tsòk-k'uk-ka t'ūng yat-kòh
siú-shuèt-ka kè luên*-oì.

W. Ni ch'ut p'ìn* tûng m̄-tûng-yān à?

H. Ni ch'ut p'ìn* fei-sheūng-chi tûng-yān.

W. Ngŏh-teì huì t'aì pin ch'eūng à?

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

H. Ngŏh-teî huì t'aî yê-maăn ts'at-tîm-poòn kóh ch'eūng, hó mà?

W. Siú-tsê, ì-ka ĭ-king haî ts'at-tîm-poòn, chûng yaŭ fei maaî mà?

Nuĭ-Maaî-P'iù-Uēn. M̄-saî taam-sam, ngŏh-teî chûng yaŭ hó toh fei.

W. Siú-tsé, ts'at-tîm-poòn kè tîn-yîng hoi-chóh meî à?

N. Sin-shaang, ĭ-king hoi-chóh yîng là, faaì ti la.

LESSON 18

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng-Ī̂. Do you have any intention of going to see a movie?

Hōh-Fong-Laān. I want to go to see a movie very much.

Wōng. What kind of movie do you want to see?

Hōh. Any kind of movie is all right with me.

Wōng. What kind of movie do you like most: dramatic, musical, or romantic?

Hōh. In regard to these three kinds of movies, I like them all about the same.

Wōng. Are you interested in comedy?

Hōh. I am interested in comedy very much, but I am much more interested in tragedy.

Wōng. What movie is being shown at the Washington Theater today?

Hōh. The Washington Theater is showing A Song To Remember today.

Wōng. Who is performing in the leading role?

Hōh. The leading male and female roles are performed by two very famous stars.

Wōng. What does this movie depict?

Hōh. It describes how a composer attains success.

Wōng. What else does it touch on?

Hōh. It further tells of the romance of that composer with a novelist.

LESSON 18

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng.   Is this picture vivid and stirring?

Hōh.   This picture is very vivid and stirring.

Wōng.   Which show shall we go to see?

Hōh.   We'll go to see the 7:30 evening show, all right?

Wōng.   Miss, it is now 7:30, do you still have tickets for sale?

Ticket Saleslady. Don't worry, we still have many tickets.

Wōng.   Miss, has the 7:30 movie started?

Ticket Saleslady. Sir, it has already started, please hurry.

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The show will start very soon. Have you gotten your tickets yet?
2. She does not look like a novelist, but she has written many novels.
3. My parents mentioned something about your work when I was small.
4. His writing is very vivid. No wonder he becomes a very successful novelist in such a short time.
5. She is not only a movie star but also a composer.
6. This novel depicts a romantic story of a Chinese girl and a Japanese movie star.
7. The star in the leading role looks like Mr. Wong's younger brother.
8. "A song to remember" is a musical tragedy.
9. "Flower Drum Song" is a comedy about San Francisco's Chinatown.
10. In regard to this question, I think I can give you the answer tomorrow.
11. This is not an ordinary romantic movie. I think it is very heart-stirring.
12. She may look good in comedies; but have you seen her in a dramatic movie?
13. This movie may not be very good, but it is very meaningful to every young man.

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. Do you know what is showing at the Great Star Theatre?

15. She is a famous star in China, but nobody knows her here.

16. I have no intention of going to Washington this winter.

LESSON 18

WORD LIST

1.	yaŭ ì-sz	to intend; meaningful
2.	mān-ngaî p'ìn*	dramatic movie
3.	oì-ts'ìng p'ìn	romantic movie
4.	tuì-ue...	toward, in regard to
5.	heì-k'êk	comedy
6.	pei-k'êk	tragedy
7.	Yat-K'uk-Naān-Mōng	A Song To Remember
8.	chué-kòk	leading role
9.	mìng-sing	movie star
10.	miū-sẻ	to depict, describe
11.	tsôk-k'uk-ka	composer
12.	shìng-mìng	success; to succeed
13.	kóng-k'âp	to mention about
14.	siú-shuèt-ka	novelist
15.	tûng-yān^	heart-stirring; vivid
16.	ch'uēng	show
17.	fei	ticket
18.	hoi ch'eūng	to start a movie

LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

647

鄰 lūn: near to; neighboring.

鄰近 lūn-kân: near to; vacinity.

鄰舍 lūn-shè: neighbor.

102

招 chiu: to invite; to come; entertain; receive

招牌 chiu-p'aaī: sign board; shop sign

招待 chiu-toî: to entertain

招兵 chiu-ping: to recruit

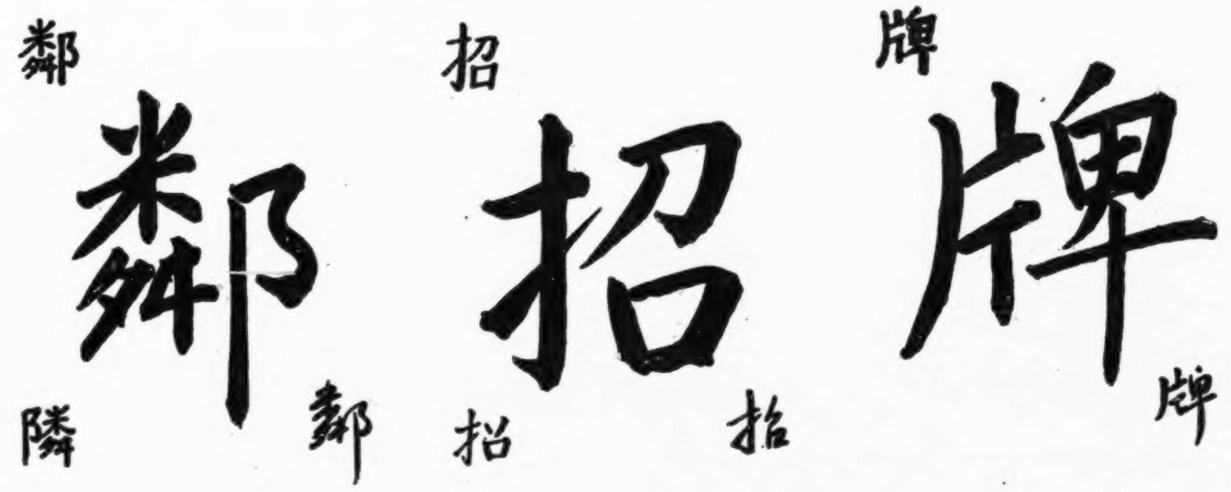
招集 chiu-tsaâp: to call in, to get together

8

牌 p'aaī: sign; notice; tablet; card.

紙牌 chí-p'aaī: playing card.

牌照 p'aaī-chiù: certificate; license.



751

藝 ngaî: skill; handicraft; trade.

工藝 kung ngaî: a handicraft; a trade.

文藝 mān ngaî: literary pursuit.

藝術 ngaî-shût: the arts.

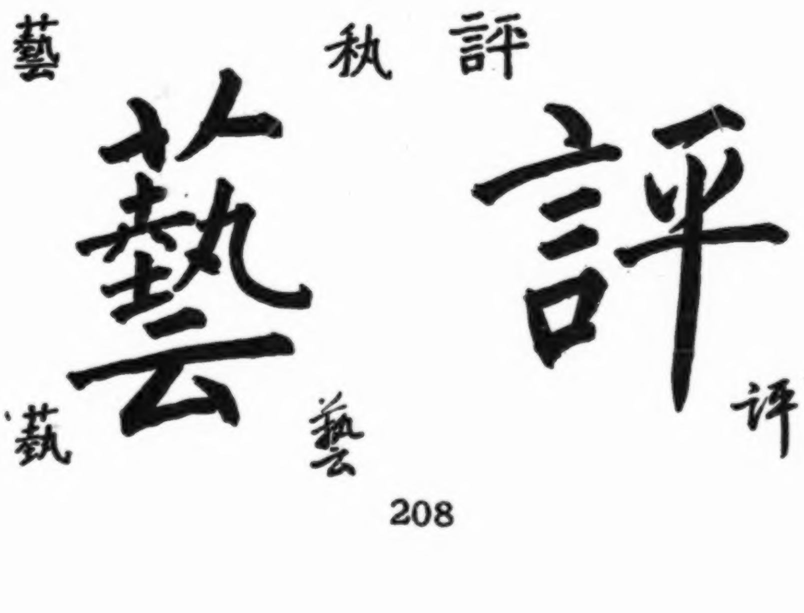
865

評 p'īng: to discuss; to criticize; to decide.

評論 p'īng-lûn: to discuss; to debate.

評判 p'īng-p'oòn: to decide.

評判員 p'īng-p'oòn-uēn: referee; judge of a contest.



LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

75

志	chī̀: will, purpose
志向	chī̀-hèung: aim; object
志氣	chī̀-hèī̀: ambitious will power
志願	chì-uên: to volunteer, ambition; wishes

537

曲	k'uk: crooked; bent perverse; song.
屈曲	wat-k'uk: to bend; crooked.
彎曲	waan-k'uk: a bend; crooked.
唱曲	ch'eùng k'uk: to sing ditties; songs.
曲尺	k'uk-ch'èk: carpenter's square; automatic pistol.

420

及	k'âp: and; to be involved; to reach; to attain; concerning.
不及	pat k'âp: not as good as; not equal to.
及格	k'âp-kaàk: up to standard.
累及	luî k'âp: to involve others.

志　　曲　　及

志　曲　及

志　　曲　　及

515

固	koò: strong; stable; firm; certainly.
堅固	kin-koò: lasting; strong; firm.
固執	koò-chap: obstinate; stubborn.
固然	koò-īn: certainly; of course.

413

僅	kán: barely; hardly
僅僅夠	kán-kán kaù: barely enough.
僅可	kán-hóh: barely suffice; nothing to spare

固　　僅

固　僅

固　　僅

LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

黄二同何小姐 wān 唔倒黄女士，雖然有些少失望，但係重可以做其他嘅事．佢望見鄰近有一個電影戲院嘅招牌，就問何小姐想唔想去睇電影．何小姐志在同黄二遊樂，冇話唔想嘅，所以一口答應．黄二問佢中意睇音樂片文藝片抑或愛情片，何小姐話對於三種片都一樣噉中意．

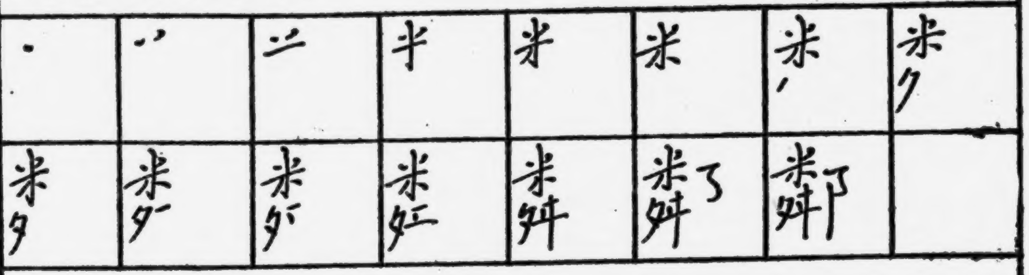
佢地一路行，一路評論戲劇．冇幾耐就去到戲院門口．嗰處放影“一曲難忘”呢出影片係講及一個作曲家點樣成名．固然有音樂，亦都有戀愛．佢地就決定睇呢出電影．嗰陣時僅係七點半鐘，重可以趕倒夜場．

LESSON 18

WRITING MATERIAL

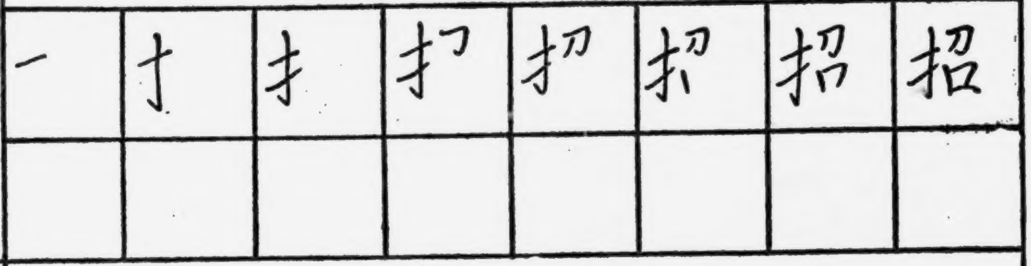
鄰

Character Number 647 Radical Number 170
Stroke Number 15 阝 邑



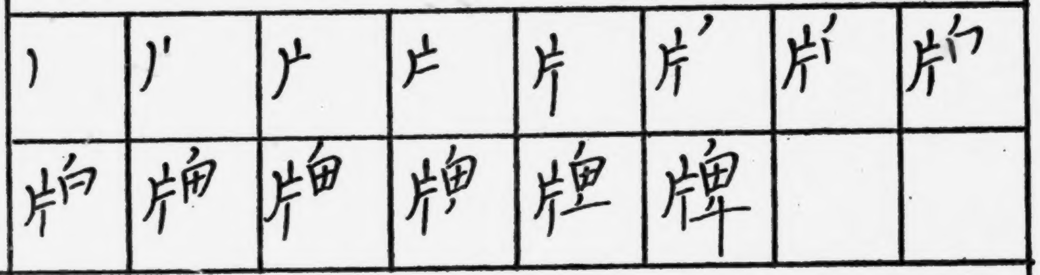
招

Character Number 102 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 8 扌 · 手



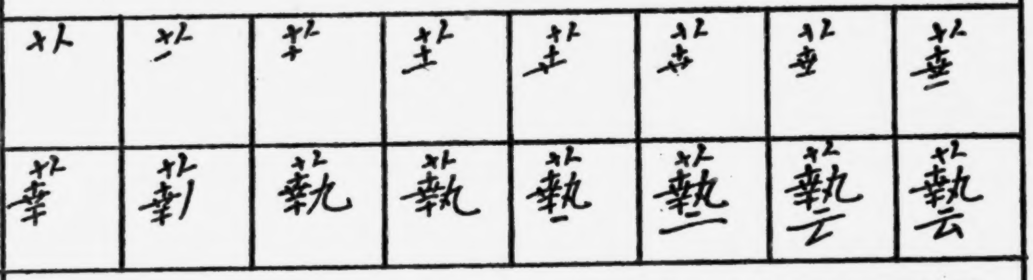
牌

Character Number 811 Radical Number 91
Stroke Number 14 片



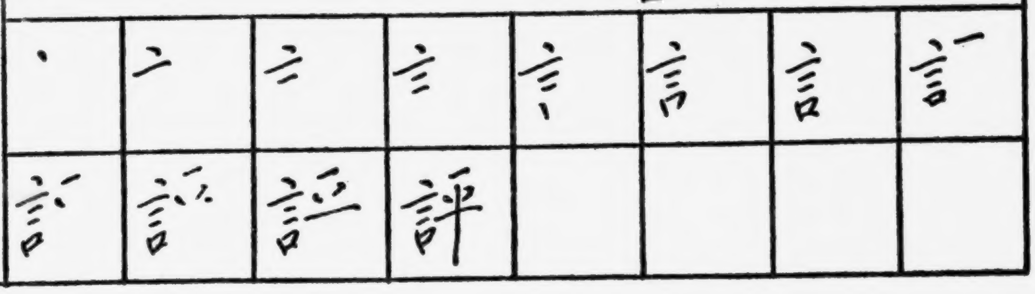
藝

Character Number 751 Radical Number 140
Stroke Number 19 艹 , 艸

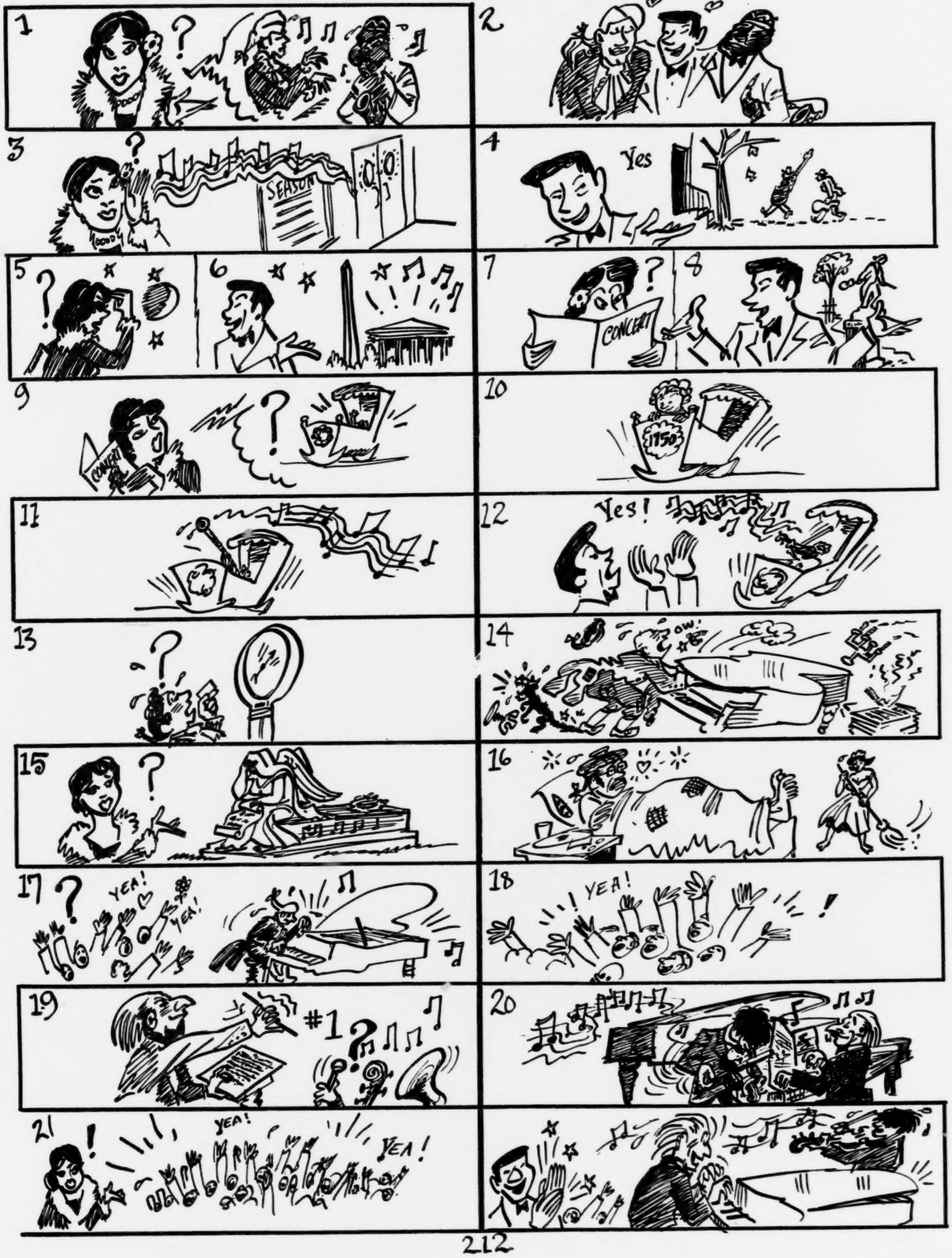


評

Character Number 865 Radical Number 149
Stroke Number 12 言



LESSON 19


1
?
2
3
?
SEASON
4
Yes
5
?
6
7
?
CONCERT
8
9
?
CONCERT
10
1950
11
12
Yes!
13
?
14
OW!
15
?
16
17
?
YEA!
YEA!
18
YEA!
!
19
#1
?
20
21
!
YEA!
YEA!

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Hōh-Fong-Laān. Neĭ chung-ì koó-tîn yam-ngôk, yik-waâk kân-toî yam-ngôk à?

Wōng. Ngŏh leŭng-yeûng to chung-ì.

H. Ngŏh t'eng mān wâ, ì-ka ĭ-king haî yam-ngôk ooî* kè kwaì-tsìt, haî mà?

W. Haî, mooĭ nìn ni kòh shì-haû to haî yam-ngôk ooî* kè kwaì-tsìt.

H. Kam-maăn kè yam-ngôk ooî* haî pin shuè în-tsaù à?

W. Kam-maăn kè yam-ngôk ooî* haî Wā-Shîng-Tûn taaî laĭ-t'ōng în-tsaù.

H. Ni ts'z̀ yam-ngôk ooî* kè sìng-chat haî tîm-yeûng* kà?

W. K'uĭ kè sìng-chat haî keì-nîm yat-kòh taaî tsòk-k'uk-ka.

H. Kóh kòh tsòk-k'uk-ka shaang haî pin kòh shaì-keì kà?

W. K'uĭ shaang haî shâp-paàt shaì-keì chung-k'eì.

H. K'uĭ haî m̀-haî yat-kòh t'in-ts'oì à?

W. Haî, k'uĭ haî yat-kòh t'in-ts'oì.

H. K'uĭ yat-shaang kè mîng-wân tîm-yeûng* à?

W. K'uĭ yat-shaang kè mîng-wân fei-sheūng-chi foó.

H. K'uĭ kè mîng-wân foó shēng tìm à?

W. K'uĭ hó k'ūng, shì shì pêng, t'ūng shat luên*.

H. Kóh chân-shì kè yān sheúng m̀-sheúng-shik k'uĭ kè tsòk-pán à?

W. Kóh chân-shì kè yān fei-sheūng-chi sheúng-shik k'uĭ kè tsòk-pán.

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

H. Yam-ngôk ooî* ī-ka hoi-ch'ī, taî-yat-kòh tsīt-mûk haî mi-yĕ à?

W. Taî-yat-kòh tsīt-mûk haî siú-t'aī-k'ām tûk-tsaù, kòng-k'ām poôn-tsaù.

H. P'aàk shaú t'ūng foon-foo kè yān chan toh.

W. Yan-waî t'aān-tak fei-sheūng-chi hó.

LESSON 19

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Hŏh-Fong-Laān. Do you like classical or comtemporary music?

Wŏng. I like both.

Hŏh. I heard that the concert season is already here. Is that right?

Wŏng. Yes, the concert season comes this time every year.

Hŏh. Where is to-night's concert being given?

Wŏng. To-night's concert is being given at the Washington Auditorium.

Hŏh. What is the nature of the concert this time?

Wŏng. It is in the nature of commemorating a great composer.

Hŏh. In what century was this composer born?

Wŏng. He was born in the mid-eighteenth century.

Hŏh. Was he a genius?

Wŏng. Yes, he was a genius.

Hŏh. What was his fortune in life?

Wŏng. His whole life was fraught with misfortune and mischance.

Hŏh. Why was his life ill-fated?

Wŏng He was very poor, frequently sick and lovelorn.

Hŏh. Did the people at that time appreciate his compositions?

Wŏng. The people at that time appreciated his compositions very much.

Hŏh. The concert now commences, what is first on the program?

Wŏng. First on the program is a violin solo accompanied by a piano.

LESSON 19

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Hŏh.	Many people are applauding and hailing in acclamation.
Wŏng.	Yes, because the performance is very good.

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. His violin solo at the auditorium is the best I have heard recently.
2. People hailed his performance with acclamation and applauded for more than five minutes.
3. I appreciate the piano accompaniment more than the singing.
4. He wrote one of his best compositions when he was sick and lovelorn.
5. Although he is a genius, his whole life was ill-fated from the start.
6. If he was born in the middle of the century, he would be quite old now.
7. The students are performing some difficult classical music now.
8. Do you think that the nature of classical music and contemporary music are the same?
9. This is the last performance for the season.
10. The students are trying to write some poems commemorating a great writer.
11. The concert is given at the auditorium tonight at eight.
12. She was fraught with misfortune all her life.
13. What is the nature of the meeting tonight?
14. I don't think he is a genius but I know he studied very hard.

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. The concert season will be here very soon.

16. Generally speaking, the performance last night wasn't bad.

LESSON 19

WORD LIST

1.	koó-tìn yam-ngôk	classical music
2.	kân-toî yam-ngôk	contemporary music
3.	kwaì-tsìt	season
4.	ìn-tsaù	performance; to perform
5.	taaî-laĭ-t'ŏng	auditorium
6.	sìng-chat	nature
7.	keì-nîm	to commemorate
8.	shaì-keì chung-k'eì	the middle of the century
9.	t'in-ts'oì	genius
10.	yat-shaang	whole life
11.	mîng-wân t'aaì foó (foó mîng)	ill-fated
12.	shat luên*	lovelorn
13.	sheúng-shik	to appreciate
14.	tsòk-pán	work piece, compositions
15.	siú-t'aì-k'ām tûk-tsaù	violin solo
16.	kòng-k'ām poôn-tsaù	piano accompaniment
17.	p'aàk shaú	to clap, applaud
18.	foon-foo	to hail, acclaim
19.	t'aān	to play (string music)

LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

1264

節 tsĭt: joint; vers ; festival; moderation.

時節 shĭ-tsĭt: period of time; season; celebrating day.

節制 tsĭt-chaì: to control; moderate, balanced.

354

演 ín: to practise; extend; lead on

演講 ín-kóng: to speak

演說 ín-shuèt: public speech

演戲 ín heì: to perform a play

440

紀 keí: a record; to narrate; age.

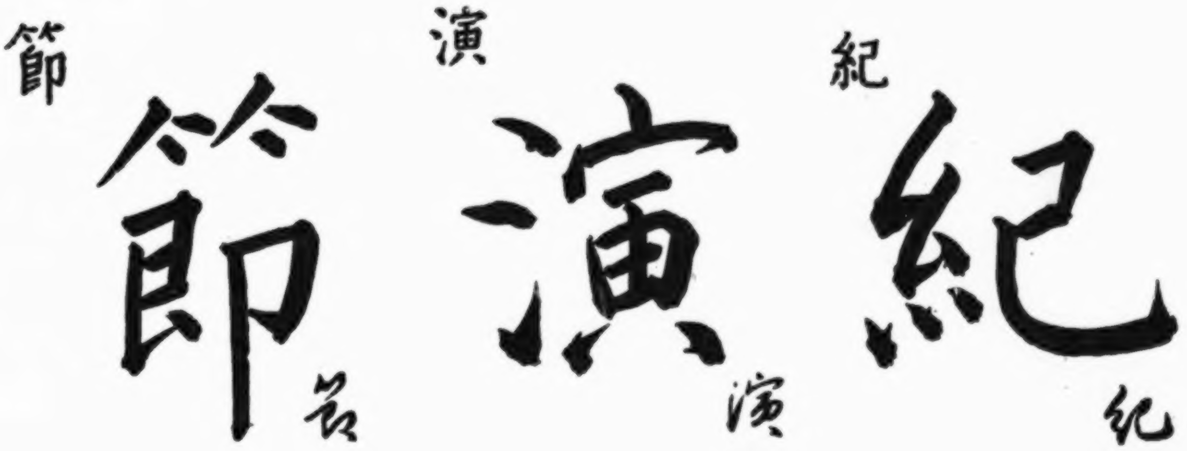
年紀 nīn-keí: a person's age.

紀念日 keí-nîm-yât: anniversary; memorial day.

紀念品 keí-nîm-pán: sovenier; remembrance.

紀錄 keí-l[illegible]: to record; a record.

世紀 shaì-keí: century.



1048

宣 suen: to proclaim; to publish.

宣傳 suen-ch'uēn: publicity; propaganda.

宣佈 suen-pò: to announce; to promulgate.

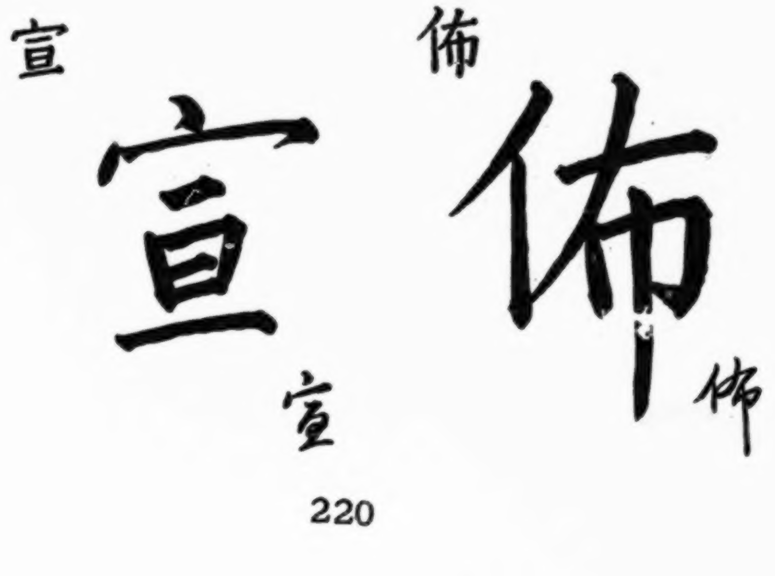
876

佈 pò: to spread; to extend; to diffuse.

散佈 saàn-pò: to scatter diffuse.

公佈 kung-pò: to make public.

佈置 pò-chì: to arrange in order.



LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

1041

素 sò: commonly; formerly; plain; simple.

樸素 p'ǒk-sò: simple unassuming.

素衣 sò i: simple clothing.

202

妨 fōng: to oppose; impede

妨礙 fōng-ngoî: to hinder; to obstruct

毋妨 mō-fōng: it does not matter; no harm.

妨害 fōng-hoî: to disturb; to interfere.

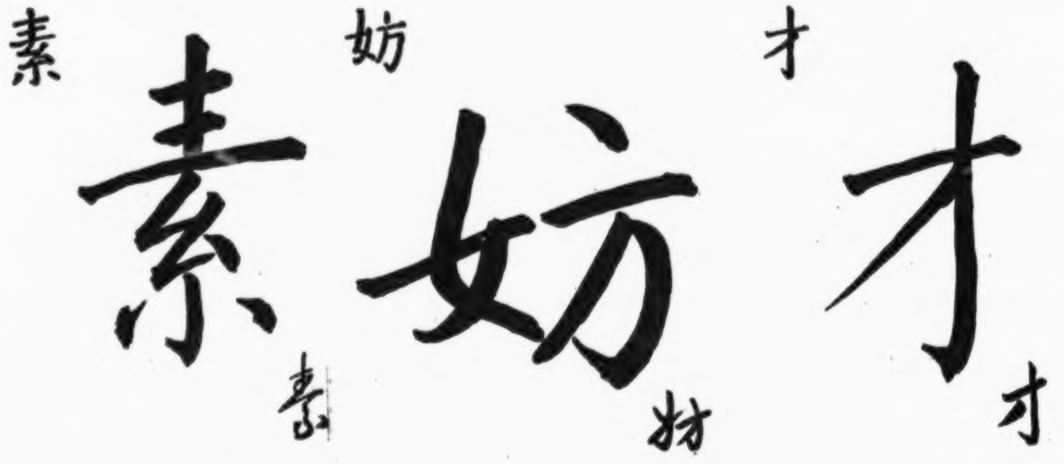
1290

才 ts'oī: ability; talent; power; genius.

人才 yān-ts'oī: talent; natural power.

才能 ts'oī-nāng: ability; talent; genius.

才學 ts'oī-hǒk: learning; attainments.



1093

彈 taân, t'aān: bullet; shell; cross-bow; to strike; to play instrument; to accuse.

子彈 tsź-taân: bullet; shell; cartridge.

彈殼 taân hǒk: shell of a cartridge.

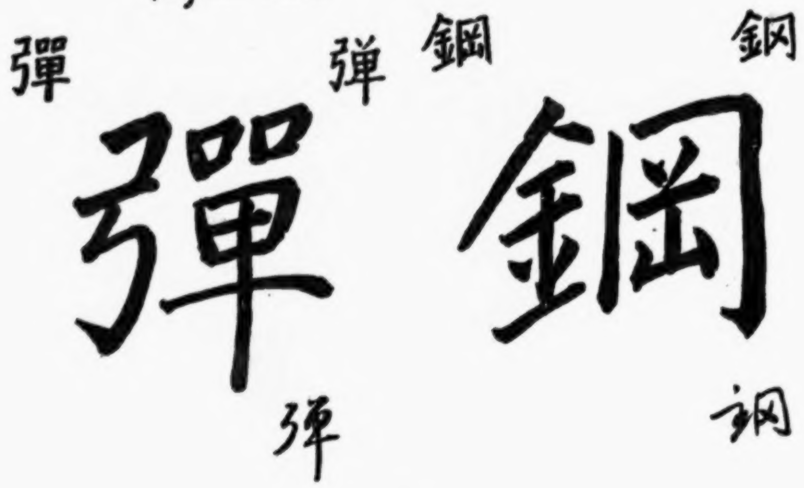
彈琴 t'aān k'ām: to play the lute.

507

鋼 kǒng: steel; hard.

純鋼 shūn kǒng: pure steel.

鋼筆 kǒng-pat: pen.



LESSON 19

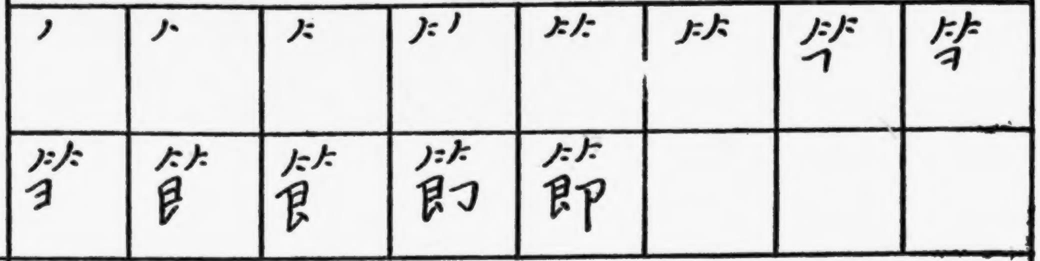
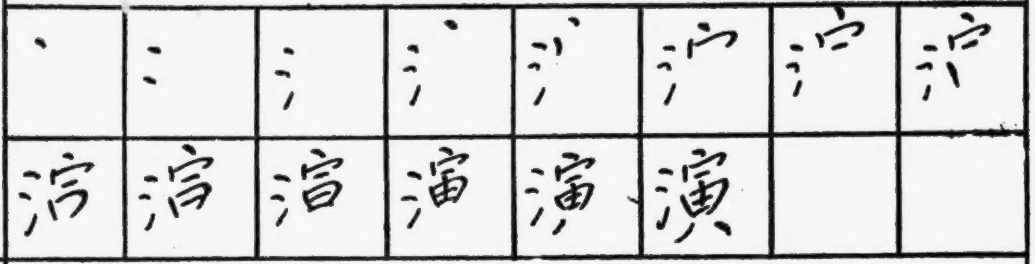
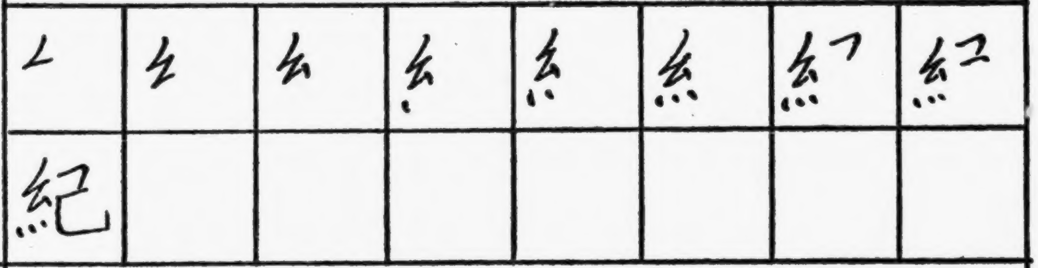
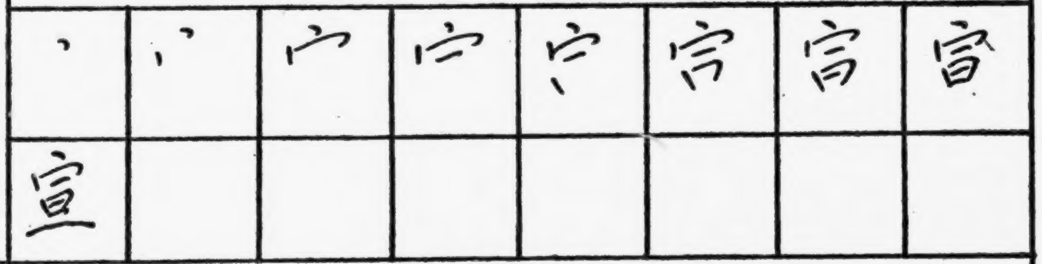
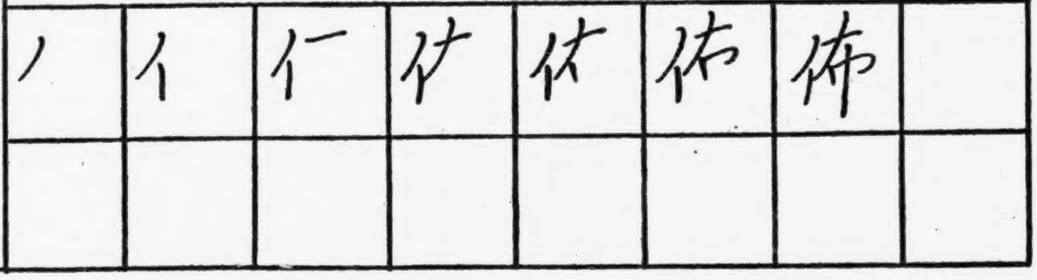
READING MATERIAL

黃二知到何小姐素來中意音樂同戲劇,嗰陣時ngaam ngaam係音樂季節,不妨約佢去音樂會聽音樂.華盛頓大禮堂演tsaù嘅晚上佢同何小姐去參加.呢個音樂會係紀念一個大作曲家嘅.佢生喺十八世紀中期,好有天才.佢嘅生命非常之苦.

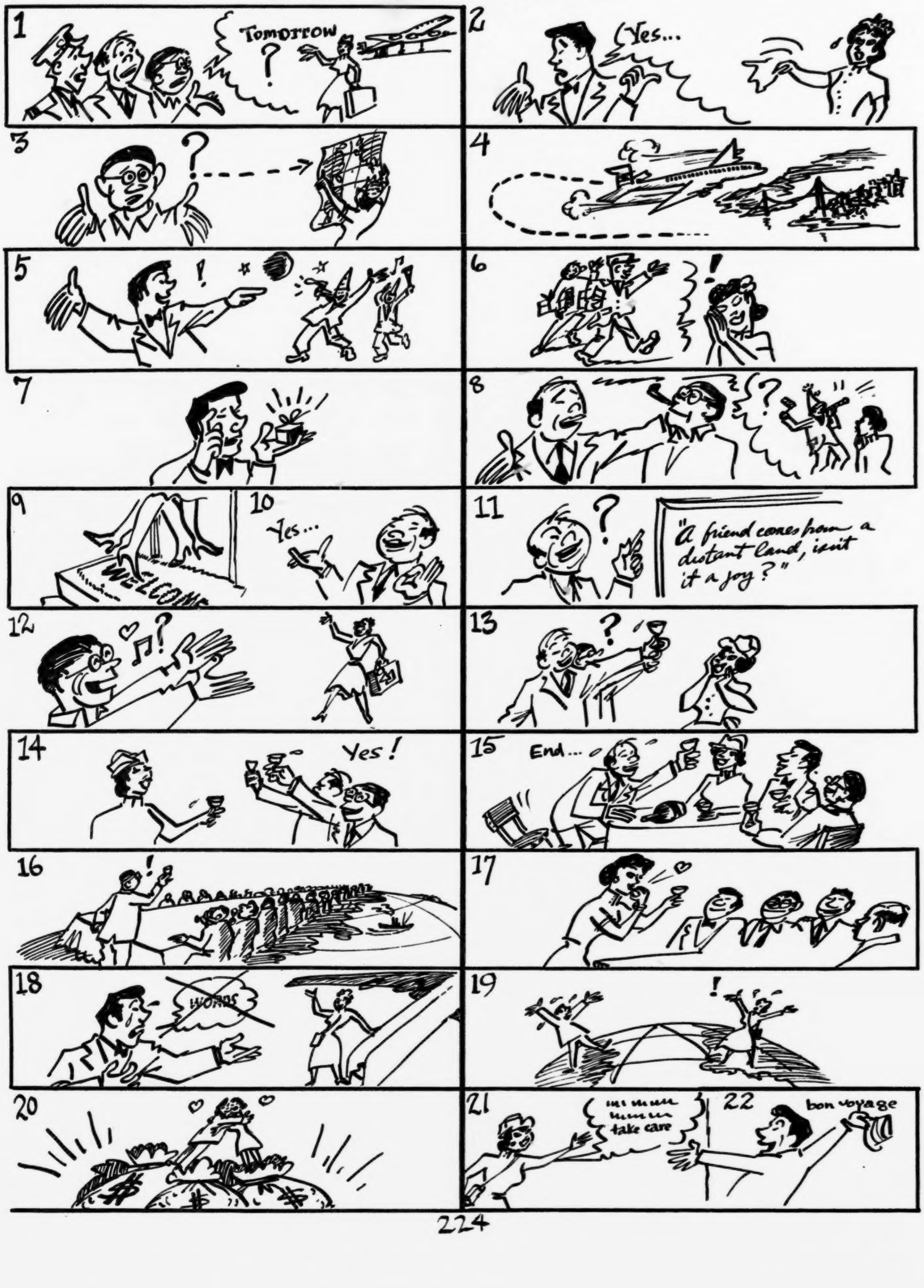
嗰晚參加嘅人極之多,七點鐘嘅時候,首先由宣佈員宣佈音樂會開始,當時有好多節目.最令人賞識嘅係彈鋼k'ām.因為嗰位音樂家彈得非常之好.彈完之後個個p'aàk手歡呼到夜晚十一點左右,然後散會.

LESSON 19

WRITING MATERIAL

節	**Character Number** 1264 **Stroke Number** 13	**Radical Number** 118 ⺮ , 竹
		
演	**Character Number** 354 **Stroke Number** 14	**Radical Number** 85 氵 , 水
		
紀	**Character Number** 440 **Stroke Number** 9	**Radical Number** 120 糹 , 糸
		
宣	**Character Number** 1048 **Stroke Number** 9	**Radical Number** 40 宀
		
佈	**Character Number** 876 **Stroke Number** 7	**Radical Number** 9 亻 , 人
		

LESSON 20


1
Tomorrow
?
2
Yes...
3
?
4
5
!
6
!
7
8
?
9
WELCOME
10
Yes...
11
?
"A friend comes from a distant land, isn't it a joy?"
12
?
13
?
14
Yes!
15
End...
16
!
17
18
WORDS
19
!
20
21
take care
22
bon voyage

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Leĭ-Seì, Ch'ăn-Tung, Sheûng-Waì. Hōh Siú-Tsè t'ing-yât iù leì-hoi ni-shuè, haî mà?

Wōng-Î. Haî, k'uĭ k'uèt-tîng t'ing-yât leì-hoi ni-shuè.

L. K'uĭ tâ-suèn huì pin shuè à?

W. K'uĭ tâ-suèn faan huì Saam-Faăn-Shĭ.

W. Fong-Laăn, keì waî* p'aăng-yaŭ seúng kam-maăn t'ŭng neĭ tsìn-haăng.

H. Mat k'uĭ-teî kòm haàk-heì à!

W. Ni ti haî k'uĭ-teî kè sam-sẑ.

C. Lŏ Leĭ, ngŏh-teî chûng meî foon-yĭng k'uĭ, kam-maăn t'ŭng k'uĭ tsìn-haăng, tîm paân à?

L. M̄-kán-iù, yat-mîn foon-yĭng k'uĭ, yat-mîn t'ŭng k'uĭ tsìn-haăng, yat-yeûng che.

C. Haî, kóm-yeûng* chûng yaŭ ì-î.

C. Lŏ leĭ, "Yaŭ p'aăng tsẑ uĕn fong loì, pat yîk lôk foō?" Ni kuì shuèt-wâ tîm-kaaì à?

L. Chik-haî wâ, p'aăng-yaŭ yaū hó uĕn kè teî-fong laì t'aì neĭ, neĭ m̀-foon-heî me?

C. Ngŏh-teî taaî-ka t'ŭng Hōh-Siú-Tsè yâm pooi, hó mà?

L. Hó, ngŏh-teî t'ŭng Hōh-Siú-Tsè yâm pooi.

C. Ni kòh ooî* tsaû-laì saàn, taaî-ka yâm-shìng.

L. T'in-hâ mō pat-saàn chi ìn-tsîk, taaî-ka yâm-shìng.

H. Toh-tsê kòk waî* kè shîng-ì.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. Fong-Laān, neĭ tsaû-laì iù sheŭng fei-kei, ngŏh yaŭ kóng m̄-ch'ut kè naān-kwòh.

H. Shaì-kaaì sheûng uē-kwóh mŏ pît-leì, tîm-yeûng* ooĭ yaŭ ch'ūng-fūng ne?

W. Haî, uē-kwóh mŏ pît-leì, ngŏh-teî m̄-ooĭ chi-tò ch'ūng-fūng kè hôh kwaì.

H. Kwòk-Ts'uēn, hei-mông neĭ keì-chuê ngŏh kè wâ,* toh-toh-pó-chûng.

W. Toh-toh-pó-chûng, chuk neĭ yat-lô-sûn-fung.

LESSON 20

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Leĭ-Seì. Captain Ch'ăn-Tung. Tomorrow Miss Hŏh must leave. Is that right?

Wŏng-Î. Yes, she has decided to leave tomorrow.

Leĭ. Where does she plan to go?

Wŏng. She plans to return to San Francisco.

Wŏng. Fong-Laăn, several friends wish to give you a farewell party tonight.

Hŏh. They are so hospitable and generous!

Wŏng. This is a token of their thoughtfulness.

Ch'ăn. Leĭ, we have not yet welcomed her, and to-night we give her a farewell party, what shall we do?

Leĭ. It doesn't matter, we'll welcome her and bid her farewell at the same time, it makes no difference.

Ch'ăn. Yes, in such a case, it is more appropriate and meaningful.

Ch'ăn. Leĭ, "A friend comes from a distant land, isn't it a joy?" What does this sentence mean?

Leĭ. It means a friend comes from a distant place to see you, are you not happy?

Ch'ăn. Let's all have a drink with Miss Hŏh, all right?

LESSON 20

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Leĭ. Yes, we'll have a drink with Miss Hōh.

Ch'ān. This party is about to come to an end, everybody drink up.

Leĭ. There is no banquet in the world that will never end, everybody drink up.

Hōh. I thank each of you for your kindness.

Wōng. Fong-Laān, you are about to board the plane. Words cannot express my sadness.

Hōh. If there were no parting in the world, how could we have reunions?

Wōng. Yes, if there were no parting, we would not know how priceless reunion is.

Hōh. Kwỏk-Ts'uēn, I hope you remember my words, take good care of yourself.

Wōng. Take good care of yourself, I wish you bon voyage.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Take good care of yourself and bon voyage to you.
2. Your thoughtfulness is most valuable and I cannot express my appreciation by words.
3. It is very sad that we have to part in a few days' time.
4. This is not a farewell party; it is to welcome friends who came from a distant place.
5. Let us drink up and wind up this banquet.
6. His kindness to us is priceless, and I am sorry that we have to part.
7. It is a wonderful gathering. However, you seem to be very sad.
8. This party is very meaningful and we should have another one soon.
9. He departed from here when he was only a small child.
10. The plane left this airport a couple of hours ago.
11. Please say goodbye here, and don't go to the wharf to see me off.
12. You are very kind to come all the way here to bid me farewell.
13. Welcome to the largest Chinatown outside the Orient.
14. What is the meaning of this? Who are you?
15. The meeting ends in a few minutes.
16. I am very grateful to all of you for this farewell party.

LESSON 20

WORD LIST

1.	sùng-pît(t'ūng..sùng-pît)	to bid farewell, see one off
2.	leī-hoi	to depart from, leave
3.	t'ūng..tsìn-haāng	to give a farewell party to..
4.	sam-sẑ	token of thoughtfulness
5.	foon-yīng	to welcome
6.	ì-î	meaningful; menaing
7.	tsẑ-uĕn fong loī	to come from a distant place
8.	pat-yîk-lôk-foŏ?	is it not a joy?
9.	ooî*	party, gathering
10.	saàn	to end, wind up, scatter
11.	īn-tsîk	banquet
12.	yám-shìng, t'ūng... yám-shìng	to drink up, to drink up with
13.	kóng m̄-ch'ut	can't be expressed by words
14.	shîng-ì	kindness, hospitable
15.	naān-kwòh	sad, grieved
16.	pît-leī	departure; to part
17.	hóh-kwaì	valuable, priceless
18.	toh-toh-pó-chûng	to take good care of yourself
19.	chuk neĭ yat-lô-sûn-fung	to wish you bon voyage

LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

1490

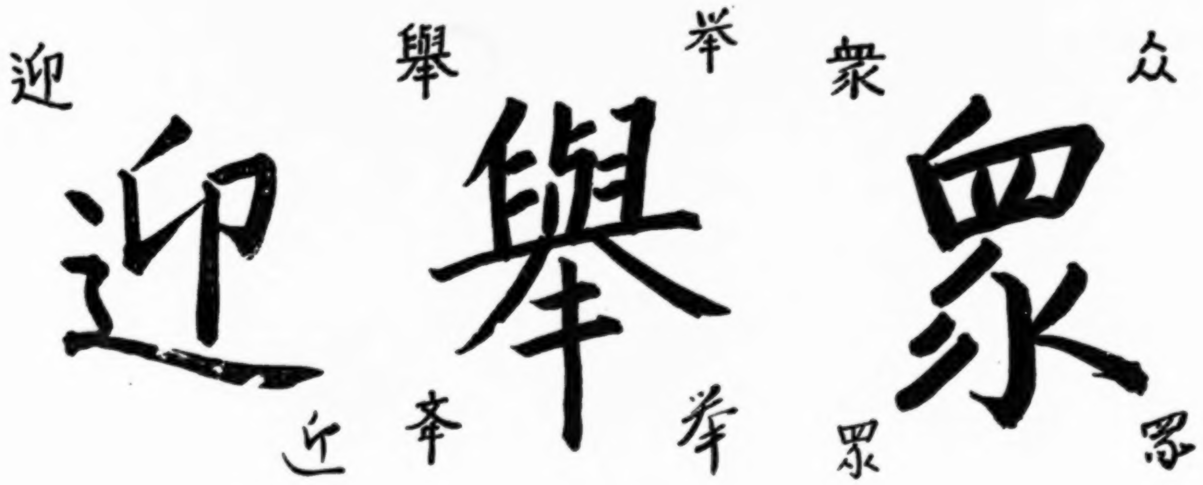
迎	yīng. to receive a guest; to meet
迎接	yīng-tsīp: to receive· to entertain.
失迎	shat yīng: to fail to receive a guest at the door.

529

舉	kuí: to raise; to elevate; all; the whole.
舉薦	kuí-tsìn: to recommend.
舉動	kuí-tûng: behavior; actions.
舉手	kuí shaú: to raise the hands.
舉行	kuí-haāng: to put into operation.

150

衆	chùng: many; a crowd; all
大衆	taaî-chùng: the public; everyone
出衆	ch'ut-chùng: above the average; uncommon
民衆	mān-chùng: the people

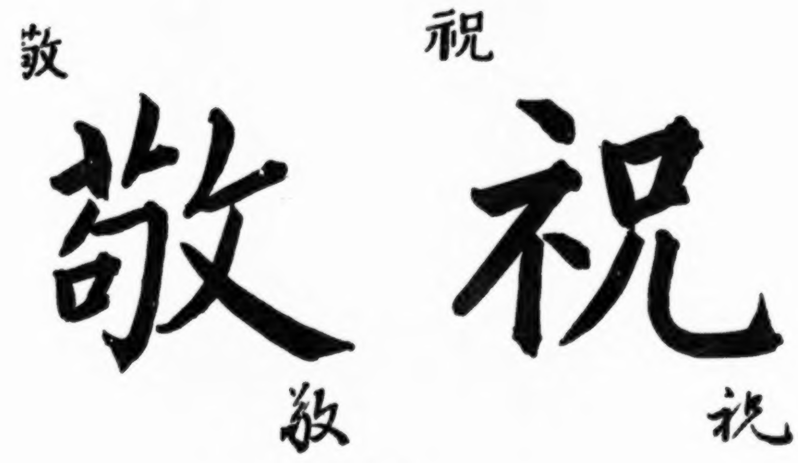


470

敬	kîng: to honor; to revere.
敬重	kîng-chûng: to respect highly.
敬贈	kîng tsâng: to present with respects.
尊敬	chuen-kîng: to show deference to.

138

祝	chuk: to invoke
祝福	chuk-fuk: invoke blessing
祝壽	chuk-shaû: to offer birthday congratulation



LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

1245

席	tsîk: a mat; feast; banquet; meeting.
酒席	tsaú-tsîk: a banquet; a feast.
出席	ch'ut-tsîk: to attend a meeting.

257

哈	hap (ha): sound of laughter
哈哈大笑	ha-ha taaî siù: hearty of laughter.
哈爾濱	Hap-Ÿ-pan: Harbin

1057

碎	suì: fragment; bit; petty; to grind.
碎銀	suì ngān: small change; small coins.
心碎	sam suì: heartbroken.
碎事	suì sz: trifling affair.

席 哈 碎

席 哈 碎

席 哈 碎

1309

聚	tsuî: to gather; to assemble.
聚集	tsuî-tsaâp: assembly; meeting.
聚賭	tsuî tó: to assemble for gambling.

344

義	î: meaning; sense; righteous
主義	chuó-î: principle
義子	î-tsź: adopted son
義務	î-mó: obligation
三民主義	Sam-mān chuó-î: "the three principles of people" by Sun Yat Sen

聚 義 义

聚 義

聚 義

LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

黄二嘅病已經好清啦，何小姐要番去三Faân市．黄二同佢嘅朋友老李老何老陳幾個人，喺何小姐黎到嘅時候，有機會請佢食飯黎歡迎佢．現在一定要替佢 tsin 行送别啦．

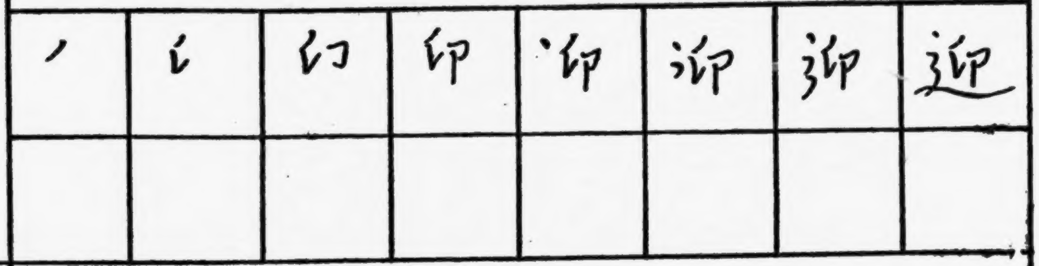
佢地幾個人，設 in 席喺一間華麗嘅酒家，飲吓食吓講吓，到高興嘅時候，由陳東舉 pooi 起立，請衆人敬何小姐一 pooi 大家飲勝，祝佢一路順風．飲完之後，個個都歡喜快樂，哈哈大笑．獨係何小姐話，佢有講唔出嘅難過．何小姐話，人生有聚亦有散，聚完又散，散後再聚，敢樣重有意義．

LESSON 20

WRITING MATERIAL

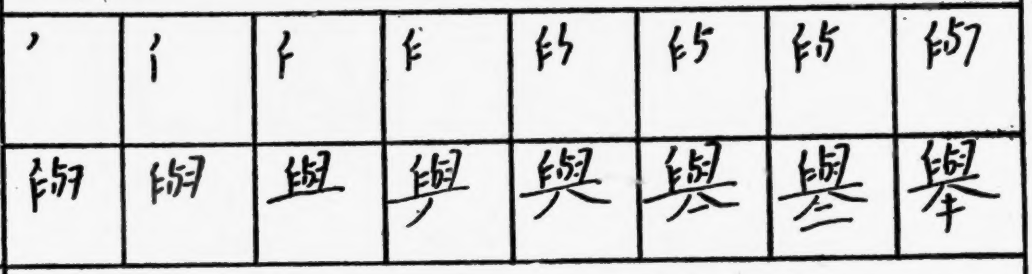
迎

Character Number 1490 Radical Number 162
Stroke Number 8 辶，辵



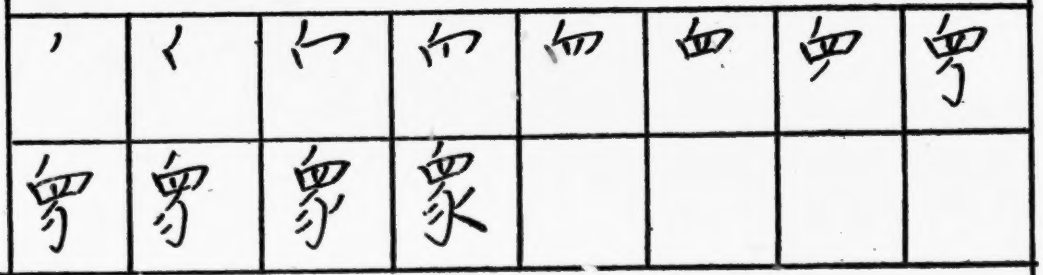
舉

Character Number 529 Radical Number 134
Stroke Number 16 臼



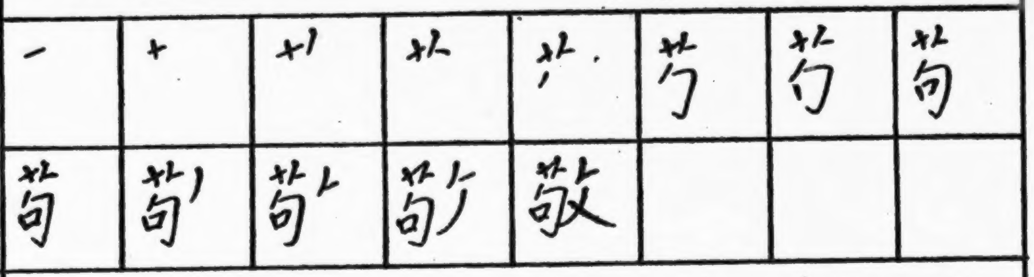
眾

Character Number 150 Radical Number 109
Stroke Number 12 罒，目



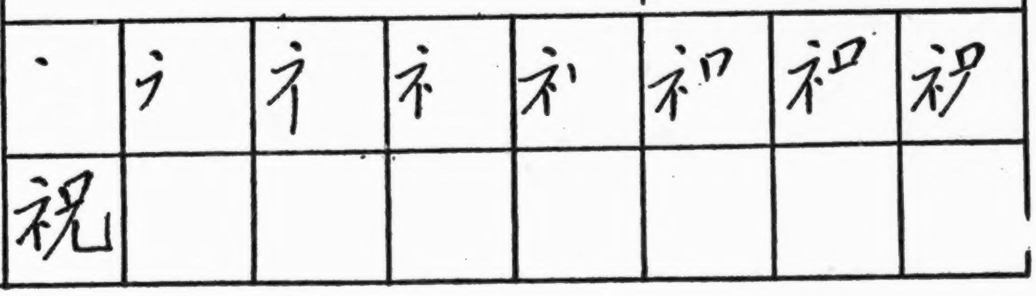
敬

Character Number 470 Radical Number 66
Stroke Number 13 攵，攴



祝

Character Number 138 Radical Number 113
Stroke Number 9 礻



DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE

TEXT VOLUME

VOLUME VI
LESSONS 1-20
(CHARACTER TEXT)

ΠΤΟΛΕΜΑΙ
DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Text Volume

Volume VI

Lessons 1-20

(Character Text)

March 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

第一課　重逢

李：啊，你係黃二，係唔係呀？

黃：係呀，你係李四呀？

李：係，我地有見面十五年咁耐。

黃：到底我地幾時分手嘅呢？

李：講起黎就長咯，我地係第二次世界大戰之後分手嘅。

黃：我記得錞，嗰陣時我番黎美國，你喺中國繼續停留。

李：日子過得真快，一吓又十幾年。

黃：係咯，你同我都老咗咯。

李：係呀，喺呢十幾年，我時時都掛住你，唔知你點*樣。

黃：哏，到底你幾時由台灣黎美國架？

李：兩年前，政府派我由台灣黎華盛頓考察。

黃：敢，你好喇！正話你想去邊處呀？

李：我啱啱食完飯，出黎市區散吓步．

黃：點解我喺呢處見倒你架？

李：係咯，我啱啱散步嘅時候，忽然間見倒一個人，嗰個人好似係你．

黃：乜咁啱架！我真估唔到！

李：我地幾時見面呢？

黃：聽日見面，好嗎？

李：好呀，聽日再見．

黃：聽日再見．

第一課　重逢

黃二係美籍嘅中國人，李四係中國人，佢地係老朋友；佢地有見面十五年咁耐；佢地係第二次世界大戰之後分手嘅．第二次世界大戰之後，黃二番黎美國，李四喺中國繼續停留．日子過得真快，一吓又十幾年，佢地都老咗．喺呢十幾年，李四時時都掛住黃二，唔知佢點*樣．兩年前，中國政府派李四由台灣黎華盛頓考察．有一日，李四食完飯，佢出黎市區散吓步；忽然間見*到一個人，嗰個人好似係黃二；佢地真估唔到會喺華盛頓見面．

第二課　約會

伙記：揾邊位呀，先生？

黃：我約咗朋友黎呢處食午餐，我先黎，佢一陣就到．

黃：我嘅錶已經十二點四個字，點解老李重未到架！

伙記：先生，你睇住你嘅錶做乜野呀？唔使心急．

黃：我自己同自己講啫．

伙記：拿！嗰個係唔係你嘅朋友呀？佢黎緊喇！

李：真係唔好意思，我而家至黎．

黃：唔緊要，我黎咗有幾耐啫．

伙記：兩位先生要啲乜野呢？

李：我要一個快餐，唔該你快啲．

黃：我唔係幾肚餓，我淨係要一個火腿三文治、同一杯牛

奶．

李：我聽人話呢間係華盛頓最大最好最出名嘅餐室，係嗎？

黃：係呀，唔祇敢，呢處嘅招呼又好，野又平，又好食．

李：個個人都係敢話，邊啲人時時黎呢處食飯架？

黃：乜野人都有．有啲係政府嘅官員，有啲係各國嘅外交官，有啲係好有地位嘅人．

李：睇吓你嘅錶，就黎一點喇．

黃：我地走喇，好嗎？伙記，唔該你埋單．

李：等我黎，等我黎．

黃：唔好爭，人地睇見唔好睇．

李：敢，第二次等我黎喇！

第二課　約會

黃二同李四係老朋友；佢地冇見面好耐．佢地昨日見面；大家都好歡喜．呢間叫做華盛頓餐室，係呢處至大至好至出名嘅餐室．黃二約咗李四黎呢處食午餐；黃二先黎；李四後到．一個伙記行埋黎；佢問黃二同李四要乜野．李四要一個快餐；黃二唔係幾肚餓，佢要一個火腿三文治同一杯牛奶．呢處嘅招呼好好，野又好食，又平．好多政府嘅官員，各國嘅外交官，同有地位嘅人都黎呢處食飯．食完飯之後，黃二叫伙記埋單；李四爭俾錢．

第三課　傾偈*(上)

上尉：先生，有乜野事呀？

黃：冇乜野事，我等人啫．

上尉：貴姓名呀？

黃：我叫做黃二．

上尉：我見你喺呢處行黎行去，你等緊邊個呀？

黃：我等緊我嘅朋友，佢而家重未黎．

上尉：點解你唔打電話*俾佢呢？

黃：我打咗兩次電話，第一次打唔通，第二次冇人接．

上尉：我好似喺邊處見過你嘅．

黃：我喺陸軍部做事．

上尉：我亦都喺陸軍部做事．

黃：啊！原來我地係同事．

上尉：不如我地飲杯酒至講喇！

黃：你飲完一杯又一杯，你嘅酒量真好．

上尉：我地傾吓偈*，一便飲，一便傾，好嗎？

黃：你想傾啲乜野呢？

上尉：乜野都好喇，隨*便喇

黃：等我捻吓！

上尉：你嗒低頭捻乜野呀？

黃：呢啲酒同你嘅說話引起我嘅回憶．等我同你講一個故事喇．

第三課　傾偈(上)

黃二放咗工之後，佢又去一間俱樂部等佢嘅朋友，佢失約．黃二打兩次電話俾佢，第一次打唔通，第二次冇人接；黃二喺嗰處行黎行去，自己同自己講；後來坐喺一張椅處；一個美國陸軍上尉走埋黎同佢傾偈．佢地係陸軍部嘅同事．佢地一便飲，一便傾；佢地嘅酒量都好好，大家都好好傾．呢啲酒同上尉嘅說話引起黃二嘅回憶，而家佢同上尉講一個故事．

第四課　傾偈*(下)

黃二：啲音樂真好聽，啲燈光越黎越暗．

黃：呢個故事好長，我唔知由邊處講起至好．

上尉：不如等我問你，你答喇，好嗎？

黃：好！不過你要問得有系統啲至好播！

上尉：當然*喇！呢個係唔係你嘅戀*愛故事呀？

黃：唔係，呢個係關於我嘅朋友張三嘅．

上尉：佢係邊處人呀？

黃：佢係美國加省人，又係中國人．

上尉：你敢講，係也野意思呀？

黃：佢喺美國出世，所以佢係美國籍人．佢嘅父母係中國人，所以佢又係中國人．

上尉：啊！原來係敢．佢幾時喺邊處出世架？

黃：一九二二年八月十六日佢喺加省三藩市出世．

上尉：佢今年幾大呀？

黃：等我計一計，佢今年卅五歲．

上尉：佢喺邊處大呀？

黃：佢喺中國大．

上尉：佢喺邊處讀書呢？

黃：佢喺中國讀小學同中學，中學畢業之後，佢黎美國加省讀大學．

上尉：後來又點呀？佢有冇當過兵呀？

黃：有，一九四一年珍珠港被偷襲之後，佢去當兵．一九五一年韓戰爆發嘅時候，佢再次當兵．

上尉：佢結咗婚未呀？

黃：結咗婚；第二次大戰結束之後冇幾耐，佢結婚．

第四課　傾*偈(下)

黃二同上尉喺華盛頓俱樂部傾咗好耐．佢地一便飲酒，一便食烟，一便傾偈．黃二心事重重．佢講一個故事．呢個故事係關於佢嘅朋友張三．佢話張三係美國籍嘅中國人，一九二二年八月十六日喺加省三藩市出世，今年卅五歲．張三喺中國大，喺中國讀小學同中學．中學畢業之後，佢黎美國加省讀大學．一九四一年珍珠港被偷襲之後，佢去當兵．第二次世界大戰結束之後有幾耐，佢結婚．一九五一年韓戰爆發嘅時候，佢再次當兵．

第五課 宵*夜

上尉：俱樂部就黎閂門，你唔停敢打喊露，係唔係好眼瞓呀？

黃二：係呀，啲人越黎越少，我好肚餓，好眼瞓，不如我地叫啲野食，好嗎？

上尉：我提議去隔離街嘅中國餐室食宵*夜．

上尉：我對你講嘅故事好有興趣．

黃：我答應你有時候繼續講完．

上尉：嗰間餐室冇幾遠，我地行去喇！

黃：呢間餐室嘅生意真好．

上尉：我地冇*位坐，點算好呢？

帶*位：先生，等我同你地搵吓喇！

帶*位：我已經到處搵過，啲位都坐滿晒，你地分開坐，好嗎？

黃：唔好鎼，我地想坐埋一齊．

李四：老*黃，又喺呢處見*到你，真啱鎼！

李：你喺呢處搭*位，大家逼吓喇！

黃：唔該晒，我地幾個人坐喺呢張大枱處．

女招待：先生，今晚嘅魚生粥，牛肉炒麵，炒粉好靚播！

黃：我要一碗魚生粥，一碟牛肉炒粉．

上尉：我唔知道叫乜野好，你同我點喇！

黃：呢*位上尉要一碟牛肉炒麵．

李：老*黃，唔好爭俾*錢，呢次等我黎．

李：喂！唔該你將兩張單寫埋一齊．

女招待：好呀，先生．

第五課　宵*夜

而家已經好夜，俱樂部啲人越黎越少．黃二講故事，講極都講唔完，佢越講越肚餓，越講越眼瞓．上尉提議去隔離街嘅中國餐室食宵*夜．上尉對於呢個故事好有興趣，黃二答應佢有時候繼續講完．嗰間餐室嘅生意好好，佢地揾唔到*位；後來見*到李四同佢嘅朋友，李四叫佢地搭*位坐．佢地食咗好多野，好似魚生粥，炒粉，炒麵等等，李四爭俾錢*．

第六課　夜景

黃：我覺得好飽，好熱，好頸渴，我提議去遊車河．

李：好呀，我都係一樣．上尉，你話點呀？

上尉：我冇意見，我都好中意去遊車河．

李：我地去邊處呀？

黃：我地去一個小城處禎吓．

李：我地由邊條路去呀？

黃：我地由海邊嘅公路去．

李：海邊公路唔係幾好行．

黃：係，但係近好多．

上尉：嗰處離呢處有幾遠呀，揸車去要幾耐呀？

黃：嗰處離呢處冇幾遠，大約三十里左右，揸車去要一點

鐘咁耐.

上尉：我地已經行咗三十里，到咗未呀？

黃：我地已經行咗三十里，我地到咗鏄.

李：我地落車睇吓野，好嗎？

黃：好呀，我地一齊去.

上尉：呢處嘅夜景真靚，有咁幽靜嘅酒吧同咁華麗嘅俱樂部

黃：老李，呢處嘅夜景有冇上海嘅咁靚呀？

李：呢處嘅夜景同上海嘅一樣咁靚.

上尉：李先生，你喺上海嘅時候，每個禮拜六你點過架？

李：我喺上海嘅時候，每個禮拜六我多數駛車到處去玩.

上尉：每個星期六你點樣頑呀？

李：也野都頑，有時到天光至番屋企.

第六課　夜景

黃二同上尉，李四同佢嘅朋友食完宵夜之後，黃二覺得好飽，好熱，好頸渴，佢提議去遊車河，佢地由海邊公路去一個小城處禎．嗰處嘅夜景好靚，有好幽靜嘅酒吧，同好華麗嘅俱樂部．李四話嗰處嘅夜景有上海嘅咁靚．佢話佢喺上海嘅時候，每個禮拜六多數駛車到處去禎，乜野都玩，禎得好好，有時到天光至番屋企．

第七課　電話對話

陳東：你係九二三。二嗎？

接線員：係，呢處係九二三。二，搵邊位呀？

陳：唔該你同我接第十二號分機．

接線員：嗰條線好忙，你等一陣再打黎．

接線員：呀！等一陣，嗰條線接通咗．

同房：呢處係十二號分機十二號房，邊位呀？

陳：我係陳東，請問黃先生喺處嗎？

同房：佢喺處，但係佢重瞓緊．

陳：我想同佢講幾句說話．

同房：好喇，請你等吓，唔好收線．

同房：老黃，又係你嘅電話．

黃：邊個咁早打黎架？真討厭．

同房：陳先生打黎嘅！

陳：老黃，點解你而家重未起身呀？

黃：我昨晚成晚冇瞓過，而家想瞓又瞓唔着．

陳：我想約你今晚去食飯，聽日一齊去教堂．

黃：我今日唔舒服，唔去得．

陳：聽日去得教堂嗎？

黃：而家唔講得定．

陳：你以為你聽日去唔去得呀？

黃：睇情形，我聽日或者去得．

陳：敢，你睇情形決定喇．

第七課　電話對話

陳東朝頭早打電話去十二號分機搵黃二，嗰條線好忙，後來佢打通咗，黃二嘅同房接電話，佢話黃二重瞓緊，陳東話想同黃二講幾句說話．後來黃二起身接電話．黃二話昨晚成晚冇瞓過，而家想瞓又瞓唔着．陳東想約黃二今晚去食飯，聽日一齊去教堂，黃二話佢唔舒服，唔去得．佢而家唔知道聽日去唔去得教堂，但係睇情形聽日或者去得．陳東叫佢睇情形決定．

第八課　去教堂

陳東：老黃，你今日覺得好啲嗎？

黃二：有心，我今日覺得好好多．

黃：老陳，你係基督徒，點解你黎天主教堂呀？

陳：我有乜所謂嘅，我以為各有各好．

朋友：天主教點呀？基督教點呀？

陳：天主教嚴肅啲，基督教隨便啲

朋友：天主教徒同基督徒都信耶穌嘅，係唔係呀？

陳：係，佢地都信耶穌．

朋友：牧師可以結婚，神父可唔可以結婚架？

陳：唔可以，神父唔可以結婚．

朋友：禮拜堂同聖堂有乜野唔同？

陳：基督教徒叫教堂做禮拜堂，天主教徒叫教堂做聖堂．

朋友：星期日基督徒去教堂，叫做做禮拜，天主教呢？

陳：星期日天主徒去教堂，叫做望彌撒．

朋友：嗰個修女做緊乜野呀？

陳：佢而家指揮緊詩班．

朋友：唱詩嘅人點唱法架？

陳：佢地有時合唱，有時獨唱．

朋友：而家咁多人去神父處做乜野？

陳：佢地去領聖體．

朋友：神父做彌撒嘅時候，用邊種語言架？

陳：用拉丁文；但係講道嘅時候，佢用英文．

朋友：老黃，你而家做緊乜野呀？

黃：我而家同我嘅父母祈禱．

第八課　去教堂

黃二，陳東同幾個朋友今朝早一齊去一間天主堂望彌撒，陳東同佢嘅朋友講好多關於宗教嘅野．陳東係基督教徒，但係佢話天主教同基督教各有各好．天主教嚴肅啲，基督教隨便啲．但係兩種宗教都信耶穌，牧師可以結婚，神父唔可以結婚．天主教徒叫教堂做聖堂，基督教徒叫教堂做禮拜堂．一位修女指揮詩班，有時合唱，有時獨唱，唱得好好聽．後來佢地見倒好多人去領聖體．黃二而家同佢嘅父母祈禱．

第九課　旅行

黃二：我地已經去完教堂．大家商量旅行嘅節目，好嗎？

朋友甲：我提議去郊外野餐，同遊車河．

朋友乙：我提議去扒艇同釣魚．

陳東：我以為扒艇比較野餐好得多．

甲：我以為扒艇冇野餐咁好．

黃：我以為扒艇同野餐一樣咁好．

陳：每個人嘅興趣都唔同．我地點辦呀？

黃：係我以為世界上冇兩個人嘅興趣完全一樣．

陳：我地點樣決定呢？

黃：我地睇情形決定喇．

陳：我地要幾時趕番黎呀？

黃：我地要天黑之前趕番黎．

陳：呢處附近有冇野餐嘅地方呀？

黃：有，離呢處十里有一個野餐嘅地方．

陳：嗰處嘅氣候點樣呀？有乜野遊客呀？

黃：嗰處四季如春，各地嘅遊客都有．

陳：嗰處嘅風景有冇中國杭州嘅咁好呀？

黃：一樣咁山明水秀．

陳：我地已經到咗鋝；野餐之後去邊處呀？

黃：野餐之後去遊河．

陳：今日嘅風浪大嗎？

黃：唔大，今日風平浪靜．

陳：我地而家去遊河扒艇，好嗎？

第九課　旅行

黃二，陳東同佢嘅朋友正話由教堂出黎．佢地商量旅行嘅節目．有啲人提議去郊外野餐同遊河．有啲人想去扒艇同釣魚．每個人嘅興趣都唔同．黃二話世界上冇兩個人嘅興趣係完全一樣嘅．佢地要天黑之前趕番黎．離呢處十里有一個野餐嘅地方．嗰處嘅氣候好好，四季如春，處處嘅遊客都有，風景同杭州嘅一樣咁好，山明水秀．野餐之後，佢地去遊河，扒艇．

第十課　日落

陳：我地已經扒到海中心，你地癐嗎？

朋友甲：我好癐．我地喺邊處停一停呀？

黃：我都好癐．我地喺呢處停一停．

陳：老黃，你游水游得好好．順便游吓喇！

黃：我而家冇以前游得咁好，你呢？

陳：我游得冇你咁好．我不如釣魚好啲．

朋友甲：你地游水同釣魚．等我同你地影相．

朋友乙：而家風浪點呀？啲水凍嗎？

黃：而家風浪比正話嘅大好多．啲水凍過頭．

朋友甲：我地扒得咁慢，日頭落得咁快．

朋友乙：我地快啲扒番去罅！

陳：已經日落西山，老黃，你有乜野感想呀？

黃：我覺得時間過得真快．

陳：你以為睇日落有詩意嗎？

黃：一言難盡，我以為睇日落比較睇日出有詩意得多．

陳：日出同日落有乜野唔同呀？

朋友甲：朝頭早嘅日頭象徵年青人，黃昏嘅日頭象徵老年人，啱嗎？

黃：好啱．夕陽無限好，只是近黃昏．

陳：係，可惜日落嘅時間太短，一吓就過．

黃：人嘅生命都係一樣，幾十年一吓就過．

陳：我地埋岸罅，你睇，已經黑到睇唔見路罅．

黃：係，已經係萬家燈火嘅時候．

第十課　日落

佢地而家遊緊河．佢地扒艇扒到海中心處，大家都好癐，佢地喺個處停一停．有啲人游水，有啲人釣魚，有啲人影相．而家嘅風浪比正話嘅大好多；所以佢地開始扒番去．但係扒得好慢，冇幾耐，已經日落西山．黃二嘅感想好多．佢話睇日落比較睇日出有詩意得多．佢話「夕陽無限好，只是近黃昏」．可惜日落嘅時間太短；人嘅生命都係一樣，幾十年一吓就過．佢地埋岸嘅時候，已經天黑．

第十一課　睇病(上)

同房：今朝早你覺得點樣呀？

黃：我嘅頭好痛，發冷，發熱．

黃：你帶我去醫院處見陳醫生，得嗎？

同房：好呀，我帶你去醫院見陳醫生喇．

黃，同房：請問呢處係唔係門診掛號處呀？

看護：係呀，先生，呢處係門診掛號處，冇乜貴幹呀？

黃：我覺得唔舒服，我黎睇病．

看護：你以前有冇黎過呢處睇病呀？

黃：有，我以前冇黎過呢處睇病．

看護：你近來嘅生活狀況正唔正常呀？

黃：我近來嘅生活狀況唔正常．

看護：點樣唔正常呀？

黃：我近來嘅夜生活太多，應酬多過頭．

看護：你呢幾日嘅睡眠夠唔夠？

黃：唔夠，呢幾日嘅睡眠唔夠．

看護：呢幾晚你瞓得好嗎？

黃：呢幾晚我瞓得好唔好．

黃：你俾呢張表格紙我做乜野呀？

看護：我想你喺呢張表處填你嘅姓名，年齡，籍貫，職業，
地址，等等．

看護：你嘅掛號手續完咗，你想見邊個醫生呀？

黃：我想見陳醫生．

第十一課　睇病(上)

黃二呢幾日嘅生活唔係幾正常，夜生活太多，應酬多過頭，睡眠又唔夠，而且又瞓得唔好，今朝早佢頭痛發冷，發熱．佢嘅同房帶佢去一間醫院陳醫生處睇病．佢地先去門診掛號處掛號．佢地見到一個看護．嗰個看護問黃二好多問題，好似佢嘅生活狀況，每晚睡嘅時間等等．問完之後，看護俾一張表黃二，叫黃二填佢嘅姓名，年齡，籍貫，職業，地址，等等．

第十二課　睇病(下)

陳醫生：黃先生，請坐，等我同看護講吓．

陳：李小姐，黃先生嘅病情點樣呀？

看護：呢張係黃先生嘅病情報告．

陳：你同黃先生探咗熱未呀．

看護：我已經同佢探咗熱．

陳：佢發熱嗎？體溫幾高呀？

看護：佢發熱發得好高，攝氏四十一度三．

黃：我嘅熱度既然咁高，會唔會有危險呀？

陳：你嘅熱度雖然咁高，但係唔會有危險嘅，你放心．

黃：究竟我有乜野病呢？

陳：我重未知道，我重未可以診斷．

陳：黃先生，你嘅大小便點呀？

黃：我嘅大便唔係幾通．

陳：李小姐，黃先生嘅脈搏點呀？

看護：佢嘅脈搏跳得幾快，每分鐘九十五．

陳：血壓點呀？

看護：佢嘅血壓幾正常．

陳：黃先生，你昨晚咳得緊要嗎？

黃：我昨晚咳得好緊要，咳咗成晚．

黃：醫生，根據你嘅檢查嘅結果，你嘅診斷係點呀？

陳：你嘅病可能係流行性感冒，呢張係你嘅藥方．

第十二課　睇病(下)

看護帶黃二去見醫生．看護俾黃二嘅病情報告俾陳醫生．陳醫生問看護關於黃二嘅體温，脈搏同血壓．看護話黃二嘅熱度好高，脈搏好快，血壓幾正常．黃二好擔心．醫生叫黃二放心．醫生話黃二唔會有危險嘅．黃二又話佢嘅大便唔係幾通，昨晚咳得好緊要．醫生根據檢查嘅結果，佢話黃二嘅病可能係流行性感冒．佢開一張藥方俾黃二．

第十三課 住醫院

同房：昨日你食咗啲安眠藥片，你昨晚瞓得好啲嗎？

黃：我昨晚瞓得好好。

同房：你昨晚瞓覺之後，有冇醒過呀？

黃：冇，完全冇醒過，一覺瞓到天光。

同房：你重有冇咳呀？

黃：有，你聽吓，我咳得比昨日重緊要啲。

同房：你重有冇發燒呀？你覺得頭暈嗎？

黃：我重有發燒，而且頭好暈。

同房：你嘅胃口點呀？

黃：我嘅胃口好唔好，乜野都唔想食。

同房：我以為你最好去醫院住幾日。

黃：我都係敢想．入醫院嘅手續麻唔麻煩呀？

同房：唔麻煩，住醫院嘅手續好簡單．

黃：我地要唔要打電話定房呀？

同房：要，你未入院之前，一定要定房．

黃：呢間隔離室有乜野用處呀？

工人：佢係用黎隔離病人嘅．

黃：呢處有咁多間手術室，佢地有乜野用處呀？

技術人員：有啲係普通手術用嘅，有啲係大手術用嘅．

黃：小姐，我住嘅病房係第幾號呀？佢係單人房，抑或大房呀？

看護：黃先生，你住嘅病房係第一零一號，係一間好好嘅單人房．

第十三課　住醫院

昨日黃二食咗啲安眠藥片，佢昨晚瞓得好好，一覺瞓到天光．但係佢今日重有咳，咳得比昨日重緊要啲．佢重有發燒．佢頭暈；胃口唔好，乜野都唔想食．佢嘅同房提議佢入醫院住幾日．住院嘅手續好簡單；未入院之前一定要定房．喺醫院處，黃二見到嗰處有一間隔離室同幾間手術室．黃二住喺一零一號房，係一間好好嘅單人房．

第十四課　探病

李四，陳東，上尉：請問探病嘅時間係由幾點到幾點呀？

問事處嘅辦事員：上午由九點到十一點，下午由兩點到四點，夜晚由七點到八點．

李：我想去一零一號病房探病，得嗎？

辦事員：對唔住，唔得．嗰個病人已經被隔離咗．

李：點解呀？昨晚佢重好地地，點解變化得咁快架？

內科主任：病有時變化得好快嘅．

李：佢最初嘅病係流行性感冒，後來轉咗做乜野病呀？

內科主任：佢最初嘅病係流行性感冒，後來轉咗做急性肺炎．

上尉：點解你地要將佢隔離呢？

呼吸病科主任：為其他病人嘅安全起見，所以我地將佢隔離．

上尉：佢發熱發到最高嘅時候，佢有冇昏迷呀？

呼吸病科主任：嗰陣時佢差唔多完全昏迷，完全不醒人事．

上尉：後來你地點樣醫佢呀？

呼吸病科主任：後來我地同佢打退熱針同強心針．

上尉：而家退咗熱未呀？

看護：退咗好多鎛，但係重有啲熱．

上尉：佢最危險嘅時候，你地有冇通知佢嘅親屬？

內科主任：有，佢最危險嘅時候，我地通知佢嘅親屬．

李：呢個病會唔會復發架？

醫生：有幸有不幸，呢點要睇一個人嘅彩數．

第十四課　探病

黃二入咗醫院兩日咁耐．李四，陳東同上尉去醫院探佢嘅病．但係問事處嘅辦事員話黃二已經被隔離咗．內科主任話黃二嘅病由流行性感冒轉咗做急性肺炎，醫院方面為其他病人嘅安全起見，將黃二隔離咗．佢發熱發到最高嘅時候，完全不醒人事．後來醫生同佢打退熱針同強心針．佢最危險嘅時候，醫院通知佢嘅親屬．醫生話呢個病會唔會復發，要睇佢嘅彩數．

第十五課　病後感想

何方蘭：我想去一零一號病房探病，得嗎？

值班醫生：得呀，嗰間係一零一號病房．

看護：黃先生，有一位好靚嘅小姐黎睇你．

黃二：方蘭，原來係你呀？你點知我病呀？

何：我收到你父親打黎嘅一封急電．

黃：嗰封電報點話呀？

何：佢叫我即刻黎睇你．

黃：你係唔係由三藩市直接飛黎架？

何：係，我今早由三藩市直接飛黎嘅．

黃：你對我咁好，我唔知點樣感激你．

何：呢啲係朋友嘅本份．

黃：你覺得我瘦咗好多，係嗎？

何：你瘦咗好多．點解你病成敢呀？

黃：呢啲都要怪我自己唔小心．我有乜好講！

何：你點解要怪你自己呀？

黃：我怪我近來時時捱夜．

何：經過呢次大病之後，你應該得到一個教訓，係嗎？

黃：係嘅，我已經得到一個好大嘅教訓．

何：你覺得令人最痛苦嘅野係乜野呢？

黃：我以為令人最痛苦嘅野係病．

何：一個人如果有病，又有人打理佢嘅時候，點樣呀？

黃：如果係敢，佢更痛苦．

第十五課　病後感想

何方蘭係黃二嘅女朋友．黃二嘅父親打一封急電俾何小姐，叫何小姐即刻黎睇吓黃二．何小姐今早由三藩市直接飛黎呢處；佢去一零一號病房探黃二嘅病．黃二好感激佢．黃二病咗幾日，瘦咗好多，何小姐問黃二點解病成敢．黃二話佢要怪佢自己唔小心，時時捱夜．經過呢次大病之後，佢以為令人最痛苦嘅野係病，一個人如果有病，又冇人打理佢嘅時候，佢更痛苦．

第十六課　請病假

黃二：醫生話我幾時可以出院呀？

何方蘭：醫生話你重有幾日至可以出院.

黃：我要唔要等完全恢復健康至出院呀？

陳醫生：你最好等你完全恢復健康至出院.

黃：點解呀？陳醫生.

醫生：你對呢種病嘅抵抗力好弱，好容易復發.

何：國全，你向你嘅寫字樓請假未呀？

黃：呀！我重未向寫字樓請假.

何：你想唔想我同你向寫字樓請假呀？

黃：好呀，唔該你同我打電話去嗰處喇.

何：請問呢處係陸軍部文職人員人事處嗎？

女書記：係呀，呢處係陸軍部文職人員人事處．

何：我想同我嘅朋友黃國全請假．

女書記：佢想請事假抑或病假？

何：佢想補請病假．

女書記：佢想補辦病假嘅手續，係嗎？

何：係，佢想補辦病假嘅手續．

女書記：佢有冇醫生紙呀？

何：有，佢有醫生紙．

女書記：佢想請幾多日病假？由邊日到邊日呀？

何：佢想請五日病假，由呢個禮拜一到禮拜五．

女書記：呢個星期一放假，佢請四日夠鋳．

第十六課　請病假

何方蘭而家喺醫院處同黃二（黃國全）傾偈，黃二想知道佢幾時可以出院．陳醫生話黃二最好等完全恢復健康至出院，因為黃二對呢種病嘅抵抗力好弱，好容易復發．黃二重未向佢嘅寫字樓請假．何小姐同黃二打電話去陸軍部文職人員人事處請病假．佢想同黃二補辦病假嘅手續，佢話黃二想請五日病假，由呢個禮拜一到禮拜五．人事處嘅女書記話呢個星期一放假，黃二請四日夠罅．

第十七課　舊地重遊

何小姐：你病好咗幾日，你想去邊處消遣呀？

黃二：我病好咗冇幾耐，我邊處都唔想去．

何：你重記唔記得我地以前喺邊處認識架？

黃：記得，我地以前喺一個朋友嘅屋企認識嘅．

何：你重記唔記得佢叫做乜野名呀？

黃：佢好似同我同姓，同你同名，係嗎？

何：係，佢叫做黃方蘭．

黃：你記得嗰陣時係日頭抑或係夜晚呀？

何：敢都唔記得，嗰陣時係一個秋天嘅黃昏．

黃：嗰日隔而家將近四年，係嗎？

何：係，嗰日隔而家將近四年．

黃：嗰間屋嘅外便有乜野記號架？

何：嗰間屋嘅外便冇乜野特別記號．

黃：嗰間屋容唔容易認架？

何：嗰間屋幾容易認嘅．

黃：我地去嗰處坐吓，舊地重遊，好嗎？

何：好呀！我都係敢想．

黃：你睇，呢間屋同三年前完全一樣．

何：冇錯，呢間屋同三年前完全一樣．

黃，何：先生，請問黃方蘭女士喺處嗎？

住客：佢唔喺處．呀！佢唔喺呢處住．

黃：佢喺邊處住呀？

住客：我唔知到佢喺邊處住．

黃：方蘭，你睇吓，門庭依舊，人面已非．

第十七課　舊地重遊

黃二（黃國全）病好咗幾日、何小姐問佢想去邊處消遣，佢話邊處都唔想去·後來何小姐同黃二講好多以前嘅事·佢地係三年前喺一個朋友嘅屋企認識嘅·嗰個朋友叫做黃方蘭·嗰日隔而家將近四年咁耐·黃二同何小姐而家再去嗰間屋處·嗰間屋同三年前完全一樣；但係黃方蘭已經唔喺嗰處住·黃二話「門庭依舊，人面已非」·

第十八課　睇電影

黃二：你有冇意思去睇電影呀？

何方蘭：我好想去睇電影．

黃：你想睇邊種電影呀？

何：邊種電影都得．

黃：你至中意睇邊種電影呀，文藝片，音樂片抑或愛情片？

何：我對於呢三種電影都一樣咁中意．

黃：你對於喜劇有興趣嗎？

何：我對於喜劇好有興趣，但係我對於悲劇更有興趣．

黃：今日華盛頓戲院做乜野電影呀？

何：今日華盛頓戲院做「一曲難忘」．

黃：由邊個做主角呀？

何：由兩個好出名嘅男女明星做男主角同女主角．

黃：呢齣電影係描寫乜野架？

何：佢描寫一個作曲家點樣成名．

黃：佢重講及啲乜野呀？

何：佢重講及嗰個作曲家同一個小說家嘅戀愛．

黃：呢齣片動唔動人呀？

何：呢齣片非常之動人．

黃：我地去睇邊場呀？

何：我地去睇夜晚七點半嗰場，好嗎？

黃：小姐，而家已經係七點半，重有飛賣嗎？

女賣票員：唔使担心，我地重有好多飛．

黃：小姐，七點半嘅電影開咗未呀？

女賣票員：先生，已經開咗影鏬，快啲喇．

第十八課　睇電影

黃二問何小姐有冇意思去睇電影，何小姐話佢好想去．佢話佢好中意睇文藝片，音樂片，同愛情片．佢對於喜劇同悲劇都有興趣．今日華盛頓戲院做「一曲難忘」．由兩個好出名嘅男女明星做男主角同女主角．呢齣電影描寫一個作曲家點樣成名，同講及佢同一個小說家嘅戀愛．呢齣片非常之動人．黃二同何小姐去睇夜晚七點半嗰場．佢地去到戲院嘅時候，已經開咗影．

第十九課　音樂會

何才蘭：你中意古典音樂抑或近代音樂呀？

黃：我兩樣都中意．

何：我聽聞話而家已經係音樂會嘅季節，係嗎？

黃：係，每年呢個時候都係音樂會嘅季節．

何：今晚嘅音樂會喺邊處演奏呀？

黃：今晚嘅音樂會喺華盛頓大禮堂演奏．

何：呢次音樂會嘅性質係點樣架？

黃：佢嘅性質係紀念一個大作曲家．

何：嗰個作曲家生喺邊個世紀架？

黃：佢生喺十八世紀中期．

何：佢係唔係一個天才呀？

黃：係，佢係一個天才．

何：佢一生嘅命運點樣呀？

黃：佢一生嘅命運非常之苦

何：佢嘅命運苦成點呀？

黃：佢好窮，時時病同失戀．

何：嗰陣時嘅人賞唔賞識佢嘅作品呀？

黃：嗰陣時嘅人非常之賞識佢嘅作品．

何：音樂會而家開始，第一個節目係乜野呀？

黃：第一個節目係小提琴獨奏，鋼琴伴奏．

何：拍手同歡呼嘅人真多．

黃：因為彈得非常之好．

第十九課　音樂會

何小姐同黃二講好多關於音樂會嘅野．黃二話每年呢個時候都係音樂會嘅季節．今晚嘅音樂會喺華盛頓大禮堂演奏．佢嘅性質係紀念一個大作曲家．呢個作曲家生喺十八世紀中期．佢係一個天才．但係佢一生嘅命運太苦．佢好窮，時時病同失戀．嗰陣時嘅人好賞識佢嘅作品．而家音樂會開始．第一個節目係小提琴獨奏，鋼琴伴奏．好多人拍手同歡呼，因為彈得非常之好．

第二十課 送別

李四，陳東，上尉：何小姐聽日要離開呢處，係嗎？

黃二：係，佢決定聽日離開呢處．

李：佢打算去邊處呀？

黃：佢打算番去三藩市．

黃：方蘭，幾位朋友想今晚同你餞行．

何：也佢地咁客氣呀！

黃：呢啲係佢地嘅心事．

陳：老李，我地重未歡迎佢，今晚同佢餞行，點辦呀？

李：唔緊要，一面歡迎佢，一面同佢餞行，一樣啫．

陳：係，敢樣重有意義．

陳：老李，「有朋自遠方來，不亦樂乎？」呢句話點解呀？

李：即係話，朋友由好遠嘅地方黎睇你，你唔歡喜咩？

陳：我地大家同何小姐飲杯，好嗎？

李：好，我地同何小姐飲杯。

陳：呢個會就黎散，大家飲勝。

李：天下無不散之筵席、大家飲勝。

何：多謝各位嘅盛意。

黃：方蘭，你就黎要上飛機，我有講唔出嘅難過。

何：世界上如果有別離，點樣會有重逢呢！

黃：係，如果有別離、我地唔會知到重逢嘅可貴。

何：國全，希望你記住我嘅話，多多保重。

黃：多多保重，祝你一路順風。

第二十課　送別

何小姐聽日要離開華盛頓，番去三藩市．黃二嘅幾位朋友同何小姐餞行．李四話一面歡迎佢，一面同佢餞行，重有意義．「有朋自遠方來，不亦樂乎？」陳東唔明白呢句說話；李四話如果朋友由好遠嘅地方黎睇你，你會好歡喜嘅．食飯嘅時候，佢地同何小姐飲勝，何小姐好多謝佢地．黃二送何小姐去搭飛機嘅時候，黃二好難過．何小姐話世界上如果有別離，點樣會有重逢呢．黃二祝佢一路順風．

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE

TEXT VOLUME

VOLUME V
LESSONS 1-20
(CHARACTER TEXT)

ΠΤΟΛΕΜΕΙ
DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Text Volume

Volume V

Lessons 1-20

(Character Text)

January 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

第一課　歷史

黃：中國嘅歷史有幾長呢？

張：中國嘅歷史大約*有五千年咁上下*，係世界上歷史最長嘅國家之一．

黃：中國嘅文化點樣*呢？

張：中國嘅文化發達得非常之早．喺周朝嘅時候，即係公元前一一二二年，文化已經發達得好高．中國人崇拜孔子，佢就係生喺呢個朝代．佢嘅哲學叫做孔子哲學，外國人又叫佢做中國哲學．到咗漢朝，即係公元前二○六年，呢種哲學更加發達．嗰個時候亞洲西部嘅國家好崇拜中國嘅文化，所以佢地叫中國人做漢人．到唐朝嘅時候，即係西曆六一八年，中國嘅文化非常之

發達，而且傳到海外，所以南洋各處嘅人叫中國人做唐人．

黃：係唔係喺唐朝嘅時候，中國人開始漸漸向海外移民呢？

張：冇錯．因為唐朝嘅時候，海上交通發達，國力又强，所以有好多人向海外移民，尤其係廣東同福建兩省嘅人，有好多向南洋移民，到元朝同明朝嘅時候更多．

第二課　地理

黃：中國係世界著名*嘅古國之一，呢個國家喺邊處呢？

張：中國喺亞洲嘅東南部，係亞洲一個好大嘅國家．

黃：中國嘅面積有幾大呢？

張：中國嘅面積有九百八十萬方公里，大約*佔全世界陸地十五分之一，佔全亞洲面積四分之一．

黃：廣東省喺邊處呢？廣東省嘅面積有幾大呢？

張：廣東省喺中國嘅南便，面積大約*有二十三萬方公里．

黃：廣東省嘅省會叫做乜野*名*呢？

張：廣東省嘅省會叫做廣州，廣東人普通叫佢做省城．

黃：廣東嘅地形係點樣*嘅呢？

張：廣東省嘅北便有五嶺山脈，我地普通叫佢做南嶺．

南便有南海．珠江三角洲一帶係平原．

黃：廣東省有乜野大河呢？

張：廣東省大嘅河係東江，西江，北江，呢三條江都流入
珠江，然後由珠江流入南海．

黃：廣東省至大嘅島叫做乜野名*呢？

張：廣東省至大嘅島叫做海南島，喺廣東省嘅西南便．

第三課　氣候

黃：中國喺亞洲大陸，係乜野嘅氣候呢？

張：中國嘅氣候同北美洲嘅氣候差唔多，都係大陸氣候．華北嘅氣候係寒帶嘅氣候；華中嘅氣候係温帶嘅氣候；華南嘅氣候係亞熱帶嘅氣候．

黃：華南嘅温度，冬季大*約幾多度，夏季大*約幾多度呢？

張：冬季嘅時候，廣州嘅平均温度係華氏表六十度咁上下．夏季嘅時候，廣州嘅平均温度係華氏表八十二度咁上下*．所以廣東唔係好冷，唔係好熱，氣候好温和．

黃：既然廣東喺熱帶嘅地方，點解氣候温和呢？

張：因為廣東嘅北便有南嶺山脈，冬季嘅時候，佢阻住北便吹黎嘅寒流，所以喺冬天嘅時候，廣東唔係好冷．

廣東嘅南便近海；夏季嘅時候，有海風調節，所以喺夏天嘅時候，廣東唔係好熱．

黃：廣東有冇雪落架？雨量多唔多呢？

張：廣東好少落雪，但係時時落雨，所以雨量好多；春天嘅時候就係雨季．

黃：近海嘅地方時時打風．敢，廣東有冇打風呢？

張：有．打風嘅時候多數喺夏天．

黃：呢啲風係由邊處吹黎嘅呢？

張：呢啲風係由南太平洋吹黎嘅．

第四課 人口

黃：中國係全世界人口最多嘅國家，其實全國嘅人口有幾多呢？

張：喺抗戰之前即係一九三七年之前，中國嘅人口大約*有四萬萬人左右*. 抗戰勝利之後，即係一九四五年之後，中國嘅人口增加到四萬萬五千九百幾萬人. 最近中國嘅人口增加到六萬萬人左右*，大約*佔全世界人口四分之一.

黃：敢，中國邊處嘅人口至多呢？

張：中國沿海一帶嘅人口至多，華南各省嘅人口亦都好多.

黃：華南邊省嘅人口至多呢？

張：華南各省裏便，廣東省嘅人口最多，大約*有三千三百

萬人左右*．第二係廣西省，大約*有一千五百萬人左右*．第三係福建省，大約*有一千二百萬人左右*．第四係台灣省，大約*有一千萬人左右*．

黄：我聽人講，華南嘅人唔祇分散喺國內各省，而且散開喺海外各國添，係唔係呀？

張：有錯鏬．喺海外嘅華僑有一千二百萬人左右*；嗰啲人多數係廣東人同福建人，尤其係廣東人．所以喺海外嘅華僑差唔多都講廣東話*．

第五課　政府

黃：中國嘅國民政府採用邊種政體呢？

張：中國同美國都係民主國家，中國嘅政體同美國嘅一樣，所以國民政府亦都採用民主政體．

黃：中國嘅政府採用中央集權制，抑或地方分權制呢？

張：中國嘅政府採用中央集權制，唔用地方分權制．所以呢點同美國嘅政府唔同．

黃：中國嘅行政制度係點*樣嘅呢？

張：中國嘅行政制度分開中央行政同地方行政．中央行政即係國民政府嘅行政；地方行政即係省政府同縣政府嘅行政．

黃：國民政府最高長官係邊個呢？

張：國民政府最高嘅長官係總統，第二係副總統．佢地都係由人民選舉嘅．

黃：國民政府之下有啲乜野機關呢？

張：國民政府之下有五個院*，即係立法院*，司法院*，行政院*，監察院*同考試院*．

第六課　軍事

黃：中國軍事機關嘅組織係點樣*嘅呢？

張：行政院*嘅下便有一個部，叫做國防部．呢個部係中國政府最高嘅軍政機關，負責指揮陸海空三軍．

黃：國防部嘅主要長官叫做乜野呢？

張：國防部有兩個主要長官：一個叫做國防部長，負責軍政；一個叫做參謀總長，負責軍令．

黃：中國陸海空三軍長官嘅官銜係乜野呢？

張：佢地係陸軍總司令，海軍總司令，同空軍總司令；重有一個聯勤總司令，負責聯絡，供給，同運輸等等嘅工作．

黃：中國陸軍嘅單位*有邊幾個呢？

張：中國陸軍嘅單位有軍，師，團，營，連，排，班，同美國嘅編制差唔多.

黃：軍隊嘅任務係乜野呢?

張：軍隊嘅任務係保衛國家嘅領土，主權，同防禦外國嘅侵略.

第七課　教育

黃：中國嘅教育制度係點樣*嘅呢？

張：普通黎講，中國嘅教育制度即係小學六年，中學六年同大學四年．

黃：中國教育行政機關叫做乜野呢？

張：中國教育行政最高機關叫做教育部；每個省重有教育廳；每個市有教育局*或者教育科；每個縣有教育科．

黃：校長同教師有乜野分別呢？

張：校長係一間學校嘅最高負責人；教書嘅人叫做教師，普通叫佢做先生；大學嘅先生叫做教授．

黃：中國嘅細佬*仔幾歲開始入學校讀書呢？

張：中國嘅細佬仔大約*到六歲嘅時候，就開始入學校讀書．

黄：小學畢業以後，有啲乜野嘅教育呢？

張：小學畢業以後，就可以入中學，或者職業學校．中學又分開初中同高中．初中畢業以後，可以入高中，或者師範學校．高中畢業以後可以入大學，或者專科學校．

黄：中國嘅大學有幾多個學院*呢？

張：中國嘅大學有文學院*，理學院*，法學院*，醫學院*，工學院*，農學院*等等，同美國嘅大學差唔多．

第八課　宗教

黃：中國人信乜野教呢？

張：中國係一個信仰自由嘅國家，所以有好多宗教，有啲信基督教，有啲信天主教，有啲信佛教，有啲信道教，有的信孔教．有啲乜野都信，乜野都拜．

黃：孔教係乜野呢？

張：孔教又叫做儒教，孔教本來唔係一種宗教，祇係一種哲學．信孔教嘅人信孔子嘅哲學，崇拜孔子所教嘅倫理，道德，讀孔子所寫嘅書．

黃：孔子所教嘅倫理，道德，同所寫嘅書係關於乜野呢？

張：孔子所教嘅倫理，道德，同所寫嘅書係關於仁，義，禮，智，信，誠．

黃：敢，孔子唔係話佢自己係神，自己係上帝鏫播？

張：係鏫．孔子係一個文人，著作家，教育家，政治家，同哲學家．佢唔係神，唔係上帝．

黃：你話有啲人乜野都信，乜野都拜，佢地信乜野，拜乜野呢？

張：佢地信一樖樹會俾福佢地嘅時候，佢地就拜嗰樖樹佢地信一塊石會俾壽佢地嘅時候，佢地就拜嗰塊石．呢啲係迷信，唔係信教．

第九課　生活

黃：中國而家有六萬萬咁多嘅人口，佢地嘅生活點樣*呢？

張：中國嘅人口百分之八十係農人，所以佢地嘅生活多數同農業有關係．

黃：中國每年嘅農產品够唔够供給全中國人呢？

張：如果冇天災嘅時候，中國每年嘅農產品可以够供給全中國人，如果有水災，旱災，同其他天災嘅時候，就唔够餬．

黃：中國農人嘅生活，係唔係好艱難呢？

張：中國農人嘅生活雖然係好艱難，但係佢地係好知足，而且有一種精神上嘅快樂，同家庭上嘅快*樂．

黃：呢啲精神上嘅快樂，同家庭上嘅快樂係點樣嘅呢？

張：精神上嘅快樂係受孔教嘅影響，即係受孔子哲學嘅影

響，所以佢地都有「知足常樂」嘅態度．家庭嘅快樂，就係中國大家庭制度嘅好處，因為屋企嘅人，父母，仔*女，兄弟，姊*妹，都住埋一*齊，大家愛護，大家幫助．

黃：係唔係好多中國人中意大家庭制度呢？

張：係錞．好多中國人中意大家庭制度，有啲大家庭有幾十個人住喺一處，有啲大家庭有四五代住喺一處，佢地做工嘅時候，一*齊做工，快樂嘅時候，一*齊享受．

第十課　治安

黃：每個城市都有打刼，强姦，偷野，謀殺，誤殺，自殺嘅案件發生．係唔係呀？

張：每個城市都有打刼，强姦，偷野，謀殺，誤殺，自殺嘅案件發生．華南嘅城市亦都係一樣，但係華南嘅城市嘅治安算好鋳．

黃：各處地方有乜野機關維持治安呢？

張：各處地方有警察局維持治安．

黃：各處地方嘅警察局用乜野辦法維持治安呢？

張：每個城市有一個警察局；喺市內每一個區域又有一個警察分局．

黃：警察嘅主要任務係乜野呢？

張：警察嘅主要任務係維持地方治安，保護人民嘅生命，財產，預防各種案件嘅發生，同維持交通等等．但係喺戰時嘅任務係防止間諜活動，協助防空，指揮疏散人口等等．

第十一課　衛生

黃：華南時時都有瘟疫，流行性嘅病症，同傳染病發生，係唔係呀？

張：華南好少瘟疫，但係時時都有流行性嘅病症，同傳染病．

黃：最普通嘅流行性嘅病症，同傳染病係邊幾種呢？

張：最普通嘅流行性嘅病症，同傳染病係霍亂，傷寒，白喉，天花，水痘，痾痢，發冷，同流行性感冒等等．

黃：我地可以用乜野預防辦法預防呢啲病症呢？

張：我地可以用打針種痘嘅辦法預防呢啲病症．

黃：各處有乜野衛生機關呢？

張：每省有一個衛生局，每個城市都有市政衛生局，市政

衛生局之下又有好多衛生隊.

黃：每個城市嘅醫生同看護多唔多呢？

張：多. 每個城市嘅醫同看護好多. 不過人口太多，所以唔够醫生，唔够看護.

黃：西醫同中醫有乜野分别呢？

張：西醫係用西方醫藥嘅方法醫治病人. 中醫係用中國醫藥嘅方法醫治病人. 中國嘅醫藥方法多數用草藥，將草藥煮好俾病人飲.

黃：華南各省有冇好嘅醫院呢？

張：有. 華南各省有好多間好嘅醫院，有啲醫院嘅設備好新式，好完善.

第十二課　經濟

黃：華南嘅經濟情形點樣呢？

張：廣州係華南商業嘅中心點，又係國際貿易嘅大商埠，所以華南嘅經濟好繁榮．

黃：點解華南嘅經濟繁榮呢？

張：因為工業發達，所以失業人少．因為商業繁盛，所以金融流通．而且華南嘅華僑滙款好多，所以經濟繁榮．

黃：點解華南嘅金融流通呢？

張：因為華南嘅經濟繁榮有錢嘅人肯投資做生意，尤其係華僑嘅資本好多，所以金融流通．

黃：喺華南邊省嘅僑滙至多呢？

張：廣東省嘅僑滙至多，其次係福建省．

黃：廣東同福建兩省嘅華僑多數喺邊幾國呢？

張：廣東嘅華僑多數喺南美洲同北美洲，尤其係喺美國同加拿大兩國更多．福建嘅華僑多數喺南洋*各國，好似菲律賓，越南，泰國，緬甸，同印尼等國；但係喺嗰啲地方，廣東嘅華僑亦都唔少．

黃：華僑嘅經濟情形點樣*呢？

張：因為華僑多數都好勤儉，又好會做生意，所以華僑嘅經濟好發達．

第十三課　交通

黃：華南嘅海陸空交通便唔便利呀？

張：便利，華南海陸空嘅交通非常之便利．

黃：廣東省嘅海上交通點樣*呀？

張：喺廣州嘅附近有一個天然嘅港口，叫做黃埔．船隻來來往往，出出入入．有啲來往外國，有啲來往中國嘅海岸，有啲來往廣東省嘅內河，日日都「川流不息」．

黃：廣東省嘅陸上交通點樣*呢？

張：廣東省有兩條主要嘅鐵路：一條鐵路叫做廣九鐵路，係由廣州到九龍；一條鐵路叫做粵漢鐵路，係由廣州到湖北省嘅漢口．除咗鐵路之外，重有好多公路通到內地各省．

黄：由亞洲有冇火車一直通到歐洲呢？

張：自從廣九鐵路同粵漢鐵路接軌之後，由九龍可以坐火車去漢口，由漢口可以去北平，由北平可以去東北九省，由東北九省可以入俄國，經過西伯利亞，莫斯科，華沙，到歐洲各國．祇要十八日咁耐．

黄：廣州嘅空中交通點樣呢？

張：廣州有幾間航空公司，有幾條航空線．由個處可以飛去香港，上海，再飛去北美洲，南美洲，歐洲，非洲，澳洲，同亞洲各處嘅地方．

黄：敢，廣州就係華南嘅主要交通中心鏬播．

第十四課　商業

黃：天津係華北一個重要嘅商埠，上海係華中一個重要嘅商埠，廣州係華南一個重要嘅商埠．敢，廣州嘅重要商業係乜野呢？

張：廣州嘅重要商業係出入口生意，百貨公司生意．等等．

黃：廣州嘅入口貨多數係乜野呢？

張：廣州嘅入口貨多數係機器，五金，汽車，燃料，食品，藥品，棉織品，毛織品，等等．

黃：呢啲貨多數由邊處運黎嘅呢？

張：有啲由日本運黎；有啲由美洲同歐洲各國運黎．

黃：廣州嘅出口貨多數係乜野呢？

張：廣州嘅出口貨多數係茶，糖，水泥，桐油，絲髮等等．

黃：呢啲貨多數運去邊處呢？

張：有啲運去美洲，歐洲，菲洲，有啲運去澳洲，亞洲．

黃：廣州嘅百貨公司生意係點*樣嘅呢？

張：廣州嘅百貨公司好多；生意嘅競爭好劇烈．

黃：華南嘅商業，由海外華僑投資多唔多呢？

張：多．海外嘅華僑好多喺華南各處投資做生意，所以商業好發達．

黃：華南嘅商業，除咗中國人投資之外，有冇外國人投資呢？

張：華南嘅商業，除咗中國人投資之外，由外國人投資嘅，亦都唔少．

第十五課　工業

黃：華南有冇重工業，輕工業呢？

張：有．華南有重工業，亦有輕工業．

黃：華南有冇造船廠呢？

張：有．喺福建省嘅馬尾同廣東省嘅湛江，都有好大嘅造船廠．

黃：呢啲造船廠嘅船塢可以容納得幾大嘅船呢？

張：呢啲造船廠嘅船塢可以容納得兩三萬噸咁大嘅船．

黃：華南重有冇其他嘅工廠呢？

張：有．華南有鍊糖廠，水泥廠，電氣廠，煤氣廠等等．

黃：除咗呢啲大規模嘅工廠之外，重有冇細規模嘅工廠呢？

張：有喇．除咗呢啲大規模嘅工廠之外，重有唔少細規模

嘅工廠添．

黃：呢啲細規模嘅工廠係乜野嘅工廠呢？

張：呢啲細規模嘅工廠係汽水廠，鑵頭廠，煙草廠，化粧品廠，化學品廠，同印刷廠等等．

黃：呢啲工廠由中國人投資呀，抑或由外國人投資呢？

張：呢啲工廠由中國人投資，亦由外國人投資，尤其係海外嘅華僑投資更多．

第十六課　農業

黃：華北嘅人多數食麥；華南嘅人多數食米．敢，華南嘅地方一定出產好多米鎛．

張：華南嘅地方出產米，但係華南出產嘅米唔夠華南嘅人食．

黃：佢地唔夠米食嘅時候，佢地點樣*補救呢？

張：佢地唔夠米食嘅時候，佢地要靠入口嘅米．

黃：呢啲入口嘅米由邊個國黎呢？

張：呢啲入口嘅米由越南，泰國，同緬甸黎嘅．

黃：華南嘅農業區喺邊處呢？

張：華南嘅農業區，廣東省方面，喺東江，西江，同北江一帶；福建省方面，喺閩江，同九龍江一帶；台灣省

方面，喺台中，同台南一帶；廣西省方面，喺西江上游，同桂江一帶．

黃：嗰啲農人種乜野呢？

張：嗰啲農人種米，種菜，種花生，種蔗，種茶等等．尤其係福建嘅茶最著名．

黃：佢地種嘅米，每年收穫幾多次呢？

張：每年收穫兩次．

黃：華南嘅畜牧場喺邊處呢？

張：華南嘅畜牧場散開喺華南各處．

黃：嗰啲畜牧場養啲乜野呢？

張：大嘅畜牧場多數養牛，養馬，或者養羊；細嘅畜牧場多數養豬，養鷄，養鴨，養鵝等等．

第十七課　漁業

黃：華南一帶有咁多艇家嘅人，漁業一定好發達鏬．

張：廣州，香港，澳門*，湛江，汕頭，廈門一帶有好多艇家人，普通我地叫佢地做疍家人．佢地嘅職業係攞魚*，所以呢啲地方嘅漁業好發達．

黃：嗰啲疍家人喺嗰啲地方嘅附近攞魚*，係唔係呢？

張：唔係，佢地喺嗰啲地方嘅附近停佢地嘅船，唔係喺嗰啲地方嘅附近攞魚*．

黃：敢，佢地喺邊處攞魚*呢？

張：佢地出海攞魚*．佢地出海攞魚*嘅時候，佢地多數兩三隻船一齊*敢去，用網黎攞魚*．

黃：佢地每次去幾多日，去幾遠呢？

張：佢地每次去六七日咁耐，去幾百里咁遠．

黃：佢地攞倒魚*嘅時候，佢地點樣*做呢？

張：佢地攞倒魚*嘅時候，佢地用雪藏住啲魚*，就當鮮魚*黎賣；或者用鹽醃住啲魚*，就當鹹魚*黎賣．

黃：鮮魚*賣俾邊處，鹹魚*賣俾邊處呢？

張：嗰啲鮮魚*賣俾鮮魚欄，鹹魚*賣俾鹹魚欄．

黃：敢，嗰啲蛋家人喺邊處住呀？

張：佢地喺佢地自己嘅艇處住，喺佢地自己嘅艇處食，好似我地喺我地嘅屋處一樣．

黃：佢地嘅生活點樣*呀？

張：佢地搵食搵得唔容易，所以生活好艱難．

第十八課　運動

黃：我聽人講，多數廣東人歡喜運動．呢句説話真定假呢？

張：呢句説話唔係「言過其實」．

黃：點解多數廣東人歡喜運動呢？

張：因為廣東嘅天氣適合户外運動，亦都適合户內運動．

黃：佢地中意邊種户外運動呢？

張：佢地中意田徑運動．佢地亦都中意打足球，打網球，同游水等等．

黃：佢地打嘅足球係美國足球抑或英國足球呢？

張：佢地打嘅多數係英國足球，唔係美國足球．

黃：既然廣東近住海，天氣又唔冷唔熱，敢，廣東人係唔係好中意游水呢？

張：冇錯鏮．多數廣東人都好中意游水，所以好多廣東人游水游得好好．

黃：喺廣州有乜野好理想嘅游水嘅地方呢？

張：除咗喺市內有好多游泳池之外，喺郊外嘅東山同荔枝灣有好大，好理想嘅游泳場．嗰處嘅游泳場，唔祇風景好，而且建築得好美麗，設備得好完善．

黃：嗰兩處係唔係公共嘅游泳場呢？

張：係喇．嗰兩處都有好靚嘅房*，租俾游水嘅人嘅．

黃：敢，喺海邊嘅游泳場一定更好．係唔係呀？

張：自然喇．海邊嘅游泳場係一個天然嘅游泳場；唔祇海水好，陽光好，而且風景好．

第十九課　娛樂

黃：廣東有冇娛樂嘅地方呀？

張：有，廣東有好多娛樂嘅地方.

黃：廣東有乜野娛樂嘅地方呢？

張：有電影戲院*，有大戲戲院*等等.

黃：電影戲院*同大戲戲院*有乜野分別呢？

張：電影戲院*專影電影；大戲戲院*專做大戲.

黃：電影戲院*所影嘅電影係邊種呢？

張：有啲電影戲院*所影嘅電影係中國電影；有啲電影戲院*所影嘅電影係美國電影.

黃：大戲院*所做嘅大戲係邊種呢？

張：有啲大戲戲院*所做嘅大戲係粵劇；有啲大戲戲院*所做

嘅大戲係京劇·

黃：粵劇同京劇有乜野分別呢？

張：粵劇係用廣東話*演唱嘅·京劇係用北京話*演唱嘅·佢地所着嘅服裝都差唔多，但係說話就唔同鑄·

黃：敢，你明白唔明白京劇呢？

張：從前我完全唔明白，而家漸漸*明白少少，但係總覺得佢冇粵劇咁好·

黃：你中意睇電影，抑或睇大戲呢？

張：我至中意睇電影，但係有時亦都睇大戲·因為睇大戲要好多時候，而且我又時常唔得閒，所以好少睇大戲·

第二十課　遊樂

黃：除咗戲院*之外，廣東重有冇其他娛樂嘅地方呀？

張：有喇．除咗戲院*之外，重有跳舞場，夜總會*，等等．

黃：邊處有跳舞場呢？

張：每間大酒店都有跳舞場．

黃：除咗嗰啲大嘅酒店有跳舞場之外，重有冇其他嘅跳舞地方呢？

張：有喇．除咗嗰啲大嘅酒店有跳舞場之外，重有好多舞廳．

黃：呢啲舞廳係點樣*架？

張：呢啲舞廳有舞女*同舞客跳舞嘅．

黃：你中意跳舞嗎？

張：我喺二十幾歲嘅時候，好中意跳舞；不過而家老咗，
而且做工又做得咁忙，所以好少跳舞．

黃：喺廣東省嘅大城市有冇馬戲表演呢？

張：有．有時有馬戲表演．啲馬戲班，有啲係由中國人表演嘅，有啲係由外國人表演嘅．有馬戲表演嘅時候，城市裏便好熱鬧，因為好多人由鄉下*黎睇．

黃：馬戲班裏便同附近有冇好禎*嘅野呀？

張：除咗馬戲班裏便有獅子，老虎，同象嘅表演之外，馬戲班嘅附近重有好多好禎*嘅野，好睇嘅野，同好食嘅野添．

EFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE

TEXT VOLUME

VOLUME VII
LESSONS 1-20

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

ED022179

AL 001 479

EPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Text Volume

Volume VII

Lessons 1-20

May 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

PREFACE

The Chinese Cantonese Course, consisting of 166 lessons in 8 volumes, is one of the Defense Language Institute's Basic Course Series. The material was developed at the Defense Language Institute's Curriculum Development Board.

The course is designed to train native English language speakers to Level 3 proficiency in comprehension and speaking and Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Chinese Cantonese. The texts are intended for classroom use in the Defense Language Institute's intensive programs employing the audio-lingual methodology. Tapes accompany the texts.

All inquiries concerning these materials, including requests for authorization to reproduce, will be addressed to the Director, Defense Language Institute, U. S. Naval Station, Anacostia Annex, Washington, D. C. 20390.

CW Chaney
C. W. CHANEY
Colonel, U.S. Army
Director

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume VIII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 set	Flash Cards for 1500 Most Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	27 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	27 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
		Also available in compact form for comprehension or review purposes:
	3 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:	1 reel	Hong Kong, MF 20-8799,(P)(A)* 9 min.
	1 reel	Hong Kong Welcomes You, MF 20-9363, (I) 15 min.
	1 reel	An Oriental City, Canton, MF 20-9075, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Farming in South China, MF 20-7829, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Taiwan, Island of Freedom, AFIF 103, 23 min.
	1 reel	Formosa, LSFC 21, 13 min.
	1 reel	Miracle in Free China, MF 20-9114, 30 min.
	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, (I) 14 min.

* Available in magnastriped Chinese-Cantonese narrations. (P) Primary version, (I) Intermediate version, (A) Advanced version.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Formosa, Blueprint for a Free China, MOT 18, 24 min.
1 reel	China EF 258, 17 min.
1 reel	China, the Land and the People, MF 20-8939, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	Peiping Family, MF 20-8966, 20 min.
1 reel	The Chinese Village, a Legend, MF 20-9341, 15 min.
1 reel	Red China, AFIF 97, 27 min.
1 reel	China, Far East, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657 FC, (I) 14 min.
1 reel	Far East, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657, 30 min.
1 reel	Southeast Asia, Lands and Peoples, MF 20-8862, 13 min.
1 reel	Southeast Asia, SIS AFS No. 6, MF 30-8771, 33 min.
1 reel	The Village that Refused to Die, MF 20-9748, 60 min.
1 reel	Siam, MF 20-9269, 31 min.
1 reel	Burma, People of the River, MF 20-9028, 14 min.
1 reel	Letter from Indonesia, MF 20-8695, 27 min.
1 reel	The Philippines, AFIF 48, 15 min.
2 reels	Portrait of an American Family, MF 30-8449 (CC), 60 min.
1 reel	Men Against Tanks, MF 7-7898, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	Production of Combat Intelligence, MF 30-1494, (P)(A) 18 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Rifle Company, LSFC-3, (P)(A) 35 min.
1 reel	Infantry Battalion, LSFC-1, (P)(A) 21 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE (TOISHAN) 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters (Toishan Conversion Table)
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	24 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	24 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-26
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 27-55
	1 vol.	Volume III, Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	14 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	14 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	27 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

	27 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 210-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Volume I, Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume II, Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Volume III, Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Volume V, Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	*Free China's Fighting Men*, MF 30-8444, 14 min.
	1 reel	*Mighty Chinese Armed Forces*, LS-86, 22 min.
	1 reel	*Production of Combat Intelligence*, MF 30-1494, 18 min.

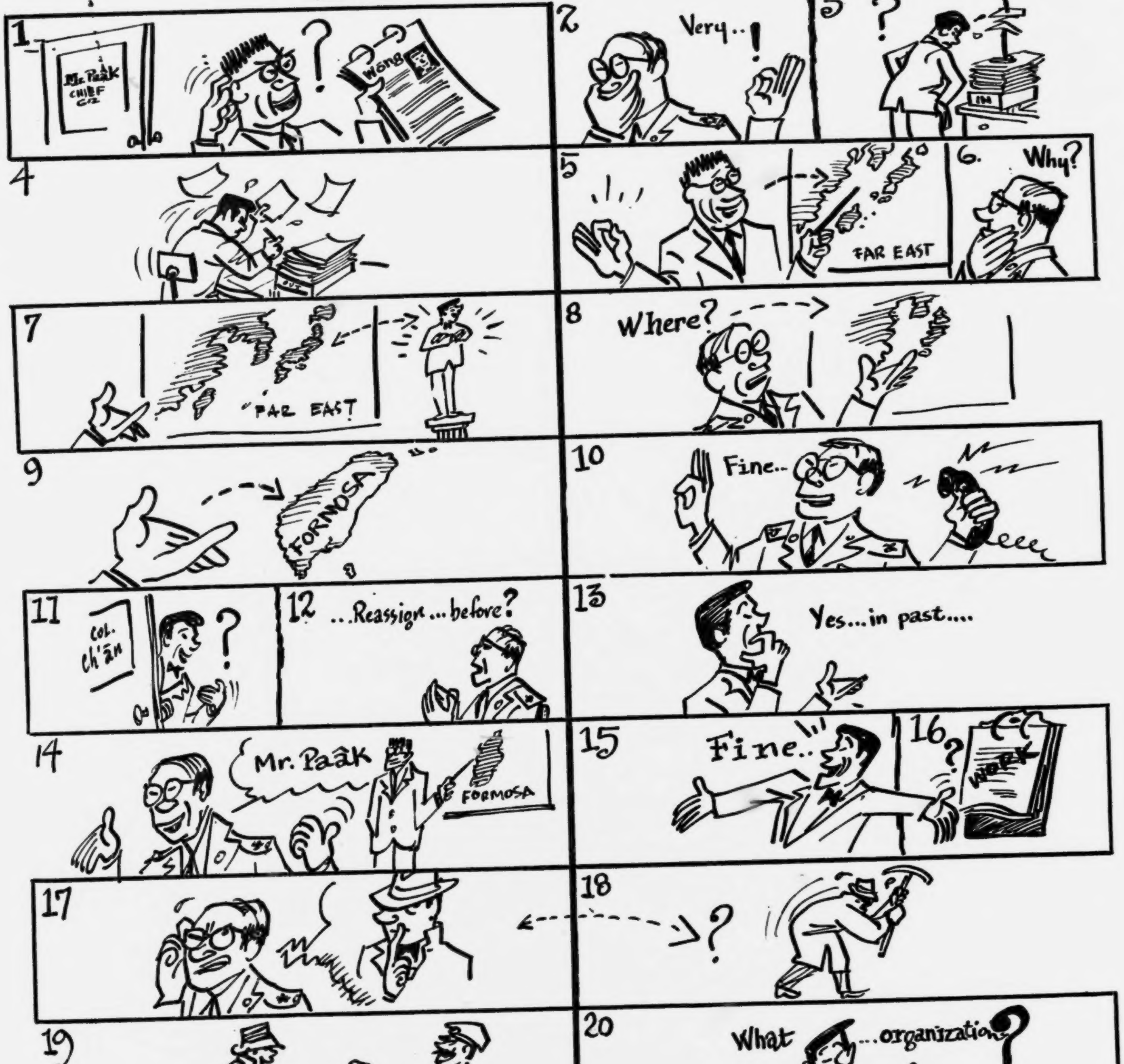
* For Official Use Only

CHINESE-CANTONESE 96-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-16
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 17-32
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 33-48
	1 vol.	Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded on tape
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

LESSON 1


1
Mr. Paăk CHIEF G-2
?
Wŏng
2
Very..!
3
?
IN
4
5
FAR EAST
6.
Why?
7
FAR EAST
8
Where?
9
FORMOSA
10
Fine..
11
COL. Ch'ăm
?
12
...Reassign...before?
13
Yes...in past....
14
Mr. Paăk
FORMOSA
15
Fine..
16
?
WORK
17
18
?
19
20
What ...organization?
21
Defense
Army
22
?
23
Lăm
Wŏng
When?
Sooner... ...better!

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Taî-Î-Shuĕ Paâk Shuĕ-Cheúng: Ch'ān Sheûng-Kaaù, neĭ kòk-tak Wōng-Kwòk-Ts'uēn kè kung-tsòk shìng-chik tîm à?

Ch'ān Sheûng-Kaaù. Ngŏh kòk-tak k'uĭ kè kung-tsòk shìng-tsik hó hó.

Paâk Shuĕ-Cheúng. K'uĭ tuì kung-tsòk kè t'aaì-tô tîm-yeûng* à?

Ch'ān. K'uĭ hó foô-tsaàk, hó k'ān-lîk, tuì kung-tsòk hó yîng-chan.

Paâk-Shuĕ-Cheúng. Keì-ìn k'uĭ kè kung-tsòk shìng-tsik kòm hó, ngŏh seúng tiû k'uĭ huì Uĕn-Tung kung-tsòk.

Ch'ān. Tîm-kaaî neĭ seúng tiû k'uĭ huì Uĕn-Tung kung-tsòk ne?

Paâk Shuĕ-Cheúng. Yan-waî Uĕn-Tung fong-mîn hó sui-iù k'uĭ ni chúng yān.

Ch'ān. Neĭ seúng tiû k'uĭ huì Uĕn-Tung pin-shuè kung-tsòk à?

Paâk Shuĕ-Cheúng. Ngŏh seúng tiû k'uĭ huì T'oī-Waan kung-tsòk.

Ch'ān. Hó à, tâng ngôh t'ūng k'uĭ kông-hă la.

Wōng-Î. Ch'ān Sheûng-Kaaù, neĭ kiù ngŏh laì yaŭ mi-yĕ sẑ à?

Ch'ān. Wōng Sin-Shaang, ĭ-ts'īn neĭ yaŭ mŏ ts'ìng-k'aū-kwòh tiû chik à?

Wōng. Yaŭ, ngŏh ĭ-ts'īn yaŭ ts'ìng-k'aū-kwòh tiû chik.

Ch'ān. Paâk Shuĕ-Cheúng seúng tiû neĭ hiù T'oī-Waan kung-tsòk, neĭ seúng huì mà?

Wōng. Hó à, ngŏh hó seúng huì-kóh-shuè.

Wōng. Neĭ seúng ngŏh foô-tsaàk pin chúng kung-tsòk ne?

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Ch'ān. Hó naān kóng, neĭ tsuī-chuê-iù kè kung-tsòk haî ts'īng-pò kung-tsòk.

Wōng. Ch'uī-chóh ts'īng-pò kung-tsòk chi-ngoî, ngŏh chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ kung-tsòk à?

Ch'ān. Ch'uī-chóh ts'īng-pò kung-tsòk chi-ngoî, neĭ chûng iù t'ūng T'oī-Waan Chung-Kwòk kòk yaŭ kwaan kei-kwaan luēn-lòk.

Wōng. Pin ti yaŭ kwaan kei-kwaan à?

Ch'ān. Hó-ts'ž Chung-Kwòk Kwòk-Fōng-Pô, Lûk-Kwan-Pô, Sam-Leĭ Tsòk-Chīn-Ch'uè, táng-táng.

Wōng. Ngŏh huī-chóh chi-haû, pin kòh tsīp ngŏh ni-shuè kè kung-tsòk à?

Ch'ān. Ngŏh seúng neĭ t'ūng ī-ka haî T'oī-Waan kè yat-kòh sīng Lām kè yān tuī-tiû.

Wōng. Neĭ seúng ngŏh keî shī huī à?

Ch'ān. Uêt faaī uêt hó.

LESSON 1

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Mr. Paâk, Chief of G-2: Col. Ch'ān, what do you think of Wōng Kwòk-Ts'uēn's performance in his work?

Col. Ch'ān: I think his performance is very good.

P. What is his attitude towards his work?

C. He is very responsible, very industrious and very serious in his work.

P. Since his performance is so good, I want to have him transferred to the Far East.

C. Why do you want to have him transferred to the Far East?

P. Because in the Far East, we need this type of person.

C. To where do you want to have him transferred?

P. I want to have him transferred to Formosa.

C. Fine, let me talk to him about this.

Wōng-Î: Col. Ch'ān, why do you ask me to come here.

C. Mr. Wōng, have you ever requested a reassignment before?

W. Yes, in the past I did request a reassignment.

C. Mr. Paâk wants to have you transferred to Formosa. Do you want to go?

W. Fine, I want to go over there very much.

W. For what kind of work do you want me to be responsible?

C. It's very hard to say; your most important work will concern intelligence.

W. Besides intelligence, what kind of work will I have?

LESSON 1

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

C. Besides intelligence work, you will have to contact related Nationalist Chinese Organizations in Formosa.

W. What related organizations?

C. Like the Ministry of Defense, Ministry of the Army, the Psychological Warfare Section, etc.

W. After I leave, who is going to take over my job here?

C. I want you and a man named Lām, now in Formosa, to exchange jobs.

W. When do you want me to leave?

C. The sooner the better.

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. You should go back and finish your work. The sooner the better.
2. She does not want to exchange jobs with anybody at this moment.
3. My work is related to that of the Psychological Warfare Section.
4. Colonel Wong was sent to the Far East to replace Major White.
5. We need better liaison between all intelligence agencies.
6. Capt. Chan was transferred to Japan to take over new duties.
7. After transferring to Southeast Asia, you are to contact my office immediately.
8. His attitude is very serious but what about his work performance?
9. I am responsible for this office, so please contact me if you need anything here.
10. Although he works industriously, I don't like his attitude.
11. I am Colonel Hŏh, may I see Colonel Kwan, chief of G-2, please?
12. You will have to contact G-2 for any duty concerning intelligence.
13. It is very hard to say, but I hope you will take this assignment.
14. You may request reassignment later if you wish.
15. I am not responsible for his work performance even though I am his superior officer.

LEAAON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. The Chief of G-2 wishes to see you. Will you contact him at his office within this week.

LESSON 1

WORD LIST

1.	tiû chik	to transfer (one job)
2.	Taî-Î Shuĕ (Ch'uĕ)	G-2
3.	Taî-Î Shuĕ Shuĕ-Cheŭng	chief of G-2
4.	shīng-tsik	performance (one's work)
5.	t'aaì-tô	attitude
6.	foô-chaàk	responsible, to hold responsible
7.	sui-iù	to need
8.	tiû	to transfer (one's job)
9.	yaŭ kwaan	related, concerning
10.	luēn-lòk	to contact; liaison
11.	Sam-Leĭ-Tsòk-Chìn-Ch'uè	Psychological Warfare Section
12.	tsìp	to replace (one's position)
13.	tuì-tiû	to exchange job
14.	uêt faaì uêt hó	the sooner the better

LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

637

雷	luī: thunder.
行雷	haāng luī: to thunder.
雷電	luī-tîn: thunder and lightning.
水雷	shuí-luī: torpedo.
地雷	teî-luī: a mine. (weapon)

1056

須	sui: ought; necessary.
須要	sui-iû: absolutely necessary.
須知	sui chi: you should know.

104

召	chiû: to call; summon
召見	chiû-kîn: summon into presence.
聖召	shîng-chiû: Vocation (C)

雷 須 召

雷 須 召

雷 湏 汳 㕣. 台

634

聯	luēn: to sew; a seam; united.
聯絡	luēn-lôk: connection, mutual aid; cooperation.
聯合國	luēn-hôp-kwòk: the United Nations.
聯盟	luēn-māng: to form an alliance.

731

鬧	naaû: noise; bustle; to scold; to revile.
熱鬧	ît-naaû: bustle.
鬧事	naaû sẑ: to cause trouble.
鬧鐘	naaû-chung: alarm clock.

聯 联 鬧

聯 鬧

联 閙 闹

LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

522

割 kòt: to cut; to injure; to inflict.

割開 kòt hoi: to cut open.

割地 kòt teì: to cede territory

割傷 kòt seung: to cut & hurt (by the knife etc.).

1081

態 t'aaì: behavior; bearing.

態度 t'aaì-tó: mien; behavior.

790

互 oó: mutual; reciprocal.

互相 oò-seung: mutual; reciprocal.

互議 oò ì: to consult together.

割 態 互

割 態 互

割 態 互

1244

績 tsik: to spin; to twist; merit.

功績 kung-tsik: meritorious act.

成績 shīng-tsik: accomplishment; work done; result.

1298

村 ts'uen: village; hamlet.

鄉村 heung-ts'uen: country village.

村人 ts'uen yān: villager; rustic; peasant.

績 村

績 村

绩 村

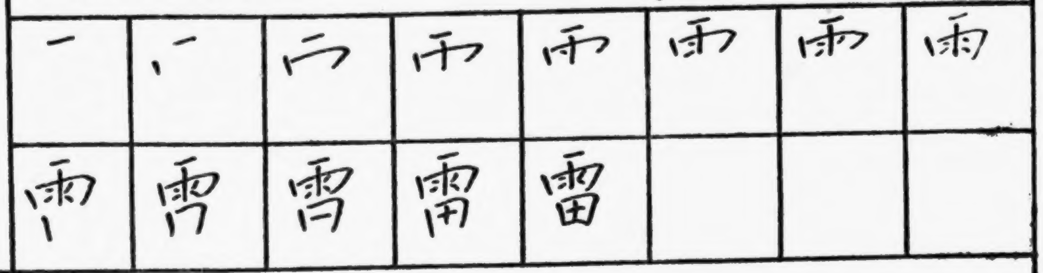
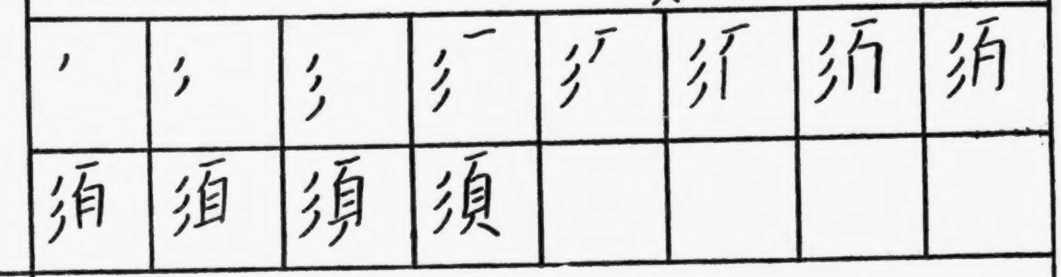
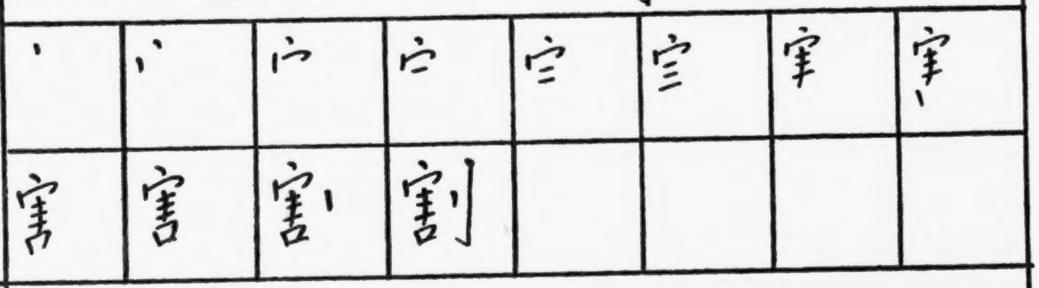
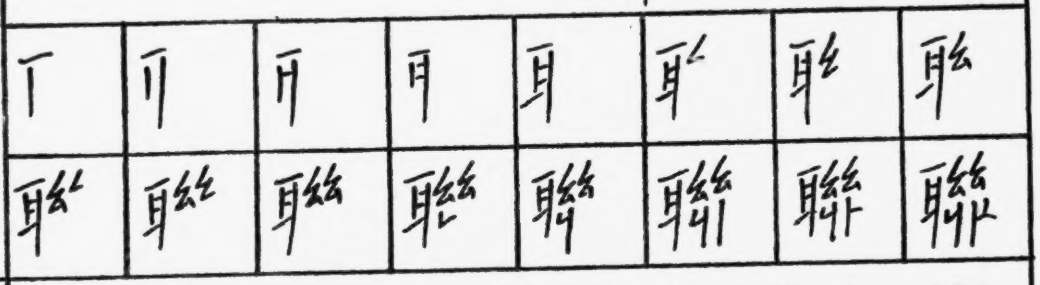
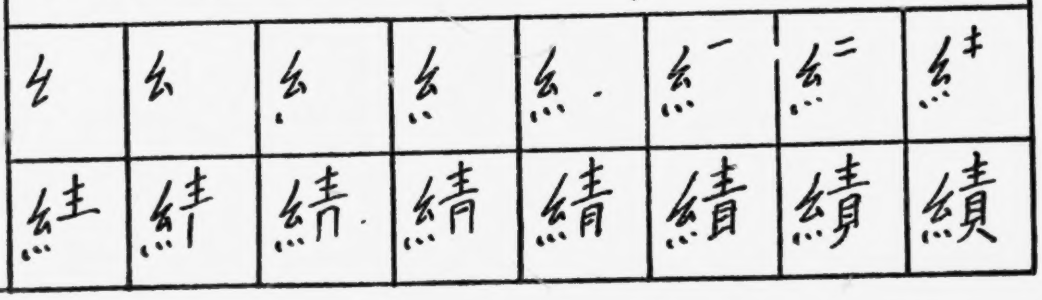
LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

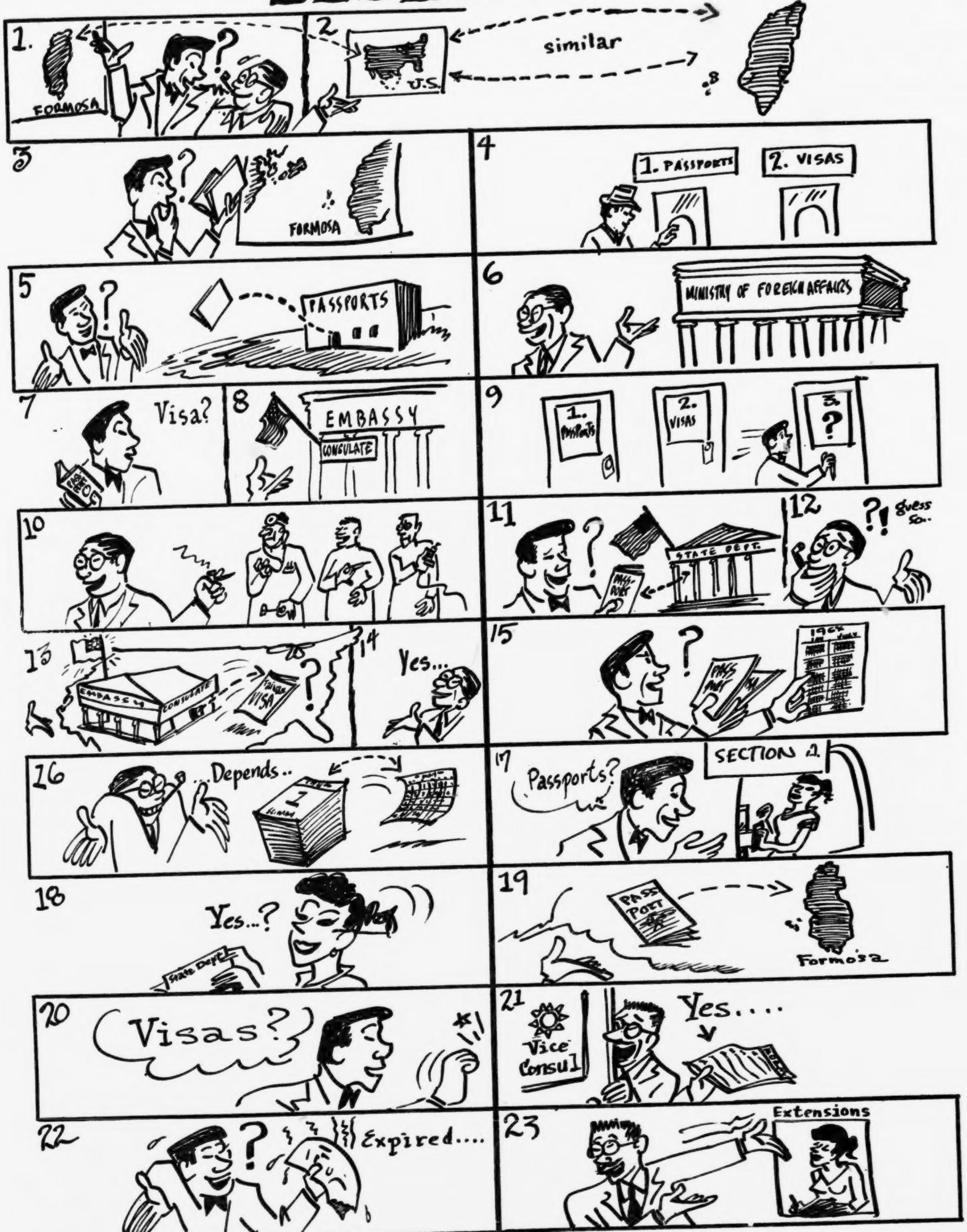
陸軍部第二ch'uě白ch'uě長同陳上校講説話,白ch'uě長問陳上校好多關於黄二(黄國全)嘅工作成績,同黄二對工作嘅態度.陳上校話佢嘅工作成績好好,做事好負責好認真,同好勤力.飲些少酒,所以亦唔會鬧事.白ch'uě長想調佢去遠東工作.必須知道清楚.後來陳上校召見黄二,問佢想唔想去台灣做情報嘅工作.黄二話佢以前請求過調職,佢好想去台灣.佢去台灣除咗做情報工作之外.重要同台灣中國各有關機關互相聯lŏk

LESSON 1

WRITING MATERIAL

雷	Character Number 637 Stroke Number 13	Radical Number 173 雨	
須	Character Number 1056 Stroke Number 12	Radical Number 181 頁	
割	Character Number 522 Stroke Number 12	Radical Number 18 刂，刀	
聯	Character Number 634 Stroke Number 17	Radical Number 128 耳	
績	Character Number 1244 Stroke Number 17	Radical Number 120 糹，糸	

LESSON 2


1.
FORMOSA
2
U.S.
similar
3
FORMOSA
4
1. PASSPORTS
2. VISAS
5
PASSPORTS
6
MINISTRY OF FOREIGN AFFAIRS
7
Visa?
8
EMBASSY
CONSULATE
9
1. Passports
2. VISAS
3. ?
10
11
PASS-BOOK
STATE DEPT.
12
Guess so..
13
EMBASSY
CONSULATE
VISA
14
Yes...
15
PASSPORT
1964
16
...Depends..
17
Passports?
SECTION 2
18
Yes...?
State Dept
19
PASSPORT
Formosa
20
Visas?
21
Vice Consul
Yes....
22
Expired....
23
Extensions

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î. Lŏ Leĭ, neĭ yaū T'oĭ-Waan laĭ ni-shuẻ mŏ keĭ noî; ngŏh yaū ni-shuẻ huĭ T'oĭ-Waan kẻ shaú-tsûk haî tîm-yeûng* kả?

Leĭ-Seĭ. Ngŏh koó, yaū Meĭ-Kwỏk huĭ T'oĭ-Waan kẻ shaú-tsûk t'ūng yaū T'oĭ-Waan laĭ Meĭ-Kwỏk kẻ shaú-tsûk ch'a-m̄-toh.

Wōng. Yaū T'oĭ-Waan laĭ ni-shuẻ kẻ shaú-tsûk haî tîm-yeûng* kả?

Leĭ. Neĭ sin iủ shan-ts'ĭng ch'ut kwỏk oô-chiủ, ĭn-haû paân ts'im-chĭng.

Wōng. Haî T'oĭ Waan, pin kỏh kei-kwaan foô-chaảk faảt oô-chiủ kả?

Leĭ. Haî T'oĭ-Waan, Chung-Kwỏk Ngoî-Kaau-Pô foô-chaảk faảt oô-chiủ.

Wōng. Lĭng-chốh oô-chiủ chi-haû, huĭ pin-shuẻ paân ts'im-chĭng ả?

Leĭ. Lĭng-chốh oô-chiủ chi-haû, huĭ Meĭ-Kwỏk Taaî-Sẑ-Koón kẻ Lĭng-Sẑ-Koón paân ts'im-chĭng.

Wōng. Ch'uĭ-chốh oô-chiủ t'ūng ts'im-chĭng chi-ngoĭ, chûng iủ paân mi-yĕ ả?

Leĭ. Chûng iủ kîm-ch'ā t'aĭ-kaảk, t'ūng tả-cham chùng-taû*.

Wōng. Haî Meĭ-Kwỏk, Meĭ-Kwỏk Kwỏk-Mô-Uên* foô-chaảk faảt oô-chiủ, haî mả?

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Leĭ. Ngŏh m̄-haî keî ts'ing-ch'óh, ngŏh koó haî kóm.

Wōng. Haî Meĭ-Kwòk, Chung-Kwòk Taaî-Sẑ-Koón kè Lĭng-Sẑ-Koón foô-chaàk paân-leĭ huì T'oì-Waan kè ts'im-chìng shaú-tsûk, haî mà?

Leĭ. Haî, Chung-Kwòk Taaî-Sẑ-Koón kè Lĭng-Sẑ-Koón foô-chaàk paân-leĭ huì T'oì-Waan kè ts'im-chìng shaú-tsûk.

Wōng. P'ó-t'ung laì kóng, oô-chiù t'ùng ts'im-chìng kè yaŭ-haaû-k'eì keî ch'eùng à?

Leĭ. Mŏ yat-tîng kè, yaŭ shì ch'eùng, yaŭ shì tuén.

Wōng. Siú-tsé, ts'îng mân ni-shuè haî m̄-haî oô-chiù-foh à?

Kwòk-Mô-Uên* nuĭ paân-sẑ-uēn: Haî, ni-shuè haî oô-chiù-foh. Yaŭ mat kwaì kòn à?

Wōng. Ngŏh seúng shan-ts'îng huì T'oì-Waan kè oô-chiù.

Wōng. Sin-shaang, ts'îng mân ni-shuè haî m̄-haî foô-chaàk paân-leĭ ts'im-chìng shaú-tsûk kà?

Chung-Kwòk Tsúng-Lĭng-Sẑ-Koón Foò-Lĭng-Sẑ*: Haî, ni cheung haî shan-ts'îng piú.

Wōng. Ts'im-chìng k'eì moŏn chi-haû, tîm-paân à?

Foò-Lĭng-Sẑ*: Ts'im-chìng k'eì moŏn chi-haû, neĭ hóh-ĭ shan-ts'îng ìn-k'eì.

LESSON 2

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wŏng-Î: Leĭ, you came here from Formosa not very long ago, what is the procedure for going from here to Formosa

Leĭ-Seĭ: I think the procedure for going from the United States to T'aĭ-Waan is quite similar to that of coming to the United States from Formosa.

W. What is the procedure of coming here from Formosa.

L. You have to apply for a passport first, then you apply for a visa.

W. What organization in Formosa is responsible for issuing passports?

L. The Ministry of Foreign Affairs in Formosa is responsible for issuing passports.

W. Where do you apply for a visa after receiving the passport?

L. After receiving the passport, you apply for a visa at the Consulate of the American Embassy.

W. Besides the procedure of applying for a passport and a visa, what else do you have to do?

L. You still have to have a physical examination, injections and vaccinations.

W. In the United States, the State Department is responsible for issuing passports, is that right?

L. I'm not quite sure; I guess so.

LESSON 2

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. In the United States, the Consulate of the Chinese Embassy is responsible for the procedure of issuing visas to enter T'ai-Waan, is that right?

L. Yes, the Consulate of the Chinese Embassy is responsible for the procedure of issuing visas to enter Formosa.

W. Generally speaking, how long is the period of validity of a passport and a visa?

L. It all depends, sometimes it is long, sometimes it is short.

W. Miss, is this the passport section?

The Lady Clerk at the State Department: Yes, this is the passport section, what can I do for you?

W. I wish to apply for a passport in order to go to Formosa.

W. Sir, is this the place for issuing visa?

The Vice-Consul of the Chinese Consulate General: Yes, this is the application form.

W. What shall I do after the visa has expired?

Vice-Consul: You can apply for an extension when the visa has expired.

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The State Department handles applications of this kind.
2. Vice-Consul Cheung is a friend of mine, and maybe he can help you.
3. Please go to the passport section and see Mr. Wong about your extention.
4. I want to go to the American Consulate office to renew my passport.
5. You have to fill out this application form; sign it, and then send it to us.
6. She has to go to the hospital for a physical examination this afternoon.
7. The period of validity is 60 days and this visa will be expired tomorrow.
8. The Chinese Embassy in Washington is in contact with Formosa 24 hours a day.
9. Secure some proof, and then you may apply for it.
10. Everybody needs a passport to go abroad. Is that right?
11. The ministry of Foreign Affairs will not issue passports to Foreigners.
12. However, they take care of any applications for visa.
13. I received my diploma when I was 20.
14. There is no U.S. Embassy in Hong Kong. Am I right?
15. In the United States, the Ministry of Foreign Affairs is a part of the State Department.

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. Some passports' period of validity are five years; others, two years.

17. Vice-Consul Fong is in charge of the passport section.

LESSON 2

WORD LIST

1.	ch'ut kwỏk	to go abroad
2.	shan-ts'ìng	to apply for
3.	ts'im-chìng	visa
4.	Ngoî-Kaau-Pô	Ministry of Foreign Affairs
5.	faảt	to issue
6.	lĭng	to secure, receive
7.	taaî-sz̉-koón	embassy
8.	kîm-ch'ā t'aì-kaảk	physical examination
9.	Kwỏk-Mô-Uên*	Department of State
10.	paân-leĭ	to handle, to manage, perform, do
11.	yaŭ-haaû-k'eì	period of validity
12.	oô-chiủ-foh	passport section
13.	tsúng-lĭng-sẑ-koón	consulate general
14.	foó-lĭng-sẑ	vice consul
15.	shan-ts'ìng-piú	application form
16.	k'eì moŏn	expiration, to expire
17.	ìn k'eì	to renew, extend; renewal, extension

LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

431

求 k'aū: to ask; beg; entreat; seek.

祈求 kéī-k'aū: to pray.

求學 k'aū hôk: to seek learning.

求婚 k'aū fan: to propose, to woo.

求人 k'aū yān: to ask a person for help.

43

籌 ch'aū: to compute, a lot; tally kind of game

籌欵 ch'aū foón: to raise funds

籌備 ch'aū-peî: prepare, plan.

執籌 chap-ch'aū*: to draw lots

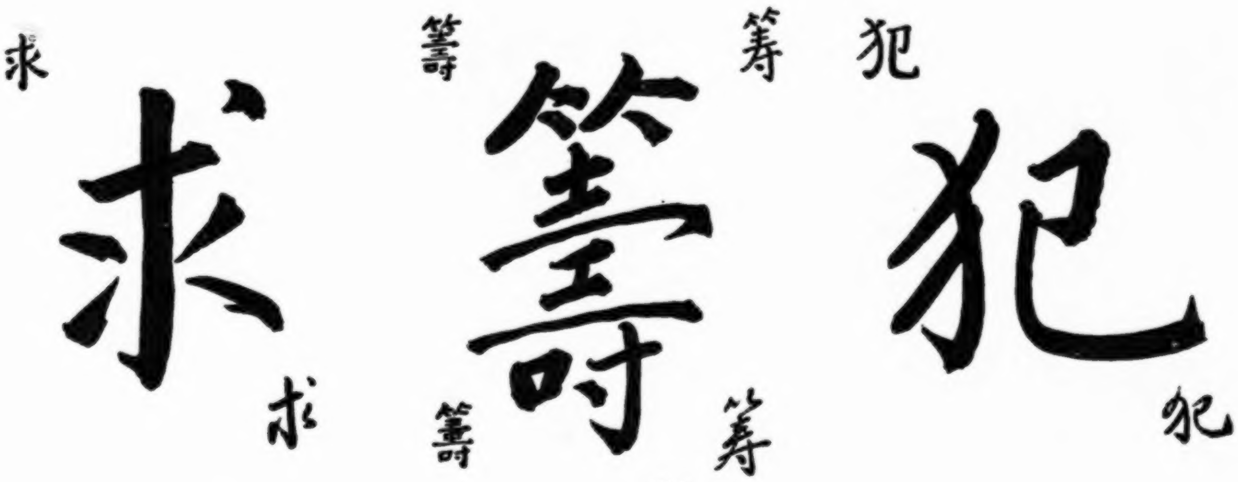
165

犯 faân: to offend; do wrong

犯罪 faân-tsuî: commit a crime

犯法 faân-faàt: to break the laws

監犯 kaam-faân: a prisoner



357

延 īn: slow; protracted; to invite

延遲 īn-ch'ī: slow; to delay

延長 īn-ts'ēng: to prolong; extend

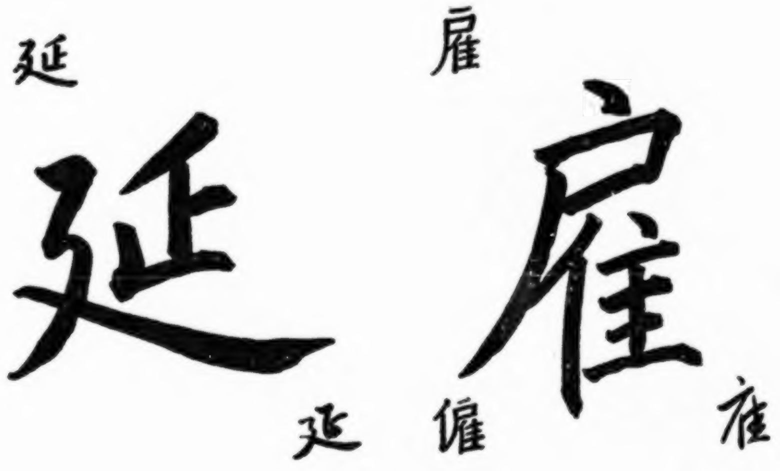
延期 īn-k'eī: postpone

517

雇 koò: to hire, to rent; to borrow.

雇用 koò yûng: to hire (servant)

雇賃 koò-yâm: to rent; to lease.



LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

240

喊 haàm: to weep; call out

大聲喊 taaî sheng haàm: loud weeping

打喊露 tá haàm-lô: to yawn

512

股 koó: thighs; rump; leg; share of stock.

股份 koó-fân: a share.

股東 koó-tung: shareholder

紅股 hũng-koó: bonus

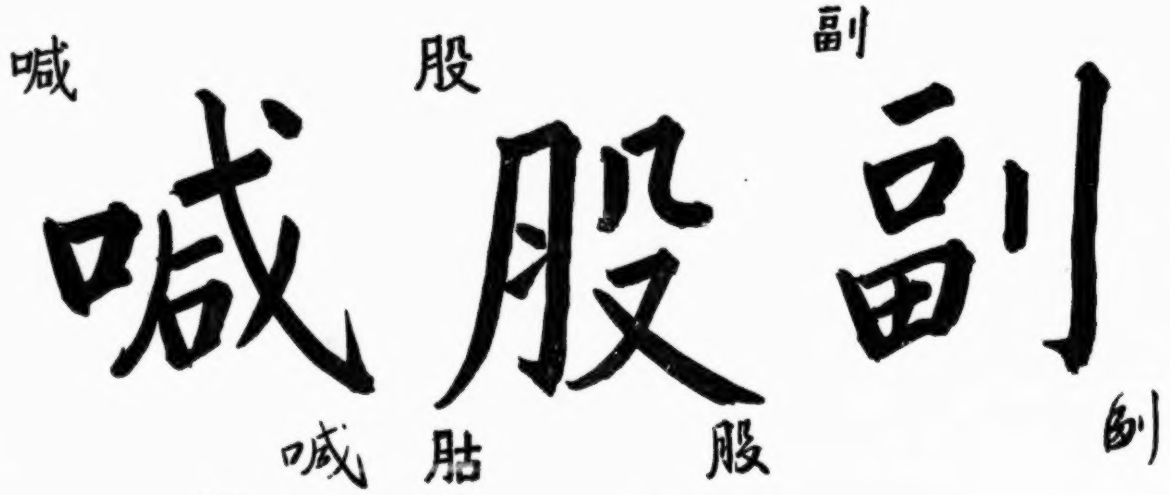
211

副 foò: to aid; second; set of;

副領事 foò lĩng-sî: Vice-Consul

副官 foò-koon: adjutant; aides-de-camp

副總統 foò tsúng-t'úng: Vice president



148

終 chung: final; the end

終身 chung-shan: all one's life

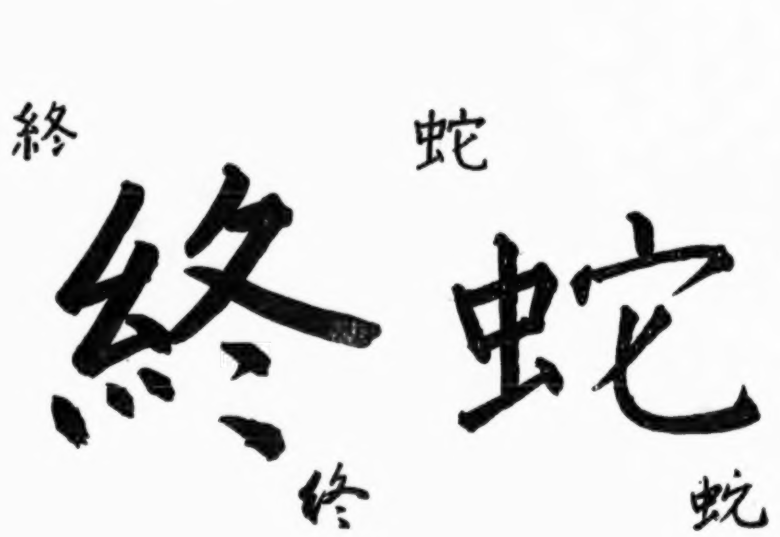
終日 chung-yât: the whole day; all the time

終點 chung-tím: final end

962

蛇 shē: a serpent; a snake.

毒蛇 tûk shē: poisonous snake.



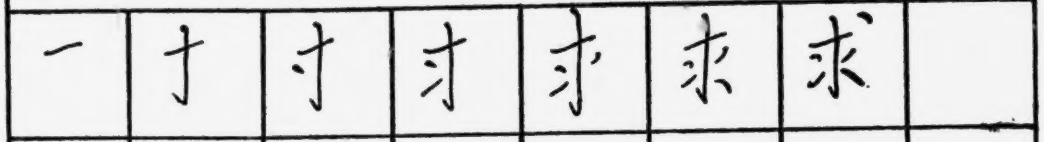
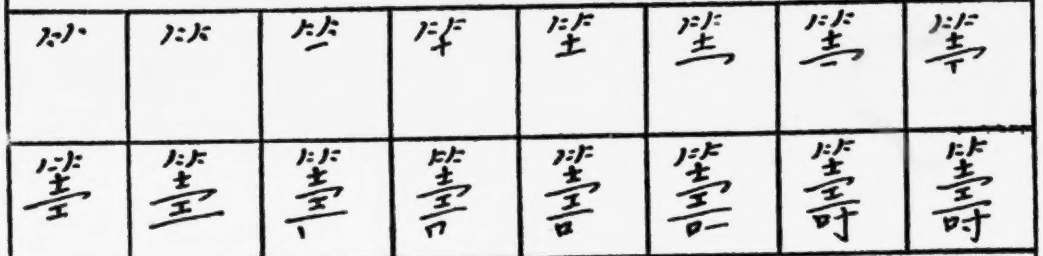
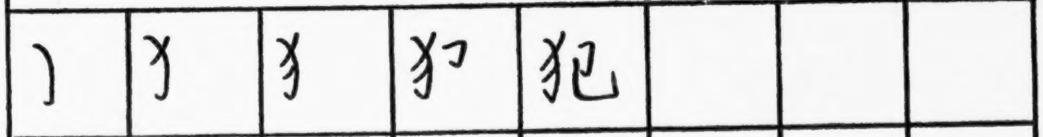
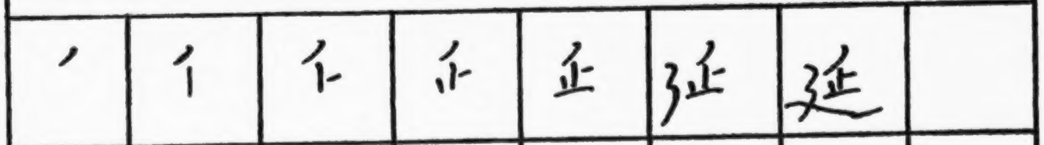
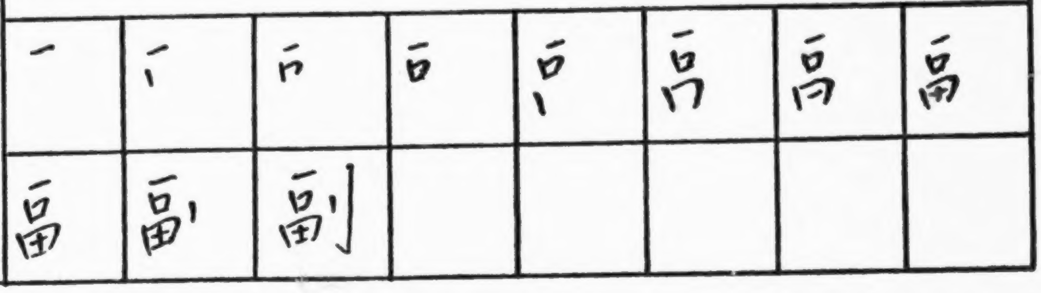
LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

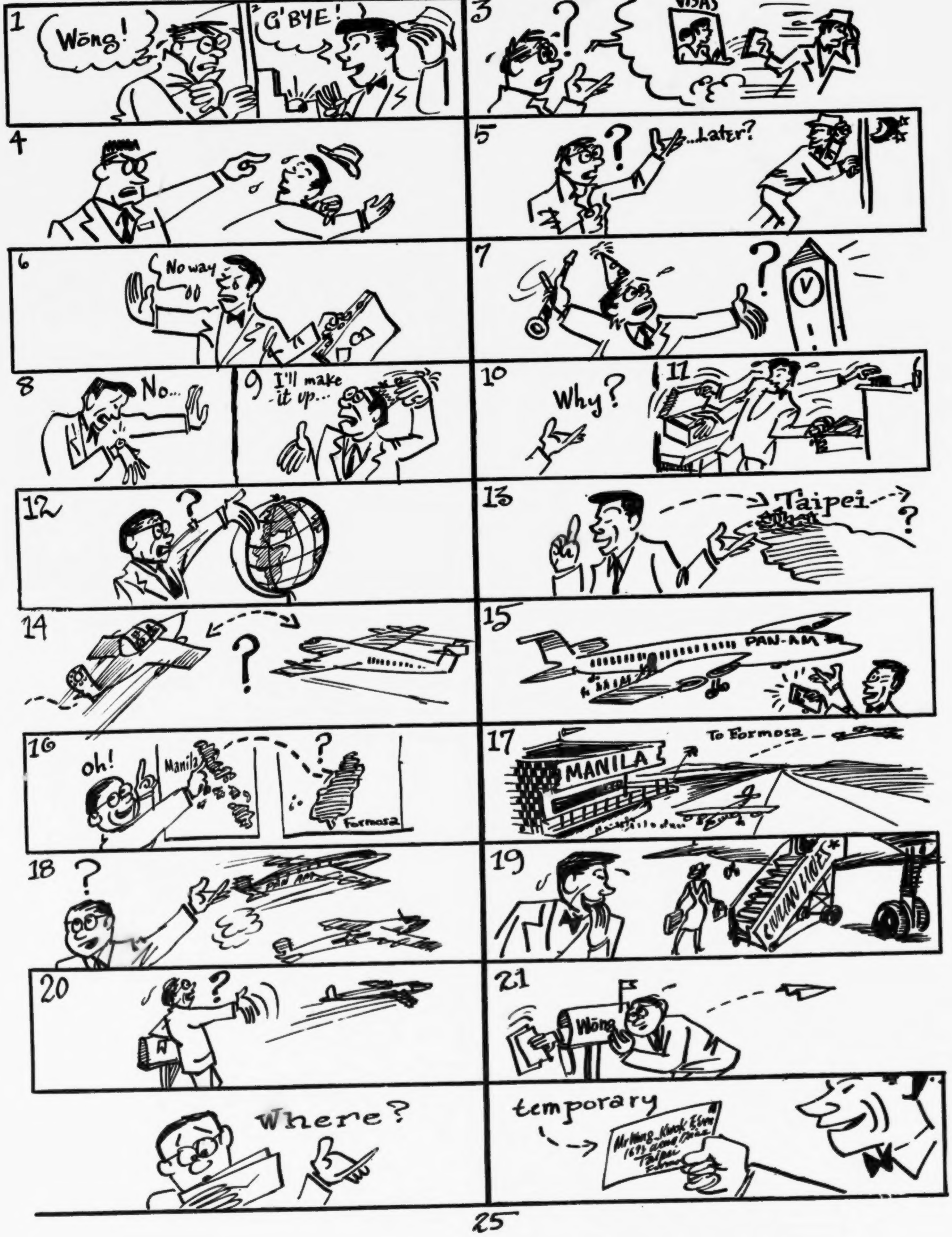
黄二就黎去台灣,對於各樣事要籌備.佢唔係幾清楚由美國去台灣嘅手續.佢去求李四指點,問明白由美國去台灣嘅手續係點樣嘅.李四話,由美國去台灣嘅手續同由台灣黎美國嘅手續差唔多.先喺中國外交部shan請出國護照,然後去美國領事館辦簽證.喺美國,由美國國務院負責發護照;中國領事館負責辦理去台灣嘅簽證手續.不過,除咗護照之外,重要檢驗體格.黄二而家去國務院護照科shan請護照,又去中國總領事館見副領事辦簽証嘅手續.

LESSON 2

WRITING MATERIAL

求	Character Number 431 Radical Number 85 Stroke Number 7 氺 , 水 
籌	Character Number 43 Radical Number 118 Stroke Number 20 ⺮ , 竹 
犯	Character Number 165 Radical Number 94 Stroke Number 5 犭, 犬 
延	Character Number 357 Radical Number 54 Stroke Number 7 廴 
副	Character Number 211 Radical Number 18 Stroke Number 11 刂 , 刀 

LESSON 3


1
Wõng!
2
G'BYE!
3
?
VISAS
4
5
?
...Later?
6
No way
7
?
V
8
No...
9
I'll make it up...
10
Why?
11
12
?
13
Taipei
?
14
?
15
PAN-AM
16
oh!
Manila
?
Formosa
17
MANILA
To Formosa
18
?
PAN AM
19
CIVILIAN LINES*
20
?
21
Wõng
Where?
temporary
Mr Wong Kwok Esen
Taipei

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Leĭ-Seì. Lŏ Wōng*, neĭ kòm tsó laì ni-shuè, yaŭ mi-yĕ kân-iù sẑ à?

Wōng-Î. Ngŏh seúng taaî-haû-yât tsaú, ì-ka tâk-tang laì ni-shuè heùng neĭ ts'z̆-haāng.

Leĭ. Neĭ ngaam-ngaam paân-hó ts'ìm-chìng kè shaú-tsûk, tîm-kaaî tsaú-tak kòm ts'ung-mōng à?

Wōng. Ngŏh kè sheûng-sz wâ, ngŏh uêt faaì tsaú uêt hó.

Leĭ. Neĭ mŏ paân-faàt ch'ì ti tsaú me?

Wōng. Mŏ paân-faàt, ni kòh haî k'uĭ kè mîng-lîng.

Leĭ. Ngŏh seúng kam-maăn ts'éng neĭ shîk faân, t'ūng neĭ sùng-haāng, yaŭ shì-haû mà?

Wōng. Toh-tsê saaì, ngŏh chan-haî mŏ shì-kaàn, ĭ-haû tsoì ts'éng la.

Leĭ. Hó la, ĭ-haû yaŭ kei-ooî pó ts'éng la.

Leĭ. Waì, tîm-kaaî neĭ mōng shēng kóm à?

Wōng. Ngŏh chûng yaŭ hó toh yĕ iù tsô, ngŏh chûng iù chap haāng-leĭ.

Leĭ. Neĭ kè mûk-tik-teî haî pin shuè à?

Wōng. Ngŏh sin huì T'oì-Pak; ĭ-haû huì pin shuè, ngŏh chûng meî chi-tò.

Leĭ. Neĭ taàp kwan kei huì, yik-waâk taàp mān-hōng kei huì à?

Wōng. Ngŏh taàp mān-hōng kei huì, ni cheung haî Faàn-Meĭ Hōng-Hung-Kung-Sz kè kei p'iù.

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Leĭ. Ôh, neĭ seúng sin fei huī Mă-Naī-La; tò-chóh Mă-Naī-La chi-haû, neĭ tîm-yeûng* huī T'oī-Waan à?

Wōng. Tò-chóh Mă-Naī-La chi-haû, ngŏh seúng chuèn fei-kei fei T'oī-Waan.

Leĭ. Neĭ taàp kè haî haàk kei, yik-waâk wân-shue kei à?

Wōng. Tong-īn* haî haàk kei la.

Leĭ. Neĭ huī-chóh chi-haû, neĭ yaŭ mi-yĕ sẑ iù ngŏh t'ūng neĭ tsô kà?

Wōng. Uē-kwôh ngŏh yaŭ sùn, mā-faān neĭ t'ūng ngŏh chuén.

Leĭ. Chuén huī pin shuè à?

Wōng. Ni kòh haî ngŏh haî T'oī-Pak kè lām-shī teî-chî.

LESSON 3

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Leĭ-Seì: Wōng*, you are here so early. Is it anything important?

Wōng-Î: I want to leave three days from today; now I came here purposely to say good-bye.

L. You have just completed the procedure of applying for visa, why do you have to leave in such a hurry?

W. My superior says that the sooner I leave the better.

L. Isn't there any way for you to leave a little later?

W. There is no way; this is his order.

L. I wish to invite you to a farewell party. Do you have time?

W. Thanks very much, but I really don't have time; we'll have to make it some other time.

L. All right, I will make it up when there is an opportunity.

L. Hey, why are you so busy?

W. I still have many things to do, and I still have to pack.

L. What is your destination?

W. First I am going to Taipei, but from there, I still don't know where I'll go.

L. Will you take a military or commercial plane?

W. I shall take a commercial plane. This is the ticket for the Pan American Airlines.

L. Oh! You want to fly to Manila first. After arriving at Manila, how do you go to Formosa?

W. After arriving at Manila, I would like to transfer to another airplane to Formosa.

LESSON 3

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

L. Will you take a passenger plane or transport plane?

W. Of course, I shall take the passenger plane.

L. After you leave, is there anything I can do for you?

W. If there are any letters for me, please forward them.

L. To where shall I forward them?

W. This is my temporary address in Taipei.

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Tomorrow morning, I will go to the headquarters to say goodbye to my superior.
2. I purposely came in late to see if you would get angry.
3. He left hurriedly and I had no way to stop him.
4. Mr. Cheung is his superior; however, Mr. Wong is taking care of this.
5. This is my superior's order; therefore, I have to go immediately.
6. We don't have an opportunity to give a farewell party for her.
7. I have to invite you when we meet again.
8. My destination is New York City, New York.
9. Although he is a military man, he has to take a commercial plane now and then.
10. The commercial airlines carry thousands of passengers every month.
11. He told my younger brother that his destination is Manila.
12. Some transport planes are just as comfortable as passenger planes.
13. I don't want to trouble you, but I must see you.
14. He was really in a hurry. He packed in less than five minutes.
15. My temporary address is 2000 Washington St. San Francisco California.

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. If there is anything for me, please forward it to this address.

LESSON 3

WORD LIST

1.	heùng...ts'z̄-haāng	to say goodbye to
2.	tâk-tang	purposedly, solely
3.	ts'ung-mōng	hurriedly; in hurry
4.	t'ūng...sùng-haāng	to give a farewell, party to
5.	yaŭ kei-ooî	to have opportunity
6.	pó-ts'éng	to make up the invitation
7.	mûk-tik-teî	destination
8.	mān-hōng-kei	commercial plane, civil airplane
9.	Faàn-Meĭ Hōng-Hung-Kung-Sz	Pan American Aviation Co.
10.	Mâ-Naī-La	Manila
11.	haàk-kei	passenger plane
12.	wân-shue-kei	transport plane
13.	lām-shī	temporary

LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

296

賀 hôh: to congratulate.

賀壽 hôh-shaû: birth-day congratulation.

賀禮 hôh-laǐ: congratulatory present.

恭賀 kung-hôh: to congratulate.

1009

輸 shue: to lose; to be beaten(in game); to transport.

賭輸 tó shue: to lose at gambling.

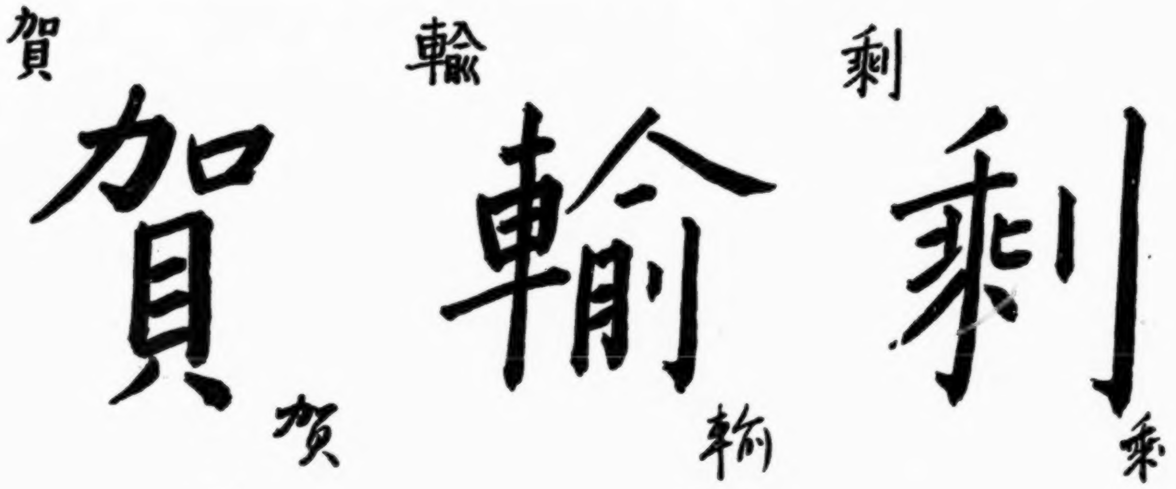
輸入 shue-yâp: to import.

997

剩 shîng, tsîng: to remain over; left-over; surplus.

剩下 shîng-hâ: to remain over.

有剩 yaŭ shîng: there is remainder.



785

湖 oō: lake.

五湖 nğ oō: the five great lakes of China.

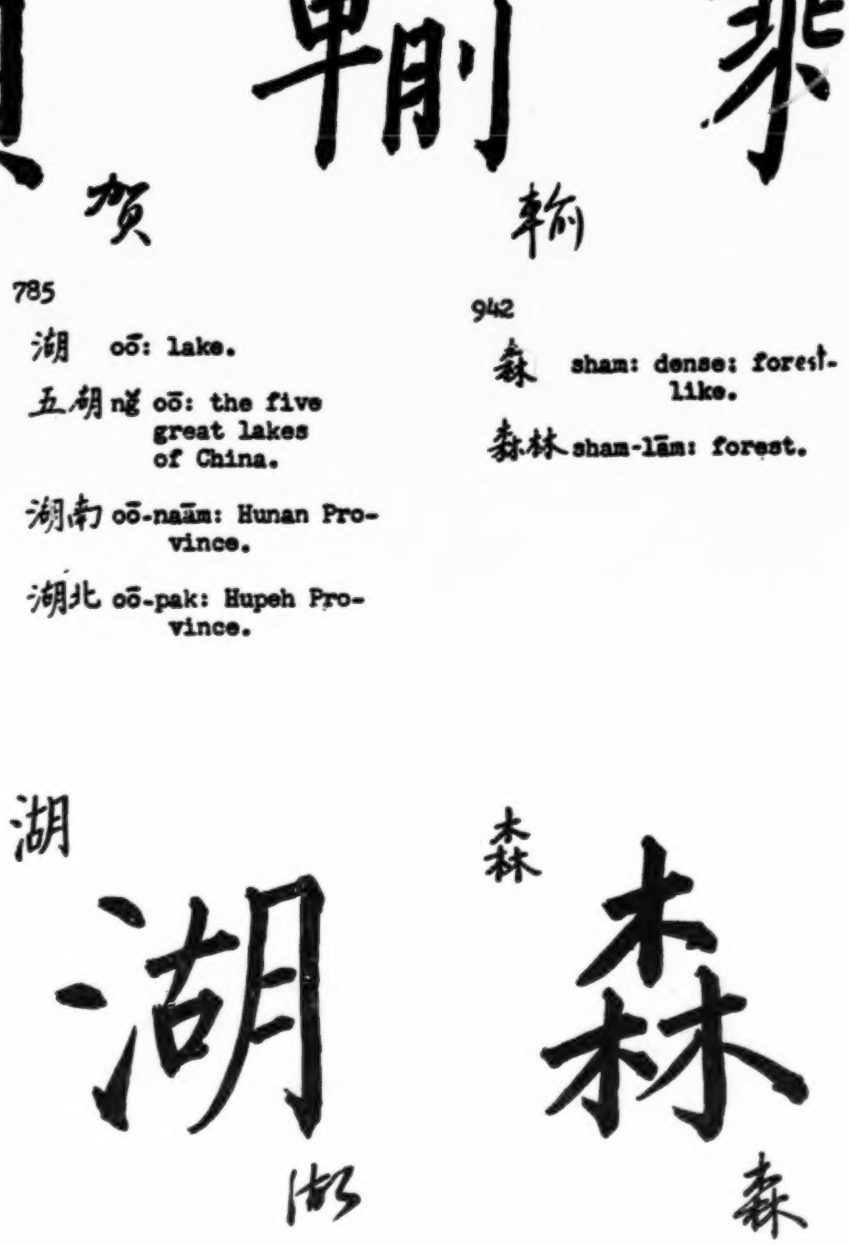
湖南 oō-naām: Hunan Province.

湖北 oō-pak: Hupeh Province.

942

森 sham: dense: forest-like.

森林 sham-lām: forest.



LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

940

勢 shaì: power; authority; force; aspect; circumstances.

勢力 shaì-lîk: strenth; influence.

地勢 teî-shaì: configuration of the land.

948

濕 shap: moist; wet; damp.

濕度 shap tô: humidity.

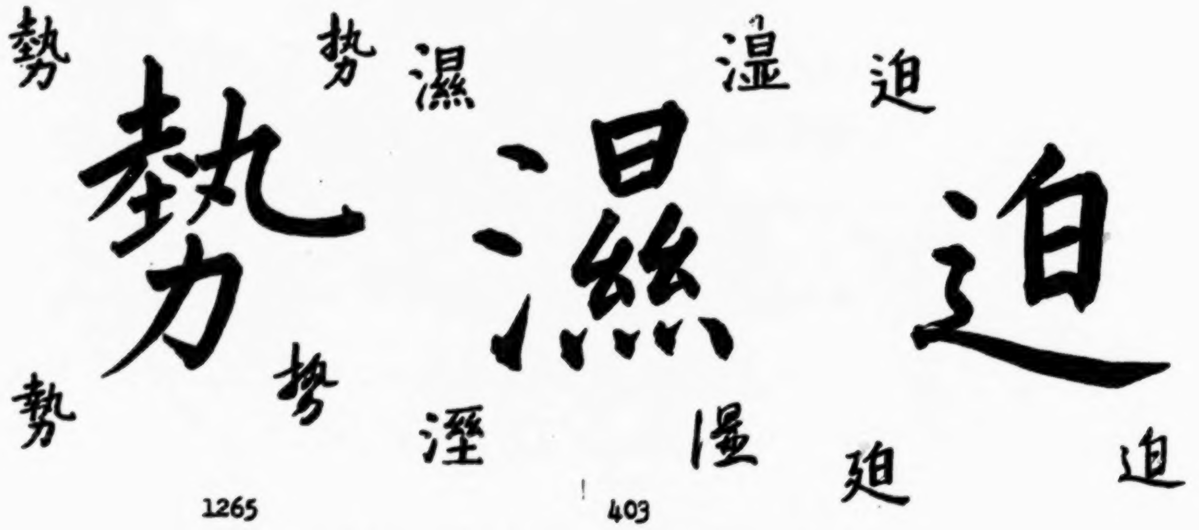
風濕 fung-shap: rheumatism.

濕地 shap teî: a marsh.

849

迫 pik, paak: to press; to press upon; to harass.

迫逼 pik-paak: to compel; to force.



1265

切 ts'ìt, ts'aì: to carve; to cut, earnest; urgent.

一切 yat-ts'aì: all; entire.

透切 t'aù-ts'ìt: to the point; thorough.

切實 ts'ìt-shât: verily; truly; real.

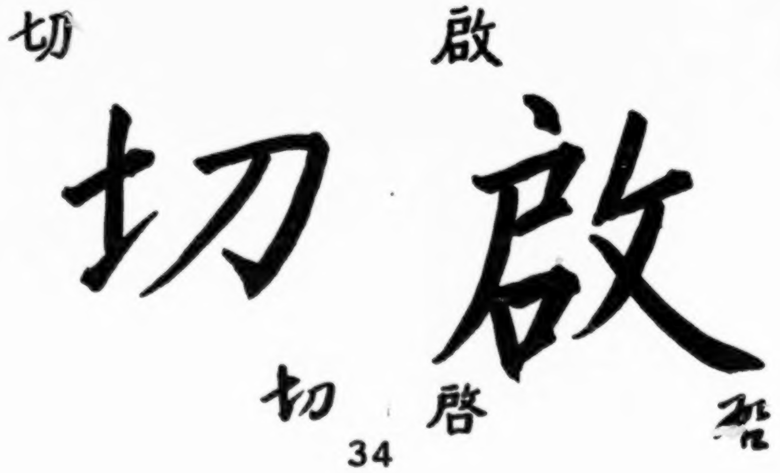
403

啟 k'aí: to open; reveal; start

啟行 k'aí-hāng: to start; set out

啟事 k'aí-sẑ: a notice

啟者 k'aí-ché: "I wish to say that..."



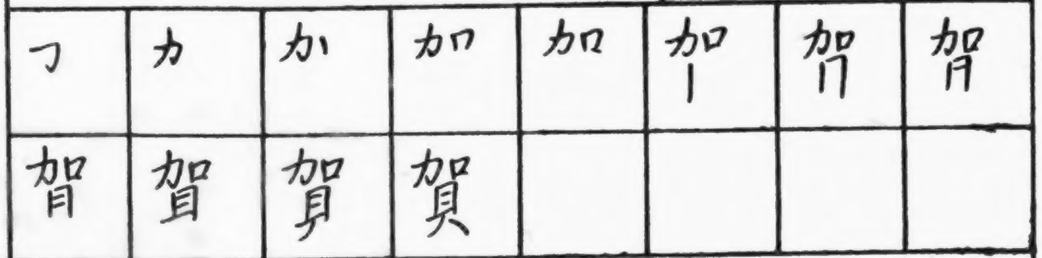
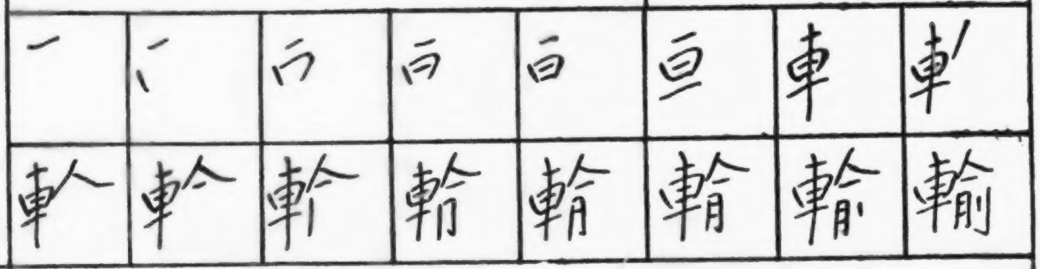
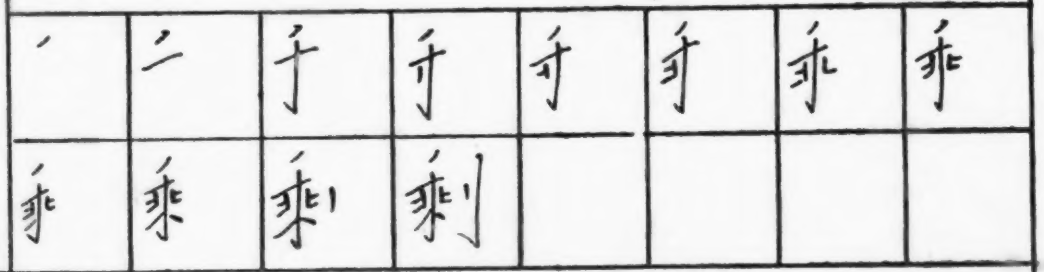
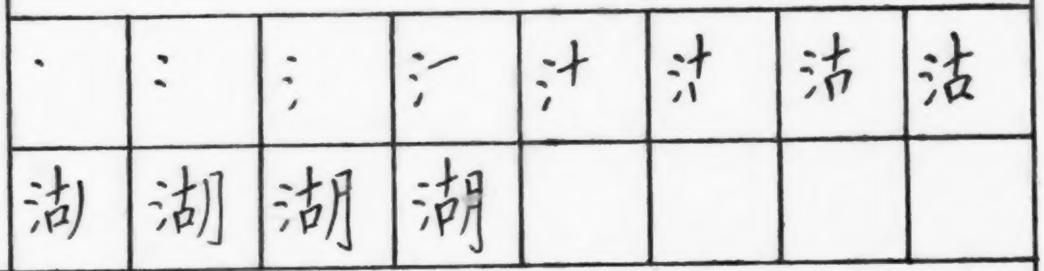
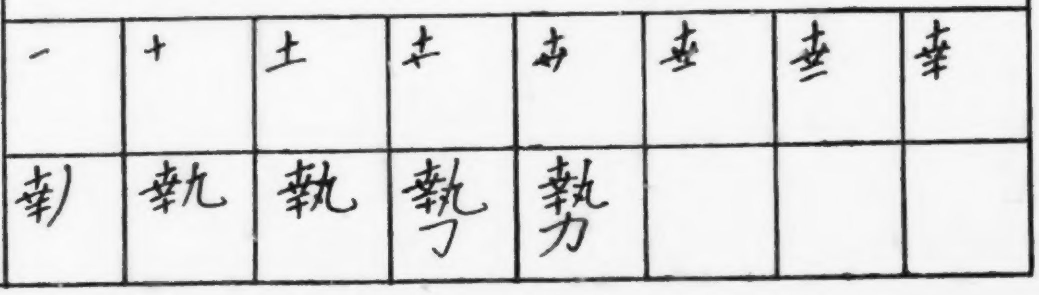
LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

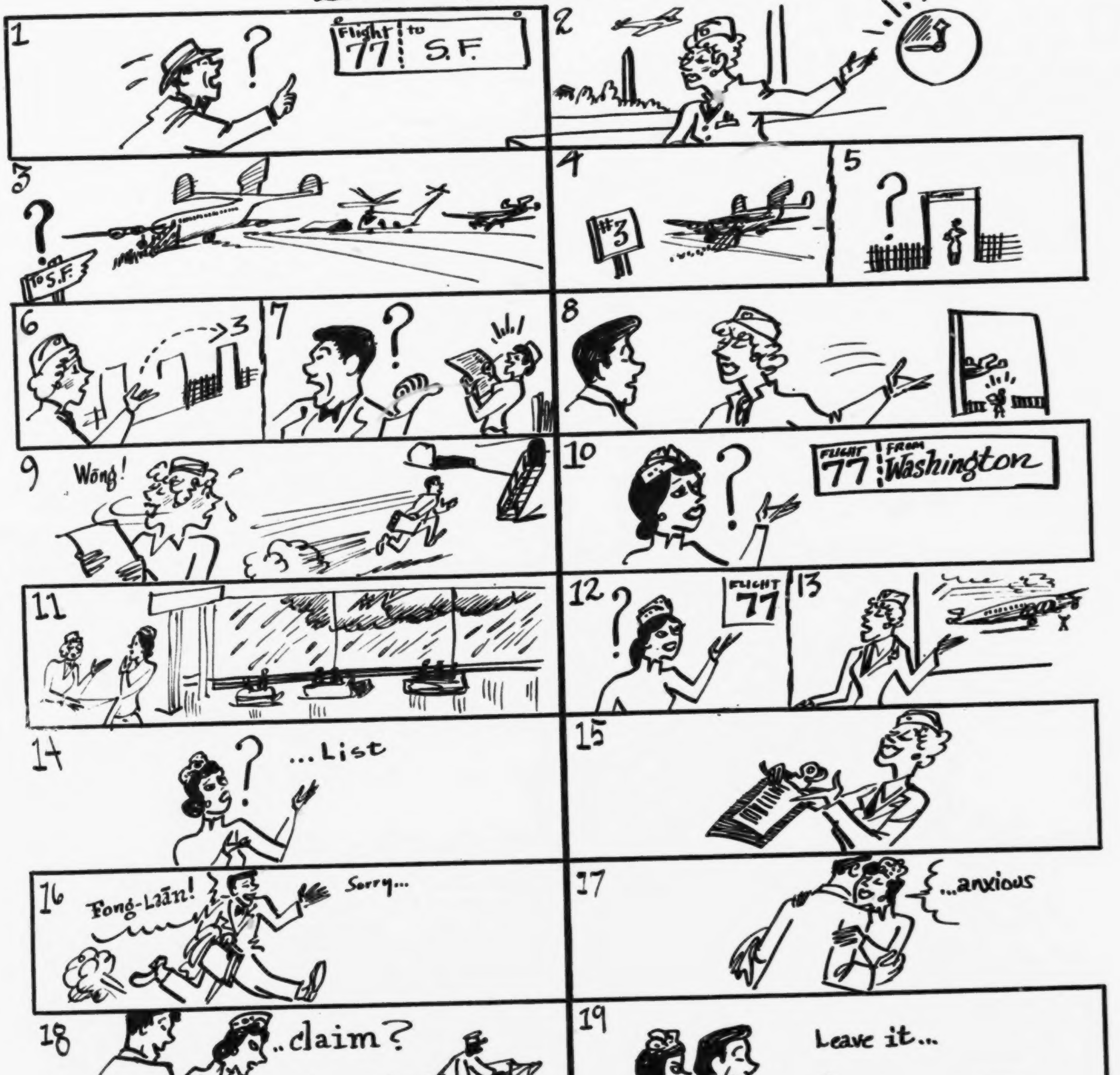
黃二已經辦好一切出國手續,佢要大後日離開美國去台灣.而家佢黎李四處同李四辭行.李四問佢點解走得咁忙迫,佢話,呢啲係佢嘅上司嘅命令.喺呢種情勢之下,冇辦法遲啲走.李四想今晚同佢 tsìn 行,而且賀佢得倒新職位.佢話佢唔去得.因為重有好多事要做.剩下嘅時候冇幾多.李四問佢嘅目的地係邊處,佢話佢想搭 Faàn 美航空公司嘅客機,唔係運輸機,先飛去馬尼拉;飛機喺夜晚十一點、鐘啟行,到咗馬尼拉之後,轉飛機飛台灣.

LESSON 3

WRITING MATERIAL

賀	Character Number 296 Radical Number 154 Stroke Number 12 貝 
輸	Character Number 1009 Radical Number 159 Stroke Number 16 車 
剩	Character Number 997 Radical Number 18 Stroke Number 12 刂，刀 
湖	Character Number 785 Radical Number 85 Stroke Number 12 氵，水 
勢	Character Number 940 Radical Number 19 Stroke Number 13 力 

LESSON 4


1
?
Flight 77 to S.F.
2
3
?
To S.F.
4
#3
5
?
6
3
7
?
8
9
Wōng!
10
?
FLIGHT 77 FROM Washington
11
12
?
FLIGHT 77
13
14
?
...List
15
16
Fong-Laān!
Sorry...
17
...anxious
18
..claim?
19
Leave it...
20
?..change..
Formosa
21
Yes..
..tomorrow
Formosa
22
..today..
23
!

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î. Siú-tsé, ts'îng mân huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè ts'at-â-ts'at hô paan-kei chûng yaŭ keì noî heì-fei à?

Wā-Shîng-Tûn Fei-Kei-Ch'eūng mân-sẑ-ch'uè. Sin-Shaang, shì-kaàn hó màn, chûng yaŭ shâp-nğ fan-chung.

Wōng. Ts'îng mân pin kà fei-kei haî fei huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ kà?

Mân-sẑ-ch'uè. Kóh kà t'ìng haî taî-saam t'iū p'aaú-tô kè tsaû haî là.

Wōng. Ts'îng mân yaū taî-keì tô chaâp-haú huì à?

Mân-sẑ-ch'uè. Yaū taî-saam tô chaâp-haú huì.

Wōng. Tîm-chóh taàp-haàk kè mēng* meî à?

Mân-sẑ-ch'uè. Ī-ka tîm-kán mēng*, neĭ tsik-hak tsaú huì la.

Hung-Chung-Siú-Tsé. Ngaam-ngaam tîm tò neĭ kè mēng*, neĭ laì-tak hó hôp-shì.

Hōh-Fong-Laān. Siú-tsé, yaū Wā-Shîng-Tûn fei laì kè ts'at-â-ts'at hô paan-kei tîm-kaaî nĝ-tîm à?

Saam-Faān-Shĭ Kwòk-Chaì-Kei-Ch'eūng haû-kei-shat. Yan-waî yaū Wā-Shîng-Tûn tò ni-shuè kè t'in-heì m̄-hó.

Hōh. Ts'at-â-ts'at hô paan-kei chûng yaŭ keì noî tò à?

Haû-kei-shat. Siú-tsé, kóh kà fei-kei ngaam-ngaam kòng-lôk.

Hōh. Ts'îng mân neĭ yaŭ mŏ taàp-haàk kè mìng-taan à?

Haû-kei-shat. Ni cheung haî taàp-haàk kè mìng-taan.

Wōng. Fong-Laān, chan-haî tuì-m̄-chuê, lîng neĭ táng-chóh kòm noî.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Hōh. M̄-kán-iù, ngŏh sam-kap che.

Hōh. Neĭ seúng m̄-seúng ī-ka lóh haāng-leĭ à?

Wōng. Ngŏh seúng tseung ti haāng-leĭ laū haî haāng-leĭ-shat shuè.

Hōh. Tîm-kaaî à? Neĭ haî m̄-haî seúng yaū ni-shuè chuèn fei-kei fei T'oī-Waan à?

Wōng. Haî, ngŏh seúng t'ing-chiu-tsó yaū ni-shuè chuèn fei-kei fei T'oī-Waan.

Hōh. Uē-kwóh haî kóm, ngŏh-teî kam-yât huī T'ōng-Yān-Faû waán-hă la.

Wōng. Hó à.

LESSON 4

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wŏng-Î: Miss, will you please tell me how soon flight 77 will take off for San Francisco?

The Information Clerk of Washington Airport: Sir, you have very little time; there are fifteen minutes left.

W. Which plane will leave for San Francisco?

Information: That one which is parked on the third runway.

W. Which gate should I take?

I. Take the third gate.

W. Have they called the roll of passengers yet?

I. They are calling the roll now. Go right in.

Stewardess: I just called your name, you came just in time.

Hŏh-Fong-Laăn: Miss, why is flight 77 from Washington D.C. overdue?

The Waiting Room of San Francisco International Airport: Because weather conditions between Washington D.C. and here are not good.

H. How soon will flight 77 arrive?

Waiting Room: Miss, that plane just landed.

H. Do you have the passenger list?

Waiting Room: This is the passenger list.

W. Fong-Laăn, I am really sorry to keep you waiting for so long.

LESSON 4

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

H. Never mind, I was just a bit anxious.

H. Do you want to claim your baggage now?

W. I wish to leave my baggage in the baggage room

H. Why? Do you want to change planes here for Formosa?

W. Yes, I want to change plane tomorrow for Formosa.

H. If that is the case, today we'll go to Chinatown to tour.

W. Fine.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. You came just in time. Why don't you join us for lunch here.
2. Flight 77 from Hong Kong is late today.
3. I shall stay in San Francisco's Chinatown temporarily.
4. When you arrive at Los Angeles from the Far East, you will have to change planes for New York City.
5. The baggage room is not on this floor. It is located downstairs.
6. For local flights, we do not have passenger lists.
7. We will land in 5 minutes. Please do not stand up.
8. The plane is not at the runway yet. We might as well sit down.
9. The waiting room is crowded because a few planes are delayed.
10. The stewardess is not only pretty but also hard working.
11. At the beginning of each class, Prof. Chan always calls the roll.
12. You cannot get through this gate, unless you are one of the passengers.
13. If you don't know how to get to the airport, you might as well let me drive.
14. Please be seated. We will take off in 5 minutes.
15. There is no scheduled flight from Macao to Hong Kong on Sundays and holidays.
16. This runway is so short, I am afraid I cannot land my plane safely.

LESSON 4

WORD LIST

1.	paan-kei	scheduled flight
2.	haî-fei	to take off
3.	p'aaú-tô	runway
4.	tîm mēng*	roll call; to call the roll
5.	hung-chung-siú-chê	stewardess (airplane)
6.	nĝ-tîm	overdue
7.	haû-kei-shat	waiting room
8.	kòng-lôk	to land (airplane)
9.	mîng-taan	name list, manifest
10.	haāng-leĭ-shat	baggage room
11.	chuèn fei-kei	to change airplane
12.	hôp-shî	in time

LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

779

惡	ǒk, ngǒk, oǒ: bad; wicked; vicious; hard; difficult.
惡習	ǒk tsaâp: bad habit.
惡意	ǒk-ì: evil intention

384

監	kaam: priscn; to superintend
監獄	kaam-yûk: a prison.
監犯	kaam-faân*; a convict; prisoner
監禁	kaam-kǎm: to imprison
監督	kaam-tuk: supervisor; to supervise.

336

宜	ī: suitable; reasonable; natural.
合宜	hôp-ī: suitable; fit; proper
相宜	seung-ī: cheap reasonable in price
適宜	shik-ī: suitable

惡 悪 監 宜

惡 監 宜

悪 監 宜

334

疑	ī: to doubt; suspect; doubtful
思疑	sz-ī: to doubt; suspect
無疑	mō-ī: without doubt; certain
懷疑	waaī-ī: to harbor suspicion; to doubt

636

劣	luèt: inferior; poor; feeble.
惡劣	ǒk-luět: very bad.
劣貨	luèt fǒh: inferior gooos.

疑 劣

疑 劣

疑 劣

LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

503

剛 kong: hard; firm; just; exactly.

剛強 kong-k'eūng: strong.

剛啱 kong-ngaam: just a while ago; just; exactly.

剛才 kong-ts'oī: just now.

剛直 kong-chîk: upright; straight-forward.

222

寬 foon: forgiving; lenient; wide; broad

寬容 foon-yūng: leniency; toleration

寬大 foon-taaî: large spacious; lenient.

417

給 k'ap: to put on (as a seal); affix; to give.

給印 k'ap yàn: to stamp with seal

供給 kung-k'àp: to support(living); to supply.

剛 刚 寬 給

剛 寬 給

刚 宽 给

458

肩 kin: shoulder; to sustain.

肩膊 kin-pǒk: the shoulder

肩背 kin pooì: back of shoulders.

195

荒 fong: wilderness; waste

荒地 fong teî: uncultivated land.

荒年 fong-nīn: year of famine.

飢荒 kei-fong: famine.

開荒 hoi fong: bring under cultivation.

肩 荒

肩 荒

肩 荒

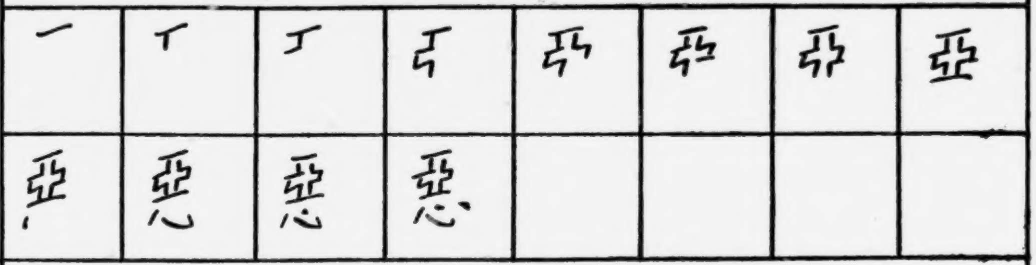
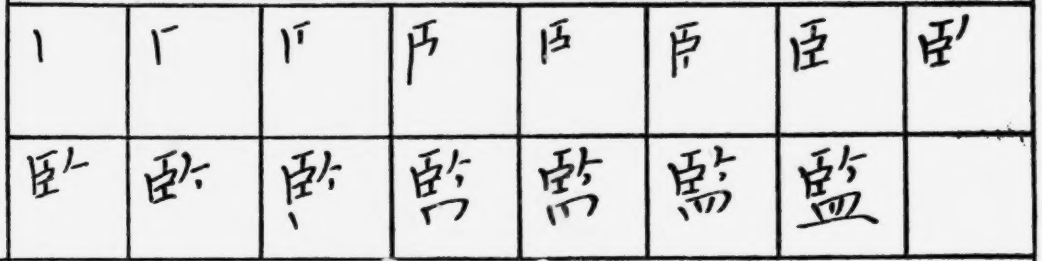
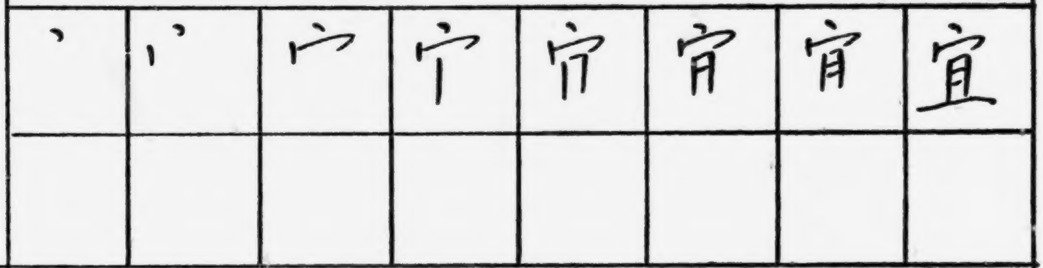
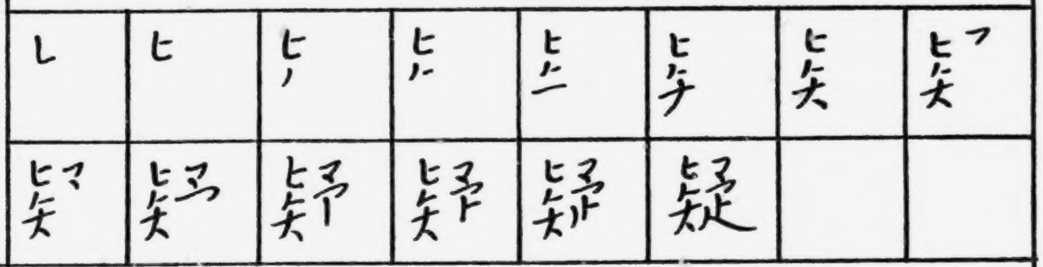
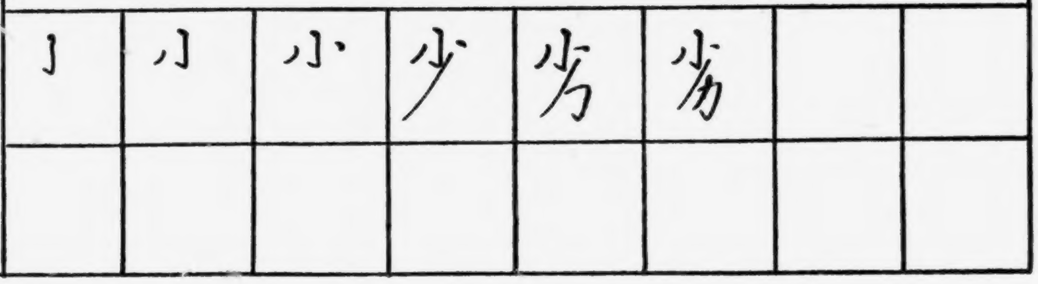
LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

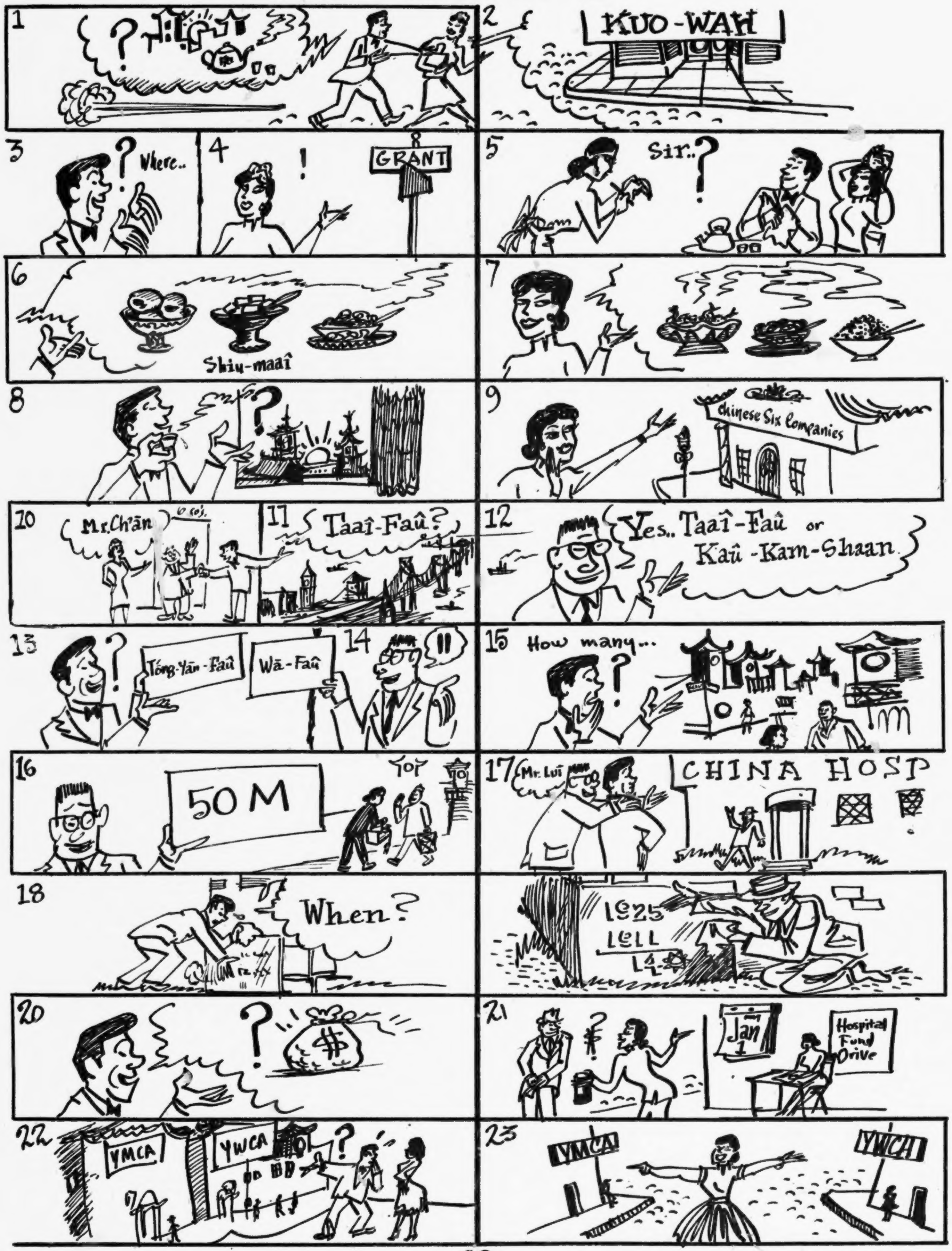
黃二由華盛頓趕搭七十七號班機去三藩市,因為佢先要辦妥幾件事,所以佢到機場嘅時候,嗰架飛機重有十五分鐘就起飛.佢即刻由第三道chaâp 口走去飛機處.嗰陣時一個空中小姐剛剛 同啲taâp客點名.何小姐喺三-Faān市國際機場接佢嘅飛機.今日天氣惡劣,飛機誤點,何小姐喺候機室等佢等咗好耐.佢好心急,又思疑飛機或者發生意外.後來飛機安全降落.佢至寬心.黃二打算聽朝早喺嗰處轉飛機飛台灣,所以佢將啲行李交給行李室.佢地想今日去唐人Faû玩吓,因為嗰處各樣野都相宜.

LESSON 4

WRITING MATERIAL

惡	**Character Number** 779 **Radical Number** 61 **Stroke Number** 12 心 
監	**Character Number** 384 **Radical Number** 108 **Stroke Number** 15 皿 
宜	**Character Number** 336 **Radical Number** 40 **Stroke Number** 8 宀 
疑	**Character Number** 334 **Radical Number** 103 **Stroke Number** 14 疋 
劣	**Character Number** 636 **Radical Number** 19 **Stroke Number** 6 力 

LESSON 5


1
2
KUO-WAH
3
Where..
4
!
GRANT
5
Sir..?
6
Shiu-maaî
7
8
9
Chinese Six Companies
10
Mr. Ch'ān
6 co's.
11
Taaî-Faû?
12
Yes.. Taaî-Faû or Kaû-Kam-Shaan
13
Tóng-Yān-Faû
Wā-Faû
14
!!
15
How many...
16
50 M
17
Mr. Luī
CHINA HOSP
18
When?
1925
1911
14
20
21
Jan 1
Hospital Fund Drive
22
YMCA
YWCA
23
YMCA
YWCA

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î. Fong-Laān, ngŏh-teî huì pin-shuè yám tsó-ch'ā à?

Hōh-Fong-Laān. Ngŏh-teî huì Kwòk-Wā Ts'aan-Shat la.

Wōng. Kwòk-Wā Ts'aan-Shat haî pin shuè à?

Hōh. Kwòk-Wā Ts'aan-Shat haî To-Paán-Kaai.

Nuĭ-chiu-toî. Sin-shaang, iù ti mi-yĕ tîm-sam à?

Wōng. Ngŏh iù yat-tîp ch'a-shiu-paau, yat-tîp shiu-maaî*, yat-tîp fán-kwóh.

Hōh. Ngŏh iù yat-tîp ha-kaaú, yat-tîp p'aaī-kwat, yat-tîp ch'aaú-faân.

Wōng. Yám-uēn ch'ā chi-haû, ngŏh-teî huì pin shuè à?

Hōh. Ngŏh-teî huì Chung-Wā-Tsúng-Ooî-Koón la.

Hōh. Ni-shuè haî Chung-Wā-Tsúng-Ooî-Koón, ni waî* haî Ch'ān Sin-Shaang.

Wōng. Ch'ān Sin-Shaang, Saam-Faān-Shĭ yaû kiù-tsô Taaî-Faû, haî mà?

Ch'ān. Haî, Saam-Faān-Shĭ yaû kiù-tsô Taaî-Faû, yaû kiù-tsô Kaû-Kam-Shaan.

Wōng. T'ōng-Yān-Faû t'ūng Wā-Faû yaŭ mi-yĕ m̄-t'ūng à?

Ch'ān. T'ōng-Yān-Faû t'ūng Wā-Faû mŏ mi-yĕ m̄-t'ūng.

Wōng. T'ōng-Yān-Faû yaŭ keì-toh Chung-Kwòk yān à?

Ch'ān. T'ōng-Yān-Faû taaî-yeùk* yaŭ nğ-maân Chung-Kwòk yān kòm-sheûng-hâ*.

Hōh. Kwòk-Ts'uēn, ni kaan haî Tung-Wā I-Uên*, ni waî* haî Luĭ Sin-Shaang.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Luī Sin-Shaang, ni kaan i-uên* kei-shī heī-hó kả?

Luī. Ni kaan i-uên* haí Mān-Kwòk Shâp-Seī Nīn heī-hó kè.

Wōng. Neĭ-teî kè king-faī kaù m̄-kaù à? M̄-kaù kè shī-haû, tîm-paân à?

Luī. Ngŏh-teî kè king-faī m̄-kaù, nīn nīn to iù ch'aū foón.

Wōng. Fong-Laān, T'ōng-Yān-Faû yaŭ mŏ Naām-Ts'ing-Nīn-Ooî* t'ūng Nuĭ-Ts'ing-Nīn-Ooî* à?

Hōh. Yaŭ, kó̇h kaan haî Naām-Ts'ing-Nīn-Ooî*; Nuĭ-Ts'ing-Nīn-Ooî* haî kaảk-leī kaai.

LESSON 5

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î: Fong-Laān, where can we go for morning tea?

Hōh-Fong-Laān: We may go to the Kwòk-Wā (Kuo-Wah) Restaurant.

W. Where is the Kwòk-Wā Restaurant?

H. It is on Grant Avenue.

Waitress: Sir, what kinds of refreshment do you want?

W. I'd like to order a plate of barbecued pork buns, a plate of shiu-maaî*, and a plate of meat dumplings.

H. I'd like to order a plate of shrimp dumplings, a plate of spareribs, and a plate of fried rice.

W. After morning tea, where shall we go?

H. We may go to the Chinese Consolidated Benevolent Association of USA.

H. Here is the C.C.B.A. This is Mr. Ch'ān.

W. Mr. Ch'ān, San Francisco is also known as Taaî-Faû, is that right?

C. Yes, San Francisco is also known as Taaî-Faû or Kaû-Kam-Shaan.

W. What is the difference between T'ōng-Yān-Faû and Wā-Faû?

C. T'ōng-Yān-Faû and Wā-Faû are the same.

W. How many Chinese are there in Chinatown?

C. There are about fifty thousand Chinese in Chinatown.

C. Kwòk-Ts'uēn. Here is the Chinese Hospital (lit: East China Hospital). This is Mr. Luī.

W. Mr. Luī, when was this hospital founded?

LESSON 5

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Luī: This hospital was founded in 1925 (the 14th year of the Republic of China).

W. Do you have sufficient funds? When you don't have enough, what do you do?

L. We don't have sufficient funds, and we have to raise money every year.

W. Fong-Laān, is there a YMCA and a YWCA in Chinatown?

F. Yes, that is the YMCA; the YWCA is on the next street.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The Y.M.C.A. is located five blocks from here right at the corner of Washington and New York Streets.
2. Actually, they have sufficient funds and do not have to raise any more money.
3. The 1st year of the Republic of China was in 1911.
4. San Francisco's Chinese Hospital is only a very small hospital in comparison to other hospitals in San Francisco.
5. The Chinese Consolidated Benevolent Association meets every first Thursday evening of the month.
6. Almost everybody loves the Chinese dish of sweet and sour spareribs.
7. Please bring me some tea and two dishes of shrimp dumplings.
8. The meat is too salty. What shall I do?
9. The shiu-maaî* is delicious. May I have another please?
10. Generally speaking, I don't like buns, but I think I will try these barbecued pork buns.
11. Many of the Chinese refreshments are quite rich. Don't you think so?
12. Grant Avenue of San Francisco is the heart of San Francisco's Chinatown.
13. This restaurant is not a very expensive one, but it is not cheap either.
14. Please have some tea first and then we can go on discussing the matter.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. Have you ever been to Chinatown for breakfast before?

16. Will you bring us some pastries such as buns, meat dumplings and shrimp dumplings?

LESSON 5

WORD LIST

1.	yâm tsó-ch'ā	to take Chinese morning snack (lit: to drink morning tea)
2.	To-Paân Kaai	Grant Avenue
3.	tîm-sam	refreshment
4.	ch'a-shiu-paau	barbecued pork bun
5.	shiu-maaî*	Shiu-maaî*
6.	fân-kwôh	meat dumpling (fân-kwôh)
7.	ha-kaaú	shrimp dumpling (ha-kaaú)
8.	p'aaì-kwat	sparerib
9.	Chung-Wā-Tsúng-Ooî-Koón	The Chinese Consolidated Benevolent Association of USA
10.	Wā-Faû	Chinatown
11.	Tung-Wā-I-Uên*	Chinese Hospital (lit: East China Hospital)
12.	king-faì	budget, expenditure, fund
13.	ch'aū foón	to raise money

LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

996

乘 shīng: to avail of; to ride; to ascend.

乘機會 shīng kei-ooî: to take advantage of an opportunity.

乘凉 shīng leũng: to enjoy the cool air.

816

板 paán: board; printing block; page of book; stiff.

黑板 hak-paán: blackboard.

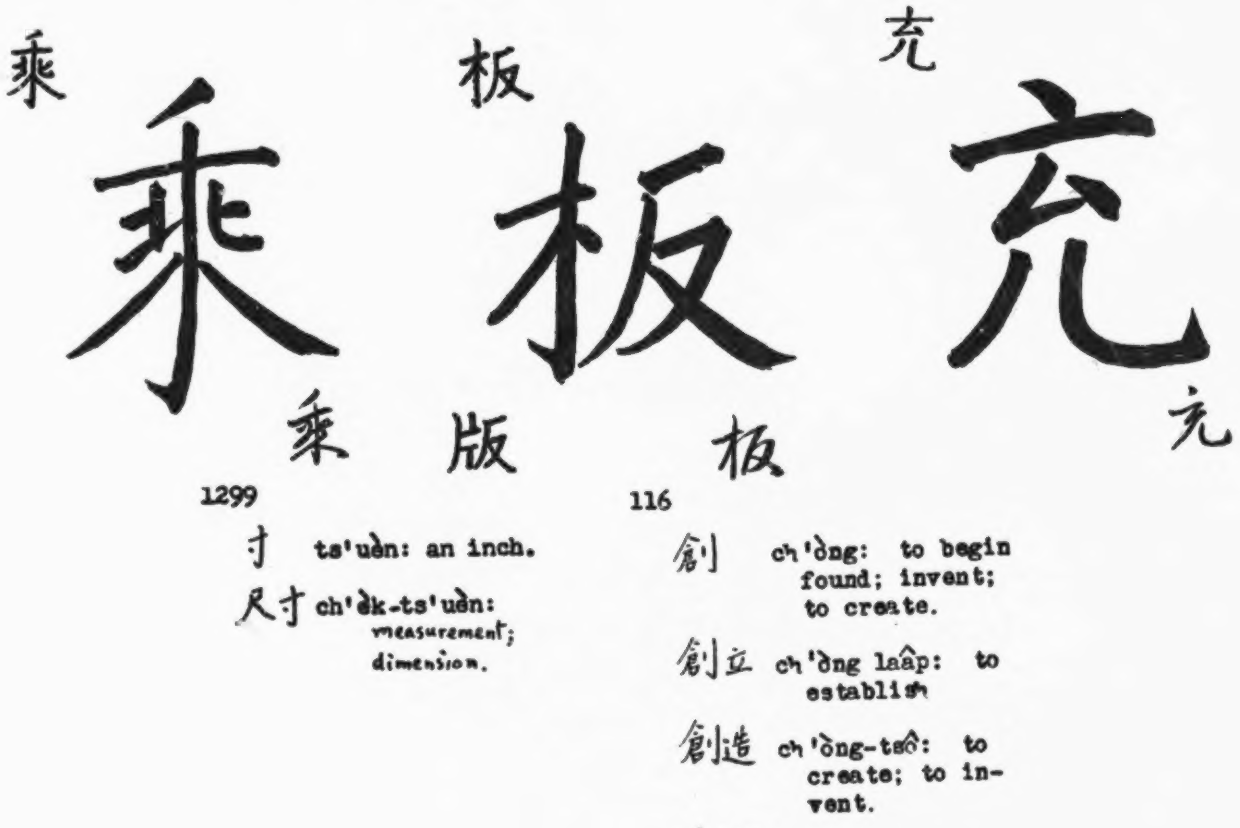
152

充 ch'ung: to fill; satify

充满 ch'ung-moǒn: to fill up; full of

冒充 mô-ch'ung: pretend to be other person

充公 ch'ung-kung: to confiscate



1299

寸 ts'uèn: an inch.

尺寸 ch'èk-ts'uèn: measurement; dimension.

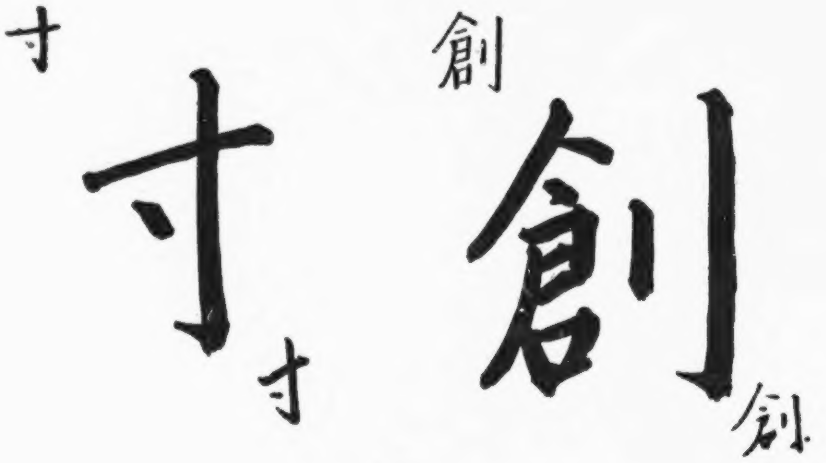
116

創 ch'òng: to begin found; invent; to create.

創立 ch'òng laâp: to establish

創造 ch'òng-tsô: to create; to invent.

創傷 ch'ong-sheung: wound, injury



LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

1059

宿 suk: to lodge; to stay over night; old; stale.

寄宿 kaì-suk: to lodge.

膳宿 shîn suk: board and lodging.

1130

頂 téng, tíng: the top; peak.

山頂 shaan téng: mountain peak.

屋頂 uk téng: top of a house; roof.

1318

族 tsûk: tribe; clan; class.

宗族 tsung-tsûk: family; clan.

種族 chúng-tsûk: race; tribe.

宿 頂 族

宿 頂 族

宿 顶 族

1292

裁 ts'oī: to cut to a pattern; to lessen; to calculate; to plan; to decide.

裁縫 ts'oī-fūng: a tailor

裁撤 ts'oī ch'ìt: to disband; to dismiss.

裁判 ts'oī-p'oòn: to judge; to decide.

232

縫 fūng: to sew

裁縫 ts'oī-fūng: a tailor

裁 縫

裁 縫

裁 缝

LESSON 5

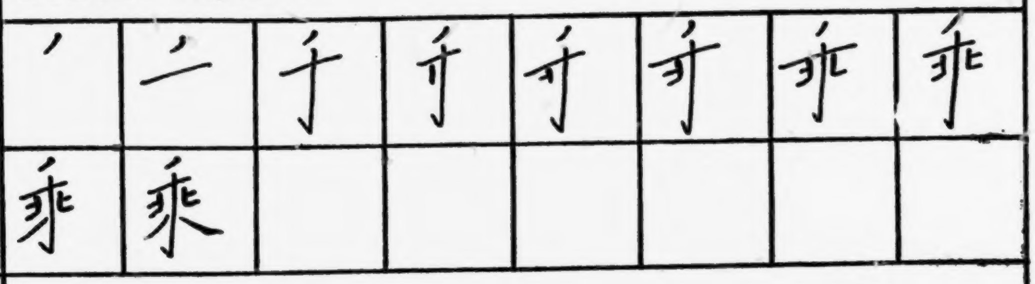
READING MATERIAL

黄二决定喺三 Faān 市留宿一日.一夜,就乘呢個機會同何小姐去遊 T'ōng 人 Faû .因為呢處唔只完全由中國民族居住,又係全美國頂大頂好嘅 T'ōng 人 Faû .充滿中國城市嘅景色.佢地先去都板街嘅國華 ts'aan 室飲早茶,食幾 tîp 點心,好似 ch'a 燒包,燒賣,粉菓,排骨等等.飲完茶之後,佢地去中華總會館,佢地見倒陳先生.陳先生話 T'ōng 人埠大約有五萬中國人咁上下.但係地區好細,所以寸金尺土.後來佢地去東華醫院,嗰間醫院係民國十四年創立.經費唔係幾夠,年年都要籌欵.去完東華醫院之後,佢地去男青年會同女青年會.

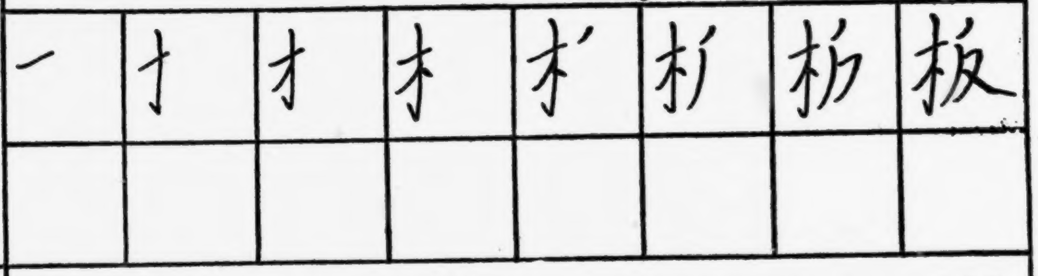
LESSON 5

WRITING MATERIAL

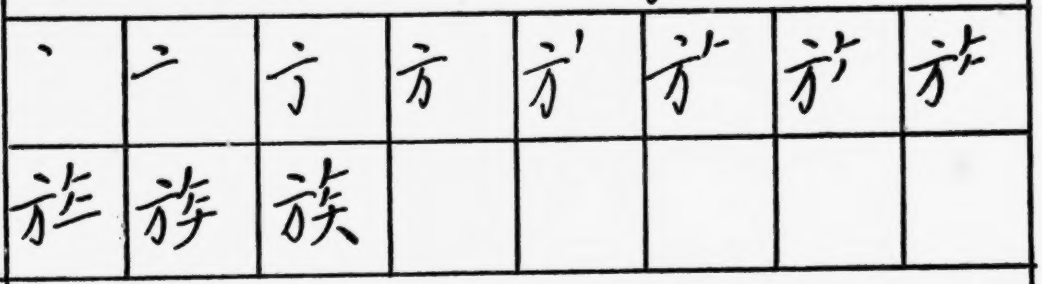
乘	Character Number	996	Radical Number	4
	Stroke Number	10	丿	



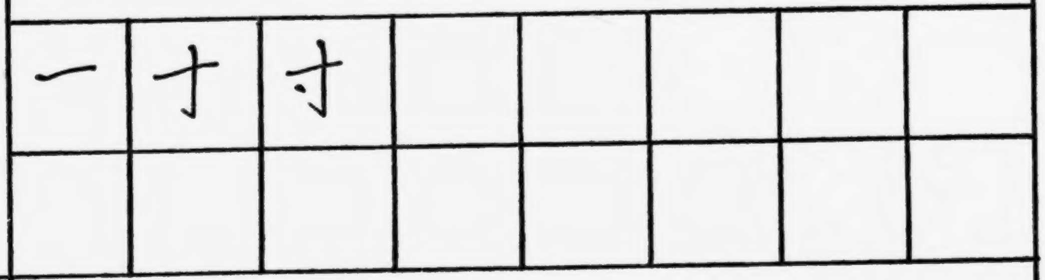
板	Character Number	816	Radical Number	75
	Stroke Number	8	木，木	



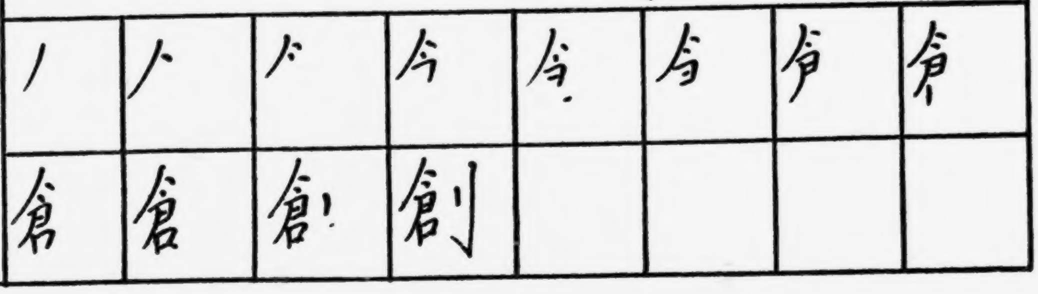
族	Character Number	1318	Radical Number	70
	Stroke Number	11	方	



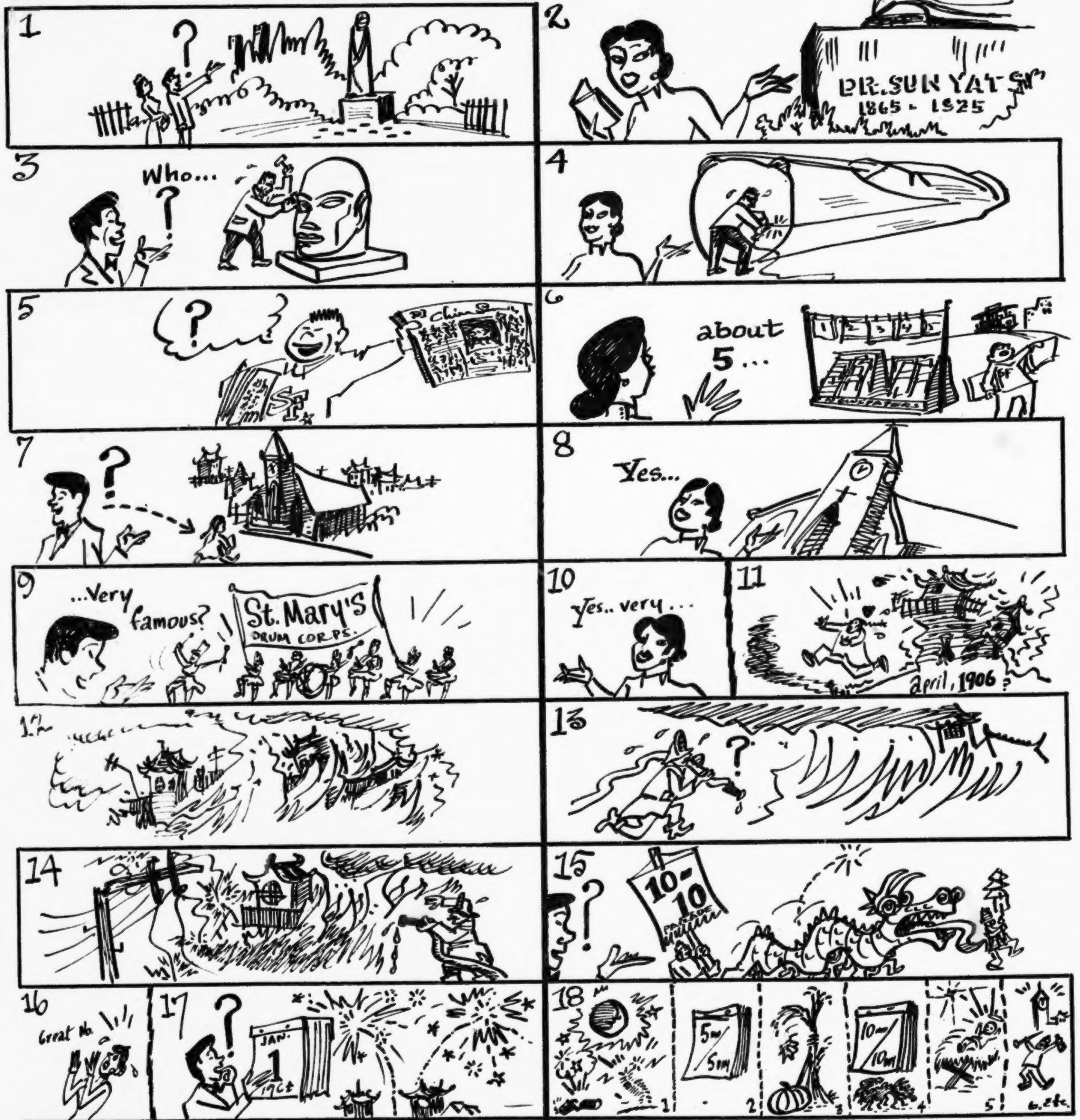
寸	Character Number	1299	Radical Number	41
	Stroke Number	3	寸	



創	Character Number	116	Radical Number	18
	Stroke Number	12	刂，刀	



LESSON 6


1
?
2
DR. SUN YAT SEN
1865 - 1925
3
Who...
?
4
5
?
China
SF
6
about
5...
7
?
8
Yes...
9
...Very
famous?
St. Mary's
DRUM CORPS
10
Yes.. very...
11
April, 1906?
12
13
?
14
15
?
10-10
PARADE
16
Great No.
17
?
JAN.
1
1962
18
5m/5m
10m/10m
1
2
3
4
5
6. etc.
19
?
Miss Chinatown
20
21
?
22

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Ni kòh Suen-Yât-Sin Kung-Uēn* haî m̂-haî keî-nîm Suen-Chung-Shaan Sin-Shaang kà?

Hōh. Haî, k'uĭ haî keî-nîm Suen-Chung-Shaan Sin-Shaang kè.

Wōng. Ni kòh Suen-Chung-Shaan t'ūng-tseûng* haî pin kòh tsô kà?

Hōh. Ni kòh t'ūng-tseûng* haî yat-kòh hó ch'ut-mēng* kè tiu-hak-ka tsô kè.

Wōng. Saam-Faān-Shĭ taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keî-toh kaan Chung-Kwòk pò-koón à?

Hōh. Kan-kuì ngŏh shóh chi kè, Saam-Faān-Shĭ taaî-yeùk* yaŭ nğ-kaan Chung-Kwòk pò-koón.

Wōng. Neĭ kaû-shì yaŭ mŏ haì ni kaan Shìng-Mă-Leî Chung-Hôk tûk-kwòh shue à?

Hōh. Yaŭ, ni kaan Shìng-Mă-Leî Chung-Hôk haî ngŏh kè mŏ-haaû.

Wōng. T'eng mān wâ, ni kaan hôk-haaû kè koó-ngôk-tuî* hó ch'ut-mēng*, haî mà?

Hōh. Haî, k'uĭ kè koó-ngôk-tuî* fei-sheūng-chi ch'ut-mēng*.

Wōng. Yat-kaú-lìng-lûk nìn saam-uêt taaî teî-chàn kè shì-haû, T'ōng-Yān-Faû yaŭ mŏ shaû yìng-heúng à?

Hōh. Yaŭ, T'ōng-Yān-Faû shaû hó taaî kè yìng-heúng, hó toh teî-fong faàt-shaang taaî fóh.

Wōng. T'eng mān wâ, taaî teî-chàn t'ūng taaî fóh kè shì-haû, siu-fōng-tuî* hó naān kaù fóh, tìm-kaaî à?

Hōh. Yan-waî kóh chân-shì mŏ tìn, yaû m̂-kaù shuì, shóh-ĭ siu-fōng-tuî* hó naān kaù fóh.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Kam-yât haî Sheung-Shâp-Chīt, haî Chung-Kwòk Kwòk-Hīng-Yât, ni-shuè yaŭ mŏ yaū-haāng à?

Hōh. Yaŭ, kam-yât ooĭ yaŭ hô toh yān ts'aam-ka yaū-haāng.

Wōng. Yat-nīn chi-noî, ni-shuè yaŭ ti mi-yĕ chûng-iù kè tsīt-yât à?

Hōh. Ni ti chûng-iù kè tsīt-yât haî Kaû-Lîk San-Nīn, Kaû-Lîk Nğ-Uêt Ch'oh-Nğ, Chung-Ts'au-Tsīt, Sheung-Shâp-Tsīt, Shīng-Taàn-Tsīt, San-Lîk San-Nīn, tâng-tâng.

Wōng. Ni-shuè mooĭ nīn keî shī suên-kuî nuĭ-wōng kà?

Hōh. Kaû-Lîk San-Nīn kè shī-haû suên-kuî nuĭ-wōng.

Wōng. T'ōng-Yān-Faû kè teî-fong, ngŏh-teî ch'a-m̄-toh to huī-kwòh, chûng yaŭ pin shuè huī à?

Hōh. Ngŏh-teî hôh-ĭ huī Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè shĭ-k'ui haāng-hă la.

LESSON 6

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: Does Sun Yat-Sen Park commemorate Mr. Suen Chung-Shaan?

Hoh: Yes, it is for the commemoration of Dr. Sun Yat-Sen.

W. Who cast this bronze statue of Dr. Sun Yat-Sen?

H. This bronze statue was cast by a famous sculptor.

W. How many Chinese Newspapers are there in San Francisco?

H. According to my knowledge, there are about five Chinese Newspapers in San Francisco.

W. In the past, did you attend St. Mary's School?

H. Yes, St. Mary's School is my alma mater.

W. I was told that the drum corps of this school is very famous, is that right?

H. Yes, its drum corps is very famous.

W. Was Chinatown affected by the big earthquake in March 1906?

H. Yes, Chinatown was severely affected, many places suffered large fires.

W. I heard that during the time of the big earthquake and the great fire, the fire department found it very difficult to fight the fire. Why?

H. Because during that time there was no electricity and also not sufficient water, therefore the fire department had a hard time fighting the fire.

W. Today is the Double-Ten (October 10th) which is the National Celebration Day of China. Will there be any parades here?

LESSON 6

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

H. Yes. There might be a great number of people participating in the parade.

W. During the year what are the important festivals here?

H. The important festivals are the lunar New Year, May 5th of the lunar calendar (lit: 5th month 5th day) the Mid-Autumn Festival, the Double-Ten, Christmas, New Year, etc.

W. When do they have the campaign for Miss Chinatown each year?

H. During the lunar New Year they have the campaign for Miss Chinatown.

W. We have toured almost everywhere in Chinatown. Is there any place else we may visit?

H. We may go to downtown San Francisco for a stroll.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Monterey is a beautiful scenic place.
2. Dr. Sun Yat-Sen was named “father” of the Republic of China.
3. If I were a sculptor. I would make a bronze statue of myself.
4. She works for the largest newspaper in town.
5. I will be very happy to do something for my alma mater if I can.
6. She is willing to take care of the drum corps every Friday night.
7. The 1906 earthquake destroyed a greater part of the old San Francisco.
8. The world situation will be affected by your work.
9. The fire department was not notified when the police station was on fire last night.
10. If you do not know how to fight a fire,please get out of the way.
11. Maybe I don’t run very fast but I like to participate in the school athletic meet.
12. The parade was a part of the festivity and the narrow streets of Chinatown were all crowded with people.
13. Chinese New Year is more important to the Chinese than Christmas.
14. There will be no sale of liquor on election day.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. The queen is very beautiful and she dances very well.

16. There are at least three or four newspapers in San Francisco's Chinatown.

LESSON 6

WORD LIST

1.	kung-uēn*	park
2.	Suen-Yât-Sin Sin Shaang	Dr. Sun Yat-Sen
3.	t'ūng-tseúng	bronze statue
4.	tiu-haak ka	sculptor
5.	pò-koón	newspaper (press)
6.	mŏ-haaû	alma mater
7.	koó-ngôk tuî*	drum corps
8.	taaî teî-chàn	big earthquake
9.	shaû yìng-heúng	to be adversely affected
10.	siu-fōng-tuî*	fire department
11.	kaù fóh	to fight fire
12.	yaū-haāng	parade, demonstration
13.	tsìt-yât	festival
14.	kaû-lîk San-Nìn	lunar New Year
15.	Shìng-Taàn-Tsìt	Christmas
16.	suèn-kuì	to elect, election
17.	nuĭ-wōng	queen

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

1236

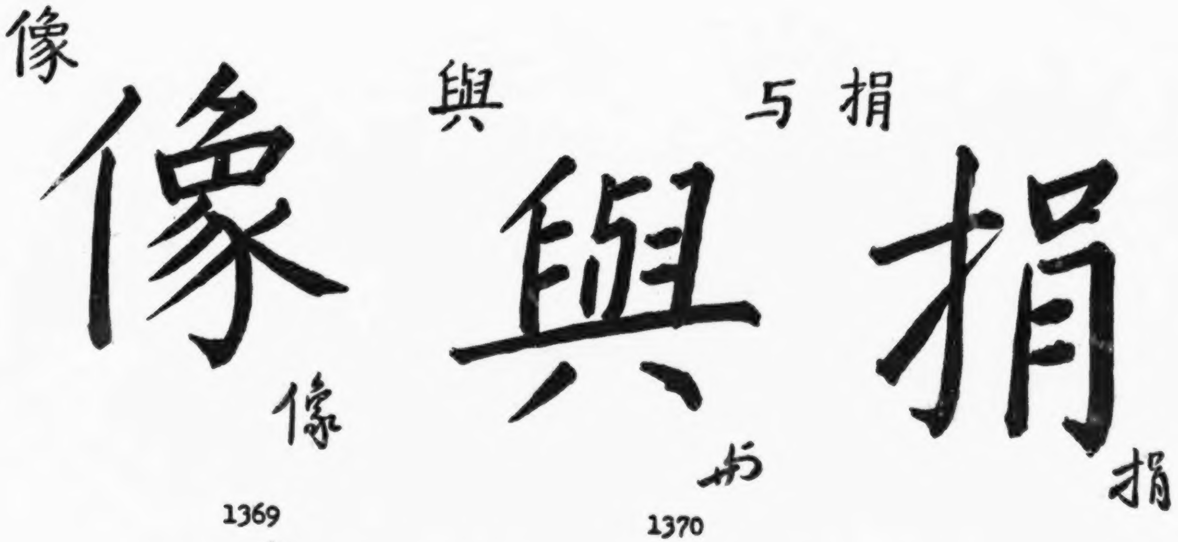
像	tseûng: likeness; image; idol.
神像	shān tseûng: idol.
遺像	waī tseûng: portrait of the deceased.

1377

與	uě: with; together; give; grant; particle of query.
與及	uě-k'âp: also; together; with.

523

捐	kuen: to contribute
捐助	kuen-chôh: to contribute.
捐錢	kuen ts'în: to donate money

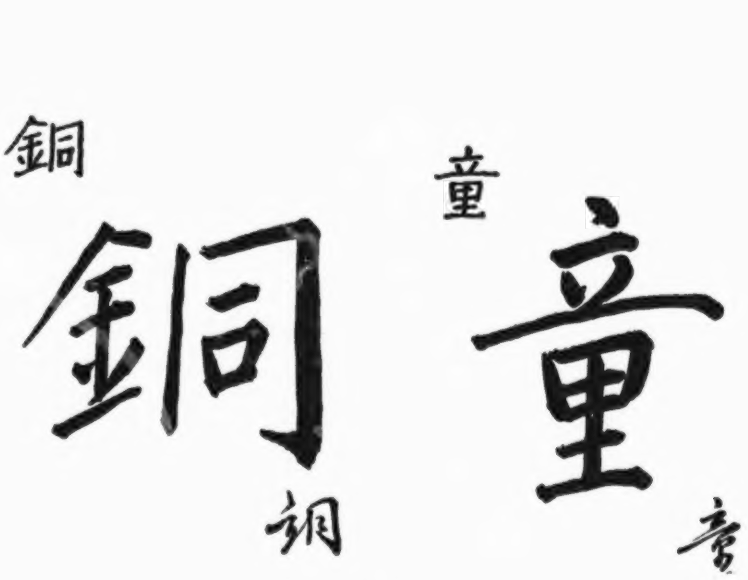


1369

銅	t'ūng: copper; brass.
黃銅	wōng-t'ūng: brass.
銅鑼	t'ūng lōh: brass gong.

1370

童	t'ūng: boy; girl; virgin.
童子	t'ūng-tsź: a lad; boy.
小童	siú-t'ūng: a small boy.



LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

1454

優 yau: to excel; abundant, leisure

優待 yau-toî: to treat with great kindness

優等 yau táng. the best class.

優美 yau-meĭ. excellent.

318

虛 hui: empty; void; vain

虛弱 hui-yeûk: weak

空虛 hung-hui: empty

虛驚 hui-king: false terror

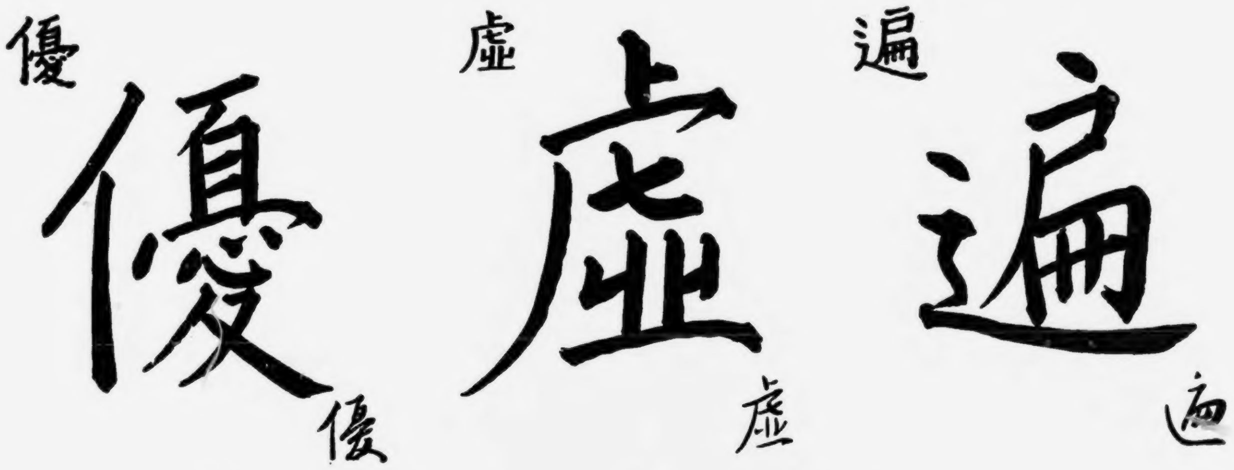
虛傳 hui-ch'uēn: rumor.

858

遍 p'ìn: everywhere; all; whole; once.

遍地 p'ìn teî: everywhere.

一遍 yat-p'ìn: once; one time.



319

許 huí: to promise; permit

許可 huí-hóh: to permit; sanction

許久 huí-kaú: a long time

許多 huí-toh: very many

許願 huí uên: make a vow

526

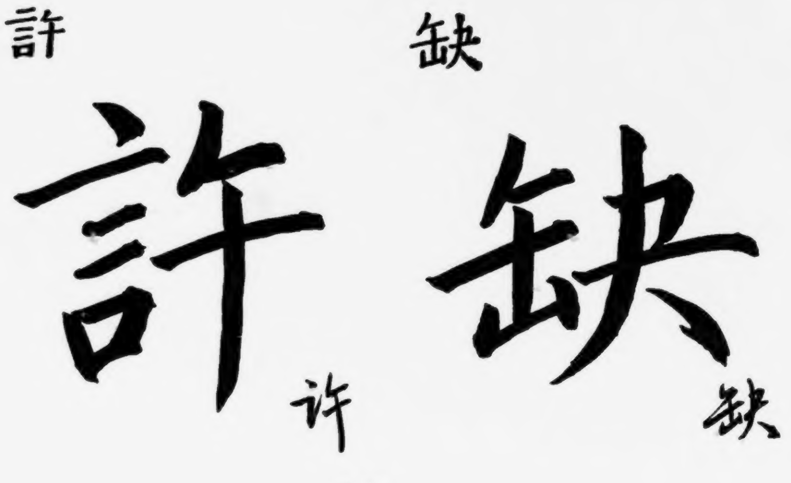
缺 k'uèt: broken; lacking; missing.

缺少 k'uèt-shiú: lacking; to lack of.

缺乏 k'uèt-fât: deficit; run short of.

缺席 k'uèt tsêk: absence (from meeting, trial, etc.)

空缺 hung-k'uèt: a vacant position.



LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

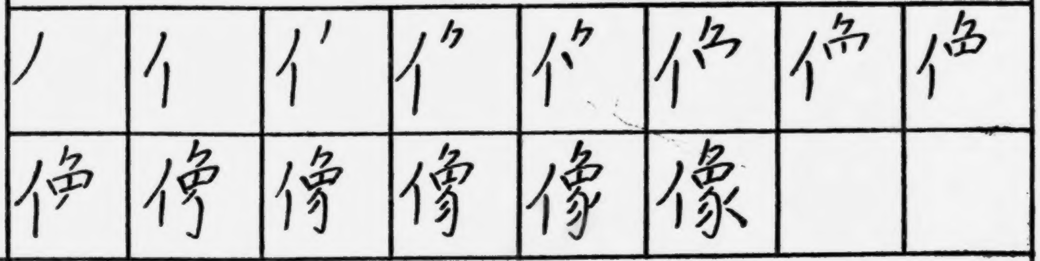
黃二與何小姐遊遍 T'ōng 人 Faû 參觀好多野.好似孫 Yât 仙銅像, Shìng Mă 利中學,同中國報館等等.何小姐話 Shìng Mă 利中學.係佢嘅母校,嗰間學校嘅鼓樂隊好出名.因為隊員嘅技術優良,服裝華麗.但係學校嘅經費亦都唔夠.要依靠華僑捐助.何小姐又同黃二講好多關於 T'ōng 人 Faû 嘅歷史,同每年嘅重要節日;佢話, T'ōng 人 Faû 一九O六年大地 chân 嘅時候,因為有電,啲水又缺少,所以消防隊好難救火.今日係雙十節,係中國嘅國慶日,好多人參加遊行.黃二遊覽之後,覺得 T'ōng 人 Faû 確係名不虛傳.如果時間許可,佢要停留多幾日.

LESSON 6

WRITING MATERIAL

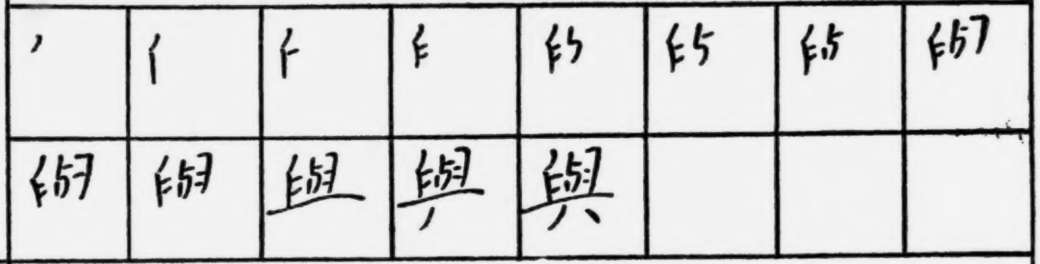
像

Character Number 1236 **Radical Number** 9
Stroke Number 14 亻，人



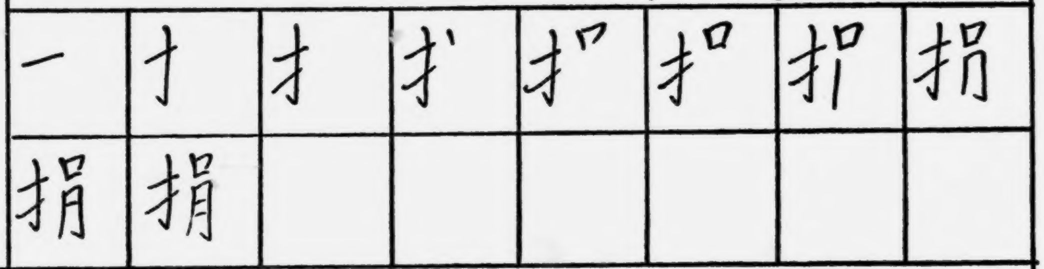
與

Character Number 1377 **Radical Number** 134
Stroke Number 13 臼



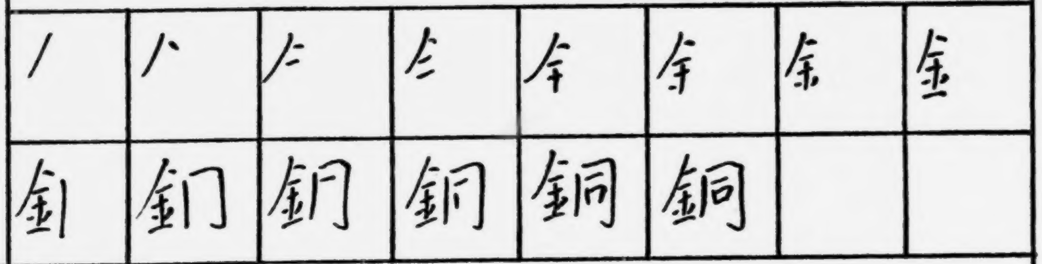
捐

Character Number 523 **Radical Number** 64
Stroke Number 10 扌，手



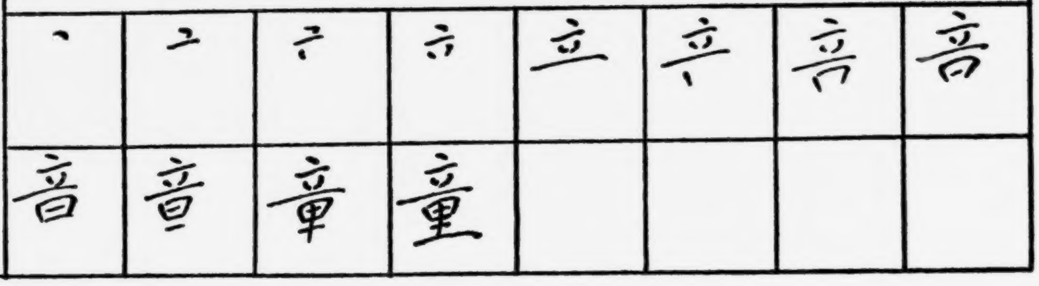
銅

Character Number 1369 **Radical Number** 167
Stroke Number 14 金，金

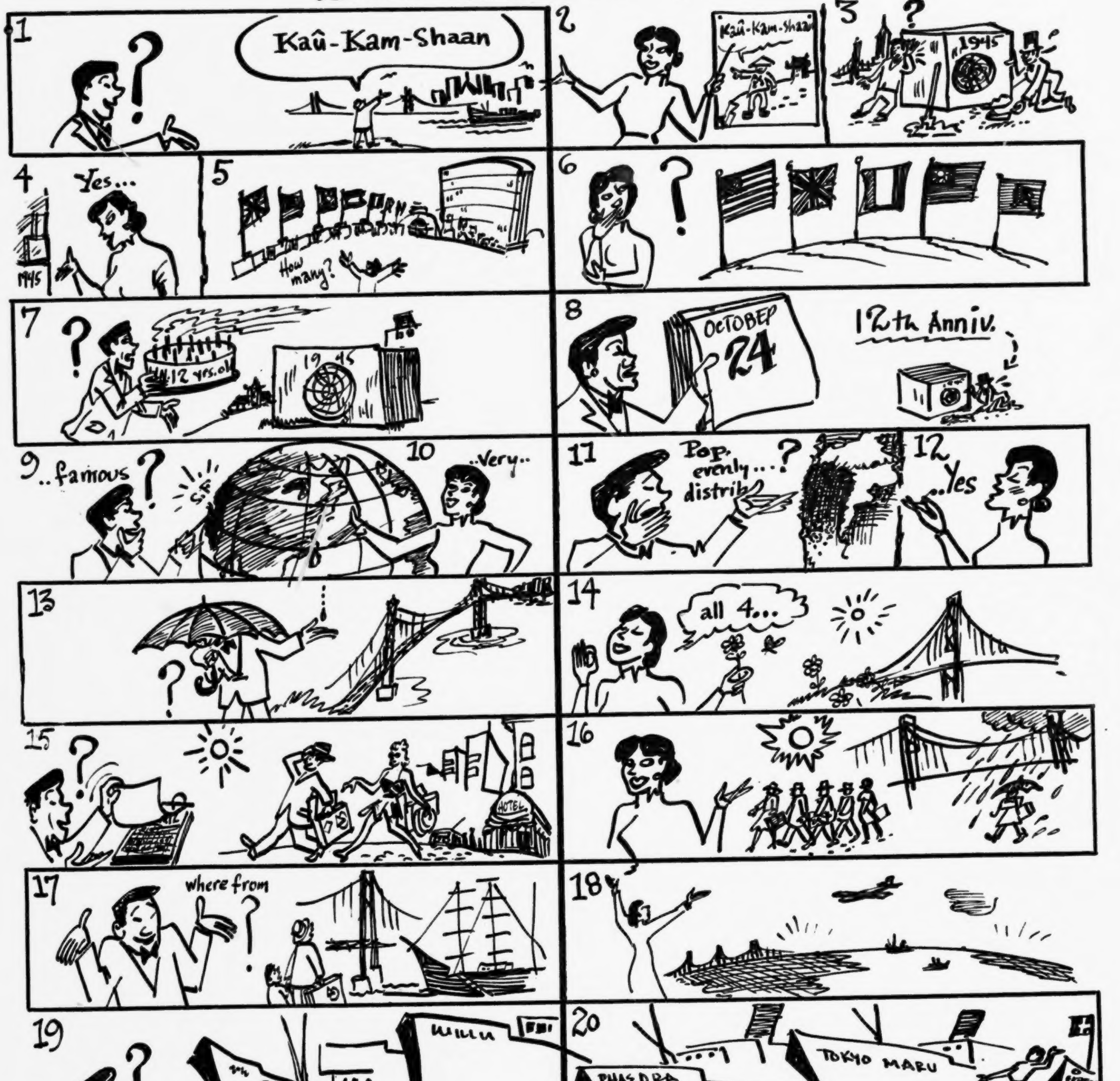


童

Character Number 1370 **Radical Number** 117
Stroke Number 12 立



LESSON 7


1
Kaû-Kam-Shaan
?
2
Kaû-Kam-Shaan
3
?
1945
4
Yes...
1945
5
How many?
6
?
7
?
12 yrs. ol
19 45
8
OCTOBER 24
12th Anniv.
9
..famous?
10
..very..
11
Pop. evenly...? distrib
12
..Yes
13
?
14
all 4...
15
?
HOTEL
16
17
where from ?
18
19
?
20
PHAEDRA
TOKYO MARU
21
?
PRES. Washington
PRES. MONROE
22
PRES. HARDING
PRES. ROOSEVELT
23
...important ?
24
...extremely...

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Pin ti yān kiù Saam-Faān-Shĭ tsô Kaû-Kam-Shaan à?

Hōh. Chuê haî Chung-Kwòk kè Chung-Kwòk yān kiù Saam-Faān-Shĭ tsô Kaû-Kam-Shaan.

Wōng. Ngŏh t'eng mān wâ, yat-kaú-seí-nğ nín Luēn-Hôp-Kwòk haí ni-shuè shíng-lâp, haî mà?

Hōh. Haî, yat-kaú-seí-nğ nín Luēn-Hôp-Kwòk haí ni-shuè shíng-lâp.

Wōng. Luēn-Hôp-Kwòk kè ooî-uēn-kwòk tsúng-kûng yaŭ keí toh kòh à?

Hōh. Ngŏh m̄-chi-tò, pat-kwòh ngŏh chi-tò Meĭ-Kwòk, Ying-Kwòk, Faàt-Kwòk, Chung-Kwòk, t'ūng So-Luēn haî ooî-uēn-kwòk.

Wōng. Kam-nín keí uêt keí yât haî Luēn-Hôp-Kwòk shíng-lâp kè shâp-î-chau-nín keí-nîm-yât à?

Hōh. Kam-nín shâp-uêt yâ-seí-yât haî Luēn-Hôp-Kwòk shíng-lâp kè shâp-î-chau-nín keí-nîm-yât.

Wōng. Uē-kwóh haî kóm, Saam-Faān-Shĭ haî yat-kòh hó ch'ut-mēng* kè kwòk-tsaí shíng-shĭ, haî mà?

Hōh. Tong-ín* la, Saam-Faān-Shĭ haî yat-kòh hó chuè-míng kè kwòk-tsaí taaî shíng.

Wōng. Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè yān-haú fan-pò-tak p'íng m̄-p'íng-kwan à?

Hōh. P'íng-kwan, Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè yān-haú fan-pò-tak hó p'íng kwan.

Wōng. Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè heí-haû tím à?

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Hōh. Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè heī-haû hó wan-wōh, seī-kwaī uē ch'un.

Wōng. Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè heī-haû keī-īn kòm hó, yat-nīn seī-kwaī to yaŭ yaū-haàk, haî mà?

Hōh. Haî, pat-kwòh hâ-t'in laī ni-shuè kè yaū-haàk toh ti, tung-t'in laī ni-shuè kè yaū-haàk shiú ti.

Wōng. Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè yaū-haàk toh shò yaū pin shuè laī kà?

Hōh. Shuè shuè to yaŭ, yaŭ ti yaū shaī-kaaī kòk kwòk laī, yaŭ ti yaū Meĭ-Kwòk kòk chau laī.

Wōng. Ni-shuè yaŭ kòm toh taaî mă-t'aū, pin ti shuēn t'īng haī ni-shuè kà?

Hōh. Loī-wŏng Meĭ-Kwòk t'ūng shaī-kaaī kòk taaî shīng kè taaî yaū-shuēn toh shò t'īng haī ni-shuè.

Wōng. Loī-wŏng Meĭ-Kwòk t'ūng Uĕn-Tung kòk kwòk kè Tsúng-T'úng shuēn toh-shò t'īng haī ni-shuè, haî mà?

Hōh. Haî, k'uĭ-teî toh-shò t'īng haī ni-shuè; taàp-haàk toh-shò haī ni-shuè tang lûk.

Wōng. Uē-kwóh haî kóm, Saam-Faān-Shĭ haî yat-kòh hó chûng-iù kè kóng-haú, haî m̄-haî à?

Hōh. Tong-īn* la, Saam-Faān-Shĭ haî yat-kòh fei-sheūng-chi chûng-iù kè kóng-haú.

LESSON 7

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: Who calls San Francisco Kaû-Kam-Shaan?

Hōh: Those people who are residing in China call San Francisco Kaû-Kam-Shaan.

W. I heard that the United Nations was founded here in 1945, right?

H. Yes, In 1945 the United Nations was founded here.

W. Altogether how many member nations are there in the UN?

H. I don't know exactly, but as far as I do know, the United States of America, Great Britain, France, the Republic of China and Soviet Russia are the member nations of the United Nations.

W. What is the date of the 12th anniversary of the founding of the United Nations?

H. October 24th of this year is the 12th anniversary of the founding of the United Nations.

W. If that is the case, San Francisco is a famous international city, right?

H. Certainly, San Francisco is a very famous international city.

W. Is the population of San Francisco evenly distributed?

H. Yes, the population of San Francisco is very evenly distributed.

W. What kind of climate does San Francisco have?

LESSON 7

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

H. The climate of San Francisco is very temperate. All four seasons are like spring.

W. Since the climate of San Francisco is so good, there are tourists throughout the whole year, is that right?

H. Yes, but there are more tourists here in the summertime and less during the winter.

W. From where do most of San Francisco's tourists come?

H. They come from everywhere. Some of them come from various foreign countries, and some come from various states of the United States.

W. There are so many big piers, what kind of ships are at anchor here?

H. Most of the ocean liners sailing between various ports of the United States and big cities in the rest of the world are at anchor here.

W. Most of the President Liners sailing between the United States and the Far Eastern countries are at anchor here, is that right?

H. Yes, most of them are at anchor here and the passengers embark here.

W. If that is the case, San Francisco is a very important port, is that right?

H. Of course, San Francisco is an extrememly important port.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The port of New York is one of the largest in the world.
2. As soon as he disembarked from the boat, he went on to the airport.
3. There are ships going back and forth between the Far East ports and San Francisco.
4. This wharf is more modern than the others in this city.
5. The State of California is in the West where as the State of New York is in the East.
6. The distribution of world population is not even at all.
7. On the average, I drink four cups of coffee daily.
8. Let me divide the one thousand dollars I have among the three of you evenly.
9. If you don't mind, I will not go to the pier tomorrow to see you off.
10. They are very happy because it is their wedding anniversary today.
11. The United States is a member of the United Nations since its founding.
12. I do not know whether today is the 32nd Anniversary of the founding of the school.
13. Many ocean liners are anchored here throughout the year.
14. San Francisco has a wonderful climate all year round and tourists come here from all over the world.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. The United Nations was founded in 1945 and its headquarters is in New York.

16. New York City is not the capital of the State of New York.

LESSON 7

WORD LIST

1.	Luēn-Hôp-Kwòk	United Nations
2.	shìng-lâp	to establish, found, founding
3.	ooî-uēn-kwòk	member nation
4.	So-Luēn	Soviet Russia
5.	shâp-î-chau-nìn keì-nîm-yât	twelfth anniversary
6.	fan-pò	distribution; to distribute
7.	p'ìng-kwan	even, evenly; average
8.	chau	State
9.	Tsúng-T'úng Shuēn	President liner
10.	tang lûk	to disembark (ship)

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

825

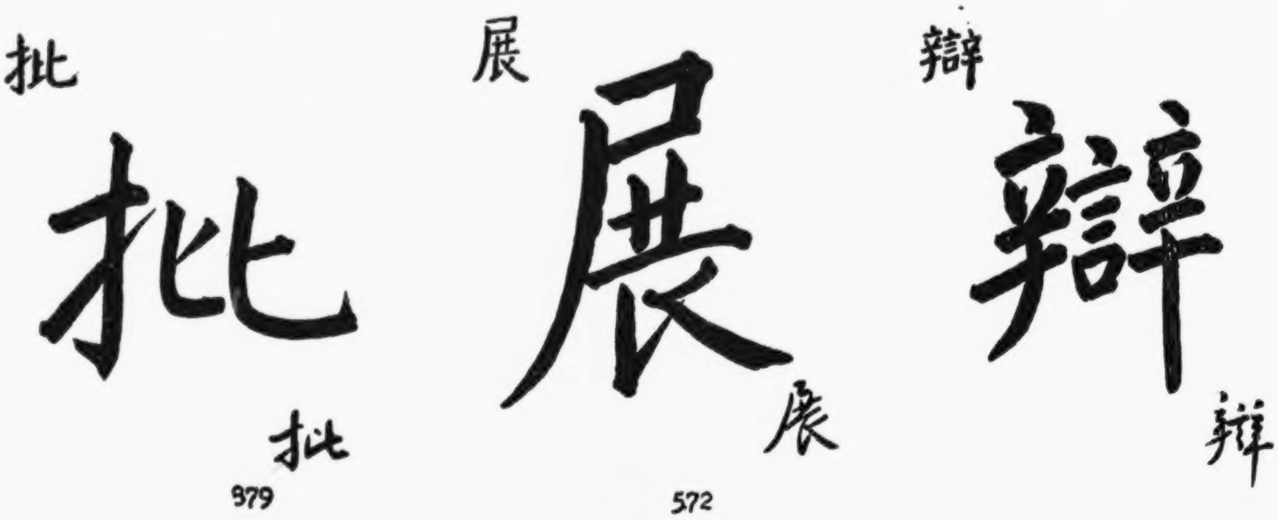
批	p'ai: to criticize; by wholesale; to lease; to plaster; to peel.
批發	p'ai-faàt: to sell goods by wholesale.
大批	taaî p'ai: a large consignment.
批准	p'ai-chún: to sanction; to ratify; to approve.

90

展	chín: to open out; unroll.
展開	chín-hoi: to spread out; open
發展	faàt-chín: to develope
展期	chín k'eī. to postpone
展覽會	chín-laám ooî: an exhibition

854

辯	pîn: to distinguish between; to discuss; debate; to argue.
辯論	pîn-lûn: to discuss; to debate.
爭辯	chaang-pîn: to quarrel; to altercate.

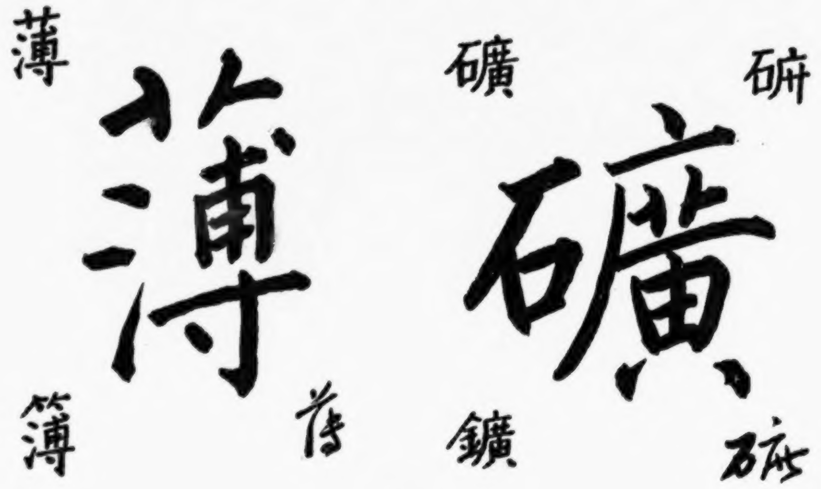


979

薄	pô: an account book; a register.
薄記	pô-keì: bookkeeping.
日記	yât-keì pô: a diary.

572

礦	kw'òng or k'òng: raw metal; ore; a mine.
礦山	kw'òng shaan: a mountain of minerals.
礦工	kw'òng kung: a miner
礦產	kw'òng ch'aán: mine product.
礦泉	kw'òng ts'uēn: mineral vein.



LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

105

超 ch'iu: to surpass to save; to leap over

超等 ch'iu-táng: the best; first class

超越 ch'iu-uêt: surpassing

678

密 mât: thick; close; inner; hidden.

親密 ts'an-mât: intimate; very close.

密碼 mât-mă: a secret code.

機密 kei-mât : official secret.

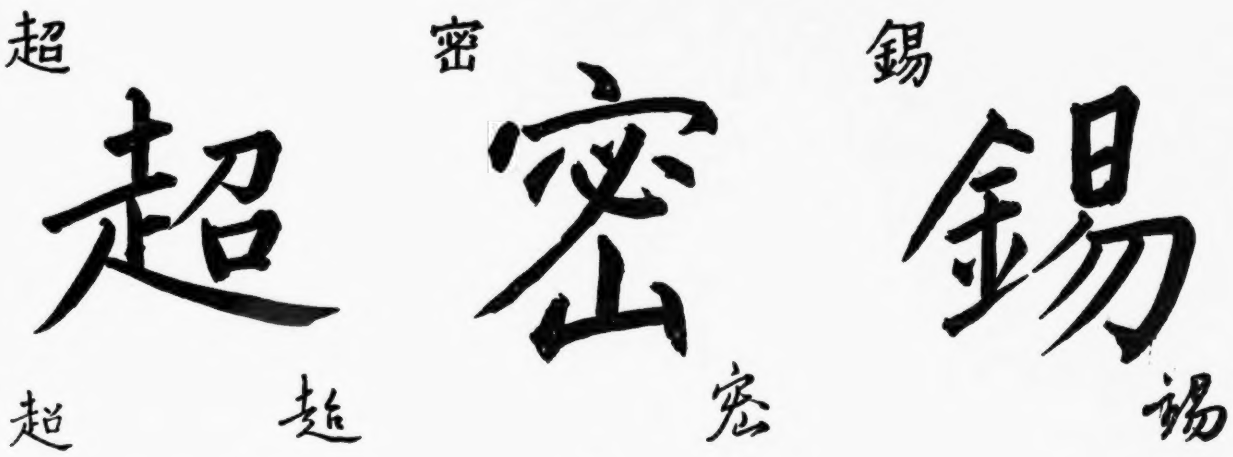
秘密 peì-mât: secret.

921

錫 sèk: tin; pewter; to solder; to bestow.

錫器 sèk hei: pewter.

錫包 sèk paau: to tin.



1000

舌 shît: tongue; clapper.

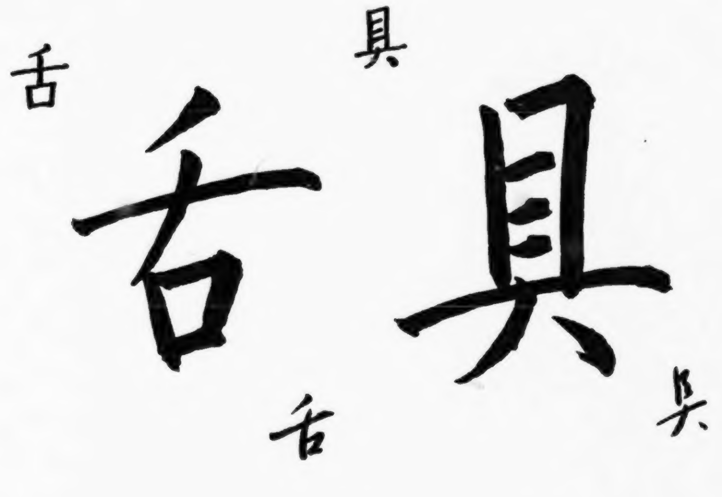
舌戰 shît chìn to dispute; to argue; to debate.

32

具 kuî: implements; uteneils; to arrange; to prepare.

器具 heì-kuî: an instrument.

文具 mān-kuî: stationery.



LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

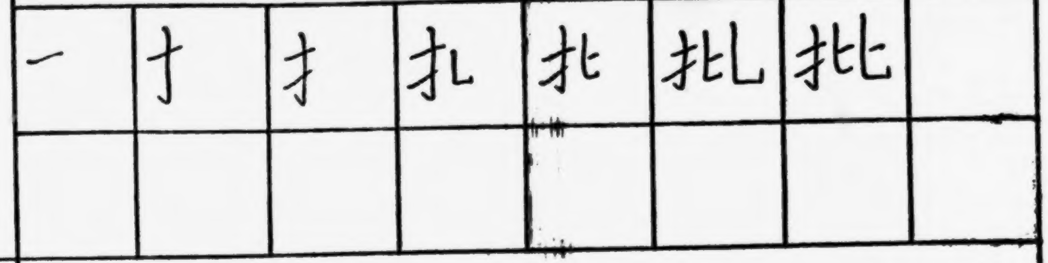
何方Laan而家同黃二講好多關於三Faan市嘅野.佢話住喺中國嘅中國人叫三Faan市做舊金山.三Faan市係一個好出名嘅國際大城同重要嘅港口.近來發展更快.一九四五年十月二十四日聯合國喺呢處成立.聯合國開會嘅時候,各國代表辯論得好緊要.三Faan市嘅人口分佈得好平均;唔太密,亦唔太shoh.氣候好温和,四季如春,一年四季都有大批遊客,所以有唔少超等嘅酒店.不過夏天黎呢處嘅遊客多啲,冬天黎呢處嘅遊客少啲,來往美國同世界各大城嘅大郵船多數停喺呢處.

LESSON 7

WRITING MATERIAL

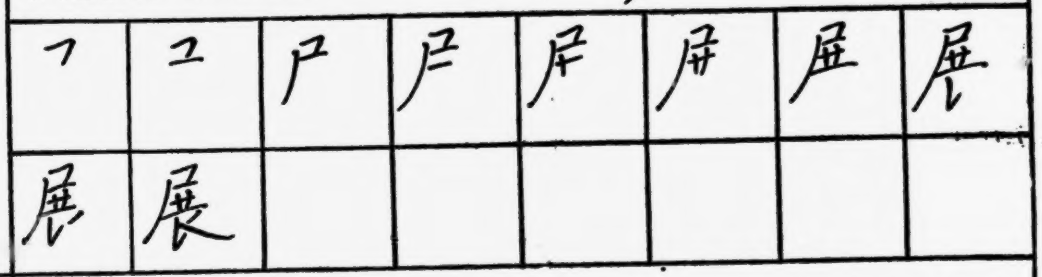
批

Character Number 825 **Radical Number** 64
Stroke Number 7 扌，手



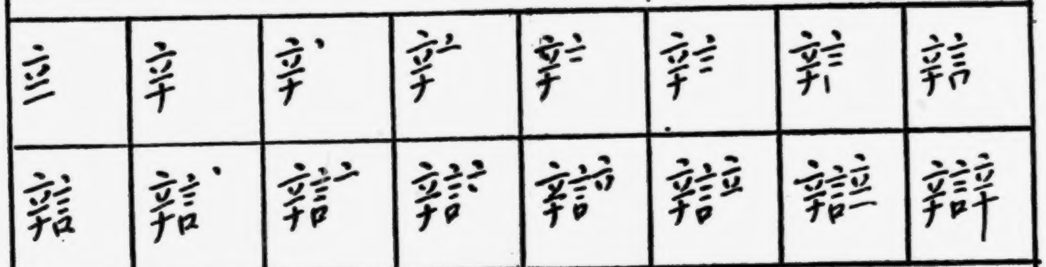
展

Character Number 90 **Radical Number** 44
Stroke Number 10 尸



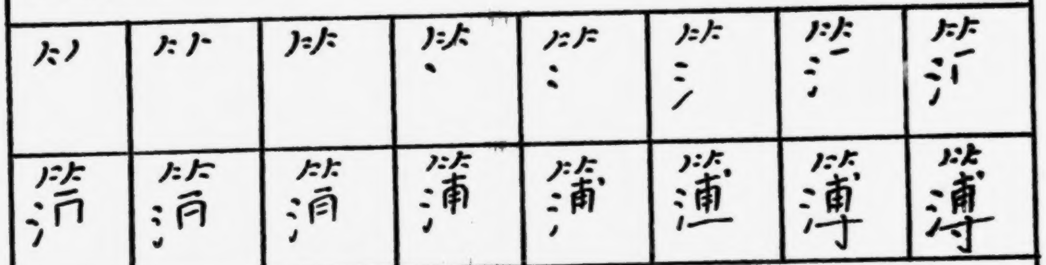
辯

Character Number 854 **Radical Number** 160
Stroke Number 21 辛



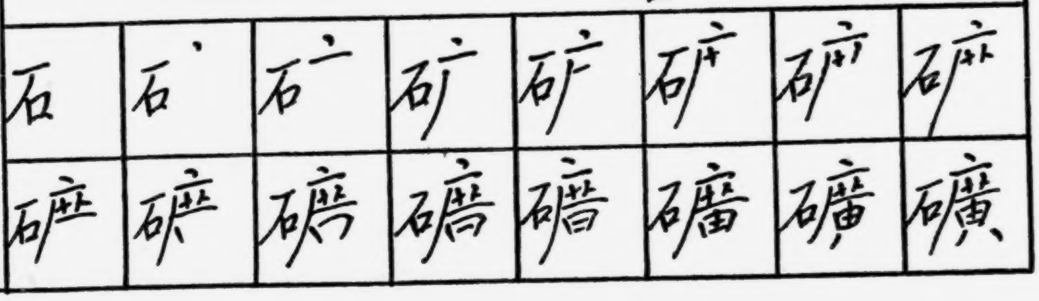
簿

Character Number 879 **Radical Number** 118
Stroke Number 19 ⺮，竹

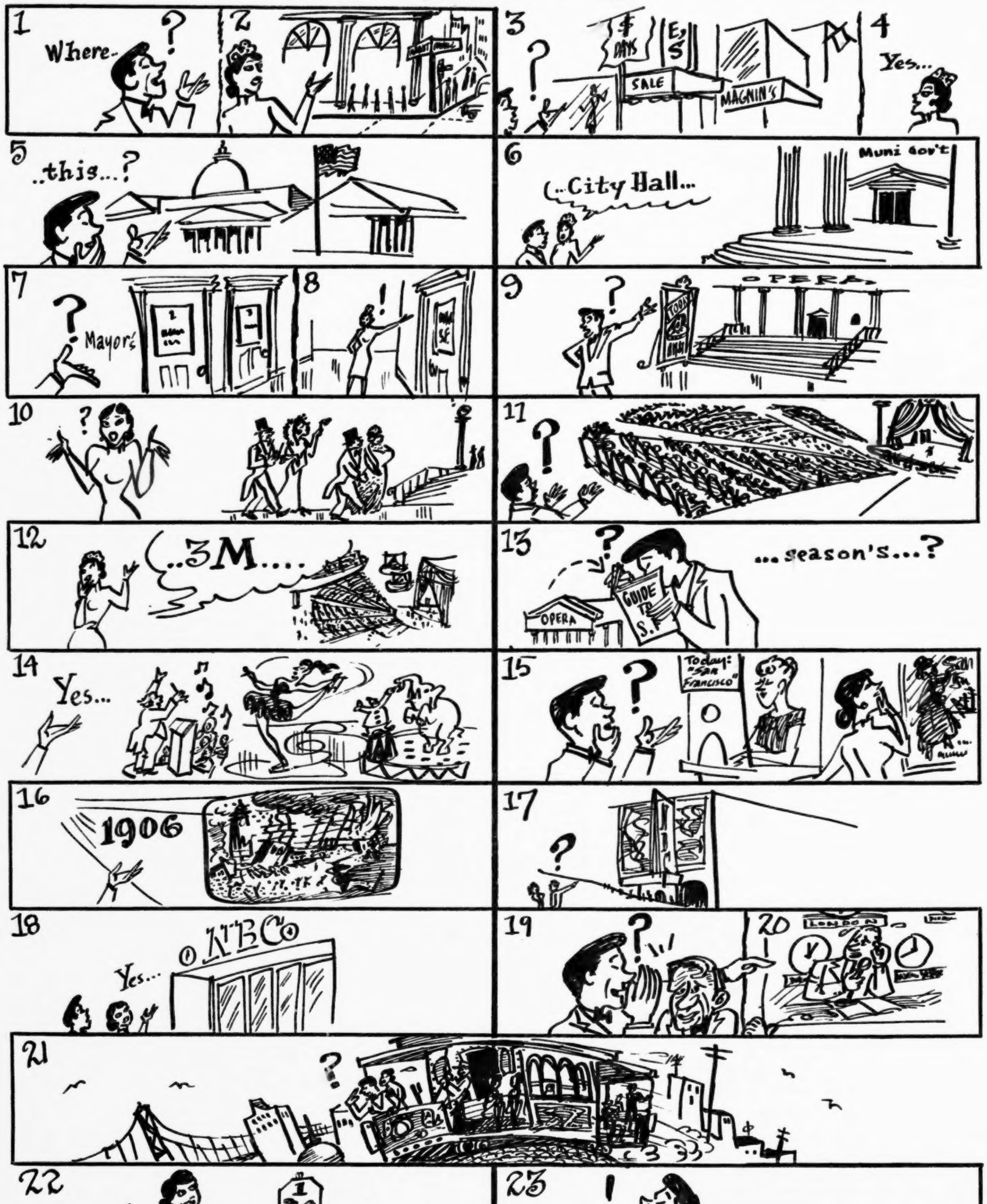


礦

Character Number 572 **Radical Number** 112
Stroke Number 20 石



LESSON 8


1
Where ?
2
3 ?
$ DAYS
E S
SALE
MAGNIN'S
4
Yes...
5
..this...?
6
...City Hall...
Muni Gov't
7 ?
Mayor's
8 !
9 ?
OPERA
10 ?
11 ?
12
...3M....
13 ?
OPERA
GUIDE TO S.F.
...season's...?
14
Yes...
15 ?
Today: "San Francisco"
16
1906
17 ?
18
Yes...
NBC
19 ?
20
LONDON
21 ?
22
1
23 !

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Ngŏh-teî ì-ka haî pin shuè à?

Hōh. Ngŏh-teî ì-ka haî Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè shĭ-chung-sam-k'ui.

Wōng. Ni-shuè yaŭ kòm toh taaî p'ò-t'aū* t'ūng paàk-fòh-kung-sz, ni-shuè haî m̀-haî sheung-îp-k'ui à?

Hōh. Haî, ni-shuè yîk-to haî sheung-îp-k'ui.

Wōng. Ni tsôh kìn-chuk-mât kiù-tsô mi-yĕ mēng* à?

Hōh. Ni tsôh kìn-chuk-mât kiù-tsô shĭ-chìng-t'eng, haî shĭ-chìng-foó kè paân-kung-shat.

Wōng. Pin kaan haî shĭ-cheúng kè paân-kung-shat à?

Hōh. Ni kaan haî shĭ-cheúng kè paân-kung-shat.

Wōng. Ni kaan koh-k'êk-uên* kam-yât yaŭ mi-yĕ tsìt-mûk à?

Hōh. Ngŏh m̀-chi-tò, taân-haî ngŏh chi-tò ì-ka haî koh-k'êk kè kwaì-tsìt.

Wōng. Ni kaan koh-k'êk-uên* taaî-yeùk* yaŭ keì toh tsôh-waî* à?

Hōh. Ngŏh koó yaŭ saam-ts'in kòh tsôh-waî*.

Wōng. Ch'uì-chóh koh-k'êk chi-ngoî, Saam-Faān-Shĭ chûng yaŭ mŏ k'eì-t'a kè kwaì-tsìt kè uē-lôk à?

Hōh. Yaŭ, hó-ts'z̆ yam-ngôk-ooî* à, laū-ping piú-în à, mă-heì à, tâng-tâng.

Wōng. Ni kaan heì-uên* kam-yât tsô kè tîn-yìng haî "Fóh-Shiu-Kaû-Kam-Shaan". K'uĭ miū-sê mi-yĕ kà?

Hōh. K'uĭ miū-sê yat-kaú-lìng-lûk-nìn Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè taaî teî-chàn.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Ni kaan kwóng-pòh-tîn-t'oì kòm taaî, ngŏh-teî hóh-ĭ yâp huì ts'aam-koon mà?

Hōh. Hóh-ĭ, ngŏh-teî hóh-ĭ yâp huì ts'aam-koon.

Wōng. Sin-shaang, kóh waî* san-mān kwóng-pòh-uēn ì-ka tsô-kán mi-yĕ à?

Kwóng-pòh-tîn-t'oì t'oì-cheúng. K'uĭ ì-ka chuén-pòh-kán Ying-Kwòk kè san-mān*.

Wōng. Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè shĭ-k'ui chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ hóh-ĭ ts'aam-koon kà?

Hōh. Haî kòm toh; ì-ka ngŏh-teî hóh-ĭ huì Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè fung-kîng-k'ui t'ūng chuê-chaâk-k'ui.

Wōng. Hó à.

LESSON 8

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: Where are we now?

Hōh: We are now in the downtown area of San Francisco.

W. There are so many big stores and department stores, is this the commercial district?

H. Yes, this is also the commercial district.

W. What is this building called?

H. The building is called City Hall. It is the office of the Municipal Government.

W. Which is the Mayor's office?

H. This is the Mayor's office.

W. What is the program of this opera house today?

H. I don't know, but I know that it is now the opera season.

W. How many persons does this opera house seat?

H. I guess it seats 3,000 persons.

W. Besides the opera, does San Francisco have other seasonal amusements?

H. Yes, there are concerts, ice shows, circuses, etc.

W. This theater is showing "San Francisco" today. What does it depict?

H. It depicts the big earthquake of San Francisco in 1906.

W. This broadcasting station is so big. Can we go in for a visit?

H. Yes, we may go in for a visit.

LESSON 8

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. Sir, what is the news commentator doing now?

Director of Broadcasting Station: He is now monitoring the news from England.

W. Is there any other place of the downtown district in San Francisco we may visit?

H. That is all. Now we may go to the San Francisco's scenic points and the residential area.

W. Fine.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. It will be another 10 miles before we reach the city proper.
2. The stores in Chinatown remain open until late in the evening.
3. The buildings in the commercial district of San Francisco are quite new.
4. The City Hall is located two blocks from here. It is at the corner of 5th and Army Streets.
5. She has worked for the municipal government for more than 15 years.
6. Come into my office as soon as you finish the final examination
7. I saw the mayor of this city at the opera house last night.
8. This seat is for the mayor; so you have to find yourself another one somewhere else.
9. Skating is fun and it is not dangerous.
10. Have you seen this movie yet?
11. The director of this broadcasting station is a very good friend of mine.
12. With this small radio, you can only listen to a few stations.
13. Do you believe that no news is good news?
14. The news commentator speaks very distinctly and clearly.
15. This station is monitoring a news broadcast originated in London.
16. Your house is really very beautiful. It is situated in the center of the scenic area of this city.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

17. He lives in the heart of the residential area here.

LESSON 8

WORD LIST

1.	shĭ chung-sam k'ui	downtown area, city proper
2.	kìn-chuk mât	building
3.	shĭ-chìng-t'eng	city hall
4.	shĭ-chìng-foó	municipal government
5.	paân-kung shat	office
6.	shĭ-cheúng	mayor
7.	koh-k'êk-uên*	opera house
8.	tsôh-waî*	seat
9.	laū-ping	ice skating; to skate (ice)
10.	kwóng-pòh-tîn-t'oī	broadcasting station
11.	san-mān kwóng-pòh-uēn	news commentator
12.	kwóng-pòh-tîn-t'oī-t'oī-cheúng	director of broadcasting station
13.	chuên pòh	to monitor; monitoring
14.	fung-kìng k'ui	scenic area
15.	chuê-chaâk k'ui	residential area

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

328

雄 hūng: male; martial.

雄壯 hūng-chǒng: strong; sturdy

雌雄 ts'z hūng: male and female of animal

英雄 ying-hūng: hero

1429

榮 wīng: glory; splendor.

榮華 wīng-wā: glory and prosperity.

榮譽 wīng-uê: honor; honored; renowned.

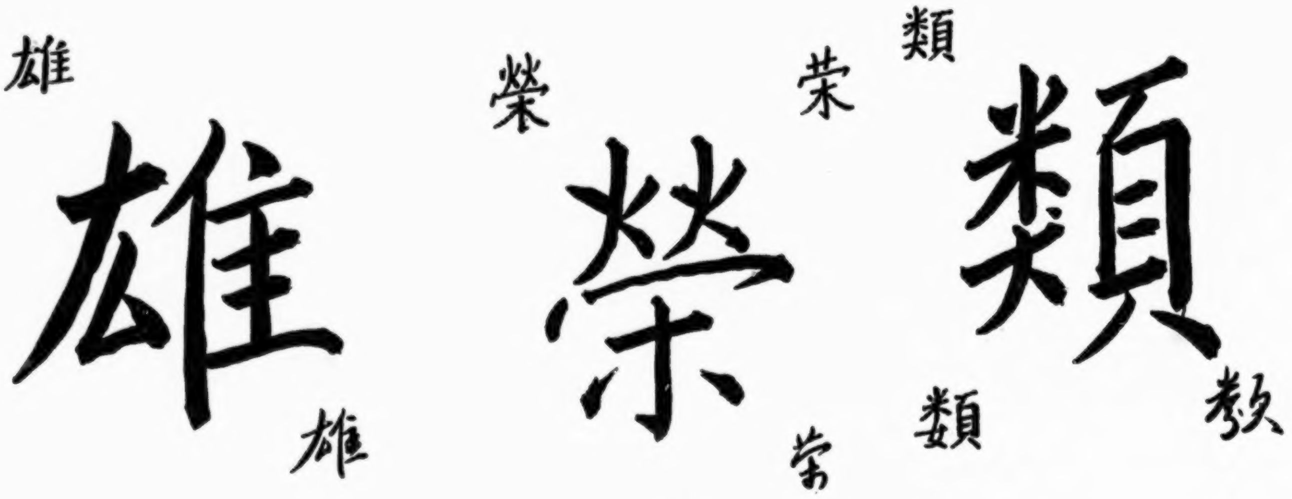
641

類 luî: class; race; category; sort.

人類 yān-luî: human beings.

畜類 ch'uk- luî: domestic animals.

種類 chúng-luî: class; sort.



711

亡 mōng: destroyed; gone; ruined; dead.

滅亡 mît-mōng: exterminated.

逃亡 t'ō-mōng: to escape; to flee.

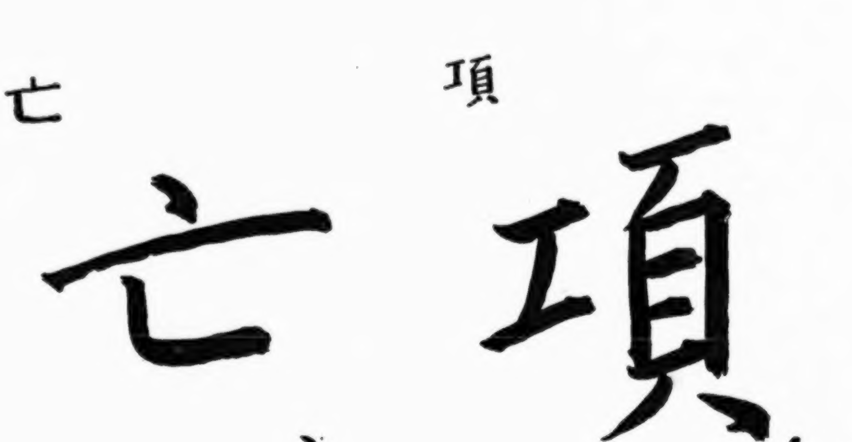
死亡 sź-mōng: dead.

311

項 hông: a sort; nape of neck; kind; item

各項 kòk hông: various item.

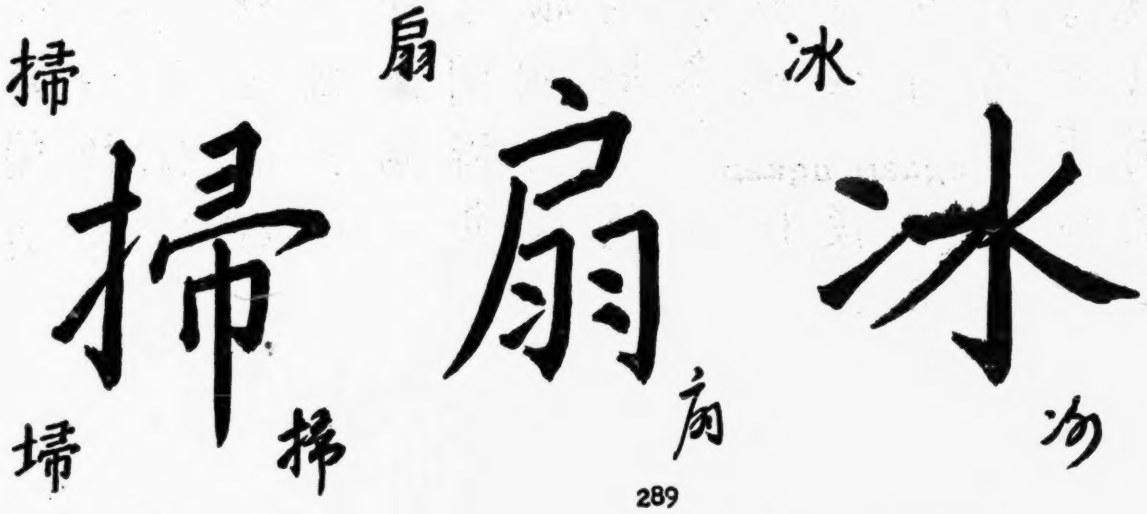
款項 foón-hông: sum of money; money



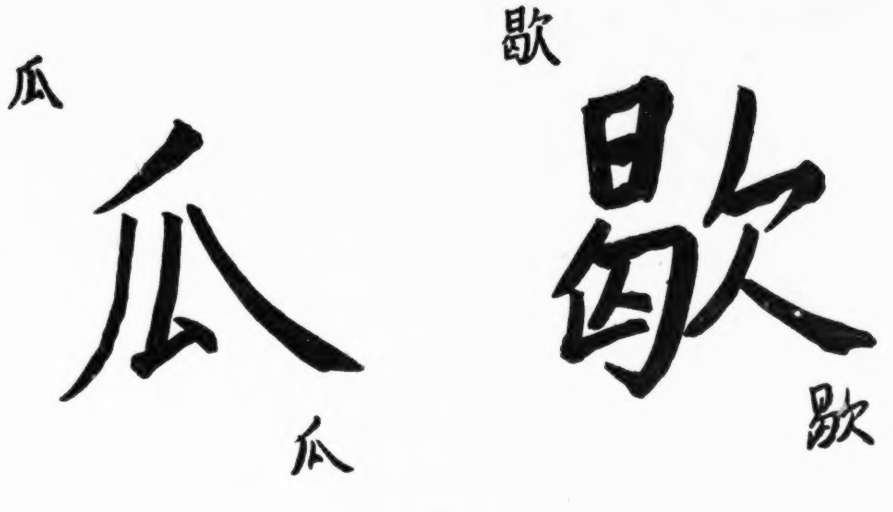
LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

1040	987	862
掃 sò: to sweep; a broom.	扇 shìn: a fan: leaf of door.	冰 ping: frozen; ice; icy.
掃把 sò-pá: a broom.	紙扇 chí shìn: paper fan.	冰糖 ping-t'ōng: rock sugar.
掃除 sò-ch'uē: to clean out; to free from.	風扇 fung shìn: punkah.	冰點 ping-tím: freezing point.
	電風扇 tin-fung-shìn: electric fan.	



545	289
瓜 kwa: melon; gourd.	歇 hìt: to stop; rest
黄瓜 wōng-kwa: cucumber.	不歇 pat hìt: incessantly.
西瓜 sai-kwa: watermelon.	歇息 hìt-sik: to rest; to pause
脚瓜 keŭk-kwa: calf of leg.	歇一陣 hìt yat-chân: rest a while
手瓜 shaú-kwa: forearm.	



LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

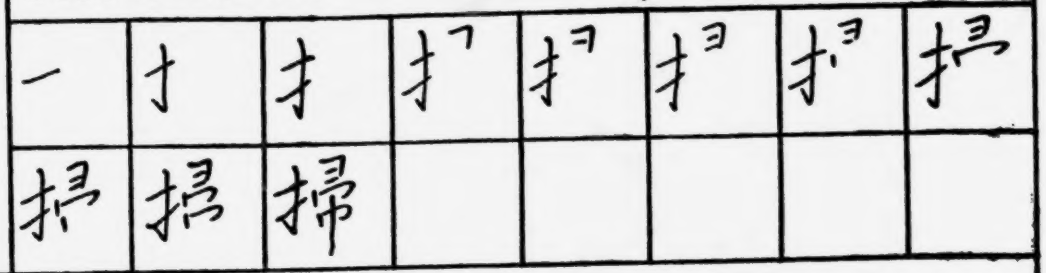
黃二同何小姐而家喺三 Faān 市嘅市中心區, 呢處亦都係三 Faān 市嘅商業區, 呢處有各種各類嘅鋪頭, 同好多百貨公司. 所以商業繁榮. 佢地去參觀市政府嘅辦公室, 歌劇院同一間廣播電台. 嗰間歌劇院好雄壯, 大約有三千個座位. 除阻歌劇之外, 三 Faān 市重有其他嘅季節各項娛樂. 好似音樂會呀, laū 冰呀, 馬戲呀, 等等. 佢地參觀嗰間廣播電台嘅時候, 嗰間電台 ngaam ngaam 轉播英國嘅新聞. 參觀完市區之後, 佢地想歇息一吓, 繼續去遊風景區同住宅區.

LESSON 8

WRITING MATERIAL

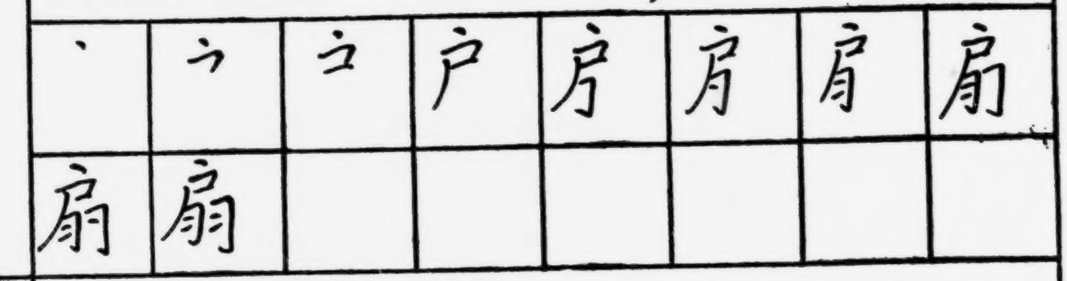
掃

Character Number 1040 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 11 扌, 手



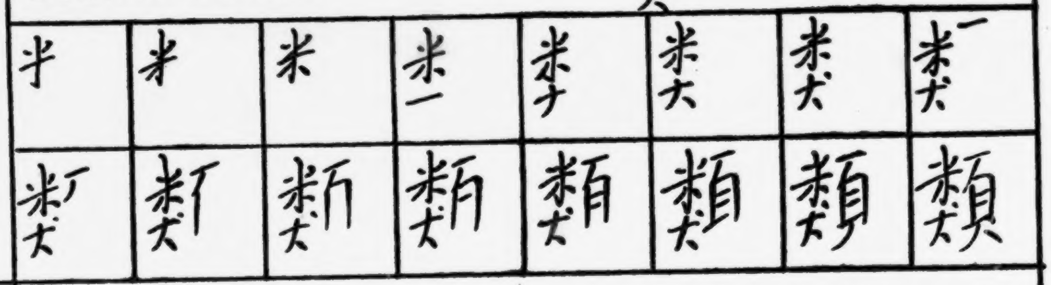
扇

Character Number 987 Radical Number 63
Stroke Number 10 户



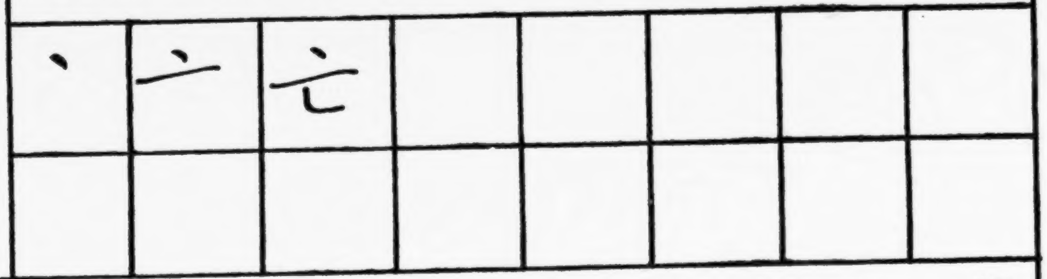
類

Character Number 641 Radical Number 181
Stroke Number 19 頁



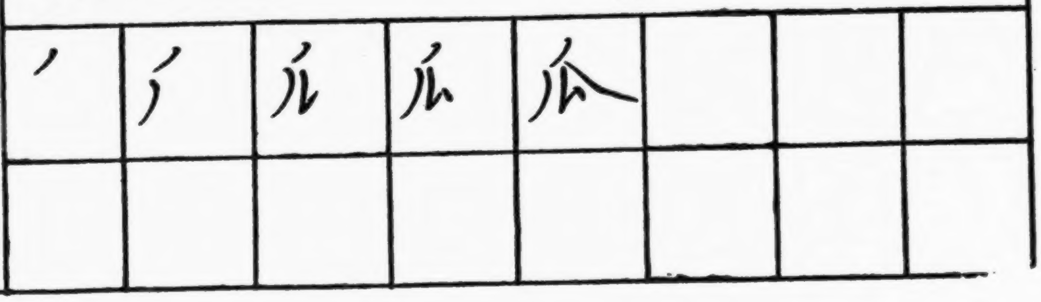
亡

Character Number 711 Radical Number 8
Stroke Number 3 亠

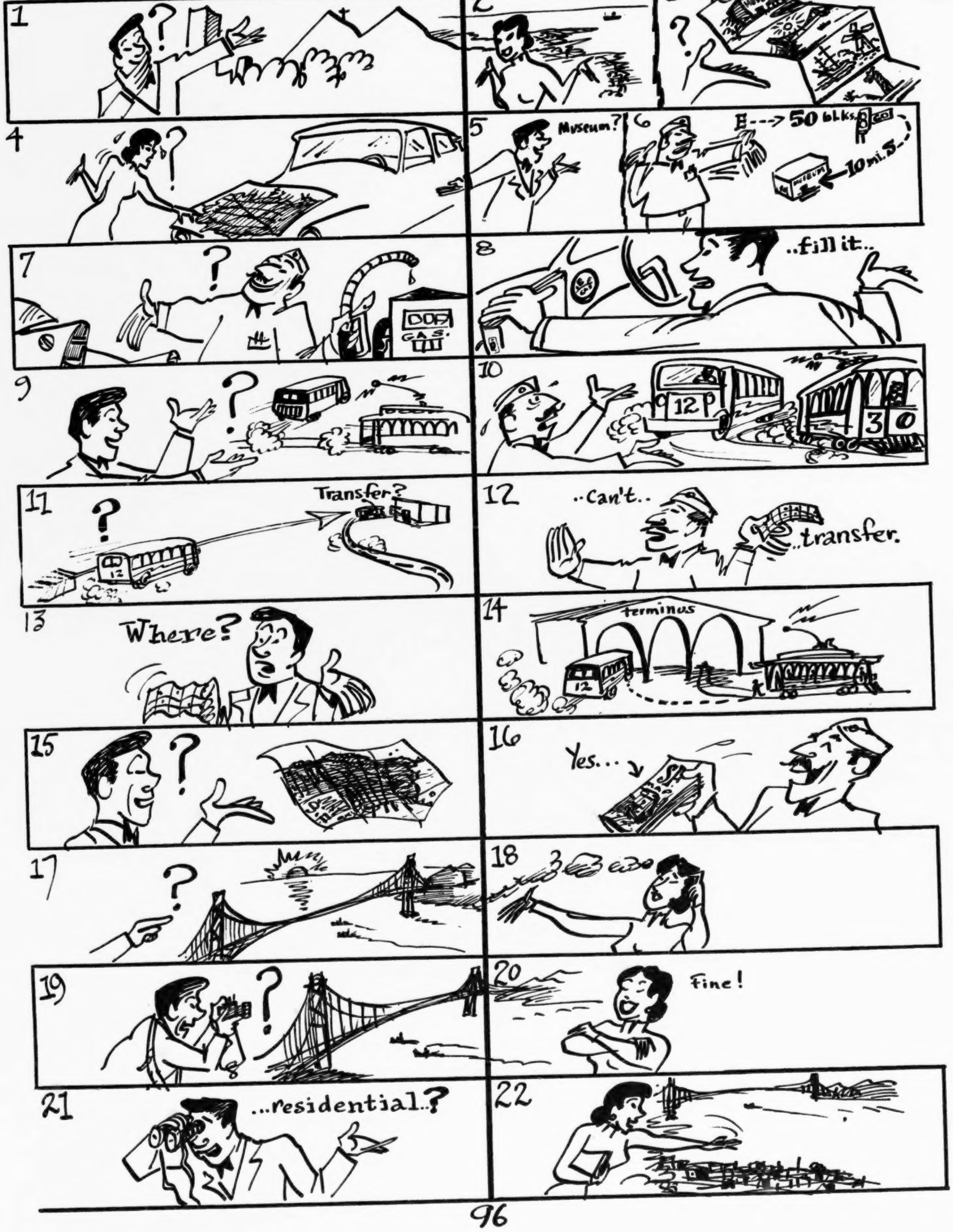


瓜

Character Number 545 Radical Number 97
Stroke Number 5 瓜



LESSON 9


1
?
2
3
?
4
?
5
Museum?
6
E---> 50 blks.
10 mi. S
7
?
G.A.S.
8
..fill it..
9
?
10
12
30
11
?
Transfer?
12
12
..Can't..
..transfer.
13
Where?
14
terminus
12
15
?
16
Yes...
17
?
18
19
?
20
Fine!
21
...residential..?
22

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè fung-kîng-k'ui haì pin shuè à?

Hōh. Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè fung-kîng-k'ui haì Saam-Faān-Shĭ kaau-ngoî.

Wōng. Neĭ chi-tò tîm-yeûng* huì pòk-mât-uên*, Kam-Moōn-K'iū, Kam-Moōn-Kung-Uēn*, t'ūng tûng-mât-uēn* à?

Hōh. Kóh keì kòh teì-fong leì ni-shuè to hó uĕn; ngŏh m̄-haì keì shik lô.

Wōng. Waì, ts'îng mân pòk-mât-uên* tîm yeûng* huì à?

Tîn-yaū-chaâm kung-yān. Neĭ tá ni t'iū lô heùng tung haāng, taaî-yeùk* king-kwòh nğ-shâp-kòh kaai-haú, kîn-tó hūng-lûk-tang chi-haû, heùng naām haāng taaî-yeùk* shâp-leĭ, tsaû haì là.

Kung-yān. Sin-shaang, neĭ kè ch'e iù yâp tîn-yaū mà?

Wōng. Ngŏh kà ch'e mŏ keì toh tîn-yaū, m̄-koi neĭ t'ūng ngŏh yâp moŏn k'uĭ la.

Wōng. Uē-kwóh ngŏh taàp pa-sẑ* waâk-ché mō-kwaì-tîn-ch'e huì, ngŏh iù taàp taì keì lô à?

Kung-yān. Neĭ hóh-ĭ taàp taì-shâp-î lô pa-sẑ*, waâk-ché taì-saam lô mō-kwaì-tîn-ch'e.

Wōng. Taì-shâp-î lô pa-sẑ* hóh m̄-hóh-ĭ chîk tò à, iù m̄-iù chuèn ch'e à?

Kung-yān. Shâp-î lô pa-sẑ* m̄-hóh-ĭ chîk tò, neĭ iù chuèn ch'e.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Haî pin shuè chuèn ch’e à?

Kung-yān. Shâp-î lô pa-sẑ* tò-chóh chung-tîm chi-haû, neĭ hóh-ĭ chuèn taî-ts’at lô mō-kwaî-tîn-ch’e.

Wōng. Neĭ yaŭ mŏ Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè teî-t’ō à?

Kung-yān. Yaŭ, ni fân haî Saam-Faān-Shĭ kè teî-t’ō.

Wōng. Fong-Laān, ni tô Kam-Moōn-K’iū haî ts’uēn shaî-kaaî chî ch’eūng kè tiù-k’iū, haî mà?

Hōh. Ngŏh koó haî.

Wōng. Neĭ seúng ngŏh t’ūng neĭ haî ni-shuè yîng cheung seùng* mà?

Hōh. Hó à.

Wōng. Chuê-chaâk-k’ui haî pin shuè à?

Hōh. Chuê-chaâk-k’ui haî ni-shuè kè foô-kân.

LESSON 9

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng: Where are the scenic points of San Francisco?

Hōh: The scenic points of San Francisco are in the suburbs of the city.

W. Do you know how to get to the Museum, the Golden Gate Bridge, the Golden Gate Park and the zoo?

H. Those places are rather far from here. I don't know the way very well.

W. Pardon me sir, may I ask you how to ~~get to~~ the museum?

The Service Station Attendant: You go east on this road for about fifty blocks. After you see the traffic light at the intersection you then go south for about ten miles. Then you will be there.

A. Sir, do you need gas for your car?

W. I don't have much gas in the tank, please fill it up.

W. If I take the bus or the trolley, which route should I take?

A. You can take the No. 12 bus route or the No. 3 trolley route.

W. Can I go there directly by taking the No. 12 bus? Do I need to transfer?

A. You can't go there directly by taking the No. 12 bus. You have to transfer.

W. Where must I transfer?

A. When the No. 12 bus reaches its terminus, you can transfer to the trolley.

LESSON 9

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. Do you have a city map of San Francisco?

A. Yes, this is a city map of San Francisco.

W. Fong-Laān, the Golden Gate Bridge is the longest suspension bridge in the world, is that right?

H. I imagine so.

W. Do you want me to take a picture of you here?

W. Fine.

W. Where is the residential area?

H. The residential area is in the vicinity of this area.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Will you take a picture for us in front of the Mayor's office?
2. This is the only picture I have taken with my parents.
3. Do you think you will recognize a suspension bridge if you see one?
4. Please locate the bus terminal for me on this map right now.
5. If you take the bus on that route, then you don't have to change buses.
6. Besides buses, there are also street cars in San Francisco.
7. You should fill up your car with gasoline before going on a long trip.
8. Whenever you want to buy gasoline you should drive to a service station.
9. This traffic light seems to be out of order. Don't you think so?
10. I thought I knew how to get to the zoo but I am lost.
11. The park is not far from the zoo.
12. There is a large museum in the park.
13. I have an idea. Why don't we go to the suburb for a picnic this afternoon?
14. This is a suspension bridge but the other is not.
15. There is a new residential district only about 10 miles from downtown.

· LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. I have to change planes at the San Francisco International Airport.

LESSON 9

WORD LIST

1.	kaau-ngoî	outskirt, city suburb
2.	pòk-mât-uên*	museum
3.	Kam-Moōn-K'iū	Golden Gate Bridge
4.	Kam-Moōn-Kung-Uēn*	Golen Gate Park
5.	tûng-mât-uēn*	zoo
6.	tîn-yaū-chaâm	gasoline station
7.	yâp tîn-yaū	to fill gasoline (lit: to enter gasoline)
8.	yâp moŏn	to fill up
9.	mō-kwaî-tîn-ch'e	trolley
10.	taî-saam lô	route No. 3
11.	chung-tîm	terminus
12.	teî-t'ō	map
13.	tiù-k'iū	suspension bridge
14.	t'ūng...yîng seùng*	to take picture for...; to take picture with...

LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

360

葉 îp: leaf of tree; or book

樹葉 shuê îp: tree leaves

茶葉 ch'ā-îp: tea leaves

766

鳥 niŭ: bird.

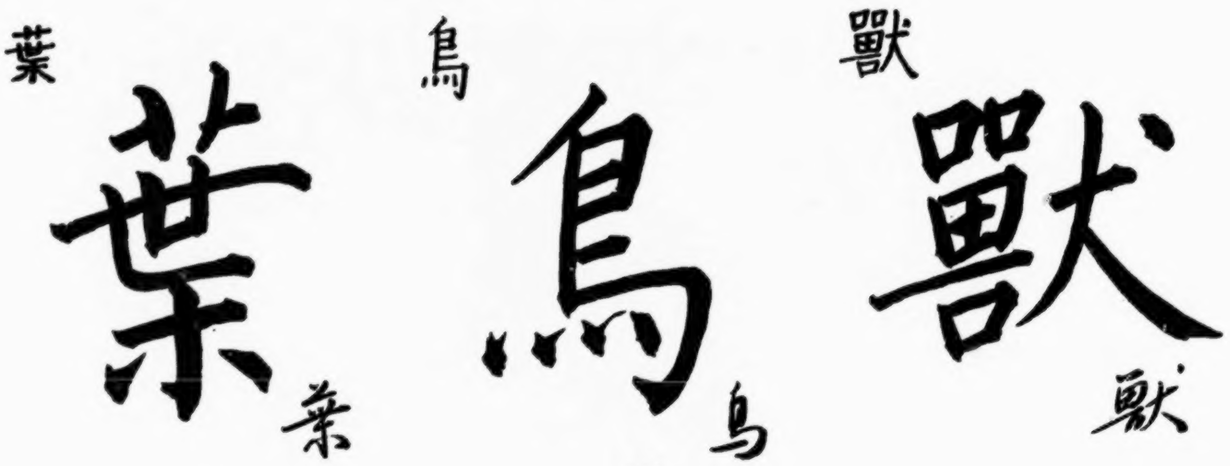
飛鳥 fei-niŭ: birds in general.

鳥巢 niŭ ch'aaū: bird's nest.

959

獸 shaù: animal; beast.

獸類 shaù luî: animals; animal in general



207

虎 foó: tiger; tiger like

老虎 lŏ-foó: a tiger

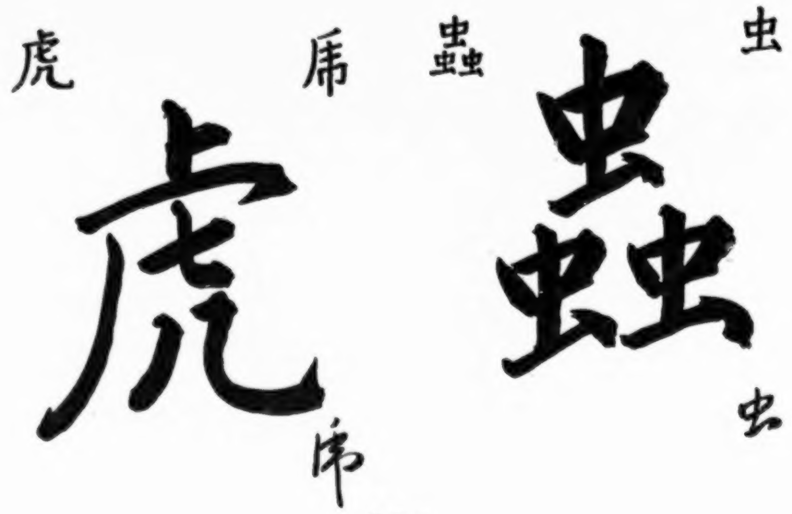
154

蟲 ch'ūng: worms; insects (Cl. t'iū)

生蟲 shaang-ch'ūng: to contain worms

蟲類 ch'ūng-luî: the class of insect or reptiles

害蟲 hoî ch'ūng: destructive insect



LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

1262

晴 ts'Ĭng: clear; cloudless.

天晴 t'in ts'Ĭng: the weather has cleared.

雨晴 uĕ ts'Ĭng: rain has ceased.

88

植 chîk: to plant

植物 chîk-mât: plant; vegetable

種植 chŭng-chîk. afforestation; plantation.

植物學 chîk-mât hok: botany

628

露 lô: dew; to reveal.

露出 lô ch'ut: to disclose.

露水 lô-shuí: dew.

露天 lô-t'in: under the open sky; open air.

暴露 pô-lô: exposed to the open.

晴 植 露

晴 植 露

晴 植 露

621

列 lît: to arrange; in order.

列入 lît-yâp: include under; to reckon under.

陳列 ch'ăn-lît: to exhibit.

排列 p'aaĭ-lît: to arrange in ranks.

列位 lît waî: gentlemen; every one (polite address)

864

併 pîng: even; together; to reduce.

併吞 pîng-t'an: to absorb; to eat up.

列 併

列 併

列 倂 倂

LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

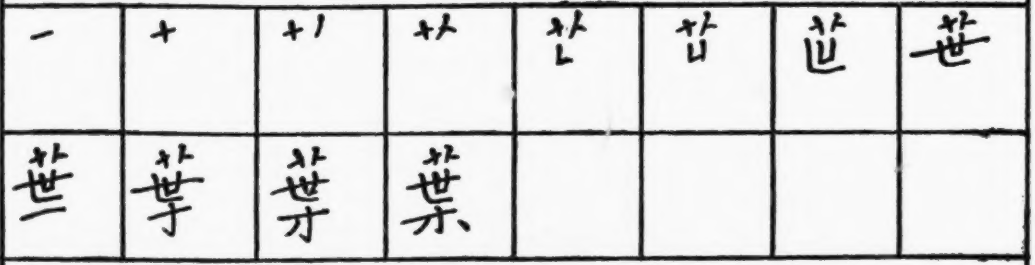
黄二同何小姐行完三 **Faān** 市嘅市區之後，佢地想去遊風景區同住宅區；佢地去 **Pŏk** 物院，金門橋，金門公園同動物園。金門公園地方好大，種植好多樹木，花紅葉綠，非常美麗。又有一個露天音樂 **t'īng, Pŏk** 物院陳列種種古物。動物園有各種蟲魚鳥獸，野獸之中，當然有啲係老虎。嗰日係天晴風和日麗，所以佢地併同去睇金門橋。佢地到金門橋嘅時候，黄二同何小姐喺嗰處影相。最後佢地去遊三 **Faān** 市嘅住宅區。

LESSON 9

WRITING MATERIAL

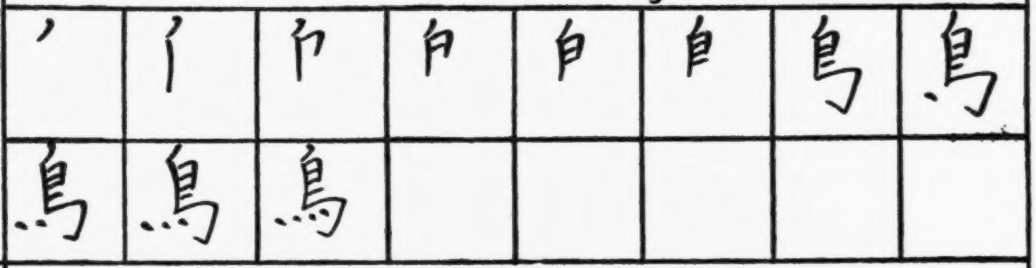
葉

Character Number 360 Radical Number 140
Stroke Number 12 艹, 艸



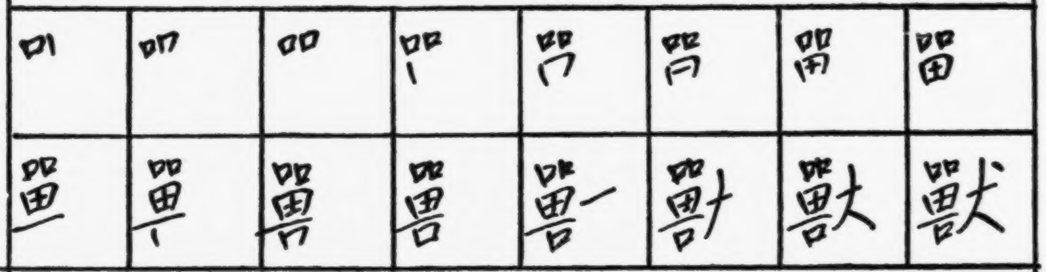
鳥

Character Number 766 Radical Number 196
Stroke Number 11 鳥



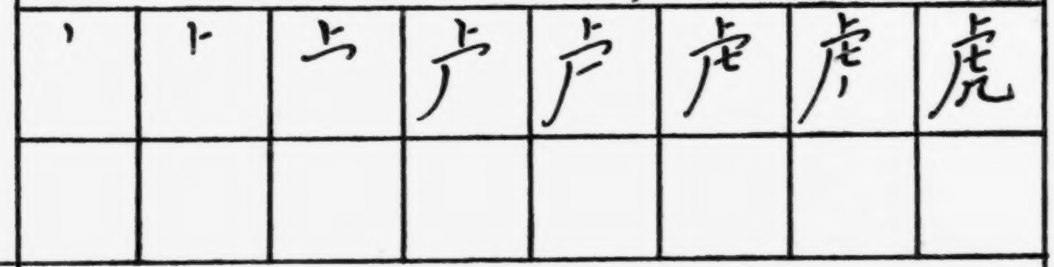
獸

Character Number 959 Radical Number 94
Stroke Number 19 犬



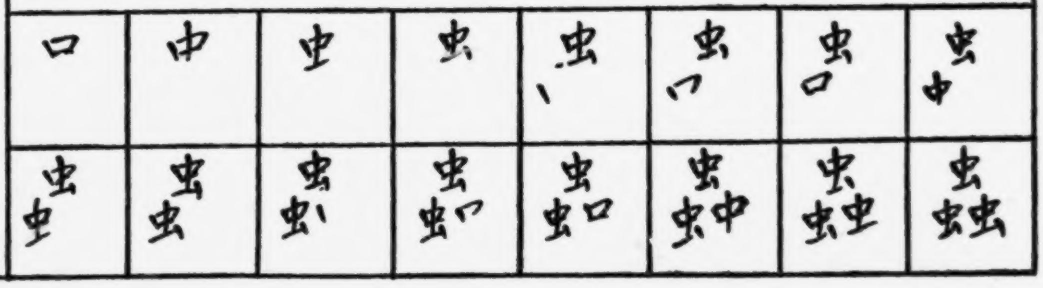
虎

Character Number 207 Radical Number 141
Stroke Number 8 虍

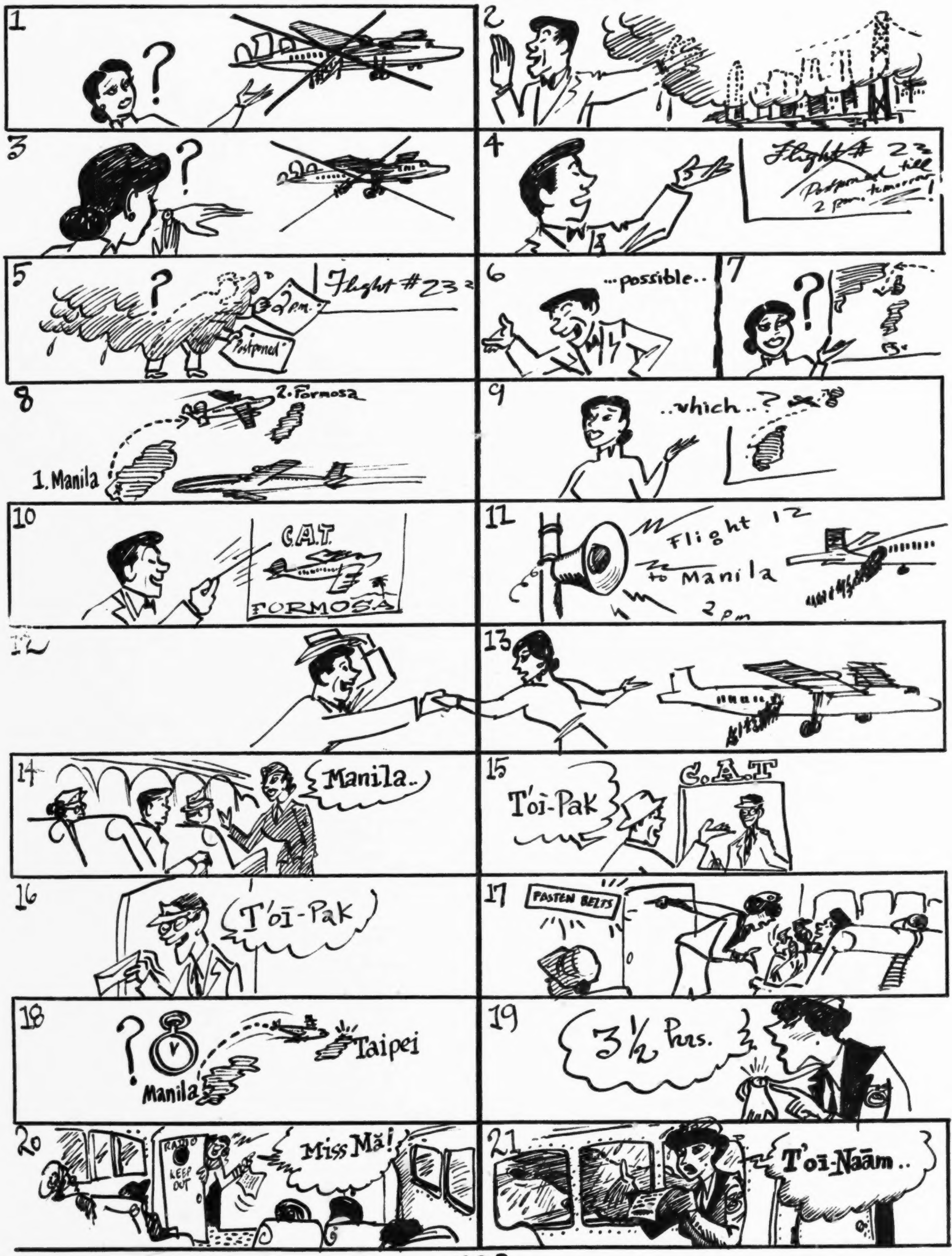


蟲

Character Number 154 Radical Number 142
Stroke Number 18 虫



LESSON 10


1
?
2
3
?
4
~~Flight # 23~~
Postponed till 2 p.m. tomorrow!
5
?
2 p.m.
Postponed
Flight # 23
6
...possible..
7
?
8
2. Formosa
1. Manila
9
..which..?
10
C.A.T.
FORMOSA
11
Flight 12 to Manila 2 pm
12
13
14
Manila..
15
T'oi-Pak
C.A.T
16
T'ōī-Pak
17
FASTEN BELTS
18
?
Taipei
Manila
19
3½ hrs.
20
RADIO KEEP OUT
Miss Mă!
21
T'oi-Nāām..

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Hōh. Tîm-kaaî paan-kei koî k'eī heī-fei à?

Wōng. Yan-waî Saam-Faān-Shĭ foô-kân hó taaî mô, fei-kei mŏ-faàt-tsź heî-fei.

Hōh. Heî-fei kè yât-k'eī koî tò keî shī à?

Wōng. Koî tò t'ing-yât hâ-nğ leŭng-tîm-chung.

Hōh. Uē-kwôh tò-shī chûng haî kòm taaî mô, ooĭ m̄-ooĭ kaī-tsûk īn k'eī à?

Wōng. Hó hôh-nāng, uē-kwôh tò-shī chûng haî kòm taaî mô, hó hôh-nāng kaī-tsûk īn k'eī.

Hōh. Neĭ chi m̄-chi-tò fei-haāng kè hōng-sīn à?

Wōng. Ngŏh-teî sin fei huī Mă-Naī-La, yaū Mă-Naī-La chuèn kei fei T'oī-Waan.

Hōh. Neĭ seúng yaū Mă-Naī-La taàp pin kaan hōng-hung-kung-sz kè fei-kei fei T'oī-Waan à?

Wōng. Ngŏh seúng yaū Mă-Naī-La taàp Mān-Hōng-Hung-Wân-Kung-Sz kè fei-kei fei T'oī-Waan.

Fei-Kei-ch'eūng kwóng-pòh-heī. Fei huī Mă-Naī-La kè shâp-î hô paan-kei leŭng-tîm-chung heī-fei, ts'īng taàp-haàk sheŭng kei.

Wōng. Fong-Laān, ngŏh iù tsaú là, tsoī-kīn.

Hōh. Kwòk-Ts'uēn, chuk neĭ yat-lô-p'īng-on.

Hung-chung-siú-tsê. Kòk waî* taàp-haàk, ngŏh-teî ī-ka haî Mă-Naī-La kei-ch'eūng kòng-lôk.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Ngŏh seúng maaĭ yat-cheung huì T'oì-Paak kè fei-kei-p'iù.

Mă-Naì-La kei-ch'eūng Mān-Hōng-Hung-Wân-Kung-Sz paân-sẑ-ch'uè. Ni cheung haî huì T'oì-Paak kè fei-kei-p'iù.

Hung-chung-siú-tsê. Fei-kei ì-ka heì-fei, ts'îng kòk waî* tseung on-ts'uēn-taaì* k'aù-hó.

Wōng. Siú-tsê, yaū Mă-Naì-La fei huì T'oì-Paak iù keì noî à?

Hung-chung-siú-tsê. Taaî-yeùk* iù saam-tîm-poòn-chung kòm noî.

Mō-sìn-tîn-shaang. Mă Siú-Tsê, ts'îng neĭ yâp laì, ngŏh yaŭ hó kán-iù kè siu-sik t'ūng neĭ kóng.

Hung-chung-siú-tsê. Kòk waî* taàp-haàk, ì-ka T'oì-Waan paak-pô kè t'in-heì hó m̄-hó, ngŏh-teî waâk-chê ooĭ haî T'oì-Naām kei-ch'eūng kòng-lôk.

LESSON 10

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Hōh: Why is the flight postponed?

Wōng: The plane cannot take off because it is very foggy in the vicinity of San Francisco.

H. How long will the flight be postponed?

W. It will be postponed until 2 p.m. tomorrow.

H. If it is still as foggy then, will the schedule be further postponed?

W. It is quite possible, if it is still as foggy then, the schedule will be further postponed.

H. Do you know the flight course?

W. We will first fly to Manila and then change planes for Formosa.

H. Which airline do you want to take from Manila to Formosa.

W. I wish to take the Civil Air Transport plane to Formosa.

The Public Address System of the Airport: Flight No. 12 to Manila will take off at 2 p.m. All the passengers please board.

W. Fong-Laān, I have to leave now, good-bye.

H. Kwòk-Tw'uēn, I wish you a safe trip.

Stewardess: Fellow passengers, we are going to land at the Manila Airport.

W. I'd like a ticket for T'oī-Paak.

CAT Traffic Office at the Manila Airport: This is your ticket for T'oī-Paak.

LESSON 10

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Stewardess: The plane is going to take off, please fasten your safety belt.

W. Miss, how long does it take to fly from Manila to Taipei?

Stewardess: It takes about three and half hours.

Radio Operator: Miss Mă, please come in, I have very important news for you.

Stewardess: Fellow passengers, the weather conditions in Northern Formosa are now very bad; we may land at the T'oī-Naām Airport.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Do you have any news concerning your younger brother's time of arrival?
2. The radio operator of the plane sent out a message five minutes ago.
3. Please fasten your safety belt. We will land in ten minutes.
4. This is the mayor's office. May I help you?
5. There are two regular flights between Hong Kong and Macao.
6. Please write to us as soon as you reach your destination
7. I like to question the passengers who came on board the plane within the last 10 minutes.
8. I am quite sure that they will announce this important message over the P.A. system at the airport.
9. The new planes we have can fly at an average speed of 700 miles per hour.
10. Because of bad weather the departure of flight 21 will be postponed until two o'clock this afternoon.
11. If you want to change your mind, please advise the airline before the departure time.
12. I know they postponed the meeting but I don't know until when.
13. The plane is late due to bad weather.
14. I think you had better go now, otherwise you will be the last one to go on board the ship.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. This is Capt. Wong speaking. Welcome aboard. We will be ready to take off in five minutes.

16. I thought I heard your name mentioned over the P.A. system.

LESSON 10

WORD LIST

1.	koì k'eì	to postpone, change date
2.	mŏ faàt-tsź	cannot, can't help in any way
3.	koì	to change
4.	tò shì	until then, until a certain time
5.	fei-haàng	flight; to fly (airplane)
6.	kwóng-pòh-heì	public address system
7.	chuk neĭ yat-lô p'ìng-on	bon voyage (lit: to wish you safe all the way)
8.	Mān-Hōng-Hung-Wân Kung-Sz	Civil Air Transport
9.	on-ts'uēn-taaì*	safety belt
10.	k'aù-hó	to fasten
11.	mō-sìn-tîn-shaang	radio operator
12.	siu-sik	news, message

LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

281

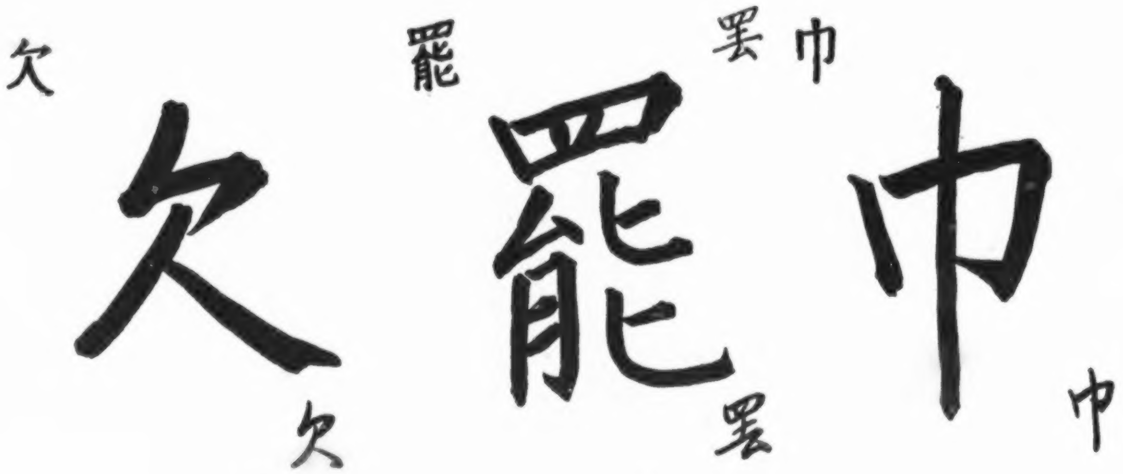
欠	hìm: to owe; deficient
欠錢	hìm ts'Īn:* owe money
欠債	hìm chaaì: in debt
欠缺	hìm-k'uèt: deficiency; lack of

803

罷	pâ: to finish; sign of imperative mood.
罷工	pâ-kung: to strike; to stop work.
罷課	pâ-fòh: student's strike.

409

巾	kan: a cloth; towel; napkin.
手巾	shaú-kan: handkerchief, face towel
毛巾	mō-kan: towel.
頸巾	kéng-kan: a scarf.

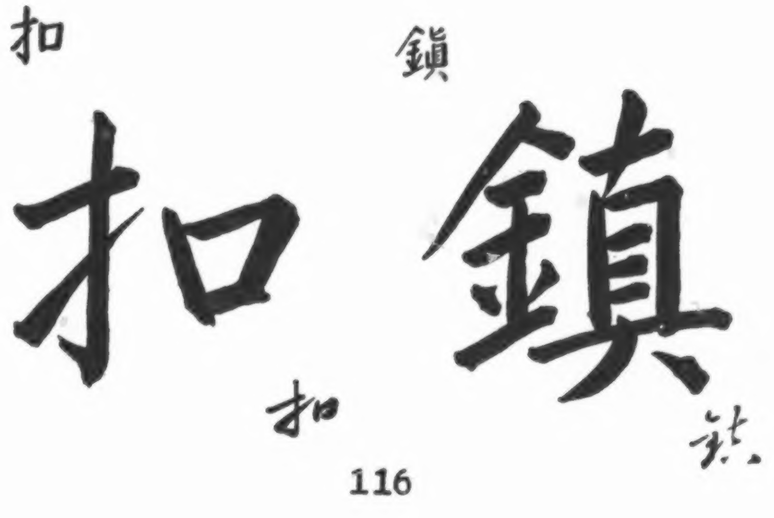


430

扣	k'aù: to knock; deduct; a discount; to buckle; a buckle.
扣除	k'aù ch'ūē: to deduct.
折扣	chìt-k'aù: a discount.
扣留	k'aù-laū: to detain.
扣鈕	k'aù naú: to button.

30

鎮	chàn: town; commandary; to press down; to guard.
鎮守	chàn-shaú: to guard
鎮壓	chàn-aàt: to repress; to reduce; to order



LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

176

紛 fan: disorderly; numerous

紛亂 fan-luên: disorder; confusion

857

編 p'in: gather; compose.

編輯 p'in-ts'ap: to edit; to compile.

855

偏 p'in: lean toward; partiality; bias.

偏心 p'in-sam: partial; prejudiced.

偏見 p'in-kìn: prejudice; partiality.

紛 編 偏

紛 編 偏

纷 编 偏

282

牽 hin: to pull; connect

牽牛 hin ngaū: to lead cattle

牽連 hin-līn: to implicate

牽氣 hin-heì: gasping for air

863

並 pîng: two together; united; moreover.

並非 pîng fei: by no means.

並且 pîng-ch'é: moreover.

牽 並 並

牽 並

牽 并 幷 並

LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

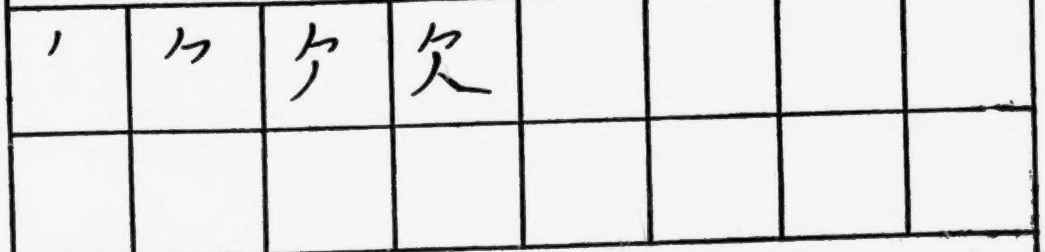
黃二遊罷三Faān市,搭Faàn美航空公司嘅飛機去馬Naī拉,然後轉飛機飛台灣.因為三Faān市附近好大mô,起飛嘅日期改到聽日下午兩點鐘.何小姐到機場送行.牽衣fan foò叫黃二保重,祝佢一路平安.又送一打手巾俾佢做紀念禮物.飛機喺馬Naī拉機場tsaī降落之後,黃二轉飛機.佢去馬Naī拉機場嘅民航空運公司嘅辦事處,買一張去台北嘅飛機票.飛機由馬Naī拉機場起飛之後,空中小姐話,台灣北部嘅天氣好唔好,飛機會喺台南機場降落.並請各人將安全帶扣好.搭客聽到呢個消息,亦都好鎮定,冇紛亂嘅情形.

LESSON 10

WRITING MATERIAL

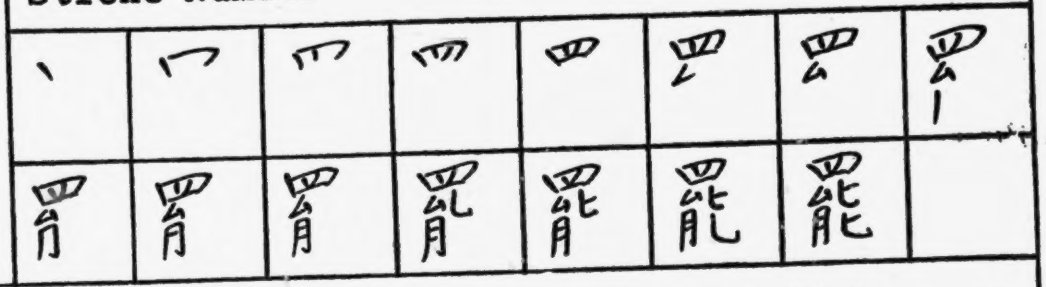
欠

Character Number 281 Radical Number 76
Stroke Number 4 欠



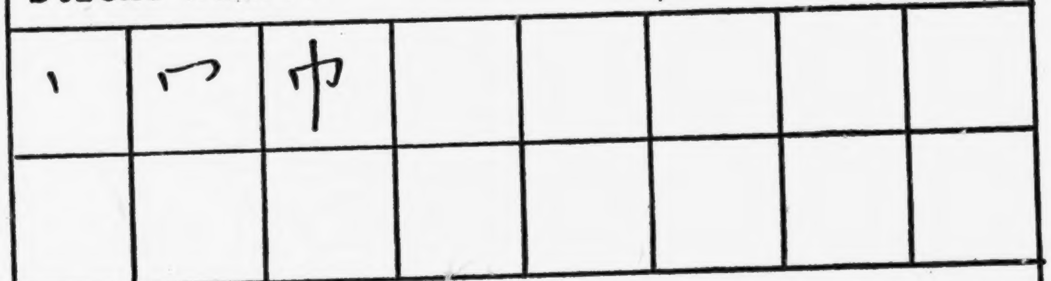
罷

Character Number 803 Radical Number 122
Stroke Number 15 罒，网



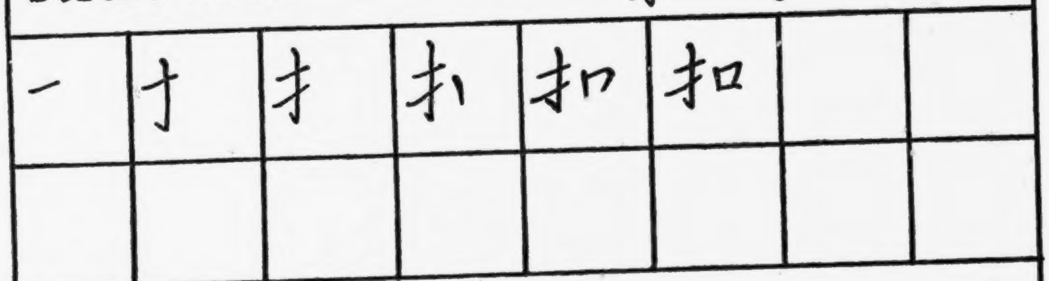
巾

Character Number 409 Radical Number 50
Stroke Number 3 巾



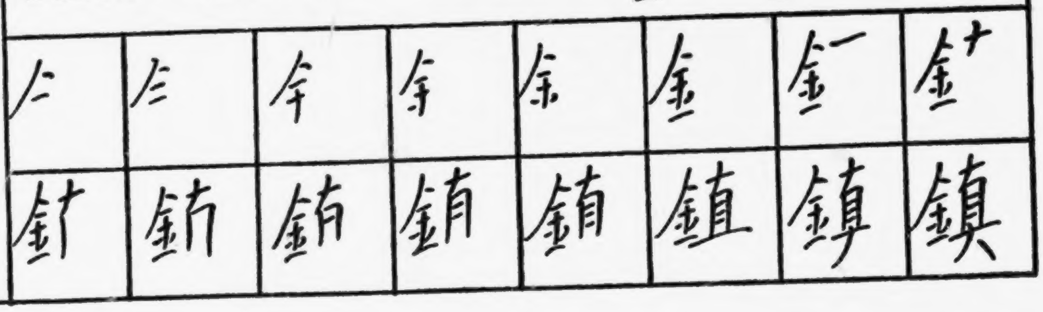
扣

Character Number 430 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 6 扌，手

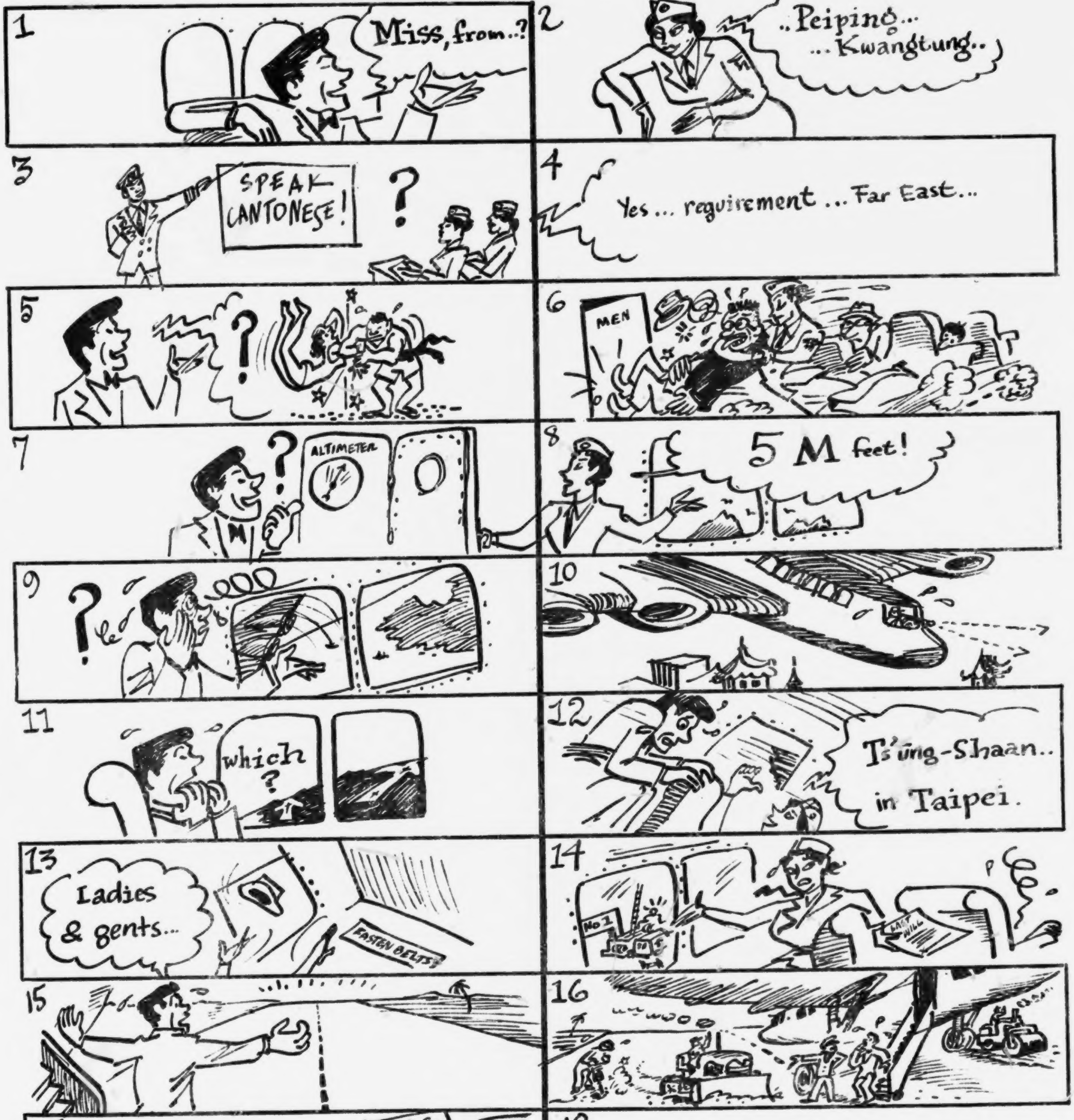


鎮

Character Number 30 Radical Number 167
Stroke Number 18 金，金



LESSON 11


1
Miss, from..?
2
..Peiping...
...Kwangtung..
3
SPEAK CANTONESE!
?
4
Yes ... requirement ... Far East...
5
?
6
MEN
7
?
ALTIMETER
8
5 M feet!
9
?
10
11
which
?
12
Ts'ūng-Shaan..
in Taipei.
13
Ladies & gents...
FASTEN BELTS
14
No 1
LAST WILL
15
16
17
?
AMAG
18
Yes...
AMAG
19
?
FRIENDS OF CHINA CLUB...
20
..please...

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î. Siú-tsè, neĭ haî pin shuè yān à? Neĭ kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ* kóng tak kòm laū-leî.

Hung-chung-siú-tsê. Ngŏh haî Pak-P'ĭng yān, haî Kwóng-Tung taaî, shôh-ĭ ngŏh kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ* kóng-tak m̄-ts'òh.

Wōng. Mooĭ kaan Uĕn-Tung kè hōng-hung-kung-sz kw'ai-tîng shôh-yaŭ kè hung-chung-siú-tsê to iù shik kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ*, haî mà?

Hung. Haî, ni ti haî Uĕn-Tung kè hōng-hung-kung-sz kè kw'ai-tîng.

Wōng. Neĭ-teî meî hoi-ch'î kung-tsòk chi-ts'ĭn, yaŭ mŏ shaû-kwòh t'aî-kaàk-fàn-lîn kà?

Hung. Yaŭ, yan-waî yaŭ ti yān yaŭ hōng-hung-pêng, shôh-ĭ ngŏh-teî meî hoi-ch'î kung-tsòk chi-ts'ĭn, iù shaû t'aî-kaàk-fàn-lîn.

Wōng. Ī-ka kà fei-kei fei tò keî ko à?

Hung. Ī-ka fei-haāng kè ko-tô haî nğ-ts'in-ch'èk.

Wōng. Kà fei-kei m̄-t'ĭng kóm tau huen, tîm-kaaî à?

Hung. Kà fei-kei tsaû-laĭ kòng-lôk, fei-haāng-uēn ī-ka wán-kán kòng-lôk kè teî-fong.

Wōng. Ngŏh-teî haî pin kòh kei-ch'eūng kòng-lôk à?

Hung. Ngŏh-teî haî T'oĭ-Pak Ts'ūng-Shaan Kei-Ch'ēng kòng-lôk.

Hung. Kòk waî* taàp-haàk, fei-kei tsaû-laĭ kòng-lôk, ts'ĭng

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

neĭ-teî tseung on-ts'uēn-taaì* k'aù-hó.

Hung. Ts'îng kòk waî* lôk kei; taî-yat-tô chaâp-haú kè tsóh-pîn haî yau-shik-shat.

Wōng. Ni t'iū p'aaú-tô kòm foòt, kòm san; haî m̄-haî tsuì kân uēn-shīng kà?

Foò-Kà-Shaî-Uēn. Ni t'iū p'aaú-tô haî tsuì kân koî kìn kè.

Wōng. Ts'îng mân kóh kà haî m̄-haî Meĭ-Kwòk Kwan-Sẑ Koò-Mân-T'uēn kè heì-ch'e à?

Kà-Shaî-Uēn. Haî, kóh kà haî Meĭ-Kwòk Kwan-Sẑ Koò-Mân-T'uēn kè heì-ch'e, haî yûng laì tsìp sùng Meĭ-Kwan yān-uēn kè.

Sz-kei. Sin-shaang, neĭ seúng m̄-seúng huì "Chung-Kwòk-Chi-Yaŭ-Shĕ" chuê à?

Wōng. M̄-koi neĭ ch'e ngŏh huì kóh-shuè la.

LESSON 11

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î: Miss, where are you from? You speak Cantonese so fluently.

Stewardess: I am from Peiping, but I grew up in Kwangtung; therefore, I can speak Cantonese well.

W. Each Far Eastern airline company requires all stewardesses to be able to speak Cantonse, is that right?

S. Yes, this is the requirement set up by the airline companies in the Far East.

W. Before you started to work, did you receive physical training?

S. Yes, since some people get air sick we therefore had to receive physical training before we started to work.

W. To what altitude has this plane now climbed?

S. It is now flying at an altitude of 5,000 feet.

W. Why does the plane keep circling like this?

S. The plane is about to land, and the pilot is looking for the landing strip.

W. At which airport are we going to land?

S. We are going to land at Ts'ūng-Shaan Airport in Taipei.

S. Ladies and gentlemen, the plane is about to land. Please fasten your safety belts.

S. Please disembark from the plane. The waiting room is at the left of gate No. 1.

LESSON 11

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. This runway is so broad and new, was it completed recently?

Co-pilot: Yes, this runway was remodeled recently.

W. Is that automobile from the American Military Advisory Group?

C. Yes, that is the car of the American Military Advisory Group which is used for meeting United States Army personnel.

Chauffeur: Sir, do you want to stay at the "Friends of China Club?"

W. Will you please drive me there.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I am the manager of the Friends of China Club. What can I do for you?
2. The personnel of this base can speak fluent Cantonese.
3. The Military Assistance and Advisory Group has automobiles to transport their own personnel to and from the airport.
4. Please come and visit my house. It was remodelled recently.
5. I am being trained to become a pilot. Right now, I am a co-pilot.
6. Before my training is completed, I will have a 10-day vacation.
7. This small island is only 3 to 4 miles long and 2 miles wide.
8. How many times do you have to circle around before you can land this plane?
9. Every soldier receives physical training in addition to military training.
10. I don't know the requirements but I think I can pass them without any difficulties.
11. Your car doesn't look bad at all. How much did you pay for it?
12. Will all military personnel report to their headquarters immediately please.
13. Do you have any safety belts in your automobile?

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. I want to stay at the Y.M.C.A., but my brother asked me to stay at his place.

15. This young lady has fastened her safety belt as soon as she came on board.

16. This plane can catch up with the other one.

LESSON 11

WORD LIST

1.	k'wai-tîng	to require; requirement, regulation
2.	t'aî-kaàk fàn-lîn	physical conditioning, physical training
3.	tau huen	to circle
4.	uēn-shîng	to complete
5.	fei-hāng-uēn	pilot
6.	foò kà-shaî-uēn	co-pilot
7.	koî-kìn	to remodel, renovate
8.	kwan-sẑ koò-mân-t'uēn	military advisor group
9.	tsìp sùng	to carry (personnel, (lit: to receive and deliver)
10.	yān-uēn	personnel
11.	Chung-Kwòk-Chi-Yaŭ-Shĕ	Friends of China Club

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

1084

膽 taám: gall bladder; courage; bravery.

電燈膽 tìn-tang-taám: electric light bulb.

大膽 taaî taám: bold; brave.

膽小 taám siù: timid; cowardly.

1342

團 t'uen: a lump; cake cluster; to gather around.

團結 t'uēn-kìt: closely united; inseparable; co-operation.

團聚 t'uēn-tsuî: to unite.

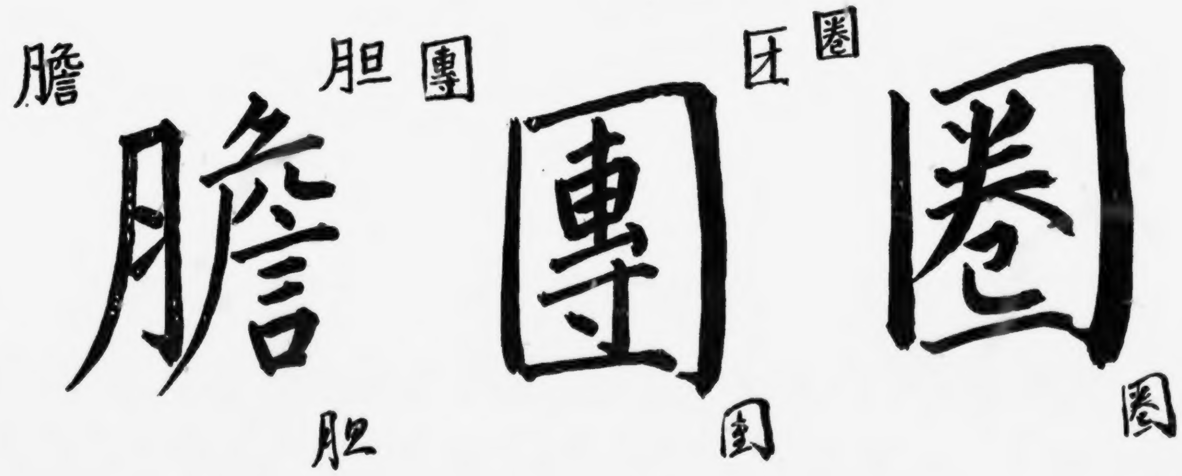
團體 t'uēn-t'aí: unity; union; community; organization.

315

圈 huen: a circle; ring; to encircle

畫圈 waâk huen: to draw circles

圓圈 uēn-huen: a circle.



888

破 p'òh: to break; to break through; to destroy; to discern.

破壞 p'òh-waaî: to destroy; to smash.

破費 p'òh-faì: lavish; waste.

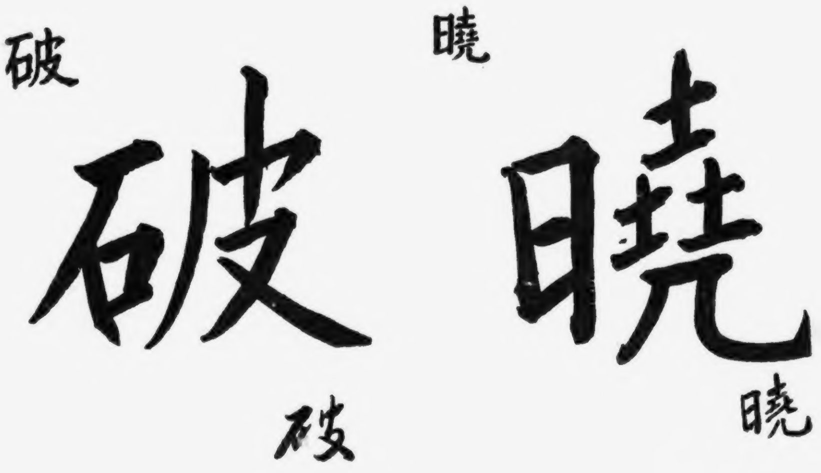
破產 p'òh-ch'aán: bankruptcy.

290

曉 hiú: to understand; know; daybreak

曉得 hiú-tak: understand

破曉 p'òh-hiú: day break; dawn.



LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

79

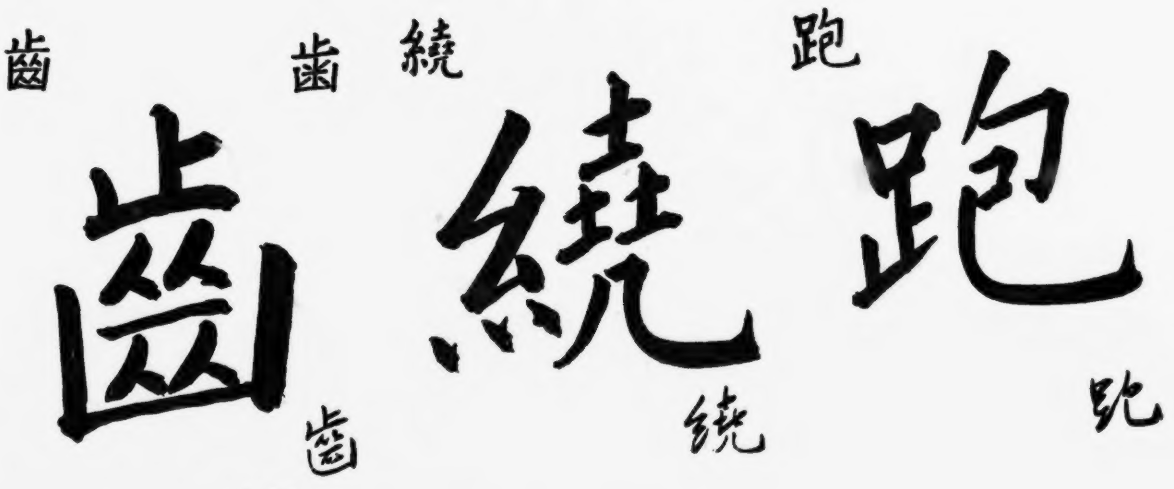
齒	ch'í: teeth; age
牙齒	ngā-ch'í: teeth;
冇口齒	mŏ-haú-ch'í: break one's promise

367

繞	iŭ: to surround; to wind round
環繞	yaān-iŭ: to surround

821

跑	p'aaú: to gallop; to run; to race.
跑馬	p'aaú mă: to gallop on horse back.
賽跑	ts'oì-p'aaú: to run a race; to compete in a field; race.

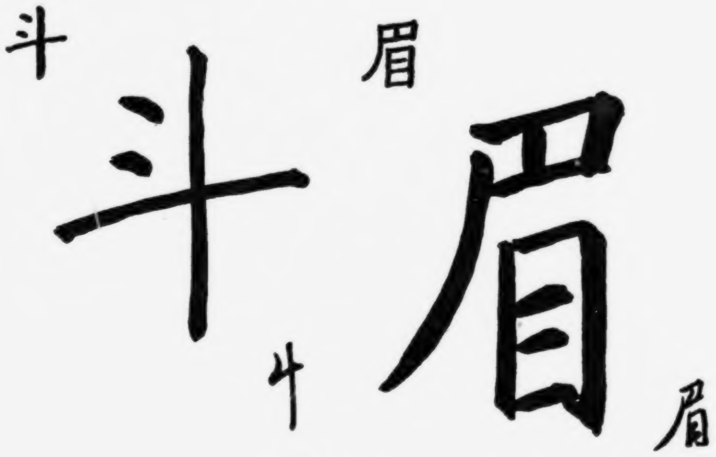


1121

斗	taú: a peck; a measure; dipper; vessel.
一斗米	yat taú maǐ: a peck of rice.
斗膽	taú taám: great courage.

682

眉	meī: eyebrow.
眼眉	ngaăn-meī: eyebrow.
蛾眉月	ngōh-meī-uêt: the crescent moon.



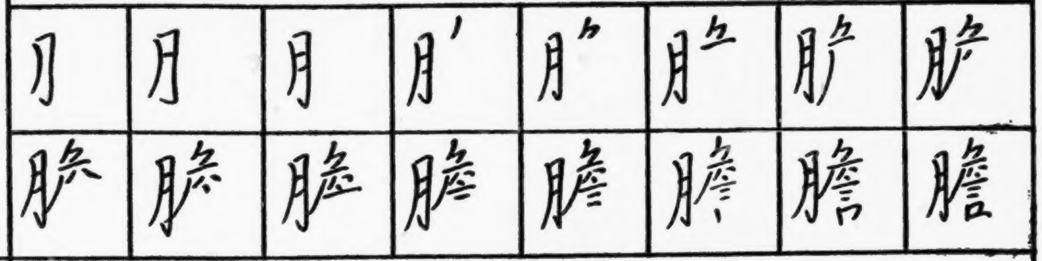
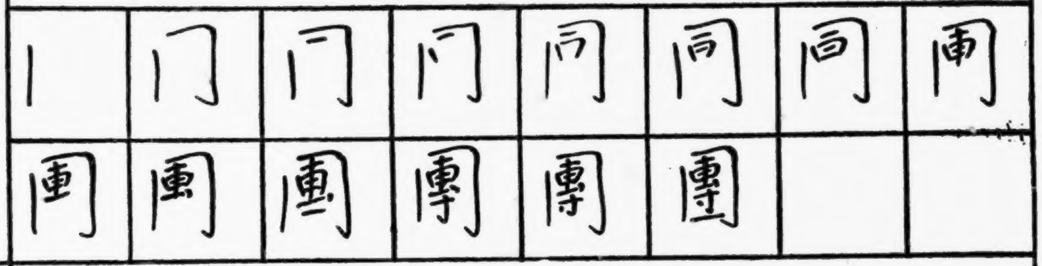
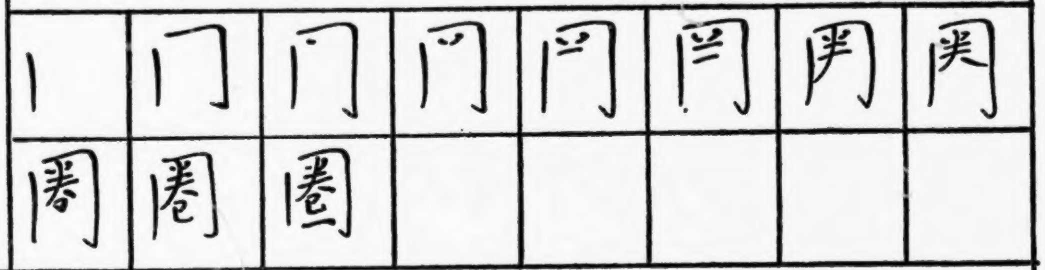
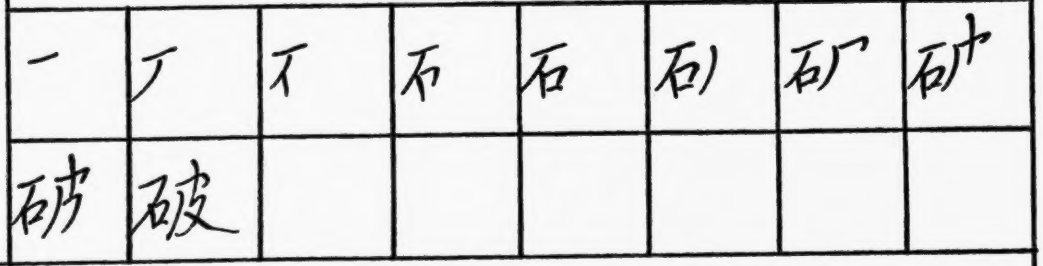
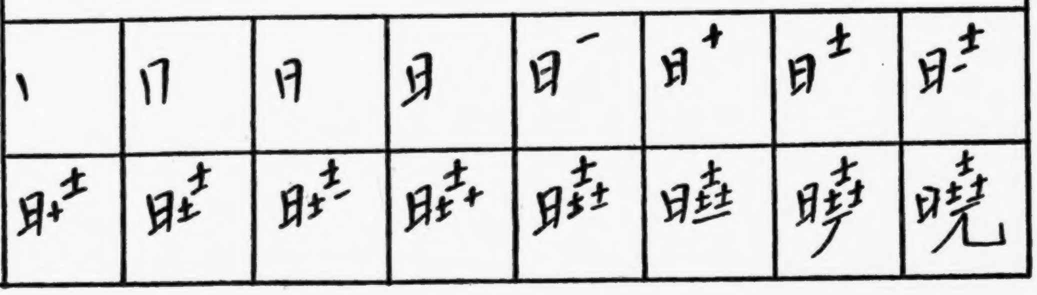
LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

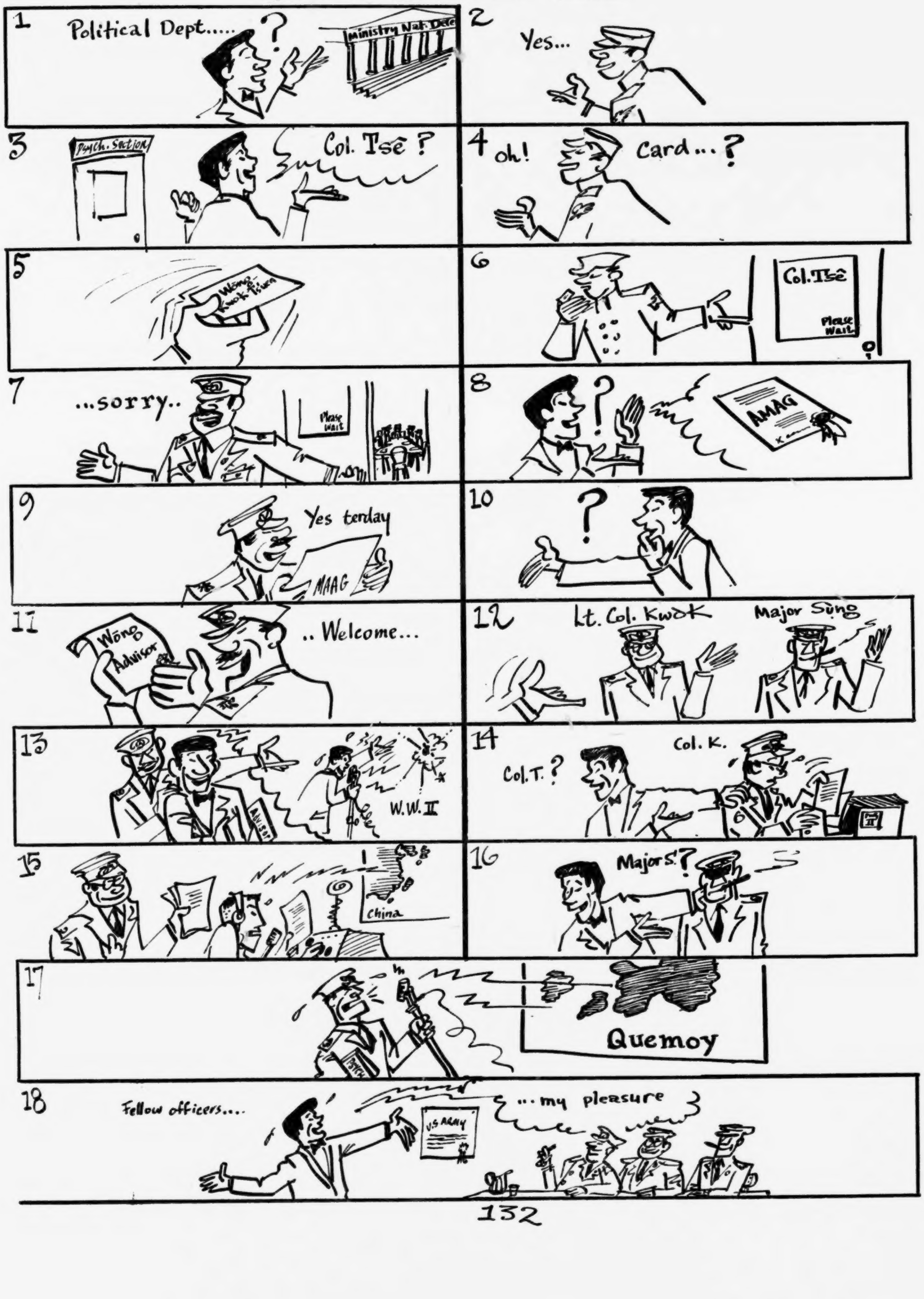
黄二而家由馬 Naī 拉飛去台北之時，曾經同空中小姐談話。嗰位空中小姐係北平人，喺廣東大，講廣東話講得好流利。佢話每間遠東嘅航空公司規定所有嘅空中小姐都要識講廣東話。佢地未開始工作之前，要受體格訓練。破曉嘅時候，飛機將近喺台北 Ts'ūng 山機場降落。空中小姐叫搭客將安全帶扣好，飛機喺空中繞飛機場， Tau 圈幾次， wân 跑道降落。黄二係一個斗膽嘅人，完全冇驚慌。黄二見到一架美國軍事顧問團嘅汽車，就坐嗰架車去台北嘅「中國之友社」。

LESSON 11

WRITING MATERIAL

Character	Character Number	Stroke Number	Radical Number	Radical	Stroke order
膽	1084	17	130	月，肉	
團	1342	14	31	口	
圈	315	11	31	口	
破	888	10	112	石	
曉	290	16	72	日，日	

LESSON 12


1
Political Dept.....
?
Ministry Nat. Def.
2
Yes...
3
Psych. Section
Col. Tsê ?
4
oh!
Card...?
5
Wong Kwok-Tsien
6
Col. Tsê
Please Wait
7
...sorry..
Please Wait
8
?
AMAG
9
Yes terday
MAAG
10
?
11
Wong Advisor
.. Welcome...
12
Lt. Col. Kwok
Major Sung
13
Advisor
W.W. II
14
Col. T. ?
Col. K.
15
China
16
Majors?
17
Quemoy
18
Fellow officers....
US ARMY
...my pleasure

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng. Ts'ìng mân neĭ ni kòh taan-waî* haî m̀-haî Kwòk-Fōng-Pô Chìng-Chî-Pô à?

Ch'uēn-taât. Haî, ni kòh taan-waî* haî Kwòk-Fōng-Pô Chìng-Chî-Pô.

Wōng. Ngŏh seúng kìn Sam-Leĭ-Tsòk-Chìn-Ch'uè kè chué-koón Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. K'uĭ haî shuè mà?

Ch'uēn-taât. Ôh Neĭ seúng kìn Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù; neĭ yaŭ neĭ kè mìng-p'ìn* mà?

Wōng. Ni cheung haî ngŏh kè mìng-p'ìn*.

Ch'uēn-taât. Wōng Sin-Shaang, Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù ì-ka hoi-kán ooî*. Ts'ìng neĭ haî ooî-haàk-shat táng-hă la.

Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. Tuì-m̀-chuê, Wōng Sin-Shaang, ngŏh lìng neĭ táng-chóh kòm noî. Ngŏh ngaam-ngaam hoi-uēn ooî*.

Wōng. M̄-kán-iù, Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù, neĭ yaŭ mŏ tsìp tò Meĭ-Kwan Koò-Mân-T'uēn kè kung-mān à?

Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. Yaŭ, ngŏh tsòk-yât tsìp tò Meĭ-Kwan Koò-Mân-T'uēn kè kung-mān.

Wōng. Kóh cheung kung-mān tìm wâ à?

Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. Kóh cheung kung-mān wâ p'aaì Wōng Sin-Shaang laî ni-shuè tsô koò-mân. Ngŏh-teî foon-yìng chi-chì.

Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. Wōng Sin-Shaang, táng ngŏh kaaì-shiû leŭng waî* kwan-koon t'ūng neĭ seung-shik, ni waî* haî Kwòk Chung-Kaaù, ni waî* haî Sùng Shiù-Kaaù.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. Kòk waî* t'ūng-sẑ, haì taî-î-ts'z̀ shaì-kaaì-taaî-chìn kè shì-haû, Wōng Sin-Shaang haì Chung-Kwòk tsô-kwòh hó toh sam-leĭ-tsòk-chìn kè kung-tsòk, ì-ka k'uĭ laì ni-shuè tsô ngŏh-teî kè koò-mân.

Wōng. Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù, ì-ka Kwòk Chung-Kaaù chuê-koón pin chúng kung-tsòk à?

Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. Kwòk Chung-Kaaù ì-ka chuê-koón tuì taaî-lûk suen-ch'uēn kè kung-tsòk.

Wōng. Sùng Shiù-Kaaù ne?

Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. Sùng Shiù-Kaaù ì-ka foô-chaàk Kam-Moōn ts'ìn-sìn kè sam-leĭ-tsòk-chìn kè kung-tsòk.

Wōng. Kòk waî* kwan-koon, neĭ-teî to haî hó yaŭ king-îm kè sam-leĭ-tsòk-chìn kè chuen-ka. Meĭ-Kwan p'aaì ngŏh laì ni-shuè hîp-chôh neĭ-teî tuì tîk-yān kè sam-leĭ-tsòk-chìn. Ngŏh hó foon-heî yaŭ ni kòh kei-ooî t'ūng kòk waî* yat-ts'aĭ kung-tsòk; ĭ-haû ts'îng kòk waî* shì shì chî-kaaù, ts'in-k'eì m̀-hó haàk-heì.

LESSON 12

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wŏng: Is this the Political Department of the Ministry of National Defense?

Messenger: Yes, this is the Political Department of the Ministry of National Defense.

W. I want to see the officer in charge of the psychological Warfare Section, Col. Tsê. Is he in?

M. Oh You want to see Col. Tsê. Do you have your name card?

W. This is my name card.

M. Mr Wŏng, Col. Tsê is now in conference. Please wait in the reception room.

Col. Tsê: I'm sorry I have kept you waiting for so long Mr. Wŏng. I just finished with the meeting.

W. Never mind, Col. Tsê, did you receive the document from the American Military Advisory Group (Military Air Advisory Group)?

T. Yes, I received the documant from the American Advisory Group (MAAG) yesterday.

W. What does the document say?

T. It says that Mr Wŏng is assigned as an advisor here. We heartily welcome you.

T. Mr. Wŏng, let me introduce these two officers to you. This is Lt. Col. Kwòk, and this is Major Sùng.

T. Fellow colleagues, during World War II, Mr. Wŏng worked a great deal in matters of psychological warfare. Now he is our advisor.

W. Col. Tsê, what is Col. Kwǒk's present area of responsibility.

T. Col. Kwǒk is now in charge of the propaganda directed toward the China Mainland.

W. How about Major Sǔng?

T. Major Sǔng is now responsible for the psychological warfare of the Quemoy front.

W. Fellow officers, you are all experienced experts in psychological warfare. The United States Army has assigned me to assist you here in matters of psychological warfare directed against the enemy. It is my pleasure to have this opportunity to work with you. I hope that in the future you will all give me your guidance from time to time. By all means, don't be modest.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Be sure to remember this. Otherwise, the enemy will win.
2. I must thank you for your help. Please give me some advice from time to time in the future.
3. Although I am not an expert, I have a lot of experience.
4. Women and children are not to stay at the front during the war.
5. This may look like propaganda material to you but there is some truth in it.
6. Lt. Col. Cheung is the officer in charge of propaganda activity.
7. The major is waiting for your document. Do you have it with you?
8. If you can come, you are most welcome!
9. I shall meet you downstairs in ten minutes.
10. Sorry, the colonel is not available, he is in a conference at this moment.
11. Please send a messenger and ask Mr. Wong to come to my office immediately.
12. As soon as you reach the front area report to Capt. Hŏh for special duty.
13. Mr. Ch'ăn is the officer in charge of the political department and he is not a military officer.
14. I like to hold a meeting with the personnel of the political

department to discuss this problem.

15. You must be the messenger they sent. Will you please take this document to the office immediately?

16. Take good care of yourself, and be sure to write.

LESSON 12

WORD LIST

1.	pò-tò	to report oneself
2.	chìng-chî pô	political department
3.	chuê-koón	officer in charge; in charge
4.	mìng-p'ìn*	name card
5.	ch'uēn-taât	messenger
6.	hoi ooî*	meeting, conference; to hold a meeting
7.	ooî-haàk-shat	visiting room
8.	kung-mān	document
9.	foon-yìng chi-chì	to welcome heartily
10.	suen-ch'uēn	propaganda
11.	Kam-Moōn ts'ìn-sìn	Quemoy front
12.	chuen-ka	expert
13.	tîk-yān	enemy
14.	ts'in-k'eì	to be sure

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

1167

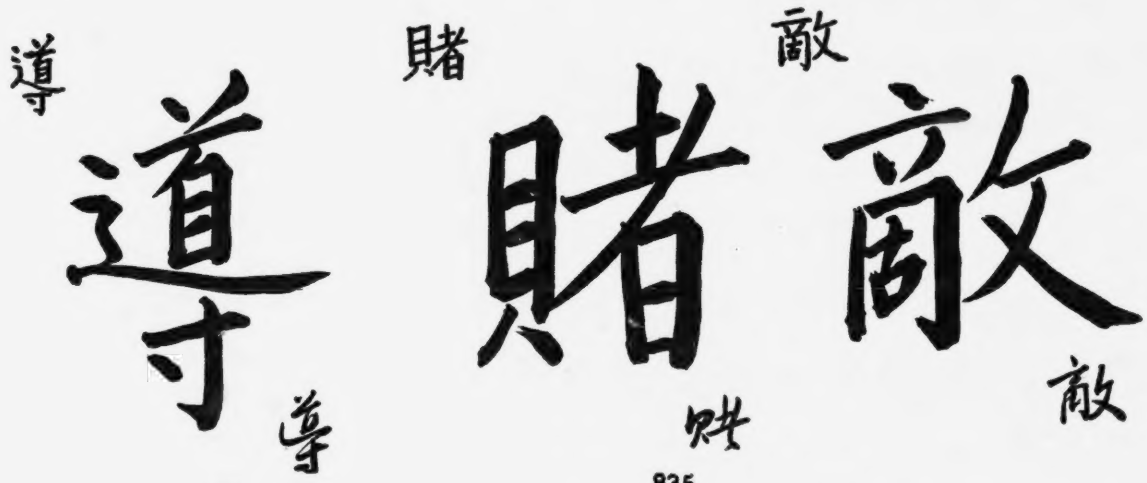
導	tô:	to lead; to guide.
指導	chí-tô:	to guide; to inspire; to point the way.
訓導	fàn-tô:	to teach and guide.

1162

賭	tó:	to wager; to gamble.
賭博	tó-pòk:	to gamble
賭館	tó-koón:	gambling house.
賭輸	tó shue:	to wager; to bet.

1135

敵	tîk:	enemy, opponent; to oppose.
敵人	tîk-yān:	enemy; foe.
敵國	tîk kwòk:	enemy country.
敵對	tîk-tuì:	hostile; to stand up against.

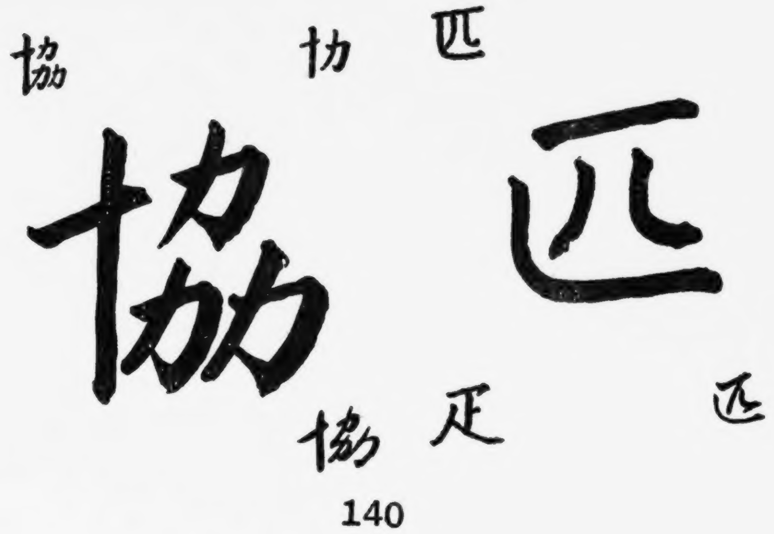


288

協	hîp:	mutual help; to agree
協力	hîp-lîk:	to co-operate
協約	hîp-yeùk:	treaty; agreement

835

匹	p'at:	a bolt or piece of cloth; a (for horse); a mate.
一匹布	yat p'at pò:	a bolt of cloth.
一匹馬	yat p'at mǎ:	a horse.



LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

617

鈴 līng: small bell.

門鈴 mōōn līng: door bell

1492

蝇 yīng. fly species.

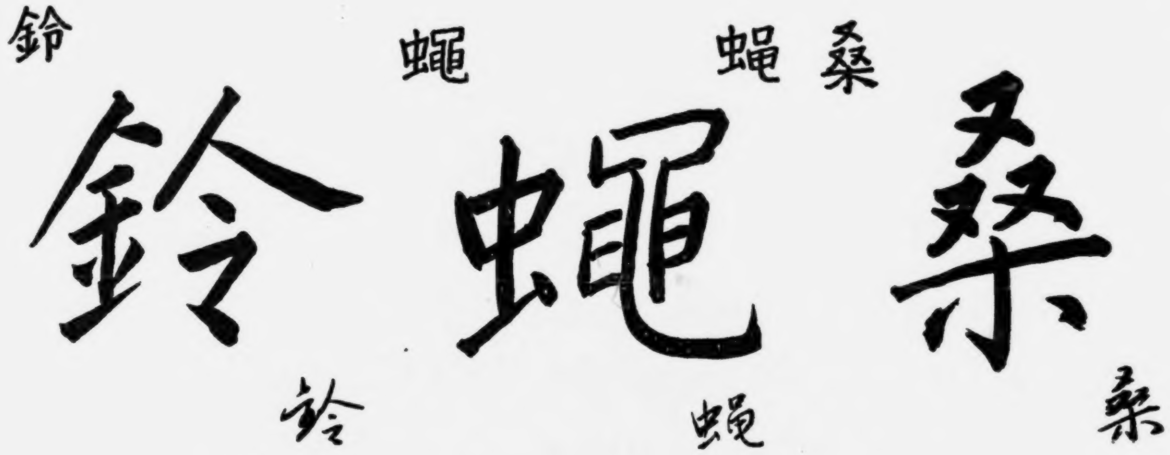
烏蝇 oo-yīng: house fly.

蝇虎 yīng-foó: the jumping spider.

1045

桑 song: mulberry tree.

桑棗 song tsó: mulberry.



1200

蠶 ts'āām: silk worm.

蠶食 ts'āām shîk: gradual encroachment.

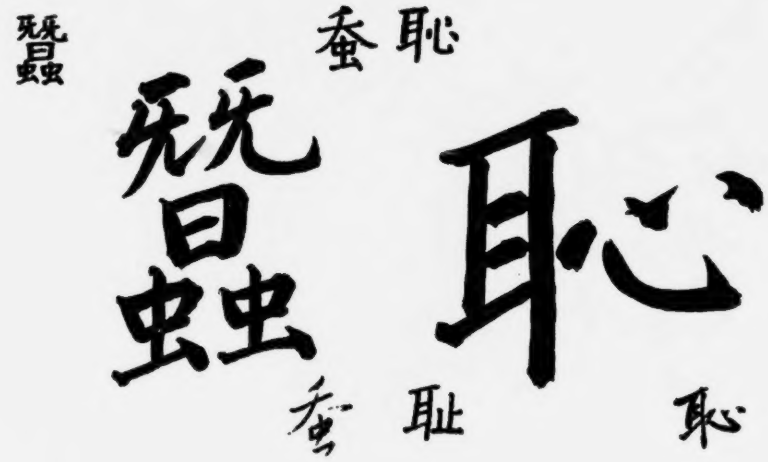
80

恥 ch'ī́: disgrace; shame

羞恥 sau-ch'ī́: shame

知恥 chi-ch'ī́: conscious of disgrace; sense of shame

恥辱 ch'ī́-yûk: shame; disgrace



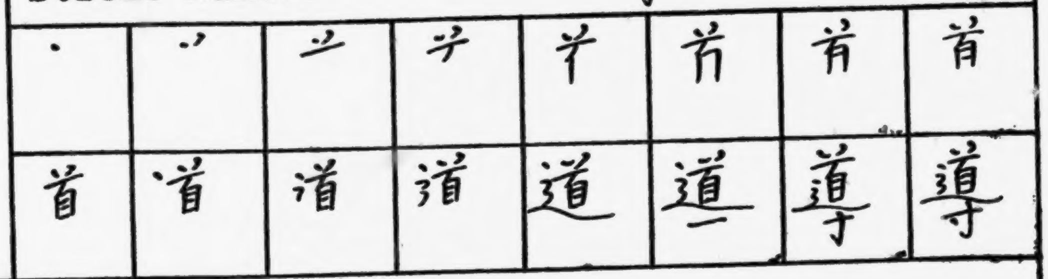
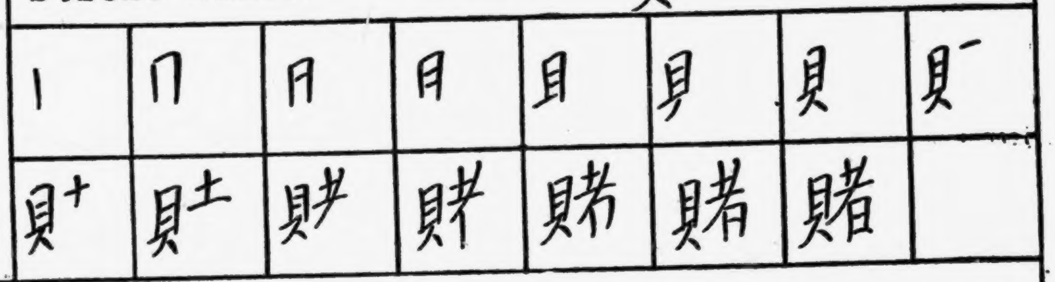
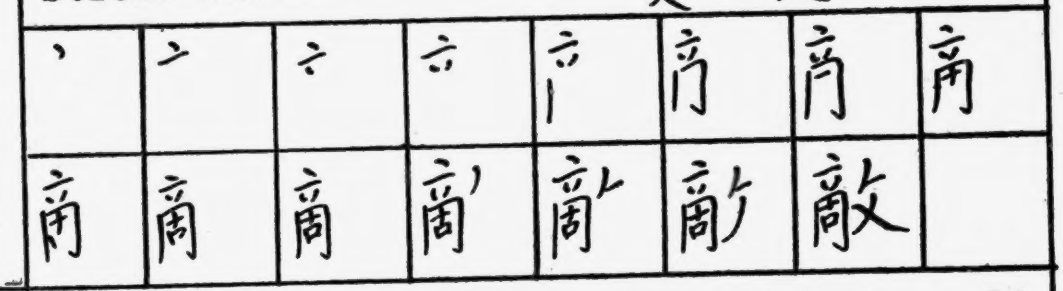
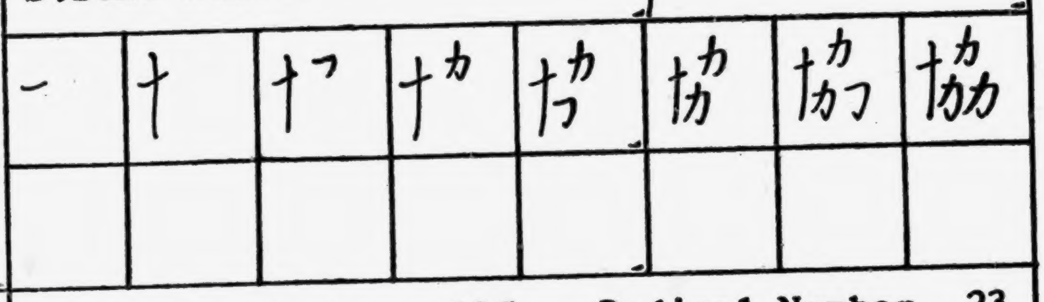
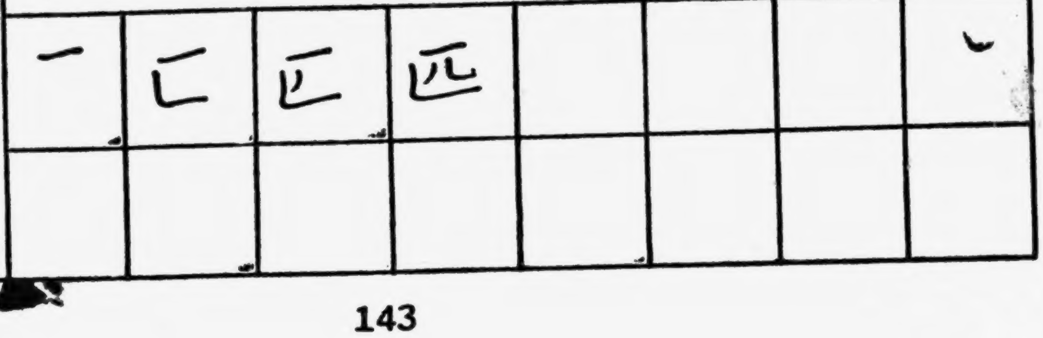
LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

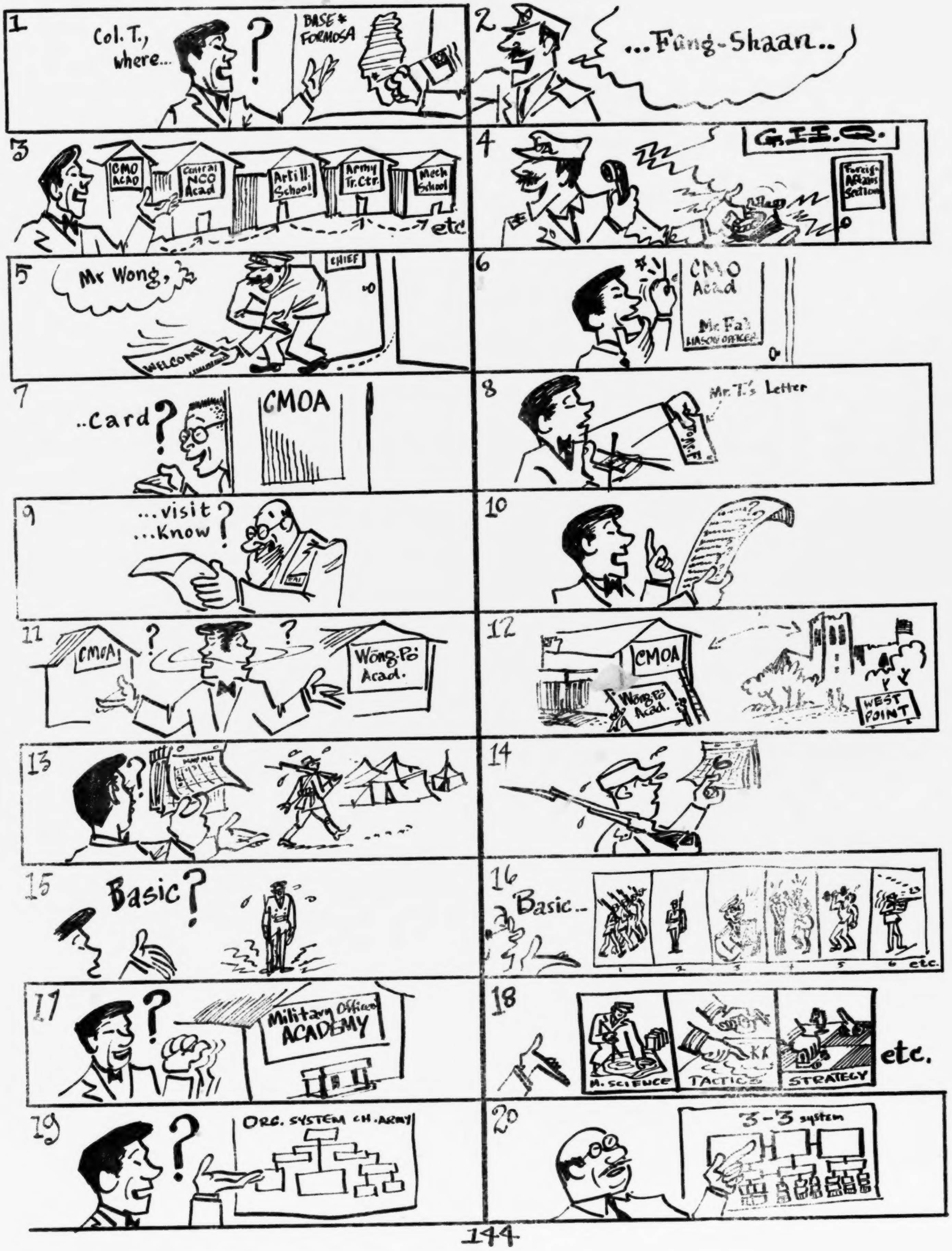
美軍顧問團派黃二去台灣中國國防部政治部嘅心理作戰處做顧問.佢去見心理作戰處嘅主管謝上校嘅時候,謝上校開緊會.傳達叫黃二喺會客室等吓.謝上校開完會之後,佢見到黃二.佢話佢好歡迎黃二喺心理作戰處做顧問,協助對敵人嘅心理作戰.佢介紹黃二同Kwòk中校Sùng少校相識.Kwòk中校現在主管對大陸嘅心理作戰工作,Sùng少校負責金門前線嘅心理作戰工作.黃二對各位軍官講幾句客氣說話,請佢地時時指導.

LESSON 12

WRITING MATERIAL

導	**Character Number** 1167 **Radical Number** 41 **Stroke Number** 16 寸 
賭	**Character Number** 1162 **Radical Number** 154 **Stroke Number** 15 貝 
敵	**Character Number** 1135 **Radical Number** 66 **Stroke Number** 15 攵，攴 
協	**Character Number** 288 **Radical Number** 24 **Stroke Number** 8 十 
匹	**Character Number** 835 **Radical Number** 23 **Stroke Number** 4 匚 

LESSON 13


1
Col. T., where...?
BASE & FORMOSA
2
...Fūng-Shaan..
3
CMO ACAD
Central NCO Acad
Artill. School
Army Tr. Ctr.
Mech School
etc
4
G.II.Q.
Foreign Affairs Section
5
Mr Wong,
CHIEF
WELCOME
6
CMO Acad
Mr. Fa LIASON OFFICER
7
..Card?
CMOA
8
Mr. T.'s Letter
To Mr. F
9
...visit? ...Know?
FAI
10
11
CMOA
?
?
Wōng-Pō Acad.
12
CMOA
Wōng-Pō Acad.
WEST POINT
13
14
15
Basic?
16
Basic...
1
2
3
4
5
6 etc.
17
?
Military Officers ACADEMY
18
M. SCIENCE
TACTICS
STRATEGY
etc.
19
?
ORG. SYSTEM CH. ARMY
20
3-3 system

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î. Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù, Chung-Kwòk kè Lûk-Kwan keì-teî haî T'oī-Waan pin-shuè à?

Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. Chung-Kwòk kè Lûk-Kwan kei-teî haî T'oī-Waan naām-pô kè Fûng-Shaan.

Wōng-Î. Ngŏh seúng huì ts'aam-koon-hă kòh-shuè kè Chung-Yeung Lûk-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû, Chung-Yeung Sẑ-Koon Hôk-Haaû, P'aaù-Ping Hôk-Haaû, Lûk-Kwan Fàn-Lîn Chung-Sam, t'ūng Kei-Haaî-Fà Hôk-Haaû, tâng-tâng.

Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. Tâng ngŏh tâ tîn-wâ* mân-hă Lûk-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng-Pô kè ngoî-sẑ-ch'uè la.

Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. Wōng Sin-Shaang, ngoî-sẑ-ch'uè kè Ts'ìn-Ch'uè-Cheúng wâ, k'uĭ hó foon-yīng neĭ huì ts'aam-koon.

Wōng-Î. Neĭ ni-shuè haî Chung-Yeung Lûk-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû. Ts'ìng mân Faì Luēn-Lòk-Koon haî shuè mà?

Chung-Yeung Lûk-Kwan-Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû ch'uēn-taât. Neĭ yaŭ neĭ kè mīng-p'ìn* mà?

Wōng-Î. Ngŏh mŏ taaì mīng-p'ìn* laî, ni fung haî Ts'ìn Ch'uè-Cheúng sé peî Faì Luēn-Lòk-Koon kè kaaì-shiû sùn.

Faì Luēn-Lòk Koon. Wōng Sin-Shaang, neĭ seúng ts'aam-koon ti mi-yĕ, t'ūng chi-tò ti mi-yĕ à?

Wōng-Î. Meî ts'aam-koon chi-ts'ìn, ngŏh seúng mân neĭ keî kòh mân-t'aî.

Wōng-Î. Chung-Yeung Lûk-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû t'ūng Wōng-Pò

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Kwan-Haaû yaŭ mi-yě m̂-t'ūng à?

Faì-Luēn-Lòk Koon. Wōng-Pò Kwan-Haaû haî Chung-Yeung Lûk-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû kè ts'ìn-shan, t'ūng Meǐ-Kwòk kè Sai-Tîm Kwan-Haaû ch'a-m̂-toh.

Wōng-Î. Hôk-shaang yâp-nğ chi-haû, iù shaû keî noî kè kei-poón fàn-lîn à?

Faì-Luēn-Lòk Koon. Hôk-shaang yâp-nğ chi-haû, iù shaû lûk-kòh uêt kè kei-poón fàn-lîn.

Wōng-Î. Kei-poón fàn-lîn paau-k'oòt mi-yě à?

Faì Luēn-Lồk Koon. Kei-poón fàn-lîn paau-k'oòt pô-ts'o, ts'eung-ts'o, kwan-sẑ sheūng-shik, kwan-sẑ keî-lût, t'aì-kaàk fàn-lîn, shê-kik-shût, tâng-tâng.

Wōng-Î. Kwan-koon hôk-haaû kè fàn-lîn paau-k'oòt mi-yě à?

Faì Luēn-Lồk Koon. Kwan-koon hôk-haaû kè fàn-lîn paau-k'oòt kwan-sẑ hôk, chìn-shût, chìn-leûk, tâng-tâng.

Wōng-Î. Chung-Kwòk kè Lûk-Kwan yûng pin-chúng p'in-chaì chaì-tô à?

Faì Luēn-Lồk Koon. Lûk-kwan yûng "saam-saam" p'in-chaì chaì-tô tsik-haî yat-kòh kwan yaŭ saam-kòh sz, yat-kòh sz yaŭ saam-kòh t'uēn, yat-kòh t'uēn yaŭ saam-kòh yìng, tâng-tâng.

LESSON 13

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î: Col. Tsê, where is the Chinese Army base in Formosa?

Col. Tsê: The Chinese Army base is at Fûng-Shaan in southern Formosa.

W. I wish to visit the Central Military Officers Academy, the Central NCO Academy, the Artillery School, the Army Training Center, the Mechanized School, etc.

Tsê: Let me make a telephone call to contact the Foreign Affairs Section of the General Headquarters of the Army.

Tsê: Mr. Wōng, the Chief of the Foreign Affairs Section, Mr. Ts'ìn says you are welcome to visit.

W. This is the Central Military Officers Academy, is the liaison officer, Mr. Faì, in?

The Messenger of CMOA: Do you have your name card?

W. I didn't bring my name card with me. This is Mr. Ts'ìn's letter of introduction addressed to the liaison officer, Mr. Faì.

Liaison Officer, Mr. Faì: Mr. Wōng, what do you want to visit and what do you want to know?

W. Before visiting, I want to ask you a few questions.

W. What is the difference between the CMOA and the Wōng-Pǒ Military Academy?

F. The CMOA was formerly known as the Wōng-Pǒ Military Academy. It is about the same as the West Point Military Academy of the United States.

LESSON 13

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. After a cadet is inducted, what is the length of the basic training he must receive?

F. After a cadet is inducted, he has to receive six-months of basic training.

W. What does basic training include?

F. Basic training includes marching drills, rifle drills, military knowledge in general, military discipline, physical training, firing techniques, etc.

W. What does the training in the Military Officers Academy include?

F. The training in the Military Officers Academy includes military science, tactics, strategy, etc.

W. What kind of organizational system is being used by the Chinese Army?

F. The Chinese Army uses the "three-three" organizational system which means there are three divisions in an Army, three regiments in a division, three battalions in a regiment, etc.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. You are a graduate of the Chinese military academy. Am I right?
2. What kind of tactics will you employ?
3. During military training, instructors taught us firing techniques.
4. Military discipline is very important.
5. Even without any military knowledge, an average person can understand this situation.
6. During basic training, you have to do rifle drill in addition to marching drill.
7. She was inducted into the Women Auxiliary Corps last year.
8. This department store started as a grocery store.
9. Col Lee was graduated from Wōn Pò Military Academy in 1935 and he is now the Commandant of the Academy.
10. Do you know Capt. Wōng, the liaison officer from the foreign affairs section?
11. This school is a part of the army training center.
12. The artillery moved back two miles behind a hill.
13. I have visited the NCO academy while I was there.
14. The academy graduates will meet here next Saturday evening.
15. You have to get a form from the foreign affairs section and come back here for an appointment.
16. After being inducted into the army, you will receive eight weeks of basic training in California.

LESSON 13

WORD LIST

1.	Chung-Yeung Lûk-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû	Central Military Officers Academy
2.	Chung-Yeung Sẑ-Koon Hôk-Haaû	Central NCO Academy
3.	p'aaù-ping	artillery
4.	lûk-kwan fàn-lîn chung-sam	Army training center
5.	kei-haaî-fà hôk-haaû	Mechanized School
6.	ngoî-sẑ-ch'uè	foreign affairs section
7.	luēn-lòk koon	liaison officer
8.	Wōng-Pò Kwan-Haaû	Wōng-Pò Military Academy
9.	ts'ìn-san	forerunner, predecessor
10.	yâp-nğ	induction
11.	kei-poôn fàn-lîn	basic training
12.	pô-ts'o	marching drill
13.	ts'eung-ts'o	rifle drill
14.	kwan-sẑ sheūng-shik	military knowledge
15.	kwan-sẑ keì-lût	military discipline
16.	shê-kik shût	firing techniques
17.	chìn-shût	tactics

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

822

炮 p'aaù: sound of firing a gun; cannon; blast; firework; to roast or bake.

大炮 taaî-p'aaù: a cannon.

炮手 p'aaù-shaú: a gunner.

炮兵 p'aaù-ping: artillery personnel.

964

射 shê: to shoot out; to discharge; to radiate.

射箭 shê tsìn: to shoot an arrow.

射中 shê chùng: to hit the mark.

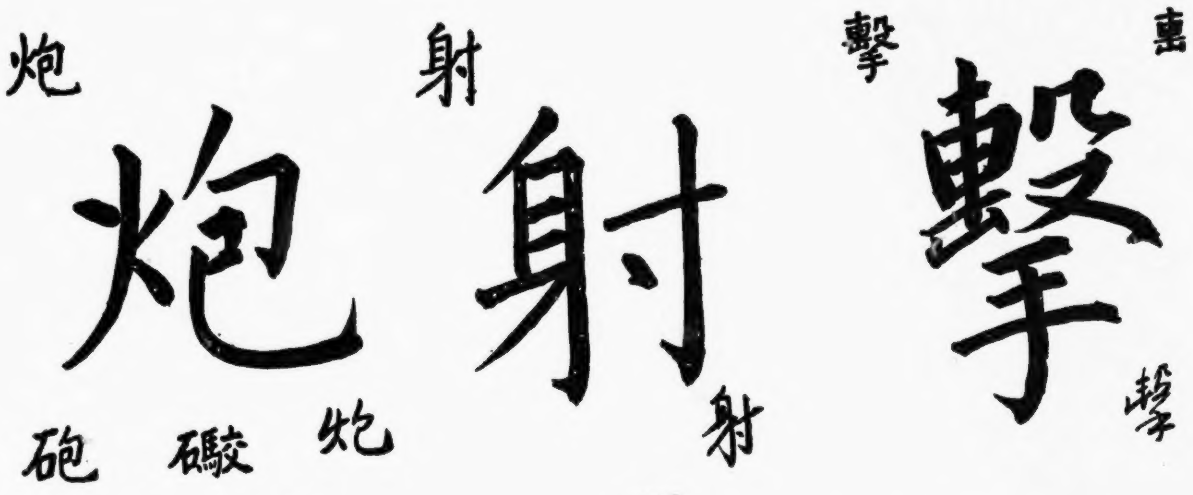
453

擊 kik: to strike; attack.

攻擊 kung-kik: to attack an enemy.

目擊 mûk-kik: to witness with one's own eyes.

擊斃 kik paî: a violent death.



25

制 chaì: to govern, to stop, to cut off

抵制 taí-chaì: to boycott

制服 chaî-fûk: uniform, to overcome

專制 chuen-chaì: despotism

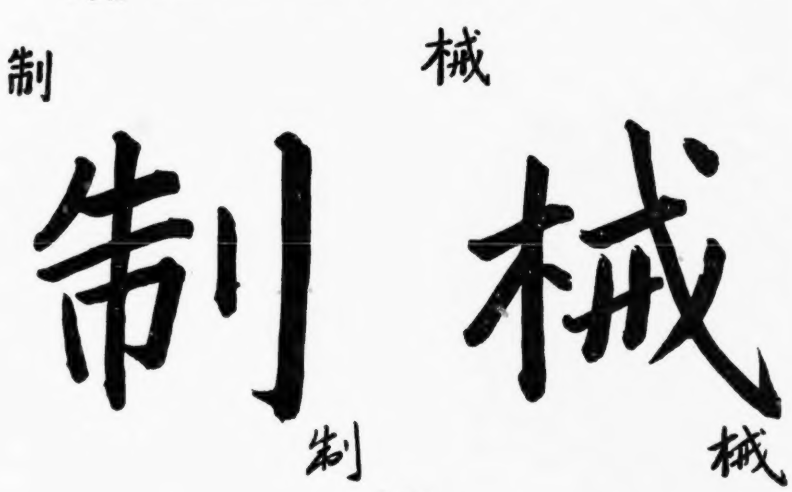
制度 chaì-tô: system

238

械 haaî: weapons; implements

軍械 kwan-haaî: weapon of war

器械 heì-haaî: machinery; implements.



LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

1128

爹 te: father; daddy.

爹爹 te-te: daddy.

爹媽 te-ma: my papa and mamma.

736

娘 neũng: a young lady; a girl; a mother; a wife.

新娘 san-neũng: a bride.

伴娘 poôn-neũng: a bridesmaid.

姑娘 koo-neũng: Miss; unmarried girl.

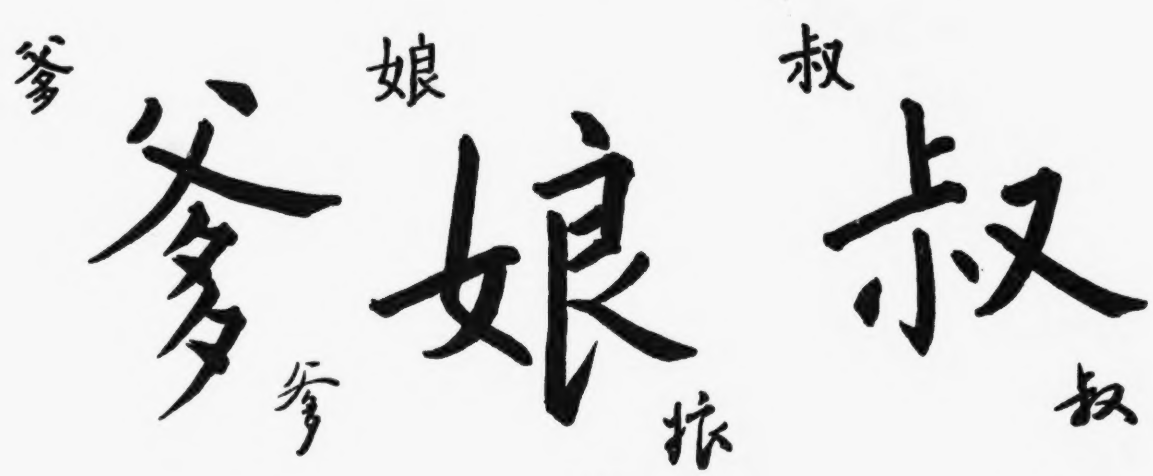
娘家 neũng ka: a wife's family.

1020

叔 shuk: father's younger brother; uncle.

叔父 shuk-foô: an uncle.

叔伯兄弟 shuk-pàak hing-taî: cousins of the same surname.



1275

操 ts'o: to hold to; to manage; to drill.

操心 ts'o-sam: anxious; concerned.

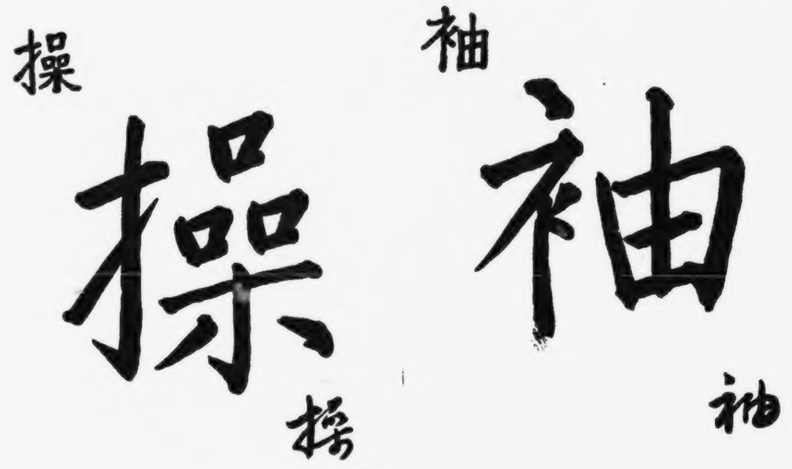
體操 t'aí-ts'o: physical drill.

操場 ts'o-ch'eũng: drill ground.

1224

袖 tsaû: sleeve; cuff.

衫袖 shaam-tsaû: sleeve of a coat.



LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

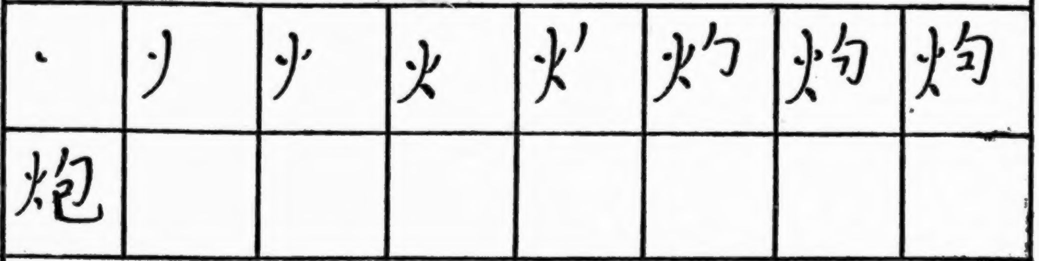
Pûng 山喺台灣南便，係中國陸軍基地。黃二想去嗰處參觀中央陸軍軍官學校，中央士官學校，炮兵學校，陸軍訓練中心同機械化學校。佢先去中央陸軍軍官學校，見到貴聯 lðk 官，將錢處長寫嘅介紹信交俾貴聯 lðk 官。未參觀之前，貴聯 lðk 官同黃二講好多關於中國陸軍嘅野。貴聯 lðk 官話，學生入伍之後，要受基本訓練。基本訓練包 k'oðt 步操，槍操，軍事常識，等等。軍官學校嘅訓練包 k'oðt 軍事學，戰術，戰畧，等等。中國陸軍用「三三」編制制度。

LESSON 13

WRITING MATERIAL

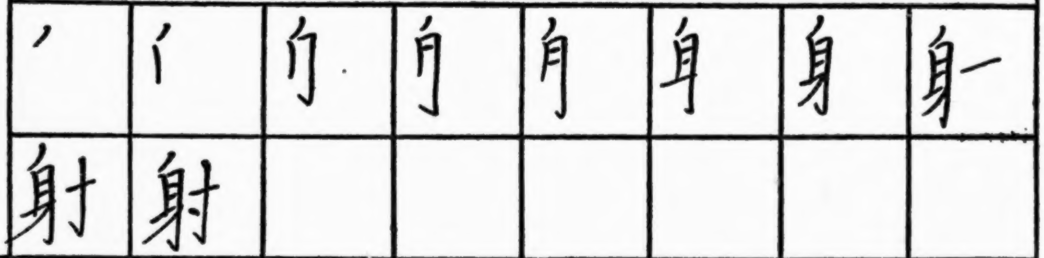
炮

Character Number 822 Radical Number 86
Stroke Number 9 火，火



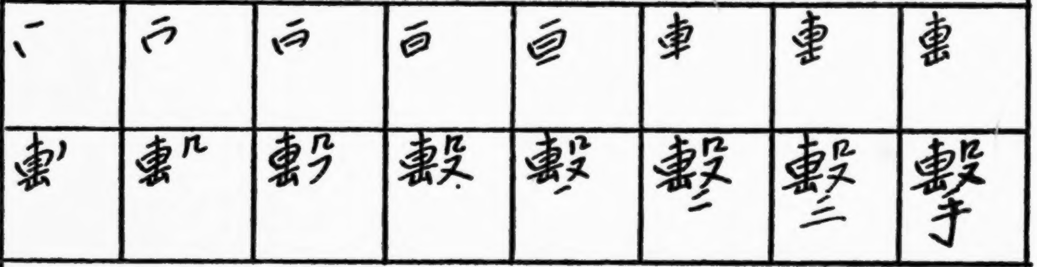
射

Character Number 964 Radical Number 41
Stroke Number 10 寸



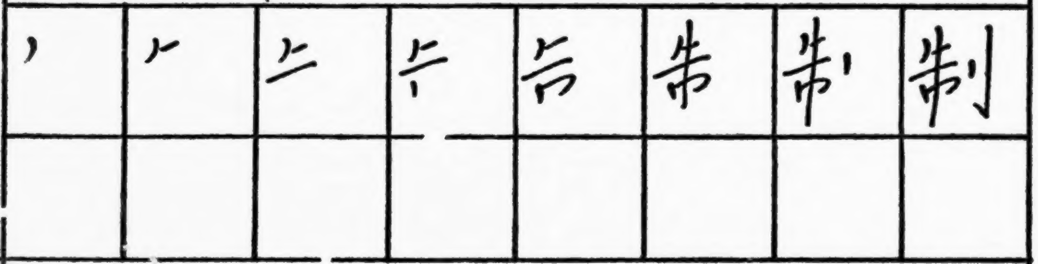
擊

Character Number 453 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 17 手



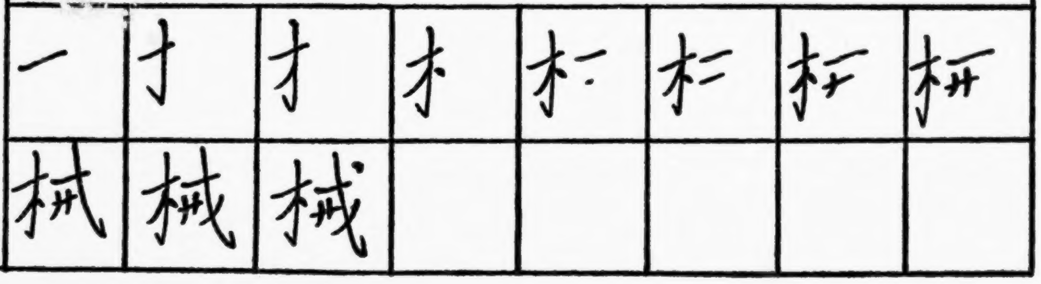
制

Character Number 25 Radical Number 18
Stroke Number 8 刂，刀

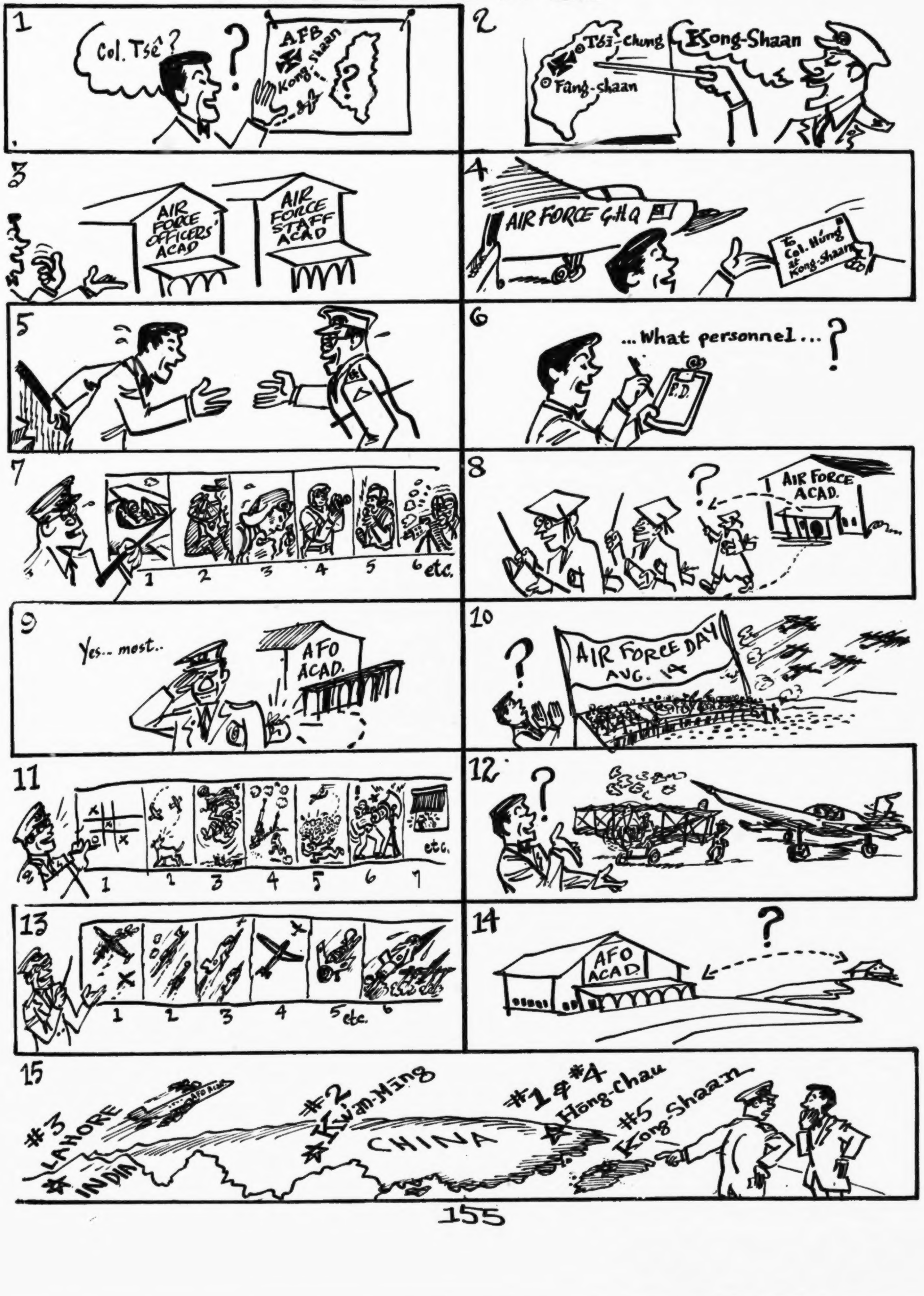


械

Character Number 238 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 11 木，木



LESSON 14


1
Col. Tsê?
?
AFB
Kong-shaan
?
2
Tôi-chung
Fûng-shaan
Kong-Shaan
3
AIR FORCE OFFICERS' ACAD
AIR FORCE STAFF ACAD
4
AIR FORCE G.H.Q
To Col. Hùng at Kong-Shaan
5
6
...What personnel...?
P.D.
7
1
2
3
4
5
6 etc.
8
?
AIR FORCE ACAD.
9
Yes... most..
AFO ACAD.
10
?
AIR FORCE DAY
AUG. 14
11
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
etc.
12
?
13
1
2
3
4
5 etc.
6
14
AFO ACAD
?
15
#3 LAHORE
INDIA
#2 Kvan-Ming
CHINA
#1 & #4 Hông-chau
#5 Kong-Shaan

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î. Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù, Hung-Kwan kei-teî Kong-Shaan haî pin-shuè à?

Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. Kong-Shaan haî T'oî-Chung ĭ-naām, Fûng-Shaan ĭ-pak.

Wōng-Î. Ngŏh seúng ts'aam-koon kôh-shuè kè Hung-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû t'ūng Hung-Kwan Ts'aam-Maū Hôk-Haaû.

Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. Hung-Kwan Tsúng-Sz-Lîng-Pô yaŭ yat-kà chuen kei fei huî Kong-Shaan. Neĭ hóh-ĭ taàp kôh kà fei-kei huî. Ni fung haî ngŏh sê peî Húng Sheûng-Kaaù kè kaaî-shiû sùn.

Wōng-Î. Húng Sheûng-Kaaù, ngŏh seúng laî ni-shuè ts'aam-koon-hă.

Wōng-Î. Kwaan-ue hung-k'ān fong-mîn, neĭ-teî sui-iù pin chúng yān-uēn à?

Húng Sheûng-Kaaù. Ngŏh-teî iù fàn-lîn fei-hāng uēn, lĭng-hōng uēn, kwang-chà uēn, ching-ch'aàt uēn, t'ung-sùn uēn, kei-kwaan-ts'eung-shaú, táng-táng.

Wōng-Î. Neĭ-teî kè kaaù-koon toh-shò haî Hung-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû ĭ-ts'în kè pat-îp shaang, haî mà?

Húng Sheûng-Kaaù. Haî, k'uĭ-teî toh-shò haî Hung-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû ĭ-ts'în kè pat-îp shaang.

Wōng-Î. Paàt-yat-seî Hung-Kwan Tsît kè shî-haû, neĭ-teî yaŭ mi-yĕ tsît-mûk à?

Húng Sheûng-Kaaù. Paàt-uêt shâp-seî Hung-Kwan Tsît kè shî-haû,

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

ngŏh-teî yaŭ fei-hāng piú-în, hó-ts'z̆ p'in-tuî* fei-hāng; hung-chìn; t'iù-saàn piú-în; fōng-hung în-tsaâp, hó-ts'z̆ hung-tsaâp, faàt kîng-pò, tang-fôh koón-chaî, tâng-tâng.

Wōng-Î. Neĭ-teî ni-shuè yaŭ ti mi-yĕ fei-kei à?

Húng Sheûng-Kaaù. Yaŭ kwang-chà kei, chìn-taù kei, k'ui-chûk kei, ching-ch'aàt kei t'ūng kaaù-lîn kei, tâng-tâng; î-ch'ê ngŏh-teî yaŭ kòk chúng kè p'àn-heî kei.

Wōng-Î. Hung-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû Ĭ-ts'în haî pin shuè à?

Húng Sheûng-Kaaù. Hung-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû haî Hōng-Chau shîng-lâp; k'òng-chìn kè shî-haû, poon huî Kw'an-Mîng t'ūng Yàn-Tô kè Laâp-Hōh. Taî-Î-Ts'z̀ Shaî-Kaaî Taaî-Chìn chi-haû, poon-faan-huî Hōng-Chau. Chung-Kwòk Kûng-Ch'aán-Tóng tsaû-laî chàm-lîng Chung-Kwòk taaî-lûk kè shî-haû, poon laî ni-shuè.

LESSON 14

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î: Col. Tsê, where is the Air Force Base, Kong-Shaan?

Col. Tsê: Kong-Shaan is located to the south of T’oī-Chung and the north of Fûng-Shaan.

W. I wish to visit the Air Force Officers Academy and the Air Force Staff Academy.

T. The General Headquarters of the Air Force has a special plane flying to Kong-Shaan which you can take. This is my letter of introduction to Col Húng.

W. Col. Húng, I have come here to visit.

W. Regarding the flight duties, what kinds of personnel do you need?

Col. Húng: We have to train pilots, navigators, bombardiers, air reconnaissance personnel, signal communication personnel, machinegunners, etc.

W. Most of your instructors are former graduates of the Air Force Officers Academy, is that right?

H. Yes, most of them are former graduates of the Air Force Officers Academy.

W. During Air Force Day on August 14th, what programs do you have?

H. During Air Force Day on 14th August we have airborne performances such as formation flights; dog fights; parachute-jumping demonstrations; and air-defense drills, as air raids, sounding of air raid alarms, blackouts, etc.

LESSON 14

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

W. What kinds of planes do you have here?

H. We have bombers, fighters, pursuit planes, reconnaissance planes, training planes, etc. Besides, we have various jet planes.

W. Where was the Air Force Officers Academy formerly located?

H. The Air Force Officers Academy was founded in Hŏng-Chau. It was moved to Kw'an-Mĭng and to Lahore, India during the Chinese War of Resistence. After World War II, it was moved back to Hŏng-Chau. When the Chinese Communists were about to occupy the China Mainland, it was moved here.

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. After the army seized the airport they handed it over to the air force.
2. She is a communist and she is an intelligence agent.
3. We had only a few jet planes a few years ago.
4. There are two seats in the trainer; one is for the student and the other for the instructor.
5. Do you know how to differentiate a transport plane from a fighter?
6. We have blackouts every night since the war started.
7. They sounded the air raid alarm as much as three or four times last night.
8. The enemy made several air raids to this city last week.
9. According to my younger brother, air defense drills are fun.
10. The air force showed off the new planes this afternoon.
11. They broke up the formation flight, and engaged in dog fight.
12. The machine gunner was wounded during the fight on the other side of the mountain.
13. For this modern jet plane, I need two communication personnel.
14. All crew members received air reconnaisance training.
15. We do not need any navigators or bombardiers. in this flight.
16. In my opinion, the ground crew is just as important as the flight crew.

LESSON 14

WORD LIST

1.	hung-k'ān-yān-uēn	flight crew members
2.	kĭng-hōng uēn	navigator
3.	kwang-chà uēn	bombardier
4.	ching-ch'aàt uēn	air reconnaissance personnel
5.	t'ung-sùn uēn	signal communication personnel
6.	kei-kwaan-ts'eung shaú	machine gunner
7.	p'in-tuî* fei-hāng	formation flight
8.	hung-chìn	dog fight
9.	t'iù-saàn piú-ìn	parachute-jumping
10.	fōng-hung ìn-tsaâp	air defense drill
11.	hung-tsaâp	air raid
12.	faàt kìng-pò	to issue air raid alarm
13.	tang-fóh koón-chaì	blackout (air defense)
14.	chìn-taù kei	fighter plane
15.	k'ui-chûk kei	pursuit plane
16.	kaaù-lîn kei	trainer (airplane)
17.	p'àn-heì kei	jet plane
18.	kûng-ch'aán tóng	communist, communist party
19.	chìm-lĭng	to occupy, seize

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

564

轟	kwang: to rumble; to roar; to crash; to bomb.
轟破	kwang p'òh: to blow to pieces.
轟擊	kwang-kik: to bombard.

1192

黨	tóng: faction; party; clan; association.
黨派	tóng-p'aaì: party, faction.
工黨	kung t óng: labor party.
革命黨	kaàk-mîng tóng: revolutionary party.
國民黨	kwòk-mān-tóng: Nationalist party

89

佔	chìm: to usurp; seize
強佔	k'ēung chìm: to take by force; usurp
佔領	chìm-lǐng: to s ize territory "o cupation"
佔據	chìm-kuì: to occupy forcibly

轟 黨 党 佔

轟 黨 佔

轟 党 佔

217

付	foô: to transfer; give to; to send
付託	foô-t'òk: entrust with
付貨	foô fòh: to deliver goods

541

攻	kung: to strike; to attack; to assault.
攻打	kung tá: to attack (in battle).
攻擊	kung-kik: to attack (in word or deed)
反攻	faán-kung: to counter-attack

付 攻

付 攻

付 攻

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

7

炸 chà: to explode

炸彈 chà-taân*: a bomb.

炸藥 chà-yeûk: dynamite.

油炸 yaū-chà: to fry in oil

爆炸 paaù-chà: to explode; explosion

1122

鬥 taù: to wrangle; to fight; to compete; contest.

鬥氣 taù-heì: pugnacious; belligerent.

械鬥 haaî taù: to fight with weapons.

74.

致 chì: to come to; attain; send; cause.

致敬 chì kìng: to show homage; to show deep respect.

致函 chì haām: send a letter to

炸 鬥 致

炸 鬥 致

炸 鬭 闘 鬥 致

1408

還 waān: to return; to repay; still.

還債 waān chaaì: to repay a debt.

還錢 waān ts'īn: to repay money.

還手 waān-shaú: to retaliate; to strike back.

3

鴨 aàp: duck

鴨 aàp*: duck (Cl. chèk)

水鴨 shuí-aàp: wild duck.

臘鴨 laâp-aàp: preserved duck.

還 还 鴨

還 鴨

还 鸭

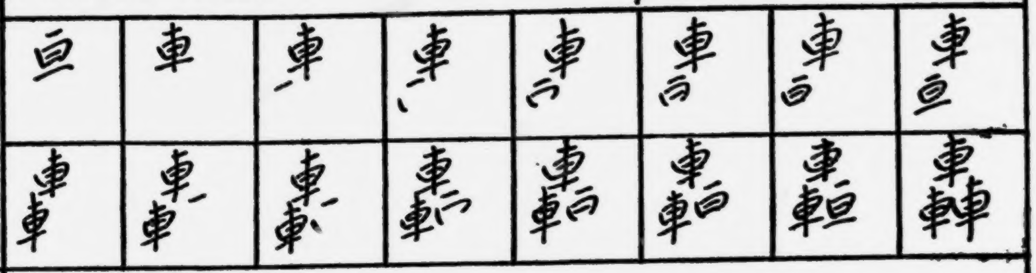
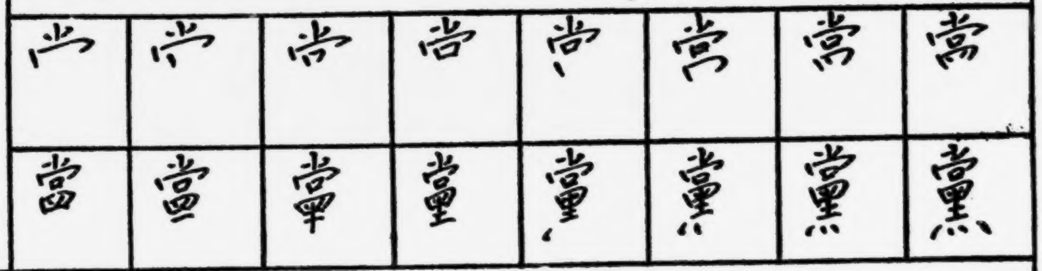
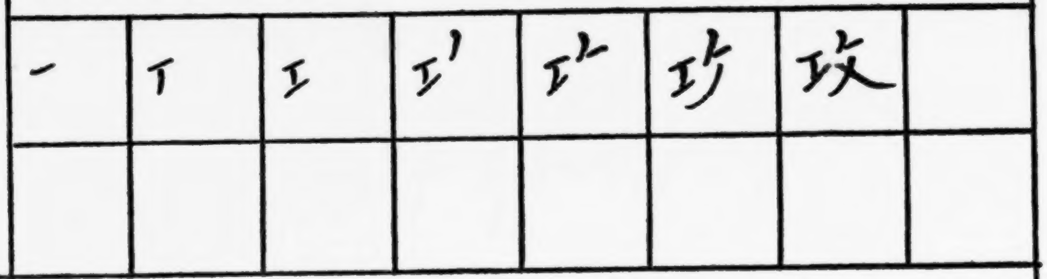
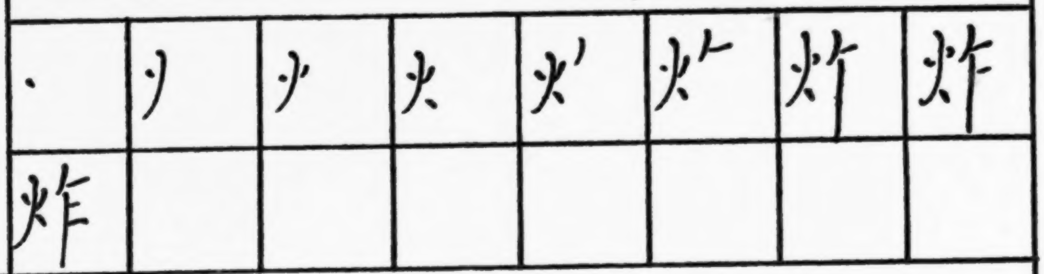
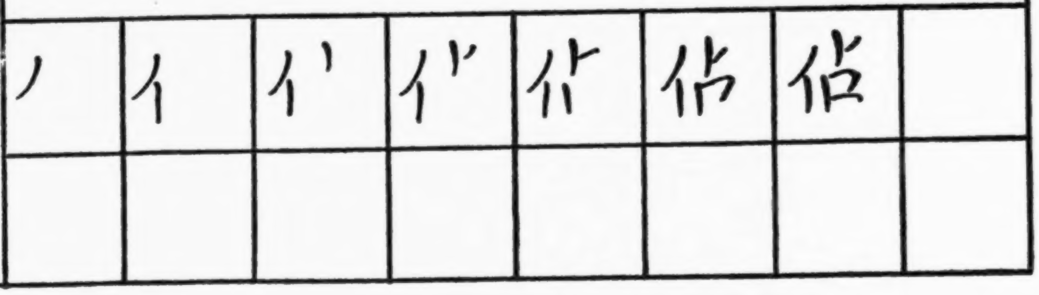
LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

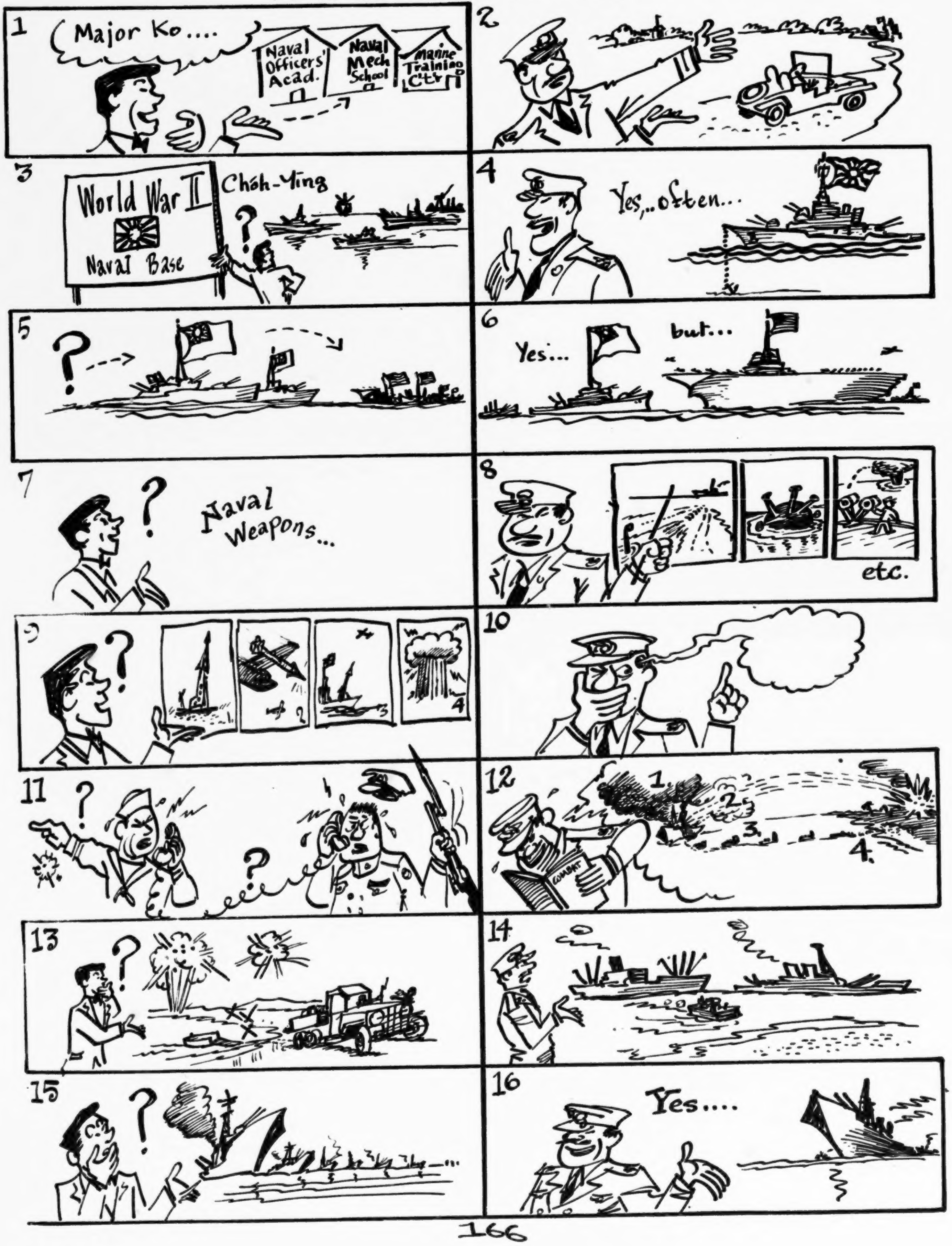
Kong 山喺台中以南，Fûng 山以北。係中國空軍嘅訓練基地。黃二想去嗰處參觀空軍軍官學校同空軍參謀學校。佢 taàp 空軍總司令部嘅專機去嗰處。喺 Kong 山，佢見到孔上校。孔上校講好多關於中國空軍嘅歷史，訓練，戰鬥術，等等。最後佢話，空軍軍官學校喺 Hōng 州成立，抗戰嘅時候搬去 Kw'an 明同印度，免致被敵人轟炸。第二次世界大戰之後，搬番去 Hōng 州；中國共產黨就黎佔領中國大陸嘅時候，搬黎 Kong 山。現在中國空軍軍力强大，唔只可以應付敵人嘅攻擊，而且可以還擊敵人。

LESSON 14

WRITING MATERIAL

轟	**Character Number** 564 **Radical Number** 159 **Stroke Number** 21 車 
黨	**Character Number** 1192 **Radical Number** 203 **Stroke Number** 20 黑 
攻	**Character Number** 541 **Radical Number** 66 **Stroke Number** 7 攵，攴 
炸	**Character Number** 7 **Radical Number** 86 **Stroke Number** 9 火，火 
佔	**Character Number** 89 **Radical Number** 9 **Stroke Number** 7 亻，人 

LESSON 15


1
Major Ko....
Naval Officers' Acad.
Naval Mech School
Marine Training Ctr
2
3
World War II
Naval Base
Chóh-Ying
?
4
Yes,..often...
5
?
6
Yes...
but...
7
?
Naval Weapons...
8
etc.
9
?
1
2
3
4
10
11
?
?
12
1.
2.
3.
4.
COMBAT
13
?
14
15
?
16
Yes....

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î. Ko Shiù-Kaaù, ngŏh seúng ts'aam-koon neĭ-teî kè Hoî-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû, Hoî-Kwan Kei-Haaî Hôk-Haaû, t'ūng Hoî-Kwan Lûk-Chìn-Tuî* Fàn-Lîn Chung-Sam.

Tsóh-Yìng Hoî-Kwan Kwan-Koon Hôk-Haaû luēn-lôk-koon Ko Shiù-Kaaù: Ni-shuè teî-fong hó taaî. Ngŏh-teî ts'ŏh kat-p'ó-ch'e tò shuè huì ts'aam-koon la.

Wōng-Î. T'eng-mān-wâ, haî Taî-Î-Ts'ž Shaì-Kaaì Taaî-Chìn kè shì-haû, Tsóh-Yìng haî Yât-Poón luēn-hôp laâm-tuî* kè Hoî-Kwan kei-teî, haî mà?

Ko Shiù-Kaaù: Haî, Tsóh-Yìng haî kóh chân-shì Yât-Poón luēn-hôp laâm-tuî* kè Hoî-Kwan kei-teî. Luēn-hôp laâm-tuî* kè k'eì-laâm shì shì t'ìng haì ni-shuè.

Wōng-Î. Chung-Kwòk Hoî-Kwan yaŭ mŏ laâm-tuî* à? K'uĭ-teî kè tsó-chik yaŭ mŏ Meĭ-Kwòk Taî-Ts'at Laâm-Tuî* kè kòm uēn-ts'uēn à?

Ko Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk Hoî-Kwan yaŭ laâm-tuî*, taân-haî k'uĭ-teî kè tsó-chik hó kaán-taan, mŏ Meĭ-Kwòk kè kòm uēn-ts'uēn. Ngŏh-teî mŏ hōng-hung-mŏ-laâm, mŏ chuê-lîk-laâm.

Wōng-Î. Neĭ-teî yaŭ mi-yĕ Hoî-Kwan mŏ-heì à?

Ko Shiù-Kaaù? Ngŏh-teî kè Hoî-Kwan mŏ-heì haî uē-luì, shuî-luì, sham-shuî chà-taân*, tâng-tâng.

Wōng-Î. Neĭ-teî yaŭ mŏ tsẑ-tô fei-taân* à, hó-ts'ž lûk-tuì-

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

hung kè fei-taân*, hung-tuī-hung kè fei-taân* hoī-tuī-hung kè fei-taân*, t'ūng k'eī-t'a kè uēn-tsž mŏ-heī?

Ko Shiù-Kaaù: Ni-ti haî tsuī-ko kwòk-fōng peī-mât; ngŏh m̄-haî keî chi-tò.

Wōng-Î. Tsòk-chīn kè shī-haû, Hoī-Kwan tîm-yeûng* p'ooī-hôp Hoī-Kwan Lûk-Chīn-Tuî* tsòk-chīn à?

Ko Shiù-Kaaù: Ni poón shue kông-k'âp k'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* p'ooī-hôp tsòk-chīn. Tsuī-ch'oh yaū Hoī-Kwan fòng in-môk, t'ūng yûng taaî-p'aaù kwang-kik tîk-yān kè hoī-ngôn. Haî Hoī-Kwan kè p'aaù-fóh îm-oô chi-hâ, lûk-chīn-tuî* t'ūng kòk chúng shuî-lûk-leŭng-ts'ai pô-tuî* ts'ŏh tang-lûk-t'ĕng huī-tò tîk-yān kè hoī-ngôn, kīn-lâp t'aan-t'aū-chân-teî. Ni-ti kiù-tsô shuî-lûk-leŭng-ts'ai tsòk-chīn.

Wōng-Î. Haî tîk-yān kè hoī-ngôn tang-lûk chi-haû, neĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* waī-ch'ī hoī-sheûng kè pó-k'ap sīn à?

Ko Shiù-Kaaù: Ngŏh-teî yûng wân-shue-laâm t'ūng k'eī-t'a kè chīn-laâm waī-ch'ī hoī-sheûng kè pó-k'ap sīn.

Wōng-Î. Uē-kwóh haî kóm, neĭ-teî yat-tîng iù yaŭ hó k'eūng-taaî kè oô-hōng-tuî*, haî mà?

Ko Shiù-Kaaù: Haî, ngŏh-teî yat-tîng iù yaŭ hó k'eūng-taaî kè oô-hōng tuî*.

LESSON 15

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wŏng-Î: Major Ko, I wish to visit the Naval Officers Academy, the Navy Mechanized School and the Marine Training Center.

Major Ko, the Liaison Officer of the Naval Officers Academy at Chŏ́h-Yĭng: This area is very large. Let's use a jeep to tour the base.

W. I heard that during World War II Chŏ́h-Yĭng was the Japanese Joint Fleet's naval base. Is that right?

K. Yes, Chŏ́h-Yĭng was then the Japanese Joint Fleet's naval base, and the flagship of the joint fleet often anchored here.

W. Does the Chinese Navy have a fleet? Is their organization as complete as that of the U.S. Seventh Fleet?

K. Yes, the Chinese Navy has a fleet, but their organization is very simple and not as complete as that of the U.S. fleet. We don't have aircraft carriers and battleships.

W. What kinds of naval weapons do you have?

K. Our naval weapons are torpedoes, mines, depth charges, etc.

W. Do you have guided missiles such as land to air missiles, air to air missiles, sea to air missiles, and other nuclear weapons.

K. These are the top secrets of national defense, I don't know them very well.

W. How does the Navy coordinate with the Marines in time of combat?

LESSON 15

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

K. This book tells you how they coordinate in combat. At first, the Navy lays a smoke screen and bombards the sea of the enemy's shore. Then, under the protective cover of the naval artillery fire, the Marines and other amphibious units go in landing crafts to the enemy's shore to establish a beachhead. This is known as an amphibious operation.

W. How do you maintain the sea supply line after landing on the enemy's shore?

K. We use the transports and other warships to maintain the sea supply line.

W. If this is the case, won't you have to have a powerful and large convoy?

K. Yes, we have to have a powerful and large convoy.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The convoy will be here soon; then we will have more men and supplies.
2. It is very difficult to maintain the sea supply line if we don't have sufficient numbers of ships.
3. The amphibious unit established a beachhead last night.
4. Under the protective cover of artillery fire the marines landed on the island.
5. The enemy bombards the city every other day.
6. By means of a smoke screen, the marines crossed the river and established a beachhead.
7. Col. Cheung is the officer who coordinates the operation of these two units.
8. Guided missiles are no longer top secret weapons.
9. The flag-ship is so huge that it is quite a walk from one end to the other.
10. The fleet has twenty ships and the flag-ship is the largest.
11. The water is full of sea mines and the fleet is facing certain danger.
12. If you have any pistols, you should register it at the police station.
13. The ship carries guided missiles in addition to torpedos and depth charges.
14. In order to transport the supplies to the front line, we need ten trucks and two jeeps.
15. We will coordinate by means of telephone.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. The army trains amphibious units with the help of the navy.

LESSON 15

WORD LIST

1.	hoì-kwan lûk-chìn-tuî*	marines
2.	kat-p'ó-ch'e	jeep
3.	luēn-hôp laâm-tuî*	joint fleet
4.	k'eì-laâm	flag-ship
5.	mŏ-heì	weapons
6.	uē-luì	torpedo
7.	shuì-luì	mine (navy)
8.	sham-shuì chà-taân*	depth charge
9.	tsẑ-tô fei-taân*	guided missile
10.	tsuì-ko kwòk-fōng peì-mât	top secret of national defense
11.	p'ooì-hôp tsòk-chìn	to coordinate the operation
12.	in-môk	smoke screen
13.	p'aaù-kwang	to bombard, to shell
14.	haì...p'aaù-fóh ìm-oô chi-hâ	under the protective cover of...
15.	shuì-lûk-leŭng-ts'ai pô-tuî*	amphibious unit
16.	kìn-lâp t'aan-t'aū-chân-teî	to establish a beachhead
17.	waì-ch'ì hoì-sheûng kè pó-k'ap sìn	to maintain the sea supply line
18.	oô-hōng tuî*	convoy (navy)

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

895

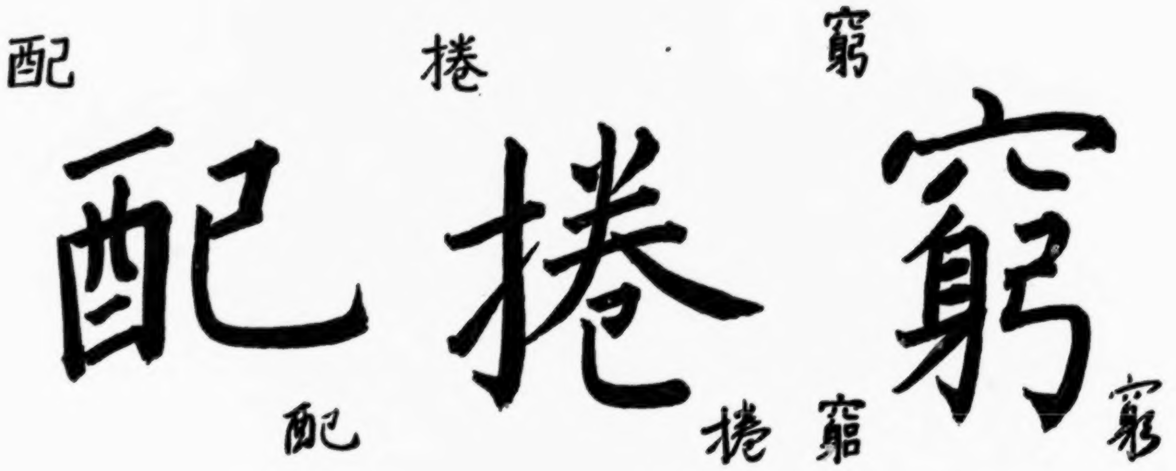
配	p'ooì: to pair; to mate; a mate.
配合	p'ooì-hôp: to match; to pair; to fit.
配偶	p'ooì-ngaŭ: a married couple.

524

捲	kuén: to roll up.
捲埋	kuén maaī: to roll up.
捲髮	kuén faăt: curly hair.

544

窮	k'ūng: poor; improverished; destitute; exhausted.
窮人	k'ūng-yān: a poor man; the poor.
報窮	pò k'ūng: to plead bankruptcy.
窮途	k'ūng t'ō: straitened circumstances

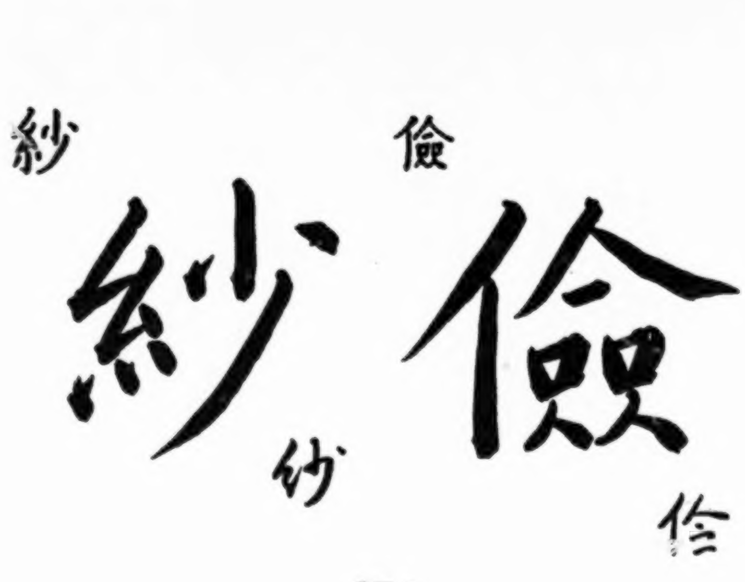


929

紗	sha: gauze; crape; sarcenet; yarn.
紗窗	sha ch'eung: gauze window.
竹紗	chuk-sha: mercerized cotton cloth.

456

儉	kîm: economical; frugal.
節儉	tsît-kîm: thrifty; frugal.
勤儉	k'ān-kîm: industrious and thrifty.



LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

421

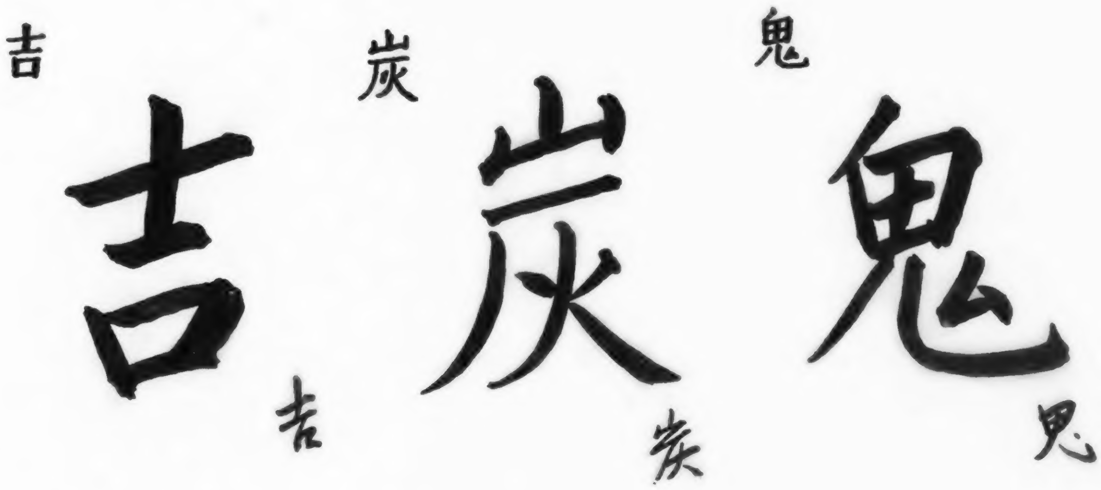
吉	kat: fortunate; luckly.
大吉	taaî kat: very lucky.
吉日	kat yât: lucky day
吉林	kat-lām: Kirin

1094

炭	t'aàn: coal; charcoal.
炭氣	t'aàn-heì: carbonic gas.
炭紙	t'aàn chí: carbon paper.

551

鬼	kwaí: disembodied spirit; devil; ghost.
魔鬼	moh-kwaí: the devil; demon.
鬼鼠	kwaí-shué: unopenly; sneaky.

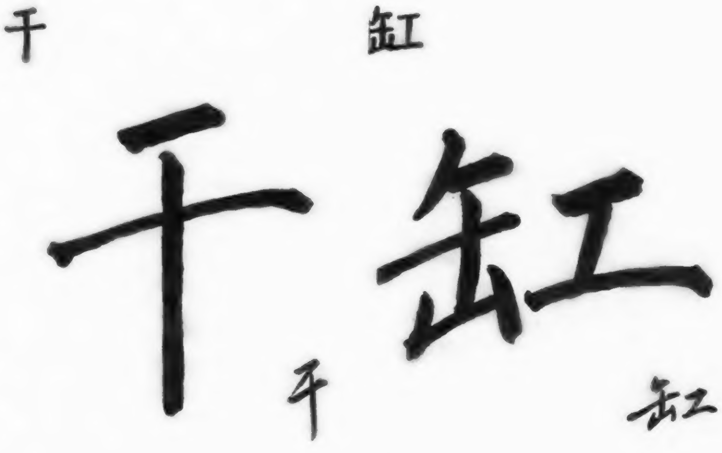


496

干	kon: to concern; a shield.
干涉	kon-shìp: to interfere; to have a hand in.
干連	kon-līn: to implicate; to involve.
若干	yeûk-koṇ: how many? an indefinite number.

1501

缸	kong: pottery; jar.
缸瓦	kong-ngǎ: earthenware.
水缸	shuí kong: a water jar.



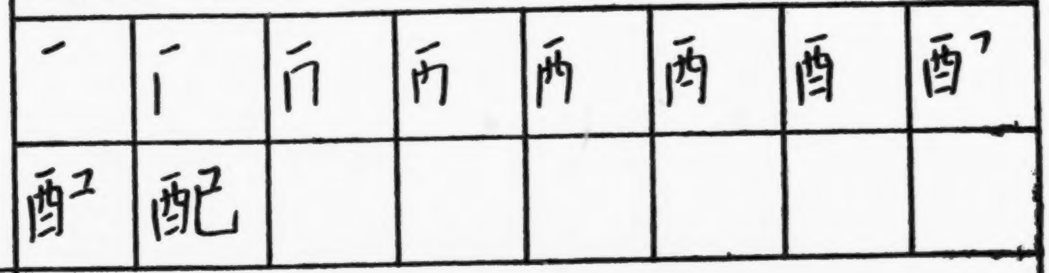
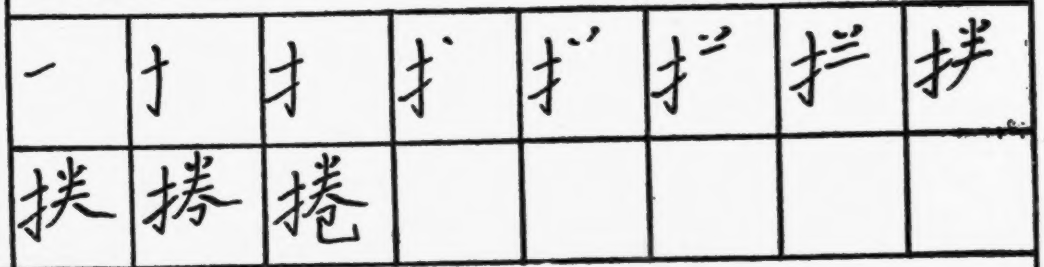
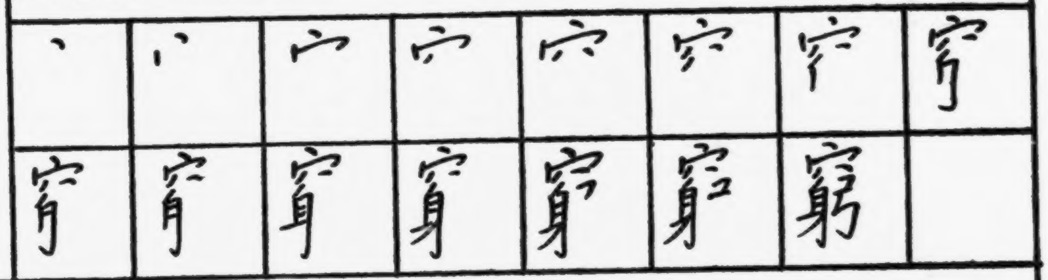
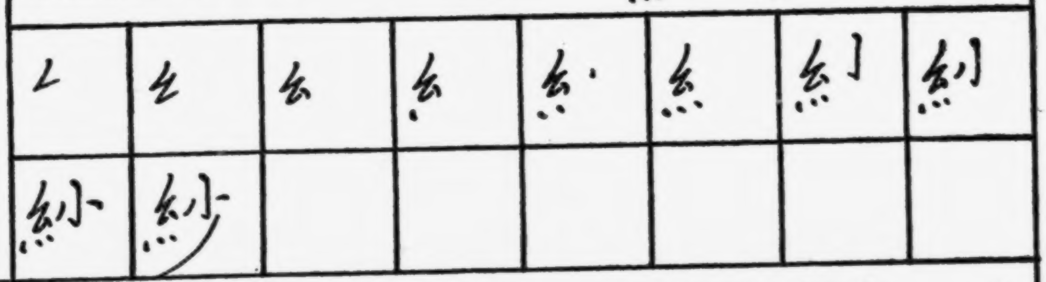
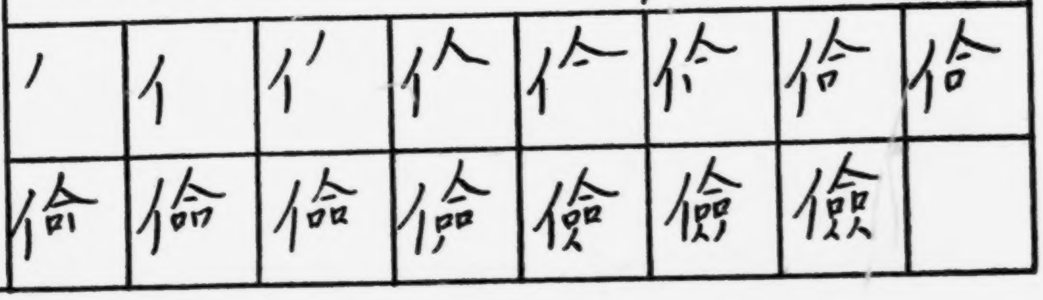
LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

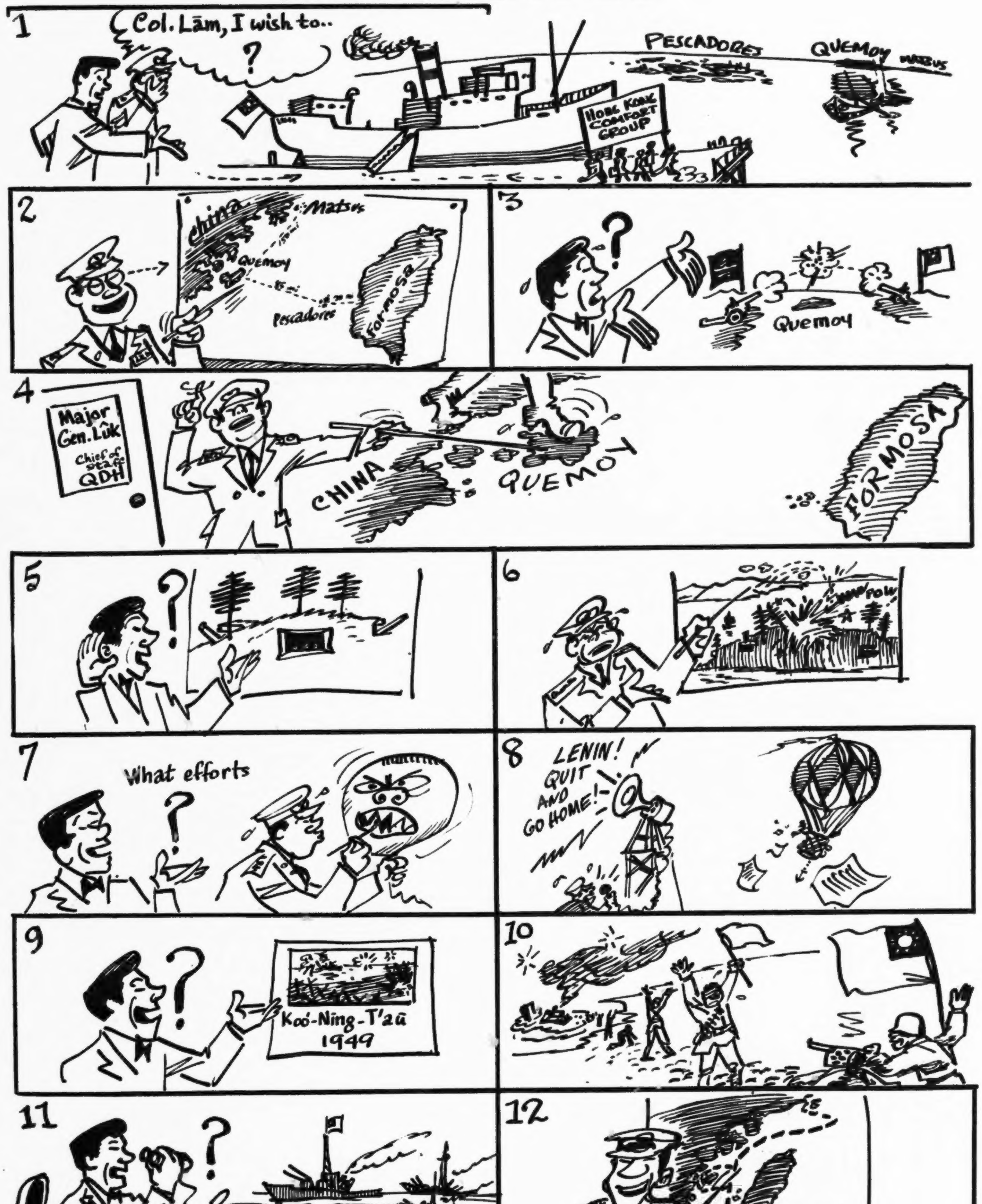
黄二兩家參觀左營嘅海軍軍官學校，佢同聯 lŏk 官高少校坐一架吉普車到處去參觀。高少校同黄二講好多關於左營嘅歷史，中國艦隊嘅組織同中國嘅武器。最後佢講及海軍同海軍陸戰隊點樣配合作戰。佢話最初由海軍放烟幕，同炮轟敵人嘅海岸。喺海軍嘅炮火 im 護之下，陸戰隊同各種水陸兩 ts'ai 部隊就坐登陸 t'ĕng 去到敵人嘅海岸建立 t'aan 頭陣地。海軍除咗呢種任務之外，重負責維持海上嘅補給線。

LESSON 15

WRITING MATERIAL

配	Character Number 895 Stroke Number 10 Radical Number 164 酉	
捲	Character Number 524 Stroke Number 11 Radical Number 64 扌, 手	
窮	Character Number 544 Stroke Number 15 Radical Number 116 穴	
紗	Character Number 929 Stroke Number 10 Radical Number 126 糹, 糸	
儉	Character Number 456 Stroke Number 15 Radical Number 9 亻, 人	

LESSON 16


1
Col. Lãm, I wish to..
?
PESCADORES
QUEMOY
MATSUS
HONG KONG COMFORT GROUP
2
china
Matsus
Quemoy
Pescadores
FORMOSA
3
?
Quemoy
4
Major Gen. Lûk
Chief of Staff QDH
CHINA
QUEMOY
FORMOSA
5
?
6
POW
7
What efforts
?
8
LENIN! QUIT AND GO HOME!
9
?
Koó-Ning-T'aū
1949
10
11
?
12
Blockade Line

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î. Lām Sheûng-Kaaù, ngŏh seúng t'ūng Heung-Kóng laì kè waì-lō-t'uēn huì ts'aam-koon uēn-hoì kòk tó-chuî: P'aāng-Oō, Kam-Moōn, Mă-Tsó. Neĭ yaŭ mi-yĕ ì-kìn à?

T'oì-Waan Fōng-Shaú Sz-Lîng-Pô kè Lām Sheûng-Kaaù: T'oì-Waan haî tsẑ-yaū shaì-kaaì kè chûng-iù pó-luĭ; P'aāng-Oō, Kam-Moōn t'ūng Mă-Tsó haî T'oì-Waan kè ts'ìn-waî. Neĭ ying-koi huì t'aì-hă.

Wōng-Î. Lûk Shiù-Tseùng, tîm-kaaî Kam-Moōn tuì ngŏh-teî t'ūng tîk-yān to kòm chûng-iù à?

Kam-Moōn Fōng-Shaú Sz-Lîng-Pô kè Ts'aam-Maū-Cheúng Lûk Shiù-Tseùng: Yan-waî Kam-Moōn leì taaî-lûk hó k'ăn, uē-kwóh tîk-yān seúng tsùn-kung T'oì-Waan, yat-tîng sin iù chìm-lĭng Kam-Moōn, uē-kóh Kwòk-Kwan faân-kung taaî-lûk, yat-tîng iù king-kwóh Kam-Moōn. Shóh-ĭ Kam-Moōn haî Kwòk-Kwan faân-kung taaî-lûk kè taâp-keùk-shêk. Uē-Kwóh ngŏh-teî shaú-chuê Kam-Moōn, hóh-ĭ hin-chaì keì -shâp-maân tîk kwan.

Wōng-Î. Lûk Shiù-Tseùng, t'eng-mān-wâ, Kam-Moōn kè fōng-uê kung-sẑ toh shò haî teî-hâ kung-sẑ. Tîm-kaaî à?

Lûk Shiù-Tseùng. Yan-waî Kam-Moōn haî tîk-yān kè uĕn-ch'ìng-p'aaù kè p'aaù-fóh shê-ch'ìng chi-noî, ngŏh-teî yat-tîng iù yaŭ teî-hâ kung-sẑ.

Wōng-Î. Neĭ-teî tuì tîk-yān kè sam-leĭ tsòk-chìn kung-tsòk tîm-yeûng* à?

Lûk Shiù-Tseùng. Yaŭ-shì ngŏh-teî yûng kwóng-pòh-heì kiù tîk-

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

yān t'aū-hōng; yaŭ-shī ngŏh-teî yûng heī-k'aū saàn ch'uĕn-taan.

Wōng-Î. Yat-kaú-seī-kaú nīn Koó-Nīng-T'aū Chīn-Yîk kè king-kwòh haî tîm kà?

Lûk Shiù-Tseùng. Kóng heî laī hó ch'eūng, taaî-k'oī* haî kóm: Tîk-yān haî Kam-Moōn kè Koó-Nīng-T'aū tang-lûk. Tîk-yān tang-lûk chi-haû, ngŏh-teî kè tsang-oōn pô-tuî* tseung tîk-yān t'ūng haû-fong kè kaau-t'ung sìn ts'īt-t'uĕn. Tîk-yān sheung-mōng hó ch'ŭng, hó toh heùng ngŏh-teî t'aū-hōng.

Wōng-Î. Maân-Sz-Cheúng, ngŏh-teî king-kwòh T'oī-Waan Hoī-Haâp kè shī-haû, kīn-tó hó toh Kwòk-Kwan kè chīn-laâm. K'uī-teî ch'uī-chôh fōng-shaú T'oī-Waan Hoī-Haâp chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ yâm-mô à?

P'aāng-Oō Fōng-Shaú Sz-Lîng-Pô kè Maân Sz-Cheúng: K'uī-teî k'eī-t'a kè yâm-mô haî ts'ūn-lōh T'oī-Waan Hoī-Haâp, fung-sôh Chung-Kwòk taaî-lûk. Neī t'aī-hă ni cheung teî-t'ō. Ni t'iū haî Kwòk-Kwan tuī Chung-Kwòk taaî-lûk kè fung-sôh sìn.

LESSON 16

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î: Col. Lām, I wish to go with the comfort group from Hong Kong to visit the offshore island Pescaodres, Quemoy, Matsu. What is your opinion?

Col. Lām of Taiwan Defense Headquarters: Formosa is an important bastion of the free world; Pescadores, Quemoy and Matsu are the vanguards of Formosa. You should go to take a look.

W. General Lûk, why is Quemoy so important both to us and to the enemy?

Major General Lûk, Chief of Staff of Quemoy Defense Headquarters: Because Quemoy is very close to the China Mainland. If the enemy wants to invade Formosa, they have to occupy Quemoy first; and if the Nationalist Army desires to counterattack the mainland, we have to pass through Quemoy. Therefore, Quemoy is the stepping stone for the Nationalist Army to invade the Mainland. If we hold Quemoy, we will be able to contain several hundred thousand of the enemy troops.

W. General Lûk, I heard that most of the fortifications of Quemoy are constructed underground. What is the reason for this?

L. We have to have the underground fortification because Quemoy is within range of the enemy's long range artillery.

W. What is the nature of your efforts in psychological warfare directed against the enemy?

LESSON 16

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

L. Sometimes we use a public address system to urge the enemy to surrender; sometimes we use balloons to drop leaflets.

W. How was the battle of Koó-Nìng-T'an̄ in 1949?

L. It is a very long story which goes something like this. The enemy landed on Koó-Nìng-T'an̄. After the enemy's landing, our reinforced units came to cut off the enemy's communication with their rear. The enemy's casualties were very heavy and many of them surrendered to our troops.

Wōng: Commander Maân, (Division Commander Maân) when we crossed the Formosan Strait we saw many Nationalist warships. Besides defending the Formosan Strait what other missions do they have?

Division Commander Maân of the Pescadores Defense Headquarters: Their other missions are to patrol the Formosa Strait and to blockade the Mainland of China. Take a look at this map. This is the blockade line against mainland of China.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The plan of blockade is the most important part of the invasion.
2. The police sometimes bring dogs to patrol the area.
3. Taiwan Strait is the strait that separates Communist China from Nationalist China.
4. We have many casualties, and our supply line is also cut off by the enemy.
5. The reinforcement came after the battle was over.
6. You might as well take these balloons home and give them to your children.
7. Don't you think it is too expensive to send a jet for the purpose of dropping a few leaflets.
8. I think you better surrender to us.
9. This temporary headquarters is not within the range of enemy's artillery.
10. Major Wōng is the officer in charge of this artillery unit.
11. Defensive positions are set up in all off-shore islands.
12. There are two students included in the casualties.
13. The defense headquarters plan a counterattack at the later part of this year.
14. This defensive position is established by the army.
15. The mayor's office is the stepping stone to the Governor's office.
16. Our unit is being contained by the enemy's reinforcement.

LESSON 16

WORD LIST

1.	uēn-hoì tó-chuî	off-shore islands
2.	waì-lō t'uēn	comfort group
3.	T'oì-Waan Fōng-Shaŭ Sz-Lîng-Pô	Taiwan Defense Headquarters
4.	pó-luĭ	bastion fortress
5.	tsùm-kung	to invade, advance; invasion
6.	faàn-kung	to counterattack; counterattack
7.	taâp-keùk-shêk	stepping stone
8.	hin-chaì	to contain (military)
9.	fōng-uê kung-sẑ	fortification, field works
10.	haì uĕn-ch'ìng-p'aaù kè p'aaù-fóh shê ch'ìng chi noî	within the fire range of the long range artilley
11.	heùng...t'aū hōng	to surrender to ...
12.	heì-k'aū	balloon
13.	saàn ch'uēn-taan	to cast leaflets (from the air)
14.	chìn-yîk	campaign (combat)
15.	tsang-oōn pô-tuî*	reinforced unit; reinforcement
16.	ts'ìt-t'uĕn	to cut off
17.	sheung-mōng	casualty
18.	T'oì-Waan Hoì-Haâp	Taiwan Strait
19.	ts'ūn-lōh	to patrol
20.	fung-sóh	to blockade; blockade

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

1270

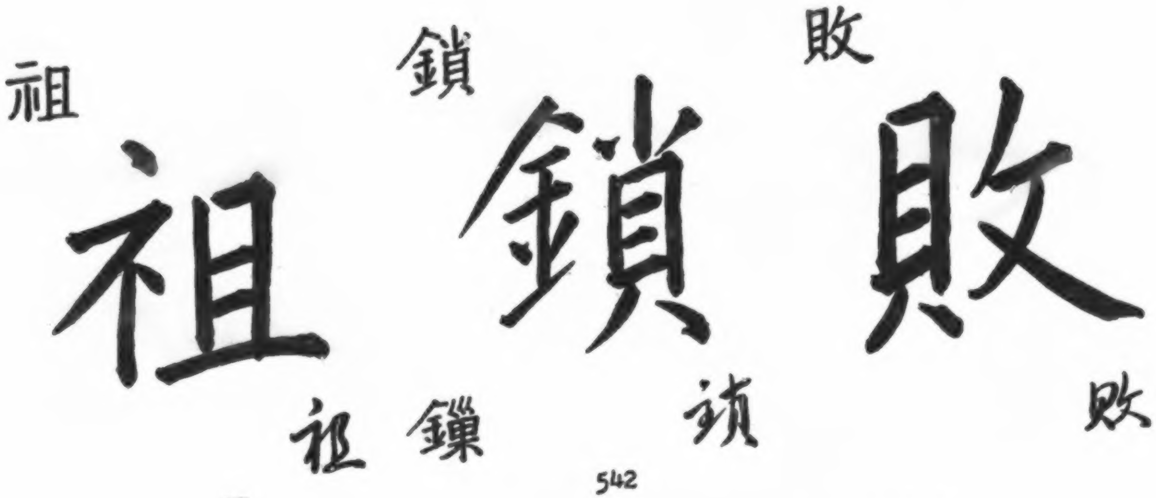
祖	tsó: ancestor; founder.
祖國	tsó-kwòk: fatherland.
祖父	tsó-foô: grandfather.

1043

鎖	sóh: lock; to look.
鎖住	sóh chuê: under look and key.
鎖匙	sóh-shī: a key.

808

敗	paaî: defeated; destroyed; ruined.
腐敗	foô-paaî: corruption.
失敗	shat-paaî: defeated; ruined; failure.

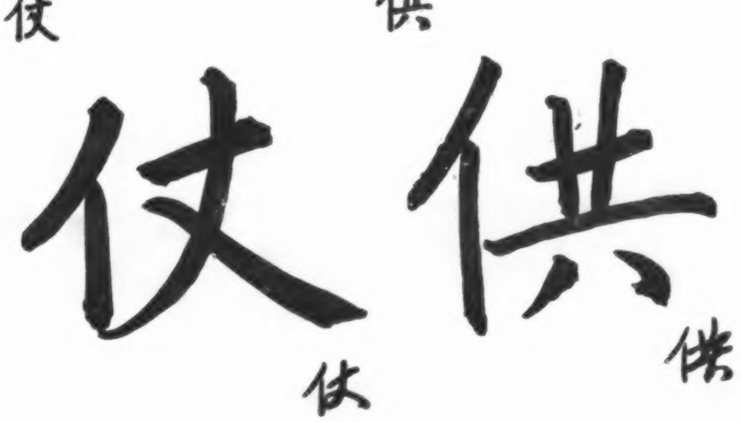


57

仗	cheùng: warfare; weapons.
仗	cheùng: to rely on; to trust.
打仗	tá-cheùng: to make war
打勝仗	tá-shìng-cheùng: to win a victory.
仗義	cheùng-î: stirred to action by righteousness

542

供	kung: to contribute to give evidence.
供認	kung-yîng: to confess; to admit.
口供	haú-kung: a verbal deposition.
供給	kung-k'ap: to supply; to furnish.



LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

1019

縮 shuk: to draw back; to contract; to shrink.

縮短 shuk tuén: to shrink; shorter.

退縮 t'uì shuk: to retreat; to draw back.

265

欺 hei: to deceive; cheat; oppress

欺騙 hei-p'ìn: to cheat; deceive

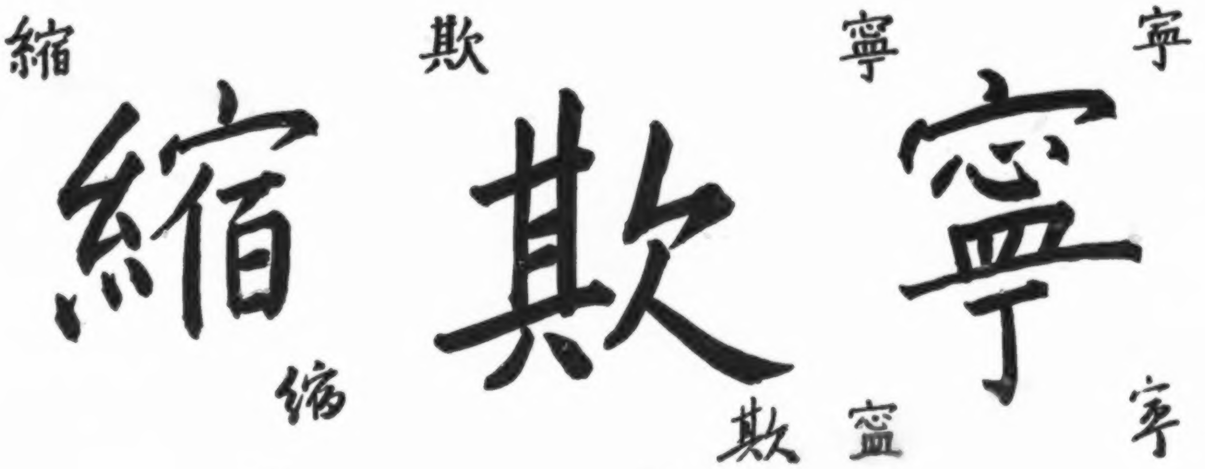
欺人 hei yān: to impose upon or on other; to deceive

765

寧 nīng: rather; it is better; it is easier.

寧願 nīng-uên: to prefer.

寧可 nīng-hóh: better that......



1412

威 wai: majesty; pomp; awful; pretty; authoritativeness.

威嚴 wai-īm: majestic and stern.

威風 wai-fung: awe-inspring reputation

發威 faat wai: to show sternness

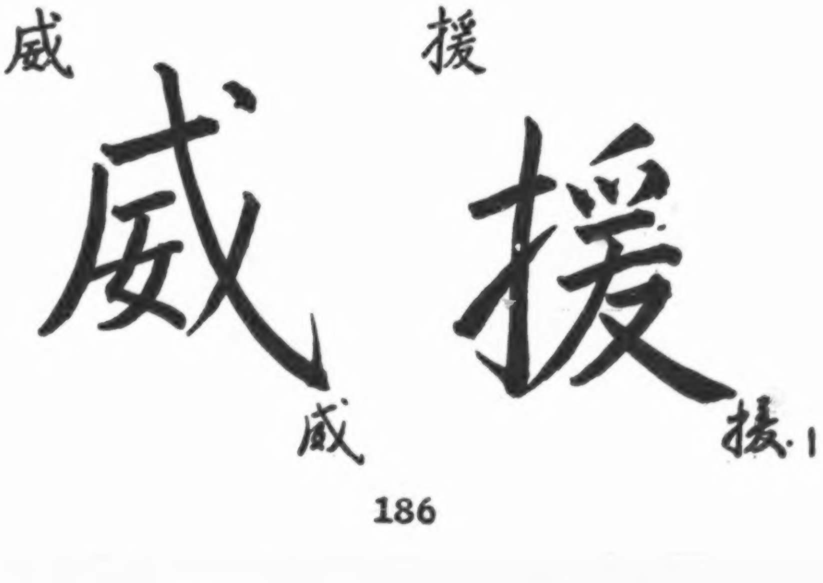
794

援 oôn: pull out; to rescue; to quote.

援救 oôn-kaù: to relieve; to rescue; to assist; to help.

援兵 oôn ping: reinforcement.

援助 oôn-chôh: to help; to aid; to give support to.



LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

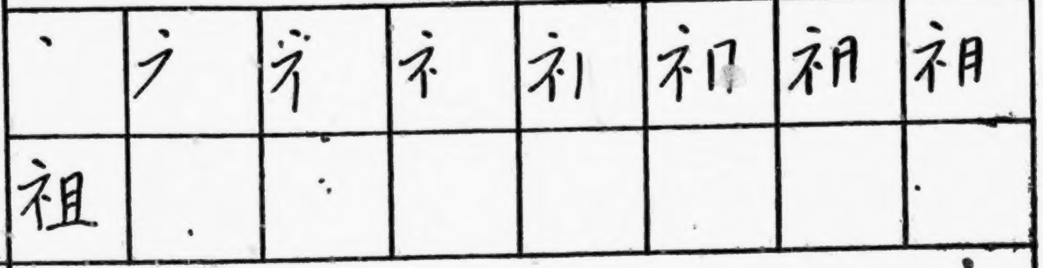
黃二去台灣防守司令部見林上校。黃二話，佢想同香港黎嘅慰勞團去參觀沿海島chuî , P'aāng-湖，金門，馬祖。林上校話台灣係自由世界嘅重要pô-luî ; P'aāng-湖，金門，同馬祖係台灣嘅前衛。黃二去到金門嘅時候，佢見到參謀長陸少將；陸參謀長同黃二講一九四九年古寧頭戰役嘅經過。佢話我地嘅增援部隊，將敵人嘅交通線切斷，敵人得唔到供給，就打敗仗。後來佢地去P'aāng-湖；佢地經過台灣海-hâp嘅時候，見到好多國軍嘅戰艦，封鎖中國大陸係嗰啲戰艦嘅任務之一。

LESSON 16

WRITING MATERIAL

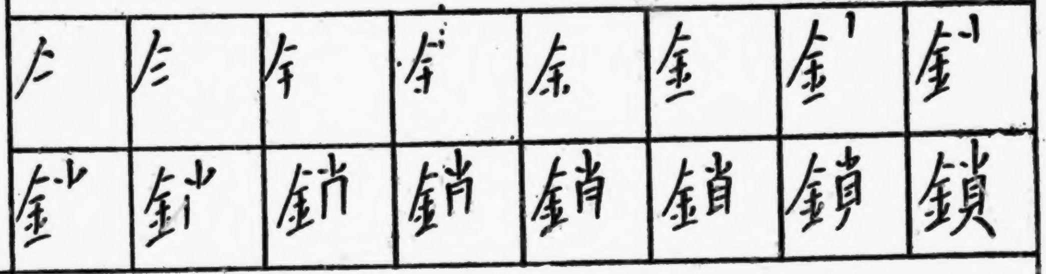
祖

Character Number 1270 Radical Number 113
Stroke Number 9 礻，示



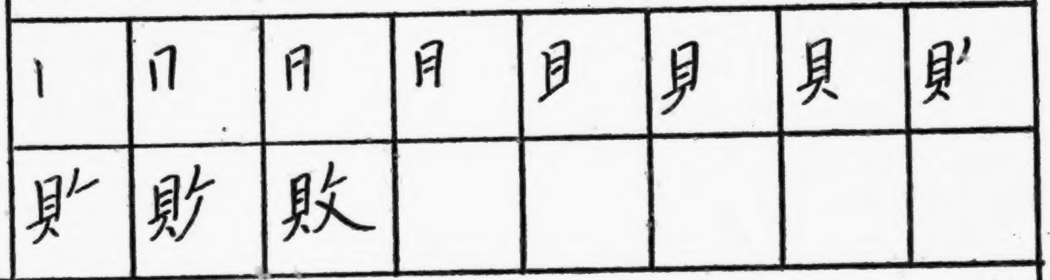
鎖

Character Number 1043 Radical Number 167
Stroke Number 18 金，金



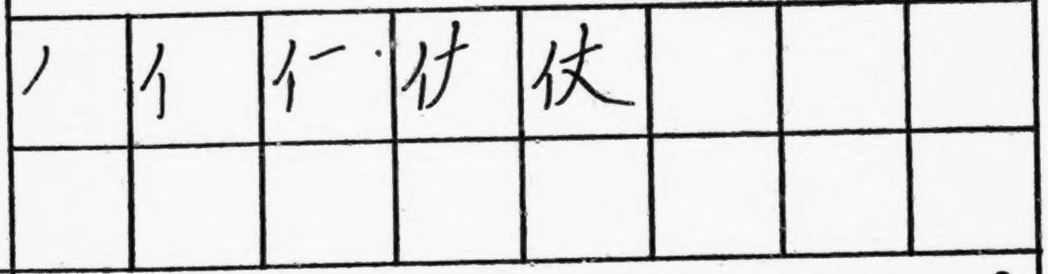
敗

Character Number 808 Radical Number 66
Stroke Number 11 攵，攴



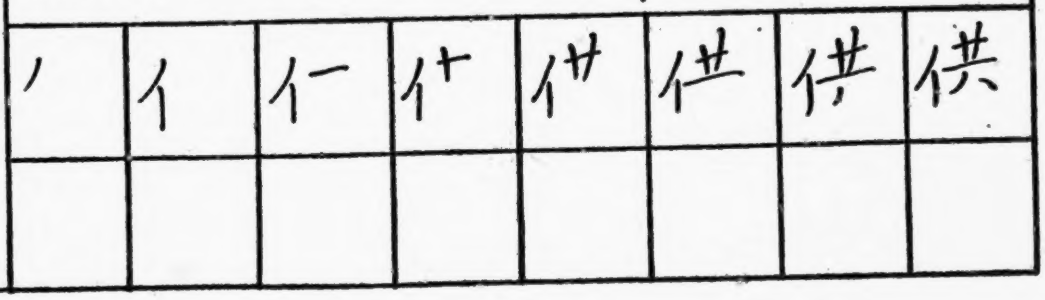
仗

Character Number 57 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 5 亻，人

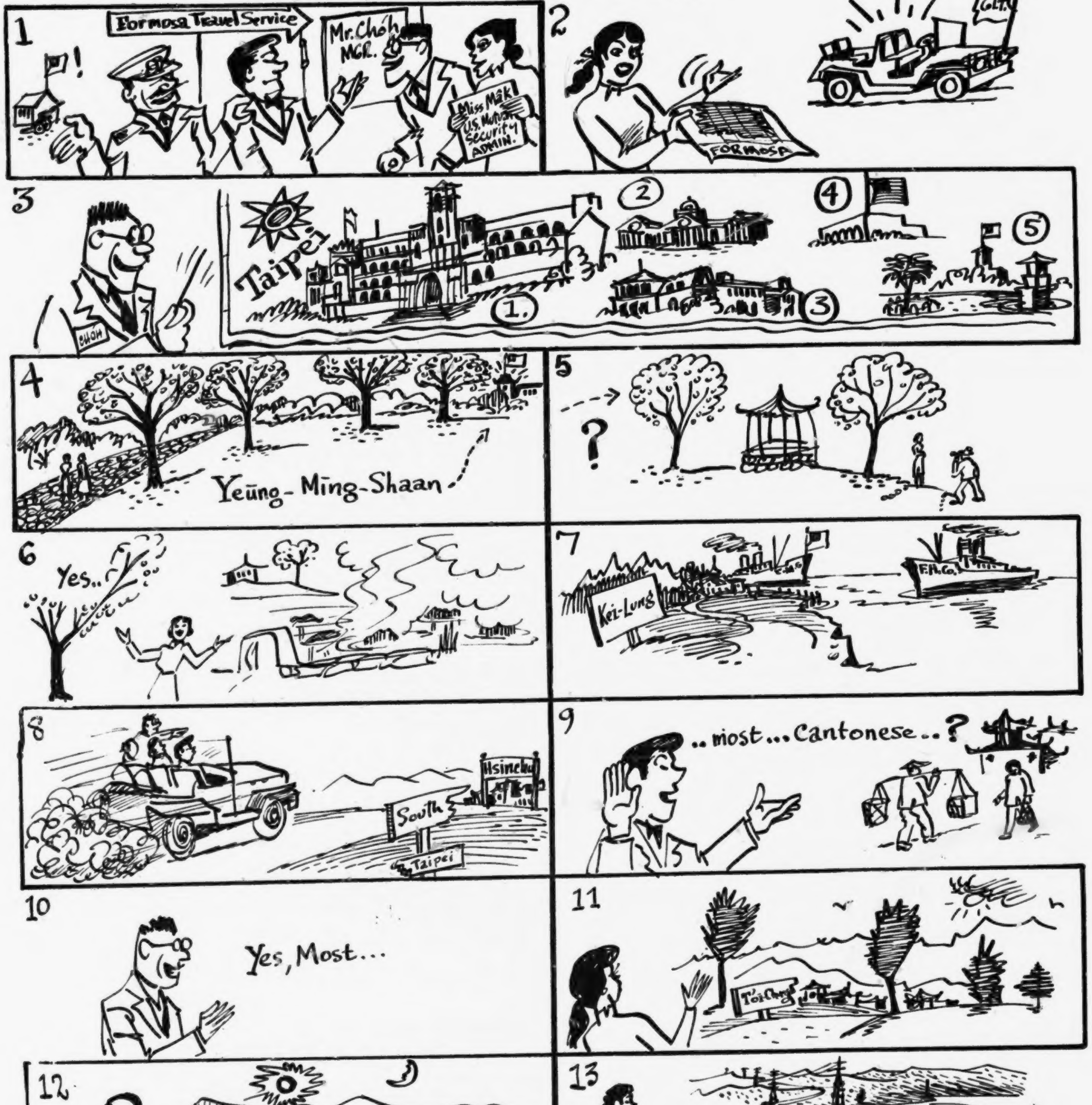


供

Character Number 542 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 8 亻，人



LESSON 17


1
Formosa Travel Service
Mr. Chóh MGR.
Miss Māk U.S. Mutual Security ADMIN.
!
2
FORMOSA
G.I.T.
3
CHOH
Taipei
1.
2
3
4
5
4
Yeūng-Mīng-Shaan
5
?
6
Yes..
7
Kei-Lung
F.R.Co.
8
Hsinchu
South
Taipei
9
..most...Cantonese..?
10
Yes, Most...
11
Tòi-Chung
12
?
13
Tòi-Chung
14
Tòi-Chung
15
Yes...

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù. Wōng Sin-Shaang, neĭ ts'aam-koon-chóh kòm toh kwan-sẑ kè teî-fong, neĭ yat-tîng t'aî-tò moôn saaī Ngŏh-teî pat-uē waān yaū T'oī-Waan la. Ngŏh ĭ-king yeùk-hó T'oī-Waan Luĭ-Haāng Shĕ kè Tsóh King-Leĭ t'ūng Kûng-T'ūng On-Ts'uēn Fan-Shuĕ kè Mâk Siú-Tsé.

Mâk Siú-Tsé. Ngŏh tuī-ue T'oī-Waan hó shûk, ngŏh-teî ts'ŏh Tsê Sheûng-Kaaù kè kat-p'ó-ch'e huī la, Wōng Sin-Shaang

Tsóh King-Leĭ. Ngŏh-teî sin huī T'oī-Pak kè shĭ-k'ui la. Ni cheung haî T'oī-Pak Shĭ kè teî-t'ō. Ni-shuè haî Tsúng-T'úng-Foó. Tseúng Tsúng-T'úng yaŭ-shī haî ni-shuè uêt ping. Ni-shuè haî Chung-Shaan-T'ōng, haî kung-kûng tsaâp-ooî* kè teî-fong. Ni-shuè haî T'oī-Pak Pan-Koón, haî chiu-toî ngoî-pan kè teî-fong. Ni-shuè haî Meĭ-Kwòk San-Mān Ch'uĕ. Ni-shuè haî San-Kung-Uēn*. Ni-shuè haî Chîk-Mât-Uēn.*

Mâk. Ni-shuè haî Yeūng-Mīng-Shaan, ĭ-ts'īn kiù-tsô Ts'ó-Shaan. Tseúng Tsúng-T'úng kè koon-taî haî ni-shuè.

Wōng-Î. Yeūng-Mīng-Shaan kè ying-fa hó ch'ut-mēng*, haî mà?

Mâk. Haî, k'uĭ kè ying-fa hó ch'ut-mēng*, mooĭ nīn ch'un-t'in hó toh yaū-haàk laī ni-shuè t'aî ying-fa. Ni-shuè haî Pak-T'aū, ni-shuè yaŭ hó toh wan-ts'uēn, ch'a-m̄-toh mooĭ kaan luĭ-koón to yaŭ wan-ts'uēn yûk-shat.

Tsóh. Ni-shuè haî T'oī-Pak ĭ-pak kè Kei-Lūng. Kei-Lūng haî

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T'oì-Waan chì taaî kè kóng-haú. Ni chèk haî Chiu-Sheung-Kûk* kè shuēn, ni chèk haî Fûk-Hing Hōng-Îp Kung-Sz kè shuēn. Ni leŭng kaan haî T'oì-Waan chì taaî kè hōng-îp kung-sz.

Tsóh. Ngŏh-teî ì-ka heùng naām haāng. Ni-shuè haî T'oì-Pak ĭ-naām kè San-Chuk.

Wōng. Yaŭ yān wâ, chuê haì San-Chuk kè yān toh shò haî Kwóng-Tung yān, haî mà?

Tsóh. Haî, chuê haì San-Chuk kè yān toh shò haî Kwóng-Tung yān.

Mâk. Ngŏh-teî tò-chóh T'oì-Chung, T'oì-Chung kè heì-haû hó wan-wōh, fung-kîng hó meĭ-laî.

Wōng. Chuè-mìng kè Yât-Uêt-T'aām haì pin shuè à?

Mâk. Chuè-mìng kè Yât-Uêt-T'aām haî T'oì-Chung Shĭ kè foô kân; haì Yât-Uêt-T'aām, yaŭ leŭng-kaan hó taaî kè shuî-lîk faàt-tîn ch'óng. T'oì-Waan taaî-pô-fân kè tîn-lîk yaū ni-shuè kung-yìng.

Wōng. Pò-chî wâ, T'oì-Chung haî tsẑ-tô fei-taân* kè kei-teî, haî mà?

Tsóh. Haî, pò-chî haî kóm wâ.

LESSON 17

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Col Tsê: Mr. Wŏng, you have visited so many military installations that you must be fed up with them. We had better tour Formosa. I have already made arrangements with the manager of the Formosa Travel Service, Mr. Tsôh, and with Miss Mâk of the U.S. Mutual Security Administration.

Miss Mâk: I am very familiar with Formosa, Mr. Wŏng. Let us go by Col. Tsê's jeep.

Manager Chôh: Let's first go to downtown Taipei. This is the city map of Taipei. Here is the Presidential Mansion. Sometimes President Chiang has a review of troops here. This is the Chung-Shaan Auditorium, a place for public assembly and this is the Taipei Guest House, a place to entertain foreign guests. This is the U.S. Information Service. This is the New Park, and this is a botanical garden.

M. This is Yeŭng-Mīng-Shaan (Yang-Ming-Shan) which was formerly know as Grass Mountain. It is here that the official residence of President Chiang is located.

W. Yeŭng-Mīng-Shaan is very famous for cherry blossoms, isn't it?

M. Yes, it is very famous for cherry blossoms. Each year during the springtime many tourists come here to see the cherry blossoms. Here is Paak-T'aŭ (Paitou). There

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

are many hot springs, and almost each hotel has its hot spring baths.

C. Here is Keelung (Kei-Lũng) which is north of Taipei. Keelung has the largest harbor in Formosa. This is a ship of the China Merchant Steamship Navigation Company and this one is of the Fûk-Hing Navigation Company. These two are the biggest navigation companies in Formosa.

C. We are now heading south. Here is Hsinchu (San-Chuk) which is south of Taipei.

W. I was told that most of the people residing here are Cantonese, aren't they?

C. Yes, Most of the people residing here are Cantonese.

M. We have arrived at Taichung (T'oi-Chung). The climate of Taichung is very temperate, and the scenery is very beautiful.

W. Where is the famous Sun-Moon Lake?

M. The Sun-Moon Lake is located in the vicinity of Taichung. There are two very large hydraulic power plants which supply most of the electricity in Formosa.

W. According to the newspaper's report, there is a base for guided missles at Taichung. Is that so?

C. Yes, that is what the papers say.

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The army will supply you with a rifle and a jeep for your mission.
2. The manager of this hydraulic power plant is a friend of father's.
3. In a tour around the island, we didn't visit the Sun-Moon Lake.
4. The house has cherry blossoms all around it.
5. The official residence of the President of the United States is the White House.
6. All the hotels in this hot spring area have public baths.
7. It has been raining for the last two weeks.
8. I am not very familiar with the world's present situation.
9. She invites foreign guests to a party in the botanic garden.
10. There was a public assembly of more than two hundred persons.
11. She is now living in the guest house.
12. This young lady works for the United States Government in day time and teaches at the university at night.
13. Tenth of October is the Independence Day of the Republic of China.
14. This steamship company is a semi-official organization.
15. There are many ships running between Hong Kong and Formosa.
16. Would you like to go to the botanic garden with us this coming Saturday?

LESSON 17

WORD LIST

1.	waān tó luĭ-haāng	to tour around the island
2.	moôn-saaì	fed up, tedious, monotonous
3.	Meĭ-Kwòk-Kûng-T'ūng-On-Ts'uēn-Fan Shueĕ	U.S. Mutual Security Aministration
4.	Tsúng-T'úng-Foó	Presidential Mansion
5.	uêt ping	review of troops
6.	kung-kûng tsaâp-ooî*	public assembly
7.	T'oī-Pak Pan-Koón	Taipei Guest House
8.	chiu-toî ngoî pan	to receive foreign guest
9.	chîk-mât-uēn*	botanical garden
10.	koon-taì	official residence
11.	ying-fa	cherry blossom
12.	wan-ch'uēn	hot spring
13.	luĭ-koón	hotel, inn
14.	yûk-shat	bathroom
15.	Chiu-Sheung-Kûk	China Merchant Steamship Navigation Co.
16.	Fûk-Hing Hông-Îp Kung-Sz	Fuk-Hing Navigation Col.
17.	Yât-Uêt-T'aām	Sun-Moon Lake
18.	shuì-lîk faàt-tîn-ch'óng	hydraulic power plant
19.	kung-yìng	to supply

LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

218

腐 foô: rotten; decayed

腐爛 foô-laân: putrid

腐敗 foô-paaî: demoralized.

豆腐 taû-foô: bean curd

08

斧 foó: ax; hatchet

斧頭 foó-t'aū: hatchet; hammer

打斧頭 tá-foó-t'aū: to cheat (money)

196

紡 fóng: to spin; to weave

紡織 fóng-chik: to weave.

腐 斧 紡

腐 斧 紡

腐 斧 纟

1477

楊 yeūng: poplar; aspen; willow.

楊柳 yeūng-laǔ. the willow.

楊梅 yeūng-mooī: arbutus strawberry.

1479

揚 yeūng: to display; to publish; to raise.

揚名 yeūng mēng: to become famous.

揚子江 yeūng-tsź-kong: The Yangtze River.

楊 揚

楊 揚

杨 扬

LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

1206

擦 ts'aàt: to brush; to polish; a brush.

擦牙 ts'aàt ngā: to brush teetn.

1187

抬 t'oī: to carry(on a pole); to move; to raise up.

抬枱 t'oī t'ōī: to carry a table.

抬去 t'oī huì: to carry away.

抬唔起 t'oī m̄-heí: can not lift it.

212

扶 foō: to uphold; help

扶助 foō-chōh: to assist; aid

扶持 foō-ch'ī: to sustain

擦 抬 扶

擦 抬 扶

擦 擡 抬 扶

1302

泉 ts'uēn: a spring; fountain.

泉水 ts'uēn shuí: spring water.

黃泉 wōng-ts'uēn: Hades; world of the dead.

1398

閱 uêt: to peruse; to look over; to inspect.

閱報室 uêt pò shat: a reading room.

閱歷 uêt-lîk: experience; to undergo.

泉 閱

泉 閱

泉 阅

LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

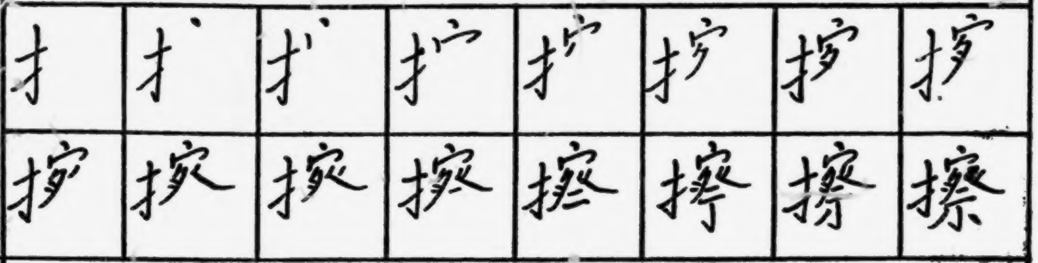
黄二參觀**chôh**好多軍事嘅地方;謝上校問黄二想唔想環遊台灣;謝上校話,佢已經約好台灣旅行社嘅左經理,同美國共同安全**ch'uĕ**嘅麥小姐,佢地四個人坐謝上校嘅吉普車去.佢地先去台北嘅市區,見到總統府,總統有時喺嗰處閱兵,再去**kaau-**外遊名勝地方,好似陽明山,北投温泉等等;然後去基**Lūng**.基**Lūng**係台灣最大嘅港口.遊完基**Lūng**之後,向南行,經過幾個大城市,好似台北,新竹,台中等等.台中氣候温和,風景美麗.

LESSON 17

WRITING MATERIAL

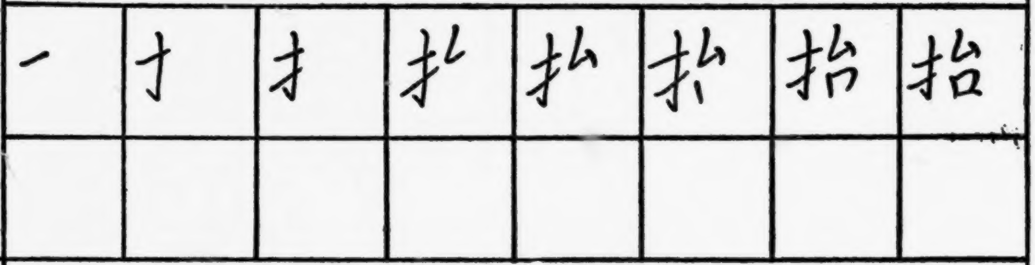
擦

Character Number 1206　Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 18　扌，手



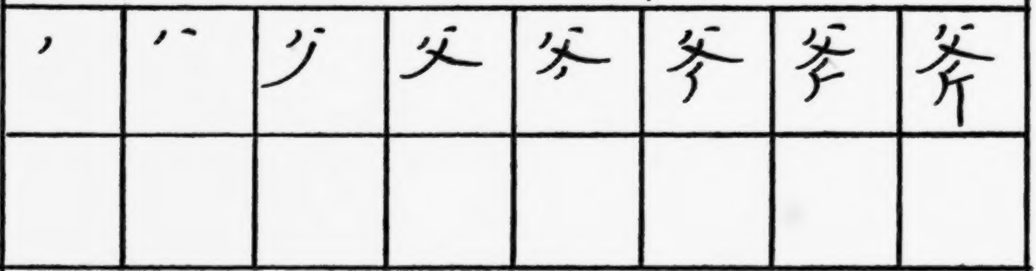
抬

Character Number 1187　Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 8　扌，手



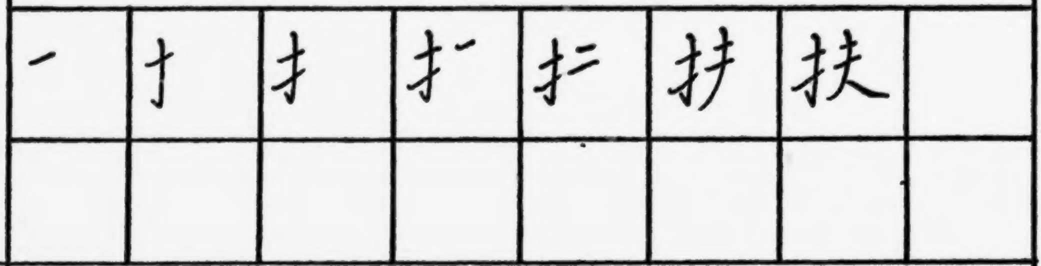
斧

Character Number 208　Radical Number 69
Stroke Number 8　斤



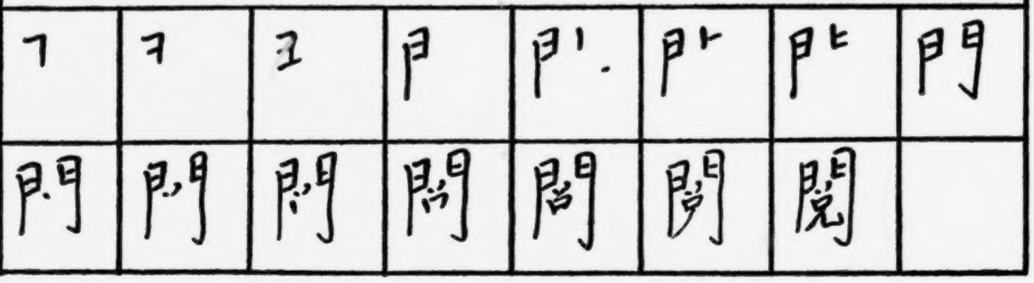
扶

Character Number 212　Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 7　扌，手

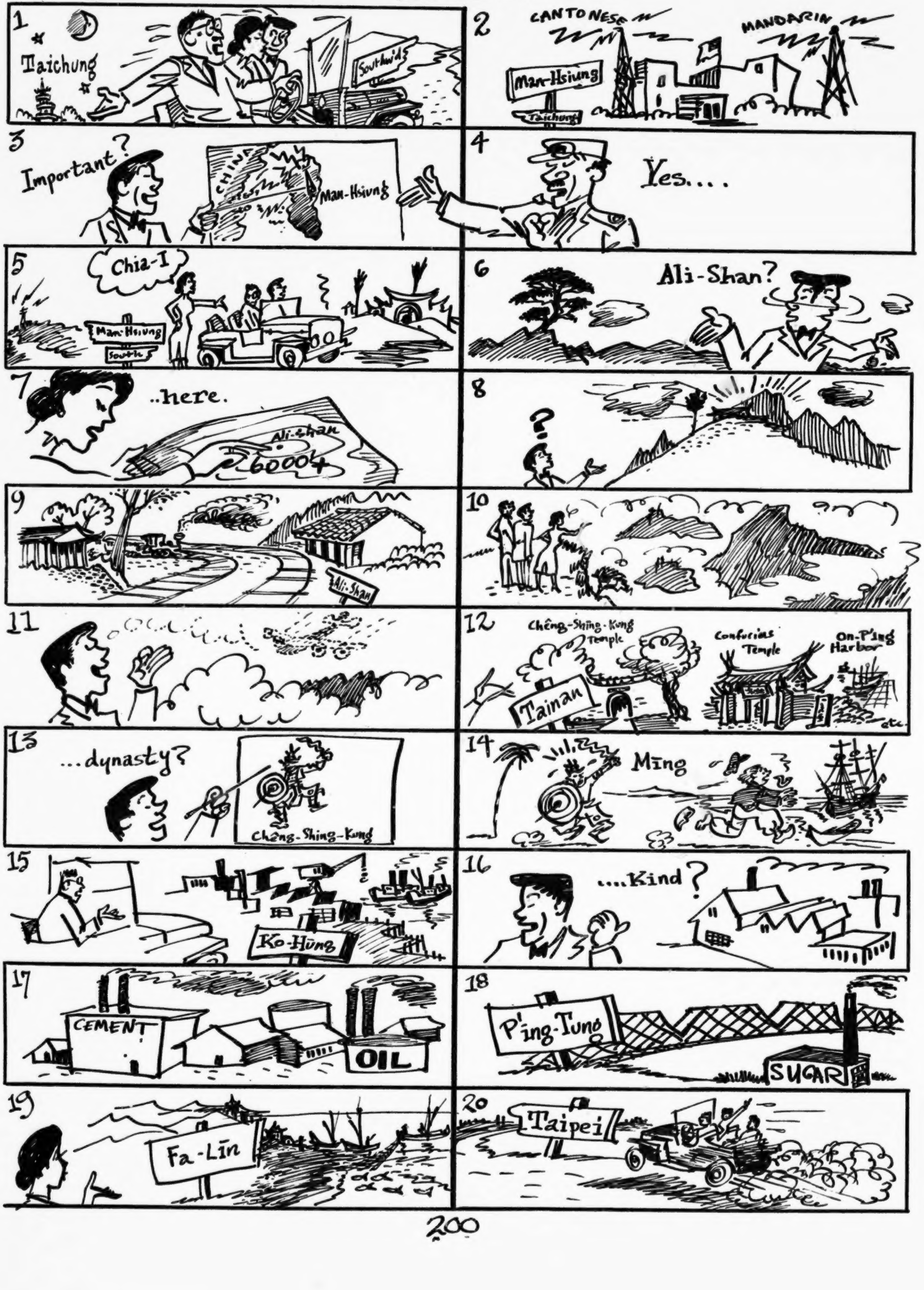


閱

Character Number 1298　Radical Number 169
Stroke Number 15　門



LESSON 18


1
Taichung
Southw'd
2
CANTONESE
MANDARIN
Man-Hsiung
Taichung
3
Important?
CHINA
Man-Hsiung
4
Yes....
5
Chia-I
Man-Hsiung
South
6
Ali-Shan?
7
..here.
Ali-Shan
6000
8
?
9
Ali-Shan
10
11
12
Chêng-Shing-Kung Temple
Confucius Temple
On-P'ing Harbor
Tainan
etc.
13
...dynasty?
Chêng-Shing-Kung
14
Ming
15
Ko-Hung
16
....Kind?
17
CEMENT
OIL
18
P'ing-Tung
SUGAR
19
Fa-Lin
20
Taipei

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Tsôh King-Leĭ. Tsòk-maăn ngŏh-teî haî T'oì-Chung kwòh yê, ì-ka ngŏh-teî kaì-tsûk naăm haăng.

Tsôh. Ni-shuè haî T'oì-Chung ĭ-naăm kè Mān-Hūng. Haî ni- shuè, yaŭ Tsẑ-Yaū-Chung-Kwòk-Chi-Shing Kwông-Pòh-Tìn-T'oì. K'uĭ-teî yât-yât tuì taaî-lûk kwông-pòh, yûng Kwông-Tung Wâ* t'ūng Kwòk-Uĕ kwông-pòh.

Wōng. Ūe-kwôh haî kôm, Mān-Hūng haî ngŏh-teî tuì taaî-lûk sam-leĭ tsòk-chìn kè chûng-iù kei-teî chi yat, haî mà?

Tsê. Haî, ni-shuè haî ngŏh-teî tuì Chung-Kwòk taaî-lûk sam-leĭ tsòk-chìn kè chûng-iù kei-teî chi yat.

Mâk. Ngŏh-teî tò-chôh Mān-Hūng ĭ-naăm kè Ka-Î.

Wōng. À-Leĭ-Shaan haî m̄-haî haì ni-shuè à? À-Leĭ-Shaan kè hoì-pât keì ko à?

Mâk. À-Leĭ-Shaan haî haì ni-shuè. À-Leĭ-Shaan haî hoì-pât lûk-ts'in ch'èk kòm sheûng-hâ*.

Wōng. À-Leĭ-Shaan kòm ko, ngŏh-teî tìm-yeûng* sheŭng huì à?

Mâk. À-Leĭ-Shaan yaŭ sham-lām t'ìt-lô. Ngŏh-teî hôh-ĭ ts'ŏh sham-lām fôh-ch'e sheŭng huì.

Mâk. Ngŏh-teî tò-chôh shaan têng, neĭ t'aì-hă ti wān-hoì, lèng mà?

Wōng. Ti wān-hoì chan lèng. Ngŏh-teî hô-ts'z̆ ts'ŏh-kân fei-kei.

Mâk. Ni-shuè haî T'oì-Naăm. T'oì-Naăm haî T'oì-Waan kè kô to. Ni-shuè yaŭ hô toh kô-tsik, hô-ts'z̆ Chêng-Shìng-Kung

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Miû*, Húng-Tsź Miû*, On-P'īng-Kóng, táng-táng.

Wōng. Chêng-Shīng-Kung haî pin ch'iū kè mān-tsûk ying-hūng à?

Tsóh Chêng-Shīng-Kung haî Mīng-Ch'iū moôt nīn kè mān-tsûk ying-hūng. K'uĭ k'ui-chûk Hōh-Laan Yān, shau-fûk T'oī-Waan.

Tsôh. Ni-shuè haî Ko-Hūng. Ko-Hūng haî T'oī-Waan naām-pô chī taaî kè kóng-haú. Ni leŭng-chêk haî yaū-lūn. Mooĭ chèk yaŭ saam-maân tun kòm ch'ŭng.

Wōng. Ni-shuè yaŭ mi-yĕ kung-ch'ông à?

Tsóh. Ni-shuè yaŭ shuî-naī ch'óng t'ūng chuè-mīng kè lîn-yaū ch'óng táng-táng.

Mâk. Ni-shuè haî P'īng-Tung, ni-shuè yaŭ ts'uēn T'oī-Waan chī ch'eūng kè t'īt-k'iū, chī taaî kè t'ōng-ch'óng. T'oī-Waan t'ōng kè ch'aân-leûng chīm ts'uēn saī-kaaī taî-î.

Mâk. Ni-shuè haî T'oī-Waan tung-pô kè Fa-Līn, haî T'oī-Waan kè uē-kóng.

Mâk. Ngŏh-teî ī-ka faan huī T'oī-Pak.

LESSON 18

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Mr. Chôh: Last night we stayed in Taichung. Now we continue southward.

C. Here is Man-Hsiung which is to the south of Taichung. Here is the Voice of Free China's broadcasting station.
It broadcasts in Cantonese and Mandarin everyday.

Wōng-Î: If that is the case, Man-Hsiung is one of our important bases for psychological warfare against the mainland of China, isn't it?

Tsê: Yes. This place is one of our important bases for the psychological warfare against the mainland of China.

M. We have arrived at Chia-I which is located south of Man-Hsiung.

W. Is Ali-Shan (À-Leĭ-Shaan) located here? How high is Ali-Shan above sea level?

M Ali-Shan is here. It is about 6,000 feet above sea level.

W. Ali-Shan is so high, how can we get up there?

M. There is a forest railway at the Ali-Shan; we can go up there by the forest train.

M. We are now at the summit of the mountain. Look at the sea of clouds. Isn't it beautiful?

W. The sea of clouds are really beautiful. It is just as though we were in a plane.

M. Here is Tainan (T'oī-Naām), the ancient capital of Formosa.

LESSON 18

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

There are many historical points such as the Chêng-Shĭng-Kung Temple, Confucius Temple, On-P'ĭng Harbor, etc.

W. Of which dynasty was Chêng-Shĭng-Kung the national hero?

C. Chêng-Shĭng-Kung was the national hero of late Mĭng Dynasty. He drove out the Dutchmen and restored Formosa.

C. Here is Kaohsiung (Ko-Hūng), the largest harbor of the southern Formosa. These two ships are tankers, each weighing as much as thirty thousand tons.

W. What kind of factories are here?

C. There are cement factories, well-known oil refinery, etc.

M. Here is P'ĭng-Tung (Ping-Tung). Here is the longest steel bridge and the largest sugar refinery in Formosa. The sugar production of Formosa is the second largest in the world.

M. Here is Hualian, (Fa-Lĭn), in eastern Formosa. It is the fishing harbor of Formosa.

M. Now we are going back to Taipei.

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. There are two or three Chinese radio stations in San Francisco.
2. Mandarin is different from Cantonese.
3. The lake is on top of a mountain. It is approximately 2000 feet above sea level.
4. Have you been in this forest before?
5. Here at the top of the mountain, you can hardly see the houses at the foot of the mountain.
6. Where is the ancient capital of Japan?
7. Cheng-Shing-Kung was a hero in the late Ming Dynasty.
8. He was expelled from the United States last year.
9. She may retain the house if she has $10,000 by the end of this month.
10. I didn't have any money, so I worked for my trip on a tanker to the Far East last year.
11. Her car weighs about one ton. It isn't too light.
12. You should be working on the plan of your oil refinery.
13. At the end of next month, the oil refinery will be able to yield 10 tons of oil per week.
14. The production of this factory is much greater than that one.
15. This station broadcasts for about 10 hours every day,
16. The summit is very cold while the foot of the mountain is quite warm.

LESSON 18

WORD LIST

1.	Tsẑ-Yaū-Chung-Kwòk-Chi-Shing Kwóng-Pòh-Tîn-T'oī	Voice of Free China (Broadcasting Station)
2.	Kwòk-Uĕ	Chinese Mandarin
3.	Hoī-pât	sea level
4.	sham-lām t'ìt-lô	forest railway
5.	shaan téng (tíng)	peak, summit (lit: mountain top)
6.	wān hoī	sea of cloud
7.	koó to	ancient capital
8.	koó tsik	relics
9.	Tsêng-Shīng-Kung Miû*	Cheng-Shing-Kung Temple
10.	mān-tsûk ying-hūng	national hero
11.	Mīng-Ch'iū moôt nīn	late Ming Dynasty
12.	k'ui-chûk	to expel
13.	shau-fûk	to restore, retake
14.	yaū lūn	tanker
15.	tun	ton
16.	lîn-yaū-ch'óng	oil refinery
17.	ch'aán-leûng	yield, production quantity

LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

213

婦	foǒ: married women; female
婦女	foǒ-nuǐ: women in general
婦人	foǒ-yān: women
婦科	foǒ-foh: Gynecology

388

奸	kaan: false; deceitful
奸猾	kaan-waât; deceitful; crafty; cunning
奸細	kaan-saì: a spy; traitor
奸狡	kaan-kaaú: cunning; villainous; crafty

696

廟	miû: temple; shrine.
廟堂	miû-t'ōng: a temple.
廟祝	miû-chuk: temple keeper.

婦 奸 廟 庙

婦 奸 廟

婦 奸 廟

1233

獎	tseúng: to praise; to encourage.
獎品	tseúng-pán: prize.
獎券	tseúng Kuèn: prize coupon.

59

丈	chêung: ten feet (Chinese) a senior, one worthy of respect.
一丈	yat chêung ch'eung: ten feet long
丈夫	chêung-foo: a husband
方丈	fong-chêung: 10 square feet

獎 丈

獎 丈

獎 丈

LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

350

嫌 īm: to object to; dislike; be weary of

嫌疑 īm-ī: to suspect

嫌棄 īm-heì: dispise

嫌疑犯 īm-ī-faân*: a suspect

301

含 hōm: to hold; cherish; hold in the mouth

包含 paau-hōm: to contain; enclosed in

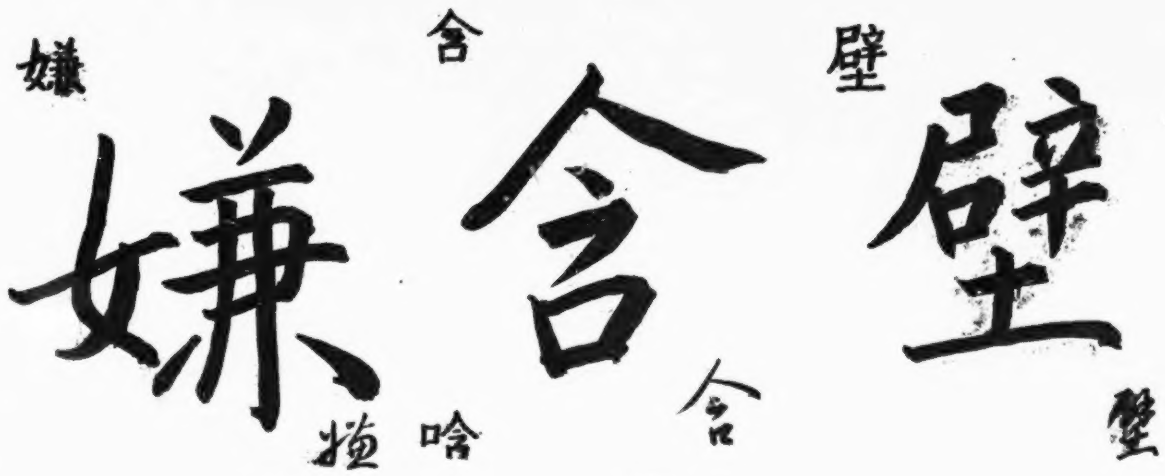
含怒 hōm nô: to cherish anger

含笑 hōm siù: to hold a laugh in the mouth i.e. to smile

850

壁 pik: a wall.

牆壁 ts'eūng-pik: a wall.



1150

貼 t'ìp: to paste up; to affix; to attach to.

貼告示 t'ìp kò-shî: to post up a proclamation.

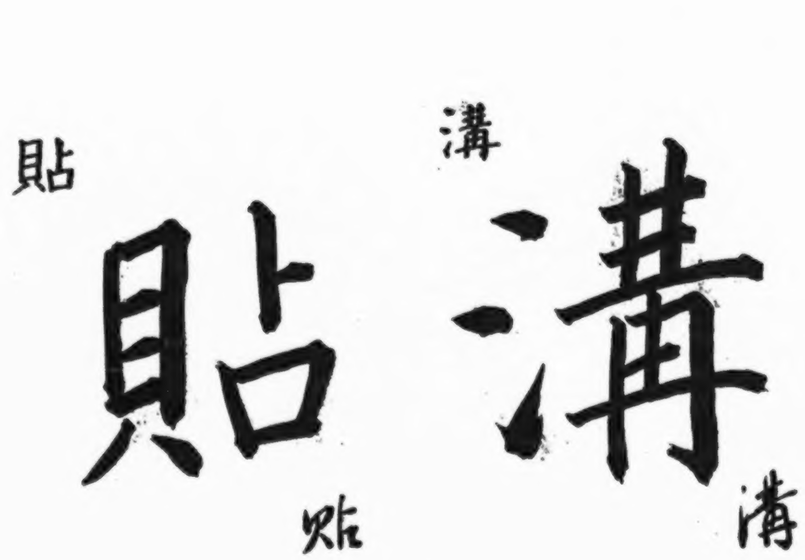
津貼 tsun-t'ìp: to aid; to subsidize.

429

溝 k'au: ditch; drain.

溝渠 k'au-k'uī: a drain; sewer.

水渠 shuí-k'au: ditch; drain.



LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

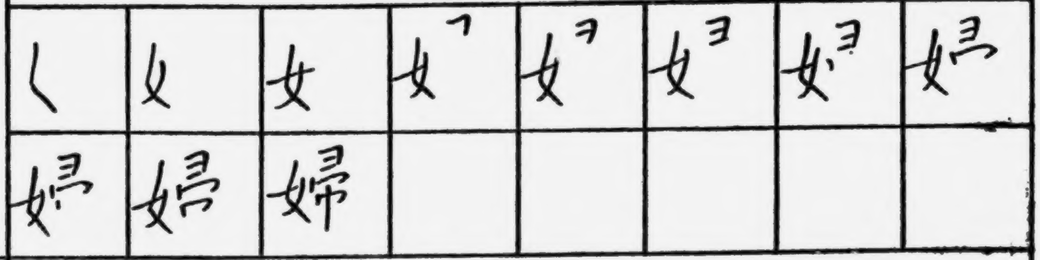
黃二，謝上校，左經理，同麥小姐昨日遊到台中。雖然睇咗好多地方，包含好多名勝，重嫌唔夠。佢地今日繼續向南行，經過民雄，Ka義，台南，高雄，p'ing東，等等。Ka義地勢好高，有大山壁立幾百丈。民雄係自由中國對大陸心理作戰嘅重要基地之一。台南，高雄都係近海岸。台南係台灣嘅古都，有唔少古廟，高雄係台灣南部至大嘅港口。屏東有全台灣至長嘅鐵橋，同至大嘅糖廠；台灣糖嘅產量佔全世界第二。

LESSON 18

WRITING MATERIAL

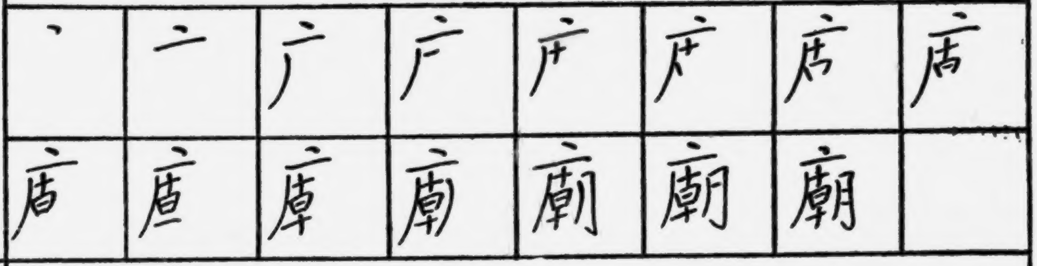
婦

Character Number 213 Radical Number 38
Stroke Number 11 女



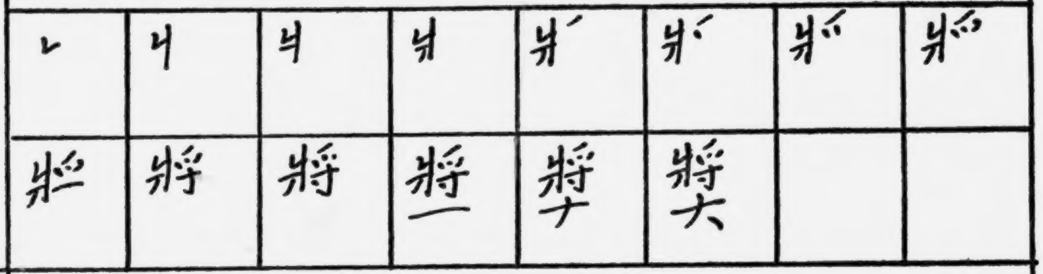
廟

Character Number 696 Radical Number 53
Stroke Number 15 广



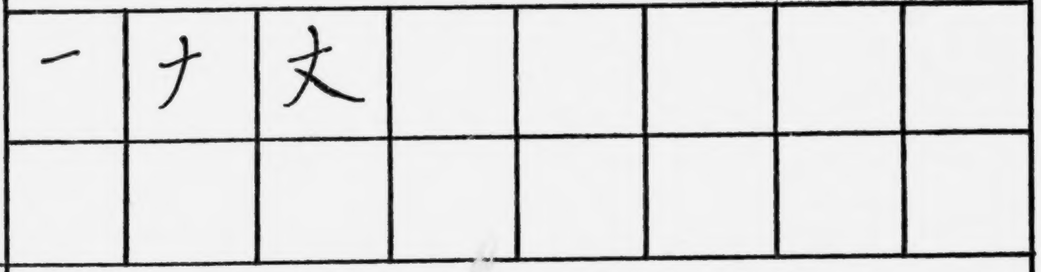
奬

Character Number 1233 Radical Number 37
Stroke Number 14 大



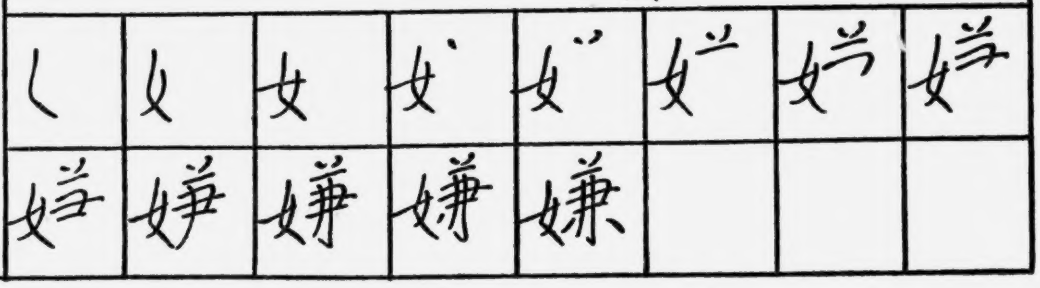
丈

Character Number 59 Radical Number 1
Stroke Number 3 一

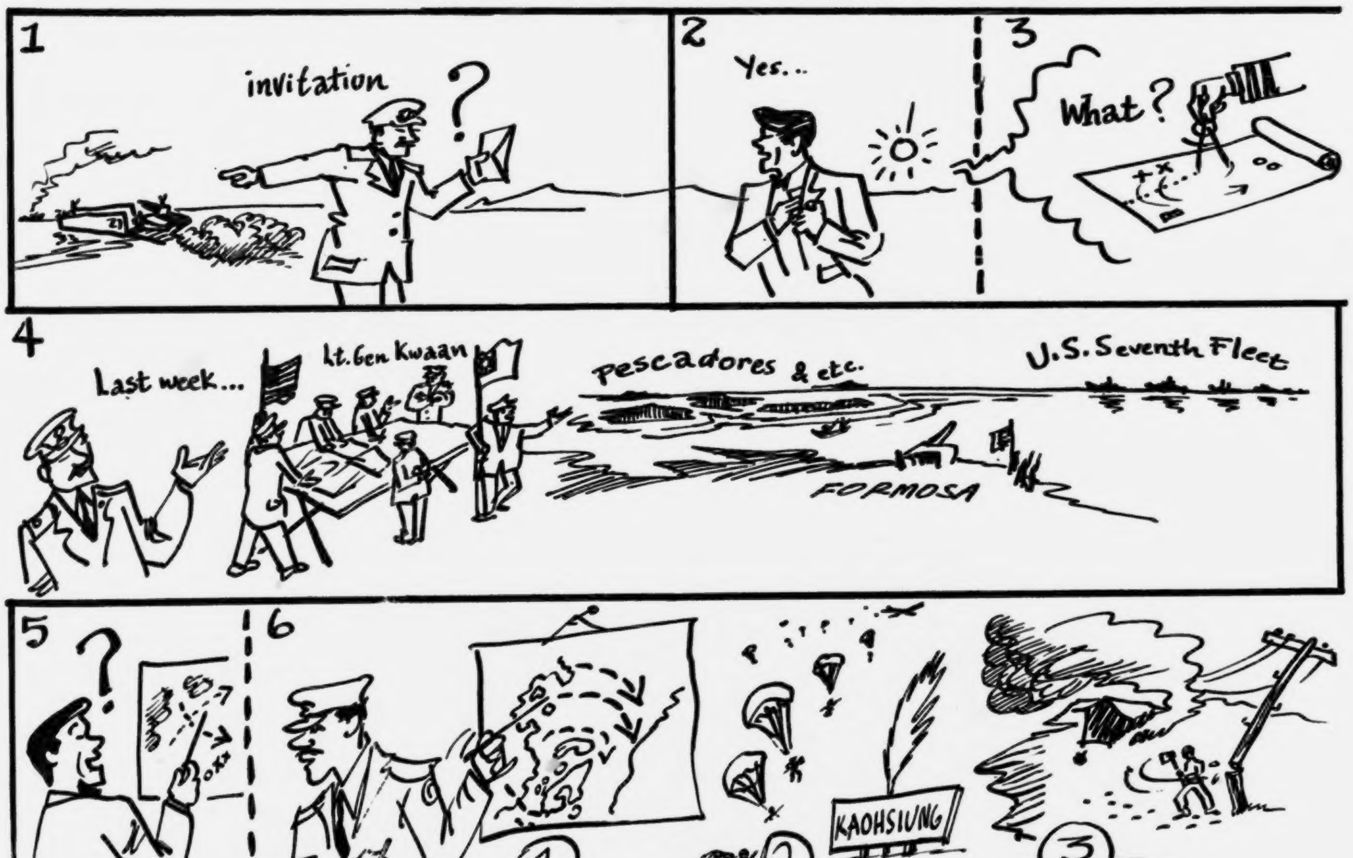


嫌

Character Number 350 Radical Number 38
Stroke Number 13 女



LESSON 19


1
invitation
?
2
Yes...
3
What?
4
Last week...
Lt. Gen Kwaan
Pescadores & etc.
U.S. Seventh Fleet
FORMOSA
5
?
6
①
②
KAOHSIUNG
③
④
⑤
⑥
⑦
⑧
7
?
37
8
9
?
..finally..
10

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Chî-fai-shóh Suen Ts'aam-Maū. Wōng Sin-Shaang, ngŏh-teî kè kwan-sẑ în-tsaâp ĭ-king hoi-ch'î, neĭ yaŭ mŏ shau-tò ngŏh-teî kè ts'êng-t'ìp à?

Wōng-Î. Yaŭ, ngŏh ts'în-yât shau-tò neĭ-teî kè ts'êng-t'ìp.

W. Ni ts'z̀ în-tsaâp kè kaì-waâk haî tîm kà?

S. Ngŏh-teî sheûng sing-k'eì hoi yat-kòh Chung-Meĭ kwan-sẑ ooî-ĭ, yaū kwan-sẑ în-tsaap̂ Tsúng-Chî-Fai-Koon Kwaan Chung-Tseùng chuê-ch'ì, ch'ut-tsîk kè toh shò haî Chung-Meĭ ko k'ap koon-uēn; ngŏh-teî tó-lûn hó toh kwaan-ue ni t'sz̀ kwan-sẑ în-tsaâp kè mân-t'aì. Ín-tsaâp kè teî-k'ui paau-k'oòt T'oì-Waan poón tó, P'aāng-Oō t'ūng k'eì-t'a kè uēn-hoì tó-chuî. Ká-seúng tîk haî yaū Meĭ-Kwòk Taî-Ts'at Laâm-Tuî* t'ūng yat-pô-fân Kwòk-Kwan pô-tuî* taam-yâm. Ín-tsaâp kè mûk-tik haî ch'ak-îm Kwòk-Kwan fōng-shaú T'oì-Waan t'ūng faán-kung taaî-lûk kè nāng-lîk.

W. Ká-seúng-tîk t'ūng ngŏh kwan kè chìn-leûk haî tîm-yeûng* kà?

S. Ká-seúng-tîk ts'oî-ts'uî kung-shaì, k'uĭ-teî yaū Chung-Kwòk taaî-lûk ch'ut-faàt, ue-ooì Kam-Moōn t'ūng Mă-Tsó, tsùn-kung P'aāng-Oō. K'uĭ-teî kè kòng-lôk-sàn pô-tuî(*) haî Ko-Hūng kòng-lôk. Tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp uê-peî haî T'oì-Waan chung-pô t'ūng pak-pô fòng fóh, p'òh-waaî kaau-t'ung-sìn. Ngŏh kwan kè chìn-leûk haî sin ts'oî-ts'uî shaú-shaì; tâng tîk-yān sham yâp, ìn-haû paau-waì tîk-yān

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

kè leŭng-yîk. Hung-kwan chang-ts'uì chaì-hung-k'uēn, tsaâp-chung kwang-chà peî waì kè tîk-kwan. Tîk-yān haû-t'uì kè shì-haû, ngŏh-teî kè t'aán-hak-ch'e ìm-oô pô-ping ch'ung-fung, t'ūng tîk-yān yûk-pòk, siu-mît tîk-yān kè pô-tuî*. Ngŏh-teî haû-fong kè ts'ìng-pò yān-uēn taî-pô tîk-yân kè kaàn-tîp.

W. Neĭ-teî kè hoì-kwan foô-chaàk mi-yĕ yâm-mô à?

S. Ngŏh-teî kè hoì-kwan ts'ìt-t'uĕn tîk-yān kè hoì-sheûng pó k'ap-sìn, ìm-oô ngŏh-teî kè yaū-kik-tuî* haì Chung-Kwòk uēn-hoì tang-lûk. Ngŏh-teî kè teî-hâ kung-tsòk yān-uēn p'òh-waaî tîk-yān kè taân*-yeûk-foò, k'iū-leūng, t'ìt-lô, t'ūng kung-lô; yaû haì tîk-yān haû-fong saàn-pò iū-ìn, yîng-heúng tîk-yān kè sẑ-heì.

W. Tsuì-haû tìm-yeûng* à?

S. Tsuì-haû ngŏh-teî kè hoì lûk hung saam kwan hîp-t'ūng haî Chung-Kwòk uēn-hoì taaî kw' ai-mō tang-lûk.

LESSON 19

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Staff Officer Suen at the Command Post: Mr. Wǒng, our military maneuver has already started. Did you receive our invitation?

Wǒng-Î: Yes, I received your invitation the day before yesterday.

W. What is your plan for this military maneuver?

S. Last week we held a Sino-American Military Conference which was presided over by Lt. General Kwaan, the Commanding General of the military maneuver. Most of the participants were high ranking Chinese and the American officers. We discussed many problems in regard to this military maneuver. The maneuver area includes Formosa proper, the Pescadores, and the other offshore islands. The U.S. Seventh Fleet and a part of the Nationalist Army will play the part of mock enemy. The purpose of the maneuver is to evaluate the strength of the Nationalist Army for the defense of Formosa and the invasion of the mainland.

W. What are the strategies adopted by our Army as well as the mock enemy?

S. The mock enemy adopts the offensive. They launch the attack from the mainland of China outflanking Quemoy and Matsu and attack the Pescadores. Their paratroops drop at Kaohsiung. The enemy spies plan to set fire in the central and northern regions of Formosa and destroy the Communication lines. Our troops first adopt the defensive. Not until the enemy has made a deep penetration, do our troops surround the enemy from two flanks. Our airforce wins the air mastery and concentrates its bombing against the encircled enemy. When the enemy withdraws under the protective cover of tanks, our infantry charges and has hand-to-hand fighting with the enemy. We annihilate the enemy troops and our intelligence personnel in the rear arrest the enemy spies.

W. For what is your Navy responsible?

S. Our Navy cuts off the enemy's supply lines at sea, covers our guerrillas landing on the China coast. Our underground personnel destroy the enemy's ammunition dumps, bridges, railways and highways. They also spread rumors to demoralize the enemy.

W. What do they finally do?

S. Finally, our Armed Forces, the Army, the Navy, and the Air Force, coordinate among themselves to launch a large scale landing along the China coast.

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The unit undertakes the mission of blowing up the bridge.
2. When the ammunition dump was destroyed, the morale was very low.
3. We have orders to arrest anyone who spreads any rumors.
4. The marines use hand-to-hand fight to annihilate their enemy.
5. The guerrilla is our real enemy.
6. The first unit should be ready to assault at 0600 tomorrow.
7. In order to maintain our supply line, we have to have support.
8. The left and right flanks will advance at the same time.
9. They wanted to cut off our supply line.
10. We blow up the enemy ammunition dumps and adopt offensive tactics.
11. It is difficult to evaluate the enemy's strength at this time.
12. She cannot participate, if the conference is to be held in New York City.
13. I received a wedding invitation from Mr. Ying Chan and Miss Wong.
14. Lieutenant Lee will preside over this meeting and he expects you to be there.
15. The communists spread all kinds of rumors; therefore we should be very careful.
16. Lieutenant Wōng was captured by the guerrillas after a hand-to-hand fight.

LESSON 19

WORD LIST

1.	ts'êng (ts'ìng)-t'ìp	invitation
2.	chung-tseùng	lieutenant general
3.	chuê-ch'ì	to preside, to be in charge
4.	ch'ut-tsîk	to participate (conference)
5.	kà-seúng-tîk	mock enemy
6.	ch'aak-îm	to evaluate, test
7.	ts'oì-ts'uì-kung shaì	to adopt offensive
8.	ue-ooì	to outflank
9.	p'òh-waaî	to destroy, blow up
10.	leŭng-yîk	two flanks (right and left)
11.	chaang-ts'uì chaì-hung-k'uēn	to secure air mastery
12.	ch'ung-fung	to charge, assault
13.	yûk-pòk	hand-to-hand fighting
14.	siu-mît	to annihilate
15.	taî-pô	to arrest
16.	yaū-kik-tuî*	guerrilla
17.	taân-yeûk-foò	ammunition dump
18.	k'ìū-leūng	bridge
19.	saàn-pò ìū-ìn	to spread rumor
20.	sẑ-heì	morale
21.	taam-yâm	to undertake

LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

881

捕	pô: to arrest; to catch.
捕獲	pô-wôk: to capture; capture; seizure.
捕拿	pô nā: to arrest; to seize; to catch.

694

滅	mît: to destroy; to extinguish.
滅亡	mît-mōng: exterminated; ruined.
滅跡	mît-tsik: to destroy evidence; obliterate.
滅絶	mît-tsuêt: to annihilate; to exterminate.

1413

毀	waí: ruin; to destroy.
毀滅	waí mît: to exterminate.
毀棄	waí heì: to cast away.

捕 滅 毀

捕 滅 毀

捕 威 滅 毀

1202

殘	ts'aān: withered; to injure; to ruin; cruel.
殘花	ts'aān fa: withered flower; faded flower.
殘忍	ts'aān yán. remorseless; cruel.
殘殺	ts'aān shaàt: to massacre.

1286

採	ts'oí: to pluck; to select.
採花	ts'oí fa: to pluck flowers; to nip flower.
採用	ts'oí-yûng: to select for use.

殘 採

残 採

残 採

LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

153

衝 ch'ung: to rush; towards; collide with

衝突 ch'ung-tât: conflict

衝鋒 ch'ung-fung: to charge (an enemy)

252

克 hak(haak): to repress; to overcome

克己 hak-keí: subdue oneself

克服 hak-fûk: to overcome

885

波 poh: a wave; ripple.

波浪 poh-lông: wave.

波蘿 poh-lōh: pineapple.

衝 克 波

衝 克 波

衝 克 波

1151

帖 t'ìp: label; card; document.

回帖 ooī t'ìp: card of acknowledgment.

請帖 ts'éng-t'ìp: invitation card.

366

謠 iū: rumors

謠言 iū-īn: rumors

謠傳 iū-ch'uēn: rumors; felse reports

帖 謠

帖 謠

帖 谣

LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

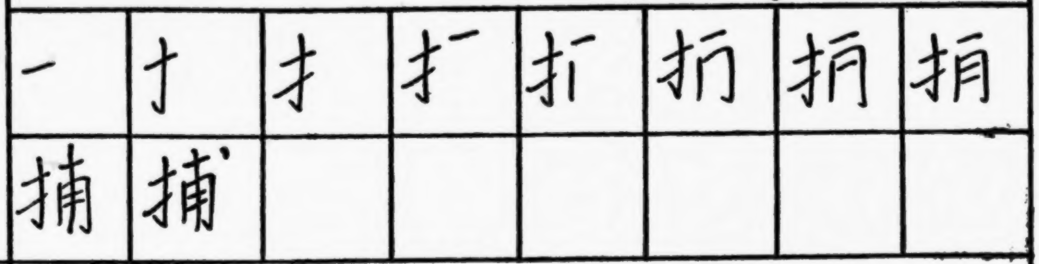
黃二前日收到軍事演習總指揮官關中將嘅請帖,去參觀軍事演習.佢先去指揮所見孫參謀;孫參謀話,呢次演習嘅目的係ch'aak-驗國軍防守台灣同反攻大陸嘅能力,佢地嘅假想敵係由美國第七艦隊同一部份國軍部隊擔任.假想敵採取攻勢,我軍先採取守勢;等敵人深入,我地嘅t'aân-克車īm護步兵衝-fung,消滅敵人嘅登陸部隊.taî-捕敵人嘅間-tîp,同殘餘嘅官兵.最後我地海陸空三軍協同喺中國沿海大規模登陸.實行反攻,毀壞敵人嘅鐵路公路,又喺敵人後方散佈謠言,影響敵人嘅士氣.

LESSON 19

WRITING MATERIAL

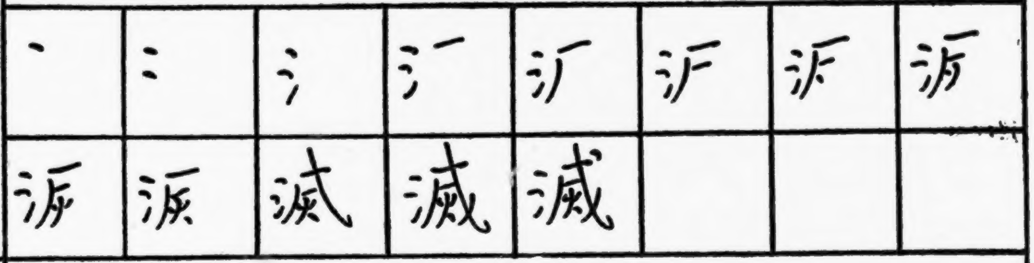
捕

Character Number 881 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 10 扌，手



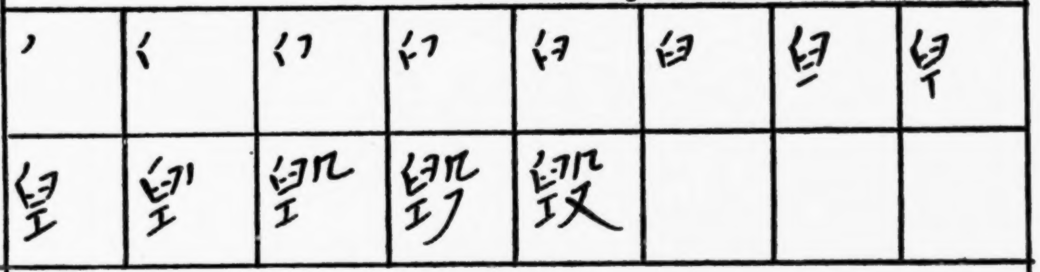
滅

Character Number 694 Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 13 氵，水



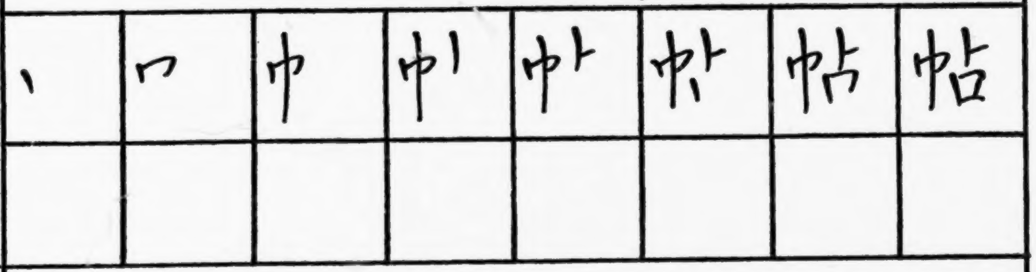
毀

Character Number 1413 Radical Number 79
Stroke Number 13 殳



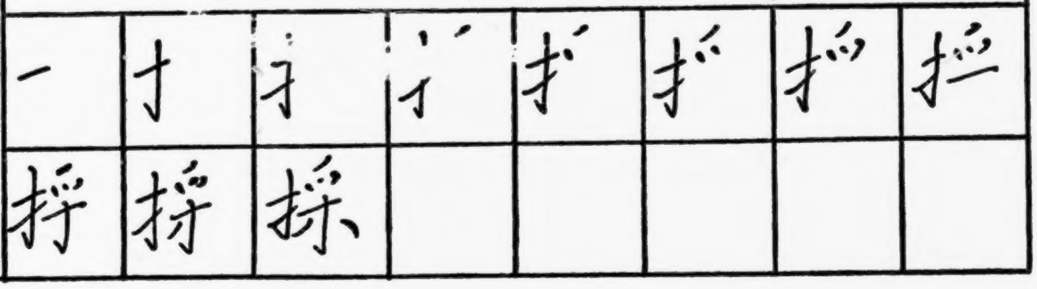
帖

Character Number 1151 Radical Number 50
Stroke Number 8 巾

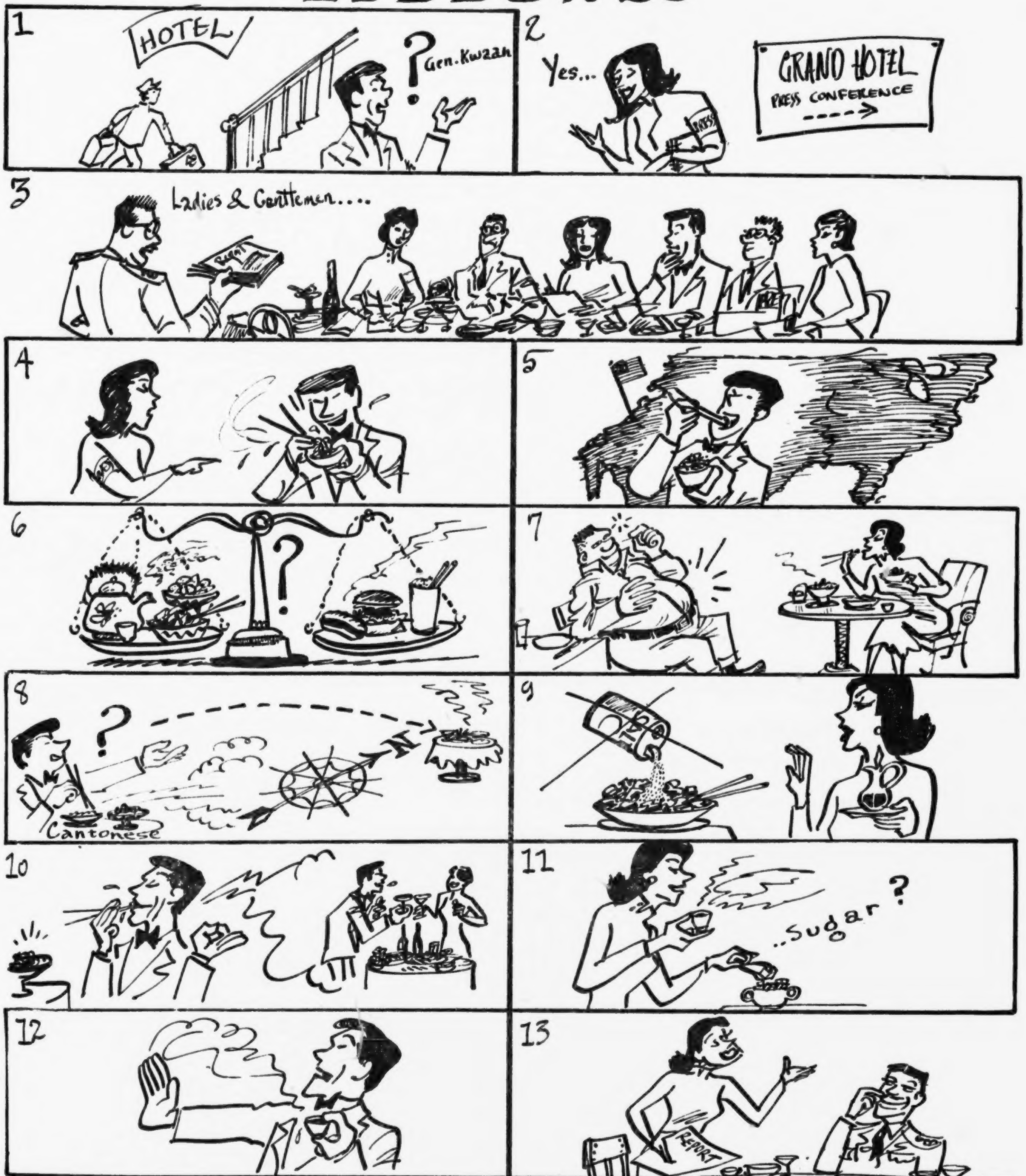


採

Character Number 1286 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 11 扌，手



LESSON 20


1
HOTEL
?
Gen. Kwaan
2
Yes...
GRAND HOTEL
PRESS CONFERENCE
--->
3
Ladies & Gentlemen....
REPORT
4
5
6
?
7
8
?
Cantonese
9
10
11
..Sugar?
12
13
REPORT
14
..successfully→
15

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Wōng-Î. Siú-tsé, ts'ìng mân ni kaan haî Uēn-Shaan Faân-Tìm mà? Ngŏh laî ts'aam-ka Kwaan Tsúng-Chî-Fai kè keî-ché chiu-toî ooî*.

Chung-Yeung-Yât-Pò nuĭ keî-ché Wān-Siú-Tsê. Ni kaan haî Uēn-Shaan Faân-Tìm. Ngŏh to haî laî ts'aam-ka k'uĭ kè keî-chê chiu-toî ooî*.

Kwaan Tsúng-Chî-Fai. Kòk-waî* nuĭ-sẑ, kòk-waî* sin-shaang, ni ts'ẑ kwan-sẑ taaî în-tsaâp, kòk-waî* yaū kòk ch'uè laî-tò ni-shuè ts'oî-fông san-mān; kôh chân-shì ngŏh-teî mŏ mi-yĕ chiu-toî neĭ-teî; kam-yât ngŏh-teî seúng tseung ni ts'ẑ în-tsaâp kè shue-mîn* pò-kò kaau peî kòk-waî* t'aî-hă, shûn-pîn* ts'êng kòk-waî* shîk ts'aan pîn-faân, heùng kòk-waî* chì tsê; hei-mông tseung-loî ngŏh-teî faán-kung taaî-lûk hó-ts'ž ni ts'ẑ în-tsaâp yat-yeûng kòm shìng-kung. Ts'êng kòk waî* heî faaî*.

Wān. Wōng Sin-Shang, neĭ cha faaî-tsẑ cha-tak hó hó. Tuî- ue Chung-Kwòk ts'oî, neĭ shîk-tak kwaàn mà?

W. Shîk-tak kwaàn, sui-ìn ngŏh haî Meĭ-Kwòk ch'ut shaî, haî Meĭ-Kwòk taaî, taân-haî tuî-ue Chung-Kwòk ts'oî, ngŏh shîk-tak kwaàn.

W. Meĭ-Kwòk ts'oî t'ūng Chung-Kwòk ts'oî yaŭ mi-yĕ m̄-t'ūng à?

Wān. Meĭ-Kwòk ts'oî chuè-chûng yìng-yeŭng; Chung-Kwòk ts'oî, yaū-k'eî-shî Kwông-Tung ts'oî, chuê-chûng meî-tô.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

W. Kwóng-Tung ts'oī t'ūng pak-fong ts'oī yaŭ mi-yĕ m̄-t'ūng à?

Wān. P'ó-t'ung-laī-kóng, Kwóng-Tung ts'oī mŏ pak-fong ts'oī kòm haām. Ni kòh haî Kwóng-Tung ts'oī, ts'èng neĭ shī-hă k'uĭ kaù m̄-kaù haām, uē-kwóh neĭ kòk-tak t'aăm, hóh-ĭ peî ti shî-yaū.

W. Ngŏh m̄-haî keî shîk-tak haām kè, ngŏh kòk-tak ni ti sùng t'iū-meî t'iū-tak hó hó. Hóh-sik ngŏh ngaam-ngaam ts'aam-ka-uēn yat-kòh kai-meĭ-tsaú ooî*, ī-ka ngŏh shîk m̄-lôk.

Wān. Pat-uē yám pooi nūng ch'ā la, nūng ch'ā hóh-ĭ kaaî tsaú. Yaŭ ti yān yám ch'ā chung-ī peî t'ōng, neĭ iù t'ōng mà?

W. Ngŏh chung-ī yám ts'ing ch'ā, m̄-shaî peî t'ōng là, tsaû kóm tak là.

Wān. Kwaan tsúng-Chī-Fai, kòk-waî* koon-cheúng, neĭ-teî kè kwan-sẑ în-tsaâp kè shue-mîn* pò-kò kòm ts'eūng-saī, tsaú-tsîk yaû kòm fung-foò, ngŏh toī-piú ts'uēn-t'aî loī-pan heùng chué-yān* Kwaan Tsúng-Chī-Fai chī tsê.

W. Kwaan Tsûng-Chī-Fai, ngŏh chuk neĭ-teî tseung-loī faán-kung taaî-lûk shīng-kung.

K. Ni ts'z̀ în-tsaâp tak-tò* yaŭ-pong yān-sẑ hîp-chôh, t'ūng taaî-ka kè nŏ-lîk, lîng-tò yat-ts'aī to hó shīng-kung. Táng ngŏh kīng kòk waî* yat-pooi, pîng chuk Chung-Meĭ yaŭ-ī yat-yât peî yat-yât tsùn-pô.

LESSON 20

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Wōng-Ī̂: Madame, is this the Grand Hotel? I have come to attend Commanding General Kwaan's press conference.

Miss Wān, Reporter of the Central Daily News: Yes, this is the Grand Hotel, I have also come to attend his press conference.

Lt General Kwaan: Ladies and gentlemen, for this military maneuver you came from various places to collect news information. At that time, we did not have facilities to entertain you. Today, I'd like to hand to you the written report of this maneuver and take this opportunity to offer you this dinner party in expression of our appreciation. I do hope that our invasion towards the mainland in the future will be as successful as this maneuver. Let's start to eat.

Wān: Mr. Wōng, you are so skillful in manipulating your chopsticks, are you accustomed to Chinese dishes?

Wōng: I am quite used to it. Although I was born and brought up in America, I am accustomed to the Chinese dishes.

Wōng: What is the difference between Chinese and American foods?

Wān: The American food emphasizes nourishment, and Chinese food emphasizes taste.

Wōng: What is the difference between the Cantonese dishes and northern dishes?

Wān: Generally speaking the Cantonese dishes are not as salty as the northern dishes. This is a Cantonese dish. Please taste it to see if it is salty enough. If it is not salty enough, you may put on some soya sauce.

Wŏng: I am not very used to salty food and these dishes are well flavored. Too bad I have just gone to a cocktail party and can't eat now.

Wăn: You had better drink a cup of strong tea which may help to neutralize the alcohol. Some people like to put sugar in the tea. Do you want some sugar?

Wŏng: I prefer to drink plain tea. I don't want any sugar. This will be allright.

Wăn: Commanding General Kwaan, and dear officers, your written report of the military maneuvers is very comprehensive and complete and the banquet is very luxurious. On behalf of all the guests, I wish to express our thanks to our host, Commanding General Kwaan.

Wŏng: Commanding General Kwaan, I hope that in the future you will invade the China mainland successfully.

Kwaan: In this military maneuver, having the assistance from the personnel of our friendly ally, as well as the great effort devoted by all of us, everything came out very successfully. Let me propose a toast to all of you and wish the further progress of the Sino-American friendship.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. May be you have made some progress but you still have to work hard.
2. I am sure the Sino-American relationship will be improved.
3. May I propose a toast to the host, and wish him well.
4. These foreigners are people from friendly countries.
5. I shall discuss the matter with your superior officer after I have read your report.
6. Your manager will arrange the banquet for the reporters.
7. In case of accident please submit a written report to the police within 24 hours.
8. Although you don't like tea which is strong, this is all that I have.
9. Before you leave a banquet, it is necessary to thank the host first.
10. These dishes are delicious and good for health.
11. It is true that milk is one of the most nutritious food.
12. The chicken tastes good, but unfortunately I am already full.
13. Ladies and gentlemen, may I have your attention please!
14. Reporters obtain their information through this office.
15. Mr. Lee proposed a toast to the general and thanked him for the banquet.
16. In this military maneuver, two men were wounded and had to be sent to the hospital.

LESSON 20

WORD LIST

1.	keì-chê chiu-toî ooî*	press interview (lit: reporters reception)
2.	ts'oì-fóng san-mān	to collect news information
3.	shue-mîn* pò-kò	written report
4.	heùng chué-yān* chì tsê	to give thanks to the host
5.	yìng-yeŭng	nutrition, nourishment
6.	t'iū meî t'iū tak hó hó	well-flavored, well-seasoned
7.	kaaì tsaú	to neutralize the wine
8.	ts'ing ch'ā	plain tea
9.	koon-cheúng	official (personnel)
10.	tsaú-tsîk	banquet
11.	toî-piú ts'uēn-t'aì loì-pan	to represent the whole group of guests
12.	yaŭ-pong yān sẑ	people of friendly country
13.	nŏ-lîk	to work hard
14.	yat-ts'ìt (ts'aì)	all
15.	kìng...yat-pooi	to propose a drink to
16.	Chung-Meĭ yaŭ-ì	Sino-American friendship
17.	pîng	also, together

LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

604

梁 leũng: beam; ridge.

屋梁 uk-leũng: ridge pole of a house.

橋梁 k'iũ-leũng: a bridge beam.

鼻梁 peî-leũng: bridge of the nose.

868

標 piu: a notice; mark; to signal; to show forth.

商標 sheung-piu: trade mark.

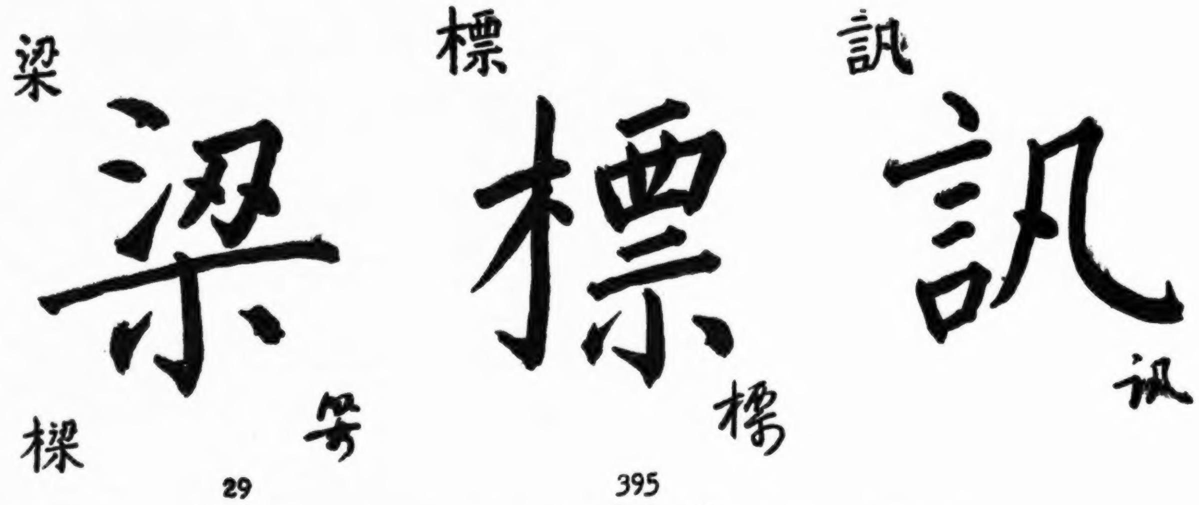
標準 piu-chún: a standard

1061

訊 sùn: to try a case; to examine.

訊罪 sùn tsuî: examine a criminal.

訊問 sùn-mân: to try; to investigate; to inquire into.



29

振 chàn: to stimulate; to restore,

振作 chàn-tsok: to rouse;stimulate

振興 chàn-hing: to develop

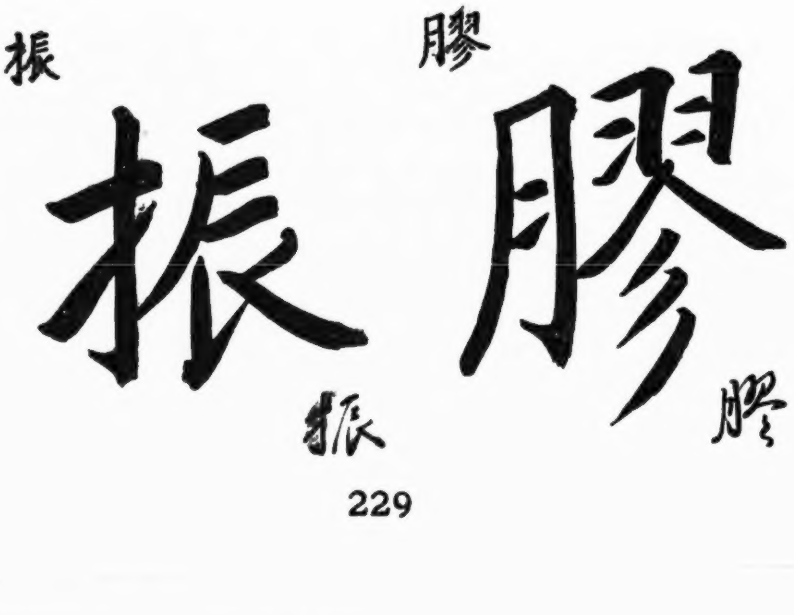
395

膠 kaau: glue; to adhere to

膠水 kaau-shuî: glue; mucilage

膠擦 kaau-ts'aat: rubber eraser.

樹膠 shuê-kaau: rubber.



LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

41

仇 ch'aū (shaū): to hate; oppose; an enemy; rival.

仇敵 shaū-tîk: an enemy

仇人 shaū-yān: an enemy

報仇 pò-shaū: to take revenge

487

蓋 k'oì: to cover; to hide.

蓋 koì: a cover; screen; in fact; hence.

蓋起 k'oì heí: to put on or cover.

眼蓋 ngaǎn-koì: eyelids.

蓋印 k'oì yàn: to affix; to seal; to stamp.

770

努 nǒ: make great effort.

努力 nǒ-lîk: endeavor; to strive; to exert oneself; to struggle.

仇 蓋 蓋 努

仇 蓋 努

讎 讐 仇 葢 蓋 努

782

按 òn: to put down; to lay hand on; to cease.

按兵 òn ping: to halt the troops.

按月 òn uêt; monthly.

按法 òn faàt: according to law.

92

征 ching: to make war; subjugate levy taxes

征伐 ching-fât: to attack; to invade

按 征

按 征

按 征

LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

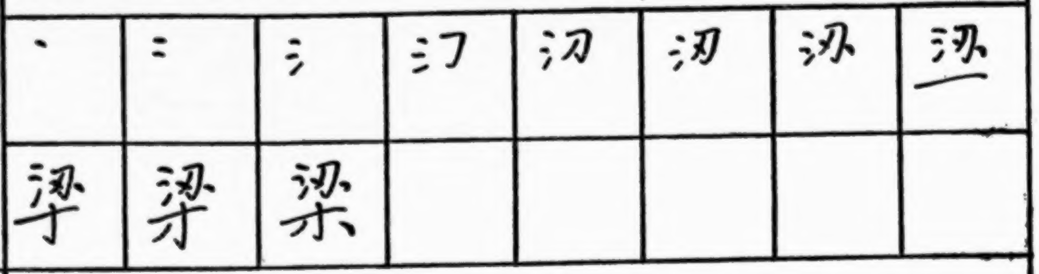
關總指揮喺圓山飯店開記者招待會.將呢次演習嘅書面報告交俾各位新聞記者同通訊社嘅訪員,同時請佢地食飯,向佢地致謝.黄二喺嗰處見到一位女記者雲小姐.喺食飯嘅時候,佢地講及食嘅問題;將近食完嘅時候,雲小姐企起身,代表全體來-pan 向主人致謝.最後關總指揮向大家敬酒,佢話呢次演習,一切按照預定目標黎做,順利進行,希望以後軍民都本着同仇嘅意志,大家努力振作,使將來嘅戰事,好似呢次演習一樣噉成功.將敵人征服.

LESSON 20

WRITING MATERIAL

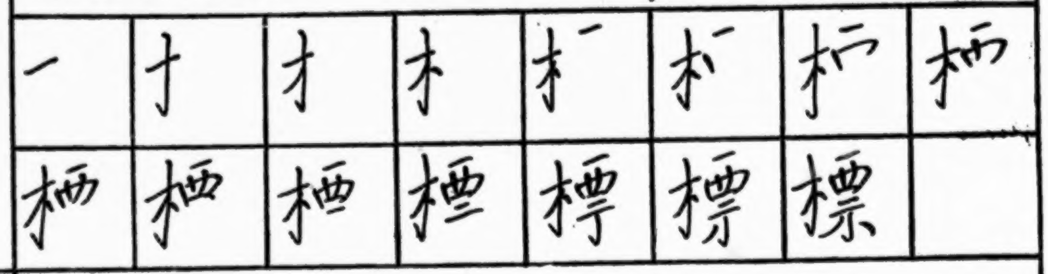
梁

Character Number 604 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 11 木



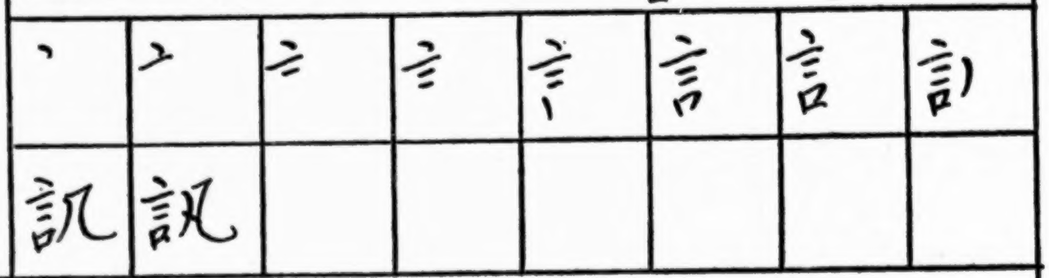
標

Character Number 868 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 15 木，木



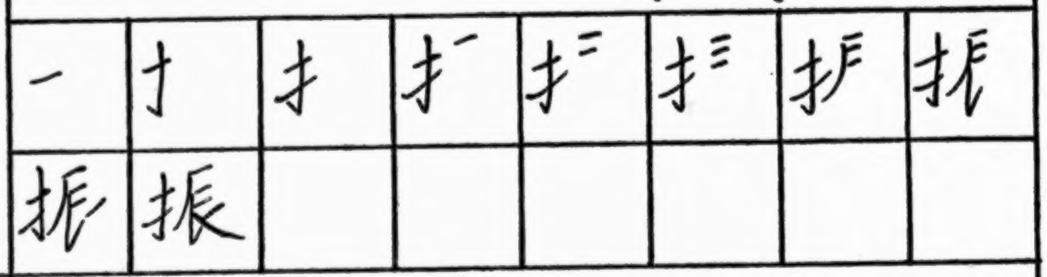
訊

Character Number 1061 Radical Number 149
Stroke Number 10 言



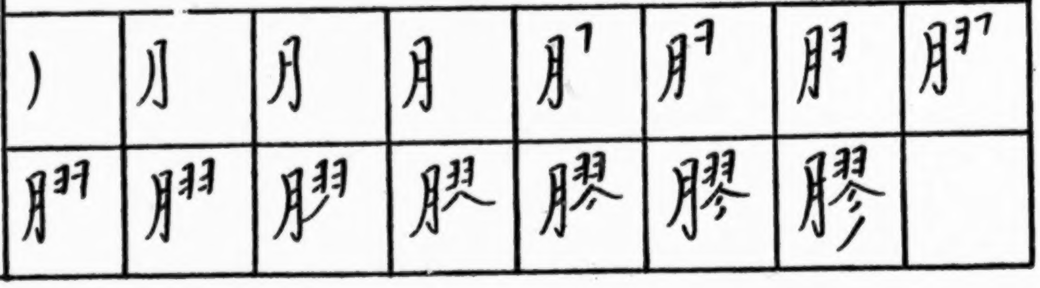
振

Character Number 29 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 10 扌，手



膠

Character Number 395 Radical Number 130
Stroke Number 15 月，肉



DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE
TEXT VOLUME
VOLUME VII
LESSONS 1-20
(CHARACTER TEXT)

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Text Volume

Volume VII

Lessons 1-20

(Character Text)

May 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

第一課　調職

第二署白署長：陳上校，你覺得黃國全嘅工作成績點呀？

陳上校：我覺得佢嘅工作成績好好。

白：佢對工作嘅態度點樣呀？

陳：佢好負責，好勤力，對工作好認真。

白：既然佢嘅工作成績咁好，我想調佢去遠東工作。

陳：點解你想調佢去遠東工作呢？

白：因為遠東方面好需要佢呢種人。

陳：你想調佢去遠東邊處工作呀？

白：我想調佢去台灣工作。

陳：好呀，等我同佢講吓喇。

黃二：陳上校，你叫我黎有乜野事呀？

陳：黃先生，以前你有冇請求過調職呀？

黃：有，我以前有請求過調職．

陳：白署長想調你去台灣工作，你想去嗎？

黃：好呀，我好想去嗰處．

黃：你想我負責邊種工作呢？

陳：好難講，你最主要嘅工作係情報工作．

黃：除咗情報工作之外，重有乜野工作呀．

陳：除咗情報工作之外，你重要同台灣中國各有關機關聯絡．

黃：邊啲有關機關呀？

陳：好似中國國防部，陸軍部，心理作戰處，等等．

黃：我去咗之後邊個接我呢處嘅工作呀？

陳：我想你同而家喺台灣嘅一個姓林嘅人對調。

黃：你想我幾時去呀？

陳：越快越好。

第一課　調職

陸軍部第二署白署長同陳上校講説話，白署長問陳上校好多關於黃二（黃國全）嘅工作成績，同黃二對工作嘅態度陳上校話佢嘅工作成績好好，做事好負責好認真，同好勤力．白署長想調佢去遠東工作．後來陳上校問黃二想唔想去台灣做情報嘅工作．黃二話佢以前請求過調職，佢好想去台灣．佢去台灣除咗做情報工作之外，重要同台灣中國各有關機關聯絡．

第二課　辦出國手續

黃二：老李，你由台灣黎呢處有幾耐；我由呢處去台灣嘅手續係點樣架？

李四：我估，由美國去台灣嘅手續同由台灣黎美國嘅手續差唔多．

黃：由台灣黎呢處嘅手續係點樣架？

李：你先要申請出國護照，然後辦簽證．

黃：喺台灣，邊個機關負責發護照架？

李：喺台灣，中國外交部負責發護照．

黃：領咗護照之後，去邊處辦簽證呀？

李：領咗護照之後，去美國大使館嘅領事館辦簽證．

黃：除咗護照同簽證之外，重要辦乜野呀？

李：重要檢查體格，同打針種痘．

黃：喺美國，美國國務院負責發護照，係嗎？

李：我唔係幾清楚，我估係敢．

黃：喺美國，中國大使館嘅領事館負責辦理去台灣嘅簽證手續，係嗎？

李：係，中國大使館嘅領事館負責辦理去台灣嘅簽證手續．

黃：普通黎講，護照同簽證嘅有效期幾長呀？

李：有一定嘅，有時長，有時短．

黃：小姐，請問呢處係唔係護照科呀？

國務院女辦事員：係，呢處係護照科，有乜貴幹呀？

黃：我想申請去台灣嘅護照．

黃：先生，請問呢處係唔係負責辦理簽證手續架？

中國總領事館副領事：係，呢張係申請表．

黃：簽證期滿之後，點辦呀？

副領事：簽證期滿之後，你可以申請延期．

第二課　辦出國手續

黃二就黎要去台灣，佢唔係幾清楚由美國去台灣嘅手續．佢問李四，由美國去台灣嘅手續係點樣嘅．李四話，由美國去台灣嘅手續同由台灣黎美國嘅手續差唔多．先喺中國外交部申請出國護照，然後去美國領事館辦簽證．喺美國，美國國務院負責發護照；中國領事館負責辦理去台灣嘅簽證手續．黃二而家去國務院護照科申請護照，又去中國總領事館辦簽証嘅手續．

第三課　辭行

李四：老黃，你咁早黎呢處：有乜野緊要事呀？

黃二：我想大後日走，而家特登黎呢處向你辭行．

李：你啱啱辦好簽證嘅手續，點解走得咁匆忙呀？

黃：我嘅上司話，我越快走越好．

李：你有辦法遲啲走咩？

黃：冇辦法，呢個係佢嘅命令．

李：我想今晚請你食飯，同你送行，有時候嗎？

黃：多謝嘥，我真係冇時間，以後再請喇．

李：好喇，以後有機會補請喇．

李：喂，點解你忙成敢呀？

黃：我重有好多野要做，我重要執行李．

李：你嘅目的地係邊處呀？

黃：我先去台北；以後去邊處，我重未知道．

李：你搭軍機去，抑或搭民航機去呀？

黃：我搭民航機去，呢張係汎美航空公司嘅機票．

李：哦，你想先飛去馬尼拉，到咗馬尼拉之後，你點樣去台灣呀？

黃：到咗馬尼拉之後，我想轉飛機飛台灣．

李：你搭嘅係客機，抑或運輸機呀？

黃：當然係客機喇．

李：你去咗之後，你有乜野事要我同你做架？

黃：如果我有信，麻煩你同我轉．

李：轉去邊處呀？

黃：呢個係我喺台北嘅臨時地址．

第三課　辭行

黃二已經辦好出國手續，佢要大後日離開美國去台灣．而家佢黎李四處向李四辭行．李四問佢點解走得咁匆忙，佢話，呢啲係佢嘅上司嘅命令，佢冇辦法遲啲走．李四想今晚同佢餞行，佢話佢唔去得，因為佢重有好多野要做．李四問佢嘅目的地係邊處，佢話佢想搭汎美航空公司嘅飛機先飛去馬尼拉；到咗馬尼拉之後，轉飛機飛台灣．

第四課　趕飛機，接飛機

黃二：小姐，請問去三藩市嘅七十七號班機重有幾耐起飛呀？

華盛頓飛機場問事處：先生，時間好啱，重有十五分鐘．

黃：請問邊架飛機係飛去三藩市架？

問事處：嗰架停喺第三條跑道嘅就係鏬．

黃：請問由第幾道閘口去呀？

問事處：由第三道閘口去．

黃：點咗搭客嘅名未呀？

問事處：而家點緊名，你即刻走去喇．

空中小姐：啱啱點到你嘅名，你黎得好合時．

何方蘭：小姐，由華盛頓飛黎嘅七十七號班機點解誤點呀？

三藩市國際機場候機室：因為由華盛頓到呢處嘅天氣唔好.

何：七十七號班機重有幾耐到呀？

候機室：小姐，嗰架飛機啱啱降落.

何：請問你有冇搭客嘅名單呀？

候機室：呢張係搭客嘅名單.

黃：方蘭，真係對唔住，令你等咗咁耐.

何：唔緊要，我心急啫.

何：你想唔想而家攞行李呀？

黃：我想將啲行李留喺行李室處.

何：點解呀？你係唔係想由呢處轉飛機飛台灣呀？

黃：係，我想聽朝早由呢處轉飛機飛台灣.

何：如果係敢，我地今日去唐人埠頑吓喇.

黃：好呀.

第四課　趕飛機，接飛機

黃二由華盛頓趕搭七十七號班機去三藩市，佢嘅時間好哏，佢到機場嘅時候，嗰架飛機重有十五分鐘起飛，佢即刻由第三道閘口走去飛機處．嗰陣時一個空中小姐啱啱同啲搭客點名．何小姐喺三藩市國際機場接佢嘅飛機．今日天氣唔好，飛機誤點，何小姐喺候機室等佢等咗好耐．佢好心急．後來飛機安全降落．黃二打算聽朝早喺嗰處轉飛機飛台灣，所以佢將啲行李留喺行李室處，佢地想今日去唐人埠頑吓．

第五課　遊唐人埠(上)

黃二：方蘭，我地去邊處飲早茶呀？

何方蘭：我地去國華餐室喇．

黃：國華餐室喺邊處呀？

何：國華餐室喺都板街．

女招待：先生，要啲乜野點心呀？

黃：我要一碟叉燒包，一碟燒賣，一碟粉菓．

何：我要一碟蝦餃，一碟排骨，一碟炒飯．

黃：飲完茶之後，我地去邊處呀？

何：我地去中華總會館喇．

何：呢處係中華總會館，呢位係陳先生．

黃：陳先生，三藩市又叫做大埠，係嗎？

陳：係，三藩市又叫做大埠、又叫做舊金山．

黃：唐人埠同華埠有乜野唔同呀？

陳：唐人埠同華埠冇乜野唔同．

黃：唐人埠有幾多中國人呀？

陳：唐人埠大約有五萬中國人咁上下．

何：國全，呢間係東華醫院，呢位係雷先生．

黃：雷先生，呢間醫院幾時起好㗎？

雷：呢間醫院喺民國十四年起好嘅．

黃：你地嘅經費夠唔夠呀？唔夠嘅時候，點辦呀？

雷：我地嘅經費唔夠，年年都要籌欵．

黃：方蘭、唐人埠有冇男青年會同女青年會呀？

何：有，嗰間係男青年會，女青年會喺隔離街．

第五課　遊唐人埠(上)

黃二聽朝早去台灣，今日佢同何小姐去遊唐人埠．佢地先去都板街嘅國華餐室飲早茶，佢地食幾碟點心，好似叉燒包，燒賣，粉菓，蝦餃，排骨等等，飲完茶之後，佢地去中華總會館，佢地見倒陳先生，陳先生話唐人埠大約有五萬中國人咁上下．後來佢地去東華醫院，呢間醫院係民國十四年起好嘅，呢間醫院嘅經費唔夠，年年都要籌款．去完東華醫院之後，佢地去男青年會同女青年會．

第六課　遊唐人埠(下)

黃：呢個孫逸仙公園係唔係紀念孫中山先生架？

何：係，佢係紀念孫中山先生嘅．

黃：呢個孫中山銅像係邊個做架？

何：呢個銅像係一個好出名嘅雕刻家造嘅．

黃：三藩市大約有幾多間中國報館呀？

何：根據我所知嘅，三藩市大約有五間中國報館．

黃：你舊時有冇喺呢間聖瑪利中學讀過書呀？

何：有，呢間聖瑪利中學係我嘅母校．

黃：聽聞話，呢間學校嘅鼓樂隊好出名、係嗎？

何：係，佢嘅鼓樂隊非常之出名．

黃：一九○六年三月大地震嘅時候，唐人埠有冇受影响呀？

何：有，唐人埠受好大嘅影响，好多地方發生大火．

黃：聽聞話，大地震同大火嘅時候，消防隊好難救火，點解呀？

何：因為嗰陣時冇電，又唔夠水，所以消防隊好難救火．

黃：今日係雙十節，係中國國慶日，呢處有冇遊行呀？

何：有，今日會有好多人參加遊行．

黃：一年之內，呢處有啲乜野重要嘅節日呀？

何：呢啲重要嘅節日係舊曆新年，舊曆五月初五，中秋節，雙十節，聖誕節，新曆新年等等．

黃：呢處每年幾時選舉女皇架？

何：舊曆新年嘅時候選舉女皇．

黃：唐人埠嘅地方，我地差唔多都去過，重有邊處去呀？

何：我地可以去三藩市嘅市區行吓喇．

第六課　遊唐人埠（下）

黃二同何小姐喺唐人埠遊咗好多地方，好似孫逸仙公園，聖瑪利中學，同中國報館等等．何小姐話，聖瑪利中學係佢嘅母校，嗰間學校嘅鼓樂隊好出名．何小姐又同黃二講好多關於唐人埠嘅歷史，同每年嘅重要節日；佢話，唐人埠一九〇六年大地震嘅時候，因為冇電，啲水又唔夠，所以消防隊好難救火．今日係雙十節，係中國嘅國慶日，好多人參加遊行．

第七課　遊三藩市(上)

黃：邊的人叫三藩做舊金山呀？

何：佢哋中國嘅中國人叫三藩市做舊金山．

黃：我聽聞話，一九四五年聯合國喺呢處成立，係嗎？

何：係，一九四五年聯合國喺呢處成立．

黃：聯合國嘅會員國總共有幾多個呀？

何：我唔知道，不過我知道美國，英國，法國，中國，同蘇聯係會員國．

黃：今年幾月幾日係聯合國成立嘅十二週年紀念日呀？

何：今年十月廿四日係聯合國成立嘅十二週年紀念日．

黃：如果係敢，三藩市係一個好出名嘅國際城市，係嗎？

何：當然喇，三藩市係一個好著名嘅國際大城．

黃：三藩市嘅人口分佈得平唔平均呀？

何：平均，三藩市嘅人口分佈得好平均．

黃：三藩市嘅氣候點呀？

何：三藩市嘅氣候好温和，四季如春．

黃：三藩市嘅氣候既然咁好，一年四季都有遊客，係嗎？

何：係，不過夏天黎呢處嘅遊客多啲，冬天黎呢處嘅遊客少啲．

黃：三藩市嘅遊客多數由邊處黎架？

何：處處都有，有啲由世界各國黎，有啲由美國各州黎．

黃：呢處有咁多大碼頭，邊啲船停喺呢處架？

何：来往美國同世界各大城嘅大郵船多數停喺呢處．

黃：來往美國同遠東各國嘅總統船多數停喺呢處，係嗎？

何：係，佢地多數停喺呢處，搭客多數喺呢處登陸．

黃：如果係敢，三藩市係一個好重要嘅港口，係唔係呀？

何：當然喇，三藩市係一個非常之重要嘅港口．

第七課　遊三藩市（上）

何方蘭而家同黃二講好多關於三藩市嘅野．佢話住喺中國嘅中國人叫三藩市做舊金山．三藩市係一個好出名嘅國際大城同重要嘅港口．一九四五年十月二十四日聯合國喺呢處成立．今年十月二十四日係聯合國成立嘅十二週年紀念日．三藩市嘅人口分佈得好平均；氣候好溫和，四季如春，一年四季都有遊客，不過夏天黎呢處嘅遊客多啲，冬天黎呢處嘅遊客少啲，來往美國同世界各大城嘅大郵船多數停喺呢處．

第八課　遊三藩市(中)

黃：我地而家喺邊處呀？

何：我地而家喺三藩市嘅市中心區．

黃：呢處有咁多大鋪頭同百貨公司，呢處係唔係商業區呀？

何：係，呢處亦都係商業區．

黃：呢座建築物叫做乜野名呀？

何：呢座建築物叫做市政廳，係市政府嘅辦公室．

黃：邊間係市長嘅辦公室呀？

何：呢間係市長嘅辦公室．

黃：呢間歌劇院今日有乜野節目呀？

何：我唔知道、但係我知道而家係歌劇嘅季節．

黃：呢間歌劇院大約有幾多座位呀？

何：我估有三千個座位．

黃：除阻歌劇之外，三藩市重有冇其他嘅季節嘅娛樂呀？

何：有，好似音樂會呀，溜冰表演呀，馬戲呀，等等．

黃：呢間戲院今日做嘅電影係「火燒舊金山」，佢描寫乜野架？

何：佢描寫一九〇六年三藩市嘅大地震．

黃：呢間廣播電台咁大，我地可以入去參觀嗎？

何：可以，我地可以入去參觀．

黃：先生，嗰位新聞廣播員而家做緊乜野呀？

廣播電台台長：佢而家轉播緊英國嘅新聞．

黃：三藩市嘅市區重有乜野可以參觀架？

何：係咁多；而家我地可以去三藩市嘅風景區同住宅區．

黃：好呀．

第八課　遊三藩市(中)

黃二同何小姐而家喺三藩市嘅市中心區，呢處亦都係三藩市嘅商業區，呢處有好多大鋪頭，同百貨公司．佢地去參觀市政府嘅辦公室，歌劇院同一間廣播電台．嗰間歌劇院好大，大約有三千個座位．除阻歌劇之外，三藩市重有其他嘅季節嘅娛樂，好似音樂會呀，溜冰呀，馬戲呀，等等．佢地參觀嗰間廣播電台嘅時候，嗰間電台啱啱轉播英國嘅新聞．參觀完三藩市嘅市區之後，佢地想去遊三藩市嘅風景區同住宅區．

第九課　遊三藩市(下)

黃：三藩市嘅風景區喺邊處呀？

何：三藩市嘅風景區喺三藩市郊外.

黃：你知道點樣去博物院，金門橋，金門公園同動物園呀？

何：嗰幾個地方離呢處都好遠，我唔係幾識路.

黃：喂，請問博物院點樣去呀？

電油站工人：你打呢條路向東行，大約經過五十個街口，見到紅綠燈之後，向南行大約十里，就係喇.

工人：先生，你架車要入電油嗎？

黃：我架車有幾多電油，唔該你同我入滿佢喇.

黃：如果我搭巴士或者無軌電車去，我要搭第幾路呀？

工人：你可以搭第十二路巴士或者第三路無軌電車.

黃：第十二路巴士可唔可以直到呀，要唔要轉車呀？

工人：十二路巴士唔可以直到，你要轉車．

黃：喺邊處轉車呀？

工人：十二路巴士到咗終點之後，你可以轉第七路無軌電車．

黃：你有冇三藩市嘅地圖呀？

工人：有，呢份係三藩市嘅地圖．

黃：方蘭，呢道金門橋係全世界至長嘅吊橋，係嗎？

何：我估係．

黃：你想我同你喺呢處影張相嗎？

何：好呀．

黃：住宅區喺邊處呀？

何：住宅區喺呢處嘅附近．

第九課　遊三藩市(下)

黃二同何小姐行完三藩市嘅市區之後，佢地想去遊三藩市嘅風景區同住宅區；佢地想去博物院，金門橋，金門公園同動物園．嗰幾個地方離市區好遠，佢地唔識路．佢地問電油站嘅工人，電油站嘅工人講俾佢地知點樣去，佢又話佢地可以搭第十二路巴士，十二路巴士到咗終點之後，轉第七路無軌電車．佢地到金門橋嘅時候，黃二同何小姐嚟嗰處影相．而家佢地想去三藩市嘅住宅區．

第十課　飛台灣

何：點解班機改期起飛呀？

黃：因為三藩市附近好大霧，飛機冇法子起飛．

何：起飛嘅日期改到幾時呀？

黃：改到聽日下午兩點鐘．

何：如果到時重係咁大霧，會唔會繼續延期呀？

黃：好可能、如果到時重係咁大霧，好可能繼續延期．

何：你知唔知道飛行嘅航線呀？

黃：我地先飛去馬尼剌，由馬尼剌轉機飛台灣．

何：你想由馬尼剌搭邊間航空公司嘅飛機飛台灣呀？

黃：我想由馬尼剌搭民航空運公司嘅飛機飛台灣．

飛機塲廣播器：飛去馬尼拉嘅十二號班機兩點鐘起飛，請搭客上機．

黃：方蘭，我要走鑄，再見

何：國全，祝你一路平安．

空中小姐：各位搭客，我地而家喺馬尼剌機場降落．

黃：我想買一張去台北嘅飛機票．

馬尼剌機場民航空運公司辦事處：呢張係去台北嘅飛機票．

空中小姐：飛機而家起飛，請各位將安全帶扣好．

黃：小姐，由馬尼拉飛去台北要幾耐呀？

空中小姐：大約要三點半鐘咁耐．

無線電生：馬小姐，請你入黎，我有好緊要嘅消息同你講．

空中小姐：各位搭客，而家台灣北部嘅天氣好唔好，我地或者會喺台南機場降落．

第十課　飛台灣

黃二打算由三藩市搭汎美航空公司嘅飛機去馬尼拉，由馬尼剌轉飛機飛台灣．因為三藩市附近好大霧，飛機冇法子起飛．起飛嘅日期改到聽日下午兩點鐘．如果到時重係咁大霧，好可能繼續延期．飛機喺馬尼拉機場降落之後，黃二轉飛機，佢去馬尼拉機場嘅民航空運公司嘅辦事處，買一張去台北嘅飛機票．飛機由馬尼拉機場起飛之後，空中小姐話，台灣北部嘅天氣好唔好，飛機會喺台南機場降落．

第十一課　到台灣

黃二：小姐，你係邊處人呀？你講廣東話講得咁流利．

空中小姐：我係北平人，喺廣東大，所以我講廣東話講得唔錯．

黃：每間遠東嘅航空公司規定所有嘅空中小姐都要識講廣東話，係嗎？

空：係，呢啲係遠東嘅航空公司嘅規定．

黃：你地未開始工作之前，有冇受過體格訓練架？

空：有，因為有啲人有航空病，所以我地未開始工作之前，要受體格訓練．

黃：而家架飛機飛到幾高呀？

空：而家飛行嘅高度係五千尺．

黃：架飛機唔停敢兜圈，點解呀？

空：架飛機就黎降落，飛行員而家揾緊降落嘅地方．

黃：我地喺邊個機場降落呀？

空：我地喺台北松山機場降落．

空：各位搭客，飛機就黎降落，請你地將安全帶扣好．

空：請各位落機，第一道門口嘅左便係休息室．

黃：呢條跑道咁濶，咁新，係唔係最近完成架？

副駕駛員：呢條跑道係最近改建嘅．

黃：請問嗰架係唔係美國軍事顧問團嘅汽車呀？

駕駛員：係，嗰架係美國軍事顧問團嘅汽車，係用黎接送美軍人員嘅．

司機：先生，你想唔想去「中國之友社」住呀？

黃：唔該你車我去嗰處喇．

第十一課　到台灣

黃二而家由馬尼剌飛去台北．佢同空中小姐傾偈．嗰個空中小姐係北平人，喺廣東大，佢講廣東話講得好流利．佢話每間遠東嘅航空公司規定所有嘅空中小姐都要識講廣東話；佢地未開始工作之前，要受體格訓練．飛機就黎喺台北松山機場降落嘅時候、空中小姐叫搭客將安全帶扣好．飛機降落之後，黃二見到一架美國軍事顧問團嘅汽車．黃二坐嗰架車去台北嘅「中國之友社」．佢想喺嗰處住．

第十二課　工作報到

黃：請問你呢個單位係唔係國防部政治部呀？

傳達：係，呢個單位係國部政治部．

黃：我想見心理作戰處嘅主管謝上校，佢喺處嗎？

傳達：哦！你想見謝上校，你有你嘅名片嗎？

黃：呢張係我嘅名片．

傳達：黃先生，謝上校而家開緊會，請你喺會客廳等吓喇．

謝上校：對唔住，黃先生，我令你等咗咁耐．我啱啱開完會．

黃：唔緊要，謝上校．你有冇接到美軍顧問團嘅公文呀？

謝上校：有，我昨日接到美軍顧問團嘅公文．

黃：嗰張公文點話呀？

謝上校：嗰張公文話派黃先生黎呢處做顧問．我地歡迎之至．

謝上校：黃先生，等我介紹兩位軍官同你相識，呢位係郭中校，呢位係宋少校．

謝上校：各位同事，喺第二次世界大戰嘅時候，黃先生喺中國做過好多心理作戰嘅工作，而家佢黎呢處做我地嘅顧問．

黃：謝上校，而家郭中校主管邊種工作呀？

謝上校：郭中校而家主管對大陸宣傳嘅工作．

黃：宋少校呢？

謝上校：宋少校而家負責金門前線嘅心理作戰嘅工作．

黃：各位軍官，你地都係好有經驗嘅心理作戰嘅專家．美軍派我黎呢處協助你地對敵人嘅心理作戰．我好歡喜有呢個機會同各位一齊工作，以後請各位時時指教，千祈唔好客氣．

第十二課　工作報到

美軍顧問團派黃二去台灣中國國防部政治部嘅心理作戰處做顧問．佢去見心理作戰處嘅主管謝上校嘅時候，謝上校開緊會．傳達叫黃二喺會客室等吓．謝上校開完會之後，佢見到黃二．佢話佢好歡迎黃二喺心理作戰處做顧問．佢介紹黃二同郭中校同宋少校相識．郭中校而家主管對大陸嘅心理作戰嘅工作，宋少校負責金門前線嘅心理作戰嘅工作．

第十三課　參觀陸軍基地—鳳山

黃二：謝上校，中國嘅陸軍基地喺台灣邊處呀？

謝上校：中國嘅陸軍基地喺台灣南部嘅鳳山．

黃：我想去參觀吓嗰處嘅中央陸軍軍官學校，中央士官學校，炮兵學校，陸軍訓練中心，同機械化學校等等．

謝上校：等我打電話問吓陸軍總司令部嘅外事處喇．

謝：黃先生，外事處嘅錢處長話，佢好歡迎你去參觀．

黃：你呢處係中央陸軍軍官學校．請問貴聯絡官喺處嗎？

中央陸軍軍官學校傳達：你有你嘅名片嗎？

黃：我有帶名片黎，呢封係錢處長寫俾貴聯絡官嘅介紹信．

貴聯絡官：黃先生，你想參觀啲乜野，同知道啲乜野呀？

黃：未參觀之前，我想問你幾個問題．

黃：中央陸軍軍官學校同黃埔軍校有乜野唔同呀？

費聯絡官：黃埔軍校係中央陸軍軍官學校嘅前身，同美國嘅西點軍校差唔多．

黃：學生入伍之後，要受幾耐嘅基本訓練呀？

費：學生入伍之後，要受六個月嘅基本訓練．

黃：基本訓練包括乜野呀？

費：基本訓練包括步操，槍操，軍事常識，軍事紀律，體格訓練，射擊術，等等．

黃：軍官學校嘅訓練包括乜野呀？

費：軍官學校嘅訓練包括軍事學、戰術、戰畧、等等．

黃：中國嘅陸軍用邊種編制制度呀？

費：陸軍用「三三」編制制度，即係一個軍有三個師、一個師有三個團，一個團有三個營、等等．

第十三課　參觀陸軍基地—鳳山

鳳山喺台灣嘅南便，係中國嘅陸軍基地．黃二想去嗰處參觀中央陸軍軍官學校，中央士官學校、炮兵學校，陸軍訓練中心同機械化學校．黃二先去中央陸軍軍官學校，佢見到貴聯絡官．佢將錢處長寫嘅介紹信交俾貴聯絡官．未參觀之前，貴聯絡官同黃二講好多關於中國陸軍嘅野．貴聯絡官話，學生入伍之後，要受基本訓練，基本訓練包括步操，槍操，軍事常識，等等．軍官學校嘅訓練包括軍事學，戰術，戰畧，等等．中國陸軍用「三三」編制制度．

第十四課　參觀空軍基地—崗山

黃二：謝上校，空軍基地崗山喺邊處呀？

謝上校：崗山喺台中以南，鳳山以北．

黃：我想參觀嗰處嘅空軍軍官學校同空軍參謀學校．

謝：空軍總司令部有一架專機飛去崗山，你可以搭嗰架飛機去．呢封係我寫俾孔上校嘅介紹信．

黃：孔上校，我想黎呢處參觀吓．

黃：關於空勤方面，你地需要邊種人員呀？

孔上校：我地要訓練飛行員，領航員，轟炸員，偵察員，通訊員，機關槍手，等等．

黃：你地嘅教官多數係空軍軍官學校以前嘅畢業生，係嗎？

孔：係，佢地多數係空軍軍官學校以前嘅畢業生．

黃：八一四空軍節嘅時候，你地有乜野節目呀？

孔：八月十四空軍節嘅時候，我地有飛行表演，好似編隊飛行，空戰；跳傘表演；防空演習，好似空襲，發警報，燈火管制，等等．

黃：你地呢處有啲乜野飛機呀？

孔：有轟炸機，戰鬥機，驅逐機，偵察機，同教練機，等等，而且我地有各種嘅噴氣機．

黃：空軍軍官學校以前喺邊處呀？

孔：空軍軍官學校喺杭州成立，抗戰嘅時候搬去昆明同印度嘅臘河；第二次世界大戰之後，搬番去杭州；中國共產黨就黎佔領中國大陸嘅時候，搬黎呢處．

第十四課　參觀空軍基地—崗山

崗山喺台中以南，鳳山以北．係中國空軍嘅訓練基地，黃二想去嗰處參觀空軍軍官學校同空軍參謀學校．佢搭空軍總司令部嘅專機去嗰處．喺崗山，佢見到孔上校．孔上校講好多關於中國空軍嘅歷史，訓練，等等．最後佢話，空軍軍官學校喺杭州成立，抗戰嘅時候搬去昆明同印度，第二次世界大戰之後，搬番去杭州；中國共產黨就黎佔領中國大陸嘅時候，搬黎崗山．

第十五課　參觀海軍基地—左營

黃二：高少校，我想參觀你地嘅海軍軍官學校，海軍機械學校，同海軍陸戰隊訓練中心．

左營海軍軍官學校聯絡官高少校：呢處地方好大，我地坐吉普車到處去參觀喇．

黃：聽聞話，喺第二次世界大戰嘅時候，左營係日本聯合艦隊嘅海軍基地，係嗎？

高少校：係，左營係嗰陣時日本聯合艦隊嘅海軍基地．聯合艦隊嘅旗艦時時停喺呢處．

黃：中國海軍有冇艦隊呀？佢地嘅組織有冇美國第七艦隊嘅咁完全呀？

高：中國海軍有艦隊，但係佢地嘅組織好簡單、冇美國嘅咁

完全，我地冇航空母艦，冇主力艦．

黃：你地有乜野海軍武器呀？

高：我地嘅海軍武器係魚雷，水雷，深水炸彈，等等．

黃：你地有冇自導飛彈呀，好似陸對空嘅飛彈，空對空嘅飛彈，海對空嘅飛彈，同其他嘅原子武器？

高：呢啲係最高國防秘密，我唔係幾知道．

黃：作戰嘅時候，海軍點樣配合海軍陸戰隊作戰呀？

高：呢本書講及佢地點樣配合作戰．最初由海軍放烟幕，同用大炮轟擊敵人嘅海岸，喺海軍嘅炮火掩護之下．陸戰隊同各種水陸兩棲部隊坐登陸艇去到敵人嘅海岸建立灘頭陣地，呢啲叫做水陸兩棲作戰．

黃：喺敵人嘅海岸登陸之後，你地點樣維持海上嘅補給線呀？

高：我地用運輸艦同其他嘅戰艦維持海上嘅補給線.

黃：如果係敢，你地一定要有好强大嘅護航隊，係嗎？

高：係，我地一定要有好强大嘅護航隊.

第十五課　參觀海軍基地—左營

黃二而家參觀左營嘅海軍軍官學校，佢同聯絡官高少校坐一架吉普車到處去參觀．高少校同黃二講好多關於左營嘅歷史，中國艦隊嘅組織同中國海軍嘅武器．最後佢講及海軍同海軍陸戰隊點樣配合作戰．佢話最初由海軍放烟幕，同炮轟敵人嘅海岸．喺海軍嘅炮火掩護之下，陸戰隊同各種水陸兩棲部隊就坐登陸艇去到敵人嘅海岸建立灘頭陣地．

第十六課　參觀沿海島嶼—澎湖，金門，馬祖

黃二：林上校，我想同香港黎嘅慰勞團去參觀沿海各島嶼，澎湖，金門，馬祖，你有乜野意見呀？

台灣防守司令部林上校：台灣係自由世界嘅重要堡壘；澎湖，金門同馬祖係台灣嘅前衛，你應該去睇吓．

黃：陸少將，點解金門對我地同敵人都咁重要呀？

金門防守司令部參謀長陸少將：因為金門離大陸好近，如果敵人想進攻台灣，一定先要佔領金門；如果國軍反攻大陸，一定要經過金門．所以金門係國軍反攻大陸嘅踏脚石．如果我地守住金門，可以牽制幾十萬敵軍．

黃：陸少將，聽聞話，金門嘅防禦工事多數係地下工事，點解呀？

陸：因為金門喺敵人嘅遠程嘅炮火射程之內，我地一定要有地下工事。

黃：你地對敵人嘅心理作戰工作點樣呀？

陸：有時我地用廣播器叫敵人投降，有時我地用汽球散傳單。

黃：一九四九年古寧頭戰役嘅經過係點架？

陸：講起黎好長，大概係敢。敵人喺金門嘅古寧頭登陸，敵人登陸之後，我地嘅增援部隊將敵人同後方嘅交通線切斷，敵人傷亡好重，好多向我地投降。

黃：萬師長，我地經過台灣海峽嘅時候，見到好多國軍嘅戰艦，佢地除咗防守台灣海峽之外，重有乜野任務呀？

澎湖防守司令部萬師長：佢地其他嘅任務係巡邏台灣海峽，封鎖中國大陸。你睇吓呢張地圖，呢條係國軍對中國大陸嘅封鎖線。

第十六課　參觀沿海島嶼—澎湖，金門，馬祖

黃二去台灣防守司令部見林上校．黃二話，佢想同香港黎嘅慰勞團去參觀沿海島嶼，澎湖，金門，馬祖．林上校話台灣係自由世界嘅重要堡壘；澎湖，金門同馬祖係台灣嘅前衛．黃二去到金門嘅時候，佢見到參謀長陸少將；陸參謀長同黃二講一九四九年古寧頭戰役嘅經過．後來佢地去澎湖；佢地經過台灣海峽嘅時候，見到好多國軍嘅戰艦，嗰啲嘅戰艦嘅任務之一係封鎖中國大陸．

第十七課　環島旅行—台灣(上)

謝上校：黃先生，你參觀咗咁多軍事嘅地方，你一定睇到悶嘥．我地不如環遊台灣喇．我已經約好台灣旅行社嘅左經理，同共同安全分署嘅麥小姐．

麥小姐：我對於台灣好熟．我地坐謝上校嘅吉普車去喇，黃先生．

左經理：我地先去台北嘅市區喇．呢張係台北市嘅地圖，呢處係總統府．蔣總統有時喺呢處閱兵．呢處係中山堂，係公共集會嘅地方，呢處係台北賓館，係招待外賓嘅地方，呢處係美國新聞處．呢處係新公園，呢處係植物園．

麥：呢處係陽明山，以前叫做草山，蔣總統嘅官邸喺呢處．

黃二：陽明山嘅櫻花好出名，係嗎？

麥：係，佢嘅櫻花好出名．每年春天好多遊客黎呢處睇櫻花．

麥：呢處係北投，呢處有好多溫泉，差唔多每間旅館都有溫泉浴室．

左：呢處係台北以北嘅基隆．基隆係台灣至大嘅港口，呢隻係招商局嘅船，呢隻係復興航業公司嘅船，呢兩間係台灣至大嘅航業公司．

左：我地而家向南行，呢處係台北以南嘅新竹．

黃：有人話，住喺新竹嘅人多數係廣東人，係嗎？

左：係，住喺新竹嘅人多數係廣東人．

麥：我地到咗台中，台中嘅氣候好溫和，風景好美麗．

黃：着名嘅日月潭喺邊處呀？

麥：着名嘅日月潭喺台中市嘅附近，喺日月潭有兩間好大嘅水力發電廠．台灣大部份嘅電力由呢處供應．

黃：報紙話台中係自導飛彈嘅基地，係嗎？

左：係，報紙係敢話．

第十七課　環島旅行—台灣（上）

黃二參觀咗好多軍事嘅地方；謝上校問黃二想唔想環遊台灣；謝上校話，佢已經約好台灣旅行社嘅左經理、同美國共同安全分署嘅麥小姐．佢地四個人坐謝上校嘅吉普車去．佢地先去台北嘅市區，台北嘅郊外，好似陽明山，北投，等等；然後去基隆；基隆係台灣至大嘅港口．遊完基隆之後，佢地向南行，經過幾個大城市，好似台北，新竹，台中，等等．

第十八課　環島旅行—台灣(下)

左經理：昨晚我地喺台中過夜，而家我地繼續南行．

左：呢處係台中以南嘅民雄．喺呢處有自由中國之聲廣播電台．佢地日日對大陸廣播，用廣東話同國語廣播．

黃二：如果係敢，民雄係我地對中國大陸心理作戰嘅重要基地之一，係嗎？

謝：係，呢處係我地對中國大陸心理作戰嘅重要基地之一．

麥：我地到咗民雄以南嘅嘉義．

黃：阿里山係唔係喺呢處呀？阿里山嘅海拔幾高呀？

麥：阿里山係喺呢處．阿里山喺海拔六千尺咁上下．

黃：阿里山咁高，我地點樣上去呀？

麥：阿里山有森林鐵路，我地可以坐森林火車上去．

麥：我地到咗山頂，你睇吓啲雲海，靚嗎？

黃：啲雲海真靚，我地好似坐緊飛機．

麥：呢處係台南．台南係台灣嘅古都．呢處有好多古蹟，
好似鄭成功庙，孔子庙，安平港，等等．

黃：鄭成功係邊朝嘅民族英雄呀？

左：鄭成功係明朝末年嘅民族英雄．佢驅逐荷蘭人，收復台灣．

左：呢處係高雄．高雄係台灣南部至大嘅港口．呢兩隻係油輪．每隻有三
萬噸咁重．

黃：呢處有乜野工廠呀？

左：呢處有水泥廠，同著名嘅煉油廠等等．

麥：呢處係屏東，呢處有全台灣至長嘅鐵橋，至大嘅糖廠．台灣
糖嘅產量佔全世界第二．

麥：呢處係台灣東部嘅花蓮，係台灣嘅漁港．

麥：我地而家番去台北．

第十八課　環島旅行—台灣(下)

黃二，謝上校，左經理，同麦小姐昨晚喺台中過夜．佢地今日繼續向南行，經過民雄，嘉義，台南，高雄，屏東，等等．到咗屏東之後，佢地去台灣東部嘅花蓮，然後番台北．民雄係自由中國對大陸心理作戰嘅重要基地之一，台南係台灣嘅古都，高雄係台灣南部至大嘅港口，屏東有全台灣至長嘅鐵橋，同至大嘅糖廠；台灣糖嘅產量佔全世界第二．

第十九課　軍事演習

指揮所孫參謀：黃先生，我地嘅軍事演習已經開始，你有冇收到我地嘅請帖呀？

黃二：有，我前日收到你地嘅請帖．

黃：呢次演習嘅計劃係點架？

孫：我地上星期開一個中美軍事會議，由軍事演習總指揮官關中將主持，出席嘅多數係中美高級官員．我地討論好多關於呢次軍事演習嘅問題．演習嘅地區包括台灣本島，澎湖同其他嘅沿海島嶼，假想敵係由美國第七艦隊同一部份國軍部隊担任，演習嘅目的係測驗國軍防守台灣同反攻大陸嘅能力．

黃：假想敵同我軍嘅戰畧係點樣架？

孫：假想敵採取攻勢．佢地由中國大陸出發，迂迴金門同馬祖進攻澎湖，佢地嘅降落傘部隊喺高雄降落．敵人

嘅間諜預備喺台灣中部同北部放火，破壞交通線．我軍嘅戰畧係先採取守勢，等敵人深入，然後包圍敵人嘅兩翼．空軍爭取制空權，集中轟炸被圍嘅敵軍．敵人後退嘅時候，我地嘅坦克車掩護步兵衝鋒，同敵人肉搏，消滅敵人嘅部隊．我地後方嘅情報人員逮捕敵人嘅間諜．

黃：你地嘅海軍負責乜野任務呀？

孫：我地嘅海軍切斷敵人嘅海上補給線，掩護我地嘅游擊隊喺中國沿海登陸、我地嘅地下工作人員破壞敵人嘅彈藥庫，橋樑，鐵路，同公路，又喺敵人後方散佈謠言，影响敵人嘅士氣．

黃：最後點樣呀？

孫：最後我地嘅海陸空三軍協同喺中國沿海大規模登陸，

第十九課　軍事演習

黃二前日收到軍事演習總指揮官關中將嘅請帖，去參觀軍事演習．佢而家喺指揮所見到孫參謀；孫參謀話，呢次演習嘅目的係測驗國軍防守台灣同反攻大陸嘅能力．佢地嘅假想敵係由美國第七艦隊同一部份國軍部隊担任．假想敵採取攻勢，我軍先採取守勢；等敵人深入，然後反攻，消滅敵人嘅登陸部隊．最後我地海陸空三軍協同喺中國沿海大規模登陸．

第二十課　記者招待會

黃二：小姐，請問呢間係圓山飯店嗎？我黎參加關總指揮嘅記者招待會．

中央日報女記者雲小姐：呢間係圓山飯店，我都係黎參加佢嘅記者招待會．

關總指揮：各位女士、各位先生，呢次軍事大演習，各位由各處黎到呢處採訪新聞，啯陣時我地冇乜野招待你地．今日我地想將呢次演習嘅書面報告交俾各位睇吓，順便請各位食餐便飯，向各位致謝．希望將來我地反攻大陸好似呢次演習一樣咁成功．請各位起快．．．

雲：黃先生，你揸筷子揸得好好．對於中國菜，你食得慣嗎？

黃：食得慣，雖然我喺美國出世，喺美國大，但係對於中國菜，我食得慣．

黃：美國菜同中國菜有乜野唔同呀？

雲：美國菜注重營養，中國菜，尤其是廣東菜，注重味道．

黃：廣東菜同北方菜有乜野唔同呀？

雲：普通黎講，廣東菜冇北方菜咁鹹呢個係廣東菜請你試吓佢夠唔夠鹹．如果你覺得淡，可以俾啲鼓油．

黃：我唔係幾食得鹹嘅，我覺得呢啲餸調味調得好好．可惜我啱啱參加完一個鷄尾酒會，而家我食唔落．

雲：不如飲杯濃茶喇，濃茶可以解酒．有啲人飲茶中意俾糖，你要糖嗎？

黃：我中意飲清茶，唔使俾糖鏬、就敢得鏬．

雲：關總指揮，各位官長，你地嘅軍事演習嘅書面報告咁詳細，酒席又咁豐富，我代表全體來賓向主人關總指揮致謝．

黃：關總指揮，我祝你地將來反功大陸成功．

關：呢次演習得到友邦人士協助，同大家嘅努力，令到一一切都好成功，等我敬各位一杯，並祝中美友誼一日比一日進步．

第二十課　記者招待會

關總指揮喺圓山飯店開記者招待會．佢話佢想將呢次演習嘅書面報告交俾各位記者睇吓，同時請佢地食飯，向佢地致謝．黃二喺嗰處見到一位女記者雲小姐．喺食飯嘅時候，佢地講及食嘅問題；雲小姐講中國菜同美國菜點樣唔同，廣東菜同北方菜點樣唔同．嗰啲餸嘅味道好好；黃二好飽，佢食唔落．就黎食完飯嘅時候，雲小姐企起身，佢話佢代表全體來賓向主人致謝．最後關總指揮向大家敬酒，並祝中美友誼一日比一日進步．

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE
TEXT VOLUME
VOLUME VIII
LESSONS 1-26

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

ED022179

AL 001 479

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Text Volume

Volume VIII

Lessons 1-26

July 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

PREFACE

The Chinese Cantonese Course, consisting of 166 lessons in 8 volumes, is one of the Defense Language Institute's Basic Course Series. The material was developed at the Defense Language Institute's Curriculum Development Board.

The course is designed to train native English language speakers to Level 3 proficiency in comprehension and speaking and Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Chinese Cantonese. The texts are intended for classroom use in the Defense Language Institute's intensive programs employing the audio-lingual methodology. Tapes accompany the texts.

All inquiries concerning these materials, including requests for authorization to reproduce, will be addressed to the Director, Defense Language Institute, U. S. Naval Station, Anacostia Annex, Washington, D. C. 20390.

CW Chaney

C. W. CHANEY
Colonel, U.S. Army
Director

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume VIII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 set	Flash Cards for 1500 Most Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	27 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	27 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
		Also available in compact form for comprehension or review purposes:
	3 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:	1 reel	Hong Kong, MF 20-8799,(P)(A)* 9 min.
	1 reel	Hong Kong Welcomes You, MF 20-9363, (I) 15 min.
	1 reel	An Oriental City, Canton, MF 20-9075, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Farming in South China, MF 20-7829, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	Taiwan, Island of Freedom, AFIF 103, 23 min.
	1 reel	Formosa, LSFC 21, 13 min.
	1 reel	Miracle in Free China, MF 20-9114, 30 min.
	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, (I) 14 min.

* Available in magnastriped Chinese-Cantonese narrations.
(P) Primary version, (I) Intermediate version, (A) Advanced version.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Formosa, Blueprint for a Free China, MOT 18, 24 min.
1 reel	China EF 258, 17 min.
1 reel	China, the Land and the People, MF 20-8939, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	Peiping Family, MF 20-8966, 20 min.
1 reel	The Chinese Village, a Legend, MF 20-9341, 15 min.
1 reel	Red China, AFIF 97, 27 min.
1 reel	China, Far East, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657 FC, (I) 14 min.
1 reel	Far East, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657, 30 min.
1 reel	Southeast Asia, Lands and Peoples, MF 20-8862, 13 min.
1 reel	Southeast Asia, SIS AFS No. 6, MF 30-8771, 33 min.
1 reel	The Village that Refused to Die, MF 20-9748, 60 min.
1 reel	Siam, MF 20-9269, 31 min.
1 reel	Burma, People of the River, MF 20-9028, 14 min.
1 reel	Letter from Indonesia, MF 20-8695, 27 min.
1 reel	The Philippines, AFIF 48, 15 min.
2 reels	Portrait of an American Family, MF 30-8449 (CC), 60 min.
1 reel	Men Against Tanks, MF 7-7898, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	Production of Combat Intelligence, MF 30-1494, (P)(A) 18 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Rifle Company, LSFC-3, (P)(A) 35 min.
1 reel	Infantry Battalion, LSFC-1, (P)(A) 21 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE (TOISHAN) 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters (Toishan Conversion Table)
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	24 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	24 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-26
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 27-55
	1 vol.	Volume III, Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	14 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	14 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	27 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

	27 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 210-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Volume I, Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume II, Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Volume III, Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Volume V, Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	Free China's Fighting Men, MF 30-8444, 14 min.
	1 reel	Mighty Chinese Armed Forces, LS-86, 22 min.
	1 reel	Production of Combat Intelligence, MF 30-1494, 18 min.

* For Official Use Only

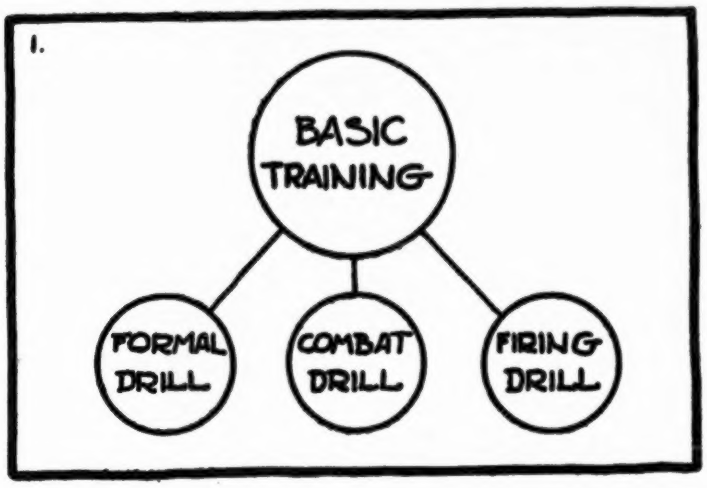
CHINESE-CANTONESE 96-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

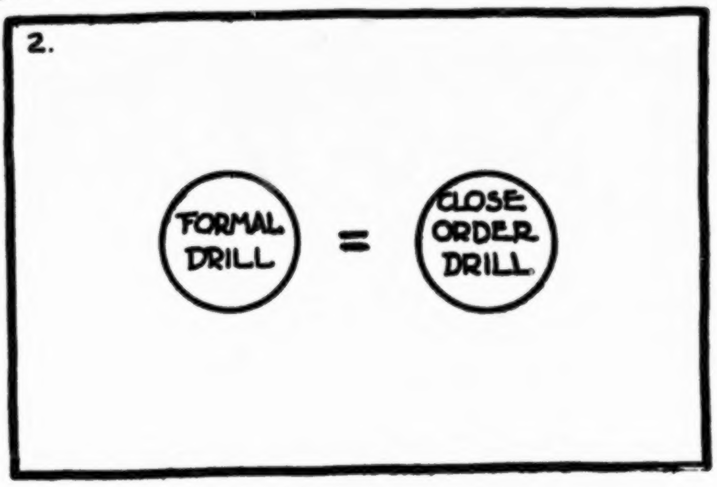
Text Material:	**1 vol.**	**Volume I, Lessons 1-16**
	1 vol.	**Volume II, Lessons 17-32**
	1 vol.	**Volume III, Lessons 33-48**
	1 vol.	**Vocabulary**
Reference Material:	**1 vol.**	**Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Military Words**
	1 vol.	**List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words**
Tape Material:		**The complete course is recorded on tape**
Film Material:		**Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course**

LESSON 1

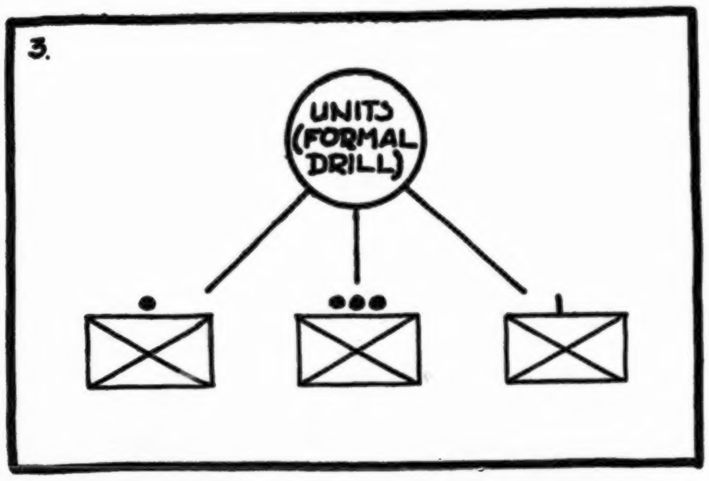
1.


BASIC TRAINING
FORMAL DRILL
COMBAT DRILL
FIRING DRILL

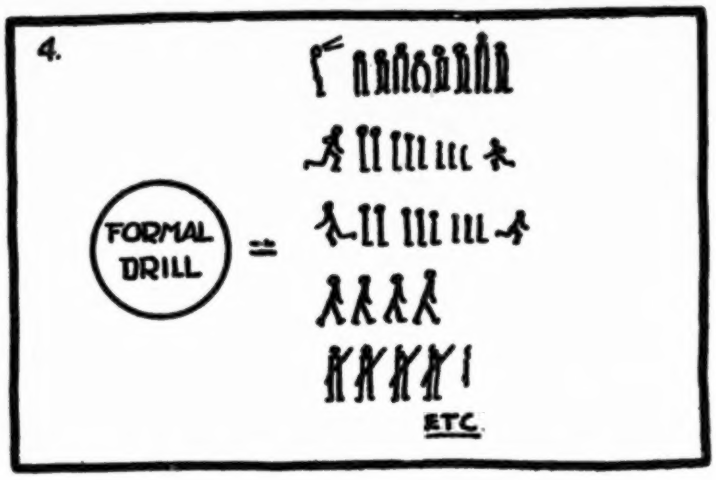
2.


FORMAL DRILL
=
CLOSE ORDER DRILL

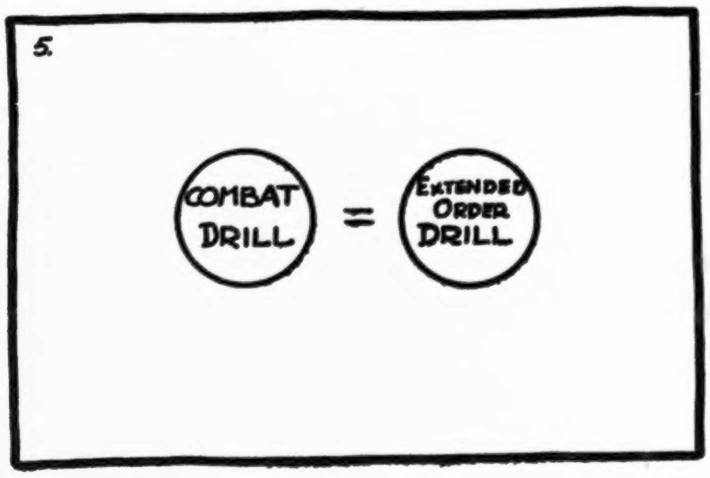
3.


UNITS (FORMAL DRILL)

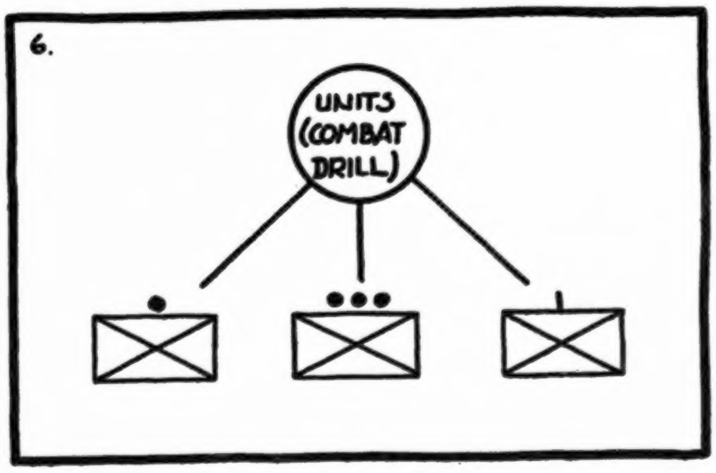
4.


FORMAL DRILL
=
ETC.

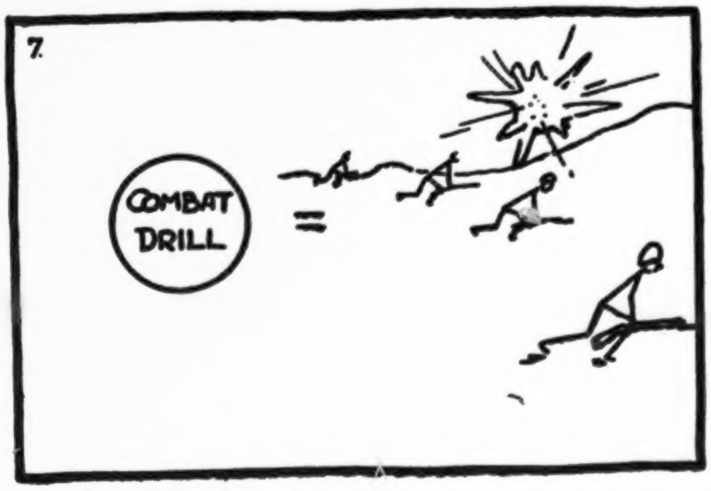
5.


COMBAT DRILL
=
EXTENDED ORDER DRILL

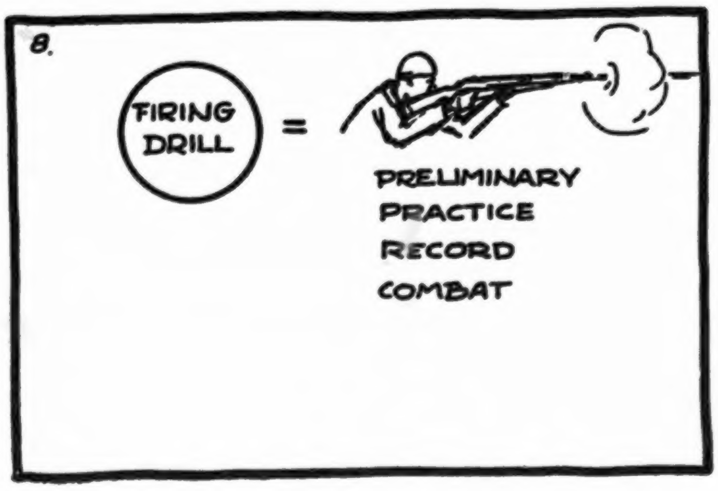
6.


UNITS (COMBAT DRILL)

7.


COMBAT DRILL
=

8.


FIRING DRILL
=
PRELIMINARY
PRACTICE
RECORD
COMBAT

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Kwan-yān yâp-nğ chi-haû, heì-shaú kè fàn-lîn haî mi-yĕ?

Taàp: Kwan-yān yâp-nğ chi-haû, heì-shaú kè fàn-lîn haî kei-poón fàn-lîn.

M: Kei-poón fàn-lîn paau-k'oòt hó toh yĕ, taân-haî tsuì kán-iù kè yĕ haî mi-yĕ?

T: Kei-poón fàn-lîn paau-k'oòt hó toh yĕ, taân-haî tsuì kán-iù kè haî chaì-shik kaaù-lîn, chìn-taù kaaù-lîn, t'ūng shê-kik kaaù-lîn.

M: Chaì-shik kaaù-lîn yaû kiù-tsô mi-yĕ kaaù-lîn à?

T: Chaì-shik kaaù-lîn yaû kiù-tsô mât-tsaâp tuî-yìng kaaù-lîn.

M: Chaì-shik kaaù-lîn kè kei-poón taan-waî* haî mi-yĕ ne?

T: Chaì-shik kaaù-lîn kè kei-poón taan-waî* haî paan, p'aaì, lìn.

M: Chaì-shik kaaù-lîn paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ à?

T: Chaì-shik kaaù-lîn paau-k'oòt tuî-yìng p'in-shìng, tsaâp-hôp t'ūng kaaì-saàn, pô-faàt, ts'o-ch'eung faàt, haāng-tsùn, fong-heùng tuî-yìng pìn-oôn táng-táng.

M: Chìn-taù kaaù-lîn yaû kiù-tsô mi-yĕ à?

T: Chìn-taù kaaù-lîn yaû kiù-tsô saàn-hoi tuî-yìng kaaù-lîn.

M: Chìn-taù kaaù-lîn kè taan-waî* haî mi-yĕ ne?

T: Chìn-taù kaaù-lîn kè taan-waî* yîk-to haî paan, p'aaì, lìn.

M: Chìn-taù kaaù-lîn paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ ne?

T: Chìn-taù kaaù-lîn paau-k'oòt kung-kik kè tuî-yìng t'ūng wân-tûng, waâk-chê fōng-uê kè tuî-yìng t'ūng wân-tûng.

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Shê-kik kaaù-lîn paau-k'oòt mi-yě ne?

T: Shê-kik kaaù-lîn paau-k'oòt shê-kik uê-tsaâp, shê-kik shât-tsaâp, keì-lûk shê-kik t'ùng chìn-taù shê-kik.

LESSON 1

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After the service man has enlisted, what is the beginning training?

Answer: After the service man has enlisted, the beginning training is the basic training.

Q: Basic training includes many things; what are the most important?

A: Basic training includes many things. But the most important are formal drill, combat drill, and firing drill.

Q: What is formal drill also called?

A: Formal drill is also called close order drill.

Q: What are the basic units of formal drill?

A: The basic units of formal drill are the squad, platoon and company.

Q: What does formal drill include?

A: The formal drill includes formation, fall-in and fall-out, gait, manual of arms, march, change of direction and formation.

Q: What is combat drill also called?

A: Combat drill is also called extended order drill.

Q: What are the units of combat drill?

A: The units of combat drill are also the squad, platoon, and company.

Q: What does combat drill include?

LESSON 1

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: Combat drill includes the formation and movement in attack or defense.

Q: What does firing drill include?

A: Firing drill includes preliminary firing, practice firing, record firing, and combat firing.

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The movements of these units were carefully planned by General Fong.
2. I can see that company A is not in formation.
3. Instructor Wong will teach you manual of arms day after tomorrow.
4. Get your men to fall-in and then march them to the dining hall for breakfast.
5. You have to learn the preliminary firing before practice firing. They are not exactly the same.
6. According to my opinion, they should have more practices on extended order drill.
7. This unit will not be dismissed until everyone of them knows the gait drills thoroughly.
8. I want to see you people executing the close order drill as well as those people.
9. When you hear my signal, all of you will advance and attack.
10. Can you tell me exactly what record firing is?
11. It is the duty of every man, women and child to defend their own country.
12. When you reach the intersection your unit will make a complete change of direction and formation.
13. Combat drill is very important especially in hand-to-hand fighting.

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. The new recruits are doing formal drills every morning
for one and a half hour.

15. Basic training for a soldier begins with formal drill.

16. What did you learn when you were in high school?

LESSON 1

WORD LIST

1.	chaì-shik kaaù-lîn	formal drill, the drill to develop control, discipline, teamwork, and facility in execution
2.	chìn-taù kaaù-lîn	combat drill
3.	fong-heùng tuî-yìng pìn-oôn	change of direction and formation
4.	hāng-tsùn	march; to advance
5.	kaaî-saàn	fall-out; to disorganize
6.	keì-lûk shê-kik	record firing
7.	kung-kik	attack; to attack
8.	mât-tsaâp tuî-yìng kaaù-lîn	close order drill
9.	pô-faàt	gait
10.	saàn-hoi tuî-yìng kaaù-lîn	extended order drill
11.	shê-kik shât-tsaâp	practice firing
12.	shê-kik uê-tsaâp	preliminary firing
13.	tsaâp-hôp	fall-in; to assemble
14.	ts'o-ts'eung-faàt	manual of the rifle; manual of arms
15.	tuî-yìng p'in-shìng	formation organizing, formation
16.	wân-tûng	movement; to move

LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

833

畢 pat: the final, end; complete.

完畢 uēn-pat: over; ended.

畢竟 pat-kíng: after all; finally.

182

罰 fât (faât): to punish; fine; forfeit

責罰 chaàk-fât: reprimand; blame

賞罰 sheúng fât: rewards and punishment

罰欵 fât foón: fines; to fine

1308

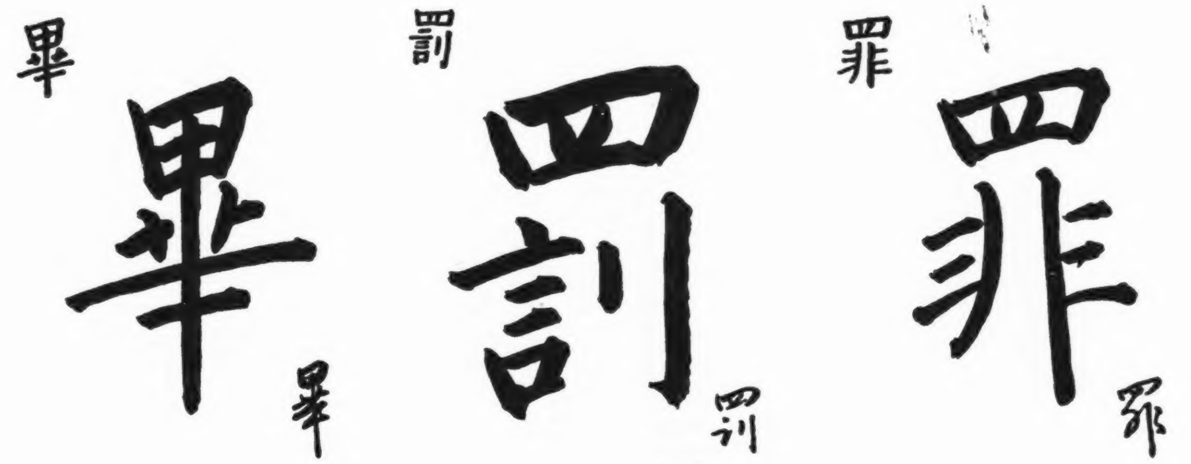
罪 tsuî: fault; sin; crime; punishment.

罪惡 tsuî-ǒk: crime; sin.

罪過 tsuî-kwòh: fault; offense; misdemeanour.

死罪 sź tsuî: death sentence

定罪 têng tsuî: to fix a punishment.



1166

盗 tô: to rob; to steal; a robber; pirate; robbery

盗賊 tô-ts'aâk: bandit; robber.

強盗 k'eūng tô: highway robber.

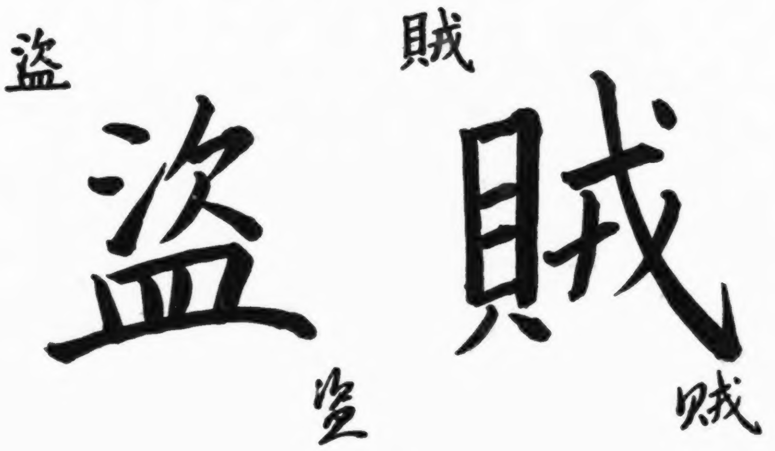
盗賣 tô maaî: to sell property which has been stolen from other.

1196

賊 ts'aâk: thief; robber.

賊頭 ts'aâk t'aū: leader of the robbers.

小賊 siú ts'aâk: a petty thief.



LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

1168

稻 tô: growing rice.

稻草 tô ts'ó: straw.

稻田 tô t'In rice field.

186

匪 féi: vagabond; seditious

土匪 t'ó féi: bandit

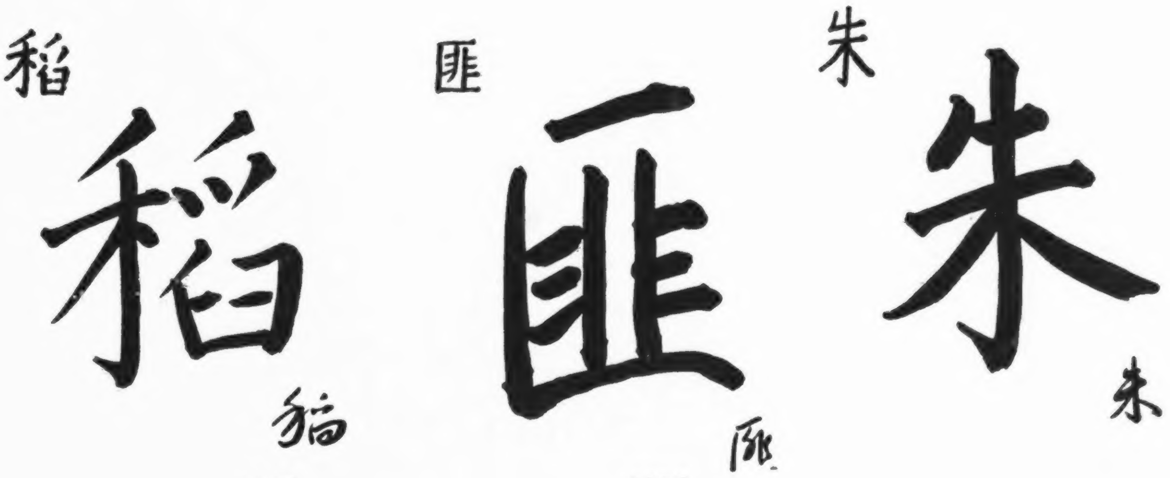
匪徒 féi-t'ō: robbers

120

朱 chue: red color

朱紅 chue-hung: scarlet; vermillion

朱顏 chue-ngaān: ruddy face



1436

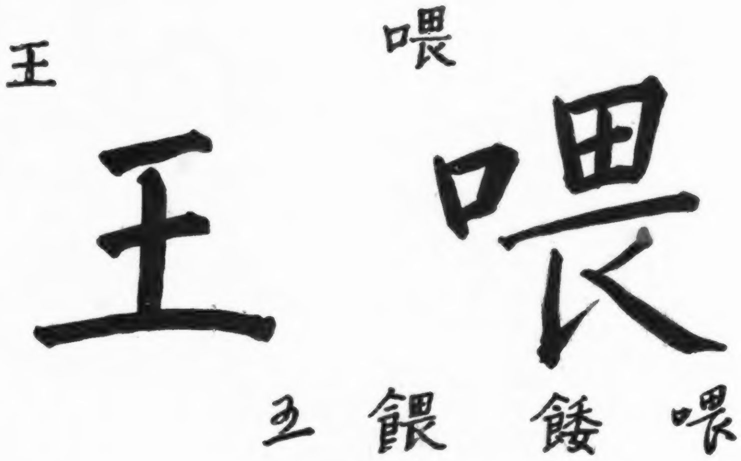
王 wōng: king; prince; ruler.

王位 wōng waî: throne; rank of king.

1416

喂 waì: to feed; to suckle.

喂奶 waì naaǐ: to suckle; to feed with milk.



LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

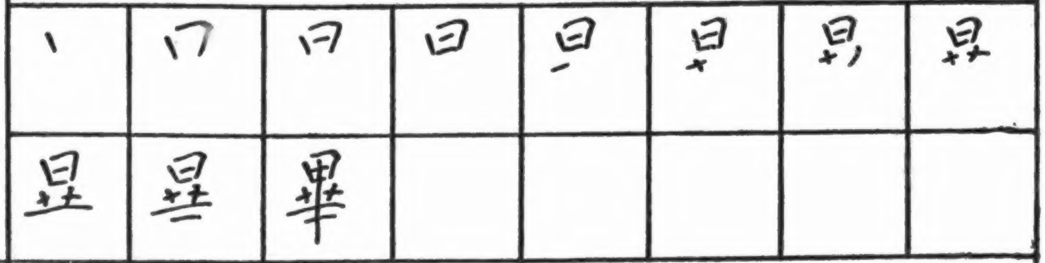
基本訓練係單人開始所受訓練.此種訓練之主要部份係制式教練,戰鬥教練,同射擊教練.制式教練又稱為密集隊形教練.此種教練之基本單位為班,排,連.教練包含隊形編成,集合解散.步法,操槍法,行進,方向隊形變換等等.戰鬥教練又稱為散開隊形教練.基本單位亦為班,排,連.教練包含攻擊或者防禦之隊形同運動.射擊教練有射擊預習,射擊實習,紀錄射擊,同戰鬥射擊.

LESSON 1

WRITING MATERIAL

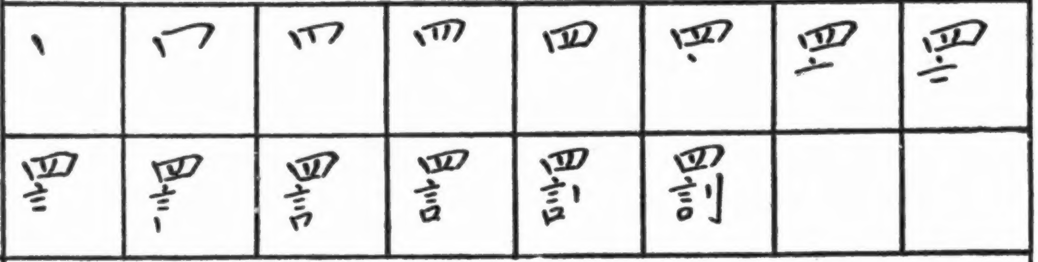
畢

Character Number 833 Radical Number 102
Stroke Number 11 田



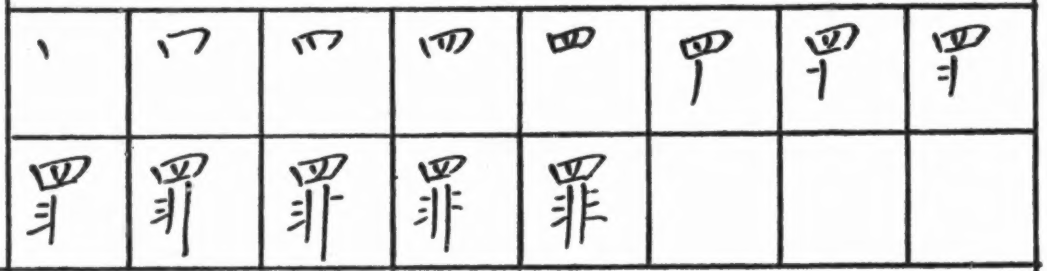
罰

Character Number 182 Radical Number 122
Stroke Number 14 罒，网



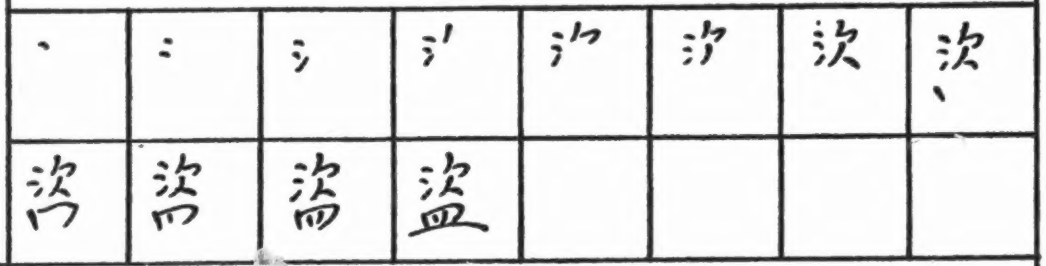
罪

Character Number 1308 Radical Number 122
Stroke Number 13 罒，网



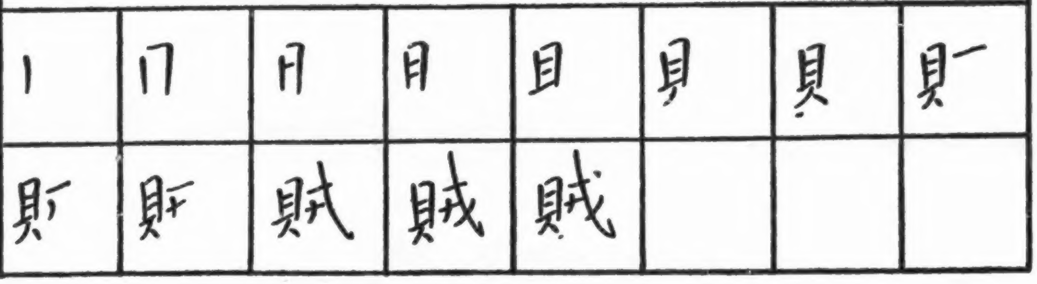
盜

Character Number 1166 Radical Number 108
Stroke Number 12 皿

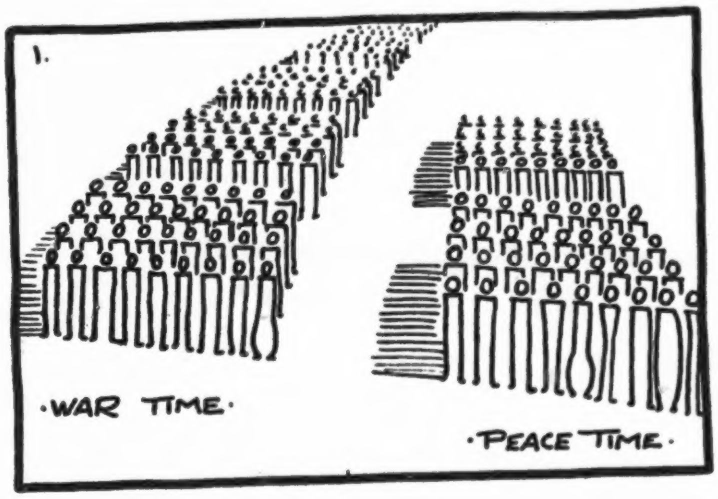


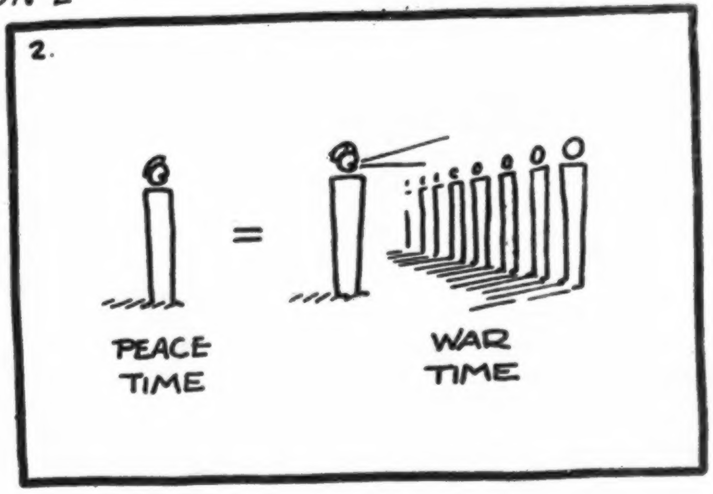
賊

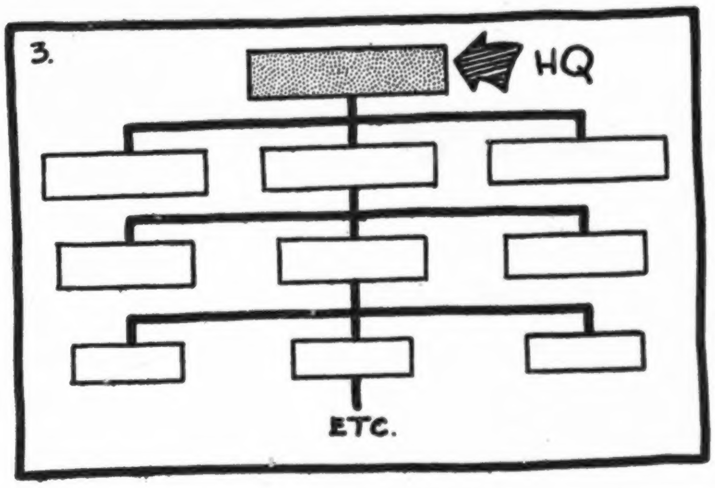
Character Number 1196 Radical Number 154
Stroke Number 13 貝

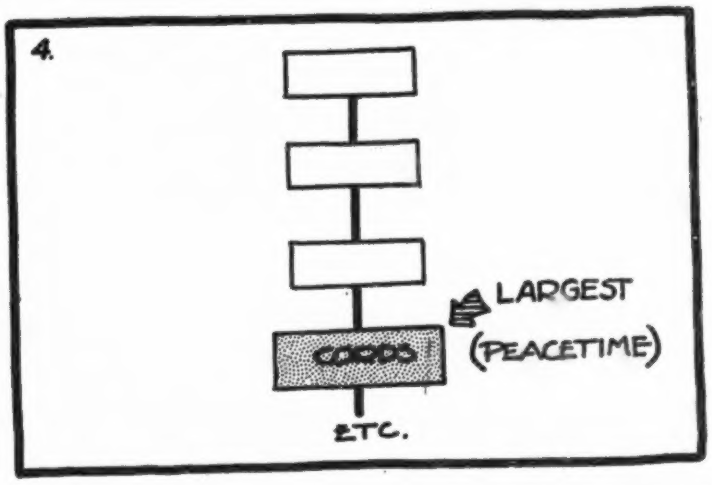


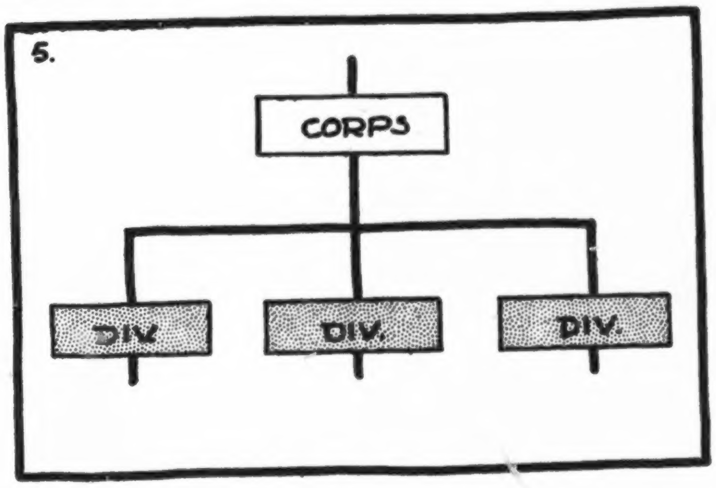
LESSON 2

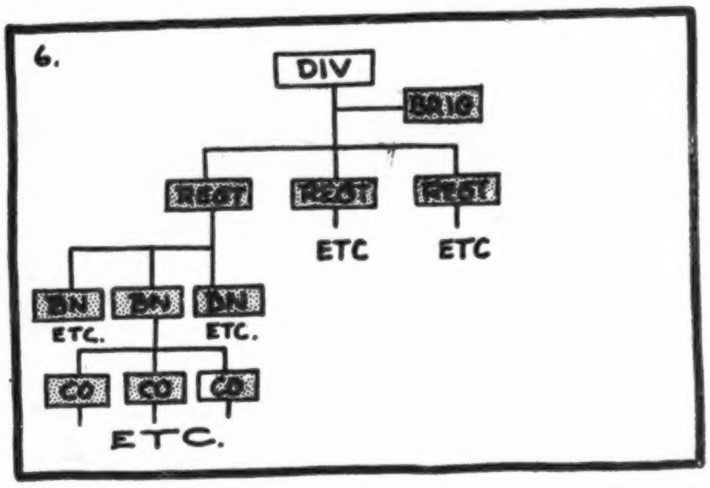

1.
·WAR TIME·
·PEACE TIME·

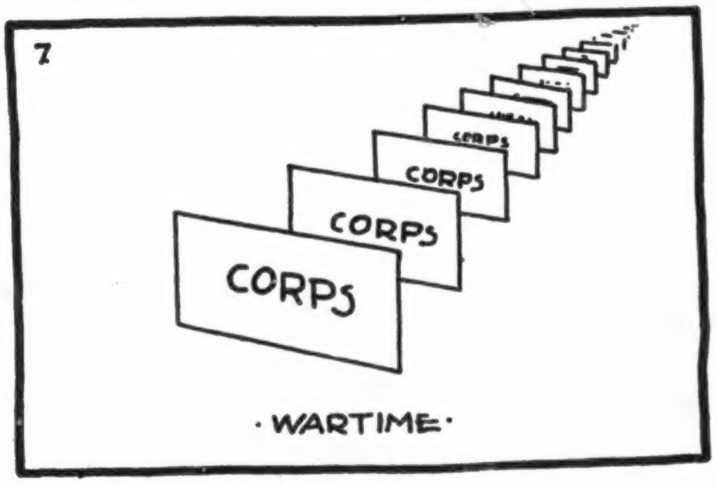

2.
PEACE TIME
=
WAR TIME

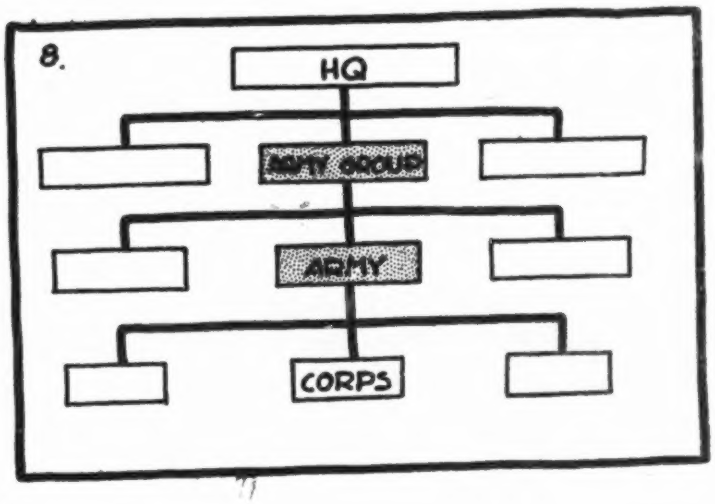

3.
HQ
ETC.


4.
CORPS
LARGEST (PEACETIME)
ETC.


5.
CORPS
DIV.
DIV.
DIV.


6.
DIV
BRIG
REGT
REGT
REGT
ETC
ETC
BN
BN
BN
ETC.
ETC.
CO
CO
CO
ETC.


7
CORPS
CORPS
CORPS
CORPS
·WARTIME·


8.
HQ
ARMY GROUP
ARMY
CORPS

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Kwòk-fōng-pô haî yat-kòh mi-yĕ kei-kwaan?

Taàp: Kwòk-fōng-pô haî kwòk-ka tsuì ko kè kwan-chìng kei-kwaan.

M: Kwòk-fōng-pô foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à? Chî-fai mi-yĕ à?

T: Kwòk-fōng-pô foô-chaàk kwòk-fōng kè sẑ-mô, chî-fai hoî, lûk, hung saam kwan.

M: Lûk-kwan p'ìng-shī kè p'in-chaì t'ūng chìn-shī kè p'in-chaì t'ūng m̄-t'ūng à?

T: Lûk-kwan p'ìng-shī kê p'in-chaì t'ūng chìn-shī kè p'in-chaì m̄-t'ūng.

M: Lûk-kwan p'ìng-shī kè p'in-chaì t'ūng chìn-shī kè p'in-chaì tîm-yeûng* m̄-t'ūng à?

T: Chìn-shī kè p'in-chaì peî-kaaù p'ìng-shī kè p'in-chaì taaî hó toh, p'ìng-shī p'in-chaì-piú kè yān-uēn haî iù laì tsô chìn-shī kè kòn-pô.

M: Lûk-kwan tsuì ko kè kei-kwaan haî mi-yĕ à?

T: Lûk-kwan tsuì ko kè kei-kwaan haî lûk-kwan tsúng-sz-lîng-pô.

M: P'ìng-shī lûk-kwan tsuì taaî kè taan-waî* haî mi-yĕ à?

T: P'ìng-shī lûk-kwan tsuì taaî kè taan-waî* haî kwan.

M: Kwan kè hâ-pîn yaŭ mi-yĕ à?

T: Kwan kè hâ-pîn yaŭ sz, sz kè hâ-pîn yaŭ t'uēn, yìng, lìn, tâng tâng.

M: Chìn-shī lûk-kwan kè p'in-chaì tîm-yeûng* à?

T: Chìn-shī lûk-kwan kè p'in-chaì fei-sheūng-chi taaî, kwan kè taan-waî* tsaû fei-sheūng-chi toh.

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Chìn-shì lûk-kwan tsúng-pô kè hâ-pîn tsang-ka mi-yĕ taan-waî* à?

T: Chìn-shì lûk-kwan tsúng-pô kè hâ-pîn tsang-ka tsaâp t'uēn-kwan t'ūng kwan-t'uēn.

M: Tsaâp-t'uēn-kwan, kwan-t'uēn, t'ūng kwan, pin kòh chì ko, pin kòh chì tai à?

T: Tsaâp-t'uēn-kwan, kwan-t'uēn, t'ūng kwan, tsaâp-t'uēn-kwan chì ko, k'eì-ts'z̀ haî kwan-t'uēn, chì tai haî kwan.

M: Chìn-shì lûk-kwan tsúng-pô tîm-kaaì iù yaŭ tsaâp-t'uēn-kwan t'ūng kwan-t'uēn kè taan-waî* à?

T: Waî chì-fai-haî-t'úng fong-pîn heì-kìn, shôh-ĭ haî lûk-kwan tsúng-pô t'ūng kwan kè chung-kaan yaŭ tsaâp-t'uēn-kwan t'ūng kwan-t'uēn.

LESSON 2

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: What kind of organization is the Ministry of National Defense?

Answer: The Ministry of National Defense is the Nation's highest military organization.

Q: For what is the Ministry of National Defense responsible and what does it command?

A: The Ministry of National Defense is responsible for national defense affairs. It commands the three branches of armed services--Navy, Army and Air Force.

Q: Does the Army peace time organization differ from that of war time?

A: The Army peace time organization differs from that of war time.

Q: In what manner does the Army peace time organization differ from that of war time?

A: The war time organization is much larger than that of peace time. The personnel who are in the peace time table of organization are to become the war time cadre.

Q: What is the Army's highest organization?

A: The Army's highest organization is the Army's General Headquarters.

Q: During peace time, what are the Army's largest units?

A: During peace time, the Army's largest units are corps level units.

LESSON 2

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: What units are under the corps level units?

A: Under the corps level units, there are division. Under the divisions, there are regiments, battalions, companies, etc.

Q: How about the Army's organization during the war time?

A: During the war time, the Army organization is unusually large. Units of corps level are many.

Q: During war time, what units are added under the Army's General Headquarters?

A: During war time, Army groups and army level units are added under the Army's General Headquarters.

Q: Of the army groups, army level units and corps level units, which is the highest and which is the lowest?

A: Of the army groups, army level units and corps level units, the army group is the highest. The next would be the army level unit. The corps level unit is the lowest.

Q: During war time, why does the Army General Headquarters have to have army groups and army level units?

A: For the sake of convenience in the command system. There are army groups and army level units between the Army General Headquarters and the corps level units.

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Col Lee is the liaison officer who was sent from headquarters to this post.
2. There are more than 200,000 men and officers in this army group.
3. This is not an ordinary time. I want all of you to report here not later than 6 o'clock tomorrow morning.
4. Familiarize yourself with this table of organization. That's all.
5. The method of organization should be the same whether in peace or war time.
6. When you submit your report, it should be clear, simple and precise.
7. If you do not understand the chain of command of this headquarters you should study it and learn it by heart.
8. They may be old soldiers, but they are the cadres of this unit.
9. I would like to see the commanding officer of this corps. I have an important appointment with him.
10. The U.S. Sixth Army headquarters is in San Francisco, Calif.
11. You may go directly to General Lee's office. He is waiting for you.
12. If the Captain is not here, who is going to take command of this company?

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSITION

13. Your squad is responsible for the defense of this area. See to it that the order is carried out.

14. Here are your instructions. Are there any questions?

15. Be prepared to attack the enemy at 0500 hours.

16. This is war time. You will have to follow orders.

LESSON 2

WORD LIST

1.	chì-fai haî-t'úng	chain of command
2.	k'òk-shât	exactness; exact
3.	kòn-pô	cadre
4.	kwan-t'uēn	army level unit
5.	p'in-chaì	method of organization
6.	p'in-chaì piú	table of organization
7.	p'ìng-shì	peace time, ordinary time
8.	tsaâp-t'uēn-kwan	army group

LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

1104

隸 taî: mountain plum; dignified; servant; slave; attached to; joined to.

隸屬 taî-shûk: belong to; attached to.

39

抽 ch'au· to lift, levy, whip

抽起 ch au-héi: to lift up

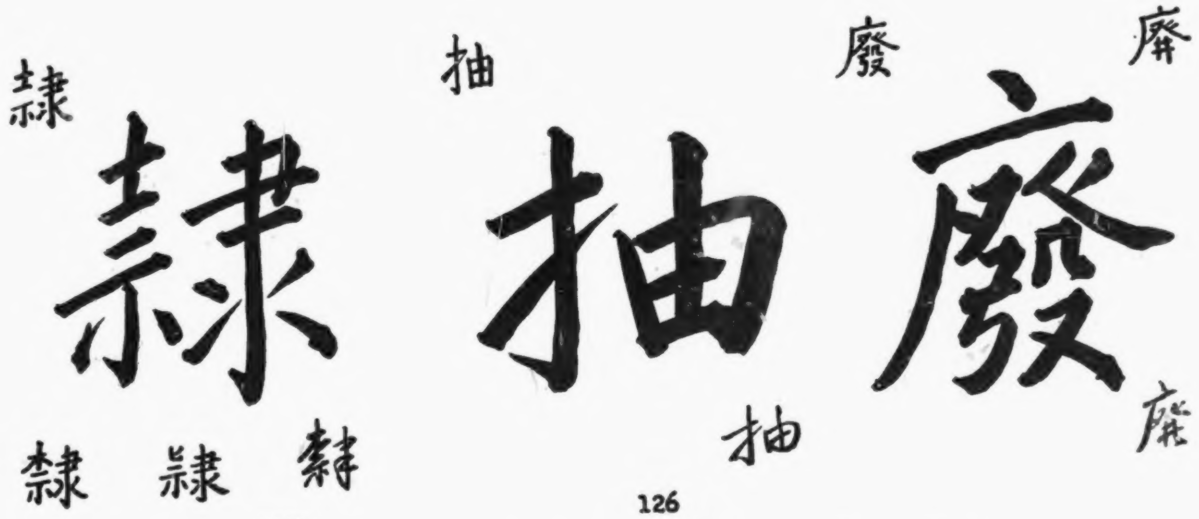
抽筋 ch'au-kan: spasm, cramps

171

廢 faì: to throw away; destroy; annul

廢物 faì-mât: worthless articles

廢除 faì-ch'uī: to abolish; to abrogate



1250

剪 tsín: to cut off; to shear; to remove; shear.

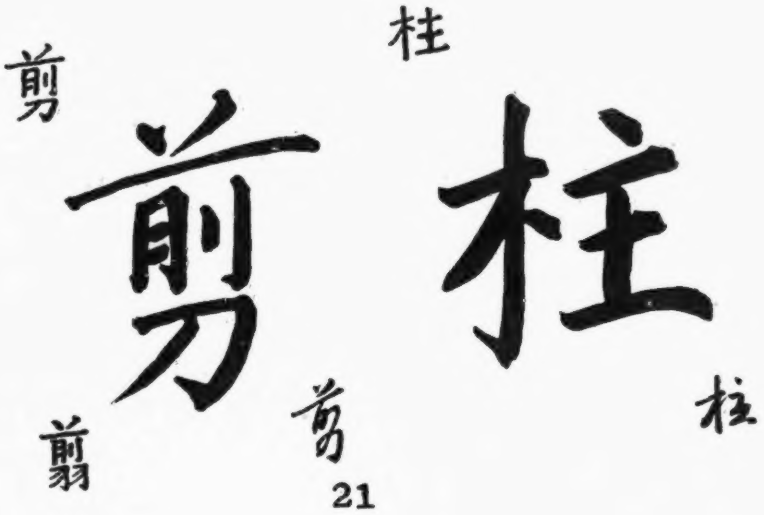
剪刀 tsín-to: scissors; shears.

剪頭髮 tsín t'aū-faàt: to cut the hair.

126

柱 ch'uŏ: pillar; post (Cl. t'iū)

石柱 shèk ch'uŏ: stone pillar



LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

179

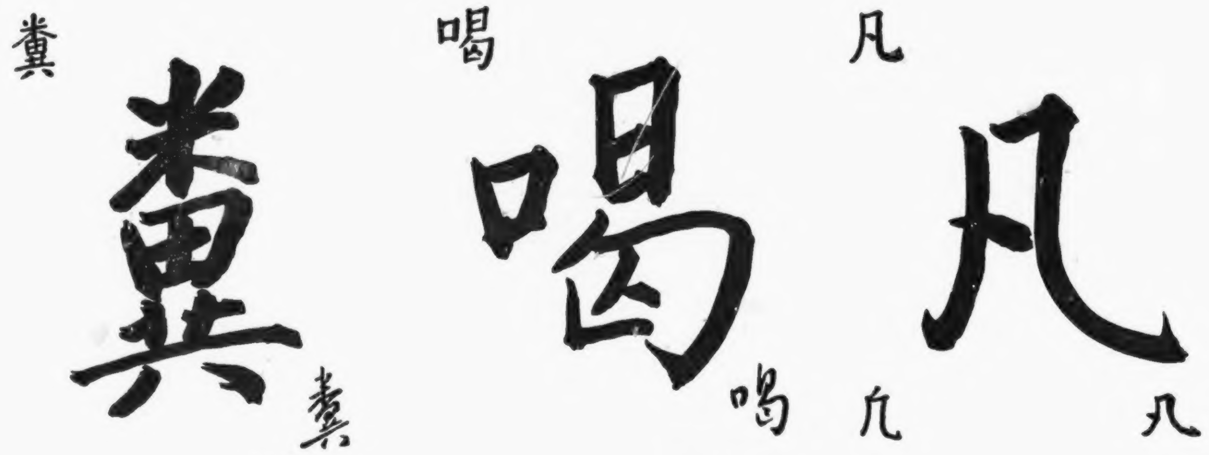
糞	fàn: manure; night soil; dung
糞肥	fàn-feī: refuse, manure
糞厠	fàn-ts'z̀: a privy
落糞	lŏk-fèn: to manure.

314

喝	hòt: to call out; bawl
喝住	hòt-chuê: call to stop
喝彩	hòt-ts'oí: to applaud; acclamation

162

凡	faān: all; common; everyone
但凡	taân-faān: whatever; whoever
凡事	faān-sẑ: anything; everything

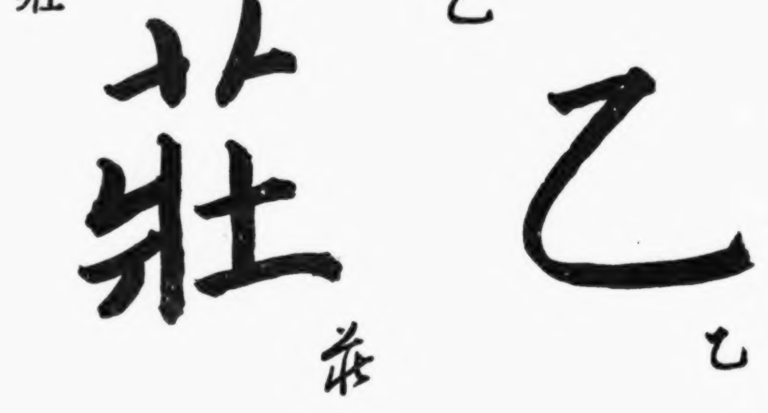


112

莊	chong: serious; sedate
端莊	tuen-chong: dignified

1395

乙	uèt: to mark; stem; curved.
甲乙	kaàp uèt: the first and second.



LESSON 2

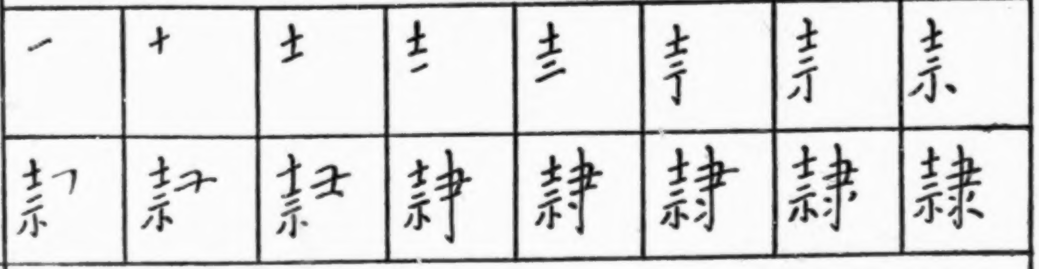
READING MATERIAL

陸軍之平時編制與戰時編制不同.因為戰時編制比較平時者大好多，所以平時編制表上所列人員變為戰時之幹部.陸軍最高機關為陸軍總司令部.平時陸軍最大單位係軍.軍之下有師.師之下有團，營，連，等等.戰時因為陸軍編制非常之大，軍之單位就非常之多.為指揮系統方便同確實起見，所以在陸軍總部與軍之中間，加設集團軍同軍團.經此改編，軍即隸屬於軍團之下.

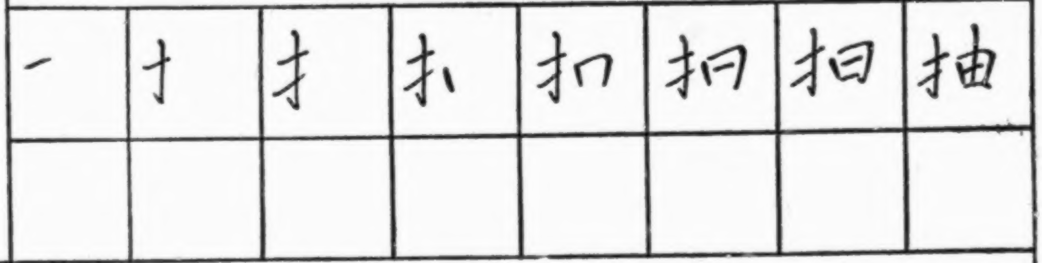
LESSON 2

WRITING MATERIAL

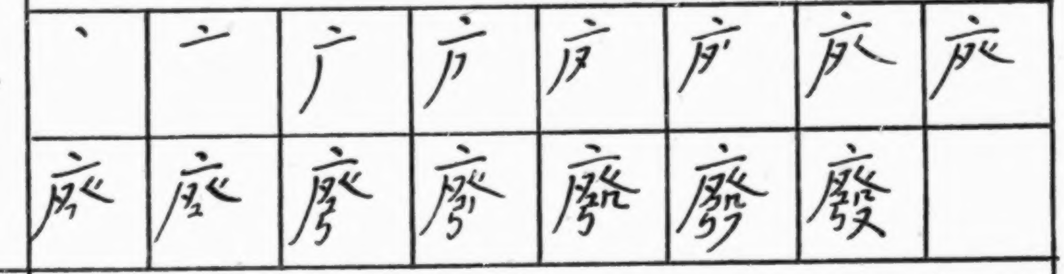
隸	Character Number 1104 Stroke Number 16	Radical Number 171 隶



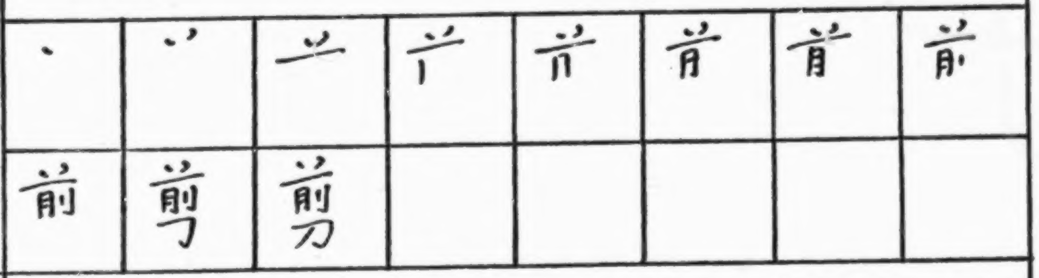
抽	Character Number 39 Stroke Number 8	Radical Number 64 扌，手



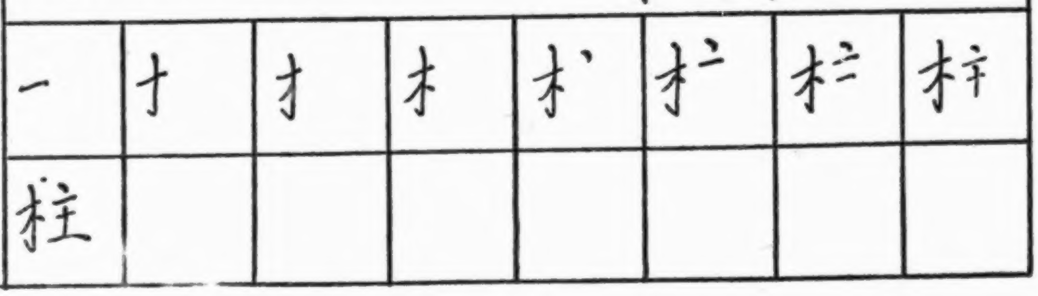
廢	Character Number 171 Stroke Number 15	Radical Number 53 广



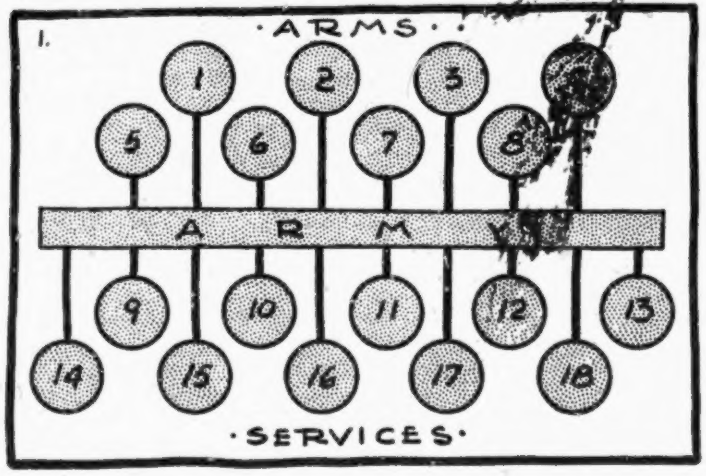
剪	Character Number 1250 Stroke Number 11	Radical Number 18 刀

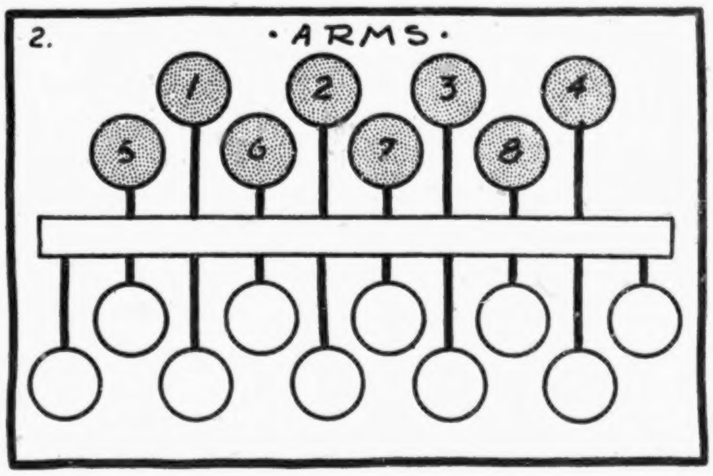


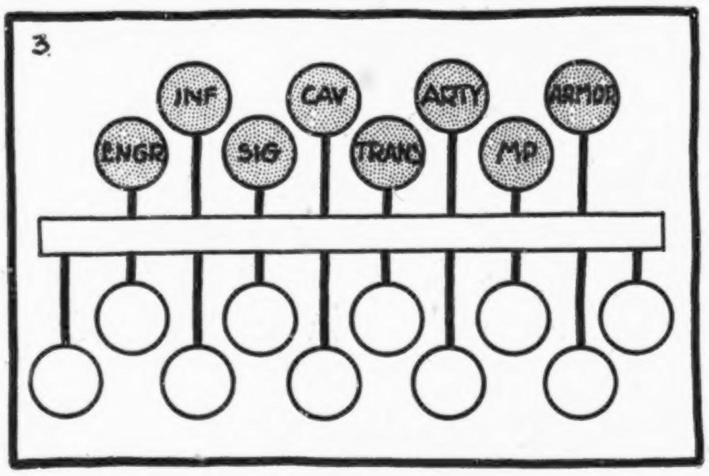
柱	Character Number 126 Stroke Number 9	Radical Number 75 木，木

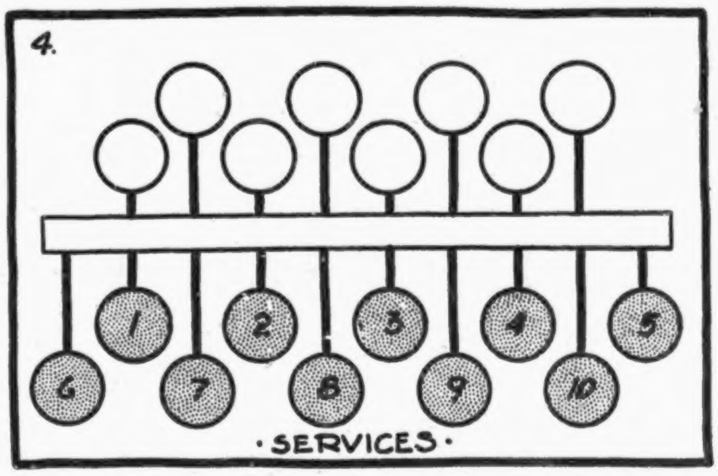


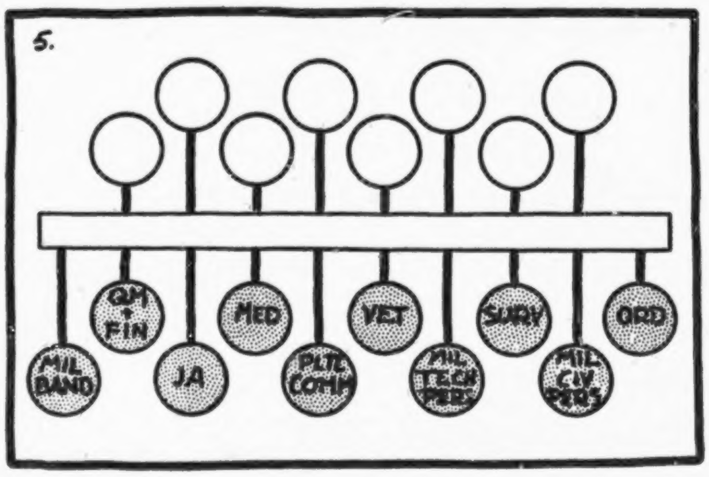
LESSON 3

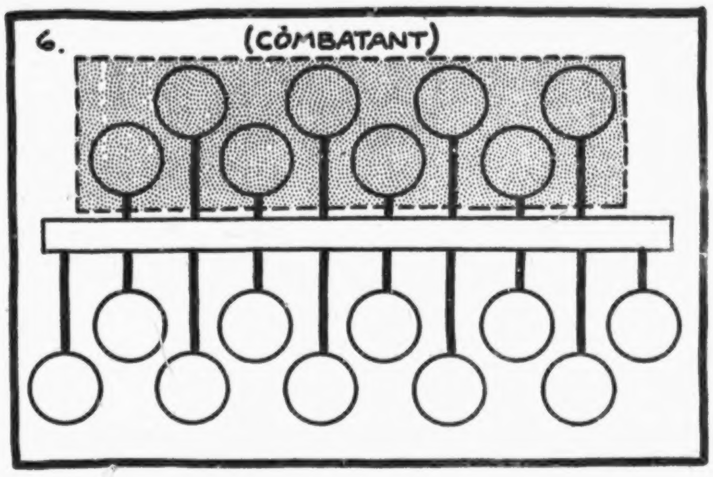

1.
·ARMS·
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
A R M Y
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
·SERVICES·

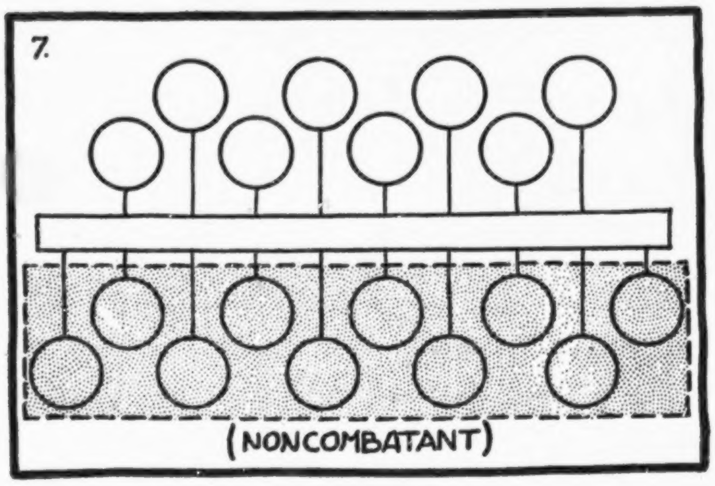

2.
·ARMS·
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8


3.
INF
CAV
ARTY
ARMOR
ENGR
SIG
TRANS
MP


4.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
·SERVICES·


5.
QM + FIN
MED
VET
SURV
ORD
MIL BAND
JA
PLTC COMM
MIL TECH PERS
MIL CIV PERS


6.
(COMBATANT)


7.
(NONCOMBATANT)

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Lûk-Kwan kè ping-foh t'ūng îp-foh tsúng-kûng yaŭ keî-toh chúng à?

Taàp: Lûk-Kwan kè ping-foh t'ūng îp-foh tsúng-kûng yaŭ shâp-paàt chúng.

M: Lûk-Kwan kè ping-foh yaŭ pin keî chúng à?

T: Lûk-Kwan kè ping-foh yaŭ paàt chúng, tsik-haî pô-ping, k'ē-ping, p'aaù-ping, chong-kaàp-ping, kung-ping, t'ung-sùn-ping, tsz-chûng-ping, t'ūng hìn-ping.

M: Îp-foh yaŭ pin keî chúng à?

T: Îp-foh yaŭ shâp chúng, tsik-haî king-leĭ (kwan-sui t'ūng ts'oī-chìng), kwan-i, shaù-i, ch'ak-leūng, ping-kung, kwan-ngôk, kwan-faàt, chìng-kung, kwan-yûng keî-shût yān-uēn, t'ūng kwan-yûng mān-chik yān-uēn.

M: Ni shâp-paàt chúng ping-foh t'ūng îp-foh hóh-ĭ fan-shìng pin leūng luî yān-uēn à?

T: Ni shâp-paàt chúng ping-foh t'ūng îp-foh hóh-ĭ fan-shìng chìn-taù yān-uēn t'ūng fei-chìn-taù yān-uēn.

M: Ping-foh yān-uēn haî chìn-taù yān-uēn yik-waâk haî fei-chìn-taù yān-uēn à?

T: Ping-foh yān-uēn haî chìn-taù yān-uēn.

M: Ping-foh yān-uēn foô-chaàk mi-yĕ yâm-mô à?

T: Ping-foh yān-uēn foô-chaàk-chìn-taù kè yâm-mô.

M: Îp-foh yān-uēn haî chìn-taù yān-uēn yik-waâk fei-chìn-taù yān-uēn à?

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Îp-foh yān-uēn haî fei-chìn-taù yān-uēn.

M: Îp-foh yān-uēn haî ts'ìn-sìn kung-tsòk yik-waâk haî haû-fong kung-tsòk à?

T: Îp-foh yān-uēn keì-ìn haî fei-chìn-taù yān-uēn, k'uĭ-teî toh-shò haî haû-fong kung-tsòk; yaŭ-shì k'uĭ-teî yîk-to haî ts'ìn-sìn kung-tsòk.

M: Îp-foh kè chìng-kung yān-uēn foô-chaàk pin chŭng kung-tsòk à?

T: Îp-foh kè chìng-kung yān-uēn haî kwan-tuî* luĭ-pîn kè chìng-chî kung-tsòk yān-uēn. K'uĭ-teî foô-chaàk kwan-tuî* kè chìng-chî kung-tsòk, t'ūng tuì tîk-yān kè sam-leĭ tsòk-chìn, suen-ch'uēn, tâng-tâng.

M: Uē-kwôh haî kôm, yaŭ-ti chìng-kung yān-uēn shûk-ue chìn-taù yān-uēn, haî mà?

T: Haî, yaŭ-ti chìng-kung yān-uēn shûk-ue chìn-taù yān-uēn.

LESSON 3

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: How many branches of arms and services are there in the Army?

Answer: There are eighteen branches of arms and services in the Army.

Q: Which are the arm branches in the Army?

A: There are eight branches of arms in the Army, namely, the infantry, the cavalry, the artillery, the armored unit, the engineers, the signal communication units, the transportation personnel, and the military police.

Q: Which are the branches of service in the Army?

A: There are ten branches of service, namely, the quartermaster and finance, the medical, the veterinary (veterinarian), the survey, the ordnance, the military band, the judge advocate, the political commissar, the military technician, and the army civilian personnel.

Q: Which are the two categories of personnel that can be grouped from these eighteen branches of arms and services?

A: The personnel in these eighteen branches of arms and services can be grouped into the combatant and the noncombatant.

Q: Are the personnel in the arms branches the combatants or noncombatants?

A: The personnel in the arms branches are combatants.

Q: What is the mission undertaken by the personnel in the arms branches?

LESSON 3

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: The personnel in the arms branches are responsible for the combat mission.

Q: Are the personnel in the branches of service the combatants or noncombatants?

A: The personnel in the branches of service are the noncombatants.

Q: Are the personnel in the service branches working at the front or rear?

A: Since the personnel in the service branches are noncombatants, they mostly work at the rear; sometimes they also work at the front.

Q: For what kind of work are the personnel of the political commissar responsible?

A: Since the political commissar personnel in the service branches are the political personnel in the Army, they are responsible for the political work in the Army, the psychological warfare against the enemy, and the propaganda.

Q: If that is the case, some of the personnel of the political commissar are combatants, right?

A: Yes, some of the personnel of the political commissar are the combatants.

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Veterinarians are very important.
2. Transportation personnel are non-combantants.
3. My financial condition was very bad in 1930.
4. Ordinarily, members of the military band do not go to the front.
5. Do you know the difference between the ordnance corps and the engineer corps?
6. Please deliver this truck-load of provisions to the division quartermaster.
7. You have to report this to the officer at the judge advocate office.
8. Sometimes, the quartermaster and the finance branches work together.
9. Your technique is excellent; do you think you can teach me?
10. Nowadays, cavalrymen do not ride on horses any more.
11. Let us discuss the technical points of this case tomorrow.
12. The political department is one of the ten branches of service in the Chinese Army.
13. Engineers will do all the surveying this week.
14. Armored units are very important in modern warfare.
15. Open the door immediately. It is the military police.
16. You will report to the medical officer at the hospital tonight.
17. This cavalry is a famous unit of the U.S. Army.

LESSON 3

WORD LIST

1.	ch'ak-leūng	to survey; survey
2.	chìng-kung	political commissar
3.	chong-kaàp-ping, (chìn-ch'e-ping)	armored unit
4.	fei-chìn-taù yān-uēn	non-combatant
5.	hìn-ping	military police
6.	îp-foh	branch of service
7.	k'ē-ping	cavalryman, cavalry
8.	keî-shût	technical; technique
9.	king-leĭ	quartermaster and finance
10.	kung-ping	engineer
11.	kwan-faàt	judge advocate
12.	kwan-i	medical
13.	kwan-ngôk	military band
14.	kwan-sui	quartermaster
15.	kwan-yûng	for military purpose; military
16.	ping-kung	ordnance
17.	ts'ìng-sìn	front
18.	ts'oī-chìng	finance
19.	tsz-chûng-ping	transportation personnel
20.	shaù-i	veterinarian; veterinary

LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

945

伸 shan: to stretch out or forth; extend.

伸直 shan chîk: to straighten out.

伸縮 shan-shuk: to expand and contract.

745

瓦 ngă: earthenware; tile pottery.

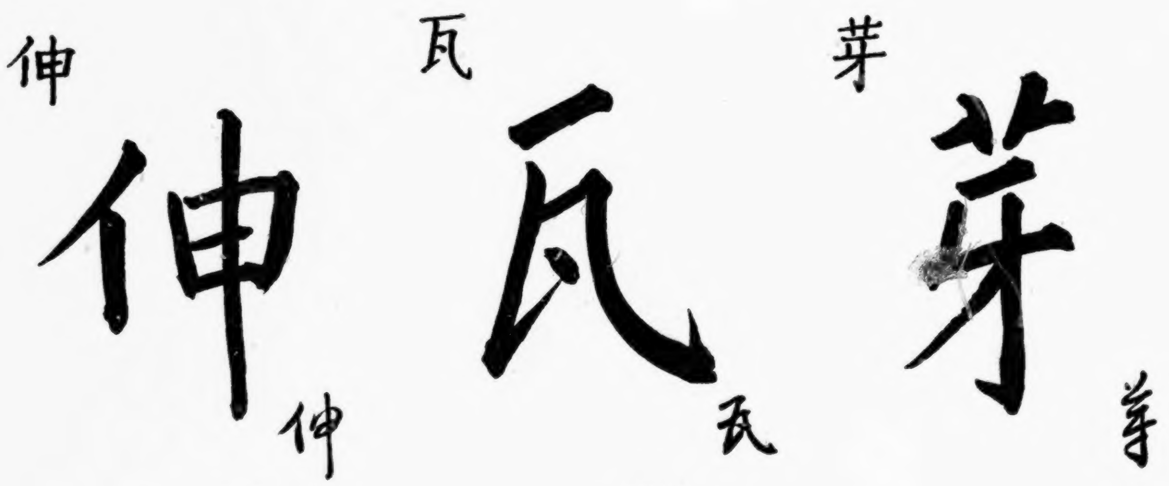
瓦面 ngă-mîn: a roof.

瓦窰 ngă iū: a kiln.

744

芽 ngā: a bud; sprout; to begin.

芽菜 ngā-ts'oì: bean sprout.



393

甲 kaàp: scales; finger nails armor; a certain person

指甲 chí-kaàp: finger nails

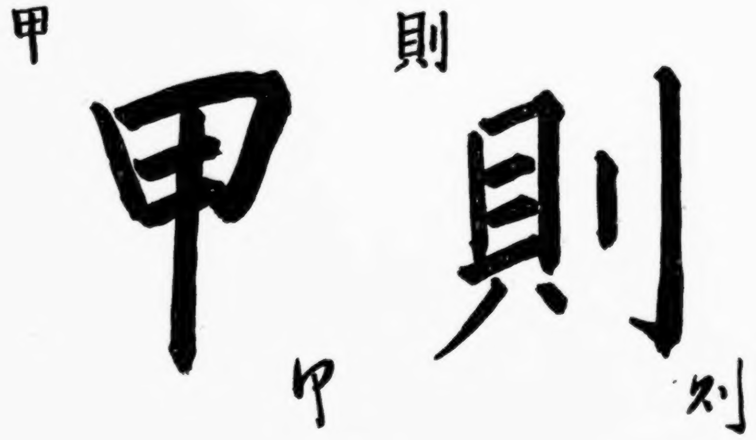
鉄甲 t'ìt-kaàp: an ironclad

某甲 maŭ-kaàp: a certain man

1213

則 tsak: rule; law; then.

則可 tsak hŏh: then it is alright.



LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

746

顏 ngaān: color; countenance.

顏色 ngaān-shik: color; colored.

顏料 ngaān-liû: dyes in general.

紅顏 hūng-ngaān: a rosy face.

726

拿 nā: to grasp; to carry; to bring

拿手 nā-shaú: dexterous; expert.

捉拿 chuk nā: to arrest; to seize.

拿破崙 nā-p'òh-lūn: Napoleon.

768

奴 nō: a slave; servant.

奴隸 nō-taî: a slave.

奴僕 nō-pûk: bond-servant.

守財奴 shaú-ts'oī-nō: a miser; niggard.

顏 拿 奴

顏 拿 奴

顏 拏 拿 奴

1470

若 yeûk: supposing; if; like; as to.

若果 yeûk-kwóh: if; supposing.

若然 yeûk-īn: if this is the case.

805

爬 p'ā: to climb; to crawl; to scrape; to scratch; to rake.

爬上 p'ā sheŭng: to climb up.

爬行 p'ā hāng: to creep: to crawl.

若 爬

若 爬

若 爬

LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

陸軍分為兵科與業科兩科.共有十八種.兵科八種.即是步兵,騎兵,砲兵,裝甲兵,工兵,通信兵,輜重兵,同憲兵.

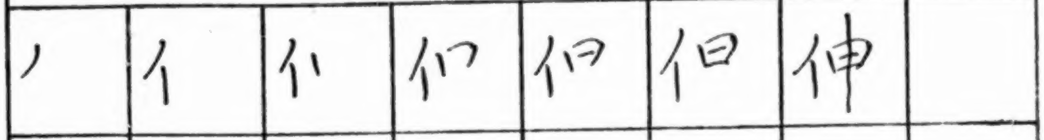
業科十種.即是經理.軍醫,獸醫,測量,兵工.軍樂,軍法,政工,軍用技術人員,同軍用文職人員.

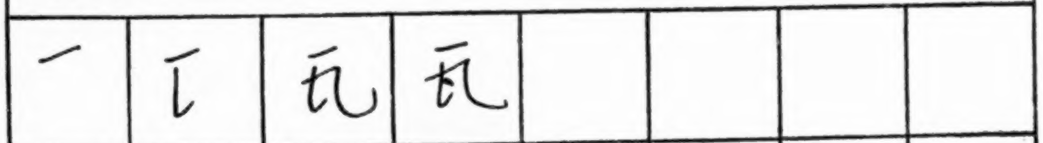
此十八種兵業科人員大概可以分成戰鬥人員同非戰鬥人員兩類.兵科人員係戰鬥人員.業科人員係非戰鬥人員.政工本來屬業科.但有等政工人員,若然擔任心理作戰及宣傳等工作,則亦稱為戰鬥人員.

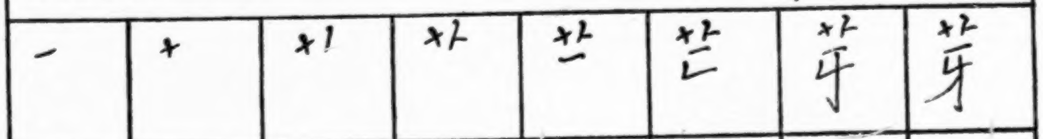
LESSON 3

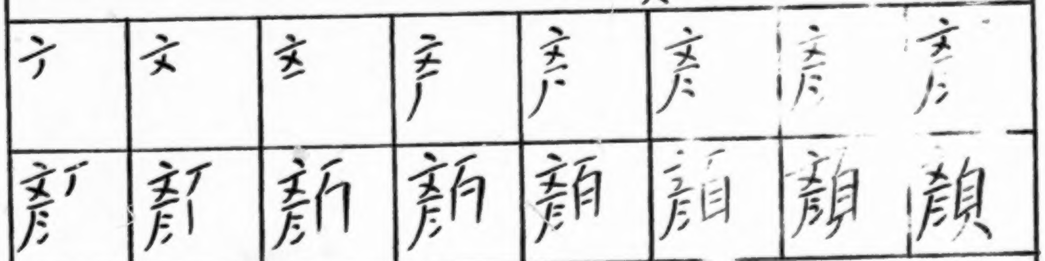
WRITING MATERIAL

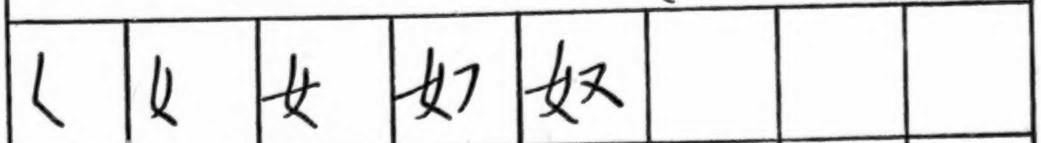
伸	Character Number 945 Stroke Number 7 Radical Number 9 亻, 人
瓦	Character Number 745 Stroke Number 4 Radical Number 98 瓦
芽	Character Number 744 Stroke Number 8 Radical Number 140 艹, 艸
顏	Character Number 746 Stroke Number 18 Radical Number 181 頁
奴	Character Number 768 Stroke Number 5 Radical Number 38 女



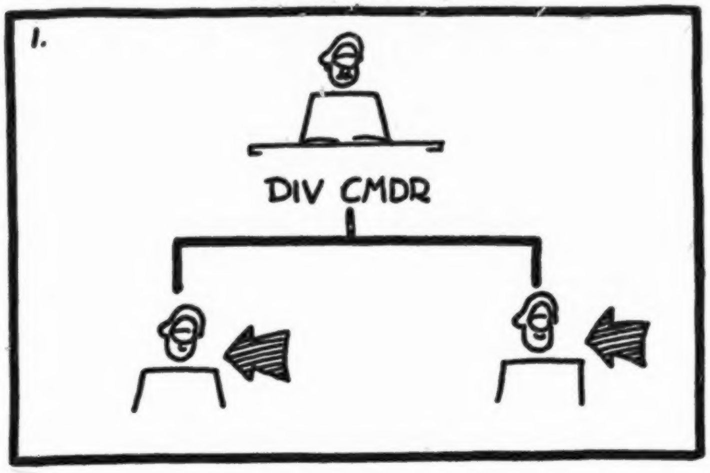


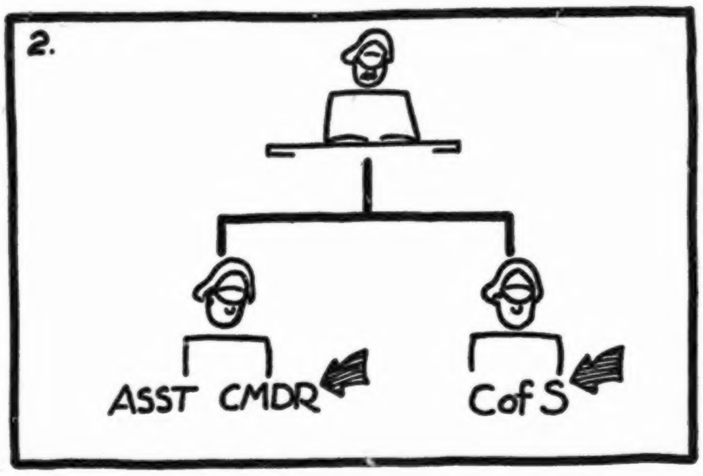


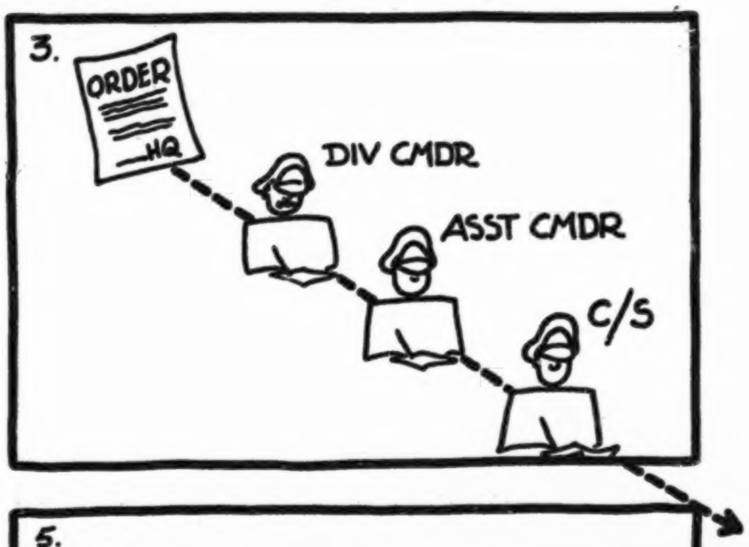


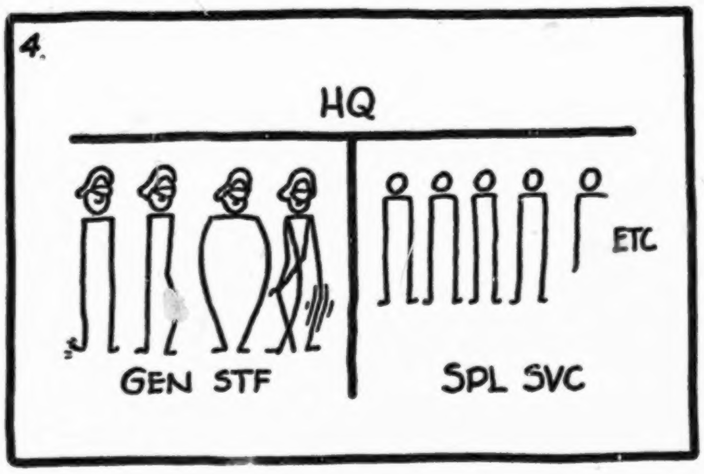


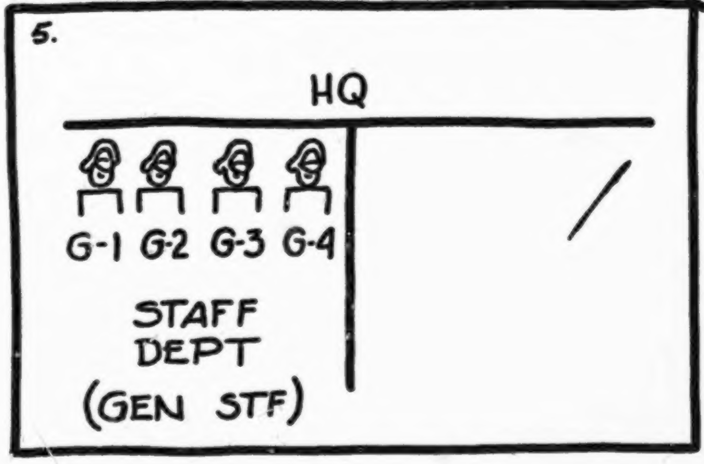
LESSON 4

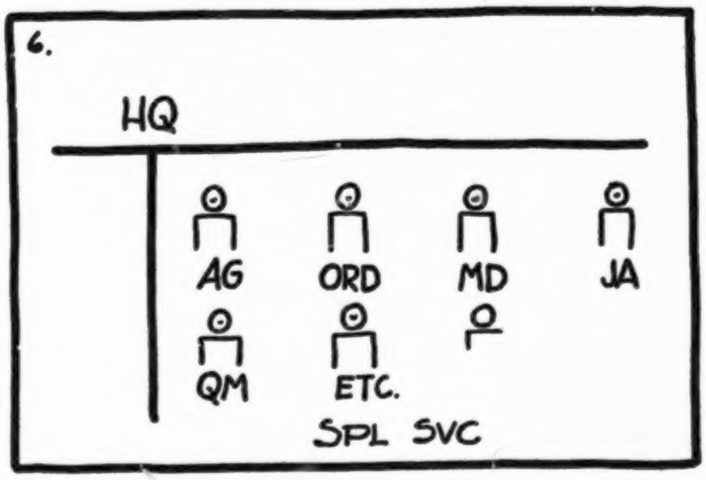

1.
DIV CMDR

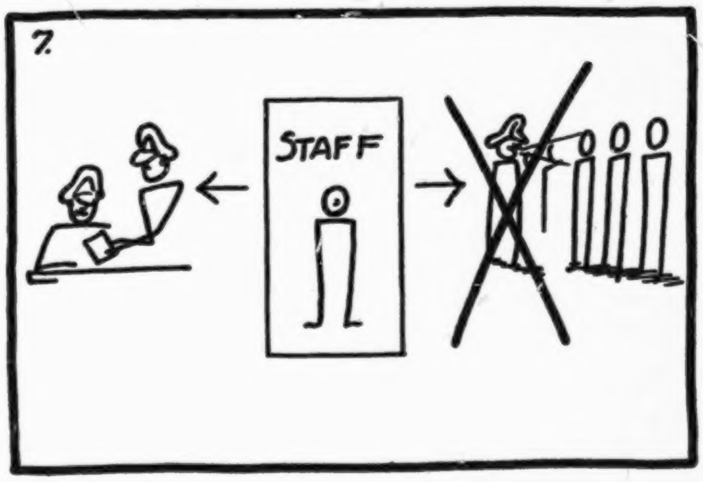

2.
ASST CMDR
Cof S


3.
ORDER
HQ
DIV CMDR
ASST CMDR
C/S


4.
HQ
ETC
GEN STF
SPL SVC


5.
HQ
G-1
G-2
G-3
G-4
STAFF
DEPT
(GEN STF)


6.
HQ
AG
ORD
MD
JA
QM
ETC.
SPL SVC


7.
STAFF

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Yat-kỏh sz kè tsuì ko cheúng-koon haî pin kỏh ne?

Taảp: Yat kỏh sz kè tsuì ko cheúng-koon haî sz-cheúng.

M: Yat-kỏh sz ch'uī-chóh sz-cheúng chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ chuê-iủ kè cheúng-koon ne?

T: Yat-kỏh sz ch'uī-chóh sz-cheúng chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ leŭng-kỏh chuê-iủ cheúng-koon, tsik-haî foỏ sz-cheúng t'ūng ts'aam-maū-cheúng.

M: Sz-lîng-pô hâ mîng-lîng peì pô-hâ pô-tuî* kè shī-haû, yaū pin kỏh ts'im-mēng*?

T: Sz-lîng-pô hâ mîng-lîng peì pô-hâ pô-tuî* kè shī-haû, yaū sz-cheúng ts'im-mēng*, taân-haî foỏ sz-cheúng t'ūng ts'aam-maū-cheúng yîk-to iủ ts'im-mēng*.

M: Sz-lîng-pô kè ts'aam-maū fan-hoi keì toh luî ne?

T: Sz-lîng-pô kè ts'aam-maū fan-hoi waī yat-poon ts'aam-maū t'ūng tâk-îp ts'aam-maū leŭng-luî.

M: Yat-poon ts'aam-maū yaû kiủ-tsô mi yĕ ả? Yat-poon ts'aam-maū yaŭ keì toh kỏh foh ả?

T: Yat-poon ts'aam-maū yaû kiủ-tsô ts'aam-maū-ch'uẻ, ni koh ch'uẻ luī-pîn yaŭ seì-kỏh foh, tsik-haî taî-yat foh, taî-î foh, taî-saam foh t'ūng taî-seì foh.

M: Ni seì-kỏh foh kè yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ ả?

T: Taî-yat foh foô-chaảk yān-sẑ, taî-î foh foô-chaảk ts'ìng-pỏ, taî-saam foh foô-chaảk kaaủ-yûk t'ūng fản-lîn, taî-seì foh foô-chaảk kwan-sui.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL DIALOGUE

M: Tâk-îp ts'aam-maū foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à? K'uĭ kè tsó-chik haî tîm-yeûng* kà?

T: Tâk-îp ts'aam-maū paân-leĭ k'eī-t'a kòk chúng sẑ-mô, k'uĭ fan-waī foò-koon-ch'uè, ping-kung-ch'uè, kwan-i-ch'uè, kwan-faàt-ch'uè, king-leĭ-ch'uè, táng-táng.

M: Ts'aam-maū yān-uēn kè chuê-iù chik-chaàk haî mi-yĕ?

T: Ts'aam-maū yān-uēn kè chuê-iù chik-chaàk haî hîp-chôh ts'aam-maū-cheúng, shóh-ĭ k'uĭ-teî to haî ts'aam-maū-cheúng kè chôh-shaú.

M: Ts'aam-maū yān-uēn yaŭ mŏ k'uēn chî-fai pô-tuî* kà?

T: Ts'aam-maū yān-uēn mŏ k'uēn chî-fai pô-tuî*, taân-haî hóh-ĭ chî-tô pô-tuî*.

LESSON 4

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Who is the highest commanding officer of a division?

Answer: The division commander is the highest commanding officer of a division.

Q: Besides the division commander who are the other senior officers in a division?

A: Besides the division commander, there are two senior officers in a division, they are the assistant commander of the division and the chief of staff.

Q: Who will sign an order when it is issued to the subordinate units by the Hq?

A: The division commander will sign an order when it is issued to the subordinate units from the Hq, but the assistant commander and the chief of staff also have to sign.

Q: Into how many categories is the staff of the Hq divided?

A: The staff of the Hq is divided into two categories, the general staff and the special service staff.

Q: By what name is the general staff also known? Of how many departments is the general staff somposed?

A: The general staff is also known as the staff department and is composed of four sections, G-1, G-2, G-3, and G-4.

Q: For what are these four sections responsible?

A: G-1 is responsible for personnel, G-2 is responsible for intelligence, G-3 is responsible for military education and training, and G-4 is responsible for quartermaster.

LESSON 4

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: For what is the special service staff responsible, and how is it organized?

A: The special service staff manages other business and is divided into the adjutant department, the ordnance department, the medical department, judge advocate department, the quartermaster and the finance department, etc.

Q: What is the main duty of the staff personnel?

A: The main duty of the staff personnel is to assist the chief of staff, therefore all of them are the assistants of the chief of staff.

Q: Has the staff personnel any authority to command troops?

A: The staff personnel have no authority to command troops, but may assist them as advisors.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. In general, the chart will help the students to learn this lesson well.
2. The adjutant general department is a part of the special service staff.
3. G-2 is responsible for intelligence, whereas G-4 is for quartermaster.
4. The division commander wants to see you at the headquarters immediately.
5. You should send all your subordinates to the hospital for a physical check-up once every three months.
6. May I speak to Capt Chang of the Ordnance department please.
7. I have no authority to issue this order to you.
8. The assistant division commander will go to the quartermaster and finance department tomorrow.
9. I want to see all the personnel of this department present at the meeting.
10. Who is our political director, and do you know him?
11. The officers will sit in the front and the others will sit a little further back
12. He may not know how to do it himself, but he can advise you on matters of technical nature.
13. Units under the direct control of the 3rd Army will be here soon.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. She does not have authority here, but she is an influential person.

15. S-3 is responsible for education and training.

16. The staff consists of military and civilians.

LESSON 4

WORD LIST

1.	chì-tô	to direct, guide, advise
2.	chîk-shûk pô-tuî*	units under direct control
3.	chìng-chî chì-tô-uēn	political director
4.	chôh-shaú	aide, assistant
5.	foò-koon-ch'uè	adjutant general dept
6.	hâ mîng-lîng	to issue order
7.	king-leĭ-ch'uè	QM and Finance Dept
8.	k'uēn, k'uēn-lîk	authority, power
9.	ping-kung-ch'uè	ordnance dept
10.	pô-hâ	subordinate
11.	taî-yat foh	the 1st branch (equal to G-1)
12.	tâk-îp ts'aam-maū	special service staff
13.	t'ō-piú	chart

LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

573

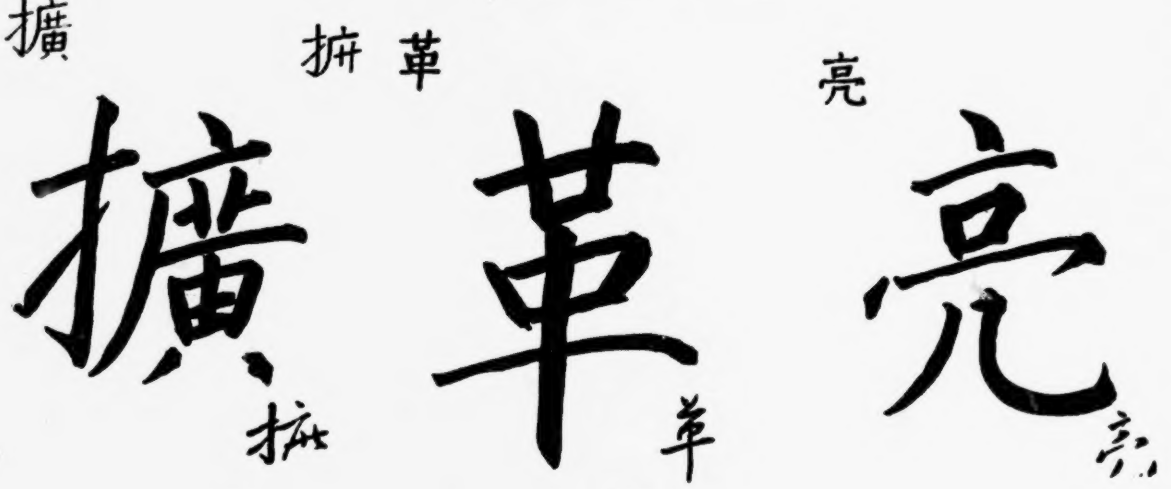
擴	kw'ǒng or k'ǒng: to expand; to extend.
擴充	kw'ǒng-ch'ung: to enlarge; to expand(business, school).
擴張	kw'ǒng-cheung: to spread; to enlarge(influence)

382

革	kaàk: to remove; change
革命	kaàk-mîng: revolution.
革職	kaàk chik: to remove from office or position
革除	kaàk-ch'uē: to get rid of; to expel
改革	kói-kaàk: to change

606

亮	leûng: clear; bright; transparent.
光亮	kwong-leûng: bright; illuminated.
響亮	heúng-leûng: clear and loud(voice and music etc.)

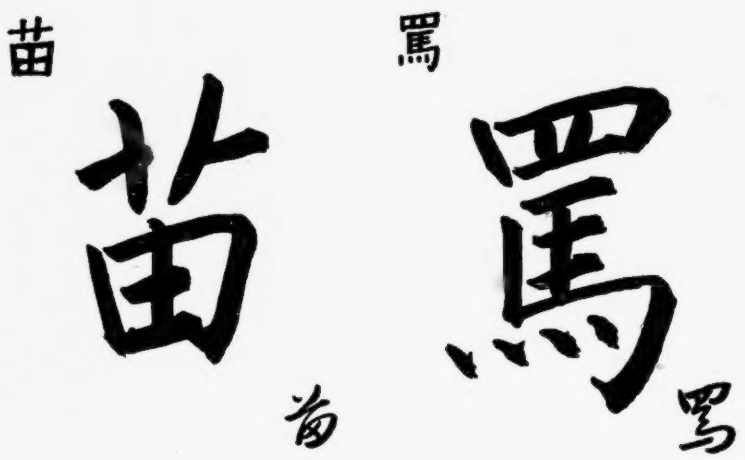


595

苗	miū: sprout; descendant; Miao tribe.
禾苗	wōh miū: rice seedings.
苗裔	miū yuî: posterity.
苗人	miū yān: Miaos.

657

罵	mâ: to rail; to scold; to villify.
罵人	mâ yān: to scold others.
大罵	taaî mâ: a bad scolding.



LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

574

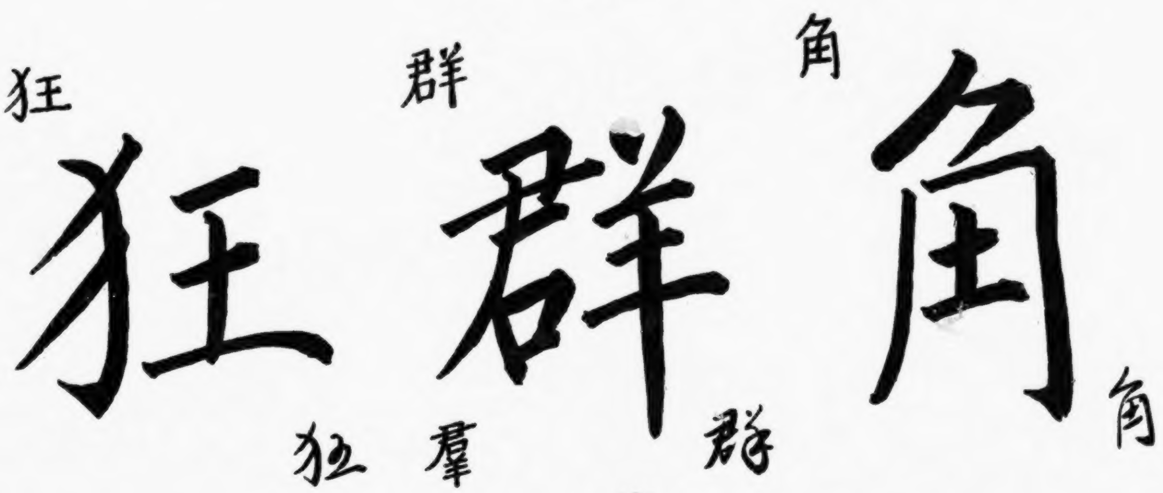
狂	kw'ōng or k'ōng: furious, mad; wild: rash.
癲狂	tin-kw'ōng: insane.
發狂	faàt-kw'ōng: become delirious; to lose one's senses.
猖狂	ch'eung-kw'ōng: outragious; too bold.

563

群	kw'ān: flock; herd; crowd; multitude; to group.
群衆	kw'ān-chùng: the multitude; the crowd.
群集	kw'ān tsaâp: to gather together.
合群	hôp-kw'ān: to unite; united.

490

角	kòk: a corner; horn of an animal; a coin.
角鬭	kòk-taù: to wrestle.
口角	haú-kòk: to quarrel.
三角	saam-kòk: a triangle.
一角	yat kòk: a ten cents piece.

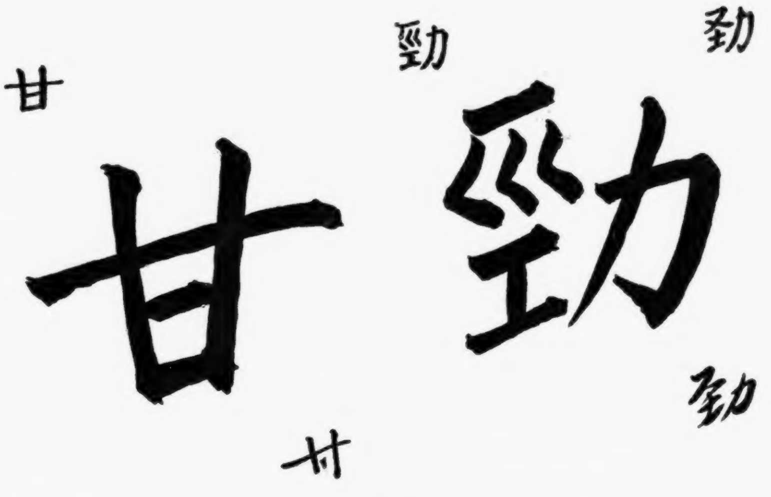


493

甘	kom: sweet; pleasant; seasonable.
甘香	kom-heung: delicious flavor.
甘甜	kom-t'īm: sweet.
甘心	kom-sam: voluntarily
甘油	kom-yaū: glycerine.

471

勁	kìng: strong.
勁敵	kìng tîk: well matched foe.
對勁	tuì kìng: well matched.



LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

一師之指揮官,除師長之外,尚有兩個長官.即係副師長同参謀長.司令部下命令所屬部隊之時,師長要簽名,副師長同参謀長亦要簽名.

司令部参謀分為一般参謀同特業参謀兩類.一般参謀又稱為参謀處,内有第一科,第二科,第三科,同第四科.

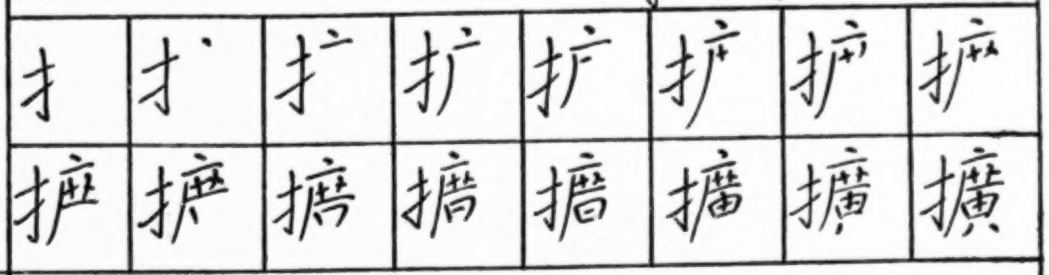
特業参謀有副官處,兵工處,軍醫處,軍法處,經理處等等.所有参謀人員都係参謀長助手,雖無指揮部隊之權,但負有指導職責.

LESSON 4

WRITING MATERIAL

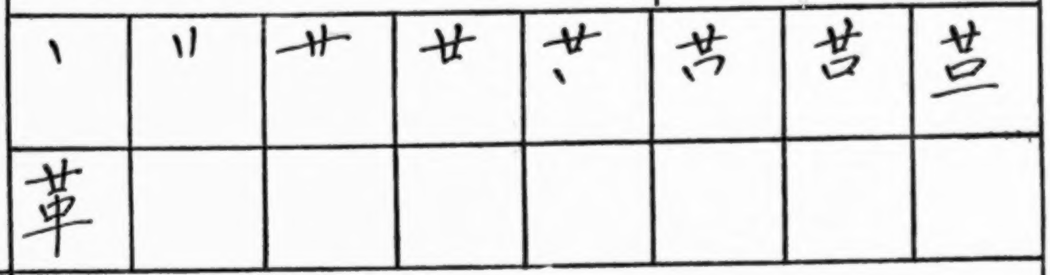
擴

Character Number 573 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 18 扌，手



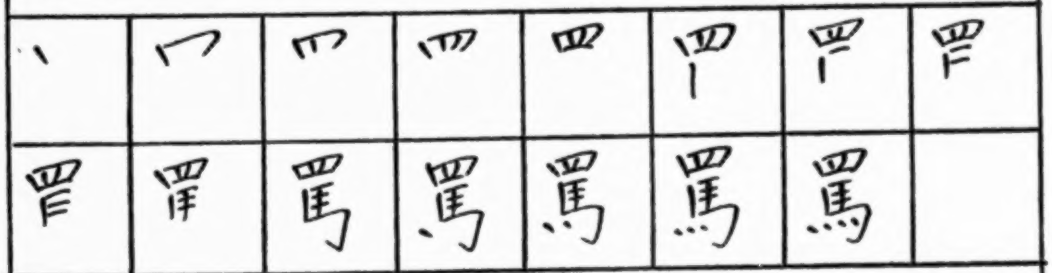
革

Character Number 382 Radical Number 177
Stroke Number 9 革



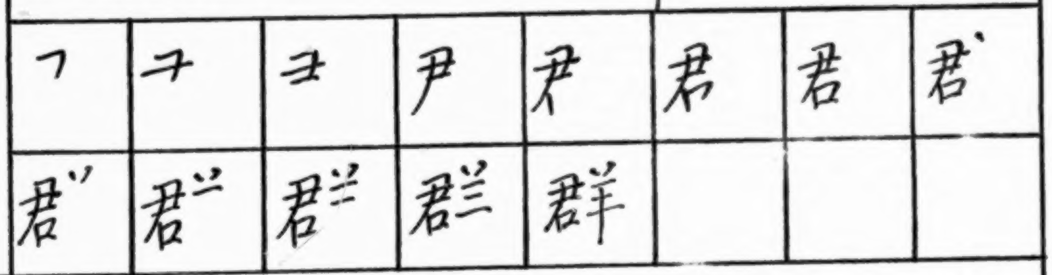
罵

Character Number 657 Radical Number 122
Stroke Number 15 四，网



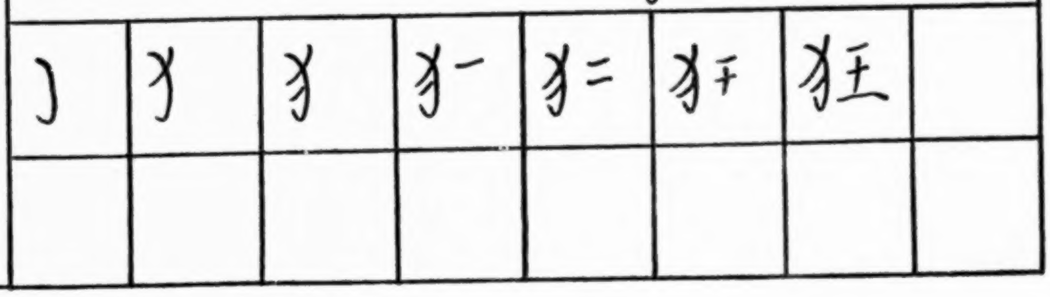
群

Character Number 563 Radical Number 123
Stroke Number 13 羊



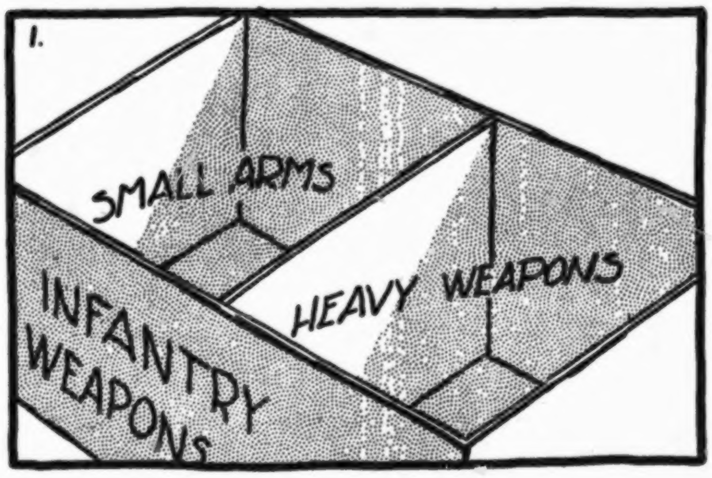
狂

Character Number 574 Radical Number 94
Stroke Number 7 犭，犬

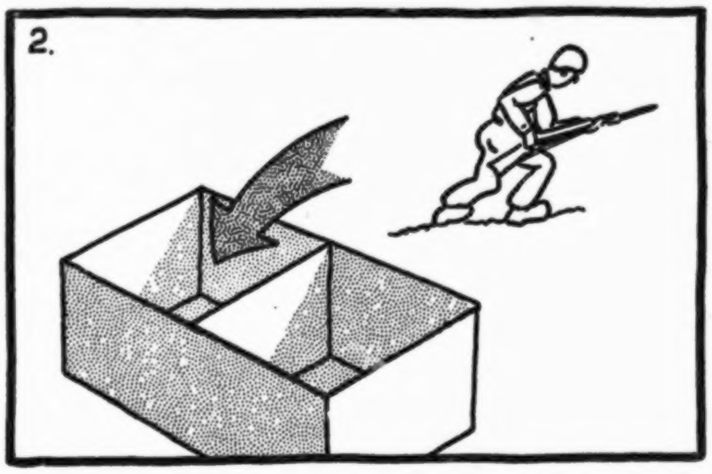


LESSON 5

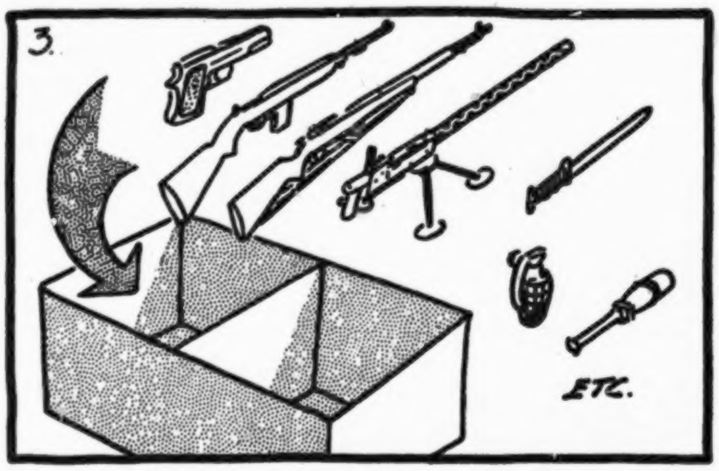
1.


SMALL ARMS
HEAVY WEAPONS
INFANTRY WEAPONS

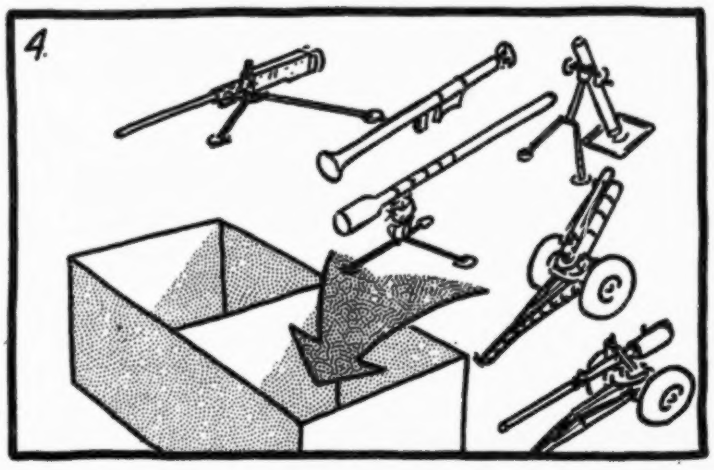
2.



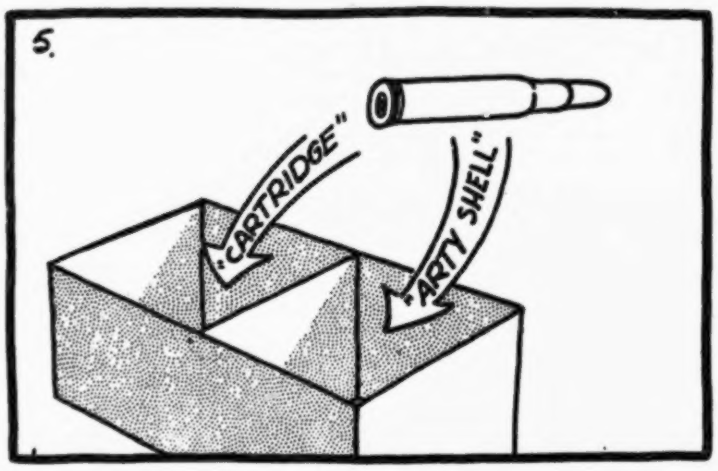
3.



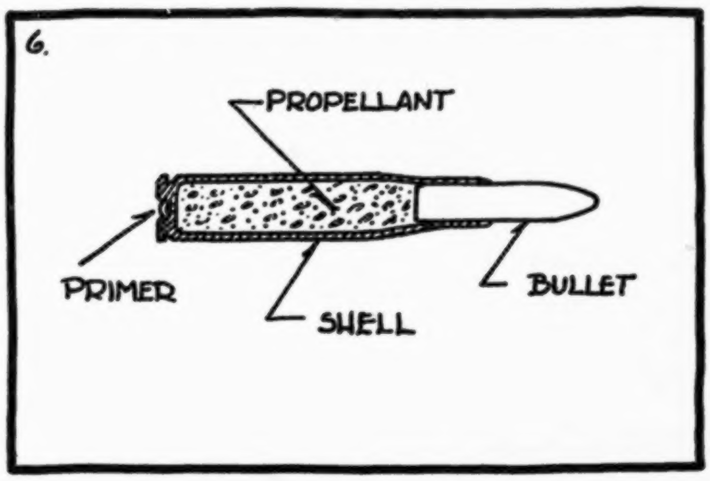
4.



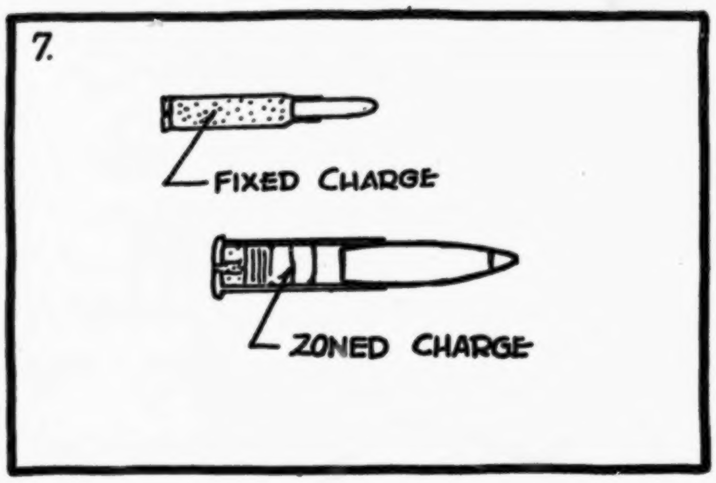
5.


"CARTRIDGE"
"ARTY SHELL"

6.


PROPELLANT
PRIMER
SHELL
BULLET

7.


FIXED CHARGE
ZONED CHARGE

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Pô-ping ping-heì hôh-ĭ fan-waì pin leŭng-chúng?

Taàp: Pô-ping ping-heì hôh-ĭ fan-waì hing ping-heì t'ūng ch'ŭng ping-heì leŭng-chúng.

M: Hing ping-heì haî tim-yeûng* kà?

T: Hing ping-heì haî kòh-yān hôh-ĭ kw'aì-taaì kè ping-heì.

M: Hing ping-heì paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ?

T: Hing ping-heì paau-k'oòt shaú-ts'eung, mă-ts'eung, pô-ts'eung, hing kei-kwaan-ts'eung, ts'z̀-to, shaú-laū-taân*, t'ūng ts'eung-laū-taân* táng-táng.

M: Ch'ŭng ping-heì paau-k'oòt mi-yĕ?

T: Ch'ŭng ping-heì paau-k'oòt ch'ŭng kei-kwaan-ts'eung, fóh-tsìn-p'aaù, mō-chôh-lîk-p'aaù, pik-kik p'aaù, pô-ping laū-taân*-p'aaù t'ūng p'ìng-shê-p'aaù táng-táng.

M: Ts'eung t'ūng p'aaù yaŭ mi-yĕ m̄-t'ūng ne?

T: Kan-kuì Chung-Kwòk kè ping-heì laì kóng, haú-kìng m̄-kwòh shâp-kung-leì kè haî ts'eung, haú-kìng taaî kwòh shâp-kung-leì kè haî p'aaù.

M: Ts'eung kè taân*-yeûk kiù-tsô mi-yĕ?

T: Ts'eung kè taân*-yeûk kiù-tsô tsź-taân*.

M: P'aaù kè taân*-yeûk kiù-tsô mi-yĕ?

T: P'aaù kè taân*-yeûk kiù-tsô p'aaù-taân*.

M: Tsź-taân* fan-hoi keî-toh pô-fân?

T: Tsź-taân* fan-hoi saam-pô-fân.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Tsź-taân* kè saam-pô-fân kiù-tsô mi-yĕ?

T: Taî-yat pô kiù-tsô taân*-t'aū, taî-î pô kiù-tsô taân*-hòk t'ūng luī-koón, taî-saam pô kiù-tsô chong-yeûk.

M: Pô-ping p'ìng-shê-p'aaù yûng kè taân*-yeûk haî mi-yĕ?

T: Pô-ping p'ìng-shê-p'aaù yûng kè taân*-yeûk haî tîng-chong-yeûk kè p'aaù-taân*.

M: Laū-taân*-p'aaù t'ūng pik-kik-p'aaù yûng kè taân*-yeûk haî mi-yĕ?

T: Laū-taân*-p'aaù t'ūng pik-kik-p'aaù yûng kè taân*-yeûk haî pìn-chong-yeûk kè p'aaù-taân*.

LESSON 5

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Into what two kinds can infantry weapons be divided?

Answer: The infantry weapons can be divided into two kinds, small arms and heavy weapons.

Q: What are small arms?

A: Small arms are weapons which can be carried by individuals.

Q: What do small arms include?

A: Small arms include pistols, carbines, rifles, light machine guns, bayonets, hand-grenades, rifle grenades, etc.

Q: What do heavy weapons include?

A: Heavy weapons include heavy machine guns, bazookas, recoilless rifles, mortars, infantry howitzers, antitank guns, etc.

Q: What is the difference between "ts'eung" and "p'aaù"?

A: According to Chinese weapons, those with calibers which do not exceed 10 mm are "ts'eung"; those larger than 10 mm are "p'aaù".

Q: What is the ammunition for "ts'eung"?

A: Cartridges are the ammunition for "ts'eung".

Q: What is the ammunition for "p'aaù"?

A: Shells are the ammunition for "p'aaù".

Q: How many parts are there in a cartridge?

A: There are threee in a cartridge.

Q: What are the three parts in a cartridge called?

A: First is the bullet, second is the shell and primer, and third is the propellant.

LESSON 5

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: What is the ammunition used in the infantry antitank gun?

A: The ammunitions for infantry antitank gun are shells of fixed charge.

Q: What are the ammunitions for howitzer and mortar?

A: The ammunitions for howitzer and mortar are shells of zoned charge.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Although you have a rifle, you have no ammunition.
2. Do you consider a rifle grenade a modern weapon?
3. What kind of ammunition do you use? Fixed charge or zoned charge?
4. A cartridge is made up of the bullet, the shell and primer and the charge.
5. When we were at the front, each of us had two or three hand grenades.
6. Antitank guns are very powerful.
7. Mortar shells do not fit howitzers or recoilless rifles.
8. Carbines are easy to carry and are useful.
9. Rocket launchers are not small arms.
10. The caliber of this cannon is more than 30 mm.
11. Flat trajectory cannons are anti-tank weapons.
12. I think a single person will be able to handle a heavy weapon in the future.
13. Bayonets are useful weapons especially in hand to hand combat.
14. Some cartridges have no propellant.
15. Pistols may be small, but they are deadly weapons.
16. Save all your ammunitions. You will need them later.

LESSON 5

WORD LIST

1.	chong-yeûk	propellant, charge
2.	fóh-tsìn p'aaù, fóh-tsìn faàt-shê-heì	rocket launcher, bazooka
3.	haú-kìng	caliber
4.	hing ping-heì	(light weapon), small arms
5.	kung-leì	mm
6.	kw'aì-taaì	to carry, bring
7.	laū-taân*-p'aaù	howitzer
8.	luì-koón	primer
9.	mă-ts'eung	carbine
10.	mō-tsôh-lîk-p'aaù, (or "fei-ooì-t'uì- shik pô-ts'eung)	recoilless rifle
11.	pik-kik-p'aaù-taân*	mortar shell
12.	pìn-chong-yeûk	zoned charge
13.	p'ìng-shê-p'aaù	flat trajectory cannon, (antitank gun)
14.	shaú-laū-taân*	hand grenade
15.	shaú-ts'eung	pistol, revolver
16.	taân-hòk	cartridge case, shell
17.	taân-t'aū	bullet, projectile
18.	taân-yeûk	ammunition
19.	tîng-chong-yeûk	fixed charge
20.	ts'eung-laū-taân*	rifle grenade cartridge

LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

1335

刺 ts'z̀: to prick; to stab; to dig into; a thorn.

刺傷 ts'z̀ sheung: to wound with a pointed weapon.

行刺 hāng-ts'z̀: to assassinate.

1229

斜 ts'è, ts'ē: oblique· slant; uneven.

斜紋 ts'ē mān· twilled.

斜角 ts'ē kòk. oblique angle.

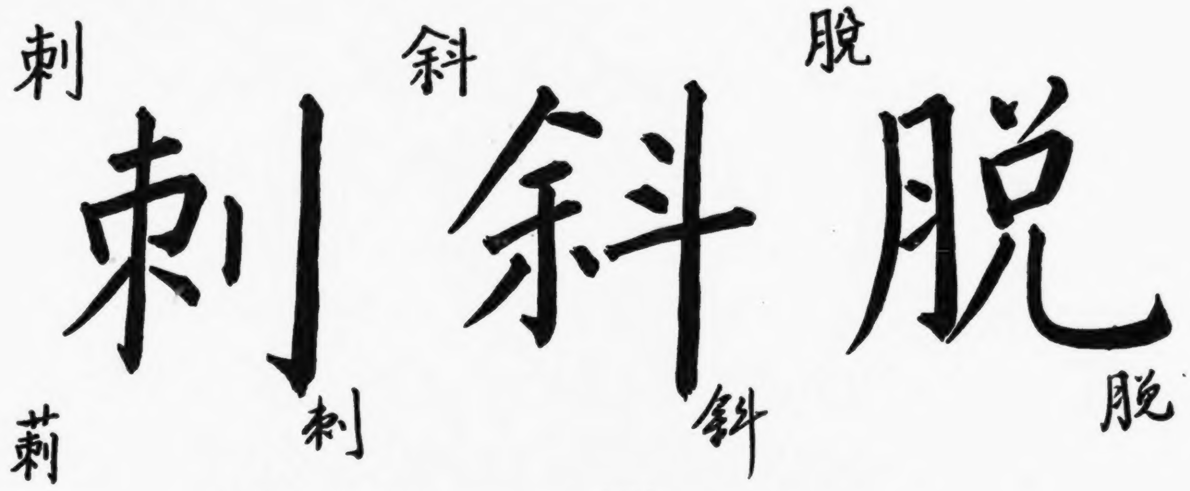
1345

脱 t'uèt: to strip; to remove; to escape; to avoid.

脱帽 t'uèt mô: to lift or remove the hat.

脱離 t'uèt leī: to depart; to disassociate with.

脱險 t'uèt hím: out of danger.



509

姑 koo: indulgent; father's sister; husband's sister.

姑娘 koo-neūng: miss; young lady; a nun(Catholic)

師姑 sz-koo: a nun

姑念 koo-nîm: indulgent towards.

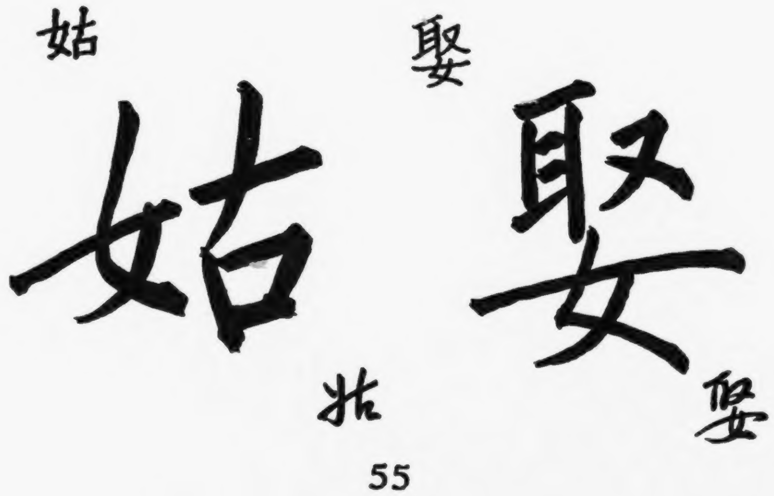
姑母 koo-mŏ: paternal aunt.

1313

娶 ts'uí: to take a wife; to marry a girl.

娶親 ts'uí ts'an: to take a wife.

娶妾 ts'uí ts'ìp: to take a concubine



LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

828

貧 p'ān: poor; impoverished.

貧窮 p'ān-k'ūng: indigent; poor.

貧乏 p'ān-fât: destitute.

479

稿 kó: rough draft· printer's copy; proof; stalks of grain.

原稿 uēn kó: original copy.

草稿 ts'ó-kó: a rough draft.

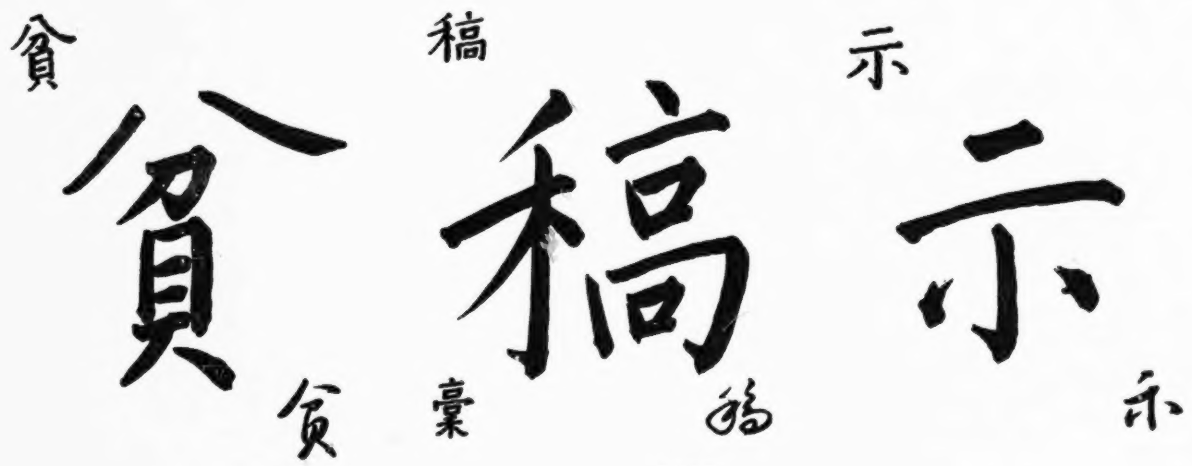
起稿 heí kó: to draw up a rough draft.

980

示 shî: to make known; an edict.

訓示 fàn-shî: to instruct; an order.

示威運動 shî-wai wân-tûng: public demonstration.



19

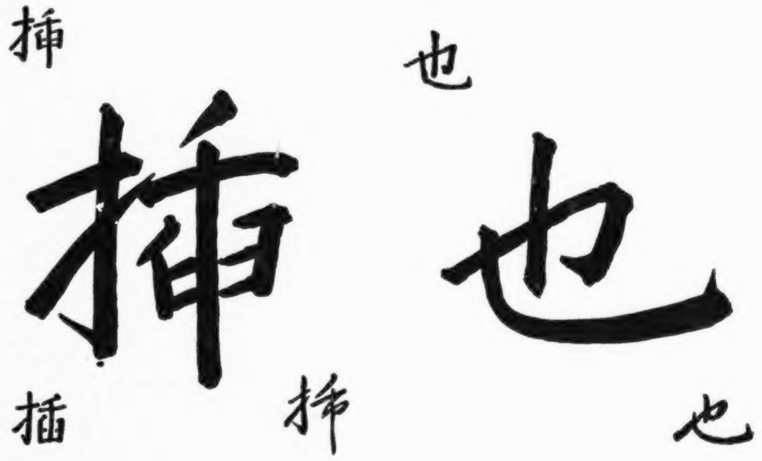
揷 ch'aàp: to insert, drive into

揷嘴 ch'aàp-tsuí: interrupt in talking.

1440

也 yă: also; a particle

也曾 yă-ts'āng: already.



LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

步兵兵器可分為輕兵器與重兵器兩種.輕兵器重量較輕,個人可以kw'aī-帶.其種類有手槍,馬槍,步槍,輕機關槍,刺刀,手laū-彈,同槍laū-彈等等.重兵器有重機關槍,火-tsīn砲,無座力砲,迫擊砲,步兵laū彈砲,平射砲等等

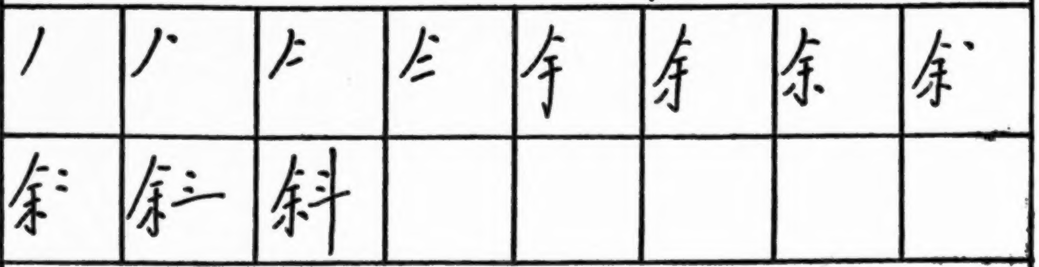
槍之彈藥稱為子彈,砲之彈藥則稱砲彈.每一子彈內分三部分,即係彈頭,彈hŏk與雷管,以及裝藥是也.

步兵平射砲所用彈藥,為定裝藥之砲彈;laū-彈砲與迫擊砲所用者,則為變裝藥之砲彈.

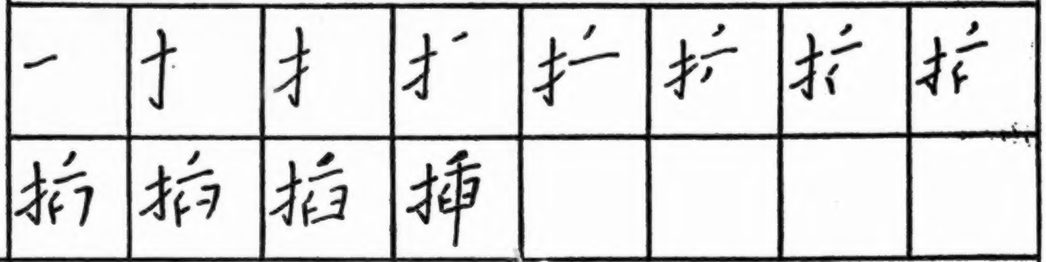
LESSON 5

WRITING MATERIAL

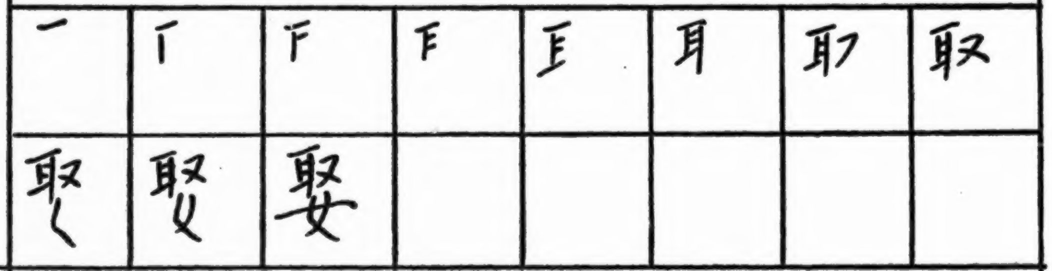
斜	Character Number 1229 Stroke Number 11	Radical Number 68 斗



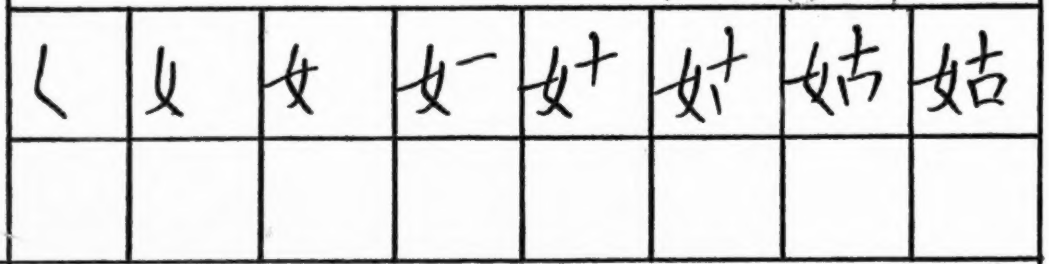
插	Character Number 19 Stroke Number 12	Radical Number 64 扌，手



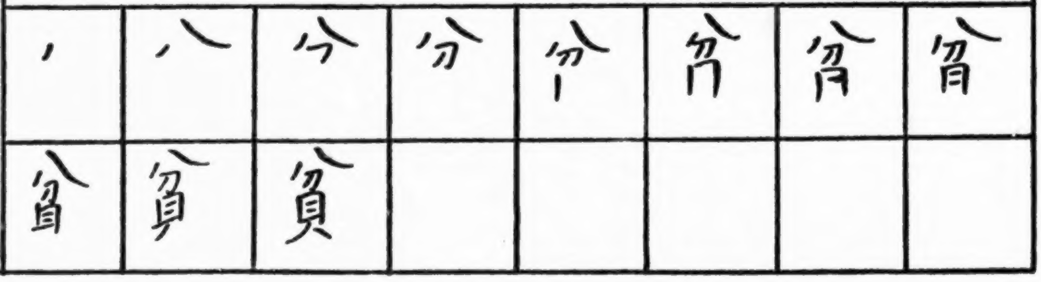
娶	Character Number 1313 Stroke Number 11	Radical Number 38 女



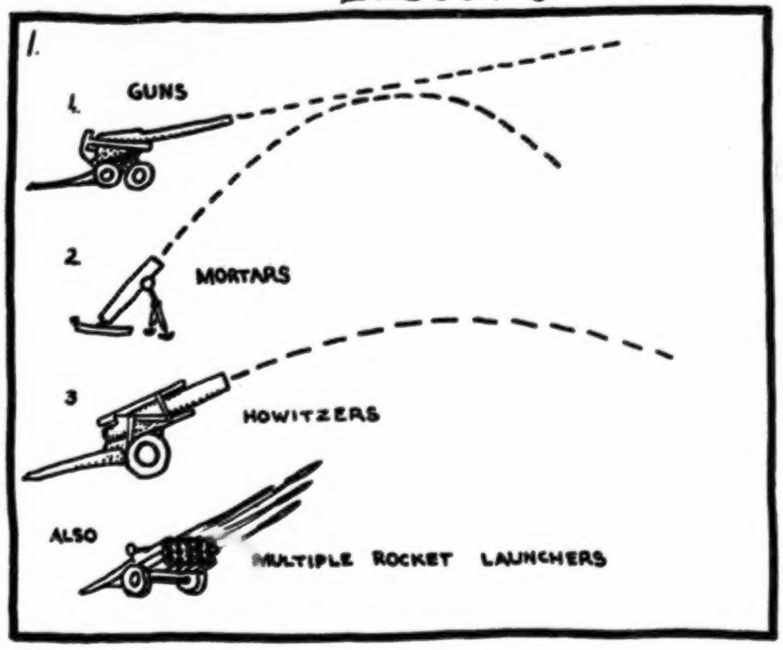
姑	Character Number 509 Stroke Number 8	Radical Number 38 女

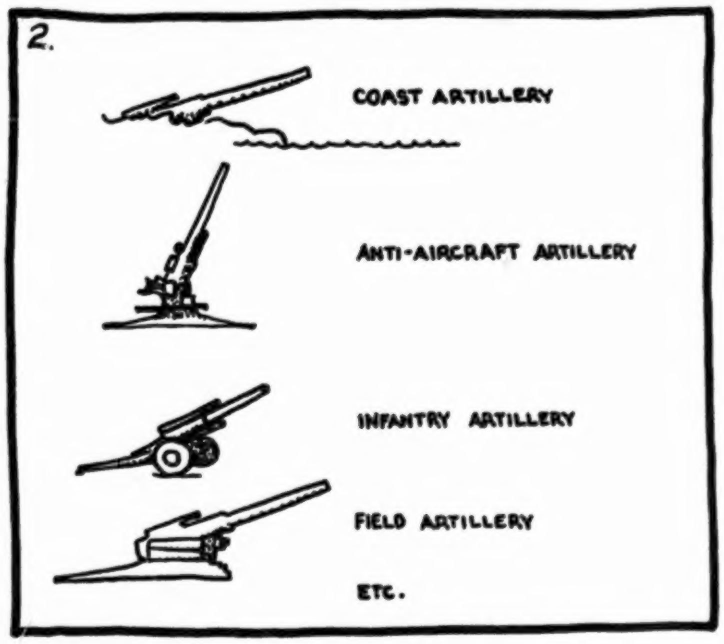


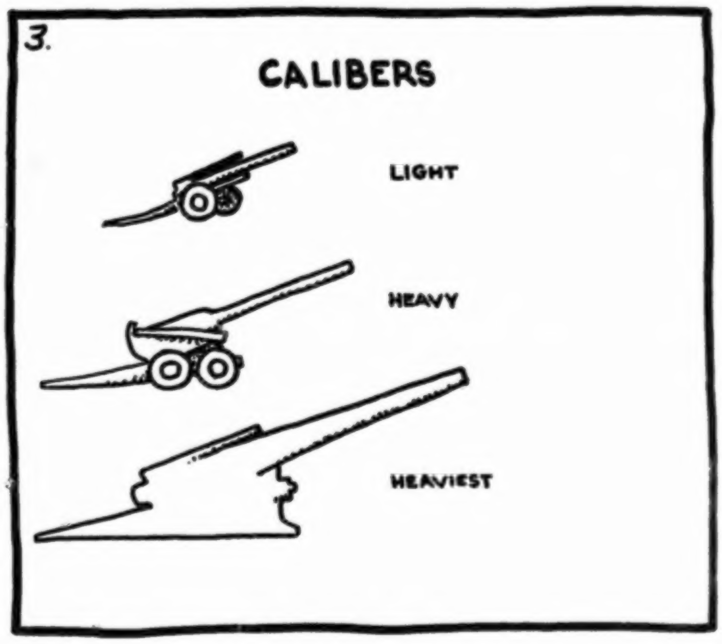
貧	Character Number 828 Stroke Number 11	Radical Number 154 貝

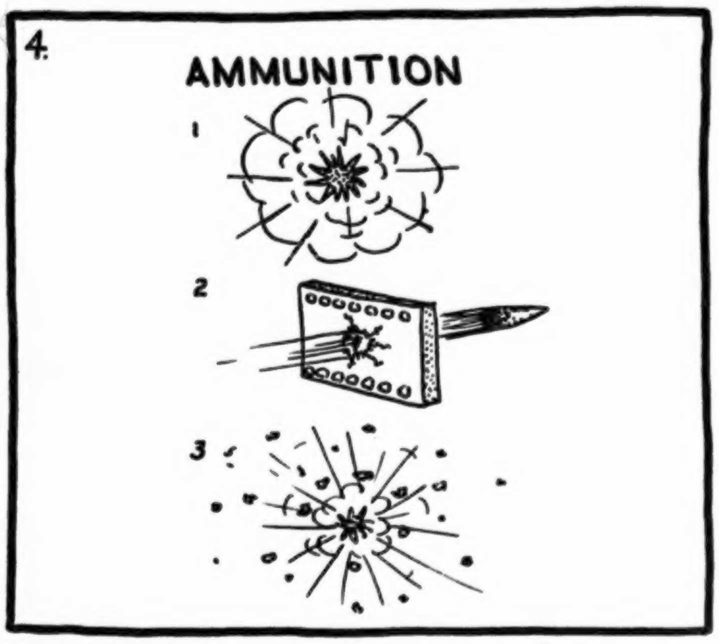


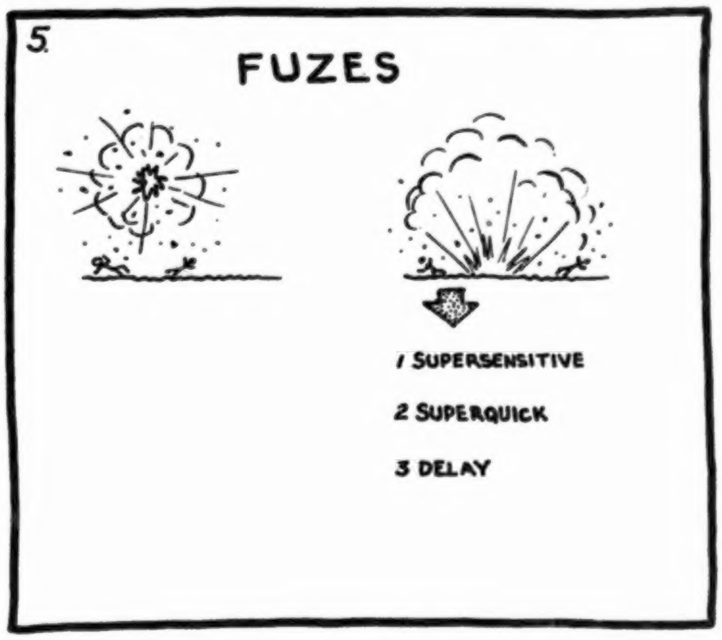
LESSON 6


1.
1. GUNS
2 MORTARS
3 HOWITZERS
ALSO MULTIPLE ROCKET LAUNCHERS


2.
COAST ARTILLERY
ANTI-AIRCRAFT ARTILLERY
INFANTRY ARTILLERY
FIELD ARTILLERY
ETC.


3.
CALIBERS
LIGHT
HEAVY
HEAVIEST


4.
AMMUNITION
1
2
3


5.
FUZES
1 SUPERSENSITIVE
2 SUPERQUICK
3 DELAY

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Kan-kuì taân*-tô, p'aaù-ping kè fôh-heì hôh-ĭ fan-waì keì-toh luî?

Taàp: Kan-kuì taân*-tô, p'aaù-ping kè fôh-heì hôh-ĭ fan-waì saam-luî,

M: P'aaù-ping taî-yat luî kè fôh-heì haî mi-yĕ?

T: Taî-yat luî haî taân-tô p'ìng-shê kè fôh-heì, kiù-tsô ka-nūng-p'aaù.

M: P'aaù-ping taî-î luî kè fôh-heì haî mi-yĕ?

T: Taî-î luî haî taân-tô k'uk-shê kè fôh-heì, kiù-tsô pik-kik-p'aaù.

M: P'aaù-ping taî-saam luî kè fôh-heì haî mi-yĕ?

T: Taî-saam luî haî taân-tô haì p'ìng-shê t'ūng k'uk-shê chung-kaan kè fôh-heì, kiù-tsô laū-taân*-p'aaù.

M: P'aaù-ping kè fôh-heì ch'uì-chôh ni saam-luî chi-ngoî chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ ne?

T: Chûng yaŭ tsaâp-ts'uk taân-tô kè fôh-heì, kiù-tsô toh-koôn-fôh-tsìn-p'aaù.

M: Kan-kuì yâm-mô, p'aaù-ping kè fôh-heì yaû hôh-ĭ fan-waì mi-yĕ?

T: Kan-kuì yâm-mô, p'aaù-ping kè fôh-heì yaû hôh-ĭ fan-waì iù-ts'oì-p'aaù, ko-shê-p'aaù, pô-ping-p'aaù, t'ūng yĕ-chìn-p'aaù táng-táng.

M: Kan-kuì haú-kìng, yĕ-chìn-p'aaù tsoì hôh-ĭ fan-waì keì-toh chúng?

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Kan-kuì haú-kìng, yĕ-chìn-p'aaù hóh-ĭ fan-waî hing-p'aaù, ch'ŭng-p'aaù, t'ūng tsuì-ch'ŭng-p'aaù saam chúng.

M: Tsuì p'ó-t'ung kè p'aaù-ping taân*-yeûk haî mi-yĕ?

T: Tsuì p'ó-t'ung kè p'aaù-ping taân*-yeûk haî laū-taân*, k'eì-ts'z̀ haî p'òh-kaàp-taân* t'ūng laū-sìn-taân*.

M: Sùn-koón yaŭ keì-toh chúng?

T: Sùn-koón yaŭ leŭng-chúng, tsik-haî hung-chà sùn-koón t'ūng p'ùng-chà sùn-koón.

M: P'ùng-chà sùn-koón yaû hóh-ĭ fan-waî keì-toh chúng?

T: P'ùng-chà sùn-koón yaû hóh-ĭ fan-waî shùn-faàt, cheûk-faàt t'ūng ìn-k'eî saam-chúng.

LESSON 6

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question? According to the trajectory, into how many categories can the artillery pieces be grouped?

Answer: According to the trajectory, the artillery pieces can be grouped into three categories.

Q: What is the first category of artillery pieces?

A: The first category is the flat trajectory pieces. They are called guns.

Q: What is the second category of artillery pieces?

A: The second category is the curved trajectory pieces. They are called mortars.

Q: What is the third category of artillery pieces?

A: The third category of pieces are those of which the trajectory are between flat and curved. They are called howitzers.

Q: Besides these three categories, are there any other artillery pieces?

A: There are sheaf fire pieces. They are called multiple rocket launchers.

Q: According to missions, how can the artillery pieces also be grouped?

A: According to their missions, the artillery pieces can also be grouped into coastal artillery, anti-aircraft artillery, infantry artillery, field artillery and others.

Q: According to caliber, into how many catagories can field artillery pieces again be divided?

LESSON 6

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: According to caliber, field artillery pieces can be divided into three kinds: the light pieces, the heavy, and the heaviest pieces.

Q: What are the most common artillery ammunitions?

A: The most common artillery ammunitions are high explosive shells, the next are the armor-piercing shells and the shrapnel shells.

Q: How many kinds of fuzes are there?

A: There are two kinds of fuzes, namely, the air burst fuzes, and the impact fuzes.

Q: Into how many kinds can impact fuzes again be divided?

A: There are three kinds of impact fuzes, namely, the supersensitive fuzes, the superquick fuzes and the delay fuzes.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. At this training base there are 10 field artillery pieces and 20 multiple rocket launchers.
2. Are multiple rocket launchers sheaf fire pieces?
3. The trajectory of artillery pieces can be flat or curved.
4. How would you classify field artillery pieces according to calibers?
5. I don't think this fuze is supersensitive.
6. Impact fuzes are different from air burst fuzes.
7. We do not use armor-piercing shell for antiaircraft guns
8. This artillery piece uses high explosive shells.
9. Shrapnel shells are common artillery ammunitions.
10. There are many coastal artillery pieces in this area.
11. If you have any firearms, you have to register them with the police.
12. These delay fuzes are no substitutes for impact fuzes.
13. Can firearms be grouped under different categories?
14. The students can be grouped into two categories.
15. These military personnel are from different branches of the armed service.
16. Even this machine gun is too heavy for one man.

LESSON 6

WORD LIST

1.	cheûk-faảt (sủn koón)	superquick (fuze)
2.	fóh-heỉ	firearm, piece
3.	hung-chả sủn-koón	air burst fuze, time fuze
4.	ỉn-k'eỉ sủn-koón	delay fuze
5.	iủ-ts'oỉ p'aaủ	coastal artillery piece
6.	ka-nūng-p'aaủ	gun, any piece with 10 mm or larger caliber
7.	ko-shê-p'aaủ	antiaircraft gun
8.	k'ui-fan	to divide, be divided
9.	k'uk-shê-p'aaủ	curved trajectory piece
10.	laū-sỉn-taân* (laū-saản-taân*)	shrapnel
11.	laū-taân*	high explosive shell
12.	p'ỉng-shê	flat fire, flat trajectory
13.	p'ỏh-kaảp-taân* (ch'uen-kaảp-taân*)	armor-piercing shell
14.	p'ủng-chả sủn-koón	impact fuze
15.	sủn-faảt (sủn-koón)	supersensitive (fuze)
16.	sủn-koón	fuze
17.	taân-tô	trajectory
18.	toh-koón fóh-tsỉn p'aaủ	multiple rocket launcher
19.	tsaâp-ch'uk taân-tô	sheaf fire
20.	yĕ-chỉn p'aaủ	field artillery piece

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

363

腰 iu: loins; waist; kidney; isthmus

腰骨 iu-kwat: backbone

892

旁 p'ōng: at the side; near.

旁人 p'ōng-yān: bystander; looker-on.

旁邊 p'ōng-pin: at the side; the side.

127

磚 chuen: brick; tile (Cl.kòh)

青磚 ts'ing-chuen: burnt brick

泥磚 naī-chuen: mud brick.

腰 旁 磚

腰 旁 磚

腰 旁 甎 砖

1295

倉 ts'ong: granary; storehouse.

貨倉 fòh-ts'ong: a warehouse.

穀倉 kuk ts'ong: granary; barn.

407

斤 kan: a catty, equivalent to 1 1/3 pound; 16 ounces

一斤 yat kan: one catty

斤両 kan-leúng: the weight of a thing

倉 斤

倉 斤

倉 觔 斤

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

1296

蒼 ts'ong: azure; the sky.

蒼天 ts'ong-t'in: the blue sky.

蒼蝇 ts'ong-yīng: fly; (flies).

902

盤 p'ōōn: a tray; vessel; to wind; to examine.

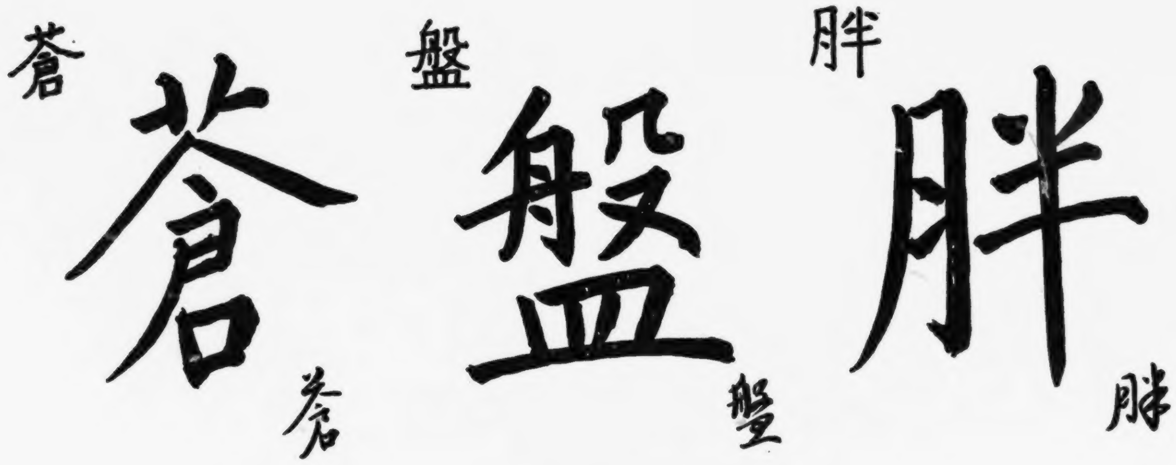
收盤 shau p'ōōn: to wind up the business.

地盤 teî-p'ōōn: territory; military position.

904

胖 poôn: fat.

胖子 poôn-tsź: fat fellow (Mandarin)



1277

醋 ts'ò: vinegar.

白醋 paâk ts'ò: white vinegar.

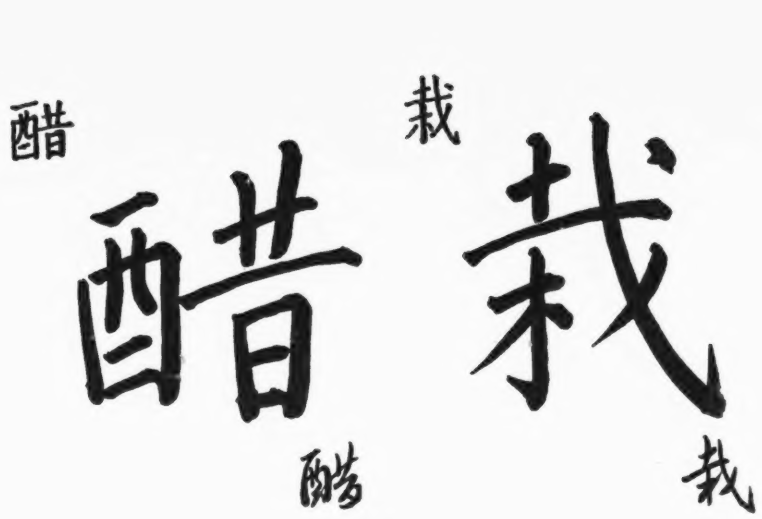
黑醋 hak ts'ò: black vinegar.

1283

栽 tsoi: to plant; to set out.

栽花 tsoi fa: to set out flowers.

栽培 tsoi-p'ooī: to cultivate; to assist, To rear.



LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

根據彈道,砲兵火器可以區分為三類.彈
道平射之火器名為加農砲;彈道曲射之火器
名為迫擊砲;至於彈道在平射與曲射間之火
器則稱為 laū- 彈砲;此外,火器為集-ch'uk 彈道
者,稱為多管火箭砲.

根據任務,砲兵之火器又可以區分為要
ts'oi 砲,高射砲,步兵砲,同野戰砲等等.

根據口徑,野戰砲再可以區分為,輕砲,重
砲,同最重砲三種.

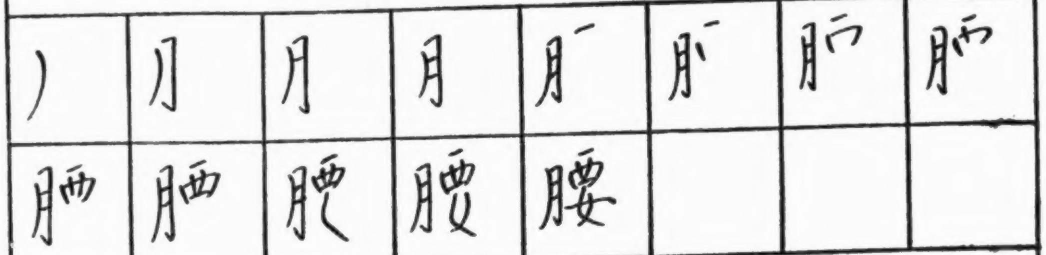
最普通之砲兵彈藥係 laū- 彈;其次係破
甲彈同 laū-sìn 彈.

信管有兩種,即是空炸信管與碰炸信管.
碰炸信管又可以分為 sùn- 發,着發及延期三
種.

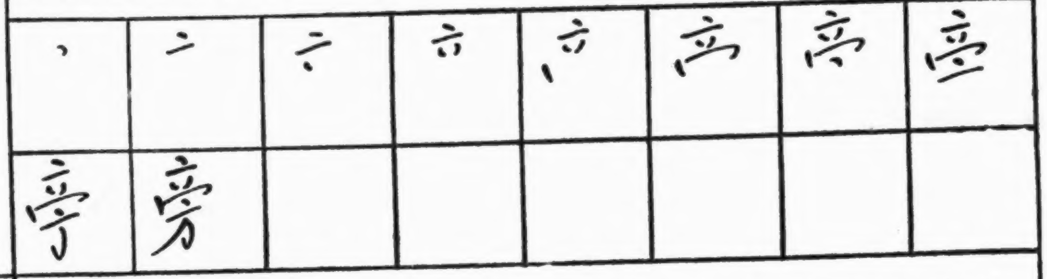
LESSON 6

WRITING MATERIAL

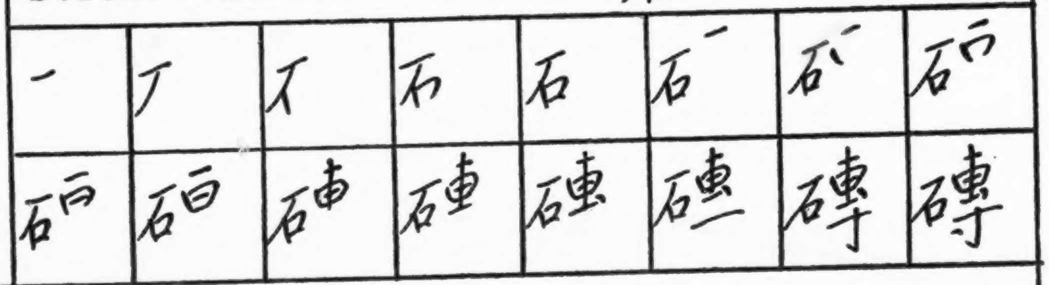
腰	Character Number 1277 Stroke Number 13 Radical Number 130 月，肉



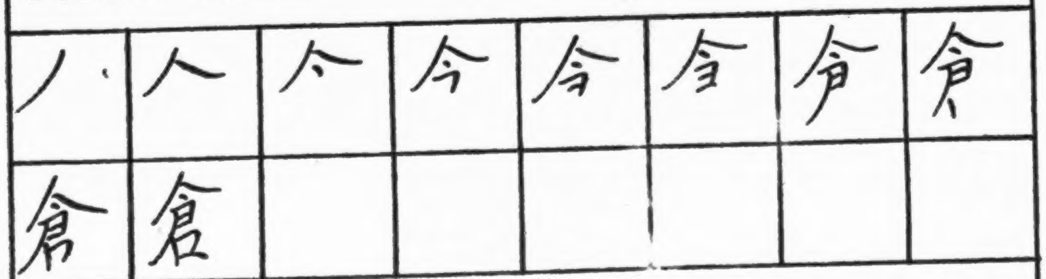
旁	Character Number 1295 Stroke Number 10 Radical Number 70 方



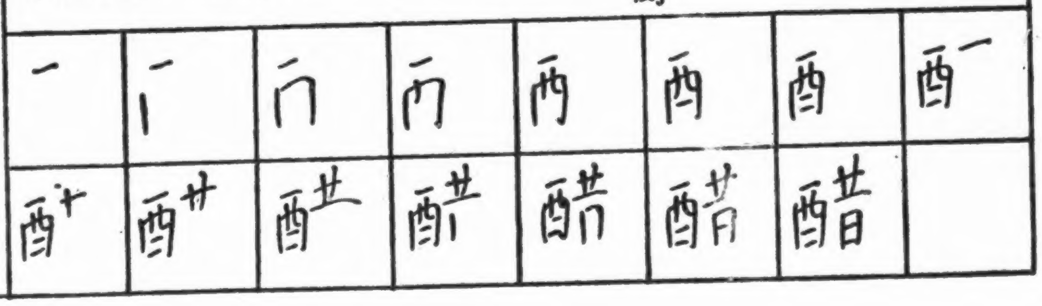
磚	Character Number 127 Stroke Number 16 Radical Number 112 石



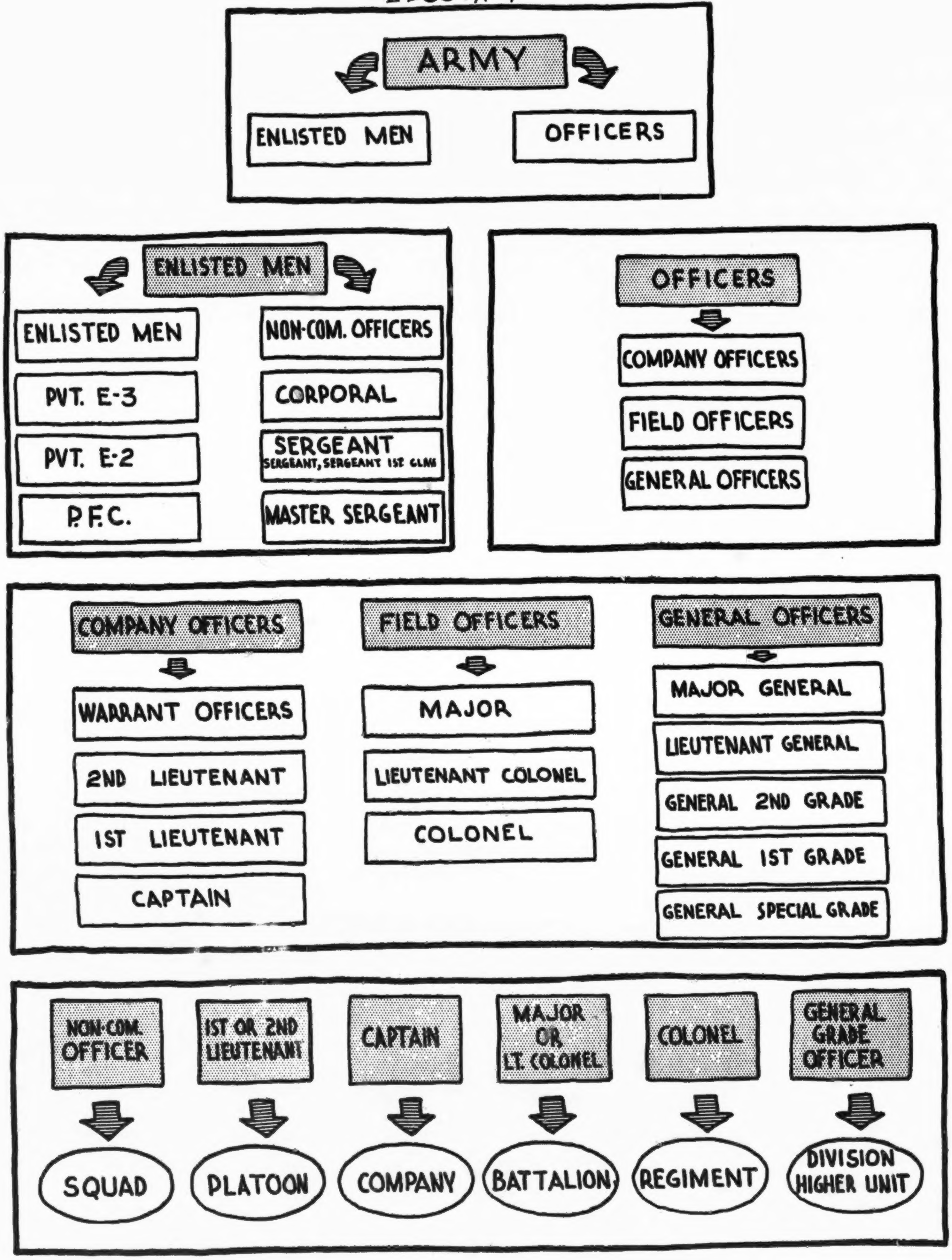
倉	Character Number 892 Stroke Number 10 Radical Number 9 人



醋	Character Number 363 Stroke Number 15 Radical Number 164 酉



LESSON 7


ARMY
ENLISTED MEN
OFFICERS
ENLISTED MEN
ENLISTED MEN
PVT. E-3
PVT. E-2
P.F.C.
NON-COM. OFFICERS
CORPORAL
SERGEANT
SERGEANT, SERGEANT 1ST CLASS
MASTER SERGEANT
OFFICERS
COMPANY OFFICERS
FIELD OFFICERS
GENERAL OFFICERS
COMPANY OFFICERS
WARRANT OFFICERS
2ND LIEUTENANT
1ST LIEUTENANT
CAPTAIN
FIELD OFFICERS
MAJOR
LIEUTENANT COLONEL
COLONEL
GENERAL OFFICERS
MAJOR GENERAL
LIEUTENANT GENERAL
GENERAL 2ND GRADE
GENERAL 1ST GRADE
GENERAL SPECIAL GRADE
NON-COM. OFFICER
SQUAD
1ST OR 2ND LIEUTENANT
PLATOON
CAPTAIN
COMPANY
MAJOR OR LT. COLONEL
BATTALION
COLONEL
REGIMENT
GENERAL GRADE OFFICER
DIVISION HIGHER UNIT

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Lûk-kwan kè kaai-k'ap fan-hoi keî-toh luî ne?

Taàp: Lûk-kwan kè kaai-k'ap fan-hoi sẑ-ping t'ūng kwan-koon leŭng luî.

M: Sẑ-ping kè kaai-k'ap fan-hoi keî-toh k'ap ne?

T: Sẑ-ping kè kaai-k'ap fan-hoi sẑ-ping t'ūng kwan-sẑ leŭng k'ap. Sẑ-ping fan-hoi î-tâng-ping, yat-tâng-ping, sheûng-tâng-ping saam k'ap. Kwan-sẑ fan-hoi hâ-sẑ, chung-sẑ, sheûng-sẑ saam k'ap.

M: Kwan-koon kè kaai-k'ap fan-hoi keî-toh k'ap ne?

T: Kwan-koon kè kaai-k'ap fan-hoi waì-koon, kaaù-koon, tseùng-koon, saam k'ap. Waì-koon fan-hoi chûm-waì, shiù-waì, chung-waì, sheûng-waì, seì k'ap. Kaaù-koon fan-hoi shìu-kaaù, chung-kaaù, sheûng-kaaù, saam k'ap. Tseùng-koon fan-hoi shiù-tseùng, chung-tseùng, î-k'ap sheûng-tseùng, yat-k'ap sheûng-tseùng, tâk-k'ap sheûng-tseùng, nğ k'ap.

M: Yat-kòh paan haî yaū pin kòh chì-fai?

T: Yat-kòh paan haî yaū yat-kòh kwan-sẑ chì-fai.

M: Yat-kòh p'aaì haî yaū pin kòh chì-fai?

T: Yat-kòh p'aaì haî yaū yat-kòh shiù-waì waâk chung-waì chì-fai.

M: Yat-kòh lìn-k'ap pô-tuî* haî yaū mi-yĕ kaai-k'ap kè kwan-koon chì-fai?

T: Yat-kòh lìn-k'ap pô-tuî* haî yaū yat-kòh sheûng-waì chì-fai.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL DIALOGUE

M: Yat-kỏh yīng-k'ap pô-tuî* haî yaū mi-yĕ kaai-k'ap kè kwan-koon chî-fai?

T: Yat-kỏh yīng-k'ap pô-tuî* haî yaū yat-kỏh shiủ-kaaủ waâk chung-kaaủ chî-fai.

M: Yat-kỏh t'uēn-k'ap pô-tuî* haî yaū mi-yĕ kaai-k'ap kè kwan-koon chî-fai?

T: Yat-kỏh t'uēn-k'ap pô-tuî* haî yaū yat-kỏh sheûng-kaaủ chî-fai.

M: Sz ĭ-sheûng pô-tuî* haî yaū mi-yĕ kaai-k'ap kè kwan-koon chî-fai?

T: Sz ī-sheûng pô-tuî* haî yaū yat-kỏh tseùng-koon chî-fai.

LESSON 7

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Into how many categories are the ranks of the Army divided?

Answer: The ranks of the Army are divided into two categories, namely, enlisted men and officers.

Q: Into how many grades are the ranks of the enlisted men divided?

A: The ranks of the enlisted men are divided into two grades, namely, enlisted men and non-commissioned officers. Enlisted men are divided into three grades, namely, private third class, private second class, and private first class. Non-commissioned officers are divided into three grades, namely, corporal, sergeant (sergeant, sergeant first class), and master sergeant.

Q: Into how many grades are the ranks of the officers divided?

A: The ranks of the officers are divided into three grades, namely, company officers (waì-koon), field officers (kaaù-koon), and general officers (cheùng-koon). Company officers are divided into four grades, namely, warrant officer, second lieutenant, first lieutenant, and captain. Field officers are divided into three grades, namely, major, lieutenant colonel, and colonel. General officers are divided into five grades, namely, major general, lieutenant general, general (second grade), general (first grade), and general (special grade).

LESSON 7

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: By whom is a squad commanded?

A. A squad is commanded by a non-commissioned officer.

Q: By whom is a platoon commanded?

A: A platoon is commanded by a second lieutenant or a first lieutenant.

Q: By an officer of what rank is a company level unit commanded?

A: A company level unit is commanded by a captain.

Q: By an officer of what rank if a battalion level unit commanded?

A: A battalion level unit is commanded by a major or a lieutenant colonel.

Q: By an officer of what rank is a regimental level unit commanded?

A: A regimental level unit is commanded by a colonel.

Q: By an officer of what rank is a division or higher unit commanded?

A: A division or higher unit is commanded by a general grade officer.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I can only give you my name, rank and service number.
2. Officers went through a great deal more training than soldiers.
3. Two second lieutenants are assigned to the task.
4. Do you think an enlisted man can become a general officer?
5. Officers of this battalion are all young and able.
6. This is Corporal Lee. May I speak to Sgt Wong please?
7. You may not like it this way, but it is an order.
8. My student are all field officers, one colonel, two lieutenant colonels and five majors.
9. General White is the commanding officer of this post.
10. General Brown and his wife will attend our graduation exercise.
11. Where have you been, Private Chan? I have been looking for you all morning.
12. Officers and enlisted men will eat the same thing at the front.
13. Will you please ask Pfc Chang to come in?
14. You ought to do better than that. You are not a recruit anymore.
15. Pvt Chow and Pvt Mark are two of the best soldiers in this outfit.
16. Would you consider a corporal an NCO?

LESSON 7

WORD LIST

1.	î-k’ap sheûng-tseùng	general (second grade)
2.	kaai-k’ap	rank
3.	kwan-sẑ	noncommissioned officer
4.	lîn-̀k’ap pô-tuî*	company level unit
5.	tâk-k’ap sheûng-tseùng	general (special grade)
6.	tseùng-koon	general officer
7.	waì-koon	company officer
8.	yat-k’ap sheûng-tseùng	general (first grade)

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

1251

賤 tsîn: low; mean; ignoble.

賤相 tsîn seùng: low type of countenance; ignoble appearance

貧賤 p·ān-tsîn: poor and mean.

376

階 kaai: step; a rank stairs, a class

階級 kaai-k'ap: step; an official grade class

418

級 k'ap: steps(stairs etc.); grades of rank.

階級 kaai-k'ap: rank

初級 ch'oh k'ap: elementary.

石級 shêk-k'ap: stone steps.

賤 階 級

賤 階 級

贱 階 级

1085

貪 t'aam: covetous; greedy.

貪心 t'aam-sam: covetous

貪錢 t'aam ts'în: avaricious.

貪利 t'aam leî: greedy for gain.

1428

混 wân: confused; mixed; disorderly; to confound; to mix.

混亂 wân-luên: in disorder; in confusion.

混合 wân-hôp: mixture.

貪 混

貪 混

贪 混

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

1064

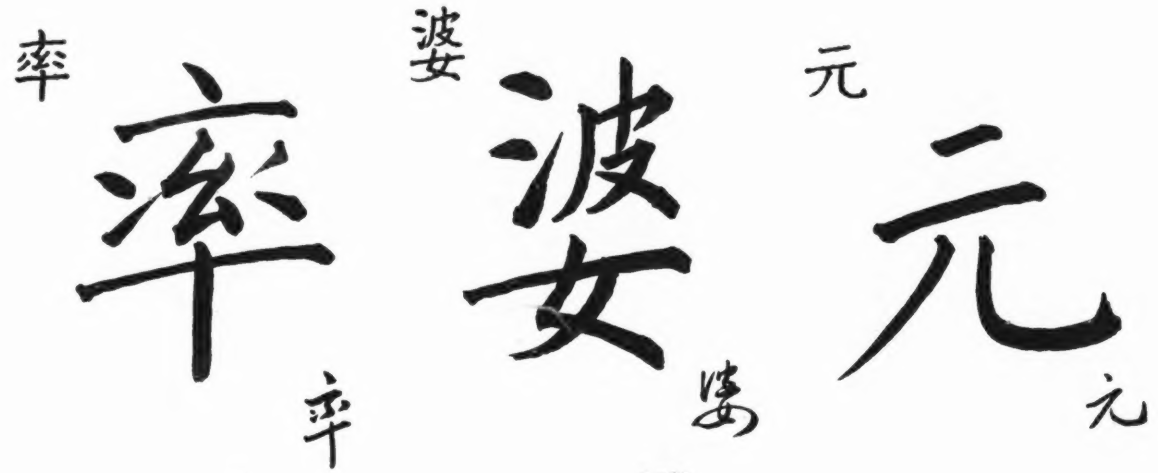
率	sut, lut:to lead; to command; in general; all.
率領	sut-lǐng: to lead.
率直	sut-chîk: without mincing matters.
統率	túng-sut: to lead.
速率	ts'uk-lût: rate of speed; velocity

889

婆	p'ōh: old woman; mother; dame.
老婆	lŏ-p'ōh: wife.
公婆	kung p'ōh: husband and wife.

1387

元	uēn: first; original; dollar.
紀元前	keí-uēn ts'īn: before Christ; B.C.
元首	uēn-shaú: the head; leader; ruler.
元帥	uēn-shuì: commander-in-chief; generalissimo.
一元	yat uēn: one dollar

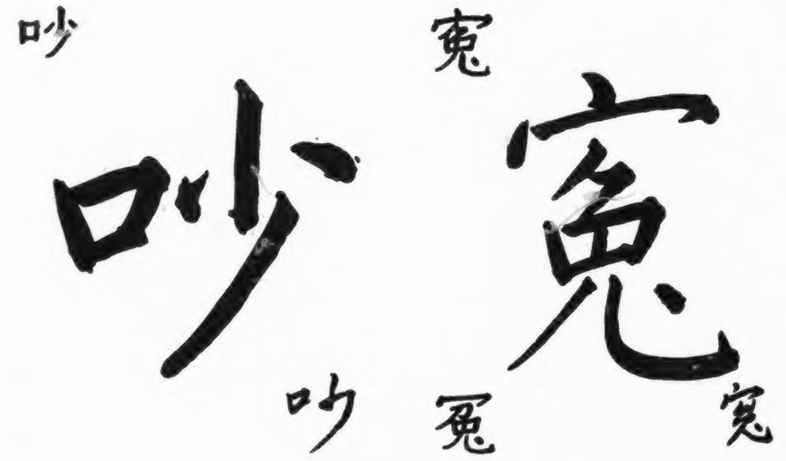


4

吵	ch'aaú: clamor, uproar
吵鬧	ch'aaú-naaû: to brawl
吵耳	ch'aaú-ĭ: annoying, noise

1381

寃	uen: to oppress; to wrong; act of injustice.
寃枉	uen-wóng: a wrong; injustice.
寃仇	uen ch'aū: a grudge



LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

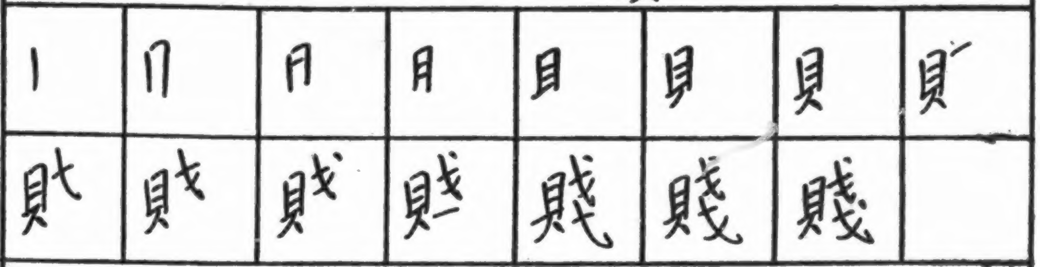
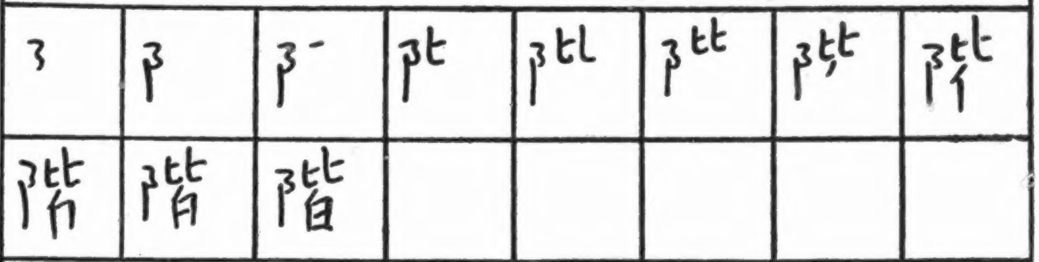
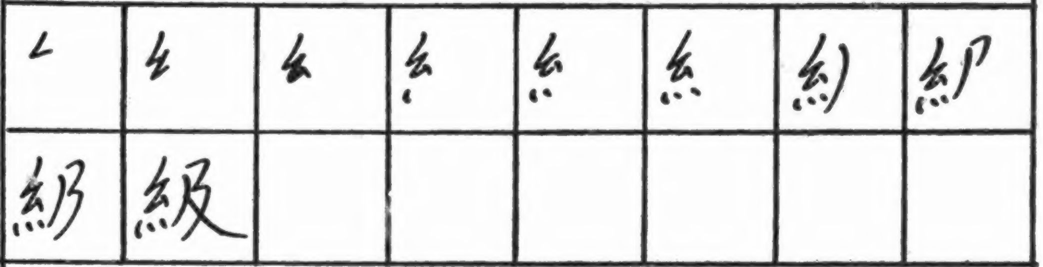
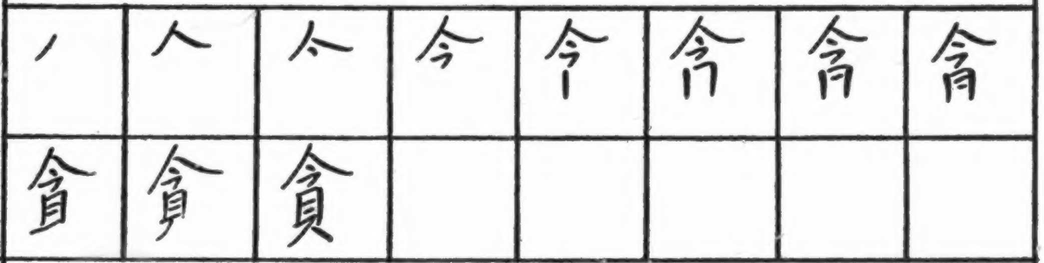
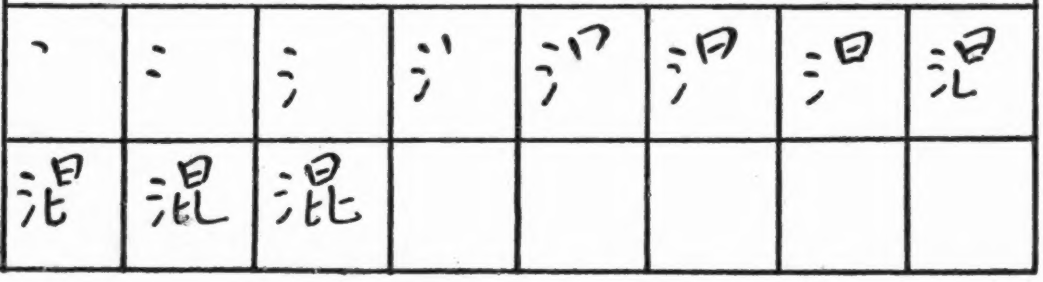
陸軍階級之中，有軍官，士兵兩大類。士兵階級又分為兵與士兩級。兵有二等兵，一等兵，上等兵三級。士有下士，中士，上士三級。

軍官階級有wai-官，校官同將官三類。wai官分為准wai，少wai，中wai，上wai，四級。校官分為少校，中校，上校三級。將官分為少將，中將，二級上將，一級上將，特級上將五級。

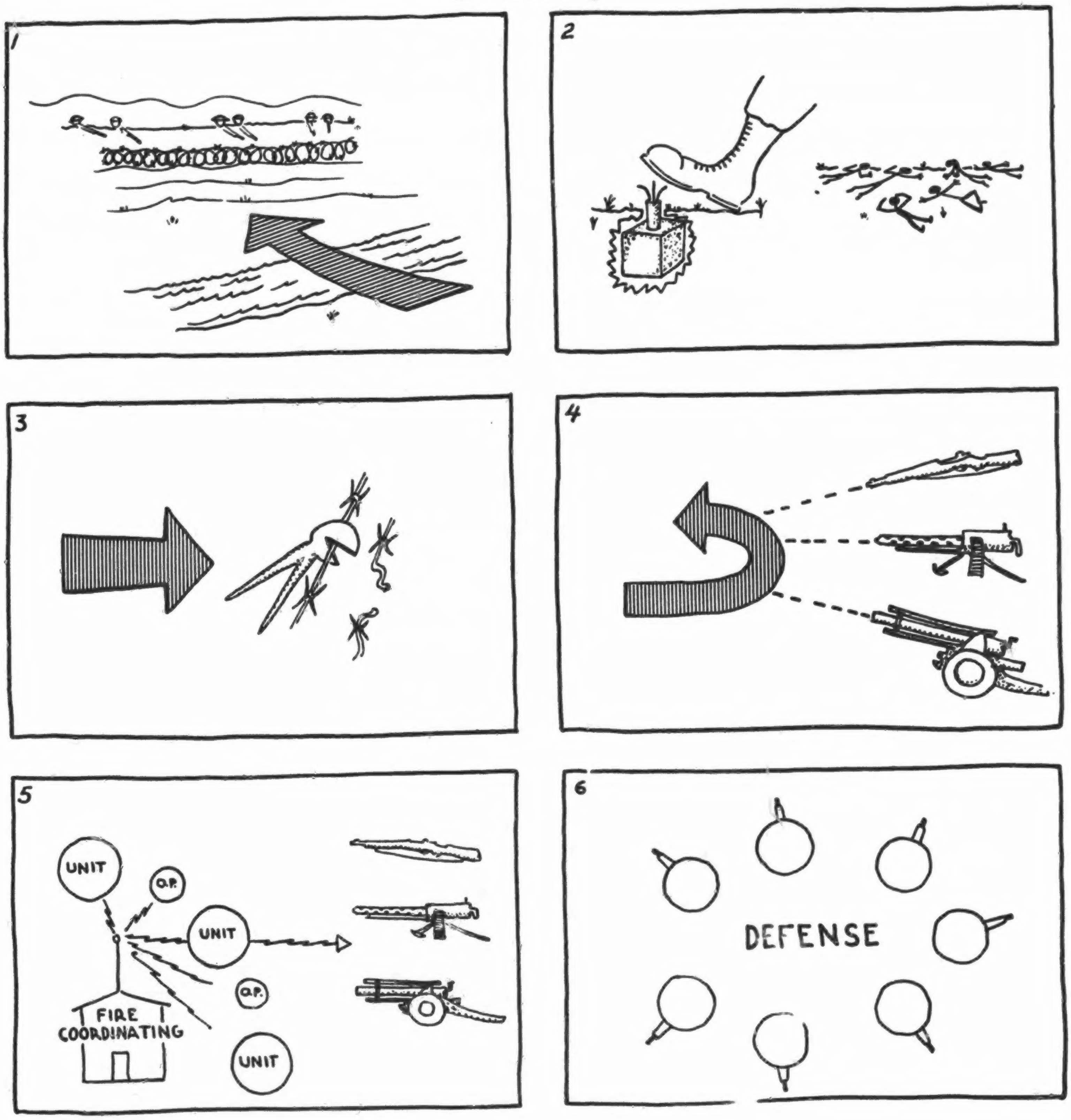
一個班係由一個軍士指揮，一個排係由一個少wai或中wai指揮。一個連級部隊係由上尉指揮，一個營級部隊係由少校或中校指揮，一個團級部隊係由上校指揮。師以上之部隊則由一將官統率。

LESSON 7

WRITING MATERIAL

賤	**Character Number** 1251 **Radical Number** 154 **Stroke Number** 15 貝 
階	**Character Number** 376 **Radical Number** 170 **Stroke Number** 11 阝，阜 
級	**Character Number** 418 **Radical Number** 120 **Stroke Number** 10 糹，糸 
貪	**Character Number** 1085 **Radical Number** 154 **Stroke Number** 11 貝 
混	**Character Number** 1428 **Radical Number** 85 **Stroke Number** 11 氵，水 

LESSON 8


1
2
3
4
5
UNIT
O.P.
UNIT
O.P.
FIRE COORDINATING
UNIT
6
DEFENSE

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: P'ô-t'ung kè chìn-shût fan-hoi keì-toh chúng à?

Taàp: P'ô-t'ung kè chìn-shût fan-hoi kung-kik t'ūng fōng-uê leũng chúng.

M: Ī-ka tîk-yān kaì-waâk-kán mi-yĕ à?

T: Ī-ka tîk-yān kaì-waâk-kán kung-kik. K'uĭ-teî seúng yaū chìng-mîn kung-kik, p'aaì yat-kòh ka-k'eūng p'aaì kung-kik ngŏh kwan kè chân-teî.

M: Tîk-yān kung-kik kè shī-haû, ngŏh-teî tìm-yeûng* fōng-uê ngŏh-teî kè chân-teî à?

T: Tîk-yān kung-kik kè shī-haû, ngŏh-teî yûng teî-luì t'ūng t'ìt-sz-mŏng táng-táng kè fōng-uê kung-sẑ fōng-uê ngŏh-teî kè chân-teî.

M: Ts'ìn-maăn ngŏh-teî maaì kè shaàt-sheung teî-luì lîng tîk-yān sheung-mōng hó ch'ŭng chi-haû, tîk-yān tìm-yeûng* à?

T: Ts'ìn-maăn ngŏh-teî maaì kè shaàt-sheung teî-luì lîng tîk-yān sheung-mōng hó ch'ŭng, tîk-yān kaì-tsûk kung-kik, ì-ch'é tsìn t'uĕn ngŏh-teî kè t'ìt-sz-mŏng.

M: Tîk-yān kaì-tsûk kung-kik t'ūng tsìn t'uĕn ngŏh-teî kè t'ìt-sz-mŏng, ngŏh-teî tìm-yeûng* fōng-uê ngŏh-teî kè chân-teî à?

T: Ngŏh-teî yûng kei-kwaan ts'eung, pô-ts'eung, t'ūng p'aaù-ping kè luēn-hôp fóh-lìk kik-t'uì tîk-yān. Tîk-yān sheung-mōng hó ch'ŭng. K'uĭ-teî kè kung-kik shat-paaî-chōh.

M: Tîk-yān kè kung-kik shat-paaî chi-haû, ngŏh kwan tìm-yeûng* à?

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Tîk-yān kè kung-kik shat-paaî chi-haû, ngŏh kwan ch'ìt-lâp kòk pô-tuî* kè t'úng-yat ts'ìn-shaaù.

M: T'uēn kè fóh-lîk-hîp-t iû-shóh foô-chaàk mi-yĕ à?

T: T'uēn kè fóh-lîk-hîp-t iû-shôh foô-chaàk chî-shî shê-kik kaì-waâk.

M: Ni kòh shê-kik kaì-waâk haî tîm-yeûng* kà?

T: Ni kòh shê-kik kaì-waâk chî-shî kòk chúng ping-heì shê-kik kè shì-kaan t'ūng teî-tîm.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè yìng yaû ch'ìt-lâp yat kòh tîm-yeûng* kè chân-teî à?

T: Ngôh-teî kè yìng yaû ch'ìt-lâp yat kòh ts'uēn-mîn fōng-uê kè chân-teî.

LESSON 8

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Into how many kinds can the common tactics be divided?

Answer: The common tactics can be divided into two kinds, attack and defense.

Q: What is the enemy planning now?

A: The enemy is planning to attack. They want to attack from the frontal position. They are sending a reinforced platoon to attack our position.

Q: When the enemy attacks, how do we defend our position?

A: When the enemy attacks, we use fortifications like mines, wire entanglements, etc., to defend our position.

Q: What did the enemy do after they suffered heavy casualties in the anti-personnel mine field we laid the night before last?

A: The anti-personnel mines we laid the night before last caused the enemy heavy casualties. The enemy continued the attack, and cut off our wire entanglements.

Q: The enemy continued the attack and cut off our wire entanglements. How did we defend our position?

A: Our combined fire power of machine guns, rifles, and artillery beat off the enemy. The enemy suffered heavy casualties. Their attack failed.

Q: After the enemy's attack failed, what did our troops do?

A: After the enemy's attack failed, we set up a general out-post between the different units.

LESSON 8

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: For what is the regimental fire coordinating center responsible?

A: The regimental fire coordinating center is responsible for giving instructions for the fire plan.

Q: What is this fire plan?

A: This fire plan shows the time and place for the firing of various weapons.

Q: What other position did our battalion establish?

A: Our battalion also established an all-round defense position.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I am sorry sir, I don't think I have enough men to set up a good defense.
2. May I congratulate you for the good work you have done.
3. Fortunately we have no casualties,but it was a dangerous task.
4. The enemy failed to set up a defensive position last night.
5. In case of frontal attack, we have to use the reserves.
6. The fire plan is excellent.
7. Did you order your men to lay antipersonnel mines along the roads?
8. This is the place for river-crossing, remember it.
9. Our engineers sheared the wire entanglements along the river bank.
10. I received instructions from the headquarters yesterday.
11. The combined fire power of the two companies repulsed the enemy's frontal attack.
12. We have anti-personnel mines at the front and a reinforced platoon at the rear.
13. The fire plan failed and as a last resort, we had to retreat.
14. Who is the officer in charge of the fire coordinating center?
15. Your unit will set up wire entanglements along the beach and at every intersection on these streets.
16. You have to give them daily instructions according to the schedule.

LESSON 8

WORD LIST

1.	chân-teî	position
2.	chì-shî	to give instruction, show; instruction
3.	chìng-mîn kung-kik	frontal attack
4.	ch'ìt-lâp	to set up
5.	fóh-lîk hìp-tiû-shóh	fire coordinating center
6.	ka-k'eūng p'aaì	reinforced platoon
7.	kik-t'uì	to repulse, beat off
8.	luēn-hôp fóh-lîk	combined fire power
9.	maaì	to lay (mine)
10.	shaàt-sheung teî-luì	antipersonnel mine
11.	shat-paaî	to fail; failure
12.	shê-kik kaì-waâk	fire plan
13.	sheung-mōng	casualty (wounded and dead)
14.	teî-tìm	place
15.	t'ìt-sz-mŏng	wire entanglements
16.	tô hōh	to cross river; river crossing
17.	tsìn t'uĕn	to shear, cut
18.	ts'uēn-mîn fōng-uê	all-round defense
19.	t'úng-yat ts'ìn-shaaù	general outpost
20.	p'ó-t'ung chìn-chaang	conventional war
21.	hât-haaî	nuclear weapon

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

625

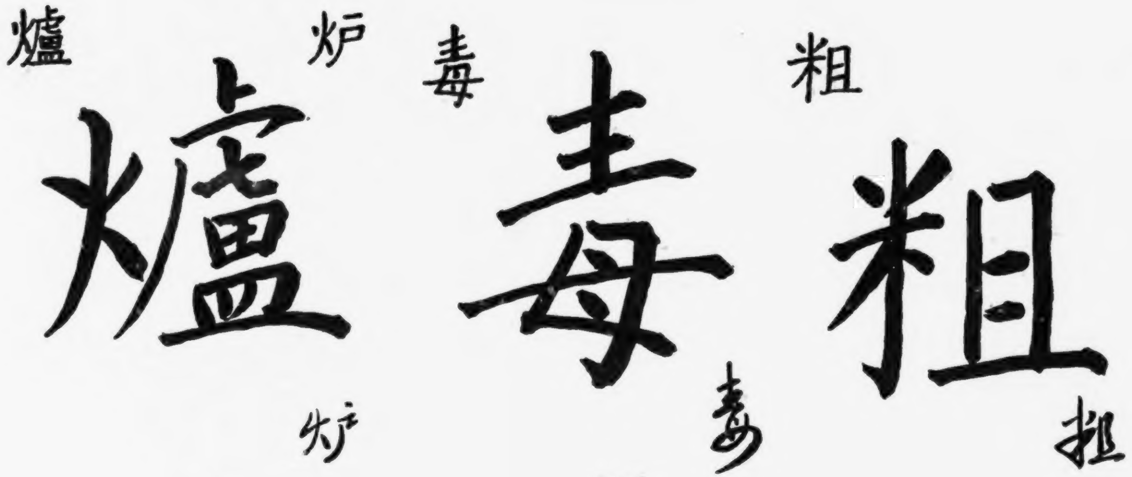
爐	lō: stove; fireplace; furnace; grate.
火爐	fóh-lô: a stove.
風爐	fung-lô: small earthern stove.
香爐	neung-lô: incense burner.

1354

毒	tûk: poison; virus; to hate.
毒藥	tûk yeûk: poison.
中毒	chùng tûk: to take poison by accident; poisoned.
服毒	fûk tûk: to take poison.
毒打	tûk tá: a cruel beating.

1274

粗	ts'o: coarse; rough; rude; careless.
粗口	ts'o-haú: obscene language.
粗俗	ts'o-tsûk: vulgar; uncouth.

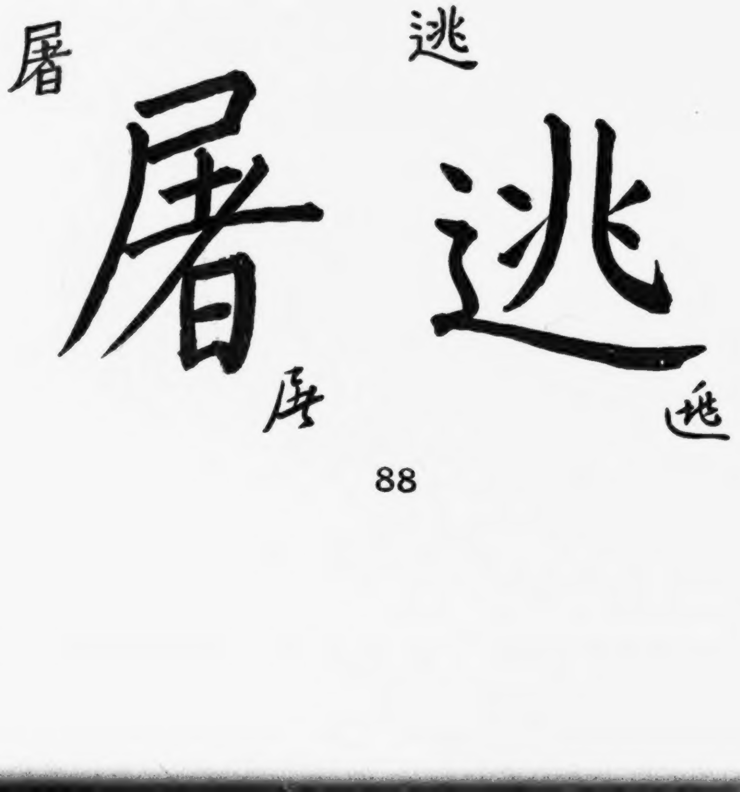


1179

屠	t'ō: a butcher; to slaughter.
屠場	t'ō-ch'eūng: slaughter house; abatoir.
屠殺	t'ō-shaat: slaughter; to slaughter.

1174

逃	t'ō: to flee; to escape; to abscond
逃走	t'ō-tsaú: to flee.
逃犯	t'ō faân*: escaped criminal.
逃兵	t'ō ping: deserter.



LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

950

什 shâp: sundry miscellaneous.

什物 shâp-mât: sundries, miscellaneous articles.

800

吧 pa: angry quarreling.

吧唥 pa-paì: clamor.

709

剝 mok: to flay; to peel; to lay bare.

剝皮 mok p'eī: to skin; to reel; to fleece.

剝削 mok-seùk: to oppress; to squeeze the people.

什 吧 剝

什 吧 剝

什 吧 剝 剝

923

削 seùk: to cut; to cut off; to scrape

刮削 kwaàt-seùk: to scrape.

削平 seùk p'ēng: to raze to the ground.

611

臉 lǐm: face; reputation.

削 臉

削 臉

削 脸

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

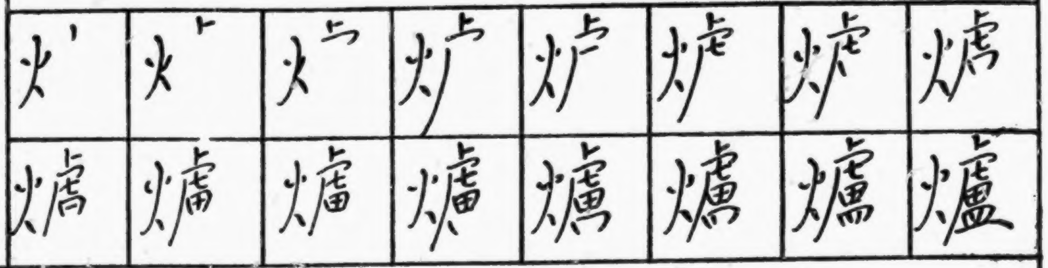
敵人想作正面攻擊,派一個加强排渡河攻擊我軍陣地.此屬普通戰爭性質,雙方不用毒氣,化學兵器或 hât 械.

我方所埋之殺傷地雷令敵人傷亡不少但係敵人之力量尚未削弱,仍繼續攻擊.且剪斷我方之鐵絲 mõng ,但我軍之機關槍,步槍,同砲兵,聯合集中火力擊退敵人,敵人被屠殺者極衆,殘餘紛紛逃生.

敵人攻擊失敗之後我軍設立各部隊之統一前 shaaû.團部之火力協調所指示射擊計劃.此計劃即是指示各種兵器之射擊時間與地點.我方營部,又設立一個全面防禦陣地.

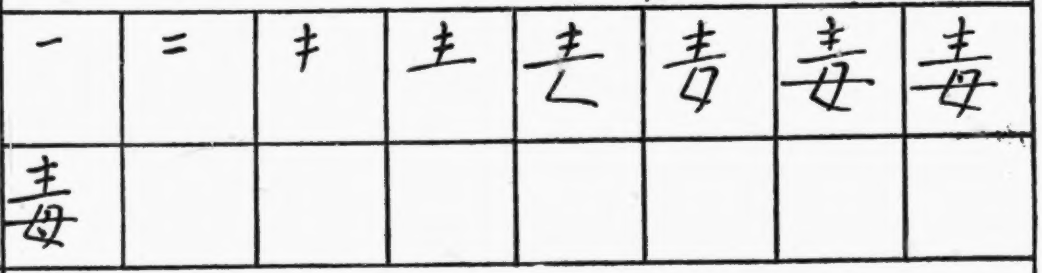
爐

Character Number 625 **Radical Number** 86
Stroke Number 20



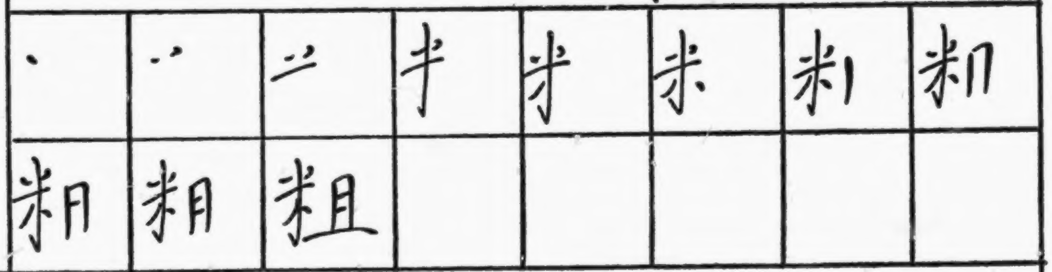
毒

Character Number 1354 **Radical Number** 80
Stroke Number 9
毋



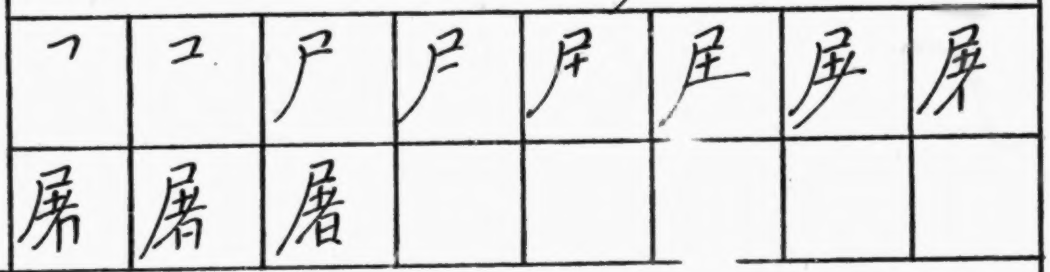
粗

Character Number 1274 **Radical Number** 119
Stroke Number 11
米



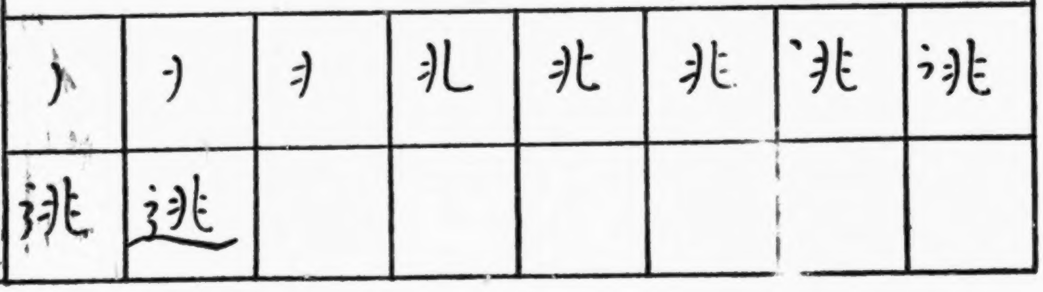
屠

Character Number 1179 **Radical Number** 44
Stroke Number 11
尸

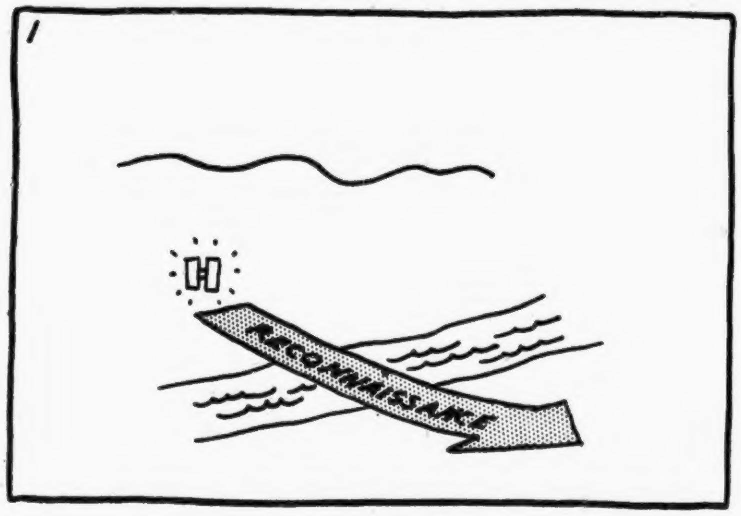


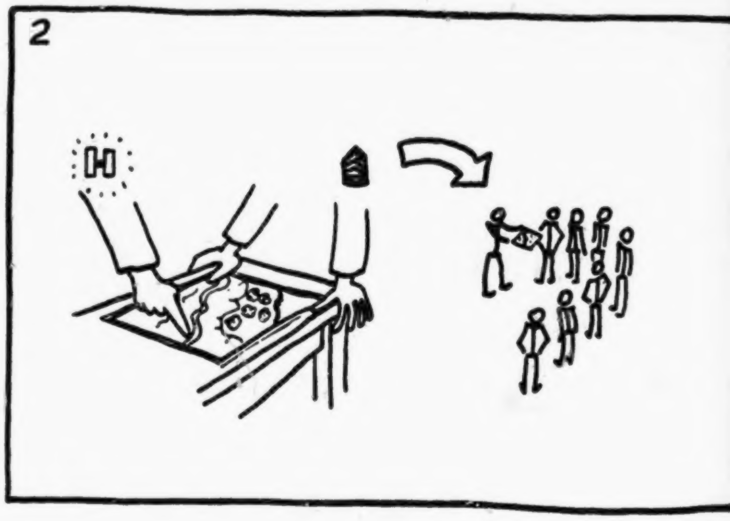
逃

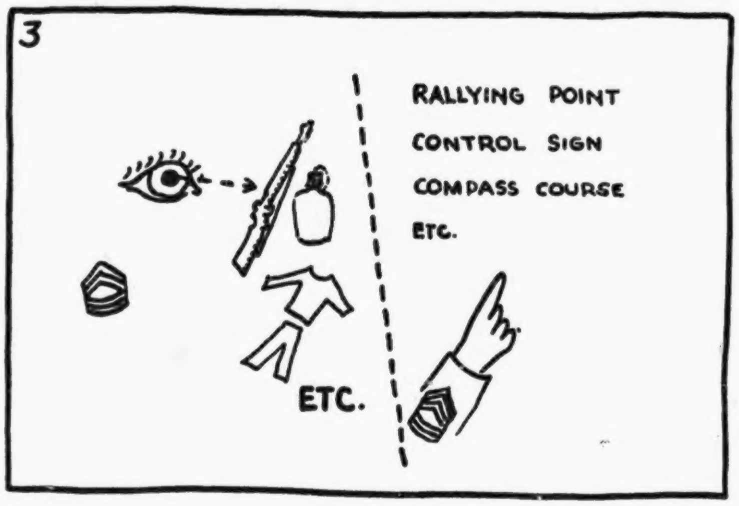
Character Number 1174 **Radical Number** 162
Stroke Number 10
辶，辵

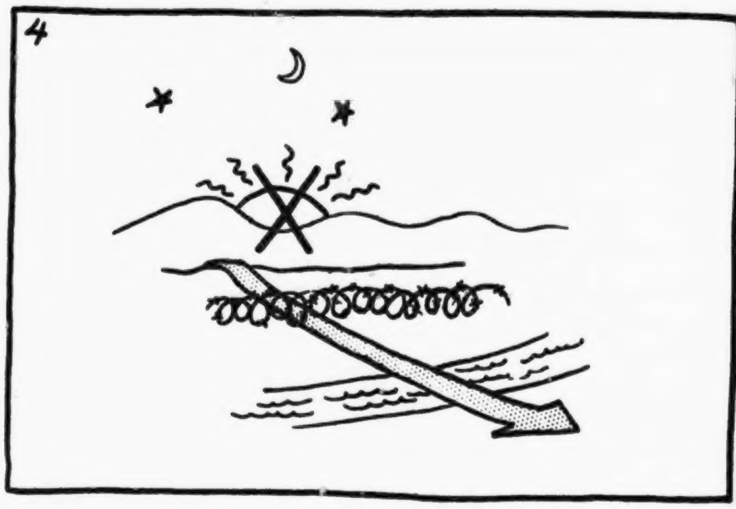


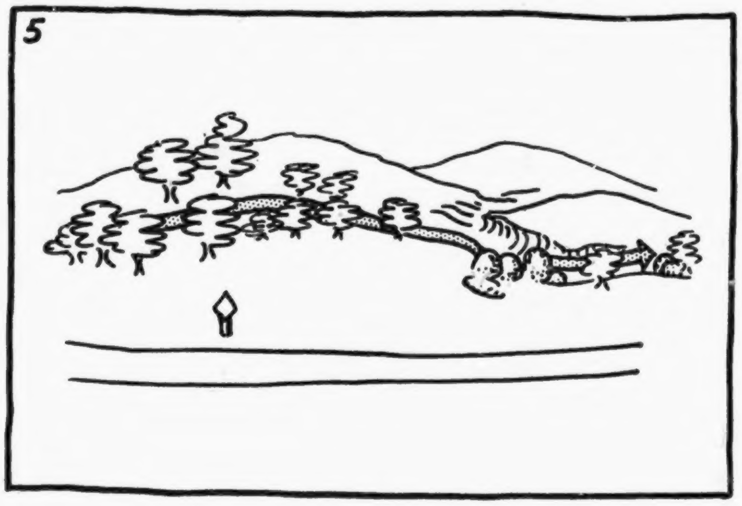
LESSON 9

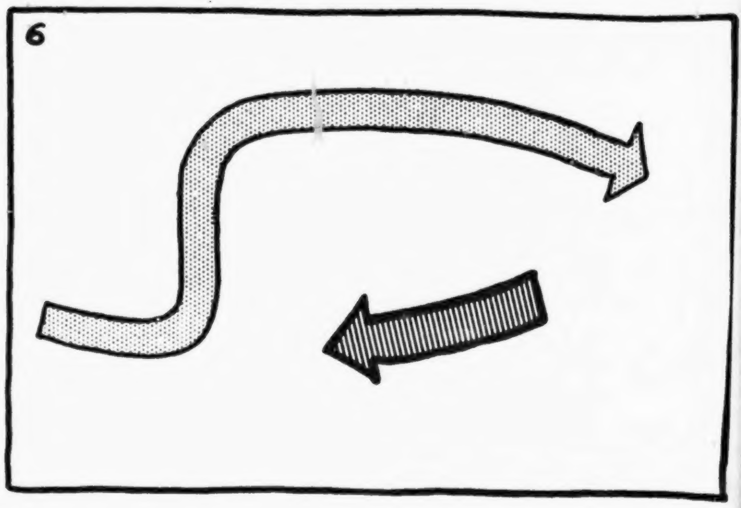





3
ETC.
RALLYING POINT
CONTROL SIGN
COMPASS COURSE
ETC.







LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - .DIALOGUE

Mân: Ch'ik-haû tuî* kè chuê-iù yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ?

Taàp: Ch'ik-haû tuî* kè chuê-iù yâm-mô haî saú-shòk tîk kwan kè chân-teî, shau-tsaâp ts'ìng-pò iù-tîm, ching-ch'aàt tîk kwan kè tiû-tûng, wân-shue t'ūng pô-k'ap tâng-tâng.

M: Ī-ka ngŏh kwan kè yat-kòh lìn-cheúng p'aaì-ch'ut yat tuî ch'ik-haû huì pin shuè, k'uĭ-teî taam-yâm pin chúng yâm-mô à?

T: Ngŏh kwan kè yat-kòh lìn-cheúng p'aaì-ch'ut yat tuî ch'ik-haû tô hŏh saú-shòk tîk kwan chân-teî, shau-tsaâp ts'ìng-pò iù-tîm.

M: Lìn-cheúng haî chî-fai-shóh tuì ni tuî ch'ik-haû hâ mi-yĕ mîng-lîng à?

T: Lìn-cheúng haî chî-fai-shóh tuì ni tuî ch'ik-haû hâ kaán-iù mîng-lîng, lìn-cheúng yaû yûng teî-t'ō kè tsôh-piu chî-shî k'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* huì k'uĭ-teî kè mûk-tik-teî.

M: Ch'ik-haû-tuî-cheúng tak-tò* mîng-lîng chi-haû, k'uĭ tsaû tîm-yeûng* à?

T: Ch'ik-haû-tuî-cheúng tak-tô* mîng-lîng chi-haû, k'uĭ tuì pô-hâ hâ kaán-iù mîng-lîng, kîm-ch'ā pô-hâ kè i-fûk t'ūng chong-kuî, k'uĭ yaû chî-shî ch'ik-haû tuî* kè tsaâp-hôp teî-tîm, lìn-lòk foō-hô, t'ūng mûk-tik-teî kè ts'ž-cham lô-sìn tâng tâng.

M: Ch'ik-haû tuî* keì shì ch'ut-faàt à?

T: Ch'ik-haû tuî* haî taî-î yât t'in-kwong chi-ts'ìn ch'ut-faàt, yan-waî haî t'in-hak kè shì-haû ch'ut-faàt, m̄-yūng-î peî tîk-yān t'aì-kìn.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: K'uĭ-teî ch'ut-faàt kè shì-haû, k'uĭ-teî t'ung-kwòh chân-teî ts'ìn-pîn kè mi-yĕ à?

T: K'uĭ-teî t'ung-kwòh chân-teî ts'ìn-pîn kè cheùng-ngoî-mât.

M: K'uĭ-teî leî-yûng mi-yĕ kè che-paì waî-chì ts'ìn-tsùn à?

T: K'uĭ-teî leî-yûng che-paì waî-chì ts'ìn-tsùn, hó-ts'ž shuê-mûk, nap-teî, táng-táng, k'uĭ-teì peî-mĭn t'ūng tîk-yān tsìp-chuk.

LESSON 9

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: What is the main mission of the patrol?

Answer: The main mission of the patrol is to reconnoiter the enemy positions, to collect the essential elements of information, to reconnoiter the enemy's movements, transportation, and supplies.

Q: To where is the patrol being sent now by one of our company commanders? What mission has the patrol undertaken?

A: One of our company commanders sent a patrol to cross the river to reconnoiter the enemy positions and to collect the essential elements of information.

Q: What order did the company commander give to this patrol at the command post?

A: At the command post the company commander briefed the patrol. The company commander also used map coordinates to point out to them how to reach their destination.

Q: After the patrol leader received the order, what did he do?

A: After the patrol leader received the order, he briefed his subordinates, inspected his subordinates' clothing and equipment. He also pointed out the patrol's rallying point, control sign, and the compass course to the destination, etc.

Q: When did the patrol start?

A: The patrol started before dawn on the following day. By starting off in the dark, it was not easy to be seen by the enemy.

LESSON 9

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: When they started through what did they pass in front of the postion?

A: They passed through the obstacles in front of the position.

Q: What defiladed positions did they utilize to advance?

A: They utilized those defiladed positions like trees, draws, etc. , to advance. They avoided gaining contact with the enemy.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. If you have a compass and a map, you will be able to find the location.
2. These map coordinates are applicable to our special maps.
3. Your superior tried to contact you over the phone last night.
4. Elements of the 1st Regiment of the 2nd Armored Division were ordered by the commanding officer to reinforce the British units.
5. Woods and draws are excellent concealments for troop movements.
6. Our unit is specialized in reconnaissance activities.
7. He is collecting essential elements of information.
8. The commander orders his subordinates to report all important information to him.
9. They tried to avoid the enemy's patrol by detouring from the main route.
10. The plane will take off exactly at 0600 tomorrow.
11. Be sure to check the equipment of your subordinates before your unit takes off.
12. Our reconnaissance patrols passed through the barriers set up by the enemy.
13. Do you thoroughly understand the order given by Capt Wŏng?
14. When you go out on patrol you should utilize control signs to communicate and keep silent.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. Her mission is to get information from our men.

16. Did your boys check all possible defiladed positions?

LESSON 9

WORD LIST

1.	tsaâp-hôp teì-tìm	rallying point
2.	che-paì waî-chì	defiladed position, concealment
3.	cheùng-ngoî-mât	barrier, obstacle
4.	ch'ik-haû	patrol
5.	chong-kuî	equipment
6.	ch'ut-faàt	to start off
7.	hâ kaán-iù mîng-lîng	to give abstract order
8.	leî-yûng	to utilize
9.	lĭn-lòk foō-hô*	control sign
10.	nap-teî	draw (terrain)
11.	peî-mĭn	to avoid
12.	pô-hâ	subordinate
13.	shau-tsaâp ts'ìng-pò iù-tîm	to collect essential elements of information (EEI)
14.	saú-shòk chìn-taù	reconnaissance action
15.	shuê-mûk	trees
16.	tiû-tûng	movement
17.	tsìp-chuk	to contact
18.	tsôh-piu	coordinates
19.	ts'z̀-cham lô-sìn	compass course

LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

995

承 shīng: to bear; to hold; to receive; to undertake; to acknowledge; to promise.

承繼 shīng-kaì: to adopt an heir to continue.

承認 shīng-yîng: to acknowledge; to confess; to grant recognition.

707

摸 móh: to feel with the hands; to catch.

摸魚 móu uē:* to catch fish with hands.

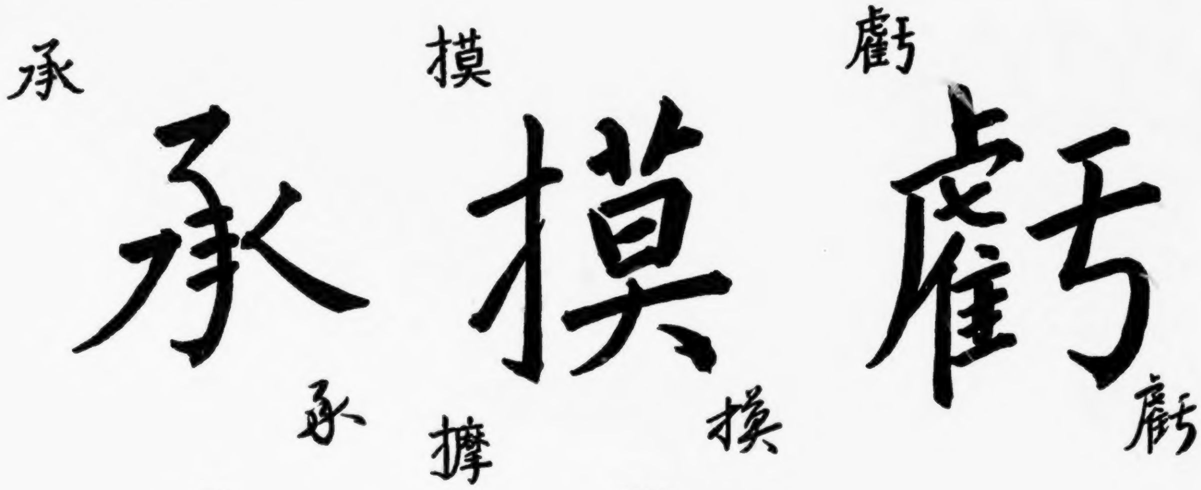
556

虧 kw'ai: deficiency; loss.

虧欠 kw'ai hìm: in debt; arrears.

虧空 kw'ai-hung: to embezzle; deficit.

虧本 kw'ai poón: to lose in capital invested.



76

置 chì: to buy; to arrange; to put aside.

安置 on-chì: to arrange to place.

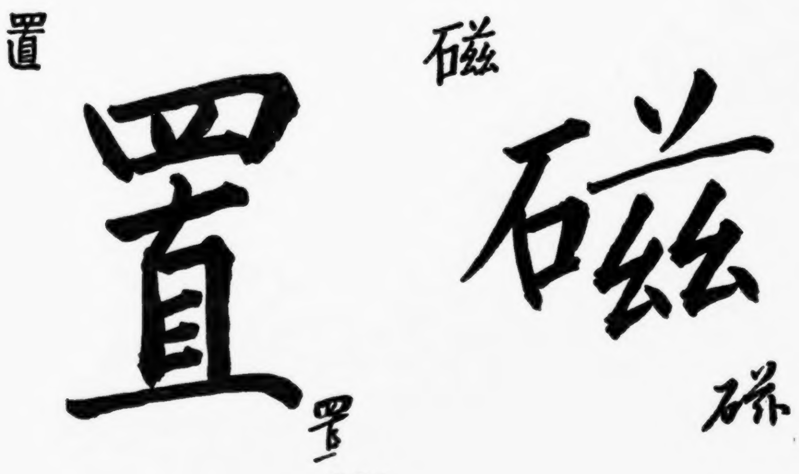
置業 chì îp: to buy property

位置 waî-chì: position; situation.

1338

磁 ts'z̄: magnetic; iron ore.

磁石 ts'z̄-shêk: lodestone.



LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

880

暴 pô: violent; cruel; malicious.

暴動 pô-tûng: riot; disturbance.

暴露 pô-lô: exposed; uncovered.

894

輩 pooì: a class; sort; generation

尊輩 tsuen-pooì: your senior.

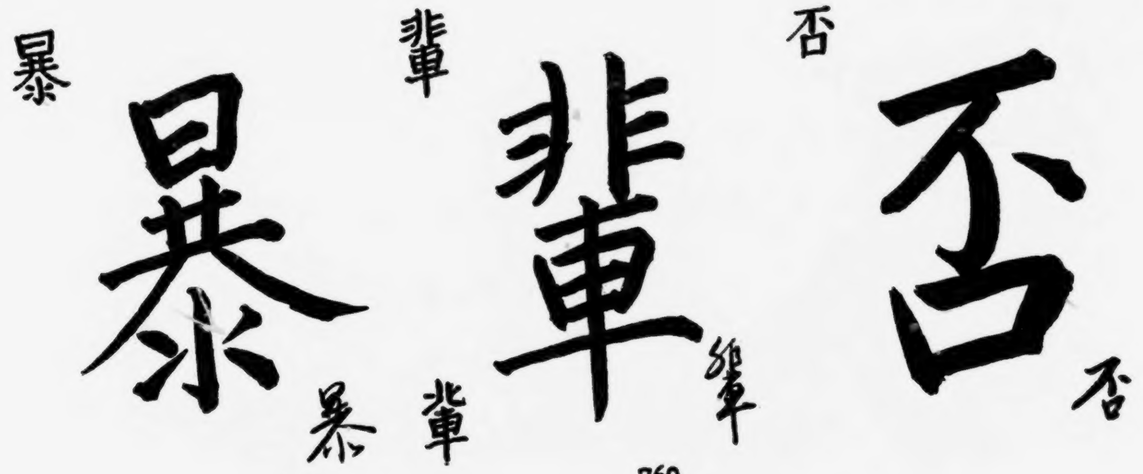
同輩 t'ũng-pooì: comrade; the same generation.

183

否 faú: negative; no

是否 haî faú: is it so or not; yes or no

否認 faú-yîng: deny



1044

索 sòk: to exact; to search; a cord; knot.

索詐 sòk-chà: to extort; to blackmail.

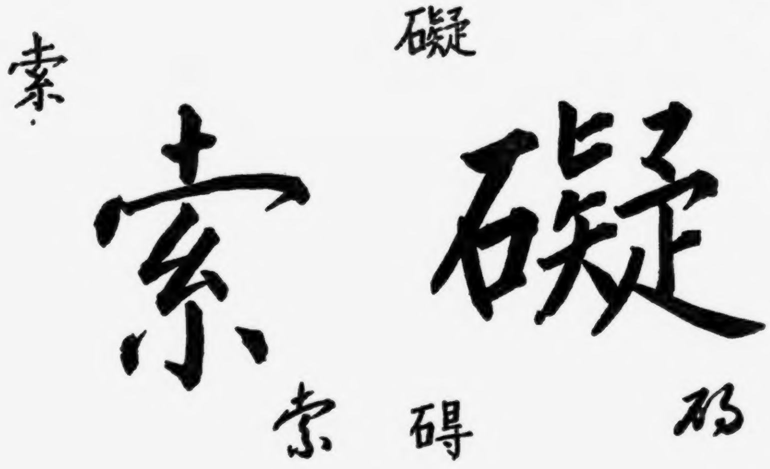
繩索 shīng sòk: rope; cord.

760

礙 ngoî: to hinder: to oppose; to obstruct; to interfere.

妨礙 fōng-ngoî: impediment; hindrance.

障礙 cheùng-ngoî: obstruction; hindrance.



LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

我軍某一連長派出一隊 ch'ik-候渡河saŭ索敵軍陣地，找尋情報要點。連長先在指揮所對 ch'ik-候隊長下簡要命令，用地圖座標指示佢如何可以抵達目的地。

ch'ik-候隊長承命之後，轉對部下下簡要命令，并檢查部下之衣服同裝具。再將集合地點，連 lŏk foō- 號，目的地之磁針路線等等，一一指示清楚。

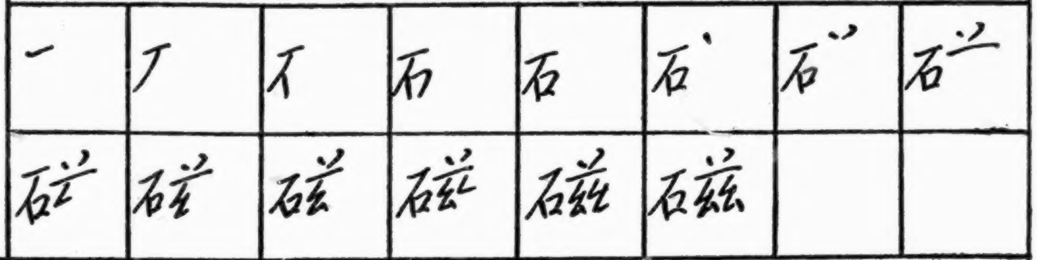
第二日破曉之前，ch'ik-候隊出發，先通過陣地前之cheŭng礙物然後利用che-paĭ位置，如樹木，nap 地等等，摸索前進。我部隊自始至終，避免與敵接chuk否則被敵人消滅，反為自己輸虧。

LESSON 9

WRITING MATERIAL

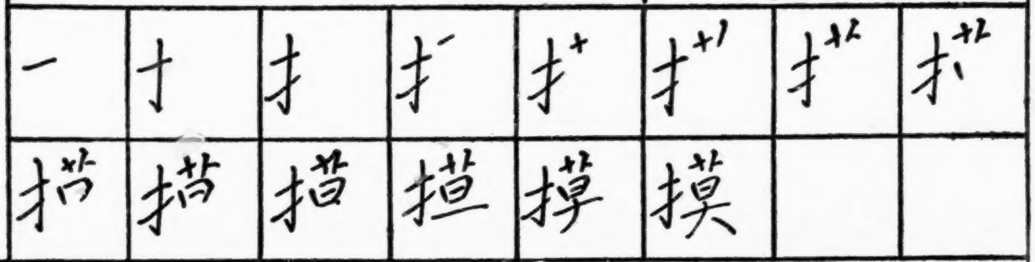
磁

Character Number 1338　Radical Number 112
Stroke Number 14　石



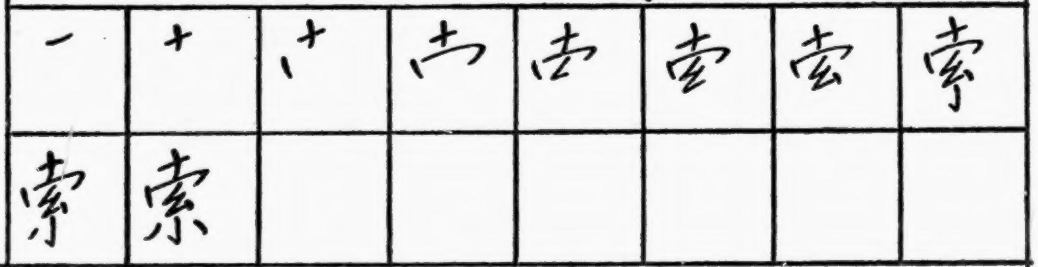
摸

Character Number 707　Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 14　扌 , 手



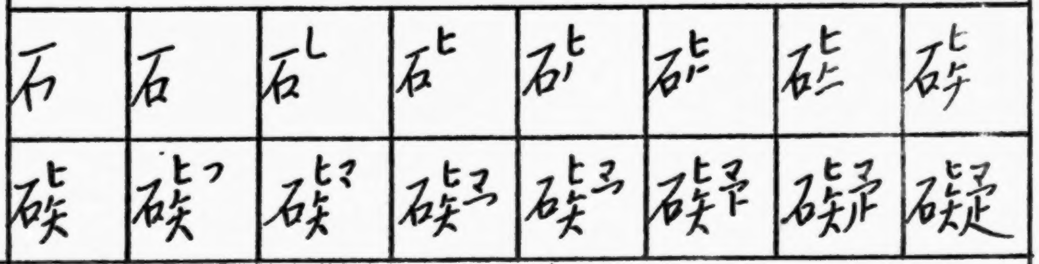
索

Character Number 1044　Radical Number 120
Stroke Number 10　糸



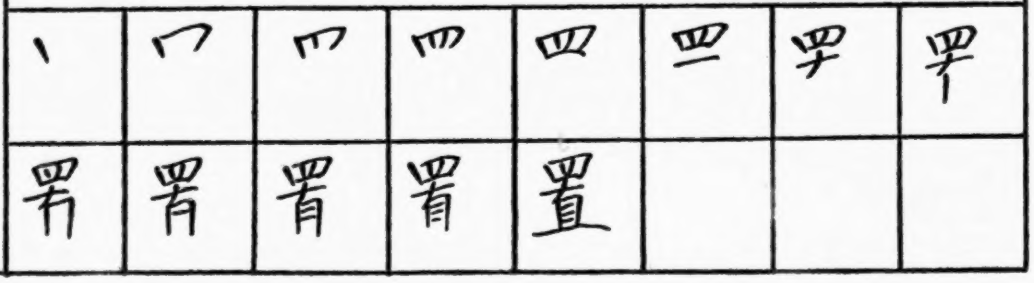
礙

Character Number 760　Radical Number 112
Stroke Number 19　石



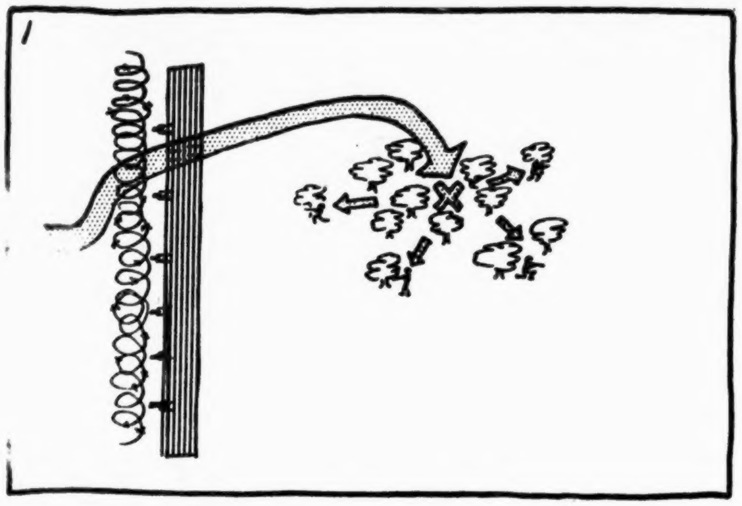
置

Character Number 76　Radical Number 122
Stroke Number 13　罒 , 网

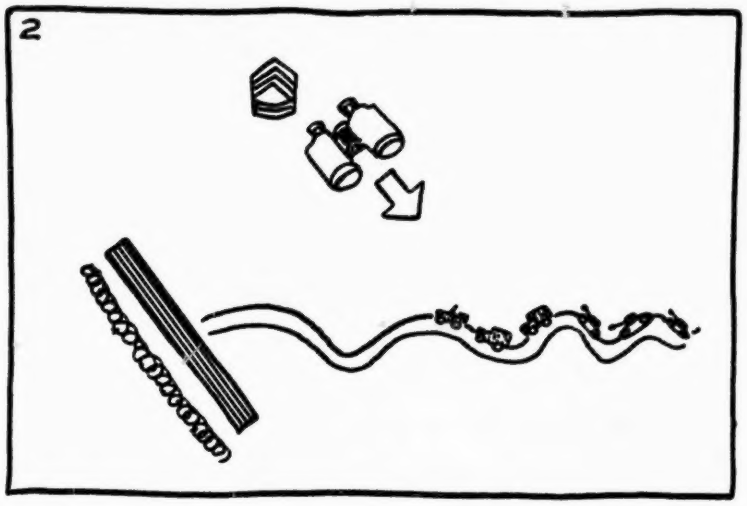


LESSON 10

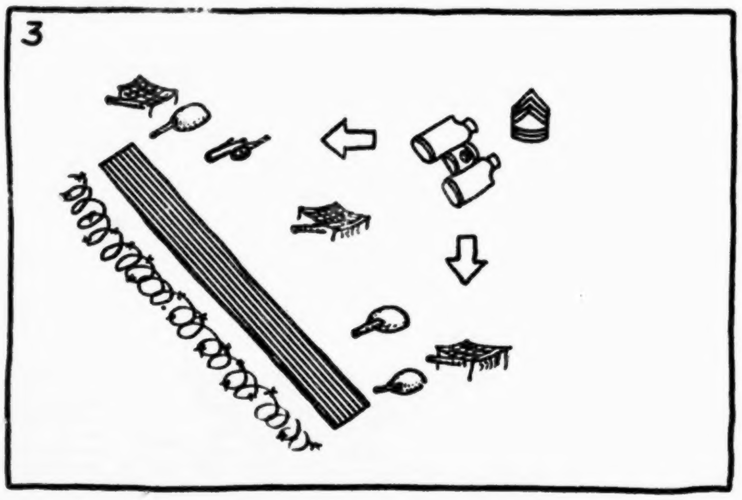
1



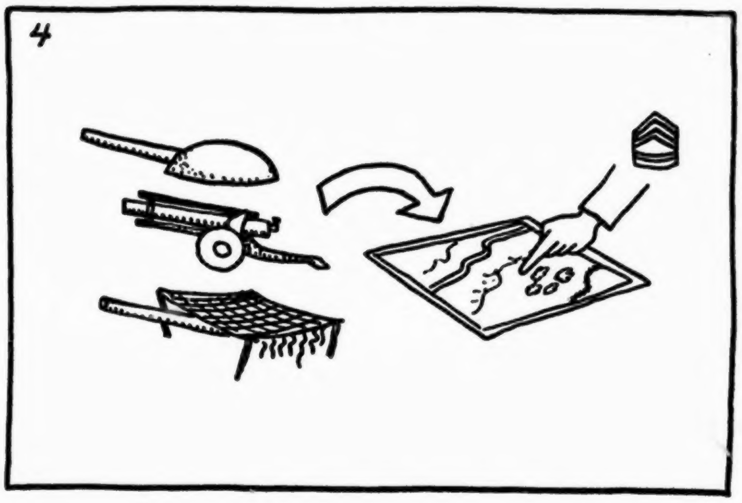
2



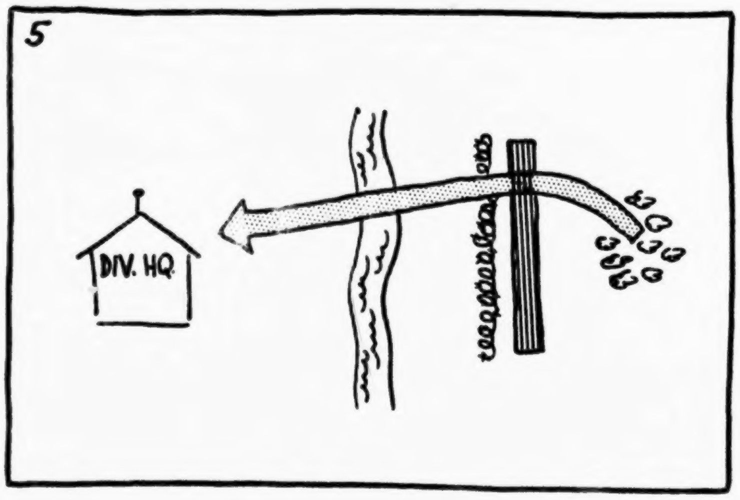
3



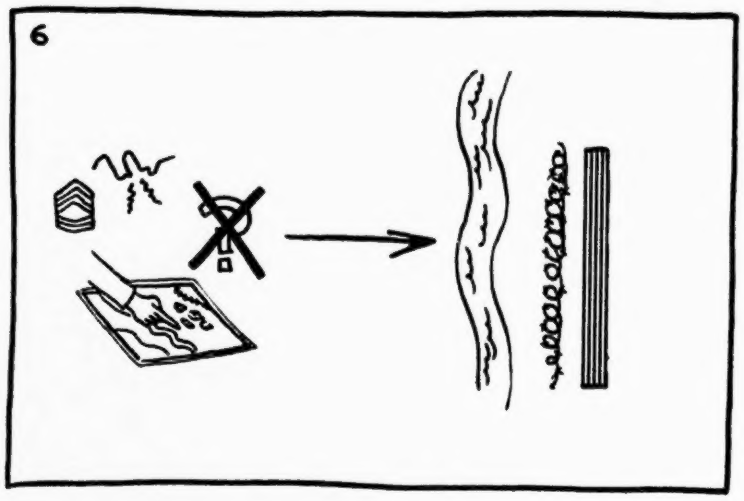
4



5



6



LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Taî-î yât t'in-kwong kè shī-haû, ngōh-teî kè ch'ik-haû tuî* tò-chôh pin shuè à ?

Taàp: Taî-î yât t'in-kwong kè shī-haû, ngōh-teî kè ch'ik-haû tuî* sam-yâp tîk sìn kè haû-pîn, tò-chôh yat-kòh yán-paì waî-chì shuè.

M: Kôh chân-shī k'uĭ-teî p'aal-ch'ut saû-ping tsò mi-yĕ à?

T: Kôh chân-shī k'uĭ-teî p'aal-ch'ut saû-ping kaam-shî tîk-yān tsìp-kân, t'ūng fōng-chî tîk-yān kè k'eì-tsaâp.

M: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheúng yûng mông-uĕn-kèng koon-ch'aàt mi-yĕ à?

T: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheúng yûng mông-uĕn-kèng koon-ch'aàt tîk-yān kè chân-teî t'ūng tîk-yān pô-tuî* kè wân-fûng.

M: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheúng t'aî-kìn ti mi-yĕ à?

T: K'uĭ t'aî-kìn yat-tuî hó ch'eūng kè oô-sûng-tuî*, yaŭ chìn-ch'e t'ūng kòk chúng ch'e heūng ts'în-sìn ts'în-tsûn.

M: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheúng yaû koon-ch'aàt-tô tîk-yān kè mi-yĕ à?

T: K'uĭ yaû koon-ch'aàt-tô tîk-yān kè fōng-uê kung-sẑ.

M: Tîk-yān kè fōng-sìn-shuè yaŭ ti mi-yĕ à?

T: Tîk-yān ke fōng-sìn-shuè yaŭ kòk chúng îm-t'aî t'ūng ngaî-chong kè ping-heì.

M: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheúng koon-ch'aàt-tô kôh ti yĕ chi-haû, k'uĭ tîm-teûng* keì-chuê k'uĭ-teî à?

T: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheúng tseung kôh ti kung-sẑ t'ūng ping-heì kè waî-chì piu-tîng haî teî-t'ō sheûng-pîn.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: K'uĭ-teî uēn-shīng yâm-mô chi-haû, k'uĭ-teî tsaû tîm à?

T: K'uĭ-teî uēn-shīng yâm-mô chi-haû, k'uĭ-teî tsaû hó siú-sam kóm faan huì.

M: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheúng tseung kóh ti ts'īng-pò heùng pin shuè pò-kò à?

T: Ch'ik-haû tuî-cheúng tseung kóh ti ts'īng-pò heùng sz sz-lîng-pô pò-kò.

M: Sz-pô tak-tŏ kóh ti ts'īng-pò chi-haû, k'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* leî-yûng kóh ti ts'īng-pò à?

T: Sz-pô kan-kuì kóh ti ts'īng-pò tsòk tîk-ts'īng-p'oòn-tuên.

LESSON 10

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: By day break the next day, how far had our partrol gotten?

Answer: At day break the next day, our patrol penetrated the rear of the enemy lines, and reached a defiladed position.

Q: At that time, why did they (our forces) send out scouts?

A: At that time, they sent out scouts to watch the enemy's approach, and to prevent a surprise attack from the enemy.

Q: What did the patrol leader observe with the binoculars?

A: The patrol leader, using the binoculars, observed the enemy positions and the movements of the enemy units.

Q: What has the patrol leader observed?

A: He has observed a long convoy. There were tanks and various kinds of vehicles heading for the front.

Q: What has the patrol leader also observed of the enemy?

A: He has also observed the enemy's fortifications.

Q: What were there at the enemy's defense lines?

A: There were various kinds of emplacements and camouflaged weapons at the enemy's defense lines.

Q: After the patrol leader observed all these things, how did he memorize them?

A: The patrol leader located those fortifications and weapons on the map.

Q: After they accomplished their mission, what did they do?

A: After they accomplished their mission, they cautiously returned.

LESSON 10

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: To where did the patrol leader report this information?

A: The patrol leader reported this information to the division headquarters.

Q: After the division headquarters received the intelligence report, how did they utilize it?

A: The division headquarters, according to this information, worked out an estimate of the enemy situation.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Where can we conceal our equipment in this area?
2. Take your position and be ready for any enemy surprise attack.
3. She accomplished her mission by giving up her life.
4. Make an estimate of the enemy situation and send it to me.
5. I believe that field is mined. Look out.
6. You should send out a few scouts before advancing the entire company.
7. Your report is good. It has all the essential information that we need.
8. It is quite difficult to camouflage a large convoy.
9. The use of binoculars is not necessary for such a short distance.
10. Use you field glass to observe anything within sight.
11. Be alert and ready at all times for a surprise attack tonight.
12. The police are putting you under surveillance twenty-four hours a day.
13. This defense line will prevent the enemy to break through our positions.
14. Two tanks are approaching from the south. Have your hand grenades and bazooka ready for action.
15. By means of observation, I will be able to understand the problem better.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. We have emplacements and camouflaged weapons along our defense line.

LESSON 10

WORD LIST

1.	chìn-ch'e	tank
2.	tsìp-kân	to get close, approach
3.	fōng-chî	to prevent
4.	fōng-sìn	defense line
5.	ìm-t'aì	emplacement
6.	kaam-shî	to watch; surveillance
7.	k'eì-tsaâp	surprise attack
8.	koon-ch'aàt	to observe; observation
9.	môong-uĕn-kèng	binoculars, field glass
10.	ngaî-chong	camouflage
11.	oô-sùng-tuî* (heì-ch'e tuî*)	convoy (land)
12.	piu-tîng	to locate, orient
13.	saú-ping	scout
14.	ts'ìn-tsùn	to advance
15.	tsòk tîk-ts'ìng p'oòn-tuên	to work out the estimate of the enemy situation
16.	uēn-shìng	to complete, accomplish
17.	waî-chì	position
18.	wân-tûng	movement
19.	yán-paì	to conceal; concealment

LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

379

戒 kaaì: to warn; caution; to abstain

戒酒 kaaì tsaú: abstain from spirit or wine

戒煙 kaaì in: give up smoking

戒嚴 kaaì-Īm: curfew

戒指 kaaì-chí: ring (finger)

228

伏 fûk: to prostrate: to overcome

埋伏 maaī-fûk: to ambush

伏兵 fûk-ping: an ambush

806

擺 paaí: to display; to arrange; to vibrate.

擺開 paaí hoi: to spread out; to display.

擺布 paaí-pò: to direct; to show.

戒 伏 擺

戒 伏 擺

戒 伏 摆

901

判 p'oòn: to judge; to decide.

判决 p'oòn-k'uèt: a decision; decree; determination.

判斷 p'oòn-tuên: to give judgment; to be of opinion.

1235

匠 tseûng: mechanic; worker; artisan

木匠 mûk tseûng: carpenter.

石匠 shêk tseûng: stonecutter.

判 匠

判 匠

判 匠

LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

787

胡 oō: how; why; Mongol.

胡椒 oō-tsiu: pepper.

胡閙 oō-naaû: to make a row.

1358

懂 túng: to understand.

懂得 túng tak: to understand.

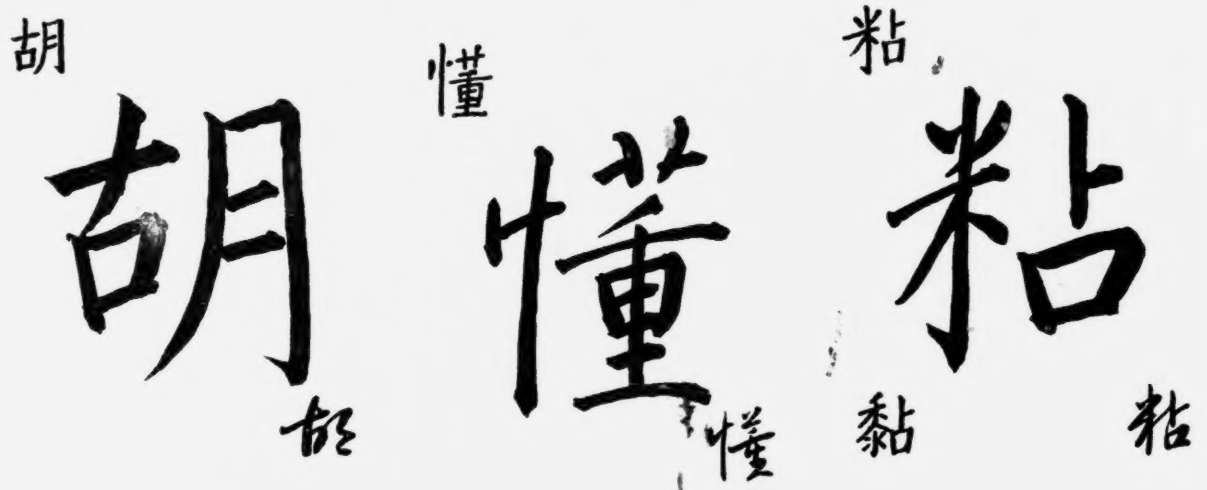
不懂人事 pat túng yān-sẑ: slow witted; unreasonable

762

粘 nīm: to adhere; glutinous; sticky.

黏實 nīm shât: to paste it tight.

粘米 chim maĭ: ordinary rice.



638

驢 lō a donkey; ass.

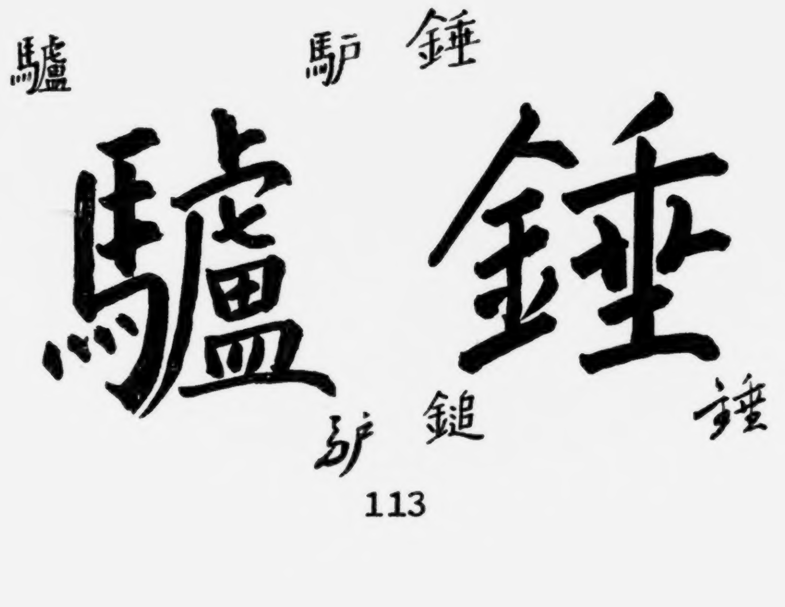
驢子 lō-tsź: donkey; ass.

135

錘 ch'uī: a hammer to pound; scale; weight

鉄錘 t'ît ch'uī: a h[illegible]er

錘爛 ch'ui-laân: hammer to pieces



LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

第二日黎明時候, ch'ik-候隊深入敵線後方. Yân伏於一個yân pai位置處. 佢地派出sat兵負責戒備. 監shî敵人接近, 防止奇襲.

隊長用望遠kèng觀察敵人陣地及其部隊運動. 佢發現一隊擺列如長蛇之護送隊, 有戰車及各種車, 向前線前進.

佢又詳細觀察敵人之防uê工事. 防線處有各種im-體同ngaî裝兵器. ch'ik-候隊長即將此種工事與及兵器位置標定於地圖. 然後拔隊歸去.

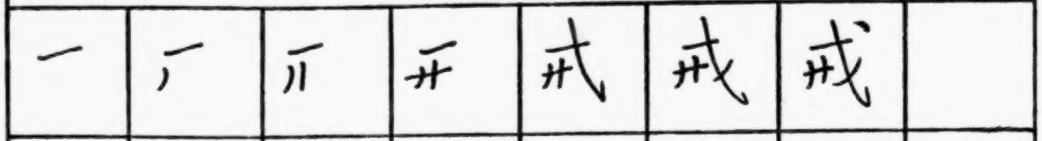
Ch'ik-候隊之情報報告, 到達師司令部之後, 師部即根據此種情報, 以作敵情判斷.

LESSON 10

WRITING MATERIAL

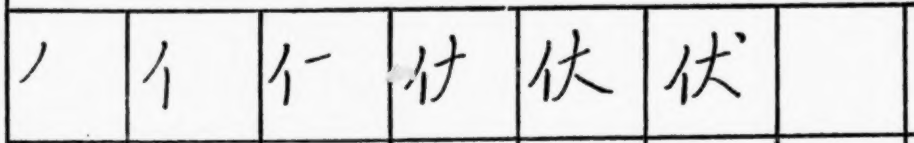
戒

Character Number 379　Radical Number 62
Stroke Number 7　戈



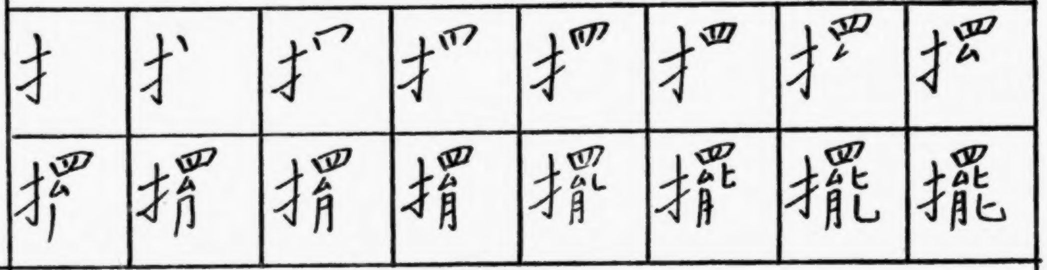
伏

Character Number 228　Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 6　亻，人



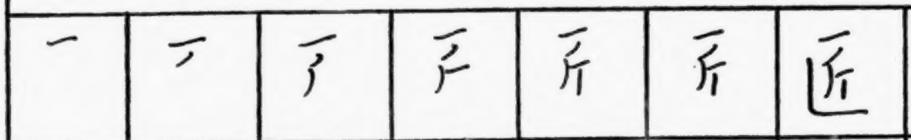
擺

Character Number 806　Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 18　扌，手



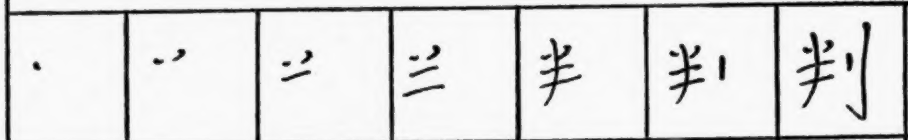
匠

Character Number 1235　Radical Number 22
Stroke Number 7　匚

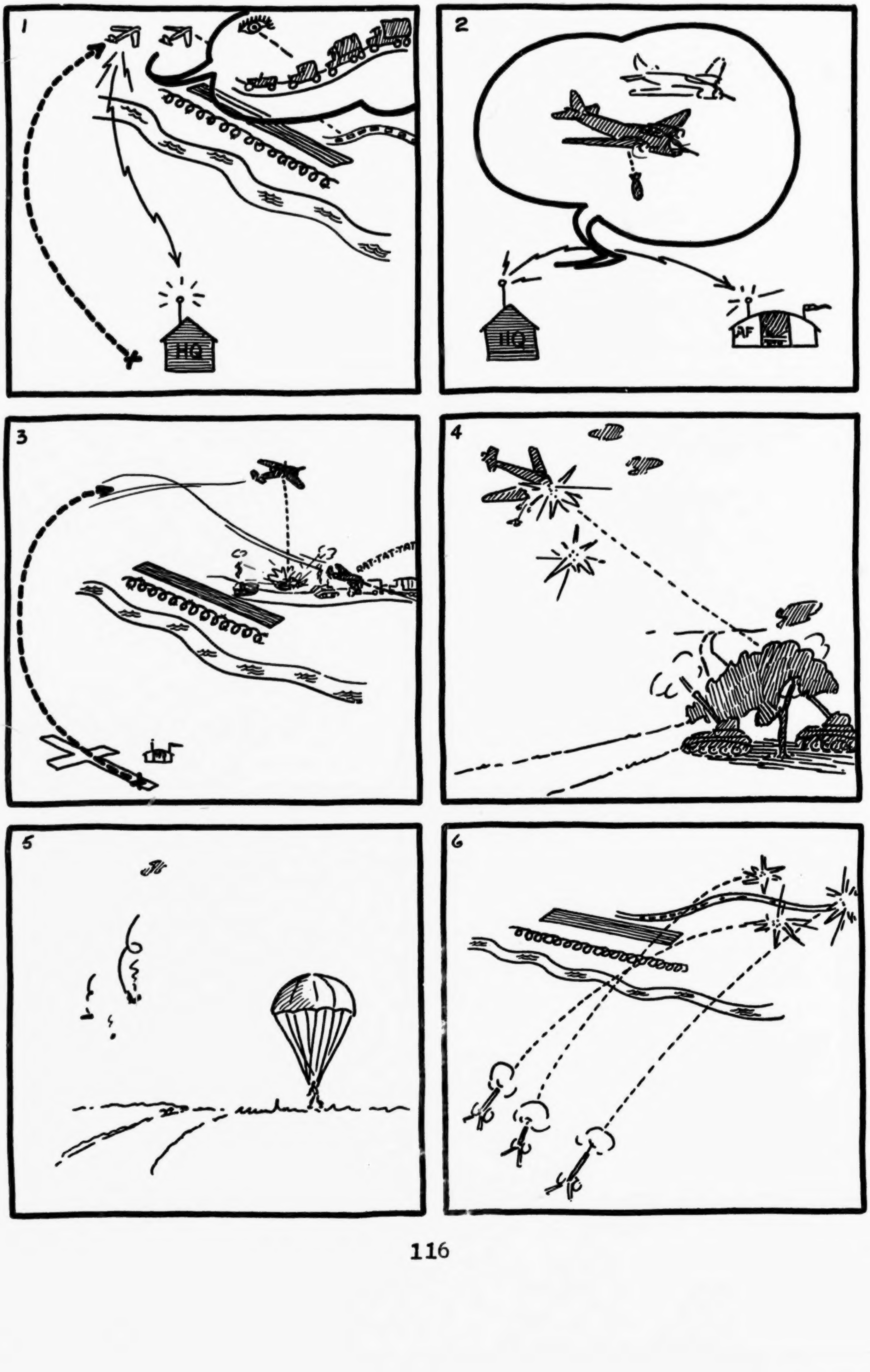


判

Character Number 901　Radical Number 18
Stroke Number 7　刂，刀



LESSON 11


1
HQ
2
HQ
AF
3
RAT-TAT-TAT
4
5
6

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ko k'ap sz-lîng pô tak tò* yaŭ-kwaan tîk-yān kè ts'ìng-pò chi-haû, tsaû tîm-yeûng* hùi tsô?

Taàp: K'uĭ-teî tseung ni ti ts'ìng-pò ìn-kaù ts'ing-ch'óh chi-haû, tsaû tsòk yat-kòh p'oòn-tuèn, ìn-haû p'aaì ch'ut ching-ch'aàt-kei hùi kóh kòh k'ui-wîk koon-ch'aàt shât-tsoî kè ts'ìng-yìng.

M: Ching-ch'aàt-kei haî kóh kòh k'ui-wîk t'aî-tó mi-yĕ?

T: K'uĭ-teî t'aî-tó yat-tuî tîk-yān kè oô-sùng-tuî* heùng ts'ìn sìn ts'ìn-tsùn.

M: K'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* t'ung-chi sz sz-lîng-pô?

T: K'uĭ-teî tsik-haak yûng mō-sìn-tîn t'ung-chi sz sz-lîng pô.

M: Sz-pô t'ung-chi mi-yĕ kè pô-tuî*?

T: Sz-pô t'ung-chi hung-kwan pô-tuî*.

M: Hung-kwan p'aaì mi-yĕ fei-kei hùi kwang-chà t'ūng sò-shê tîk-yān?

T: Hung-kwan p'aaì chìn-taù kwang-chà-kei hùi kwang-chà t'ūng sò-shê tîk-yān.

M: Hing kwang-chà-kei yaū pin shuè heî-fei?

T: Hing kwang-chà-kei yaū siú-yìng kei-ch'eūng heî-fei.

M: Hing kwang-chà-kei iù keî noî ìn-haû tò mûk-piu k'ui-wîk?

T: Hing kwang-chà-kei haî keî fan-chung chi-noî tò mûk-piu k'ui-wîk.

M: K'uĭ-teî kìn-tô tîk-yān tsaû tîm-yeûng*.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: K'uī-teî kìn-tô tîk-yān tsaû sò-shê t'ūng kwang-chà tîk-yān.

M: Hố toh tîk-yān kè mi-yĕ peî p'ồh-waaî-chốh?

T: Hố toh tîk-yān kè t'aán-hak-ch'e peî p'ồh-waaî-chốh.

M: Yaŭ ti tîk-yān kè t'aán-hak-ch'e tîm-yeûng*?

T: Yaŭ keî kà tîk-yān kè t'aán-hak ch'e ch'ìt-lâp yat-kồh fōng-hung chẩn-teî.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè fei-kei yaŭ mŏ peî tîk-yān tá-chùng?

T: Yaŭ, yaŭ yat-kà fei-kei peî tîk-yān tá-chùng, k'eī-uē kè fei-kei to on-ts'uēn fei faán kei-teî.

M: Peî tá-chùng kè fei-kei kè fei-haāng-uēn tîm-yeûng*?

T: Fei-haāng-uēn kìn fei-kei shiu-cheûk-chốh, tsaû tsik-haak t'iù saàn, on-ts'uēn kòng-lôk.

M: Ngŏh kwan yaû tîm-yeûng* fung-sốh ni kồh tsaâp-chung k'ui-wîk?

T Ngŏh kwan yaû yûng chốh-chî shê-kik fung-sốh ni kồh tsaâp-chung k'ui-wîk.

LESSON 11

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After the high headquarters received the intelligence concerning the enemy, what did they do?

Answer: After they thoroughly studied the intelligence they made an estimate. Then they sent a reconnaissance plane to that area to observe the actual situation.

Q: What did the reconnaissance plane see at that area?

A: They saw an enemy convoy advancing toward the front.

Q: How did they inform the division headquarters?

A: They immediately informed the division headquarters by radio.

Q: What unit did the division headquarters inform?

A: The division headquarters informed the Air Force.

Q: What kind of planes did the Air Force send out to bomb and strafe the enemy?

A: The Air Force sent out fighter-bombers to bomb and strafe the enemy.

Q: From what place did the light bomber take off?

A: The light bomber took off from the airstrip.

Q: How long did the light bomber take to reach the target area?

A: The light bomber arrived at the target area within a few minutes.

Q: What did they do when they saw the enemy?

A: When they saw the enemy they bombed and strafed them.

Q: What of the enemy's was destroyed?

LESSON 11

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: Many of the enemy's tanks were destroyed.

Q: What did some of the enemy's tanks do?

A: Several enemy tanks set up an air-defense position.

Q: Were any of our planes hit by the enemy?

A: Yes, one of our planes was hit by the enemy; the rest of the planes returned to the base safely.

Q: What happened to the pilot of the plane that was hit?

A: When the pilot saw that the plane caught fire, he parachuted immediately and landed safely.

Q: How did our force interdict this concentration area?

A: Our force used interdiction fire to interdict this concentration area.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. General Chan wants to concentrate all his men in the vicinity of the airport.
2. When the plane is on fire, you have to parachute for safety.
3. Driving a tank is not any easier than driving an automible.
4. I hit the target the first time but I missed it the second time.
5. That plane is large, but it can land on a small airfield.
6. Our fighter bombers reached their target area and bombed the enemy airstrip.
7. Who is the highest ranking officer in your group?
8. She went to the Far East to study the actual situation of that country.
9. If the answer is not given within five minutes, we will attack.
10. I want to shoot at the enemy with this machine gun, but I am out of ammunition.
11. When do you use interdiction fire?
12. The actual situation is very bad. Be prepared.
13. The tank was hit and burned at the intersection.
14. You will have to study the problem further, and give me the solution within a month if possible.
15. Our objective is the airstrip on the south of the city approximately twenty-five miles from here.
16. Concentrate your fire on the fighter bomber and never mind about the others.

LESSON 11

WORD LIST

1.	chìn-taù kwang-chà-kei	fighter bomber
2.	chóh-chì shê-kik	interdiction fire
3.	ìn-kaù	to study
4.	ko-k'ap	high-ranking
5.	k'ui-wîk	area
6.	mûk-piu	objective, target
7.	shiu-cheûk	to get burned
8.	sò-shê	to strafe
9.	siú-yìng kei-ch'eūng	small airfield, airstrip
10.	t'aân-hak-ch'e	tank
11.	tsaâp-chung	to concentrate, mass; concentration

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

155

挑 t'iu: to bear a load; to choose; to pick out; to irritate; to provoke; to mix up.

挑夫 t'iu-foo: a coolie.

挑選 t'iu-suén: to select; to choose.

挑動 t'iu tũng: to stir up.

890

撲 p'òk: to strike down; to rush against.

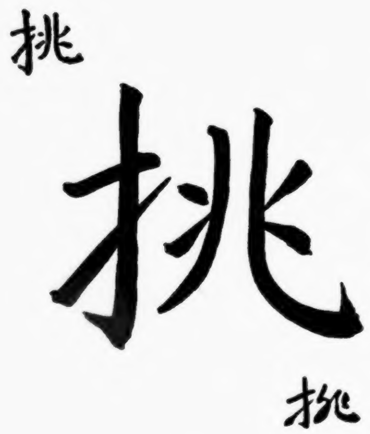
撲滅 p'òk-mît: to extinguish

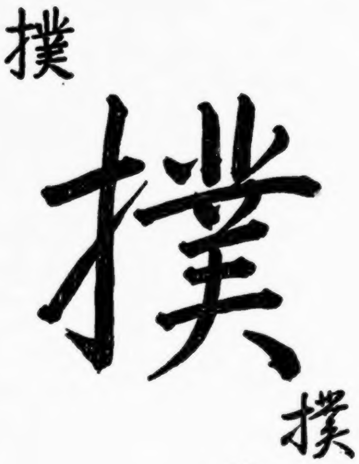
722

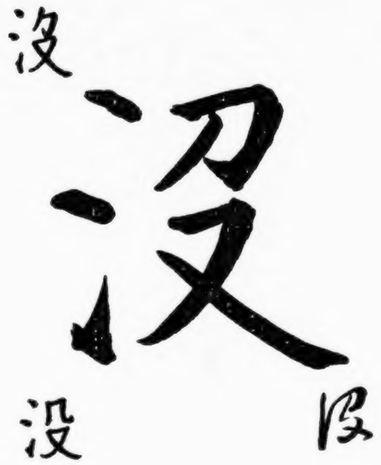
沒 moôt: to perish; loss; no (Mandarin)

埋沒 maaī-moôt: hidden; unknown.

沒收 moôt-shau: to be confiscated.







10

猜 ch'aai: to guess, suspect.

猜謎 ch'aai-maī: to guess riddles

猜想 ch'aai-séung: to conjecture

猜枚 ch'aai-mooī*: morra (game of guessing at fingers held up)

560

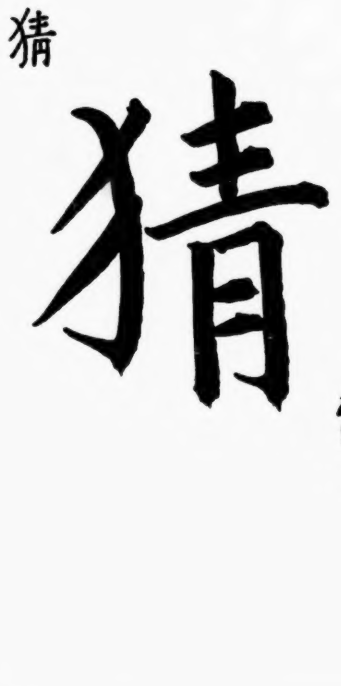
棍 kwàn. a stick; club; rod.

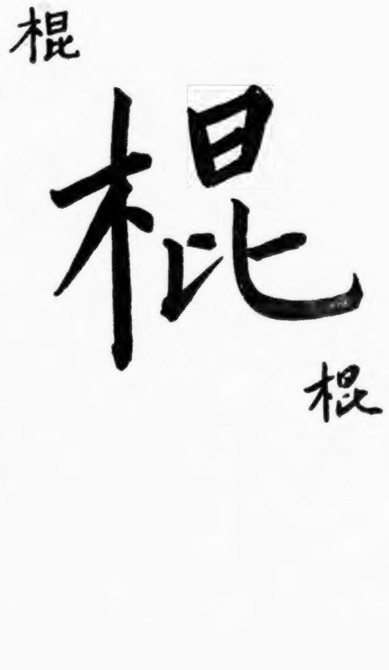
一條棍 yat t'iū kwàn: a stick; a cane.

光棍 kwong-kwàn: rascal.

棍徒 kwàn t'ō: ruffian; rowdy.

棍騙 kwàn-p'ìn: to cheat.





LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

22

抓 chaaú: to scratch

抓爛 chaaú-laân: to lacerate

抓搲 chaaú-wá: to scratch

267

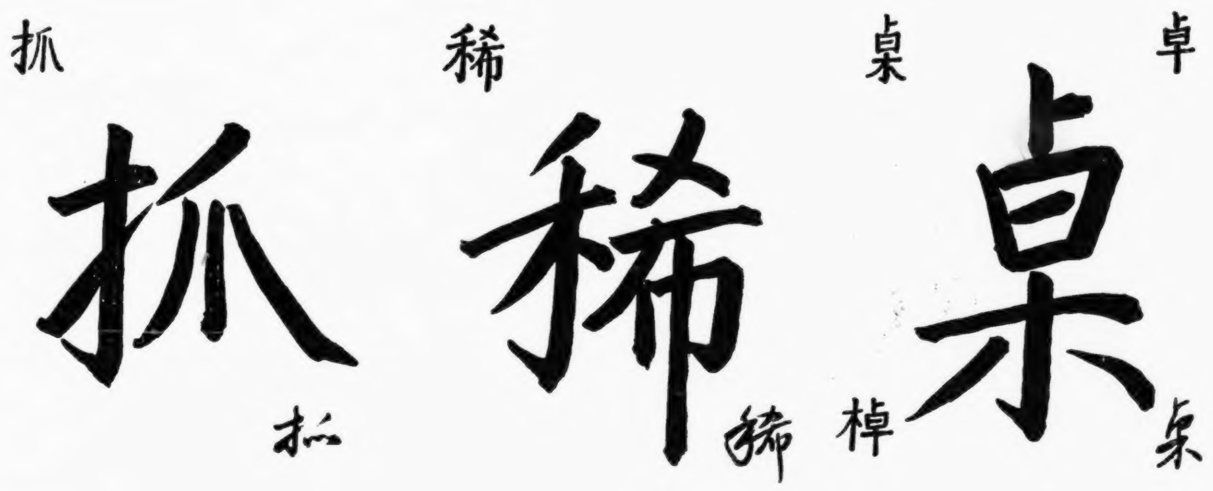
稀 hei: few; far apart; watery

稀疏 hei-shoh: wide apart

稀稀地 hei-hei-teî*: sparsely; watery.

52

桌 ch'euk: table; stand.



1446

恩 yan: kindness; grace; favor.

恩人 yan-yān: benefactor; patron.

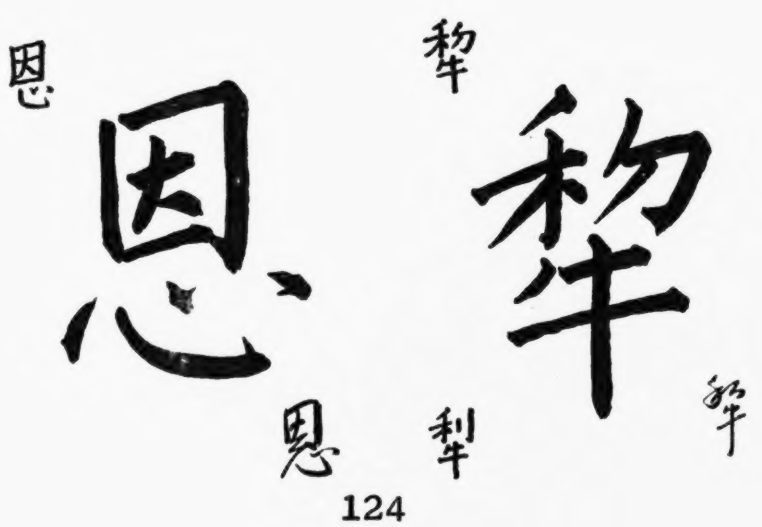
恩惠 yan-waî. grace; bounty.

585

犂 laī: a plow; to plow.

犂田 laī t'īn: to plow.

犂耙 laī-p'ā: a harrow.



LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

高級司令部研究ch'ik-候隊所得情報之後，即刻派出偵察機去觀察實在情形。果然見倒敵人護送隊向前線前進。機員即刻用無線電通知師司令部。

師部根據報告，通知空軍。空軍派出戰鬥轟炸機，實行轟炸。空軍挑選輕轟炸機數架，由小 yīng 機場起飛。數分鐘內即到目標區域。

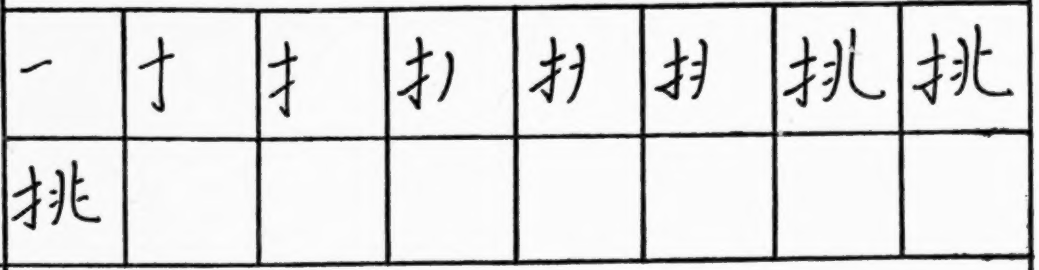
飛機向敵人撲攻，轟炸後掃射。敵人之戰車被破壞者極多。但有數架臨時設立一防空陣地。向我機反擊，一機中彈被毀。飛行員跳傘。安全降落。最後我軍用阻止射擊，封鎖此集中區域。

LESSON 11

WRITING MATERIAL

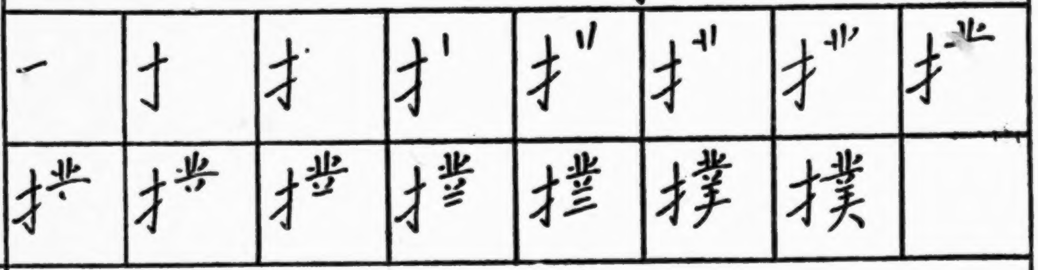
挑

Character Number 1155 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 9 扌，手



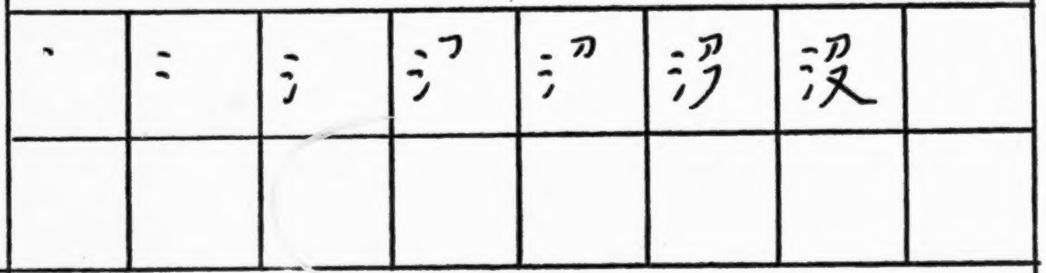
撲

Character Number 890 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 15 扌，手



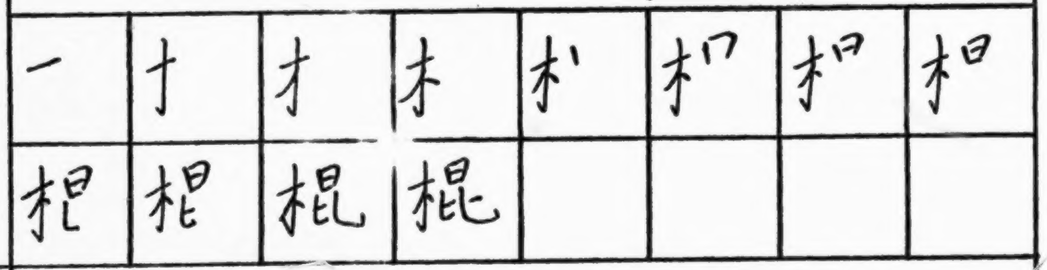
沒

Character Number 722 Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 7 氵，水



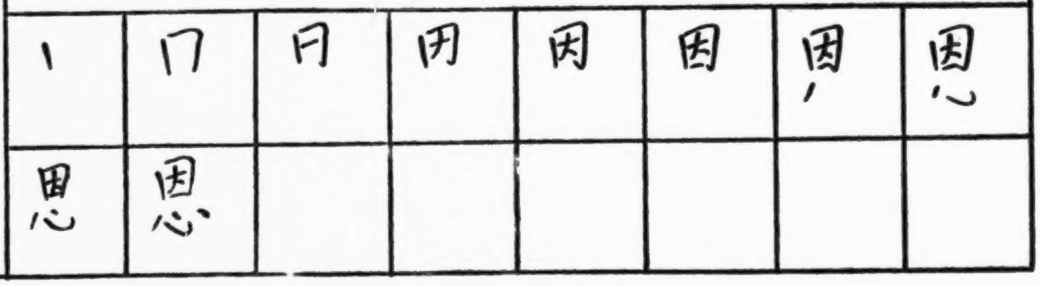
棍

Character Number 560 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 12 木，木

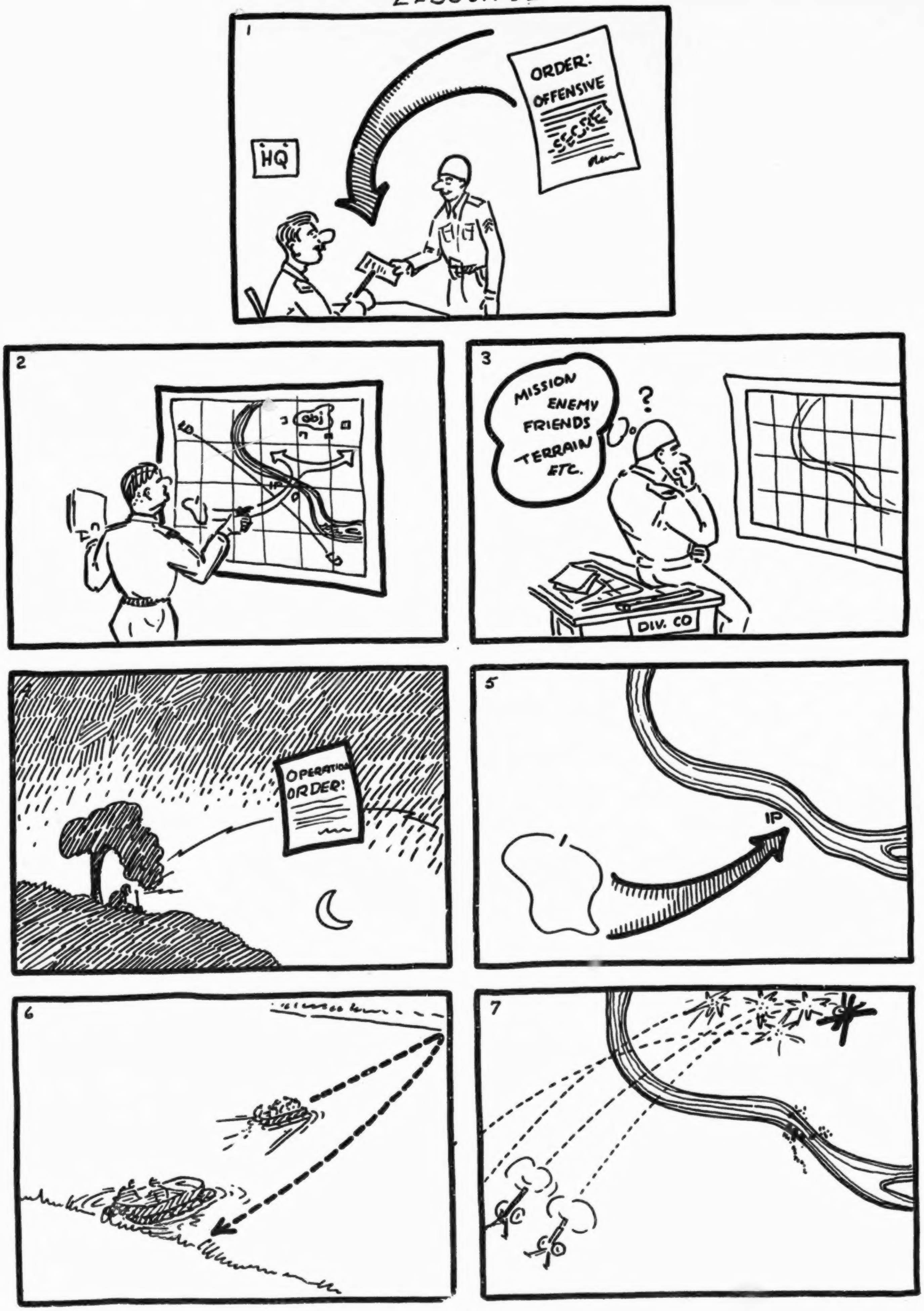


恩

Character Number 1446 Radical Number 61
Stroke Number 10 心



LESSON 12


1
HQ
ORDER:
OFFENSIVE
SECRET
2
LD
obj
IP
3
MISSION
ENEMY
FRIENDS
TERRAIN
ETC.
?
DIV. CO
4
OPERATION ORDER:
5
IP
6
7

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ch'uēn-lîng yān-uēn sùng mi-yĕ tò poón sz sz-pô?

Taàp: Ch'uēn-lîng yān-uēn sùng yat-kîn kîk-kei-mât mîng-lîng tò poón sz sz-pô.

M: Ni kîn mîng-lîng kóng mi-yĕ?

T: Ni kîn mîng-lîng kiù poón sz chuén-ì kung-shaì.

M: Sz-lîng-pô tsìp-tó mîng-lîng chi-haû, tsaû tîm-yeûng* kung-tsòk?

T: Sz-lîng-pô kè ch'aam-maū yān-uēn tsìp-tó mîng-lîng chi-haû, tsaû kan-kuì mîng-lîng kaì-waâk tsòk-chìn, k'uĭ-teî fei-sheūng-chi mōng.

M: Sz-cheúng tong-shī kè kung-tsòk tîm-yeûng*?

T: Sz-cheúng kan-kuì sz kè yâm-mô, tîk kwan t'ūng ngŏh kwan leŭng-fong-mîn kè ts'ìng-yìng, teî-yìng, t'ūng k'eī-t'a yaŭ-kwaan kè ts'ìng-pō, tsòk chông-fȍng p'oòn tuèn.

M: Kóh maăn meî t'in-kwong chi-ts'ìn, ngŏh-teî kè yat-kòh līn tîm-yeûng*?

T: Kóh maăn meî t'in-kwong chi-ts'ìn, ngŏh-teî kè yat-kòh līn tsìp-tô tsòk-chìn mîng-lîng.

M: Kóh kòh līn yaū pin shuè heùng pin shuè ts'ìn-tsùn?

T: Kóh kòh līn yaū līn tsaâp-hôp-teî heùng hōh pin kè t'ung-kwòh-tîm ts'ìn-tsùn.

M: K'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* tô hōh?

T: Hōh shuè yaŭ faū-k'iū shuēn tâng k'uĭ-teî tô hōh.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Kôh ti shuēn yaū mi-yĕ pô-tuî* kà-shaì.

T: Mooĭ chèk shuēn yaŭ leŭng-kòh kung-ping, k'uĭ-teî kà-shaî faū-k'iū-shuēn loì ooì tô-haú shuè.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè pô-ping ts'ìn-tsùn kè shì-haû, ngŏh-teî kè p'aaù-ping tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè pô-ping ts'ìn-tsùn kè shì-haû, p'aaù-ping hoi-ch'î maăng-lît kè taân-môk shê-kik.

M: Ni ts'z̀ taân*-môk shê-kik kè chuê-iù mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ?

T: Ni ts'z̀ taân*-môk shê-kik kè chuê iù mûk-tik haî ìm-oô ngŏh kwan ts'ìn-tsùn, p'òh-waaî tîk kwan kè chân-teî, aàt-chaì tîk kwan kè hāng-tûng, t'ūng ts'ìt-t'uĕn tîk-yān kè pó-k'ap-sìn tâng tâng.

M: Ni ts'z̀ p'aaù-kik kè kìt-kwóh tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ni ts'z̀ p'aaù-kik kè kìt-kwóh, ngŏh kwan tak-tó fóh-lîk yau-shaì.

LESSON 12

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: What did the courier deliver to this division headquarters?

Answer: The courier delivered a secret order to this division headquarters.

Q: What did this order say?

A: This order ordered this division to shift to offensive.

Q: After the headquarters received the order, what did they do?

A: After the staff members of the headquarters received the order, they mapped out the operation according to the order. They were extremely busy.

Q: What did the division commander then do?

A: The division commander, according to the mission of the division, the situation of the enemy troops and our forces, terrain, and other information concerned, made an estimate of the situation.

Q: That night before dawn, what happened to one of our companies?

A: That night before dawn, one of our companies received the operation order.

Q: From where and to where did that company advance?

A: That company advanced from the company assembly area toward the riverside's initial point.

Q: How did they cross the river?

A: There were pontoon boats waiting along the river for their crossing.

LESSON 12

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: By what unit were the pontoon boats operated?

A: There were two engineers in each boat. They operated the pontoon boat back and forth as a ferry.

Q: When our infantry pushed on, what did our artillery do?

A: When our infantry pushed on, the artillery opened up with a heavy fire of barrages.

Q: What was the main purpose of the fire of barrages this time?

A: The main purpose of the fire of barrages this time was to cover our forces advance, to destroy the enemy positions, to suppress the enemy's action, to cut off the enemy's supply line, etc.

Q: What was the result of the shelling this time?

A: As a result of the shelling this time, our force gained fire superiority.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Our unit gained fire superiority by using additional artillery pieces and other modern weapons.
2. The point of river crossing is approximately 60 miles south of this area.
3. You had better spend more time to study the terrain of this area.
4. When our unit starts to advance, the company will request artillery support.
5. Sgt Lee, delivered this order to Capt Wŏng at the division headquarters.
6. Our fire power is so devastating that everything within a radius of one mile will be destroyed.
7. This matter is top secret. Do not entrust it to any courier.

. He may be stupid in some fields but he knows how to operate automobiles, boats and airplanes.

9. For the sake of safety, please swim close to the river bank.
10. Usually fire superiority will make a difference between victory and defeat.
11. We will cross the river in the morning. The pontoon boats are to be ready by tonight.
12. The enemy will launch a sneak attack tonight.
13. I still cannot make an estimate of the situation with this available information.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. Your order is to suppress enemy advance toward this sector.

15. The barrage is intended to destroy the enemy's fortifications.

16. I need a courier to carry this urgent message to the headquarters.

LESSON 12

WORD LIST

1.	aàt-chaì	to suppress
2.	chông-fòng p'oòn-tuèn	estimate of the situation
3.	chuén-ì	to shift to
4.	ch'uēn-lîng yān-uēn	courier
5.	faàt-tûng	to initiate, launch
6.	faū-k'iū-shuēn	pontoon boat
7.	fóh-lîk	fire power
8.	fóh-lîk yau-shaì	fire superiority
9.	kîk-kei-mât	secret
10.	maǎng-lît	devastating, violent
11.	poón sz sz-pô	our division Hqs
12.	taân-môk shê-kik	fire of barrages
13.	teî-yìng	terrain
14.	tô-haú	ferry (place)
15.	t'ung-kwòh tìm (ch'ut-faàt-tìm)	initial point

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

884

抱 p'ŏ: to embrace; to carry in arms; to cherish.

抱病 p'ŏ pêng: to be ill.

抱歉 p'ŏ-hìp: I regret; I am sorry.

16

賺 chaân: earn, gain, to make profit.

賺錢 chaân-ts'în:* to earn money.

賺佣 chaân-yûng:* to make a commission.

338

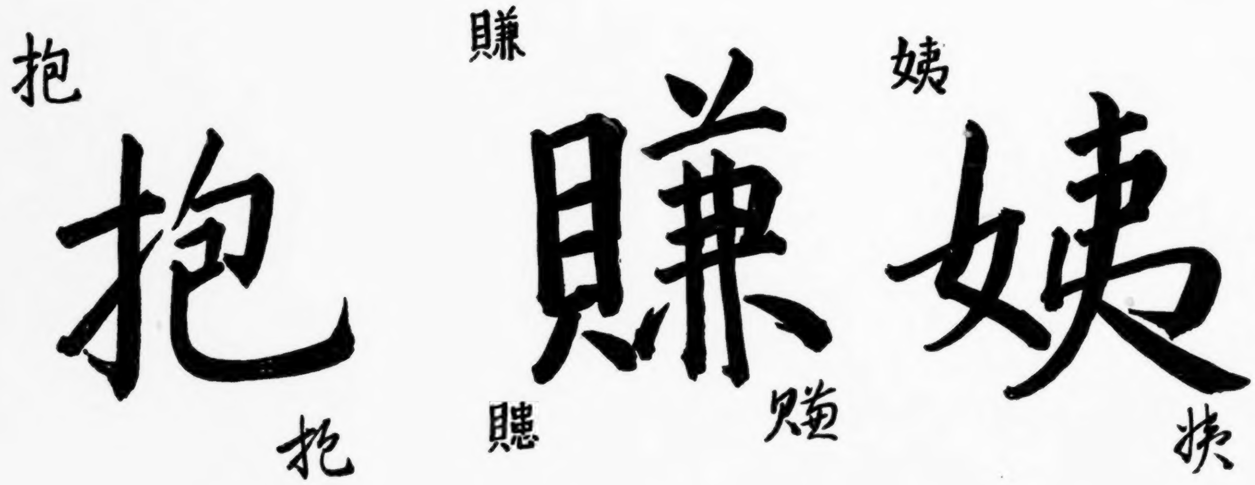
姨 ī: maternal aunt (i) sister-in-law

姨母 ī-mŏ: elder maternal aunt

姨媽 ī-ma: elder maternal aunt

姨丈 ī-cheûng: husband of maternal aunt

姨表 ī-piú: maternal first cousins



1344

奪 tuêt: to take by force; to take away.

奪去 tuêt huì: to take away by force.

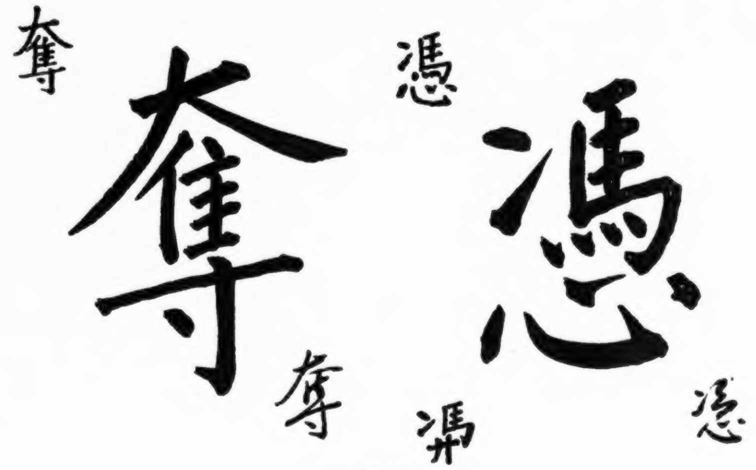
奪回 tuêt ooī: to get back by force.

830

憑 p'āng: proof; to lean on; trust in.

憑據 p'āng-kuì: proof; evidence.

文憑 mān-p'āng: diploma; certificate.



LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

1346

堆 tui: heap; mass; pile; to heap.

草堆 ts'ó tui: a stack of straw.

堆塞 tui-sak: to block up; to obstruct.

1433

禍 wôn: calamity; woe; misfortune.

惹禍 yĕ wôn: to bring misfortune on oneself.

禍根 wôh kan: the seed of misfortune.

1431

鍋 woh: pot; boiler; pan; calcron.

煖鍋 nuĕn won: heater for wine or food.

堆 禍 鍋

堆 禍 鍋

堆 禍 鍋

23

掉 chaaû: to row, propet

掉艇 chaaû-tĕng: to row a boat

掉槳 chaaû-tséung: to pull an oar

1177

塗 t'ō: to daub; to blot out; mire; dirt.

塗污 t'ō oo: to besmear.

塗改 t'ō koí: to alter.

掉 塗

掉 塗

棹 櫂 掉 塗

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

傳令人員送一件極機密，命令到師部。命本師轉移攻勢。因此司令部參謀人員計劃作戰非常之忙。

師長根據本師所負任務，與及敵我兩軍情形，地形，同其他有關之情報，作狀况判斷。

未天光之前，本師一個連接倒作戰命令由連集合地向河邊通過點前進。河邊已有faū橋船在此處等候。每船有兩工兵。擔任shai船工作。來來去去，運全連官兵過河。

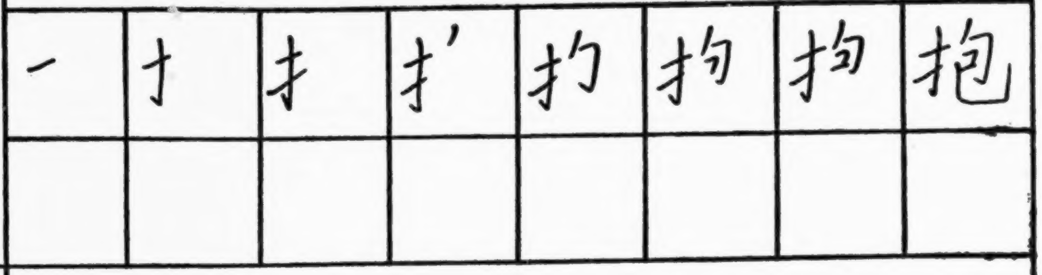
我方砲兵開始猛烈射擊。協助步兵前進，同時毀壞敵軍陣地，壓制敵軍行動，與及切斷其補給線。

LESSON 12

WRITING MATERIAL

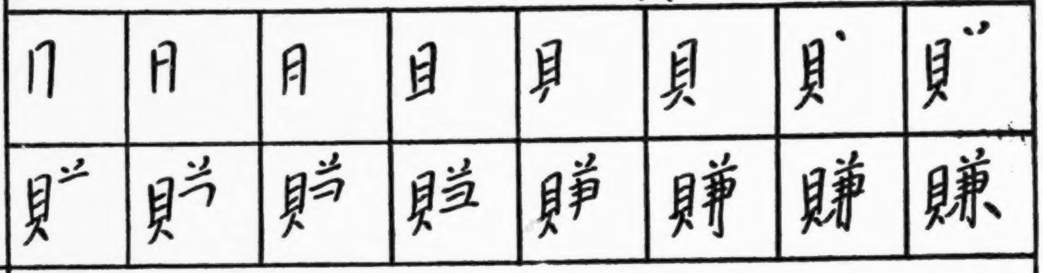
抱

Character Number 884 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 8 扌，手



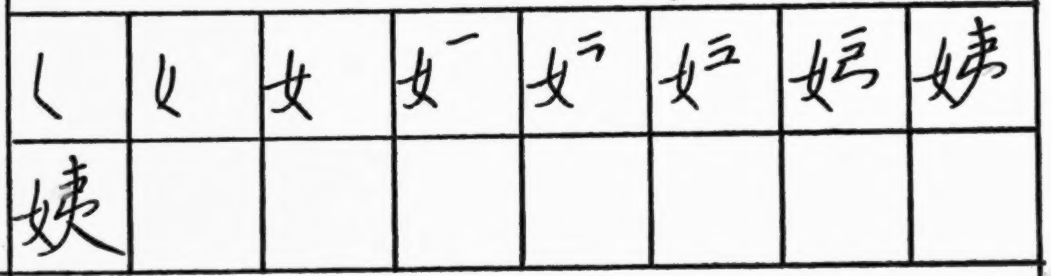
賺

Character Number 16 Radical Number 154
Stroke Number 17 貝



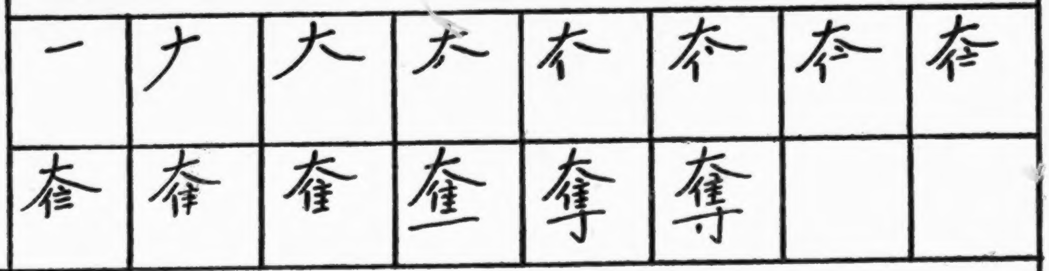
姨

Character Number 338 Radical Number 38
Stroke Number 9 女



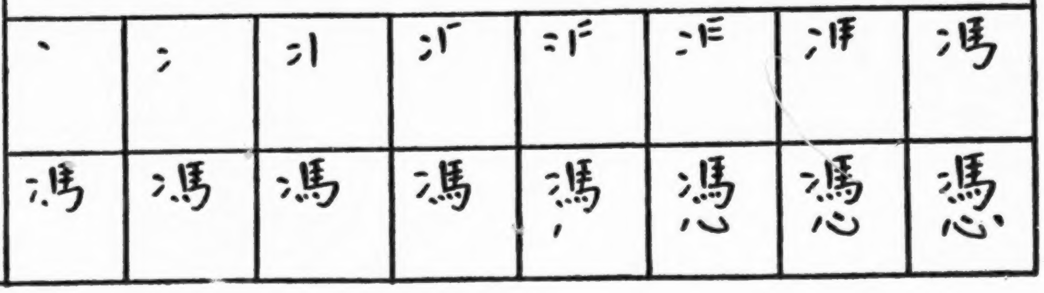
奪

Character Number 1344 Radical Number 37
Stroke Number 14 大

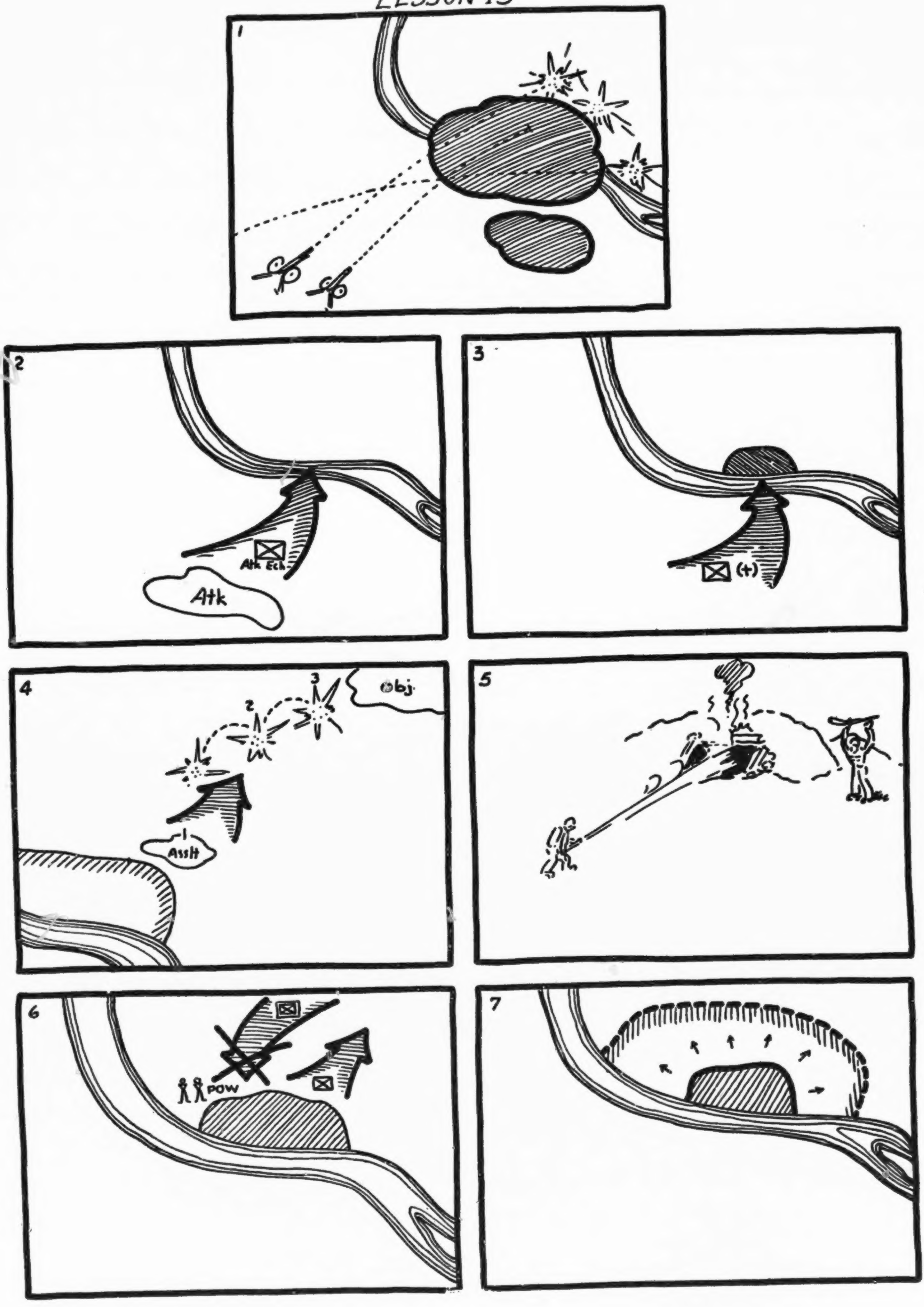


憑

Character Number 830 Radical Number 61
Stroke Number 16 心



LESSON 13


1
2
Atk Ech
Atk
3
(+)
4
1
Asslt
2
3
Obj
5
6
POW
7

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Haî tsòk-chìn kè shī-haû, ngŏh-teî tîm-yeûng* che-paî ngŏh kwan kè haāng-tûng?

Taàp: Haî tsòk-chìn kè shī-haû, ngŏh-teî yûng in-môk che-paî ngŏh kwan kè haāng-tûng; yaū-k'eī-shî tô hōh kè teî-tîm kàng sui-iù yûng in-môk laî che-paî.

M: Ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik kuī-tîm haî yûng laî tsô mi-yĕ?

T: Ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik kuī-tîm haî yûng laî īm-oô ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè mi-yĕ pô-tuî* leī-hoi kung-kik chúm-peî waî-chī?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè pô-ping kung-kik t'ai-tuî* leī-hoi kung-kik chúm-peî waî-chī.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè pô-ping kung-kik t'ai-tuî* leī-hoi kung-kik chúm-peî waî-chī chi-haû, k'uĭ-teî tsaû tîm-yeûng* à?

T. K'uĭ-teî tsaû hoi-ch'ī tô hōh, ī-ch'ê tô hōh shīng-kung.

M: Poón sz p'aaī mi-yĕ pô-tuî* huī tsang-oōn?

T: Poón sz p'aaī haû-tsûk t'ai-tuî* huī tsang-oōn.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè yat-kòh līn huī-tò yat-kòh tîm-yeûng* kè waî-chī?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè yat-kòh līn huī-tò yat-kòh hó kè ch'ung-fung chúm-peî waî- chī.

M: Kóh kòh līn sin yûng pin chúng shê-kik?

T: Kóh kòh līn sin yûng ch'ung-fung shê-kik.

M: K'uĭ-teî ts'īn-tsùn tò pin shuè?

T: K'uĭ-teî heùng tîk-yān ch'ung-fung, ts'īn-tsùn tò tîk-yān kè chân-teî. K'uĭ-teî nāng-kaù tsīp-kân tîk-yān, t'ūng ts'īm-mît tîk-yān.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: K'uĭ-teî tīm-yeûng* kung-kik tîk-yān kè p'aaù-ngaăn?

T: K'uĭ-teî yûng p'àn-fôh-heī p'àn-shê tîk-yān kè p'aaù-ngaăn.

M: Ni ts'ẑ kung-kik kè kīt-kwôh tīm-yeûng*?

T: Ni ts'ẑ kung-kik hó shīng-kung. Tîk-yān peî pik t'aū-hōng, waâk-chê peî ts'im-mît.

M: Tîk-yān shat-paaî-chôh chi-haû, tîk-yān yaû tīm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yān heùng ngŏh kwan faán-kung, seúng kón ngŏh-teî kè pô-tuî* faan kwòh hōh.

M: Tîk-yān faán-kung kè kīt-kwôh tīm-yeûng* â?

T: Kīt-kwôh tîk-yān peî ngŏh-teî kik-t'uī; tîk-yān kè shaú-kwan peî ngŏh-teî foo-lŏ. Ngŏh kwan kw'òng-cheung k'iū-t'aū-pó.

LESSON 13

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: During the time of operation, how did we conceal our action?

Answer: During the time of operation, we employed a smoke screen to conceal our action, especially the river-crossing location had to be concealed with a smoke screen.

Q: For what were our fire bases?

A: Our fire bases were for covering our attack.

Q: Which units of our force left the attack position?

A: Our infantry attacking echelon left the attack position.

Q: After our infantry attacking echelon left the attack position, what did they do?

A: They initiated the river-crossing. It was very successful.

Q: What units were sent from our division for reinforcement?

A: Our division sent the successive echelon for reinforcement.

Q: What position did one of our companies reach?

A: One of our companies reached a good assault position.

Q: What kind of fire did that company first employ?

A: That company first employed marching fire.

Q: How far did they advance?

A: They charged against the enemy, advancing to the enemy's positions. They were able to get close to the enemy and annihilate the enemy.

Q: How did they attack the enemy's embrasure?

A: They used flame throwers to blow the enemy's embrasure.

LESSON 13

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: What was the result of the attack this time?

A: This time the attack was very successful The enemy was either forced to surrender or was annihilated.

Q: After the enemy lost the combat, what did they do?

A: The enemy launched a counter-attack, intending to drive our troops back across the river.

Q: What was the result of the enemy's counter-attack?

A: The enemy was eventually beaten off. The enemy defenders were captured, and our troops expanded the bridgehead.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Do you think you can get your men to the assault position by 0500 hours tomorrow?
2. Captain, I have two captives; both of them are high ranking officers.
3. Because of the lack of ammunition, we should not employ assault fire.
4. What action will you take when you reach the assault position?
5. The successive echelon will be here within an hour.
6. Our attacking echelon drove the enemies away from their bridgehead.
7. The 1st Company had set up the bridgehead at the initial stage of landing.
8. The fire coordinating center should be farther away from the front line.
9. I will take charge of the attacking position at the left and you will take charge the one at the right.
10. Our troops use hand grenades and flame throwers to destroy the enemy hiding inside of the emplacement.
11. You should camouflage the embrasure with something.
12. Please be quiet. We are approaching the front now.
13. I was forced to jump into the river. It was a good thing that I know how to swim.
14. The defenders of the airport were all annihilated.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. Use your flame thrower to smoke out any enemy hidden in the caves.

16. Any action on the part of the enemy at this time can be advantageous to us.

17. Take your position, be ready, aim and fire.

LESSON 13

WORD LIST

1.	ch'ung-fung chún-peî waî-chì	assault position
2.	ch'ung-fung shê-kik	assault fire, marching fire
3.	foo-lŏ	to capture (personnel) captive
4.	haăng-tûng	action
5.	haû-tsûk t'ai-tuî*	successive echelon
6.	k'iū-t'aū-pó	bridgehead
7.	kón	to drive away
8.	kung-kik chún-peî waî-chì	attack position
9.	kung-kik kuì-tîm	base of fire
10.	kung-kik t'ai-tuî*	attacking echelon
11.	kw'òng-cheung	to expand; exploitation
12.	p'aaù-ngaăn	embrasure
13.	p'àn-fóh-heì	flame thrower
14.	p'àn-shê	to spray, blow
15.	peî pik	to be forced
16.	shaú kwan	defenders (troops)
17.	ts'im-mît	to annihilate

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

642

累	luî: to involve; to embarrass; to accumulate.
連累	lîn-luî: to involve some one.
受累	shaû luî: implicated.
拖累	t'oh luî: to involve other.

1499

勇	yŭng: bravery; daring; courage.
勇敢	yŭng-kóm: bravery; courage.
勇氣	yŭng-heì: brave spirit; valor.

1046

喪	sòng: mourning; to lament; a funeral.
喪事	sòng sẑ: funeral affair.
喪禮	sòng laĭ: funeral rites.
喪失	sòng-shat: deprived of.
喪氣	sòng heì: crest-fallen; downcast.

累 勇 喪

累 勇 喪

累 勇 喪 喪

45

遮	che: to cover, an umbrella (Cl. pa)
雨遮	uŏ che: umbrella
遮住	che-chuê: cover over; conceal

916

羞	sau, ch'aú: to put to shame; to feel ashamed.
羞恥	sau ch'í: shame.
羞辱	sau-yûk: to insult; to put to shame.

遮 羞

遮 羞

遮 羞

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

13

澤 chaâk: benefits, moist, fertile.

潤澤 yûn-chaâk: healthy, robust

2

挨 aai: toward; against.

挨晚 aai-maăn: towards evening

499

稈 kón: stubble; straw.

禾稈 wōh-kón: rice straw.

掃稈 sò kón: a straw broom.

澤 挨 稈

澤 挨稈

澤 稈

259

瞎 hât: blind

瞎眼 hât ngaăn: blind

371

稼 kà: (ka) to sow grain; agricultural work

稼穡 kā-shik! farming; sowing and reaping

稼穡艱難 kā-shik kaan-naān: the toils of a farmer's life

瞎 稼

瞎 稼

瞎 稼

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

我軍用煙-môk 遮-paî 行動向 tô河地點,復由攻擊據點掩護攻擊.步兵攻擊梯隊離開攻擊準備位置,開始tô 河.

我軍tô河成功.後續梯隊即前進增援.一連士兵抵達一良好衝-fung 準備位置,利用衝fung 射擊,進入敵軍陣地.所以能接近敵人,將敵人消滅.有等地方,需施用p'àn 火器 p'àn 射敵人砲眼,以迫敵人投降.

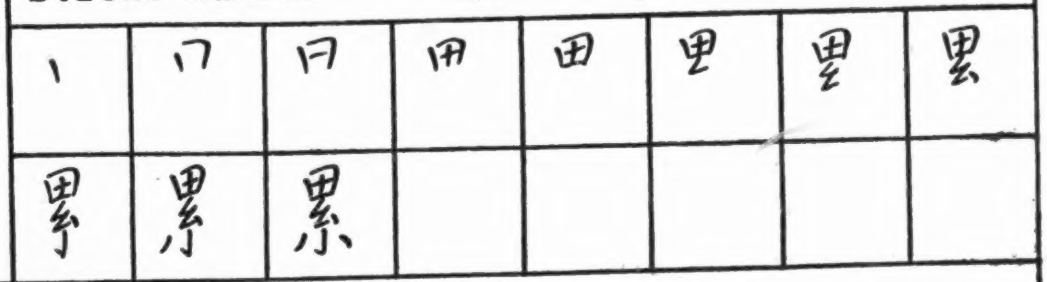
敵人雖喪失不少陣地,傷亡重大,仍思向我軍反攻但我軍英勇作戰,將其擊退.我軍擴張橋頭pô .建立堅固陣地,準備作全面大規模攻擊.

LESSON 13

WRITING MATERIAL

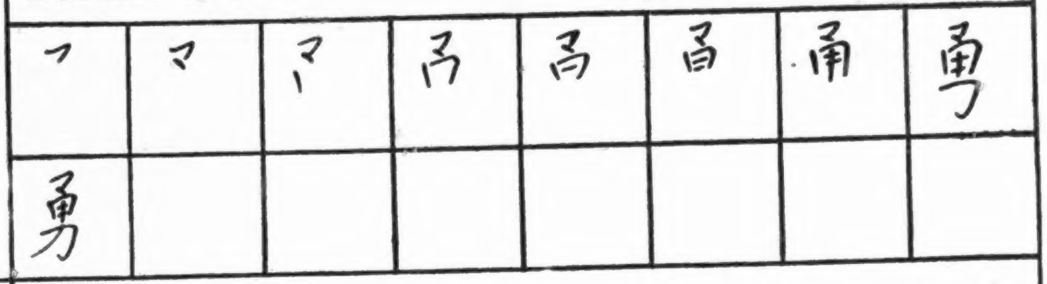
累

Character Number 642 Radical Number 102
Stroke Number 11 田



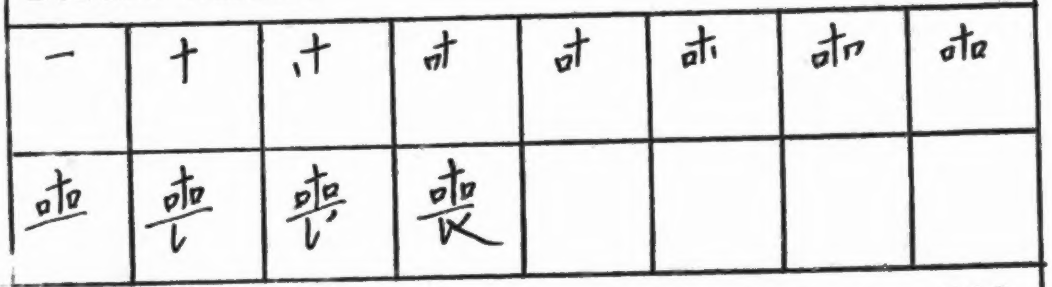
勇

Character Number 1499 Radical Number 19
Stroke Number 9 力



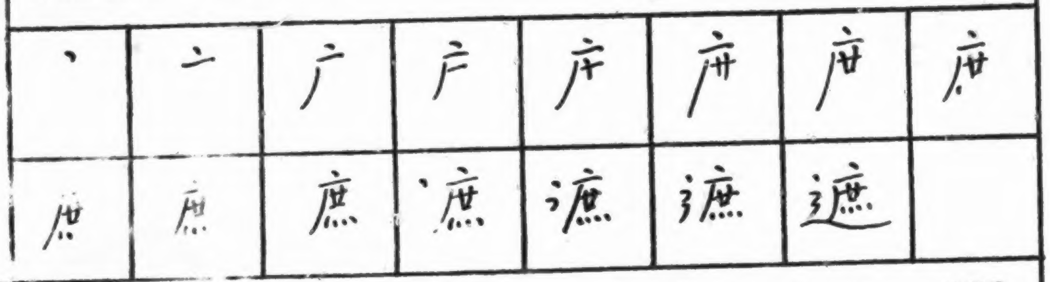
喪

Character Number 1046 Radical Number 30
Stroke Number 12 口



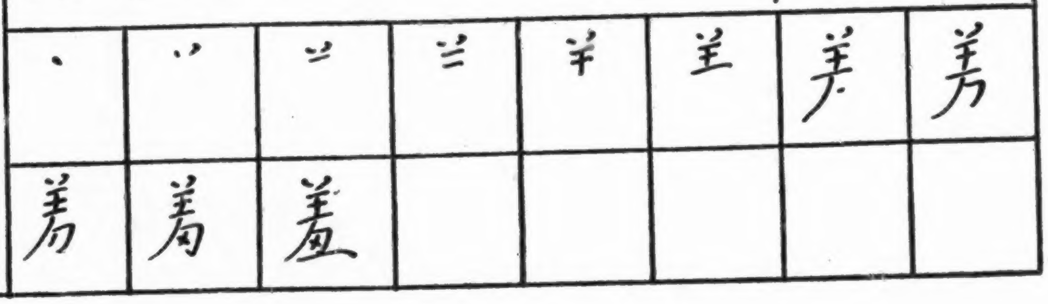
遮

Character Number 45 Radical Number 162
Stroke Number 15 辶，辵

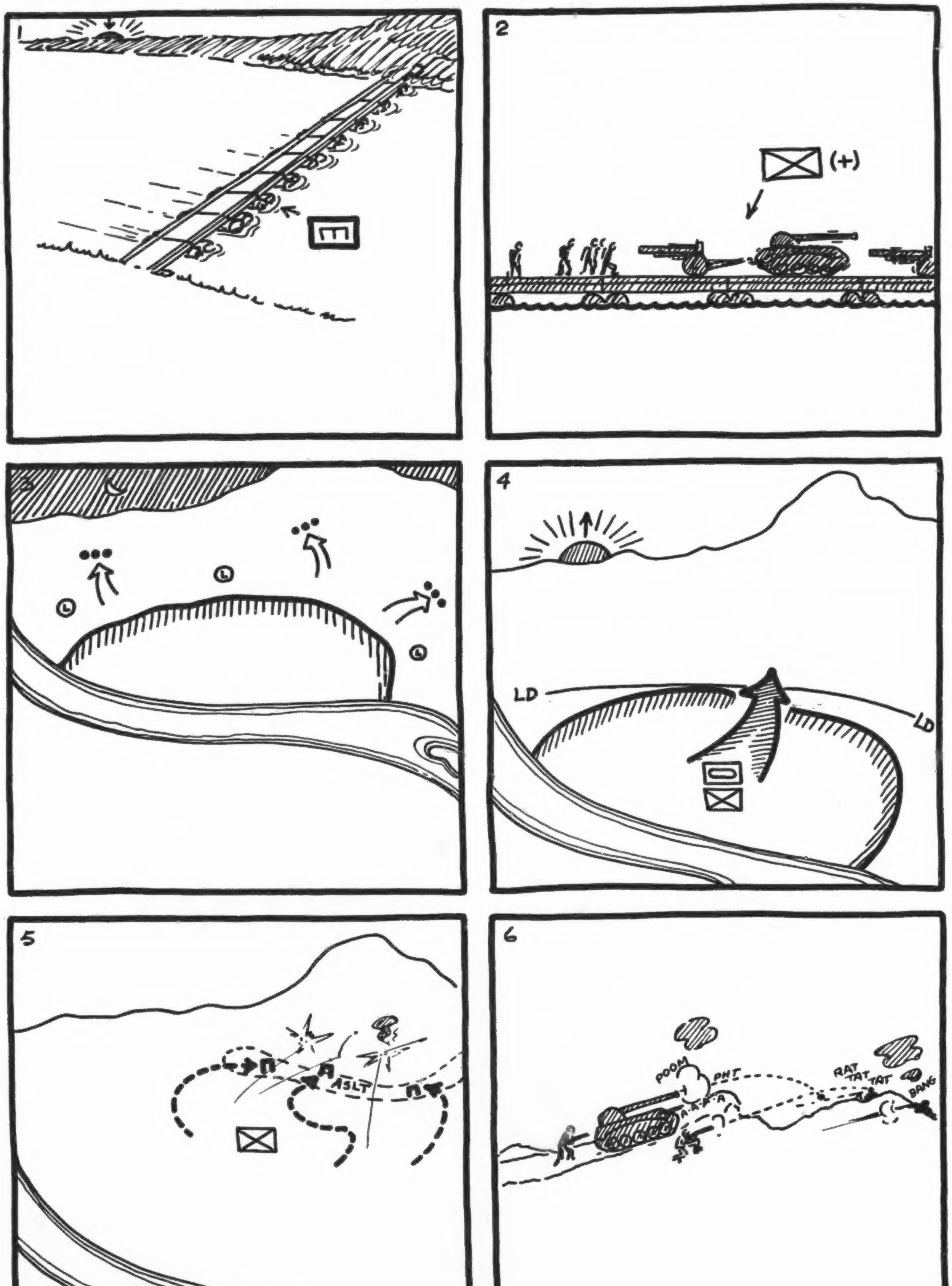


羞

Character Number 916 Radical Number 123
Stroke Number 11 ⺶，羊



LESSON 14


1
2
(+)
3
4
LD
LD
5
ASLT
6
POOM
PHT
A-A-A-A
RAT
TAT
TAT
BANG

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ngŏh kwan keî shî chún-peî ts'uēn-mîn taaî-kw'ai-mō kung-kik?

Taàp: Ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik t'ai-tuî* chìm-lĭng k'iū-t'aū-pô chi-haû, ngŏh-teî tsaû chún-peî ts'uēn-mîn taaî-kw'ai-mō kung-kik.

M: Haî faàt-tûng taaî-kw'ai-mō kung-kik kôh maăn, ngŏh-teî kè kung-ping foô-chaàk pin chúng kung-tsòk?

T: Haî faàt-tûng taaî-kw'ai-mō kung-kik kôh maăn, ngŏh-teî kè kung-ping Ĭ-king kà-chôh tô hōh kè faū-k'iū.

M: Kà-chôh faū-k'iū chi-haû, ngŏh-teî p'aaì pin chúng pô-tuî* tô hōh huì tsang-oōn kung-kik t'ai-tuî*?

T: Ngŏh-teî p'aaì chìn-ch'e t'ūng p'aaù-ping tô hōh huì tsang-oōn kung-kik t'ai-tuî*.

M: Tîm-kaaî iù tseung chìn-ch'e t'ūng p'aaù-ping pô-tuî* p'ooì-shûk peî pô-ping pô-tuî*?

T: Waî chîk-tsìp chi-oōn heì-kìn, shôh-Ĭ tseung k'uĭ-teî p'ooì-sûk peî pô-ping pô-tuî*.

M: Maăn-t'aū-haak kè shì-haû, ngŏh kwan yaŭ mi-yĕ hāng-tûng?

T: Maăn-t'aū-haak kè shì-haû, ngŏh kwan chìt-lâp ts'ìm-t'ìng-shaaù, yaû p'aaì ch'ut ch'ìk-haû huì saú-shòk tîk-yān t'ūng fōng-chî k'uĭ-teî tsô kung-sẑ waăk-chê ka-k'eūng kung-sẑ.

M: Maăn-t'aū-haak kè shì-haû, ngŏh kwan chún-peî mi-yĕ?

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Maăn-t'aū-haak kè shī-haû, ngŏh kwan yat-fong-mîn kìng-kaaì tîk-yān kè t'au-tsaâp, yat-fong-mîn chún-peî t'ing-yât chiu-t'aū-tsó kè kung-kik.

M: Chiu-t'aū-tsó kè shī-haû, ngŏh kwan p'aaì mi-yĕ pô-tuî* huì kung-kik?

T: Chiu-t'aū-tsó kè shī-haû, ngŏh kwan p'aaì pô-ping t'ūng chìn-ch'e pô-tuî* t'ung-kwòh kung-kik-ch'ut-faàt-sìn, k'uĭ-teî hoi-ch'ì kung-kik.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè pô-tuî* tîm-yeûng* kung-kik?

T: K'uĭ-teî yûng fóh-lîk t'ūng wân-tûng huì kung-kik, tsik-haî yûng chìn-ch'e kè fóh-lîk huì îm-oô pô-ping kè wân-tûng.

M: Pô-ping chìm-lĭng-chóh yat-kòh mi-yĕ kè waî-chì?

T: Pô-ping chìm-lĭng-chóh yat-kòh ch'ung-fung chún-peî waî-chì.

M: K'uĭ-teî chìm-lĭng-chóh ch'ung-fung chún-peî waî-chì chi-haû, tsaû tîm-yeûng* à?

T: K'uĭ-teî chìm-lĭng-chóh ch'ung-fung chún-peî waî-chì chi-haû, tsaû yûng ch'ung-fung shê-kik t'ūng-tîk-yān tsòk kân-shan chìn-taù.

LESSON 14

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: When did our troops plan to get the big attack into full swing?

Answer: After our attacking echelon occupied the bridgehead, we planned to launch the big attack in full swing.

Q: On the evening when the large scale attack was launched, for what kind of work were our engineers responsible?

A: On the evening when the large scale attack was launched, our engineers had already set up the pontoon bridge for river-crossing.

Q: After the pontoon bridge was set up, what units did we send across the river to reinforce the attacking echelon?

A: We sent tanks and artillery pieces across the river to reinforce the attacking echelon.

Q: Why did we have to have tanks and artillery pieces attached to the infantry units?

A: For the sake of direct support, we had them attached to the infantry units.

Q: During the night, what action did we take?

A: During the night, we established listening posts, and sent out patrols to search for the enemy, and to prevent them from digging in or strengthening their fortifications.

Q: What did we prepare during the night?

A: During the night, we provided security against the enemy's sneak attack, and in the mean time prepared for the attack to take place the next morning.

LESSON 14

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: In the morning, what units did we send out for the attack?

A: In the morning, we sent infantry units and tank units across the line of departure to initiate the attack.

Q: How did our units initiate the attack?

A: They initiated the attack by employing fire and maneuver. That is they employed tank fire to cover the maneuver of the infantry.

Q: What position has the infantry occupied?

A: The infantry has occupied an assault position.

Q: What did they do after occupying the assault position?

A: After they occupied an assault position, they used assault fire to engage in close combat with the enemy.

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. You are my best friend and I certainly will support you.
2. If you do not comply with my instruction , I will report you to your superior directly.
3. We occupied that aristrip since March of last year.
4. How can you build a pontoon bridge across the river of this width with only a handful of pontoon boats?
5. To set up a bridge is a job for the engineers.
6. Although she does not like the idea, she can do nothing but to comply.
7. The enemy had already strengthened their navy and air force.
8. What is the advantage of using a rifle in close combat?
9. Go directly to the line of departure. Perhaps you may catch up with your unit.
10. The headquarters ordered the guards to maintain security at all times. and to report anything that is unusual.
11. Do not rush. You have plenty of time.
12. She is attached to the hospital as an army nurse.
13. The enemy set up a number of listening posts along the front.
14. This is a full scale attack and I am waiting to hear the news of victory.
15. On one hand I attend college but on the other I work part of the time.
16. The army will teach you the techniques of close combat.

LESSON 14

WORD LIST

1.	chi-oŏn	to support; support
2.	chîk-tsìp	direct
3.	chìm-lĭng	to occupy (place)
4.	faŭ-k'iŭ	pontoon bridge
5.	kà	to set up (bridge)
6.	ka-k'eŭng	to strengthen
7.	kân-shan chìn-taù (kân chìn)	close combat
8.	kìng-kaaì	security; to watch
9.	kung-kik ch'ut-faàt sìn	line of departure
10.	p'ooì-shûk	to attach to
11.	ts'ìm-t'ìng-shaaù	listening post
12.	ts'uĕn-mîn	full swing, full scale
13.	waî... heì-kìn	for the sake of...

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

847

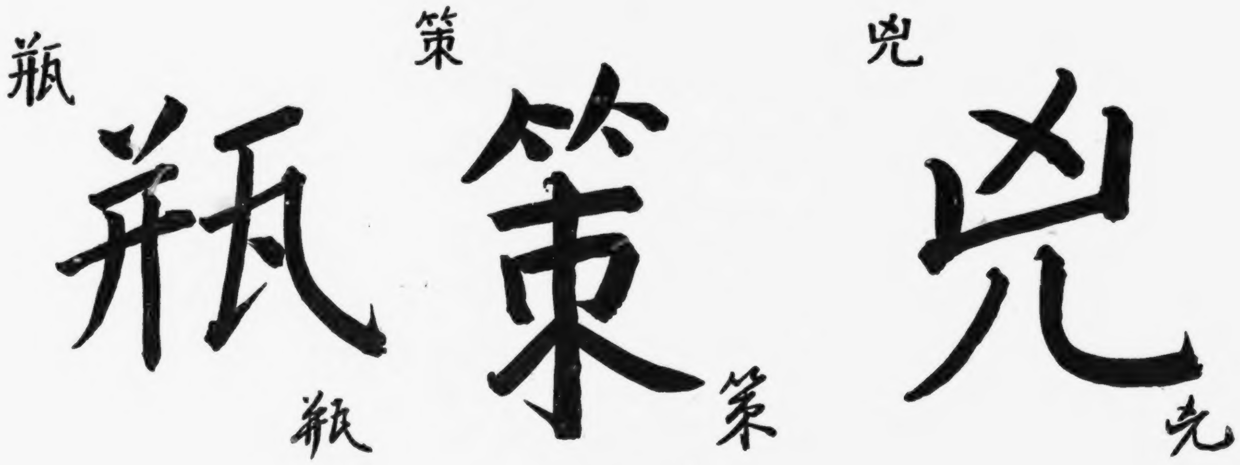
瓶	p'Īng: pitcher; jar; jug; vase.
花瓶	fa-p'Īng: a vase.
酒瓶	tsaú p'Īng: wine jar.

14

策	ch'aàk: to plan, scheme.
計策	kaĭ-ch'aàk: a plan, a scheme
策劃	ch'aàk-waâk: to plan.

323

兇	hung: violent; malevolent; savage
兇惡	hung-ɔk: wicked; malignant
兇手	hung-shaú: the murderer
兇猛	hung-maăng: fierce

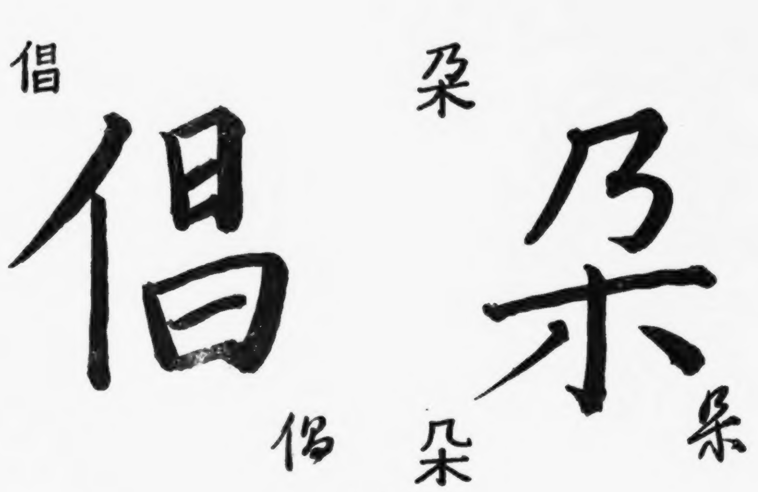


61

倡	Ch'eung: a leader· to promote
倡議	ch'eung-Ĭ: to make a motion, to propose (an idea).
倡亂	ch'eung-luên: to lead an insurrection.

1182

朵	tóh, teú: a bunch; a cluster; a (flower).
一朵花	yat tóh fa: a stem of flower; a flower.
耳朵	Ĭ-tóh: lobe of the ear.



LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

752

毅 ngaî: resolute; enduring.

毅力 ngaî-lîk: perseverance; grit.

毅然 ngaî-în: resolutely; determined.

767

尿 niû: urine.

尿缸 niû kong: jar for public convenience; urinal.

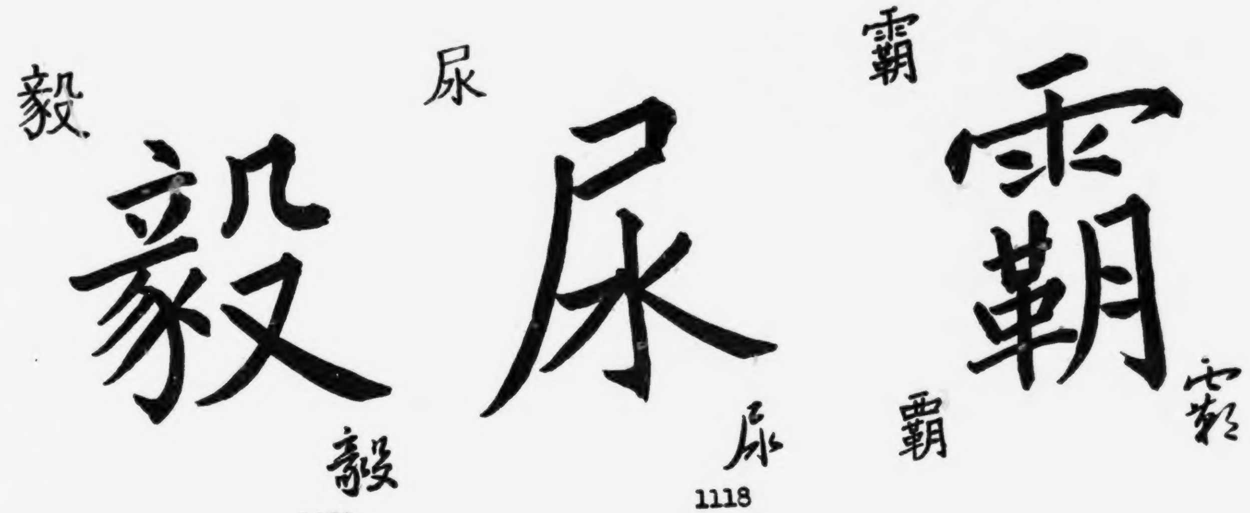
糖尿病 t'ōng-niû-pêng: diabetes.

802

霸 pà: to rule by force; tyrannize; to intimidate

霸佔 pà-chìm: encroach.

霸王 pà-wōng: a tyrant.



1070

斯 sz: this; these; any.

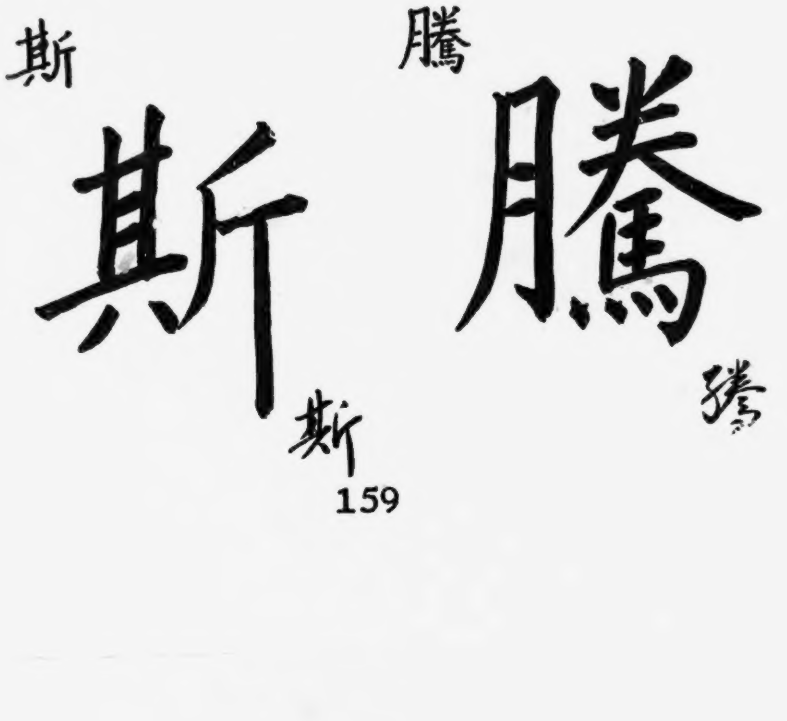
斯文 sz-mān: elegant; refined.

斯時 sz shī: at this time.

1118

騰 t'āng: mount; to rise; to leap; to gallop.

騰躍 t'āng yeûk: to leap; to gallop.



LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

策動大規模攻擊之晚上,工兵已完成 tô 河 faū 橋.戰車與砲兵即趕快過河增援攻擊梯隊.為直接支援起見,此等戰車與砲兵被配屬於步兵部隊.

是晚入黑之後,我軍設立潛聽 shaaû,又派出 ch'ik—候搜索敵人,及防止敵人做工事.

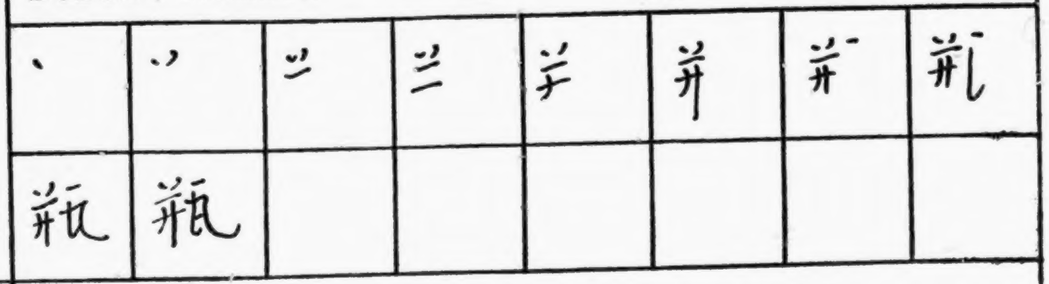
朝早,步兵同戰車通過攻擊出發線.立即開始攻擊.火力同運動,雙方並進.步兵進行神速,不久即佔領一個良好衝鋒準備位置;即由此利用衝鋒射擊,與敵人作近身戰鬥.

LESSON 14

WRITING MATERIAL

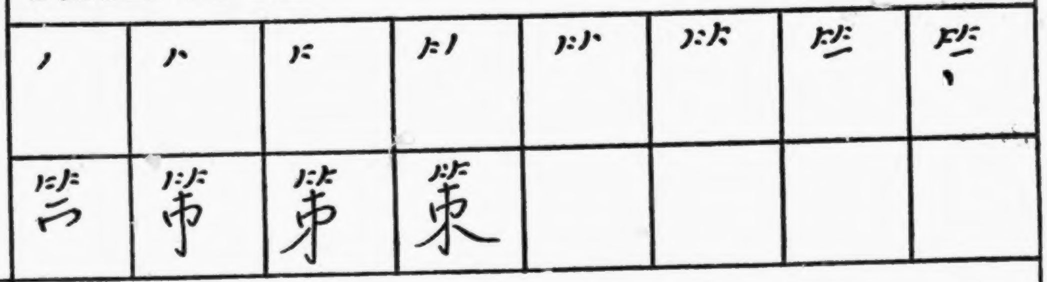
瓶

Character Number 847 Radical Number 98
Stroke Number 10 瓦



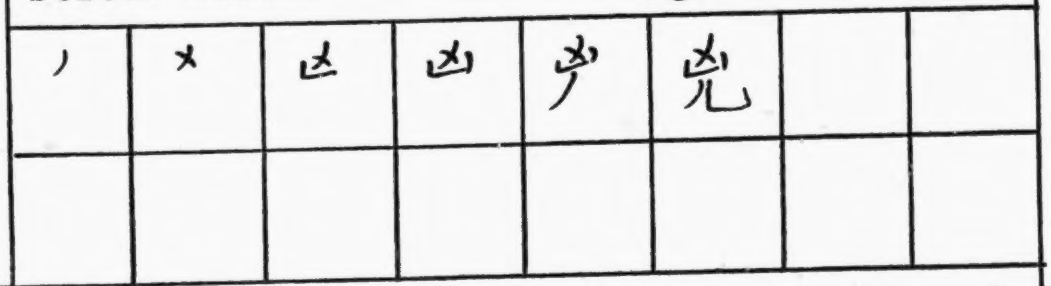
策

Character Number 14 Radical Number 118
Stroke Number 12 ⺮，竹



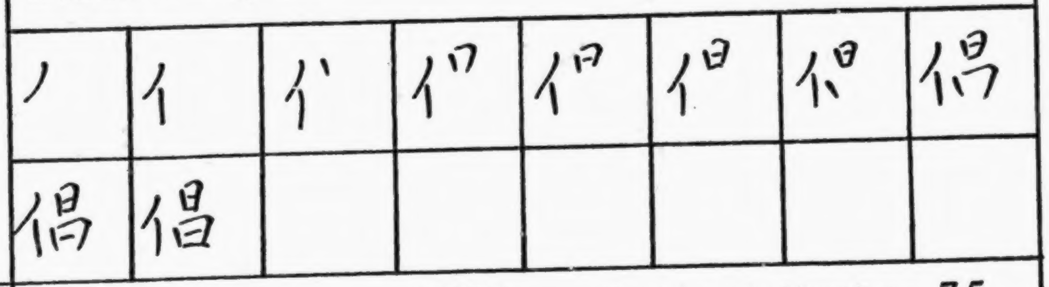
兇

Character Number 323 Radical Number 10
Stroke Number 6 儿



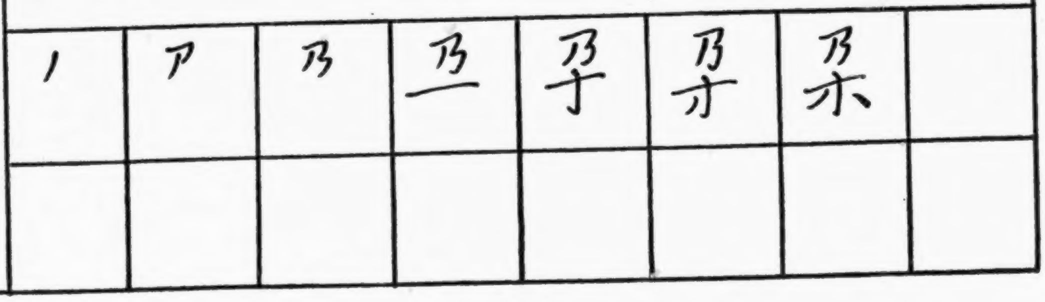
倡

Character Number 61 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 10 亻，人

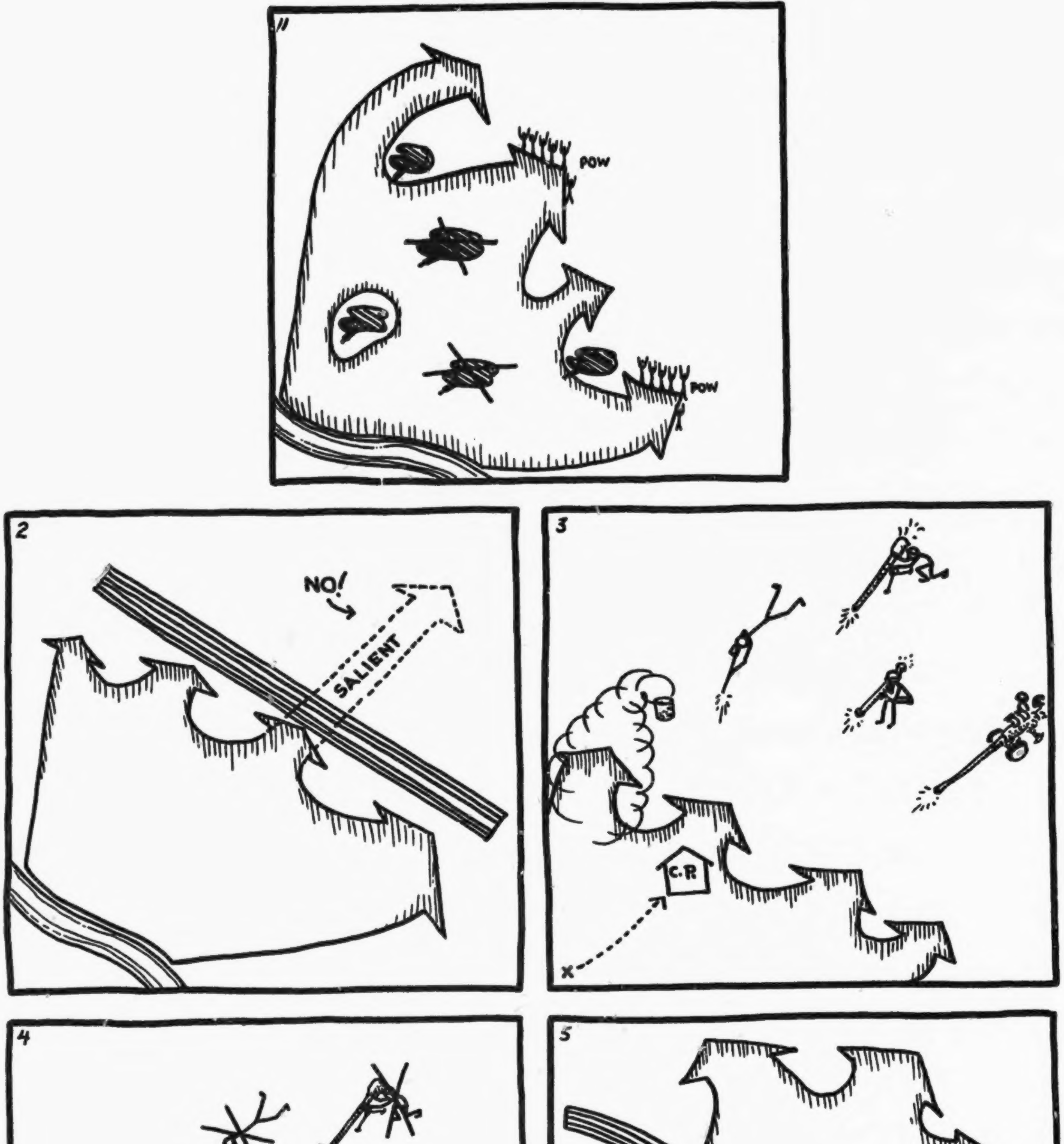


朶

Character Number 1182 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 7 木



LESSON 15


1
POW
POW
2
NO!
SALIENT
3
C.P
X
4
5

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ngŏh-teî t'ūng tîk-yān tsòk kân-shan chìn-taù chi-haû, tsuì haû tîk-yān tîm-yeûng*?

Taàp: Tsuì haû, shóh-yaŭ tîk-yān chân-teî kè taì-k'òng-ch'aaū to peî siu-mît, waâk-chê peî ch'iu-uêt.

M: Tîk kwan taì-k'òng mō-haaû, k'uĭ-teî tsaû tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk kwan taì-k'òng mō-haaû chi-haû, tîk kwan ch'ìt-t'uì; ngŏh kwan foo-wôk hó toh tîk-yān.

M: Tîk-yān ch'ìt-t'uì chi-haû, ngŏh-kwan tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh kwan heùng ts'ìn chui-kik, sham yâp tîk-yān kè lǐng-t'ó.

M: Ngŏh kwan sham yâp tîk-yān lǐng-t'ó kè shì-haû, ngŏh kwan tîm-kaaî iù kòm siú-sam?

T: Ngŏh kwan hó siú-sam, yan-waî ngŏh-teî m̀-seúng lîng chân-teî tât-ch'ut.

M: Ngŏh kwan chî-fai-shóh yîk-to tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh kwan chî-fai-shóh yîk-to kan-chuê ngŏh-teî kè pô-tuî* heùng ts'ìn t'ui-tsùn.

M: Tîk-yān yûng mi-yĕ paân-faàt hin-chaì ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik.

T: Tîk-yân yûng tsóh-kik-ping, chìn-ch'e fōng-uê p'aaù, t'ūng fà-hôk chìn tâng-tâng paân-faàt, hin-chaì ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik.

M: Ngŏh kwan tîm-yeûng* tuì-foô tîk kwan kè fà-hôk ping-heì?

T: Ngŏh kwan chung-wōh tîk kwan kè fà-hôk ping-heì.

M: Ngŏh kwan yaû p'òh-waaî tîk kwan kè mi-yĕ?

T: Ngŏh kwan yaû p'òh-waaî k'uĭ-teî kè chìn-ch'e fōng-uê p'aaù.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Tîk-yān kè mi-yĕ peî ngŏh-teî t'aì-kìn?

T: Tîk-yān kè mō-tsôh-lîk p'aaù t'ūng fôh-tsìn p'aaù kè p'aaù-haú-îm peî ngŏh kwan t'aì-kìn.

M: K'uĭ-teî kè p'aaù-waî* peî ngŏh kwan kè mi-yĕ p'òh-waaî?

T: K'uĭ-teî kè p'aaù-waî* peî ngŏh kwan pô-ping p'aaù-ping kè fôh-lîk p'òh-waaî.

M: Ngŏh kwan kung-kik kè kìt-kwôh tìm yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh kwan kè kung-kik hó shìng-kung, pìn shìng tât-p'òh.

LESSON 15

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After we had engaged in close combat with the enemy, what did the enemy finally do?

Answer: Finally all pockets of resistance of the enemy's position were cleaned out or by-passed.

Q: When the enemy's resistance became futile, what did they do?

A: After the enemy's resistance became futile, they evacuated. We captured a large number of the enemy.

Q: After the enemy withdrew, what did we do?

A: We pursued the enemy, and penetrated into the enemy's territory.

Q: When we penetrated into the enemy's territory, why did we have to be so careful?

A: We were very careful because we did not want to form a salient at our position.

Q: What did our command post do?

A: Our command post followed our units and pushed forward.

Q: What method did the enemy employ to contain our attack?

A: The enemy employed snipers, antitank guns, and chemical warfare, etc., to contain our attack.

Q: How did we face the enemy's chemical weapons?

A: Our force neutralized the enemy's chemical weapons.

Q: What did we destroy that belonged to the enemy?

A: We destroyed their antitank guns.

Q: What did we see that belonged to the enemy?

LESSON 15

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: The muzzle flashes of the enemy's recoilless rifles and rocket launchers were spotted by our force.

Q: By what were their gun positions destroyed?

A: Their gun positions were destroyed by the fire of our infantry and artillery.

Q: What was the result of our attack?

A: Our attack was successful and became a break-through.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Your unit will advance from the right and mine will push forward from the left.
2. With whom are you going to consult about the matter?
3. The enemy broke through our defense, but we are not going to retreat.
4. Because of the lack of ammunition, our resistance becomes futile.
5. To form a salient at this time is too dangerous.
6. When we withdraw from this area, we will leave one hundred men to form a pocket of resistance.
7. The muzzle flash was seen miles away last night.
8. From the various intelligence reports, we may be able to figure out all the gun positions of the enemy.
9. The restaurant has become our headquarters recently.
10. They pushed forward ten miles last night, but they retreated twenty miles this morning.
11. The attacking echelon by-passed the enemy's mine-field and obstacles.
12. Shall we pursue the retreating enemy or clean out all the pockets of resistance first?
13. What would you do in case of chemical warfare?
14. Do you know of any way to neutralize the chemical weapons used by the enemy?

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. We have no chance to make a breakthrough without food and ammunition.

16. If our troops push forward too rapidly, we will be in a dangerous position.

LESSON 15

WORD LIST

1.	chìn-ch'e fōng-uê p'aaù	antitank gun
2.	ch'ìt-t'uì	to retreat, withdraw
3.	ch'iu-uêt	to by-pass
4.	chui-kik	to pursue
5.	chung-wōh	to neutralize
6.	fà-hôk chìn	chemical warfare
7.	heùng ts'ìn t'ui-tsùn	to push forward
8.	p'aaù-haú-îm	muzzle flash
9.	p'aaù-waî*	gun position
10.	pìn shìng	to become
11.	siu-mît	to annihilate, destroy
12.	taî-k'òng-ch'aaū	pocket of resistance
13.	taî-k'òng mō-haaû	resistance becomes futile
14.	tâ-ch'ut	salient
15.	tât-p'òh	to break-through; break-through
16.	tuì-foô	to face
17.	t'ui-tsùn	to push, advance
18.	saì-kw'ăn*	germ; bacteria

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

58

漲 cheùng: to flood; over flow

水漲 shuí cheùng: the water rises

1119

突 tât: to rush out; to offend; suddenly.

突然 tât-în: suddenly; without warning

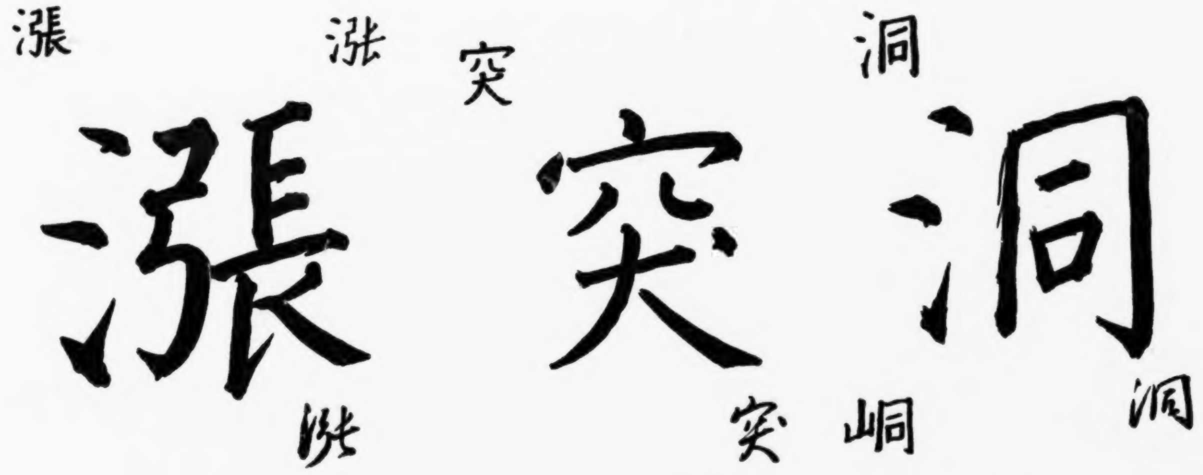
突出 tât-ch'ut: to project.

1361

洞 tûng: to see through; to perceive; a cave; cavity.

洞悉 tûng sik: to know thoroughly.

山洞 shaan tûng: a cave; cavern.



561

菌 kw'án: mushroom; fungus; mold.

地菌 teî kw'án: mushroom.

微菌 meī-kw'án: germs.

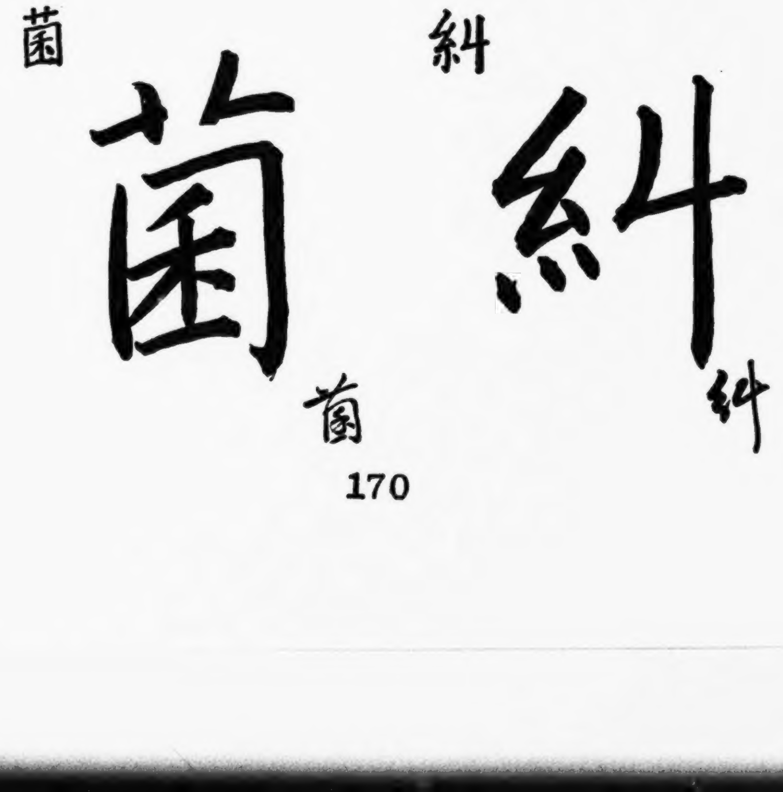
細菌 shaì-kw'án: bateria.

1120

糾 taú: to correct; to examine; to connect; to join; to combine; to associate.

糾正 taú-chìng: to correct.

糾紛 taú-fan: complication.



LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

308

筐 hong: an open basket; a couch

竹筐 chuk hong: bamboo basket

筐床 hong-ch'ōng: a square couch

567

顆 kw'óh: a kernel; cl of small things as pearls, etc.; also of trees

一顆樹 yat kw'óh shuê: one tree.

930

耍 shá: to sport; to play.

玩耍 waān-shá: to play.

遊耍 yaū shá: to stroll.

筐 顆 耍

筐 顆 耍

筐 颗 耍

1482

讓 yeûng: to give away; to yield; to resign.

讓位 yeûng-waî: to give place; to abdicate

退讓 t'uì-yeûng: to yield; to retire.

1411

挖 waàt: to excavate; to dig; to scoop up; to gouge.

挖井 waàt tséng: to dig a well.

讓 挖

讓 挖

讓 挖

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

最後，所有敵人陣地之抵抗 ch'aaū 均被消滅，或被超越。我軍 foo- lŏ 敵人甚多。我軍深入敵人領土，但進行極為小心，不想令陣地突出。

我軍指揮所向前推進。敵人仍作困獸之鬥。出盡方法與兵器，如戰車防禦砲，化學兵器，欲牽制我軍攻擊所未用者，祇是細菌與 hât 械而已。我軍中和敵軍之化學兵器，又破壞敵軍之戰車防禦砲。

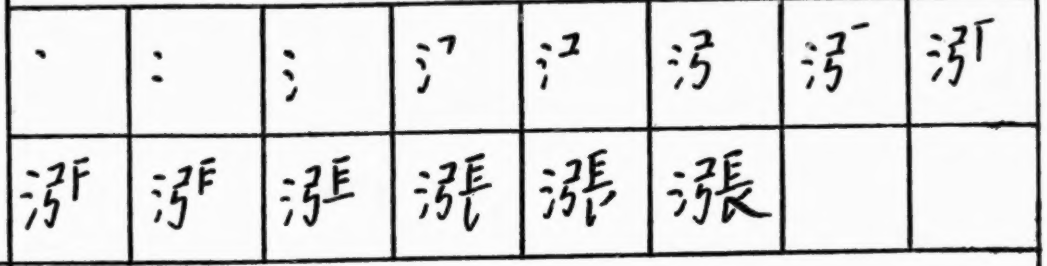
敵人之無後座力砲，與及火箭砲之砲口 îm 為我軍發現即被我軍步砲兵之火力破壞。我軍攻擊成功，變成突破。

LESSON 15

WRITING MATERIAL

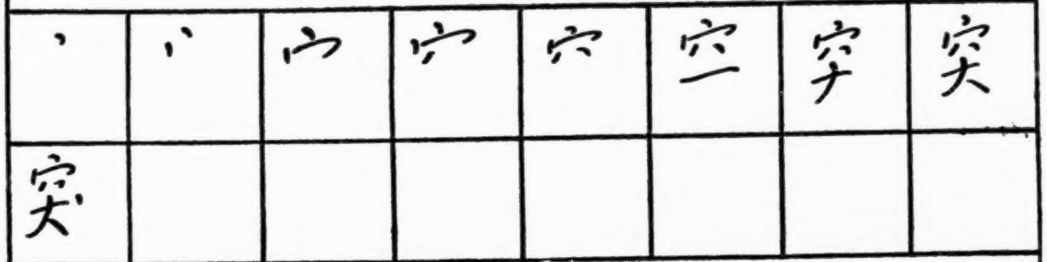
漲

Character Number 58　　Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 14　　氵, 水



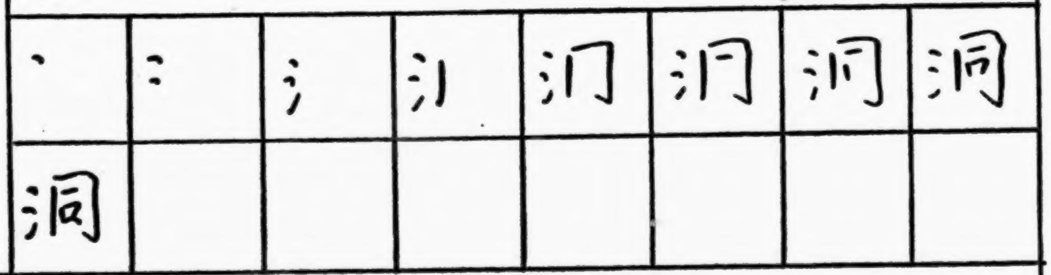
突

Character Number 1119　　Radical Number 116
Stroke Number 9　　穴



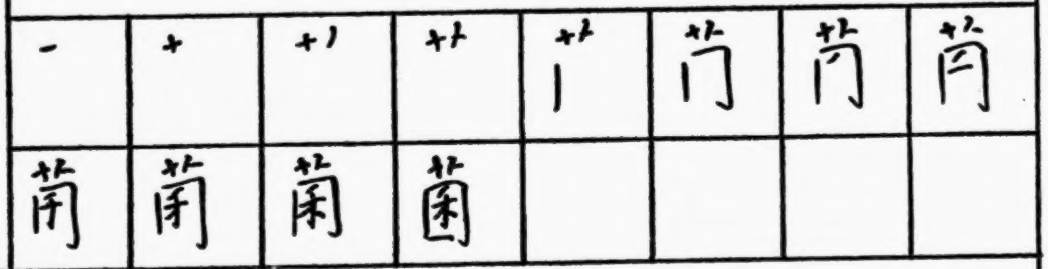
洞

Character Number 1361　　Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 9　　氵, 水



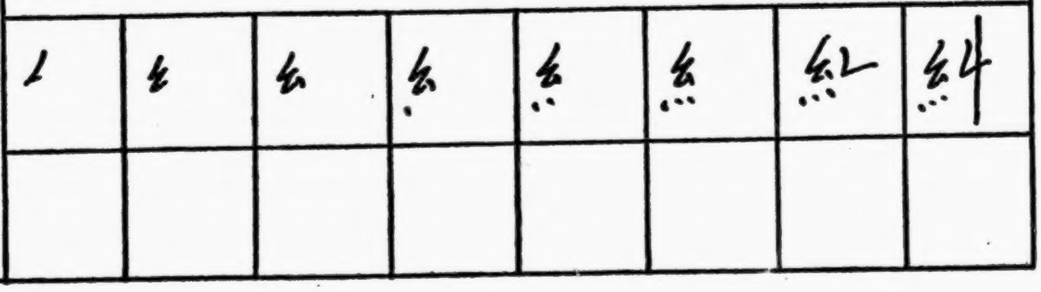
菌

Character Number 561　　Radical Number 140
Stroke Number 12　　艹, 艸

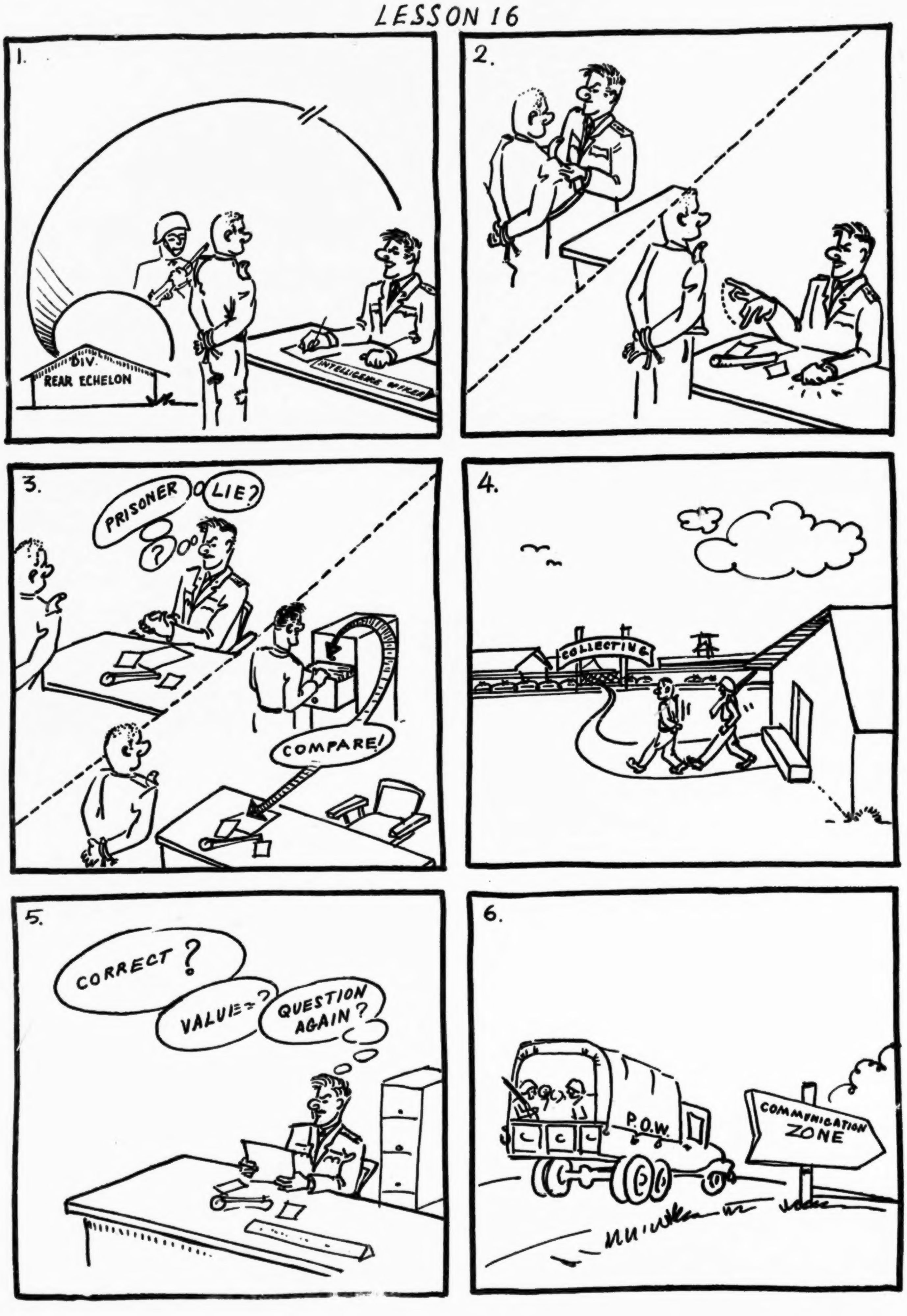


糾

Character Number 1120　　Radical Number 120
Stroke Number 8　　糹, 糸



LESSON 16


1.
DIV.
REAR ECHELON
INTELLIGENCE OFFICER
2.
3.
PRISONER
LIE?
?
COMPARE!
4.
COLLECTING
5.
CORRECT?
VALUE≈?
QUESTION AGAIN?
6.
P.O.W.
COMMUNICATION ZONE

. LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ngŏh-teî foo-lŏ-chóh tîk-yān chi-haû, ngŏh-teî tîm-yeûng* ch'uê-leĭ k'uĭ-teî à?

Taàp: Ngŏh-teî tseung kóh ti chìn-foo aàt faan huì haû-fong kè sz-lîng-pô.

M: Ngŏh teî tîm-kaaî iù sùn-mân chìn-foo?

T: Waî tak-tô shóh iù kè chûng-iù ts'ìng-pò heî-kìn, ts'ìng-pò-koon haî sz kè haû-fong-t'ai-tuî* sùn-mân chìn-foo.

M: Meî sùn-mân chìn-foo chi-ts'ìn, ts'ìng-pò-koon ying-koi tsô ti mi-yĕ?

T: Meî sùn-mân chìn-foo chi-ts'ìn, ts'ìng-pò-koon sin iù saú-ch'ā chìn-foo kè ts'uēn shan, t'aî-hă yaŭ mŏ mān-kîn*.

M: Tuì-ue kóh ti mān-kîn*, ts'ìng-pò-koon ying-koi tîm-yeûng* ch'uê-leĭ?

T: Tuì-ue kóh ti mān-kîn*, ts'ìng-pò-koon ying-koi ts'eūng-saì shám-ch'ā.

M: Ts'ìng-pò-koon ts'eūng-saì shám-ch'ā-chóh kóh ti mān-kîn* chi-haû, ts'ìng-pò-koon ying-koi tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ts'ìng-pò-koon kan-kuì mān-kîn*, sùn-mân chìn-foo yaŭ-kwaan kè ts'ìng-pò.

M: Ts'ìng-pò-koon sùn-mân-chóh ni kòh chìn-foo chi-haû, uē-kwóh k'uĭ waaî-î foo-lŏ kóng taaî-wâ, k'uĭ ying-koi tîm-yeûng*?

T: ts'ìng-pò-koon ying-koi tseung foo-lŏ kè haú-kung t'ūng taî-î shuè kè ts'ìng-pò peî-kaaù yat-hă, t'aî-hă k'uĭ kè ts'ìng-pŏ hóh-k'aaù m̀-hóh-k'aaù.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Chìn-foo king-kwòh sùn-mân chi-haû, tsaû peî taaì huì pin shuè?

T: Chìn-foo king-kwòh sùn-mân chi-haû, yaū waî-ping taaì k'uĭ faan huì chìn-foo tsaâp-chung-ch'uè.

M: Uē-kwóh ni kòh chìn-foo kông kè ts'ìng-pò yaû chìng-k'òk yaû yaŭ kà-chîk, tsaû iù tîm-yeûng* ne?

T: Uē-kwóh k'uĭ kông kè ts'ìng-pò yaû chìng-k'òk yaû yaŭ kà-chîk, tsaû iù tsoì mân k'uĭ.

M: Ngŏh-teî kan-kuì chìn-foo kè ts'ìng-pò laĭ tsô mi-yĕ?

T: Ngŏh-teî kan-kuì chìn-foo kè ts'ìng-pò laĭ tsô tîk ts'ìng kè p'oòn-tuèn, hóh-ĭ uê-ch'ak tîk-yān kè tsòk-chìn kaì-waâk.

M: Tsuì-haû ngŏh-teî tseung shóh yaŭ kè chìn-foo to taaì huì pin shuè?

T: Tsuì-haû shóh yaŭ kè chìn-foo to peî waî-ping taaì huì kaau-t'ung k'ui kè chìn-foo kaam-kàm-shóh.

LESSON 16

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After we had captured the enemy soldiers, how did we handle them?

Answer: We had those prisoners-of-war sent back to the rear headquarters.

Q: Why did we have to interrogate the prisoners-of-war?

A: For the purpose of securing important information which we needed, the intelligence officer interrogated the prisoners-of-war at the rear echelon of the division.

Q: What should an intelligence officer do before he interrogates a prisoner-of-war?

A: Before interrogating the prisoner-of-war, the intelligence officer should first search the prisoner-of-war to see if he possesses any papers.

Q: How should the intelligence officer handle those papers?

A: The intelligence officer should examine those papers thorougly.

Q: Upon thoroughly examining those papers, what should the intelligence officer do?

A: The intelligence officer, on the basis of those documents, questions the prisoner of war regarding information relating to the documents.

Q: After questioning the prisoner-of-war, should the intelligence officer suspect that the prisoner-of-war has lied, what should he do?

LESSON 16

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: The intelligence officer should have the prisoner-of-war's testimony compared with the information secured from other sources, to see whether the information was reliable.

Q: After the prisoner-of-war has been questioned, to where is he sent?

A: After the prisoner-of-war has been questioned, he is sent under guard back to the prisoner-of-war collecting point.

Q: If the information which the prisoner-of-war gave was correct and valuable, what should we do?

A: If the information which he gave was correct and valuable, it was necessary to question him again.

Q: What did we do with the information which the prisoner-of-war gave?

A: We, on the basis of the information, worked out the estimate of the enemy's situation. This enables us to predict the enemy's operation plan.

Q: Eventually, to where did we send all the prisoners-of-war?

A: Eventually, all the prisoners-of-war were sent under guard to the prisoner-of-war enclosure in the communication zone.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Your information is most valuable to our government.
2. Guards! Take this man to the POW collecting point.
3. The testimony seems convincing, but I still have some doubts.
4. I suspect that she is not a nurse but an enemy agent.
5. He makes promises which he cannot keep.
6. Please bring him to my office as soon as he finishes eating.
7. After the medical examination, you will be interrogated.
8. Did you get any valuable information from the interrogation?
9. You may guard the gate while I search this floor.
10. How can you evaluate this document if you do not understand it.
11. These are important government papers. Please keep them in a safe place.
12. The communication zone is about fifteen miles over the other side of the river.
13. She is the most reliable courier I've known. You can trust her.
14. I will handle this as soon as I finish eating. So don't worry.
15. The rear echelon is stationed approximately five miles south of our unit.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. They send the POW to headquarters under heavy guard.

17. Do you think you can manage this matter without me?

LESSON 16

WORD LIST

1.	aàt faan huì	to send to... under guard
2.	chìn-foo	prisoner of war
3.	chìn-foo kaam-kàm-shóh	prisoner of war enclosure (or compound)
4.	chìn-foo tsaâp-chung-ch'uè	prisoner of war collecting point
5.	chìng-k'òk	correct
6.	ch'ué-leĭ	to manage, handle
7.	haû-fong t'ai-tuî*	rear echelon
8.	haú-kung	testimony
9.	mān-kîn*	document, paper
10.	shám-ch'ā	to evaluate, examine
11.	saú-ch'ā	to search
12.	sùn-mân	to interrogate; interrogation
13.	uê-ch'ak	to predict, foresee, forecast
14.	waaī-ī	to suspect, doubt
15.	waî-ping	guard
16.	yaŭ kà-chîk	valuable

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

365

揺 iū: to shake; move; agitate

揺船 iū shuēn: to row a boat

揺動 iū-tûng: to shake; oscillate

揺擺 iū-paaí: swaggering

招揺 chiu-iū: trouble making; show off

999

涉 shìp: to concern; to wade.

干涉 kon-shìp: to involve; to interfere; to implicate.

交涉 kaau-shìp: to negotiate with.

225

複 fuk: double; to repeat

複雜 fuk-tsaâp: complicate

重複 ch'ūng-fuk: to duplicate; double

搖　涉　複

搖　涉　複

揺　涉　複

860

騙 p'ìn: to cheat; to swindle; to defraud.

受騙 shaû p'ìn: to be cheated.

騙局 p'ìn kûk: plan for swindle; swindle set-up

1082

貸 t'aaì: lend (on interest).

借貸 tsè-t'aaì: to lend money.

騙　貸

騙　貸

骗.　贷

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

1266

焦 tsiu: scorched; dried up; anxious.

焦點 tsiu-tím: focus.

焦慮 tsiu-luî: anxious; worrying thought.

1153

丟 tiu: to throw away; to cast down; to lose.

丟開 tiu hoi: to put aside; not to mention.

丟去 tiu huì: to throw away.

丟棄 tiu heì: to reject; to throw away.

708

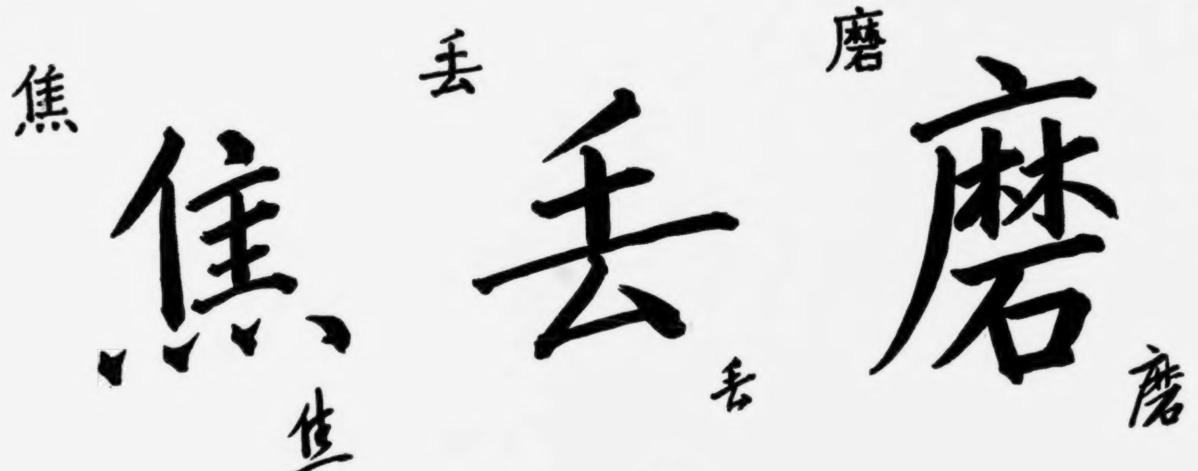
磨 mōh: to grind; to sharpen; to rub; to polish.

磨刀 mōh to: to grind a knife.

磨利 mōh-leí: to sharpen.

磨練 mōh-lîn: to work at; to learn by experience; to discipline.

磨房 mōh-fōng: a mill.



1023

純 shūn: sincere; pure; unmixed; uniform.

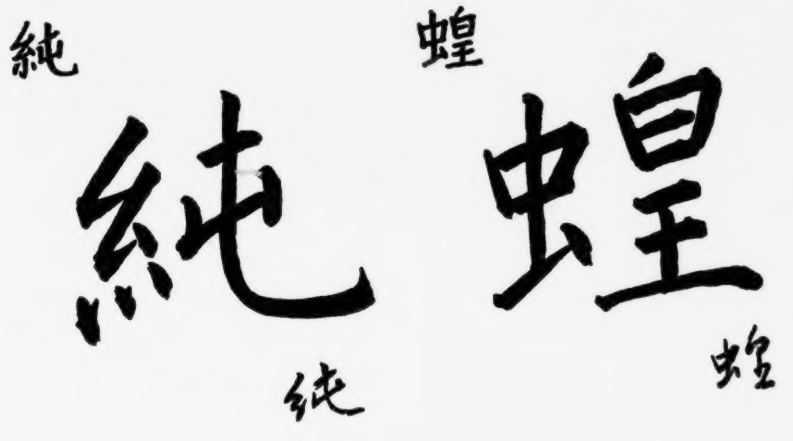
純熟 shūn-shûk: tame.

純正 shūn-chìng: upright.

1437

蝗 wōng: locust.

蝗虫 wōng-ch'ūng: common locust.



LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

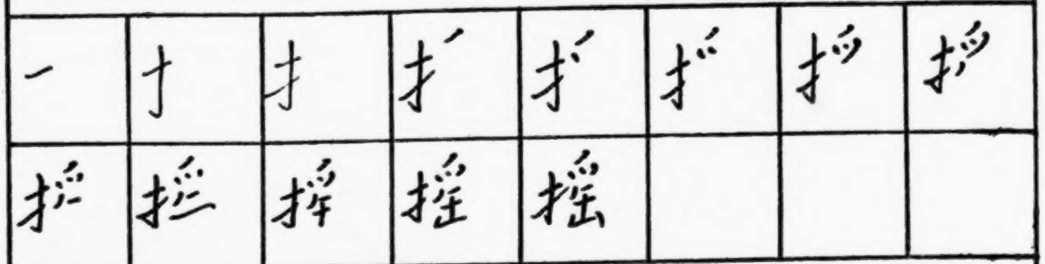
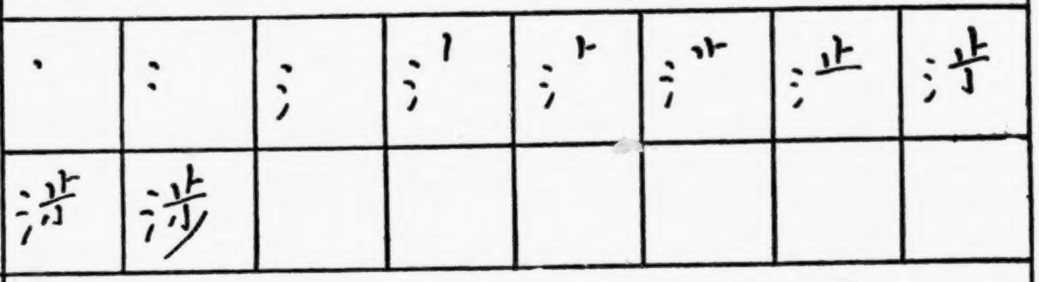
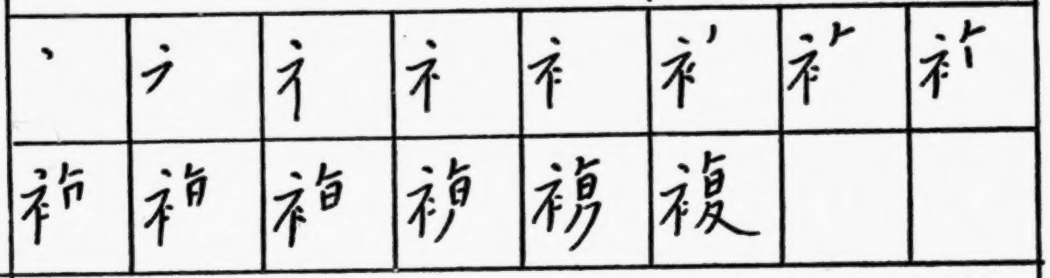
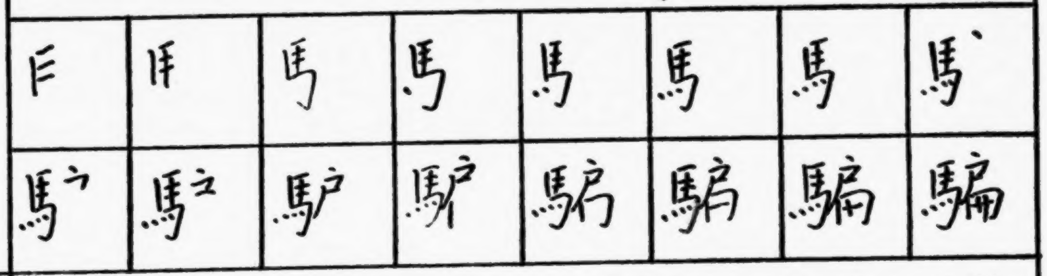
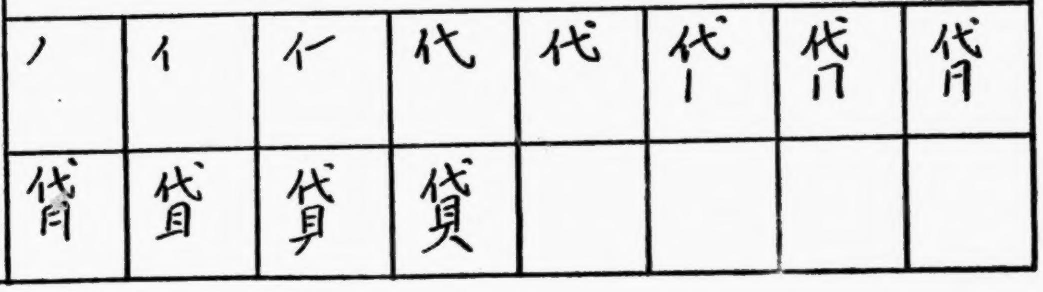
為得到所需之重要情報起見.師部情報官即在後方梯隊訊問捕獲之戰foo .情報官先命向戰-foo 身上 saŭ查,如saŭ 得文件,將文件詳細shâm- 查,如發現文件與戰事有關.即向戰-foo 訊問以求獲得有價值之情報.

情報官訊問之後,如懷疑戰-foo 講大話,則將第二處所得之情報,互相比較,看其情報是否可靠.然後由衛兵帶戰-foo 回 foo - lŏ 集中處.

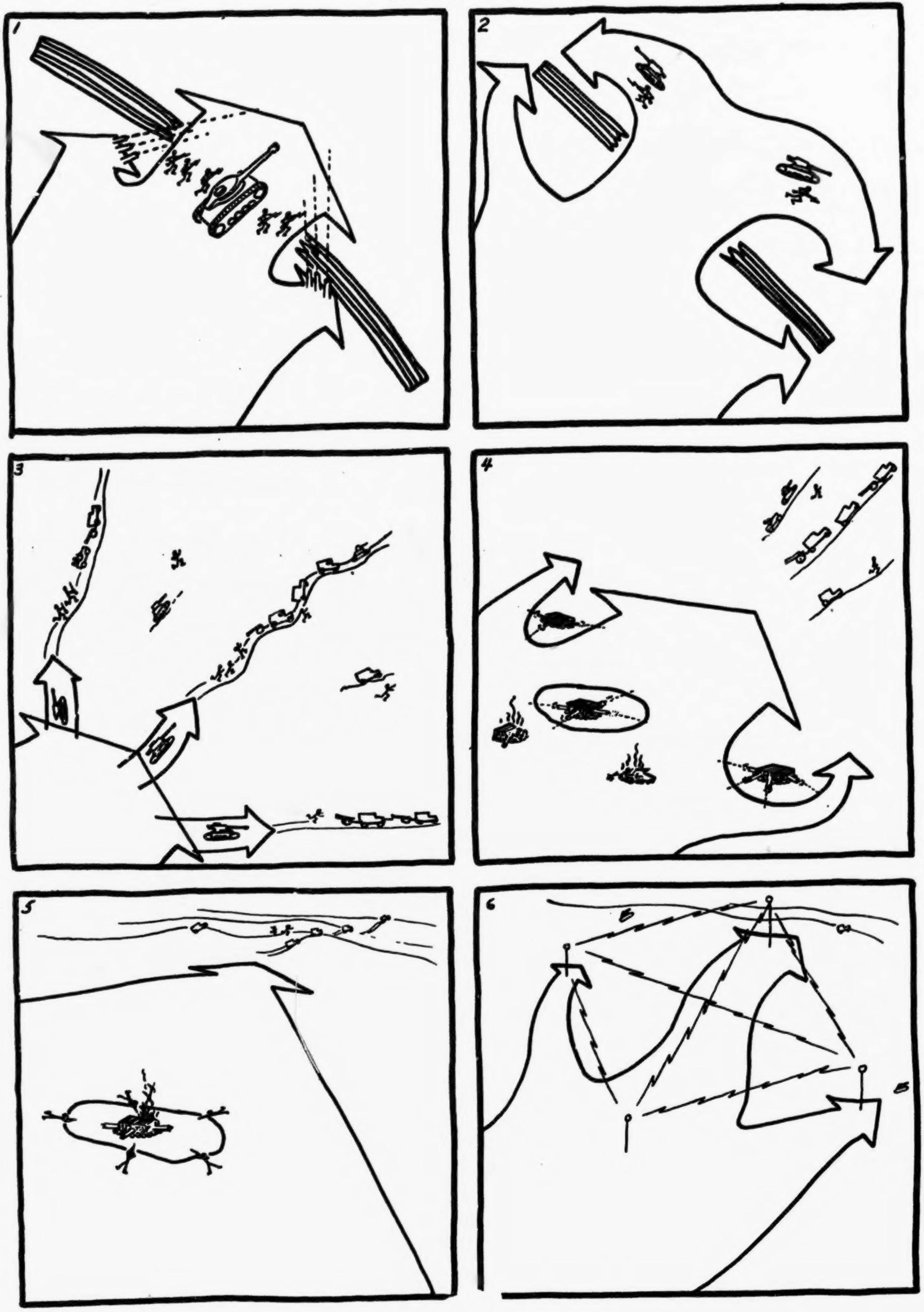
如所講之情報不祇正確,且有價值,即再詳細追問.最後,所有戰 -foo 均由衛兵帶往交通區之戰 -foo 監禁所.

LESSON 16

WRITING MATERIAL

揺	Character Number 365 Stroke Number 13 Radical Number 64 扌，手 
渉	Character Number 999 Stroke Number 10 Radical Number 85 氵，水 
複	Character Number 225 Stroke Number 14 Radical Number 145 衤，衣 
騙	Character Number 860 Stroke Number 19 Radical Number 187 馬 
貸	Character Number 1082 Stroke Number 12 Radical Number 154 貝 

LESSON 17



LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ngŏh-teî kan-kuì kòk fong-mîn kè ts'ìng-pò, tuì tîk ts'ìng hâ-chôh p'oòn-tuèn chi-haû, ngŏh-teî tsaû tîm-yeûng*?

Taàp: Ngŏh-teî kan-kuì yaū kòk fong-mîn tak-tò* kè ts'ìng-pò, tuì tîk ts'ìng hâ-chôh p'oòn-tuèn chi-haû, k'uèt-tîng kung-kik kè kaì-waâk.

M: Ngŏh kwan ni ts'z̀ tuì tîk-yān tsòk chìng-mîn yik-waâk chak-mîn kung-kik?

T: Ngŏh kwan ni ts'z̀ tuì tîk-yān tsòk chìng-mîn kung-kik.

M: K'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* tuì tîk-yān tsòk chìng-mîn kè kung-kik?

T: K'uĭ-teî tsaâp-chung fôh-lîk, hîp-t'ūng pô-ping t'ūng chìn-ch'e tuì tîk-yān tsòk chìng-mîn kung-kik.

M: K'uĭ-teî tât-p'òh-chôh tîk-yān kè pin t'iū fōng-sìn?

T: K'uĭ-teì tât-p'òh-chôh tîk-yān kè chuê-iù-taì-k'òng-sìn.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè pô-ping t'ūng chong-kaàp pô-tuî* yûng mi-yĕ chìn-shût?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè pô-ping t'ūng chong-kaàp pô-tuî* yûng ue-ooì wân-tûng, k'uĭ-teî leŭng-yîk paau-waì tîk-yān.

M: Tîk-yān peî ngŏh kwan paau-waī chi-haû, tîk-yān tsaû seúng tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yān peî ngŏh kwan paau-waì chi-haû, tsaû seúng t'uèt-leì chìn-ch'eūng, k'uĭ-teì kôn-faaì haû-t'uì keì ying-leĭ.

M: Tîk-yān haû-t'uì kè shì-haû, ngŏh kwan yûng mi-yĕ pô-tuî* chui-kik tîk-yān?

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Ngŏh kwan yûng kei-haaî-fà pô-tuî* chui-kik tîk-yān.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè chui-kik tsung-tuî tîm-yeûng* chui-kik tîk-yān?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè chui-kik tsung-tuî yat-lô p'òh-waaî tîk-yān kè kaán-taan kung-sẑ.

M: Yaŭ ti tîk-yān tîm-yeûng* taì-k'òng?

T: Yaŭ ti tîk-yān kè taì-k'òng-ch'aaū waān-k'eūng taì-k'òng.

M: Ngŏh kwan yaû tîm-yeûng* huì suk-ts'ing tîk-yān?

T: Ngŏh kwan yaû ch'iu-uêt chui-kik tîk-yān kè chuê-lîk, yaū tâk-chúng pô-tuî* huì suk-ts'ing k'uĭ-teî.

M: Chui-kik kè shī-haû, ngŏh kwan kòk taan-waî* tîm-yeûng* t'ūng poón-tuî t'ung-sùn?

T: Chui-kik kè shī-haû, ngŏh kwan kòk taan-waî* yûng mō-sìn-tîn t'ūng poón-tuî t'ung-sùn.

LESSON 17

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After we, on the basis of the information from various sources, had worked out the estimate of the enemy situation, what did we do?

Answer: After we, on the basis of the informations secured from various source had worked out the estimate of the enemy situation, we decided the plan of attack.

Q: Did we launch a frontal attack or flanking attack against the enemy this time?

A: We made a frontal attack against the enemy this time.

Q: How did we make a frontal attack against the enemy?

A: By massing fires and coordinating the infantry with tanks, we made a frontal attack against the enemy.

Q: Which enemy's defense line did our force break through?

A: They broke through the enemy's main line of resistance.

Q: What kind of tactics did our infantry and armored elements adopt?

A: Our infantry and armored elements made a turning movement. Our force encircled the enemy from two flanks (double-envelopment).

Q: After the enemy had been surrounded by our force, what did the enemy attempt to do?

A: After the enemy had been surrounded by our force, they attempted to disengage from the battlefield. They retreated in a hurry for several miles.

LESSON 17

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: When the enemy retreated, what kind of units did we employ to pursue the enemy?

A: We employed the mechanized units to pursue the enemy.

Q: How did our pursuit column pursue the enemy?

A: Our pursuit column destroyed the hasty fortifications of the enemy all along the route.

Q: How did some of the enemy resist?

A: Some of the enemy's pockets of resistance resisted stubbornly.

Q: How did our force mop up the enemy?

A: Our force pursued the enemy's main force by by-passing, and let special troops mop them up.

Q: At the time of pursuit, how did various units of our force communicate with the main body?

A: At the time of pursuit, various units of our force communicated with the main body by radio.

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I ran all the way home, and I am still afraid.
2. She is stubborn and seldom changes her opinion about him.
3. With reinforcement from headquarters, we can employ a turning movement to outflank the emeny's units.
4. A special column of armored units will be here soon.
5. He was disengaged from the battle-field.
6. The main body will arrive two hours later.
7. Our group was encircled by the enemy, but we made a breakthrough at night.
8. Tell me where is your main force and who is the commanding officer.
9. You can do it because you are young and able.
10. These simple field fortifications are not satisfactory. You have to set them up again within an hour for another inspection.
11. Our main line of resistance is very strong and will be able to withstand any attack.
12. Have you decided to bypass the enemy or attack them from the flanks?
13. The armored unit came here in a hurry last night.
14. We tried a frontal attack but failed.
15. The enemy keep their main force behind the armored unit.
16. We broke through the enemy's MLR with tanks and armored units.

LESSON 17

WORD LIST

1.	chak-mîn kung-kik (chak-yîk kung-kik)	flanking attack
2.	chìng-mîn kung-kik	frontal attack
3.	chong-kaàp pô-tuî*	armored unit
4.	chué-iù taí-k'òng-sìn	FEBA
5.	chuê-lîk	main force
6.	fōng-sìn	defense line
7.	kaán-taan kung-sẑ	simple fieldworks (hasty defense)
8.	leŭng-yîk paau-waī	double envelopment
9.	poón-tuî	main body
10.	suk-ts'ing	to mop up
11.	tâk-chúng	special
12.	tsung-tuî	column
13.	t'uèt-leī chìn-ch'eūng	to disengage from battlefield
14.	ue-ooī	to outflank
15.	ue-ooī wân-tûng	turning movement
16.	waān-k'eūng	stubborn

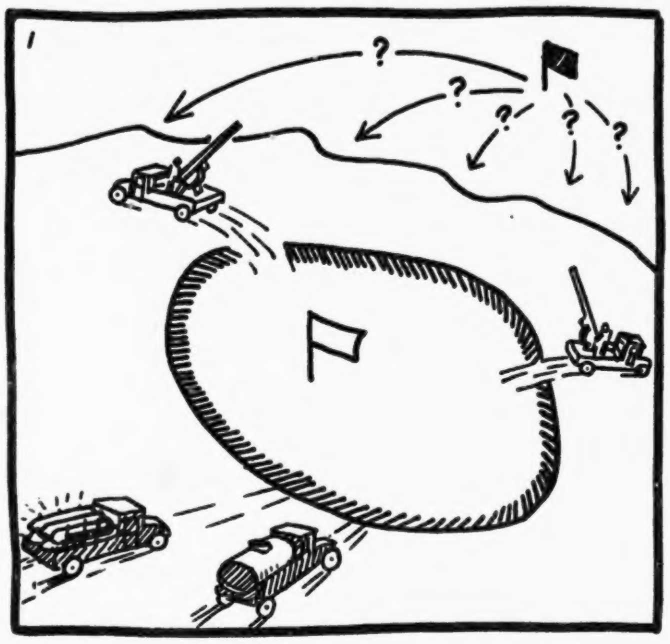
LESSON 17

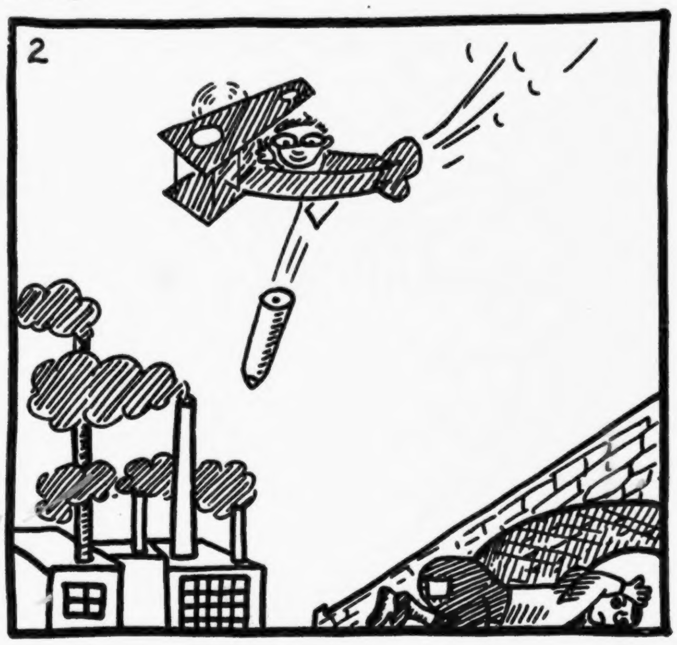
READING MATERIAL

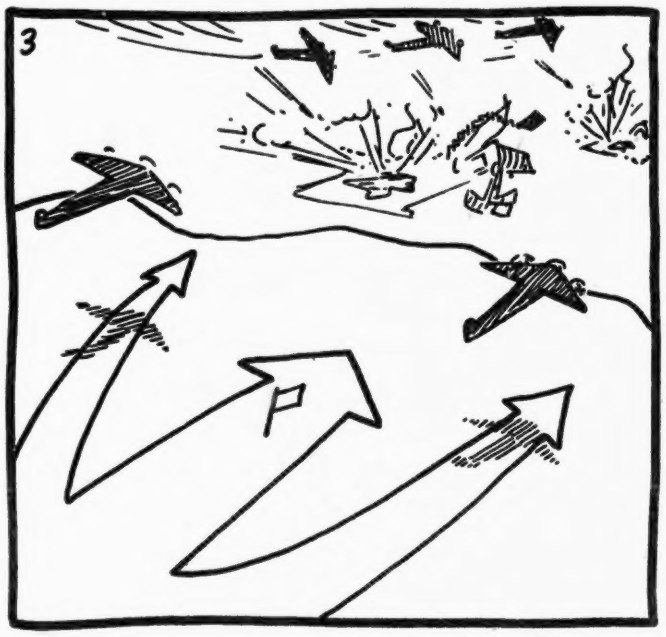
我軍集中火力,協同步兵與戰車作正面攻擊.突破敵人之主要抵抗線.步兵與裝甲部隊用 ue-ooi 運動.兩面包圍敵人.

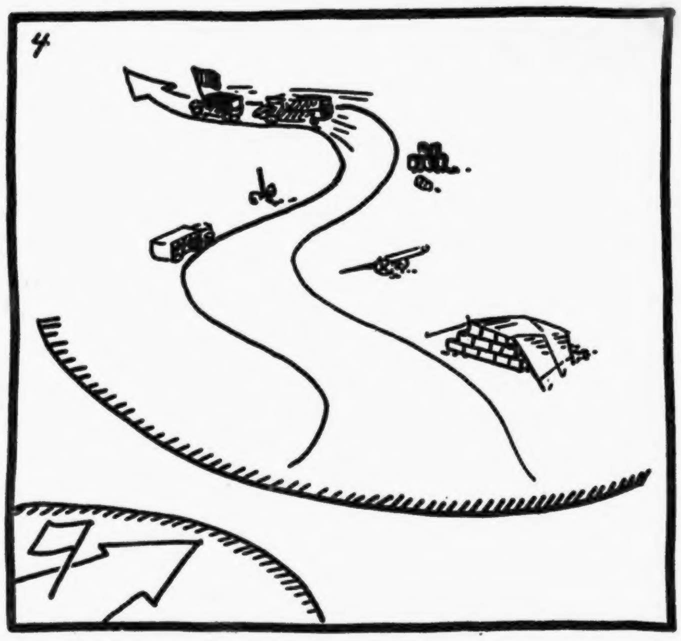
敵人想脫離戰場,即趕快後退.數英里,但我軍用機械化部隊追擊敵人.追擊 tsung 隊將敵人之簡單工事.盡行破壞.有等敵人據抵抗巢頑強抵抗;我軍超越,追擊敵人之主力,祇由特種部隊擔任將此等頑抗敵兵肅清.追擊之時,我軍各單位均用無線電與本隊通訊.

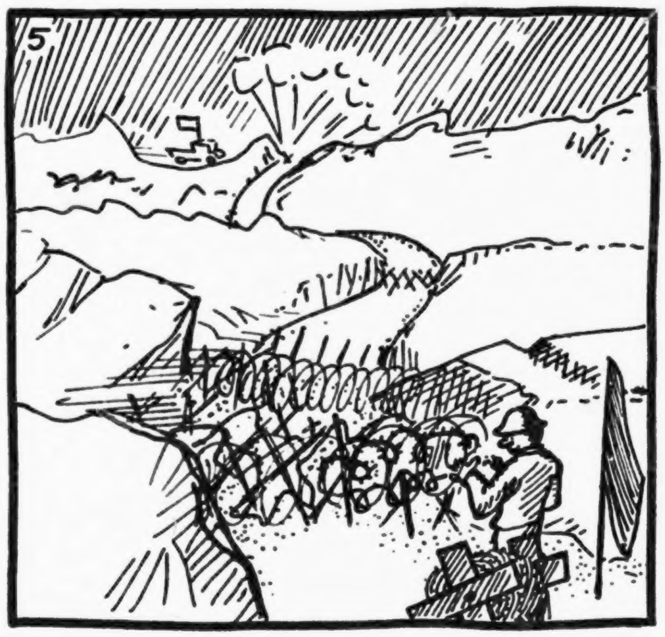
LESSON 18

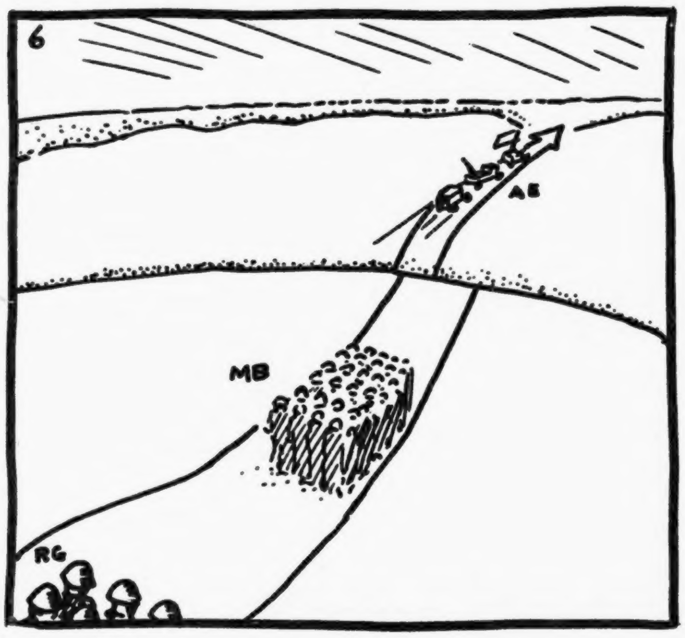












LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ngŏh kwan tîm-kaaî tsaâm-shī t'īng-chî chui-kik?

Taàp: Yan-waî ngŏh kwan iù pó-ch'ung īn-liû* t'ūng taân*-yeûk,
shóh-ĭ tsaâm-shī t'īng-chî chui-kik.

M: Ngŏh kwan pó-ch'ung īn-liû* t'ūng taân*-yeûk kè shī-haû,
tîm-yeûng* fōng-chî tîk-yān k'eī-tsaâp?

T: Ngŏh kwan pó-ch'ung īn-liû* t'ūng taân*yeûk kè shī-haû,
k'uĭ-teî ch'īt-lâp kei-tûng fōng-uê chân-teî, fōng-chî tîk-yān k'eī-tsaâp.

M: Ngŏh kwan yaû p'aaī-ch'ut fei-kei huī kwang-chà tîk-yān kè
pin shuè?

T: Ngŏh kwan yaû p'aaī-ch'ut fei-kei huī kwang-chà tîk-yān kè
kung-îp chung-sam.

M: Hung-tsaâp kè mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ?

T: Hung-tsaâp kè mûk-tik haî tâ-kik tîk-yān kè sẑ-heī.

M: Yaŭ ti fei-kei îm-oô ngŏh-teî kè mi-yĕ pô-tuî*?

T: Yaŭ ti fei-kei îm-oô ngŏh-teî kè chui-kik tsung-tuî kè chak-yîk.

M: Yaŭ ti fei-kei p'òh-waaî tîk-yān kè mi-yĕ?

T: Yaŭ ti fei-kei p'òh-waaî tîk-yān kè fei-kei-ch'eūng.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè fei-kei tîm-kaaî iù p'òh-waaî tîk-yān kè fei-kei-ch'eūng?

T: Yan-waî ngŏh-teî iù fōng-chî tîk-yān fei-kei heî-fei kung-kik
ngŏh kwan kè sin-t'aū pô-tuî*.

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Tîk-yān haû-t'uī kè shī-haû tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yān haû-t'uī kè shī-haû, uēn lô waī-heī hó toh chong-peî.

M: Yaŭ ti teî-fong tîk-yān tîm-yeûng* chóh-chuê ngŏh kwan ts'ìn-tsùn?

T: Yaŭ ti teî-fong k'uĭ-teî ch'ìt-lâp tô-lô-cheùng-ngoî chóh-chuê ngŏh kwan ts'ìn-tsùn.

M: Ngŏh kwan tîm-yeûng* tuī-foô ni ti cheùng-ngoî-mât?

T: Yaŭ ti cheùng-ngoî-mât peî ngŏh-teī kè kung-ping p'òh-waaî; yaŭ ti cheùng-ngoî-mât peî ngŏh-teî kè p'aaù-ping p'òh-waaî-chóh.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè sin-t'aū pô-tuî* t'ui-tsùn-tak hó faaī, shóh-ĭ poón tuî t'ūng haû-waî tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè sin-t'aū pô-tuî* t'ui-tsùn-tak hó faaī, shóh-ĭ poón tuî t'ūng haû-waî to kón-m̄-sheŭng.

LESSON 18

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Why did our force temporarily cease to pursue?

Answer: We temporarily ceased the pursuit, because our force had to re-supply with fuel and ammunition.

Q: At the time of the resupplying of fuel and ammunition, how did we prevent the enemy's surprise attack.

A: At the time of the resupplying of fuel and ammunition, our force set up a mobile defensive position to prevent the enemy's surprise attack.

Q: Which enemy's places were bombed by our airplanes?

A: We sent airplanes to bomb the enemy's industrial center.

Q: What is the purpose of the air raid?

A: The purpose of the air raid is to demoralize the enemy.

Q: Which of our units were covered by some of the airplanes?

A: Some of the airplanes covered the flanks of our pursuing column.

Q: What was destroyed by some of the airplanes?

A: Some of the planes destroyed the enemy's airfields.

Q: Why did we have to destroy the enemy's airfields?

A: Because we had to prevent the enemy's planes from taking off to attack the advancing elements of our forces.

Q: When the enemy retreated, what did they do?

A: When the enemy retreated, they abandoned much equipment along the retreating route.

LESSON 18

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: How did some of the enemy block our forces' advance?

A: On some locations, they set up road blocks to block our force from advancing.

Q. How did our force face these road blocks?

A: Some of these barriers were destroyed by our engineers, and some of them were destroyed by our artillery.

Q: Since our advancing elements pushed on so fast, what happened to the main body and the rear guard?

A: Our advancing elements pushed on very fast, so the main body and the rear guard could not keep up.

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Do not abandon any equipment. This is an order.
2. The police sets up road blocks along the highway to stop automobiles for inspection.
3. Stop your car and come out with your hands up.
4. This is a blow to all of us and we are really sorry.
5. The advance element of the main body will set up a defense along this river.
6. Where can we get our fuels and ammunitions?
7. This industrial center was completely destroyed by war.
8. I cannot keep up with the new techniques in medicine.
9. Rear guard is just as important.
10. Mobile defense should be set up without too much trouble.
11. Your car is blocking the driveway of my garage.
12. You must get all these obstacles out of my way immediately.
13. Capt. Wōng is in charge of the advance party and Major Lee, the rear guard.
14. Do not stop unless I tell you to.
15. We have to drive through those barriers.
16. I don't think we can keep up with the mobile unit at such a speed.

LESSON 18

WORD LIST

1.	chak-yîk	flank
2.	haû-waî	rear guard
3.	kei-tûng fōng-uê	mobile defense
	(laū-tûng fōng-uê)	
4.	kón m̄-sheŭng	cannot keep up
5.	kung-îp chung-sam	industrial center
6.	pó-ch'ung	to resupply, replace
7.	sin-t'aū pô-tuî*	advance element, forward echelon
8.	tá-kik	to blow
9.	tô-lô cheùng-ngoî	road block
10.	waì-heì	to abandon

LESSON 18

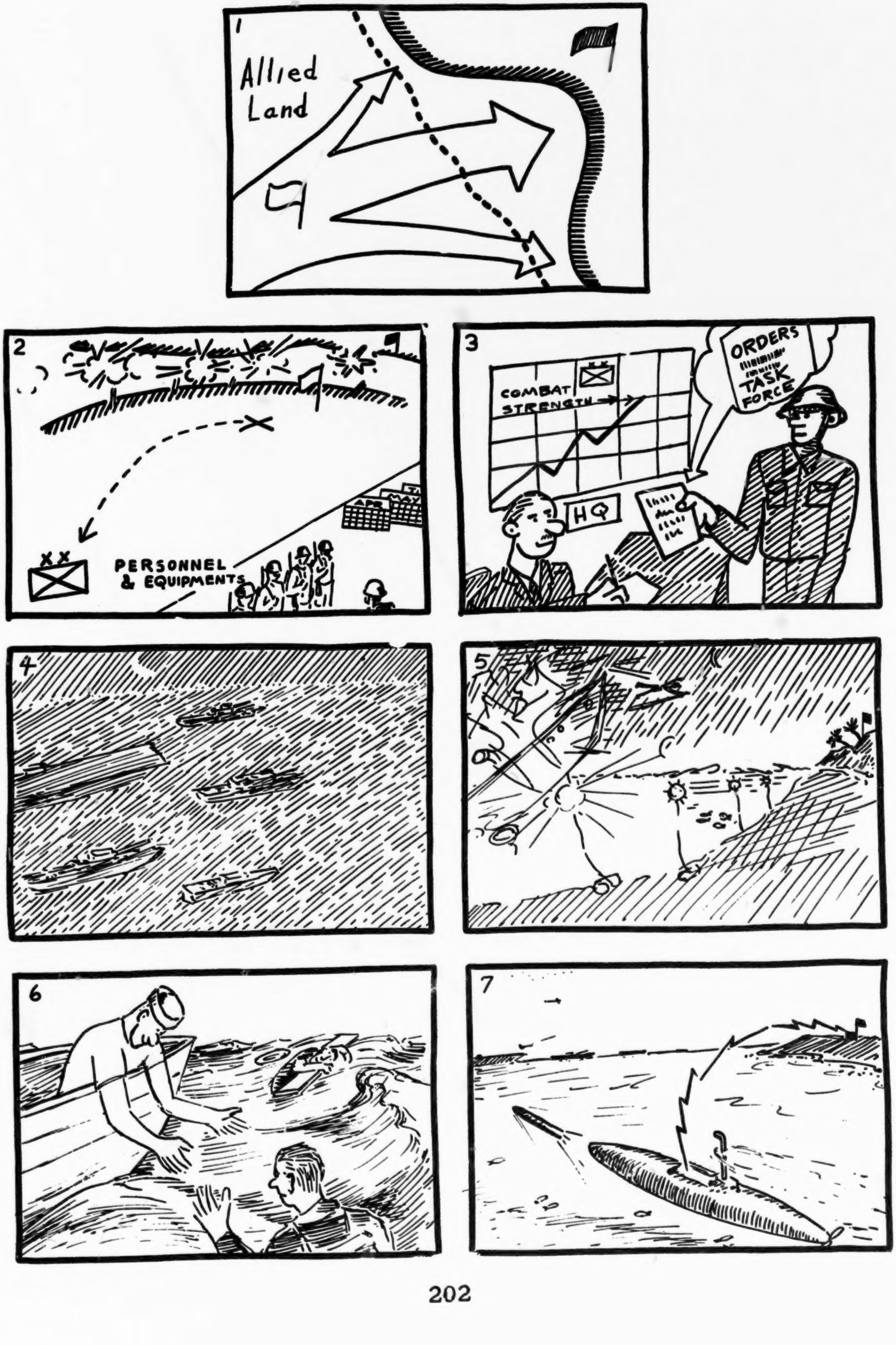
READING MATERIAL

我軍因補充 **in-** 料與彈藥,暫時停止追擊
補充之時,設立機動防禦陣地防止敵人奇
tsaâp

同時空軍轟炸敵人之工業中心,以空
tsaâp 打擊敵人之士氣.有等飛機掩護追擊
chung 隊之 **tsak yîk** .有等飛機則破壞敵人
之飛機場,防止敵人飛機攻擊我軍之先頭部
隊.

敵人向後敗退,沿路丢棄裝備甚多.在地
方設立道路 **cheùng** 礙希望阻我軍前進.但盡
被我軍毀壞.我軍先頭部隊推進極快,所以本
隊與及後衛,亦追趕不及,進軍之神速,可想而
知.

LESSON 19


1
Allied Land
2
XX
PERSONNEL & EQUIPMENTS
APR
MAY
3
COMBAT STRENGTH
HQ
ORDERS
TASK FORCE
4
5
6
7

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Tîk-yān haì pin-shuè peî ngŏh kwan kik-t'uì?

Taàp: Tîk-yān haì māng-kwòk lĭng-t'ó peî ngŏh kwan kik-t'uì.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè yat-kòh sz tiû huì pin shuè?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè yat-kòh sz tiû huì haû-fong.

M: K'uĭ-teî tîm-kaaì iù tiû huì haû-fong ne?

T: Yan-waî k'uĭ-teî iù pó-ch'ung yān-uēn t'ūng chong-peî, yaû
iù tsoì fàn-lîn keì kòh uêt.

M: King-kwòh saam-kòh uêt kè pó-ch'ung t'ūng fàn-lîn chi-haû,
ì-ka ni kòh sz tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ī-ka ni kòh sz ĭ-king fooi-fûk ch'ung-tsuk kè chìn-taù lîk.

M: Ni kòh sz tak-tò* mi-yĕ kè mîng-lîng?

T: Ni kòh sz fûng mîng huì ts'aam-ka yat-chi p'aaì-hîn kwan.

M: Ni chi p'aaì-hîn kwan yaŭ mi-yĕ shât-lîk?

T: Ni chi p'aaì-hîn kwan yaŭ hōng-hung mŏ-laâm, chìn-taù laâm,
ts'ūn-yeūng laâm, t'ūng k'eì-t'a laâm t'ĕng.

M: P'aaì-hîn kwan keî shì ch'ut-faàt?

T: P'aaì-hîn kwan maăn-t'aū-haak ch'ut-faàt.

M: K'uĭ-teî tîm-kaaì iù shât-hāng tang-fôh koón-chaì?

T: K'uĭ-teî shât-hāng tang-fóh koón-chaì, peî-mĭn tîk-yān t'aaì
tsó faàt-în.

M: K'uĭ-teî tsìp-kân tîk-yān hoì-ngôn kè shì-haû, yat-chèk kwan-laâm chông-tó mi-yĕ?

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: K'uī-teî tsìp-kân tîk-yān hoì-ngôn kè shì-haû, yat-chèk kwan-laâm chông-tŏ faū-luì ch'ām-chôh.

M: Ngŏh-teî tìm-yeûng* huì kaù-heî shaang-waān kè yān?

T: Ngŏh-teî yûng kaù-shang-t'ĕng t'ūng chîk-shing-kei tâng-tâng huì kaù-heî shaang-waān kè yān.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè laâm-t'ĕng peî tîk-yān kè mi-yĕ t'aî-kìn?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè laâm-t'ĕng peî tîk-yān kè ts'ìm-shuî-t'ĕng t'aî-kìn.

M: Tîk-yān kè ts'ìm-shuî-t'ĕng tìm-yeûng* tuì-foô ngŏh kwan?

T: Tîk-yān kè ts'ìm-shuî-t'ĕng yûng mō-sìn-tìn t'ung-chi kei-teî, t'ūng-shì faàt-shê uē-luì kung-kik ngŏh kwan laâm-t'ĕng.

LESSON 19

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Where was the enemy repulsed by our force?

Answer: The enemy was repulsed by our force in the territory of an Allied country.

Q: To where was one of our divisions transferred?

A: One of our divisions was transferred to the rear.

Q: Why did they have to be transferred to the rear?

A: They had to replace the personnel and equipment and to retrain for a few months.

Q: After having gone through a three months replacement and training period, how is this division now?

A: This division has already regained full combat strength.

Q: What kind of order did this division receive?

A: This division was ordered to take part in a task force.

Q: What does the task force strength include?

A: This task force has aircraft carriers, battle ships, cruisers, and other vessels.

Q: When did the task force put out to sea?

A: The task force put out to sea at night.

Q: Why did they have to take blackout measures?

A: They took the blackout measures to avoid being discovered too early by the enemy.

Q: As they approached the enemy shore, what did one of the ships hit?

LESSON 19

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: As they approached the enemy shore, one of the ships hit a floating mine and was sunk.

Q: How did we rescue the survivors?

A: We employed life-boats and helicopters to rescue the survivors.

Q: What unit of the enemy sighted our vessels?

A: Our vessels were being sighted by an enemy submarines.

Q: How did the enemy submarine deal with our task force?

A: The enemy submarine informed the base by radio and at the same time, discharged torpedoes to attack our vessels.

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. This helicopter can carry only fifty persons with a speed of 65 mph.
2. I was driving along the highway and suddenly something hit my car from behind.
3. Do you have sufficient funds to buy a bus ticket to L.A?
4. He discovered a new method of detecting mines.
5. When they fire at you, aren't you afraid?
6. Let us be careful when we are near the shore because there are many floating mines.
7. The doctor told me that you will soon regain your strength.
8. Two days ago I was ordered to go to the headquarters.
9. The river is full of floating mines and other obstacles.
10. She was ordered by the doctor to drink two glasses of milk during each meal.
11. Generally, lifeboats are used for rescue operation.
12. It is a magnificent sight to see a warship sailing on the high sea.
13. The task force of the Allied countries will be ready for action within a week.
14. The woman was rescued from the ocean by a sailor.
15. The expeditionary force will carry out the order immediately.
16. How many survivors did you see?
17. The enemy's strength is formidable. Don't underestimate them.

LESSON 19

WORD LIST

1.	chîk-shing-kei	helicopter
2.	ch'ung-tsuk	full, sufficient
3.	faàt-shê	to discharge (fire), shoot
4.	faū-luì	floating mine
5.	fûng mîng	to be ordered
6.	kaù-shaang-t'ĕng	lifeboat
7.	kwan-laâm	warship
8.	māng-kwòk	Allied countries
9.	p'aaì-hín kwan (tâk-hín pô-tuî*)	task force
10.	peî kaù-heí	to be rescued
11.	shang-waān kè yān	survivor
12.	shât-hāng	to carry out
13.	uĕn-ching kwan	expeditionary force
14.	kûk-pô chìn-chaang	limited war; local war
15.	ts'uēn-mîn chìn-chaang	general war

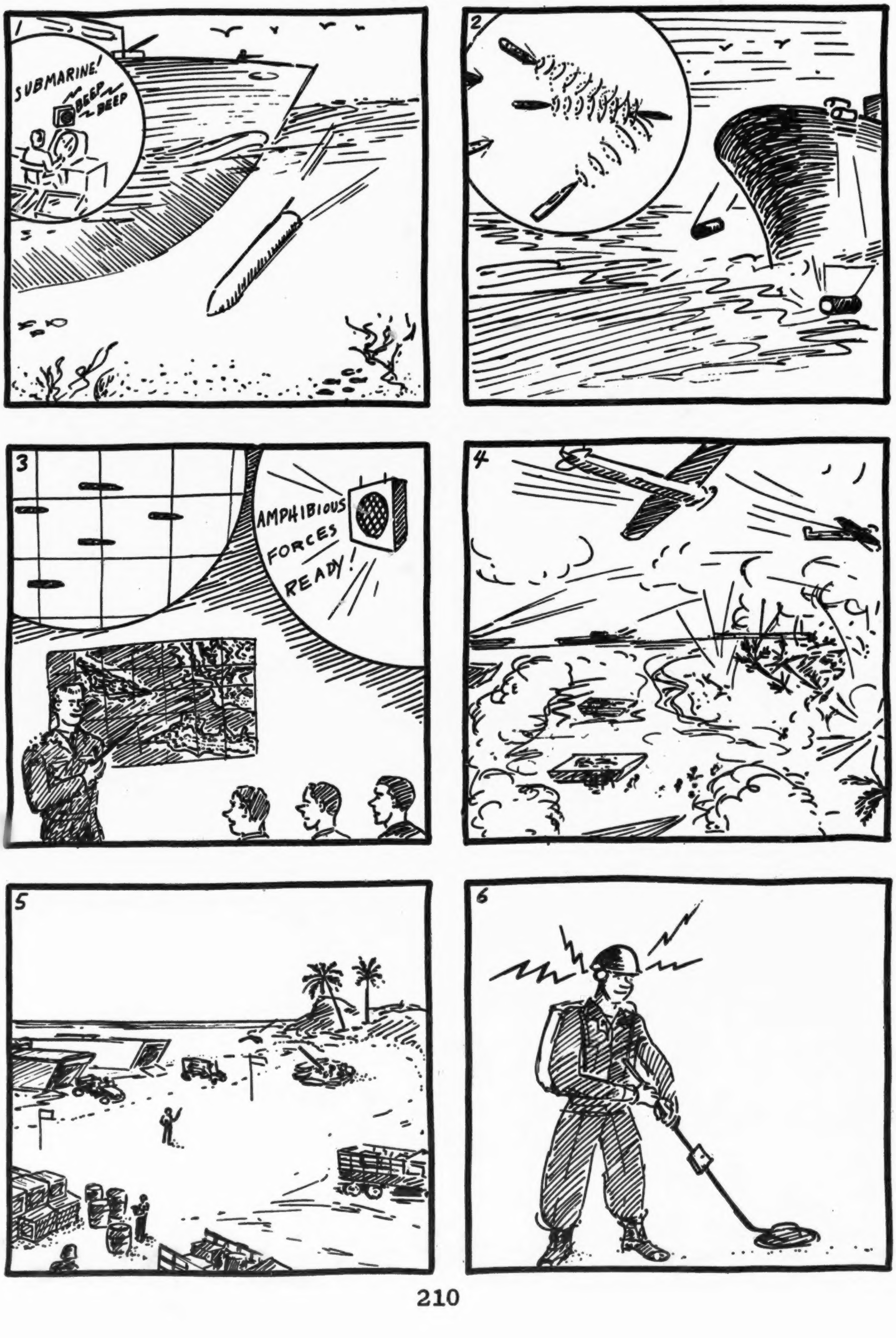
LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

敵人在 **māng** 國領土被我軍擊敗，此僅是局部戰爭，但此次戰事，為全面戰爭戰事散佈各地，因此我軍一個師調回後方補充人員與裝備，再訓練數月。此時此師已 **fooi-** 復充足戰鬥力。又被選派參加一支派 **hîn** 軍，遠征別處。

此支軍有航空母艦，戰鬥艦，巡洋艦，同其他艦 **t’ĕng**。於某日晚黑出發海上。各船艦實行燈火管制，避免敵人太早發現。可惜當接近敵人海岸之時，一隻軍艦撞 **faū** 雷沉沒；生還之人均被救起；一隻敵人潛水 **t’ĕng** 發現我軍，用無線電通知基地，同時發射魚雷攻擊我軍艦 **t’ĕng**.

LESSON 20


1
SUBMARINE!
BEEP BEEP
2
3
AMPHIBIOUS FORCES READY!
4
5
6

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Tîk-yān kè ts'īm-shuî-t'ĕng faàt-shê uē-luī chi-haû, yaŭ mŏ tá-chùng mûk-piu?

Taàp: Mŏ, tîk-yān kè ts'īm-shuî-t'ĕng faàt-shê uē-luī chi-haû, mŏ tá-chùng mûk-piu.

M: Ngŏh kwan faàt-în tîk-yān kè mi-yĕ?

T: Ngŏh kwan faàt-în tîk-yān kè ts'īm-shuî-t'ĕng.

M: Ngŏh kwan faàt-în-chôh tîk-yān kè ts'īm-shuî-t'ĕng chi-haû, tsaû p'aaì mi-yĕ tò ni kòh k'ui-wîk?

T: Ngŏh kwan faàt-în-chôh tîk-yān kè ts'īm-shuî-t'ĕng chi-haû, tsaû p'aaì k'ui-chûk laâm kón-tò ni kòh k'ui-wîk.

M: Ngŏh kwan kè k'ui-chûk laâm tîm-yeûng* saú-shòk t'ūng chà ch'ām tîk-yān kè ts'īm-t'ĕng?

T: Ngŏh kwan kè k'ui-chûk laâm yûng so-nā saú-shòk tîk-yān kè ts'īm-t'ĕng, tâm sham-shuî chà-taân* chà ch'ām k'uĭ.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè p'aaì-hîn kwan huì-tò pin shuè?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè p'aaì-hîn kwan huì-tò tang-lûk kè mûk-tik teî.

M: P'aaì-hîn kwan huì-tò mûk-tik teî chi-haû, ngŏh-teî kè mi-yĕ pô-tuî* uê-peî tang-lûk.

T: Ngŏh-teî kè shuî-lûk-leŭng-ts'ai pô-tuî* uê-peî tang-lûk.

M: P'aaì-hîn kwan kè sz-lîng-koon tîm-yeûng* chî-shî kòk taan-waî* tsòk-chìn?

T: P'aaì-hîn kwan sz-lîng-koon yûng hung-chung chiù-seùng* chî shî kòk taan-waî* tsòk-chìn.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Ngŏh kwan yûng mi-yĕ îm-oô ngŏh-teî kè pô-tuî*?

T: Ngŏh kwan yûng foó-ch'ung kwang-chà-kei t'ūng hoî-kwan p'aaù îm-oô ngŏh-teî kè pô-tuî*.

M: Ngŏh-teî taî-yat lūn kè tang-lûk pô-tuî* yûng mi-yĕ wân-shue kung-kuî tang-lûk?

T: Ngŏh-teî taî-yat lûn kè tang-lûk pô-tuî* ts'ŏh t'aán-haak tang-lûk-t'ĕng tang-lûk, k'uĭ-teî tang-lûk shîng-kung.

M: Tang-lûk chi-haû, k'uĭ-teî kìn-lâp mi-yĕ chân-teî?

T: Tang-lûk chi-haû, k'uĭ-teî kìn-lâp t'aan-t'aū chân-teî, yaū tang-lûk chî-fai-koon chî-fai, k'uĭ-teî hoi-ch'î kw'òng-taaî t'aan-t'aū chân-teî.

M: T'ui-tsùn kè shî-haû, k'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* saú-shòk teî-luî?

T: T'ui-tsùn kè shî-haû, k'uĭ-teî yûng teî-luî saú-shòk-heî saú-shòk teî-luî.

LESSON 20

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: Did the torpedoes discharged from the enemy submarine hit the target?

Answer: No, the torpedoes discharged from the enemy submarine missed the target.

Q: What did we discover of the enemy?

A: We discovered the enemy's submarine.

Q: After we discovered the enemy submarine, what did we send to this area?

A: After we discovered the enemy submarine, we rushed destroyers to this area.

Q: How did our destroyers locate and sink the enemy submarine?

A: Our destroyers used sonar to locate the enemy submarine and dropped depth charges to sink it.

Q: Where did our task force arrive?

A: Our task force reached the destination for landing.

Q: After the task force reached the destination, which unit of ours was ready to land?

A: Our amphibious force was ready for landing.

Q: How did the commanding general of the task force orient the various units in the operation?

A: The commanding general of the task force used aerial photographs to orient the various units in the operation.

Q: What did we use to cover our units?

A: We used dive bombers and naval guns to cover our units.

LESSON 20

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: What means of transportation did the first wave of our landing force use in the landing?

A: Our first wave of the landing force was landed by landing ship tanks (L.S.T.). They landed successfully.

Q: After the landing, what position did they set up?

A: After the landing, they set up a beachhead, commanded by the beachmaster. They began to expand the beachhead.

Q: When they pushed on, how did they locate mines?

A: When they pushed on, they used mine detectors to locate mines.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Our dive bombers bombed and sank two enemy submarines and four battleships last week.
2. The ferry is the only means of transportation to that island.
3. Using sonar, we can locate submarines even though they remain stationary under water.
4. Mine detectors and sonars are very valuable equipments.
5. The beachmaster's order is to establish the beachhead at any cost.
6. After you have thrown the grenade, be sure to take cover.
7. Our first wave of men had landed and established a beachhead.
8. The enemy set up many obstacles along the beach when they withdrew to the peninsula.
9. To navigate a LST is not as simple as driving an automobile.
10. This high school will be expanded to accommodate more students.
11. Our coastal artillery shelled and sank two enemy destroyers and a few other ships.
12. Aerial photograph of enemy's situation can be very useful to our intelligence.
13. The enemy's guns are not as powerful as our artillery but their aim is very accurate.
14. The beach is quiet and beautiful with a full moon above.
15. Ducks can be used on land and water.
16. Please do not drop your thing on the floor.

LESSON 20

WORD LIST

1.	foó-ch'ung kwang-chà-kei	dive bomber
2.	hoì-t'aan	beach
3.	hung-chung chiù-seùng*	aerial photograph
4.	kik ch'ām	to sink (by shelling)
5.	kw'òng-taaî	to expand
6.	saú-sók	to locate, search for
7.	so-nā	sonar
8.	t'aán-hak tang-lûk-t'ĕng	landing ship tank (LST)
9.	t'aan-t'aū	beach
10.	t'aan-t'aū chân-teî (t'aan-t'aū-pó)	beach head
11.	taî-yat lūn	the first wave
12.	tang-lûk chì-fai-koon (t'aan-k'ān tuî-cheúng)	beachmaster
13.	teî-luì saú-sòk-heì	mine detector
14.	ts'īm-t'ĕng	submarine
15.	wân-shue kung-kuî	means of transportation (transportation tool)
16.	chà ch'ām	to bomb and sink

LESSON 20

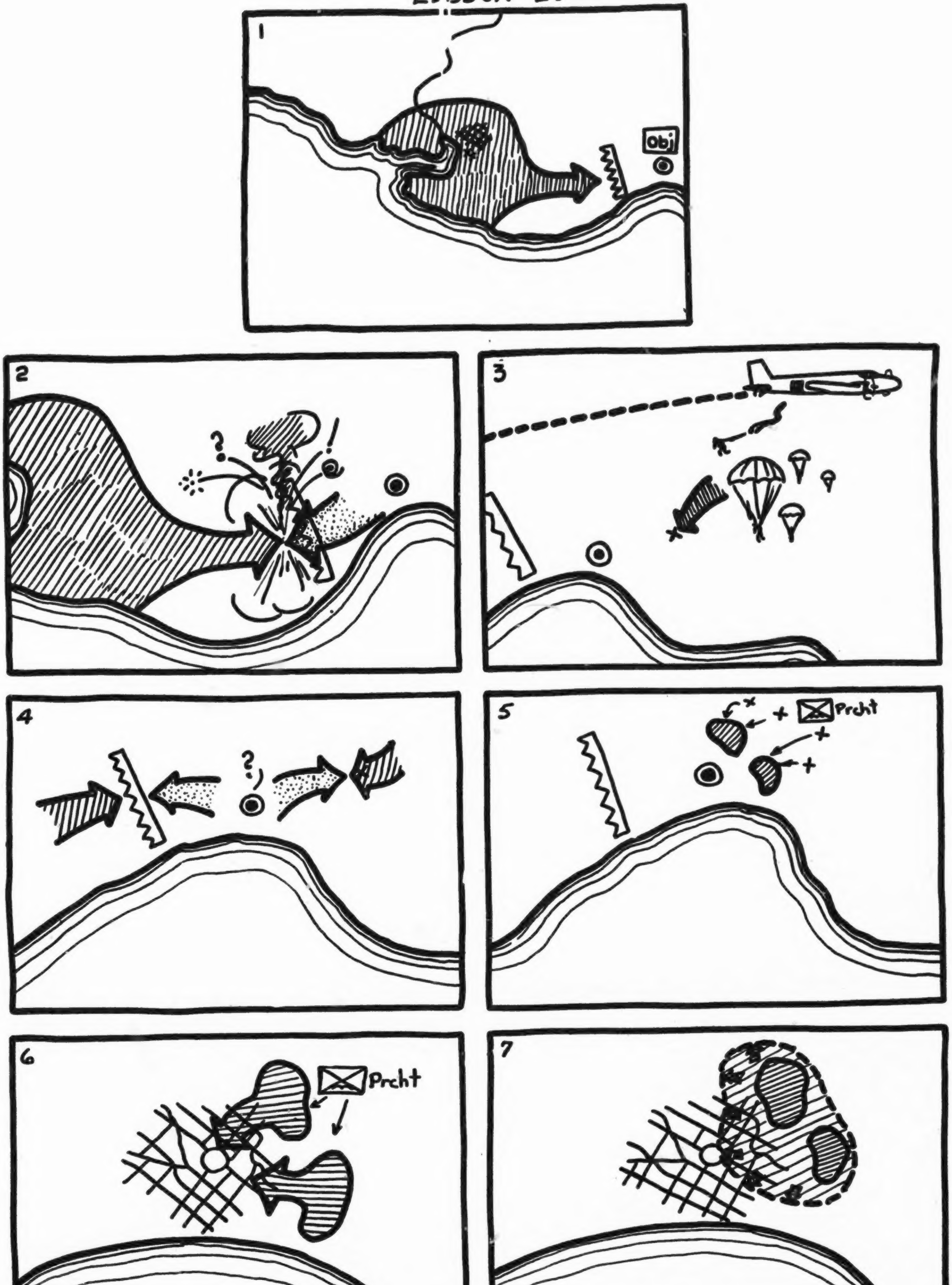
READING MATERIAL

敵人之魚雷未打中目標.潛水艇被我軍發現,我軍驅逐艦即趕到此處海面.用蘇拿搜索潛-t'ĕng,投深水炸彈將其炸沉.

派-hîn 軍到達目的地.水陸兩-ts'ai 部隊預備登陸.派 -nîn 軍司令官用空中照相指示各單位作戰.於foô- 衝轟炸機與海軍砲火îm護之下,第一輪登陸部隊坐t'aân 克登陸 t'ĕng 登陸.

登陸成功.建立t'aan 頭陣地,由登陸指揮官指揮.開始擴大t'aan 頭陣地.推進之時,用地雷搜索器搜索敵人預埋之地雷.

LESSON 21


1
Obj
2
?
!
3
4
?
5
Prcht
6
Prcht
7

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Ngŏh kwan tang-lûk chi-haû, kaì-tsûk heùng pin shuè tsùn-kung?

Taàp: Ngŏh kwan tang-lûk chi-haû, kaì-tsûk heùng tîk-yān kè hoî-ngôn kè yat-kòh iù-tîm tsùn-kung.

M: Ngŏh kwan tsùn-kung kè mûk-tik haî mi-yĕ?

T: Ngŏh kwan tsùn-kung kè mûk-tik haî seúng chìm-lĭng kóng-haú foô-kân kè yat-kòh shìng-shĭ.

M: Ngŏh-teî tîm-kaaî iù chìm-lĭng ni kòh shìng-shĭ?

T: Yan-waî ni kòh shìng-shĭ haî kaau-t'ung kè shue-naú t'ūng chìn-leûk sheûng kè chûng chàn.

M: Tîk-yān haì ni kòh shìng-shĭ yaŭ mŏ wĭng-kaú fōng-uê kung-sẑ?

T: Yaŭ, tîk-yān haì ni kòh shìng-shĭ yaŭ wĭng-kaú fōng-uê kung-sẑ.

M: Ngŏh kwan ts'oì-yûng mi-yĕ chìn-shût huì kung-p'òh ni kòh shìng?

T: Ngŏh kwan yûng taaî ue-ooī chìn-shût huì kung-kik tîk-yān kè haû-fong, yat-fong mîn fan-saàn tîk-yān kè ping-lîk, lîng yat-fong-mîn ts'ìn-haû kaàp-kung tîk-yān.

M: Ngŏh-teî tîm-yeûng* ue-ooī tò tîk-yān kè haû-fong?

T: Ngŏh-teî p'aaì-ch'ut kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuî*, yûng wân-shue-kei haì tîk-yān kè haû-fong kòng-lôk.

M: Haì kóm-yeûng* kè yìng-saì chi-hâ, tîk-yān tîm-yeûng*?

T: Haì kóm-yeûng* kè yìng-saì chî-hâ, tîk-yān iù leŭng-mîn tsòk-chìn, ts'ìn-haû shaû-tsaâp.

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Ngŏh kwan kè kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuî* kòng-lôk chi-haû, tsaû tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh kwan kè kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuî* kòng-lôk chi-haû, tsaû lâp-tsik koì-p'in, shìng-waì yaŭ-tsó-tsik kè pô-tui*.

M: Kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuî* kw'aì-taaì mi-yĕ kè mŏ-heì, yaŭ mi-yĕ chong-peî?

T: Kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuî* kw'aì-taaì hing-pîn kè mŏ-heì, t'ūng kaán-taan kè chong-peî. K'uĭ-teî yûng chî-naām-cham laì yîng-shik fong-heùng, yûng pô-hăng-kei t'ūng kòk pô-tuî* luēn-lòk. K'uĭ-teî yaû yûng chîk-shing-fei-kei wân-sùng sheung-ping.

M: Kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuî* kòng-lôk chi-haû, kung-kik mi-yĕ teî-fong?

T: Kòng-lôk-saàn pô-tuî* kung-kik kôh kòh shìng-shĭ kè chuê-iù kaau-t'ung chung-sam, t'ūng shâp-tsẑ lô-haú; k'uĭ-teî t'ūng-shì kw'òng-taaî hung-kòng teî-k'ui (hung-t'aū-pó).

LESSON 21

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After our force launched the landing, where did we continue to attack?

Answer: After our force launched the landing, we continued to attack a stronghold along the enemy coast.

Q: What was the objective of our attack?

A: The objective of our attack was to capture a city which is located in the vicinity of the port.

Q: Why was it necessary for our force to capture this city?

A: Because this city is the pivot of communication, and an important strategic stronghold.

Q: Was there any permanent fortification in this city?

A: Yes, there was permanent fortification in this city.

Q: What tactics did we use to attack and sieze this city?

A: We employed outflanking tactics to attack the rear of the enemy and to divert the enemy strength. In the meantime we attacked the enemy from both the front and rear.

Q: How did we outflank and reach the rear of the enemy?

A: My means of transport planes, we sent out paratroops to land at the enemy's rear.

Q: Under such a situation, what happened to the enemy?

A: Under such situation, the enemy had to fight at both fronts and to face the attack at the front and rear.

Q: After our paratroops landed, what did they do?

LESSON 21

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: After our paratroops landed, they immediately reorganized themselves, forming a well-organized unit.

Q: What weapons did the paratroops carry, and what equipment did they have?

A: The paratroops carried light weapons, and simple equipment. They used a compass for the recognition of direction, and communicated with various units by walkie-talkies. They also employed helicopters to deliver the wounded.

Q: After the paratroops landed, where did they attack?

A: The paratroops attacked the main traffic center and road intersections of that city. In the mean time they expanded the airhead.

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. We will attack the enemy from the front and rear.
2. If permanent fortifications are not set up along this river, we may face the enemy's attack from the front and rear.
3. I hope you will adopt my suggestion.
4. We will have to reorganize our units immediately.
5. At dawn, your unit will attack the enemy's stronghold, and my unit will guard this key point.
6. Do you think you can capture that city by tomorrow night?
7. After we have set up the airhead ten miles behind enemy line, they will have to fight on two fronts.
8. Tell me your rank. Give me the approximate strength of your unit.
9. Walkie-talkies can be used effectively within a certain radius.
10. What are you going to do if they employ outflanking movement?
11. Are you sure this is the pivot point of enemy communication?
12. May I borrow your pistol?
13. Do not employ any diversionary tactics at this time.
14. The capture of the enemy's strategic point was the key to secure victory.
15. Take this walkie-talkie with you on patrol and keep us informed of the enemy's movement.
16. How are you going to recognize your units?

LESSON 21

WORD LIST

1.	chûng chàn	stronghold, important city
2.	fan-saàn	to divert (diversionary action)
3.	hing-pîn	light and convenient
4.	hung-kòng teî-k'ui (hung-t'aū-pó)	airhead
5.	koî-p'in	to reorganize
6.	kung p'òh	to attack and capture (place)
7.	leŭng-mîn tsòk-chìn	to fight at two fronts
8.	pô-haăng-kei (shaú-t'aì mō-sìn tîn-wâ*)	walkie-talkie
9.	shue-naú	pivot (place)
10.	taaî ue-ooì	outflanking
11.	ts'ìn-haû kaàp-kung	to attack the enemy from the front and rear
12.	ts'ìn-haû shaû-tsaâp	to face the attack from the front and rear
13.	wĭng-kaú fōng-uê kung-sê	permanent fortification
14.	yìng-shaì	situation, condition, circumstance

LESSON 21

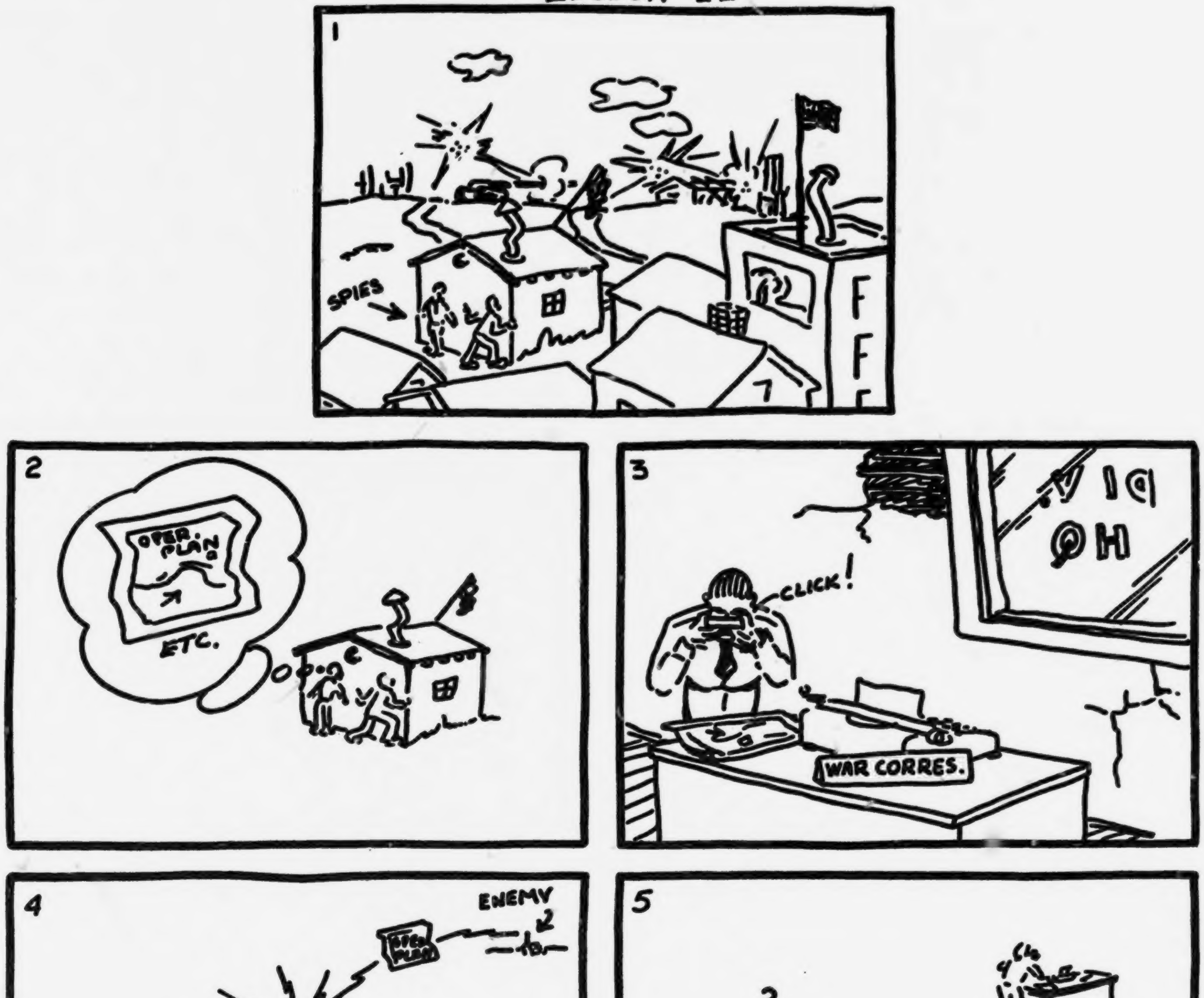
READING MATERIAL

我軍部隊登陸之後，繼續向敵人海岸某一要點攻擊，想佔領港口附近一個城市，但敵人頑强抵抗。

我軍想分散敵人兵力，以及前後夾攻敵人，決定派出降落saàn部隊坐運輸機，從敵人城市後方降落，在此情勢之下，可迫敵人兩面作戰，前後受襲。

我軍降落saàn部隊降落之後，立即改編成為有組織之部隊，向敵人之主要交通中心與十字路口攻擊，並擴大空降地區（空頭-pô），以利我軍飛機自由起飛降落。

LESSON 22


1
SPIES
C
F F F
7
2
OPER. PLAN
ETC.
C
3
CLICK!
WAR CORRES.
4
ENEMY
OPER PLAN
5
?
CID
6
INTERROGATION
7
MIL. COURT
FIRE!

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Kaàn-tîp haî mi-yĕ?

Taàp: Kaàn-tîp haî tîk-yān haì ngŏh-teî kè ts'ìn-fong waâk haû-fong tsô peì-mât kè teî-hâ kung-tsòk kè ts'ìng-pò yān-uēn.

M: Ngŏh-teî taî-pô-chóh tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp chi-haû, ngŏh-teî tsaû iù tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh-teì taî-pô-chóh tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp chi-haû, ngŏh-teî hóh-ĭ tseung kaàn-tîp kaau peî kwan-sẑ faàt-t'ìng, yaū kwan-sẑ faàt-t'ìng shám-p'oòn; uē-kwóh ngŏh-teî wán-tô chìng-kuì, hóh-ĭ tseung k'uĭ p'oòn yaŭ-k'eì t'ō-yìng, mō-k'eì t'ō-yìng waâk-chê seì-yìng.

M: Haî chìn-sẑ kik-lît kè shì-haû, tîk-yān haì ngŏh kwan chìm-lĭng kè teî-taaì yaŭ mi-yĕ hāng-tûng?

T: Chìn-sẑ kik-lît kè shì-haû, tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp haì ngŏh kwan chìm-lĭng kè teî-taaì hó oôt-tûng, haî kóh shuè tsó-chik-chóh yat-kòh kaàn-tîp-mŏng.

M: Tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp yaŭ mi-yĕ kè k'eĭ-t'ō?

T: Tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp k'eĭ-t'ō wôk-tak ngŏh kwan tsòk-chìn kaì-waâk kè ts'ìng-pò, t'ūng kòk chúng yaŭ-kwaan kè ts'ìng-pò.

M: Yaŭ yat-kòh tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp tîm-yeûng*?

T: Yaŭ yat-kòh tîk-yān kè kaàn-tîp fà-chong tsô yat-kòh chìn-teî ts'uì-kwan keì-chê.

M: Kóh kòh kaàn-tîp kè chué-iù yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ?

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Kôh kòh kaản-tîp kè chuê-iù yâm-mô haî wân-yâp ngŏh kwan kè sz sz-lîng-pô, yûng yîng-seủng* -kei t'au-yîng ngŏh-teî kè peî-mât mān-kîn*.

M: K'uĭ tak-tò ni ti ts'ìng-pò chi-haû, tîm-yeûng* tseung k'uĭ chuên-tò tîk-yān kè sz-lîng-pô?

T: K'uĭ tak-tó ni ti ts'ìng-pò chi-haû, k'uĭ tsaû yaū peî-mât mō-sìn-tîn-t'oî, tseung ni ti ts'ìng-pò kwóng-pòh tò tîk kwan sz-lîng-pô kè ts'ìng-pò-ch'uè.

M: Kôh kòh kaản-tîp kè oôt-tûng yaŭ mŏ yăn-heî ngŏh kwan kè faán-kaản yān-uēn kè waaî-î?

T: Yaŭ, kóh kòh kaản-tîp kè oôt-tûng yăn-heî ngŏh kwan kè faán-kaản yān-uēn kè waaî-î. Ngŏh-teî tsik-haak tseung kôh kòh kaản-tîp taî-pô; king-kwòh ngŏh kwan kè kwan-sẑ-faàt-t'ìng shám-p'oòn chi-haû, k'uĭ peî p'oòn seî-yìng, tsaû yaū hāng-yìng-tuî* tseung k'uĭ ts'eung-k'uèt.

LESSON 22

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: What is a spy?

Answer: A spy is the intelligence personnel of the enemy who engages in secret underground activity at out front or rear.

Q: After we arrest an enemy spy, what should we do?

A: After we arrest an enemy spy, we may send the spy to the military court and let the military court conduct the trial. If we find the evidence, we may sentence him to imprisonment for certain period, imprisonment for life, or death.

Q: When the battle was raging, what action did the enemy take in our occupied area?

A: When the battle was raging, the enemy spies were very active in our occupied area, organizing a spy ring.

Q: What attempt did the enemy spies make?

A: The enemy spies attempted to secure the information pertaining to our operation plan and various related information.

Q: What did an enemy spy do?

A: An enemy spy disguised himself as a war correspondent.

Q: What was that spy's chief mission?

A: That spy's chief mission was to infiltrate into our division headquarters and, using a camera, take photographs of our secret documents.

Q: After he secured this information, how did he have it relayed to the enemy headquarters?

LESSON 22

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: After he obtained this information, he broadcast it to the intelligence section of the enemy headquarters through a secret radio station.

Q: Did the activity of that spy arouse suspicion of our counter-intelligence personnel?

A: Yes, that spy's activity aroused the suspicion of our counter-intelligence personnel. We arrested that spy immediately. After the trial by our military court, he was sentenced to the death penalty, and was executed by our firing squad.

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The war correspondents obtained their news and information by eye-witnessing the battle.
2. I obtained my information from the headquarters. Where did you get yours?
3. Enemy's spies disguised as farmers infiltrated into our area.
4. According to this order, you are supposed to have him executed by now.
5. He will be tried by the military court for misconduct.
6. No one suspected that I could secretly take photographs with this pen.
7. The military court sentenced him to die in the electric chair.
8. He will be released because of insufficient evidence.
9. He broke up a spy ring all by himself.
10. He hires a good lawyer to defend him. I don't think he will be sentenced to life imprisonment.
11. Although I am not very active, I enjoy the activities of the club.
12. You are not attempting to stop the firing squad; are you?
13. Because I suspect her disguising as a nurse, I watch her every move in and out of the hospital.
14. He identifies himself as a counter-intelligence agent.

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. This execution unit executes an average of one person a day.

16. I do suspect her and I don't trust her.

LESSON 22

WORD LIST

1.	ts'eung-k'uèt	to execute by shooting
2.	chìn-teî ch'uī-kwan keì-ché (chìn-teî keì-ché)	war correspondent
3.	chìng-kuì	evidence, proof
4.	fà-chong	to disguise
5.	faàn-kaàn yān-uēn	counter-intelligence personnel (CIC)
6.	haāng-yīng tuî*	execution unit (Firing Squad)
7.	k'eĭ-t'ō	attempt; to attempt
8.	kik-lît	fierce (battle, debate, etc)
9.	kwan-sẑ faàt-t'īng	military court, court martial
10.	mō-k'eī t'ō-yīng	life imprisonment
11.	p'òh-wôk	to break up (spy ring, smuggling, etc)
12.	p'oòn (p'oòn-ch'ué)	to sentence
13.	seí-yīng	death sentence
14.	shám-p'oòn	to try (court)
15.	t'au-yíng	to take photograph secretly
16.	wân-yâp	to infiltrate into
17.	wôk-tak	to secure, obtain

LESSON 22

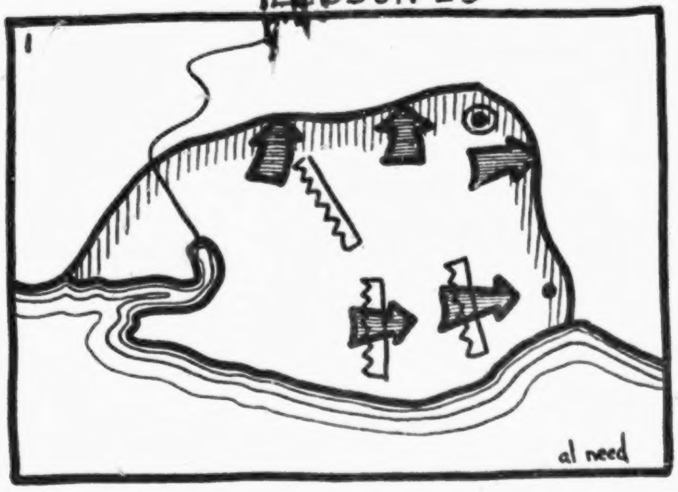
READING MATERIAL

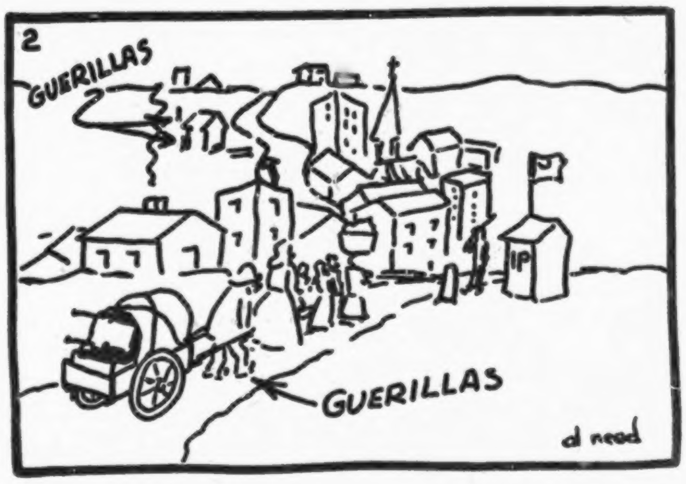
當戰事激烈之時,敵人留下之間-tîp 在我軍佔領地帶,異常活動,企圖獲得我軍之作戰計劃及各種有關情報

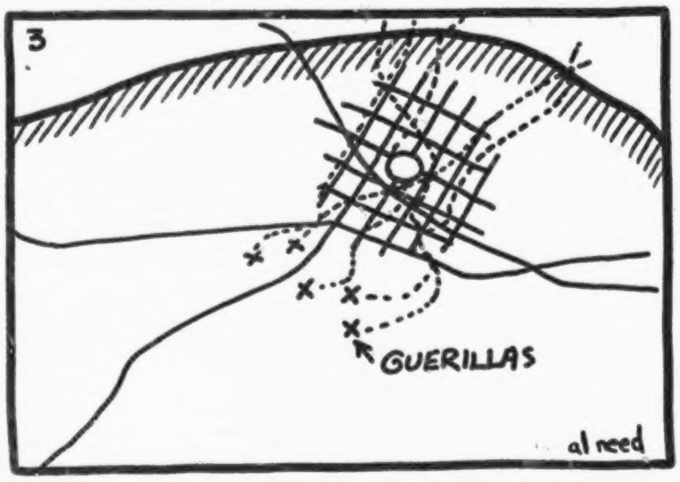
其中一間 tîp 化裝為戰地隨軍記者,混入我軍師司令部,用影相機偷影秘密文件;然後由秘密無線電台,將文件內容傳送至敵軍情報處.但其活動引起我軍反間人員之懷疑,即將此間-tîp 逮捕.

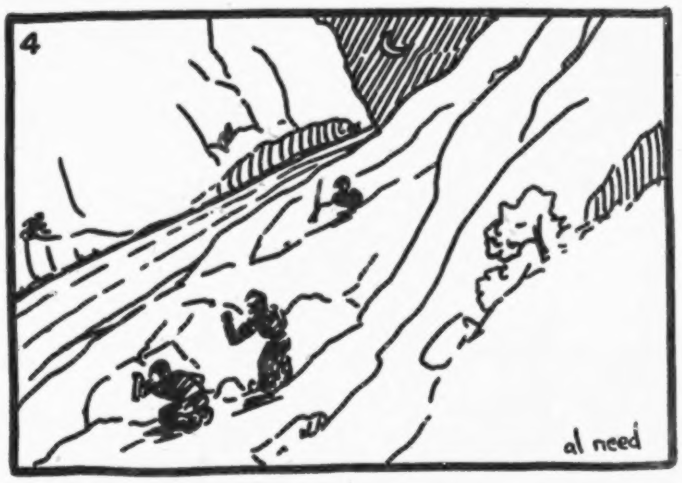
我軍審訊此間-tîp 之後,根據其口供,並能破獲敵人之間-tîp 機關;我軍軍事法庭,將所有捕獲之間-tîp ,判處死刑.

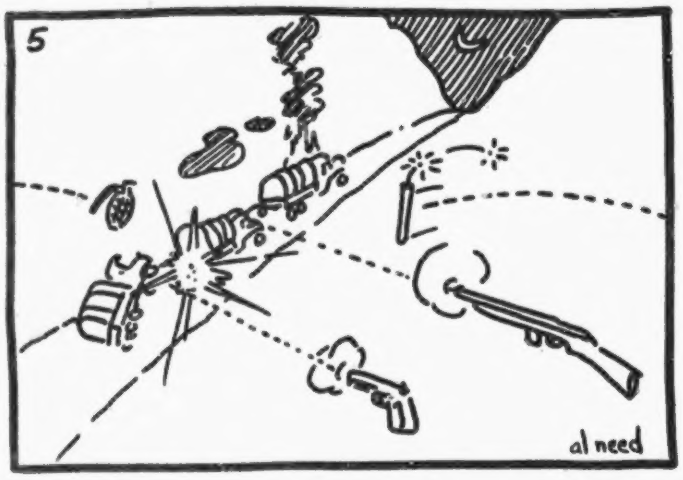
LESSON 23

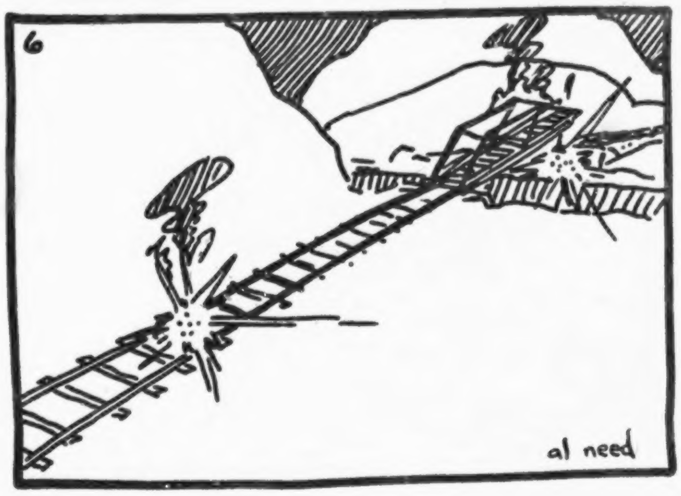

1
al need

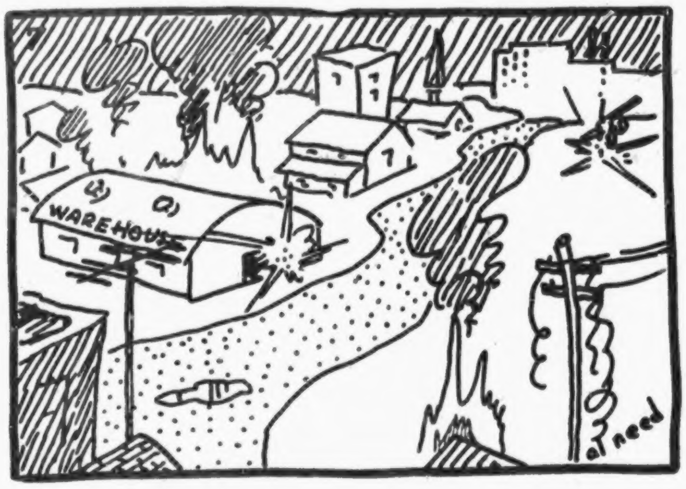

2
GUERILLAS
IP
GUERILLAS
al need


3
GUERILLAS
al need


4
al need


5
al need


6
al need


WAREHOUSE
al need

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Yaū-kik-tuî* haî mi-yĕ?

Taàp: Yaū-kik-tuî* haî yat-kòh saî kè pô-tuî*; k'uĭ-teî wân-yâp tîk-yān kè haû-fong, taam-yâm p'òh-waaî kè kung-tsòk; k'uĭ-teî cheùk pîn-i, kw'aî-taaî hing-pîn kè mŏ-heî.

M: Yaū-kik-tuî* tîm-yeûng* tá-cheùng?

T: Yaū-kik-tuî* toh-sò haî yê-maăn tá-cheùng, k'uĭ-teî yûng fà-chîng-waî-lîng kè chìn-shût. K'uĭ-teî pin shuè to huì, mŏ yat-tîng kè chân-teî.

M: Yaū-kik-tuî* kè chuê-iù yâm-mô haî mi-yĕ?

T: K'uĭ-teî kè chuê-iù yâm-mô haî iŭ-luên tîk-yān kè haû-fong, p'òh-waaî tîk-yān kè kwan-sẑ ts'ìt-peî, t'ūng chûng-iù kè kaau-t'ung-sìn.

M: Ngŏh kwan chìm-lĭng-chóh tîk-yān hoî-ngôn kè keî kòh chûng-iù shĭng-shĭ chi-haû, ngŏh-teî yaû tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè kwan-tuî* kaî-tsûk ts'ìn-tsùn, sham-yâp tîk-yān kè noî-teî, chìm-lĭng yat-kòh hô kân-iù kè shĭng-shĭ.

M: Tîk-yān yaū kóh kòh shĭng-shĭ ts'ìt-t'uì chi-haû, k'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yān yaū kóh kòh shĭng-shĭ ts'ìt-t'uì chi-haû, k'uĭ-teî laū hó toh yaū-kik-tuî* haî kóh kòh shĭng-shĭ shuè.

M: Kóh kòh shĭng-shĭ ngoî-pîn kè tîk-yān yaū-kik-tuî* tîm-yeûng* sàm-yâp ngŏh kwan kè haû-fong?

T: Tîk-yān kè yaū-kik-tuî* fà-chong tsô naân-mān; k'uĭ-teî t'ung-kwòh ngŏh-teî kè kîm-ch'ā-chaâm, sàm-yâp ngŏh kwan kè haû-fong.

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: K'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* tsaâp-kik ngŏh-teî kè wân-shue-tuî*?

T: Haì maăn-t'aū-haak, k'uĭ-teî maaì-fûk haì hìm-iù kè shaan-lô p'ōng-pin. Ngŏh-teî kè wân-shue-tuî* king-kwòh shaan-kuk kè shī-haû, k'uĭ-teî tsaû ning-ch'ut shaú-ts'eung mă-ts'eung shaú-laū-taân* t'ūng chà-yeûk tấng tấng hing-pîn kè mŏ-heì huì tsaâp-kik ngŏh-teî. Ngŏh kwan chùng-fûk, sheung-mōng hó ch'ŭng.

M: K'uĭ-teî yaû p'òh-waaî mi-yĕ?

T: K'uĭ-teî chà-waì ngŏh kwan kè wân-shue-sìn, hó-ts'ž t'ìt-lô, k'iū-leūng tấng tấng chi-haû, yaû p'òh-waaî ngŏh-teî kè ts'ong-foò, taân*-yeûk-foò, pó-k'ap-chaâm, tấng tấng.

LESSON 23

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: What is guerilla unit?

Answer: Guerilla unit is a small unit. They infiltrate into the enemy rear, and undertake work of sabotage; they wear plain clothes and carry small arms.

Q: How do guerillas fight?

A: Guerillas mostly fight at night. They employ the tactics of dispersal. They go everywhere and do not have a definite position.

Q: What is the main mission of guerillas?

A: Their main mission is to harrass the enemy rear, to destroy military installations and important communication lines of the enemy.

Q: After we captured several important cities along the enemy coast, what did we do then?

A: We continued to advance, penetrated the enemy inland and captured a very important city.

Q: After the enemy withdrew from that city, what did they do?

A: When the enemy withdrew from that city, they left a large number of guerillas in that city.

Q: How did the enemy guerillas outside of that city infiltrate into our rear?

A: The enemy guerillas disguised themselves as refugees. They passed our check point and infiltrated into our rear.

LESSON 23

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: How did they raid our transportation unit?

A: During the night, they set up an ambush on the side of the steep path of the mountain. When our transportation unit passed the draw, they drew out small arms, like pistols, carbines, hand-grenades and dynamite to strike us. We were trapped by the ambush and suffered heavy casualties.

Q: What else did they destroy?

A: After they destroyed our transportation lines, such as railroads, bridges, etc., they also destroyed our warehouses, ammunition dump, and supply dump.

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Although two of our men were wounded,the raid was a success.
2. We will strike at the enemy's stronghold tomorrow morning with all our strength.
3. How would you like the idea of building an ammunition dump at the foot of the mountain?
4. Ten of our men had already infiltrated into enemy's line.
5. If the enemy retreated to the draw we'll set up an ambush here.
6. Stay by my side, I don't want you to be trapped by ambush.
7. Our soldiers disguised in plain clothes were able to infiltrate into the warehouses and other key points.
8. These refugees came from the inland by the thousands.
9. When you go through the checking point, be prepared to strike.
10. Your mission is to destroy the warehouse located on this road.
11. It is necessary to employ guerilla tactics whenever your unit is being cut off from the main group.
12. They destroy the equipment with dynamite.
13. You will carefully check all refugees for arms and ammunition at the checking point.
14. Even though they were in plain clothes, I recognized them to be Captain Smith and Major White.
15. The squad leader ordered his men to disperse the moment enemy planes are sighted.
16. We are trapped. What are we going to do?

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

17. You don't look like a refugee to me. Do you have any identification?

LESSON 23

WORD LIST

1.	chà-waî	to destroy (by bomb, dynamite), demolish
2.	chà-yeûk	dynamite
3.	ts'ong-foò	warehouse
4.	chùng-fûk	to be trapped by ambush
5.	fà-chîng-waī-līng	to disperse all around (to split one unit into numerous, guerilla tactics)
6.	hîm-iù	steep, important (in terrain, in combat)
7.	iŭ-luên	to harass
8.	kîm-ch'ā-chaâm	checking point
9.	maaī-fûk	to set up an ambush; ambush
10.	naân-mān	refugee
11.	pîn-i	plain clothes
12.	p'òh-waaî	to destroy
13.	shaan-kuk	draw (terrain)
16.	sham-yâp	to infiltrate into
17.	taân*-yeûk foò	ammunition dump

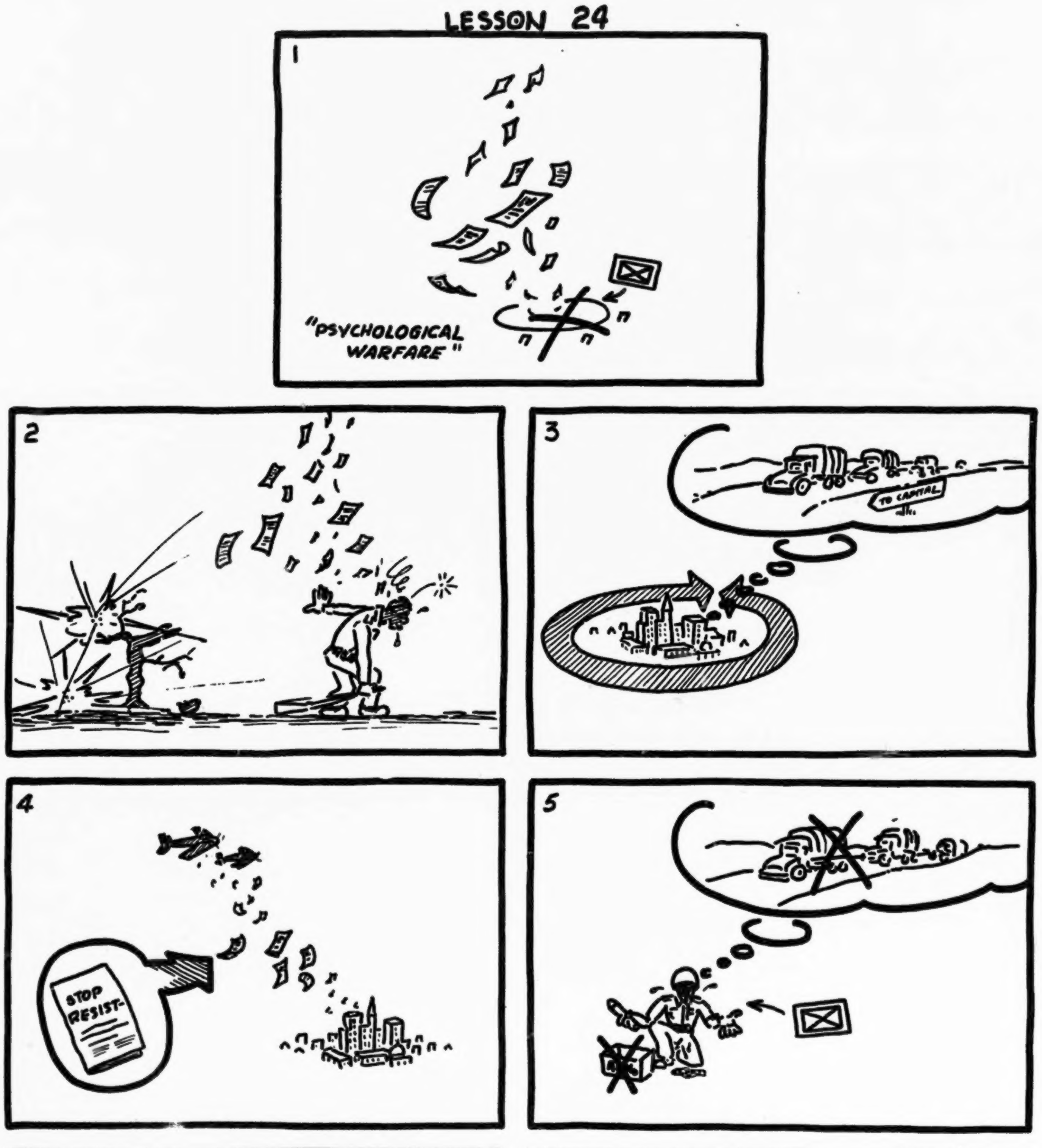
LESSON 23

READING MATERIAL

我軍佔據敵人海岸之數處要點之後，繼續前進，深入敵人內地，佔領一重要城市。

但敵人於後退之時，留下許多游擊隊於市內，此等游擊隊，化裝為難民，通過我軍檢查站，**sàm** 入城市後方，化整為零，晚黑之時，埋伏於險要山路兩旁，及至我運輸隊經過其地，即以手槍，馬槍，手 **-lau** 彈等輕便武器，施行襲擊，並以炸藥炸毀我軍運輸線，如鐵路，橋樑等等，復於市內破壞我倉庫及軍事設備。

LESSON 24


1
"PSYCHOLOGICAL WARFARE"
2
3
TO CAPITAL
4
STOP RESIST-
5
6
7

LÈSSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Haî în-toî kè chìn-chang, kwaan-ue k'uèt shìng-foô kè t'iū-kîn*, ch'uì-chóh mŏ-heì chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ?

Taâp: Haî în-toî kè chìn-chang, kwaan-ue k'uèt shìng-foô kè t'iū-kîn*, ch'uì-chóh mŏ-heî chi-ngoî, chûng yaŭ sam-leĭ tsòk-chìn.

M: Sam-leĭ-chìn haî mi-yĕ? K'uĭ yaŭ mi-yĕ hó-ch'uè?

T: Yûng sam-leĭ huì chìn-paaî tîk-yān, ni chúng paân-faàt kiù-tsô sam-leĭ-chìn. Sam-leĭ-chìn kè hó-ch'uè haî yûng tsuì tai kè toî-kà tak-tó tsuì taaî kè shau-wôk.

Ngŏh-teî hôh-ĭ yûng sam-leĭ-chìn huì lîng tîk-yān leì-sam, ìm-chìn, faán-chìn, waâk-chê yăn-heî tîk-yān kè ping-pìn, t'ō-mōng, táng táng.

M: Sam-leĭ-chìn paau-k'oòt ti mi-yĕ?

T: Sam-leĭ-chìn paau-k'oòt saàn ch'uēn-taan, tîk-ts'ìn haàm-wâ, tîk-haû kwóng-pòh, táng táng.

M: Ngŏh kwan ni ts'z̀ tîm-kaaî iù yûng sam-leĭ-chìn?

T: Tîk-yān kè shaú-to ĭ-king peî ngŏh kwan paau-waì, taân-haî tîk-yān seì-shaú-toî-oōn. Uē-kwóh ngŏh kwan kaì-tsûk kung-kik, sheung fong sheung-mōng yat-tîng hó ch'ŭng. Waî kaám-shiú sheung-mōng heì-kìn, ngŏh kwan yûng sam-leĭ-chìn.

M: Ngŏh kwan ni ts'z̀ tîm-yeûng* tsùn-hāng sam-leĭ-chìn?

T: Ngóh-teî p'aaì fei-kei huì tîk-yān kè ts'ìn-sìn saàn ch'uēn-taan, wâ ngŏh kwan ĭ-king tseung k'uĭ-teî kè shaú-to seì-mîn paau-waì, shóh-yaŭ kè pó-k'ap-sìn to ĭ-king t'uĕn-tsuêt, taân*-

LESSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

yeûk t'ūng leũng-shîk ch'a-m̄-toh yûng-uēn, hô toh ko-k'ap kè chì-fai-koon to tsaú-chôh. Uē-kwôh k'uĭ-teî kaì-tsûk taì-k'òng, tsik-haî tsẑ-shaàt; uē-kwôh k'uĭ-teî tsẑ-tûng t'aū-hōng, chìn-sẑ t'ìng-chì ĭ-haû, ngŏh-teî tsaû hìn-sùng k'uĭ-teî ooì kwòk.

M: Ni ts'z̀ saàn ch'uēn-taan kè haaû-kwôh tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yān taân*-tsûn oōn-tsuêt, sẑ-heì tai-lôk. K'uĭ-teî t'aì-kìn ch'uēn-taan chi-haû, kòh kòh to seúng t'ō-mōng t'ūng t'aū-hōng. Shôh-ĭ tîk-yān kè t'ō-ping yat-yât peì yat-yât toh.

M: K'uĭ-teî tîm-yeûng* heùng ngŏh kwan t'aū-hōng?

T: K'uĭ-teî toh-shò haî maăn-t'aū-haak kè shì-haû t'ō-mōng; k'uĭ-teî yat-shaú ning-chuê paâk-k'eì, yat-shaú ning-chuê ch'uēn-taan tsaú tò ngŏh kwan kè chân-teî shuè.

M: Ngŏh kwan tseung t'ō-ping sùng huì pin shuè?

T: Ngŏh kwan tseung t'ō-ping sùng tò haû-fong.

LESSON 24

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: In the war nowadays, concerning the factors determining between victory and defeat, what else is there besides weapons.

Answer: In the war nowadays, regarding the factors determining between victory and defeat, besides weapons, there is the psychological warfare.

Q: What is psychological warfare: What is its advantage?

A: To defeat the enemy by psychological means is called the psychological warfare. The advantage of psychological warfare is to secure the biggest gain at the least cost. We can employ the psychological warfare to cause the enemy to lose heart, become battle-weary, create opposition to the war, to create mutiny,cause desertion, etc.

Q: What does psychological warfare include?

A: Psychological warfare includes the dropping of leaflets, sending calls to the enemy front, broadcasting to the rear of the enemy, etc.

Q: Why did we have to use psychological warfare this time?

A: The national capital of the enemy was already surrounded, but the enemy defended desperately waiting for the reinforcement. If we continued the attack, the casualties on both sides would have been very heavy. In order to minimize the casualties we employed psychological warfare.

LESSON 24

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: How did we conduct psychological warfare this time?

A: We sent out airplanes to the enemy front to drop leaflets, telling them that our force has already surrounded their national capital on all sides, all the supply lines were cut off, the ammunitions and provisions were almost exhausted, and that many high-ranking commanders have fled. If they continued to resist, it would mean suicide. If they surrendered voluntarily, we would repatriate them to their home country after the war.

Q: What was the effect of leaflets dropping this time?

A: The enemy exhausted their ammunitions and were hopeless of having any reinforcement. The morale was low. After they saw the leaflets, everyone wanted to desert and surrender. Therefore the number of enemy deserters mounted day by day.

Q: How did they surrender to our force?

A: They mostly deserted at night. They carried a white flag in one hand and a leaflet in the other, rushing to our positions.

Q: To where did we send the deserters?

A: We sent the deserters to the rear.

LESSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. We secured the biggest gain at the least cost of production by this new method.
2. These deserters are to be sent to headquarters under guard.
3. Although he came back voluntarily, he is a deserter just the same.
4. We are not going to retreat or surrender, even though we are short of ammunitions.
5. The special service provide entertainment to boost the morale of the troops.
6. Broadcasting to the enemy front required a competent linguist.
7. Their spirit may be low, but they have not lost the will to fight.
8. This is a strategic position, they will defend it with their lives.
9. When you are in combat, you have to kill or to be killed.
10. It is said that power is peace.
11. The effect of your presence is tremendous.
12. Battle fatigue may result through lack of sleep and over-work.
13. This battle is a decisive one.
14. Dropping of leaflets is important in psychological wareface.
15. We will not surrender even though our ammunitions are exhausted.
16. We will repatriate these POW as soon as possible.
17. Some of them surrendered but some continued to fight.

LESSON 24

WORD LIST

1.	chìn-paaī...	to defeat...
2.	faàn chìn	to oppose war; opposition of war; anti-war
3.	haaû-kwóh	effect
4.	hìn-sùng	to repatriate
5.	ìm chìn	battle-weary
6.	în-toī	nowadays, modern
7.	k'uèt shìng-foô	to determine between victory and defeat
8.	leī-sam	to lose heart, be demoralized
9.	ping-pìn	mutiny
10.	seī-shaú-toī-oōn	to defend desperately and wait for reinforcement (sustained defense)
11.	taân*-tsûn oōn-tsuêt	short of ammunition and hopeless of being reinforced
12.	tai-lôk	low, lowered, (morale, spirit)
13.	tîk-ts'īn haàm-wâ	to send calls to the enemy front
14.	t'ō-mōng	to desert; desert
15.	t'ō-ping	deserter
16.	tsuì taaī kè shau-wôk	the biggest gain
17.	tsuì tai kè toī-kà	the lowest cost
18.	tsùn-haāng	to conduct, engage in (war, work, etc)

LESSON 24

WORD LIST

19.	tsẑ-tûng	voluntary; voluntarily
20.	laăng-chìn	cold war
21.	kỉng-kỏ	to warn, admonish; warning

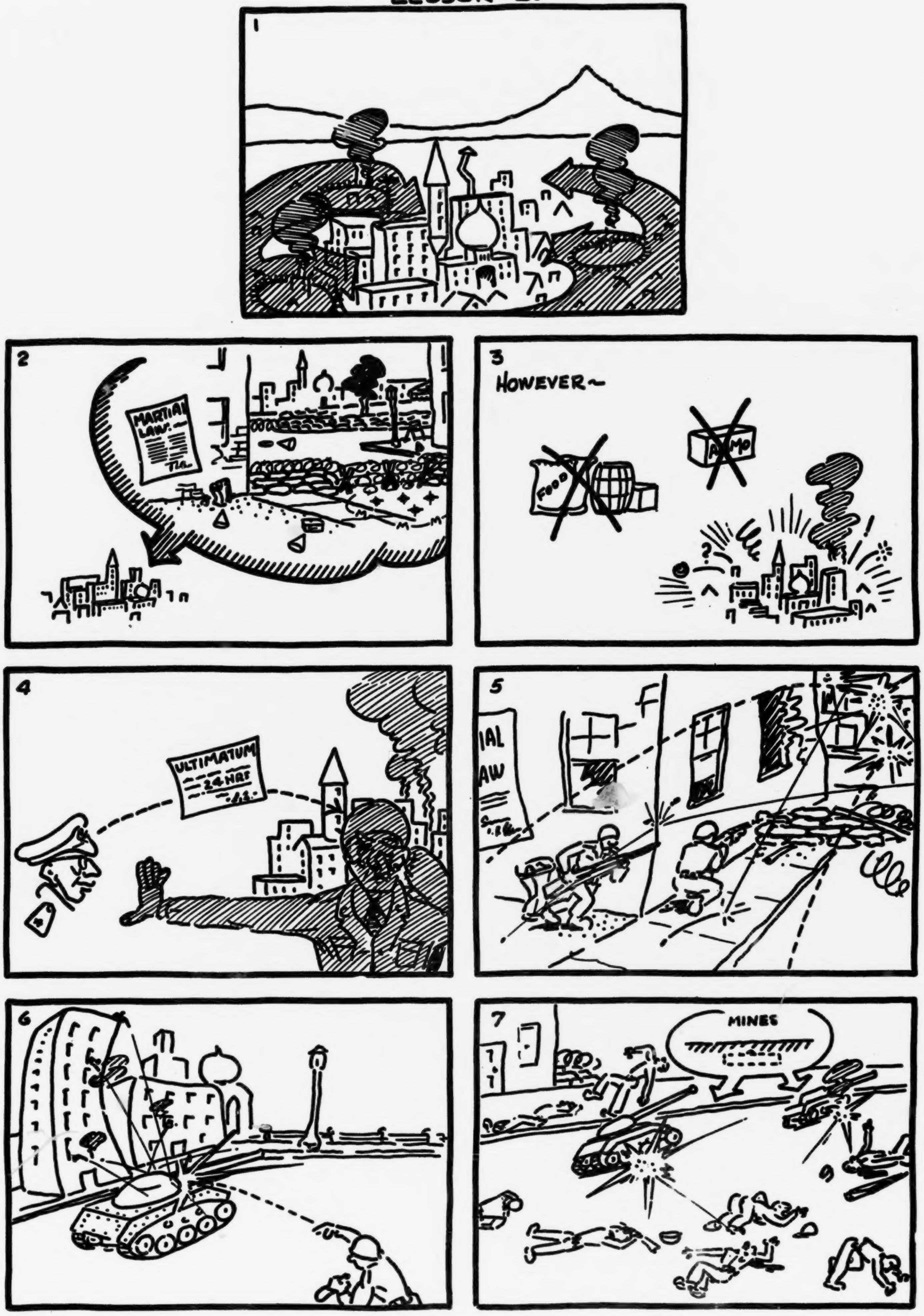
LESSON 24

READING MATERIAL

用心理辦法與敵對之國家相爭，稱為心理戰。此種辦法，為和平時期冷戰之獨一利器。但在戰事發生之時，亦可利用心理戰令敵人離心，厭戰，以及反戰，或者引起敵人兵變，逃亡，等等。

敵人首都，已被我軍包圍，但敵人死守待援，不肯投降，我軍為減少傷亡起見，决用心理戰，派飛機到敵人前線散放傳單，警告敵人停止抵抗。果然，敵人在此彈盡援絕之時，士氣低落；或投降，或逃亡，人數每日有增無減。敵人投降之時，一手高舉白旗，一手緊執傳單，走入我軍陣地；既可憐，亦可笑。此足證明心理戰效力之大。

LESSON 25


1
2
MARTIAL LAW
3
HOWEVER~
FOOD
AMMO
4
ULTIMATUM
24 HRS
5
IAL
AW
6
7
MINES

LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Tîk-yān shaú-to kaau-ngoî kè chûng-iù kuì-tîm uēn-ts'uēn peî ngŏh kwan chìm-lĭng chi-haû, tîk-yān kè chuê-lîk pô-tuî* t'uì-tò pin shuè?

Taàp: Tîk-yān shaú-to kaau-ngoî kè chûng-iù kuì-tîm uēn-ts'uēn peî ngŏh kwan chìm-lĭng chi-haû, tîk-yān kè chuê-lîk pô-tuî* t'uì-tò shaú-to kè luĭ-pîn.

M: Tîk-yān shaú-kwan sz-lîng kè tsòk-chìn kaì-waâk tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yān shaú-kwan sz-lîng tá-suèn seì-shaú; uē-kwôh shaú m̂-chuê, tsaû tât-waî.

M: Ngŏh kwan kè kung-shìng pô-tuî* tá-suèn tîm-yeûng*? Tsuì-haû tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh kwan kè chì-fai-koon heùng tîk-yān shaú-kwan sz-lîng hâ tsuì-haû t'ung-tîp, haân k'uĭ-teî haì î-shâp-seì siú-shì chi-noî t'aū-hōng. Uē-kwôh tîk-yān m̂-tsìp-shaû, ngŏh-teî tsaû hoi-ch'ì tsúng kung-kik. Î-shâp-seì siú-shì chi-haû, tîk kwan k'uĭ-tsuêt tsìp-shaû ngŏh-teî kè tsuì-haû t'ung-tîp. Ngŏh kwan hoi-ch'ì tsúng kung-kik. Ngŏh-teî kè taaî-p'aaù heùng shìng-noî maăng-lît kwang-kik.

M: Shaú-to luĭ-pîn kè ts'ìng-yìng tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk kwan sz-lîng hâ lîng kaaì-îm. Shìng-noî tò-shuè fòng pô-shaaù; haì kòk taaî kìn-chuk-mât kè ts'ìn-pîn fòng hó toh sha-paau; chûng-iù kè shâp-tsẑ-lô-haú yaŭ teî-luì-k'ui t'ūng haâm-tsêng. Taân-haî tîk-yān kè leūng-shîk t'ūng taân*-yeûk m̂-kaù. Shì-noî tît-tsuî wân-luên.

LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: Ngŏh kwan kè tsúng kung-kik hoi-ch'ì chi-haû, sheung fong kè ts'ìng-yìng tîm-yeûng*?

T: King-kwòh keì siú-shì kè chìn-taù chi-haû, ngŏh kwan kè t'aấn-hak-ch'e îm-oô sin-t'aū pô-tuî* yâp shìng. Shaú-to faàt-shang hông-chìn. Tîk-yān haì taaî kìn-chuk-mât kè ts'eung-haú t'ūng uk-têng shuè yûng hing ping-heì heùng ngŏh kwan shê-kik; k'uĭ-teî kè pô-ping heùng ngŏh kwan t'aấn-hak-ch'e kè seì-kòk ch'ung-fung. Ngŏh kwan kè keì kà t'aấn-hak-ch'e chông-tố teî-luì. Sheung fong kè seì-sheung to hó ch'ŭng.

LESSON 25

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: After all the suburban key points of the enemy capital were captured by our force, to where did the enemy main force retreat?

Answer: After all the suburban key points of the enemy's capital were captured by our force, the enemy main force retreated to the capital.

Q: What was the operation plan of the commander of the enemy defenders?

A: The commander of the enemy defenders planned to defend until the last minute. If they couldn't hold the city, they would break out.

Q: What did our siege force plan? What happened finally?

A: Our commander delivered an ultimatum to the commander of the enemy defenders, demanding them to surrender within twenty-four hours. If the enemy would not accept, we would initiate the general assault. Twenty-four hours later, the enemy refused to accept our ultimatum. We started the general assault. Our artillery pieces shelled the city with violent fires.

Q: What was the situation inside the capital?

A: The enemy commander declared martial law. There were sentries everywhere in the city. Sand bags were piles up in front of various large buildings. Mine fields and booby traps were set up at the important street intersections. However, the enemy were short of provisions and ammunition. The city was chaotic.

LESSON 25

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Q: After we initiated the general assault, how were situations on both sides?

A: After a combat of several hours, our tanks covered the vanguards to rush into the city. Street fighting in the capital occurred. The enemy fired with small arms from windows and roof tops of large buildings at our forces. Their infantrymen charged toward the dead-spaces of our tanks. Several of our tanks hit mines. Casualties on both sides were very heavy.

LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The city is in a state of confusion, and many spies infiltrated into military reservations.
2. The commander ordered his troops to continue fighting from street to street.
3. The general assault will be launched at 1800 hours.
4. If you can't hold this bridge, you can retreat to the hills to the north of this city.
5. We have to break through the enemy tonight.
6. This ultimatum demands our surrender within an hour.
7. We will not accept the ultimatum, and we will bombard their units with everything we have.
8. The whole country is under martial law and sentries are posted everywhere.
9. I refuse to shell the city because some of my men already entered the city and are fighting on the streets.
10. Charging toward the enemy tank is dangerous.
11. You will put some sand bags behind this window and set a booby trap at that entrance.
12. I will be in charge of this unit for the general assault.
13. The tanks will cover the troops to advance toward the city.
14. Casualties on both sides are very low.
15. Make a survey of the situation and report back to me.
16. Pile up some sanbags in front of this door.

LESSON 25

WORD LIST

1.	haâm-tsîng (haâm-tsêng)	booby trap
2.	haân (haân k'eì)	to demand (deadline)
3.	hông-chìn	street fighting
4.	kaaì-ìm	martial law
5.	k'uǐ-tsuêt	to refuse, reject
6.	kung-shìng pô-tuî*	siege unit
7.	kwang-kik	to shell, bombard
8.	pô-shaaù	sentry
9.	seí-kòk	dead space
10.	sha-paau	sandbag
11.	shaú-kwan sz-lîng	commander of defenders
12.	shaú m̄-chuê	cannot hold (place)
13.	tât-waì	to break a siege, break out
14.	tît-tsuì	order (place, city, classroom, etc)
15.	tsìp-shaû	to accept
16.	tsuì-haû t'ung-tîp (oi-tik-meǐ-tun shue)	ultimatum
17.	wân-luên	chaotic; confusion
18.	tui-chì	to pile up; to heap together in a pile
19.	kw'àn-shaù chi taù	to fight like a trapped animal

LESSON 25

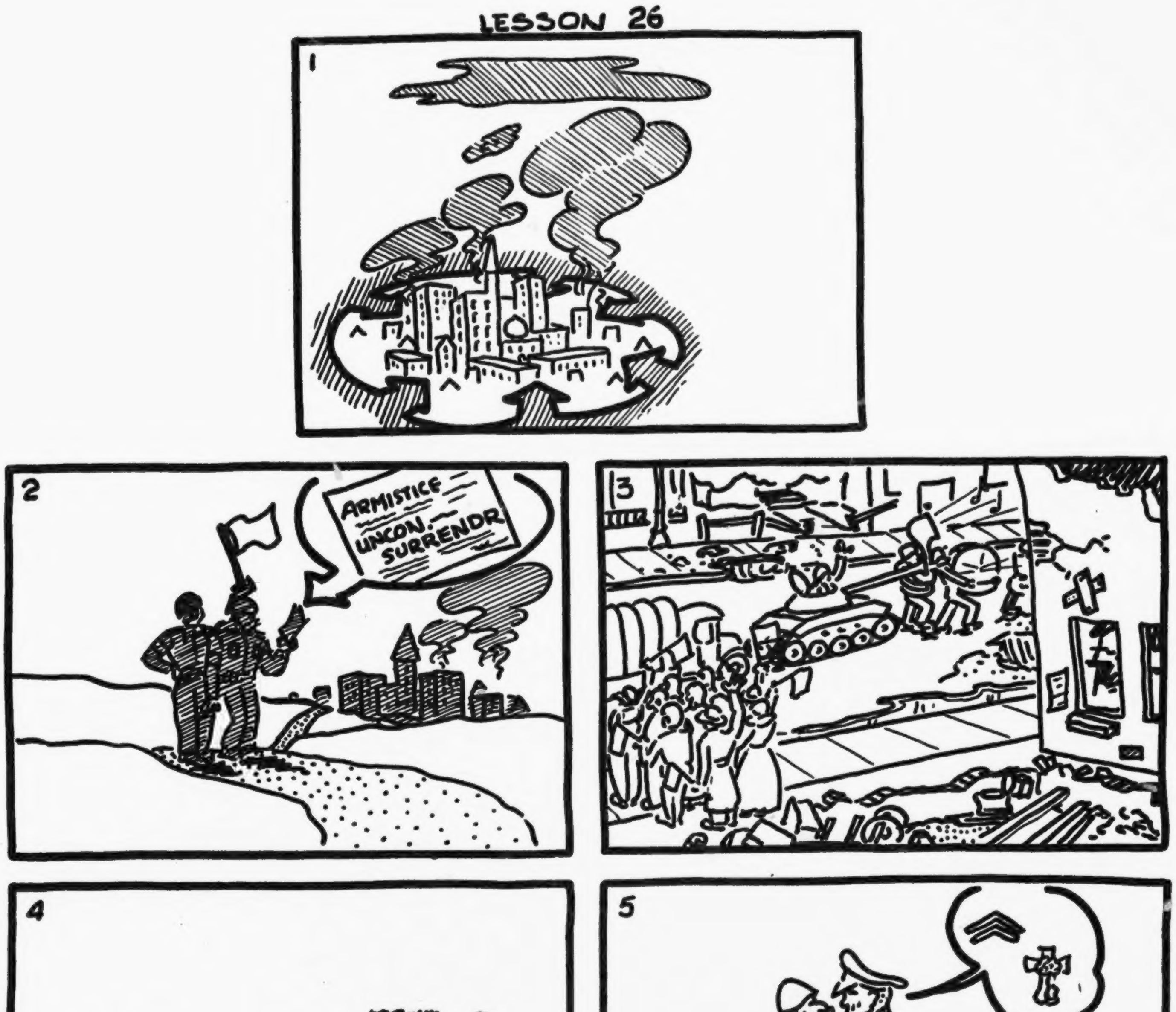
READING MATERIAL

敵人首都郊外所有據點,完全被我軍佔領.敵人主力部隊,全數退入城内,準備巷戰.敵人施行戒嚴;到處堆置沙包,埋藏地雷.

但糧食不足,彈藥將盡,市内秩序混亂.我軍指揮官向敵人守軍下最後通-tîp ,限於二十四小時之内投降.

敵人仍想作困獸之鬥,拒絕接受我軍最後通 -tîp .我軍迫不得已,開始向城内炮擊;經數小時炮戰之後,我軍先頭部隊,即攻入市區,巷戰發生.敵人由大建築物之屋頂及窗口,用輕兵器向我軍射擊;有等步兵更向我軍t'aân克車之死角衝-fung .我軍有數架 t'aân克車撞地雷被毀,雙方死傷重大.

LESSON 26


1
2
ARMISTICE
UNCON.
SURRENDR
3
4
5
6
7
ATION
RAY!
O HOME

LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mân: Tîk-yān kè shaú-to în-tsòī kè ts'īng-shaī tîm-yeûng*?

Taàp: Tîk-yān kè shaú-to peî ngŏh kwan seī-mîn paau-waī. Chīn-taù ĭ-king tò-chóh tsuī-haû kaai-tuên. Ts'īng-shaī hó īm-chûng, shĭ-mān to sóh-chuê moōn, m̄-kôm ch'ut kaai.

M: Tîk-yān mŏ faàt-tsẑ tsoī taī-k'òng kè shī-haû, chî yaŭ tîm-yeûng*?

T: Tîk-yān mŏ-faàt-tsẑ tsoī taī-k'òng kè shī-haû, chî yaŭ mō-t'iū-kîn* t'aū-hōng. K'uĭ-teî p'aaī toî-piú heùng ngŏh kwan t'aī-ch'ut yau-chīn kè ts'îng-k'aū.

M: T'īng chīn chi-haû, ngŏh kwan tîm-yeûng* waī-ch'ī shĭ-noî kè chî-on?

T: Ngŏh kwan hâ kaaī-īm kè mîng-lĭng, p'aaī-ch'ut hīn-ping kîm-ch'ā p'īng-mān. Ngŏh-teî kè pô-tuî* kaaî-ch'uī tîk-yān kè mŏ-chong, fooi-fûk shĭ-noî kè tît-tsuî.

M: Ngŏh-teî chīn-shīng chi-haû, ngŏh-teî kè chīm-lĭng kwan yaŭ mi-yĕ kuî-tûng?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè hoî, lûk, hung saam-kwan kuī-hāng taaî ts'ūn-hāng, hoi-yâp tîk-yān kè shaú-to. Tîk kwòk shaú-to kè yān-mān foon-yīng ngŏh kwan.

M: Ngŏh-teî kòk teî-fong kè kwan-tuî* tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh-teî kòk teî kè chīm-lĭng kwan kaaī-ch'uī tong-teî tîk-yān kè mŏ-chong, hīng-chuk tsuī-haû kè shīng-leî.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè chīng-foó tuī yaŭ-kung kè tseùng-sẑ tîm-yeûng*?

LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

T: Ngŏh-teî kè chìng-foó tuì yaŭ-kung kè tseùng-sẑ paan-faàt fancheung, waâk-chê shing-k'ap.

M: Ngŏh-teî kè chìng-foó tuì shaû-sheung kè kwan-yān tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ngŏh-teî kè chìng-foó tuì shaû-sheung kè kwan-yān waì-lō, tuì sheung-mōng kwan-yān kè ka-shûk foó-sut.

M: Ts'uēn kwòk yān-mān tuì chân-mōng tseùng-sẑ tîm-yeûng*?

T: Ts'uēn kwòk yān-mān tuì chân-mōng tseùng-sẑ kuì-hāng kungtsaì tîn-laĭ, ts'uēn kwòk kwan mān to kw'ōng-foon, hìngchuk shìng-leî yât.

LESSON 26

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

Question: What is the present situation in the enemy capital?

Answer: The enemy capital was surrounded on all sides by our force. The combat has already reached the final phase. The situation was very serious. All the residents had their doors locked. They did not dare to go out.

Q: When the enemy were incapable of resisting any longer, what was the only thing they could do?

A: When the enemy were incapable of resisting any longer, they could only resort to unconditional surrender. They sent representatives to present an armistice request.

Q: After the armistice, how did we maintain order inside the city?

A: We declared martial law, and sent out military police to inspect the civilians. Our units disarmed the enemy, and restored the city order.

Q: After we won the war, what activity did our occupation army have?

A: Our Armed Forces held a big parade while entering the enemy's capital. The people in the capital of the enemy country welcomed our forces.

Q: What did our forces in various places do?

A: Our occupation troops in various places disarmed the enemy, and celebrated the final victory.

Q: What did our government do for the meritorious soldiers?

LESSON 26

TRANSLATION OF DIALOGUE

A: Our government awarded medals or promotions to the meritorious soldiers.

Q: What did our government do for those wounded soldiers?

A: Our government brought comfort to those wounded soldiers, and gave compensations to the families of the wounded and dead.

Q: What did the people in the whole nation do for the soldiers killed in action?

A: The people in the whole nation held memorial ceremonies honoring the dead. All the soldiers and civilians in the whole nation were overjoyed in celebrating this victory day.

LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Soldiers fallen in action did not die in vain.
2. After the cease-fire, our units entered the city.
3. At this time, I would like to apply for a transfer.
4. Remember to lock the door when you go out tonight.
5. General Smith will present you the award for meritorious service today.
6. A memorial ceremony will be held on Armistice Day every year.
7. Please continue the good work, we still have a lot of work to do.
8. Your behavior is very childish.
9. I hope we will not have any more trouble in the future.
10. She tried to subdue the thief without using any weapon.
11. I will be very happy to come to your birthday party.
12. These are members of my family: my parents, my brother, my sister and my wife.
13. The government will give compensations to the families of the wounded and dead.
14. The police restored order in the streets.
15. The present situation of the occupied city is chaotic.
16. Your injury is very critical. I think I better notify the members of your family.

LESSON 26

WORD LIST

1.	chân-mōng	to kill in action
2.	tseùng-sẑ	soldiers (officers and enlisted personnel)
3.	ts'ūn-haāng	parade, demonstration
4.	foó-sut	to compensate, compassionate; compensation
5.	ka-shûk	family members
6.	kaaî-ch'uī... mŏ-chong	to disarm
7.	kaai-tuên	phase, stage (situation)
8.	kuí-haāng	to hold (meeting, ceremony, parade, exhibition, concert, etc)
9.	kuî-tûng	act, conduct, behavior
10.	kung-tsaì tín-laǐ	memorial ceremony (soldiers, civilian, friend, etc)
11.	kw'ōng-foon	to overjoy
12.	paan-faàt fan-cheung	to award medal
13.	t'aī-ch'ut... ts'íng-k'aū	to present the request to...
14.	yau chìn	armistice, cease fire truce
15.	yaŭ-kung	meritorious, well-deserved; to deserve the credit

LESSON 26

READING MATERIAL

敵人首都被我軍攻入，雖在市內仍作强頑抵抗，但大部份被我軍消滅，少數殘餘無法再抗。只有無條件投降。派代表何我軍提出休戰請求。

我軍全數開入敵人首都。敵國人民夾道歡迎。我軍將各地敵人武裝解除。海、陸、空三軍舉行大巡遊。政府對有功將士發給fan- 章，或者升級；對受傷軍人慰勞；對陣亡將士舉行公祭典禮。全國軍民狂歡，慶祝勝利日。

LESSON 26

WORD LIST

1.	chân-mōng	to kill in action
2.	tseùng-sẑ	soldiers (officers and enlisted personnel)
3.	ts'ūn-haāng	parade, demonstration
4.	foó-sut	to compensate, compassionate; compensation
5.	ka-shûk	family members
6.	kaaî-ch'uī... mŏ-chong	to disarm
7.	kaai-tuên	phase, stage (situation)
8.	kuî-haāng	to hold (meeting, ceremony, parade, exhibition, concert, etc)
9.	kuî-tûng	act, conduct, behavior
10.	kung-tsaì tîn-laĭ	memorial ceremony (soldiers, civilian, friend, etc)
11.	kw'ōng-foon	to overjoy
12.	paan-faàt fan-cheung	to award medal
13.	t'aī-ch'ut... ts'ìng-k'aū	to present the request to...
14.	yau chìn	armistice, cease fire truce
15.	yaŭ-kung	meritorious, well-deserved; to deserve the credit

LESSON 26

READING MATERIAL

敵人首都被我軍攻入，雖在市内仍作强頑抵抗，但大部份被我軍消滅，少數殘餘無法再抗。只有無條件投降。派代表何我軍提出休戰請求。

我軍全數開入敵人首都。敵國人民夾道歡迎。我軍將各地敵人武裝解除。海，陸，空三軍舉行大巡遊。政府對有功將士發給fan- 章，或者升級；對受傷軍人慰勞；對陣亡將士舉行公祭典禮。全國軍民狂歡，慶祝勝利日。

LESSON 26

WORD LIST

1.	chân-mōng	to kill in action
2.	tseùng-sẑ	soldiers (officers and enlisted personnel)
3.	ts'ūn-haāng	parade, demonstration
4.	foó-sut	to compensate, compassionate; compensation
5.	ka-shûk	family members
6.	kaaî-ch'uī... mŏ-chong	to disarm
7.	kaai-tuên	phase, stage (situation)
8.	kuí-haāng	to hold (meeting, ceremony, parade, exhibition, concert, etc)
9.	kuî-tûng	act, conduct, behavior
10.	kung-tsaì tîn-laĭ	memorial ceremony (soldiers, civilian, friend, etc)
11.	kw'ōng-foon	to overjoy
12.	paan-faàt fan-cheung	to award medal
13.	t'aī-ch'ut... ts'ìng-k'aū	to present the request to...
14.	yau chìn	armistice, cease fire truce
15.	yaŭ-kung	meritorious, well-deserved; to deserve the credit

LESSON 26

READING MATERIAL

敵人首都被我軍攻入,雖在市内仍作强頑抵抗,但大部份被我軍消滅,少數殘餘無法再抗.只有無條件投降.派代表何我軍提出休戰請求.

我軍全數開入敵人首都.敵國人民夾道歡迎.我軍將各地敵人武裝解除.海,陸,空三軍舉行大巡遊.政府對有功將士發給fan- 章,或者升級;對受傷軍人慰勞;對陣亡將士舉行公祭典禮.全國軍民狂歡,慶祝勝利日.

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUT

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE
TEXT VOLUME
VOLUME VIII
LESSONS 1-26
(CHARACTER TEXT)

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENS

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Text Volume

Volume VIII

Lessons 1-26

(Character Text)

July 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

第一課　基本訓練

問：軍人入伍之後，起首嘅訓練係乜野？

答：軍人入伍之後，起首嘅訓練係基本訓練．

問：基本訓練包括好多野，但係最緊要嘅野係乜野？

答：基本訓練包括多野，但係最緊要嘅係制式教練、戰鬥教練，同射擊教練．

問：制式教練又叫做乜野教練呀？

答：制式教練又叫做密集隊形教練．

問：制式教練嘅基本單位係乜野呢？

答：制式教練嘅基本單位係班，排，連．

問：制式教練包括乜野呀？

答：制式教練包括隊形編成，集合同解散　步法、操槍法，

行進，方向隊形變換等等．

問：戰鬥教練又叫做乜野呀？

答：戰鬥教練又叫做散開隊形教練．

問：戰鬥教練嘅單位係乜野呢？

答：戰鬥教練嘅單位亦都係班，排、連．

問：戰鬥教練包括啲乜野呢？

答：戰鬥教練包括攻擊嘅隊形同運動，或者防禦嘅隊形同運動

問：射擊教練包括乜野呢？

答：射擊教練包括射擊預習，射擊實習，紀錄射擊，同戰鬥射擊．

第一課　基本訓練

基本訓練係軍人起首嘅訓練．呢種訓練亦都包括非常之多野．但係最緊要嘅有制式教練，戰鬥教練，同射擊教練．制式教練又叫做密集隊形教練．呢種教練嘅基本單位係班，排，連．教練包括隊形編成，集合解散，步法，操槍法，行進，方向隊形變換等等．戰鬥教練又叫做散開隊形教練．基本嘅單位亦都係班，排，連．教練包括攻擊或者防禦嘅隊形同運動．射擊教練有射擊預習，射擊實習，紀錄射擊，同戰鬥射擊．

第二課　陸軍編制

問：國防部係一個乜野機關？

答：國防部係國家最高嘅軍政機關．

問：國防部負責乜野呀？指揮乜野呀？

答：國防部負責國防嘅事務、指揮海陸空三軍．

問：陸軍平時嘅編制同戰時嘅編制同唔同呀？

答：陸軍平時嘅編制同戰時嘅編制唔同．

問：陸軍平時嘅編制同戰時嘅編制點樣唔同呀？

答：戰時嘅編制比較平時嘅編制大好多．平時編制表嘅人員係要黎做戰時嘅幹部．

問：陸軍最高嘅機關係乜野呀？

答：陸軍最高嘅機關係陸軍總司令部．

問：平時陸軍最大嘅單位係乜野呀？

答：平時陸軍最大嘅單位係軍．

問：軍嘅下便有乜野呀？

答：軍嘅下便有師；師嘅下便有團，營，連等等．

問：戰時陸軍嘅編制點樣呀？

答：戰時陸軍嘅編制非常之大．軍嘅單位就非常之多．

問：戰時陸軍總部嘅下便增加乜野單位呀？

答：戰時陸軍總部嘅下便增加集團軍同軍團．

問：集團軍，軍團，同軍邊個至高，邊個至低呀？

答：集團軍，軍團，同軍，集團軍至高，其次係軍團，至低係軍．

問：戰時陸軍總部點解要有集團軍同軍團嘅單位呀？

答：為指揮系統方便起見，所以喺陸軍總部同軍嘅中間有集團軍同軍團．

第二課　陸軍編制

陸軍平時嘅編制同戰時嘅編制唔同．因為戰時嘅編制比較平時嘅大好多，所以平時編制表嘅人員係要黎做戰時嘅幹部．陸軍最高嘅機關係陸軍總司令部．平時陸軍最大嘅單位係軍．軍嘅下便有師．師嘅下便有團，營，連等等．戰時因為陸軍嘅編制非常之大，軍嘅單位就非常之多．為指揮系統方便同確實，所以喺陸軍總部同軍嘅中間有集團軍同軍團．

第三課　陸軍兵科同業科

問：陸軍嘅兵科同業科總共有幾多種呀？

答：陸軍嘅兵科同業科總共有十八種．

問：陸軍嘅兵科有邊幾種呀？

答：陸軍嘅兵科有八種，即係步兵，騎兵，砲兵，裝甲兵，工兵，通訊兵，輜重兵，同憲兵．

問：業科有邊幾種呀？

答：業科有十種，即係經理（軍需同財政），軍醫，獸醫，測量，兵工，軍樂，軍法，政工，軍用技術人員同軍用文職人員．

問：呢十八種兵科同業科可以分成邊兩類人員呀？

答：呢十八種兵科同業科可以分成戰鬥人員同非戰鬥人員．

問：兵科人員係戰鬥人員抑或係非戰鬥人員呀？

答：兵科人員係戰鬥人員．

問：兵科人員負責乜野任務呀？

答：兵科人員負責戰鬥嘅任務．

問：業科人員係戰鬥人員抑或非戰鬥人員呀？

答：業科人員係非戰鬥人員．

問：業科人員喺前線工作抑或喺後方工作呀？

答：業科人員既然係非戰鬥人員，佢地多數喺後方工作．

有時佢地亦都喺前線工作．

問：業科嘅政工人員負責邊種工作呀？

答：業科嘅政工人員係軍隊裏便嘅政治工作人員．佢地負責軍隊嘅政治工作，同對敵人嘅心理作戰、宣傳等等

問：如果係敢，有啲政工人員屬於戰鬥人員，係嗎？

答：係，有啲政工人員屬於戰鬥人員．

第三課　陸軍兵科同業科

陸軍嘅兵科同業科總共有十八種．兵科有八種．佢地係步兵，騎兵，砲兵，裝甲兵，工兵，通信兵，輜重兵，同憲兵．業科有十種，佢地係經理，軍醫，獸醫，測量，兵工，軍樂，軍法，政工，軍用技術人員，同軍用文職人員．呢十八種兵業科嘅人員大概可以分成戰鬥人員同非戰鬥人員兩類．兵科人員係戰鬥人員．業科人員係非戰鬥人員．政工係業科，但係有啲政工人員係戰鬥人員．

第四課　師司令部同指揮系統

問：一個師嘅最高長官係邊個呢？

答：一個師嘅最高長官係師長

問：一個師除咗師長之外重有乜野主要嘅長官呢？

答：一個師除咗師長之外重有兩個主要長官，即係副師長同參謀長．

問：司令部下命令俾部下部隊嘅時候，由邊個簽名？

答：司令部下命令俾部下部隊嘅時候，由師長簽名，但係副師長同參謀長亦都要簽名．

問：司令部嘅參謀分開幾多類呢？

答：司令部嘅參謀分開為一般參謀同特業參謀兩類．

問：一般參謀又叫做乜野呀？一般參謀有幾多個科呀？

答：一般參謀又叫做參謀處，呢個處裏便有四個科，即係第一科，第二科，第三科同第四科．

問：呢四個科嘅任務係乜野呀？

答：第一科負責人事，第二科負責情報，第三科負責教育同訓練，第四科負責軍需．

問：特業參謀負責乜野呀？佢嘅組織係點樣架？

答：特業參謀辦理其他各種事務，佢分為副官處，兵工處，軍醫處，軍法處，經理處等等．

問：參謀人員嘅主要職責係乜野？

答：參謀人員嘅主要職責係協助參謀長，所以佢地都係參謀長嘅助手．

問：參謀人員有冇權指揮部隊架？

答：參謀人員冇權指揮部隊，但係可以指導部隊．

第四課　師司令部同指揮系統

一個師除咗有一個師長之外，重有兩個長官．呢兩個長官係副師長同參謀長．司令部下命令俾部下部隊嘅時候，師長要簽名，副師長同參謀長亦都要簽名．司令部嘅參謀分開為一般參謀同特業參謀兩類．一般參謀又叫做參謀處，裏便有第一科，第二科，第三科，同第四科．特業參謀有副官處，兵工處，軍醫處，軍法處，經理處等等．所有嘅參謀人員都係參謀長嘅助手，冇權指揮部隊，但係可以指導佢地．

第五課　步兵兵器同彈藥

問：步兵兵器可以分為邊兩種？

答：步兵兵器可以分為輕兵器同重兵器兩種

問：輕兵器係點樣架？

答：輕兵器係個人可以攜帶嘅兵器．

問：輕兵器包括乜野？

答：輕兵器包括手槍，馬槍，步槍，輕機關槍，刺刀，手榴彈同槍榴彈等等．

問：重兵器包括乜野？

答：重兵器包括重機關槍，火箭砲，無座力砲，迫擊砲，步兵榴彈砲同平射砲等等．

問：槍同砲有乜野唔同呢？

答：根據中國嘅兵器黎講，口徑唔過十公釐嘅係槍，口徑大過十公釐嘅係砲．

問：槍嘅彈藥叫做乜野？

答：槍嘅彈藥叫做子彈．

問：砲嘅彈藥叫乜野？

答：砲嘅彈藥叫做砲彈．

問：子彈分開幾多部分？

答：子彈分開三部分．

問：子彈嘅三部分叫做乜野？

答：第一部叫做彈頭，第二部叫做彈壳同雷管，第三部叫做裝藥

問：步兵平射砲用嘅彈藥係乜野？

答：步兵平射砲用嘅彈藥係定裝藥嘅砲彈．

問：榴彈砲同迫擊砲用嘅彈藥係乜野？

答：榴彈砲同迫擊砲用嘅彈藥係變裝藥嘅砲彈．

第五課　步兵兵器同彈藥

步兵兵器可以分為輕兵器同重兵器兩種．輕兵器係個人可以攜帶嘅兵器．輕兵器有手槍，馬槍，步槍，輕機關槍，刺刀，手榴彈，同槍榴彈等等．重兵器有重機關槍，火箭砲，無座力砲，迫擊砲，步兵榴彈砲同平射砲等等．槍嘅彈藥叫做子彈，砲嘅彈藥叫做砲彈．子彈分開三部分，即係彈頭，彈壳同雷管，裝藥．步兵平射砲用嘅彈藥係定裝藥嘅砲彈；榴彈砲同迫擊砲用嘅彈藥係變裝藥嘅砲彈．

第六課　砲兵火器同彈藥

問：根據彈道，砲兵嘅火器可以分為幾多類？

答：根據彈道，砲兵嘅火器可以分為三類．

問：砲兵第一類嘅火器係乜野？

答：第一類係彈道平射嘅火器，叫做加農砲．

問：砲兵第二類嘅火器係乜野？

答：第二類係彈道曲射嘅火器，叫做迫擊砲．

問：砲兵第三類嘅火器係乜野？

答：第三類係彈道喺平射同曲射中間嘅火器叫做榴彈砲．

問：砲兵嘅火器除阻呢三類之外重有乜野呢？

答：重有集束彈道嘅火器，叫做多管火箭砲．

問：根據任務，砲兵嘅火器又可以分為乜野？

答：根據任務，砲兵嘅火器又可以分為要塞砲，高射砲，步兵砲，同野戰砲等等．

問：根據口徑，野戰砲再可以分為幾多種？

答：根據口徑，野戰砲可以分為輕砲，重砲同最重砲三種．

問：最普通嘅砲兵彈藥係乜野？

答：最普通嘅砲兵彈藥係榴彈；其次係破甲彈同榴霰彈．

問：信管有幾多種？

答：信管有兩種，即係空炸信管，同碰炸信管．

問：碰炸信管又可以分為幾多種？

答：碰炸信管又可以分為瞬發，着發同延期三種．

第六課　砲兵火器同彈葯

根據彈道，砲兵嘅火器可以區分為三類・彈道平射嘅火器叫做加農砲；彈道曲射嘅火器叫做迫擊砲；彈道喺平射同曲射中間嘅火器叫做榴彈砲；重有集束彈道嘅火器叫做多管火箭砲・根據任務，砲兵嘅火器又可以區分為要塞砲，高射砲，步兵砲，同野戰砲等等・根據口徑，野戰砲再可以區分為，輕砲，重砲，同最重砲三種・最普通嘅砲兵彈葯係榴彈；其次係破甲彈同榴霰彈；信管有兩種，即係空炸信管同碰炸信管・碰炸信管又可以分為瞬發，着發同延期三種・

第七課　陸軍階級

問：陸軍嘅階級分開幾多類呢？

答：陸軍嘅階級分開士兵同軍官兩類．

問：士兵嘅階級分開幾多級呢？

答：士兵嘅階級分開士兵同軍士兩級．

士兵分開二等兵，一等兵，上等兵三級．

軍士分開下士，中士，上士三級．

問：軍官嘅階級分開幾多級呢？

答：軍官嘅階級分開尉官，校官，將官三級．

尉官分開准尉，少尉，中尉，上尉四級．

校官分開少校，中校，上校三級．

將官分開少將，中將，二級上將，一級上將，特級上將五級．

問：一個班係由邊個指揮？

答：一個班係由一個軍士指揮．

問：一個排係由邊個指揮？

答：一個排係由一個少尉或中尉指揮．

問：一個連級部隊係由乜野階級嘅軍官指揮？

答：一個連級部隊係由一個上尉指揮．

問：一個營級部隊係由乜野階級嘅軍官指揮？

答：一個營級部隊係由一個少校或中校指揮．

問：一個團級部隊係由乜野階級嘅軍官指揮？

答：一個團級部隊係由一個上校指揮．

問：師以上部隊係由乜野階級嘅軍官指揮？

答：師以上部隊係由一個將官指揮．

第七課　陸軍階級

陸軍嘅階級分開軍官同士兵兩類，士兵嘅階級分開士兵同軍士兩級，士兵分開二等兵，一等兵，上等兵三級．軍士分開下士、中士、上士三級．軍官嘅階級分開尉官，校官同將官三級．尉官分開准尉，少尉，中尉，上尉四級；校官分開少校，中校，上校三級；將官分開少將、中將，二級上將，一級上將，特級上將五級．一個班係由一個軍士指揮，一個排係由一個少尉或者中尉指揮，一個連級部隊係由上尉指揮、一個營級部隊係由少校或中校指揮，一個團級部隊係由上校指揮，師以上嘅部隊係由一個將官指揮．

第八課　擊退敵人嘅攻擊

問：普通嘅戰術分開幾多種呀？

答：普通嘅戰術分開攻擊同防禦兩種．

問：而家敵人計劃緊也野呀？

答：而家敵人計劃緊攻擊，佢地想由正面攻擊，派一個加強排攻擊我軍嘅陣地．

問：敵人攻擊嘅時候，我地點樣防禦我地嘅陣地呀？

答：敵人攻擊嘅時候，我地用地雷同鐵絲網等等嘅防禦工事防禦我地嘅陣地．

問：前晚我地埋嘅殺傷地雷令敵人傷亡好重之後，敵人點樣呀？

答：前晚我地埋嘅殺傷地雷令敵人傷亡好重，敵人繼續攻擊，而且剪斷我地嘅鐵絲網．

問：敵人繼續攻擊，同剪斷我地嘅鐵絲網，我地點樣防禦我地嘅陣地呀？

答：我地用機關槍，步槍，同砲兵嘅聯合火力擊退敵人．敵人傷亡好重，佢地嘅攻擊失敗咗．

問：敵人嘅攻擊失敗之後，我軍點樣呀？

答：敵人嘅攻擊失敗之後，我軍設立各部隊嘅統一前哨．

問：團嘅火力協調所負責乜野呀？

答：團嘅火力協調所負責指示射擊計劃．

問：呢個射擊計劃係點樣架？

答：呢個射擊計劃指示各種兵器射擊嘅時間同地點．

問：我地嘅營又設立一個點樣嘅陣地呀？

答：我地嘅營又設立一個全面防禦嘅陣地．

第八課　擊退敵人攻擊

敵人想作正面攻擊，派一個加強排渡河攻擊我軍陣地．前晚我哋埋嘅殺傷地雷令敵人傷亡好多．但係敵人繼續攻擊，而且剪斷我地嘅鉄絲網，我地嘅機關槍，步槍，同砲兵嘅聯合火力擊退敵人，令敵人傷亡好重．佢地嘅攻擊失敗咗，敵人攻擊失敗之後．我軍設立各部隊嘅統一前哨．團嘅火力協調所指示射擊計劃．呢個計劃指示各種兵器嘅射擊嘅時間，地點、．我地嘅營又設立一個全面防禦嘅陣地．

第九課　搜索戰鬥(上)

問：斥候隊嘅主要任務係乜野？

答：斥候隊嘅主要任務係搜索敵軍嘅陣地，收集情報要點．偵察敵軍嘅調動，運輸，同補給等等．

問：而家我軍嘅一個連長派出一隊斥候去邊處，佢地担任邊種任務呀？

答：我軍嘅一個連長派出一隊斥候渡河搜索敵軍陣地．收集情報要點．

問：連長喺指揮所對呢隊斥候下乜野命令呀？

答：連長喺指揮所對呢隊斥候下簡要命令，連長又用地圖嘅座標指示佢地點樣去佢地嘅目的地．

問：斥候隊長得倒命令之後，佢就點樣呀？

答：斥候隊長得倒命令之後，佢對部下下簡要命令，檢查部下嘅衣服同裝具；佢又指示斥候隊嘅集合地點，連絡符號，同目的地嘅磁針路線等等．

問：斥候隊幾時出發呀？

答：斥候隊喺第二日天光之前出發，因為喺天黑嘅時候出發，唔容易俾敵人睇見．

問：佢地出發嘅時候，佢地通過陣地前便嘅乜野呀？

答：佢地通過陣地前便嘅障碍物．

問：佢地利用乜野嘅遮蔽位置前進呀？

答：佢地利用遮蔽位置前進，好似樹木，凹地等等．佢地避免同敵人接觸．

第九課　搜索戰鬥(上)

我軍嘅一個連長派出一隊斥候渡河搜索敵軍陣地，搵啲情報要點．連長喺指揮所對斥候隊長下簡要命令；佢用地圖嘅座標指示佢．呢個斥候隊長得倒命令之後，佢對部下下簡要命令．佢檢查部下嘅衣服同裝具．佢又指示斥候隊嘅集合地點，連絡符號，目的地嘅磁針路線等等．第二日天光之前，斥候隊出發．佢地通過陣地前便嘅障碍物．佢地利用遮蔽位置，好似樹木呀，凹地呀等等前進．佢地一路避免同敵人接觸．

第十課　搜索戰鬥(下)

問：第二日天光嘅時候，我地嘅斥候隊到咗邊處呀？

答：第二日天光嘅時候，我地嘅斥候隊深入敵線嘅後便，到咗一個隱蔽位置處．

問：嗰陣時佢地派出搜兵做乜野呀？

答：嗰陣時佢地派出搜兵監視敵人接近，同防止敵人嘅奇襲．

問：斥候隊長用望遠鏡觀察乜野呀？

答：斥候隊長用望遠鏡觀察敵人嘅陣地同敵人部隊嘅運動．

問：斥候隊長睇見啲乜野呀？

答：佢睇見一隊好長嘅護送隊，有戰車同各種車向前線前進．

問：斥候隊長又觀察倒敵人嘅乜野呀？

答：佢又觀察倒敵人嘅防禦工事．

問：敵人嘅防線處有啲乜野呀？

答：敵人嘅防線處有各種掩體同偽裝嘅兵器．

問：斥候隊長觀察倒嗰啲野之後，佢點樣記住佢地呀？

答：斥候隊長將嗰啲工事同兵器嘅位置摽定喺地圖上便．

問：佢地完成任務之後，佢地就點呀？

答：佢地完成任務之後，佢地就好小心敢翻去．

問：斥候隊長將嗰啲情報向邊處報告呀？

答：斥候隊長將嗰啲情報向師司令部報告．

問：師部得倒嗰啲情報之後，佢地點樣利用嗰啲情報呀？

答：師部根據嗰啲情報作敵情判斷．

第十課　搜索戰鬥(下)

第二日天光嘅時候，佢地深入敵線嘅後便．佢地喺一個隱蔽位置處．佢地派出搜兵監視敵人接近，防止奇襲．斥候隊長用望遠鏡觀察敵人嘅陣地同部隊運動．佢睇見一隊好長嘅護送隊，有戰車同各種車向前線前進．佢又觀察倒敵人嘅防禦工事．防線處有各種掩體同偽裝嘅兵器．斥候隊長將嗰啲工事同兵器嘅位置標定喺地圖．佢地就好小心敢翻去．斥候隊嘅情報報告到咗師司令部：師部根據呢啲情報作敵情判斷．

第十一課　轟炸部隊集中

問：高級司令部得倒有關敵人嘅情報之後就點樣去做？

答：佢地將呢啲情報研究清楚之後，就作一個判斷，然後派出偵察機去嗰個區域觀察實在嘅情形．

問：偵察機喺嗰個區域睇倒乜野？

答：佢地睇倒一隊敵人嘅護送隊向前線前進．

問：佢地點樣通知師司令部？

答：佢地即刻用無線電通知師司令部．

問：師部通知乜野嘅部隊？

答：師部通知空軍部隊．

問：空軍派乜野飛機去轟炸同掃射敵人？

答：空軍派戰鬥轟炸機去轟炸同掃射敵人．

問：輕轟炸機由邊處起飛？

答：輕轟炸機由小型機場起飛．

問：輕轟炸機要幾耐然後到目標區域？

答：輕轟炸機喺幾分鐘之內到目標區域．

問：佢地見倒敵人就點樣？

答：佢地見倒敵人就掃射同轟炸敵人

問：好多敵人嘅也野被破壞咗？

答：好多敵人嘅坦克車被破壞咗．

問：有啲敵人嘅坦克車點樣？

答：有幾架敵人嘅坦克車設立一個防空陣地．

問：我地嘅飛機有冇被敵人打中？

答：有，有一架飛機被敵人打中，其餘嘅飛機都安全飛返基地．

第十一課　轟炸部隊集中

問：高級司令部得倒有關敵人嘅情報之後，就點樣去做？

答：佢地將呢啲情報研究清楚之後，就作一個判斷，然後派出偵察機去嗰個區域觀察實在嘅情形．

問：偵察機喺嗰個區域睇倒乜野？

答：佢地睇倒一隊敵人嘅護送隊向前線前進．

問：佢地點樣通知師司令部？

答：佢地即刻用無線電通知師司令部．

問：師部通知乜野嘅部隊？

答：師部通知空軍部隊．

問：空軍派乜野飛機去轟炸同掃射敵人？

答：空軍派戰鬥轟炸機去轟炸同掃射敵人．

問：輕轟炸機由邊處起飛？

答：輕轟炸機由小型機場起飛．

問：輕轟炸機要幾耐然後到目標區域？

答：輕轟炸機喺幾分鐘之內到目標區域．

問：佢地見倒敵人就點樣？

答：佢地見倒敵人就掃射同轟炸敵人

問：好多敵人嘅乜野被破壞咗？

答：好多敵人嘅坦克車被破壞咗．

問：有啲敵人嘅坦克車點樣？

答：有幾架敵人嘅坦克車設立一個防空陣地．

問：我地嘅飛機有冇被敵人打中？

答：有，有一架飛機被敵人打中，其餘嘅飛機都安全飛返基地．

問：被打中嘅飛機嘅飛行員點樣？

答：飛行員見飛機燒着咗，就即刻跳傘，安全降落．

問：我軍又點樣封鎖呢個集中區域？

答：我軍又用阻止射擊封鎖呢個集中區域．

第十一課 轟炸部隊集中

高級司令部得到情報，就派出偵察機去呢個區域．佢地睇倒呢個隊護送隊向前線前進．佢地即刻用無線電通知師司令部．師部通知空軍派出戰鬥轟炸機去轟炸敵人．輕轟炸機由小型機場起飛．幾分鐘之内佢地到目標區域．佢地轟炸同掃射敵人．好多敵人嘅戰車被破壞．但係有幾架設立一個防空陣地；有一架飛機被打中．飛行員跳傘，安全降落．我軍又用阻止射擊封鎖呢個集中區域．

第十二課　發動大規模攻擊(上)

問：傳令人員送乜野到本師師部？

答：傳令人員送一件極「機密」命令到本師師部．

問：呢件命令講乜野？

答：呢件命令叫本師轉移攻勢．

問：司令部接到命令之後，就點樣工作？

答：司令部嘅參謀人員接到命令之後，就根據命令計劃作戰，佢地非常之忙．

問：師長當時嘅工作點樣？

答：師長根據師嘅任務，敵軍同我軍兩方面嘅情形，地形，同其他有關嘅情報，作狀況判斷．

問：嗰晚未天光之前，我地嘅一個連點樣？

答：嗰晚未天光之前，我地嘅一個連接倒作戰命令

問：嗰個連由邊處向邊處前進？

答：嗰個連由連集合地向河邊嘅通過點前進．

問：佢地點樣渡河？

答：河處有浮橋船等佢地渡河．

問：嗰啲船由乜野部隊駕駛？

答：每隻船有兩個工兵，佢地駕駛浮橋船來回渡口處．

問：我地嘅步兵前進嘅時候，我地嘅砲兵點樣？

答：我地嘅步兵前進嘅時候，砲兵開始猛烈嘅彈幕射擊．

問：呢次彈幕射擊嘅主要目的係乜野？

答：呢次彈幕射擊嘅主要目的係掩護我軍前進，破壞敵軍嘅陣地，壓制敵軍嘅行動，同切斷敵人嘅補給線等等．

問：呢次砲擊嘅結果點樣？

答：呢次砲擊嘅結果，我軍得倒火力優勢。

第 十二課 發動大規模攻擊(上)

傳令人員送一件極「機密」命令到本師，呢件命令叫本師轉移攻勢．司令部嘅參謀人員計劃作戰非常之忙．師長根據師嘅任務，敵我兩軍嘅情形，地形，同其他有關嘅情報作狀況判斷．嗰晚未天光之前，我地嘅一個連接倒作戰命令，佢地由連集合地向河邊通過點運動．河處有浮橋船等佢地。每隻船有兩個工兵，佢地駛隻船來回渡口處。我地嘅砲兵開始猛烈嘅彈幕射擊．我軍得倒火力優勢．

第十三課　發動大規模攻擊(下)

問：喺作戰嘅時候，我地點樣遮蔽我軍嘅行動？

答：喺作戰嘅時候，我地用煙幕遮蔽我軍嘅行動，尤其是渡河嘅地點更須要用煙幕黎遮蔽．

問：我軍嘅攻擊據點係用黎做乜野？

答：我軍嘅攻擊據點係用黎掩護我軍嘅攻擊．

問：我地嘅乜野部隊離開攻擊準備位置？

答：我地嘅步兵攻擊梯隊離開攻擊準備位置．

問：我地嘅步兵攻擊梯隊離開攻擊準備位置之後佢地就點樣呀？

答：佢地就開始渡河，而且渡河成功．

問：本師派乜野部隊去增援？

答：本師派後續梯隊去增援．

問：我地嘅一個連去到一個點樣嘅位置？

答：我地嘅一個連去到一個好嘅衝鋒準備位置.

問：嗰個連先用邊種射擊？

答：嗰個連先用衝鋒射擊.

問：佢地前進到邊處？

答：佢地向敵人衝鋒，前進到敵人嘅陣地，佢地能夠接近敵人，同殲滅敵人.

問：佢地點樣攻擊敵人嘅砲眼？

答：佢地用噴火器噴射敵人嘅砲眼.

問：呢次攻擊嘅結果點樣？

答：呢次攻擊好成功，敵人被迫投降，或者被殲滅.

問：敵人失敗咗之後，敵人又點樣？

答：敵人向我軍反攻，想趕我地嘅部隊翻過河．

問：敵人反攻嘅結果點樣呀？

答：結果敵人被我地擊退、敵人嘅守軍被我地俘虜．我軍擴張橋頭堡．

第 十三 課 發動大規模攻擊(下)

我軍用煙幕遮蔽行動同渡河地點·我地嘅攻擊據點掩護攻擊·步兵攻擊梯隊離開攻擊準備位置，開始渡河·佢地渡河成功·本師後續梯隊去增援·我地嘅一個連黎到一個好嘅衝鋒準備位置；用衝鋒射擊，佢地能夠接近敵人，同殲滅敵人·有啲地方，佢地用噴火器噴射敵人嘅砲眼；敵人被迫投降，或者被殲滅·敵人向我軍反攻，想趕佢地翻過河·但係反攻被擊退，守軍被俘虜·我軍擴張橋頭堡·

第十四課　全面大規模攻擊(上)

問：我軍幾時準備全面大規模攻擊？

答：我地嘅攻擊梯隊佔領橋頭之後，我地就準備全面大規模攻擊．

問：喺發動大規模攻擊嗰晚，我地嘅工兵負責邊種工作？

答：喺發動大規模攻擊嗰晚，我地嘅工兵已經架咗渡河嘅浮橋．

問：架咗浮橋之後，我地派邊種部隊渡河去增援攻擊梯隊？

答：我地派戰車同砲兵渡河去增援攻擊梯隊．

問：點解要將戰車同砲兵部隊配屬俾步兵部隊？

答：為直接支援起見，所以將佢地配屬俾步兵部隊．

問：晚頭黑嘅時候，我軍有乜野行動？

答：晚頭黑嘅時候，我軍設立潛聽哨，又派出斥候去搜索敵人，同防止佢地做工事或者加强工事．

問：晚頭黑嘅時候，我軍準備乜野？

答：晚頭黑嘅時候，我軍一方面警戒敵人嘅偷襲，一方面準備聽日朝頭早嘅攻擊．

問：朝頭早嘅時候，我軍派乜野部隊去攻擊？

答：朝頭早嘅時候，我軍派步兵同戰車部隊通過攻擊出發線，佢地開始攻擊．

問：我地嘅部隊點樣攻擊？

答：佢地用火力同運動去攻擊，即係用戰車嘅火力去掩護步兵嘅運動．

問：步兵佔領咗一個乜野嘅位置？

答：步兵佔領咗一個衝鋒準備位置．

問：佢地佔領咗衝鋒準備位置之後，就點樣呀？

答：佢地佔領咗衝鋒準備位置之後，就用衝鋒射擊同敵人作近身戰鬥．

第十四課　全面大規模攻擊（上）

發動大規模攻擊嗰晚，工兵已經架咗渡河嘅浮橋。架咗橋之後，戰車同砲兵趕快過河去增援攻擊梯隊。為直接支援起見，佢地都配屬俾步兵部隊。晚頭黑，我軍設立潛聽哨，又派出斥候去搜索敵人，同防止佢地做工事。朝早，步兵同戰車通過攻擊出發線。佢地開始攻擊。用火力同運動，步兵佔領一個好嘅衝鋒準備位置；用衝鋒射擊，佢地就可以同敵人近戰。

第十五課　全面大規模攻擊(下)

問：我地同敵人作近身戰鬥之後，最後敵人點樣？

答：最後，所有敵人陣地嘅抵抗巢都被消滅．或者被超越．

問：敵軍抵抗無效，佢地就點樣？

答：敵軍抵抗無效之後，敵軍撤退；我軍俘獲好多敵人．

問：敵人撤退之後，我軍點樣？

答：我軍向前追擊，深入敵人嘅領土．

問：我軍深入敵人領土嘅時候，我軍點解要咁小心？

答：我軍好小心，因為我地唔想令陣地突出．

問：我軍指揮所亦都點樣？

答：我軍指揮所亦都跟住我地嘅部隊向前推進．

問：敵人用乜野辦法牽制我軍嘅攻擊？

答：敵人用狙擊兵，戰車防禦砲，同化學戰等等辦法，牽制我軍嘅攻擊．

問：我軍點樣對付敵軍嘅化學兵器？

答：我軍中和敵軍嘅化學兵器．

問：我軍又破壞敵軍嘅乜野？

答：我軍又破壞佢地嘅戰車防禦砲．

問：敵人嘅乜野被我地睇見？

答：敵人嘅無後座力步槍同火箭砲嘅砲口焰被我軍睇見．

問：佢地嘅砲位被我軍嘅乜野破壞？

答：佢地嘅砲位被我軍步砲兵嘅火力破壞．

問：我軍攻擊嘅結果點樣？

答：我軍嘅攻擊好成功，變成突破．

第十五課　全面大規模攻擊(下)

最後，所有敵人陣地嘅抵抗巢都被消滅，或者被超越．我軍俘虜好多敵人。我軍深入敵人嘅領土．但係佢地好小心，佢地唔想令陣地突出．我軍指揮所向前推進．敵人用狙擊兵，戰車防禦砲同化學戰，想牽制我軍嘅攻擊。我軍中和敵軍嘅化學兵器，又破壞敵軍嘅戰車防禦砲．敵人嘅無後座力步槍同火箭砲嘅砲口焰被我軍睇見。佢地俾我軍步砲兵嘅火力破壞∴攻擊成功，變成突破．

第十六課　戰俘訊問

問：我地俘虜咗敵人之後，我地點樣處理佢地呀？

答：我地將啲戰俘押翻去後方嘅司令部．

問：我地點解要訊問戰俘？

答：為得倒所要嘅重要情報起見，情報官喺師嘅後方梯隊訊問戰俘．

問：未訊問戰俘之前，情報官應該做啲乜野？

答：未訊問戰俘之前，情報官先要搜查戰俘嘅全身，睇吓有冇文件．

問：對於嗰啲文件，情報官應該點樣處理？

答：對於嗰啲文件，情報官應該詳細審查．

問：情報官詳細審查咗嗰啲文件之後，情報官應該點樣？

答：情報官根據文件，訊問俘虜有關嘅情報．

問：情報官訊問咗呢個俘虜之後，如果佢懷疑俘虜講大話，佢應該點樣？

答：情報官應該將俘虜嘅口供同第二處嘅情報比較一吓，睇吓佢嘅情報可靠唔可靠．

問：戰俘經過訊問之後，就被帶去邊處？

答：戰俘經過訊問之後，由衛兵帶佢翻去戰俘集中處．

問：如果呢個戰俘講嘅情報又正確，又有價值，就要點樣呢？

答：如果佢講嘅情報又正確又有價值，就要再問佢．

問：我地根據戰俘嘅情報黎做乜野？

答：我地根據戰俘嘅情報黎做敵情嘅判斷，可以預測敵人嘅作戰計劃．

問：最後我地將所有嘅戰俘都帶去邊處？

答：最後所有嘅戰俘都被衛兵帶去交通區嘅戰俘監禁所．

第十六課　戰俘訊問

為得倒所要嘅重要情報起見，情報官喺師嘅後方梯隊訊問戰俘．情報官先要搜查戰俘，然後審查戰俘嘅文件，又問佢同文件有關嘅情報．情報官訊問咗呢個俘虜．但係佢知道俘虜會講大話．所以佢用第二處嘅情報同佢嘅比較一吓，睇吓佢嘅情報可唔可靠．然後由衛兵帶戰俘翻去戰俘集中處．如果佢講嘅情報又正確又有價值，就要再問佢．最後所有嘅戰俘都被衛兵帶去交通區嘅戰俘監禁所．

第十七課　突破(上)

問：我地根據各方面嘅情報，對敵情下咗判斷之後，我地就點樣？

答：我地根據由各方面得到嘅情報，對敵情下咗判斷之後，決定攻擊嘅計劃．

問：我軍呢次對敵人作正面抑或側面攻擊？

答：我軍呢次對敵人作正面攻擊．

問：佢地點樣對敵人作正面嘅攻擊？

答：佢地集中火力，協同步兵同戰車對敵人作正面攻擊．

問：佢地突破咗敵人嘅邊條防線？

答：佢地突破咗敵人嘅主要抵抗線．

問：我地嘅步兵同裝甲部隊用乜野戰術？

答：我地嘅步兵同裝甲部隊用迂迴運動佢地兩翼包圍敵人．

問：敵人被我軍包圍之後，敵人就想點樣？

答：敵人被我軍包圍之後，就想脫離戰場，佢地趕快後退幾英哩．

問：敵人後退嘅時候，我軍用乜野部隊追擊敵人？

答：我軍用機械化部隊追擊敵人．

問：我地嘅追擊縱隊點樣追擊敵人？

答：我地嘅追擊縱隊一路破壞敵人嘅簡單工事．

問：有啲敵人點樣抵抗？

答：有啲敵人嘅抵抗巢頑強抵抗．

問：我軍又點樣去肅清敵人？

答：我軍又超越追擊敵人嘅主力，由特種部隊去肅清佢地．

問：追擊嘅時候，我軍各單位點樣同本隊通信？

答：追擊嘅時候，我軍各單位用無線電同本隊通信．

第十七課　突破(上)

我軍集中火力，協同步兵同戰車作正面攻擊．佢地突破敵人嘅主要抵抗線．步兵同裝甲部隊用迂迴運動．佢地兩翼包圍敵人。敵人想脫離戰場．佢地趕快後退幾英哩，但係我軍用機械化部隊追擊佢地．追擊縱隊一路破壞敵人嘅簡單工事．有啲敵人嘅抵抗巢頑強抵抗；我軍超越追擊敵人嘅主力，由特種部隊去肅清佢地．追擊嘅時候，我軍各單位用無線電同本隊通信．

第十八課　突破（下）

問：我軍點解暫時停止追擊？

答：因為我軍要補充燃料同彈藥，所以暫時停止追擊．

問：我軍補充燃料同彈藥嘅時候．點樣防止敵人奇襲？

答：我軍補充燃料同彈藥嘅時候，佢地設立機動防禦陣地，防止敵人奇襲．

問：我軍又派出飛機去轟炸敵人嘅邊處？

答：我軍又派出飛機去轟炸敵人嘅工業中心．

問：空襲嘅目的係乜野？

答：空襲嘅目的係打擊敵人嘅士氣．

問：有啲飛機掩護我地嘅乜野部隊？

答：有啲飛機掩護我地嘅追擊縱隊嘅側翼．

問：有啲飛機破壞敵人嘅乜野？

答：有啲飛機破壞敵人嘅飛機場．

問：我地嘅飛機點解要破壞敵人嘅飛機場？

答：因為我地要防止敵人飛機起飛攻擊我軍嘅先頭部隊．

問：敵人後退嘅時候點樣？

答：敵人後退嘅時候，沿路遺棄好多裝備．

問：有啲地方敵人點樣阻住我軍前進？

答：有啲地方，佢地設立道路障碍阻住我軍前進．

問：我軍點樣對付呢啲障碍物？

答：有啲障碍物俾我地嘅工兵破壞，有啲障碍物俾我地嘅砲兵破壞咗．

問：我地嘅先頭部隊推進得好快，所以本隊同後衛點樣？

答：我地嘅先頭部隊推進得好快，所以本隊同後衛都趕唔上．

第十八課　突破(下)

我軍補充燃料同彈葯，暫時停止追擊．補充嘅時候，佢地設立機動防禦陣地防止敵人奇襲．同時空軍轟炸敵人嘅工業中心。空襲可以打擊敵人嘅士氣．有啲飛機掩護追擊縱隊嘅側翼．有啲飛機破壞敵人嘅飛機場，防止敵人飛機攻擊我軍嘅先頭部隊．敵人沿後退嘅路遺棄好多裝備。有啲地方佢地設立道路障碍．呢啲障碍被我軍破壞．先頭部隊推進得好快，所以本隊同後衛都趕唔上．

第十九課　遠征軍

問：敵人喺邊處被我軍擊退？

答：敵人喺盟國領土被我軍擊退．

問：我地嘅一個師調去邊處？

答：我地嘅一個師調去後方．

問：佢地點解要調去後方呢？

答：因為佢地要補充人員同裝備，又要再訓練幾個月．

問：經過三個月嘅補充同訓練之後，而家呢個師點樣？

答：而家呢個師已經恢復充足嘅戰鬥力．

問：呢個師得到乜野嘅命令？

答：呢個師奉命去參加一支派遣軍．

問：呢支派遣軍有乜野實力？

答：呢支派遣軍有航空母艦，戰鬥艦，巡洋艦，同其他艦艇．

問：派遣軍幾時出發？

答：派遣軍晚頭黑出發．

問：佢地點解要實行燈火管制？

答：佢地實行燈火管制，避免敵人太早發現．

問：佢地接近敵人海岸嘅時候，一隻軍艦撞到乜野？

答：佢地接近敵人海岸嘅時候，一隻軍艦撞到浮雷沉咗．

問：我地點樣去救起生還嘅人？

答：我地用救生艇同直升機等等去救起生還嘅人．

問：我地嘅艦艇被敵人嘅乜野睇見？

答：我地嘅艦艇被敵人嘅潛水艇睇見．

問：敵人嘅潛水艇點樣對付我軍？

答：敵人嘅潛水艇用無線電通知基地，同時發射魚雷攻擊我軍艦艇．

第十九課　遠征軍

敵人喺盟國領土被我軍擊退。我地嘅一個師調去後方。佢地補充人員同裝備，又再訓練幾個月。呢個師已經恢復充足嘅戰鬥力。師得倒命令去參加一支派遣軍。呢支軍有航空母艦，戰鬥艦，巡洋艦，同其他艦艇。派遣軍晚頭黑出發海上。佢地實行燈火管制，避免俾敵人太早發現。佢地接近敵人海岸嘅時候，一隻軍艦撞浮雷沉咗；生還嘅人被救起。一隻敵人潛水艇睇見我軍；佢地用無線電通知基地，同時發射魚雷攻擊我軍艦艇。

第二十課　灘頭登陸

問：敵人嘅潛水艇發射魚雷之後，有冇打中目標？

答：冇，敵人嘅潛水艇發射魚雷之後，冇打中目標

問：我軍發現敵人嘅乜野？

答：我軍發現敵人嘅潛水艇．

問：我軍發現咗敵人嘅潛水艇之後，就派乜野到呢個區域？

答：我軍發現咗敵人嘅潛水艇之後，就派驅逐艦趕到呢個區域．

問：我軍嘅驅逐艦點樣搜索同炸沉敵人嘅潛艇？

答：我軍嘅驅逐艦用蘇拿搜索敵人嘅潛艇，擲深水炸彈炸沉佢．

問：我地嘅派遣軍去到邊處？

答：我地嘅派遣軍去到登陸嘅目的地．

問：派遣軍去到目的地之後，我地嘅乜野部隊預備登陸？

答：我地嘅水陸兩棲部隊預備登陸．

問：派遣軍嘅司令官點樣指示各單位作戰？

答：派遣軍嘅司令官用空中照相指示各單位作戰．

問：我軍用乜野掩護我地嘅部隊？

答：我軍用俯衝轟炸機同海軍砲掩護我地嘅部隊．

問：我地第一輪嘅登陸部隊用乜野運輸工具登陸？

答：我地第一輪嘅登陸部隊坐坦克登陸艇登陸．佢地登陸成功．

問：登陸之後，佢地建立乜野陣地？

答：登陸之後，佢地建立灘頭陣地，由登陸指揮官指揮．
佢地開始擴大灘頭陣地．

問：推進嘅時候，佢地點樣搜索地雷？

答：推進嘅時候，佢地用地雷搜索器搜索地雷．

第二十課　灘頭登陸

敵人嘅魚雷冇打中目標；潛水艇被我軍發現．我軍嘅驅逐艦趕到呢個區域．驅逐艦用蘇拿搜索潛艇，掾深水炸彈炸沉佢．派遣軍去到目的地．水陸兩棲部隊預備登陸．派遣軍嘅司令官用空中照相指示各單位作戰．喺俯衝轟炸機同海軍砲掩護下，第一輪登陸部隊坐坦克登陸艇登陸．佢地登陸成功．佢地建立灘頭陣地，由登陸指揮官指揮．佢地開始擴大灘頭陣地．推進嘅時候，佢地用地雷搜索器搜索地雷．

第二十一課　降落傘部隊喺敵人後方降落

問：我軍登陸之後，繼續向邊處進攻？

答：我軍登陸之後，繼續向敵人嘅海岸嘅一個要點進攻．

問：我軍進攻嘅目的係乜野？

答：我軍進攻嘅目的係想佔領港口附近嘅一個城市．

問：我地點解要佔領呢個城市？

答：因為呢個城市係交通嘅樞紐同戰畧上嘅重鎮．

問：敵人喺呢個城市有冇永久防禦工事？

答：有，敵人喺呢個城市有永久防禦工事．

問：我軍採用乜野戰術去攻破呢個城？

答：我軍用大迂迴戰術去攻擊敵人嘅後方，一方面分散敵人嘅兵力，另一方面前後夾攻敵人．

問：我地點樣过迴到敵人嘅後方？

答：我地派出降落傘部隊、用運輸機喺敵人嘅後方降落.

問：喺敢樣嘅形勢之下，敵人點樣？

答：喺敢樣嘅形勢之下，敵人要兩面作戰，前後受襲.

問：我軍嘅降落傘部隊降落之後，就點樣？

答：我軍嘅降落傘部隊降落之後，就立即改編、成為有組織嘅部隊.

問：降落傘部隊攜帶乜野嘅武器，有乜野裝備？

答：降落傘部隊攜帶輕便嘅武器，同簡單嘅裝備，佢地用指南針黎認識方向，用步行機同各部隊聯絡，佢地又用直升飛機運送傷兵.

問：降落傘部隊降落之後，攻擊乜野地方？

答：降落傘部隊攻擊嗰個城市嘅主要交通中心，同十字路口，佢地同時擴大空降地區（空頭堡）.

第二十一課　降落傘部隊喺敵人後方降落

我軍嘅部隊登陸之後，繼續向敵人嘅海岸嘅一個要點攻擊，想佔領港口附近嘅一個城市，但係敵人頑强抵抗．我軍想分散敵人嘅兵力，同前後夾攻敵人，我軍就派出降落傘部隊坐運輸機，喺敵人城市嘅後方降落，敢樣做，我地迫敵人兩面作戰，前後受襲．我軍嘅降落傘部隊降落之後，就立即改編成為有組織嘅部隊，向敵人嘅主要交通中心同十字路口攻擊，佢地又擴大空降地區(空頭堡)．

第二十二課　破獲敵人嘅間諜網

問：間諜係乜野？

答：間諜係敵人喺我地嘅前方或後方做秘密嘅地下工作嘅情報人員．

問：我地逮捕咗敵人嘅間諜之後，我地就要點樣？

答：我地逮捕咗敵人嘅間諜之後，我地可以將間諜交俾軍事法庭，由軍事法庭審判；如果我地揾倒證據，可以將佢判有期徒刑，無期徒刑或者死刑．

問：喺戰事激烈嘅時候，敵人喺我軍佔領嘅地帶有乜野行動？

答：戰事激烈嘅時候，敵人嘅間諜喺我軍佔領嘅地帶好活動，喺嗰處組織咗一個間諜網．

問：敵人嘅間諜有乜野嘅企圖？

答：敵人嘅間諜企圖獲得我軍作戰計劃嘅情報，同各種有關嘅情報．

問：有一個敵人嘅間諜點樣？

答：有一個敵人嘅間諜化裝做一個戰地隨軍記者．

問：嗰個間諜嘅主要任務係乜野？

答：嗰個間諜嘅主要任務係混入我軍嘅師司令部，用影相機偷影我地嘅秘密文件．

問：佢得倒呢啲情報之後，點樣將佢轉到敵人嘅司令部？

答：佢得倒呢啲情報之後，佢就由秘密無線電台、將呢啲情報廣播到敵軍司令部嘅情報處．

問：嗰個間諜嘅活動有冇引起我軍嘅反間人員嘅懷疑？

答：有，嗰個間諜嘅活動引起我軍嘅反間人員嘅懷疑．我地即刻將嗰個間諜逮捕；經過我軍嘅軍事法庭審判之後，佢被判死刑，就由行刑隊將佢槍決．

第二十二課　破獲敵人嘅間諜網

喺戰事激烈嘅時候，敵人嘅間諜喺我軍佔領嘅地帶好活動。佢地企圖獲得我軍嘅作戰計劃同各種有關嘅情報，有一個間諜化裝做一個戰地隨軍記者，混入我軍嘅師司令部，用影相機偷影秘密文件；然後由佢地嘅秘密無線電台，將文件嘅內容廣播到敵軍嘅情報處，但係佢地嘅活動引起我軍反間人員嘅懷疑，我地即刻將嗰個間諜逮捕。根據嗰個間諜嘅口供，我地破獲敵人嘅間諜機關；經過我軍嘅軍事法庭審判之後，就將佢判死刑。

第二十三課　敵人游擊隊滲入我軍嘅後方

問：游擊隊係乜野？

答：游擊隊係一個細嘅部隊；佢地混入敵人嘅後方，担任破壞嘅工作；佢地着便衣，攜帶輕便嘅武器．

問：游擊隊點樣打仗？

答：游擊隊多數喺夜晚打仗．佢地用化整為零嘅戰術，佢地邊處都去，冇一定嘅陣地．

問：游擊隊嘅主要任務係乜野？

答：佢地嘅主要任務係擾亂敵人嘅後方，破壞敵人嘅軍事設備，同重要嘅交通線．

問：我軍佔領咗敵人海岸嘅幾個重要城市之後、我地又點樣？

答：我地嘅軍隊繼續前進、深入敵人嘅內地、佔領一個好緊要嘅城市．

問：敵人由啲個城市撤退之後，佢地點樣？

答：敵人由啲個城市撤退之後，佢地留好多游擊隊喺啲個城市處。

問：啲個城市外便嘅敵人游擊隊點樣滲入我軍嘅後方？

答：敵人嘅游擊隊化裝做難民；佢地通過我地嘅檢查站，滲入我軍嘅後方。

問：佢地點樣襲擊我地嘅運輸隊？

答：喺晚頭黑，佢地埋伏喺險要嘅山路旁邊。我地嘅運輸隊經過山谷嘅時候，佢地就揸出手槍，馬槍，手榴彈同炸藥等等輕便嘅武器去襲擊我地。我軍中伏，傷亡好重。

問：佢地又破壞乜野？

答：佢地炸毀我軍嘅運輸線，好似鐵路，橋樑等等之後，又破壞我地嘅倉庫，彈藥庫，補給站，等等。

第二十三課　敵人嘅游擊隊滲入我軍嘅後方

我軍佔領咗敵人海岸嘅幾個要點之後，繼續前進，深入敵人嘅內地，佔領一個好緊要嘅城市．敵人後退嘅時候，佢地留好多游擊隊喺嗰個城市；又派出好多游擊隊，化裝做難民，通過我地嘅檢查站，滲入嗰個城市嘅後方．喺嗰處，佢地化整為零．喺晚頭黑嘅時候，佢地埋伏喺險要嘅山路旁邊；佢地等我地嘅運輸隊經過山谷嘅時候，就擰出手槍，馬槍，手榴彈同炸藥等等嘅武器去襲擊我地嘅運輸隊，炸毀我軍嘅運輸線，好似鐵路，橋樑等等．喺嗰個城市嘅裏便，佢地破壞我地嘅倉庫，同軍事設備，等等．

第二十四課　利用心理戰令敵人投降

問：喺現代嘅戰爭，關於決勝負嘅條件，除咗武器之外，重有乜野？

答：喺現代嘅戰爭，關於決勝負嘅條件，除咗武器之外，重有心理作戰．

問：心理戰係乜野？佢有乜野好處？

答：用心理去戰敗敵人，呢種辦法叫做心理戰．心理戰嘅好處係用最低嘅代價得到最大嘅收穫．我地可以用心理戰去令敵人離心，厭戰，反戰，或者引起敵人嘅兵變，逃亡，等等．

問：心理戰包括啲乜野？

答：心理戰包括散傳單，敵前喊話，敵後廣播，等等．

問：我軍呢次點解要用心理戰？

答：敵人嘅首都已經被我軍包圍，但係敵人死守待援．如果我軍繼續攻擊，雙方傷亡一定好重，為減少傷亡起見，我軍用心理戰．

問：我軍呢次點樣進行心理戰？

答：我地派飛機去敵人嘅前線散傳單，話我軍已經將佢地嘅首都四面包圍，所有嘅補給線都已經斷絕，彈藥同糧食差唔多用完，好多高級嘅指揮官都走咗。如果佢地繼續抵抗，即係自殺；如果佢地自動投降，戰事停止以後，我地就遣送佢地回國。

問：呢次散傳單嘅效果點樣？

答：敵人彈盡援絕，士氣低落。佢地睇見傳單之後個個都想逃亡同投降。所以敵人嘅逃兵一日比一日多。

問：佢地點樣向我軍投降？

答：佢地多數喺晚頭黑嘅時候逃亡；佢地一手擰住白旗，一手擰住傳單走到我軍嘅陣地處。

問：我軍將逃兵送去邊處？

答：我軍將逃兵送到後方

第二十四課　利用心理戰令敵人投降

用心理嘅辦法去戰敗敵人；呢種辦法叫做心理戰．我地可以用心理戰去令敵人離心，厭戰，同反戰，或者引起敵人嘅兵變，逃亡，等等．敵人嘅首都已經被我軍包圍，但係敵人死守待援．為減少我軍嘅傷亡起見，我軍就用心理戰；我軍派飛機去敵人嘅前線散傳單，叫敵人停止抵抗．敵人彈盡援絕，佢地嘅士氣低落；投降同逃亡嘅人數一日比一日增加．佢地投降嘅時候，一手擰白旗，一手揸住傳單，走到我軍嘅陣地．

第二十五課　向敵人首都作最後總攻擊

問：敵人首都郊外嘅重要據點完全被我軍佔領之後，敵人嘅主力部隊退到邊處？

答：敵人首都郊外嘅重要據點完全被我軍佔領之後，敵人嘅主力部隊退到首都嘅裏便．

問：敵人守軍司令嘅作戰計劃點樣？

答：敵人守軍司令打算死守；如果守唔住、就突圍．

問：我軍嘅攻城部隊打算點樣？最後點樣？

答：我軍嘅指揮官向敵人守軍司令下最後通牒，限佢地喺二十四小時之內投降．如果敵人唔接受，我地就開始總攻擊．二十四小時之後敵軍拒絕接受我地嘅最後通牒，我軍開始總攻擊，我地嘅大砲向城內猛烈轟擊．

問：首都裏便嘅情形點樣？

答：敵軍司令下令戒嚴．城内到處放步哨；喺各大建築物嘅前便放好多沙包；重要嘅十字路口有地雷區同陷穽．但係敵人嘅糧食同彈藥唔夠．市内秩序混亂、

問：我軍嘅總攻擊開始之後，雙方嘅情形點樣？

答：經過幾小時嘅戰鬥之後，我軍嘅坦克車掩護先頭部隊入城．首都發生巷戰．敵人喺大建築物嘅窗口同屋頂處用輕兵器向我軍射擊；佢地嘅步兵向我軍坦克車嘅死角衝鋒．我軍嘅幾架坦克車撞到地雷．雙方嘅死傷都好重．

第二十五課　向敵人首都作最後總攻擊

敵人首都郊外所有嘅據點完全被我軍佔領．敵人嘅主力部隊退到首都嘅裏便，準備巷戰．首都而家戒嚴；到處都有沙包，地雷區，同陷穽．但係佢地嘅糧食同彈藥唔夠，市内秩序混亂．我軍指揮官向敵人守軍下最後通牒，限佢地二十四小時之内投降，但係敵人拒絕接受我地嘅最後通牒．我軍開始向城内炮擊；經過幾小時嘅戰鬥之後，我軍嘅先頭部隊攻入市區，首都發生巷戰．敵人喺大建築物嘅屋頂同窗口用輕兵器向我軍射擊；佢地嘅步兵向我軍坦克車嘅死角衝鋒；我軍嘅幾架坦克車撞到地雷．雙方死傷好重．

第二十六課　慶祝勝利日

問：敵人嘅首都現在嘅情勢點樣？

答：敵人嘅首都被我軍四面包圍．戰鬥已經到咗最後階段．情勢好嚴重，市民都鎖住門，唔敢出街．

問：敵人冇法子再抵抗嘅時候，只有點樣？

答：敵人冇法子再抵抗嘅時候，只有無條件投降．佢地派代表向我軍提出休戰嘅請求．

問：停戰之後，我軍點樣維持市内嘅治安？

答：我軍下戒嚴嘅命令，派出憲兵檢查平民．我地嘅部隊解除敵人嘅武裝，恢復市内嘅秩序．

問：我地戰勝之後，我地嘅佔領軍有乜野舉動？

答：我地嘅海陸空三軍舉行大巡行開入敵人嘅首都．敵國首都嘅人民歡迎我軍．

問：我地各地方嘅軍隊點樣？

答：我地各地嘅佔領軍解除當地敵人嘅武裝，慶祝最後嘅勝利．

問：我地嘅政府對有功嘅將士點樣？

答：我地嘅政府對有功嘅將士頒發勳章或者升級．

問：我地嘅政府對受傷嘅軍人點樣？

答：我地嘅政府對受傷嘅軍人慰勞，對傷亡軍人嘅家屬撫恤．

問：全國人民對陣亡將士點樣？

答：全國人民對陣亡將士舉行公祭典禮，全國軍民都狂歡，慶祝勝利日．

第二十六課　慶祝勝利日

敵人嘅首都被我軍四面包圍，敵人冇法子再抵抗．佢地只有無條件投降．佢地派代表向我軍提出休戰嘅請求．我地嘅海、陸，空三軍舉行大巡行，開入敵人嘅首都．敵國嘅人民歡迎我軍入城．我軍喺各地解除敵人嘅武裝．我地嘅政府對有功嘅將士頒發勳章，或者升級；對受傷嘅軍人慰勞；對陣亡嘅將士舉行公祭典禮．全國軍民都狂歡，慶祝勝利日．

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE
TEXT VOLUME
VOLUME IX
LESSONS 1-26

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

ED022179

AL 001 479

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Text Volume

Volume IX

Lessons 1-26

September 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

PREFACE

The Chinese Cantonese Course, consisting of 166 lessons in 8 volumes, is one of the Defense Language Institute's Basic Course Series. The material was developed at the Defense Language Institute's Curriculum Development Board.

The course is designed to train native English language speakers to Level 3 proficiency in comprehension and speaking and Level 2 proficiency in reading and writing Chinese Cantonese. The texts are intended for classroom use in the Defense Language Institute's intensive programs employing the audio-lingual methodology. Tapes accompany the texts.

All inquiries concerning these materials, including requests for authorization to reproduce, will be addressed to the Director, Defense Language Institute, U. S. Naval Station, Anacostia Annex, Washington, D. C. 20390.

CW Chaney

C. W. CHANEY
Colonel, U.S. Army
Director

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume VIII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 set	Flash Cards for 1500 Most Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	27 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	27 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	53 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
		Also available in compact form for comprehension or review purposes:
	3 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:	1 reel	*Hong Kong*, MF 20-8799,(P)(A)* 9 min.
	1 reel	*Hong Kong Welcomes You*, MF 20-9363, (I) 15 min.
	1 reel	*An Oriental City, Canton*, MF 20-9075, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	*Farming in South China*, MF 20-7829, (I) 20 min.
	1 reel	*Taiwan, Island of Freedom*, AFIF 103, 23 min.
	1 reel	*Formosa*, LSFC 21, 13 min.
	1 reel	*Miracle in Free China*, MF 20-9114, 30 min.
	1 reel	*Free China's Fighting Men*, MF 30-8444, (I) 14 min.

* Available in magnastriped Chinese-Cantonese narrations. (P) Primary version, (I) Intermediate version, (A) Advanced version.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Formosa, Blueprint for a Free China, MOT 18, 24 min.
1 reel	China EF 258, 17 min.
1 reel	China, the Land and the People, MF 20-8939, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	Peiping Family, MF 20-8966, 20 min.
1 reel	The Chinese Village, a Legend, MF 20-9341, 15 min.
1 reel	Red China, AFIF 97, 27 min.
1 reel	China, Far East, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657 FC, (I) 14 min.
1 reel	Far East, SIS AFS No. 2, MF 30-8657, 30 min.
1 reel	Southeast Asia, Lands and Peoples, MF 20-8862, 13 min.
1 reel	Southeast Asia, SIS AFS No. 6, MF 30-8771, 33 min.
1 reel	The Village that Refused to Die, MF 20-9748, 60 min.
1 reel	Siam, MF 20-9269, 31 min.
1 reel	Burma, People of the River, MF 20-9028, 14 min.
1 reel	Letter from Indonesia, MF 20-8695, 27 min.
1 reel	The Philippines, AFIF 48, 15 min.
2 reels	Portrait of an American Family, MF 30-8449 (CC), 60 min.
1 reel	Men Against Tanks, MF 7-7898, (P)(A) 18 min.
1 reel	Production of Combat Intelligence, MF 30-1494, (P)(A) 18 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

1 reel	Rifle Company, LSFC-3, (P)(A) 35 min.
1 reel	Infantry Battalion, LSFC-1, (P)(A) 21 min.

CHINESE-CANTONESE (TOISHAN) 47-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume V, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VI, Lessons 1-20
	1 vol.	Volume VII, Lessons 1-26
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters (Toishan Conversion Table)
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	24 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	24 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	48 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-26
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 27-55
	1 vol.	Volume III, Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	English Index to the Student's Cantonese-English Dictionary
	1 vol.	Chinese Calendar and Chinese Telegraphic Code
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume I, A-L
	1 vol.	Dictionary of United States Army Terms (English-Chinese) Volume II, M-Z
	1 vol.	Chinese-Cantonese Phrase Book, DA Pamphlet No. 20-620
	1 vol.	Film Teaching Units
	1 vol.	Song Book
	1 vol.	Exercise Book
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded and is available in various forms as follows:
	14 reels	Dual track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.
	14 reels	Dual track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
	27 reels	Single track, 3-3/4 ips, 5-inch reel, 600 ft.

CHINESE-CANTONESE 12-WEEK BASIC COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

	27 reels	Single track, 7-1/2 ips, 7-inch reel, 1200 ft.
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

CHINESE-CANTONESE 210-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Introduction
	1 vol.	Volume I, Instructional Units 1-30
	1 vol.	Volume II, Instructional Units 31-60
	1 vol.	Volume III, Instructional Units 61-90
	1 vol.	Volume IV, Instructional Units 91-120
	1 vol.	Volume V, Instructional Units 121-140
	1 vol.	Instructor's Manual
	1 vol.	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	1 vol.	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
		*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:	140 reels	Instructional Units 1-140
	60 reels	Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60
	10 reels	*Formal Testing Units 1-10
Film Material:	1 reel	*Free China's Fighting Men*, MF 30-8444, 14 min.
	1 reel	*Mighty Chinese Armed Forces*, LS-86, 22 min.
	1 reel	*Production of Combat Intelligence*, MF 30-1494, 18 min.

* For Official Use Only

CHINESE-CANTONESE 96-HOUR REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

Text Material:	1 vol.	Volume I, Lessons 1-16
	1 vol.	Volume II, Lessons 17-32
	1 vol.	Volume III, Lessons 33-48
	1 vol.	Vocabulary
Reference Material:	1 vol.	Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
	1 vol.	List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words
Tape Material:		The complete course is recorded on tape
Film Material:		Refer to Chinese-Cantonese 47-week Basic Course

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mă: Ts'īng mân neĭ-teî kè lŏ-paán haî shuè mà?

Leĭ: Ngŏh tsaû haî Leĭ Taaî-Mān, ni-kaan p'ò-t'aū* kè king-leĭ, yaŭ mat kwaī-kòn à?

M: Ôh, Leĭ king-leĭ, ngŏh haî kīng-ch'aàt kûk p'aaī laī kè ching-t'aàm. Ngŏh kiù tsô Mă-Mīng. Ngŏh yaŭ ti yĕ seúng heùng neĭ ts'îng kaaù.

L: Yaŭ mat chī-kaaù ne, Mă ching-t'aàm?

M: Ngŏh seúng chi-tò neĭ shik m̄-shik Leĭ Taaî-Nīn ni-kòh yān.

L: Leĭ Taaî-Nīn ni-kòh mēng* keî shûk. K'uĭ yaŭ keî taaî nīn-keî à?

M: K'uĭ taaî-yeùk* sa-â līng suī. Ĭ-ts'īn haāng suēn*. T'eng-mān wâ k'uĭ haî ni-shuè ch'ut-yâp.

L: Ôh, ngŏh keī-tak là. Neĭ seūng wán k'uĭ me?

M: M̄-haî. Pat-kwòh ngŏh seúng mân neĭ keî kòh kwaan-ue Leĭ Taaî-Nīn kè mân-t'aī, tak mà?

L: Tong-īn* tak la. Ts'îng ts'ŏh-lôk chī k'ing la.

M: M̄-koi, m̄-koi. Neĭ yaŭ mŏ k'uĭ kè seùng* à?

L: Tuī-m̄-chuê. Ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ m̄-haî hó shûk. Ngŏh mŏ k'uĭ kè seùng*.

M: Kóm, neĭ hòh m̄-hóh-ĭ kóng k'uĭ kè yeûng* peî ngŏh t'eng à?

L: K'uĭ taaî-yeùk* nğ-ch'èk-nğ ts'uèn ko, yat-paàk-î-shâp keî pông ch'ŭng, mā-mā* shaù. K'uĭ hó-ts'z̆ taaī ngaăn-kèng, sheûng sūn yaŭ so. Neĭ hòh m̄-hòh-ĭ kóng peî ngŏh t'eng, k'uĭ faân mat tsuî à?

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: K'uĭ m̂-haî faân tsuî, pat-kwòh ngŏh seúng wán k'uĭ tsô chìng-yān. Neĭ chi m̂-chi-tò Leĭ Taaî-Nīn haî pin-shuè chuê à? Haî pin-shuè tsô kung à?

L: Ngŏh m̂-chi-tò k'uĭ kè teî-chî haî pin-tô pòh! T'eng-mān wâ k'uĭ yîk mŏ tsô kung lòh-pòh.

M: K'uĭ toh-shò haî pin-tô ch'ut-yâp à?

L: Shât-tsoî k'uĭ hó shiú haî ni shuè, k'uĭ toh-shò haî Tung-Fong K'ui-Lôk Pô.

M: Leĭ King-Leĭ, ngŏh ts'îng neĭ tseung ngŏh ni ts'z̀ kè fóng-mân pó-shaú peî-mât.

L: Hó la. Ngŏh ooĭ pó-shaú peî-mât.

M: M̄-koi,m̂-koi.

L: M̄-shaî-m̂-koi.

LESSON 1

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Please keep it a secret.
2. It is already midnight. Why aren't you asleep yet?
3. I am the manager of this club. May I help you?
4. She didn't commit any crime. She was only frightened.
5. Your upper lip is all swollen. What happened?
6. My physical feature is very common among Chinese.
7. Have you seen this man before?
8. Let me sit down, and have some tea first.
9. How old are you, and how long have you been a seaman?
10. I don't want to be a witness.
11. It is beautiful. How much is it?
12. She came to seek your advice. Will you help her?
13. Where is the boss? I want to see him immediately.
14. My boss sent me here to pick up the money. Where is it?
15. His appearance resembles a detective, but he is a teacher.
16. I am not a detective. I am a friend of Mr. Lee.
17. I live in this vicinity, and I am very familiar with the roads.

LESSON 1

WORD LIST

1.	lŏ-paán	boss of a business (Colloq); master, AN kòh; a.f.: sẑ-t'aū*
2.	p'aaì-laī (p'aaì...laī)	to send; to be sent here; i.e. k'uǐ p'aaì ngŏh laī; k'uǐ haî peî sheûng-sz p'aaì laī kè
3.	ching-t'aàm	detective, AN kòh; a.f., òm-ch'ā*
4.	ts'îng-kaaù	please advise me (invitational sense; ts'îng a polite form of request)
5.	chìng-yān	a witness, AN kòh;
6.	nīn-keî (suì)	years of age; how old? syn: suì i.e. neǐ yaǔ keì taaì nīn-keì? Ngŏh kam-nīn î-shâp suì
7.	haāng shuēn*	sea faring; seaman; i.e. k'uǐ haāng-chóh leǔng-shuì shuēn
8.	ch'ut-yâp	to frequent, visit; hang around
9.	ts'ŏh lôk	sit down; be seated; to sit
10.	seùng*	picture, photograph, AN fuk
11.	seùng-maaû	physical feature; apprearance
12.	sheûng shūn	upper lip, AN t'iū
13.	faân tsuî	to commit crimes, i.e., k'uǐ faân shaàt yān tsuî, 'he committed murder'

LESSON 1

WORD LIST

14.	k'ui-lôk pô (ooî*)	club, AN kaan; syn: ooî*
15.	pó-shaú	to keep, safeguard; conservative, i.e. k'uĭ hó pó-shaú
16.	peì-mât	secret; confidential

LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

833

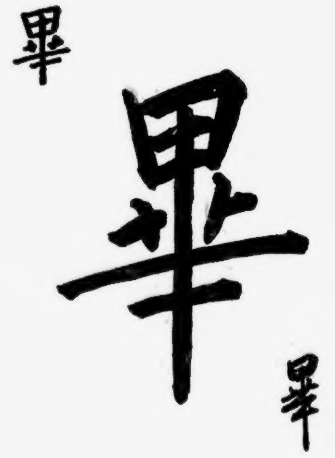
畢	pat: the final, end; complete.
完畢	uēn-pat: over; ended.
畢竟	pat-kíng: after all; finally.

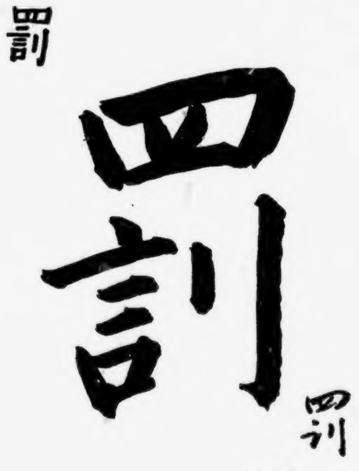
182

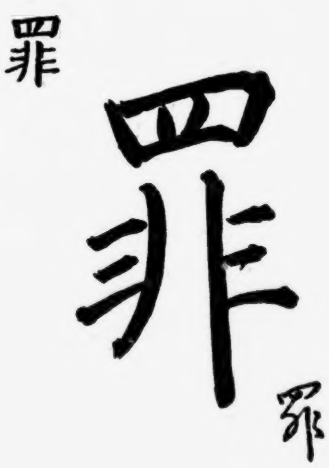
罰	fât (faât): to punish; fine; forfeit
責罰	chaàk-fât: reprimand; blame
賞罰	shéung fât: rewards and punishment
罰欵	fât foón: fines; to fine

1308

罪	tsuî: fault; sin; crime; punishment.
罪惡	tsuî-òk: crime; sin.
罪過	tsuî kwòh: fault; offense; misdemeanour.
死罪	sź tsuî: death sentence
定罪	têng tsuî: to fix a punishment.





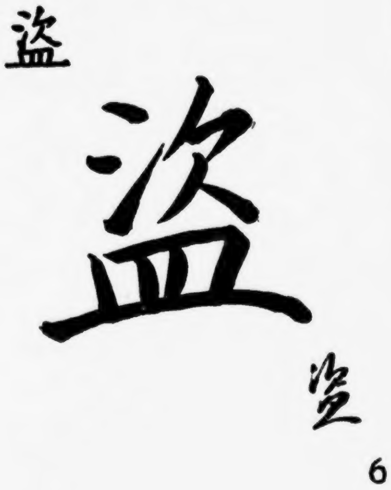


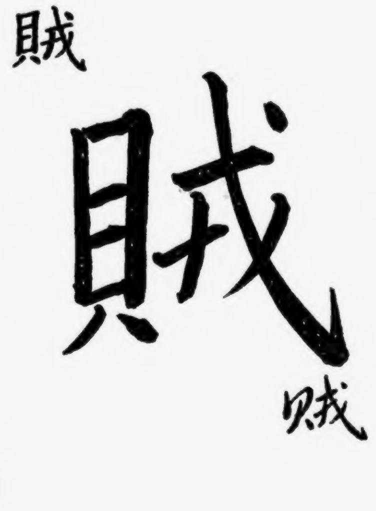
1166

盗	tô: to rob; to steal; a robber; pirate; robbery
盗賊	tô-ts'aâk: bandit; robber.
強盗	k'eūng tô: highway robber.
盗賣	tô maaî: to sell property which has been stolen from other.

1196

賊	ts'aâk: thief; robber.
賊頭	ts'aâk t'aū: leader of the robbers.
小賊	siú ts'aâk: a petty thief.





LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

1168

稻 tô: growing rice.

稻草 tô ts'ó: straw.

稻田 tô t'în rice field.

186

匪 féi: vagabond; seditious

土匪 t'ó féi: [redacted]

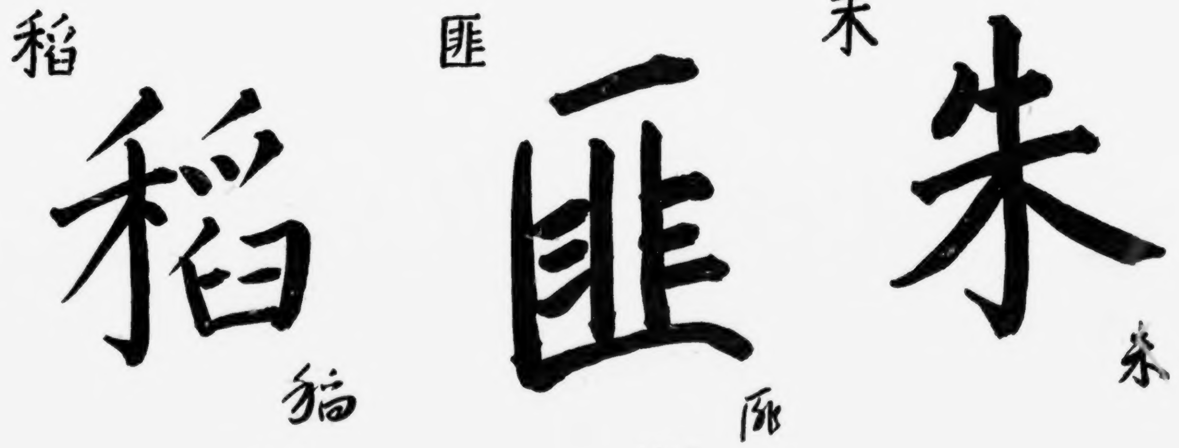
匪徒 féi-t'ō: robbers

120

朱 chue: red color

朱紅 chue-hung: scarlet; vermillion

朱顏 chue-ngaan: ruddy face



1436

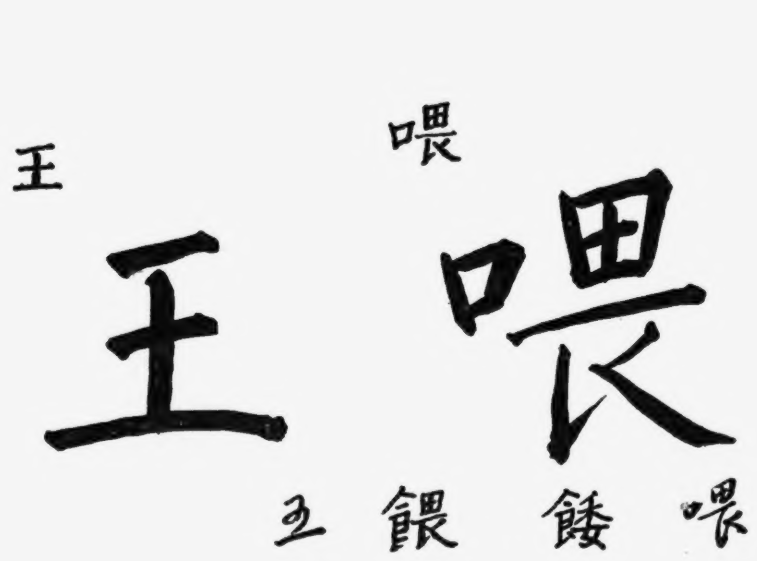
王 wōng: king; prince; ruler.

王位 wōng waî: throne; rank of king.

1416

喂 waì: to feed; to suckle.

喂奶 waì naaǐ: to suckle; to feed with milk.



LESSON 1

READING MATERIAL

警察局想 wân 李大年做證人，佢地知到佢時常喺一間鋪頭出入，所以派一個 ching 探去見嗰間鋪頭嘅老板李大文·

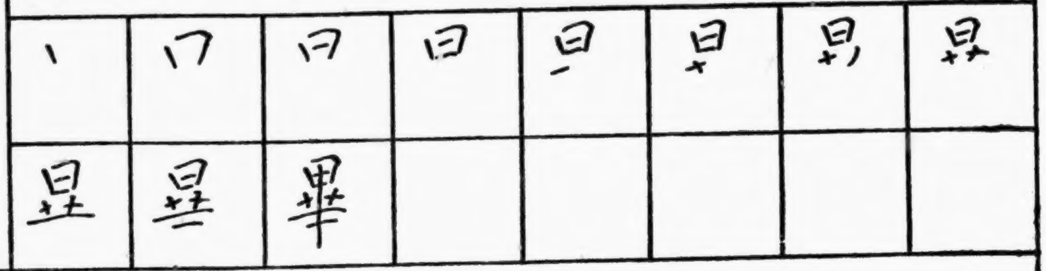
呢個 ching-探好有禮 maaû，所以李大文亦好客氣待佢·李大文將李大年嘅年紀，相 maaû，一一講 peî ching- 探聽 chôh 之後，佢問係唔係李大年犯 chôh 罪·Ching-探話，佢冇犯罪，唔使擔心，並求佢將呢次嘅訪問保守 peî 密；如果佢知到李大年喺邊處，就打電話通知·

LESSON 1

WRITING MATERIAL

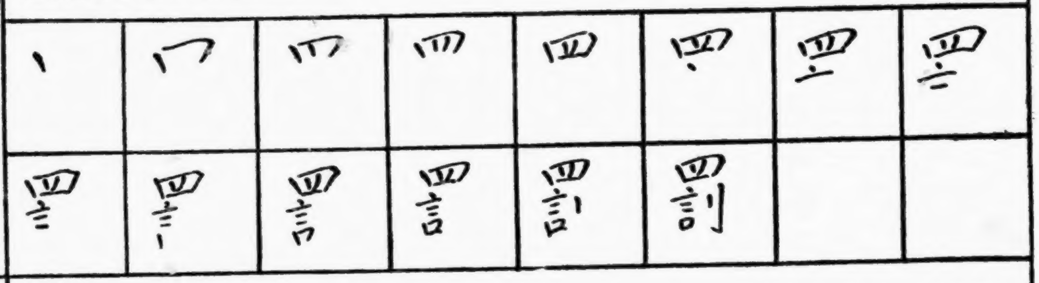
畢

Character Number 833 Radical Number 102
Stroke Number 11 田



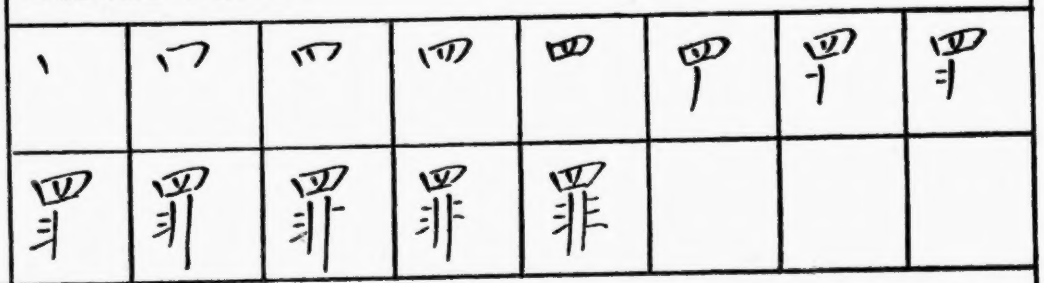
罰

Character Number 182 Radical Number 122
Stroke Number 14 罒，网



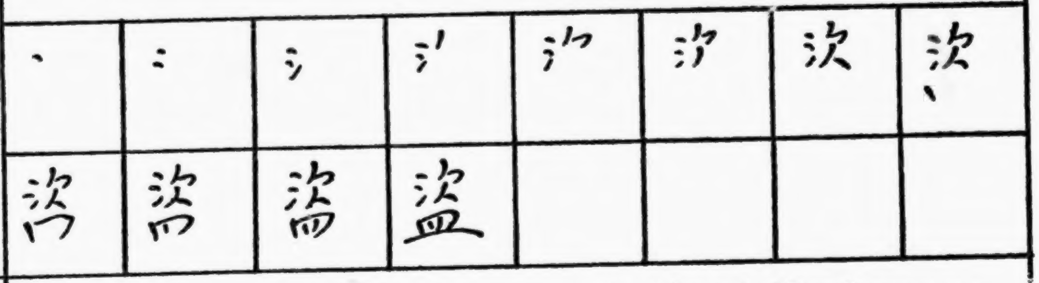
罪

Character Number 1308 Radical Number 122
Stroke Number 13 罒，网



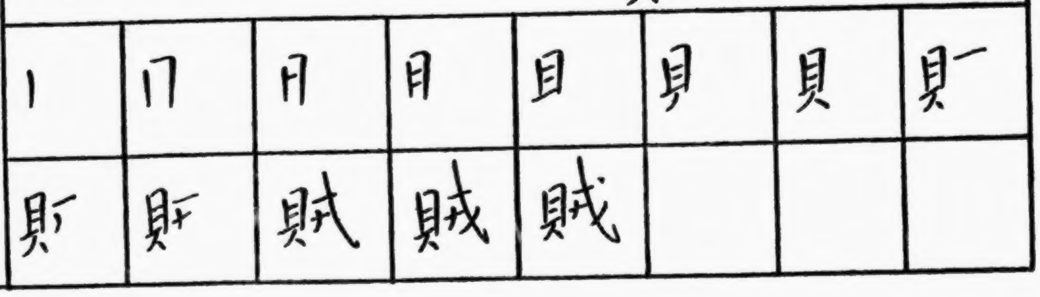
盜

Character Number 1166 Radical Number 108
Stroke Number 12 皿



賊

Character Number 1196 Radical Number 154
Stroke Number 13 貝



LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Uē: Neĭ wán pin waî* à?

Mă: Ngŏh seūng wán neĭ-teî k'ui-lôk pô kè foô-chaák yān. Ngŏh haî kîng-ch'aàt kûk laī kè.

Uē: Foô-chaák yān m̄-hai shuè, yê-ti tsoì laī la.

Mă: Ngŏh haî ni shuè táng hă, tak mà?

Uē: Uē-kwóh neĭ chung-ì, neĭ hóh-ĭ haî ni shuè táng hă, pat-kwòh, ngŏh m̄-chi-tò k'uĭ keî-shī faan-laī pòh!

Mă: Ngŏh kiù-tsô Mă Mīng. Ngŏh haî chung k'ui kîng-chaàt kûk kè ching-t'aàm. Sin-shaang kwaì sīng mīng à?

Uē: Ngŏh haî Uē Wā. Ngŏh haî ni shuè waán hă, wán hă p'aāng-yaŭ che.

Mă: Ni kaan k'ui-lôk pô kè ch'ìt-peî keî uēn-shîn pòh.

Uē: Haî, k'uĭ-teî yaŭ-shī leî-yûng kóh kòh t'eng laī hoi tsôh-t'aām ooî*.

Mă: Ni faaì pik-pò paán ti yĕ haî mat à?

Uē: Yaŭ ti haî piu-uĕ, yaŭ ti haî kw'ai tsak, yaŭ ti haî t'ó-lûn ooî* kè pò-kò t'ūng tīt-tsuî, yaŭ ti haî hoi ooî* t'ung-chi.

Mă: Neĭ ts'aam-ka kwòh ni kòh k'ui-lôk pô kè t'ó-lûn ooî* meî à?

Uē: Ngŏh meî ts'aam-ka-kwòh ni kòh k'ui-lôk pô ti oôt-tûng, pat-kwòh t'eng-mān wâ, k'uĭ-teî ni shuè yaŭ ts'ing-nīn t'uēn, chuen-moōn īn-kaù t'ūng saú-tsaâp mān-chuê kè leĭ-lûn, t'ūng tsẑ-yaū kè sz-seúng. T'uēn-uēn to haî hoi-mīng t'ūng ts'īn-tsùn kè fân-tsź.

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mă: Ts'ing-nīn t'uēn kè foô-chaàk yān haî pin-kòh à?

Uē: K'uĭ-teî kè chî-tô uēn kiù-tsô Chau K'eūng.

Mă: Neĭ ĭ-waī ni kòh ts'ing-nīn t'uēn haî m̄-haî yat kòh fei-faàt kè tsó-chik à?

Uē: Ngŏh seung-sùn m̄-haî.

LESSON 2

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. He is a progressive element of this party.
2. He is an open minded person.
3. To overthrow the government by force is illegal.
4. The intelligent young man is the adviser of this group.
5. I understand your concepts of freedom and democratic theories.
6. The government is collecting information to study the problem.
7. Are you a member of this Youth Group?
8. We will inform all our members the activities of this organization.
9. The program is very long, and I don't think we have enough time.
10. If you like to, you may come and participate in our discussion.
11. Since she didn't know the rule, we will not punish her this time.
12. Do you understand the slogans on the bulletin board?
13. Ladies and gentlemen, we will begin our discussion now.
14. She is not your friend. She is just trying to make use of you.
15. I have nothing particular in mind. I just came for a visit.
16. Who is there? Come out immediately or I will call the police.
17. Central Police Station? This is Detective Smith.

LESSON 2

WORD LIST

1.	fei-faàt	illegal; unlawful
2.	haû-shaang-tsaî (shiù-nīn)	young man; youth
3.	waán	to visit; visiting; playing
4.	leî-yûng	to make use of, utilize; syn: yûng
5.	tsôh-t'aām-ooî*	discussion session; AN kòh
6.	pik-pò paán	bulletin board; AN faaì
7.	piu-uĕ	slogan; AN cheung, kòh
8.	kw'ai-tsak	rule, regulation
9.	t'ó-lûn-ooî*	discussion session, AN kòh
10.	tît-tsuî	order; a program
11.	t'ung-chi	to notify, inform; notice
12.	oôt-tûng	activities; active
13.	Ts'ing-Nīn T'uēn	Youth Group, AN kòh
14.	īn-kaù	to study; to do research, syn: hôk
15.	saú-tsaâp	to gather, collect
16.	mān-chué leĭ-lûn	democratic theory
17.	tsẑ-yaū sz-seúng	concept, theory or idea of freedom; tsẑ-yaū 'freedom'; sz-seúng, 'idea, theory'
18.	chî-tô-uēn	adviser; guide; director AN kòh
19.	hoi-mīng	liberal minded; enlightened;
		to list clearly

LESSON 2

WORD LIST

20.	ts'īn-tsùn	progressive, to make progress
21.	fân-tsź	element; constituent (refers to a certain person or persons within a group) i.e., *k'uĭ haî ts'īn-tsùn fân-tsź* 'he is a progressive element'

LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

1104

隸 taî: mountain plum; dignified; servant; slave; attached to; joined to.

隸屬 taî-shûk: belong to; attached to.

39

抽 ch'au· to lift, levy, whip

抽起 ch au-héi: to lift up

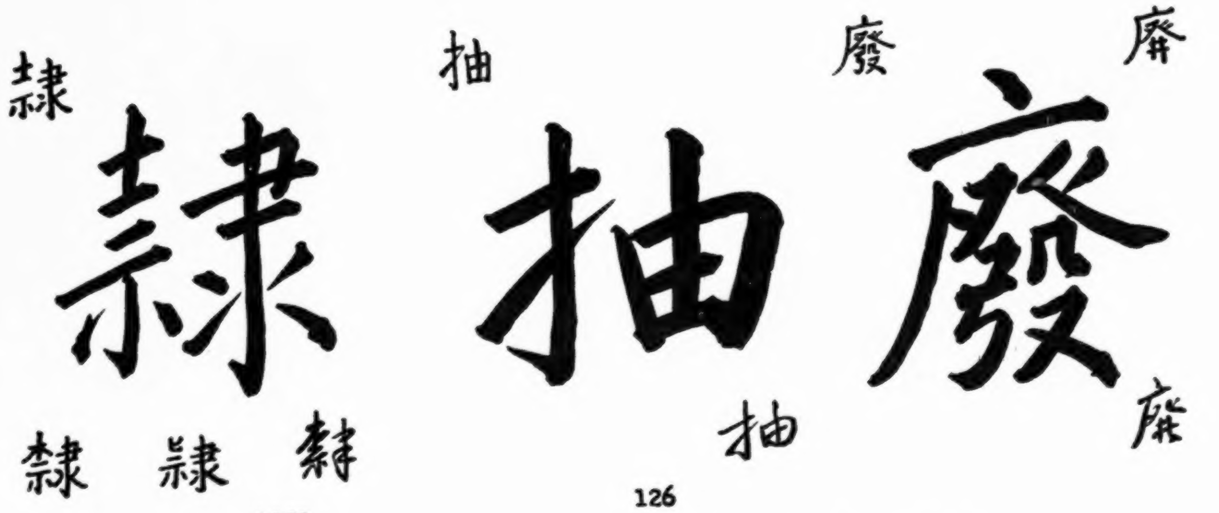
抽筋 ch'au-kan: spasm, cramps

171

廢 faì: to throw away; destroy; annul

廢物 faì-mât: worthless articles

廢除 faì-ch'uī: to abolish; to abrogate



1250

剪 tsín: to cut off; to shear; to remove; shear.

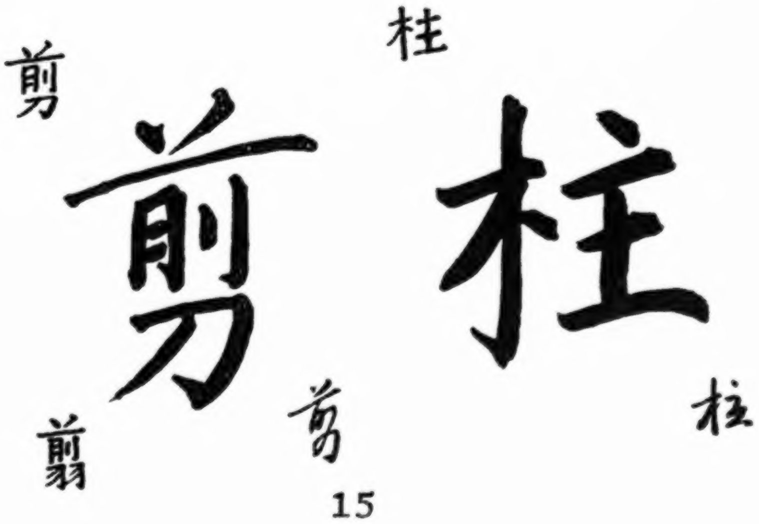
剪刀 tsín-to: scissors; shears.

剪頭髮 tsín t'aū-faàt: to cut the hair.

126

柱 ch'uĕ: pillar; post (Cl. t'iū)

石柱 shĕk ch'uĕ: stone pillar



LESSON 2

READING MATERIAL

179

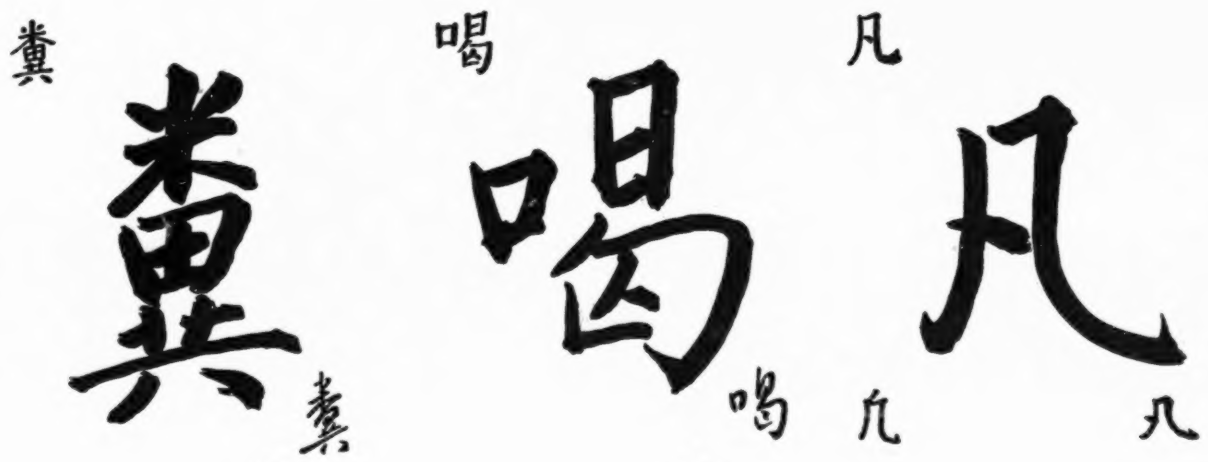
糞	fàn:	manure; night soil; dung
糞肥	fàn-feī:	refuse, manure
糞廁	fàn-ts'ì:	a privy
落糞	lòk-fèn:	to manure.

314

喝	hòt:	to call out; bawl
喝住	hòt-chuê:	call to stop
喝彩	hòt-ts'oí:	to applaud; acclamation

162

凡	faān:	all; common; everyone
但凡	taân-faān:	whatever; whoever
凡事	faān-sẑ:	anything; everything

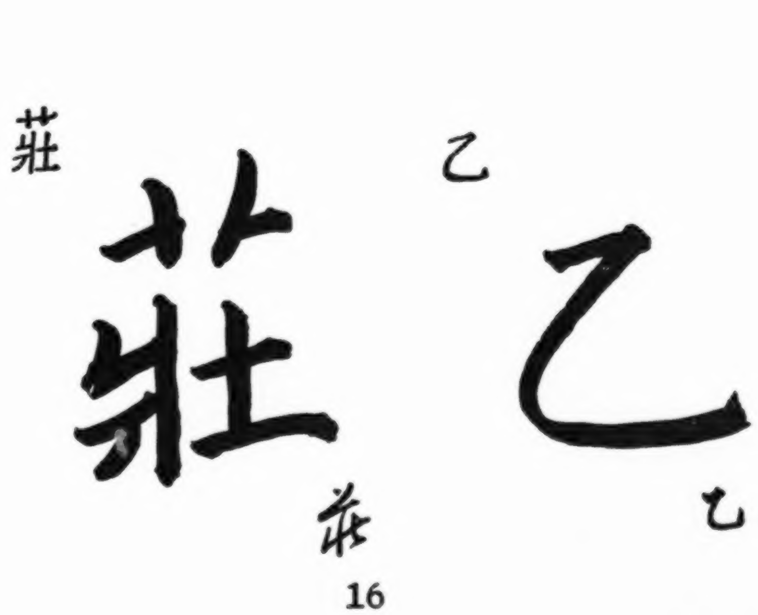


112

莊	chong:	serious; sedate
端莊	tuen-chong:	dignified

1395

乙	uèt:	to mark; stem; curved.
甲乙	kaàp uèt:	the first and second.



LESSON 2

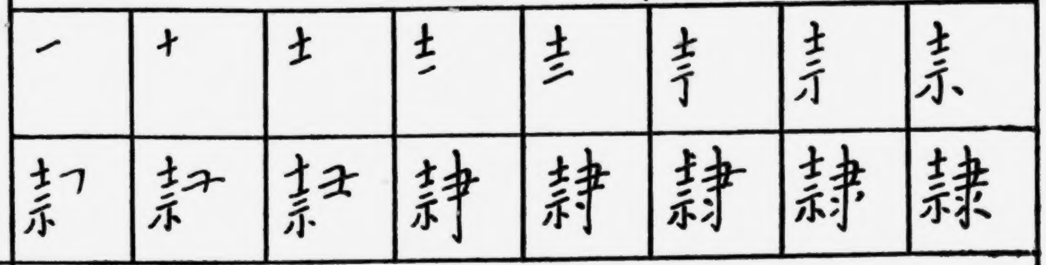
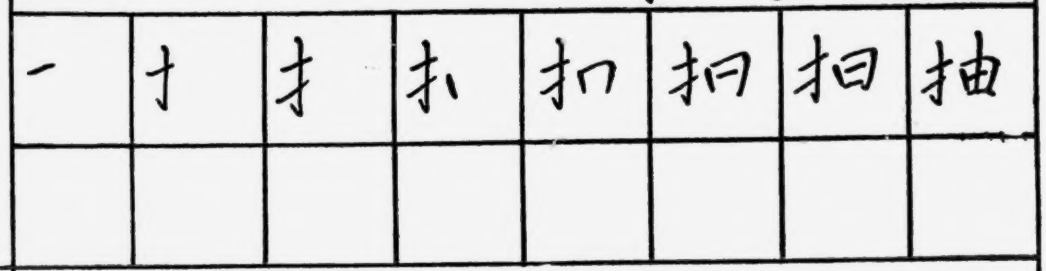
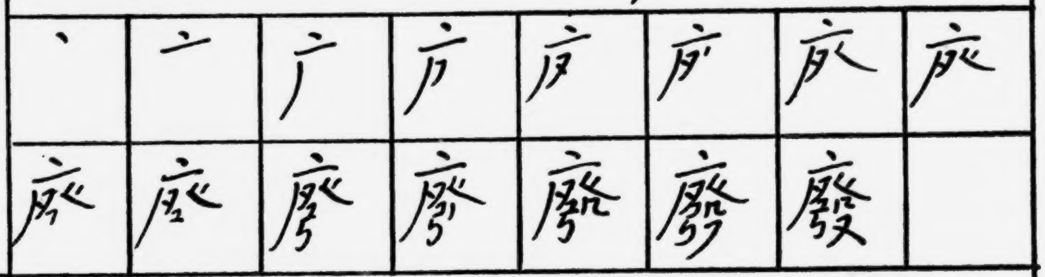
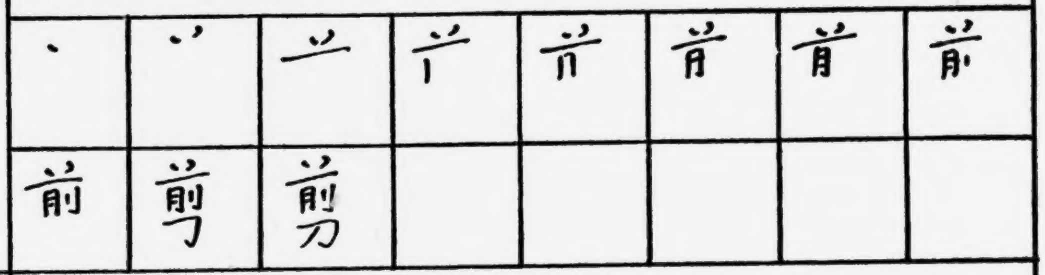
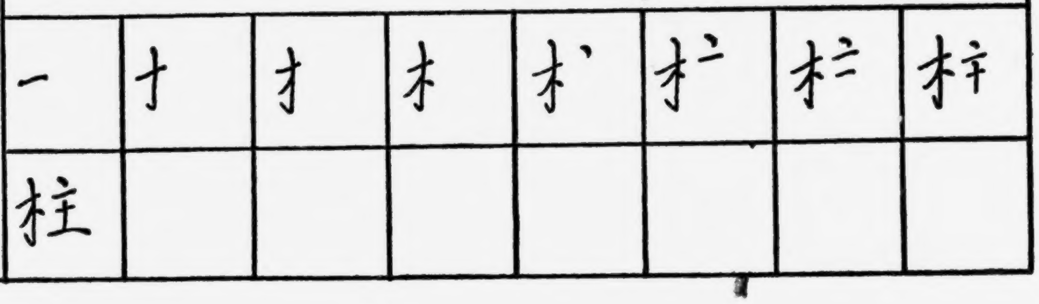
READING MATERIAL

警察局嘅ching-探知到李大年亦喺跑華街一間k'ui-樂部出入·所以又去嗰處wân佢·雖然李大年亦唔喺嗰處,但係佢有機會見到呢間k'ui樂部嘅内容;内便有一塊壁報板,貼有種種標語,規tsak等等·

佢又知到呢間k'ui樂部有一個組織,呌做青年團·團員自稱做開明同前進份子,專門研究同saû集民主嘅理論·佢地嘅思想或者有多少偏左·

LESSON 2

WRITING MATERIAL

隸	Character Number 1104 Stroke Number 16 Radical Number 171 隶	
抽	Character Number 39 Stroke Number 8 Radical Number 64 扌，手	
廢	Character Number 171 Stroke Number 15 Radical Number 53 广	
剪	Character Number 1250 Stroke Number 11 Radical Number 18 刀	
柱	Character Number 126 Stroke Number 9 Radical Number 75 木，木	

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Fong: Ngŏh haî Fong Poón. Ngŏh haî ni kaan k'ui-lôk pô kè foô-chaàk yān. Sin-shaang kwaì sìng-mìng à?

Mă: Ngŏh kiù tsô Mă Mìng. Kîng-cha'àt kûk kè ching-t'aàm. Ngŏh ì-ka t'iū-ch'ā-kán yat-kîn òn. Hei-mông neĭ nāng-kaù pong-mōng.

Fong: Ngŏh-teî ni-shuè haî yat kòh mān-uē tsó-chik, ti ooî-uēn to haî chì-shik fân-tsź. Ngŏh-teî hó foon-heî' t'ūng chìng-foó hôp-tsòk.

Mă: Neĭ shik m̄-shik yaŭ yat kòh kiù tsô Leĭ Taaî-Nìn kè hoî-uēn à?

Fong: Taaî-Nìn haî ngŏh-teî ni-shuè ts'ing-nìn t'uēn kè yat kòh chung-kin fân-tsź.

Mă: Neĭ chi m̄-chi-tò k'uĭ kè leĭ-lîk à?

Fong: Ngŏh m̄-haî keî ts'ing-ch'óh, pat-kwòh ngŏh chi-tò k'uĭ haî Chung-Kwòk taaî-lûk kaaî-fòng chi haû chì laì Meĭ-Kwòk. Haî taaî-hôk tûk-chòh yat leŭng nìn, yaû huì haāng-shuēn*. Ī-ka haî lŏ-faan kaai yat kaan ts'aan-koón tsô kung. K'uĭ haî ni-shuè mā-mā* oôt-tûng, hóh-ĭ wâ haî ngŏh-teî kè hó t'ūng-chì.

Mă: Ts'îng-mân neĭ-teî ni kòh k'ui-lôk pô yaŭ mŏ heùng chìng-foó chuè-ch'aàk à?

Fong: Yaŭ, ngŏh-teî yaŭ heùng shĭ chìng-foó chuè-ch'aàk, wâ haî yat kòh fûk-mô sìng kè t'uēn-t'aî.

Mă: Ts'îng-mân neĭ-teî ni kòh k'ui-lôk pô yaŭ mat fong-cham à?

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Fong: Mŏ mat tâk-pît fong-cham, pat-kwỏh haî luēn-lôk ts'ing-nīn yān īn-kaù kỏk chúng mān-chué kè leĭ-lûn, hôk-tsaâp kòk chúng yaŭ-yik shan-sam kè oôt-tûng.

Mă: Neĭ-teî kè ooî-uēn haî m̄-haî toh-shỏ tsóh-k'ing kè à?

Fong: Ni ti ngŏh tsaû m̄-chi lỏh. Pat-kwỏh ngŏh chi-tỏ kỏh-kỏh ooî-uēn to haî tsaú tsẑ-yaū mān-chué kè lô-sīn kè.

Mă: Uē-kwóh Leĭ Taaî-Nīn laī ni shuè, m̄-koi neĭ kiù k'uĭ chiù ni kỏh teî-chî wán ngŏh, waâk-ché chiù ni kỏh hô-shỏ tá kỏh tîn-wâ* peî ngŏh.

Fong: Hó la.

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. According to my opinion, this program is beneficial to the body and mind.
2. I like to contact the young people of this area. At the same time, I like to know them better.
3. The aim of this youth club is to cultivate fellowship among young people.
4. You may call him comrade but not colleague.
5. Although this organization is a service organization, we do have rules and regulations.
6. I will make a decision after I know more about your past experience.
7. The night gathering will be held in a restaurant.
8. She is not an active member of our club.
9. The cultural information will be posted on the bulletin board.
10. If you do not cooperate with the authorities, you will be in trouble.
11. I am not a seaman. I am an importer and exporter.
12. This is an important case, and I need your help in the investigation.
13. The framework of this organization consists of overseas intellectuals.
14. We shall hold on to our aims and try to learn from the workers.

LESSON 3

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. The laborers are our comrades and you merchants should cooperate with them.

16. What kind of activities do you have at the night gatherings?

17. I don't know your past experiences. I would like to know something about them.

LESSON 3

WORD LIST

1.	t'iū-ch'ā	to investigate; investigation
2.	ỏn-kîn (ỏn)	a case, (legal action) AN cheung, or kīn
3.	mān-uē (mān-fả uē-lôk)	culture and entertainment; mān-fả 'culture'; uē-lôk 'entertainment'; abbr., mân-uē
4.	tong-kûk	the authorities (those in power) i.e., chỉng-foó tong-kûk 'government officials'
5.	hôp-tsỏk	to cooperate; to work together harmoniously; cooperation i.e., k'uǐ hó-hôp tsỏk 'he is very cooperative'; k'uǐ t'ūng ngǒh hôp-tsỏk 'he cooperates with me'
6.	hoî-uēn	seaman AN kỏh
7.	chung-kin fân-tsź	the core; framework; important or active members of an organization; chúng-kin 'important or essential'; fân-tsź 'element or constituent'
8.	maǎn-ooî*	evening party, meeting; night gathering
9.	leǐ-lîk	past experiences, AN kỏh
10.	kaaî-fỏng	to liberate, shake off the yoke; to release; to be free

LESSON 3

WORD LIST

11.	lŏ-faan-kaai	outside of Chinatown (literally: the streets or places where the Westerners reside or engage in various activities) AN t'iū
12.	t'ūng-chì	comrade (persons of the same aim or interest) AN kòh
13.	fûk-mô sìng	free service; offering service without asking for compensation in return; fûk-mô 'to serve or service'; sìng 'nature; disposition or in the nature of'
14.	t'uēn-t'aì	organization; body of men, AN kòh
15.	taan-waî*	unit; a part of; a specific amount used as standard, AN kòh
16.	chì-shik fân-tsź	intellectual; well educated person; intelligentsia, AN kòh; fân-tsź (See Les 3:7 above)
17.	cha	to hold; gripe
18.	fong-cham	policy; aim; direction; guide, AN kòh
19.	luēn-lòk	to coordinate; liaison; close contact; close association
20.	hôk-tsaâp	to study, learn, practice; learning, syn: ìn-kaù (See Les 2.15)

LESSON 3

WORD LIST

21. yaŭ-yik shan-sam	beneficial or healthy to the body as well as the mind; both physical and mental health; shan 'body, physical'; sam 'mind, mental'

LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

945

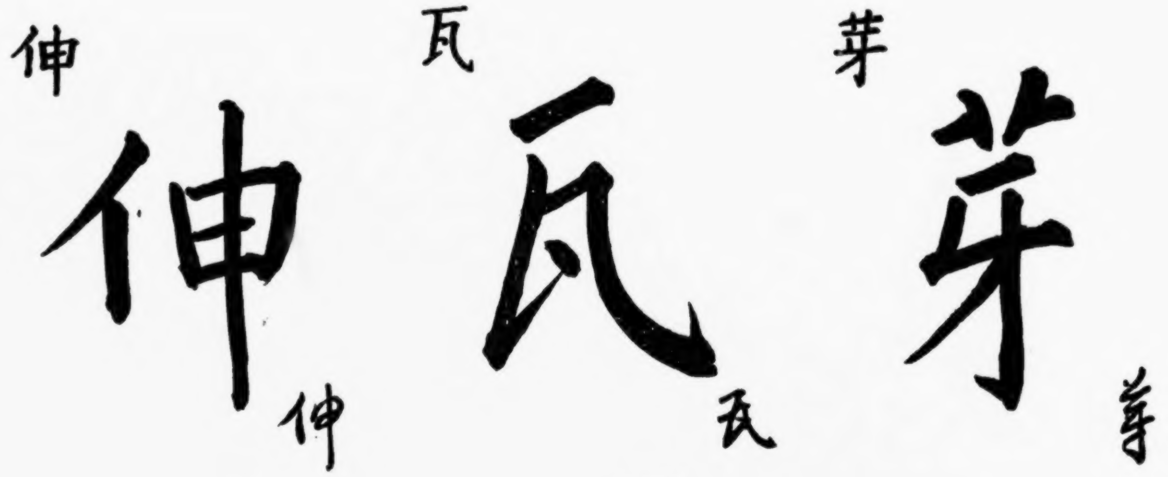
伸	shan: to stretch out or forth; extend.
伸直	shan chîk: to straighten out.
伸縮	shan-shuk: to expand and contract.

745

瓦	ngǎ: earthenware; tile pottery.
瓦面	ngǎ-mîn: a roof.
瓦窰	ngǎ iū: a kiln.

744

芽	ngā: a bud; sprout; to begin.
芽菜	ngā-ts'oì: bean sprout.

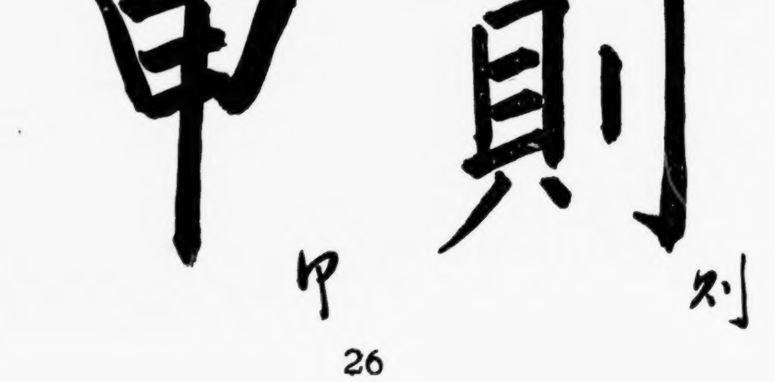


393

甲	kaàp: scales; finger nails armor; a certain person
指甲	chí-kaàp: finger nails
鉄甲	t'ìt-kaàp: an ironclad
某甲	maǔ-kaàp: a certain man

1213

則	tsak: rule; law; then.
則可	tsak hóh: then it is alright.



LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

746

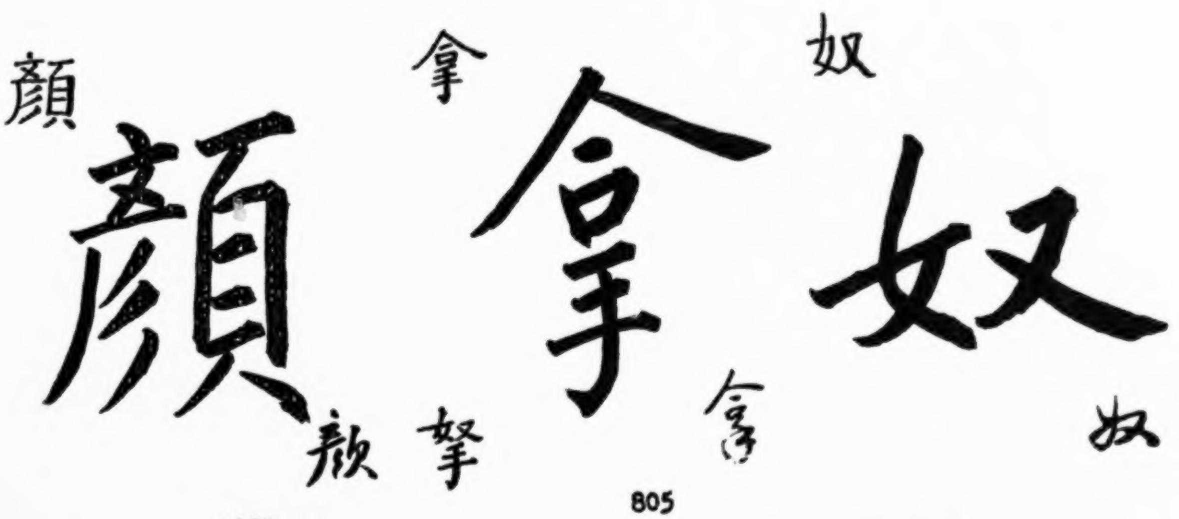
顏	ngaān: color; countenance.
顏色	ngaān-shik: color; colored.
顏料	ngaān-liû: dyes in general.
紅顏	hũng-ngaān: a rosy face.

726

拿	nā: to grasp; to carry; to bring
拿手	nā-shaú: dexterous; expert.
捉拿	chuk nā: to arrest; to seize.
拿破崙	nā-p'ŏh-lũn: Napoleon.

768

奴	nō: a slave; servant.
奴隸	nō-taî: a slave.
奴僕	nō-pûk: bond-servant.
守財奴	shaú-ts'oī-nō: a miser; niggard.

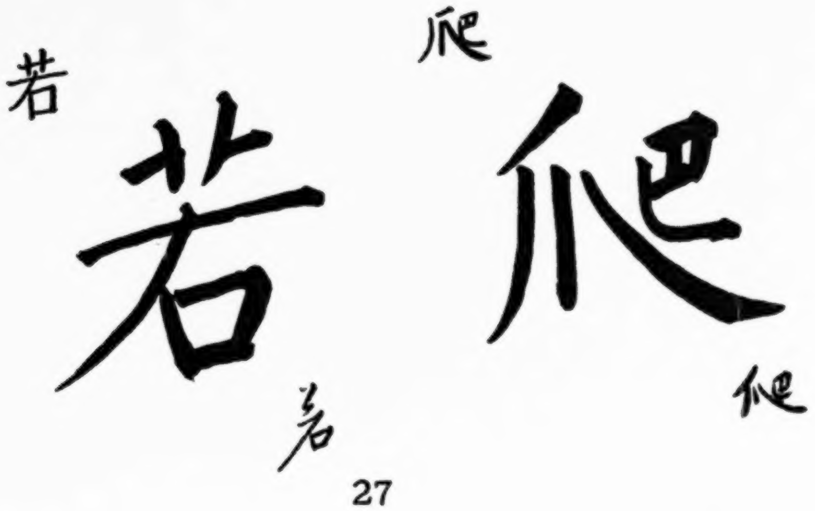


1470

若	yeûk: supposing; if; like; as to.
若果	yeûk-kwóh: if; supposing.
若然	yeûk-īn: if this is the case.

805

爬	p'ā: to climb; to crawl; to scrape; to scratch; to rake.
爬上	p'ā sheǔng: to climb up.
爬行	p'ā hāng: to creep; to crawl.



LESSON 3

READING MATERIAL

警察局 ching-探馬明，到跑華街 k'ui 樂部等李大年之時，同 k'ui 樂部負責人方先生 k'ing-談

佢先問老方關於李大年嘅來歷·老方話，大年喺中國大陸被共產黨佔領之後黎到美國；讀 -chôh 一年大學，就去行船，現時喺一間 ts'aan 館做工·

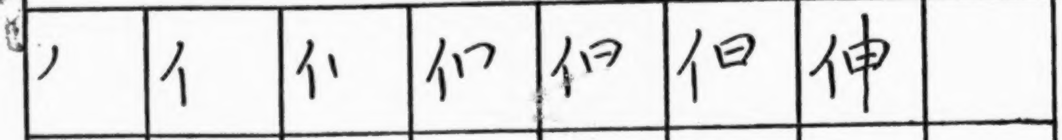
馬明疑心呢個 k'ui 樂部或係一個共產組織；所以就乘呢個機會，問吓關於呢處嘅情形·根據老方所講；呢個組織，目的係聯 lŏk 青年人，做研究工作·充實各人嘅 chī 識學問，並且做各種有益身心嘅活動·可以呌做文娛組織·

LESSON 3

WRITING MATERIAL

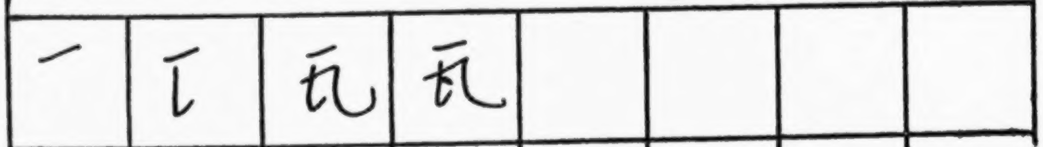
伸

Character Number 945
Stroke Number 7
Radical Number 9
亻, 人



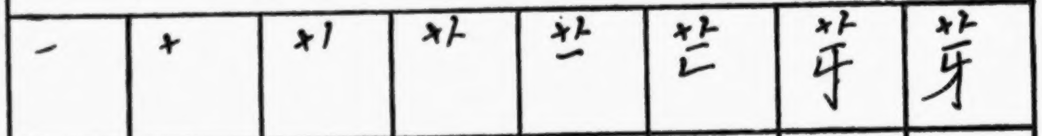
瓦

Character Number 745
Stroke Number 4
Radical Number 98
瓦



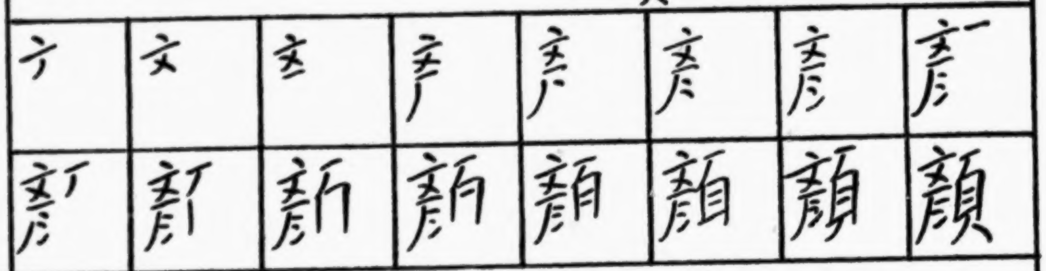
芽

Character Number 744
Stroke Number 8
Radical Number 140
艹, 艸



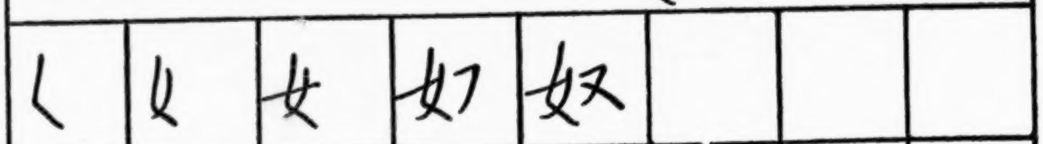
顏

Character Number 746
Stroke Number 18
Radical Number 181
頁



奴

Character Number 768
Stroke Number 5
Radical Number 38
女



LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Leĭ: Ngŏh haî Leĭ Taaì-Nīn. Ts'îng mân Mă Mīng ching-t'aàm haî shuè mà?

Mă: Ôh, Leĭ Sin-Shaang, ts'îng-ts'ŏh, ts'îng-ts'ŏh, ngŏh tsaû haî Mă Mīng lòh.

Leĭ: Tung-Fong K'ui-Lôk-Pô kóh-waî* Uē Sin-Shaang wâ neĭ seúng wán ngŏh, haî m̄-haî à?

Mă: Mŏ-ts'òh lòh, ngŏh-teî yaŭ ti mân-t'aī seúng mân hă neĭ. Ngŏh seúng neĭ t'ūng chìng-foó tsô chìng-yān.

Leĭ: Yaŭ mat mân-t'aī à? Tsô mat chìng-yān à?

Mă: Ngŏh seúng mân neĭ keî kòh mân-t'aī sin, tsô m̄-tsô chìng-yān, ĭ-haû chì tsoì-kóng.

Leĭ: Ngŏh seúng t'ūng ngŏh kè lût-sz sheung-leūng hă chì ooī-taàp neĭ kè mân-t'aī, tak mà?

Mă: Tak, pat-kwòh ngŏh seúng sin t'ūng neĭ kóng keî kòh kaán-taan kè mân-t'aī, hó mà?

Leĭ: Yîk hó, pat-kwòh ngŏh m̄-haî keî tak-haān, ngŏh iù kón faan kung pòh.

Mă: Neĭ shik m̄-shik Fong Chòh-Chî? Neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ shûk m̄-shûk à?

Leĭ: Ngŏh shik Lŏ-Fong, k'uĭ ĭ-ts'ìn t'ūng ngŏh haî shaáng-lâp taaî-hôk tsô t'ūng-hôk, în-shī ngŏh hó shiú kìn-tò k'uĭ.

Mă: T'eng-mân wâ, neĭ ĭ-ts'ìn t'ūng k'uĭ chuê, haî m̄-haî à?

Leĭ: Tûk taaî-hôk kè shī-haû, ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ t'ūng fōng* chuê.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mă: K'uĭ kè haāng-tûng t'ūng sz-seúng tîm à?

Leĭ: K'uĭ haî hôk-haaû kè shī-haû hó chung-ì kaaú hôk-ch'iū. Haû-loī huì tsô kung, k'uĭ yaû faàt-tûng kung-ch'iū, shìn-tûng pâ-kung, táng táng.

Mă: Neĭ haî m̂-haî t'ūng-lô yān à?

Leĭ: Ngŏh m̂-liŭ-kaaî k'uĭ kè sz-seúng, ngŏh m̂-haî k'uĭ kè t'ūng-lô yān.

Mă: Neĭ tîm chi-tò k'uĭ faàt-tûng kung-ch'iū, shìn-tûng pâ-kung à?

Leĭ: K'uĭ ts'aam-ka tsóh-k'ing kè kung-ooî*, yaŭ keî ts'z̀ k'uĭ kiù ngŏh pong k'uĭ sé piu-uĕ, yàn siú-ch'aàk táng táng.—Â, ngŏh ī-ka iù faan kung, ngŏh t'aú kung kè shī-haû tsoì-laî la; hó mà?

Mă: Hó hó. Toh-tsê neĭ kè pong-mōng. Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

Leĭ: Tsoì-kìn, tsoì-kìn.

LESSON 4

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I can't give you any help if you remain in the U.S.A.
2. Do you believe there is such a thing as a stupid lawyer?
3. She is an expert in import and export business.
4. Today is my day off but I have to attend a labor union meeting.
5. I am for you even though you are not my friend.
6. Did you print this pamphlet for the YMCA?
7. There will be a bus strike tomorrow. What shall I do?
8. You cause the members of the union to strike. Why?
9. He may be an old man, but he motivates this labor movement himself.
10. She is my lawyer, and she will answer for me.
11. He didn't graduate from the state college. He graduated from city college.
12. If I pay you fifty dollars, will you be my lawyer?
13. He may not stir up a student movement himself, but I am sure he is a fellow traveler of that group.
14. Do you know the real reason for this labor dispute?
15. If you take this stand, you will be his fellow traveler.
16. Please take this to the printing shop and ask them to print five hundred copies.

LESSON 4

WORD LIST

1.	lût-sz	attorney; lawyer, AN *kòh*
2.	ooī-taàp	to answer, reply; an answer; a reply; abbr: *taàp*
3.	shaáng-lâp taaî-hôk	state college or university; state owned college or university; *lâp* ‘to own, establish, stand up; immediate’
4.	t’ūng-lô yān	fellow traveller; men of the same belief (lit. transl. those men who travel on the same road).
5.	kaaú hôk-ch’iū	to stir up or instigate student movement; *kaaú* ‘to stir up, to mix, excite, disturb’
6.	kwaan-haî (yaŭ kwaán haî)	relation; connection; related, i.e., *k’uĭ t’ūng ngŏh yaŭ kwaan-haî* ‘he and I are related’
7.	faàt-tûng kung-ch’iū	to instigate labor dispute; to motivate labor dispute; to motivate labor movement; *faàt tûng* ‘to launch, to make a move; to activate; beginnings of a thing; active, as opposed to passive’

LESSON 4

WORD LIST

8.	shìn-tûng	to stir up, instigate, excite, (See Les 4.6.7)
9.	pâ-kung	labor strike (lit. transl: to stop work)
10.	liŭ-kaaî	to understand, comprehend, syn: mîng-paâk
11.	yàn	to print; a seal, AN kòh
12.	siú-ch'aàk	pamphlet, syn: pô-tsaî 'small volume'
13.	kung-ooî*	labor union; labor organization
14.	t'aú kung	day off; away or disengage from work; t'aú 'to rest'
15.	pong-mōng	help; to help, aid; to give aid, a.f. pong

LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

573

擴 kw'òng or k'òng: to expand; to extend.

擴充 kw'òng-ch'ung: to enlarge; to expand(business, school).

擴張 kw'òng-cheung: to spread; to enlarge(influence)

382

革 kaàk: to remove; change

革命 kaàk-mîng: revolution.

革職 kaàk chik: to remove from office or position

革除 kaàk-ch'uē: to get rid of; to expel

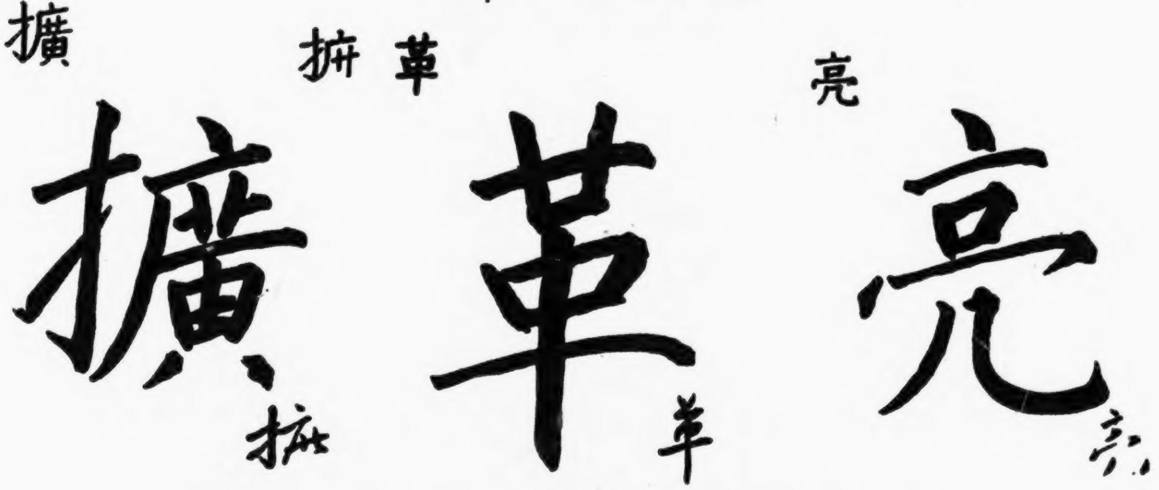
改革 koí-kaàk: to change

606

亮 leûng: clear; bright; transparent.

光亮 kwong-leûng: bright; illuminated.

響亮 heúng-leûng: clear and loud(voice and music etc.)



695

苗 miū: sprout; descendant; Miao tribe.

禾苗 wōh miū: rice seedings.

苗裔 miū yuî: posterity.

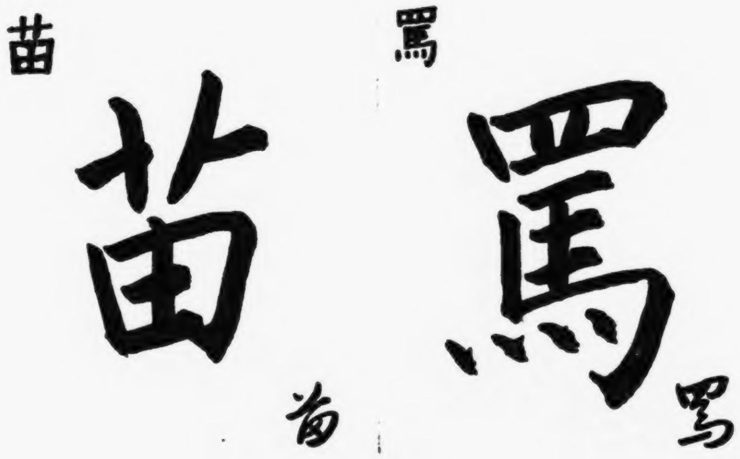
苗人 miū yān: Miaos.

657

罵 mâ: to rail; to scold; to villify.

罵人 mâ yān: to scold others.

大罵 taaî mâ: a bad scolding.



LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

574

狂 kw'ōng or k'ōng: furious; mad; wild rash.

癲狂 tin-kw'ōng: insane.

發狂 faàt-kw'ōng: become delirious; to lose one's senses.

猖狂 ch'eung-kw'ōng: outragious; too bold.

563

群 kw'ān: flock; herd; crowd; multitude; to group.

群衆 kw'ān-chùng: the multitude; the crowd.

群集 kw'ān tsaâp: to gather together.

合群 hôp-kw'ān: to unite; united.

490

角 kòk: a corner; horn of an animal; a coin.

角鬬 kòk-taù: to wrestle.

口角 haú-kòk: to quarrel.

三角 saam-kòk: a triangle.

一角 yat kòk: a ten cents piece.

狂 群 角

狂群角

角

狂 羣 群

493

甘 kom: sweet; pleasant; seasonable.

甘香 kom-heung: delicious flavor.

甘甜 kom-t'īm: sweet.

甘心 kom-sam: voluntarily

甘油 kom-yaū: glycerine.

471

勁 kìng: strong.

勁敵 kìng tîk: well matched foe.

對勁 tuì kìng: well matched.

勁 勁

甘

甘勁

勁

甘

LESSON 4

READING MATERIAL

李大年得到警局ching-探來wán佢嘅消息，佢第二日就去警局見馬明 坐落之後，馬明講明白wán佢嘅理由 原來政府想向李大年查問另外一個叫做Choh治方嘅人·

當時馬明問及Choh治方嘅來歷，佢地兩個人嘅關係等等·大年話，佢雖然同老方做過同學，又同房住過；但係佢嫌老方嘅思想行動有些少過激，好似攪學-ch'iū，shìn動罷工，同攻擊別人等等·所以佢向來同老方冇聯lòk·

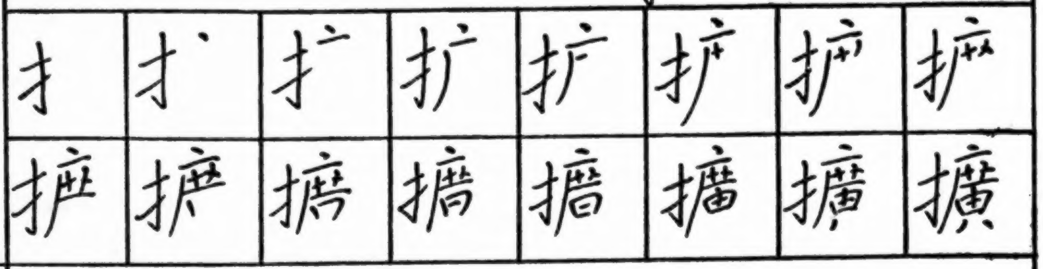
講-chóh冇幾耐，大年要翻工·佢地就決定下個禮拜四再見·

LESSON 4

WRITING MATERIAL

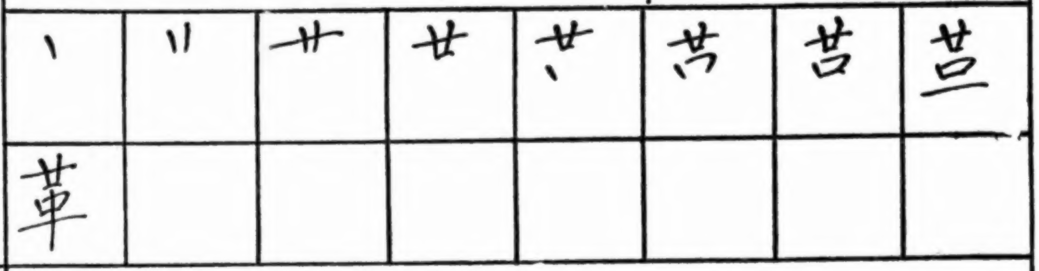
擴

Character Number 573　　Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 18　　扌，手



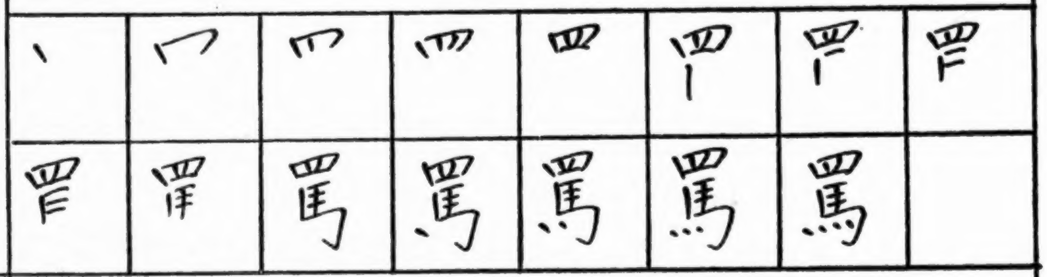
革

Character Number 382　　Radical Number 177
Stroke Number 9　　革



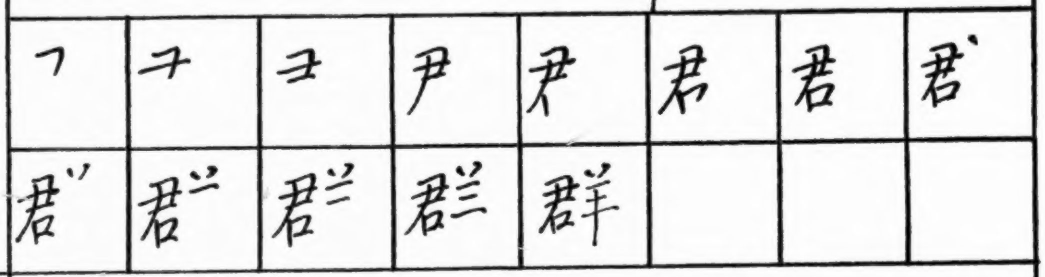
罵

Character Number 657　　Radical Number 122
Stroke Number 15　　四，网



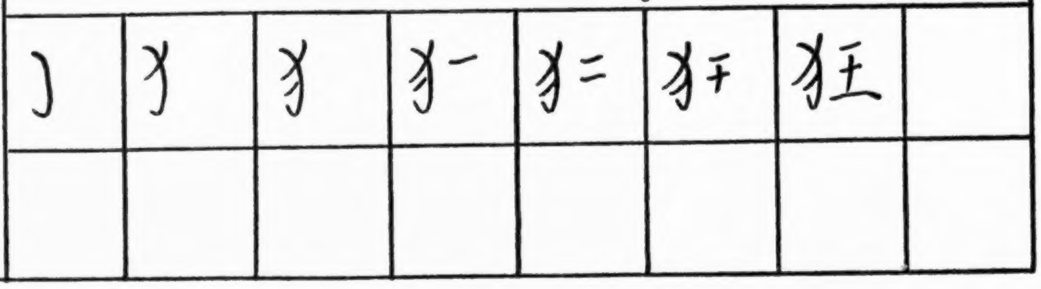
群

Character Number 563　　Radical Number 123
Stroke Number 13　　羊



狂

Character Number 574　　Radical Number 94
Stroke Number 7　　犭，犬



LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Kwaan: Lŏ-Mă, ngŏh seúng t'ūng neĭ k'ing-yat-k'ing Fong Choh Chî kóh yat-kîn òn, hó mà?

Mă: Hó à, Kwaan Chuê-Yâm, ngŏh yîk seúng heùng neĭ pò-kò yat-hă.

K: Neĭ wán m̄-wán-tó Leĭ Taaî-Nīn tsô chīng-yān à?

M: Ch'oh-shī ngŏh mŏ sīn-sòk, haû-loī ngŏh heùng kòk fong-mîn t'iū-ch'ā k'uĭ kè pooī-kīng, yaû fòng sheng-heī shaī k'uĭ laī kīn ngŏh.

K: K'uĭ shât-tsoî haî pin-shuè ch'ut-yâp à?

M: K'uĭ haî yat kaan k'ui-lôk-pô ch'ut-yâp. Ni kòh siu-sik haî k'uĭ kè p'aāng-yaŭ kóng peî ngŏh chi kè.

K: Kóh kaan k'ui-lôk-pô haî tîm kè à?

M: Piú-mîn sheûng, kóh kaan k'ui-lôk-pô haî yat kòh mān-uē fûk-mô shĕ-t'uēn. Taân-haî, shât-tsoî kè ts'īng-yīng tsaû hó naān kóng.

K: K'uĭ-teî yaŭ-mŏ òn-taî haî ngŏh-teî shuè à?

M: Yaŭ, ngŏh leûk-leûk* t'aì kwòh hă. Tung-Fong K'ui-Lôk-Pô poón-shan hó-ts'ž hó ch'ing-paâk, pat-kwòh, ngŏh mŏ k'uĭ-teî kè ooî-uēn mīng-taan, shóh-ĭ k'eī-chung yaŭ pat-leūng fân-tsź yîk wâ m̄-tîng.

K: Uē-kwóh yaŭ tsóh-k'ing fân-tsź, tseung-loī waâk-ché yaŭ mā-faān kè sẑ faàt-shaang; ngŏh-teî ying-koi chuè-ī chuè-ī.

M: Ngŏh yîk haî kóm nám. Pat-kwòh ni ti haî tseung-loī kè sẑ.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

K: Leĭ Taaî-Nìn yaŭ-mŏ laì kìn neĭ à?

M: Yaŭ, kam-yât k'uĭ laì ngŏh kè sé-tsẑ-laū. Ngŏh mân chóh k'uĭ keî kuì shuèt-wâ.

K: Leĭ Taaî-Nìn hôp-tsòk mà?

M: K'uĭ hó-ts'z̆ hó lôk-ì t'ūng ngŏh hôp-tsòk. Ngŏh kam-yât t'ūng k'uĭ k'ing-chóh mŏ keî-noî che.

K: Tîm-kaaî à?

M: Yan-waî k'uĭ iù faan kung.

K: Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ yeùk k'uĭ tsoì t'aām à?

M: Yaŭ, ngŏh-teî hâ-kòh Laĭ-Paaì-Seì tsoì k'ing.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. We know your background thoroughly. You'd better confess it now.
2. I am willing to discuss it with you again if you will come back tomorrow night.
3. The chairman notices your work since the beginning.
4. You should be careful about this man because he is not a member of our organization.
5. I am sure she will cooperate with us when you offer her money.
6. He did not remember the details of the accident, but he said it happened at approximately 2:00 a.m.
7. Her friends may be undesirable, but I think she is innocent.
8. You didn't have a police record, and I hope you won't have one in the future.
9. Since you have seen what happened, you should cooperate with the authority.
10. If I let it be known that you are a thief, you will be out of a job in no time.
11. I myself will go to Washington to see him if that is what you want.
12. My hat is missing, and I don't have a single clue as to its whereabouts.
13. As a student, she should be more cooperative and pay more attention to her studies.

LESSON 5

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. Will you please bring in Mr. Fong's record?

15. It appears that this left wing organization will cooperate with the authority.

16. I have a rough idea as to how it can be done.

LESSON 5

WORD LIST

1. chué-yâm	chairman; chief; head; the one in charge, AN kòh
2. sìn-sòk	line; hint; clue, syn: taū-suĭ
3. fòng sheng-heì	let it be known; (lit. transl. to spread the news)
4. p'in-tsóh	pro-left (politically leaning toward thd left)
5. piú-mîn sheûng	on the surface, the external appearance, syn: piú-mîn
6. shĕ-t'uēn	organization, association; society; group
7. òn-taí	record of case at law; archive; file, AN kîn or kòh
8. leûk-leûk*	generally; roughly; approximately; about, syn: taaî-yeùk*
9. poón-shan	itself, himself (lit. one's own body); poón 'this; local; origin'
10. ts'ing-paâk	clean; clear; pure; honorable of unsullied descent; unblemished
11. pat-leūng fân-tsź	undesirable element; pat-leūng 'not good, bad' syn: m̄-hó; fân-tsź (See Les 2.24)
12. chuè-ì	take notice; beware of; careful; pay attention; attentive

LESSON 5

WORD LIST

13.	hôp-tsỏk	to cooperate; cooperative
14.	lôk-ỉ	willing; happy; glad, syn: chúng-ỉ
15.	tsoỉ-t'aām	discuss it again; t'aām 'to speak, converse, say, discuss', syn: kóng or k'ìng
16.	pooỉ-kîng	background, an individual's general education and culture, syn: luĭ-lîk (See Les 3.9), AN kỏh

LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

1335

刺 ts'z̀: to prick; to stab; to dig into; a thorn.

刺傷 ts'z̀ sheung: to wound with a pointed weapon.

行刺 hāng-ts'z̀: to assassinate.

1229

斜 ts'è, ts'ē: oblique· slant; uneven.

斜紋 ts'ē mān· twilled.

斜角 ts'ē kòk. oblique angle.

1345

脫 t'uèt: to strip; to remove; to escape; to avoid.

脫帽 t'uèt mô: to lift or remove the hat.

脫離 t'uèt leī: to depart; to disassociate with.

脫險 t'uèt hím: out of danger.

刺 斜 脫

刺 斜 脫

莿 刺 斜 脫

509

姑 koo: indulgent; father's sister; husband's sister.

姑娘 koo-neŭng: miss; young lady; a nun(Catholic)

師姑 sz-koo: a nun

姑念 koo-nîm: indulgent towards.

姑母 koo-mŏ: paternal aunt.

313

娶 ts'uí: to take a wife; to marry a girl.

娶親 ts'uí ts'an: to take a wife.

娶妾 ts'uí ts'ìp: to take a concubine

姑 娶

姑 娶

姑 娶

LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

828

貧 p'ān: poor; impoverished.

貧窮 p'ān-k'ūng: indigent; poor.

貧乏 p'ān-fât: destitute.

479

稿 kó: rough draft: printer's copy; proof; stalks of grain.

原稿 uēn kó: original copy.

草稿 ts'ó-kó: a rough draft.

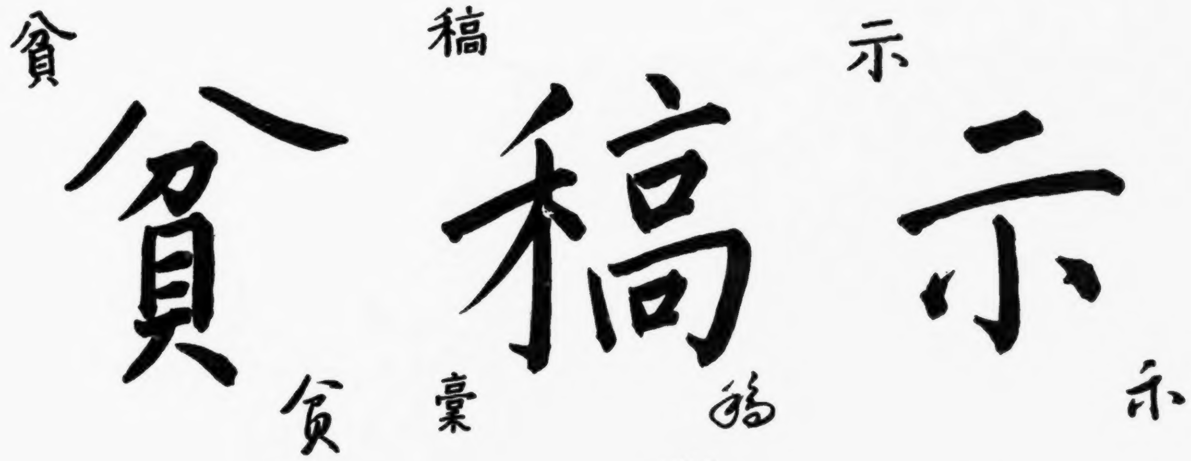
起稿 heí kó: to draw up a rough draft.

980

示 shî: to make known; an edict.

訓示 fàn-shî: to instruct; an order.

示威運動 shî-wai wân-tûng: public demonstration.



19

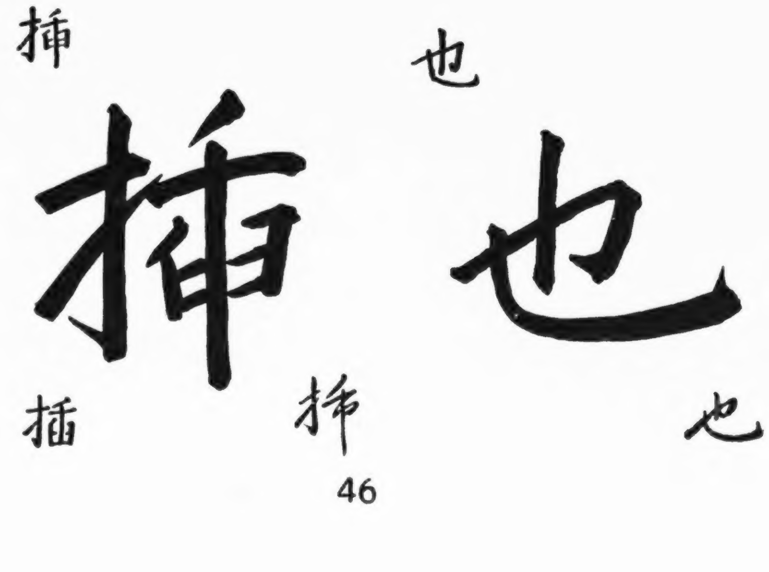
揷 ch'aàp: to insert, drive into

揷嘴 ch'aàp-tsuí: interrupt in talking.

1440

也 yǎ: also; a particle

也曾 yǎ-ts'āng: already.



LESSON 5

READING MATERIAL

聯 -Pong Ching-探局關主任想知道馬明調查 choh 治方之案情點樣，就叫馬探員到其辦事室，問佢關於調查之經過，線-shŏk 如何，以及所得之結果等等·同時根據此案情檢討一叮·

根據調查所得；老方呢個人，在思想上，行為上，言論上，確係有些少過激·且時常喺一間偏左之 k'ui 樂部出入·但現時尚未能斷定老方係唔係共產黨員

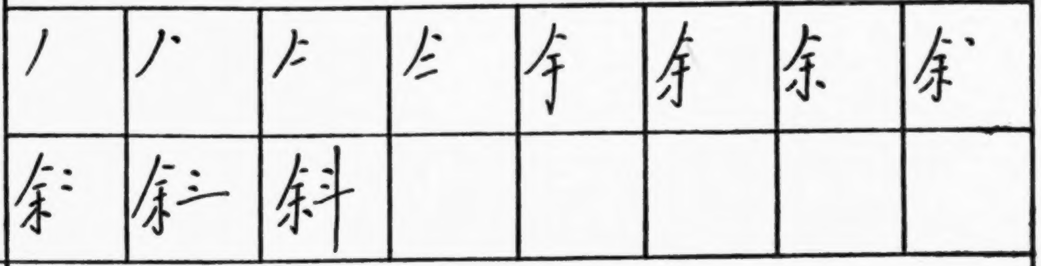
至於李大年，對於本案極之合作，歡喜幫忙；所以得其協助不少·可惜佢每日需做工，時間無多·遲日與他再談一次，或者可以 p'oŏn 決此案·

LESSON 5

WRITING MATERIAL

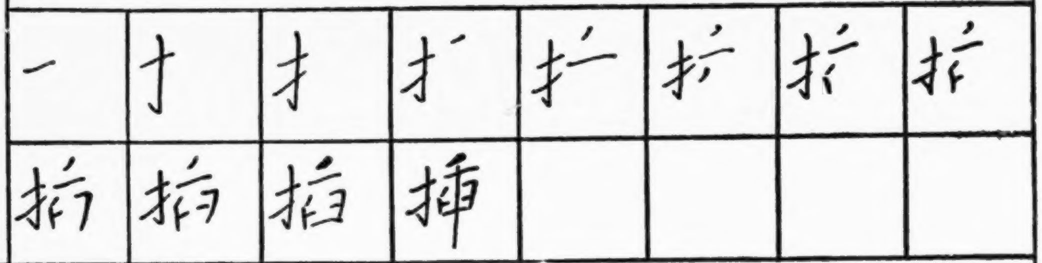
斜

Character Number 1229 Radical Number 68
Stroke Number 11 斗



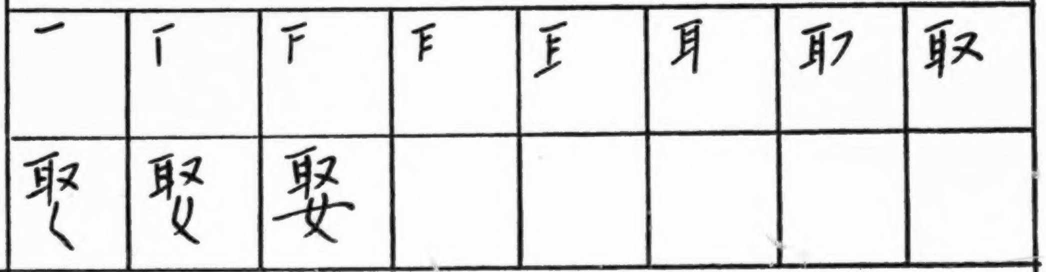
插

Character Number 19 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 12 扌，手



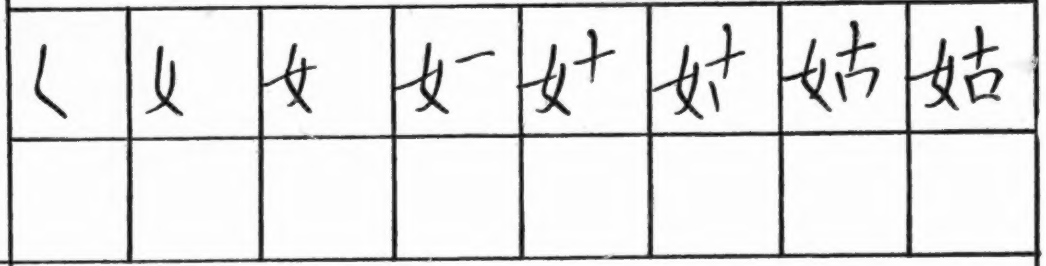
娶

Character Number 1313 Radical Number 38
Stroke Number 11 女



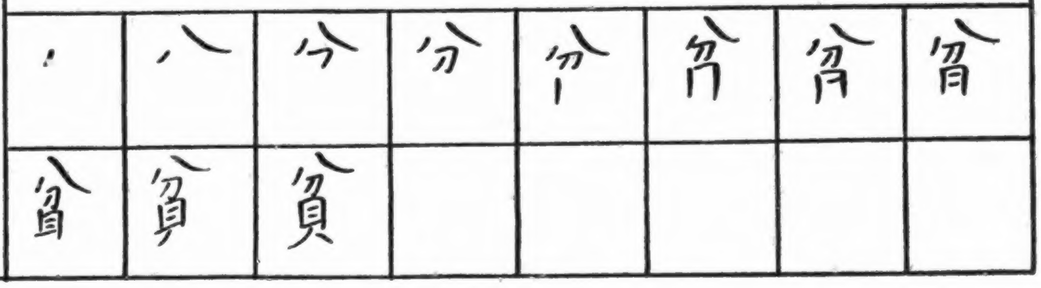
姑

Character Number 509 Radical Number 38
Stroke Number 8 女



貧

Character Number 828 Radical Number 154
Stroke Number 11 貝



LESSON 26.1

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mă: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, neĭ hó la mă? Ngŏh toh-tsê neĭ kam-yât yaû ch'au ti shī-haû laī ni-shuè.

Leĭ: Mŏ shóh-waî. Neĭ haî m̄-haî yaû mân kwaan-ue Lŏ-Fong ti yĕ à?

M: Meî mân Lŏ-Fong ti yĕ chi-ts'īn, ngŏh seúng mân yat ti kwaan-ue neĭ tsẑ-keî kè yĕ, tak mà?

L: M̄-kán-iù. Ngŏh mân-kwòh lût-sz lòh, k'uĭ kiù ngŏh t'aán-paâk t'ūng neĭ kóng.

M: Tuî-ue ngŏh mân kè mân-t'aī, ts'īng neĭ nám-chún. Nám ch'ing-ch'ôh īn-haû taàp-fuk ngŏh.

L: Tong-īn* la.

M: Neĭ haî m̄-haî Meĭ-Kwòk tsîk-mān, neĭ keî shī t'ūng haî pin-shuè yâp-haú?

L: Ngŏh haî Meĭ-Kwòk tsîk-mān. Yat-kaú-ngĭ-î nīn saam-uêt yâ-ngĭ haî She-Lô yâp haú.

M: Ch'uī-chóh Leĭ Taaî-Nīn ni kòh meng* chi-ngoî, neĭ chûng yaŭ mŏ k'eī-t'a kè mēng* à?

L: Yaŭ, ngŏh kè hô haî Wā-Kwong.

M: Neĭ ĭ-ts'īn yaŭ mŏ ka-yâp Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng waâk k'eī-t'a faán-Meĭ kè t'uēn-t'aî à?

L: Ngŏh m̄-haî Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng, yîk mŏ ts'aam-ka-kwòh k'eī-t'a faán-Meĭ t'uēn-t'aî kè oôt tûng.

M: Meî laî Meĭ-Kwòh ĭ-ts'īn, neĭ haî m̄-haî haî Chung-Kûng kè teî-fong kui-chuê à?

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

L: Haî, Chung-Kûng kaaì-fòng taaî-lûk chi-haû, ngŏh chûng haî Kwóng-Chau-Shĭ tûk shue. Yat-kaû-nğ-yat nìn ngŏh leì-hoi taaî-lûk, huì Heung-Kông chuê.

M: Kóm, neĭ haî Chung-Kûng koón-chì kè teî-fong chuê chóh keî noî à?

L: Taaî-yeùk* nìn-lēng kóm sheûng-hâ*. Kôh chân shì haî ngŏh tûk chung-hôk kè tsuì-haû yat nìn.

M: Kôh chân shì neĭ yaŭ mŏ tûk Mă-Haak-Sz chué-î, Yan-Kaàk-Sz kè chuè-tsòk, Lît-Nìng kè hôk-shuèt, Sź-T'aaì-Lām kè leĭ-lûn, Mō-Chaâk-Tung kè San-Mān-Chué Chué-î, t'ūng Shĕ-ooî chué-î kè shue à?

M: Yaŭ, pat-kwòh ni ti haî hôk-haaû kw'ai-tìng kè. Ngŏh tuì ni ti yĕ mŏ hìng-ts'uì, yîk m̄ mìng-paâk mō-ch'aán kaai-k'ap kè yau-tîm, ĭ-kâp tsz-poón kaai-k'ap kè luèt-tîm.

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. This small country will collaborate with the Kremlin.
2. He believes that "one who takes advantage of the current situation is a smart man".
3. He will act in accordance with the established procedure.
4. Is there a capitalistic class under a socialistic form of government?
5. Karl Marx and Friedrick Engles are worshipped by Communists.
6. She claims to be a proletarian, but she has a beautiful car and fine clothing.
7. You can go now, but come back to see me tomorrow at the same time.
8. I don't have anything to confess, and I don't need a lawyer.
9. You are not obliged to confess, but whatever you say may be used against you.
10. Please give me both the names, the one given when you were born and when you were a student.
11. Do you know of any anti-US organizations that are sympathetic to the policies of the communist party?
12. I understand you have some books on socialism. What are they used for?
13. Why are you interested in the Iron Curtain countries?
14. Behind the Bamboo Curtain every student is required to read Mao Tse-Tung's "The New Democracy".

LESSON 6

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. The communist party has many subversive activities for the young people.

16. Living behind the Bamboo Curtain is unthinkable.

LESSON 6

WORD LIST

1.	ch'aú	to take (time out); to spare, save, pick, extract, lift, levy (tax)
2.	mŏ-shóh-waî	it doesn't matter; it's not important; shóh-waî, 'the so called; so to speak;' waî (lit) 'to say, call, speak'
3.	t'aán-paâk	to confess; to make a candid statement; to make a clean breast of it all
4.	nám-chún	to think correctly; to think carefully; to consider with full deliberation; nám to think, consider, syn: seúng
5.	hô	a style of name; a name by which he is generally known; AN kòh; number; a mark; day of month
6.	kûng-ch'aán tóng	communist party; communist; tóng, 'political party', AN kòh
7.	faán Meĭ t'uēn-t'aî	anti-US organization, AN kòh; faán, 'anti-; against;' Meĭ 'America', abbr: Meĭ-Kwòk
8.	Mă-Haak-Sz (Mă)	Karl Marx, abbr: Mă
9.	Ying-Kaàk-Sz (Ying)	Frederick Engels, abbr: Ying
10.	Lît-Nîng (Lît)	N. Lenin, abbr: Lît

LESSON 6

WORD LIST

11.	Sź-T'aaì-Lām (Sź)	J.V. Stalin, Abbr: Sź
12.	Mō Chaâk-Tung	Mao Tse-Tung, abbr: Mō
13.	shĕ-ooî chué-î	socialism; shĕ-ooî 'social; society'; chué-î '-ism; doctrine'
14.	San-Mān-Chué Chué-î	The New Democracy; chué-î (See Les 5:15)
15.	mō-ch'aán kaai-k'ap	proletariat; propertyless class; kaai-k'ap, 'class'
16.	tsz-poón kaai-k'ap	capitalistic class

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

363

腰 iu: loins; waist; kidney; isthmus

腰骨 iu-kwat: backbone

892

旁 p'ōng: at the side; near.

旁人 p'ōng-yān: bystander; looker-on.

旁邊 p'ōng-pin: at the side; the side.

127

磚 chuen: brick; tile (Cl.kòh)

青磚 ts'ing-chuen: burnt brick

泥磚 naī-chuen: mud brick.

腰 旁 磚

腰 旁 磚

腰 旁 甎 砖

1295

倉 ts'ong: granary; storehouse.

貨倉 fòh-ts'ong: a warehouse.

穀倉 kuk ts'ong: granary; barn.

407

斤 kan: a catty, equivalent to 1 1/3 pound; 16 ounces

一斤 yat kan: one catty

斤両 kan-leúng: the weight of a thing

倉 斤

倉 斤

仓 觔 斤

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

1296

蒼	ts'ong: azure; the sky.
蒼天	ts'ong-t'in: the blue sky.
蒼蠅	ts'ong-yīng: fly; (flies).

902

盤	p'oōn: a tray; vessel; to wind; to examine.
收盤	shau p'oōn: to wind up the business.
地盤	teî-p'oōn: territory; military position.

904

胖	poôn: fat.
胖子	poôn-tsź: fat fellow (Mandarin)

蒼 盤 胖

蒼 盤 胖

蒼 盤 胖

1277

醋	ts'ò: vinegar.
白醋	paâk ts'ò: white vinegar.
黑醋	hak ts'ò: black vinegar.

1283

栽	tsoi: to plant; to set out.
栽花	tsoi fa: to set out flowers.
栽培	tsoi-p'ooī: to cultivate; to assist; To rear.

醋 栽

醋 栽

醋 栽

LESSON 6

READING MATERIAL

禮拜四日，李大年唔使做工·佢依約一早就去馬明處

馬明先多謝大年來見佢，然後開始問話·不過馬明唔問關於Choh治方嘅事，先問大年自己嘅lei歷·

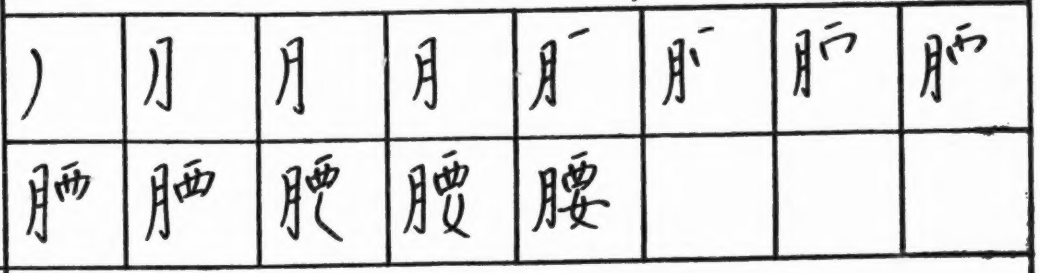
因為大年未到美國之前，曾經喺中共嘅地方住過，所以馬明要知道佢有冇洗過腦·

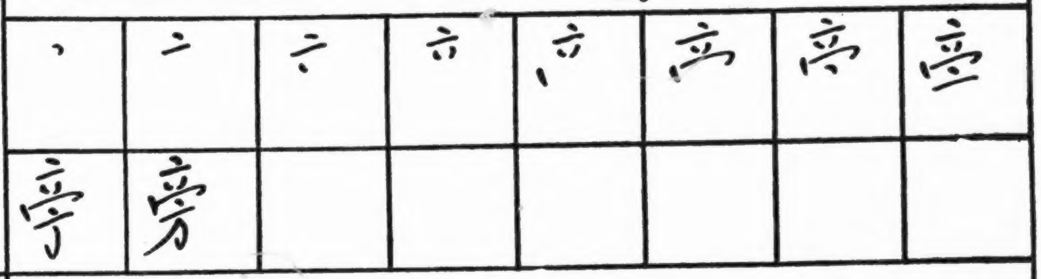
李大年承認佢喺中學最後一年，讀過毛Chaâk東嘅新民主主義，馬克斯主義，Yan格Sz嘅chuè作，列寧嘅學說，史太林嘅理論·佢話佢對於呢啲野唔發生興趣·亦唔明白無產階級嘅優點，以及資本階級嘅劣點·

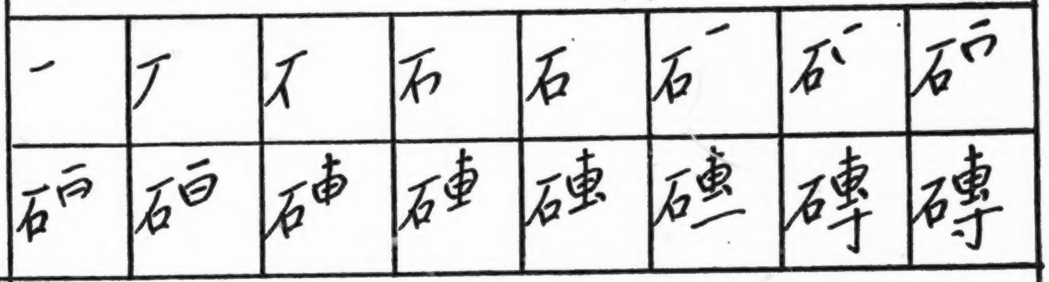
LESSON 6

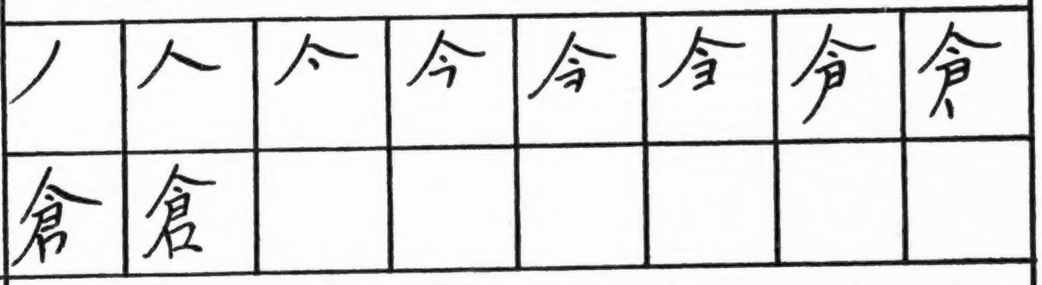
WRITING MATERIAL

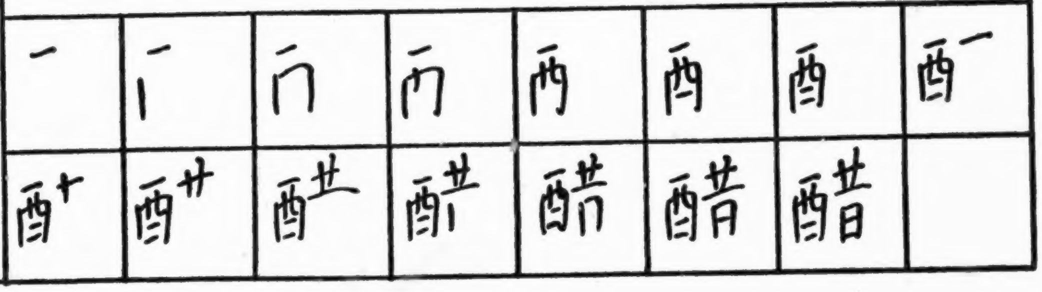
腰	Character Number 1277 Radical Number 130 Stroke Number 13 月，肉
旁	Character Number 1295 Radical Number 70 Stroke Number 10 方
磚	Character Number 127 Radical Number 112 Stroke Number 16 石
倉	Character Number 892 Radical Number 9 Stroke Number 10 人
醋	Character Number 363 Radical Number 164 Stroke Number 15 酉











LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mă: Leĭ Taaî-Nîn Sin-Shaang, neĭ chûng hóh-ĭ tuì ngŏh kóng se-shiú kwaan-ue neĭ haî Chung-Kûng koón-chî hâ ts'aam-ka kwòh kè oôt-tûng mà?

Leĭ: Ch'uī-chóh p'ó-t'ung kè t'ó-lûn ooî*, siú-tsó ooî-ĭ, kîm-t'ó ooî*, în-kóng ooî*, fàn-lîn paan, táng táng chi-ngoî, ngŏh-teî chûng yaŭ ts'aam-ka tsaâp-t'aî mān-uē oôt-tûng.

Mă: T'ó-lûn ooî* t'ó-lûn ti mi-yĕ à?

Leĭ: Yaŭ-shī t'ó-lûn Kûng-Chaán-Chué-Î, t'ūng k'eī-t'a Shĕ-Ooî-Chué-Î kè leĭ-lûn. Yaŭ-shī t'ó-lûn tsz-ch'aán kaai-k'ap t'ūng mō-ch'aán kaai-k'ap kè taù-chaang.

Mă: Siú-tsó ooî-ĭ ne?

Leĭ: Siú-tsó ooî-ĭ toh-shò t'ó-lûn shī-kûk.

Mă: Kîm-t'ó ooî* ne?

Leĭ: Kîm-t'ó ooî* toh-shò iù kòk yān tsẑ-ngŏh p'ai-p'īng t'ūng t'aán-paâk.

Mă: Ín-kóng ooî* haî tîm-yeûng* kè à?

Leĭ: Ín-kóng ooî* toh-shò yaū Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng kòn-pô tóng-uēn chué-ch'ī, piú-yeūng Kûng-Ch'aán Tóng kè chan-leĭ.

Mă: Fàn-lîn paan haî tîm kè à?

Leĭ: Fàn-lîn paan haî fàn-lîn ngoî-waī t'uēn-t'aî kè kòn-pô.

Mă: Tsaâp-t'aî mān-uē oôt-tûng yaû tîm à?

Leĭ: Tsaâp-t'aî mān-uē oôt-tûng yaŭ ch'eùng koh, mān-tsûk koh-k'uk, t'iù-mŏ, mān-tsûk mŏ, t'ūng Yeung-Koh Mŏ, īn-kaù P'ó-Lōh-Mān-Hôk, táng táng.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. These front organizations are controlled by the communist party.
2. “Rice Seedling Dance”, is a very popular folk dance in Red China.
3. I like to see the person in charge of printing this Prolitarian Literature.
4. The truth may not be the same in a totalitarian country.
5. At the section meeting last night, the cadre in charge attacked the Bourgeoisie and the Facists.
6. This is the evidence that proves I have attended the training class and passed the examination.
7. A movement is being planned to strengthen the power of the party.
8. She has the record of your “self-criticism”, and she will present them to the organization at the end of this month.
9. The struggle of the classes will be the topic of tonight's talk.
10. You better change your view points at the critique meeting, otherwise it will reflect on your good record.
11. Feudalistic view points are being fought in all section discussions behind the Bamboo Curtain.
12. There are proofs that mass liquidation is a common practice in communist countries.

LESSON 7

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

13. It is wrong to think that totalitarianism is beneficial to undeveloped countries.

14. These front organizations do not have “critiques” but they have many small group meetings.

15. You have to give a speech in the auditorium tonight.

16. I lost control of the car for just a moment, but there was no accident.

LESSON 7

WORD LIST

1.	siú-tsó ooî-ĭ	small group meeting; section meeting; section discussion AN kòh
2.	kîm-t'ó ooî*	critique, AN kòh kîm-t'ó 'to examine into, censor
3.	kòn-pô în-kóng ooî*	cadre's talk; seminar; în-kóng 'to give a speech or talk'
4.	fàn-lîn paan	training class, AN kòh
5.	tsaâp-t'aî	mass, masses; collective; bodies of people; ant: kòh-yān'individual'
6.	taù-chaang	to struggle; fight
7.	tsẑ-ngŏh p'ai-p'îng	self-criticism; p'ai-p'îng, 'criticism'
8.	chué-ch'î	in charge; to administer, support
9.	chan-leĭ	the truth; chan 'real; genuine'; leĭ 'reason; reasoning; the truth; AN kòh
10.	ngoî-waî t'uēn-t'aî	front organization; a.f., moōn-mîn t'uēn-t'aî
11.	mān-tsûk	nationalistic; race; folk, AN chúng
12.	P'ó-Lōh-Mān-Hôk	Proletarian Literature; P'ó-Lōh, syn: mō-ch'aán kaai-k'ap (See Les 6:8)
13.	Yeung-Koh-Mŏ	Rice Seedling Dance (a popular Chinese folk dance in Communist China)

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

1251

賤	tsîn: low; mean; ignoble.
賤相	tsîn seùng: low type of countenance; ignoble appearance
貧賤	p·ān-tsîn: poor and mean.

576

階	kaai: step; a rank stairs, a class
階級	kaai-k'ap: step; an official grade class

418

級	k'ap: steps(stairs etc.); grades of rank.
階級	kaai-k'ap: rank
初級	ch'oh k'ap: elementary.
石級	shêk-k'ap: stone steps.

賤 階 級

賤 階 級

贱 階 级

1085

貪	t'aam: covetous; greedy.
貪心	t'aam-sam: covetous
貪錢	t'aar ts'în: avaricious.
貪利	t'aam leî: greedy for gain.

1428

混	wân: confused; mixed; disorderly; to confound; to mix.
混亂	wân-luên: in disorder; in confusion.
混合	wân-hôp: mixture.

貪 混

貪 混

贪 混

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

1064

率 sut, lut:to lead; to command; in general; all.

率領 sut-lǐng: to lead.

率直 sut-chîk: without mincing matters.

統率 túng-sut: to lead.

速率 ts'uk-lût: rate of speed; velocity

889

婆 p'ōh: old woman; mother; dame.

老婆 lǒ-p'ōh: wife.

公婆 kung p'ōh: husband and wife.

1387

元 uēn: first; original; dollar.

紀元前 keí-uēn ts'īn: before Christ; B.C.

元首 uēn-shaú: the head; leader; ruler.

元帥 uēn-shuì: commander-in-chief; generalissimo.

一元 yat uēn: one dollar

率 婆 元

率 婆 元

率 婆 元

24

吵 ch'aaú: clamor, uproar

吵鬧 ch'aaú-naaû: to brawl

吵耳 ch'aaú-ĭ: annoying, noise

1381

冤 uen: to oppress; to wrong; act of injustice.

冤枉 uen-wóng: a wrong; injustice.

冤仇 uen ch'aū: a grudge

吵 冤

吵 冤

吵 冤 冤

LESSON 7

READING MATERIAL

李大年講完中共對於思想改造嘅方法之後，繼續講及中共管治之下所參加嘅各種活動

根據佢所講，佢地要參加各種集會；好似討論會，撿討會，演講會等等．又做各種文娛活動

討論會係討論共產主義同其他社會主義嘅理論，政 ch'aàk．

撿討會係各人批評自己，互相 taû 正思想行為嘅錯誤．

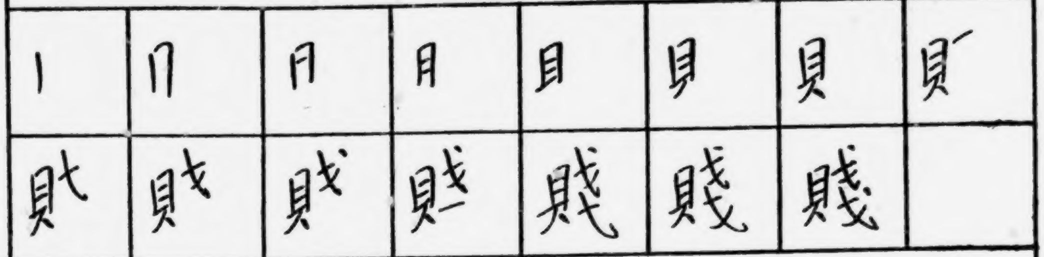
演講會多數表揚共產主義，指出資產階級同無產階級嘅 mōh 擦等等．

LESSON 7

WRITING MATERIAL

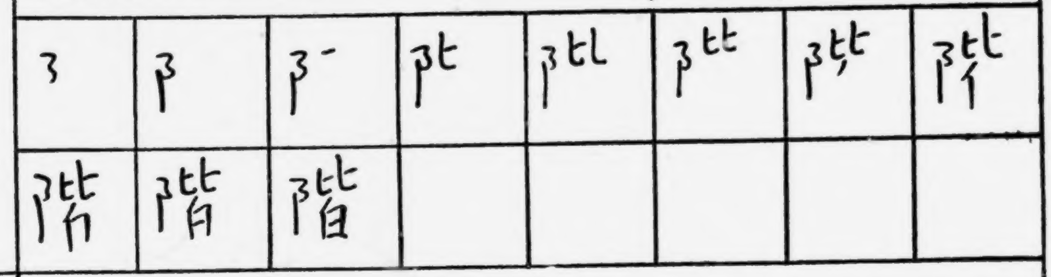
賤

Character Number 1251 Radical Number 154
Stroke Number 15 貝



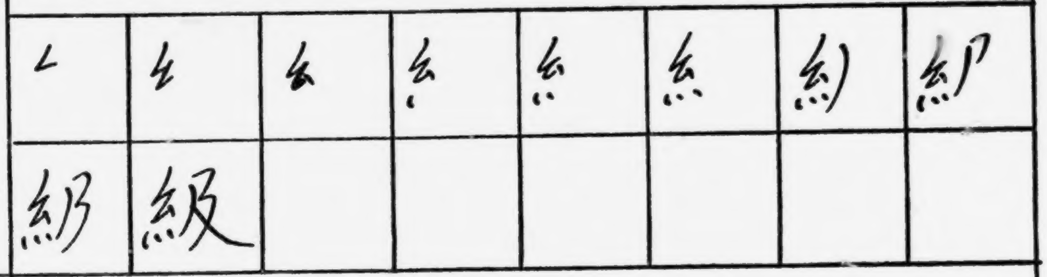
階

Character Number 376 Radical Number 170
Stroke Number 11 阝，阜



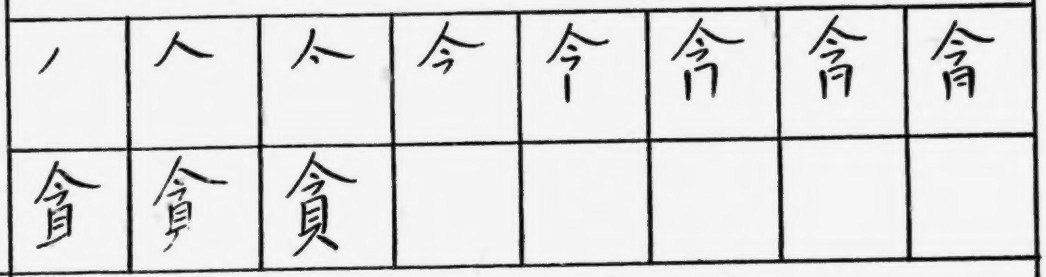
級

Character Number 418 Radical Number 120
Stroke Number 10 糸，糸



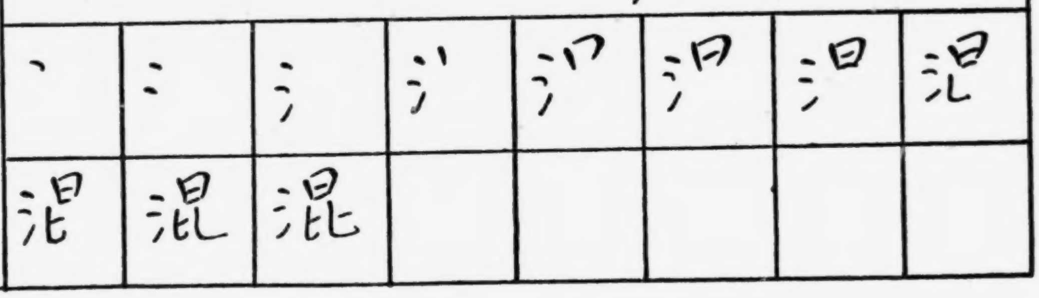
貪

Character Number 1085 Radical Number 154
Stroke Number 11 貝



混

Character Number 1428 Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 11 氵，水



LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mă: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, neĭ haí Chung-Kûng Chuk-Līm chi-noi chuê chóh shēng nīn; neĭ kòk-tak Chung-Kûng tīm à?

Leĭ: Ngŏh ĭ-waì Chung-Kûng haî ts'an So faán Meĭ.

Mă: Chung-Kûng Yān-Mān-Chìng-Foó ts'oì-ts'uì mi-yĕ chìng-ch'aàk à?

Leĭ: Chung-Kûng Yān-Mān-Chìng-Foó piú-mîn sheûng ts'oì-ts'uì foon-taaî chìng-ch'aàk, shât-tsaì sheûng haî fei-sheûng chi tûk-laât.

Mă: Neĭ kóm kóng, haî mat ì-sz à?

Leĭ: Ngŏh kòk-tak haî Chung-Kûng Chuk-Līm chi-noî, mooĭ kòh yān to shaû Kûng-Ch'aán-Tóng kè kaam-shì. Uē-kwóh k'uĭ-teî ĭ-waì neĭ haî faán-tûng fân-tsź, neĭ kè mēng* tsaû haî haak mīng-taan, kàng-ka m̄-tsẑ-yaū lòh.

Mă: Chung-Kûng noî-pô kè kuî-t'aū, yaŭ-mŏ fan p'aaì-haî ne?

Leĭ: Yaŭ, hó-ts'z̆ Mō Chaâk-Tung haî mān-tsûk p'aaì, Laū Shiù-K'eì haî kwòk-tsaì p'aaì, Chau Yan-Loì, Chue Tak haî tsaú chung-kaan lô-sìn. Pat-kwòh, k'uĭ-teî uēn-ts'uēn haî faán Meĭ, chí Meĭ-Kwòk haî Taì-Kwòk Chué-î ché, chìn-chang faăn-tsź.

Mă: Tuì-ue hoì-ngoî, k'uĭ-teî tim-yeûng ne?

Leĭ: Haî hoì-ngoî, k'uĭ-teî yaŭ taî-ngĕ tsùng-tuî*, saàn-pò kòk teî.

Mă: Haî hoì-ngoî kè taî-ngĕ tsùng-tuî*, tsô ti mi-yĕ kung-tsòk à?

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Leĭ: K'uĭ-teî ch'uī-chóh tsô suen-ch'uēn t'ūng p'òh-waaî kè kung-tsòk chi-ngoî, yaû tsô kaàn-tîp kung-tsòk, t'au-ts'uí kwan-sẑ, king-tsaì, t'ūng chìng-chî kè ts'ìng-pò, yûng òm-hô, mât-mă, waâk-ché peì-mât mō-sìn-tīn heùng Chung-Kûng waâk So-Ngŏh pò-kò.

Mă: Neĭ tîm-yeûng* chi-tò Chung-Kûng ni ti oôt-tûng à?

Leĭ: Yan-waî ngŏh haì Heung-Kóng kè shī-haû, yaŭ yat kòh Kûng-Ch'aán-Tóng kòn-pô, chi-tò ngŏh iù laì Meĭ-Kwòk, seúng kiú ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ-teî tsô teî-hâ ts'ìng-pò kung-tsòk yān-uēn, shóh-ĭ k'uĭ kóng ni ti yĕ peì ngŏh chi.

LESSON 8

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. He is a "running dog" for the imperialists.
2. Our intelligence comes in code through a secret radio station.
3. With a secret sign, the reactionary elements know their own people.
4. This black list includes names of reactionary elements.
5. As a matter of fact your plan is most useful to sabbotage their intelligence network.
6. She is very cruel and will destroy you without any hesitation.
7. The Peoples' Government has a department in charge of espionage activities.
8. There will be a meeting of leaders of the nationalistic and that of the internationalistic factions.
9. He is not pro-USSR nor is he anti-USA.
10. Besides Mao Tse-Tung, the influential people of the Chinese Peoples' Republic are Chou En-Lai, Liu Shau-Chi and Chu-Te.
11. Wall Street is the center of world finance.
12. The war mongers refuse to adopt a liberal policy.
13. They send their fifth columnist everywhere to obtain information.
14. We put her under surveillance since she came to this country last year.
15. If you are not a friend of the reactionary element, how do you know their code and secret signs.
16. You are doomed if your name is on the black list.

LESSON 8

WORD LIST

1.	ts'an So	pro-USSR; ts'an, 'dear, intimate'
2.	faàn Meĭ	anti-US, anti: faàn (See Les 8:1)
3.	mān-tsûk p'aaì	nationalist faction; nationalist
4.	Laū Shiù-K'eì	Liu Shau-Chi (ranked No.2 man in the Chinese-Communist Party)
5.	kwòk-tsaì p'aaì	internationalist faction
6.	Chau Yan-Loì	Chou En-Lai (ranked No. 3 man in the Chinese Communist Party)
7.	Chue Tak	Chu-Te (ranked No. 4 man in the Chinese-Communist Party)
8.	chung-kaan lô-sìn	middle of the road, AN t'iū
9.	kuî-t'aū	giant; leader of men; influential person; chief or head of government, of any human endeavor
10.	chìn-chaang faăn-tsź	war-mongers, AN kòh
11.	Yān-Mān Chìng-Foó	The People's Government (refers to the Chinese-Communist Government)
12.	foon-taaî chìng-ch'aàk	Liberal policy; chìng-ch'aàk 'policy'
13.	taî-nğ tsùng-tuî*	The Fifth Column; tsùng-tuî* 'column'
14.	kaàn-tîp	spy; espionage
15.	p'òh-waaî	to destroy, sabotage
16.	shât-tsaì sheûng	in reality; really; in fact; as matter of fact

LESSON 8

WORD LIST

17.	tûk-laât	cruel; harsh; severe
18.	kaam-shì	under surveillance; keeping a close watch
19.	haak mìng-taan	black list, AN cheung
20.	faán-tûng fân-tsź	reactionary element; fân-tsź (See Les 2:24)
21.	ỏm-hô	secret sign; AN kỏh
22.	mât-mă	code, AN kỏh
23.	mŏ-sìn-tîn	radio (literally: wireless electric machine) AN kỏȟ
24.	teî-hâ	underground

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

625

爐 lō: stove; fireplace; furnace; grate.

火爐 f6h-lô: a stove.

風爐 fung-lô: small earthern stove.

香爐 heung-lô: incense burner.

1354

毒 tûk:poison; virus; to hate.

毒藥 tûk yeûk: poison.

中毒 chùng tûk: to take poison by accident; poisoned.

服毒 fûk tûk: to take poison.

毒打 tûk tá: a cruel beating.

1274

粗 ts'o: coarse; rough; rude; careless.

粗口 ts'o-haú: obscene language.

粗俗 ts'o-tsûk: vulgar; uncouth.

爐 炉 毒 粗

爐 毒 粗

炉 毒 粗

1179

屠 t'ō: a butcher; to slaugnter.

屠塲 t'ō-ch'eūng: slaughter house; abatoir.

屠殺 t'ō-shaàt: slaughter; to slaughter.

1174

逃 t'ō:to flee; to escape; to abscond.

逃走 t'ō-tsaú: to flee.

逃犯 t'ō faân: escaped criminal.

逃兵 t'ō ping: deserter.

屠 逃

屠 逃

屠 逃

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

950

什 shâp: sundry miscellaneous.

什物 shâp-mât: sundries, miscellaneous articles.

800

吧 pa: angry quarreling.

吧閉 pa-paì: clamor.

709

剝 mok: to flay; to peel; to lay bare.

剝皮 mok p'eĭ: to skin; to reel; to fleece.

剝削 mok-seùk: to oppress; to squeeze the people.

剝

什 吧

什 吧 剝

什 吧 剝 剝

923

削 seùk: to cut; to cut off; to scrape

刮削 kwaat-seùk: to scrape.

削平 seùk p'ēng: to raze to the ground.

611

臉 lĭm: face; reputation.

削 臉

削 臉

削 脸

LESSON 8

READING MATERIAL

馬明聽李大年講完中共嘅政策之後，佢問大年嘅意見．大年話，中共係親蘇，反美．時常向世界宣傳，攻擊美國好戰．表面上採取寬大政策；實際上，極力破壞和平．不過中共內部嘅 kuî 頭亦分開派系．好似毛澤東屬民族派，劉少奇屬國際派，周恩來，朱德係走中間路線．

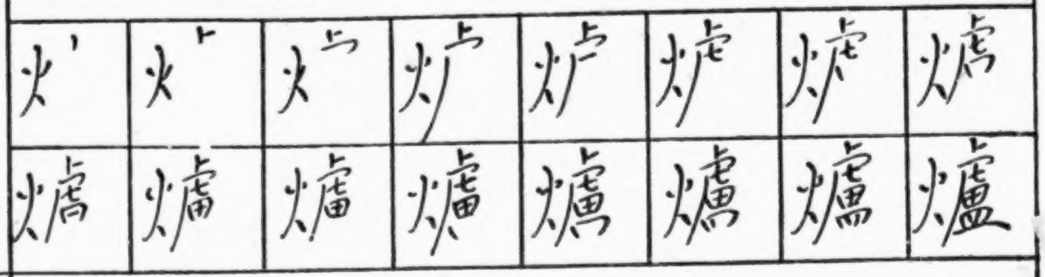
一般黎講，共產主義嘅管治，手段係非常之毒辣．特務遍佈全國．大陸上每個人都受共黨嚴密監視壓逼，冇自由．如果行動言論唔小心，就被指為腐化，被清算，屠殺．

LESSON 8

WRITING MATERIAL

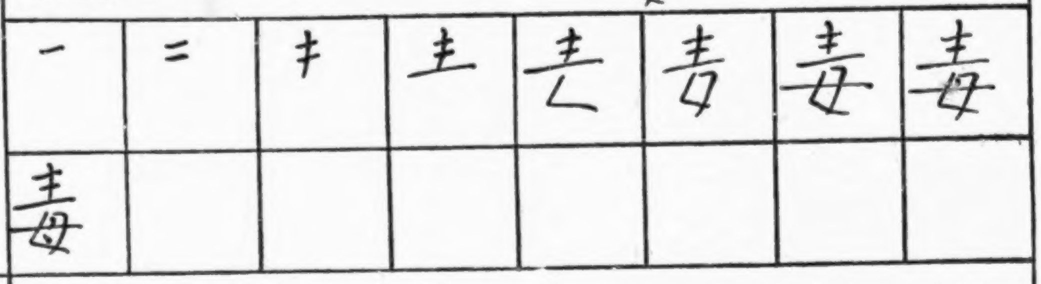
爐

Character Number 625 Radical Number 86
Stroke Number 20



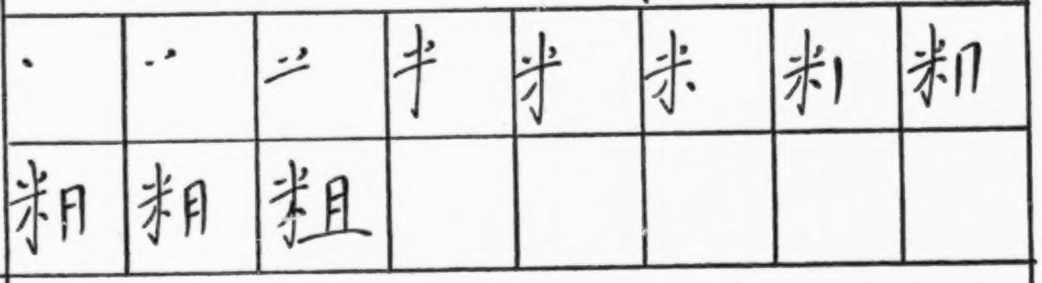
毒

Character Number 1354 Radical Number 80
Stroke Number 9
毋



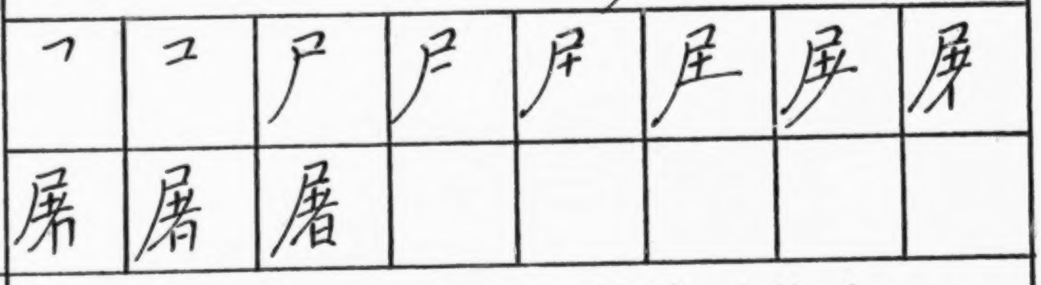
粗

Character Number 1274 Radical Number 119
Stroke Number 11
米



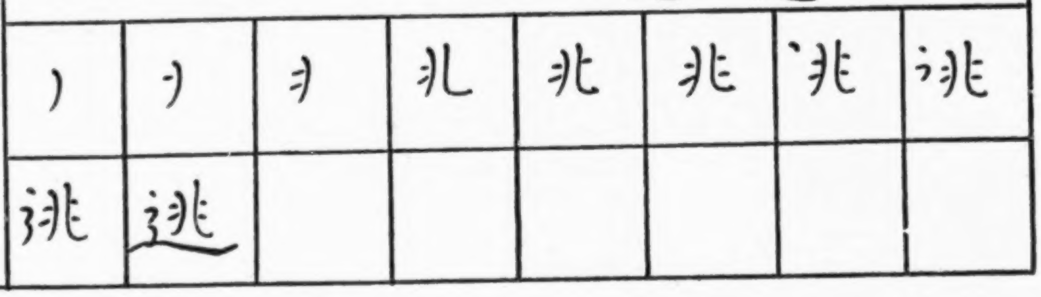
屠

Character Number 1179 Radical Number 44
Stroke Number 11
尸



逃

Character Number 1174 Radical Number 162
Stroke Number 10
辶，辵



LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mă: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, neĭ ĭ-waì Chung-Kûng haî m̄-haî So-Ngōh kè waî-sing kwòk-ka à?

Leĭ: Wâ k'uĭ haî yîk tak, wâ k'uĭ m̄-haî yîk tak. Ngŏh ĭ-waì tsuì ngaam tsaû haî wâ Chung-Kûng haî kei-ooî-chué-î-ché.

Mă: Chung-Kûng kè chuk-lìm chi-noî yaŭ-mŏ poôn-luên à?

Leĭ: P'ó-t'ung-laì-kóng, poôn-luên kè sẑ-kîn shì-sheūng yaŭ. Pat-kwòh, Chung-Kûng hùng-chaì tak shâp-î-fan ìm-mât, shóh-ĭ taaî kw'ai-mō kè poôn-luến m̄ yūng-î.

Mă: Kóm, haî chuk-lìm chi-noî, haî m̄-haî mŏ faán-Kûng kè oôt-tûng ne?

Leĭ: Kóm yaû m̄-haî,chuk-lìm chi-noî yaŭ hó toh yaū-kik tuî*; yaŭ hó toh Kwòk-Mān Chìng-Foó kè tâk-mô t'ūng t'ung-sùn yān-uēn. Yaŭ kei-ooî tsaû tsûn-lîk tá-kik Kûng-Tóng kè kîn-ch'ìt t'ūng suen-ch'uēn.

Mă: Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ ts'aam-ka-kwòh ni-ti faán-kûng kè oôt-tûng t'ūng tsó-chik à?

Leĭ: Mŏ, ngŏh mŏ kei-ooî ts'aam-ka ni-ti faán-Kûng tsó-chik waâk oôt-tûng.

Mă: Tuì Chung-Kûng kè kím-t'ó ooî*, neĭ yaŭ mat king-îm à?

Leĭ: Mŏ mat king-îm. Yan-waî ngŏh hó shiú ch'ut sheng, chóh-ĭ kòn-pô to wâ ngŏh haî kòh-yān-chué-î-ché. K'eūng-pik ngŏh hôk-tsaâp taaî-chùng-fà, ts'aam-ka Kûng-Tóng kè moōn-mîn (ts'ìn-sìn) t'uēn-t'aí.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I am not fighting for myself. I am fighting for our nation.
2. It is a pity that you do not have time to help me clean up the mess of our organization.
3. People are more aware of the situation in the Orient.
4. If you do not understand the regulations of our organization, I will explain them to you.
5. It was a great blow to the enemy when we attacked.
6. I do not speak just for myself. I do it for all of us.
7. He didn't believe I was a correspondent of the Hong Kong Daily. He thought I was a special agent of the Red Chinese Government.
8. Please do not exert any more pressure, because it may break into two if you do.
9. Political commissars managed the factories.
10. Many of our countrymen sacrificed their lives during World War II.
11. With straight control at various strata, no revolt is possible.
12. An opportunist would not act contrary to the communist theories; he would definitely follow the "Big Brother".
13. I strongly oppose to the lean-to-one-side policy.
14. Nearly all satellite nations have to do what the "Big Brother" orders.
15. No one will be able to infiltrate into our organization with our meticulous investigation.

LESSON 9

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

16. It is required that all political workers register with the state and city government.

LESSON 9

WORD LIST

1.	waî-sing kwỏk-ká	satellite nation; waî-sing 'satellite'; kwỏk-ka, abbr: kwỏk
2.	kei-ooî chuế-î chế	opportunist; chế (used to form noun or pronoun. A particle imparting adjectival or adverbial shades of meaning to words to which it is joined) i.e., hôk-chế 'scholar'; san-mān keì-chế 'newspaper correspondent'
3.	poôn-luên	revolt; rebellion; to revolt, rebel; rebellious
4.	hùng-chaì	to control, contain; control; containment
5.	ìm-mât	strict; tight; meticulous; syn: ìm
6.	ts'ing-suèn	to liquidate; to clean out; to get rid of; to purge; purge;
7.	tâk-mô	special agent; secret agent, AN kỏh
8.	t'ung sủn yān-uēn	messenger; correspondent; yān-uēn 'personnel'
9.	tả-kik	to strike; to deal a blow; a blow; a hard stroke
10.	ch'ut-sheng	to speak; to speak up; to say, utter, syn: kóng; i.e., k'uĭ m̄-ch'ut-sheng 'he did not speak up'

LESSON 9

WORD LIST

11.	kòh-yān	an individual; a person
12.	t'aaì-tô	attitude
13.	k'eūng-ngaâng	strong, stiff, firm
14.	kon-shîp	to interfere, to have a hand in
15.	t'ō-shaàt	slaughter; to slaughter

LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

995

承 shīng: to bear; to hold; to receive; to undertake; to acknowledge; to promise.

承繼 shīng-kaì: to adopt an heir to continue.

承認 shīng-yîng: to acknowledge; to confess; to grant recognition.

707

摸 móh: to feel with the hands; to catch.

摸魚 móh uē:* to catch fish with hands.

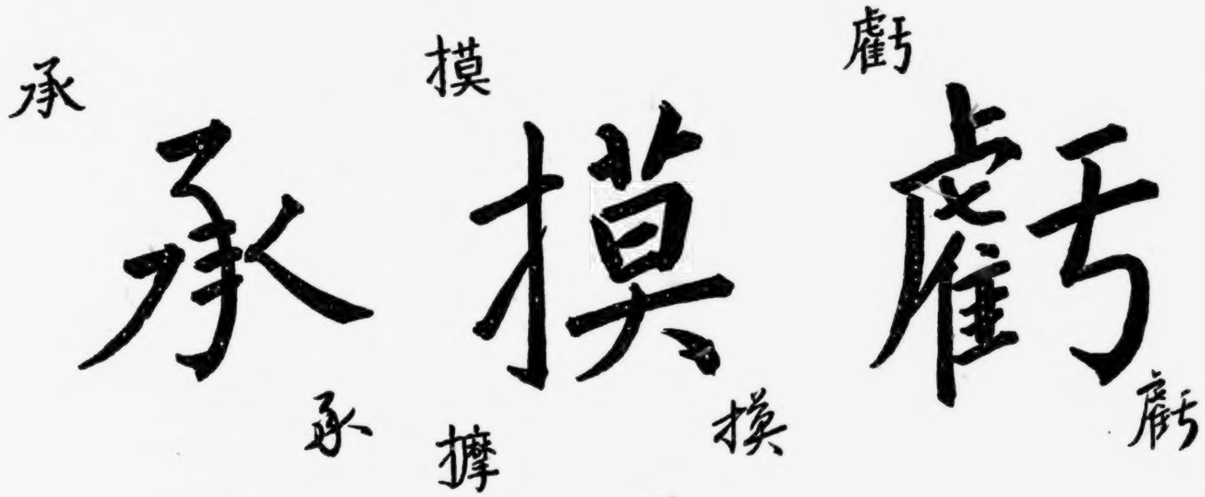
556

虧 kw'ai: deficiency; loss.

虧欠 kw'ai hìm: in debt; arrears.

虧空 kw'ai-hung: to embezzle; deficit.

虧本 kw'ai poón: to lose in capital invested.



76

置 chì: to buy; to arrange: to put aside.

安置 on-chì: to arrange to place.

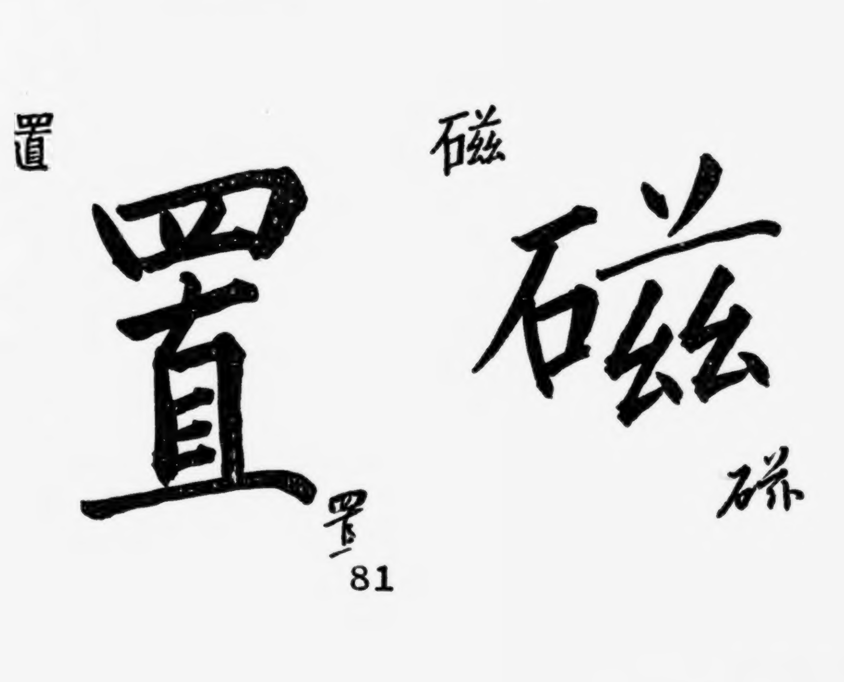
置業 chì îp: to buy property

位置 waî-chì: position; situation.

1338

磁 ts'z̄: magnetic; iron ore.

磁石 ts'z̄-shêk: lodestone.



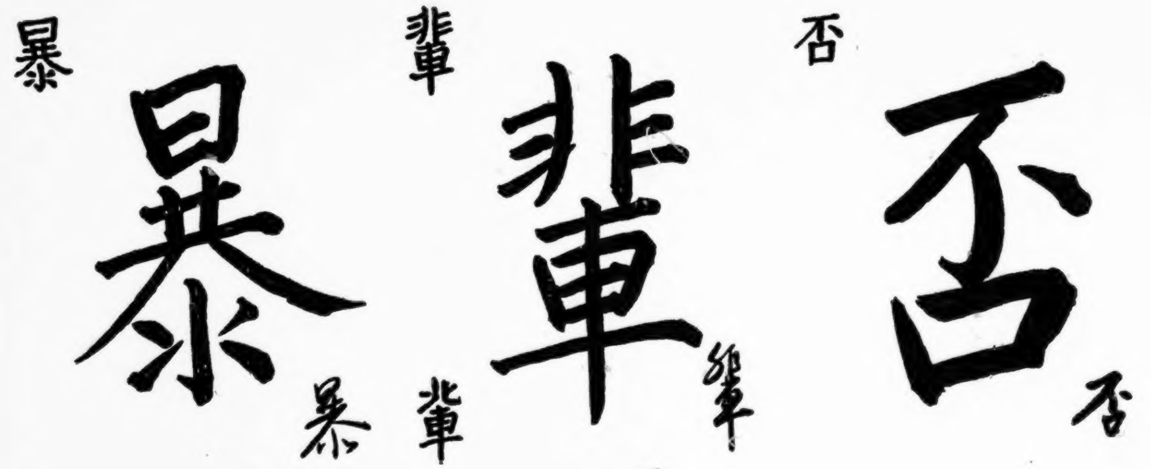
LESSON 9

READING MATERIAL

880	
暴	pô: violent; cruel; malicious.
暴動	pò-tûng: riot; disturbance.
暴露	pò-lô: exposed; uncovered.

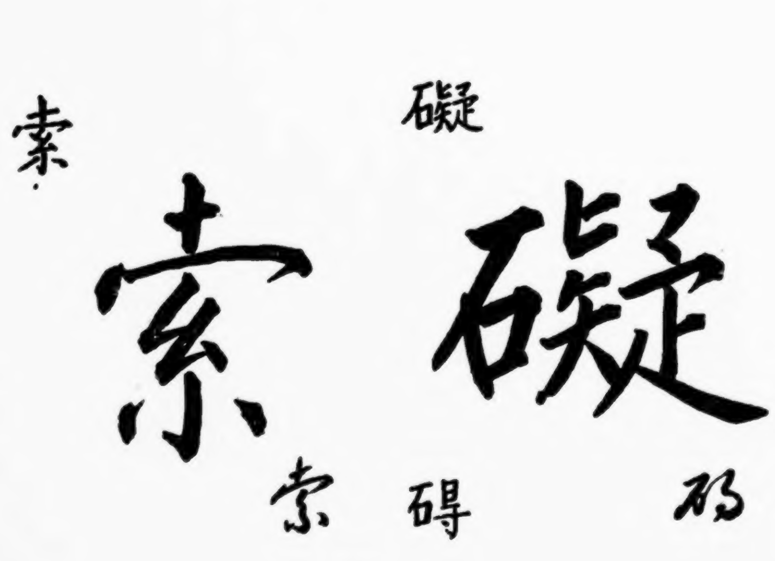
894	
輩	pooì: a class; sort; generation
尊輩	tsuen-pooì: your senior.
同輩	t'ūng-pooì: comrade; the same generation.

183	
否	faú: negative; no
是否	shî faú: is it so or not; yes or no
否認	faú-yîng: deny



1044	
索	sòk: to exact; to search; a cord; knot.
索詐	sòk-chà: to extort; to blackmail.
繩索	shīng sòk: rope; cord.

760	
礙	ngoî: to hinder: to oppose; to obstruct; to interfere.
妨礙	fōng-ngoî: impediment; hindrance.
障礙	cheùng-ngoî: obstruction; hindrance.



LESSON 9

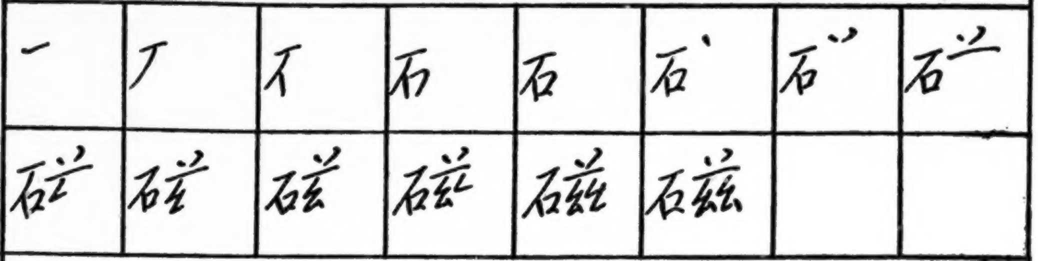
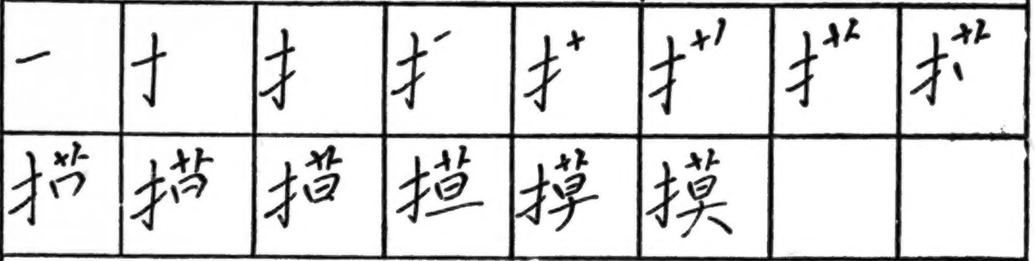
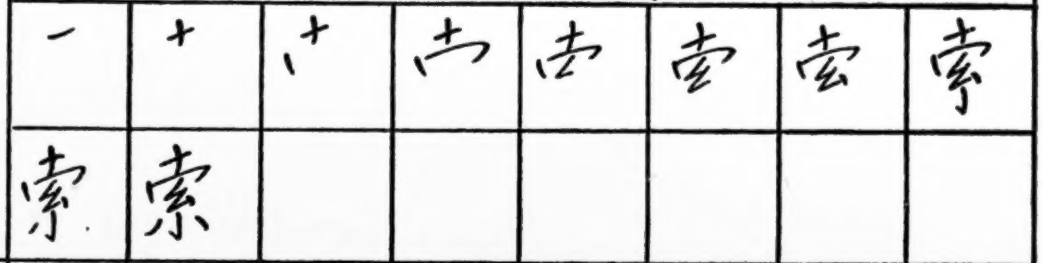
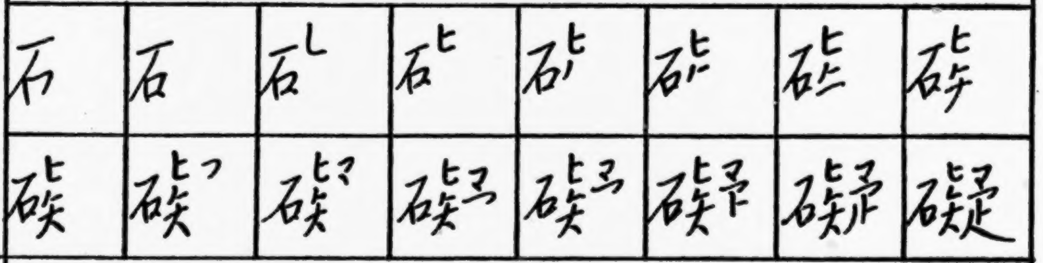
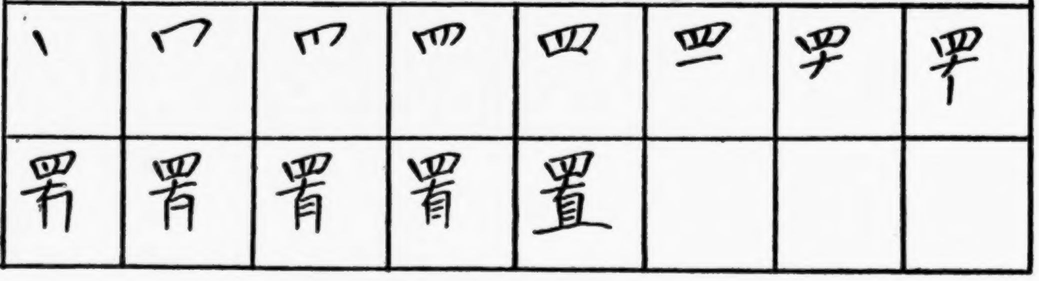
READING MATERIAL

根據李大年嘅意見，中共雖然係蘇俄衛星國家，不過佢另外採取一種態度，主張對西方强硬．有時佢地嘅行動，唔受蘇俄干涉．所以中共係屬於一個機會主義者．

中共內部人民，因為時常受屠殺，大陸有不少poôn 亂事件發生．不過規模不大．因為中共 hùng 制嚴密，想大規模起事唔係容易．國民政府有好多特務同通訊人員，分佈大陸各處．saū 集情報，有時亦做破壞工作．

LESSON 9

WRITING MATERIAL

磁	Character Number 1338 Radical Number 112 Stroke Number 14 石 
摸	Character Number 707 Radical Number 64 Stroke Number 14 扌, 手 
索	Character Number 1044 Radical Number 120 Stroke Number 10 糸 
礙	Character Number 760 Radical Number 112 Stroke Number 19 石 
置	Character Number 76 Radical Number 122 Stroke Number 13 罒, 网 

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Kwaan: Lŏ-Mă, ngŏh ĭ-waì neĭ ì-ka t'ūng Leĭ Taaî-Nìn mân wâ*!

Mă: Mŏ-ts'òh, pat-kwòh ngŏh ch'ut-laì shîk haú in, yám pooi kà-fe che.

K: Neĭ ts'ing-ch'óh Leĭ Taaî-Nìn poón-yān kè kan-taì meî à?

M: Ngŏh kòk-tak k'uĭ sui-ìn tsìp-shaû kwòh Mă, Lît kè hôk-shuèt, t'ūng Mō Chaâk-Tung kè San-Mān-Chué Chué-î, taân-haî k'uĭ m̄-haî yat kòh Kûng-Ch'aán chué-î sùn-t'ō.

K: K'uĭ yaŭ mŏ t'aán-paâk kóng k'uĭ haì Chung-Kûng hūng-k'eì chi-hâ kè oôt-tûng à?

M: K'uĭ seung-tong t'aán-paâk, ì-ch'é ka sheŭng yat ti hôp leĭ kè kaaì-shik.

K: K'uĭ tuì Chung-Kûng yaŭ mat p'ai-p'ìng mà?

M: K'uĭ tui Chung-Kûng kè chìng-ch'aàk t'ūng shaú-tuên to yaŭ p'ai-p'ìng. K'uĭ kè fan-sik keì chún-k'òk. Ngaăn-kwong keì kaù, p'ai-p'ìng tak keì t'aù-ch'ìt.

K: K'uĭ tuì Chung-Kwòk taaî-lûk kè ts'ìng-yĭng yaŭ faàt-piú ì-kìn mà?

M: K'uĭ wâ taaî-lûk kè yān-mān hó kaan-foó. K'uĭ yaû chì-ch'ut tsoî kîk-kuēn chué-î-ché kè t'ìt-t'aì chi hâ, yān-mān mŏ tsẑ-yaū. K'uĭ-teî kè sz-seúng to shaû haân-chaì.

K: Tuì-ue faán kûng kè oôt-tûng, k'uĭ chi-tò se-shiú mà?

M: K'uĭ chî-haî chi-tò shiù-shiù, yan-waî k'uĭ wâ mŏ kei-ooî ts'aam-ka shóh-yaŭ kè oôt-tûng.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

K: Tuì-ue k'uǐ haì Meǐ-Kwòk kè ts'an-shûk, p'aāng-yaǔ táng-táng. Neǐ heùng k'uǐ mân mīng-paâk meî à?

M: Ngŏh chûng meî t'aī-k'âp ni yat-yeûng, táng yat-chân* ngŏh ooǐ kiù k'uǐ hoi yat cheung mīng-taan peì ngŏh.

K: Kan-kuì neǐ kè koon-ch'aàt, k'uǐ hóh m̄-hóh-ǐ tsô yat kòh chìng-foò chìng-yān ne?

M: Ni kòh mân-t'aī, ngŏh chûng iù ch'ìt-taì t'iū-ch'ā-kwòh chì hóh-ǐ k'uèt-tîng.

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. If you say he is not prejudiced, you must be blind.
2. They will restrict your activities until they have thoroughly investigated your loyalty.
3. If my observation is correct, he is working under the Red Flag.
4. When we talk about the Facists, we have to mention totalitarianism.
5. Please do not give any contrary opinion in your speech.
6. Under the iron hand of the communist regime, the people experienced extreme hardship.
7. I don't know how to describe her. All I can say is that she is beautiful.
8. As a matter of fact, I think your investigation is not thorough enough, and I hope you will do better next time.
9. If you want to analyze the world situation, you have to know a great deal about it first.
10. The price is quite reasonable, and I will give you a 10% discount if you take two.
11. I am a follower of capitalism, and I don't mind to be rich.
12. You are quite right about the matter, and your foresight is excellent.
13. I will announce my plan tomorrow night at the meeting. Are you interested?

LESSON 10

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. This may be a reasonable explanation, but will you believe it?

15. I am a faithful believer, but I am not superstitious.

16. Our investigation is quite thorough, and I suggest you had better cooperate with us.

LESSON 10

WORD LIST

1.	poón-yān	this person; I myself; oneself; poón 'origin; source; native; I, this, we'; AN for book, documents etc.
2.	tsìp-shaû	to receive, accept
3.	sùn-t'ō	believer; follower; disciple, AN kòh
4.	hūng-k'eī chi-hâ	under the red flag (communism); k'eī 'flag'
5.	seung-tong	fairly; quite; proper; corresponding to, i.e., k'uǐ seung-tong hó, 'he is quite good'
6.	kaaî-shik	explanation; to explain; interpretation; to interpret
7.	ngaǎn-kwong	opinion; foresight; good judgment
8.	fan-sik	to analyze, decompose; analytical; analysis
9.	t'aù-ch'ìt	thorough; thoroughly; thoroughness; to understand thoroughly
10.	faàt-piú	to give forth (opinion); to express, announce
11.	kîk-k'uēn chué-î	totalitarianism
12.	t'ìt-t'aī	under the hoof; iron hand; t'aī 'hoof'

LESSON 10

WORD LIST

13.	t'aī-k'âp	to mention, say, syn: kóng-k'âp
14.	koon-ch'aàt	observation; to observe, look, study
15.	ch'ìt-taî	thoroughly; thoroughness, syn: t'aù-ch'ìt (See Les 10:9)
16.	chung-shât	loyal; honest; faithful; true-hearted; integrity; honesty
17.	haân-chaî	to limit, restrict; restriction; limitation, i.e., k'uĭ kè haāng-tûng shaû haân-chaî,'his action is restricted' (See hùng-chaî, Les 7:24)
18.	maāng-mûk	blind; blindly; blindness; maāng 'blind'; mûk 'eye'
19.	p'in-sam	bias, partial; prejudiced; unfair; prepossessed; i.e., k'uĭ p'in-sam 'he is prejudiced'; m̄-hó p'in sam 'don't be prejudiced'; p'in ' 'leaning toward one side'

LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

379

戒 kaaì: to warn; caution; to abstain

戒酒 kaaì tsaú: abstain from spirit or wine

戒煙 kaaì in: give up smoking

戒嚴 kaaì-īm: curfew

戒指 kaaì-chí: ring (finger)

228

伏 fûk: to prostrate: to overcome

埋伏 maaī-fûk: to ambush

伏兵 fûk-ping: an ambush

806

擺 paaí: to display; to arrange; to vibrate.

擺開 paaí hoi: to spread out; to display.

擺布 paaí-pò: to direct; to show.

戒 伏 擺

戒 伏 擺

戒 伏 摆

901

判 p'oòn: to judge; to decide.

判決 p'oòn-k'uèt: a decision; decree; determination.

判斷 p'oòn-tuên: to give judgment; to be of opinion.

1235

匠 tseûng: mechanic; worker; artisan

木匠 mûk tseûng: carpenter.

石匠 shêk tseûng: stonecutter.

判 匠

判 匠

判 匠

LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

787

胡 oō: how; why; Mongol.

胡椒 oō-tsiu: pepper.

胡鬧 oō-naaû: to make a row.

1358

懂 túng: to understand.

懂得 túng tak: to understand.

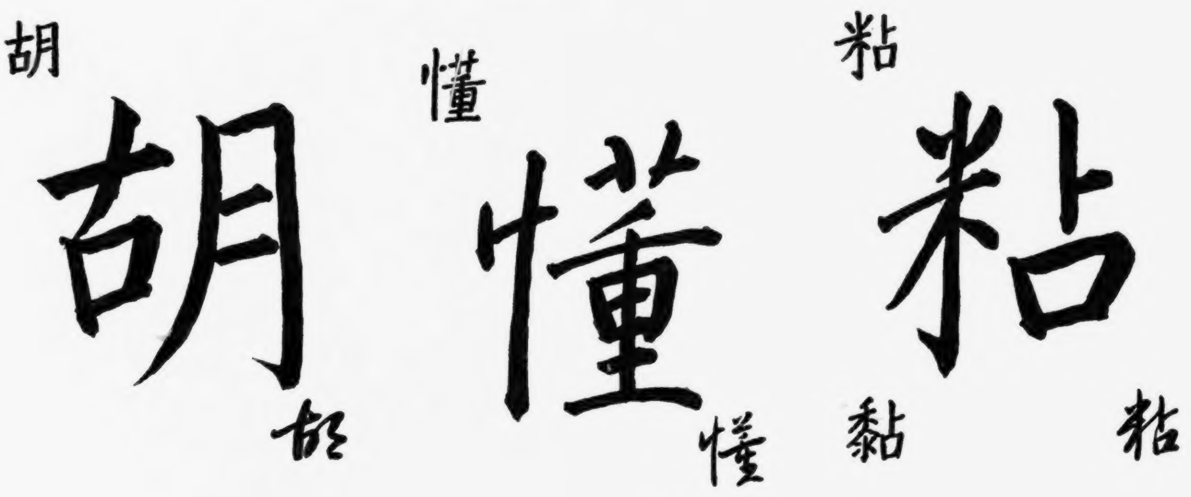
不懂人事 pat túng yān-sẑ: slow witted; unreasonable

762

粘 nīm: to adhere; glutinous; sticky.

黏實 nīm shât: to paste it tight.

粘米 chim maĭ: ordinary rice.



638

驢 lō: a donkey; ass.

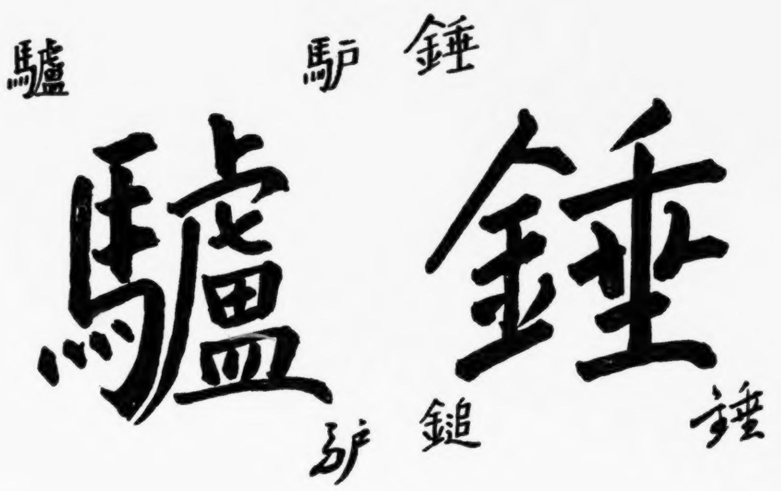
驢子 lō-tsź: donkey; ass.

135

錘 ch'uī: a hammer to pound; scale; weight

鉄錘 t'īt ch'uī: a hammer

錘爛 ch'ui-laân: hammer to pieces



LESSON 10

READING MATERIAL

馬明ching探約定李大年在t'aû工之日，到其辦事室詳細k'ing談·馬探之目的·想ch'ìt底清楚李大年本人之根底·因為李大年將來做證人，必要無偏心·所以，要知道李大年本人是否共產黨員或t'aán共之人·

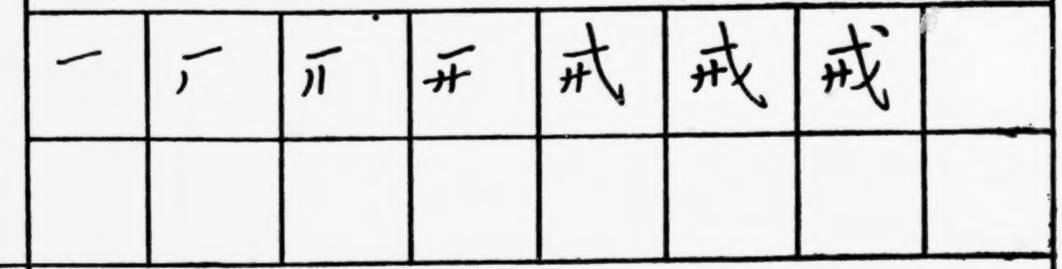
李大年接受過馬列學說·與毛Chaâk東之新民主主義等等·在中國之時，亦受過中共政府政ch'aàk下之各種訓練·但係李大年本人向來對於共產主義，作合理之批評，並非maāng目接受，所以相信他不是忠實信徒·

LESSON 10

WRITING MATERIAL

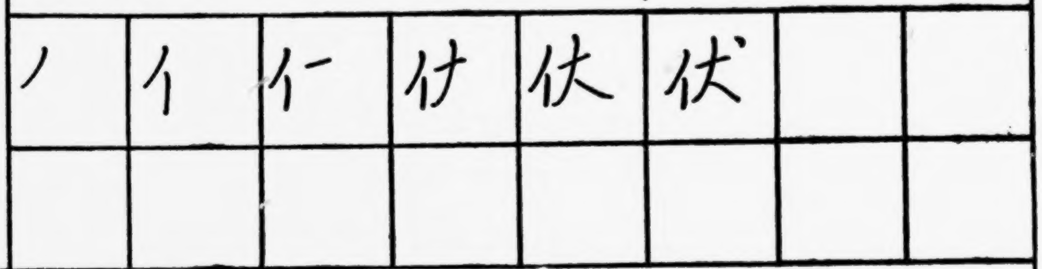
戒

Character Number 379 Radical Number 62
Stroke Number 7 戈



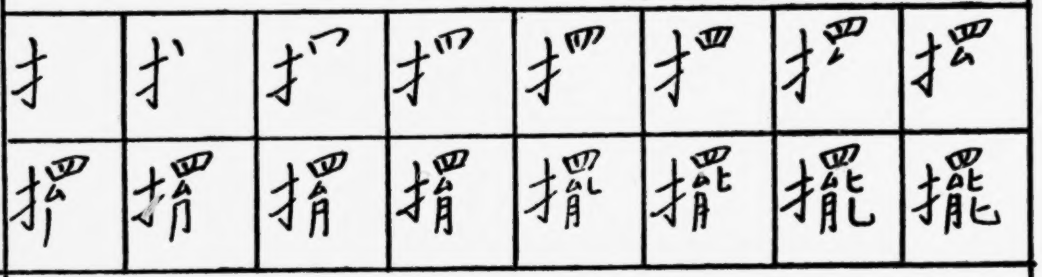
伏

Character Number 228 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 6 亻，人



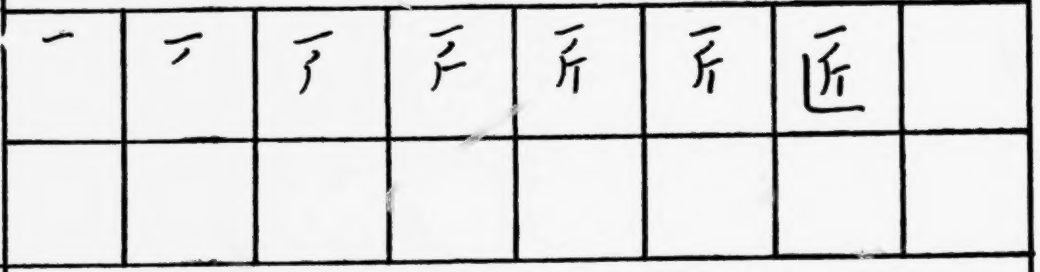
擺

Character Number 806 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 18 扌，手



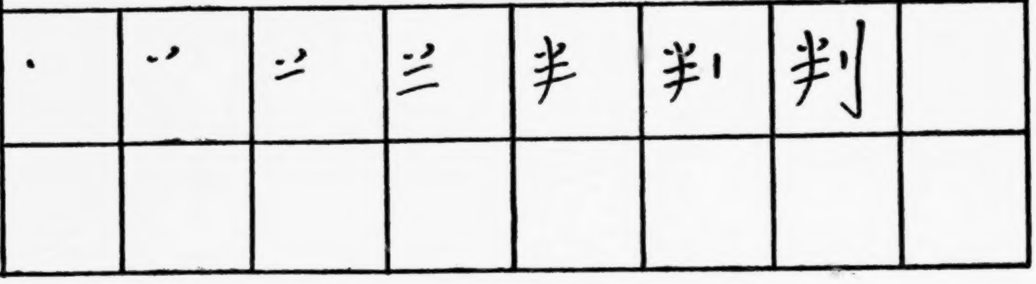
匠

Character Number 1235 Radical Number 22
Stroke Number 7 匚



判

Character Number 901 Radical Number 18
Stroke Number 7 刂，刀



LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mă: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, neĭ tò Meĭ-Kwòk chi haû, yaŭ mŏ t'ūng kûng-ch'aán tóng tsìp-chuk-kwòh à?

Leĭ: Kan-kuì ngŏh shóh chi-tò kè, ngŏh mŏ t'ūng kûng-ch'aán tóng tsìp-chuk-kwòh. Pat-kwòh, ngŏh haāng shuēn* kè shī-haû, ts'āng-king yâp kwòh hoì-uēn kung-ooî*.

M: K'uĭ-teî haî m̄-haî tsóh-k'ing fân-tsź à?

L: K'uĭ-teî hóh-nāng haî tsóh-k'ing fân-tsź, pat-kwòh, ī-ka ngŏh mŏ haāng shuēn*, yîk mŏ kaau ooî-faì hó noî lòh.

M: Neĭ keì-shī haāng shuēn*, haî pin kaan lūn-shuēn kung-sz tsô kung à?

L: Ngŏh tûk-chóh saam-kòh hôk-k'eī taaî-hôk, yan-waî mŏ ts'īn* kaì-tsûk, shóh-ĭ t'īng hôk. Yaû yan-waî mŏ k'eī-t'a shik-hôp kè kung-tsòk, shóh-ĭ t'ūng T'aaì-P'īng-Yeūng-Lūn-Shuēn Kung Sz tsô haāng shuen̄*.

M: Neĭ haāng pin yat-chèk shuēn à?

L: Kóh chèk shuēn kiù-tsô "Mòng-Tsẑ-Leĭ", haî fòh shuēn, loī-wóng Saam-Faān-Shĭ t'ūng Yât-Poón, Heung-Kóng táng teî. Ngŏh haāng-chóh lûk ts'aat shuì shuēn. Yat-kaú-nğ-paàt nīn lûk-uêt, ngŏh yan-waî pêng-chóh yat taaî ch'eūng, tsaû haî kóh-chân-shī ts'z̄-chóh kung.

M: Neĭ haāng shuēn* loī-ooī Meĭ Kwòk, Uĕn-Tung kè shī-haû, yaŭ mŏ tsaú-sz laû-shuì, "tsòk-kaan faân-foh" à?

L: Ngŏh mŏ tsô kwòh ni ti kóm kè yĕ. Yaŭ-shī ngŏh taaì shiú-shiú tsẑ-keì yûng kè Chung-Kwòk yeûk-ts'oī, yîk king-kwòh

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

hoî-kwaan shuì-uēn kîm-ch'ā, ìn-haû taaì sheùng ngôn.

M: Neĭ ì-ka haî pin-shuè tsô kung, mooĭ kòh uêt yaŭ keî toh tsìn* yâp sik à?

L: Ngŏh ì-ka haî Ma-Kìt Kaai î-paàk-saam-shâp-hô yat-kaan lŏ-faan ts'aan-koón shuè tsô kung. Mooĭ kòh uêt ch'uì-chóh fa-leî chi ngoî, yaŭ saam-paàk man kóm sheûng-hâ*.

M: Ts'îng neĭ haî ni cheung chî sheûng-pîn sé ts'ing-ch'óh neĭ tsẑ-keí kè sing-mìng, nìn-suì, teî-chî, t'ūng tò Meĭ-Kwòk chi haû neĭ shóh tsô-kwòh kè kòk-chúng kung-tsòk.

L: Ts'îng neĭ m̄-hó kóng tak kóm faaì.

M: Tuì-m̄-chuê. Neĭ chûng iù sé mìng neĭ mooĭ kòh lŏ-paán kè sìng-mìng, k'uĭ-teî kè teî-chî, ĭ-k'âp tsô kung kè yât-k'eì.

L: Chûng yaŭ mà?

M: Ts'îng neĭ shûn-pîn haî ni cheung chî haû-pîn sé maaì neĭ kè chîk-haî ts'an-shûk kè sìng-mìng, teî-chî ĭ-k'âp kwaan-haî.

L: Hó la.

LESSON 11

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. A good citizen will abide by the law.
2. You can begin your investigation right now.
3. I can say that all members of my immediate family have not violated any law.
4. She will quit her job by the end of the year.
5. He is an honorable person, and he doesn't mind if he had to sacrifice a little for good cause.
6. When did you quit school and for what reason?
7. I didn't contact him at all. He came to see me.
8. Are you a member of the seaman's union?
9. She will continue her study in Europe next year.
10. He is a member of our organization but he had not paid any dues since last year.
11. This house is most suitable. What is the rent?
12. This is my second trip, but I still don't know all the rules on board the ship.
13. Did you have anything to do with the other unions?
14. This semester will end soon, but I still have no plans for the future.
15. Smuggling is prohibited in every country.
16. I will not contact you for a while. But if anything comes up, I will let you know.

LESSON 11

WORD LIST

1.	tsìp-chuk	to contact; to get in tough with
2.	hoî-uēn kung-ooî*	seaman's union, AN kỏh
3.	ooî-faì	dues; (membership dues)
4.	hôk-k'eī	semester; academic period of study; AN kỏh
5.	kaì-tsûk	to continue; consecutive; unintermittant; i.e., k'uĭ kaì-tsûk tûk-shue 'he continues his study'
6.	t'īng-hôk	to quit school; to discontinue schooling
7.	shik-hôp	suitable; appropriate; fitting
8.	shuí	trip; run (number of time)
9.	ts'z̄-kung	to quit a job; to resign one's job
10.	tsaú-sz laû-shuì	to smuggle, (literally: smuggling and avoid paying taxes)
11.	"tsỏk-kaan faân-foh"	to transgress the law; violation of law; to be a traitor
12.	fa-leî	tips, syn: tá-sheúng
13.	chîk-haî ts'an-shûk	immediate members of the family
14.	koỏ-chué	employer

LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

1155

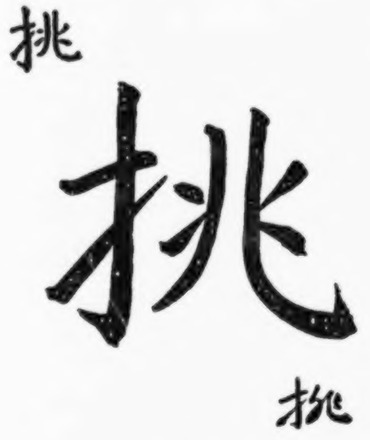
挑	t'iu: to bear a load; to choose; to pick out; to irritate; to provoke; to mix up.
挑夫	t'iu-foo: a coolie.
挑選	t'iu-suén: to select; to choose.
挑動	t'iu tûng: to stir up.

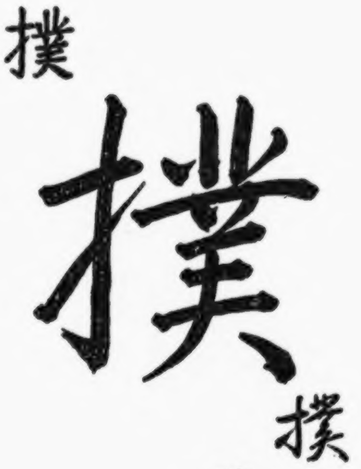
890

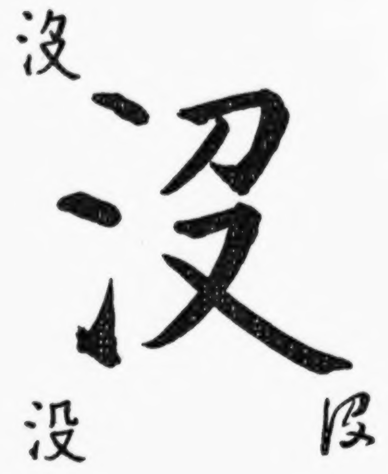
撲	p'ǒk: to strike down; to rush against.
撲滅	p'ǒk-mît: to extinguish

722

沒	moôt: to perish; loss; no (Mandarin)
埋沒	maaī-moôt: hidden; unknown.
沒收	moôt-shau: to be confiscated.





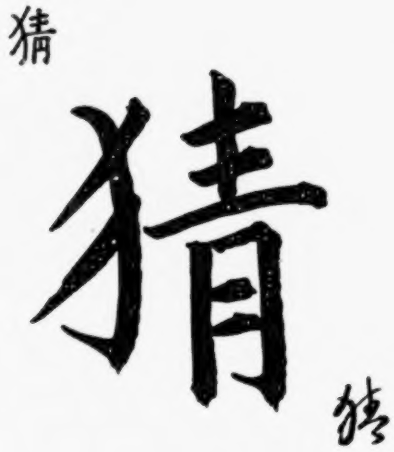


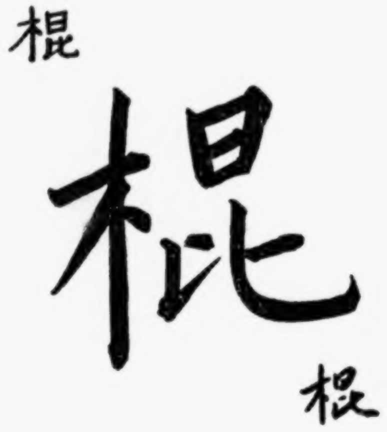
10

猜	ch'aai: to guess, suspect.
猜謎	ch'aai-maī: to guess riddles
猜想	ch'aai-séung: to conjecture
猜枚	ch'aai-mooī*: morra (game of guessing at fingers held up)

560

棍	kwàn. a stick; club; rod.
一條棍	yat t'iū kwàn: a stick; a cane.
光棍	kwong-kwàn: rascal.
棍徒	kwàn t'ō: ruffian; rowdy.
棍騙	kwàn-p'ìn: to cheat.





LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

22

抓 chaaú: to scratch

抓爛 chaaú-laân: to lacerate

抓搲 chaaú-wá: to scratch

267

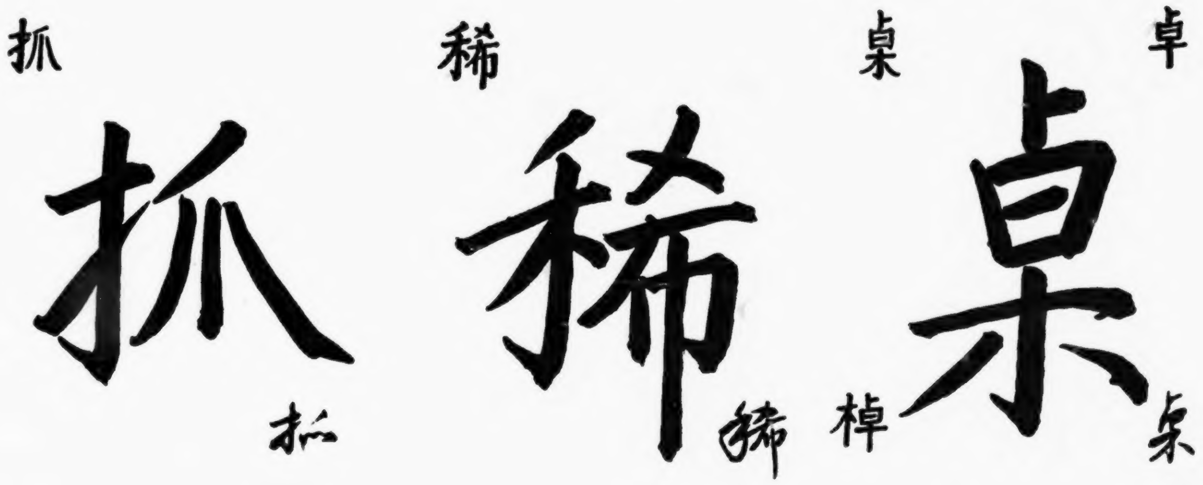
稀 hei: few; far apart; watery

稀疏 hei-shoh: wide apart

稀稀地 hei-hei-teî*: sparsely; watery.

52

桌 ch'euk: table; stand.



1446

恩 yan: kindness; grace; favor.

恩人 yan-yān: benefactor; patron.

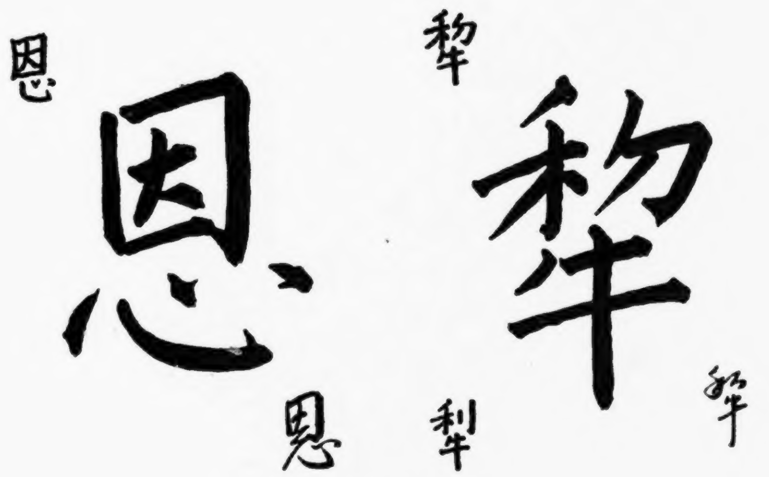
恩惠 yan-waî. grace; bounty.

585

犂 laī: a plow; to plow.

犂田 laī t'īn: to plow.

犂耙 laī-p'ā: a harrow.



LESSON 11

READING MATERIAL

馬明對於李大年喺美國嘅行動，亦想查問多少，尤其是要睇佢有冇同共產黨發生過關係．大年話，佢冇同共產黨接 chuk 過．雖然喺一間輪船公司做過行船，向來冇作奸犯科，亦冇走私 laû 稅．

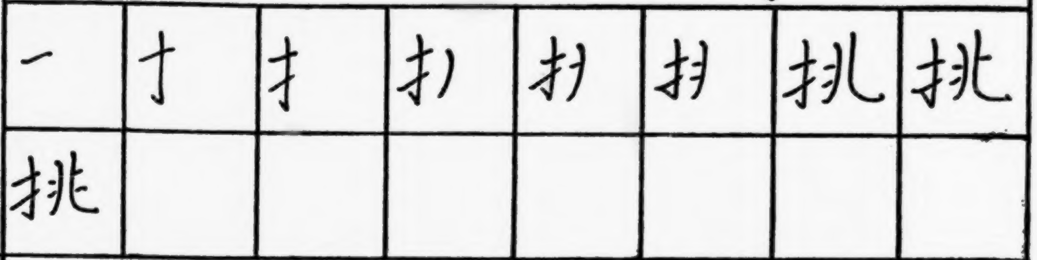
馬明聽大年所講，覺得滿意，就取出幾張表格紙，請佢將姓名，年歲，地址同做過嘅工作，僱主嘅姓名與地址，直系親屬等等，詳細寫清楚．

LESSON 11

WRITING MATERIAL

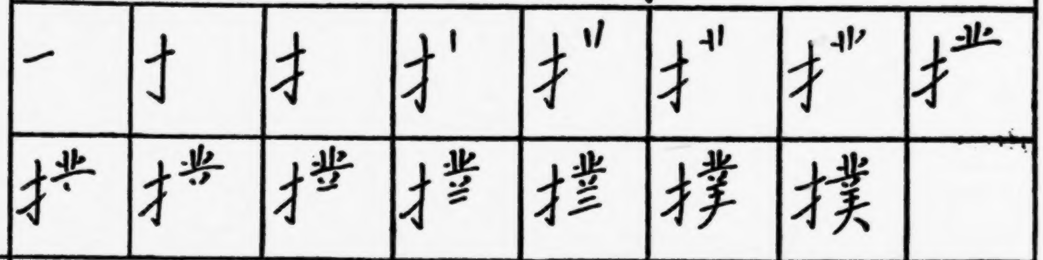
挑

Character Number 1155 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 9 扌，手



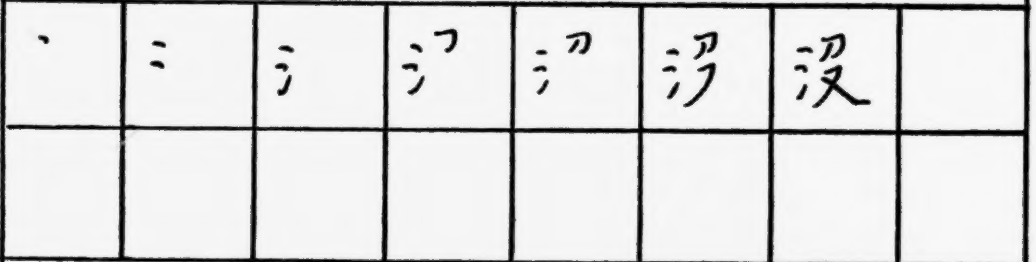
撲

Character Number 890 Radical Number 64
Stroke Number 15 扌，手



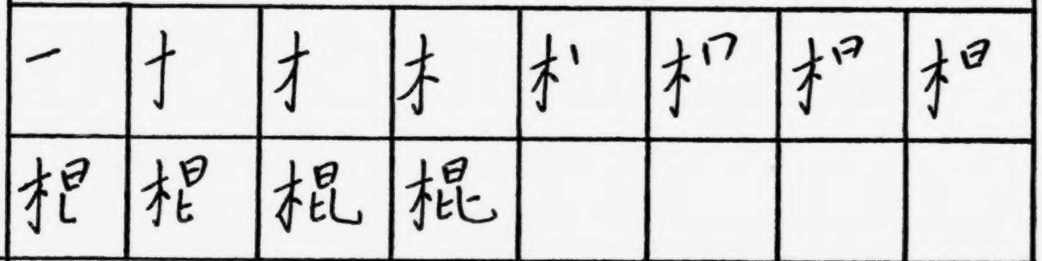
沒

Character Number 722 Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 7 氵，水



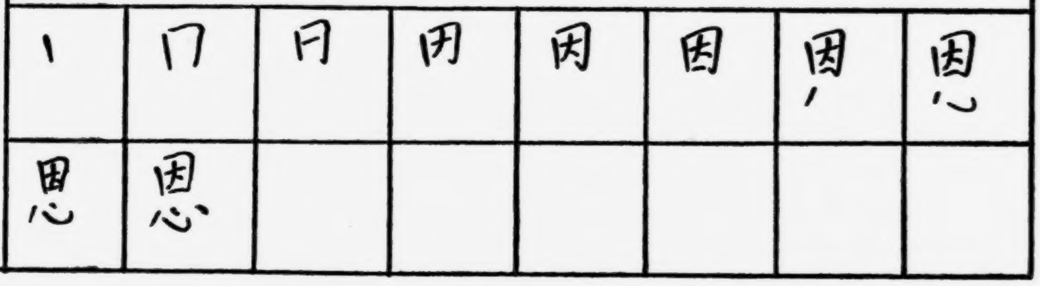
棍

Character Number 560 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 12 木，木



恩

Character Number 1446 Radical Number 61
Stroke Number 10 心



LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mă: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, ngŏh ì-ka seúng mân-hă neĭ kwaan-ue Fong Tsòh-Chî kè sẑ.

Leĭ: Hó à.

M: Ts'ìng mân neĭ tuì-ue k'uĭ kè pooì-kìng shûk m̄-shûk à?

L: Ngŏh m̄-haî hó shûk, pat-kwòh t'eng-mān wâ k'uĭ haî heung-hâ ch'ut-shaì, saì-lŏ-koh kè shī-haû, k'uĭ poon ch'ut-huì Shaáng-Shēng chuê, haî Shaáng-Shēng tûk shue.

M: K'uĭ haî Shaáng-Shēng tûk shue tûk tò taî keî nīn-k'ap à?

L: T'eng-mān-kóng, k'uĭ tûk tò ko-chung kè shī-haû, tsaû laī Meĭ-Kwòk, seung-sùn k'uĭ chûng meî pat-îp.

M: K'uĭ yaŭ mat tâk-pît kè shì-hò t'ūng oôt-tûng à?

L: K'uĭ kóng-kwòh peî ngŏh t'eng, k'uĭ wâ k'uĭ tsuì chung-ì mān-hôk, ts'aam-ka-kwòh hó keî kòh tûk-shue-ooî*, ì-ch'é shī-sheūng heùng pò-koón t'ūng tsaâp-chì-shĕ t'aū kó.

M: Tuì-ue ni ti tûk-shue-ooî*, tsaâp-chì-shĕ táng táng kè sìng-chat, neĭ mìng m̄-mìng-paâk à?

L: Hó naān kóng. Pat-kwòh p'ó-t'ung laī-kóng, Chung Kwòk mān-yān kè shang-oôt toh-shò ts'ing-foó, tsóh-k'ing kè yān yîk yaŭ, shóh-ĭ yaŭ ti tûk-shue-ooî*, tsaâp-chì shĕ haî Kûng-Tóng kè moōn-mîn tsó-chik.

M: Fong Tsòh-Chî laī-chóh Meĭ-Kwòk chi haû, yaŭ mat oôt-tûng à?

L: K'uĭ laī-chóh Meĭ-Kwòk chi haû, yat-fong-mîn pó-tsaâp Ying-Mān, lîng yat-fong-mîn, tsô tûk shue kung. Fòng shué-kà kè

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

shī-haû, k'uĭ yaû huì uēn-haú tsô kung. Kan-kuì ngŏh shóh chi kè k'uĭ tò Meĭ-Kwòk ch'oh-k'eī, mŏ mat tâk-pît kè oôt-tûng.

LESSON 12

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. The pictures on this bulletin board were drawn by students of the 2nd grade.
2. The life of a Chinese farmer is very hard, and only a few have a chance to go to school.
3. The purpose of this study group is to help you to catch up with your studies.
4. I like to make friends with younger people.
5. You need a lot of remedial study, and I am sure you can do it at home.
6. When you deliver the merchandise here, I will pay you then.
7. This is one of my hobbies, but my wife does not like it at all.
8. Please remember to write your name and address when you submit articles to our newspaper.
9. My hobbies are reading and football.
10. I don't know his father but I have heard a great deal about him.
11. Living in the village is very inconvenient; I plan to move to the city next month.
12. You don't have to report to the police when you change your address, but for your own convenience, you may notify the post office.
13. Since you don't know her background thoroughly, you should be more careful of what you say.

LESSON 12

WORD LIST

1.	pooì-kíng	background AN kỏh; an individual's general education or culture
2.	heung-hâ	the village, a residence established in the village; abbr., heung
3.	poon	to move to an other place; to move
4.	heùng-loī	hitherto; up to this time; till now
5.	shì-hỏ	hobby; a particular liking; natural inclination
6.	mān-hôk	literature
7.	tûk-shue ooî*	study group; study club, AN kỏh
8.	t'aū kó	to submit article (for publication); kó, 'rough draft; original copy'
9.	ch'oh-k'eī	early period or stage
10.	sìng-chat	nature (of animate things); disposition; temperment
11.	pó-tsaâp	remedial study; to take additional instruction
12.	uēn-haú	farm, plantation, AN kỏh
13.	ts'ing-foó	poverty stricken; simple and hard (life) i.e., k'uĭ kẻ shaang-oôt hó ts'ing-foó, 'he is poverty strickened'
14.	nīn-k'ap	grade, (a division of school classified according to the progress of students); i.e., siú-hôk yat-nīn-k'ap

LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

884

抱 p'ŏ: to embrace; to carry in arms; to cherish.

抱病 p'ŏ pêng: to be ill.

抱歉 p'ŏ-hìp: I regret; I am sorry.

16

賺 chaân: earn, gain, to make profit.

賺钱 chaân-ts'īn:* to earn money.

賺佣 chaân-yûng:* to make a commission.

338

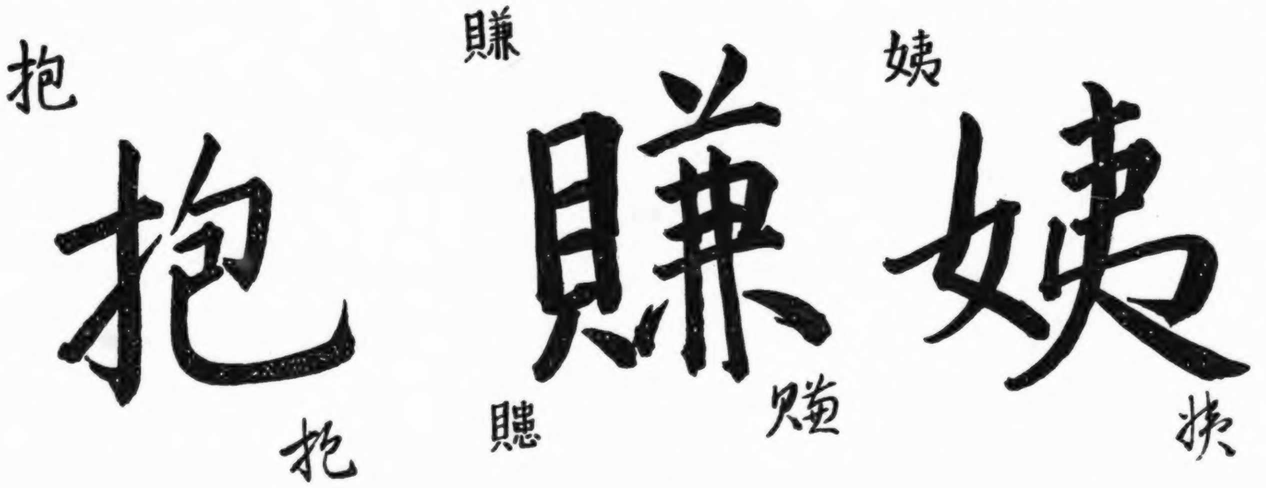
姨 ī: maternal aunt (i) sister-in-law

姨母 ī-mŏ: elder maternal aunt

姨媽 ī-ma: elder maternal aunt

姨丈 ī-cheûng: husband of maternal aunt

姨表 ī-piú: maternal first cousins



1344

奪 tuêt: to take by force; to take away.

奪去 tuêt huì: to take away by force.

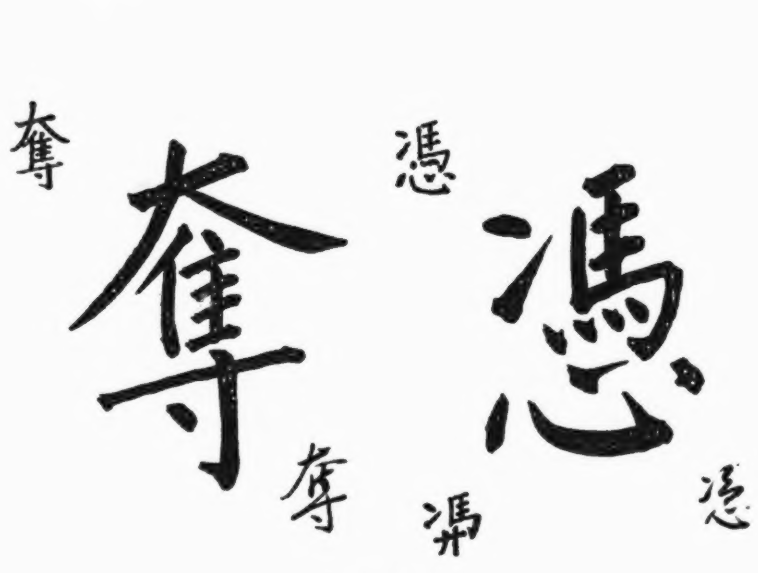
奪回 tuêt ooī: to get back by force.

830

憑 p'āng: proof; to lean on; trust in.

憑據 p'āng-kuì: proof; evidence.

文憑 mān-p'āng: diploma; certificate.



LESSON 12

READING MATERIAL

1346

堆 tui: heap; mass; pile; to heap.

草堆 ts'ó tui: a stack of straw.

堆塞 tui-sak: to block up; to obstruct.

1433

禍 wôn: calamity; woe; misfortune.

惹禍 yĕ wôn: to bring misfortune on oneself.

禍根 wôh kan: the seed of misfortune.

1431

鍋 woh: pot; boiler; pan; calaron.

煖鍋 nuĕn woh: heater for wine or food.

堆 禍 鍋

堆 禍 鍋

堆 禍 鍋

23

掉 chaaû: to row, propet

掉艇 chaaû-têng: to row a boat

掉槳 chaaû-tséung: to pull an oar

1177

塗 t'ō: to daub; to blot out; mire; dirt.

塗污 t'ō oo: to besmear.

塗改 t'ō koí: to alter.

掉 塗

掉 塗

棹 櫂 掉 塗

LESSON 12

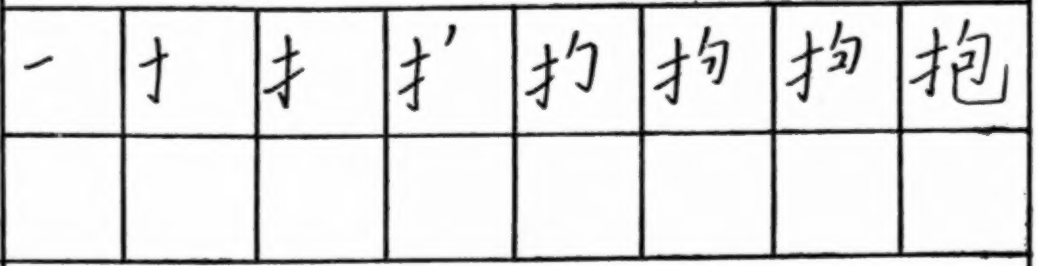
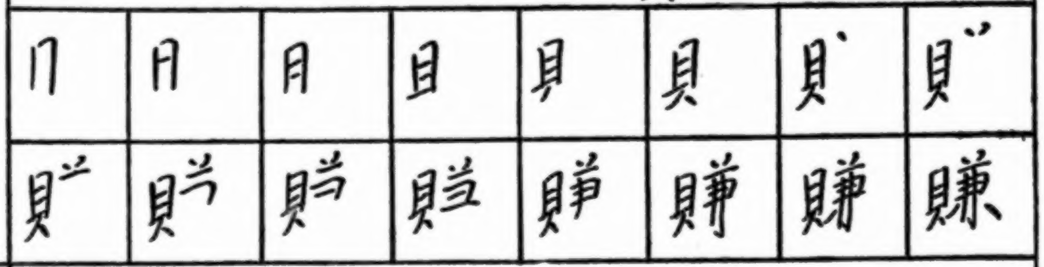
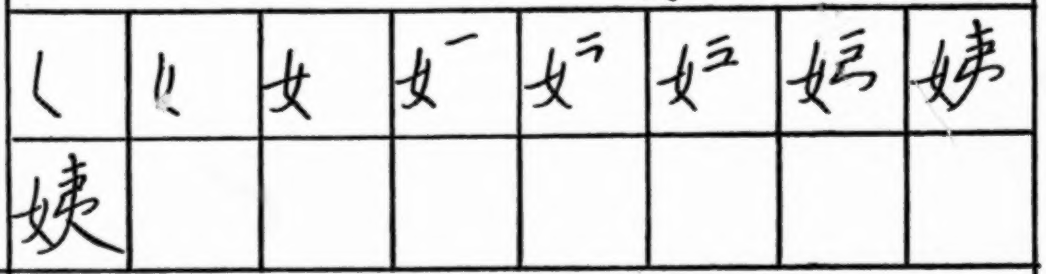
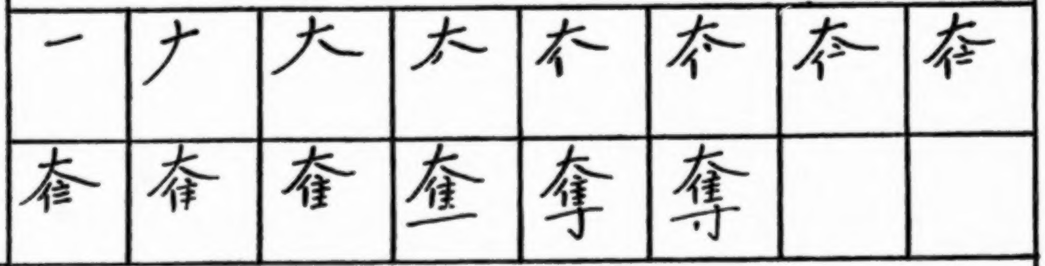
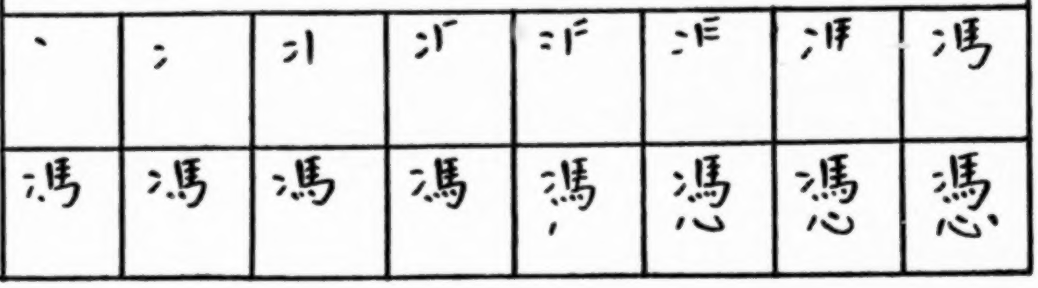
READING MATERIAL

李大年講完佢自己嘅歷史之後．馬明就向佢查問Tsòh治方．佢本來同老方唔係相識好耐，所以佢對於老方嘅一切，唔係好熟．不過，老李好合作，知道乜野．就講乜野．

佢話老方喺中國鄉下出世，喺省城住過．高中重未畢業就黎美國．佢喜歡文學，所以到美之後，時常喺文娛組織嘅地方出入．平時寫啲文字向報館或雜誌社投稿．言論有些少激烈，所以有人話佢係共產黨．

LESSON 12

WRITING MATERIAL

抱	Character Number 884 Radical Number 64 Stroke Number 8 扌，手
	
賺	Character Number 16 Radical Number 154 Stroke Number 17 貝
	
姨	Character Number 338 Radical Number 38 Stroke Number 9 女
	
奪	Character Number 1344 Radical Number 37 Stroke Number 14 大
	
憑	Character Number 830 Radical Number 61 Stroke Number 16 心
	

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mă: Kan-kuì neĭ shóh chi-tò kè, Fong Tsòh-chî haì Meĭ-Kwòk yaŭ ti mat chîk-haî ts'an-shûk à?

Leĭ: Ch'uī-chóh k'uĭ kè foô-ts'an chi ngoî, ngŏh m̄-chi-tò k'uĭ chûng yaŭ mi-yĕ ts'an-yān haí ni tô.

M: K'uĭ chûng yaŭ k'eī-t'a kè ts'an-ts'ik haì Meĭ-Kwòk mà?

L: Tuì-ue ni kìn sẑ, ngŏh m̄-ts'ing-ch'óh. Ngŏh hó-ts'z̆ kìn-kwòh yat-leŭng-kòh t'ūng k'uĭ t'ūng-ts'uen kè shuk paàk. Pat-kwòh hóh-nāng haî hó shoh kè ts'an-shûk, mŏ mat ts'an-mât kwaan-haî kè.

M: Neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ t'ūng fōng* chuê kè shī-haû haî mat nīn mat uêt? Kóh chân-shī neĭ-teî haí pin-shuè chuè à?

L: Kóh chân-shī haî yat-kaú-nğ-saam nīn kaú uêt. Tsik-haî ngŏh tûk taaî-hôk taî î kòh hôk-k'eī. Ngŏh t'ūng Tsòh-Chî haî K'eī-Leî Kaai kaàp Shĭ-Tak-Tûn Kaai kóh kaan paak-mān* chuê.

M: Neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ haì kóh shuè chuê-chóh keì-noî à?

L: Ngŏh-teî yat-ts'aī chuê-chóh yat nīn kòm sheûng hâ*, haû-loī yan-waî ngŏh pêng-chóh, yaû t'īng-chóh hôk, shóh-ĭ ngŏh tsẑ-keî poon-hoi chuê.

M: Neĭ t'ūng k'uĭ chuê kè shī-haû, pin kòh haî k'uĭ kè p'aāng-yaŭ à?

L: Ch'uī-chóh keî kòh haî ngŏh-teî taaî-ka kè t'ūng-hôk chî ngoî, ngŏh m̄-shik k'uĭ ti p'aāng-yaŭ. K'uĭ ti p'aāng-yaŭ hó shiú laī wàn k'uĭ. K'uĭ yaû hó shiú ts'īng p'aāng-yaŭ laī ts'ŏh.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

M: K'uĭ kóh-chân-shī yaŭ mat oôt-tûng à?

L: K'uĭ kóh-chân-shī hó chung-ì ts'aam-ka kòk chúng oôt-tûng, yaū-k'eī-shî haî ts'ing-nīn fong-mîn kè.

M: Ts'ìng neĭ tseung neĭ shóh keì-tak kè t'uēn-t'aì kè mēng* kóng peì ngŏh t'eng.

L: În-shī ngŏh yat-kòh to m̀-keì tak waâk-ché ch'ì hă ngŏh nám-tó chì kóng peì neĭ téng; hó mà?

M: Hó à. Neĭ nám-tó chi-haû, ts'ìng neĭ hoi-lît yat-cheung mīng-taan peì ngŏh.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I like to invite you to attend a meeting of our organization this coming Sunday.
2. Who are you? What can I do for you?
3. She is waiting for me at the corner of Jackson and Stockton Streets.
4. They are related, but I don't know whether they are close or distant relatives.
5. Please make a list of things you want, and I will try to get them for you when I go to Hong Kong.
6. This list includes not only his close associates but also most of his relatives.
7. He thinks that it is very difficult to go on with scholastic pursuits when there are so many beautiful girls around.
8. I have no immediate relatives in the U.S.
9. I would like to visit him in Hong Kong but he moved away already.
10. My apartment is very small. It has one bedroom, one sitting room, a kitchen and a restroom.
11. In China, the descendants of the same ancestors live in the same village.
12. I think I understand the youths better than most of you.
13. Both of you will come with me to investigate a murder case.
14. We study the past as well as the present.

LESSON 13

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. When you visit me please bring your family with you.

16. Do you recognize the girl standing at the corner over there?

LESSON 13

WORD LIST

1. chîk-haî	direct line of succession; direct descendants
2. ts'an shûk	relative, AN kỏh; i.e., k'uĭ haî ngŏh kẻ ts'an-shûk
3. ts'an-yān	relative; immediate relative; next of kin, AN kỏh; syn: ts'an-shûk (See Les 13.2)
4. ts'uen	village, AN t'iū
5. shuk-paảk	father's younger brother and older brother; uncle; a courteous way to address persons having the same surname
6. p'aak-mān* (transliteration)	apartment, AN kaán or kỏh
7. poon-hoi	to move away (See Les 12.3)
8. ts'ing-nīn fong-mîn	in regards to youth; the youth, (in this respect) ts'ing-nīn, youth; fong-mîn, 'in respect to; phase; point of view; side; aspect'
9. hôk-shût īn-kaủ	scholastic pursuit; pursuit of knowledge; hôk-shût, 'learning; scholarship'; īn-kaủ 'to study; research; to examine thoroughly

LESSON 13

WORD LIST

10.	hoi-lît	to list; to make a list
11.	mîng-taan	a listing; list of names
12.	shoh	to separate; separated; scattered; distant; loosely
13.	ts'an-mât	dear; intimate; close, syn: ts'an-oì
14.	kaàp	to press together; to pick up (with sticks)
15.	t'uēn-t'aí	organization; a body of persons united for special purpose; i.e., club, union; society etc; AN kòh; syn: shĕ-t'uēn (See Les 2.21)

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

642

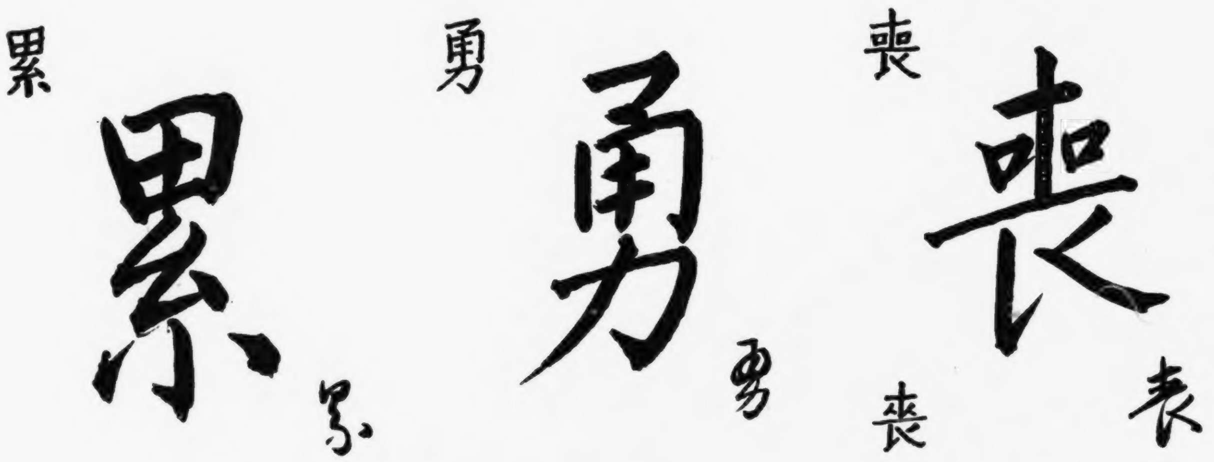
累	luî: to involve; to embarrass; to accumulate.
連累	lîn-luî: to involve some one.
受累	shaû luî: implicated.
拖累	t'oh luî: to involve other.

1499

勇	yŭng: bravery; daring; courage.
勇敢	yŭng-kóm: bravery; courage.
勇氣	yŭng-heì: brave spirit; valor.

1046

喪	sòng: mourning; to lament a funeral.
喪事	sòng sẑ: funeral affair.
喪禮	sòng laǐ: funeral rites.
喪失	sòng-shat: deprived of.
喪氣	sòng heì: crest-fallen; downcast.

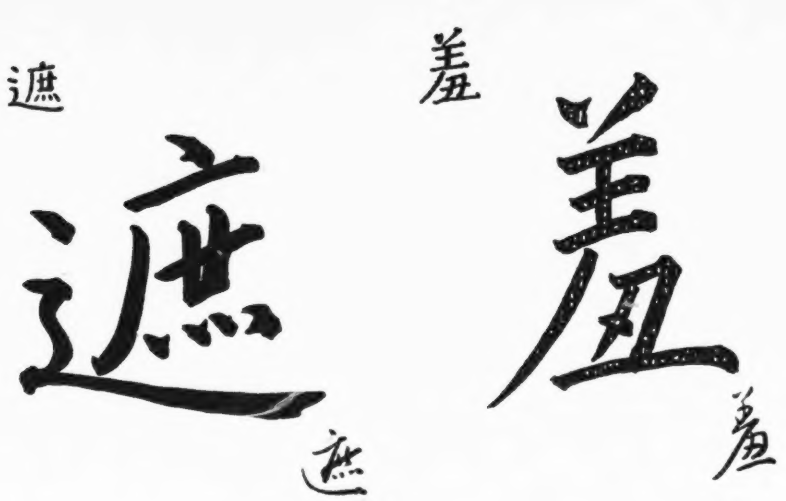


45

遮	che: to cover, an umbrella (Cl. pa)
雨遮	uě che: umbrella
遮住	che-chuê: cover over; conceal

916

羞	sau, ch'aú: to put to shame; to feel ashamed.
羞恥	sau ch'í: shame.
羞辱	sau-yûk: to insult; to put to shame.



LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

13

澤 chaâk: benefits, moist, fertile.

潤澤 yûn-chaâk: healthy, robust

2

挨 aai: toward; against.

挨晚 aai-maăn: towards evening

499

稈 kón: stubble; straw.

禾稈 wōh-kón: rice straw.

掃稈 sò kón: a straw broom.

澤

澤

澤

挨

挨

稈

稈

稈

259

瞎 hât: blind

瞎眼 hât ngaăn: blind

371

稼 kà: to sow grain; (ka) agricultural work

稼穡 kà-shik: farming; sowing and reaping

稼穡艱難 kā-shik kaan-naān: the toils of a farmer's life

瞎

瞎

瞎

稼

稼

稼

LESSON 13

READING MATERIAL

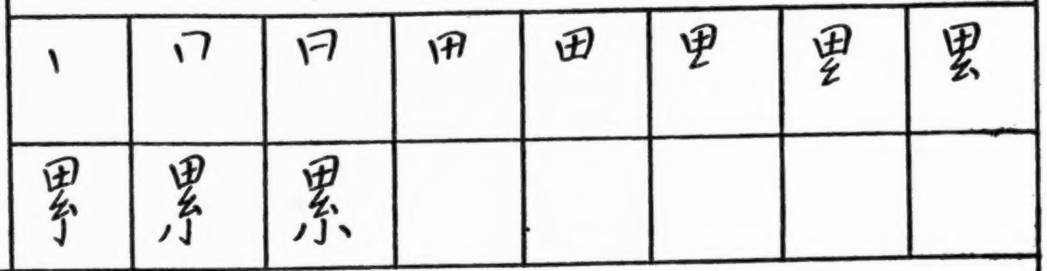
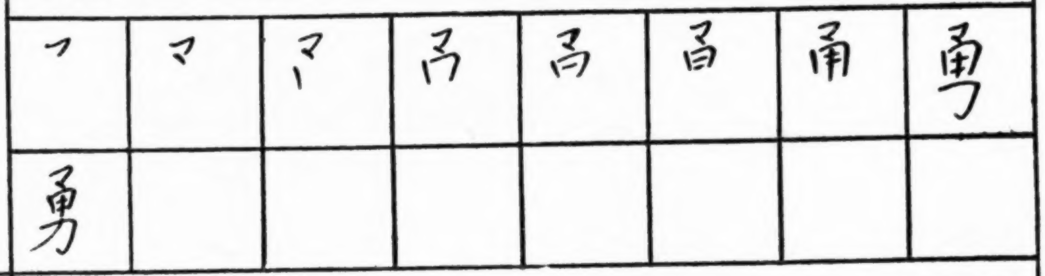
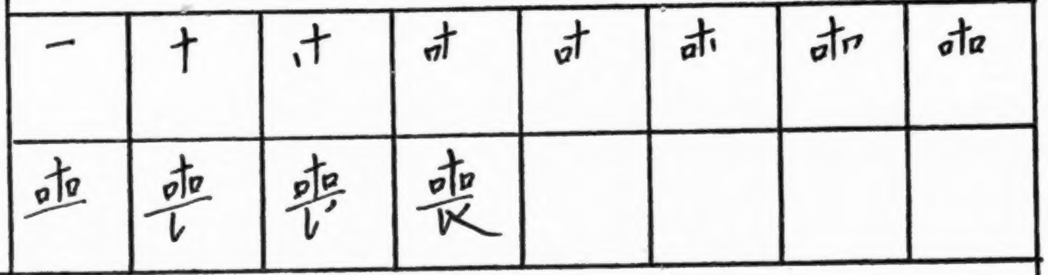
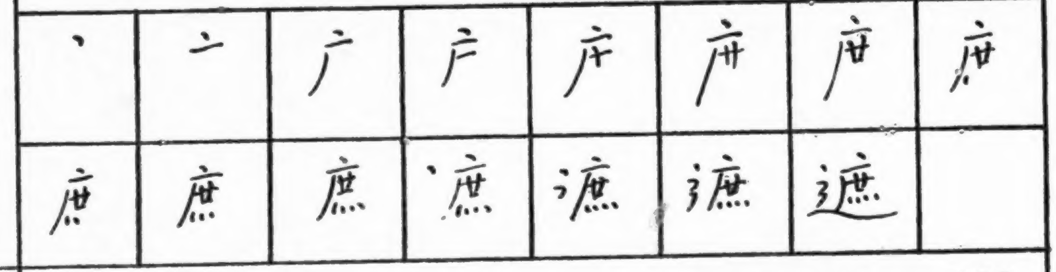
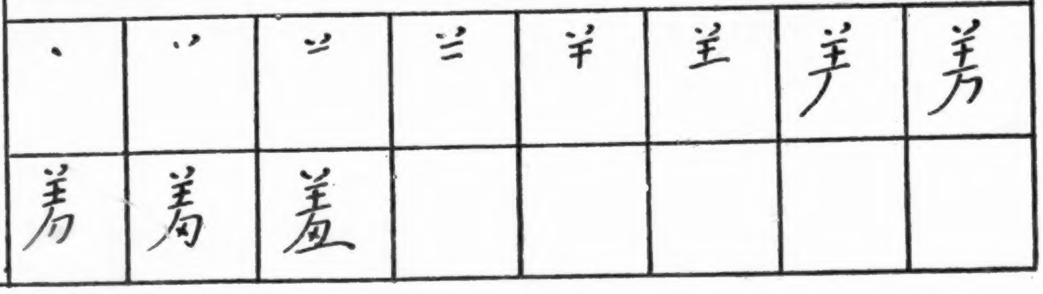
關於 Tsỏh 治方嘅親屬，李大年只係知道佢有一個父親喺加省二 Faû，或者重有一兩個同村叔伯喺美國·除此之外，佢就唔清楚啦·

根據李大年所講，佢自己同老方嘅關係亦唔算好深·讀大學嘅時候，大家同住大約一年左右·同住之時，老方做各種青年活動，常時去參加會議·如果有時間，多數去打波·

最後，馬明問大年是否記得老方所參加嘅團體名稱·大年話現時唔記得·遲日想倒，然後開列一張名單·

LESSON 13

WRITING MATERIAL

累	**Character Number** 642 **Radical Number** 102 **Stroke Number** 11 田 
勇	**Character Number** 1499 **Radical Number** 19 **Stroke Number** 9 力 
喪	**Character Number** 1046 **Radical Number** 30 **Stroke Number** 12 口 
遮	**Character Number** 45 **Radical Number** 162 **Stroke Number** 15 辶，辵 
羞	**Character Number** 916 **Radical Number** 123 **Stroke Number** 11 𦍌，羊 

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mă: Fong Tsòh-Chî leī-hoi hôk-haaû chi haû, k’uĭ haî pin shuè tsô kung à?

Leĭ: K’uĭ hó-ts’ž haî yat-kaan shuēn-ch’óng tsô kung.

M: Neĭ chi m̄-chi-tò haî pin yat-kaan shuēn-ch’óng à?

L: Ngŏh m̄-haî keî ts’ing-ch’òh. T’eng-mān wâ kóh kaan shuēn-ch’óng haî tuì-mîn hoì kóh pin.

M: K’uĭ yaŭ mat chik-waî à? Haî pin kòh pô-fân à?

L: Ni ti ngŏh chan haî m̄-chi lòh.

M: K’uĭ ī-ka chûng haî kóh shuè tsô kung mà?

L: K’uĭ chûng haî kóh shuè tsô. T’eng-mān kóng, k’uĭ m̄-chî ka-chóh yān-kung, ī-ch’ê shing-chóh k’ap.

M: Neĭ kóng kwòh, k’uĭ haî kung-ooî* hó oôt-tûng; haî mà?

L: Mŏ-ts’òh. K’uĭ haî kung-ooî* ch’ut-tsîk kòk chúng wai-uēn-ooî*, kaì-waâk kòk yeûng oôt-tûng.

M: Neĭ tîm chi-tò k’uĭ haî kung-ooî* oôt-tûng kè ts’īng-yīng à?

L: Ngŏh yaŭ yat-kòh hó p’aāng-yaŭ yîk haî kóh kòh kung-ooî* ooî-uēn. K’uĭ shī-shī t’aī-k’âp Tsòh-Chî kè sẑ, shóh-ĭ ngŏh chi-tò se-shiú.

M: Ch’uī-chóh T’ōng-Yān Faû kè shě-t’uēn t’ūng kung-ooî* chi ngoî, k’uĭ chûng yaŭ mat tâk-pît kè oôt-tûng mà?

L: Ngŏh seung-sùn mŏ mat lòh.

M: Kan-kuì neĭ shóh chi kè pin yat-kòh haî k’uĭ tsuì-hó kè p’aāng-yaŭ à?

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

L: T'ōng-Yān Faû kóh kòh Wōh-P'ìng Shĕ ti shĕ-uēn to haî k'uĭ kè hó p'aāng-yaŭ. Yaū-k'eì-shî shĕ-cheúng Leūng Hìn-Leî haî t'ūng k'uĭ tsuì ts'an-mât kè.

M: Leĭ Sin-Shaang, ngŏh hó toh-tsê neĭ kè pong-mōng. Tuì-ue tsô ching-yān kè mân-t'aì, táng ngŏh-teî ìn-kaù-kwòh chi haû, tsoì t'ung-chi neĭ.

L: Hó hó, uē-kwóh sui-iù ngŏh, m̄-koi neĭ tsó-ti t'ung-chi ngŏh.

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I like to do some research on the background of all the organizations in Chinatown.
2. If she needs my help. I am sure she will inform me in advance.
3. Henry and George are very close. I wonder if they are related.
4. For the sake of security, only members of the committee are permitted to attend this special meeting.
5. Members of this committee are required to pay $10.00 and $20.00 for the non-members.
6. My boss also mentioned about this new procedure, but many people thought that it was too drastic.
7. She was promoted to a new position, but her salary remained the same.
8. His wages are very small, and sometimes he had to borrow money from his friends.
9. You can go across the bay by boat, or by the bridge.
10. It was a pity that I had no time to talk to her before she left for the Orient.
11. The postition is not very high, but you will be your own boss.
12. I always want to save a part of my wages, but I have never been able to do it.
13. If you haven't paid the dues, you are not permitted to attend this committee meeting of our union.

LESSON 14

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. As soon as I mentioned your name, they treated me like a king.

15. We will notify you by a postcard or by phone, if necessary.

16. It is too dangerous here. My advice to you is that you leave this island as soon as possible.

LESSON 14

WORD LIST

1.	leī-hoi	to leave, depart, separate; k'uĭ tsôk-yât leī-hoi ni-shuè* 'he left here yesterday'
2.	tuì-mîn hoî	across the bay; on the other side of the river-bank; tuì-mîn, opposite; across; face to face'
3.	chik-waî	position (job); post; AN kòh
4.	pô-fân	portion; part; section; branch of an organization; AN kòh
5.	yān-kung	wage; salary; pays; renumeration; syn: kung-kam
6.	shing k'ap	to promote to a higher grade; advancement in grade; promotion
7.	kung-ooî*	labor union; workers' organization AN kòh
8.	ch'ut tsîk	to attend; to be present
9.	waí-uēn-ooî*	committee
10.	t'aī-k'âp	mentioned; to bring up the matter; a.f., kóng-k'âp
11.	shĕ-cheúng	head of an organization; AN kòh
12.	shĕ-uēn	member of an organization; AN kòh
13.	ts'an-mât	close; intimate; dear; associated in close personal relations

LESSON 14

WORD LIST

14.	ỉn-kaù	to study; to do research
15.	t'ung-chi	to notify, inform; notification
16.	sui-iù	to need, want, require; necessity; requirement
17.	shĕ-t'uēn	organization; a body of persons united for a specific purpose; a.f. t'uēn t'aỉ (See Les 13.20); AN kồh

LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

847

瓶 p'Īng: pitcher; jar; jug; vase.

花瓶 fa-p'Īng: a vase.

酒瓶 tsaú p'Īng: wine jar.

14

策 ch'aàk: to plan, scheme.

計策 kaĭ-ch'aàk: a plan, a scheme

策劃 ch'aàk-waâk: to plan.

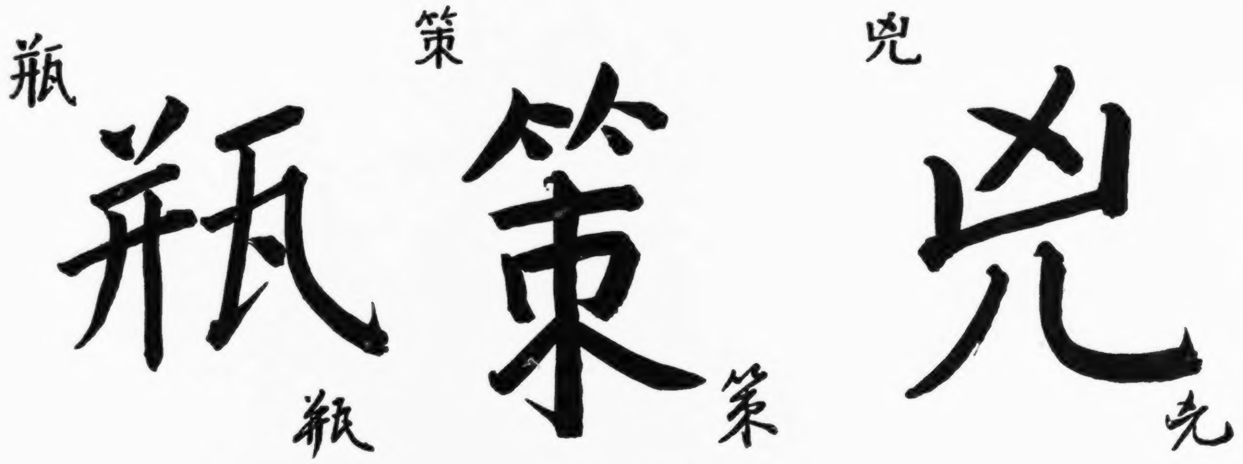
323

兇 hung: violent; malevolent; savage

兇惡 hung-ɔk: wicked; malignant

兇手 hung-shaú: the murderer

兇猛 hung-maăng: fierce



61

倡 Ch'eung: a leader· to promote

倡議 ch'eung-Ǐ: to make a motion, to propose (an idea).

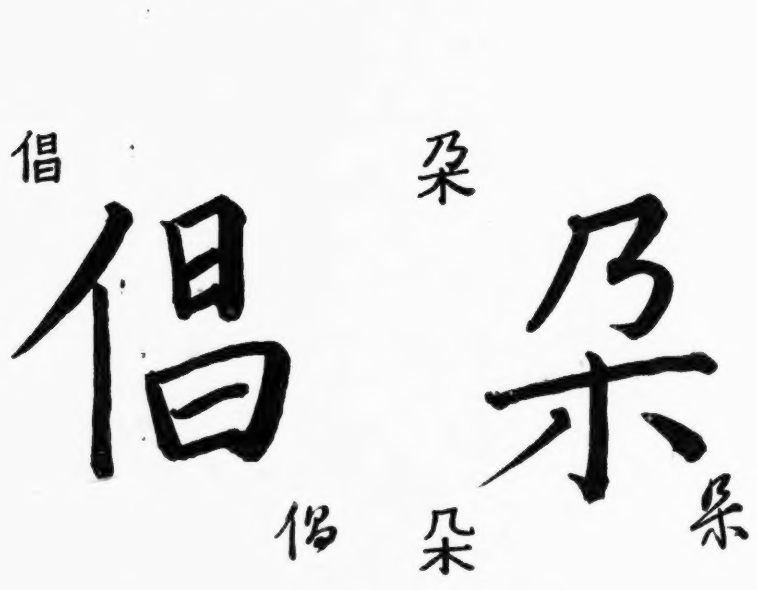
倡亂 ch'eung-luên: to lead an insurrection.

1182

朵 tóh, teú: a bunch; a cluster; a (flower).

一朵花 yat tóh fa: a stem of flower; a flower.

耳朵 Ǐ-tóh: lobe of the ear.



LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

752

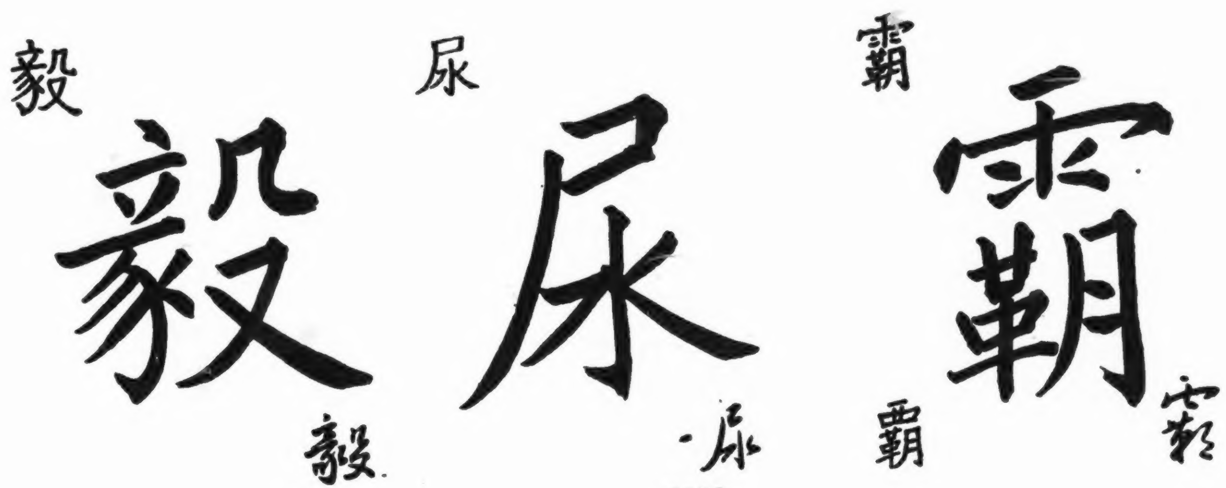
毅	ngaî: resolute; enduring.
毅力	ngaî-lîk: perseverance; grit.
毅然	ngaî-în: resolutely; determined.

767

尿	niû: urine.
尿缸	niû kong: jar for public convenience; urinal.
糖尿病	t'ōng-niû-pêng: diabetes.

802

霸	pà: to rule by force; tyrannize; to intimidate
霸佔	pà-chìm: encroach.
霸王	pà-wōng: a tyrant.

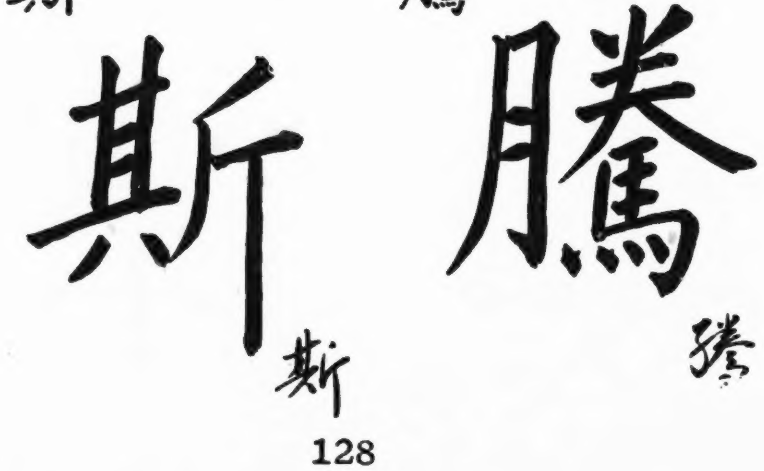


1070

斯	sz: this; these; any.
斯文	sz-mān: elegant; refined.
斯時	sz shī: at this time.

1118

騰	t'ăng: mount; to rise; to leap; to gallop.
騰躍	t'āng yeûk: to leap; to gallop.



LESSON 14

READING MATERIAL

老方在職業方面係一個船廠工人．佢在大Faû 對面海嘅海旁一間船廠做工．李大年雖然唔清楚佢做何種職位，但係聽聞話，佢做工成績幾好，已經升級同加人工．佢在工會極之活動．出席各種委員會．此等說話．係由一位朋友所講．此朋友同佢同一個工會，相信唔係言過其實．

根據大年所知，「和平社」社長梁顯利係老方最相好，最親密之朋友．

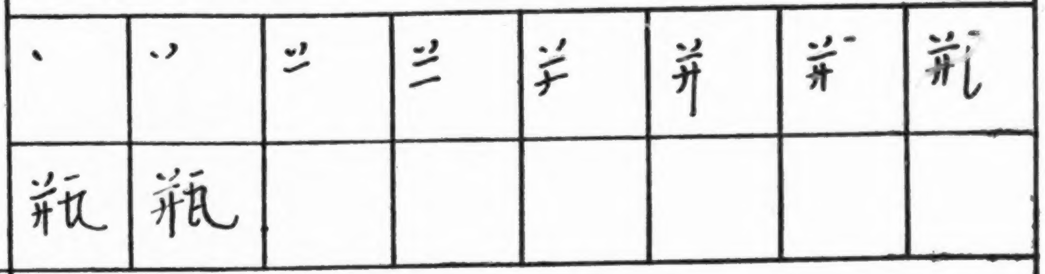
最後，馬明多謝李大年嘅幫忙，而且話，如果需要佢做證人，一定預早通知．

LESSON 14

WRITING MATERIAL

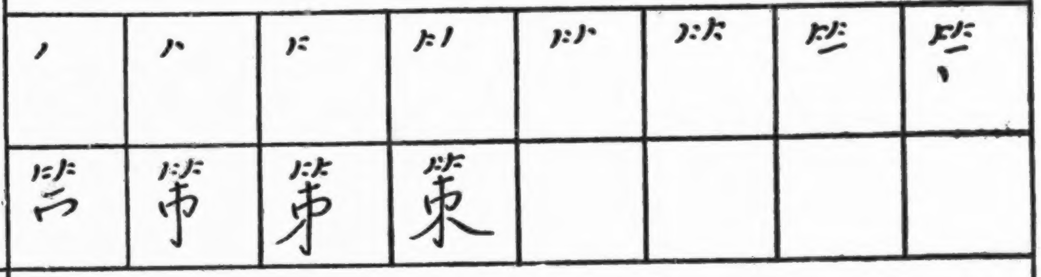
瓶

Character Number 847 Radical Number 98
Stroke Number 10 瓦



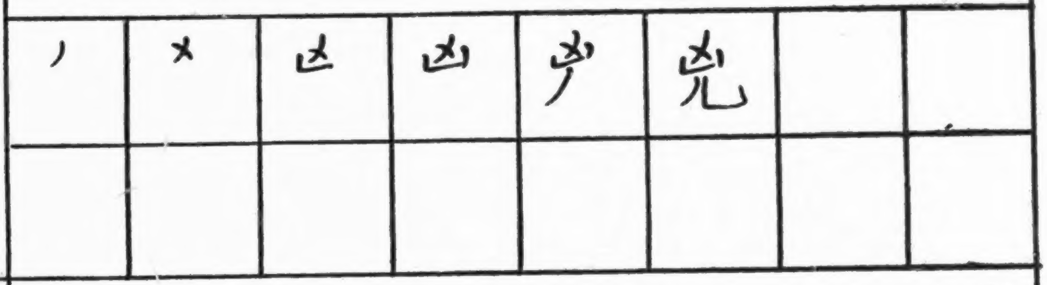
策

Character Number 14 Radical Number 118
Stroke Number 12 ⺮，竹



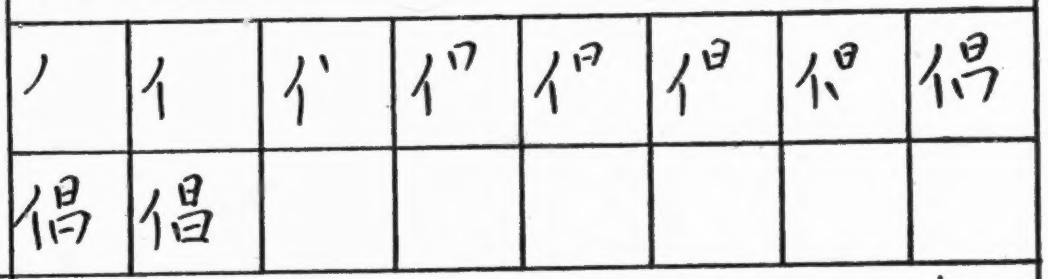
兇

Character Number 323 Radical Number 10
Stroke Number 6 儿



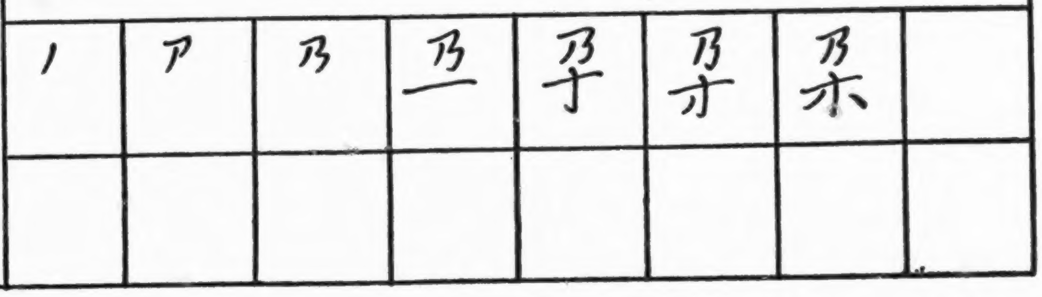
倡

Character Number 61 Radical Number 9
Stroke Number 10 亻，人



朵

Character Number 1182 Radical Number 75
Stroke Number 7 木



LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Mă: Kwaan Chuế-Yâm, ngŏh seúng heùng neĭ kaán-taan pò-kò yat-hă kwaan-ue Leĭ Taaî-Nīn tsô chìng-yān kè t'iū-ch'ā.

Kwaan: Hó à. Ts'ìng ts'ŏh-lôk chì k'ing la.

M: Kan-kuì ngŏh kè koon-ch'aàt, Leĭ Taaî-Nīn t'ūng Fong Tsòh-Chî m̄-haî chi-keí p'āng-yaŭ.

KW: K'uĭ hóh-nāng chi-tò Lŏ Fong kè oôt-tûng. Neĭ wâ haî mà?

M: Ni ti haî mŏ ts'òh. Pat-kwòh k'uĭ shóh chi-tò kè yĕ, t'ūng Lŏ Fong kè òn-taî ch'a-m̄-toh, mŏ mat m̄-hôp haú-kung.

KW: Neĭ kóm kóng haî mat ì-sz à?

M: Ngŏh-teî ĭ-king yaū Ī-Mān-Kûk* fong-mîn chi-tò Lŏ-Fong kè ka-t'ìng pooì-kíng. Ngŏh-teî haî ni fong-mîn peí-kaaù Lŏ Leĭ shóh chi kè kàng-ka ts'ing-ch'óh ts'eūng-saì.

KW: K'uĭ haì Meĭ-Kwòh kè oôt-tûng tîm à?

M: Ni yat-ts'āng peí-kaaù yaŭ t'aū-suĭ. Lŏ Leĭ kam-yât hoi yat-cheung mīng-taan, sé-mīng Lŏ-Fong oôt-tûng kè shĕ-t'uĕn. Pat-kwòh, yaû iù faì yat-faan shī-haû laī t'iū-ch'ā.

KW: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, heí-pat-shî leí shīng-kung chi lô chûng uĕn*?

M: M̄-kán-iù kè. Pat-kwòh ngŏh-teî yaŭ yat-kîn ì-ngoî kè shau-wôk

KW: Haî mat à?

M: Lŏ-Leĭ haì Heung-Kóng táng-haû laì Meĭ-Kwòk kè shī-haû, Chung-Kûng ts'ìng-pò-kûk fong-mîn ts'āng-king p'aaì yān t'ūng k'uĭ tsìp-t'aū. Pat-kwòh k'uĭ k'uĭ-tsuêt-chóh.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

KW: Chan kè*! Uē-kwốh haî kốm, ni ti siu-sik ying-koi t'ung-chi Luēn-Pong T'iū-Ch'ā-Kûk waâk-chế Chung-Yeung Ts'īng-Pỏ-Ch'uè lỏk.

M: Táng ngŏh chîng yat kỏh yaŭ haî-t'úng kè pỏ-kỏ peî neĭ chi-haû, neĭ hốh-ĭ k'uēn-ī paân-leĭ.

KW: Hố hố. Toh-tsê neĭ, Lŏ-Mă.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. You will not succeed if you don't have the necessary knowledge required for this position.
2. After intensive interrogation he was tired and became more cooperative.
3. A person has to go through all these stages before he realizes the importance of money.
4. After the agent has taken your deposition, he will send a copy to the office.
5. Since you are the Chairman, please do it as you deem necessary.
6. Concerning his testimony, I still have some doubt.
7. If that is the case, wouldn't it be an outright waste?
8. Although I suspect her, I hope it isn't true.
9. To do a thorough investigation on this case certainly would require some time.
10. I am not his best friend and I don't think he has one.
11. According to this record, you came to the U.S. with your parents before World War II.
12. Give her all the data we have in our file if she comes back.
13. Concerning this matter, I have some clues, but I am still not sure about it.
14. If you do it the way I told you, I'll see to it that your efforts are not wasted.

LESSON 15

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. Maybe I am poor but I am not going to change my testimony for money.

16. Since your son becomes a father, that makes you a grandfather.

LESSON 15

WORD LIST

1.	chi-keî p'aāng-yaŭ	intimate friends; best friend; i.e., tsuì hó kè p'aāng-yaŭ
2.	ȍn-taî	record; files (papers or documents); a.f., tóng-ȍn
3.	haú-kung	'testimony'
4.	pooì-kîng	background; information
5.	yat-ts'āng	in regard to this matter; for this matter (literally: one floor; a layer)
6.	t'aū-suĭ	a clue; way; means; the point at which to make a start
7.	faì yat-faan shī-haû	it requires some time; it takes time; (a)-faan AN for time elements and works
8.	heí-pat-shî	isn't it so? Isn't that so? heî (interrogative particles which implies a dissenting answer)
9.	Luēn-Pong T'iū Ch'ā Kûk	FBI; AN kȍh
10.	Chung-Yeung Ts'īng-Pȍ Ch'uȅ	CIA; AN kȍh
11.	k'uēn-ī paân-leĭ	one acted on expediency; to administer it or to carry it out as one sees fit or deems necessary; k'uēn-ī 'expedient; expediency'

LESSON 15

WORD LIST

12.	shīng-kung	succeeded;success; accomplished; accomplishment; achievement; attainment
13.	kung-k'ap	to supply

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

58

漲 cheùng: to flood; over flow.

水漲 shuí cheùng: the water rises

1119

突 tât: to rush out; to offend; suddenly.

突然 tât-în: suddenly; without warning

突出 tât-ch'ut: to project.

1361

洞 tûng: to see through; to perceive; a cave; cavity.

洞悉 tûng sik: to know thoroughly.

山洞 shaan tûng: a cave; cavern.

漲 漲 突 洞

漲 突 洞

漲 突 峒 洞

561

菌 kw'án: mushroom; fungus; mold.

地菌 teî kw'án: mushroom.

微菌 meī-kw'án: germs.

細菌 shaì-kw'án: bateria.

1120

糾 taú: to correct; to examine; to connect; to join; to combine; to associate.

糾正 taú-chìng: to correct.

糾紛 taú-fan: complication.

菌 糾

菌 糾

菌 糾

LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

308

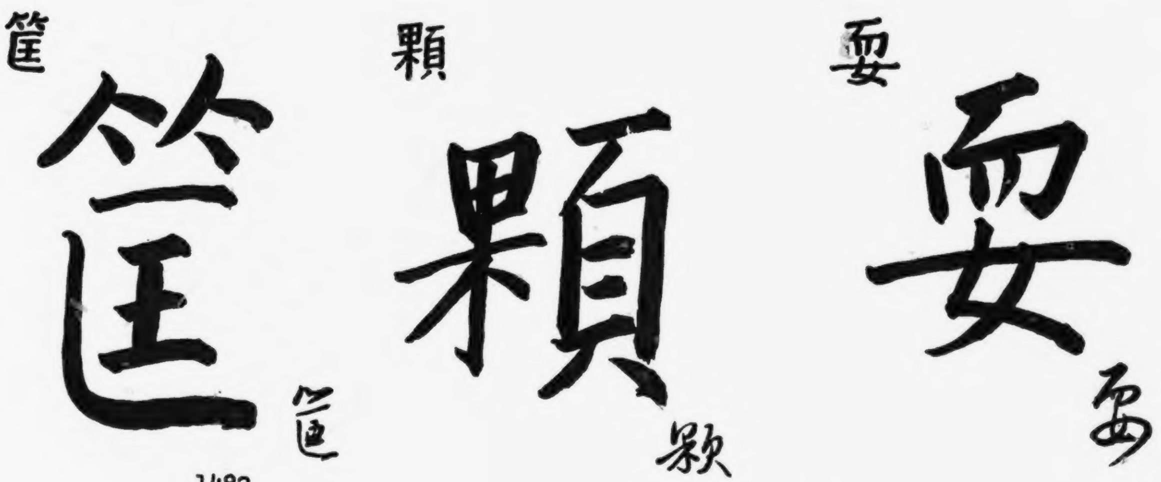
筐	hong: an open basket; a couch
竹筐	chuk hong: bamboo basket
筐床	hong-ch'ōng: a square couch

567

顆	kw'óh: a kernel; cl of small things as pearls, etc.: also of trees
一顆樹	yat kw'óh shuê: one tree.

930

耍	shá: to sport; to play.
玩耍	wāan-shá: to play.
遊耍	yaū shá: to stroll.

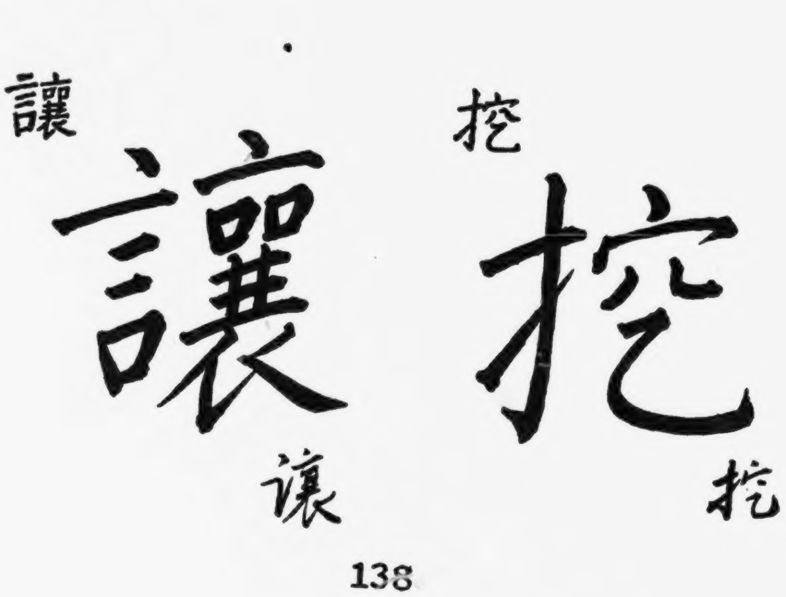


1482

讓	yeûng: to give away; to yield; to resign.
讓位	yeûng-waî: to give place; to abdicate
退讓	t'uì-yeûng: to yield; to retire.

1411

挖	waàt: to excavate; to dig; to scoop up; to gouge.
挖井	waàt tséng: to dig a well.



LESSON 15

READING MATERIAL

馬明調查李大年後，向關主任作一簡單報告．

根據馬明之觀察，李大年與 Tsòh 治方唔係知己朋友．對於老方之背景，思想，活動等等，唔係好清楚．佢所講嘅同移民局案底大約相同．所以李大年做證人，好似唔需要．

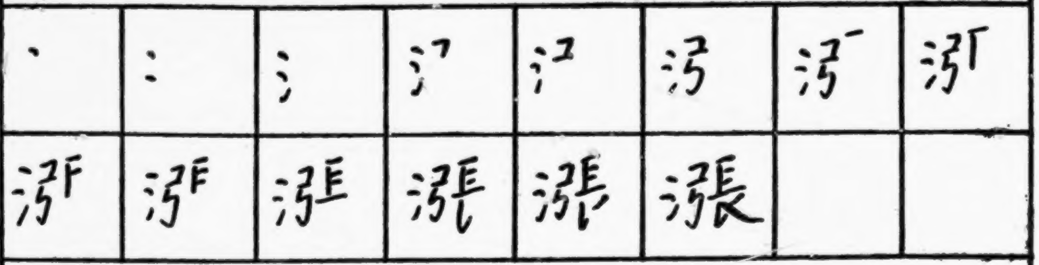
不過，由李大年方面，得倒 Tsòh 治方活動嘅社團名單，可以向此等社團調查．又知道李大年在香港等候來美之時，中共曾派人向佢接頭．此種消息，應供給聯 Pong 調查局及中央情報處．

LESSON 15

WRITING MATERIAL

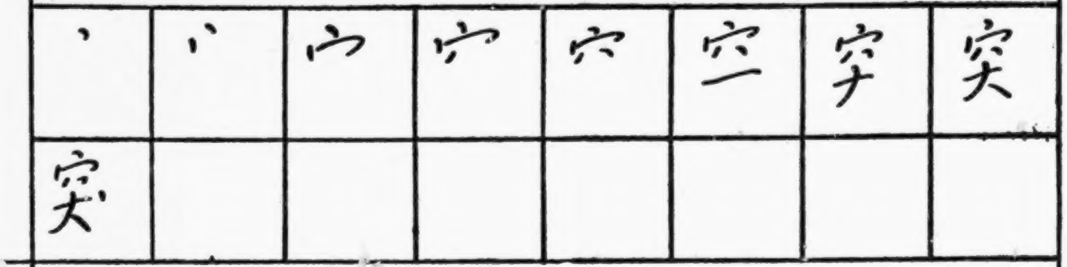
漲

Character Number 58　Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 14　氵, 水



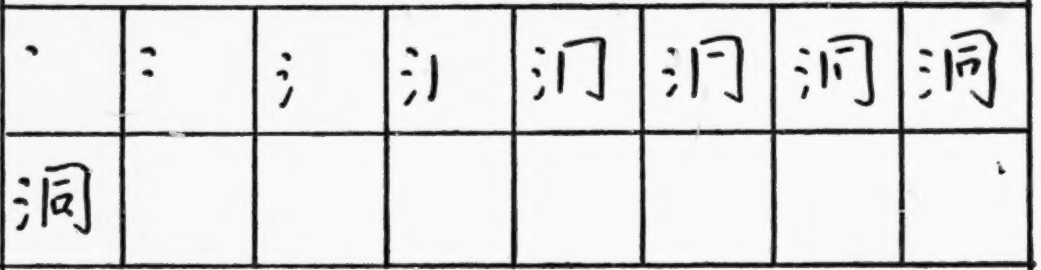
突

Character Number 1119　Radical Number 116
Stroke Number 9　穴



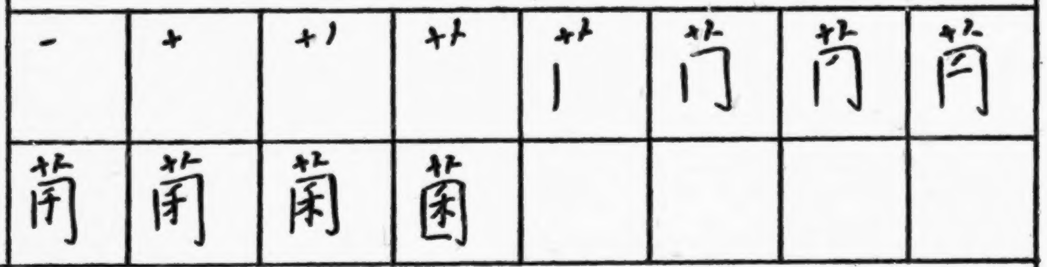
洞

Character Number 1361　Radical Number 85
Stroke Number 9　氵, 水



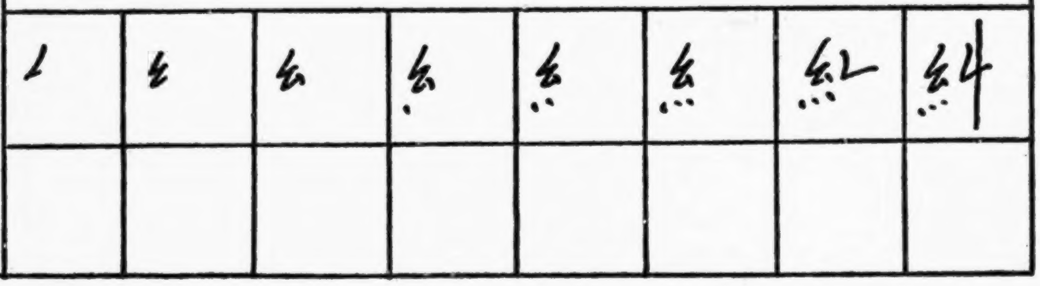
菌

Character Number 561　Radical Number 140
Stroke Number 12　艹, 艸



糾

Character Number 1120　Radical Number 120
Stroke Number 8　糹, 糸



LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Nğ: Ts'îng-mân neĭ haî m̄-haî Chue Wīng-Kwaî Sin-Shaang à?

Chue: Hó wâ. Neĭ haî pin waî* à?

N: Ngŏh kiù-tsô Nğ Pó-Mān, haî Luēn-Pong Ching-T'aàm Kûk (Luēn-Pong T'iū-Ch'ā Kûk) kè ching-t'aàm (t'iū-ch'ā uēn).

C: Yaŭ mat chí-kaaù à?

N: Ngŏh seúng t'iū-ch'ā yat-hă Tsê Pan ni kòh yān. K'uĭ ĭ-ts'īn t'ūng neĭ tsô kung, haî mà?

C: Neĭ haî m̄-haî t'iū-ch'ā ī-mān òn à?

N: M̄-haî. M̄-haî t'iū-ch'ā ī-mān òn. Haî Kwòk-Fōng Pô kiù ngŏh-teî t'iū-ch'ā Tsê Pan kè kung-tsòk pooī-kîng.

C: Tîm-kaaî à?

N: Yan-waî k'uĭ shan-ts'îng huì tsô Kwòk-Fōng Pô yat-kòh chûng-iù chik-waî, shóh-ĭ iù t'iū-ch'ā yat-hă.

C: Neĭ seúng t'iū-ch'ā ti mi-yĕ à?

N: Taî-yat, neĭ kòk-tak Tsê Pan t'ūng neĭ tsô kung tsô-tak tîm-yeûng* à?

C: K'uĭ kè kung-tsôk ngŏh fei-sheūng chi moŏn-ī. Hóh-ĭ wâ haî ngŏh kè tak-lîk chôh-shaú.

N: K'uĭ haî neĭ shuè tsô kung kè shī-haû, t'ūng k'eī-t'a kè fóh-keì k'ing-tak maaī mà?

C: K'uĭ hó hó yān-pán. K'uĭ t'ūng kòh-kòh fóh-keì to hôp-tak maaī. Haî yat-kòh naān tak kè fóh-keì.

N: K'uĭ tîm-kaaî ts'z̄-chóh kóh fân kung à?

C: Yan-waî k'uĭ iù huì Meĭ Tung, shóh ĭ leī-hoi ni shuè.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

N: K'uĭ chung-ì yám tsaú mà? Chung-ì tó-pòk mà? Hò kaaú-saam kaaú-seì mà?

C: K'uĭ hó shiú p'iū, tó, yám, ch'ui.

N: Neĭ kòk-tak k'uĭ yaŭ mŏ tuì Meĭ-Kwòk pat-chung kè haāng-waī t'ūng sz-seúng à?

C: Ngŏh chi-tò k'uĭ yâp-chóh Meĭ tsîk. K'uĭ mŏ mat tuì Meĭ-Kwòk pat-chung kè haāng-waī t'ūng sz-seúng.

N: Neĭ hóh-ĭ kóng keî-kòh tuì Tsê Pan yaŭ yîng-shik ti yān kè sìng-mîng, teî-chî peî ngŏh chi mà?

C: Tong-īn* hóh-ĭ la. Táng ngŏh lóh cheung chî sé peî neĭ lòh.

N: Toh-tsê-saaì! Toh-tsê-saaì.

LESSON 16

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Please don't be afraid, the police will protect you.
2. He is a man of good character, there is still a question of security to be considered.
3. Are you telling me that my assistant is not loyal?
4. He indulges in gambling, and he owes people money.
5. He resigned his present position, and he will take a position with the other company.
6. Your work is not satisfactory, you have to improve yourself.
7. She may be very friendly to you but to her colleagues she is not cooperative.
8. She came here to seek your advice on this immigration case.
9. He is a good man, and I like to see him promoted.
10. Thank you very much for your cooperation. I will come to see you again next Tuesday.
11. Dr. Chan, there is a man from the FBI to see you.
12. You are welcome, and please come again.
13. Mr. Lee and Mrs. Wong will accompany you on this trip, but you have to come back by yourself.
14. Since this is an immigration case, the FBI may not have anything to do with it.
15. The CIA, the FBI and the Immigration Department are three different government agencies.
16. I am very satisfied with his report. I think I will find the solution to the problem.

LESSON 16

WORD LIST

1.	Wīng-Kwaì; wīng kwaì	first name (given name); (literally: glory and honor)
2.	hó-wâ	thank you; you are welcome. Distinguish ho wâ* 'fine words; well said; propitious expression'; i.e., k'uǐ kóng hó wâ*
3.	shan-ts'íng	to apply
4.	Pó-Mān	transliteration for Bowman (given name)
5.	luēn-pong	federal government; central government; syn: chúng-yeung
6.	Ching-t'aảm kûk	detective bureau; bureau of investigation; syn; t'iū ch'ā kûk; AN kòh
7.	Pan; pan	transliteration for Ben (given name); (literally: a guest); syn: yān-haảk; (colloq) loī-pan (literary)
8.	ī-mān òn	immigration case, AN kîn; kòh
9.	moǒn-ì	to satisfy; satisfactory; satisfaction; to please; ngǒh hó moǒn-ì 'I am pleased; I am satisfied'

LESSON 16

WORD LIST

10.	tak-lîk chôh-shaú	an able or indispensable assistant; *tak-lîk* 'able;indispensable'; *chôh-shaú* 'helper; assistant'
11.	k'ing-tak-maaī	amiable; charming; friendly (colloq)
12.	hôp-tak-maaī	sociable; cooperative; easily gets along with other people (colloq)
13.	naān tak	very hard to find; rare; seldom; rarely
14.	ts'ž	to quit, resign, i.e., *k'uĭ ts'ž kung* 'he resigns or quits his job'; phrase; words; terminology, AN *kỏh*
15.	tő-pỏk	to gamble; gambling; to wage
16.	p'iū	whoring; to visit prostitute; syn: *kaaú saam kaaú seì* (colloq)
17.	ch'ui	to blow; to smoke opium; addicted to opium; to play wind instrument; i.e., *k'uĭ shîk a-p'ìn in* 'he smokes opium'
18.	yān-pắn	personality; character (person); disposition; AN *kỏh*
19.	hỏ	to like; love; be fond of; to indulge; i.e., *k'uĭ hỏ yắm tsaú* 'he loves to drink'; a.f., *shì-hỏ* (See 12.7)

LESSON 16

WORD LIST

20.	kaaú-saam kaaú seì	to fool around; to profligate, (See Les 16.16)
21.	pat-chung	disloyal; infidelity; pat 'not; dis-; isn't'; syn: m̄

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

365

搖 iū: to shake; move; agitate

搖船 iū shuēn: to row a boat

搖動 iū-tûng: to shake; oscillate

搖擺 iū-paaí: swaggering

招搖 chiu-iū: trouble making; show off

999

涉 shìp: to concern; to wade.

干涉 kon-shìp: to involve; to interfere; to implicate.

交涉 kaau-shìp: to negotiate with.

225

複 fuk: double; to repeat

複雜 fuk-tsaâp: complicate

重複 ch'ùng-fuk: to duplicate; double

搖 涉 複

搖 涉 複

搖 涉 複

860

騙 p'ìn: to cheat; to swindle; to defraud.

受騙 shaû p'ìn: to be cheated.

騙局 p'ìn kûk: plan for swindle; swindle set-up

1082

貸 t'aaì: lend (on interest).

借貸 tsè-t'aaì: to lend money.

騙 貸

騙 貸

骗 贷

LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

1266

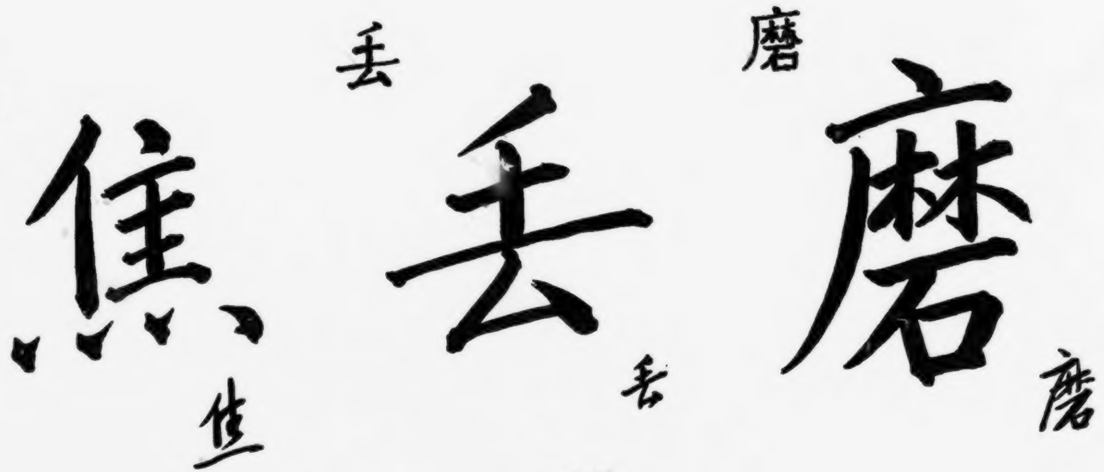
焦	tsiu: scorched; dried up; anxious.
焦點	tsiu-tím: focus.
焦慮	tsiu-luî: anxious; worrying thought.

1153

丟	tiu: to throw away; to cast down; to lose.
丟開	tiu hoi: to put aside; not to mention.
丟去	tiu huì: to throw away.
丟棄	tiu heì: to reject; to throw away.

708

磨	mōh: to grind; to sharpen; to rub; to polish.
磨刀	mōh to: to grind a knife.
磨利	mōh-leî: to sharpen.
磨練	mōh-lîn: to work at; to learn by experience; to discipline.
磨房	mōh-fōng: a mill.

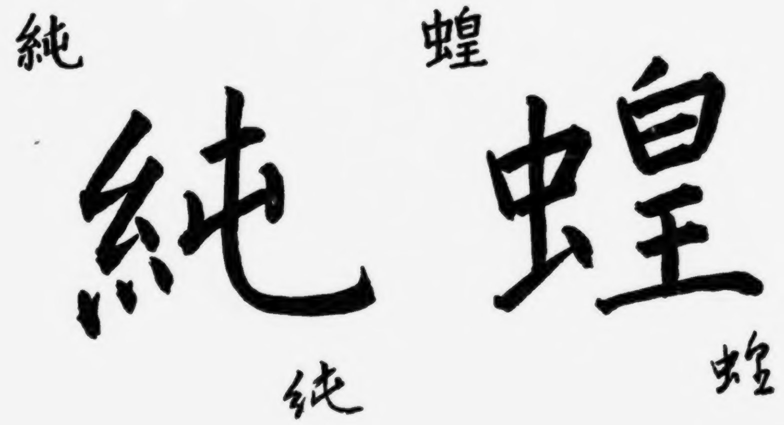


1023

純	shūn: sincere; pure; unmixed; uniform.
純熟	shūn-shûk: tame.
純正	shūn-chìng: upright.

1437

蝗	wōng: locust.
蝗虫	wōng-ch'ūng: common locust.



LESSON 16

READING MATERIAL

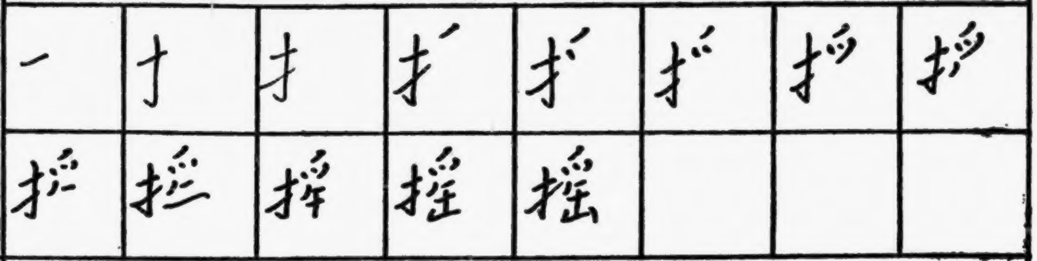
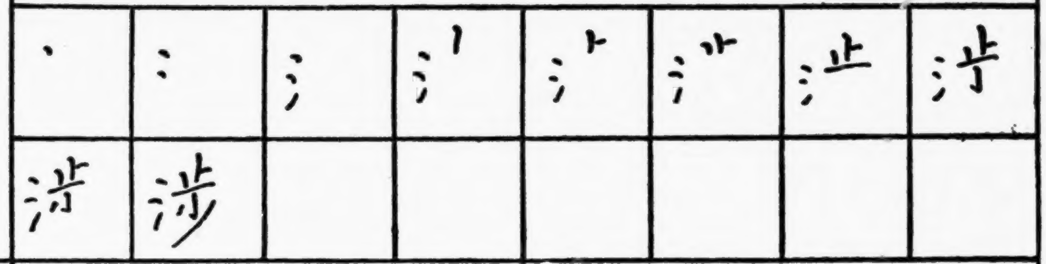
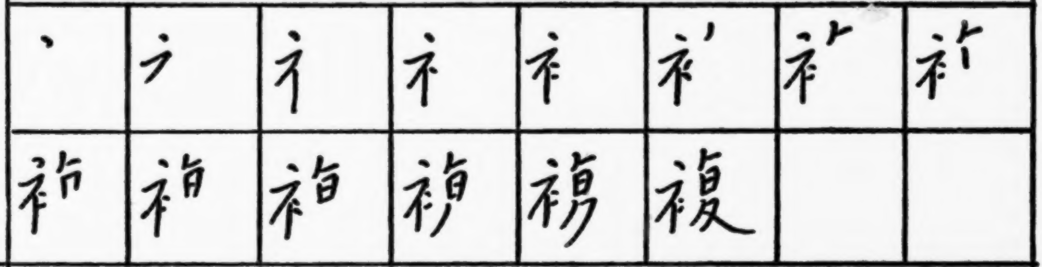
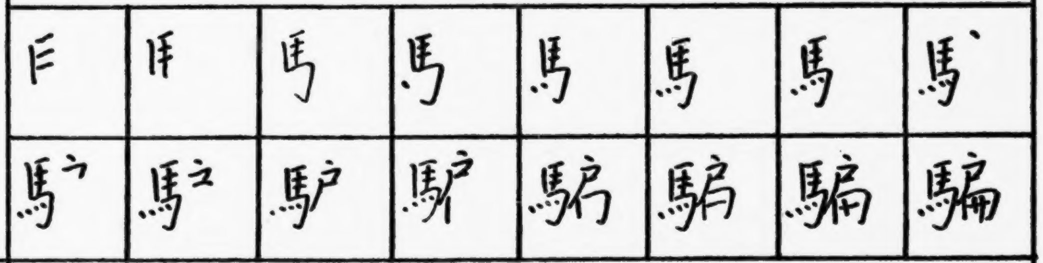
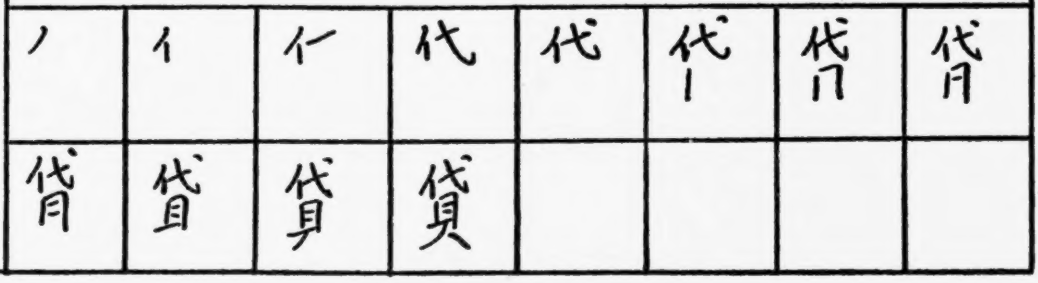
謝Pan向國防部shan請一個職位，美國政府派聯-Pong偵探伍保文調查其歷史，行為，思想等等．伍保文第一步工作係首先到老謝之舊雇主朱榮貴處查問．

朱榮貴初時以為伍保文因為調查移民案而來，後經伍保文將來意講明之後，老朱就放心照實對答．

根據所講．謝Pan之工作非常滿意，做事認真，與同事合作．人品又好．不醉酒，不賭博．對於美國，亦無不忠之思想與行為．佢因為轉往美東，所以辭工．

LESSON 16

WRITING MATERIAL

揺	Character Number 365 Stroke Number 13 Radical Number 64 扌, 手	
渉	Character Number 999 Stroke Number 10 Radical Number 85 氵, 水	
複	Character Number 225 Stroke Number 14 Radical Number 145 衤, 衣	
騙	Character Number 860 Stroke Number 19 Radical Number 187 馬	
貸	Character Number 1082 Stroke Number 12 Radical Number 154 貝	

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Nğ: Siú-Tsé, ts'íng-mân Luī T'in-Ts'oī Sin-Shaang haî shuè mà?

Secretary: Ôh! Neĭ haî m̄-haî chìng-wâ ta tîn-wâ* laī kè Luēn-Pong Ching-T'aàm Kûk* kóh waî* Nğ Pó-Mān Sin-Shaang à?

N: Hó wâ, Luī Sin-Shaang yeùk ngŏh haí ni kòh shī-haû laī kìn k'uĭ. K'uĭ haî shuè mà?

Sec: M̄-koi neĭ táng yat-chân. Táng ngŏh t'ung-chi k'uĭ.

N: Luī Sin-Shaang.

Luī: Ts'íng ts'ŏh, ts'íng ts'ŏh. Nğ Sin-Shaang.

N: Yan-waî yaŭ yat-waî* Tsê Pan Sin-Shaang seúng shan-ts'íng yat-fân chìng-foó kung, ngŏh-teî seúng t'iū-ch'ā yat-hă k'uĭ kè pooì-kíng. Ngŏh hei-mông neĭ nāng-kaù toh-toh pong-mōng.

L: Tong-īn* la, tong-īn* la! Tsê Ban haî ngŏh yat-kòh lŏ p'āng-yaŭ kè tsaí. K'uĭ hó-ts'ž ngŏh tsẑ-keí kè tsź-chât yat-yeûng.

N: Neĭ tuì-ue k'uĭ kè ka-t'īng waān-kíng ts'ing-ch'óh mà?

L: Ngŏh shâp-fan ts'ing-ch'óh k'uĭ kè ka-t'īng waān-kíng. K'uĭ ti ka-yān kòh-kòh to haî "on-fân shaú-keí".

N: Neĭ shûk Tsê Ban ti p'āng-yaŭ mà?

L: Ngŏh koó ngŏh kè taaî-tsaí t'ūng taî-î-tsaí hó shûk k'uĭ ti p'āng-yaŭ.

N: Neĭ chi-tò k'uĭ yaŭ mat m̄-hó kè tsaâp-kwaàn, t'ūng m̄-hó kè shì-hò mà?

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

L: K'uĭ mŏ mat m̄-hó kè tsaâp-kwaàn, keî haan-kîm; ī-ch'é háng tsô kung. Sui-ìn k'uĭ ch'ut laì tsô kung mŏ keî noî, waâk-ché yîk ch'uĕ-chóh keî-kòh sin haî ngān-hōng* lòh.

N: Uē-kwóh neĭ yaŭ yat-kîn hó chûng-iù kè kung-tsòk, neĭ ooĭ m̄-ooĭ sùn-laaî k'uĭ huì tsô à?

L: Ngŏh tuì k'uĭ hó yaŭ sùn-sam. Ngŏh ĭ-waì ngŏh ooĭ sùn-laaî k'uĭ huì tsô.

N: Ngŏh chûng seúng t'Ūng neĭ kè kung-tsź k'ing yat-hă kwaan-ue Tsê Ban ti p'āng-yaŭ; tak mà?

L: Tak la. Neĭ hóh-ĭ ì-ka huì k'uĭ tsô kung kè ìn-shoh kung-sz wán k'uĭ.

N: M̄-koi-saaì, Luì Sin-Shaang.

L: M̄-shaì m̄-koi, Nğ Sin-Shaang.

LESSON 17

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. It is convenient to have a checking account in the bank.
2. He started to sell insurance when he was very young.
3. It is nice to have faith but you should also have confidence in yourself.
4. If a person is not thrifty, how could he save any money.
5. Under the circustances, you will have to abide by the law.
6. For an old person in China, to have no direct descendents is considered a sad and tragic thing.
7. If there is faith, there will be hope.
8. Those who are in the civil service are mostly U.S. citizens.
9. He thinks he can identify a genius when he sees one.
10. It rained and thundered last night. I did not go out.
11. I am not a thrifty person, but I have a savings account with the Bank of Canton in S.F. Chinatown.
12. The environment on the country side is not the same as that in the city.
13. You have to trust me, and let me do it my way.
14. She wishes to see her sons and nephews before she dies.
15. Your son is very talented, and you should be very proud of him.

LESSON 17

WORD LIST

1.	Luī; luī	family name; (literally: thunder), i.e., Luī Sin Shaang 'Mr. Lui'
2.	T'in-Ts'oī; t'in-ts'oī	given name; (literally: genius; talent); i.e., k'uĭ hṓ yaŭ t'in-ts'oī, 'he is very talented'
3.	yat-fân	one; a share; AN for newspaper, magazine and etc.
4.	chìng-foò kúng	government job; civil service; AN fân
5.	hei-mông	to wish, hope, expect; a.f., môn̂g
6.	tsź-chât	direct descendants; (literally: sons and nephews)
7.	waān-kíng	environment; circumstance; surrounding; AN kòh
8.	"on-fân shaú-keî"	law abiding; public obedience
9.	tsaâp-kwaàn	habit; accustomed; conventional; one's old way
10.	haan-kîm	thrifty; frugal
11.	ch'uĕ	to save, collect; ch'ŏ (colloq); syn: ch'uĕ-ch'uk
12.	sin	a cent; money, syn: ts'īn* (transliteration of cents)
13.	sùn-laaî	to trust, have confidence in, believe; syn: sùn

LESSON 17

WORD LIST

14.	sùn-sam	belief; faith; i.e., k'uĭ yaŭ sùn-sam 'he has faith'
15.	kung-tsź	son (your), (honorific form)
16.	ìn-shoh (transliteration)	insurance; a.f., pố-hîm
17.	ch'uēn-taât	to carry a message; to pass on the message; information; messenger

LESSON 17

READING MATERIAL

謝Pan所熟識之人，有一位爲雷天才先生·伍保文又向此位雷先生調查·雷先生爲一大商人·有辦公室，有女秘書·故先用電話約定時間相見·去到之時，由女秘書傳達，然後入雷先生之私人寫字樓·

雷先生與謝Pan之父親爲深交朋友，所以關於謝Pan之行爲·性情，習慣，都認識清楚·

根據雷先生之意見·謝Pan爲一忠誠可靠，勤儉有志之青年·雖然做工未久，現時在銀行已有存欵·

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Nğ: Ts'ìng-mân Luī Wai-Lām* Sin-Shaang haì shuè mà?

Luī: Ngŏh tsaû haî lòh. Sin-Shaang kwaì sìng-mīng à?

Nğ: Ngŏh kiù tsô Nğ Bó-Mān, haî Luēn-Pong Ching-T'aȁm Kûk* kè ching-t'aȁm.

L: Yaŭ mat chì-kaaù ne, Nğ Ching-T'aȁm?

Nğ: Ngŏh seúng heùng neĭ mân yat-hă kwaan-ue Tsê Pan Sin-Shaang ni yat-kòh yān.

L: K'uĭ faân-chóh mat tsuî à?

Nğ: K'uĭ m̄-haî faân tsuî. Pat-kwòh k'uĭ shan-ts'ìng yat-fân t'ūng kwòk-fōng peì-mât yaŭ kwaan kè kung-tsôk. Tuì-ue k'uĭ kè yat-ts'aì ngŏh-teî seúng chi-tò ts'ing-ch'óh.

L: Ôh! K'uĭ haî ngŏh kè lŏ t'ūng-hôk, lŏ p'āng-yaŭ. Ngŏh pó-chìng k'uĭ haî yat-kòh hó yān.

Nğ: K'uĭ ni kòh yān haî tîm-yeûng* kà?

L: K'uĭ tsô sẑ hó tsing-saì, hó yîng-chan, tuì yān hó chung-haŭ. K'uĭ haî yat-kòh hóh-k'aaù kè yān.

Ng: Neĭ shûk k'uĭ ti p'āng-yaŭ mà?

L: Ngŏh ch'a-m̄-toh shik-saaì k'uĭ ti p'āng-yaŭ. Yaū-k'eī-shî kóh keì kòh peì-kaaù ts'an-mât ti kè. Ngŏh hóh-ĭ wâ k'uĭ-teî kòh-kòh to haî "fûng kung shaú faàt" kè kung-mān. K'uĭ-teî m̄-haî pat-leūng fân-tsź.

Ng: Ts'ìng-mân neĭ tuì k'uĭ yaŭ mat p'ai-p'ìng à?

L: Ngŏh ĭ-waî k'uĭ yaŭ shî hó waān-káng. Pat-kwòh ni ti m̄-hóh-ĭ wâ haî kuĭ kè luèt tîm.

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Ng: Luī Sin-Shaang, Ngŏ̄h hó toh-tsê neĭ kè pong-mŏ̄ng.

L: M̄-hó kóm wâ, Ngĭ Ching-T'aàm.

LESSON 18

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Stubbornness may be said to be his weakness.
2. I have no comment at the present moment, but I may have something to say about her later.
3. His attitude is arrogant.
4. It is necessary to reconsider his proposition.
5. He is very loyal and kind. For this reason, I am willing to vouch for him.
6. Please get everything all cleaned up. There will be an inspection today.
7. She is very thorough and serious about her work. This kind of employee is very hard to get.
8. Law abiding citizens are necessary in any society.
9. Loyalty is important to the country.
10. The undesirable elements will be liquidated.
11. It is necessary for me to think it over thoroughly before I give you any answer.
12. They are disloyal, stubborn, and undependable.
13. He is being punished for the crime he committed.
14. I guarantee that he will return everything to you in perfect condition tomorrow night.
15. Every citizen should be loyal to his country.
16. He is my closest friend, and I will stand by him.

LESSON 18

WORD LIST

1.	faân tsuî	to commit a crime; to offend (as against the law); violation of law; i.e., k'uĭ faân mat tsuî à?
2.	yat-ts'aì	everything; the whole of; all; i.e., yat-ts'aì kè ch'e 'all the cars'; k'uĭ kè yat-ts'aì 'everything about him; everything that is his'
3.	pó-chìng	to guarantee, vouch; syn: taam-pó
4.	tsing-saì	in detail; fine; thorough; elaborate; i.e., k'uĭ tsô sẑ hó tsing-saì
5.	yîng-chan	serious; conscientious
6.	chung-haŭ	loyal and kind; integrity; true-hearted; honest; syn: chung-shât i.e., k'uĭ hó chung-haŭ; k'uĭ haî chung-haŭ kè yan̄
7.	hóh k'aaù	dependable; reliable; trustworthy; syn: k'aaù-tak chuê
8.	"fûng-kung shaú faàt"	law abiding; public obedience; i.e., k'uĭ "fûng-kung shaú faàt"
9.	kung-mān	citizen, AN kòh
10.	pat-leūng fân-tsź	bad or undesirable elements; pat-leūng, syn: m̄-hó; fân-tsź (See Les 3.7)

LESSON 18

WORD LIST

11.	p'ai-p'îng	to criticize, comment; criticism
12.	waān-kấng	stubborn; obstinate
13.	luềt tîm	bad point; weakness; short-coming; i.e., *k'uĭ* *yaŭ* *hố* *toh* *luềt*-*tîm*; syn: *yaî* *ch'uề**; ant: *yau*-*tîm;* *hố*-*ch'uề*

LESSON 18

READING MATERIAL

雷謝兩家，既然係世交，謝Pan與雷天才之公子雷威林*當然來往甚密；又因大家係青年人，威林對於謝Pan之思想及活動亦當然比較雷天才更清楚．所以關於謝Pan之政治思想，社會活動以及對政府是否盡忠等等，最好向威林查問．

雷威林在一間保險公司任職．伍保文依照雷天才所指示之地址，往見威林．

根據威林所講，不只謝Pan本人對國盡忠，佢所相交之朋友，亦係一樣．所以對於盡忠問題，佢敢保證．

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Oō: Lŏ Nğ, tuì-ue t'iū-ch'ā Tsê Pan kè kung-tsòk, neĭ kaaú-tîm meî à?

Nğ: Kaú-shīng loh. Pat-kwòh ngŏh chûng seúng haî līng yat fong-mîn īn-kaù yat-hă.

Oō: Chiù în-tsoî kè ts'īng-yīng, k'uĭ yaŭ-mŏ mân-t'aī à?

Nğ: Hóh-ĭ wâ uēn-ts'uēn mŏ mân-t'aī.

Oō: Neĭ hóh-faú haî haú-t'aū-sheûng yeùk-leûk sin laī yat-kòh pò-kò à?

Ng: Tong-īn* hóh-ĭ la.

Oō: K'uĭ kè kung-tsòk haaû-nāng tîm à?

Nğ: Háng yîng-chan, yaŭ ngaî-lîk, yaŭ chaàk-yâm sam. Pat-kwòh yaŭ-shī* waān-káng ti.

Oō: K'uĭ "toî-yān-tsîp-mât" tîm à?

Ng: Wōh-oî hóh-ts'an, ī-ch'é háng hei-shaang tsẑ-keî kè kam-ts'īn t'ūng shī-kaàn pong-mōng p'aāng-yaŭ.

Oō: K'uĭ sz-yān kè pán-hâng ne?

Nğ: Chung-shīng hóh-k'aaù. K'ān-kîm ī-ch'é yaŭ chì-heì. Leûng-tô taaî, yaû mŏ pat-leūng shì-hò.

Oō: K'uĭ yaŭ hìng-ts'uì yám leŭng-pooi mà?

Nğ: Chî-haî "fūng-ch'eūng tsòk-hìng", "shik-hóh ī-chí". Ts'uēn mō naaû sẑ.

Oō: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, neĭ chûng tá-suèn īn-kaù pin yat fong-mîn kè yĕ à?

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Nğ: Ngŏh seūng ìn-kaù yat-hă kwaan ue k'uĭ kè shĕ-t'uēn oôt-tûng.

Oō: Kóm, ngŏh hei-môngs neĭ tsó yât paân t'ŏh ni kîn sẑ.

Nğ: Ni kòh laĭ-paaì meĭ, ngŏh hó-ĭ kaau ch'ut shue-mîn pò-kò.

Oō: M̄-koi, m̀-koi.

LESSON 19

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I will give you a written report on the matter tomorrow.
2. I finished the work according to your instructions.
3. He is courageous and kind. He will help those in distress.
4. Members will be free of charge, but non-members will have to pay five dollars each.
5. He is responsible for his conduct.
6. If you don't know how to cook this food, you should let someone else do it.
7. I don't object to drinking, but one should know when to stop.
8. I know you don't like dancing, but be considerate just for this unusual occasion.
9. On the surface, a person may be broadminded, but at times he may be very narrow minded.
10. To make friends you must be friendly and amiable.
11. It is possible that you have borrowed money from him.
12. It would be all right with me even if it's not a promise in written form.
13. The effectiveness of this drug is still uncertain, but many doctors have used it for the common cold.
14. Over 90% of the population in Chinatown is Chinese. Is that right?
15. It took me all day yesterday to straighten out the mess.
16. This is a great sacrifice on your part. Your service will be greatly appreciated.

LESSON 19

WORD LIST

1. kaaú-tîm	to straighten out; to finish up; to put something in order; to bring order out of chaos; (colloq); syn: paân-t'ŏh
2. kaú shīng	90%; $\frac{9}{10}$; almost; mostly
3. hóh-faú	is it possible? May it be; faú (negative or interrogative particle); hóh-faú (literary; it is used in question of whether you may or whether you can)
4. haú-t'aū-sheûng	oral; verbal; orally; word of mouth; i.e., haú-t'aū-sheûng kẻ pỏ-kỏ, 'oral report'; ant: shue-mîn pỏ-kỏ, 'written report'
5. haaû-nāng (yaŭ..-haaû-nāng)	efficient; effective; proficient; efficiency; capability; i.e., k'uĭ kẻ kung-tsòk haaû-nāng hó ko 'he is very efficent in his works'; k'uĭ hó yaŭ haaû-nāng, 'he is very efficient'
6. ngaî-lîk (yaŭ...ngaî-lîk)	perseverance; grit; sustained; i.e., k'uĭ tsô sẑ yaŭ ngaî-lîk 'he works with perseverance'

LESSON 19

WORD LIST

7.	wōh-oí hóh-ts'an	friendly; amiable; affable congenial and lovable; wōh-oí, syn: hóh-ts'an
8.	hei-shaang	to sacrifice; sacrifice; i.e., k'uĭ hei-shaang k'uĭ kè shaang-mîng, 'he sacrificed his life'
9.	sz-yān	private; personal; ant: kung-kûng
10.	leûng-tô taaî	broadminded; magnanimous
11.	pán-haâng	conduct; behavior
12.	"fūng-ch'eūng-tsòk-hìng"	to take part in an activity (drinking, gambling, etc) merely for fun without taking it seriously
13.	"shik-hóh-ī-chí"	it is better to quit while you are ahead; to stop at the right time or appropriate moment.
14.	paân-t'ŏh	finished; completed; have done; syn: kaaú-tîm
15.	shue-mîn pò-kò	written report; ant: haú-t'aū sheûng (See Les 19.4)
16.	tsoî	in, at, on, (literary); syn: haí i.e., k'uĭ haí (tsoî) ni-kaan Ŭe-Īn Hôk-Haaû tûk shue.

LESSON 19

WORD LIST

17. hō̆h	which; how; what; why; (literary interrogative particle) i.e., hō̆h-shī; syn: keî-shī*; hō̆h-yān syn: pin-kỏh
18. fuk-tsaâp	miscellaneous; mixed; redundant; confused; medley

LESSON 19

READING MATERIAL

關於伍保文調查謝Pan之結果．胡局長未接到書面報告之前，請伍調查員先作一次口頭報告．

伍保文話，佢之調查工作．已九成完妥．但想再向謝Pan在社團活動方面，研究一吓，然後交上書面報告．

照伍保文之意見，現時社會上之社團．份子複雜．一個人如果不分好壞，加入不良社團，思想行為．易受影響．所以，對於謝Pan與何種社團發生關係，必要查明清楚．

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

King-Ch'aàt: Neĭ-teî ni shuè yaŭ kìp òn faàt-shaang; haî mà?

Ngān-Hōng Uēn: Mŏ-ts'òh. Taaî-yeùk* shâp-nğ fan-chung ts'ìn yaŭ yān haî ni shuè tá-kìp.

K.Ch.: Ngān-hōng* peî kìp-chóh keî-toh ts'ìn* à?

Ng.H.U.: Taaî-yeùk* î-ts'in man.

K.Ch: Keî-toh ts'ìn* cheung kè ngān-chi à?

Ng.H.U.: Yaŭ ti nğ-shâp man cheung kè, yaŭ ti î-shâp man cheung kè.

K.Ch.: Neĭ-teî yaŭ mŏ ngān-chî hô-mă kè keî-lûk à?

Ng.H.U.: Yaŭ ti yaŭ keî-lûk, yaŭ ti mŏ keî-lûk.

K.Ch.: Keî-toh kòh ts'aâk à? K'uĭ-teî yaŭ mŏ taaì p'aaù à?

Ng.H.U.: Chî-haî kìn-tó yat kòh taaì shaú-ch'eung. Pat-kwòh k'uĭ wâ chûng yaŭ kòh t'ūng-tóng.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ haî mi-yĕ kè yān? Keî taaî* nìn-keî? Keî ko à?

Ng.H.U.: K'uĭ hó-ts'z̆ haî paâk-yān, taaî-yeùk* sa-â suì tsóh-yaû*, chung-táng shan-ts'oì, m̄-ko m̄-aì.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ cheùk mat shaam à? Yaŭ mat tâk-tìm mà?

Ng.H.U.: K'uĭ cheùk yat t'ò fooi-shik kè sai-chong, paâk sut-shaam, mŏ tá t'aai, mŏ taaì mô*, taaì haak ngaăn-kèng*.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ ti t'aū-faàt ch'eūng mà? K'uĭ yaŭ mŏ so à?

Ng.H.U.: K'uĭ ti t'aū-faàt tsung-shik kè, fei-tak hó tuén; yaŭ se-shiú oō-so, pat-kwòh m̄-haî keî ch'eūng.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ feì yik-waâk shaù à?

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Ng.H.U.: K'uĭ mā-mā* feī, k'uĭ yaŭ sheung hâ-p'ā.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ chûng yaŭ mŏ k'eī-tá kè tâk tím à?

Ng.H.U.: K'uĭ kòh peí pín-pín; tsóh-pin mîn yaŭ yat-lap taaî kè mâk*.

K.Ch.: Chûng yaŭ mat à?

Ng.H.U.: K'uĭ chèk yaû-shaú kè meĭ-chí yaŭ yat-chêk taaî hūng-pó-shêk kaaì-chí. K'uĭ kòh haú ngaaŭ-chuê yat-chi luĭ-sùng in.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ haāng lô tsaú, yik-waâk ts'ŏh ch'e tsaú à?

Ng.H.U.: K'uĭ haāng ch'ut moōn-haú chi-haû, chuèn tsóh. Yan-waî yān toh, tsaû t'aí m̄-kìn k'uĭ lòh.

LESSON 20

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. Can you lend me a dime to buy a cigar?
2. I lost a ruby ring in the theater last night.
3. He will go to see a doctor or a specialist about that mole on the left side of his face.
4. If her nose is not flat like that, she would be very pretty.
5. When he is excited, he stutters.
6. She is quite fat, about 5' 3" in height; and has a doubled chin, brown hair and blue eyes.
7. Although he a caucasian, he likes oriental food.
8. His hair is grey and short, but his beard is black and long.
9. The identity of this thief is not know, but the police thought it may be a woman.
10. I have a gun in my pocket, and I intend to use it if necessary.
11. The police officer caught the thief but his accomplice escaped.
12. He is about your size but he wears eye-glasses.
13. I want to buy a big ruby ring as a birthday present for my wife.
14. His voice was so low that I could hardly understand what he said.
15. Officer, I would like to report a robbery.
16. He doesn't smoke cigarettes but cigars.

LESSON 20

WORD LIST

1.	kìp òn	a case of robbery; kìp syn: tà-kìp
2.	ts'aâk	thief; robber; bandit, AN kòh
3.	p'aaù	fire arms; gun; pistol; syn: ts'eung; p'aaù (literally: artillery piece) i.e., k'uĭ yaŭ p'aaù 'he has a gun' (colloq. usage); AN hấm or chi
4.	t'ūng-tóng	accomplice; members of the same party; partisan
5.	shan-ts'oî	stature; physique; size (body); k'uĭ kè shan-ts'oî hố ko, 'he is tall in stature'
6.	tâk-tîm	characteristics; peculiarity; distinctiveness
7.	fooi-shik	grey color; grey; AN chúng; shik 'color'
8.	oō-so	beard; whisker; moustache abbr., so
9.	sheung hâ-p'ā	double-chin, AN kòh
10.	pîn-pîn	flat; thin; abbr: pîn
11.	mâk*	mole (on the skin); nevus; AN lap
12.	kaaì-chî	a finger ring, AN kòh; shaú-chî 'finger'

LESSON 20

WORD LIST

13.	hūng-pó-shêk	ruby; (literally red precious stone); AN lap
14.	luĭ-sùng-in	cigar, AN haú or chi; Taaî Luĭ-Sùng 'Mexico'; Siú-Luĭ-Sùng, 'Luzon in Philippines'
15.	ngaaŭ	to bite, gnaw; to hold or grip with the teeth

LESSON 20

READING MATERIAL

警察局接到電話，有賊匪打劫銀行，但警察到場之時，賊匪經已逃走．祇得向銀行職員查問經過情形．

據行員所講，賊匪祇係一人．不過，佢話尚有一同黨在行內．此賊帶有手槍，大約三十歲，中等身材，着灰色西裝，但無頸帶，指上有紅寶石戒指一隻．

此賊講話聲音細弱，所以行內其他之人，當時不知有此事發生．賊匪得欵之後，急步向大門行出街外．此時行員始大聲呌喊，然後由副行長電話報警．

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

King-Ch'aàt: Ts'ìng-mân neĭ tsó poòn-tîm-chung kìn m̄-kìn-tó yat kòh taaì haak ngaăn-kèng* kè yān yaū kòh kaan ngān-hōng* haāng ch'ut-laì à?

Haāng-Yān: Táng ngŏh nám-hă. Ôh, haî là, yaŭ yat-kòh taaì haak ngaăn-kèng* kè t'ūng yat-kòh ĭm wōng t'aū-faàt kè nuĭ-yān* yat-ts'aì ch'ut-laì.

K.Ch.: Neĭ keì-tak kóh kòh yān tîm yeûng* kè mà? M̄-koi neĭ miū-sê k'uĭ lòk.

H.Y.: K'uĭ ngaaŭ-chuê yat-chi luĭ-sùng in, taân-haî mŏ tîm-cheûk fóh. K'uĭ keì ko keì feì.

K.Ch.: Neĭ ĭ-waì k'uĭ keì ko t'ūng keì ch'ŭng à?

H.Y.: K'uĭ taaî-yeùk* yaŭ nğ-ch'èk paàt-kaú ts'uèn ko, yat-paàk-ts'at-shâp pông kòm sheûng-hâ*.

K.Ch.: Kóh kòh nuĭ-yān* taaî-yeùk* keì-toh suì à?

H.Y.: K'uĭ yâ-ts'at-paàt suì tsóh-yaû*, m̄-haî keì haak, ĭm wōng t'aū-faàt, tîn-chóh faàt, yîk taaì haak ngaăn-kèng*. Cheùk yat-kîn shì-foón kè wōng taaî-lau, ko-ngā* haaì. K'uĭ kè yeûng* m̄-ts'òh. Pat-kwòh hó-ts'z̆ hó òk kóm.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ-teî haî mat-chúng yān à?

H.Y.: K'uĭ-teî haî sai-yān.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ-teî leŭng-kòh chìng-wâ tá-kìp ngān-hōng*. Neĭ chi-tò k'uĭ-teî haì pin shuè tsaú-huì mà?

H.Y.: Haî mŏh! K'uĭ-teî shaî ch'e tsaú. M̄-kwaaì-tak k'uĭ-teî shaî ch'e shaì-tak kòm lōng-mōng loh.

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

K.Ch.: Neĭ keì-tak kóh kà ch'e haî mat nīn kè, haî mat shik kè à?

H.Y.: Kóh kà hó-ts'z̆ haî yat-kaù-lûk-līng nīn kè Fuk-Tâk ch'e. Hó-ts'z̆ haî haak-shik kè. Yaŭ seì-tô moōn kè ch'e.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ-teî haí pin-shuè shaí-huì à?

H.Y.: K'uī-teî haí ni t'iū kaai yat-chîk shaí-huì, shaí-tak hó faaì.

K.Ch.: Neĭ t'aí m̄-t'aí-tó k'uĭ kè ch'e-p'aaī hô-shò à?

H.Y.: Ngŏh mŏ chuè-ì. Pat-kwòh hó ts'z̆ m̄-haî Ka-Shaáng ch'e-p'aaī kè ngaān-shik.

K.Ch.: Uē-kwóh neĭ kìn-tó kóh leŭng-kòh yān, waâk-ché kóh kà ch'e kè shī-haû; neĭ chûng yîng-tak mà?

H.Y.: Ngŏh chûng yîng-tak.

K.Ch.: Ts'íng neĭ sé neĭ kè sìng-mīng, teî-chí t'ūng tîn-wâ* haî ni shuè; ĭ-haû waâk-ché iù mā-faān neĭ.

H.Y.: M̄-kán-iù, m̄-kán-iù.

LESSON 21

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. It is not news when a dog bites a man, but it is big news when man bites a dog.
2. I think I recognize that man. He is the man that robbed the bank yesterday.
3. Half an hour ago, I was still in bed.
4. Although I have a driver's license, my car is not registered as yet.
5. The automobile license of this state is approximately 5 inches long and 10 inches wide.
6. Have you ever seen a man wearing high heels?
7. He was occupied at that moment, and he didn't notice that the match was still burning
8. I am going downtown. Which direction are you going?
9. He looks very tough, but actually he is very kind.
10. I saw her going into a beauty parlor to have a permanent.
11. If you are 6' 2" , you are the tallest among us.
12. This cigar is lighted. Whose cigar is this?
13. She dyed her hair blonde, but she is the same person we saw yesterday at the gate.
14. What is the color of your car, and where did you park it.
15. All caucasians look alike to some orientals.
16. My table is approximately 5' x 8'. What size is yours?

LESSON 21

WORD LIST

1.	ĭm wōng t'aū-faảt	dyed blonde hair; ĭm 'to dye; infect'; wōng 'yellow, yellowish'; t'aū-faảt 'hair (on the head)';
2.	yān-chúng	race (human); divisions of mankind; i.e., wōng-chúng yān, 'yellow race; Mongolian'; paâk-chúng yān 'Caucasian'; haak-chúng yān, 'Negroid'
3.	tîm-cheûk fóh	lighted; ignited; fóh 'fire; light; flame'
4.	nğ ch'èk paảt-k'aú-ts'uèn	5' 8" or 5' 9"; ch'èk 'foot or feet'; ts'uèn 'inch'
5.	tîn faảt	to have a permanent hairdo;
6.	ko-ngā* haaī	high heels shoe; a.f., ko-chaang haaī
7.	ỏk	bad; wicked; bad; vicious; hard; tough; k'uĭ hó ỏk, 'he is very vicious'
8.	pin-shuè	which direction; where;
9.	lōng-mōng	rush; in a hurry; skurry; scuttle along; i.e., k'uĭ hó lōng-mōng
10.	ngaān-shik	color; syn: shik; AN chúng
11.	ch'e-p'aaī	license plate or license (vehicle)
12.	shī-foón	fashionable; in vogue; stylish; the latest style; syn: san-shik

LESSON 21

READING MATERIAL

當某一警察向銀行職員查問之時，另一警察向街上行人查問，希望多得線索．

其中一人，話見有一 taaî 黑眼 kèng* 之人，與一婦人，同時由銀行行出．男子高約五尺八寸．體重約一百七十磅．婦人年約廿七八歲，頭上電髮染黃色，樣子不錯，着高牙鞋．

此男女二人，由銀行行出之後，急忙上一停在街旁之一九六零年福特汽車，飛駛而去．

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Kîng-Ch'aàt: Chau Sin-Shaang, Leĭ Foo-Yān, ngŏh seúng ts'îng neĭ-teî leũng-waî* t'aî yat-t'aî ni keî cheung seùng*.

Chau: Hó à, tâng ngŏh laî t'aî-hă.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ-teî ts'z̆ m̄-ts'z̆ tá-kìp ngān-hōng* kóh leũng-kòh yān à?

Leĭ: Ngŏh-teî mŏ laū-ì kóh kòh nuĭ-yān*. K'uĭ shât-tsoî haî mi yĕ yeûng*, tsaû hó naān shik-pît lòh.

K.Ch.: Ni Cheung seùng* ts'z̆ m̄-ts'z̆ ta-kìp ngān-hōng* kóh kòh naām-yān* à?

L.: Yaŭ ti ts'z̆ kóh kòh naam-yān*, pat-kwòh k'uĭ hó-ts'z̆ mŏ kòm toh so.

K.Ch.: Ts'îng neĭ t'aî yat-hă ni cheung chak-mîn kè seùng*, ts'z̆ mà?

L.: Mŏ-ts'òh loh. Ngŏh keì-tak kóh yat-lap mâk. Haî k'uĭ loh.

K.Ch.: Chau Sin-Shaang, neĭ ĭ-waî haî mà?

Ch.: Ngŏh kôk-tak hó ts'z̆. Pat-kwòh, ngŏh m̄-kóm taam-pó, yan-waî ngŏh kóh chân-shī chí-haî chaaù hă ngaăn chè.

K.Ch.: Kóh kòh nuĭ-yān* ne, Chau Sin-Shaang?

Ch.: Ni cheung seùng* m̄-haî keî ts'z̆ kóh kòh nuĭ-yān*. Kóh kòh nuĭ-yān* lèng-ti, shaù-ti, ī-ch'ê kòh mîn mŏ tsaú-nap, t'iū kéng mŏ kòm ch'eūng.

K.Ch.: Ts'îng neĭ t'aî yat-t'aî ni cheung chak-mîn kè, tîm à?

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Ch.: Â, ni cheung chak-mîn kè, yaû keî ts'ž pòh. Tîm kaaî ne?

K.Ch.: Ts'ìng neĭ tsoì t'aí ts'ing-ch'óh ni cheung chìng-mîn kè lòh.

L.: M̄-koi neĭ peî kóh kòh nuĭ-yān* kè chak-mîn kè seùng* táng ngŏh t'aî hă.

K.Ch.: Hó à. Nâ, ni cheung haî lòh.

L.: T'aí-laī hó-ts'ž ngŏh haî ngān-hong* kìn-kwòh k'uĭ. Ngŏh keì-tak ngŏh kìn-kwòh k'uĭ ni tuì ĭ-waān*.

K.Ch.: Tîm kaaî neĭ keì-tak ni tuì ĭ-waān* à?

L.: Yan-waî ngŏh haî ngān-hōng* kìn-tò ni tuì ĭ-waān* kè shī-haû, ngŏh kòk-tak hó tâk-pît, shóh-ĭ keì-tak.

K.Ch.: Uē-kwóh haî kóm, ni leŭng-kòh yān waâk-ché tsaû haî tá-kìp ngān-hōng* kè lòh.

L.: Ngŏh ĭ-waī haî lòh.

Ch.: Ngŏh to haî kóm wâ.

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

1. With that sign in front of the door, anyone will be able to recognize it.
2. You may be right, but I would still like to think it over during the weekend.
3. Although his neck is swollen, he said it doesn't hurt.
4. She wears a beautiful pair of jade ear-rings, and a jade ring on her right hand.
5. From this side, you will be able to see the front view.
6. You can hardly see the dimples on her face.
7. The side view of this building is all right; but from the front it seems to be very old and broken down.
8. Anything you buy from this store will be guaranteed for a period of one year.
9. The girl in that picture looks very familiar. She reminds me of my younger sister.
10. Please be more careful in your driving especially when the road is foggy and slippery.
11. The manager is interested in the work and behavior of all his employees.
12. The mole on your arm is getting bigger and bigger every day. I suggest you go to see a doctor.
13. There is a mark on his neck. You can't see it from the front but you will see it from the left side.

LESSON 22

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

14. I am sure I can recognize my own earring.

15. You two may go for the time being, but don't leave town this week.

16. The police thought the thief came in through the window, but I think he came through the back door.

LESSON 22

WORD LIST

1.	seùng*; seùng-p’īn*	photograph; picture; AN fuk
2.	laū-ì	pay attention; to be aware; to take notice; syn: chuè-ì
3.	chak-mîn	side view; one side of the face; ant; chìng-mîn (See Les 22.8)
4.	taam-pó	to guarantee, vouch; syn: pó-chìng (See Les 18.3)
5.	chaaù hă ngaăn	to glance; a glance; to take a look; syn: t’aí hă
6.	tsaú-nap	a dimple, AN kòh
7.	chìng-mîn	front view; front view of the face; the fore or foremost part of an object; ant: chak-mîn (See Les 22.3)
8.	ĭ-waān*	earrings; ĭ ‘ear’ AN tuī (pair); chèk (indicating one)
9.	kéng	neck, AN t’iū
10.	t’aí-laī	it seems; it looks
11.	shik-pît	to identify, distinguish, differentiate; shik ‘to know, recognize’; pīt ‘difference; other; apart’
12.	în-ch’eūng	at the scene; on the spot; syn: tong-ch’eūng
13.	hîn-în	apparent; obvious; to become manifest or plain; syn: hîn-mīng

LESSON 22

WORD LIST

14.	ch'au-ch'ut	to pick out
15.	mûk-kik	to witness; eyewitness
16.	yîng; pîn-yîng	to identify
17.	îm-î faân*	a suspect

LESSON 22

READIMG MATERIAL

警局遇有案件發生，於現場取得犯罪人之形狀之後，即抽出有案底者之相片，由目擊之人辨認，希望尋出嫌疑犯．

某銀行被 **kip** 之後，次日，路人周某與銀行出 **naâp** 員李夫人，被召往警局，做此種認相工作

在好多相片之中，認出一男一女，為可能二嫌疑犯．因為此二人形狀相似，而且男有黑 **mâk** ，女 **taai** 耳環，係顯現之特點．

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Kwaan: T'eng-mān wâ neĭ-teî ĭ-king chùk-tó leŭng-kòh tá-kìp ngān-hōng* kè ìm-ì faân*, haî mà?

King Ch'aàt: Mŏ-ts'òh, Ngŏh-teî ĭ-king shám-mân-kwòh k'uĭ-teî lòh. Tsòk-yât yîk ĭ-king kwòh-t'ōng là.

Kw.: K'uĭ-teî háng m̀-háng yîng tsuî à?

K.Ch.: K'uĭ-teî m̀-háng yîng tsuì, pat-kwòh k'uĭ-teî leŭng-kòh yān kè haú-kung m̀-haî keì tuì.

Kw.: Kòm, tîm ne?

K.Ch.: Ngŏh-teî yaŭ ch'ung-tsuk kè yān-chìng mât-chìng. Ngŏh seung-sùn k'uĭ-teî naān-t'ō faàt-mŏng.

Kw.: Peî-kò yaŭ-mŏ ts'éng pîn-oô lût-sz à?

K.Ch.: K'uĭ-teî yaŭ ts'éng pîn-oô lût-sz. T'eng k'uĭ kè haú-heì, uē-kwóh p'oòn-k'uèt haî yaŭ tsuî, k'uĭ-teî ooĭ sheûng-sò.

Kw.: Uē-kwóh faàt-koon p'oòn yaŭ tsuî, k'uĭ-teî ooĭ ts'ŏh keì-noî kaam à?

K.Ch.: Kòm tsaû hó naān kóng, taân-haî yan-waî k'uĭ-teî leŭng-kòh to yaŭ kaû òn-taì, hóh-nāng p'oòn yaŭ-k'eì t'ō-yìng, shâm-chì chung-shan kaam-kàm yîk m̀-tîng.

Kw.: Ni kîn òn haî m̀-haî shĭ kîm-ch'aàt koon tá-leĭ à?

K.Ch.: M̄-haî, yan-waî tá-kìp ngān-hōng haî faân-chóh Luēn-Pong Laî, shóh-ĭ haî yaū Luēn-Pong Kîm-Ch'aàt Koon foô chaàk hùng-kò.

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Kw.: Tîng k'eī keî-shī ch'ut t'īng à?

K.Ch.: În-shī tîng-chôh hâ-kòh Laĭ-Paaî-Seî hoi-shám.

Kw.: Neĭ t'ūng ngŏh tò-shī yat-tîng iù tsô chìng-yān lôh.

K.Ch.: Káng-haî la. Pat-kwòh ngŏh ĭ-waī ni kîn òn m̄-shaî keî-noî tsaû hóh-ĭ kaaî-k'uèt loh.

Kw.: Ngŏh ĭ-waī hoi-shám m̄-ooĭ hó noî, pat-kwóh suén-chaâk p'ooī-shám uēn hóh-nāng iù hó toh shī-haû.

K.Ch.: Mŏ-ts'òh, yaū-k'eī-shî kóh waî* lût-sz haî ch'ut-mēng* kè "naú-kaî* sz-yē".

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. This criminal is cunning, and treacherous.
2. If the jury thinks that you are not innocent, the judge will sentence you to imprisonment.
3. This is only a preliminary hearing, and therefore there is no jury.
4. When the court is in session you don't have to say a single word. Your lawyer will do all the talking for you.
5. The government will definitely prosecute you pending the investigation of the FBI.
6. You don't have to appear in court. You can ask a lawyer to represent you.
7. If he is guilty, as charged, he will be punished according to the law.
8. The defense attorney will appeal the case, if the judge gives a life sentence.
9. You may get a three-year jail sentence if you admit your guilt.
10. She will not give any deposition unless her lawyer is consulted on the matter.
11. When the police caught him with the money and the gun, he admitted that he robbed the bank.
12. To the Orientals, law suit is always expensive and time consumming. They will go to court only as the last resort.
13. I don't like his tone of voice expecially when I know he is exaggerating too much.

LESSON 23

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

14. As his defense attorney, you should read his deposition very carefully and be well prepared before the hearing.

15. This is a case of bank robbery and the Federal Court will have jurisdiction to try the case.

16. In some foreign countries, you have to appeal the case to the king or the queen.

17. The prosecution rests. Now the defense will state his case.

LESSON 23

WORD LIST

1.	chủk-tó	to catch; seize, arrest; caught; i.e., *k'uĭ* *chủk*-*tó* *yat*-*chèk* *tseủk**, 'he caught a bird'
2.	yîng tsuî	to admit one's guilt; to confess; to acknowledge in the wrong; *yîng*, a.f., *yîng*-*shik*
3.	haú-kung	testimony (oral or written as a deposition)
4.	"naān-t'ō faàt-mŏng"	one can not escape the meshes of the law
5.	pîn-oô lût-sz	attorney for the defense; counsel of the defendant; *lût*-*sz* 'lawyer; attorney in law'
6.	haú-heì	tone of voice; sentiment
7.	p'oòn	to judge, sentence; decision (judge), a.f., *p'oòn*-*tuèn;* *p'oòn*-*k'uèt*
8.	sheûng-sò	to appeal (to a higher court)
9.	ts'ŏh kaam	to be confined in jail; to be imprisoned; imprisonment; i.e., *k'uĭ* *ts'ŏh* *kaam* *ts'ŏh* *chóh* *shâp* *nīn* 'he has been imprisoned for ten years'; syn: *kaam*-*kàm*

LESSON 23

WORD LIST

10.	t'ō-yīng	jail sentence; i.e., mō-k'eī t'ō-yīng, 'life imprisonment'; ant: yaŭ-k'eī t'ō-yīng
11.	chung-shan kaam-kàm	life imprisonment; a.f., mō-k'eī t'ō-yīng (See Les 23.10)
12.	Luēn-Pong Laî	Federal Code (law); laî syn: lût-laî, AN t'iū
13.	hùng-kỏ	to accuse, sue, prosecute (before a court)
14.	ch'ut-t'īng	to appear in court
15.	kwỏh-t'ōng	preliminary hearing a.f., ch'oh shám
16.	hoi-shám	court in session
17.	p'ooī-shám uēn	juror or jury, AN kỏh
18.	naú-kaì* sz-yē	a cunning person; a trickster (colloq); sz-yē (formerly a Yamen secretary)

LESSON 23

READING MATERIAL

打 kīp 銀行之嫌疑犯，已被警察捕獲．可知為非作惡者，到底難逃法 mŏng．捕獲之後、即將其人打指模，影相．並將其人扣留．

在法庭過堂之日，嫌疑犯不肯承認為 kīp 匪．所以須由檢察官提出起訴，由法官定期開審．政府為原告，嫌疑犯為被告．被告人需請律師辯護，俗稱為「打官司」．此屬 yīng 事案，與民事案不同，如打輸則被判坐監、但被告仍可提出上訴，直至大理院為止．

打 kīp 銀行，在美國係犯聯 Pong 法律，要在合衆國法庭審訊．

LESSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Huí: Sin-Shaang, ngŏh seúng pò òn. Ngŏh kòh tsaì m̄-kìn-chóh.

King-Ch'aàt: K'uĭ kiù tsô mat mēng*? Keí-shī* m̄-kìn-chóh à?

H.: K'uĭ kiù tsô Chaan-Neī Huí. Tsòk-Maăn lûk-tîm k'uĭ shîk-uēn faân ch'ut kaai tò ī-ka chûng meî faan-laī.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ kam-nīn keí suì à? K'uĭ yaŭ keí ko keí taaî à?

H.: Chaan-Neī kam-nīn shâp-yat suì, taaî-yeùk* seì-ch'èk poòn kòm sheûng-hâ*. T'aí-ch'ŭng paàt-shâp pông tsóh-yaû*.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ yaŭ mat yūng-î yîng kè tâk tîm mà?

H: K'uĭ fei-kwong t'aū, yaŭ se-shiú ká shaaì-ngā. Ngaăn-meī hó ts'o, hó nūng. Sheung-ngaăn hó taaî. Tsuì-kân k'uĭ shaaì-shēng hó haak.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ tsôk-maăn ch'ut kaai cheùk mat shaam à?

H.: K'uĭ cheùk tuén tsaû sẑ-p'ot sut, fooi-haak shik yūng* sai-chong ch'eūng foò. Hūng-shik kè chaàk-kat.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ cheùk kòh tuì haaī haî mat shik kè à?

H.: K'uĭ cheùk tuì sham wōng-shik kè tuén pèng p'eī-haaī. Kóh tuì haaī haî san kè.

K.Ch.: Neĭ keì-tak k'uĭ cheùk mat mât mà?

H.: Ngŏh mŏ chuè-ì. Pat-kwòh k'uĭ ti mât toh-shò haî paâk-shik, tseûng-kan t'aū kè.

K.Ch.: K'uĭ tsôk-maăn ch'ut moōn-haú kè shī-haû, k'uĭ wâ huì pin-tô à?

H.: Ngŏh kè nuĭ-yān* wâ, k'uĭ huì ch'aaî taan-ch'e. Taân-haî k'uĭ kà taan-ch'e yaû haî ch'e-fōng*.

LESSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

K.Ch.: Pin ti yān haî k'uĭ chì hó kè p'aāng-yaŭ à?

H.: Ngŏh-teî kaàk-leì kóh keí kòh saì-lŏ-koh t'ūng k'uĭ chì hó. Pat-kwòh k'uĭ-teî tsôk-maăn mŏ kìn-kwòh k'uĭ.

LESSON 24

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. This pair of socks belong to my roommate Mr. Leong.
2. Today is a beautiful day to go out to the suburbs for a bicycle ride.
3. I like this style of suits, but I don't like this material.
4. The machine has many special features and our expert will explain them to you.
5. The buck teeth can be corrected when you are young.
6. The sport shirt is made of wool but I will sell it to you at a reduced price.
7. He wears an old wool suit of blue and black stripes.
8. I hope I will get some tan from the sunshine during the vacation.
9. There are two kinds of socks: one is long and the other is short.
10. Many women beautify their eyebrows with cosmetic pencils.
11. Please write down your height and your weight on the other side of this form.
12. His eyebrows are thick and heavy, and he looks very tough.
13. My overcoat is made of woolen material and it is quite comfortable during the autumn season.
14. A meeting will be held at 4:00 p.m. in the auditorium. All the new students are urged to attend.
15. Today she isn't wearing any stockings. She is wearing loafers instead of hich heels.
16. Although he stayed on the beach the whole day, he didn't get tanned.

LESSON 24

WORD LIST

1.	pò òn	to report a case
2.	shaaì-ngā	buck-teeth, AN foò or p'aaī
3.	ngaăn-meī	eyebrows; AN t'iū
4.	ts'o	coarse; lacking finess or delicacy; i.e., ts'o-taaî kè shaú 'coarse and and big hands; ts'o-haú 'obscene language
5.	nūng	thick; dense; strong flavor; i.e., nūng ngaăn-meī, 'thick eyebrows'; nūng ch'ā, 'strong tea'
6.	shaaì-shēng hó haak	becoming tanned (by sunshine)
7.	sẑ-p'ot sut (transliteration)	sport shirt, AN kîn
8.	yūng*	wool; woolen; syn: yeūng-mō; i.e., yūng* pò 'woolen cloth'
9.	pèng	a handle; a crank; i.e., ch'eūng pèng 'long necked; long handle'
10.	mât	socks; stockings; AN tuì
11.	tseûng-kan	rubber band; elastic; AN t'iū
12.	ch'aaî taan-ch'e	to ride bicycle; ch'aaî 'to step on'; taan-ch'e 'bicycle', AN kà
13.	t'aî-ch'ŭng	weight (body); i.e., K'uĭ kè t'aî-ch'ŭng ī-paàk pông 'he weighs 200 lbs'

LESSON 24

WORD LIST

14.	ì-t'ūng	child; syn: saì-man-tsaì saì-lŏ-kòh AN kòh
15.	t'ō-hôk	to play truant; to run away from school; t'ō 'to flee, escape, abscond'
16.	hîp-chôh	to help, to aid, to assist
17.	mō-lûn uē-hōh	no matter what; nevertheless

LESSON 24

READING MATERIAL

華童 Chaan-Neî 許，年十一歲．平日遵守父母教訓，並無逃學．與其他兒童遊戲，亦無鬥打之事．所以父母對佢，亦甚少擔心．

一日，晚飯後，大約六點鐘左右，出外玩耍．經過數小時，重未歸家．其父母出外四處找尋，亦不見其影 tsik ．單車又留在車房．

但無論如何，最好辦法，往警局報案，請求協助．警局有此種職責，當然盡力幫忙．

LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Kìng Ch'aàt: Huì Sin-Shaang, Chaan-Neī* toh-shò t'ūng pin ti yān loī-wŏng à?

Huì: Chuī-chóh tsóh-lūn yaû-leĭ kóh keì kòh saì-lŏ-koh chi ngoî, chûng yaŭ k'uĭ saam-keì-kòh sham-kaau kè t'ūng-hôk.

K.Ch.: Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ mân-kwòh k'uĭ-teî à?

H.: Ngŏh mân-kwòh k'uĭ-teî lòh. Pat-kwòh k'uĭ-teî tsôk-maăn to mŏ kìn-kwòh k'uĭ.

K.Ch.: Neĭ huì-kwòh neĭ ti ts'an-ts'ik p'aāng-yaŭ shuè wán-kwòh k'uĭ meî à?

H.: Shóh-yaŭ ts'an-ts'ik ngŏh to mân-kwòh. Peì-kaaù seung-shûk kè p'aāng-yaŭ shuè ngŏh yîk huì-kwòh; m̄-haî keí seung-shûk kè p'aāng-yaŭ ngŏh yîk mân-kwòh.

K.Ch.: Ngŏh hóh-ĭ tsik-hak t'ūng neĭ tá tîng-wâ* huì poón-faû kòk i-uên* t'iū-ch'ā yat-hă, t'aì-hă yaŭ-mŏ saì-lŏ-koh ì-ngoî kè sẑ-kîn faàt-shaang.

H.: Kóm tsaû m̄-koi-saaì lòh. Pat-kwòh, Sin-Shaang, neĭ ĭ-waī ooĭ m̄-ooĭ haî póng-p'iù à?

K.Ch.: Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ shaū-yān à?

H.: Ngŏh m̄-ooĭ yaŭ shaū-yān. Ngŏh "toî-yān tsìp-mât" to hó kung-tô, mŏ tak-tsuî p'aāng-yaŭ.

K.Ch.: Neĭ yaŭ-mŏ shau-tò húng-haàk sùn heùng neĭ laâk-sòk à?

H.: Ngŏh mŏ shau-tò húng-haàk sùn.

K.Ch.: Uē-kwóh haî póng-p'iù, k'uĭ-teî ooĭ t'ūng neĭ tsìp-t'aū, heùng neĭ laâk-sòk.

LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

H.:	Kóm, tìm paân à?
K.Ch.:	Uē-kwóh k'uĭ-teî t'ūng neĭ tsìp-t'aū, neĭ iù ch'ìt paân-faàt foo-în k'uĭ-teî. Tsik-hak t'ung-chi ngŏh-teî. Ts'in-k'eì chàn-tîng.
H.:	Ngŏh kè tsaì ooĭ m̀-ooĭ yaŭ ngaì-hîm à?
K.Ch.:	Ngŏh-teî yat-tîng tsûn-lîk t'ūng neĭ ch'ìt faàt. Neĭ faan-huì yau-sik yat-hă la. Uē-kwóh yaŭ mat siu-sik, ts'íng neĭ tsik-hak t'ung-chi ngŏh-teî.
H.:	M̄-koi-saaì, m̀-koi-saaì.

LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. He never did things negligently. He has been an able assistant to me.
2. Please be calm and I am sure we can solve this problem.
3. You must be fair to him as well as to the others.
4. When that person contacts you by phone, you must stall him as long as possible.
5. If he gives you the money willingly, it will not be construed as blackmail.
6. She received a threatening phone call last night.
7. The teacher must be able and fair in order to gain the respect of his students.
8. I have no enemies and I don't know who would have sent such a threatening letter.
9. The neighbors are most friendly and I don't know how to thank them.
10. My son was kidnapped this morning when he was on his way home from school.
11. Even an enemy would not do such a horrible thing.
12. He investigates this matter thoroughly with one aim in mind that justice will be done in the end.
13. I was drunk last night, and I think I irritated some very good friends of yours.
14. It may not be a case of kidnapping, so be calm and don't jump to any conclusion.

LESSON 25

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

15. The kidnapper demands one million dollars for the safe return of my daughter.

16. I think she is stalling us. Why don't we just tell her off.

LESSON 25

WORD LIST

1.	tsóh-lūn yaû-leĭ	neighbor; neighboring; neighborhood; a.f., lūn-leĭ
2.	sham-kaau	intimate friendship; syn: chi-keî p'aāng-yaŭ (See Les 15.1)
3.	t'iū-ch'ā	to investigate, examine
4.	póng-p'iù*	kidnap; to kidnap; i.e., k'uĭ peî ts'aâk póng-p'iù, 'he was kidnapped by bandits'
5.	shaū-yān	an enemy; a rival; adversary; AN kòh
6.	kung-tô	fair; just; impartial; justice
7.	tak-tsuî	to offend, bother, annoy, displease, affront; i.e., k'uĭ tak-tsuî neĭ 'he offended you'
8.	húng-haàk	to threaten, intimidate; i.e., húng-haàk sùn 'threatening letter'; k'uĭ húng-haàk ngŏh 'he intimidates me'
9.	tsìp-t'aū	to contact; contact; to meet i.e., ngŏh t'ūng k'uĭ tsìp-t'aū 'I contact him or I make contact with him'
10.	laâk-sòk	to extort, black-mail; extortaion; blackmail

LESSON 25

WORD LIST

11.	foo-în	making excuse; to stall; without making due inquiry; negligence; i.e., k'uĭ-teî tsô sẑ hó foo-în, they do things negligently' k'uĭ foo-în neĭ 'he procrastinates to fool you'
12.	ts'in-k'eî	to implore urgently; must; by all means; (literally: a thousand prayers) i.e., neĭ shaî ch'e ts'in-k'eî siú-sam, 'I urgently implore you to drive carefully'
13.	chàn-tîng	calm; steady; nonchalance; unperturbed; i.e., k'uĭ hó chàn-tîng 'he is very calm'

LESSON 25

READIMG MATERIAL

許某到警局報案，警員除取得其子之年歲，樣子，皮色，髮色，衣服，以及有無特點之外，再提出種種問題，一一訊問、以便研究其子何以失 tsung．

警局問完之後，即分別打電話到急濟醫院，及其他市内各醫院，查問有無收留與失-tsung 者相似之人．

警局最擔心者為被-pông 票，所以關於此方面，對事主特別指示，如接到恐 haâk laâk 索電話或信件，如何應付

LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Lām: Ngŏh chìng-wâ yaū T'ŏng-Shaan laî, tuì Wā-Faû kè ts'ìng-yìng m̄-shûk, seúng heùng neĭ ts'ìng kaaù, ts'ìng kaaù; tak mà?

Yeūng: M̄-hó-haàk-heì. Taaî-ka ts'uì-pîn* k'ing-hă, kaau-oôn hă chi-shik.

L.: Pin keî kòh shĕ-t'uēn suèn-tsô tsuì chûng-iù kè à?

Y.: Chung-Wā Tsúng Ooî-Koón, Chung-Wā Tsúng Sheung-Ooî*, T'ūng-Uēn-Ooî* hóh-ĭ suèn-tak tsuì chûng-iù kè lòh.

L.: Chung-Wā Tsúng Ooî-Koón haî mat tsó-chik à?

Y.: K'uĭ hóh-ĭ wâ haî Wā-K'iū tsẑ-keî tsuì ko kè kei-kwaan. Haî yaū ts'at taaî ooî-koón luēn-hôp shìng kè. Foô-chaàk yaŭ-kwaan Wā-K'iū shĕ-ooî* kè fuk-leî, suen-ch'uēn, táng táng.

L.: Ni ts'at taaî ooî-koón haî mat tsó-chik à?

Y.: Ni ts'at taaî ooî-koón haî yap, uên kè tsó-chik. K'uĭ-teî tsẑ-keî t'ūng yap waâk t'ūng uên kè Wā-K'iū tsó-chik kè.

L.: Chung-Wā Tsúng Sheung-Ooî* ne?

Y.: Ni kòh sheung-ooî* t'ūng sai-yān kè yat yeûng, haî sheung-yān kè tsó-chik; ĭ faàt-chìn Wā-Faû sheung-îp waî chué-iù mûk-tik.

L.: T'ūng-Uēn-Ooî* yaû tìm à?

Y.: T'ūng-Uēn-Ooî* haî Meĭ-Kwòk kung-mān kè tsó-chik. K'uĭ-teî to haî Wā-yuî, yaŭ t'ó-shaang t'ūng Meî-tsîk Chung-

LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL - DIALOGUE

Kwòk-Yān. Pat-kwòh yîk yaŭ saam-keī kòh sai-yān mīng-uê ooî-uēn.

L.: K'uĭ-teî kè tsung-chî haī mat à?

Y.: K'uĭ-teî ĭ waī-oô Meĭ-tsîk Chung-Kwòk-Yān kè k'uēn-leî waī tsung-chî.

L.: Chûng yaŭ-mŏ k'eī-t'a kè chûng-iù shĕ-t'uēn à?

Y.: Tong-īn yaŭ la. Wā-Faû chûng yaŭ hó toh sīng-shî kung-shóh, yam-ngôk shĕ t'ūng k'eī-t'a kè fûk-mô t'uēn-t'aî.

LESSON 26

ORAL MATERIAL - RECOMBINATION AND TRANSLATION

1. I'd like to know if you belong to any family associations.
2. Since you are an American citizen, you are entitled to certain rights and privileges which aliens do not have.
3. You should do your best to protect your rights and privileges.
4. The policy making body of this organization is the executive committee.
5. Since you are not of Chinese origin, you can only be an honorary member of the Association.
6. This is our main objective, and I want you to keep it in mind at all times.
7. The Kwantung Province is divided into a number of districts.
8. All citizens must help the authority to promote community welfare.
9. The Chinese Chamber of Commerce deals with all the affairs of merchants in Chinatown.
10. This is an important mission, and I wish you good luck.
11. I came from China when I was ten years old.
12. Mr. Wong is a leader in Chinatown. He is the chairman of the association.
13. The Chinese Chamber of Commerce is responsible for the celebration of the Chinese New Year in San Francisco.
14. A dance will be held in the auditorium of this building.
15. We should combine our efforts to the tasks that lie ahead.
16. If you don't pay your dues on time, you will lose some rights and privileges in the club.

LESSON 26

WORD LIST

1.	T'ōng Shaan	China, a.f., Chúng-Kwỏk, AN kỏh
2.	suẻn-tsô	to consider, assume; to be;
3.	Chung-Wā Tsúng Ooî-Koón	Chinese Consolidated Benevolent Association; The Six Co., AN kỏh
4.	Chung-Wā Tsúng Sheung-Ooî*	Chinese Chamber of Commerce, AN kỏh
5.	T'ūng-Uēn Ooî*	Chinese American Citizen Alliance, AN kỏh
6.	luēn-hôp	to unite, amalgamate, combine; joint; combination
7.	yap; uên	district; county AN kỏh
8.	chué-iủ mûk-tik	the main objective; the most important purpose; chué-iủ 'main; utmost; paramount', mûk-tik 'objective; purpose; goal; aim'
9.	Wā-Yuî	Chinese descendant; of Chinese origin
10.	mīng-uê ooî-uēn	honorary member; mīng-uê 'honor; honorable; repute' i.e., k'uĭ hó yaŭ mīng-uê 'he has a very good reputation'
11.	tsung-chî	purpose; policy, the leading idea, AN kỏh

LESSON 26

WORD LIST

12.	waî-oô	to protect, safeguard, uphold, defend; syn: pó-oô or pò-waî
13.	k'uēn-leî	rights and privileges
14.	sìng-shî kung-shóh	family association, AN kaan
15.	kaau-oôn	kaau-oôn chi-shik 'to exchange knowledge'
16.	fuk-leî	welfare
17.	ĭ...waî	to think, consider; use...as, to consider...as; (literary) in this meaning ĭ is seldom used alone but usually combined with waî; i.e., ĭ kwòk sẑ waî tsuì chûng-iù, 'to consider affairs of state as the most important'
18.	t'ó-shaang	native born, AN kòh, syn: t'ó-chuê
19.	kuen foón	to contribute money; to take up collection of money i.e., k'uĭ kuen foón peî i-uên 'he contributes money to the hospital'

LESSON 26

READING MATERIAL

華 K'iū 社團，以中華會館為最高機關．其組織單位係 yap 縣團體．又有姓氏團體．堂號等．

組織團體之最初目的，為聯 lòk 感情．大家幫助．由會員捐款做費用．

大 Faû 有一中華總商會，同西人嘅商會一樣．佢嘅任務係發展華埠商業．最近幾年，佢地舉辦陰曆新年慶會，有選舉華 Faû 女 wōng，遊街等等．

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

BASIC COURSE
TEXT VOLUME
VOLUME IX
LESSONS 1-26
(CHARACTER TEXT)

ΠΤΟΛΕΜΕΙ
DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

CHINESE-CANTONESE

Basic Course

Text Volume

Volume IX

Lessons 1-26

(Character Text)

September 1965

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

第一課

馬：請問你地嘅老板喺處嗎？

李：我就係李大文，呢間鋪頭嘅經理．有乜貴幹呀？

馬：啊，李經理．我係警察局派黎嘅偵探；我叫做馬明．我有啲野想向你請教．

李：有乜指教呢，馬偵探？

馬：我想知道你識唔識李大年呢個人．

李：李大年呢個名幾熟．佢有幾大年紀呀？

馬：佢大約卅零歲．以前行船．聽聞話佢喺呢處出入．

李：啊！我記得啦．你想搵佢咩？

馬：唔係，不過我想問你幾個關於李大年嘅問題．得嗎？

李：當然得啦！請坐落至傾啦．

馬：唔該，唔該．你有有佢嘅相呀？

李：對唔住．我同佢唔係好熟，我冇佢嘅相．

馬：敢，你可唔可以講佢嘅樣俾我聽呀？

李：佢大約五尺五寸高，一百二十幾磅重，麻麻瘦．佢好似戴眼鏡，上唇有鬚．你可唔可以講俾我聽佢犯乜罪呀？

馬：佢唔係犯罪．不過我想搵佢做證人．你知唔知道李大年喺邊處住呀？喺邊處做工呀？

李：我唔知道佢嘅地址喺邊度噃！聽聞話佢亦冇做工囉噃！

馬：佢多數喺邊度出入呀？

李：實在佢好少喺呢處．佢多數喺東方俱樂部．

馬：李經理，我請你將我呢次嘅訪問保守秘密．

李：好啦．我會保守秘密．

馬：唔該，唔該．

李：唔使唔該．

第一課

馬：請問你地嘅老板喺處嗎？

李：我就係李大文，呢間舖頭嘅經理．有乜貴幹呀？

馬：啊，李經理．我係警察局派黎嘅偵探；我叫做馬明．我有啲野想向你請教．

李：有乜指教呢，馬偵探？

馬：我想知道你識唔識李大年呢個人．

李：李大年呢個名幾熟．佢有幾大年紀呀？

馬：佢大約卅零歲．以前行船．聽聞話佢喺呢處出入．

李：啊！我記得啦．你想搵佢咩？

馬：唔係，不過我想問你幾個關於李大年嘅問題．得嗎？

李：當然得啦！請坐落至傾啦．

馬：唔該，唔該．你有冇佢嘅相呀？

李：對唔住．我同佢唔係好熟，我冇佢嘅相．

馬：敢，你可唔可以講佢嘅樣俾我聽呀？

李：佢大約五尺五寸高，一百二十幾磅重，麻麻瘦．佢好似戴眼鏡，上唇有鬚．你可唔可以講俾我聽佢犯乜罪呀？

馬：佢唔係犯罪．不過我想搵佢做證人．你知唔知道李大年喺邊處住呀？喺邊處做工呀？

李：我唔知道佢嘅地址喺邊度噃！聽聞話佢亦冇做工囉噃！

馬：佢多數喺邊度出入呀？

李：實在佢好少喺呢處．佢多數喺東方俱樂部．

馬：李經理，我請你將我呢次嘅訪問保守秘密．

李：好啦．我會保守秘密．

馬：唔該，唔該．

李：唔使唔該．

第二課

余：你揾邊位呀？

馬：我想揾你地俱樂部嘅負責人；我係警察局黎嘅．

余：負責人唔喺處，夜啲再黎啦！

馬：我喺呢處等吓，得嗎？

余：如果你中意，你可以喺呢處等吓；不過我唔知佢幾時翻黎嚹！

馬：我呌做馬明．我係中區警察局嘅偵探．先生貴姓名呀？

余：我係余華．我喺呢處玩吓，揾吓朋友啫！

馬：呢間俱樂部嘅設備幾完善嚹！

余：佢地有時利用嗰個廳黎開座談會．

馬：呢塊壁報板啲野係乜呀？

余：有啲係標語，有啲係規則，有啲係討論會嘅報告同秩序

，有啲係開會通知．

馬：你參加過呢個俱樂部嘅討論會未呀？

余：我未參加過呢個俱樂部啲活動．不過聽聞話，佢地呢處有青年團，專門研究同搜集民主嘅理論同自由嘅思想．團員都係開明同前進嘅份子．

馬：青年團嘅負責人係邊個呀？

余：佢地嘅指導員叫做周强．

馬：你以為呢個青年團係唔係一個非法嘅組織呀？

余：我相信唔係．

第三課

方：我係方本，我係呢間俱樂部嘅負責人．先生貴姓名呀？

馬：我叫做馬明，警察局嘅偵探．我而家調查緊一件案．希望你能夠幫忙．

方：我地呢處係一個文娛組織，啲會員都係智識份子．我地好歡喜同政府當局合作．

馬：你識唔識有一個叫做李大年嘅海員呀？

方：大年係我地呢處青年團嘅一個中堅份子．

馬：你知唔知道佢嘅履歷呀？

方：我唔係幾清楚；不過我知道佢喺中國大陸解放之後至黎美國．喺大學讀阻一兩年又去行船．而家喺老番街一間餐館做工．佢喺呢處麻麻活動，可以話係我地嘅好同志．

馬：請問你地呢個俱樂部有冇向政府註冊呀？

方：有，我地有向政府註册，話係一個服務性嘅團體．

馬：請問你地呢個俱樂部有乜方針呀？

方：冇乜特別方針．不過係聯絡青年人，研究各種民主嘅理論．學習各種有益身心嘅活動．

馬：你地嘅會員係唔係多數左傾嘅呀？

方：呢啲我就唔知咯．不過我知道個個會員都係走自由民主嘅路線嘅．

馬：如果李大年黎呢處，唔該你叫佢照呢個地址搵我，或者照呢個號數打個電話俾我．

方：好喇！

第四課

李：我係李大年．請問馬明偵探喺處嗎？

馬：啊，李先生．請坐，請坐．我就係馬明咯．

李：東方俱樂部嗰位佘先生話你想搵我，係唔係呀？

馬：冇錯咯．我地有啲問題想問吓你．我想你同政府做證人．

李：有乜問題呀？做乜證人呀？

馬：我想問你幾個問題先，做唔做證人以後至再講．

李：我想同我嘅律師商量吓至回答你嘅問題，得嗎？

馬：得，不過我想先同你講幾個簡單嘅問題，好嗎？

李：亦好，不過我唔係幾得閒．我要趕番工噃！

馬：你識唔識方佐治？你同佢熟唔熟呀？

李：我識老方．佢以前同我喺省立大學做同學．現時我好少見到佢．

馬：聽聞話你以前同佢住，係唔係呀？

李：讀大學嘅時候，我同佢同房住。

馬：佢嘅行動同思想點呀？

李：佢喺學校嘅時候好中意攪學潮。後来去做工，佢又發動工潮，煽動罷工等等。

馬：你係唔係佢同路人呀？

李：我唔了解佢嘅思想，我唔係佢嘅同路人。

馬：你點知道佢發動工潮，煽動罷工呀？

李：佢參加左傾嘅工會。有幾次佢叫我幫佢寫標語，印小冊等等。呀，我而家要番工，我抖工嘅時候再黎啦，好嗎？

馬：好好。多謝你嘅幫忙。再見，再見。

李：再見，再見。

第五課

關：老馬，我想同你傾一傾方佐治嗰一件案，好嗎？

馬：好呀，關主任．我亦想向你報告一吓．

關：你搵唔搵倒李大年做證人呀？

馬：初時我冇線索，後來我向各方面調查佢嘅背景，又放聲氣使佢黎見我．

關：佢實在喺邊處出入呀？

馬：佢喺一間俱樂部出入．呢個消息係佢嘅朋友講俾我知嘅．

關：嗰間俱樂部係點嘅呀？

馬：表面上嗰間俱樂部係一個文娛服務社團．但係實在嘅情形就好難講．

關：佢地有冇案底喺我地處呀？

馬：有．我畧畧睇過吓．東方俱樂部本身好似好清白，不過，

關：我冇佢地嘅會員名單，所以其中有不良份子亦話唔定．如果有左傾份子，將來或者有麻煩嘅事發生．我地應該注意，注意．

馬：我亦係敢諗，不過呢啲係將來嘅事．

關：李大年有冇黎見你呀？

馬：有．今日佢黎我嘅寫字樓．我問咗佢幾句說話．

關：李大年合作嗎？

馬：佢好似好樂意同我合作．我今日同佢傾咗冇幾耐啫！

關：點解呀？

馬：因為佢要返工．

關：你有冇約佢再談呀？

馬：有．我地下個禮拜四再傾．

第六課

馬：李先生，你好啦嗎？我好多謝你今日又抽啲時候黎呢處．

李：冇所謂．你係唔係又問關於老方啲野呀？

馬：未問老方啲野之前，我想先問一啲關於你自己嘅野，得嗎？

李：唔緊要．我問過律師囉．佢叫我坦白同你講．

馬：對於我問嘅問題，請你諗準諗清楚，然後答復我．

李：當然啦！

馬：你係唔係美國籍民？你幾時同喺邊處入口？

李：我係美國籍民．一九五二年三月廿五喺舍路入口．

馬：除咗李大年呢個名之外，你重有冇其他嘅名呀？

李：有，我嘅號係華光．

馬：你以前有冇加入共產黨或其他反美嘅團體呀？

李：我唔係共產黨．亦冇參加過其他反美團體嘅活動．

馬：未黎美國以前，你係唔係喺中共嘅地方居住呀？

李：係，中共解放大陸之後．我重喺廣州市讀書．一九五一年我離開大陸，去香港住．

馬：敢，你喺中共管治嘅地方住咗幾耐呀？

李：大約年零噭上下．嗰陣時係我讀中學嘅最後一年．

馬：嗰陣時你有冇讀馬克斯主義，思格斯嘅著作，列寧嘅學說，史太林嘅理論，毛澤東嘅新民主主義同社會主義嘅書呀？

李：有，不過呢啲係學校規定嘅．我對呢啲野冇興趣，亦唔明白無產階級嘅優點以及資產階級嘅劣點．

第七課

馬：李大年先生，你重可以對我講些少關於你喺中共管治之下參加過嘅活動嗎？

李：除阻普通嘅討論會，小組會議，檢討會，演講會，訓練班等等之外，我地重有參加集體文娛活動．

馬：討論會討論啲乜呀？

李：有時討論共產主義同其他社會主義嘅理論．有時討論資產階級同無產階級嘅鬥爭．

馬：小組會議呢？

李：小組會議多數討論時局．

馬：檢討會呢？

李：檢討會多數要各人自我批評同坦白．

馬：演講會係點樣嘅呀？

李：演講會多數由共產黨幹部黨員主持，表揚共產黨嘅真理．

馬：訓練班係點嘅呀？

李：訓練班係訓練外圍團體嘅幹部．

馬：集體文娛活動又點呀？

李：集體文娛活動有唱歌．民族歌曲，跳舞，民族舞同秧歌舞，研究普羅文學等等．

第八課

馬：李先生，你喺中共嘅竹簾之內住咗成年，你覺得中共點呀？

李：我以為中共係親蘇反美．

馬：中共人民政府採取乜野政策呀？

李：中共人民政府表面上採取寬大政策，實際上係非常之毒辣．

馬：你敢講係乜意思呀？

李：我覺得喺中共竹簾之內，每個人都受共產黨嘅監視．如果佢地以為你係反動份子，你嘅名就喺黑名單，更加唔自由咯！

馬：中共內部嘅巨頭有冇分派系呢？

李：有，好似毛澤東係民族派，劉少奇係國際派，周恩來，朱德係走中間路線．不過，佢地完全係反美，指美國係帝國主義者，戰爭販子．

馬：對於海外，佢地點樣呢？

李：喺海外，佢地有第五縱隊，散佈各地．

馬：喺海外嘅第五縱隊做啲乜野工作呀？

李：佢地除咗做宣傳同破壞嘅工作之外，又做間諜工作，偷取軍事，經濟同政治嘅情報，用暗號，密碼，或者秘密無線電向中共或蘇俄報告．

馬：你點樣知道中共呢啲活動呀？

李：因爲我喺香港嘅時候．有一個共產黨幹部知道我要黎美國，想呌我同佢地做地下情報工作人員，所以佢講呢啲野俾我知．

第九課

馬：李先生，你以為中共係唔係蘇俄嘅衛星國家呀？

李：話佢係亦得，話佢唔係亦得。我以為最啱就係話中共係機會主義者。

馬：中共嘅竹簾之內有冇叛亂呀？

李：普通黎講，叛亂嘅事件時常有，不過中共控制得十二分嚴密，所以大規模嘅叛亂唔容易。

馬：敢，喺竹簾之內，係唔係冇反共嘅活動呢？

李：敢又唔係。竹簾之內有好多游擊隊，有好多國民政府嘅特務同通訊人員。有機會就盡力打擊共產黨嘅建設同宣傳。

馬：你有冇參加過呢啲反共嘅活動同組織呀？

李：有，我有機會參加呢啲反共組織或活動。

馬：對中共嘅檢討會、你有乜經驗呀？

李：有乜經驗．因為我好少出聲，所以幹部都話我係個人主義者．強迫我學習大衆化，參加共黨嘅門面(前線)團體．

第十課

關：老馬．我以為你而家同李大年問話!?

馬：冇錯，不過我出黎食口煙．飲杯㗎啡啫！

關：你清楚李大年本人嘅根底未呀？

馬：我覺得佢雖然接受過馬列嘅學說同毛澤東嘅新民主主義，但係佢唔係一個共產主義信徒．

關：佢有冇坦白講佢喺中共紅旗之下嘅活動呀？

馬：佢相當坦白，而且加上一啲合理嘅解釋．

關：佢對中共有乜批評嗎？

馬：佢對中共嘅政策同手段都有批評．佢嘅分析幾準確．眼光幾夠，批評得幾透澈．

關：佢對中國大陸嘅情形有發表意見嗎？

馬：佢話大陸嘅人民好艱苦．佢又指出在極權主義者嘅鐵蹄

之下，人民有自由．佢地嘅思想，行動都受限制．

關：對於反共嘅活動，佢知道些少嗎？

馬：佢只係知道少少．因為佢話有機會參加所有嘅活動．

關：對於佢喺美國嘅親屬，朋友等等，你向佢問明白未呀？

馬：我重未提及呢一樣．等一陣我會叫佢開一張名單俾我．

關：根據你觀察，佢可唔可以做一個政府證人呢？

馬：呢個問題，我重要澈底調查過至可以決定．

第十一課

馬：李先生，你到美國之後，有冇同共產黨接觸過呀？

李：根據我所知道嘅，我冇同共產黨接觸過，不過，我行船嘅時候，曾經入過海員工會．

馬：佢地係唔係左傾份子呀？

李：佢地可能係左傾份子．不過而家我冇行船，亦冇交會費好耐囉！

馬：你幾時行船？喺邊間輪船公司做工呀？

李：我讀咗三個學期大學，因為冇錢繼續，所以停學．又因為冇其他適合嘅工作，所以同太平洋輪船公司做行船．

馬：你行邊一隻船呀？

李：嗰隻船呌做「網自李」，係貨船、來往三藩市同日本、香港等地．我行咗六七水船．一九五八年六月，我因為病咗一

大塲，就喺嗰陣時辭咗工．

馬：你行船來回美國遠東嘅時候，有冇走私漏稅，作奸犯科呀？

李：我冇做過呢啲敢嘅野．有時我帶少少自己用嘅中國藥材，亦經過海關稅員撿查，然後帶上岸．

馬：你而家喺邊處做工，每個月有幾多錢入息呀？

李：我而家喺孖結街二百三十號，一間老番餐館處做工．每個月除咗花利之外，有三百文嘅上下．

馬：請你喺呢張紙上便寫清楚你自己嘅姓名，年歲，地址，同到美國之後你所做過嘅各種工作．

李：請你唔好講得噉快．

馬：對唔住，你重要寫明你每個老扳嘅姓名，佢地嘅地址，與及做工嘅日期．

李：重有嗎？

馬：請你順便喺呢張紙後便寫埋你嘅直系親屬嘅姓名，地址與及關係．

李：好啦．

第十二課

馬：李先生，我而家想問吓你關於方佐治嘅事．

李：好呀．

馬：請問你對於佢嘅背景熟唔熟呀？

李：我唔係好熟．不過聽聞話佢係鄉下出世．細佬哥嘅時候佢搬出去省城住，喺省城讀書．

馬：佢喺省城讀書讀到第幾年級呀？

李：聽聞講，佢讀到高中嘅時候就黎美國，相信佢重未畢業．

馬：佢有乜特别嘅嗜好同活動呀？

李：佢講過俾我聽，佢話佢最中意文學．參加過好幾個讀書會，而且時常向報館同雜誌社投稿．

馬：對於呢啲讀書會、雜誌社等等嘅性質，你明唔明白呀？

李：好難講．不過普通黎講，中國文人嘅生活多數清苦，左傾

嘅人亦有．所以有啲讀書會、雜誌社係共黨嘅門面組織．

馬：方佐治黎咗美國之後有乜活動呀？

李：佢黎咗美國之後、一方面補習英文、另一方面做讀書工．放暑假嘅時候，佢又去園口做工．根據我所知嘅、佢到美國初期，冇乜特別嘅活動．

第十三課

馬：根據你所知道嘅，方佐治喺美國有啲乜直系親屬呀？

李：除咗佢嘅父親之外，我唔知道佢重有乜野親人喺呢度．

馬：佢重有其他嘅親戚喺美國嗎？

李：對於呢件事我唔清楚．我好似見過一兩個同佢同村嘅叔伯．不過可能係好疏嘅親屬，冇乜親密關係嘅．

馬：你同佢同房住嘅時候係乜年乜月？嗰陣時你地喺邊處住呀？

李：嗰陣時係一九五三年九月，即係我讀大學第二個學期．我同佐治喺企利街夾市得頓街嗰間柏文住．

馬：你同佢喺嗰處住咗幾耐呀？

李：我地一齊住咗一年噉上下．後來因為我病咗，又停咗學，所以我自己搬開住．

馬：你同佢住嘅時候，邊個係佢嘅朋友呀？

李：除咗幾個係我地大家嘅同學之外，我唔識佢啲朋友。佢啲朋友好少黎搵佢，佢又好少請朋友黎坐。

馬：佢嗰陣時有乜活動呀？

李：佢嗰陣時好中意參加各種活動，尤其係青年方面嘅。

馬：請你將你所記得嘅團體嘅名講俾我聽。

李：現時我一個都唔記得，或者遲吓我諗倒至講俾你聽，好嗎？

馬：好呀。你諗倒之後，請你開列一張名單俾我。

第十四課

馬：方佐治離開學校之後，佢喺邊處做工呀？

李：佢好似喺一間船廠做工．

馬：你知唔知道係邊一間船廠呀？

李：我唔係幾清楚．聽聞話，嗰間船廠喺對面海嗰邊．

馬：佢有乜職位呀？喺邊個部份呀？

李：呢啲我真係唔知咯！

馬：佢而家重喺嗰處做工嗎？

李：佢重喺嗰處做．聽聞講．佢唔只加咗人工，而且升咗級．

馬：你講過、佢喺工會好活動、係嗎？

李：冇錯．佢喺工會出席各種委員會，計劃各樣活動．

馬：你點知道佢喺工會活動嘅情形呀？

李：我有一個好朋友亦係嗰個工會會員．佢時時提及佐治嘅事，所以我知道些少．

馬：除咗唐人埠嘅社團同工會之外，佢重有乜特別嘅活動呀？

李：我相信有乜咯！

馬：根據你所知嘅，邊一個係佢最好嘅朋友呀？

李：唐人埠嗰個「和平社」啲社員都係佢嘅好朋友．尤其是社長梁顯利係同佢最親密嘅．

馬：李先生，我好多謝你嘅幫忙．對於做證人嘅問題，我地研究過之後再通知你．

李：好好．如果需要我，唔該你早啲通知我．

第十五課

馬：關主任，我想向你簡單報告一吓關於李大年做證人嘅調查．

關：好呀，請坐落至傾啦．

馬：根據我嘅觀察，李大年同方佐治唔係知己朋友．

關：佢可能知道老方嘅活動，你話係嗎？

馬：呢啲係冇錯，不過佢所知道嘅野，同老方嘅案底差唔多．冇乜唔合口供．

關：你敢講係乜意思呀？

馬：我地已經由移民局方面知道老方嘅家庭背景．我地喺呢方面比較老李所知嘅更加清楚詳細．

關：佢喺美國嘅活動點呀？

馬：呢一層比較有頭緒．老李今日開咗一張名單，寫明老方活動嘅社團．不過，又要費一番時候黎調查．

關：如果係敢，豈不是離成功之路重遠？

馬：唔緊要嘅．不過，我地有一件意外嘅收穫．

關：係乜呀？

馬：老李喺香港等候黎美國嘅時候，中共情報局方面曾經派人同佢接頭．不過，佢拒絕咗．

關：真嘅！如果係敢，呢啲消息應該通知聯邦調查局或者中央情報處咯！

馬：等我整一個有系統嘅報告俾你之後，你可以權宜辦理．

關：好好，多謝你，老馬．

第十六課

伍：請問你係唔係朱榮貴先生呀？

朱：好話．你係邊位呀？

伍：我叫做伍保文．係聯邦偵探局(聯邦調查局)嘅偵探(調查員)．

朱：有乜指教呀？

伍：我想調查一吓謝賓呢個人．佢以前同你做工，係嗎？

朱：你係唔係調查移民案呀？

伍：唔係．唔係移民案．係國防部叫我地調查謝賓嘅工作背景．

朱：點解呀？

伍：因為佢申請去做國防部嘅一個重要職位，所以要調查一吓．

朱：你想調查啲乜野呀？

伍：第一，你覺得謝賓同你做工做得點樣呀？

朱：佢嘅工作我非常之滿意，可以話係我嘅得力助手．

伍：佢喺你處做工嘅時候同其他嘅伙記傾得埋嗎？

朱：佢好好人品，佢同個個伙記都合得埋 係一個難得嘅伙記.

伍：佢點解辭咗個份工呀？

朱：因為佢要去美東，所以離開呢處.

伍：佢中意飲酒嗎？中意賭博嗎？好攪三攪四嗎？

朱：佢好少嫖，賭，飲，吹.

伍：你覺得佢有冇對美國不忠嘅行為同思想呀？

朱：我知道佢入咗美籍，佢冇乜對美國不忠嘅行為同思想.

伍：你可以講幾個對謝賓有認識啲人嘅姓名地址俾我知嗎？

朱：當然可以啦．等我攞張紙寫俾你咯.

伍：多謝嚨！多謝嚨！

第十七課

伍：小姐，請問雷天才先生喺處嗎？

秘：啊！你係唔係正話打電話黎嘅聯邦偵探局嗰位伍保文先生呀？

伍：好話．雷先生約我喺呢個時候黎見佢．佢喺處嗎？

秘：唔該你等一陣．等我通知佢．

伍：雷先生．

雷：請坐，請坐．伍先生．

伍：因為有一位謝賓先生想申請一份政府工，我地想調查一吓佢嘅背景．我希望你能夠多多幫忙．

雷：當然啦！當然啦！謝賓係我一個老朋友嘅仔．佢好似我自己嘅子姪一樣．

伍：你對於佢嘅家庭環境清楚嗎？

雷：我十分清楚佢嘅家庭環境．佢啲家人個個都係「安份守己」．

伍：你熟謝賓啲朋友嗎？

雷：我估我嘅大仔同第二仔好熟佢啲朋友．

伍：你知道佢有乜唔好嘅習慣同唔好嘅嗜好嗎？

雷：佢冇乜唔好嘅習慣，幾慳儉，而且肯做工．雖然佢出黎做工冇幾耐，或者亦貯咗幾個仙喺銀行咯！

伍：如果你有一件好重要嘅工作，你會唔會信賴佢去做呀？

雷：我對佢好有信心．我以為我會信賴佢去做．

伍：我重想同你嘅公子傾一吓關於謝賓啲朋友，得嗎？

雷：得啦．你可以而家去佢做工嘅燕梳公司搵佢．

伍：唔該晒，雷先生．

雷：唔使唔該．伍先生

第十八課

伍：請問雷威林先生喺處嗎？

雷：我就係啦．先生貴姓名呀？

伍：我叫做伍保文，係聯邦偵探局嘅偵探．

雷：有乜指教呢，伍偵探．

伍：我想向你問一吓關於謝賓先生呢一個人．

雷：佢犯咗乜罪呀？

伍：佢唔係犯罪．不過佢申請一份同國防秘密有關嘅工作，對於佢嘅一切，我地想知道清楚．

雷：啊！佢係我嘅老同學，老朋友．我保證佢係一個好人．

伍：佢呢個人係點樣架？

雷：佢做事好精細，好認真，對人好忠厚，佢係一個可靠嘅人．

伍：你熟佢啲朋友嗎？

雷：我差唔多識嗮佢啲朋友．尤其是嗰幾個比較親密啲嘅．我可以話佢地個個都係「奉公守法」嘅公民．佢地唔係不良份子．

伍：請問你對佢有乜批評呀？

雷：我以為佢有時好碩梗．不過呢啲唔可以話係佢嘅劣點．

伍：雷先生，我好多謝你嘅幫忙．

雷：唔好敢話，伍偵探．

第十九課

胡：老伍，對於調查謝安嘅工作，你攪掂未呀？

伍：九成囉！不過我重想喺另一方面研究一吓．

胡：照現在嘅情形，佢有冇問題呀？

伍：可以話完全冇問題．

胡：你可否喺口頭上約畧先黎一個報告呀？

伍：當然可以啦！

胡：佢嘅工作效能點呀？

伍：肯認真，有毅力，有責任心．不過有時頑梗啲．

胡：佢待人接物點呀？

伍：和靄可親，而且肯犧牲自己嘅金錢同時間幫忙朋友．

胡：佢私人嘅品行呢？

伍：忠誠可靠．勤儉而且有志氣．量度大又有不良嗜好．

胡：佢有興趣飲兩杯嗎？

伍：只係「逢場作興」，「適可而止」，全無鬧事。

胡：如果係敢，你重打算研究邊一方面嘅野呀？

伍：我想研究一吓關於佢嘅社團活動。

胡：敢，我希望你早日辦妥呢件事。

伍：呢個禮拜尾，我可以交出書面報告。

胡：唔該，唔該。

第二十課

警：你地呢處有劫案發生，係嗎？

員：冇錯，大約十五分鐘前有人喺呢處打劫．

警：銀行被劫咗幾多錢呀？

員：大約二千文．

警：幾多錢張嘅銀紙呀？

員：有啲五十文張嘅，有啲二十文張嘅．

警：你地有冇銀紙號碼嘅紀錄呀？

員：有啲有紀錄，有啲冇紀錄．

警：幾多個賊呀？佢地有冇帶炮呀？

員：只係見倒一個帶手槍．不過佢話重有個同黨．

警：佢係乜野嘅人？幾大年紀？幾高大呀？

員：佢好似係白人，大約卅歲左右，中等身材，唔高唔矮

警：佢着乜衫呀？有乜特點嗎？

員：佢着一套灰色嘅西裝，白恤衫，冇打呔，冇戴帽，戴黑眼鏡．

警：佢啲頭髮長嗎？佢有冇鬚呀？

員：佢啲頭髮棕色嘅，飛得好短；有些少鬍鬚，不過唔係幾長．

警：佢肥抑或瘦呀？

員：佢麻麻肥，佢有雙下巴．

警：佢重有冇其他嘅特點呀？

員：佢個鼻扁扁．左邊面有一粒大嘅癦．

警：重有冇呀？

員：佢隻右手嘅尾指有一隻大紅寶石戒指．佢個口咬住一支呂宋煙．

警：佢行路走抑或坐車走呀？

員：佢行出門口之後，轉左．因為人多．就睇唔見佢咯

第二十一課

警：請問你早半點鐘見唔見倒一個戴黑眼鏡嘅人由個間銀行行出黎呀？

行：等我諗吓．啊．係啦，有一個戴黑眼鏡嘅同一個染黃頭髮嘅女人一齊出黎．

警：你記得個個人點樣嘅嗎？唔該你描寫佢咯．

行：佢咬住一枝呂宋煙，但係冇點着火．佢幾高幾肥．

警：你以為佢有幾高同幾重呀？

行：佢大約有五尺八九寸高，一百七十磅嘅上下．

警：個個女人大約幾多歲呀？

行：佢廿七八歲左右，唔係幾黑．染黃頭髮，電咗髮．亦戴黑眼鏡．着一件時欵嘅黃大褸，高牙鞋．佢嘅樣唔錯，不過好似好惡嘅．

警：佢地係乜種人呀？

行：佢地係西人．

警：佢地兩個正話打劫銀行．你知道佢地係邊處走去嗎？

行：係嚒！佢地駛車走．唔怪得佢地駛車駛得噉狼忙囉．

警：你記得個架車係乜年嘅，係乜色嘅呀？

行：個架好似係一九六〇年嘅福特車．好似係黑色嘅，有四度門嘅車．

警：佢地係邊處駛去呀？

行：佢地係呢條街一直駛去，駛得好快．

警：你睇唔睇倒佢嘅車牌號數呀？

行：我冇注意，不過好似唔係加省車牌嘅顏色．

警：如果你見倒個兩個人或者個架車嘅時候，你重認得嗎？

行：我重認得．

警：請你寫你嘅姓名，地址同電話喺呢處．以後或者要麻煩你

行：唔緊要，唔緊要．

第二十二課

警：周先生，李夫人，我想請你地兩位睇一睇呢幾張相．

周：好呀，等我黎睇吓．

警：佢地似唔似打劫銀行嗰兩個人呀？

李：我地冇留意嗰個女人．佢實在係乜野樣就好難識別咯．

警：呢張相似唔似打劫銀行嗰個男人呀？

李：有啲似嗰個男人．不過佢好似冇噉多鬚．

警：請你睇一吓呢張側面嘅相、似嗎？

李：冇錯囉．我記得嗰一粒癦．係佢囉！

警：周先生，你以為係嗎？

周：我覺得好似．不過，我唔敢擔保，因爲我嗰陣時只係驟吓眼啫．

警：嗰個女人呢，周先生？

周：呢張相唔係幾似嗰個女人．嗰個女人靚啲，瘦啲．而且個面冇酒凹．條頸亦冇噉長．

警：請你睇一睇呢張側面嘅相，點呀？

周：呀，呢張側面嘅又幾似噃！點解呢？

警：請你再睇清楚呢張正面嘅咯．

李：唔該你俾嗰個女人嘅側面嘅相等我再睇吓．

警：好呀．拿，呢張係咯．

李：睇黎好似我喺銀行見過佢．我記得我見過呢對耳環．

警：點解你記得呢對耳環呀？

李：因為我係銀行見到呢對耳環嘅時候，我覺得好特別，所以記得．

警：如果係噉，呢兩個人或者就係打劫銀行嘅咯．

李：我以為係咯：

周：我亦係噉話。

第二十三課

關：聽聞話你地已經捉倒兩個打劫銀行嘅嫌疑犯，係嗎？

警：冇錯，我地已經審問過佢地咯．昨日亦已經過堂啦．

關：佢地肯唔肯認罪呀？

警：佢地唔肯認罪，不過佢地兩個人嘅口供唔係幾對．

關：噉點呢？

警：我地有充足嘅人證物證，我相信佢地難逃法網．

關：被告有冇請辯護律師呀？

警：佢地有辯護律師．聽佢嘅口氣，如果判決係有罪，佢地會上訴．

關：如果法官判有罪，佢地會坐幾耐監呀？

警：噉就好難講．但係因為佢地兩個都有舊案底，可能判有期徒刑，甚至終身監禁亦唔定．

關：呢件案係唔係市檢察官打理呀？

警：唔係，因為打劫銀行係犯咗聯邦例　所以係由聯邦檢察官負責控告．

關：定期幾時出庭呀？

警：現時定咗下個禮拜四開審．

關：你同我到時一定要做證人咯．

警：梗係啦．不過我以為呢件案唔使幾耐就可以解決囉．

關：我以為開審唔會好耐，不過選擇陪審員可能要好多時候．

警：冇錯，尤其是嗰位辯護律師係出名嘅扭計師爺．

第二十四課

許：先生，我想報案．我個仔唔見咗．

警：佢叫做乜名？幾時唔見咗呀？

許：佢叫做尊尼許．昨晚六點佢食完飯出街，到而家重未翻黎．

警：佢今年幾歲呀？佢有幾高幾大呀？

許：尊尼今年十一歲．大約四尺半噉上下．體重八十磅左右．

警：佢有乜容易認嘅特點嗎？

許：佢飛光頭，有些少假晒牙，眼眉好粗，好濃，雙眼幾大．最近佢晒成好黑．

警：佢昨晚出街着乜衫呀？

許：佢着短袖士砵恤，灰黑色絨西裝長褲，紅色嘅窄吉．

警：佢着嗰對鞋係乜色嘅呀？

許：佢着對深黃色嘅短柄皮鞋．嗰對鞋係新嘅．

警：你記得佢着乜襪嗎？

許：我冇注意．不過佢啲襪多數係白色橡筋頭嘅．

警：佢昨晚出門口嘅時候．佢話去邊度呀？

許：我嘅女人話，佢去踹單車．但係架單車又喺車房．

警：邊啲人係佢至好嘅朋友呀？

許：我地隔離嗰幾個細佬哥同佢至好．不過佢地昨晚冇見過佢．

第二十五課

警：許先生，尊尼多數同邊啲人來往呀？

許：除咗左鄰右里個幾個細佬哥之外，重有佢三幾個深交嘅同學．

警：你有冇問過佢地呀？

許：我問過佢地咯．不過佢地昨晚都冇見過佢．

警：你去過你啲親戚朋友處搵過佢未呀？

許：所有親戚我都問過，比較相熟嘅朋友處我亦去過，唔係幾相熟嘅朋友我亦問過．

警：我可以即刻同你打電話去本埠各醫院調查一吓，睇吓有冇細佬哥意外嘅事件發生．

許：哦就唔該嗮咯！不過，先生，你以為會唔會係綁票呀？

警：你有冇仇人呀？

許：我唔會有仇人．我「待人接物」，都好公道，冇得罪朋友．

警：你有冇收到恐嚇信向你勒索呀？

許：我冇收到恐嚇信．

警：如果係綁票，佢地會同你接頭．向你勒索．

許：噉，點辦呢？

警：如果佢地同你接頭，你要設辦法敷衍佢地．即刻通知我地．千祈鎮定．

許：我嘅仔會唔會有危險呀？

警：我地一定盡力同你設法．你翻去休息一吓啦．如果有乜消息，請你即刻通知我地．

許：唔該嗮，唔該嗮．

第二十六課

林：我正話由唐山黎．對華埠嘅情形唔熟．想向你請教請教．得嗎？

楊：唔好客氣．大家隨便傾吓，交換吓知識．

林：邊幾個社團算做最重要嘅呀？

楊：中華總會館，中華總商會．同源會可以算得最重要嘅羅．

林：中華總會館係乜組織呀？

楊：佢可以話係華僑自己最高嘅機關．係由七大會館聯合成嘅，負責有關華僑社會嘅福利，宣傳等等．

林：呢七大會館係乜組織呀？

楊：呢七大會館係邑縣嘅組織．佢地自己同邑或同縣嘅華僑組織嘅．

林：中華總商會呢？

楊：呢個商會同西人嘅一樣．係商人嘅組織，以發展華埠商業為主要目的．

林：同源會又點呀？

楊：同源會係美國公民嘅組織．佢地係華裔，有土生同美籍中國人．不過亦有三幾個西人名譽會員．

林：佢地嘅宗旨係乜呀？

楊：佢地係以維護美籍中國人嘅權利為宗旨．

林：重有冇其他嘅重要社團呀？

楊：當然有啦．華埠重有好多姓氏公所．音樂社同其他嘅服務團體．